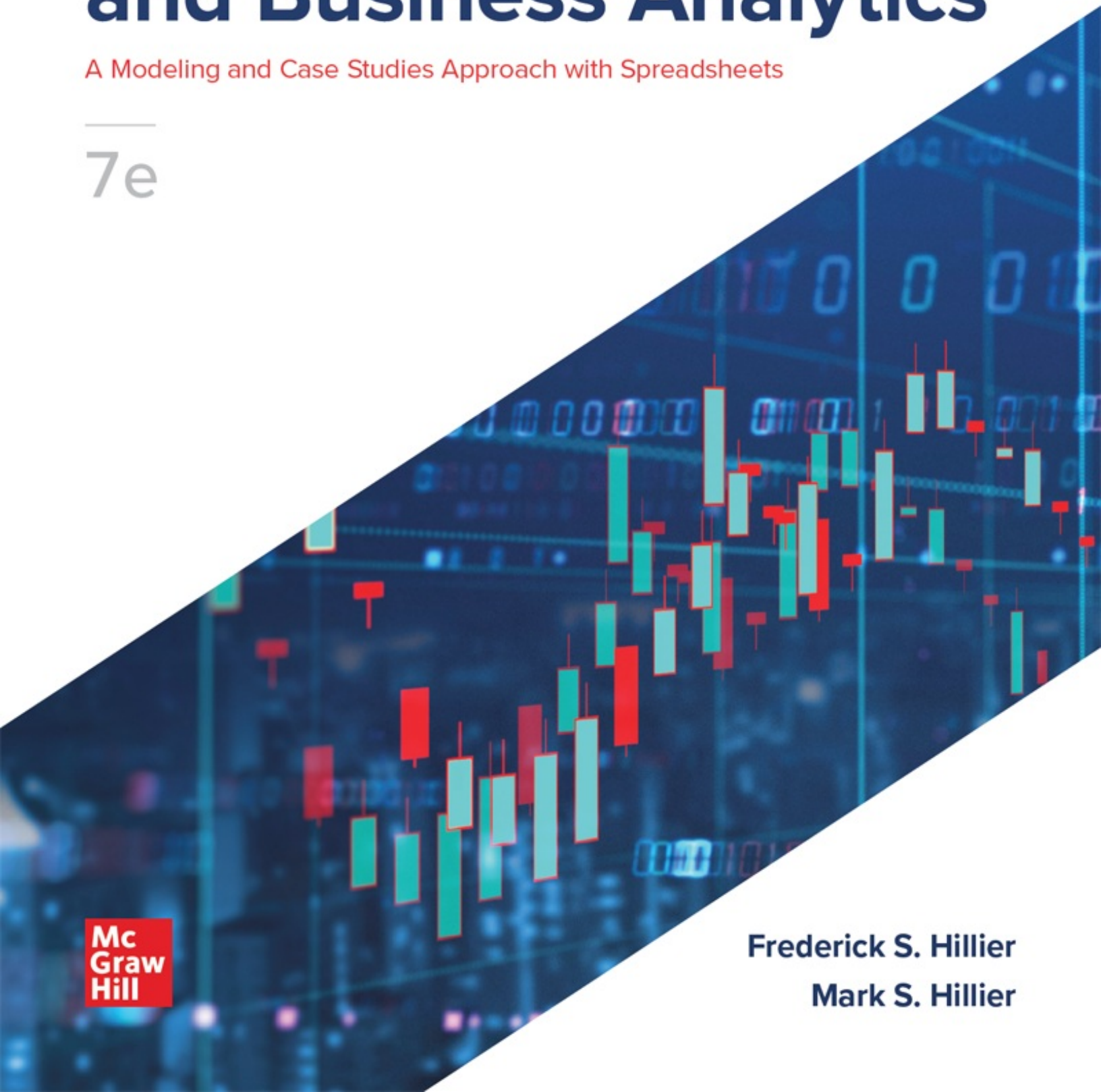
This International Student Edition is for use outside of the U.S.

Introduction to

Management Science and Business Analytics

A Modeling and Case Studies Approach with Spreadsheets

7e



Frederick S. Hillier
Mark S. Hillier

Mc Graw Hill

Introduction to Management Science and Business Analytics

A Modeling and Case Studies Approach with Spreadsheets

SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Bowersox, Closs, Cooper, and Bowersox Supply Chain Logistics Management *Fifth Edition*

Johnson
Purchasing and Supply Management *Sixteenth Edition*

Simchi-Levi, Kaminsky, and Simchi-Levi Designing and Managing the Supply Chain: Concepts, Strategies, Case Studies *Fourth Edition*

Stock and Manrodt
Fundamentals of Supply Chain Management

PROJECT MANAGEMENT

Larson and Gray
Project Management: The Managerial Process *Eighth Edition*

SERVICE OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Bordoloi, Fitzsimmons, and Fitzsimmons Service Management: Operations, Strategy, Information Technology *Tenth Edition*

MANAGEMENT SCIENCE

Hillier and Hillier

Introduction to Management Science: A Modeling and Case Studies Approach with Spreadsheets *Sixth Edition*

BUSINESS RESEARCH METHODS

Schindler

Business Research Methods *Fourteenth Edition*

BUSINESS FORECASTING

Keating and Wilson

Forecasting and Predictive Analytics *Seventh Edition*

BUSINESS SYSTEMS DYNAMICS

Sterman

Business Dynamics: Systems Thinking and Modeling for a Complex World

OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Cachon and Terwiesch

Operations Management

Third Edition

Cachon and Terwiesch

Matching Supply with Demand: An Introduction to Operations Management *Fourth Edition*

Jacobs and Chase

Operations and Supply Chain Management *Sixteenth Edition*

Jacobs and Chase

Operations and Supply Chain Management: The Core *Sixth Edition*

Schroeder and Goldstein

Operations Management in the Supply Chain: Decisions and Cases *Eighth Edition*

Stevenson

Operations Management

Fourteenth Edition

Swink, Melnyk, and Hartley Managing Operations Across the Supply Chain *Fourth Edition*

BUSINESS STATISTICS

Bowerman, Drougas, Duckworth, Froelich, Hummel, Moninger, and Schur Business Statistics and Analytics in Practice *Ninth Edition*

Doane and Seward

Applied Statistics in Business and Economics *Seventh Edition*

Doane and Seward

Essential Statistics in Business and Economics *Third Edition*

Lind, Marchal, and Wathen Basic Statistics for Business and Economics *Tenth Edition*

Lind, Marchal, and Wathen Statistical Techniques in Business and Economics *Eighteenth Edition*

Jaggia and Kelly

Business Statistics: Communicating with Numbers *Fourth Edition*

Jaggia and Kelly

Essentials of Business Statistics: Communicating with Numbers *Second Edition*

BUSINESS ANALYTICS

Jaggia, Kelly, Lertwachara, and Chen Business Analytics: Communicating with Numbers *Second Edition*

BUSINESS MATH

Slater and Wittry

Practical Business Math Procedures *Fourteenth Edition*

Slater and Wittry

Math for Business and Finance: An Algebraic Approach *Second Edition*

Seventh Edition Introduction to Management Science and Business Analytics A Modeling and Case Studies Approach with Spreadsheets

Frederick S. Hillier ***Stanford University*** **Mark S. Hillier**

University of Washington Cases developed by Karl Schmedders

IMD Business School for Management and Leadership Molly Stephens

Quinn, Emanuel, Urquhart & Sullivan, LLP

INTRODUCTION TO MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND BUSINESS ANALYTICS

Published by McGraw Hill LLC, 1325 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10019. Copyright ©2023 by McGraw Hill LLC. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw Hill LLC, including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Some ancillaries, including electronic and print components, may not be available to customers outside the United States.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 LWI 27 26 25 24 23 22

ISBN 978-1-265-04005-5

MHID 1-265-04005-2

Cover Image: *whiteMocca/Shutterstock*

All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

The Internet addresses listed in the text were accurate at the time of publication. The inclusion of a website does not indicate an endorsement by the authors or McGraw Hill LLC, and McGraw Hill LLC does not guarantee the accuracy of the information presented at these sites mheducation.com/highered

To the memory of

Christine Phillips Hillier
a beloved wife and daughter-in-law

Gerald J. Lieberman
an admired mentor and one of the true giants of our field

About the Authors

Frederick S. Hillier is professor emeritus of operations research at Stanford University. Dr. Hillier is especially known for his classic, award-winning text, *Introduction to Operations Research,* co-authored with the late Gerald J. Lieberman. This book, which is closely related to management science, has been the dominant textbook of its kind for several decades. It has been translated into well over a dozen languages and is currently in its 11th edition. The sixth edition won honorable mention for the 1995 Lanchester Prize (best English-language publication of any kind in the field), and Dr. Hillier also was awarded the 2004 INFORMS Expository Writing Award for the eighth edition. He also is a Fellow of The Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS). In 2018, he was awarded the INFORMS Kimball Medal for his distinguished lifetime achievements, including especially for both the Hillier-Lieberman textbook and this Hillier-Hillier textbook. His other books include *The Evaluation of Risky Interrelated Investments, Queueing Tables and Graphs, Introduction to Stochastic Models in Operations Research,* and *Introduction to Mathematical Programming.*

Dr. Hillier received his BS in industrial engineering and doctorate specializing in operations research and management science from Stanford University. As an undergraduate, he became a member of the Stanford Woodwind Quintet as a freshman and then won the Outstanding Sophomore Debater the next year. He won the McKinsey Prize for technical writing his junior year, and then, as a senior, won the Hamilton Award for combining excellence in engineering with notable achievements in the humanities and social

sciences. He ranked first in his undergraduate engineering class of over 300 students and was awarded three national fellowships (National Science Foundation, Tau Beta Pi, and Danforth) for graduate study. During his three years as a graduate student, he took many courses in mathematics, statistics, and economics outside his department while also teaching both a course in engineering economics and a course in operations research. After receiving his PhD degree, he immediately joined the faculty of Stanford University, where he earned tenure at the age of 28 and the rank of full professor at 32.

Dr. Hillier's research has extended into a variety of areas, including integer programming, queueing theory and its application, statistical quality control, and production and operations management. He also has won a major prize co-sponsored by The Institute of Management Sciences for research in the finance area. His seminal papers have been republished in books of selected readings 11 times. Another paper won a McKinsey Foundation award for best papers appearing in the *California Management Review.*

In addition to his distinguished academic career at Stanford, Dr. Hillier devoted considerable time to other forms of service both in the community and at Stanford. For example, he served multiple years as the President of the Council of Churches for Santa Clara County, in the midst of Silicon Valley. He also served for four years as the chair of Stanford's Commission on Investment Responsibility focusing on how Stanford could more effectively combat apartheid in South Africa.

Twice elected a national officer of professional societies, he has served in many important professional and editorial capacities. For example, he served The Institute of Management Sciences as vice president for meetings, chairman of the publications committee, associate editor of *Management Science,* and co-general chairman of an international conference on management science in Japan. He also is a Fellow of the Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS). He served for 20 years (until

2013) as the founding series editor for a prominent book series, Springer's International Series in Operations Research and Management Science, where he helped to add 200 high-quality books to the field's literature. He has had visiting appointments at Cornell University, the Graduate School of Industrial Administration of Carnegie-Mellon University, the Technical University of Denmark, the University of Canterbury (New Zealand), and the Judge Institute of Management Studies at the University of Cambridge (England).

When his beloved mentor and co-author, Jerry Lieberman, contracted a fatal illness in the mid-1990s, Dr. Hillier reluctantly concluded that he needed to retire as a regular faculty member in order to maximize his impact on the field by becoming a full-time textbook author. He now publishes a new edition of either the Hillier-Lieberman textbook or this Hillier-Hillier textbook every couple years or so. This 7th edition becomes his 23rd edition of all his books. There have been dozens of translations of these editions into other languages, which has helped introduce well over a million students around the world to the field. Dr. Hillier's current academic home as an emeritus professor is with the Department of Management Science and Engineering at Stanford.

Mark S. Hillier, son of Fred Hillier, is associate professor of quantitative methods at the Michael G. Foster School of Business at the University of Washington. Dr. Hillier received his BS in engineering (plus a concentration in computer science) from Swarthmore College. He then received his MS with distinction in operations research and PhD in industrial engineering and engineering management from Stanford University. As an undergraduate, he won the McCabe Award for ranking first in his engineering class, won election to Phi Beta Kappa based on his work in mathematics, set school records on the men's swim team, and was awarded two national fellowships (National Science Foundation and Tau Beta Pi) for graduate study.

While still a student, he developed a comprehensive software tutorial package, *OR Courseware,* for the Hillier–Lieberman textbook, *Introduction to Operations Research.* (He also has prepared the solutions manual for recent editions of that textbook.) As a graduate student, he taught a PhD-level seminar in operations management at Stanford and won a national prize for work based on his PhD dissertation.

At the University of Washington, Dr. Hillier currently teaches courses in management science and spreadsheet modeling. He is widely acclaimed as a master teacher, having won a total of 29 teaching awards. These include over twenty MBA teaching awards for the core course in management science and his elective course in spreadsheet modeling, as well as a universitywide teaching award for his work in teaching undergraduate classes in operations management. He was chosen by MBA students in 2007, 2013, and 2021 as the winner of the School's most prestigious teaching award, namely, the PACCAR award for Teacher of the Year (reputed to provide the largest monetary award for MBA teaching in the nation). (A winner of the PACCAR Award is ineligible for the next five years, so only one other faculty member has won it three times and only one other has won it twice.) In 2021, he also won the Charles E. Summer Memorial Teaching Award, which is given to the faculty member voted the best by *all* graduate students. Other awards include for the most outstanding faculty member in the Global Executive MBA program and MBA Elective Professor of the Year voted on by full-time MBA students. Another is the Ron Crocket Award for Innovation in Education in honor of innovations in online teaching for the development of an online course in Excel for Business. The list goes on and on. His research interests include issues in component commonality, inventory, manufacturing, and the design of production systems. A paper by Dr. Hillier on component commonality won an award for best paper of 2000–2001 in *IIE Transactions.* He also has served as principal investigator on a grant from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation to lead student research

projects that apply spreadsheet modeling to various issues in global health being studied by the foundation.

About the Case Writers

Karl Schmedders has been a Professor of Finance at the IMD Business School for Management and Leadership in Lausanne, Switzerland, since August, 2020. He previously was professor of quantitative business administration at the University of Zurich in Switzerland and a visiting professor of executive education at the Kellogg School of Management of Northwestern University. His research interests include management science, business analytics, and computational economics and finance. He received his PhD in operations research from Stanford University, where he taught both undergraduate and graduate classes in management science, including a case studies course. He received several teaching awards at Stanford, including the universitywide Walter J. Gores Teaching Award. After a post-doc at the Hoover Institution, a think tank on the Stanford campus, he became assistant professor of managerial economics and decision sciences at the Kellogg School. He was promoted to associate professor in 2001 and received tenure in 2005. In 2008 he joined the University of Zurich, where he taught courses in management science, business analytics, and computational economics and finance. He has published research articles in international academic journals such as *Management Science, Operations Research, Econometrica, The Review of Economic Studies,* and *The Journal of Finance,* among others. At Kellogg he received several teaching awards, including the L. G. Lavengood Professor of the Year Award. More recently he won the best professor award of the Kellogg School's European EMBA program and its EMBA program in Hong Kong many times.

Molly Stephens is a partner in the Los Angeles office of Quinn, Emanuel, Urquhart & Sullivan, LLP. She graduated from Stanford with a BS in industrial engineering and an MS in operations research. Ms. Stephens taught public speaking in Stanford's School of Engineering and served as a teaching assistant for a case studies course in management science. As a teaching assistant, she analyzed management science problems encountered in the real world and transformed these into classroom case studies. Her research was rewarded when she won an undergraduate research grant from Stanford to continue her work and was invited to speak at INFORMS to present her conclusions regarding successful classroom case studies. Following graduation, Ms. Stephens worked at Andersen Consulting as a systems integrator, experiencing real cases from the inside, before resuming her graduate studies to earn a JD degree with honors from the University of Texas School of Law at Austin. She is a partner in the largest law firm in the United States devoted solely to business litigation, where her practice focuses on complex financial and securities litigation. She also has been ranked as a leading securities litigator by Chambers USA, which acknowledged "praise for her powerful and impressive securities litigation practice" and noted that she is "phenomenally bright, a critical thinker and great listener."

Preface

We have been very gratified by the warm reception to the first six editions of our textbook. It seems clear that instructors do not want major changes in the material in the sixth edition, except for the usual updates and refinements. We have heard and honor this message.

However, we also have concluded that the time has come to add some important new material as a complement to the current contents. The nature and rationale for this new material is described below.

ADDING BUSINESS ANALYTICS AS A COMPLEMENT TO MANAGEMENT SCIENCE

For well over a decade now, we have seen a growing analytics revolution. As we have entered the era of big data, analytics (including data science) now plays a key role in dealing with numerous managerial concerns. Business analysts who analyze these problems no longer can depend primarily on using the techniques of management science. The discipline of business analytics now needs to be used as well. To meet this need, business schools now have substantially increased their coverage of business analytics. In fact, many business schools now offer a master's program in business analytics.

Therefore, without reducing the coverage of management science, we now are providing an introduction to business analytics as well to clarify the close relationship between these two disciplines. This is done mainly in the first three chapters (plus Chapter 4, which

was Chapter 10 in the sixth edition). Chapter 1 is partially new in describing business analytics and its relationship to management science. Chapter 2 is completely new in providing an overview of a major study that draws on the techniques of business analytics and management science working together. Chapter 3 is completely new in presenting some basic kinds of models for performing predictive analytics. Just as in the sixth edition, Chapter 4 (formerly Chapter 10) presents another type of predictive analytics, namely, using historical data to make a forecast of what the value of some future quantity will turn out to be. Therefore, students now can gain a much better understanding of how business analytics and management science complement each other.

However, Chapter 5–15 (plus the Web chapters) present essentially all of the management science material that was in the sixth edition. Therefore, this gives management science instructors considerable flexibility in how to use this book. If they don't have the space or inclination to provide a significant coverage of business analytics, they can go directly from Chapter 1 to Chapter 5–15. If they want to include an overview of how business analytics and management science can work together, Chapter 2 can be included as well. If they want a fuller introduction to business analytics while still providing a more thorough introduction to management science, Chapter 3 and perhaps Chapter 4 can be included as well.

Master's programs in business analytics typically include a course that is devoted mainly to presenting the techniques of management science and operations research. This textbook should be well suited for such a course.

As discussed in the following three subsections, we continue to believe that a modern introductory management science textbook should have three key elements. As summarized in the subtitle of this book, these elements are a *modeling* and *case studies* approach with *spreadsheets.*

SPREADSHEETS

The modern approach to the teaching of management science clearly is to use *spreadsheets* as a primary medium of instruction. Both business students and managers now live with spreadsheets, so they provide a comfortable and enjoyable learning environment. Modern spreadsheet software, including Microsoft Excel used in this book, now can be used to do real management science. For student-scale models (which include many practical real-world models), spreadsheets are a much better way of implementing these models than traditional algebraic solvers. This means that the algebraic curtain that used to be prevalent in traditional management science courses and textbooks now can be lifted.

page x

However, with the current enthusiasm for spreadsheets, there is a danger of going overboard. Spreadsheets are not the only useful tool for performing management science analyses. Occasional modest use of algebraic and graphical analyses still have their place and we would be doing a disservice to the students by not developing their skills in these areas when appropriate. Furthermore, the book should not be mainly a spreadsheet cookbook that focuses largely on spreadsheet mechanics. Spreadsheets are a means to an end, not an end in themselves.

A MODELING APPROACH

This brings us to the second key feature of the book, a *modeling approach.* Model formulation lies at the heart of management science methodology and also plays a basic role when applying business analytics. Therefore, we heavily emphasize the art of model formulation, the role of a model, and the analysis of model results. We primarily (but not exclusively) use a spreadsheet format rather than algebra for formulating and presenting a model.

Some instructors have many years of experience in teaching modeling in terms of formulating algebraic models. Some of these instructors feel that students should do their modeling in this way and then transfer the model to a spreadsheet simply to use the Excel Solver to solve the model. We disagree with this approach. Our

experience (and the experience reported by many others) is that most business students find it more natural and comfortable to do their modeling directly in a spreadsheet. Furthermore, by using the best spreadsheet modeling techniques (as presented in this edition), formulating a spreadsheet model tends to be considerably more efficient and transparent than formulating an algebraic model. Another benefit is that the spreadsheet model includes all the relationships that can be expressed in an algebraic form and we often will summarize the model in this format as well.

Another break from past tradition in this book (and several contemporary textbooks) is to virtually ignore the algorithms that are used to solve the models. We feel that there is no good reason why typical business students should learn the details of algorithms executed by computers. Within the time constraints of a one-term management science course, there are far more important lessons to be learned. Therefore, the focus in this book is on what we believe are these far more important lessons. High on this list is the art of modeling managerial problems on a spreadsheet.

We believe that training business students in spreadsheet modeling will provide them with two key benefits when they later become managers. First, this will give them a powerful tool for analyzing small managerial problems without requiring outside help. Second, this will enable them to recognize when a team of business analysts could be very helpful for analyzing more complicated managerial problems.

Formulating a spreadsheet model of a real problem typically involves much more than designing the spreadsheet and entering the data. Therefore, we work through the process step by step: understand the unstructured problem, verbally develop some structure for the problem, gather the data, express the relationships in quantitative terms, and then lay out the spreadsheet model. The structured approach highlights the components of the model and the different types of spreadsheet cells used for each. Consequently, the emphasis is on the modeling rather than spreadsheet mechanics.

A CASE STUDIES APPROACH

However, all this still would be quite sterile if we simply presented a long series of brief examples with their spreadsheet formulations. This leads to the third key feature of this book—a *case studies* approach. In addition to examples, every chapter includes a case study patterned after actual applications to convey the whole process of applying management science and business analytics. In a few instances, the entire chapter revolves around a case study. By drawing the student into the story, we have designed each case study to bring that chapter's technique to life in a context that vividly illustrates the relevance of the technique for aiding managerial decision making. This storytelling, case-centered approach should make the material more enjoyable and stimulating while also conveying the practical considerations that are key factors in applying these kinds of techniques.

page xi

We have been pleased to have several reviewers of the first six editions express particular appreciation for our case study approach. Even though this storytelling approach has received little use in some other management science textbooks, we feel that it is a real key to preparing students for the practical application of the relevant techniques. Some of the reviewers have highlighted the effectiveness of the dialogue/scenario enactment approach used in some of the case studies. Although unconventional, this approach provides a way of demonstrating the process of managerial decision making with the help of management science and business analytics. It also enables previewing some key concepts in the language of management.

Every chapter also contains full-fledged cases following the problems at the end of the chapter. These cases usually continue to employ a stimulating storytelling approach, so they can be assigned as interesting and challenging projects. Many of these cases were developed jointly by two talented case writers, Karl Schmedders (a faculty member at the IMD Business School for Management and Leadership in Switzerland) and Molly Stephens (formerly a management science consultant with Andersen Consulting). The

authors also have added some cases, including several shorter ones.

We are, of course, not the first to incorporate any of these key features into a management science textbook. However, we believe that the book currently is unique in the way that it fully incorporates all three key features together.

OTHER SPECIAL FEATURES

We also should mention some additional special features of the book that are continued from the sixth edition.

- Diverse examples, problems, and cases convey the pervasive relevance of management science and business analytics.
- A strong managerial perspective.
- Learning objectives at the beginning of each chapter.
- Numerous margin notes that clarify and highlight key points.
- Excel tips interspersed among the margin notes.
- Review questions at the end of each section.
- A glossary at the end of each chapter.
- Solved problems (problems with complete solutions provided) at the end of each chapter.
- Partial answers to selected problems in the back of the book.
- Extensive supplementary text materials (10 supplements to book chapters and 7 additional chapters) are available on the website, **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

A SPECIAL SOFTWARE PACKAGE

This edition continues to integrate Excel and an impressive more recent product of Frontline Systems called **Analytic Solver®**. The downloaded software works only with Excel for Windows. However, a cloud-based version of this software is also available at **AnalyticSolver.com**. The cloud-based version works along with Excel (on either Mac or Windows) and is designed to look and feel

as much as possible like the downloaded Analytic Solver add-in for Excel. It offers comprehensive features for prescriptive analytics (optimization, simulation, decision analysis) and predictive analytics (forecasting, data mining, text mining). Its optimization features are upward compatible from the standard Solver in Excel. Analytic Solver includes:

page xii

- A more interactive user interface, with the model parameters always visible alongside the main spreadsheet, rather than only in the Solver dialog box.
- Parameter analysis reports that provide an easy way to see the effect of varying data in a model in a systematic way.
- A model analysis tool that reveals the characteristics of a model (e.g., whether it is linear or nonlinear, smooth or nonsmooth).
- Tools to build and solve decision trees within a spreadsheet.
- A full range of time series forecasting and data mining models.
- The ability to build and run sophisticated Monte Carlo simulation models.
- An interactive simulation mode that allows simulation results to be shown instantly whenever a change is made to a simulation model.
- The Solver in Analytic Solver can be used in combination with computer simulation to perform simulation optimization.
- **If interested in having students get individual licenses for class use, instructors should send an email to support@solver.com to get their course code and receive student pricing and access information as well as their own access information.** Note that this software is not free with the purchase of this text, but low-cost student licenses are available.

A CONTINUING FOCUS ON EXCEL AND ITS SOLVER

As with all the preceding editions, this edition continues to focus on spreadsheet modeling in an Excel format. Although it lacks some of

the functionalities of Analytic Solver, the Excel Solver continues to provide a completely satisfactory way of solving most of the spreadsheet models encountered in this book. This edition continues to feature this use of the Excel Solver whenever either it or the Analytic Solver could be used.

Many instructors prefer this focus because it avoids introducing other complications that might confuse their students. We agree.

However, the key advantage of introducing Analytic Solver is that it provides an all-in-one complement to the Excel Solver. There are some important topics in the book (including decision analysis and computer simulation) where the Excel Solver lacks the functionalities needed to deal fully with these kinds of problems. Multiple Excel add-ins—Solver Table, TreePlan, SensIt, RiskSim, Crystal Ball, and OptQuest (a module of Crystal Ball)—were introduced in previous editions to provide the needed functionalities. Analytic Solver alone now replaces all of these add-ins.

To further enhance a continuing focus on Excel and its Solver, McGraw Hill's **Connect**® Instructor Resources includes all the Excel files that provide the live spreadsheets for all the various examples and case studies throughout the book. In addition to further investigating the examples and case studies, these spreadsheets can be used by either the student or instructor as templates to formulate and solve similar problems. This website also includes dozens of Excel templates for solving various models in the book as well as a Queueing Simulator for performing computer simulations of queueing systems (used in Chapter 14).

NEW FEATURES IN THIS EDITION

We have made some important enhancements to the current edition.

- **A New Section Introduces Business Analytics** The business world has come to recognize the key role that business analytics can play in managerial decision making. This new Section 1.2 describes the three categories of business analytics and also

introduces the role of data science, machine learning, and artificial intelligence.

- **A Largely New Section Describes the Relationship Between Management Science and Business Analytics** Both management science and business analytics are disciplines that provide a scientific approach to guiding managerial decision making by using sophisticated techniques that draw on the mathematical sciences, including data science. Section 1.3 describes how these are overlapping disciplines that complement each other extremely well.

- **A New Chapter Provides an Overview of the Analysis Process When Using Business Analytics and Management Science** Chapter 2 describes the overall process when teams of business analysts apply business analytics and management science to conduct major studies for management. After emphasizing the need to work with management to carefully define the problem of concern to management, the chapter describes and illustrates the several steps needed to perform each of the three stages of analytics (descriptive, predictive, and prescriptive). Business analytics and management science play complementary roles throughout this overall process.
- **A New Chapter Presents Several Popular Models for Performing Predictive Analytics** A considerable number of models have been developed for performing predictive analytics. Some of these are *classification models,* which expresses its prediction of an outcome simply by classifying it as likely to fit a particular class of outcomes. Others are *prediction models,* which actually predict a numerical value for the outcome. Chapter 3 presents several popular models of both types.
- **A New Section Extends Queueing Models to Consider Human Behavior** When customers join a waiting line to receive some service from a server, queueing models (the subject of Chapter 13) can be used to predict how long the customers will need to wait. However, these models are based on simplifying mathematical assumptions about how the customers and the server will behave.

Recent research has been developing an alternative approach called *behavioral queueing theory* that instead considers the typical behavior of human servers and customers. The new Section 13.10 presents this alternative approach.

- **New Introductions to the Five Parts of the Book Provide Better Perspective** Now that the book occasionally goes back and forth in discussing management science and business analytics, we have broken the book into five parts, where each part consists of a few chapters that have a common theme. To help maintain perspective about the current theme, we have provided an introduction to each part at the beginning of the first of its chapters.
- **We Now Are a Multi-Color Book to Further Illuminate the Material** Past editions have been one-color books. We now are delighted to have full color available to better highlight the material. For example, descriptive analytics makes heavy use of color and we now can fully illustrate this. Color also will highlight the different components of spreadsheet models.
- **A Thorough Updating Throughout the Book.** Given that the writing of the first edition occurred more than 20 years ago, it is inevitable that some of that writing now is somewhat outdated. Even though the descriptions of management science techniques may still be accurate, the numbers and other details describing their application in certain problems, cases, and examples may now seem quite obsolete. Wage standards have changed. Prices have changed. Technologies have changed. Dates have changed. We have done some updating with each new edition and we again made a real effort this time to thoroughly update numbers and other details as needed to reflect conditions in 2022.
- **Additional Links to Articles that Describe Dramatic Real Applications.** The sixth edition included 26 application vignettes that described in a few paragraphs how an actual application of management science had a powerful effect on a company or organization by using techniques like those being studied in that portion of the book. The current edition adds eight more vignettes based on recent applications of management science and/or

business analytics (while deleting four outdated ones). We continue the practice of adding a link to the journal articles that fully describe these applications (except that the vignette for Section 1.5 doesn't require a link), through a special arrangement with the Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS®). Thus, the instructor now can motivate his or her lectures by having the students delve into real applications that dramatically demonstrate the relevance of the material being covered in the lectures. The end-of-chapter problems also include an assignment after reading each of these articles.

page xiv

We continue to be excited about this partnership with INFORMS, our field's preeminent professional society, to provide a link to each of these articles describing spectacular applications of management science and/or business analytics. INFORMS is a professional society for students, academics, and practitioners in analytics, operations research, and management science. Information about INFORMS journals, meetings, job bank, scholarships, awards, and teaching materials is available at **www.informs.org**.

- **A Word-by-Word Review to Further Increase Clarity in Each Chapter.** A hallmark of each edition has been a particularly heavy use of certain techniques to maximize the clarity of the material: use cases to bring the material to life, divide sections into smaller subsections, use short paragraphs, use bullet points, set off special conclusions, use italics or boldface to highlight key points, add margin notes, never assume too much about understanding preceding material, etc. However, we have doubled down with this approach in the current edition by using a word-by-word review of each chapter to further increase clarity while also taking into special account the input provided by reviewers and others.

REFLECTING THE DIVERSE WORLD AROUND US

McGraw Hill believes in unlocking the potential of every learner at every stage of life. To accomplish that, we are dedicated to creating products that reflect, and are accessible to, all the diverse, global customers we serve. Within McGraw Hill, we foster a culture of belonging, and we work with partners who share our commitment to equity, inclusion, and diversity in all forms. In McGraw Hill Higher Education and for *Introduction to Management Science and Business Analytics,* this includes, but is not limited to the following:

- Refreshing and implementing inclusive content guidelines around topics including generalizations and stereotypes, gender, abilities/disabilities, race/ethnicity, sexual orientation, diversity of names, and age.
- Enhancing best practices in assessment creation to eliminate cultural, cognitive, and affective bias.
- Including more diverse voices in the development and review of our content.

THIS EDITION ALSO INCLUDES A SPECIAL TEACHING AND LEARNING PLATFORM

McGraw Hill's **Connect**® is a teaching and learning platform that is proven to deliver better results for students and instructors. It empowers students by continually adapting to deliver precisely what is needed when they need it, and how they need it, so their class time is both engaging and effective.

Available with this edition, Connect includes multiple-choice questions for each chapter to be used as practice or homework for students. It also includes SmartBook® (described in the next section) as a personal tutor for students, as well as instrucstor resources (including a test bank) and student resources. For access, visit **connect.mheducation.com**. Instructors also can contact their McGraw Hill sales representative.

After describing SmartBook, various details about Connect are presented next and then later as well.

SMARTBOOK®

Proven to help students improve grades and study more efficiently, SmartBook contains the same content within the print book, but actively tailors that content to the needs of the individual. SmartBook's adaptive technology provides precise, personalized instruction on what the student should do next, guiding the student to master and remember key concepts, targeting gaps in knowledge and offering customized feedback, and driving the student toward comprehension and retention of the subject matter. Available on desktops and tablets, SmartBook puts learning at the student's fingertips—anywhere, anytime.

PROCTORIO REMOTE PROCTORING & BROWSER-LOCKING CAPABILITIES

Remote proctoring and browser-locking capabilities, hosted by Proctorio within Connect, provide control of the assessment environment by enabling security options and verifying the identity of the student.

Seamlessly integrated within Connect, these services allow instructors to control students' assessment experience by restricting browser activity, recording students' activity, and verifying students are doing their own work.

Instant and detailed reporting gives instructors an at-a-glance view of potential academic integrity concerns, thereby avoiding personal bias and supporting evidence-based claims.

READANYWHERE

Read or study when it's convenient for you with McGraw Hill's free ReadAnywhere app. Available for iOS or Android smartphones or tablets, ReadAnywhere gives users access to McGraw Hill tools including the eBook and SmartBook 2.0 or Adaptive Learning Assignments in Connect. Take notes, highlight, and complete assignments offline—all of your work will sync when you open the app with WiFi access. Log in with your McGraw Hill Connect username and password to start learning—anytime, anywhere!

OLC-ALIGNED COURSES IMPLEMENTING HIGH-QUALITY ONLINE INSTRUCTION AND ASSESSMENT THROUGH PRECONFIGURED COURSEWARE

In consultation with the Online Learning Consortium (OLC) and our certified Faculty Consultants, McGraw Hill has created pre-configured courseware using OLC's quality scorecard to align with best practices in online course delivery. This turnkey courseware contains a combination of formative assessments, summative assessments, homework, and application activities, and can easily be customized to meet an individual's needs and course outcomes. For more information, visit **https://www.mheducation.com/highered/olc**.

TEGRITY: LECTURES 24/7

Tegrity in Connect is a tool that makes class time available 24/7 by automatically capturing every lecture. With a simple one-click start-and-stop process, you capture all computer screens and corresponding audio in a format that is easy to search, frame by frame. Students can replay any part of any class with easy-to-use, browser-based viewing on a PC, Mac, iPod, or other mobile devices.

Educators know that the more students can see, hear, and experience class resources, the better they learn. In fact, studies prove it. Tegrity's unique search feature helps students efficiently find what they need, when they need it, across an entire semester of class recordings. Help turn your students' study time into learning moments immediately supported by your lecture. With Tegrity, you also increase intent listening and class participation by easing students' concerns about note-taking. Using Tegrity in Connect will make it more likely you will see students' faces, not the tops of their heads.

TEST BUILDER IN CONNECT

Available within Connect, Test Builder is a cloud-based tool that enables instructors to format tests that can be printed, administered within a Learning Management System, or exported as a Word document of the test bank. Test Builder offers a modern, streamlined interface for easy content configuration that matches course needs, without requiring a download.

Test Builder allows you to:

- access all test bank content from a particular title.
- easily pinpoint the most relevant content through robust filtering options.
- manipulate the order of questions or scramble questions and/or answers.
- pin questions to a specific location within a test.
- determine your preferred treatment of algorithmic questions.
- choose the layout and spacing.
- add instructions and configure default settings.

Test Builder provides a secure interface for better protection of content and allows for just-in-time updates to flow directly into assessments.

WRITING ASSIGNMENT

Available within Connect and Connect Master, the Writing Assignment tool delivers a learning experience to help students improve their written communication skills and conceptual understanding. As an instructor you can assign, monitor, grade, and provide feedback on writing more efficiently and effectively.

CREATE YOUR BOOK, YOUR WAY

McGraw Hill's Content Collections Powered by Create® is a self-service website that enables instructors to create custom course materials—print and eBooks—by drawing upon McGraw Hill's comprehensive, cross-disciplinary content. Choose what you want from our high-quality textbooks, articles, and cases. Combine it with your own content quickly and easily, and tap into other rights-secured, third-party content such as readings, cases, and articles. Content can be arranged in a way that makes the most sense for your course and you can include the course name and information as well. Choose the best format for your course: color print, black-and-white print, or eBook. The eBook can be included in your Connect course and is available on the free ReadAnywhere app for smartphone or tablet access as well. When you are finished customizing, you will receive a free digital copy to review in just minutes! Visit McGraw Hill Create®—**www.mcgrawhillcreate.com**—today and begin building!

INSTRUCTOR RESOURCES

The Instructor Resource Library within Connect is password-protected and a convenient place for instructors to access course supplements that include ten supplements to chapters in the print book and 7 supplementary chapters. Resources for instructors include the complete solutions to all problems and cases, PowerPoint slides which include both lecture materials for nearly every chapter and nearly all the figures (including all the

spreadsheets) in the book, and an expanded Test Bank. The test bank contains almost 1,000 multiple-choice and true-false questions, all tagged according to learning objective, topic, level of difficulty, Bloom's taxonomy and AACSB category for filtering and reporting, and in delivered in the following ways:

– As a Connect assignment for online testing and automatic grading; can be used for actual exams or assigned as quizzes or practice;

– In TestGen, a desktop test generator and editing application for instructors to provide printed tests that can incorporate both McGraw Hill's and instructors' questions;

– As Word files, with both question-only and answer files.

STUDENT RESOURCES

As described above, SmartBook provides a powerful tool to students for personalized instruction. For the additional convenience of students, we also are providing the website, **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**, to provide the full range of resources of interest to students. In addition to providing access to supplementary text material (both supplements to book chapters and additional chapters), this website provides solutions to the "solved problems" (additional examples) that are included at the end of each chapter. For each spreadsheet example in the book, a live spreadsheet that shows the formulation and solution for the example also is provided in the website for easy reference and for use as a template. (At the end of each chapter, the page entitled "Learning Aids for This Chapter" lists the Excel files and other resources that are relevant for that chapter.) Information about accessing the book's software is provided. In addition, the website includes a tutorial with sample test questions (different from those in the instructor's test bank) for self-testing quizzes on the various chapters. It also provides access to the INFORMS articles cited in the application vignettes as well as updates about the book, including errata.

AN INVITATION

We invite your comments, suggestions, and errata. You can contact either one of us at the e-mail addresses given below. While giving these addresses, let us also assure instructors that *we will continue our policy of not providing solutions to problems and cases in the book to anyone* (including your students) who contacts us. We hope that you enjoy the book.

Frederick S. Hillier
Stanford University (fhillier@stanford.edu)

Mark S. Hillier
University of Washington (mhillier@uw.edu)

January 2022

Acknowledgments

This new edition has benefited greatly from the sage advice of many individuals. To begin, we would like to express our deep appreciation to the following individuals who provided formal reviews of the sixth edition and some preliminary drafts for the seventh edition.

George Joseph Cooper

Wilmington University

Phillip Fry

Boise State University

Arpita Jadav

Jacksonville University

Dr. Michael A. King

George Mason School of Business

Layek Abdel-Malek
New Jersey Institute of Technology

Jomon A. Paul

KennesawState University

Jim Samuel

University of Charleston

Shane Schartz

Fort Hays State University

Laurent Tchommo

James Madison University

We also are grateful for the valuable input provided by many of our students as well as various other students and instructors who contacted us via e-mail.

In addition, we want to give a special commendation to Professor Vijay Mehrotra, Professor of Business Analytics at the University of San Francisco, and a regular columnist for the *Analytics* magazine. His expert advice was invaluable to us for better understanding the viewpoint and terminology of the business analytics community.

This book has continued to be a team effort involving far more than the two co-authors. As a third co-author for the first edition, the late Gerald J. Lieberman provided important initial impetus for this project. We also are indebted to our case writers, Karl Schmedders and Molly Stephens, for their invaluable contributions. Ann Hillier

(our wife or mother who is a Stanford M.S. graduate in Statistics with a concentration in Operations Research) again devoted numerous hours to proofreading and dealing with computer issues. They all were vital members of the team.

McGraw Hill/Irwin's editorial and production staff provided the other key members of the team, including Eric Weber, Portfolio Manager; Michele Janicek, Product Development Manager, Barbara Hari, Product Developer Harper Christopher, Executive Marketing Manager, Jolynn Kilburg, Program Manager, and Melissa Leick, Senior Core Content Project Manager. This book is a much better product because of their guidance and hard work. It has been a real pleasure working with such a thoroughly professional staff.

Mc Graw Hill connect®

Instructors: Student Success Starts with You Tools to enhance your unique voice

Want to build your own course? No problem. Prefer to use an OLC-aligned, prebuilt course? Easy. Want to make changes throughout the semester? Sure. And you'll save time with Connect's auto-grading too.

65%
Less Time Grading

Study made personal

Incorporate adaptive study resources like SmartBook® 2.0 into your course and help your students be better prepared in less time. Learn more about the powerful personalized learning experience available in SmartBook 2.0 at **www.mheducation.com/highered/connect/smartbook**

Laptop: McGraw Hill; Woman/dog: George Doyle/Getty Images

Affordable solutions, added value

Make technology work for you with LMS integration for single sign-on access, mobile access to the digital textbook, and reports to quickly show you how each of your students is doing. And with our Inclusive Access program you can provide all these tools at a discount to your students. Ask your McGraw Hill representative for more information.

Padlock: Jobalou/Getty Images

Solutions for your challenges

A product isn’t a solution. Real solutions are affordable, reliable, and come with training and ongoing support when you need it and how you want it. Visit **www.supportateverystep.com** for videos and resources both you and your students can use throughout the semester.

Checkmark: Jobalou/Getty Images

Students: Get Learning that Fits You
Effective tools for efficient studying
Connect is designed to help you be more productive with simple, flexible, intuitive tools that maximize your study time and meet your individual learning needs. Get learning that works for you with Connect.

Study anytime, anywhere

Download the free ReadAnywhere app and access your online eBook, SmartBook 2.0, or Adaptive Learning Assignments when it's convenient, even if you're offline. And since the app automatically syncs with your Connect account, all of your work is available every time you open it. Find out more at **www.mheducation.com/readanywhere**

“I really liked this app—it made it easy to study when you don't have your text-book in front of you.”

- Jordan Cunningham, Eastern Washington University

Everything you need in one place

Your Connect course has everything you need—whether reading on your digital eBook or completing assignments for class, Connect makes it easy to get your work done.

Calendar: owattaphotos/Getty Images

Learning for everyone

McGraw Hill works directly with Accessibility Services Departments and faculty to meet the learning needs of all students. Please contact your Accessibility Services Office and ask them to email accessibility@mheducation.com, or visit **www.mheducation.com/about/accessibility** for more information.

Top: Jenner Images/Getty Images, Left: Hero Images/Getty Images, Right: Hero Images/Getty Images

Brief Contents

Part 1 The Essence of Management Science and Business Analytics 1 Introduction 1

2 Overview of the Analysis Process 36

Part 2 Models for Predictive Analytics 3 Classification and Prediction Models for Predictive Analytics 87

4 Predictive Analytics Based on Traditional Forecasting Methods 139

Part 3 Using Linear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics 5 Linear Programming: Basic Concepts 187

6 Linear Programming: Formulation and Applications 230

7 The Art of Modeling with Spreadsheets 289

8 What-If Analysis for Linear Programming 317

9 Network Optimization Problems 369

Part 4 Using Integer or Nonlinear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics 10 Integer Programming 409

11 Nonlinear Programming 447

Part 5 Traditional Uncertainty Models for Performing Predictive or Prescriptive Analytics

12 Decision Analysis 501

13 Queueing Models 564

14 Computer Simulation: Basic Concepts 619

15 Computer Simulation with Analytic Solver 657

APPENDIXES

A Tips for Using Microsoft Excel for Modeling 725

B Partial Answers to Selected Problems 731

INDEX 736

SUPPLEMENTS available on the text website www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e

Supplement to Chapter 1	An Illustration of the Management Science Approach to Break-Even Analysis
Supplement to Chapter 5	More About the Graphical Method for Linear Programming
Supplement to Chapter 8	Reduced Costs
Supplement to Chapter 9	Minimum Spanning-Tree Problems
Supplement 1 to Chapter 10	Advanced Formulation Techniques for Binary Integer Programming
Supplement 2 to Chapter 10	Some Perspectives on Solving Binary Integer Programming Problems

Supplement 1 to Chapter 12	Decision Criteria
Supplement 2 to Chapter 12	Using TreePlan Software for Decision Trees
Supplement to Chapter13	Additional Queueing Models
Supplement to Chapter14	The Inverse Transformation Method for Generating Random Observations
Chapter 16	Solution Concepts for Linear Programming
Chapter 17	Transportation and Assignment Problems
Chapter 18	PERT/CPM Models for Project Management
Chapter 19	Goal Programming
Chapter 20	Inventory Management with Known Demand
Chapter 21	Inventory Management with Uncertain Demand
Chapter 22	Computer Simulation with Crystal Ball

Contents

PART 1 The Essence of Management Science and Business Analytics

Chapter 1

Introduction 1

1.1 The Nature of Management Science 4

1.2 What is Business Analytics? 6

1.3 The Relationship Between Management Science and Business Analytics 10

1.4 A Case Study: The VRX Company Advertising Budget Problem 13

1.5 The Impact of Management Science and Business Analytics 26

1.6 Some Special Features of This Book 29

1.7 Summary 31

Glossary 32

Learning Aids for This Chapter 33

Solved Problem 33

Problems 34

Case 1-1 VRX Revisited: Updating the Model with New Data Over Time 35

Chapter 2

Overview of the Analysis Process 36

2.1 A Case Study: First Bank Evaluates Applications for Unsecured Loans 37

2.2 Define the Problem 37

2.3 Performing Descriptive Analytics 40

2.4 Performing Predictive Analytics 58

2.5 Performing Prescriptive Analytics 71

2.6 Summary 80

Glossary 80

Learning Aids for This Chapter 82

Solved Problems 82

Problems 82

Case 2-1 Vacations at Vegas Villas 85

PART 2 Models for Predictive Analytics

Chapter 3

Classification and Prediction Models for Predictive Analytics 87

3.1 A Case Study: The Evergreen Solar Predictive Analytics Problem 89

3.2 Models Based on The *k*-Nearest-Neighbors (KNN) Algorithm 92

3.3 Models Based on Classification Tree and Regression Tree Algorithms 104

3.4 Other Models Based on Algorithms for Classification and Prediction 117

3.5 Revisiting the Case Study: Refining and Testing the Models 126

3.6 Affinity Analysis and Recommendation Systems 130

3.7 Summary 131

Glossary 132
Learning Aids for This Chapter 133
Solved Problems 133
Problems 134
Case 3-1 Evergreen Solar Decides to Use Naïve Bayes 137
Case 3-2 Revisiting Vacations at Vegas Villas 138

Chapter 4

Predictive Analytics Based on Traditional Forecasting Methods 139

4.1 An Overview of the Techniques of Time Series Forecasting 140
4.2 A Case Study: The Computer Club Warehouse (CCW) Problem 142
4.3 Applying Time Series Forecasting Methods To the Case Study 146
4.4 The Time Series Forecasting Methods In Perspective 165
4.5 Causal Forecasting with Linear Regression 168
4.6 Judgmental Forecasting Methods 173
4.7 Summary 174

Glossary 175
Summary of Key Formulas 176
Learning Aids for This Chapter 176
Solved Problems 176
Problems 176
Case 4-1 Finagling the Forecasts 184

PART 3 Using Linear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics

Chapter 5

Linear Programming: Basic Concepts 187

5.1 A Case Study: The Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem 189

5.2 Formulating the Wyndor Problem on a Spreadsheet 192

5.3 The Mathematical Model in the Spreadsheet 198

5.4 The Graphical Method for Solving Two-Variable Problems 200

5.5 Using Excel's Solver to Solve Linear Programming Problems 205

5.6 Analytic Solver 209

5.7 A Minimization Example—The Profit & Gambit Co. Advertising-Mix Problem 213

5.8 Linear Programming From a Broader Perspective 218

5.9 Summary 219

Glossary 219

Learning Aids for This Chapter 220

Solved Problems 220

Problems 221

Case 5-1 Auto Assembly 226

Case 5-2 Cutting Cafeteria Costs 227

Case 5-3 Staffing a Call Center 228

Chapter 6

Linear Programming: Formulation and Applications 230

6.1 A Case Study: The Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem 231

6.2 Resource-Allocation Problems 237

6.3 Cost–Benefit–Trade-Off Problems 247

6.4 Mixed Problems 253
6.5 Transportation Problems 261
6.6 Assignment Problems 265
6.7 Model Formulation From a Broader Perspective 268
6.8 Summary 270

Glossary 270
Learning Aids for This Chapter 271
Solved Problems 271
Problems 272
Case 6-1 Shipping Wood to Market 280
Case 6-2 Capacity Concerns 281
Case 6-3 Fabrics and Fall Fashions 282
Case 6-4 New Frontiers 284
Case 6-5 Assigning Students to Schools 285
Case 6-6 Reclaiming Solid Wastes 286
Case 6-7 Project Pickings 287

Chapter 7

The Art of Modeling with Spreadsheets 289

7.1 A Case Study: The Everglade Golden Years Company Cash Flow Problem 290
7.2 Overview of the Process of Modeling with Spreadsheets 291
7.3 Some Guidelines for Building “Good” Spreadsheet Models 302
7.4 Debugging a Spreadsheet Model 308
7.5 Summary 311

Glossary 312
Learning Aids for This Chapter 312
Solved Problem 312
Problems 313

Case 7-1 Prudent Provisions for Pensions 316

Chapter 8

What-If Analysis for Linear Programming 317

8.1 The Importance of What-if Analysis to Managers 318
8.2 Continuing the Wyndor Case Study 320
8.3 The Effect of Changes in One Objective Function Coefficient 322
8.4 The Effect of Simultaneous Changes in Objective Function Coefficients 328
8.5 The Effect of Single Changes In a Constraint 335
8.6 The Effect of Simultaneous Changes in the Constraints 341
8.7 Robust Optimization 345
8.8 Chance Constraints with Analytic Solver 348
8.9 Summary 352

Glossary 352
Learning Aids for This Chapter 353
Solved Problem 353
Problems 354
Case 8-1 Selling Soap 363
Case 8-2 Controlling Air Pollution 364
Case 8-3 Farm Management 366
Case 8-4 Assigning Students to Schools (Revisited) 368

Chapter 9

Network Optimization Problems 369

9.1 Minimum-Cost Flow Problems 370
9.2 A Case Study: The BMZ Co. Maximum Flow Problem 379
9.3 Maximum Flow Problems 382
9.4 Shortest Path Problems 386

9.5 Summary 395

Glossary 396
Learning Aids for This Chapter 396
Solved Problems 397
Problems 397
Case 9-1 Aiding Allies 402
Case 9-2 Money in Motion 405
Case 9-3 Airline Scheduling 406
Case 9-4 Broadcasting the Olympic Games 407

PART 4 Using Integer or Nonlinear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics

Chapter 10

Integer Programming 409

10.1 The Nature of Integer Programming 410
10.2 A Case Study: The California Manufacturing Co. Problem 412
10.3 Using BIP for Project Selection: The Tazer Corp. Problem 419
10.4 Using BIP for the Selection of Sites for Emergency Services Facilities: The Caliente City Problem 421
10.5 Using BIP for Crew Scheduling: The Southwestern Airways Problem 425
10.6 Using Mixed BIP to Deal with Setup Costs for Initiating Production: The Revised Wyndor Problem 429
10.7 Summary 434

Glossary 434
Learning Aids for This Chapter 435
Solved Problems 435

Problems 436

Case 10-1 Assigning Art 441

Case 10-2 Stocking Sets 442

Case 10-3 Assigning Students to Schools (Revisited) 446

Case 10-4 Broadcasting the Olympic Games (Revisited) 446

Chapter 11

Nonlinear Programming 447

11.1 The Challenges of Nonlinear Programming 449

11.2 Continuing the Wyndor Case Study to Deal with Decreasing Marginal Returns 457

11.3 Applying Nonlinear Programming to Portfolio Selection 463

11.4 Separable Programming 467

11.5 Difficult Nonlinear Programming Problems 477

11.6 Evolutionary Solver and Genetic Algorithms 478

11.7 Using Analytic Solver to Analyze a Model and Choose a Solving Method 486

11.8 Summary 490

Glossary 491

Learning Aids for This Chapter 491

Solved Problem 492

Problems 492

Case 11-1 Continuation of the Super Grain Case Study 497

Case 11-2 Savvy Stock Selection 498

Case 11-3 International Investments 499

PART 5 Traditional Uncertainty Models for Performing Predictive or Prescriptive Analytics

Chapter 12

Decision Analysis 501

12.1 A Case Study: The Goferbroke Company Problem 503
12.2 Decision Criteria 506
12.3 Decision Trees 511
12.4 Sensitivity Analysis with Decision Trees 514
12.5 Checking Whether to Obtain More Information 519
12.6 Using New Information to Update the Probabilities 521
12.7 Using a Decision Tree to Analyze the Problem with a Sequence of Decisions 525
12.8 Performing Sensitivity Analysis on the Problem with a Sequence of Decisions 532
12.9 Using Utilities to Better Reflect the Values of Payoffs 535
12.10 The Practical Application of Decision Analysis 546
12.11 Summary 547

Glossary 548
Learning Aids for This Chapter 549
Solved Problems 549
Problems 550
Case 12-1 Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? 559
Case 12-2 University Toys and the Business Professor Action Figures 560
Case 12-3 Brainy Business 560
Case 12-4 Smart Steering Support 562

Chapter 13

Queueing Models 564

13.1 Elements of a Queueing Model 565
13.2 Some Examples of Queueing Systems 571
13.3 Measures of Performance for Queueing Systems 573

13.4 A Case Study: the Dupit Corp. Problem 576
13.5 Some Single-Server Queueing Models 579
13.6 Some Multiple-Server Queueing Models 587
13.7 Priority Queueing Models 592
13.8 Some Insights About Designing Queueing Systems 597
13.9 Economic Analysis of the Number of Servers to Provide 603
13.10 Behavioral Queueing Theory 606
13.11 Summary 608

Glossary 608
Key Symbols 609
Learning Aids for This Chapter 609
Solved Problem 610
Problems 610

Case 13-1 Queueing Quandary 616

Case 13-2 Reducing In-Process Inventory 617

Chapter 14

Computer Simulation: Basic Concepts 619

14.1 The Essence of Computer Simulation 620
14.2 A Case Study: Herr Cutter's Barber Shop (Revisited) 633
14.3 Analysis of the Case Study 640
14.4 Outline of a Major Computer Simulation Study 647
14.5 Summary 650

Glossary 650
Learning Aids for This Chapter 651
Solved Problem 651
Problems 651

Case 14-1 Planning Planers 655

Case 14-2 Reducing In-Process Inventory (Revisited) 656

Chapter 15

Computer Simulation with Analytic Solver 657

15.1 A Case Study: Freddie the Newsboy's Problem 658

15.2 Bidding for a Construction Project: A Prelude to the Reliable Construction Co. Case Study 668

15.3 Project Management: Revisiting the Reliable Construction Co. Case Study 672

15.4 Financial Risk Analysis: Revisiting the Think-Big Development Co. Problem 678

15.5 Revenue Management In the Travel Industry 683

15.6 Choosing the Right Distribution 688

15.7 Decision Making with Parameter Analysis Reports and Trend Charts 699

15.8 Optimizing with Computer Simulation Using the Solver in Analytic Solver 707

15.9 Summary 715

Glossary 716

Learning Aids for This Chapter 716

Solved Problem 716

Problems 717

Case 15-1 Action Adventures 721

Case 15-2 Pricing under Pressure 722

Case 15-3 Financial Planning for Retirement 724

Appendix A: Tips for Using Microsoft Excel for Modeling 725

Appendix B: Partial Answers to Selected Problems 731

Index 736

SUPPLEMENTS available on the text website www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e

Supplement to Chapter 1 **An Illustration of the Management Science Approach to Break-Even Analysis**

Supplement to Chapter 5 **More About the Graphical Method for Linear Programming**

Supplement to Chapter 8 **Reduced Costs**

Supplement to Chapter 9 **Minimum Spanning-Tree Problems**

Supplement 1 to Chapter 10 **Advanced Formulation Techniques for Binary Integer Programming**

Supplement 2 to Chapter 10 **Some Perspectives on Solving Binary Integer Programming Problems**

Supplement 1 to Chapter 12 **Decision Criteria**

Supplement 2 to Chapter 12 **Using TreePlan Software for Decision Trees**

Supplement to Chapter 13 **Additional Queueing Models**

Supplement to Chapter 14 **The Inverse Transformation Method for Generating Random Observations**

CHAPTERS available at www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e

Chapter Sixteen

Solution Concepts for Linear Programming

16.1 Some Key Facts about Optimal Solutions

16.2 The Role of Corner Points in Searching for an Optimal Solution

16.3 Solution Concepts for the Simplex Method

16.4 The Simplex Method with Two Decision Variables

16.5 The Simplex Method with Three Decision Variables

16.6 The Role of Supplementary Variables
16.7 Some Algebraic Details for the Simplex Method
16.8 Computer Implementation of the Simplex Method
16.9 The Interior-Point Approach to Solving Linear Programming Problems
16.10 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems

Chapter Seventeen

Transportation and Assignment Problems

17.1 A Case Study: The P & T Company Distribution Problem
17.2 Characteristics of Transportation Problems
17.3 Modeling Variants of Transportation Problems
17.4 Some Other Applications of Variants of Transportation Problems
17.5 A Case Study: The Texago Corp. Site Selection
17.6 Characteristics of Assignment Problems
17.7 Modeling Variants of Assignment Problems
17.8 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 17-1 Continuation of the Texago Case Study

Chapter Eighteen

PERT/CPM Models for Project Management

18.1 A Case Study: The Reliable Construction Co. Project
18.2 Using a Network to Visually Display a Project

18.3 Scheduling a Project with PERT/CPM
18.4 Dealing with Uncertain Activity Durations
18.5 Considering Time–Cost Trade-Offs
18.6 Scheduling and Controlling Project Costs
18.7 An Evaluation of PERT/CPM from a Managerial Perspective
18.8 Summary

Appendix 18.1: Table for the Normal Distribution
Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 18-1 Steps to Success
Case 18-2 "School's Out Forever . . ."

Chapter Nineteen

page xxv

Goal Programming

19.1 A Case Study: The Dewright Co. Goal-Programming Problem
19.2 Weighted Goal Programming
19.3 Preemptive Goal Programming
19.4 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 19-1 A Cure for Cuba
Case 19-2 Remembering September 11

Chapter Twenty

Inventory Management with Known Demand

20.1 A Case Study: The Atlantic Coast Tire Corp. (ACT) Problem
20.2 Cost Components of Inventory Models
20.3 The Basic Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) Model

20.4 The Optimal Inventory Policy for the Basic EOQ Model
20.5 The EOQ Model with Planned Shortages
20.6 The EOQ Model with Quantity Discounts
20.7 The EOQ Model with Gradual Replenishment
20.8 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 20-1 Brushing Up on Inventory Control

Chapter Twenty One

Inventory Management with Uncertain Demand

21.1 A Case Study for Perishable Products: Freddie the Newsboy's Problem
21.2 An Inventory Model for Perishable Products
21.3 A Case Study for Stable Products: The Niko Camera Corp. Problem
21.4 The Management Science Team's Analysis of the Case Study
21.5 A Continuous-Review Inventory Model for Stable Products
21.6 Larger Inventory Systems in Practice
21.7 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 21-1 TNT: Tackling Newsboy's Teachings
Case 21-2 Jettisoning Surplus Stock

Chapter Twenty Two

Computer Simulation with Crystal Ball

22.1 A Case Study: Freddie the Newsboy's Problem
22.2 Bidding for a Construction Project: A Prelude to the Reliable Construction Co. Case Study
22.3 Project Management: Revisiting the Reliable Construction Co. Case Study
22.4 Financial Risk Analysis: Revisiting the Think-Big Development Co. Problem
22.5 Revenue Management in the Travel Industry
22.6 Choosing the Right Distribution
22.7 Decision Making with Decision Tables
22.8 Optimizing with OptQuest
22.9 Summary

Glossary
Learning Aids for This Chapter
Solved Problem
Problems Partial Answers to Selected Problems
Case 22-1 Action Adventures
Case 22-2 Pricing under Pressures

PART 1 (Chapters 1–2

Science and Business Analytics

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

This book has five parts. Chapters 1 and 2 comprise Part 1, which has the theme of presenting the essence of management science and business analytics. To clarify the role of Chapter 1 in this endeavor, we begin by providing an introduction to Part 1, after which we will focus on presenting Chapter 1.

Introduction to Part 1 (Chapters 1 and 2) | The Essence of Management Science and Business Analytics

This book provides an introduction to two closely related disciplines —management science and business analytics—that provide a scientific approach to improving the management of business firms around the world. The greater emphasis will be on management science, and indeed, the final 11 chapters (Chapters 5–15) will present its major techniques. However, before focusing on management science, the first four chapters will include significant

coverage of the complementary roles of management science and business analytics, followed by presenting some key techniques of business analytics (including those that are sometimes given different names such as data science, data mining, machine learning, and so forth).

Because of the dual coverage of management science and business analytics, we have divided the book into five parts to clarify the focus within each part and to provide perspective about how this focus relates to the rest of the book. Thus, Parts 3, 4, and 5 will focus on three different categories of the techniques of management science. Part 2 (Chapters 3 and 4) will be devoted to presenting the techniques of business analytics for performing predictive analytics. To lay the groundwork for all of this, Part 1 (Chapters 1 and 2) will focus on describing the essence of management science and business analytics, as discussed below.

Management science (often called **operations research** outside of business schools) was first developed in the middle of the 20th century and has had a major impact ever since. **Business analytics** is much younger, dating back to near the turn of the century, but now is riding high as a prominent part of the **analytics revolution.** Both disciplines have their own unique strengths but also share some major strengths as well. They complement each other extremely well. When a major study is needed to aid managerial decision making, the combination of the two disciplines provides real strength at every stage of the study.

business analytics

The art and the science of transforming data into insights for making better business decisions. (Section 1.2)

Chapter 1 describes the special features of management science and business analytics separately and then emphasizes the close relationship between these two disciplines. The chapter includes a description of the three stages of analytics: (1) **descriptive analytics** (analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what

has happened so far), (2) **predictive analytics** (using models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future), and (3) **prescriptive analytics** (using decision models, including the optimization models of management science, to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making). The business analytics discipline has special strength for the first two stages. The management science discipline also has considerable strength for performing predictive analytics, but its special strength is for performing prescriptive analytics. Since teams of business analysts performing a major study for management frequently need to include all three stages of analytics, such teams often make heavy use of the techniques of both business analytics and management science. Chapter 1 also describes how this kind of approach has had an impressive impact on improving the efficiency and profitability of numerous businesses around the world.

descriptive analytics

Analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what has happened so far. (Section 1.2)

predictive analytics

Using models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future. (Section 1.2)

Chapter 2 further emphasizes this close relationship between business analytics and management science. The chapter provides a thorough overview of the analysis process for conducting major projects to study complex business problems by using both disciplines. Section 2.3 is of special interest because it is the one place in the book that provides a detailed step-by-step description and illustration of how descriptive analytics is performed. Some tools are illustrated for reframing raw data to enable clearly visualizing the message being conveyed by the data. Sections 2.4 and 2.5 also provide detailed step-by-step descriptions and illustrations of what is needed to be ready to perform predictive analytics and prescriptive analytics, respectively.

What this overview of the analysis process does not do is provide much detail about the specific techniques that then are needed to actually perform predictive analytics and prescriptive analytics. In particular, it is necessary to develop a **model** that fully defines the problem and provides an **algorithm** (a systematic solution procedure) for applying the model. Part 2 will focus on some popular models for performing *predictive* analytics. Parts 3 and 4 then will focus on some models needed for performing *prescriptive* analytics. Part 5 will present some traditional *uncertainty models* for performing predictive analytics or prescriptive analytics when future events are particularly uncertain.

model

An approximate representation of something. (Section 1.1)

Before focusing on these models, one goal of Part 1 is to provide the broader context of the work that needs to be done first to prepare for applying these models. Another goal is to provide future managers and future business analysts with a good understanding of the great impact that management science and business analytics together can have.

The book's website also includes additional information about Part 1. In particular, Chapter 1 has a supplement there entitled "An Illustration of the Management Science Approach: Break-Even Analysis."

Resumption of Chapter One

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Define the term *management science*.
2. Describe the nature of management science.
3. Describe mathematical models and spreadsheet models.
4. Define the term *business analytics.*

5. Describe the nature of business analytics.
6. Describe the three categories of business analytics.
7. Describe the relationship between management science and business analytics.
8. Identify the levels of annual savings that management science sometimes can provide to organizations.
9. Identify some special features of this book.

The introduction to Part 1 points out that the focus of this book is on providing a thorough introduction to management science while also introducing the basic concepts of business analytics that play a complementary role. This chapter begins this process by describing the general nature of these closely related disciplines.

The reason for introducing these two disciplines together is that they complement each other very well. They both use a scientific approach to improving the management of business firms. They both use basic tools from such fields as mathematics, statistics, computer science, and information technology. They both are dedicated to aiding managerial decision making. Indeed, any major study being conducted to aid managerial decision making commonly draws from the special techniques of both disciplines. As the toolkits of the two disciplines continue to merge, the distinction between these disciplines continues to diminish. Therefore, it now makes sense to provide an introduction to these complementary disciplines together.

A specialist in either or both of these disciplines requires having a good background in mathematics and related fields. This can cause anxiety to some students who fear that they may not have an adequate mathematical background for this kind of course. However, rest easy. We realize that most readers of this book are aspiring to become managers, not mathematicians. Therefore, the emphasis throughout is on conveying what a future manager needs to know about management science and business analytics. Yes, this means including a little mathematics here and there, because it is a major language of the field. The mathematics you do see will be at the level of high school algebra plus (in the later

chapters) basic concepts of elementary probability theory. We think you will be pleasantly surprised by the new appreciation you gain for how useful and intuitive mathematics at this level can be. However, managers do not need to know any of the heavy mathematical theory that underlies the various techniques of management science and business analytics. Therefore, the use of mathematics plays only a strictly secondary role in the book.

One reason we can deemphasize mathematics is that powerful *spreadsheet software* is available for applying management science and business analytics. Spreadsheets provide a comfortable and familiar environment for formulating and analyzing managerial problems. The spreadsheet takes care of applying the necessary mathematics automatically in the background with only a minimum of guidance by the user. This has revolutionized the use of management science and business analytics. In the past, business analysts with substantial training in management science and/or business analytics were needed to carry out significant studies for management. Now spreadsheets are bringing many of the tools and concepts of these disciplines within the reach of managers for conducting their own analyses. Although busy managers will continue to call upon business analysts with extensive training in management science and/or business analytics to conduct major studies for them, they are increasingly becoming direct users themselves through the medium of spreadsheet software. Therefore, since this book is largely aimed at future managers and business analysts, we will emphasize the use of spreadsheets for applying management science and business analytics.

This book maintains a primary focus on management science, while also introducing the complementary role of business analytics. What does an enlightened future manager need to learn about these topics?

1. Gain an appreciation for the relevance and power of management science and business analytics. (Therefore, we include many *application vignettes* throughout the book that give examples of

actual applications of these disciplines and the *impact* they had on the organizations involved.)

2. Learn to recognize when these disciplines can (and cannot) be fruitfully applied. (Therefore, we will emphasize the *kinds of problems* to which the various techniques can be applied.)
3. Learn how to apply the major techniques of management science and business analytics to analyze a variety of managerial problems. (Therefore, we will focus largely on how spreadsheets enable many such applications with no more background in these disciplines than provided by this book.)
4. Develop an understanding of how to interpret the results of a management science and business analytics study. (Therefore, we will present many *case studies* that illustrate such studies and how their results depend on the assumptions and data that were used.)
5. Obtain a thorough introduction to the major techniques of management science while also introducing a few key techniques of business analytics that illustrate how this discipline complements management science.

The objectives just described are the key teaching goals of this book.

We begin this process in the next five sections by introducing the nature of management science and business analytics, as well as the impact that these disciplines are having on many organizations. (This process will continue throughout the remaining chapters as well.) In particular, Section 1.1 describes the nature of management science and Section 1.2 does the same for business analytics. Section 1.3 then discusses the relationship between management science and business analytics. Section 1.4 provides an illustration of a typical application of business analytics and management science (choosing an advertising budget). Section 1.5 focuses on the impact of management science and business analytics. Section 1.6 then points out some of the special features of this book that you can look forward to seeing in the subsequent chapters.

1.1 THE NATURE OF MANAGEMENT SCIENCE

What is the name *management science* (sometimes abbreviated MS) supposed to convey? It does involve *management* and *science* or, more precisely, *the science of management,* but this still is too vague. Here is a more suggestive definition.

Management science is a *discipline* that attempts to *aid managerial decision making* by applying a *scientific approach* to managerial problems that involve *quantitative factors.*

management science

A discipline that attempts to aid managerial decision making by applying a scientific approach to managerial problems that involve quantitative factors.

Now let us see how elaborating upon each of the italicized terms in this definition conveys much more about the nature of management science.

Management Science Is a Discipline

As a discipline, management science is a whole body of knowledge and techniques that are based on a scientific foundation. For example, it is analogous in some ways to the medical field. A *medical doctor* has been trained in a whole body of knowledge and techniques that are based on the scientific foundations of the medical field. After receiving this training and entering practice, the doctor must diagnose a patient's illness and then choose the appropriate medical procedures to apply to the illness. The patient then makes the final decision on which medical procedures to accept. For less serious cases, the patient may choose not to consult a doctor and instead use his own basic knowledge of

medical principles to treat himself. Similarly, a *management scientist* must receive substantial training (albeit considerably less than for a medical doctor). This training also is in a whole body of knowledge and techniques that are based on the scientific foundations of the discipline. After entering practice, the management scientist must diagnose a managerial problem and then choose the appropriate management science techniques to apply in analyzing the problem. The cognizant manager then makes the final decision as to which conclusions from this analysis to accept. For less extensive managerial problems where management science can be helpful, the manager may choose not to consult a management scientist and instead use his or her own basic knowledge of management science principles to analyze the problem.

Although it has considerably longer roots, the rapid development of the discipline began in the 1940s and 1950s. The initial impetus came early in World War II, when large numbers of scientists were called upon to apply a scientific approach to the management of the war effort for the allies. When the war ended, the success of this approach in the war effort spurred interest in applying it outside the military as well. By the early 1950s, substantial applications of management science were being seen in a variety of organizations in business, industry, and government. Courses presenting the techniques of management science also began to be introduced in some colleges and universities.

Another landmark event in the history of management science was the discovery by George Dantzig in 1947 of the *simplex method* for solving linear programming problems. (Linear programming is the subject of several chapters.) Considerable progress in developing the other techniques of management science also occurred throughout the middle of the 20th century. However, the very limited computational power available at that time (whether when doing the computations by hand or with the relatively primitive electronic computers of the day) prevented applying these techniques except to small problems. Fortunately, another factor that gave great impetus to the growth of the discipline ever since that time was the

onslaught of the computer revolution. Even massive problems usually can be solved now with today's powerful computers.

The traditional name given to the discipline (and the one that still is widely used today outside of business schools) is **operations research.** This name was applied because the teams of scientists in World War II were doing *research* on how to manage military *operations.* The abbreviation OR also is widely used. This abbreviation often is combined with the one for management science (MS), thereby referring to the discipline as OR/MS. According to estimates from the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics in 2021, there were approximately 105,000 individuals at that time working as operations research analysts in the United States (some with just a B.S. degree) with a median annual salary of about $85,000. The Bureau also forecasted that this number of individuals working as operations research analysts would grow by 25 percent over the subsequent decade.

operations research

The traditional name for management science that still is widely used outside of business schools.

As discussed in the next two sections, another discipline that is closely related to management science is **business analytics**. Like management science, business analytics attempts to aid managerial decision making but with particular emphasis on three types of analysis: (1) *descriptive analytics*—the use of data (sometimes massive amounts of data) to analyze trends to date (perhaps using some of the techniques described in Section 2.3), (2) *predictive analytics*—the use of data to predict what will happen in the future (perhaps by using the forecasting techniques described in Chapters 3 and 4), and (3) *prescriptive analytics*—the use of data to prescribe the best course of action (frequently by using the optimization techniques described in many chapters of this book). Broadly speaking, the techniques of the management science discipline provide the firepower for prescriptive analytics and, to a

lesser extent, for predictive analytics, but not so much for descriptive analytics. (Section 1.3 will further describe the relationship between management science and business analytics.) One major international professional society for the management science discipline (as well as for business analytics) is the *Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences* (INFORMS). Headquartered in the United States, with well over 12,000 members, this societyholds major conferences in the United States each year (including a Business Analytics Conference and the annual INFORMS Meeting) plus occasional conferences elsewhere. It also publishes several prominent journals, including *Management-Science, Operations Research, Analytics,* and *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* (formerly entitled *Interfaces* before 2019). (Articles describing actual applications of management science are featured in this last journal, so you will see many references and links to this journal throughout the book.) In addition, a few dozen countries around the world have their own national operations research societies.

Thus, operations research/management science (OR/MS) is a truly international discipline. (We hereafter will normally just use the name *management science.*)

Management Science Aids Managerial Decision Making

The key word here is that management science *aids* managerial decision making. Business analysts employing management science don't make managerial decisions. Managers do. A management science study only provides an analysis and recommendations, based on the quantitative factors involved in the problem, as input to the cognizant managers. Managers must also take into account various intangible considerations that are outside the realm of management science and then use their best judgment to make the decision. Sometimes managers find that qualitative factors are as important as quantitative factors in making a decision.

When business analysts employ management science and other techniques to make recommendations to management, it is managers (not the business analysts) who make the decisions.

A small informal management science study (or management science and business analytics study) might be conducted by just a single individual, who may be the cognizant manager. However, management science *teams* normally are used for larger studies. (We often will use the term *team* to cover both cases throughout the book.) Such a team often includes some members who are not management scientists but who provide other types of expertise (such as specialists in business analytics) needed for the study. Although a management science team often is entirely *in-house* (employees of the company), part or all of the team may instead be *consultants* who have been hired for just the one study. Consulting firms that partially or entirely specialize in management science and related techniques (such as business analytics) currently are a growing industry.

Although we use the word *study* throughout the book to describe the work being done by teams of business analysts who are applying management science and other techniques, these teams often are engaged in full-fledged *projects* being guided by management. Rather than simply presenting a report or presentation to a manager, the team often works closely with management and the managerial staff to gather the needed data and define management's objectives for the project. Once management has used the team's input to guide its decisions about a new system, the team may then be heavily involved with making sure that management's desires are being implemented properly.

Management Science Uses a Scientific Approach

Management science is based strongly on some scientific fields, including mathematics, statistics, and computer science. It also draws on the social sciences, especially economics. Since the field

is concerned with the practical management of organizations, a management scientist should have solid training in business administration, including its various functional areas, as well.

To a considerable extent, a management science team will attempt to use the *scientific method* in conducting its study. This means that the team will emphasize conducting a *systematic investigation* that includes careful data gathering, developing and testing hypotheses about the problem (typically in the form of a mathematical model), and then applying sound logic in the subsequent analysis.

When conducting this systematic investigation, the management science team typically would follow several (overlapping) steps that include defining the problem, gathering relevant data, formulating a mathematical model, determining how to solve the model, testing and refining the model, applying the model to develop recommendations for management, and then helping to implement the recommendations adopted by management. Chapter 2 is devoted to fully describing each of the steps for conducting a complete study, including performing descriptive analytics, predictive analytics, and prescriptive analytics (the latter is where management science plays a particularly key role).

Management Science Considers Quantitative Factors

Many managerial problems revolve around such quantitative factors as production quantities, revenues, costs, the amounts available of needed resources, and so on. By incorporating these quantitative factors into a **mathematical model** and then applying mathematical procedures to solve the model, management science provides a uniquely powerful way of analyzing such managerial problems. Although management science is concerned with the practical management of organizations, including taking into account relevant

qualitative factors, its special contribution lies in this unique ability to deal with the quantitative factors.

mathematical model

An approximate representation of, for example, a business problem that is expressed in terms of mathematical symbols and expressions.

The supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** provides a case study that illustrates the management science approach to considering quantitative factors. The specific problem being addressed involves *break-even analysis,* which leads to determining the **break-even point** of a new product, defined as the minimum sales level required before the product becomes profitable. Both a spreadsheet model and a mathematical model are formulated to conduct the analysis. Several problems and a case requiring break-even analysis also are included.

Review *Questions*

1. When did the rapid development of the management science discipline begin?
2. What is the traditional name given to this discipline outside of business schools?
3. What does a management science study provide to managers to aid their decision making?
4. Upon which scientific fields and social sciences is management science especially based?
5. What are some quantitative factors around which many managerial problems revolve?

1.2 WHAT IS BUSINESS ANALYTICS?

There has been great buzz throughout the business world over the last couple decades about *business analytics* and the importance of

incorporating it into managerial decision making. The primary impetus for this buzz was a series of articles and books by Thomas H. Davenport, a renowned thought-leader who has helped hundreds of companies worldwide to revitalize their business practices. He initially introduced the concept of analytics in the January 2006 issue of the *Harvard Business Review* with an article, "Competing on Analytics," that now has been named as one of the 10 must-read articles in that magazine's 90-year history. Thomas Davenport soon followed up this article with two best-selling books entitled *Competing on Analytics: The New Science of Winning* (published in 2007 with a new edition published in 2017) and *Analytics at Work: Smarter Decisions, Better Results* (published in 2011). (Jeanne Harris also was a co-author of both books and Robert Morison was an additional co-author of the second book.) So, what is business analytics? Here is a succinct definition.

> By using a variety of innovative techniques to analyze the available data, **business analytics** can be defined as the art and the science of transforming data into insight for making better business decisions.

While developing a considerable number of its own innovative techniques in its relatively short history, business analytics also has drawn on various other *quantitative decision sciences,* including management science, mathematics, statistics, computer science, information technology, industrial engineering, etc. For example, it draws heavily on statistics and computer science when the focus is on making sense of vast amounts of data while also exploiting an explosion in computational capability needed to do this.

Business analytics draws on management science and various other quantitative decision sciences.

Thus, any application of business analytics draws on any of the quantitative decision sciences that can be helpful in analyzing a

given problem. Therefore, a company's business analytics group might include members who collectively have considerable training in all of the quantitative decision sciences listed above, as well as the solid background in business administration needed by any business analyst.

Business analytics has grown in prominence over the past couple decades largely because we have entered into the era of **big data** where massive amounts of data (accompanied by massive amounts of computational power) are now commonly available to many businesses to help guide managerial decision making. The current data surge is coming from sophisticated computer tracking of shipments, sales, suppliers, and customers, as well as e-mail, web-traffic, social networks, images, and video. A primary focus of business analytics is on how to make the most effective use of all these data.

big data

Refers to the era of big data we have entered in recent decades where enormous and increasing amounts of transactional data commonly are available for analysis.

The era of *big data* has created new challenges that require the use of business analytics.

The Three Categories of Business Analytics

The application of business analytics can be divided into three overlapping categories. Each of these categories will be discussed in depth in subsequent chapters. Meanwhile, here are the traditional names and brief descriptions of these categories: Category 1: **Descriptive analytics** (analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what has happened so far)

Category 2: **Predictive analytics** (using models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future)

Category 3: **Prescriptive analytics** (using decision models, including the optimization models of management science, to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making)

prescriptive analytics

Using decision models to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making.

The first of these categories, *descriptive analytics,* requires dealing with perhaps massive amounts of data. Information technology is used to store and access the data on what has happened in the past, as well as to record what is happening now. Descriptive analytics then uses innovative techniques (including algorithms) to explore the data, locate and extract the data that are relevant, and then identify the interesting patterns and summary data. Innovative *performance metrics* also may be calculated to more vividly describe performance to date. A key tool of descriptive analytics is **data visualization.** After exploring the data to identify the insights, the goal of data visualization is then to *communicate* those insights clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics. (Section 2.3 will focus on descriptive analytics.)

data visualization

After exploring the data to identify the insights, the goal of data visualization is then to communicate these insights clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics. (also see Section 1.4)

An important goal of business analytics, including especially descriptive analytics, is to track down and connect the relevant parts of all the available data with the business problems and issues of current interest. This provides guidance into what kinds of data summaries and visualizations (as well as the specific types of predictive and prescriptive models) should be constructed in order to be most valuable for the business.

For all parts of business analytics, but especially for descriptive and predictive models (which typically produce vital inputs for prescriptive models), considerable resources and effort go into data preparation. This is a significant part of every data scientist’s job as well.

Predictive analytics often involves applying statistical models to predict future events or trends. For example, Chapter 4 (Predictive Analytics Based on Time-Series Forecasting) is devoted to developing various **forecasting models** for predicting a future quantity of some type based on the historical pattern of that quantity. (Management scientists have used these models from the field of Statistics for many decades and now they also are key tools in the business analytics toolkit.) Chapters 14 and 15 will describe how **computer simulation** (using a computer to simulate the operation of a system) also can be very useful for demonstrating future events that can occur. (Computer simulation is another traditional management science technique.) These powerful management science techniques (with roots in statistics and computer science) have been incorporated into a much larger business analytics toolkit for performing predictive analytics.

forecasting models

Models for predicting a future quantity of some type based on the historical pattern of that quantity, as described in Chapter 4.

computer simulation

Using a computer to simulate the operation of an entire process or system, as described in Chapters 14 and 15.

An Application Vignette

IBM (International Business Machines) is an American international technology company with operations in over 170 countries. It is one of the world's largest employers with (as of 2020) over 345,000 employees. It produces and sells computer hardware, middleware, and software, while also providing hosting and consulting services for numerous clients. It also is one of the world's leading research organizations and is a leader in implementing innovative business practices.

IBM Global Technology Services (GTS) operates and manages some of the world's largest data centers for its clients. Because of the high cost and disruption caused by incurring server downtime due to needing maintenance or replacement, special attention needs to be given to reducing server downtime. A traditional approach for attempting to do this is to automatically replace a server when it reaches a certain age, say, five years. IBM has developed a much better approach by using the innovative techniques of **predictive analytics** to better predict when a server should be upgraded.

IBM's methodology for doing this is called *Predictive Analytics for Server Incident Reduction (PASIR).* PASIR uses a sophisticated version of a popular technique of predictive analytics called *machine learning* (a form of artificial intelligence) to collect, classify, and analyze vast amounts of information (including over 6 million reports of undesirable incidents with some server) about the historical record of the various specific types of servers. High-impact problems involving server outages are correlated with problematic server configurations. This enables developing the best available predictions of future problems and the recommendations of the most appropriate modernization strategy for each server.

Since 2013, IBM has applied PASIR to more than 840,000 client servers in more than 360 client environments, resulting in much more precise upgrade spending, as well as environmental benefits. It is conservatively estimated that this application of predictive analytics is providing IBM's clients with average savings of **$1 billion per year.**

This dramatic application of predictive analytics resulted in IBM winning the prestigious honor of being one of the five worldwide finalists for the 2020 Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: J. Bogojeska, I. Giurgiu, G. Stark, and D. Wiesmann, "IBM Predictive Analytics Reduces Server Downtime," *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* 51, no. 1 (January–

February 2021): 63–75. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

In addition, the emergence of the analytics revolution soon after the turn of the century has led the business analytics community to achieve dramatic advances in further developing and refining techniques for performing predictive analytics. Sometimes, rather than predicting the future *quantity* of some type based on the historical pattern of that quantity (such as when using forecasting models), the goal may be to predict a *yes-or-no* outcome (or perhaps one of a small set of possible outcomes). For example, a business often is interested in predicting the behavior of a prospective customer. Will that customer go ahead and purchase a product that is being offered? How should this kind of question be addressed?

The business analytics community has made great advances in developing powerful techniques for performing predictive analytics after the turn of the century.

When trying to predict a yes-or-no outcome like this, rather than a numeric outcome, it is commonly referred to as **classification** rather than prediction. A basic approach for addressing this kind of classification question is to collect data involving the characteristics and behavior of previous customers. Then, determine a subset of the previous customers whose characteristics are most similar to the prospective customer. Then classify the prospective customer as likely to purchase (or not) the product being offered based on the past behavior of this subset of previous customers.

classification

Using models to predict a *yes-or-no* outcome (or perhaps one of a small set of possible outcomes).

Although this example of how to classify the likely behavior of a prospective customer may seem quite intuitive, we have not spelled out a number of detailed procedures that are needed to implement this methodology as effectively and efficiently as possible. Much of Chapter 3 revolves around applying or modifying this methodology to

fit a variety of situations. Because these and some other methods of predictive analytics are quite sophisticated, this category of analytics tends to be more advanced than the first one (descriptive analytics).

Prescriptive analytics uses powerful techniques drawn mainly from management science to prescribe what should be done in the future.

Prescriptive analytics is the final (and most advanced) category of analytics. It involves applying decision models to the data to prescribe what should be done in the future. The powerful techniques of *management science* described in many of the chapters of this book (including a wide variety of decision models for finding optimal solutions) commonly are used here. The purpose is to guide managerial decision making, so the name *decision analytics* also could be used to describe this category.

Having introduced some of the basic traditional terminologies of business analytics (descriptive, predictive, and prescriptive analytics), we should point out that the terminology in this young field continues to change at a rapid pace due to innovation and lots of market activity. For example, business analytics is sometimes referred to as *data science* (see below), as well as *data analytics* or *decision analytics.* (*Business intelligence* also is a traditional name for descriptive and predictive analytics.) Additional changes in terminology probably lie ahead.

The Role of Data Science

Business analytics is sometimes referred to as **data science** because it focuses so much on the science of transforming data into useful insights. However, in fact, business analytics and data science are two distinct, albeit closely related, disciplines. Recall that business analytics was defined at the beginning of this section as the art and the science of transforming data into insight for making better business decisions. Note that the definition of data science below is quite different.

data science

An interdisciplinary field that uses scientific methods, processes, algorithms, and systems to extract knowledge or insights from even massive amounts of data in various forms.

Data science is an interdisciplinary field that uses scientific methods, processes, algorithms, and systems to extract knowledge or insights from even massive amounts of data in various forms.

Although business analytics also is interdisciplinary and uses scientific methods, the important differences in these definitions are that data science is more interdisciplinary, more based on scientific methods, more applicable to various areas in addition to business, and more concerned with how to deal with even massive amounts of data in various forms.

Numerous universities now offer degree programs in either business analytics or data science (or both). There are distinct differences between these two types of programs. The business analytics programs normally are offered in business schools (typically at the master's level) because the focus is on the analysis of mostly structured business data to make key *business* decisions. The data science programs often are in STEM departments and go deeper into the foundational areas such as statistics, computer science, and relevant technologies (such as the two introduced in the next two subsections). This interdisciplinary approach enables applications in a variety of areas rather than just mainly business applications.

Data science is based on a strong background in statistics, computer science, and relevant technologies.

Because of its emphasis on the application of science to the analysis of data, highly trained practitioners of data science frequently are given the title of **data scientists.** Specialists in business analytics occasionally have earned this title, but less often since their emphasis is more on using a deep understanding of

business administration to make strategic business decisions. However, business analytics teams often will include at least one data scientist on the team. Although business analysts have a good background in mathematics, statistics, and computer science, the stronger background of a data scientist in these areas frequently can be helpful for a business analytics team. A stronger background in computer technology also can be helpful when the team wants to apply either of the powerful human-like technologies described below.

data scientist

A common title given to highly trained practitioners of data science or business analytics who mainly focus on the application of science to the analysis of data.

The Role of Machine Learning

Computers now are so powerful that they can process enormous amounts of information and calculations in seconds that would be far beyond the capacity of any human being. This gives computer systems (the “machine”) the ability to automatically “learn” from the patterns in the data and thereby do such things as progressively improve performance on a specific task.

The goal of **machine learning** is to allow computers to learn automatically from historical relationships and trends in the data in order to do such things as making data-driven predictions.

machine learning

A technology that allows computers to learn automatically from historical relationships and trends in the data in order to do such things as making data-driven predictions.

A few of the applications of machine learning include self-driving cars, practical speech recognition, effective web search, image

recognition, medical diagnosis, and a vastly improved understanding of the human genome.

To illustrate the machine learning process, consider the case of how specially trained physicians (radiologists) use *pattern recognition* to diagnose a specific disease. They read images from routine x-rays, computed tomography, MRI, ultrasound, and other imaging modalities. This is done only after several years of training in a radiology residency, plus perhaps additional training in a subspeciality. Progress now is being made with using machine learning to assist radiologists with performing this pattern recognition. This involves approximating the training process of human radiologists by creating a digital "neural net" which can learn to recognize patterns by being fed with huge numbers of training images accompanied by the "correct answer." The resulting computer application then provides the radiologist with a "second opinion" to help improve the diagnosis (the prediction regarding a specific disease).

What does this radiology example have to do with business analytics? Nothing directly, but a great deal indirectly. Business analytics frequently is involved with using pattern recognition in other contexts. Some examples include looking for patterns in financial histories to detect fraud, looking for patterns in e-mail messages to detect spam, or looking for patterns in the buying behavior of past customers to make additional purchase recommendations to a new customer. (You will see a variety of similar applications of predictive analytics in Chapter 3.) Machine learning is a popular method for applying predictive analytics by performing pattern recognition.

The Role of Artificial Intelligence

Although the term artificial intelligence (AI) was first coined way back in 1956, the big buzz about AI came early in the 21st century and is continuing to grow. There were some important breakthroughs in image recognition in the early 2010s and advances in natural language processing came a little later. Exciting research continues,

but we still have a long way to go to fully realize the goal of artificial intelligence.

> The goal of **artificial intelligence (AI)** is to build intelligent computer programs and machines that can simulate human thinking capability and behavior.

artificial intelligence

The goal of artificial intelligence is to build intelligent computer programs and machines that can simulate human thinking capability and behavior.

However, one famous example of artificial intelligence dates back to before the turn of the century. In 1997, a computer called Deep Blue was able to apply artificial intelligence to defeat the world champion chess player (Garry Kasparov) in a match consisting of six chess games. Deep Blue could generate and evaluate about 200 million chess positions per second. Therefore, it was able to look ahead a considerable number of moves to evaluate various combinations of moves by itself and its competitor. Chess players do this all the time, but even Chess Grandmasters cannot do this as well as Deep Blue. Therefore, Deep Blue was simulating human thinking capability and behavior, but doing this more effectively than a world champion because of the power of AI.

Machine learning (ML) and artificial intelligence (AI) are closely related technologies. The terms often are used interchangeably, but ML actually is just one important part of AI. Because its focus is on automatically learning from historical relationships and trends in the data, ML provides an ideal platform for performing AI. The difficult part then is taking the next step to use this platform to truly simulate human thinking capability and behavior.

Machine learning provides an ideal platform for performing artificial intelligence.

Some practitioners (including many consultants) now use AI as a broad umbrella term that encompasses management science, operations research, analytics, machine learning, and so forth. However, the algorithms being used generally have been developed based on human intelligence rather than artificial intelligence. The full promise of AI should gradually come later.

Review *Questions*

. What are some quantitative decision sciences that are drawn upon by business analytics?
. What is meant by *the era of big data* and what role did it play in the origin of business analytics?
. What does *descriptive analytics* involve doing?
. What does *predictive analytics* involve doing?
. What does *prescriptive analytics* involve doing?
. What is data science and how does it differ from business analytics?
. What is machine learning and how does it relate to business analytics?
. What is artificial intelligence and how does it relate to machine learning?

1.3 THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND BUSINESS ANALYTICS

Section 1.1 has introduced the discipline of *management science* and Section 1.2 has done the same for *business ana*lytics. They have many similarities. Both disciplines use data and quantitative factors to perform sophisticated analyses that aim to aid managerial decision making. These are overlapping disciplines that complement each other extremely well.

An Application Vignette

The **Intel Corporation** is an American multinational technology company headquartered in Silicon Valley. It is the world's largest semiconductor chip manufacturer by revenue. It ranked No. 45 in

the 2020 *Fortune* 500 list of the largest U.S. corporations with a revenue of nearly $78 billion. Its integrated circuits have been a driving force of the information revolution for over 50 years. More recently, Intel-driven computers have enabled the advent of cloud computing, big data, and the practical resurgence of artificial intelligence.

To meet the needs of its vast customer base, Intel must produce a very large number of distinct products and then distribute them worldwide through supply chains. Over fairly recent years, its manufacturing processes and product routings have become much more complex with more manufacturing steps, longer throughput times, and many more capacity-related complications. Therefore, late in the decade of the 2000s, Intel began developing and applying **end-to-end advanced analytics** to its product design optimization and supply chain planning optimization throughout the corporation. Various kinds of prescriptive analytics methods drawn from both the traditional techniques of **management science** (e.g., linear programming and mixed-integer programming) and the newer techniques of **business analytics** (e.g., artificial intelligence and machine learning) were used. At times, the company was dealing with models containing as many as 13 million decision variables, 30,000 integer variables, and 4.1 million constraints.

This highly sophisticated application of advanced analytics gradually paid huge dividends. Considering both increased revenues and reduced costs, the increased profit in 2009 was $0.5 billion in this first year of the new approach. As the new applications increased and became further entrenched, their contribution to the annual profit gradually increased until it reached $5 **billion** in 2019 (and was expected to grow even larger in subsequent years). The total increased profit from 2009 to 2019 was **over $25 billion.** These spectacular results played a prominent role in maintaining Intel’s position as the leading company in this fast-moving sector of the worldwide economy.

This dramatic application of management science and business analytics resulted in Intel winning the prestigious **First Prize** of the international 2020 Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: J. Heiney, R. Lovrien, N. Mason, I. Ovacik, E. Rash, N. Sarkar, H. Travis, Z. Zhao, K. Ching, S. Shirodkar, and K. G. Kempf, "Intel Realizes $25 Billion by Applying Advanced Analytics from Product Architecture Design Through Supply Chain Planning," *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* 51, no. 1 (January–February, 2021): 9–25. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

The most important relationship between management science and business analytics is that they complement each other extremely well. Thus, someone who once was a management science specialist now needs to be well trained in business analytics as well, and vice versa. By the same token, business schools now need to train future business analysts who have a solid foundation in the traditional disciplines of both management science and business analytics. (This textbook aims to provide the needed solid foundation in management science while also providing some needed context regarding the role of business analytics for completeness.)

To further emphasize this relationship, any project that begins by using the traditional techniques of one of these disciplines almost invariably ends up by also using the techniques of the other discipline. For example, business analysts who begin by identifying a relevant management science technique soon find a need to deal with all three of the categories of analytics described in Section 1.2. These business analysts need to perform some descriptive analytics to gain some understanding of the data. They also frequently need to perform some predictive analytics to gain some understanding of what is likely to happen in the future. These business analysts may

then end by applying powerful optimization techniques drawn from management science.

One difference between the two disciplines is in their histories. Management science became an established discipline in the middle of the 20th century and has been active ever since with further developing and extending its techniques. Business analytics only became well established starting in the early years of the 21st century. This is a major reason why business analytics has drawn heavily on other disciplines, including management science. However, business analytics has made up for lost time by making impressive progress in developing its own techniques, especially in the area of predictive analytics.

When comparing the usage of the traditional techniques of management science and business analytics, business analysts typically find more help from business analytics when dealing with the descriptive analytics area. Business analytics also provides a larger toolkit when dealing with data preparation and predictive analytics, although management science also provides some useful techniques in this area. Management science techniques normally then take the lead when performing prescriptive analytics. Therefore, when a team of business analysts conducts a full-fledged study that requires performing all three types of analytics, an ideal team would include strength in both disciplines.

Management science and business analytics complement each other so well that they should tend to merge over time.

Although this book focuses on business problems, let us digress briefly to point out that these two disciplines also have had a major impact outside of the business world. For example, sports fans have learned that *sports analytics* have substantially changed the strategies used throughout the sports world, including baseball, American football, and basketball. Analytics also has been making important contributions in such areas as political campaigns, health care, combating crime, personal financial analysis, etc. Similarly, management science (often under the name of *operations research*)

also has made a variety of important contributions outside of the business world. For example, it has been very active in the health-care areas through optimizing the planning of chemoradiotherapy for cancer treatment, patient flow control, three-way matching to qualify for an organ transplant, global polio eradication, public health-care policy, and so forth. Other areas of application include combating climate change, increasing the productivity of crops, developing military strategy, disaster relief, contributions to criminology, and many more.

The Increasing Demand for Business Analytics and Management Science Professionals

Throughout the decade of the 2010s, business thinktanks such as the McKinsey Global Institute were sounding the alarm that the business world was not acting quickly enough to take full advantage of the powerful methodologies of business analytics and management science. The problem was a severe shortage of experts in applying these methodologies and an even larger shortage of managers and business analysts with the needed experience and background to make full use of the studies being done by these experts.

After this slow start, the top management of numerous business organizations now understands very well the impact that business analytics and management science can have on the bottom line and they are very interested in further increasing the role of the analytics group in their organization. This will continue to require many more people who are very well trained in business analytics and management science.

Universities are now responding to this great need. Degree programs in management science or operations research are continuing strongly. In addition, there now are hundreds of business schools in the United States or abroad that have developed curricula that can lead to degrees or certificates in business analytics.

Master's programs in business analytics have become particularly common. Courses that cover the material in this book (including management science) would be a key component of these master's programs, along with courses that emphasize other quantitative decision sciences that support business analytics (e.g., statistics, computer science, and information technology).

Business schools now are responding to the great need to thoroughly train much larger numbers of students in business analytics and management science.

At the same time, there also is a need for universities to considerably increase the number of graduate students who specialize in either management science or a combination of management science and business analytics. For years, the US Bureau of Labor Statistics has been projecting that the employment of **operations research analysts** is growing rapidly, "much faster than the average for all occupations." (Ever since its emergence in the middle of the 20th century as a powerful aid for managerial decision making, o*perations research* has been the usual name given to management science outside of business schools, but we consistently use the name management science in this book.) Both university programs and job opportunities involving the combination of management science/operations research and business analytics also are continuing to grow worldwide outside of the United States.

operations research analyst

A common title for a management science analyst.

Management science commonly is called *operations research* outside of business schools.

This creates an outstanding opportunity for business students with a STEM (Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics) focus. In the words of the thought leader Thomas H. Davenport (who was introduced in the first paragraph of Section 1.2), the job of an *analytics professional* promises to be the "sexiest job in the 21st century."

When describing business analytics and management science throughout this section, we have pointed out a number of differences in their emphases. However, these distinctions should diminish over time. Business analytics and management science complement each other so well that each should gradually claim shared ownership of the special techniques of the other.

There is considerable evidence that the close partnership between management science and business analytics is continuing to deepen. For example, consider the initiatives started some years ago by **INFORMS** (the Institute of Operations Research and the Management Sciences), which is the largest professional society of management science and business analytics professionals or students in the world. Although its name predates the advent of business analytics, INFORMS has fully brought business analytics within its embrace. This international organization holds a well-attended Business Analytics Conference annually in addition to the annual INFORMS Meeting that encompasses both management science and business analytics. INFORMS currently publishes 16 prestigious journals in various areas of management science and business analytics. One of the most popular is the *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* (previously entitled *Interfaces* before 2019). This journal features articles describing dramatic applications that often exploit the close relationship between business analytics and management science. (The *application vignettes* throughout this book are drawn from this journal.)

INFORMS

The acronym for Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences, a prominent international society that embraces both management science and business analytics.

The partnership between business analytics and management science continues to deepen.

INFORMS has continued to further deepen its embrace of analytics. The prestigious INFORMS prize that is awarded each year to the most dramatic application now has been renamed the *Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.* Another INFORMS publication is the *Analytics Magazine,* which is published six times per year to focus on important developments in the business analytics world. INFORMS includes some special-interest societies within it and a particularly large one is its Analytics Society. It also includes a Data Mining Section. (Data mining will be discussed in Chapter 2 as a key component of predictive analytics.) In addition, INFORMS manages the Certified Analytics Professional (CAP) program, which certifies analytics professionals only after they meet certain experience and education requirements and then pass a rigorous test. (An Associate Certified Analytics Professional designation also is available for qualified entry-level analytics professionals who pass a test.) In all these ways, this prestigious professional society has embraced business analytics as a vital complement to the traditional tools of management science.

The momentum of the business analytics movement is indeed continuing to grow rapidly. Because management science is at the core of advanced analytics, the usage of the powerful techniques of management science introduced in this book also should continue to grow rapidly.

Having now seen the complementary relationship between business analytics and management science, the next section will show you these disciplines in action together. We present a case study that will go through all three stages of analytics (descriptive, predictive, and prescriptive). For each stage, you will see one of the prominent techniques of business analytics or management science being applied. At this point, the goal is simply to give you a gentle introduction to these typical techniques in order to whet your appetite for learning more later. In each case, we will point out which later section in the book will present the details about these techniques.

A special theme throughout this book is the use of **spreadsheet modeling** to formulate and apply the models of business analytics and management science on a spreadsheet. The next section will also give you a gentle introduction to spreadsheet modeling.

spreadsheet modeling
Using a spreadsheet to formulate and apply the models of management science and business analytics.

Review *Questions*

. How do *business analytics* and *management science* typically divide up dealing with the three categories of analytics?
. What are some application areas of analytics outside of business?
. What has been the trend in the demand for business analysts who are highly trained in business analytics and management science?
. What is the common name for *management science* outside of business schools?
. What is the name of the prominent international professional society that encompasses both business analytics and management science?

1.4 A CASE STUDY: THE VRX COMPANY ADVERTISING BUDGET PROBLEM

VRX is a small tech company that specializes in virtual reality headsets. It has a number of models, but one of the most popular is the VRX2000. This model has been receiving rave reviews from several tech websites since its launch a little over two years ago and it continues to be a steady big seller. However, as a relatively new company without much name or brand recognition, VRX relies heavily on advertising to continually drive the

sales of its products. Although advertising budgets for the VRX2000 have varied substantially in the past without giving them very much thought, management now has decided to give high priority to making a well-informed decision about the best size of its advertising budget for the VRX2000 for the next quarter. The CEO has been hearing reports about the impact that *analytics* has been having on other companies, so she has decided to unleash the power of analytics on this key decision.

Fortunately, VRX is a progressive company that has a small analytics department which includes business analysts trained in both business analytics and management science. Therefore, the CEO has formed an *analytics study team* to investigate the question of what is the *best* size of the advertising budget for the VRX2000 for the next quarter.

VRX advertises mostly through the Internet with ads on several gaming and virtual reality fan sites. The VRX2000 has had a variety of different advertising budgets in previous quarters, ranging from no advertising at all to $200,000. Not surprisingly, management has noted a strong relationship between advertising and sales—when they advertise more, they sell more. But at what point does increasing the cost of advertising no longer pay for itself? Some basic data will be needed. For example, what are the revenues associated with selling the VRX2000? What are the costs associated with producing the VRX2000?

The revenue data is straightforward. The VRX is sold directly to consumers through the VRX website. Each unit is sold for $400.

The cost data for VRX2000 are more complicated. There are costs for the raw materials, labor for assembly, management salaries, marketing, the land and buildings, taxes, capital equipment, and more. Some of these costs depend upon the number of units that need to be produced. For example, the cost for raw materials and labor for assembly is roughly proportional to the number of units produced. Others such as the cost of management salaries, land, and capital equipment are basically fixed, so they don’t rise or fall with the number of units produced. Yet other costs, such as

marketing costs, depend largely on managerial decisions about advertising levels. These decisions then have an impact on sales.

The analytics study team has decided to break down the costs into three main categories—variable, fixed, and marketing. The variable costs would include all of the costs that are proportional to the number of units produced. These would include the cost of the raw materials that need to be obtained to produce each unit, the cost of the labor required to assemble each unit, and any other costs that are incurred for each additional unit produced and sold. VRX has estimated the mean variable cost of producing each VRX2000 to be $295.

The fixed costs for the VRX2000 would include the costs that are incurred regardless of how many units are produced. These might include a prorated share of the salaries for upper management, capital equipment, property taxes, and more. VRX estimates these fixed costs to be $100,000 per quarter.

A cost that remains the same regardless of the production volume is referred to as a *fixed cost,* whereas a cost that varies with the production volume is called a *variable cost.*

The marketing costs are different. VRX can choose whatever advertising budget for the VRX2000 they would like. It is neither a fixed cost nor a variable cost, but rather a decision to be made. However, this decision will have an impact on this model's sales and therefore affect both the total revenue (from sales) and the total variable costs (since the production costs depend on the number of units that need to be produced to meet the sales demand). However, the exact relationship between sales and advertising is unclear. In order to effectively determine the best advertising level, it will be critical to know how advertising impacts sales. Learning this will require a careful analysis of the historical data.

The marketing costs (advertising budget) are a decision to be made by VRX.

Table 1.1 shows both the various advertising budgets in past quarters and the resulting quarterly sales figures (in number of units sold) for the VRX2000 model. (The sales figures throughout this

section will show the number of units sold, not the revenue from these sales.) TABLE 1.1

Historical Advertising and Sales Data for the VRX2000

	Advertising Budget	Sales
Q4	$60,000	2,118
Q1	$120,000	2,998
Q2	$20,000	1,376
Q3	$80,000	2,296
Q4	$200,000	3,454
Q1	$100,000	2,622
Q2	$0	399
Q3	$40,000	1,808
Q4	$160,000	3,206

The remainder of this section tells the story of how the analytics study team addressed this question by systematically going through the three stages of analytics in turn.

Performing Descriptive Analytics to Explore the Data and Better Visualize the Impact of Advertising on Sales

To start the analysis, descriptive analytics needs to be performed to explore the data to better understand the relationship between advertising and sales. A quick glance at the data in Table 1.1 seems to suggest that quarters with higher advertising budgets also had higher sales. But how large is the effect, and what is the

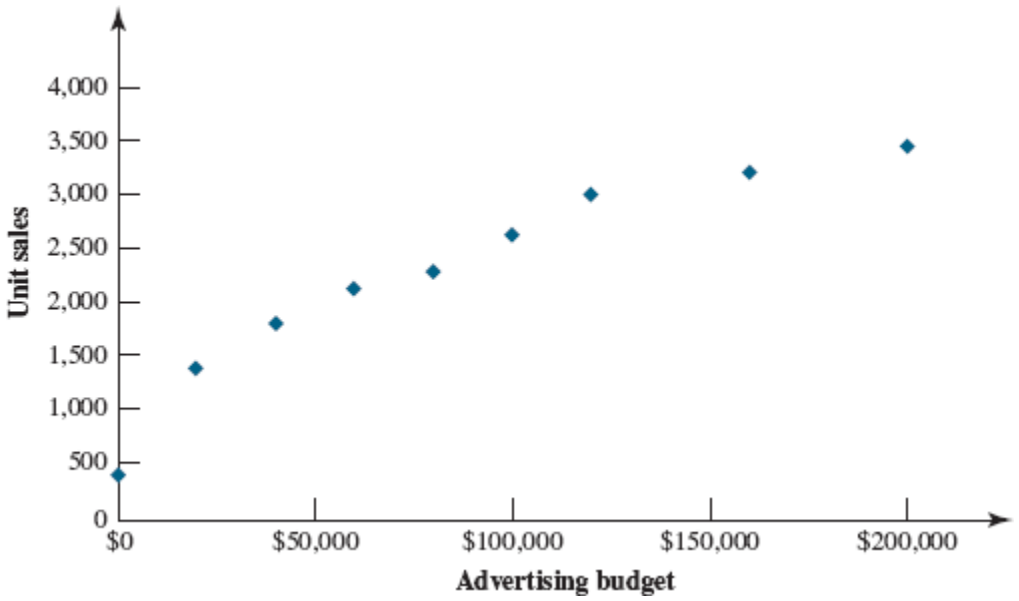
exact nature of the relationship between advertising and sales? Looking at a bunch of numbers in a table can only reveal so much.

Therefore, the analytics study team has decided that the one main technique of descriptive analytics that it should use in this case is called **data visualization.** As described in Sections 1.2 and 2.3, the goal of data visualization is to improve the communication of numerical information (including the insights obtained during the exploration of the data) through the innovative use of visual graphics. This technique has very long roots since it has been a significant emphasis within the field of Statistics for many decades. However, the business analytics community has taken the development of this technique to a new higher level. Many data scientists within this community take pride in their mastery of the art of data visualization.

There are many clever tools for data visualization. However, a relatively straightforward visual graphic called a **scatter plot** is all that is needed for this study. In particular, note that all of the data in Table 1.1 are *paired data* where each advertising budget is paired with the value of the sales in that same quarter. What a scatter plot does, in this case, is to plot each data pair as a single point on a two-dimensional chart, with the advertising level measured on the horizontal axis and the corresponding sales level measured on the vertical axis. By entering the data from Table 1.1 into an Excel spreadsheet, Figure 1.1 shows the resulting scatter plot that is generated in the spreadsheet. (Although it is somewhat hidden by the vertical axis, note that the first point on the left occurs where the advertising budget is $0.)

FIGURE 1.1

A scatter plot showing sales versus advertising budget for the VRX2000.



scatter plot

A two-dimensional graph where each point is located on the graph based upon a pair of values, one measured on the horizontal axis and the other on the vertical axis.

So how does this scatter plot help visualize the data? By plotting the data in this way, it is very obvious when moving to the right in the chart that higher advertising budgets have led to higher sales. Moreover, the slope of the graph is fairly steep, indicating that advertising is having a fairly significant impact on sales.

Another key insight from the scatter plot is that the *rate* of the increase in sales seems to tail off somewhat for higher advertising budgets. If you follow the data points from left to right, they seem to curve a little, getting flatter as you move to the right. (Although the randomness in the data hides some of this effect, note the substantial flattening when you move from left to right through points 1–3 and then through points 6–8.) This reveals that there appear to be **diminishing returns** from advertising, i.e., the benefit of increasing the level of advertising gradually decreases with further increases in the level of advertising. The initial advertising dollars are having a large, positive impact on sales, but as more dollars are spent on advertising, the impact of each additional dollar appears to be smaller. There is less “bang for the buck.”

diminishing returns

When the benefit of increasing the level of an activity gradually decreases with further increases in the level of that activity.

The diminishing returns from advertising implied by the curving data are fairly easy to spot with a scatter plot. It would have been nearly impossible to notice this by only looking at the bunch of numbers in Table 1.1. This demonstrates how the effective use of data visualization tools can help reveal key insights from the data.

Data visualization is an important technique in descriptive analytics. Using the right data visualization tool can help reveal key insights from the data.

Performing Predictive Analytics to Predict the Impact of Advertising on Sales

Based on their exploration of the data, descriptive analytics and the scatter plot allowed the analytics study team to *visualize* the relationship between sales and advertising. Sales appear to increase with advertising but with diminishing returns. The goal of predictive analytics is to *quantify* this relationship. How *much* do sales increase with advertising? How *significant* are the diminishing returns? For a given amount of advertising, can we *predict* what sales would be (at least approximately)? The analytics study team will need to explore various prediction models to see which might perform the best.

A straightforward way to try to predict the sales for the VRX2000 with a certain advertising level next quarter is to conclude that the sales should be the same as in a previous quarter that had the same advertising level. However, there are *three reasons* why this prediction method may be very inadequate.

One reason is that the *sales potential* next quarter with a certain amount of advertising may not be identical to that for a previous quarter with exactly the same amount of advertising, in which case the sales next quarter may be quite different than in this previous quarter. Perhaps there have been either upward or downward trends in the sales from quarter to quarter. Or perhaps there are special

reasons (e.g., Christmas sales) that affect the sales in one of these quarters. Fortunately, after consulting the VRX marketing manager and studying the data, the analytics study team has concluded that this reason does not apply to the VRX2000 in any significant way. (You will need to wait until Chapter 4 to see how predictive analytics can consider trends or seasonality factors.) The *second reason* is that there usually is some **randomness** (i.e., the apparent lack of pattern or predictability in events) in the sales in any quarter just due to chance. (In the terminology of probability theory, the sales in a quarter for any particular advertising level is a *random variable* with some probability distribution.) Therefore, even with identical advertising levels next quarter and in a previous quarter, the sales next quarter usually will be either a little higher or a little lower than in that previous quarter just due to chance. A more sophisticated prediction method is needed that uses other data to indicate whether the sales in the previous quarter is a little higher or a little lower than usual just by chance.

randomness

The apparent lack of pattern or predictability in events.

The *third reason* is that we may want to consider advertising levels for next quarter that are different from any previous quarter. We can still consider the two most similar previous quarters (one with a little higher advertising level and the other with a little lower advertising level) and then try to interpolate between the sales in these two previous quarters. However, due once again to randomness, a more sophisticated prediction method is needed that uses other data to convey whether the sales in these two quarters are a little different than usual just by chance.

The analytics study team understands well the above three reasons for not basing the prediction of the sales of the VRX2000 next quarter on the sales in a single previous quarter that had the same advertising level. They also are very familiar with the more

sophisticated predictive analytics technique that can make full use of *all* the data for making such a prediction. How should they proceed?

In order to determine the best advertising budget, VRX needs to be able to predict the impact of advertising on sales by using predictive analytics.

The ultimate goal is to choose the *best* advertising budget (by performing prescriptive analytics in the next subsection). To accomplish this, VRX first will need to be able to *predict* how sales will vary as a function of the advertising level over the entire range of advertising levels that are realistic candidates to be the *best* one.

The analytics study team quickly recognizes that the key technique for doing this is **causal forecasting with regression.** (Regression can be either *linear regression* or *nonlinear regression.*) Causal forecasting involves using the scatter plot of data to obtain a forecast of the quantity of interest (sales in this case) by relating it directly to one or more other quantities (the advertising budget in this case) that drive the quantity of interest. Thus, for any particular advertising budget, causal forecasting will provide a forecast of what the sales will be.

causal forecasting with regression

Obtains a forecast of the quantity of interest by relating it directly to one or more other quantities that drive the quantity of interest.

The *with regression* part of the name of the technique refers to the generation of a **trendline** in the scatter plot, where each point on the trendline shows the predicted sales for the corresponding value of the advertising budget. The trendline can be either a straight line (for **linear regression**) or a smooth curve (for **nonlinear regression**). In both cases, the trendline should pass smoothly through the neighborhood of all the data points in the scatter plot. Due to randomness, some of the data points typically will lie a little above the trendline and others will lie a little below. (It is not unusual to have no data points that lie directly on the trendline.) However, if

the regression method is well chosen, all of the data points will be reasonably close to the trendline.

trendline

The line or curve that shows the prediction of a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) for any value of a related quantity (the independent variable(s)).

linear regression

Approximating the relationship between a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) and a related quantity (the independent variable(s)) by a straight line.

nonlinear regression

Approximating the relationship between a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) and a related quantity (the independent variable(s)) by a smooth curve.

The *causal forecasting with regression* technique has a very long history within the field of Statistics. (The history of linear regression actually goes back over 200 years.) It also has been widely used in many other fields (e.g., economics, engineering, and sciences), including management science. Causal forecasting with linear regression will be described in detail in Section 4.5.

Linear regression is used to approximate the relationship between the dependent variable and an independent variable by a straight line.

However, before causal forecasting can be applied, a decision needs to be made about which specific type of regression should be used. The goal is to choose a form of the trendline that fits the data particularly well. Should the regression generate a trendline that is a straight line (so *linear regression*)? Or should some nonlinear function generate a trendline that is a smooth curve (so *nonlinear regression*)? Some analysis is needed.

It is common to begin this analysis by checking how well linear regression works, so the analytics study team decides to do this (without very much hope) as a first step in their analysis. Linear regression in this case involves approximating the relationship between the sales (the *dependent variable*) and the advertising

budget (the *independent variable*) by a straight trendline. In general, the equation for the linear regression trendline has the form

$$y = ax + b$$

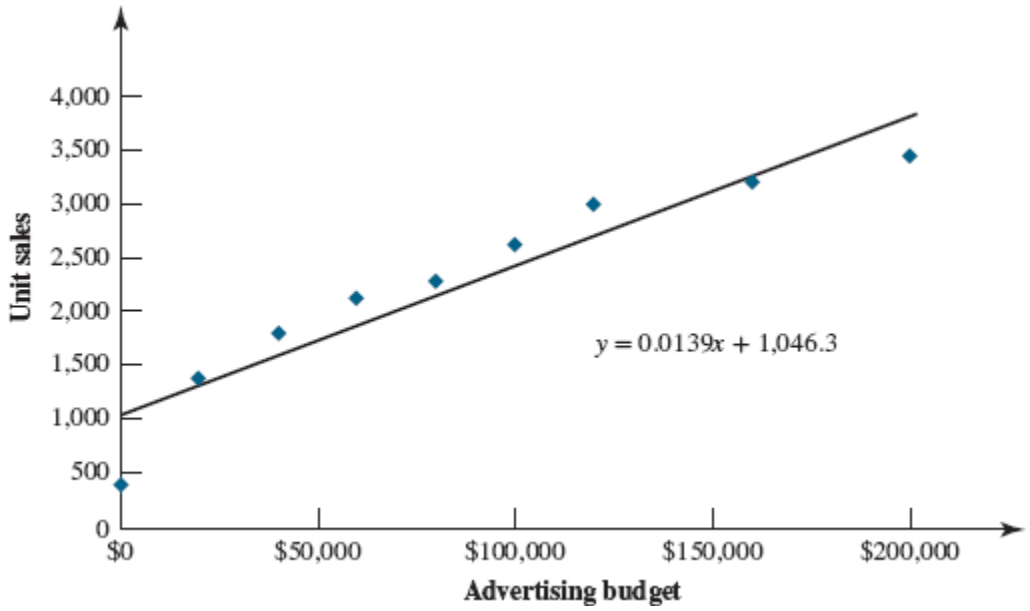
where

y = Estimated value of the dependent variable
a = Slope of the linear regression trendline
x = Value of the independent variable
b = Intercept of the linear regression trendline with the *y*-axis

Given a scatter plot in a spreadsheet, such as the one shown in Figure 1.1, Excel provides a convenient method of performing linear regression to find the trendline that best fits the historical data. Right-clicking on a data point and choosing “Add Trendline” from the popup menu will perform linear regression and determine the “best-fit line” to the data. (As detailed in Section 4.5, this is the line that minimizes the mean of the square of the errors between the linear regression line and the historical data.) Figure 1.2 shows the resulting linear regression trendline.

FIGURE 1.2

The linear regression trendline is added to the scatter plot.



As indicated in Figure 1.2, this linear regression trendline is represented by the equation

$$y = 0.0139x + 1{,}046.3.$$

Since *y* represents the forecasted sales and *x* represents the advertising budget, this equation would suggest that

$$Sales \approx 0.0139\ (Advertising\ Budget) + 1{,}046.3$$

Therefore, the sales forecast would be 1,046.3 without any advertising, with sales increasing by 0.0139 units per dollar spent on advertising. Unfortunately, Figure 1.2 shows that this linear regression trendline does not provide a very good fit to the data. The first data point on the left lies far below the trendline and then the last two data points on the right appear to be starting a dive below the trendline.

While going through the descriptive stage of analytics, the data visualization technique has shown the analytics study team that the VXR2000 has a considerable level of *diminishing returns from advertising.* This was a vivid clue that linear regression would not provide a good fit to the data. This is not surprising since it is a well-

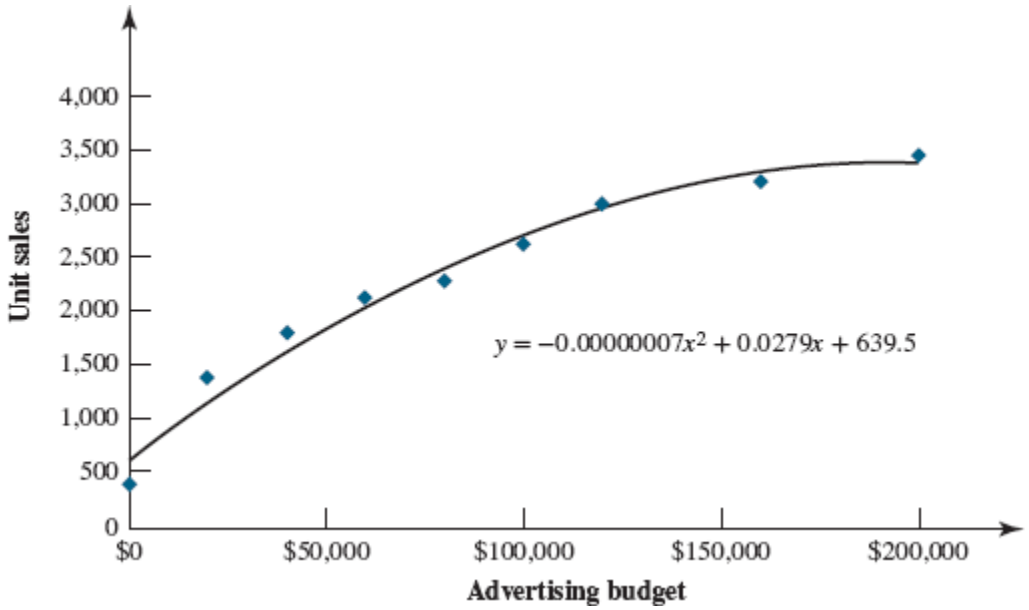
known phenomenon in marketing that there tend to be diminishing returns from advertising. Initial advertisements have the biggest impact as they are typically new to the viewer. However, with too much advertising, many viewers will have seen the advertisements before so tend to tune them out.

The diminishing returns from advertising can be seen clearly in this case by comparing the historical data with the trendline in Figure 1.2. It appears that the historical sales data rise more sharply than the trendline at the start (the left-most data points representing the smaller advertising budgets) and tail off below the line at the end (the right-most data points representing higher advertising budgets).

With such a substantial level of diminishing returns from advertising in this case, the analytics study team concludes that linear regression definitely should not be used for the VRX2000. Fortunately, Excel also has options for performing nonlinear regression (using a nonlinear trendline). Figure 1.3 shows a polynomial trendline that adds an x^2 term to the regression equation.

FIGURE 1.3

Sales versus advertising data for the VRX2000 with a nonlinear trendline represented by a polynomial equation.



Because of the diminishing returns from advertising, the relationship between sales and advertising is not linear, so linear regression apparently is not the best approach.

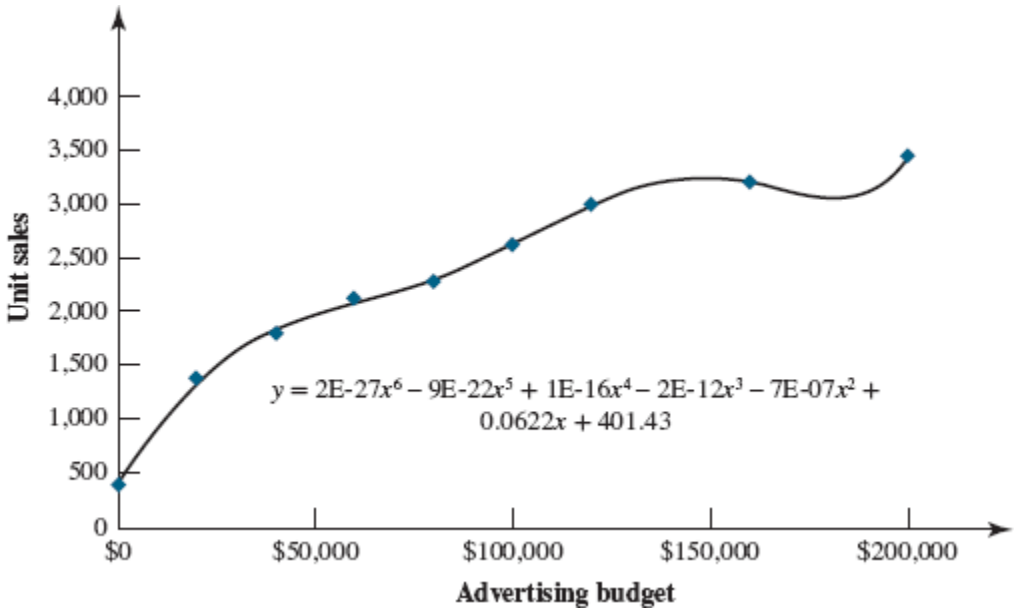
This second-order polynomial equation seems to provide a better fit to the historical data than the straight-line trendline. It better captures the diminishing returns from advertising that are apparent in the data. However, using this polynomial equation has a serious flaw. If it is used to try to predict what sales will be for advertising budgets that are higher than $200,000 (i.e., extended to the right), it will start sloping downward. That is, it would predict *lower* sales as advertising is increased beyond $200,000. (Later in this section, Figure 1.6 shows what happens with this polynomial equation beyond $200,000.) While we intuitively would expect diminishing returns as advertising is increased (i.e., less *additional* sales per dollar spent), we wouldn't expect sales to actually *decrease.*

page 19

However, since this second-order polynomial equation does provide a considerably better fit to the data than the straight line trendline, it may seem that we can continue improving the fit to the data by just using a higher order polynomial. Figure 1.4 shows what would happen by going all the way to a sixth-order polynomial, which is the highest order polynomial available with Excel's Add Trendline feature. (The E is Excel notation for an exponent of 10, so for example, 7E-07 is 7 times 10 to the power of −7, which is 0.0000007.)

FIGURE 1.4

Sales versus advertising data for the VRX2000 with a nonlinear trendline represented by a sixth-order polynomial equation.



It may appear at first glance that the nonlinear regression based on this sixth-order polynomial equation does a nearly perfect job. After all, the trendline actually passes almost exactly through *every* data point, so it nearly "perfectly fits the data." However, the problem is that this trendline does not take into account the *randomness* in the sales whereby each data point only shows one *random observation* from the probability distribution of sales in that quarter. With other random observations for the nine quarters, a very different trendline might be obtained. We don't want a trendline that is so tied to the data that it shows a strange shape that contradicts what we know about the effect on sales of increasing the advertising level (always increasing but with diminishing returns from advertising). What we have here is an extreme example of **overfitting the data** (making a predictive model less accurate when using new data sets by having the model align *too* closely to the given data instead of taking into account the inherent idiosyncrasies in the given data due to randomness). It is a danger that also arises when dealing with some other types of business analytics models (as will be explored in more detail in Chapter 3).

overfitting the data

Making a predictive model less accurate when using new data sets by having the model align *too* closely to the given data instead of taking into account the inherent idiosyncrasies in the given data due to randomness.

Before taking their next step, the analytics study team consults with the marketing manager for VRX to learn more about the typical behavior of sales as advertising increases. The marketing manager mentions that, through his years of experience at VRX, he has developed a rule of thumb for the relationship between sales and advertising. In particular, there tends to be a *square-root effect.* That is, sales do not increase proportionally with the level of advertising, but rather increase proportionally with the *square root* of advertising. For example, to double the impact of advertising, one would need to quadruple the advertising budget (since the square root of 4 is 2). To triple the impact of advertising, one would need to spend nine times as much (since the square root of 9 is 3).

The square-root effect is a rule of thumb in advertising suggesting that sales increase proportionally with the square root of advertising.

The *square-root effect* would imply that, rather than using a linear regression trendline of the form

$$y = ax + b \ (Sales \approx a \ (Advertising) + b),$$

one should instead be using *nonlinear regression* to look for a curving trendline of the form

$$y = ax + b \ (Sales \approx a \ \sqrt{Advertising} + b)$$

The analytics study team decides to check out whether this would provide a better fit to the data (but without overfitting).

The team also notices that they actually can use linear regression to determine the best-fit value of *a* and *b* in the above square-root equation. What they do is to change the independent variable to be $\sqrt{Advertising}$, rather than just Advertising. This then permits the team

to look for the best-fit linear relationship between the dependent variable (*Sales*) and the new independent variable $(\sqrt{Advertising})$.

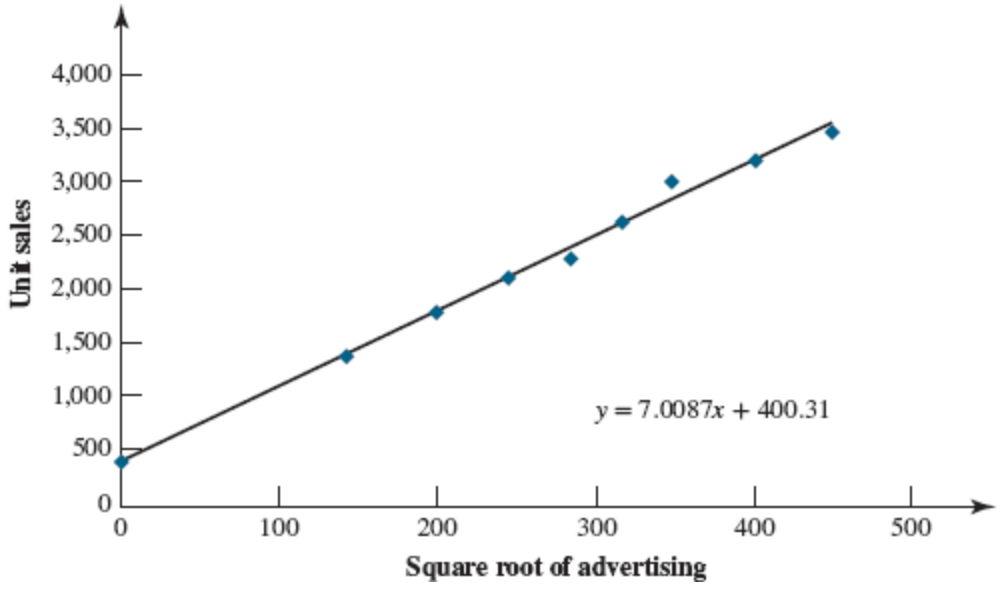
Figure 1.5 shows a spreadsheet that calculates the square root of advertising for each of the data points in Table 1.1. This leads to a new scatter plot shown at the bottom of Figure 1.5, with sales measured on the vertical axis as before, but now with the square-root of advertising on the horizontal axis.

FIGURE 1.5

Sales versus the square root of advertising for the VRX2000, along with the linear regression trendline for this relationship.

	A	B	C	D
1	**VRX 2000 Sales vs. Square Root of Advertising**			
2				
3			**Square Root**	
4		**Advertising**	**of Advertising**	**Unit Sales**
5		60,000	245	2,118
6		120,000	346	2,998
7		20,000	141	1,376
8		80,000	283	2,296
9		200,000	447	3,454
10		100,000	316	2,622
11		0	0	399
12		40,000	200	1,808
13		160,000	400	3,206

	C
3	**Square Root**
4	**of Advertising**
5	=SQRT(B5)
6	=SQRT(B6)
7	=SQRT(B7)
8	=SQRT(B8)
9	=SQRT(B9)
10	=SQRT(B10)
11	=SQRT(B11)
12	=SQRT(B12)
13	=SQRT(B13)



The linear regression trendline shown in Figure 1.5 is represented by the equation

$$y = 7.0087x + 400.31$$

Since *y* represents the estimated *Sales,* and *x* now represents $\sqrt{Advertising}$, this would suggest that

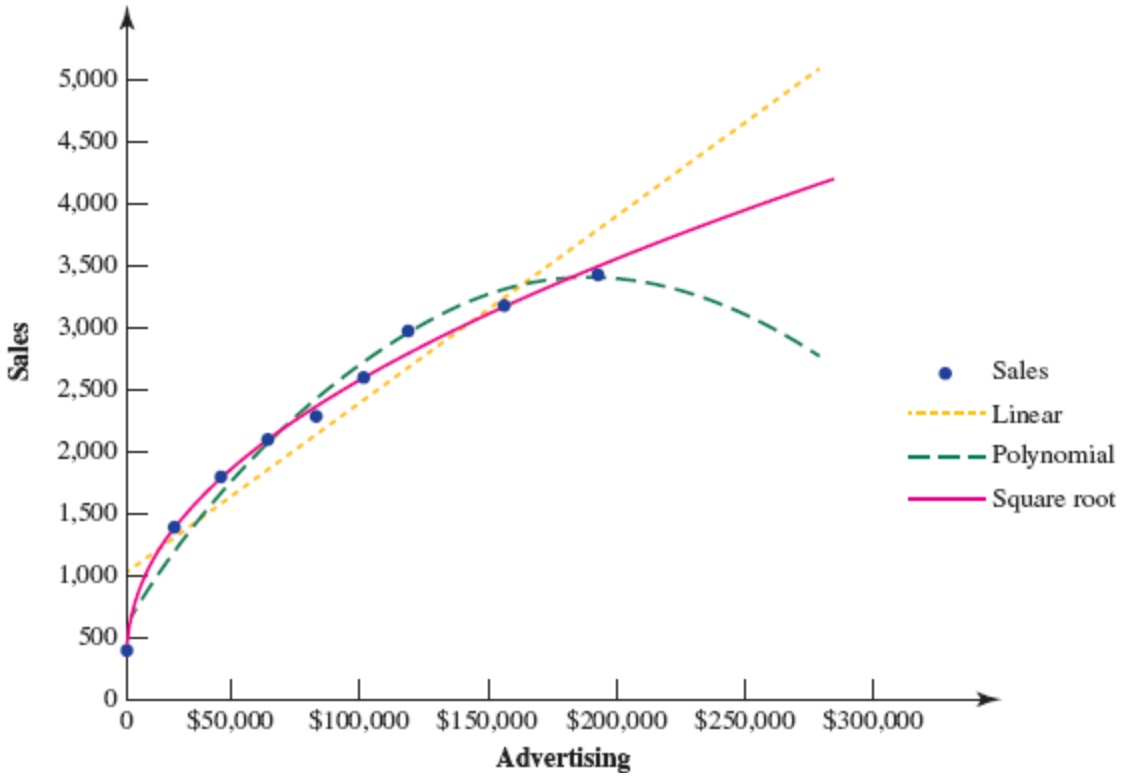
$$Sales \approx 7.01\sqrt{Advertising} + 400.$$

The sales forecast would be essentially 400 without any advertising, with sales increasing approximately seven times the square root of the advertising budget.

Intuitively, we would expect that sales will always increase the more we spend on advertising, but because of diminishing returns from advertising, we also would expect sales to increase at a decreasing rate as advertising increases. The square-root formula better matches these intuitions about the relationship between sales and advertising than either the linear equation or the second-order polynomial equation. This is demonstrated in Figure 1.6, where the trendlines generated by all three regression equations (linear, second-order polynomial, and square root) are shown along with the historical sales data. Since the horizontal axis in Figure 1.6 now measures the advertising budget rather than $\sqrt{Advertising}$, the square-root equation now plots as a curve rather than the straight line shown in Figure 1.5. Now compare the square-root regression equation to the others. Unlike the linear equation, the square-root equation captures the diminishing returns that we expect in advertising (and see in the historical data). But unlike the polynomial equation, the square-root formula predicts that sales will always increase with additional advertising rather than start to decrease for values of advertising above $200,000.

FIGURE 1.6

A comparison of the linear regression equation, the second-order polynomial regression equation, and the square-root regression equation.



Since intuition suggests sales would increase with advertising, but at a decreasing rate, the square root equation is a better fit than either a linear equation (see Figure 1.2) or the second-order polynomial equation (see Figure 1.3).

Notice how the analytics study team progressed through several different prediction models, first considering just using the closest previous data point, and then considering a variety of models based on causal forecasting with regression (including a linear equation, a polynomial equation, and then a square-root equation), before arriving at the model that appears to work the best. It is typical in predictive analytics to try several different models, estimate the quality of the various models using the data, and then pick the model that performs the best.

The analytics study team is happy to see how closely the square-root regression trendline fits the data. It clearly enables making an excellent prediction of the sales for any given advertising budget. They show the VRX marketing manager a modified version of Figure 1.6 that only shows the square-root regression trendline while also thanking him for the tip about the square-root effect in advertising he

has found at VRX. The marketing manager is pleased to receive this excellent method of predicting sales for the VRX2000.

At the same time, the analytics study team reminds the marketing manager not to put too much faith in this prediction method. A prediction is only a prediction. It appears to provide the best available forecast based on causal forecasting with regression. But forecasts are often wrong by at least a little bit. Sales will most likely *not* turn out to be *exactly* what is indicated by the square root regression formula. The hope is that the forecast will be at least quite close and that it also will capture (at least approximately) the impact that advertising has on sales. If so, we can still use this formula to help determine a good advertising budget (one that will lead to nearly the best possible profits), even if the forecast turns out to not be perfectly accurate. The marketing manager understands all this very well from past experience, including a few times when unforeseen circumstances provided unpleasant surprises.

Over time, as new data come in, the analytics study team will update the prediction formula to incorporate the new information. (Case 1-1, at the end of this chapter, will explore this further.) There may be other things that the analytics study team or the marketing manager might want to consider when predicting sales. For example, are there other factors that impact sales *beyond* advertising, such as the state of the economy, or perhaps other competitors bringing new models to market? Or are there either upward or downward trends in the sales data? How about seasonality effects (e.g., increased sales in the weeks just before Christmas) that often cause sales to be higher during certain times of the year? Chapter 4 will explore time-series forecasting methods that account for trend and seasonality effects.

Chapters 3 and 4 will dig much deeper into the tools of predictive analytics, including forecasting.

However, at this point, the analytics study team feels that the square-root prediction method provides a sufficiently solid basis for

moving on to the final stage of analytics—prescriptive analytics. The story continues below.

Performing Prescriptive Analytics to Determine the Best Advertising Level

With a prediction model now developed to predict sales for any given advertising level, the analytics study team now is ready to turn to prescriptive analytics to determine the *best* amount to spend on advertising the VRX2000 during the next quarter. The team will use spreadsheet modeling to do this.

A spreadsheet model is formulated in Figure 1.7 to estimate the profit for any chosen advertising budget. The cost and revenue data are entered in cells C4, C5, and C6. The advertising budget will be chosen and entered in cell C9. For now, a trial value of $50,000 is entered for the advertising budget. The parameters for the square-root prediction formula, *a* and *b,* are entered in cells C12 and C13.

FIGURE 1.7

The spreadsheet for the VRX2000 to calculate the predicted profit for any given level of advertising. With a trial solution of a $50,000 advertising budget, the model predicts a profit of $56,588.

	A	B	C
1	**VRX2000 Optimization Model**		
2			
3		**Parameters:**	
4		Unit Variable Cost	$295
5		Unit Revenue	$400
6		Fixed Cost	$100,000
7			
8		**Decision Variable:**	
9		Advertising Budget	$50,000
10			

11		Prediction Formula:	Sales ≈ a √x + b
12		a	7.01
13		b	400
14			
15		Expected Units Sold	1,968
16			
17		Total Revenue	$787,001
18		Total Variable Cost	$580,413
19		Fixed Cost	$100,000
20		Advertising Cost	$50,000
21			
22		**Total Profit**	$56,588

Range Name	Cell
a	C12
AdvertisingBudget	C9
b	C13
ExpectedUnitsSold	C15
FixedCost	C6
TotalProfit	C22
TotalRevenue	C17
TotalVariableCost	C18
UnitRevenue	C5
UnitVariableCost	C4

	B	C
15	Expected Units Sold	=a*SQRT(AdvertisingBudget)+b
16		
17	Total Revenue	=UnitRevenue*ExpectedUnitsSold
18	Total Variable Cost	=UnitVariableCost*ExpectedUnitsSold
19	Fixed Cost	=FixedCost
20	Advertising Cost	=AdvertisingBudget
21		
22	**Total Profit**	=TotalRevenue-TotalVariableCost-FixedCost-AdvertisingBudget

Cell C15 calculates the predicted number of units sold by using the Excel equations shown under the spreadsheet in Figure 1.7. The Excel equations could have been written using cell references (e.g., C15=C12*SQRT(C9)+C11). However, the spreadsheet model is made clearer by giving “range names” to key cells or blocks of cells. A **range name** is a descriptive name given to a cell (or range of cells) that immediately identifies what is there. (Appendix A provides details about how to incorporate range names into a spreadsheet model.) To define a name for a selected cell (or range of cells), select the cell, choose Define Name from the Formula tab, and enter a name. These range names can then be used in other formulas to

create an equation that is easy to decipher (e.g., ExpectedUnitsSold = a*SQRT(AdvertisingBudget)+b rather than the more cryptic C15=C12*SQRT(C9)+C11). Note that spaces are not allowed in range names. When a range name has more than one word, we have used capital letters to distinguish the start of each new word (e.g., AdvertisingBudget).

range name

A descriptive name given to a cell (or range of cells) in a spreadsheet that immediately identifies what is there.

Excel Tip To update formulas throughout the spreadsheet to incorporate a newly defined range name, choose Apply Names from the Define Name menu on the Formulas tab.

The box to the right of the spreadsheet in Figure 1.7 lists the range names of the quantities in the spreadsheet in alphabetical order and then gives cell references where the quantities are found. Although this isn't particularly necessary for such a small spreadsheet, you should find it helpful for the larger spreadsheets found later in this book.

Excel Tip A list of all the defined names and their corresponding cell references can be pasted into a spreadsheet by choosing Paste Names from the Use in Formula menu on the Formulas tab, and then clicking on Paste List.

The total revenues and costs calculated in cells C17 through C20 are fairly straightforward calculations that use the formulas shown below the main spreadsheet. Finally, the Total Profit is calculated in cell C22. This same spreadsheet, along with all of the other spreadsheets in this book, is available to you at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

With the spreadsheet model shown in Figure 1.7, it is very easy to use trial and error to try different values for AdvertisingBudget

(C15) in order to see the impact on TotalProfit (C22). Table 1.2 shows how the predicted number of units sold and the total profit varies for several different advertising budgets.

TABLE 1.2

Predicted Sales and the Resulting Total Profit for a Variety of Different Advertising Budgets

Advertising Budget	Predicted Sales	Total Profit
$0	400	–$57,967
$25,000	1,508	$33,391
$50,000	1,968	$56,588
$75,000	2,320	$68,571
$100,000	2,617	$74,749
$125,000	2,878	$77,217
$150,000	3,115	$77,051
$175,000	3,332	$74,887
$200,000	3,535	$71,143

As the advertising budget increases from $0, the total profit increases very quickly, indicating that it is worthwhile to advertise the VRX2000. However, as the advertising budget reaches $100,000, the improvement in total profit becomes smaller and then starts decreasing (because sales revenue starts increasing more slowly than variable costs) from nearly $150,000 onward. This clearly demonstrates the effect of the diminishing returns from advertising.

So what is the *best* advertising budget? It appears that the total profit will be maximized when the advertising budget is somewhere between $125,000 and $150,000.

Trial and error could be used to zero in on the best advertising budget with a couple minutes of experimentation by entering trial values in AdvertisingBudget (cell C9) in Figure 1.7.

Alternatively, there is a tool in Excel called **Solver** that will find the value of decision variable cells (in this case AdvertisingBudget, or C9) that will maximize the value of an objective cell (in this case TotalProfit, or C22). This is an example of what is called **optimization** (finding the best solution for a decision model). It is such an important part of prescriptive analytics and management science that it encompasses over half of this textbook, including especially Chapters 5 through 12. Excel's Solver will be *very* briefly demonstrated here. Then the Solver, Analytic Solver, and optimization in general will be covered in *much* more detail in these later chapters.

optimization

Finding the best solution for a decision model.

Excel's Solver is used to perform optimization in a spreadsheet model. It is only *very* briefly introduced here. The use of Solver for optimization will be covered in much more detail in Chapters 5 through 11.

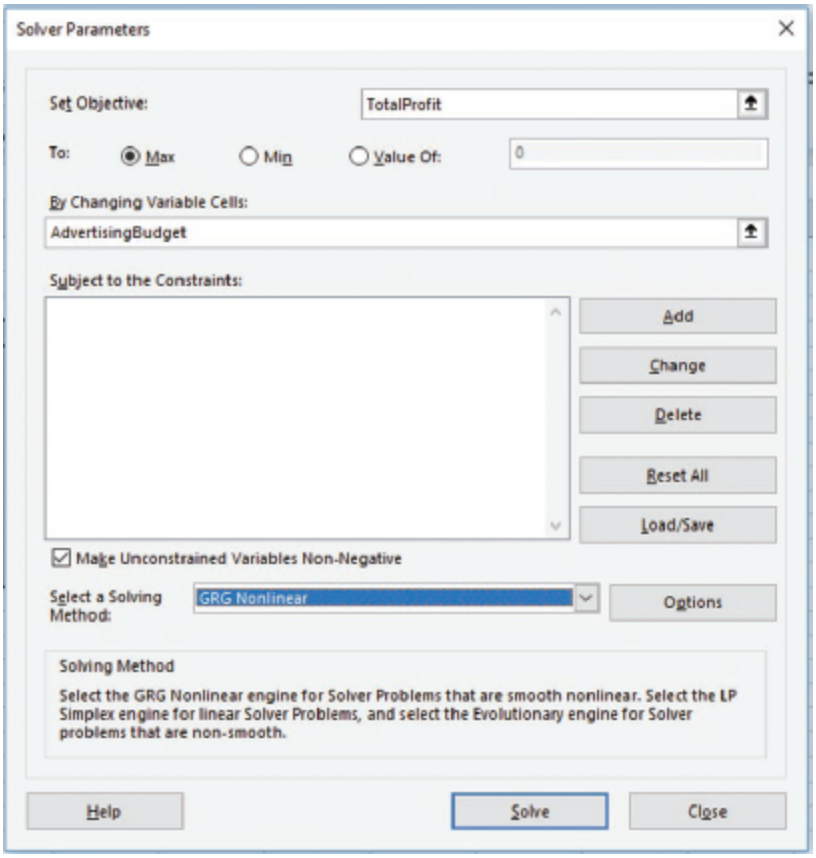
To access Solver the first time, you will need to install it. In Windows versions of Excel, choose Excel Options from the File menu, then click on Add-Ins on the left side of the window, select Manage Excel Add-Ins at the bottom of the window, and then press the Go button. Make sure Solver is selected in the Add-Ins dialog box, and then it should appear on the Data tab. For Mac versions of Excel, select Add-Ins from the Tools menu, make sure Solver is selected, then click OK; Solver should now appear on the Data tab.

To use the Solver in Excel, click the Solver button on the Data tab. Figure 1.8 shows the Solver dialog box that is used to tell Solver where each component of the model is located on the spreadsheet. In the first box, the objective cell is specified by clicking on TotalProfit (C22). Since the goal is to maximize the objective cell, Max has also been selected. The next entry in the Solver dialog box specifies the

changing variable cell to be AdvertisingBudget (C9). One of the options for a solving method also needs to be chosen. (The one chosen here is based on **nonlinear programming,** which is a type of decision model that uses nonlinear relationships. This has been a key technique of management science since shortly after the middle of the 20th century. This technique is the subject of Chapter 11.)

FIGURE 1.8

The Solver dialog box used to enter the objective cell (TotalProfit) and the changing variable cells (AdvertisingBudget).



Microsoft Corporation

nonlinear programming

A type of decision model that includes nonlinear relationships, as described in Chapter 11.

Clicking on Solve in the Solver dialog box now will optimize the model. It will change the value of the changing variable cell (AdvertisingBudget) to the value that leads to the maximum possible value in the objective cell (TotalProfit). Solver then will indicate that it has found the optimal solution, and it will replace the original number in the changing variable cell (AdvertisingBudget) with the optimal number. This result is shown in Figure 1.9. In particular, page 25 Figure 1.9 reveals that the optimal solution according to this spreadsheet model is to choose an advertising budget of $135,392, which would provide a predicted maximum possible profit of $77,425.

FIGURE 1.9

The spreadsheet obtained after solving the VRX2000 optimization model.

	A	B	C
1	**VRX2000 Optimization Model**		
2			
3		**Parameters:**	
4		Unit Variable Cost	$295
5		Unit Revenue	$400
6		Fixed Cost	$100,000
7			
8		**Decision Variable:**	
9		Advertising Budget	$135,392
10			
11		**Prediction Formula:**	**Sales** $\approx a\sqrt{x} + b$
12		a	7.01
13		b	400
14			
15		Expected Units Sold	2,979
16			
17		Total Revenue	$1,191,683
18		Total Variable Cost	$878,867
19		Fixed Cost	$100,000
20		Advertising Cost	$135,392
21			
22		**Total Profit**	$77,425

This now completes most of the work on this project for the analytics study team, but not all. Sections 2.9 and 2.10 will describe the additional work that a study team and management need to do when preparing to apply and implement a model. In this case, the analytics study team meets with the VRX CEO and marketing manager to provide them with both an oral and written report describing the study and its conclusions. The team also provides them with a *decision support system* (an interactive computer-based system) that will enable them to update the data for each

subsequent quarter and solve for the best advertising budget for that quarter.

The CEO congratulates the analytics study team on a job well done. She also makes a mental note to further increase the use of analytics throughout the company.

Review *Questions*

. What are variable costs?
. What are fixed costs?
. What intuitive property of the relationship between sales and advertising is *not* captured by linear regression?
. What is the potential serious flaw of using the polynomial equation to predict sales?
. What does the *square-root effect* suggest about the relationship between sales and advertising?
. What Excel tool can be used to perform optimization?

1.5 THE IMPACT OF MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND BUSINESS ANALYTICS

Both management science (or *operations research* as it is commonly called by practitioners) and business analytics have had an impressive impact on improving the efficiency of numerous organizations around the world. In the process, these disciplines have made a significant contribution to increasing the productivity of the economies of various countries. On the management science side, there now are a few dozen member countries in the International Federation of Operational Research Societies (IFORS), with each country having a national operations research society. Both Europe and Asia have federations of such societies to coordinate holding international conferences and publishing

international journals in those continents. With the more recent rise of business analytics, these societies have been embracing this discipline as well. We described in Section 1.1 how the Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS) is a particularly prominent international society that has fully embraced business analytics. Among its various journals is one now called *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* that regularly publishes articles describing major studies and the impact they had on their organizations.

These closely related disciplines have had numerous applications of various types in business and industry, sometimes resulting in annual savings of millions, or even hundreds of millions, of dollars. As an example, there has been extensive work on problems from the airline industry such as as how to most effectively assign airplanes and crews to flights and how to develop fare structures that maximize revenue. For decades, financial services firms have used portfolio selection techniques that were developed by management scientists who won the Nobel Prize in Economics for their work. Business analytics models have become a core component of the marketing discipline. Multinational corporations rely on management science for guiding the management of their supply chains. There are numerous other examples of applications of management science and business analytics that are having a dramatic impact on the companies involved.

The most important applications of management science and business analytics in business and industry have resulted in annual savings in the hundreds of millions of dollars.

Management science also is widely used outside business and industry. For example, it is having an increasing impact in the health-care area, with applications involving improved management of health-care delivery and operations, disease modeling, clinical diagnosis and decision making, radiation therapy, and so on. Applications of management science also abound at various levels of government, ranging from dealing with national security issues at the federal level to managing the delivery of emergency services at the municipal level. Other key governmental applications involve the

use of management science modeling to help guide energy, environmental, and global warming policies. Some of the earliest management science applications were military applications, including logistical planning and war gaming, and these continue today.

Management science also has had a major impact in the health-care area, in guiding key governmental policies, and in military applications.

These are just a sampling of the numerous applications of management science and business analytics that are having a major impact on the organizations involved. The list goes on and on.

To give you a better notion of the wide applicability of these disciplines, we list some actual applications in Table 1.3. Note the diversity of organizations and applications in the first two columns. The third column identifies the section where an “application vignette” devotes several paragraphs to describing the application and also references an article that provides full details. (This section includes one of these application vignettes, where this one mentions a wide variety of important applications at General Motors.) The last column indicates that these applications typically resulted in annual savings in the many millions of dollars. Furthermore, additional benefits not recorded in the table (e.g., improved service to customers and better managerial control) sometimes were considered to be even more important than these financial benefits. (You will have an opportunity to investigate these less tangible benefits further in Problems 1.3 and 1.4.) TABLE 1.3

Applications of Management Science and Business Analytics to Be Described in Application Vignettes

Organization	Area of Application	Section	Annual Savings
IBM	Reduce downtime for over 840.000 servers	1.2	$1 billion

Organization	Area of Application	Section	Annual Savings
Intel	Optimization of product design and supply chains	1.3	$5 billion more profit
General Motors	Numerous applications	1.5	Not estimated
Vungle	Apply predictive analytics to mobile advertising	2.5	$12 million more revenue
Continental and United	Reassign crews to flights when schedule disruptions occur	2.6	$40 million
Ingram Micro	Data-driven marketing campaigns	3.1	$350 million more revenue
CSAV	Various forecasting methods 4.6 $81 million		
Swift & Company	Improve sales and manufacturing performance	5.1	$12 million
Samsung Electronics	Reduce manufacturing times and inventory levels	5.7	$200 million more revenue
INDEVAL	Settle all securities transactions in Mexico	6.2	$150 million

Organization	Area of Application	Section	Annual Savings
Chevron	Optimize refinery operations	6.4	Nearly $1 billion
Taylor Communications	Assign print jobs to printers	6.6	$10 million
Welch’s	Optimize use and movement of raw materials	7.3	$150,000
Hewlett-Packard	Product portfolio management	9.1	$180 million
CSX Transportation	Allocate empty railcars to customers	9.1	$51 million
Norwegian companies	Maximize flow of natural gas through offshore pipeline network	9.3	$140 million
Swedish Forest Industry	Optimize the routes for transport services	9.4	$40–120 million
Waste Management	Develop a route-management system for trash collection and disposal	10.2	$100 million
MISO	Administer the transmission of electricity in 13 states	10.3	$700 million
Netherlands Railways	Optimize operation of a railway network	10.5	$105 million

Organization	Area of Application	Section	Annual Savings
Vattenfall	Optimize the design of offshore wind farms	10.6	$175 million more NPV
Bank Hapoalim Group	Develop a decision-support system for investment advisors	11.3	$31 million more revenue
DHL	Optimize the use of marketing resources	11.5	$260 million
CDC	Eradicate polio	12.7	$1.5 billion
General Motors	Improve the throughput of its production lines	13.5	$150 million
Syngenta	Increase the productivity of crops	14.1	$57 million
FAA	Manage air traffic flows in severe weather	14.2	$200 million
Sasol	Improve the efficiency of its production processes	14.3	$23 million
Merrill Lynch	Pricing analysis for providing financial services	15.4	$50 million more revenue
Kroger	Pharmacy inventory management	15.8	$10 million

A link to the articles in *Interfaces* or the *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics* that describe these applications in detail is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. We are grateful to INFORMS for our special partnership to make these articles available to you through this link. We think you will find these articles interesting and enlightening in illustrating the dramatic impact that management science sometimes can have on the success of a variety of organizations.

An Application Vignette

General Motors (GM) is one of the largest and most successful companies in the world. One major reason for this great success is that GM also is one of the world's leading users of **advanced business analytics and management science.** In recognition of the great impact that the application of these techniques has had on the success of the company, GM was awarded the **2016 INFORMS Prize.**

INFORMS (The Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences) awards the INFORMS Prize to just one organization each year for its particularly exceptional record in applying advanced analytics and operations research/-management science (OR/MS) throughout the organization. The award winner must have repeatedly applied these techniques in pioneering, varied, novel, and lasting ways. Following is the citation that describes why GM won the prize for 2016.

Citation: The 2016 INFORMS Prize is awarded to General Motors for its sustained record of innovative and impactful applied operations research and advanced analytics.

General Motors has hundreds of OR/MS practitioners worldwide who play a vital role in driving data-driven decisions in everything from designing, building, selling, and servicing vehicles to purchasing, logistics, and quality. The team is constantly

developing new business models and vetting emerging opportunities.

GM has developed new market research and analysis techniques to understand what products and features customers most want, to determine the ideal vehicles for their dealers to stock, and to identify the steps they can take to achieve GM's goal of creating customers for life.

GM is also leading the industry by using data science and advanced analytics to predict failure of automotive components and systems before customers are inconvenienced. GM's industry-first Proactive Alert messages notify customers through their OnStar system of a possible malfunction, transforming a potential emergency repair into routine planned maintenance.

"Over the last seven decades, OR/MS techniques have been used to improve our understanding of everything from traffic science and supply chain logistics to manufacturing productivity, product development, vehicles telematics and prognostics," said Gary Smyth, executive director of GM Global R&D Laboratories. "These approaches to problem solving permeate almost everything we do."

The impact OR/MS is now having on its business accelerated in 2007, when GM created a center of expertise for Operations Research to promote best practices and transfer new technologies. It since has expanded to include partner teams in product development, supply chain, finance, information technology and other functions.

(*Note:* The application vignette in Section 13.5 describes just one example of the numerous applications of advanced business analytics and management science at GM, where this one led to billions of dollars in savings and increased revenue.) "Past INFORMS Awards, 2016: General Motors," INFORMS.com
©INFORMS. Used with permission. All rights reserved.

You also will see a great variety of applications of management science and business analytics throughout the book in the form of case studies, examples, and end-of-chapter cases. Some of the applications are similar to ones described in application vignettes, but many others are quite different. However, they all generally fall into one of three broad categories, namely, applications in the areas of operations management, finance, and marketing. Tables 1.4, 1.5, and 1.6 list these applications in these three respective areas, where the first column identifies where the application is described. In the second column of each table, note the many different ways in which management science and business analytics can have a real impact in helping improve managerial decisions.

TABLE 1.4

Case Studies and Examples in the Area of Operations Management

Location	Type of Application
Sec. 5.1 onward	A case study: What is the most profitable mix of products?
Case 5-1	Which mix of car models should be produced?
Case 5-2	Which mix of ingredients should go into the casserole in a university cafeteria?
Case 5-3	Which mix of customer–service agents should be hired to staff a call center?
Sec. 6.3	Personnel scheduling of customer–service agents
Sec. 6.5	Minimize the cost of shipping a product from factories to customers
Sec. 6.6	Optimize the assignment of personnel to tasks
Case 6-1	How should a product be shipped to market?

Location	Type of Application
Case 6-3	Which mix of women's clothing should be produced for next season?
Cases 6-5, 8-4, 10-3	Develop a plan for assigning students to schools so as to minimize busing costs
Case 6-6	Which mixes of solid waste materials should be amalgamated into different grades of a salable product?
Case 6-7	How should qualified managers be assigned to new R&D projects?
Case 8-2	Develop and analyze a steel company's plan for pollution abatement
Case 8-3	Plan the mix of livestock and crops on a farm with unpredictable weather
Sec. 9.1	Minimize the cost of operating a distribution network
Secs. 9.2, 9.3	A case study: Maximize the flow of goods through a distribution network
Sec. 9.4	Find the shortest path from an origin to a destination
Case 9-1	Logistical planning for a military campaign
Case 9-3	Develop the most profitable flight schedules for an airline
Cases 9-4, 10.4	Operate and expand a private computer network
Sec. 10.3	Choose the best combination of R&D projects to pursue
Sec. 10.4	Select the best sites for emergency services facilities

Location	Type of Application
Sec. 10.5	Airline crew scheduling
Sec. 10.6	Production planning when setup costs are involved
Case 10-2	Make inventory decisions for a retailer’s warehouse
Sec. 11.4	Production planning when overtime is needed
Sec. 11.6	Find the shortest route to visit all the American League ballparks
Sec. 13.2	Many examples of commercial service systems, internal service systems, and transportation service systems that can be analyzed with queueing models
Sec. 13.4 onward	A case study: An analysis of competing proposals for more quickly providing maintenance services to customers
Cases 13-2, 14.2	Analysis of proposals for reducing in-process inventory
Sec. 14.1	Comparison of whether corrective maintenance or preventive maintenance is better
Secs. 14.2, 14.3	A case study: Would it be profitable for the owner of a small business to add an associate?
Case 14-1	Analysis of proposals for relieving a production bottleneck
Sec. 15.1	A case study: How much of a perishable product should be added to a retailer’s inventory?

Location	Type of Application
Sec. 15.3	Plan a complex project to ensure a strong likelihood of meeting the project deadline

TABLE 1.5

Case Studies and Examples in the Area of Finance

Location	Type of Application
Supplement to Chap 1	Break-even analysis
Case 1-1	Break-even analysis and what-if analysis
Sec. 2.1 onward	A case study: A bank evaluates applications for unsecured loans
Sec. 6.2	An airline choosing which airplanes to purchase
Sec. 6.2	Capital budgeting of real-estate development projects
Case 6-2	Develop a schedule for investing in a company's computer equipment
Sec. 7.1 onward	A case study: Develop a financial plan for meeting future cash flow needs
Case 7-1	Develop an investment and cash flow plan for a pension fund
Sec. 9.4	Minimize the cost of car ownership
Case 9-2	Find the most cost-effective method of converting various foreign currencies into dollars
Sec. 10.2	A case study: Determine the most profitable combination of investments

Location	Type of Application
Case 10-1	Develop an investment plan for purchasing art
Sec. 11.3	Portfolio selection that balances expected return and risk
Sec. 11.6	Select a portfolio to beat the market as frequently as possible
Case 11-2	Determine an optimal investment portfolio of stocks
Case 11-3	Develop a long-range plan to purchase and sell international bonds
Sec. 12.1 onward	A case study: Choose whether to drill for oil or sell the land instead
Case 12-1	Choose a strategy for the game show, “Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?”
Sec. 14.1	Analysis of a new gambling game
Sec. 15.2	Choose the bid to submit in a competitive bidding process
Sec. 15.4	Develop a financial plan when future cash flows are somewhat unpredictable
Sec. 15.5	Risk analysis when assessing financial investments
Sec. 15.6	How much overbooking should be done in the travel industry?
Case 15-1	Analysis of how a company’s cash flows might evolve over the next year
Case 15-2	Calculate the value of a European call option

TABLE 1.6

Case Studies and Examples in the Area of Marketing

Location	Type of Application
Sec. 1.4	A case study: Optimize the amount of advertising for products
Sec. 3.1 onward	A case study: Predicting the future behavior of prospective customers
Sec. 3.6	Affinity analysis and recommendation systems
Case 4-1	Improve forecasts of demand for a call center
Sec. 4.2 onward	A case study: Manage a call center for marketing goods over the telephone
Secs. 5.7, 6.3	Determine the best mix of advertising media
Case 5-1	Evaluate whether an advertising campaign would be worthwhile
Secs. 6.1, 6.4	A case study: Which advertising plan best achieves managerial goals?
Case 6-4	Develop a representative marketing survey
Case 8-1	Analysis of the trade-off between advertising costs and the resulting increase in sales of several products
Sec. 9.4	Balance the speed of bringing a new product to market and the associated costs
Sec. 11.4	Deal with nonlinear marketing costs
Case 11-1	Refine the advertising plan developed in the case study presented in Sections 6.1 and 6.4
Case 12-2	Should a company immediately launch a new product or test-market it first?

Location	Type of Application
Case 12-3	Should a company buy additional marketing research before deciding whether to launch a new product?
Case 12-4	Plan a sequence of decisions for a possible new product
Case 13-1	Estimate customer waiting times for calling into a call center

Even these long lists of applications in Tables 1.3 to 1.6 are just a sample of the numerous important ways in which management science and business analytics are applied in organizations around the world. We do not have enough space to provide a more comprehensive compilation of the important applications. (Other applications are included in the supplementary chapters at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.) A hallmark of management science and business analytics is their great flexibility in dealing with new managerial problems as they arise.

1.6 SOME SPECIAL FEATURES OF THIS BOOK

The focus of this book is on teaching what an enlightened future manager needs to learn from a management science and business analytics course. It is not on trying to train technical analysts. This focus has led us to include a number of special features that we hope you enjoy.

One special feature is that the entire book revolves around *modeling* as an aid to managerial decision making. This is what is particularly relevant to a manager. Although they may not use this term, all managers often engage in at least informal modeling (abstracting the essence of a problem to better analyze it), so learning more about the art of modeling is important. Since

managers instigate larger management science and business analytics studies done by others, they also need to be able to recognize the kinds of managerial problems where such a study might be helpful. Thus, a future manager should acquire the ability both to recognize when a management science or business analytics model might be applicable and to properly interpret the results from analyzing the model. Therefore, rather than spending substantial time in this book on mathematical theory, the mechanics of solution procedures, or the manipulation of spreadsheets, the focus is on the art of model formulation, the role of a model, and the analysis of model results. A wide range of model types is considered.

Another special feature is a heavy emphasis on *case studies* to better convey these ideas in an interesting way in the context of applications. Every chapter includes at least one case study that introduces and illustrates the application of that chapter's techniques in a realistic setting. In a few instances, the entire chapter revolves around a case study. Although considerably smaller and simpler than most real studies (to maintain clarity), these case studies are patterned after actual applications requiring a major management science and business analytics study. Consequently, they convey the whole process of such a study, some of the pitfalls involved, and the complementary roles of the study team and the manager responsible for the decisions to be made.

To complement these case studies, the chapters also include major cases at the end. These realistic cases can be used for individual assignments, team projects, or case studies in class.

Another special feature of this book is that its 15 chapters are supplemented by considerably more material on the book's website, www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.** For those desiring to go into more depth, a total of 10 supplements to the print chapters are provided on the website. Furthermore, seven additional complete chapters are available on the website. With one exception, each of these chapters also includes a case study to illuminate the material, as well as at least one end-of-the-chapter case. In fact, these chapters have a

total of 10 end-of-chapter cases in addition to the 42 such cases that accompany the 15 print chapters.

The book also places heavy emphasis on conveying the impressive impact that management science and business analytics are having on improving the efficiency of numerous organizations around the world. Therefore, you will see many examples of actual applications throughout the book in the form of boxed *application vignettes* that describe dramatic applications of management science and business analytics. You then will have the opportunity to learn more about these actual applications by reading the articles fully describing them through using the links provided in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. As indicated in Table 1.3, these applications sometimes resulted in annual savings of millions, tens of millions, or even hundreds of millions of dollars.

In addition, we try to provide you with a broad perspective about the nature of the real world of management science and business analytics in practice. It is easy to lose sight of this world when cranking through textbook exercises to master the mechanics of a series of techniques. Therefore, we shift some emphasis from mastering these mechanics to seeing the big picture. The case studies, cases, and descriptions of actual applications are part of this effort. In addition, a new Chapter 2 added to this edition provides an overview of how business analysts analyze problems when they employ management science and business analytics.

The book also includes a McGraw-Hill web-based learning tool called **Connect.** In addition to providing various instructor resources, Connect includes a powerful tool called **SmartBook** that provides personalized instruction to help students better learn the material. Many students might benefit by using SmartBook. This tool can be accessed at **connect.mheducation.com**. The preface provides more information about both Connect and SmartBook.

Connect

A web-based teaching and learning platform that provides both SmartBook and a full range of instructor resources.

SmartBook

A web-based tool within Connect that provides personalized instruction to help students learn the material better.

Another feature is the inclusion of one or more *solved problems* for *every* print chapter to help you get started on your homework for that chapter. The statement of each solved problem is given just above the Problems section of the chapter, and then you can find the complete solutions at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

As described further in the preface, this same website provides a full range of resources of interest to students, including access to supplementary text material (both supplements to book chapters and additional chapters) and much more. For example, this website includes numerous spreadsheet files for every chapter in this book. Each time a spreadsheet example is presented in the book, a live spreadsheet that shows the formulation and solution for the example also is provided. This gives a convenient reference, or even useful templates, when you set up spreadsheets to solve similar problems. Also, for many models in the book, template spreadsheet files are provided that already include all the equations necessary to solve the model. You simply enter the data for the model and the solution is immediately calculated.

page 31

The last, but certainly not the least, of the special features of this book is the accompanying software. We will describe and illustrate how to use today's premier spreadsheet package, Microsoft Excel, to formulate many models in a spreadsheet format. Many of the models considered in this book can be solved using standard Excel. Some Excel add-ins also are available to solve other models. Appendix A provides a primer on the use of Excel.

Included with standard Excel is an add-in, called Solver, which is used to solve most of the optimization models considered in the first half of this book. Also described in this edition of the textbook is a very powerful software package from Frontline Systems, Inc., called Analytic Solver® for Education (hereafter referred to as Analytic Solver). Instructions for downloading this software are available at

www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e. Some special features of Analytic Solver are a significantly enhanced version of the basic Solver included with Excel, a data mining software package (as covered in Chapters 2 and 3), forecasting tools (as covered in Chapter 4), the ability to build decision trees within Excel (as covered in Chapter 12), and tools to build computer simulation models within Excel (as covered in Chapter 15). In addition to the Analytic Solver add-in for Excel, you also have access to **AnalyticSolver.com**. This is cloud-based software accessed through a browser. It has the same look and essentially all the features of Analytic Solver in Excel, but can be used by any computer with access to the Internet without downloading additional software.

Most of the software used in this book is compatible with both Excel for Windows PCs and Excel for Macintosh computers (Macs). Analytic Solver is *not* directly compatible with Macs, although it works well on any Intel-based Mac with Boot Camp or virtualization software. A cloud-based version of this software is also available at **AnalyticSolver.com**. The cloud-based version works along with Excel (on either Mac or Windows) and is designed to look and feel as much as possible like the downloaded Analytic Solver add-in for Excel. For the most up-to-date information on software compatibility and relevant differences between Windows PC versions and Mac versions, please refer to the Software Compatibility link at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

We should point out that Excel is not designed for dealing with the really large models that occasionally arise in practice. More powerful software packages that are not based on spreadsheets generally are used to solve such models instead. However, management science and business analytics teams, not managers, primarily use these sophisticated packages (including using *modeling languages* to help input the large models). Since this book is aimed largely at future managers, we will not have you use these packages.

To alert you to relevant learning aids available, the end of each chapter has a list entitled “Learning Aids for This Chapter.”

1.7 Summary

This chapter introduces the closely related disciplines of management science and business analytics. Both disciplines attempt to aid managerial decision making by applying a scientific approach to managerial problems.

A complete analysis often includes the following three sequential stages. First, *descriptive analytics* involves analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what has happened so far. Second, *predictive analytics* use models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future. Third, *prescriptive analytics* use decision models, including the optimization models of management science, to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making. Although both management science and business analytics may spend some time on all three stages, the techniques of business analytics focus mainly on the first two. Management science also can contribute substantially in the second stage, but its main expertise lies in the third stage. Therefore, these two disciplines complement each other extremely well. Consequently, the team studying a major managerial problem normally includes considerable expertise in both business analytics and management science. Furthermore, a business analyst who largely specializes in one of these disciplines often has considerable knowledge of the other discipline as well.

There are some differences in the methodologies of the two disciplines. Management science tends to make more use of mathematical models and spreadsheet models, followed by applying a standard type of algorithm to solve the model. Business

analytics also uses models, but the greater emphasis is on using data to analyze the problem at hand.

Another difference between the two disciplines lies in their histories. The rapid development of the management science discipline began in the middle of the 20th century, so its methodologies now are very well developed and very powerful. The business analytics discipline is much younger and so is still evolving rather quickly. Its rise soon followed the rise of the era of *big data* near the turn of the century to provide a way of effectively analyzing the massive amounts of data becoming available. The increasing momentum of the business analytics movement continues to be very impressive.

Section 1.4 provides an illustration of the business analytics and management science approach in action together. Chapter 2 also presents an overview of how business analysts use business analytics and management science to analyze problems.

Management science and business analytics have had an impressive impact on improving the efficiency of numerous organizations around the world. In fact, many award-winning applications have resulted in annual savings in the millions, tens of millions, or even hundreds of millions of dollars.

The focus of this book is on emphasizing what an enlightened future manager (or perhaps a future business analyst) needs to learn from a management science and business analytics course. Therefore, the book revolves around modeling as an aid to managerial decision making. Many case studies (within the chapters) and cases (at the end of chapters) are used to better convey these ideas.

Glossary

artificial intelligence The goal of artificial intelligence is to build intelligent computer programs and machines that can simulate human thinking capability and behavior. (Section 1.2), 10

big data Refers to the era of big data we have entered in recent decades where enormous and increasing amounts of transactional data commonly are available for analysis. (Section 1.2), 7

business analytics The art and the science of transforming data into insights for making better business decisions. (Section 1.2), 1

causal forecasting with regression Obtains a forecast of the quantity of interest by relating it directly to one or more other quantities that drive the quantity of interest. (Section 1.4), 17

classification Using models to predict a *yes-or-no* outcome (or perhaps one of a small set of possible outcomes). (Section 1.2), 8

computer simulation Using a computer to simulate the operation of an entire process or system, as described in Chapters 14 and 15. (Section 1.2), 7

Connect A web-based teaching and learning platform that provides both SmartBook and a full range of instructor resources. (Section 1.6), 30

data science An interdisciplinary field that uses scientific methods, processes, algorithms, and systems to extract knowledge or insights from even massive amounts of data in various forms. (Section 1.2), 9

data scientist A common title given to highly trained practitioners of data science or business analytics who mainly focus on the application of science to the analysis of data. (Section 1.2), 9

data visualization After exploring the data to identify the insights, the goal of data visualization is then to communicate these insights clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics. (Sections 1.2 and 1.4), 7

descriptive analytics Analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what has happened so far. (Section 1.2), 1

diminishing returns When the benefit of increasing the level of an activity gradually decreases with further increases in the level of that activity. (Section 1.4), 16

forecasting models Models for predicting a future quantity of some type based on the historical pattern of that quantity, as described in Chapter 4. (Section 1.2), 7

INFORMS The acronym for Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences, a prominent international society that embraces both management science and business analytics. (Section 1.3), 13

linear regression Approximating the relationship between a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) and a related quantity (the independent variable(s)) by a straight line. (Section 1.4), 17

mathematical model An approximate representation of, for example, a business problem that is expressed in terms of mathematical symbols and expressions. (Section 1.1), 6

model An approximate representation of something. (Section 1.1), 2

machine learning A technology that allows computers to learn automatically from historical relationships and

trends in the data in order to do such things as making data-driven predictions. (Section 1.2), 9

management science A discipline that attempts to aid managerial decision making by applying a scientific approach to managerial problems that involve quantitative factors. (Section 1.1), 4

nonlinear programming A type of decision model that includes nonlinear relationships, as described in Chapter 11. (Section 1.4), 24

page 33

nonlinear regression Approximating the relationship between a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) and a related quantity (the independent variable(s)) by a smooth curve. (Section 1.4), 17

operations research The traditional name for management science that still is widely used outside of business schools. (Section 1.1), 4

operations research analyst A common title for a management science analyst. (Section 1.3), 12

optimization Finding the best solution for a decision model. (Section 1.4), 24

overfitting the data Making a predictive model less accurate when using new data sets by having the model align *too* closely to the given data instead of taking into account the inherent idiosyncrasies in the given data due to randomness. (Section 1.4), 19

predictive analytics Using models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future. (Section 1.2), 7

prescriptive analytics Using decision models to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making. (Section 1.2), 1

randomness The apparent lack of pattern or predictability in events. (Section 1.4), 16

range name A descriptive name given to a cell (or range of cells) in a spreadsheet that immediately identifies what is there. (Section 1.4 and Supplement to Chapter 1), 22

SmartBook A web-based tool within Connect that provides personalized instruction to help students learn the material better. (Section 1.6), 30

spreadsheet modeling An approximate representation of, for example, a business problem that is laid out on a spreadsheet in a way that facilitates analysis of the problem. (Section 1.1), 13

scatter plot A two-dimensional graph where each point is located on the graph based upon a pair of values, one measured on the horizontal axis and the other on the vertical axis. (Section 1.4), 15

spreadsheet modeling Using a spreadsheet to formulate and apply the models of management science and business analytics. (Section 1.3), 13

trendline The line or curve that shows the prediction of a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) for any value of a related quantity (the independent variable(s)). (Section 1.4), 17

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel File: *VRX2000*

Supplement to This Chapter:

Solved Problem

1.S1 Choosing an Advertising Budget

Reconsider the example of choosing the advertising budget at VRX that is presented in Section 1.4. In addition to the VRX2000, VRX also has a low-end virtual reality headset, the VRX1000. This model sells for $299 and the variable cost for producing the headset is $245. The quarterly fixed costs associated with the VRX1000 are $120,000. VRX would like to determine the best level of advertising for the VRX1000. Past data for advertising and sales are given in the table below.

	Advertising Budget	Sales
Q4	$120,000	8,023
Q1	$240,000	11,984
Q2	$40,000	5,135
Q3	$160,000	9,843
Q4	$400,000	13,845
Q1	$200,000	10,134
Q2	$0	1,645
Q3	$80,000	7,384
Q4	$320,000	12,146

a. Use Excel to create a scatter plot to help visualize the relationship between Sales and advertising.

b. VRX thinks the same type of square-root relationship between sales and advertising found for the VRX2000 in Section 1.4 applies to the VRX1000 as well, that is, $Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b)$. Using Excel, create a new scatter plot with Sales on the vertical axis and the square root of advertising on the horizontal axis. Use Excel's trendline feature to determine the value for *a* and *b* that provides the best fit for the prediction formula $Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b)$.

c. Using the prediction formula from part *b,* build an optimization model to determine the best level of advertising for the VRX1000. (Feel free to use the original spreadsheet model for the VRX2000 as a template; it is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) Solve the model with Solver. What is the best level of advertising and the corresponding estimate for total profit?

Problems

1.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the application of predictive analytics at IBM that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 1.2. Then list and briefly describe the three modules used for this application.

1.2. Read the referenced article that fully describes the application of end-to-end analytics at the Intel Corporation that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 1.3. List some of the techniques of management science and business analytics that were applied. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this application.

1.3. Select one of the applications of management science and business analytics listed in Table 1.3. Read

the article that is referenced in the application vignette presented in the section shown in the third column. (A link to all these articles is at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.) Write a two-page summary of the application and the benefits (including nonfinancial benefits) it provided.

1.4. Select three of the applications of management science and business analytics listed in Table 1.3. For each one, read the article that is referenced in the application vignette presented in the section shown in the third column. (A link to all these articles is at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.) For each one, write a one-page summary of the application and the benefits (including nonfinancial benefits) it provided.

1.5. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. The onslaught of the computer revolution gave great impetus to the growth of the management science discipline.

b. Management science is a powerful discipline for making managerial decisions.

c. The special contribution of management science lies in its unique ability to deal with the complex qualitative factors in managerial problems.

1.6. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. The era of *big data* has created new challenges that require the use of business analytics.

b. Business analytics focuses on identifying the relevant data for making business decisions.

c. The powerful techniques of management science commonly are used for performing

prescriptive analytics.

1.7. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. Management science and business analytics were developed together many decades ago to analyze complementary aspects of managerial problems.

b. Management science and business analytics complement each other so well that they should tend to merge over time.

c. Business schools need to start expanding their training of future business analysts in the areas of business analytics and management science to meet the growing demand in the business world.

1.8. Reconsider the example of choosing the advertising budget for the VRX2000 that is presented in Section 1.4. There it was determined that the optimal level of advertising spending was $135,392 leading to a profit of $77,425. Now suppose that the component prices for the VRX2000 have been fluctuating. The variable cost for producing the VRX2000 has now increased from $295 to $315. Due to the competitive marketplace, VRX feels they cannot pass these costs on to the consumer, so the company plans to keep the selling price of the VRX2000 at $400.

a. Clearly the higher variable cost will have a negative impact on the profit for the VRX2000. Do you think this would also impact the best level of advertising? If so, do you think the best level of advertising will increase or decrease? Provide a hypothesis.

b. Re-solve the optimization model for the VRX2000 considering the new variable cost. (The original spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.) What impact did the increased variable cost have (if any) on the best level of advertising?

c. Suppose instead that the variable cost for the VRX2000 decreases to $275. Re-solve the optimization model. What impact did the decreased variable cost have (if any) on the best level of advertising?

d. Reconsider your hypothesis from part *a.* After re-solving the model for the different variable costs in parts *b* and *c,* what does the relationship between the best level of advertising and the variable cost appear to be? Can you explain the intuition behind this relationship?

1.9. Reconsider the example of choosing the advertising budget at VRX that is presented in Section 1.4. In addition to the VRX2000, VRX also has a higher-end virtual-reality headset, the VRX3000. This model sells for $725 and the variable cost for producing the headset is $495. The quarterly fixed costs associated with the VRX3000 are $80,000. VRX would like to determine the best level of advertising for the VRX3000. Past data for advertising and sales are given in the table below.

	Advertising Budget	Sales
Q4	$30,000	568
Q1	$60,000	750
Q2	$10,000	380

	Advertising Budget	Sales
Q3	$40,000	612
Q4	$100,000	910
Q1	$50,000	697
Q2	$0	149
Q3	$20,000	496
Q4	$80,000	838

a. Use Excel to create a scatter plot to help visualize the relationship between Sales and advertising.

b. VRX thinks the same type of square-root relationship between sales and advertising found for the VRX2000 in Section 1.4 applies to the VRX3000 as well, that is, $Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b$. Using Excel, create a new scatter plot with Sales on the vertical axis and the square root of advertising on the horizontal axis. Use Excel's trendline feature to determine the value for *a* and *b* that provides the best fit for the prediction formula $Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b$.).

page 35

c. Using the prediction formula from part *b,* build an optimization model to determine the best level of advertising for the VRX3000. (Feel free to use the original spreadsheet model for the VRX2000 as a template; it is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) Solve the model with Solver. What is the best level of advertising and the corresponding estimate for total profit?

Case 1-1

VRX Revisited: Updating the Model with New Data Over Time

In Section 1.4, the analytics study team was tasked with making a recommendation for the best level of advertising for the VRX2000 during the upcoming first quarter (Q1). They used historical data and an analysis of the relationship between sales and advertising to determine that sales would be approximately $7.01\sqrt{Advertising} + 400$. Then, factoring in the quarterly fixed costs of $100,000, the unit variable cost of $295, and the unit revenue of $400 for the VRX 2000, they used optimization to determine that the advertising level that would maximize profit was approximately $135,000. As indicated in Figure 1.9, this was predicted to lead to sales of approximately 2,979 units for the VRX2000 with a total profit of $77,425. As the analytics study team stressed, however, all of this is only a prediction. Forecasts are often wrong, at least by a little bit.

Management at VRX followed the advice of the analytics study team and set an advertising budget of $135,000 for Q1. It is now the end of Q1, and the results have come in. Actual sales were 2,847 units, somewhat lower than forecast. It is now time to set an advertising budget for Q2.

a. As VRX has not noticed substantial seasonality effects that might cause sales to fluctuate from quarter to quarter, they expect sales in a typical Q2 to be similar to a typical Q1 (for any given advertising level). Should VRX reuse the existing model that would suggest they should also set the advertising level at $135,000 for Q2? Provide some arguments for both why this might, or might not, be a good idea.
b. The analytics study team recommends incorporating the new data into the model. Add the new data from Q1, and then recreate a scatter plot similar to Figure 1.1 to visualize the relationship

between sales and advertising. Does the new data suggest a significant change in this relationship?

c. Assuming the same type of square-root relationship between sales and advertising, that is, $Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b$, incorporate the new data from Q1 and recreate a new scatter plot similar to Figure 1.5, with Sales on the vertical axis and the square root of advertising on the horizontal axis. Use Excel's trendline feature to determine the values for *a* and *b* that provides the best fit for the prediction formula ($Sales \approx a\sqrt{Advertising} + b$).

d. Using the updated prediction formula from part *c,* update the optimization model from Figure 1.7, and then re-run Solver to find the best advertising level for Q2. Compare the results from this updated optimization model to the results from the original model shown in Figure 1.9. How did factoring in the new data from Q1 affect the results?

e. Suppose VRX sets the advertising budget for Q2 as determined in part *d,* rounded to the nearest $1,000. Suppose further that *actual* sales in Q2 turn out to be 3,012. Repeat parts *b, c,* and *d* to now determine the best advertising level for Q3.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 2

Overview of the Analysis Process

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to describe each of the following phases of a project where business analysts use business analytics and management science to address major managerial issues.

1. Define the problem.
2. Gather and organize relevant data.
3. Clean the data.
4. Use descriptive analytics to explore the data.
5. Communicate performance information using data visualization.
6. Prepare for predictive analytics by choosing the variables and models.
7. Develop the prediction or classification model.
8. Partition and test the model.
9. Choose and implement the best predictive model.
10. Formulate a decision model to begin applying prescriptive analytics.

1. Learn how to derive solutions from the decision model.
2. Test the decision model.
3. Prepare to apply the decision model.
4. Implementation.

This chapter provides an overview of the major phases that commonly are included in a typical large project being undertaken by a team of business analysts on behalf of management. The project described in the case study used throughout this chapter involves the team studying a major managerial problem and then working with management to implement a better approach, including perhaps new systems and procedures.

Many students using this textbook will become managers rather than business analysts with substantial training in management science and/or business analytics. For such students, this chapter has been written to enable them to better supervise and evaluate the teams of business analysts who conduct major studies for them. For students who aspire to become business analysts, this chapter should provide a broader perspective of the scope of the work involved.

More limited studies may only involve performing one or two of the stages of analytics. Regardless of how many stages are applied, this chapter describes the necessary steps for each stage.

2.1 A CASE STUDY: FIRST BANK EVALUATES APPLICATIONS FOR UNSECURED LOANS

First Bank is the oldest bank in a prosperous city in northern California. Dating back to soon after the founding of the city during the Gold Rush days, the bank has grown with the city. It is highly respected as a leading member of the city's business community that

has helped the city to prosper. Most people who live in or near the city use the bank for various services. These customers come with widely varying financial backgrounds and First Bank prides itself in serving a wide variety of clientele.

In addition to home loans and car loans, First Bank offers unsecured personal loans for select customers. Unsecured loans don't require pledging an asset such as a house or car as collateral. Therefore, higher interest rates are typically charged for an unsecured loan as compared to a mortgage or car loan.

Because of the high interest rates, these personal loans can be quite lucrative for First Bank. However, they carry a significant risk of default. With a mortgage or car loan where the house or car serves as collateral, if the customer defaults, the collateral can be liquidated to pay off the loan. With an unsecured loan, the bank doesn't have this backstop. When a customer misses multiple payments, a collection agency is used to attempt recovery of funds that are past due. However, sometimes these loans end in default and are written off as a loss.

Due to the risk associated with unsecured personal loans, First Bank must be very careful in approving such a loan. Each potential customer fills out a loan application with all their financial details, including such information as their income, years of employment, their other debt and regular monthly payments (e.g., rent or mortgage), and more. First Bank also uses a credit rating company to run a credit check.

A credit rating company maintains the credit ratings of many, many millions of individuals. The credit score ranges on a scale from 300 to 850. This score reflects the individual's payment history, debt, age, number of credit inquiries, and more. A customer with a good history of making payments on time, with little debt, and with a long history of maintaining good credit will tend to have a higher score and is generally considered to be a lower risk for default. A customer that has previously missed payments, filed for bankruptcy, or has little credit history will have a lower credit score and would be considered a higher risk for default.

Throughout its long history, interest from its loans has been a key source of income for the bank. These loans originally required collateral. However, as of the beginning of 2000, the bank changed its policy to allow applications for unsecured loans at a higher interest rate. The hope was that this would increase the bank's net income by doing an excellent job of predicting which proposed loans would be as safe as possible (little chance of ending in a default). The results so far have been mixed. Therefore, after hearing for years about the power of analytics, management recently ordered that "scientific methods" should be applied to improve this prediction process.

The next sections will include the story of how business analysts used business analytics and management science to help First Bank improve their loan policies.

Review *Questions*

. What is the primary difference between unsecured loans and secured loans?

. What factors do credit rating companies use to determine an individual's credit score?

2.2 DEFINE THE PROBLEM

For the remainder of this chapter, we will consider the type of situation where management is uncertain about how to proceed to address a major concern and so has assigned a team of business analysts with the task of carefully studying this problem and making recommendations. The team will be using the applicable tools of business analytics and management science to analyze the problem with the full support of management. With the help of the case study, this chapter will describe the various typical phases of such a project.

The Complementary Roles of the Study Team and Management

The first thing to recognize is that a study team normally works in an advisory capacity. The team members are not just given a problem and told to solve it however they see fit. Instead, they advise management (often one key decision maker). The team performs a detailed technical analysis of the problem and then presents recommendations to management. Frequently, the report to management will identify a number of alternatives that are particularly attractive under different assumptions or over a range of values of some policy parameter that can be evaluated only by management (e.g., the trade-off between cost and benefits). Management evaluates the study and its recommendations, takes into account a variety of intangible factors, and makes the final decision based on its best judgment. Consequently, it is vital for the study team to get on the same wavelength as management (including identifying the “right” problem from management’s viewpoint) and to build the support of management for the course that the study is taking.

The study team makes recommendations to management, which then makes the final decisions.

In contrast to textbook examples, most practical problems encountered by study teams are initially described to them in a vague, imprecise way. Therefore, the first order of business is to study the relevant system and then to consult with management to develop a well-defined statement of the problem of concern to management.

Another key topic for the study team and management to discuss is the issue of data. They will need to assess the situation regarding the availability of relevant data. How much is readily available? How much more could be obtained with considerable effort? Since an analytics study is driven by the data, this assessment of the volume of available data and the level of data detail will have a significant impact on the feasible scope of the project.

As part of this conversation with management, the study team also clarifies the special kinds of contributions it can make. In particular, the three stages of analytics (descriptive, predictive, and prescriptive) that are described in Sections 2.3–2.5 are briefly

reviewed to explore the specific issues that management wants investigated. Are there some metrics for measuring the performance of the company to date that management would like illuminated through descriptive analytics and its data visualization techniques? Are there any predictions of the behavior of prospective customers that would be of interest to management? If so, predictive analytics can be used to develop these predictions. Does management want certain prescriptions of what should be done in the future by using prescriptive analytics? For each of these three stages, the study team will need to elicit specific details from management about what (if anything) should be pursued. Some studies may only require descriptive analytics, while others might require proceeding through two or all three stages.

This discussion with management about what they want pursued can be fairly straightforward for the first two stages of analytics. However, it becomes considerably more complicated for the case of prescriptive analytics where a considerable number of decisions need to be made about how to define the problem. We consider this latter case next.

Additional Problem Definition Needed for Prescriptive Analytics

Section 2.5 describes how decision models are used to perform prescriptive analytics. These models use the language of mathematics to fully define the problem. Solving this problem mathematically then identifies the best prescription for what to do in the future (according to the model).

Defining the entire problem in a decision model requires defining (1) the individual decisions to be made, (2) the overall objective for the problem, and (3) the constraints on what can be done. This process of problem definition is a crucial one because it greatly affects how relevant the conclusions of the study will be. It is difficult to extract a “right” answer from the “wrong” problem!

Here are three items that need to be pinned down in order to define the problem.

To illustrate the nature of a decision model, consider the *product-mix problem.* This problem arises when a company has multiple products and wishes to determine the best mix of these products, given the limited resources available for producing these products. The individual decisions are the production rates of the individual products. The overall objective commonly is to maximize the total profit (although we discuss below some alternative objectives for some prescriptive analytics problems). For each resource, a constraint is needed that specifies mathematically that the production of the products cannot consume more of that resource than is available.

The product-mix problem will be covered more fully in Chapter 5.

Ascertaining the appropriate overall objective is a particularly important aspect of problem definition. To do this, it is necessary first to identify the member (or members) of management who actually will be making the decisions concerning the system under study and then to probe into this individual's thinking regarding the pertinent objectives. (Involving the decision maker from the outset also is essential to build her or his support for the implementation of the study.)

Selecting the overall objective for a prescriptive analytics problem is a key step that requires strong input from management.

By its nature, management science/business analytics is concerned with the welfare of the entire organization rather than that of only certain of its components. The resulting study seeks solutions that are optimal for the overall organization rather than suboptimal solutions that are best for only one component. Therefore, the objectives that are formulated ideally should be those of the entire organization. However, this is not always convenient. Many problems primarily concern only a portion of the organization, so the analysis would become unwieldy if the stated objectives were too general and if explicit consideration were given to all side effects on the rest of the organization. Instead, the objectives used in the study should be as specific as they can be, while still encompassing the main goals of

the decision maker and maintaining a reasonable degree of consistency with the higher-level objectives of the organization.

To accomplish this, one possible approach for profit-making organizations is to use **long-run profit maximization** (while considering the time value of money to give more weight to immediate profits) as the sole objective. The adjective *long-run* indicates that this objective provides the flexibility to consider activities that do not translate into profits immediately (e.g., research and development projects) but need to do so eventually in order to be worthwhile. This approach has considerable merit. This objective is specific enough to be used conveniently, and yet it seems to be broad enough to encompass the basic goal of profit-making organizations. In fact, it can be argued that all other legitimate objectives can be translated into this one.

long-run profit maximization

An attractive objective for a decision model because it considers future profits (while considering the time value of money) in addition to short-term profits.

Long-run profit maximization is an attractive objective because it considers both eventual profits and immediate profits.

However, in actual practice, many profit-making organizations do not use this approach. A number of studies of U.S. corporations have found that management tends to adopt the goal of satisfactory profits, combined with other objectives, instead of focusing on long-run profit maximization. Typically, some of these other objectives might be to maintain stable profits, increase (or maintain) one's share of the market, provide for product diversification, maintain stable prices, improve worker morale, maintain family control of the business, and increase company prestige. Fulfilling these objectives might achieve long-run profit maximization, but the relationship may be sufficiently obscure that it may not be convenient to incorporate them all into this one objective.

Here are some other objectives that might be adopted instead of maximizing long-run profit.

Returning to the Case Study: Defining the Problem at First Bank

A team of business analysts has been assigned the project of studying unsecured loans at First Bank. The study team meets with the bank's CEO to help define the problem. The vice president who heads the Loan Department also is present.

The meeting begins with the CEO stressing the importance of this project for improving the bank's bottom line. The bank has been doing reasonably well, but loans that end in default can have a big negative impact. On the other hand, the considerably larger interest rates being charged on unsecured loans is a big help as long as defaults are fairly rare.

The CEO then asks the vice president to describe to her how decisions are made on whether to approve applications for unsecured loans and what interest rates to charge. He explains that the bank has an excellent team of loan officers who carefully assess the applications and then pass the applications on to him with a recommendation on whether to approve the loan. If the loan is approved, the policy has been to set the interest rate based simply on the applicant's credit score, with higher rates charged for customers with lower credit scores. During the discussion that follows, he admits that some loan officers are considerably more conservative than others in their recommendations and that it is difficult for him to make the close judgment decisions. He wishes there was a more objective method of making the loan approval decisions. He also wishes there was a more comprehensive method for setting the appropriate interest rate.

At this point, the CEO explains that these are exactly the issues she wants the study team to address. She has heard very good things about the power of analytics. She wants the team to use these kinds of scientific methods to make the best possible decisions based on the facts of each case as uncovered by the loan officers. Further discussion reveals that the CEO wants to maximize the bank's profits on the average, so the study team adopts

this objective. (Statisticians refer to the “profits on the average” as the “expected profit” and we will use the latter term hereafter.)

The CEO also is interested in examining the bank’s overall portfolio of loan products to improve their profits while managing risk. Specifically, she asks how we could determine the best mix of both unsecured loans and secured loans (such as car loans and home loans) to include within First Bank’s portfolio.

With this input from the CEO, the study team is now ready to define the problem. The first step will be to study how these loans have been performing for First Bank so far. How often do these loans end in default? What types of customers have been more likely to default? How profitable have these loans been for First Bank? These types of questions can be answered utilizing the tools of descriptive analytics covered in Section 2.3.

The study team now understands how decisions have been made on whether to approve applications for unsecured loans and what interest rates to charge for these loans. The ultimate goal is then to work with management to improve these processes. To help First Bank decide whether to approve a loan for a new loan applicant and what interest rate to charge, it is essential to be able to predict the likelihood of default. This prediction would be based upon the various characteristics of the applicant, such as their credit score, income, and debt. Armed with the existing historical data, the techniques and models of predictive analytics introduced in Section 2.4 can be used to help make this type of prediction.

Given the ability to predict the likelihood of default for any given customer, mathematical models can be developed to help prescribe the best policies for First Bank. What interest rates should be charged for different categories of customers? What is the best portfolio of loans that would provide the best tradeoff between risk and return? These types of questions can be addressed using the models of prescriptive analytics introduced in Section 2.5.

Review *Questions*

. What are the complementary roles of the study team and management in defining the problem?
. When the study team completes its analysis, what is the process for making the final decision?
. What are the components of a decision model?
. What are some objectives that management might choose for a study?
. How has the loan interest rate been determined at First Bank?
. What are three questions that could be addressed with descriptive analytics to show how unsecured loans have been performing for First Bank?
. What is an essential prediction for a new loan applicant at First Bank?
. When performing predictive analytics, what criteria would be used to determine whether a new loan applicant at First Bank is likely to default?
. The First Bank study team will use prescriptive analytics to study which two types of policies?

2.3 PERFORMING DESCRIPTIVE ANALYTICS

Descriptive analytics is focused on analyzing data to create informative *descriptions* of what has happened so far. Following a brief introduction, we will describe the four steps outlined below for performing descriptive analytics.

STEP 1: Gather and organize relevant data

STEP 2: Clean the data

STEP 3: Explore the data

STEP 4: Communicate performance information using data visualization

Descriptive analytics is the type of business analytics that is most commonly used and best understood because it involves the common task of exploring data and then using the data to describe the business. Now that we have entered the era of big data, descriptive analytics has become a key tool of virtually any major business firm (and occasionally other organizations) for analyzing the masses of relevant data and then reporting the important conclusions.

Business analytics places a special focus on analyzing data.

Note that the four steps listed above all mention data. This is because descriptive analytics is totally driven by the relevant data. In this era of big data, there may be massive amounts of relevant data stored in various sources. Therefore, the first challenge is to gather and organize the relevant data. When extracting the data from various sources, it is almost inevitable that certain data points will be defective in some way (incorrect or incomplete or improperly formatted, and so forth), so it is important to "clean" such data. Then the data should be carefully examined to fully understand what is there.

This now sets the stage for the big payoff in step 4. Many business analysts (including some with the title of "**data scientist**") have learned the art of using powerful "data visualization" techniques to vividly communicate performance information to managers and others. This is done through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics while sometimes using multiple colors. You will see some examples a little later.

data scientist

A common title given to highly trained practitioners of data science or business analytics.

Now let us take a closer look at the four steps.

STEP 1: Gather and Organize Relevant Data

Back in the latter part of the 20th century, business analysts often had to spend a surprising amount of time gathering all the relevant data. The organization's staff often also had to expend great effort to assist in this endeavor. Then came the era of **big data** where massive amounts of data have become available to study almost any problem. The data surge has been a result of sophisticated computer tracking of all of the organization's internal transactions. The data also can come flooding in from sources such as web traffic, social networks, sensors of various types, and captures of audio and video recordings. Consequently, the problem commonly encountered now when gathering data is that there is far too much data available than can be conveniently used rather than too little. The data must be searched, organized, and analyzed to determine which parts are relevant for the current study.

big data

Refers to the era of big data we have entered in recent decades where enormous and increasing amounts of transactional data commonly are available for analysis.

One question during this new era of big data is how to retain and organize massive amounts of data that can be readily accessed as needed. Historically, data often have been stored in transaction databases that provide details about individual transactions of a certain type (e.g., individual invoices sent or paid). However, with floods of various types of data coming in, it is now becoming common to use *data warehouses* that can receive massive amounts of data that are organized around customer, vendor, product, and activity history. A **data warehouse** is a system that aggregates data from many sources into a single collection and includes tools to assist business analysts and data scientists with performing business analytics to derive valuable insights.

data warehouse

A system that aggregates data from many sources into a single collection.

Data warehouses now are commonly used to aggregate massive amounts of data.

Another question is how to further organize the data so that relevant portions can be identified and retrieved, and then manipulated as needed to aid analysis of the problem under consideration. Any large organization typically will have an information technology (IT) department that specializes in how this should be done most efficiently and effectively. The era of big data has led to great advances in IT methodology.

The ability of an organization to gather and organize reasonably accurate and relevant data is a key prerequisite to being able to conduct sound studies. The available data tell a story about the problem under consideration. Some of these data then will need to be incorporated into the model being used to represent and study the problem under consideration. The data gathered to study this problem needs to be complete enough and accurate enough to convey a valid representation of the problem.

Gathering the data often requires extracting it from a variety of different sources. An intrinsic part involves data validation to confirm that the data from different sources are compatible. This extraction process can be a challenging one because the relevant data might be anywhere in perhaps multiple large (or even massive) databases or even data warehouses. Starting this process requires having a careful definition of the problem (as described in Section 2.2), including clearly stating the objectives and evaluation criteria for the study, in order to be able to identify relevant data. The exploration process to find the relevant data then requires a systematic sampling process through the various sources of data.

It is also important to take some time to *understand* the data. How is the data formatted? Are the data expressed as numerical values? If so, what are the units for these values? For example, when dealing with dollar amounts, it often is convenient to use units of thousands of dollars (or even millions of dollars) instead of individual dollars.

Returning to the Case Study: Gather and Organize the Relevant Data for First Bank

To determine the best set of loan-approval policies for First Bank, the study team will need to collect some data. They would eventually like to be able to predict the likelihood of default given the financial record of an applicant.

What data will be needed for this sort of analysis? The study team determines that they need a complete financial record of every applicant at the time of the loan approval decision, and then whether each customer paid off the loan or defaulted. Given such data, an analysis could be done to determine the relationship between the financial factors and the likelihood of default.

When a customer applies for a personal loan from First Bank, the loan application data is entered into a database. As the loan moves through the underwriting process toward the final decision (approve or deny the loan), the status is also tracked in this same loan approval database.

If the loan is approved and the funds disbursed, the payback of the loan is handled by the loan collection department at First Bank. This department tracks the loan in a loan processing database, keeping such information as the loan balance, interest due, payment status, and ultimately whether the loan ends successfully (is fully paid back) or ends in default.

Because the study team needs to know the customer financial records as well as whether the loan ends in default, data will need to be combined from both the loan application database (for the customer financials) *and* the loan processing database (to determine whether the loan ended in default). Fortunately, this is a straightforward process, since the data across the two databases can be easily synchronized based on the common loan account numbers. The study team compiles in a spreadsheet the complete record of every unsecured loan that First Bank has approved since they started offering them near the start of the century. The more recent data for loans that are still active (not fully paid off) were intentionally

excluded because it is not yet known whether they will default. Figure 2.1 shows this data for the first 10 customers. The complete set of data for 3,684 unsecured loans is available for download at **www.mhhe.hillier7e**.

FIGURE 2.1

The first 10 records of the First Bank dataset of unsecured loans. The meaning of each column heading is defined in Figure 2.2.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
2	102379	2/17/2000	658	30	708	28.3%	1-2	HI	4.2	60	16.99%	0
3	103052	2/28/2000	714	67	1867	33.4%	1-2	DC	3.3	48	12.99%	0
4	100630	3/23/2000	635	32	470	17.6%	1-2	EE	3.1	36	17.99%	0
5	100407	3/29/2000	832	46	1175	30.7%	4-5	EE	2.4	36	8.99%	0
6	103030	3/30/2000	598	62	1047	20.3%	2-3	HI	3.6	60	19.99%	0
7	100187	4/6/2000	696	43	1220	34.0%	5+	DC	12.7	60	14.99%	0
8	100575	4/11/2000	721	42	327	9.4%	2-3	HI	3.2	36	12.99%	0
9	101531	6/30/2000	690	62	1055	20.4%	1-2	O	22.5	60	14.99%	0
10	101201	7/7/2000	728	46	1073	28.0%	5+	DC	19.2	48	12.99%	0
11	100531	8/9/2000	645	51	1282	30.2%	5+	DC	2.9	60	17.99%	1

Some Terminology for Descriptive Analytics

In this subsection, we define several terms relevant to descriptive analytics. We will illustrate these terms using the case study example.

A collection of data is referred to as a **dataset.** It is almost always represented in two dimensions arranged in rows and columns. Each *row* represents one entity, referred to as a **record,** for which data have been (or will be) collected (e.g., past, current, or prospective customers of First Bank). A typical dataset might contain thousands of rows of records. Each *column* contains a measured characteristic (e.g., credit score) or outcome (whether the customer defaults). Each such characteristic or outcome is referred to as a **variable.**

dataset

A collection of data.

record

An entity for which data have been (or will be) collected.

variable

A measured characteristic or outcome for a record.

Once the data are collected, it is important to take some time to *understand* the data. For example, what is the meaning of each variable? Are there units associated with the variable (e.g., $thousands/year for *Income* and $/month for *Debt*)? What ranges of values are possible? It can be useful to include a **data dictionary** that describes the meaning of each variable. For example, Figure 2.2 shows the data dictionary for First Bank.

FIGURE 2.2

A data dictionary for the First Bank dataset that describes the meaning of each variable.

Variable	Description
ID	Loan account number
Date	Date of loan approval
Credit	FICO credit score
Income	Household income ($thousands/year)
Debt	Monthly debt payments (including rent/mortgage, in $)
dti	Debt-to-Income ratio
Employment	Years at current job (<1, 1–2, 2–3, 3–4, 4–5, or 5+)
Purpose	Purpose of loan (DC, EE, HI, O)
Loan	Size of loan ($thousands)

Variable	Description
Term	Term of loan (36, 48, or 60 months)
Rate	Annual interest rate of loan
Default	Did customer default? (0 = no; 1 = yes)

data dictionary

A dictionary that describes the meaning of each variable for the records.

Note that some of these variables would be indicated with text whereas others would have numerical values. For example, *Purpose* provides a text code of DC (debt consolidation), EE (emergency expense), HI (home improvement), or O (other).

A **numerical variable,** such as *Credit,* is a variable that takes on numerical values (e.g., the credit score). The possible numerical values could be continuous (any numerical or decimal value) or integer, usually within a given range (such as greater than 0, or between 300 and 850).

numerical variable

A variable that takes on numerical values.

A **categorical variable** can take on only a small number of values that represent the few possible categories. The values could be expressed either numerically (e.g., 0 or 1) or with text (e.g., DC, EE, HI, or O). Categorical variables can be further differentiated into either *nominal variables* (where the order of possible values have no particular meaning) or *ordinal variables* (where there is a natural order to these values).

categorical variable

A type of variable that can take on only a small number of values that represent the few possible categories.

STEP 2: Clean the Data

After gathering the relevant data, the next step is to “clean up” the data so it is ready to be considered. It is difficult to avoid storing data that are incorrect, incomplete, improperly formatted, or even duplicated, but it is very important to avoid this as much as possible. To help with this, the software used for data entry can include warning messages when the entered data doesn’t meet specified criteria. For example, if each data item is a code from a set list, the software can ensure that the entered code is from the list. If the data item is a number, the software can warn the user if it isn’t within a typical range, which might happen if the wrong units are assumed. For example, suppose a house value is to be stored in units of dollars. If the user enters 250 for a $250,000 house, thinking the units are in thousands of dollars, the software can issue a warning message for overly small values.

Despite attempts to correct the data as it is entered and maintain a clean database, bad and missing data inevitably will still get through and need to be cleaned up. **Data cleaning** (also called *data scrubbing*) is the largely automated process of correcting and reformatting the relevant data stored in a large database.

data cleaning

The automated process of correcting and reformatting the relevant data stored in a large database.

When describing this data cleaning task, the image that may come to mind is that of some person going through each item in the database to make the needed corrections. However, since we are typically dealing with very large (or even massive) amounts of data, the usual approach is to utilize technology. For example, Excel includes sorting and filtering tools that are helpful for doing this task. Considerable progress has been made in recent years in developing various data cleaning tools that are capable of correcting a number of specific types of mistakes in the data.

A methodology that now is commonly used to meet these challenges is the **ETL process,** where ETL is an abbreviation of *Extract, Transform,* and *Load.* This is a data integration process that combines and transforms data from multiple data sources into a single, consistent data store. The *Extract step* involves extracting the relevant data as described in the Step 1 subsection. After extracting the relevant data, the purpose of the *Transform step* is to "clean up" the data as described above. After cleaning the data, the Transform step then continues by processing the valid raw data into a standard form. This also may involve performing calculations, translations, or summarizations of the raw data, and then formatting the data into tables. The *Load step* involves moving the transformed data into a target data store. This typically involves an initial loading of all data, followed by periodic loading of incremental data changes.

ETL process

A data integration process that *extracts* the relevant data from various sources, *transforms* the data into a standard form, and *loads* the data into a target data store.

In this era of big data, the entire ETL process typically is automated. A number of software companies have developed and marketed sophisticated software packages for performing the ETL process.

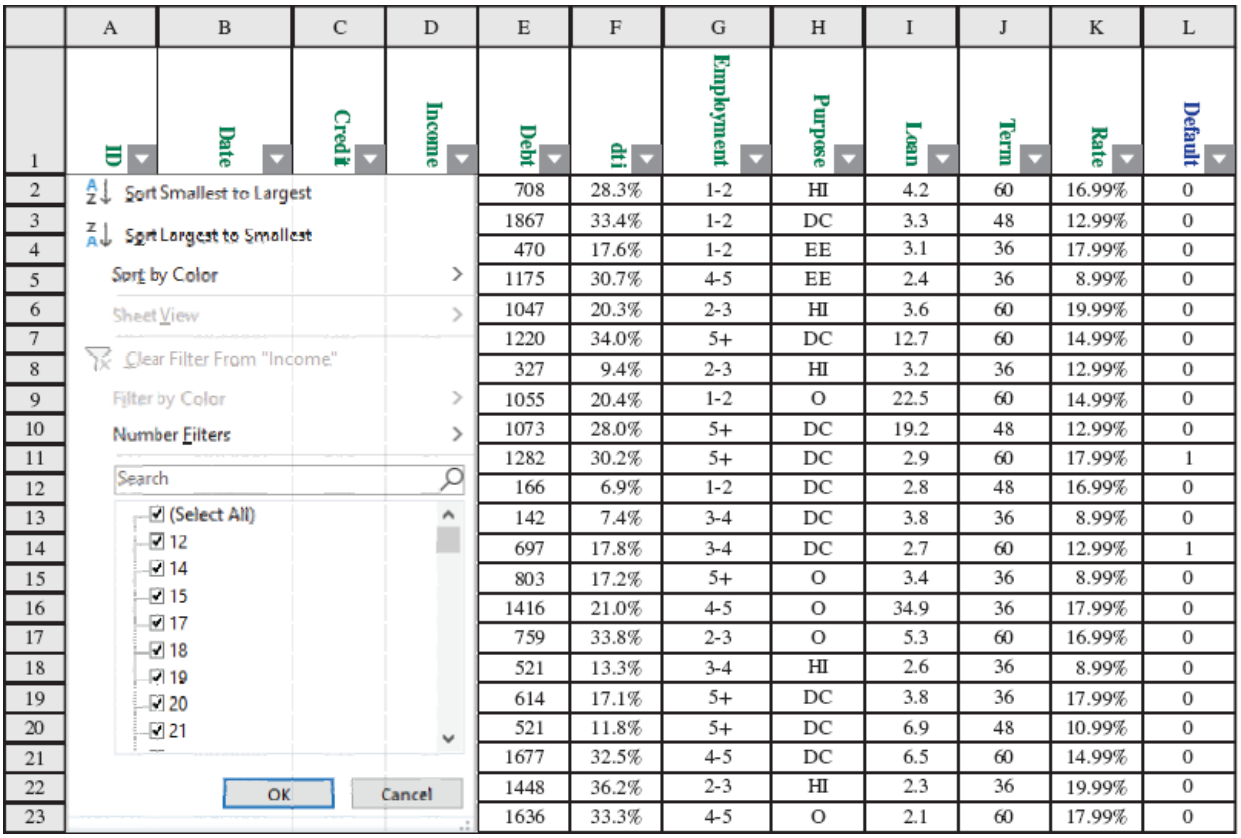
Returning to the Case Study: Cleaning the Data at First Bank

After collecting the various data, the study team at First Bank now needs to clean the data to help ensure an accurate analysis. They are a little intimidated at the thought of checking over approximately 40,000 pieces of data across nearly 4,000 records. Fortunately, Excel includes a powerful Filter feature that helps automate this process. To enable the Filter feature, click anywhere in the dataset, and then click the *Filter* button on the *Data* tab. This adds a filtering menu (displayed as a square button with a downward facing triangle) adjacent to each of the column headings in the dataset. Clicking on

the filter menu for a specific column shows various options for sorting and filtering the data in that column. Figure 2.3 shows this menu selected for the *Income* column.

FIGURE 2.3

The filtering menu for the *Income* column in the First Bank dataset.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
2					708	28.3%	1-2	HI	4.2	60	16.99%	0
3					1867	33.4%	1-2	DC	3.3	48	12.99%	0
4					470	17.6%	1-2	EE	3.1	36	17.99%	0
5					1175	30.7%	4-5	EE	2.4	36	8.99%	0
6					1047	20.3%	2-3	HI	3.6	60	19.99%	0
7					1220	34.0%	5+	DC	12.7	60	14.99%	0
8					327	9.4%	2-3	HI	3.2	36	12.99%	0
9					1055	20.4%	1-2	O	22.5	60	14.99%	0
10					1073	28.0%	5+	DC	19.2	48	12.99%	0
11					1282	30.2%	5+	DC	2.9	60	17.99%	1
12					166	6.9%	1-2	DC	2.8	48	16.99%	0
13					142	7.4%	3-4	DC	3.8	36	8.99%	0
14					697	17.8%	3-4	DC	2.7	60	12.99%	1
15					803	17.2%	5+	O	3.4	36	8.99%	0
16					1416	21.0%	4-5	O	34.9	36	17.99%	0
17					759	33.8%	2-3	O	5.3	60	16.99%	0
18					521	13.3%	3-4	HI	2.6	36	8.99%	0
19					614	17.1%	5+	DC	3.8	36	17.99%	0
20					521	11.8%	5+	DC	6.9	48	10.99%	0
21					1677	32.5%	4-5	DC	6.5	60	14.99%	0
22					1448	36.2%	2-3	HI	2.3	36	19.99%	0
23					1636	33.3%	4-5	O	2.1	60	17.99%	0

Microsoft Corporation

The first two choices in this menu allow sorting the records of the dataset based on the values of a particular variable. For example, to display the records with the highest income at the top down to the lowest income at the bottom, click *Sort Largest to Smallest* in the filter menu for the *Income* column. This results in the spreadsheet shown in Figure 2.4.

FIGURE 2.4

The first several rows of the First Bank dataset sorted by income (highest to lowest).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
2	100841	2/22/2010	679	96,128	1,716	21.5%	2-3	HI	6.0	48	12.99%	0
3	100815	9/23/2020	756	816	12,043	17.6%	2-3	DC	4.4	60	8.99%	0
4	100018	5/22/2012	743	790	12,158	18.5%	5+	EE	12.2	60	8.99%	0
5	101273	12/20/2011	764	732	7,855	12.9%	5+	EE	229.2	48	7.99%	0
6	101985	1/15/2010	655	520	11,815	27.3%	5+	O	22.2	36	14.99%	0
7	101822	12/23/2014	716	496	12,323	29.8%	2-3	DC	23.5	36	10.99%	0

The filter menu adjacent to the *Income* column header in Figure 2.4 changes from to to indicate that this column is sorted from highest to lowest.

Sorting the data for each of the various columns (both largest to smallest and smallest to largest) can help find outliers. In this case, note the highest income of 96,128. This is clearly an outlier, as it is over one hundred times larger than any other income value. Recall that the units for the Income column are thousands of dollars, so 96,128 would represent an annual income of $96,128,000. The study team suspects this is a data entry error and that this income was mistakenly entered in units of dollars (i.e., an annual income of $96,128) rather than in thousands, so should be entered as 96. They flag this entry to double-check the original loan application.

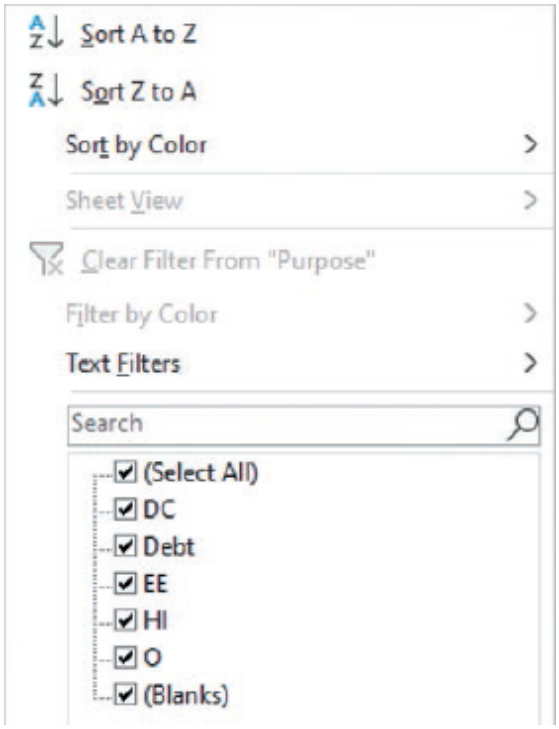
Sorting the credit scores from smallest to largest reveals a low credit score of 79.8. This is clearly an error, as credit scores range from 300 to 850. The study team suspects a misplaced decimal point and an actual score of 798. Similarly, sorting the interest rates reveals an interest rate of 0.0799 percent. Again, this is likely a misplaced decimal or data entry error (e.g., entering 0.0799 to represent 7.99 percent, not realizing that the entry is interpreted as a percentage, so 0.0799 becomes 0.0799 percent). Care should be taken to ensure that the outliers are truly errors and not a true value that just happens to be particularly high or low.

This credit score entry illustrates the need to improve the data entry software to disallow entries outside the range of 300 to 850.

The same menu can also be used to *filter* the results to only show records that meet some criterion. Figure 2.5 shows the filter menu for the Purpose variable. At the bottom of the menu is a complete list of *every* value that appears in the column. The checkmarks next to the various values indicate which are currently being displayed (by default, all of the values are checked, meaning all records are shown).

FIGURE 2.5

The filtering menu for the *Purpose* column in the First Bank dataset.



Microsoft Corporation

There are supposed to be four choices for the purpose of the loan (DC for debt consolidation, EE for emergency expense, HI for home improvement, and O for other). However, the menu shows two extra values of “Debt” and “(Blanks),” indicating that there are some entries that don’t fit the four designated categories or

are missing altogether. To show *just* these records, uncheck all the boxes at the bottom *except* for Debt and (Blanks). This leads to the spreadsheet shown in Figure 2.6 that reveals just the "problem" records.

FIGURE 2.6

The dataset filtered to show all the records that have either a missing or an incorrect value for the Purpose variable.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
1262	100119	4/15/2005	687	74	1,316	21.3%	4-5	Debt	3.3	60	13.99%	0
2689	102347	12/12/2003	819	41	784	22.9%	5+		17.5	48	8.99%	0
3272	101704	2/12/2003	710	31	633	24.5%	<1		2.5	48	12.99%	0

Microsoft Corporation

The "Debt" in the first row was likely a data entry error that should have been entered as DC. The other two records show missing data. The study team can investigate these further to try to determine the purpose for these loans. If unsuccessful, they must decide how to treat these missing data. The blanks could be left as is (effectively creating a fifth category for unknown purpose), the records could be discarded (perhaps reasonable if there are very few such records), or values could be filled in (e.g., arbitrarily choose O for other). Care must be taken in this decision. Leaving blanks for the missing data could complicate the analysis while discarding the records or filling in missing data might bias the results.

Many of the errors uncovered in this subsection could have been caught when entering the data by including better error checking in the data entry software. For example, the software could (1) flag income entries above a specified limit, (2) require credit scores and interest rates to be within a specific range, and (3) have the user choose purpose codes from a list.

STEP 3: Explore the Data

Step 2 has described the ETL process (or the equivalent) of extracting, transforming, and loading the relevant data into a target data store. The next step is to explore the data in order to discover the useful knowledge it provides. A widely used process that does this is the **Knowledge Discovery in Databases (KDD) process.** This process overlaps with the ETL process, but then it goes further by focusing on exploring the data to discover useful knowledge. This process involves selecting and preprocessing the target data, transforming the data into a useful form, identifying the patterns in the data, and then interpreting and evaluating this information to provide new knowledge.

knowledge discovery in databases (KDD) process

A systematic sampling process through databases to find the relevant data and discover useful knowledge.

This process commonly leads to calculating **performance metrics** (numerical measures of performance) that provide an accurate picture of what has been happening recently in the business and how this compares with other periods. These metrics defined by management may summarize past events such as regional sales, customer attrition, the success of marketing campaigns, and other key trends. *Financial metrics* are extremely useful. For example, *return on invested capital* (ROIC) is a descriptive analytic created by taking three data points—net income, dividends, and total capital—and turning it into an understandable percentage that can be used to compare one company's performance to others.

performance metrics

Numerical measures of performance.

The amount of data available often is so immense that it can be overwhelming. Fortunately, another useful technique for exploring data is to *sort and filter* the data in order to show just small amounts

of data that currently are of special interest. For example, data showing extreme values often need special attention. Available software often will expedite this process (as soon will be demonstrated for the case study).

Summary statistics, such as provided by performance metrics, are useful for *quantifying* various characteristics of individual variables and the relationship between pairs of variables. Another method of exploring the data and the relationships between variables is to *visualize* the data by using helpful graphics. This can often expose characteristics of a variable or the relationship between a pair of variables that just aren't visible through summary statistics alone. Therefore, *fully* exploring the data requires *both* a quantitative analysis of the data through summary statistics *and* a thorough process of visualizing the data.

Fortunately, a wide variety of visual graphics are available. Numerical data may be encoded using dots, lines, or bars to visually communicate a quantitative message. These data then can be displayed in various ways with visual graphics. Let us mention a few options. As seen in the example in Section 1.4, *scatter plots* are one type of visual graph that is useful for showing the correlation between two types of data. A *bar chart* can show how a result varies for different subgroups of the data. A *pie chart* can show the comparison of ratios, such as the market share represented by competitors in a market. A *histogram* or boxplot can show frequency distributions. A *line chart* demonstrates the trend of a certain type of data over time. And the list goes on. You will see various examples later in this section.

The various visual graphics described here are powerful tools for exploring data.

Using Analytic Solver to Explore the Data

Frontline Systems has developed a powerful software package called Analytic Solver (an add-in for Excel) for performing descriptive and predictive analytics, as well as optimization, decision trees, and computer simulation (covered in later chapters). The Data Mining

component of Analytic Solver includes a number of convenient tools for quickly visualizing the data in a dataset. Charts to help visualize the data can also be created directly in standard Excel without utilizing Analytic Solver. We will use both of these approaches.

Analytic Solver is a powerful software package that nicely complements this chapter, as well as several later chapters.

Instructions for obtaining a low-priced student license to download and install the Analytic Solver is provided in both the preface and at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The downloaded software works only with Excel for Windows. However, a cloud-based version of this software is also available at AnalyticSolver.com. The cloud-based version works along with Excel (on either Mac or Windows) and is designed to look and feel as much as possible like the downloaded Analytic Solver add-in for Excel.

When Analytic Solver is installed, two new tabs are available on the Excel ribbon named Analytic Solver and Data Mining. Choosing the Data Mining tab will reveal the ribbon shown in Figure 2.7. The buttons on this ribbon will be used to interact with the data mining features of Analytic Solver. (The Analytic Solver tab will not be used in this chapter but will be introduced in Chapter 5 and used throughout most of the remaining chapters.)

FIGURE 2.7

The Data Mining tab of Analytic Solver.

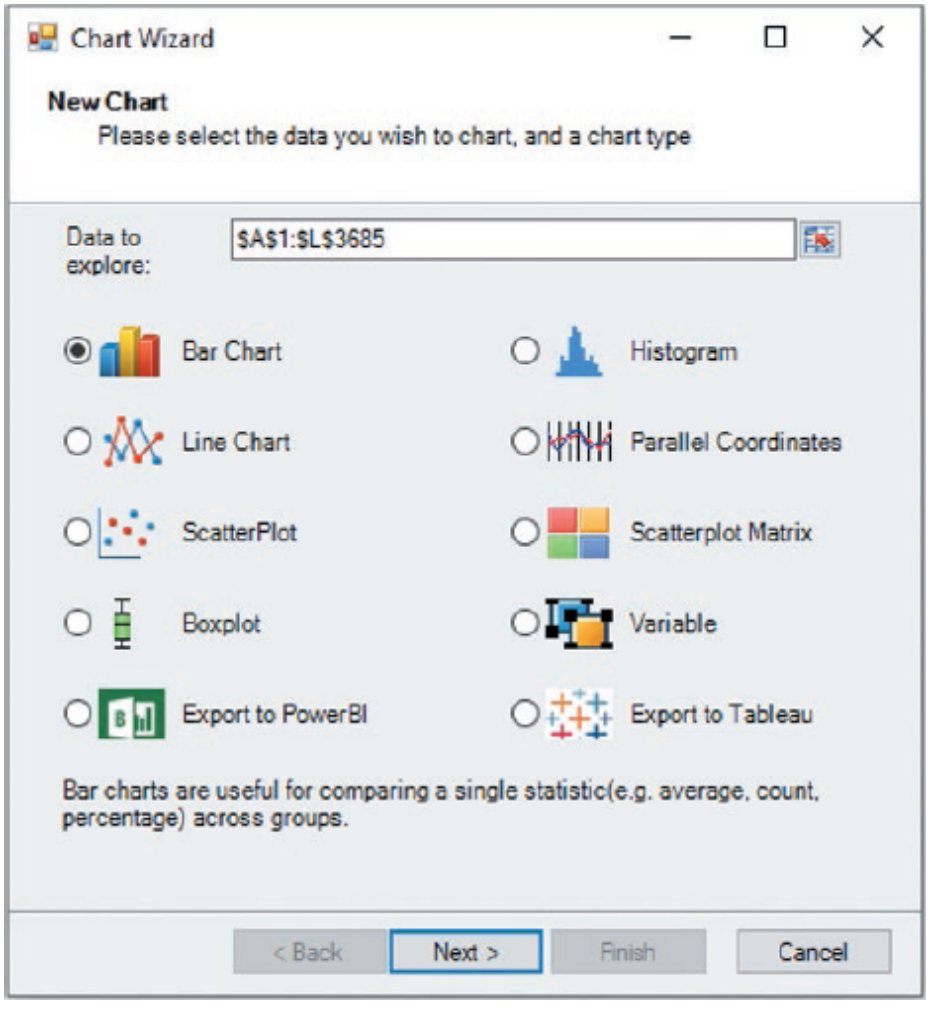
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

A variety of ways to explore the data are available under the *Explore* menu (the third button from the left in Figure 2.7) on Analytic Solver's *Data Mining* tab. Choosing *Chart Wizard* from the *Explore* menu brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 2.8. The Chart Wizard

allows you to quickly generate a wide variety of different kinds of charts that are useful for visualizing the data in the dataset. First select the type of chart and then click Next. The wizard will then step through a series of choices for what to display on the vertical axis and/or the horizontal axis. The wizard also allows you to separately display results based upon the value of an additional categorical variable, differentiated by color (different colors for different values) or panels (separate charts for different values). Differentiating by color will be demonstrated later in Figures 2.15 and 2.16.

FIGURE 2.8

The Chart Wizard allows the quick creation of a variety of different kinds of charts for a dataset. It is available under the *Explore* menu on Analytic Solver's *Data Mining* tab.



Returning to the Case Study: Explore the Data at First Bank

After gathering and cleaning the data, the next step for the First Bank study team is to *explore* the data to gain a deeper understanding. For example, what is the range of values for each variable? What is an average or typical value? Is there a significant relationship between any of the variables?

The study team will use three different approaches to explore the data. First, calculating various summary statistics for the data can help to *quantitatively* understand the variables and the relationships between them. Second, sorting or filtering the data in various ways can often uncover further insights. Finally, it can be helpful to *visually* explore the data using various types of charts. These three approaches will be discussed over the next three subsections.

Explore the Data with Summary Statistics for First Bank

Given the dataset from Figure 2.1, it is straightforward to calculate summary statistics for each of the numerical variables. For example, using the Excel function AVERAGE by inserting =AVERAGE(C2:C3685) in cell C3689 calculates the mean. Similarly, the study team uses the Excel functions MEDIAN, MIN, MAX, and STDEV.S to calculate the median, the range of values (from min to max), and the amount of variation (standard deviation) for each of the numerical variables, as shown in Figure 2.9. For example, credit scores of accepted loan applications had a mean of 699, median of 702, ranged from 529 to 840, and had a standard deviation of 62. Also, the mean value for *Default* was 0.16, indicating that 16 percent of all loans ended in default.

FIGURE 2.9

Summary statistics for the numerical variables in the First Bank dataset are shown in rows 3689–3693 of the spreadsheet at the top of the figure. The formulas required for the calculations in columns B and C are shown below the spreadsheet. (The formulas for the later columns are similar.)

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
2	102379	2/17/2000	658	30	708	28.3%	1-2	HI	4.2	60	16.99%	0
3	103052	2/28/2000	714	67	1867	33.4%	1-2	DC	3.3	48	12.99%	0
3684	100834	12/30/2020	704	109	2005	22.1%	5+	DC	14.5	60	10.99%	0
3685	101152	12/30/2020	781	107	1377	15.4%	4-5	DC	6.4	36	7.99%	0
3686												
3687	**Summary Statistics for Complete Data set**											
3688		Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
3689	Mean	4/8/2012	699	73.4	1461	24.1%	na	na	9.7	50.3	12.64%	0.16
3690	Median	4/9/2012	702	57	1127	24.6%	na	na	5.3	60.0	12.99%	0
3691	Min	2/17/2000	529	12	47	1.8%	na	na	2	36	6.99%	0
3692	Max	12/30/2020	840	819	12323	39.9%	na	na	229.2	60	21.99%	1
3693	St. Dev.	1903.10	62.0	56.2	1225	7.7%	na	na	13.2	10.6	3.61%	0.36

Formulas:

	A	B	C
3689	Mean	=AVERAGE(B2:B3685)	=AVERAGE(C2:C3685)
3690	Median	=MEDIAN(B3:B3686)	=MEDIAN(C3:C3686)
3691	Min	=MIN(B2:B3685)	=MIN(C2:C3685)
3692	Max	=MAX(B2:B3685)	=MAX(C2:C3685)
3693	St. Dev.	=STDEV.S(B2:B3685)	=STDEV.S(C2:C3685)

Microsoft Corporation

To explore the relationship *between* variables, it can be useful to calculate the **correlation coefficient** between pairs of numerical variables. The correlation coefficient is a value between −1 and +1 that is calculated from the data to measure how much the two variables tend to move in tandem. If a higher value of one variable (e.g., a value that is above its mean) commonly implies a higher value of the other, then the variables are said to be *positively* correlated because the correlation coefficient is positive. The stronger this relationship, the closer the correlation coefficient will be to +1. A correlation of +1 indicates perfect positive correlation, implying that

the two variables move in perfect tandem. On the other hand, if a higher value of one variable typically implies a lower value of the other, then the variables are said to be *negatively* correlated because the correlation coefficient is less than zero, going as low as −1 for perfect negative correlation. If there is little relation between the two variables, then the correlation coefficient will be near zero.

correlation coefficient

A measure of how much two numerical variables tend to move in tandem.

Figure 2.10 shows a **correlation table,** which shows the correlation coefficient for every pair of numerical variables in the dataset. Note that the correlation coefficient down the diagonal is always +1 since the values on the diagonal show how each variable moves in tandem with *itself.*

page 49

FIGURE 2.10

A correlation table showing the correlation between each pair of numerical variables in the First Bank dataset. This table is visualized as a heat map, with positive correlations shown in red (darker shades for stronger correlation) and negative correlations shown in blue (darker shades for stronger negative correlation).

	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
Date	1.000								
Credit	–0.013	1.000							
Income	0.003	0.055	1.000						
Debt	0.003	–0.023	0.873	1.000					
dti	0.022	–0.174	–0.019	0.373	1.000				
Loan	0.018	0.122	0.466	0.363	–0.042	1.000			
Term	–0.004	0.022	–0.007	–0.017	–0.027	–0.028	1.000		
Rate	–0.145	–0.963	–0.057	0.015	0.157	–0.119	–0.021	1.000	
Default	0.011	–0.265	–0.036	0.034	0.196	–0.044	0.018	0.256	1.000

correlation table

A table that shows the correlation for every pair of numerical variables in the dataset.

The values in the table are color coded to make the data easier to visualize. Positive correlations are shown in red (darker shades for stronger correlation) and negative correlations are shown in blue (darker shades for stronger negative correlation). Values with little correlation (near zero) are barely shaded. This type of color coding, known as a **heat map,** makes it much easier to quickly identify the stronger positive and negative correlations. A heat map is an example of *data visualization* (making data easier to visualize). We will discuss many other examples of data visualization in Step 4 of this section.

heat map

A color-coded table that uses the intensity of the colors to highlight the more striking values in the table.

There is very little correlation between many pairs of variables in Table 2.10 (e.g., the correlation coefficient between *Term* and *Date* is −0.004). On the other hand, a few pairs of variables show a more substantial correlation. For example, the correlation between *Credit* and *Default* is −0.266, indicating a fairly strong negative correlation. Higher credit scores tend to imply a lower rate of default, demonstrating to the study team the potential value of the credit score in predicting default. The correlation between *Income* and *Debt* is 0.873, indicating a very strong positive correlation. Higher income levels tend to imply higher debt service payments. With higher income, one can typically afford higher rent/mortgage payments (and other debt), so the positive correlation between *Income* and *Debt* makes sense to the study team.

There is a nearly perfect negative correlation between *Rate* (the loan's interest rate) and *Credit* (the applicant's credit score). As the study team learned during the conversation with the CEO and the VP of the loan department in Section 2.2, the policy at First Bank has been to set the loan's interest rate by using a formula that is based

entirely on the customer's credit score. Thus, this near perfect correlation also makes sense.

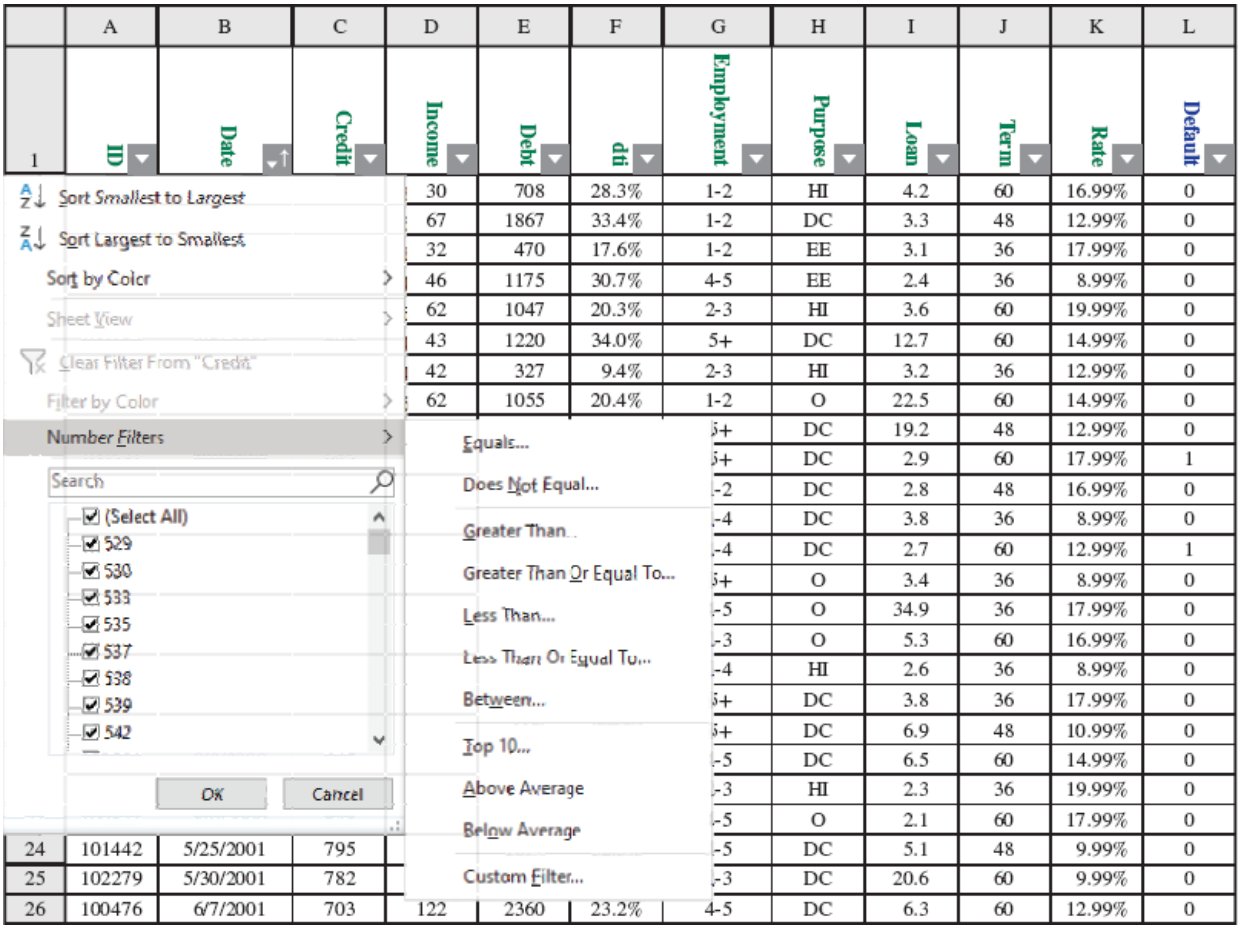
Explore the Data with Sorting and Filtering at First Bank

We saw in Step 2 of this section how sorting and filtering when using Excel's Filter feature can help with cleaning the data. This feature can also be used to explore the data and obtain useful insights. Therefore, the study team at First Bank has the option of exploring the data for those customers that had the very highest (or lowest) credit score by sorting the records by credit score. The team also can explore the data for only those customers that are using the loan for debt consolidation by filtering the results to only show records with value DC in the Purpose column. A similar approach can be used to sort or filter any of the variables.

More sophisticated filtering can be performed by selecting one of the choices under the *Number Filters* menu, as displayed in Figure 2.11 for the *Credit* column. This menu allows showing only records that meet some specified *criteria* for the variable (and filtering out the rest). For example, one can show only records that have values in the top 10 or bottom 10 (or any other number or percentage) for the variable. Similarly, one can show only those records with values above or below the mean or any specified value for the variable. Many other options are available as well.

FIGURE 2.11

The filter menu for the *Credit* column in the First Bank dataset, with the *Number Filters* submenu selected to show the various filtering choices available.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
				30	708	28.3%	1-2	HI	4.2	60	16.99%	0
				67	1867	33.4%	1-2	DC	3.3	48	12.99%	0
				32	470	17.6%	1-2	EE	3.1	36	17.99%	0
				46	1175	30.7%	4-5	EE	2.4	36	8.99%	0
				62	1047	20.3%	2-3	HI	3.6	60	19.99%	0
				43	1220	34.0%	5+	DC	12.7	60	14.99%	0
				42	327	9.4%	2-3	HI	3.2	36	12.99%	0
				62	1055	20.4%	1-2	O	22.5	60	14.99%	0
							5+	DC	19.2	48	12.99%	0
							5+	DC	2.9	60	17.99%	1
							1-2	DC	2.8	48	16.99%	0
							1-4	DC	3.8	36	8.99%	0
							1-4	DC	2.7	60	12.99%	1
							5+	O	3.4	36	8.99%	0
							1-5	O	34.9	36	17.99%	0
							2-3	O	5.3	60	16.99%	0
							1-4	HI	2.6	36	8.99%	0
							5+	DC	3.8	36	17.99%	0
							5+	DC	6.9	48	10.99%	0
							1-5	DC	6.5	60	14.99%	0
							2-3	HI	2.3	36	19.99%	0
							1-5	O	2.1	60	17.99%	0
24	101442	5/25/2001	795				1-5	DC	5.1	48	9.99%	0
25	102279	5/30/2001	782				2-3	DC	20.6	60	9.99%	0
26	100476	6/7/2001	703	122	2360	23.2%	4-5	DC	6.3	60	12.99%	0

Microsoft Corporation

Another option is to *combine* filters across multiple variables. This allows exploring records that meet very specific criteria. For example, let's suppose the loan department is considering a policy of only approving loans with credit scores of at least 720 *and* a debt-to-income ratio of no more than 32 percent. Figure 2.12 shows the first several rows of the dataset when *both* of these filters are turned on. This hides rows 2–4, 6, 7, 11, 12, and 14 since these records did not meet the criteria. *All* of the remaining records *do* satisfy the criteria.

FIGURE 2.12

The First Bank dataset filtered to show only those records that have credit scores over 720 *and* a debt-to-income ratio below 0.32.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	ID	Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
5	100407	3/29/2000	832	46	1175	30.7%	4-5	EE	2.4	36	8.99%	0
8	100575	4/11/2000	721	42	327	9.4%	2-3	HI	3.2	36	12.99%	0
10	101201	7/7/2000	728	46	1073	28.0%	5+	DC	19.2	48	12.99%	0
13	100930	10/4/2000	801	23	142	7.4%	3-4	DC	3.8	36	8.99%	0
15	101207	11/9/2000	824	56	803	17.2%	5+	O	3.4	36	8.99%	0

Microsoft Corporation

The filter menu adjacent to the *Credit* and *dti* column header in Figure 2.12 changes from to to indicate that a filter is turned on for each of these columns.

When exploring the filtered data, it can be useful to see summary statistics for the *filtered* data. We saw in Figure 2.9 how summary statistics can be calculated for the *entire* dataset. With the filter feature in Excel, the records that don't meet the criteria are hidden. However, the summary statistics are still calculated on *all* the data, including the hidden rows, so an alternative method is needed to exclude the hidden rows in this calculation.

Fortunately, Excel includes an alternative function for calculating these summary statistics based *only* on the filtered data. The function is called AGGREGATE, and it has the following syntax: AGGREGATE(*function_num, option, range*). The *function_num* parameter is used to specify a particular function to calculate, *option* is used to specify which values to include in the calculation, and *range* specifies the range of cells to include in the calculation. Some of the more commonly used *function_num* values include 1 for AVERAGE, 2 for COUNT, 4 for MAX, 5 for MIN, 7 for STDEV.S, 9 for SUM, and 12 for MEDIAN. Using 5 for *option* specifies to ignore hidden rows, whereas 6 ignores error values, and 7 ignores hidden rows *and* error values. For example, =AGGREGATE(1, 5, C2:C3685) in cell C3697 calculates the average credit score in the filtered dataset.

Filters can be cleared by re-selecting the filter menu and choosing *Clear Filter.*

Figure 2.13 shows the summary statistics for all of the numerical variables in the *filtered* dataset. Note that the mean value for *Default* in the filtered dataset is only 0.06 (as compared to 0.16 for the complete dataset as shown in Figure 2.9). This would suggest that if First Bank had denied all loans to applicants with credit scores below 720 or debt-to-income ratios above 0.32, and kept all other criteria the same, this would have reduced their default rate from 16 percent to 6 percent. These filtering tools can be used to explore the data and see the potential impact of other possible policy rules as well.

FIGURE 2.13

Summary statistics for all of the numerical variables for the *filtered* First Bank dataset, filtered to only show records with credit scores of at least 720 *and* debt-to-income ratios of at most 0.32. The AGGREGATE formulas needed in columns B and C are shown at the bottom of the figure. (The formulas in the later columns are similar.)

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
3695	**Summary Statistics for Filtered Dataset**											
3696		Date	Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term	Rate	Default
3697	Mean	3/22/2012	762	77.0	1327	21.1%	na	na	11.8	50.4	9.11%	0.06
3698	Median	3/23/2012	759	60	1021	21.7%	na	na	6.3	60.0	8.99%	0
3699	Min	3/29/2000	720	14	47	0.025	na	na	2	36	6.99%	0
3700	Max	12/30/2020	840	819	12158	0.320	na	na	229.2	60	12.99%	1
3701	St. Dev.	1879.32	28.7	62.5	1139	0.066	na	na	16.0	10.5	1.32%	0.25

Formulas:

	A	B	C
3697	Mean	=AGGREGATE(1,5,B2:B3685)	=AGGREGATE(1,5,C2:C3685)
3698	Median	=AGGREGATE(12,5,B2:B3685)	=AGGREGATE(12,5,C2:C3685)
3699	Min	=AGGREGATE(5,5,B2:B3685)	=AGGREGATE(5,5,C2:C3685)
3700	Max	=AGGREGATE(4,5,B2:B3685)	=AGGREGATE(4,5,C2:C3685)
3701	St. Dev.	=AGGREGATE(7,5,B2:B3685)	=AGGREGATE(7,5,C2:C3685)

Explore the Data Visually at First Bank

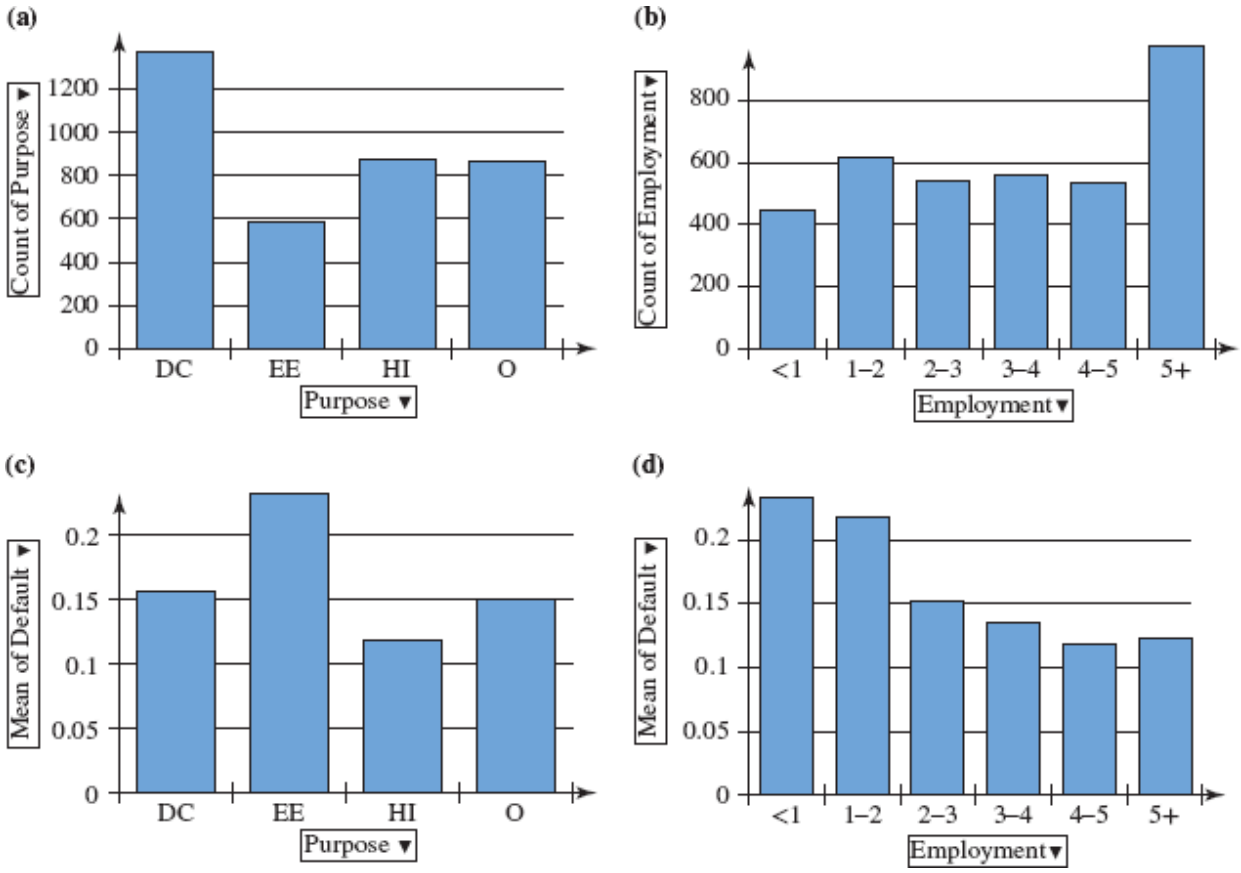
The study team at First Bank wants to explore most of the variables visually using a variety of different types of charts. Below we explain how each type of chart is used and then show some of the more interesting results of the analysis.

A **bar chart** is useful for exploring and visualizing categorical variables. In a bar chart, each possible value of a categorical variable is represented by a separate bar, where the vertical length of the bar measures some statistic about the records in each category. For example, Figure 2.14 shows bar charts for the *Purpose* and *Employment* variables. Charts (a) and (b) show the *count* (total number) of loans in each category of *Purpose* and *Employment,* respectively. They show that the largest portion of the loans were for debt consolidation and that more applicants have held their job for five or more years than any other category.

page 52

FIGURE 2.14

Bar charts showing the distribution of how many unsecured loans were made by First Bank for each purpose category (a) and length of employment (b), as well as the default rate for each purpose category (c) and length of employment (d).



bar chart

A chart where each possible value of a categorical variable is represented by a separate bar.

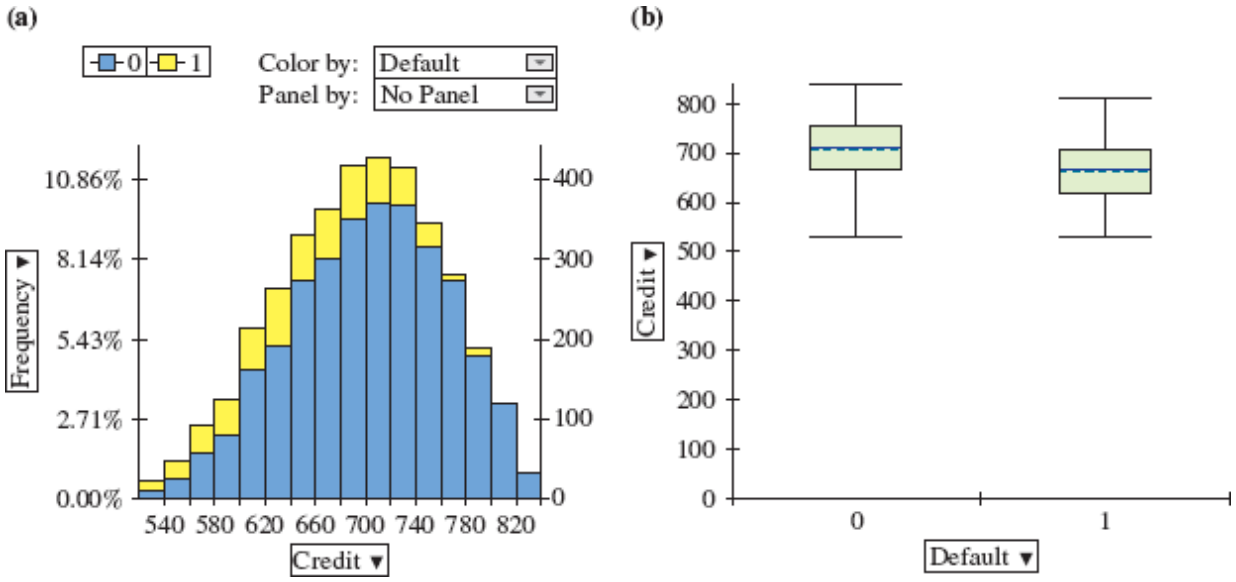
Charts (c) and (d) show the mean of *Default* (effectively the default rate) for loans in each category of *Purpose* and *Employment,* respectively. Loans made for emergency expenses had higher default rates than other loans, and there was a distinct reduction in default rate for those applicants that had been employed for at least two years.

Histograms are one type of chart that are useful for visualizing the distribution of values for a numerical variable. Chart (a) of Figure 2.15 displays a histogram chart for the distribution of credit scores. The histogram shows various buckets of credit scores (520–540, 540–560, ..., 820–840) on the horizontal axis and then shows the number of records that fall in that bucket by the length of the vertical bar. This vertical bar is further differentiated by color to show how many loans didn't default (in blue) and how many did default (in yellow). This chart shows a fairly symmetric distribution, with a large portion of the credit scores falling in the 640–760 range, peaking near 700, and then with fewer and fewer records the further away you get from these mid-range credit scores. As one moves from left to right in the histogram, the relative size of the yellow bars decreases compared to the blue and then virtually disappears above 800. This indicates that the likelihood of default goes down substantially as the credit scores increases.

page 53

FIGURE 2.15

Chart (a) is a histogram that shows the distribution of credit scores (with *no default* or *default* differentiated by color) for First Bank. Chart (b) is a side-by-side boxplot showing the range of credit scores for customers that did not default on the left and then for customers that did default on the right.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

histogram

A chart that organizes a group of data points for a numerical variable into user-specified ranges.

Boxplots (also known as *box-and whisker charts*) also are useful for visualizing the distribution of values for a numerical variable. Chart (b) of Figure 2.15 shows a side-by-side boxplot. The left boxplot shows the distribution of credit scores for customers that *did not* default while the right boxplot shows the distribution of credit scores for customers that *did* default. In each case, the green box indicates the range of the *middle* 50 percent of the credit scores. The horizontal line in the middle of the green box indicates the *median* credit score (the 50th percentile), while the top and bottom of the green box extend from the 75th percentile down to the 25th percentile. The *mean* credit score is indicated by the dashed line (very close to the median line). Finally, the lines extend above and below the green box to the maximum and minimum credit scores.

boxplot

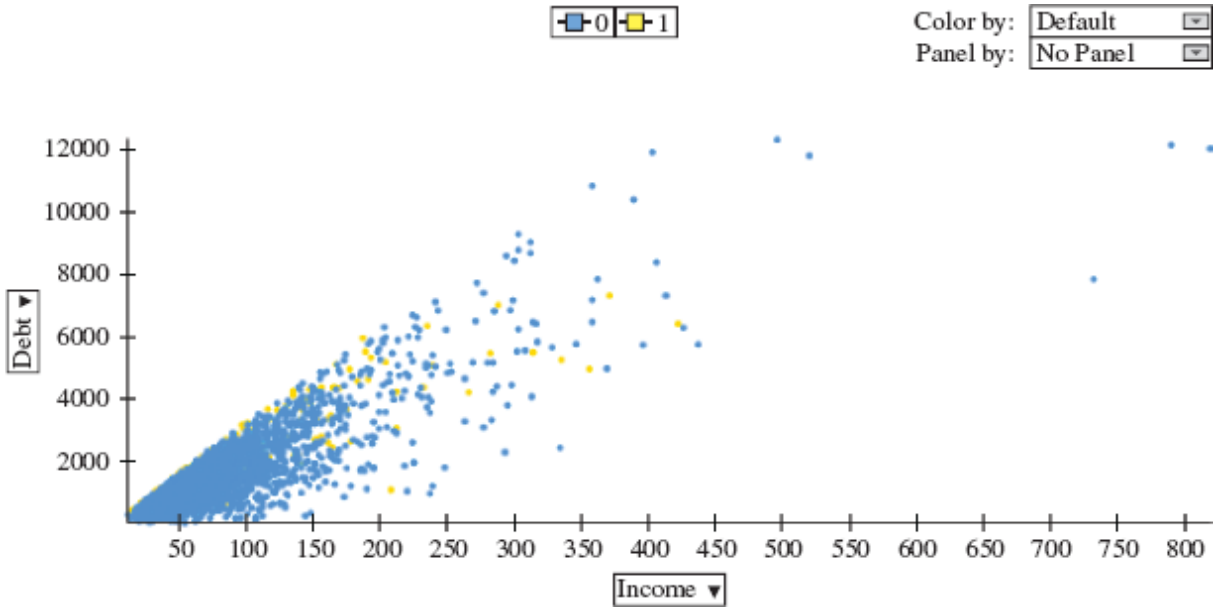
A chart that highlights various statistics for the distribution of a numerical variable.

The study team gained several insights from this side-by-side boxplot. The mean and median being very close for both boxplots indicates that the distribution is not very skewed. The green box on the left is significantly higher than the green box on the right, indicating that most customers that *did not* default had higher credit scores than most of the customers that *did* default. Finally, since the maximum credit score on the right only extends to 808, this shows that *no* customers with credit scores over 808 have defaulted on their loans.

A **scatter plot** is useful to show the relationship *between* a pair of variables. We first saw a scatter plot for the VRX case study in Figure 1.1 of Chapter 1. Figure 2.16 shows a scatter plot to help visualize the relationship between *Income* and *Debt* for the current case study. Each record is represented by a point on the graph with income measured on the horizontal axis and debt measured on the vertical axis. The records are further differentiated by color, with customers that defaulted in yellow and customers that did not default in blue.

FIGURE 2.16

A scatter plot showing the relationship between *Debt* and *Income* in the First Bank dataset. Income is measured on the horizontal axis while debt is measured on the vertical axis. Customers that defaulted are shown in yellow while customers that did not default are shown in blue.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

scatter plot

A two-dimensional graph that uses dots to represent the various simultaneous values for two different numerical variables.

The scatter plot shows a distinct positive correlation between *Income* and *Debt.* This was measured *quantitatively* with the correlation coefficient of 0.873 shown in Figure 2.10. The scatter plot helps *visualize* this close relationship. Clearly, customers with higher incomes tended to also have higher debt. A striking feature that is easy to see in this chart is that the *maximum* debt for any given income level seems to be almost perfectly proportional to the income. For example, all customers with income around $100k have maximum debt payments of $3,000, while all customers with twice the income (around $200k) have twice the maximum debt payments ($6,000). Many customers have debt payments below these maximums, but there appears to be a “hard diagonal line” that the debt never exceeds.

page 54

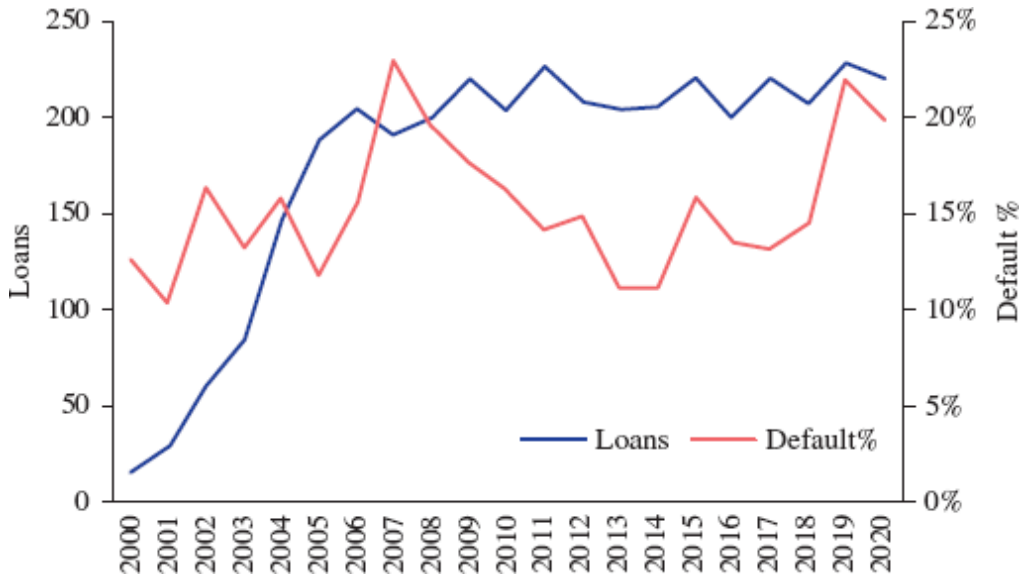
The study team inquired with the loan department about this and discovered that there is a reason for this “cap on debt” based on income. It was policy at First Bank to automatically deny any loan applications if the debt-to-income ratio exceeded 40 percent. Since

the dataset only includes approved loans, there are *no* loans in the dataset that have monthly debt payments exceeding 40 percent of monthly income.

Line charts are useful primarily for showing how a variable changes over time. Figure 2.17 displays a line chart that shows the number of loans in each year (in blue) along with the percentage of these loans that ended in default (in orange). The year is measured on the horizontal axis (from 2000 to 2020). There are two vertical axes. The left vertical axis measures the number of loans in each year (as displayed by the height of the blue line) while the right vertical axis measures the percentage of loans that ended in default (as displayed by the height of the orange line).

FIGURE 2.17

A line chart that shows the number of unsecured loans (in blue) and the rate of default (in orange) over time for First Bank.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

line chart

A chart that is used primarily for showing how a numerical variable changes over time.

First Bank began offering unsecured personal loans in 2000. The blue line shows that this was a growing business for First Bank for the first several years of the century and has been in a roughly steady state since 2005, with about 200–230 loans per year.

Meanwhile, the default rate has held fairly steady through the years (usually in the range from 10 to 16 percent) with the notable exception of higher default rates for loans taken in 2007–2008 and 2019–2020. A possible explanation for these higher rates of default is that these loans were taken in the years leading into the great recession of 2008 and the Covid-19 pandemic.

STEP 4: Communicate Performance Information with Data Visualization

Descriptive analytics has two prime objectives. The **data familiarization objective** is to explore the data in order to become thoroughly familiar with all of the relevant data as described mainly in step 3. The **communication objective** is to reframe raw data to make it easily understandable and meaningful to managers, investors, and other stakeholders.

data familiarization objective

The descriptive analytics objective of exploring the data in order to become thoroughly familiar with all of the relevant data.

communication objective

The descriptive analytics objective of reframing raw data to make it understandable and meaningful to managers, investors, and other stakeholders.

The ultimate goal is to better understand both what has been happening in the past and what is happening now in real time, and then to develop reports that describe these understandings in the most helpful way for a wide audience. It provides important insight into business performance and also enables users to better monitor and manage their business processes. Therefore, descriptive analytics often serves as a first step in the subsequent successful

application of predictive or prescriptive analytics (to be discussed in the next two sections). Meeting the *data familiarization objective* always is important for moving on to the next stages of business analytics. Meeting the communication objective isn't always necessary in these next stages, but often is helpful as well.

One focus of descriptive analytics is to present its conclusions in an easily digestible format for the benefit of managers and perhaps for shareholders as well. For example, conclusions from a historic review of the organization's operations, sales, financials, and customers might be presented in the company's reports to the shareholders.

Many of the applications of descriptive analytics are implemented with business intelligence software or spreadsheet tools. However, descriptive analytics often relies on some human review of data as well. This review might include some additional data cleaning that was overlooked during the process of gathering and organizing the data in data warehouses and databases.

A key tool for the communication objective of descriptive analytics is **data visualization.** The goal is to communicate the implications of data clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics. In the final subsection of step 3 (Explore the Data Visually at First Bank), we have already seen various examples of how data visualization helped the study team understand the data and the relationships between the variables. While some of these may only be of interest to the study team (e.g., Figure 2.16), others can also serve a second purpose—communicating performance information to management. For example, Figure 2.17 provides important information to management about the performance of unsecured loans over time.

data visualization

The goal of data visualization is to communicate information clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics.

One particularly popular software package for performing more advanced data visualization is called **Tableau.** This software was created by Tableau Software, Inc. which was founded in 2003 and acquired by Salesforce in 2019. Their stated mission is "to help people see and understand their data." Tableau has grown into one of the premier software packages for data visualization in business. The software generates a variety of interactive, graphical visualizations from datasets that can be stored in either a database or a spreadsheet.

Tableau

A popular software package for performing more advanced data visualization.

Data visualization can often display information in ways that go beyond the traditional bar chart, scatter plot, line chart, etc. One such example is a **map chart.** Many datasets include geographical information. Plotting data on a map can often reveal patterns that are not easily visible in any other way. Figure 2.18 shows an example that was created by using Tableau that shows the profitability of a retailer that operates stores throughout the United States.

FIGURE 2.18

An interactive map chart created with Tableau software that shows how the performance of a nationwide retailer varied across the United States. The map is interactive, allowing the user to filter the data by date range, region, state, or profit ratio. (Source: **www.tableau.com**)

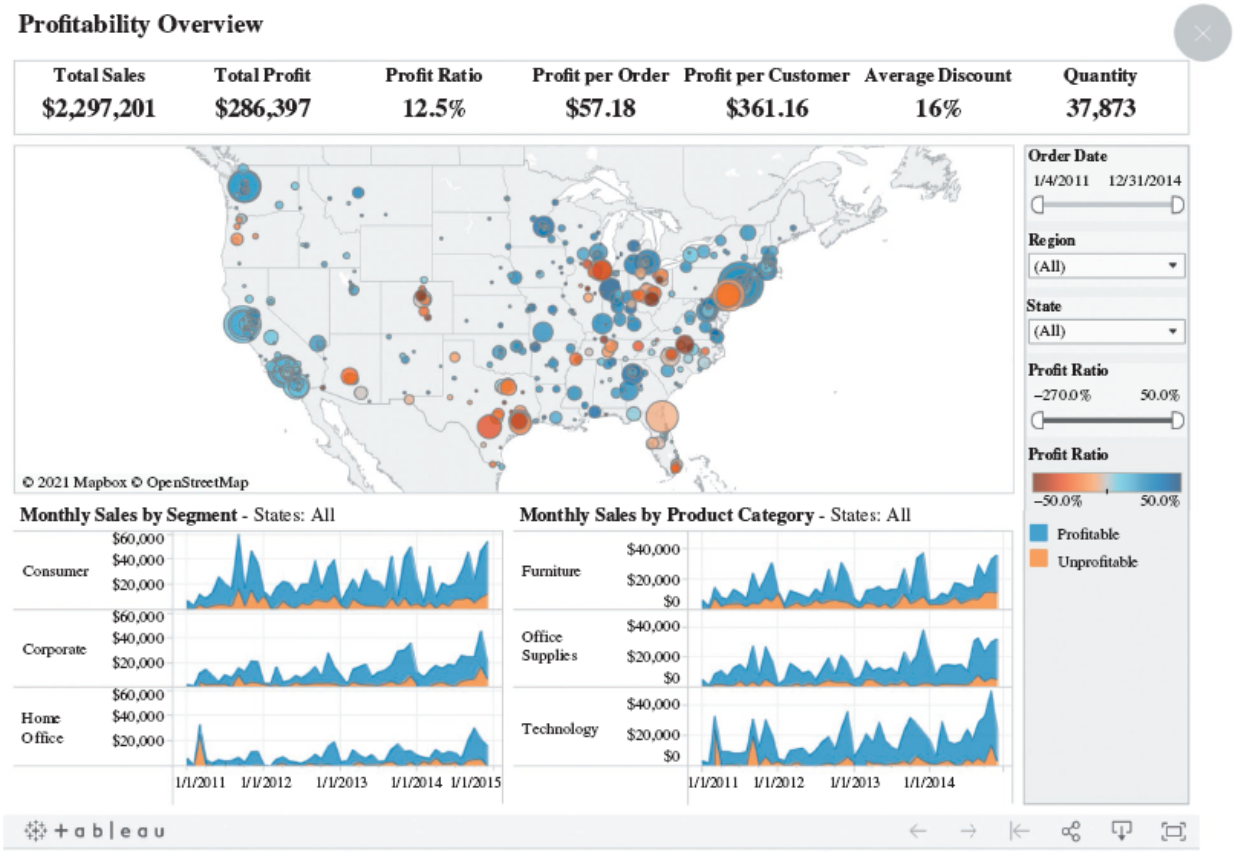


Tableau Software, Inc.

map chart

A chart that plots data on a map to show geographical information.

The profitability (or loss) of each retail store is indicated on the map with a bubble, where the size of the bubble is proportional to the magnitude of sales at the store. Color then is used to indicate profitability, with shades of blue for positive profit ratios and shades of red for negative profit ratios. Summary statistics are indicated along the top and a breakdown of sales by product category over time are visualized with additional charts at the bottom. The chart is also interactive. The data can be filtered by date range and region with sliders and menus to the right of the map chart.

Another specialized chart that helps visualize hierarchical data is called a **treemap.** With hierarchical data, the total can be broken down in various categories, where each category can be further

subdivided into subcategories, and so on, in a tree-like structure. The treemap takes the form of a rectangle which is divided into smaller and smaller rectangles to show the categories and subcategories. The size of each rectangle denotes the quantity being measured. Colors are used to clarify the sets of categories.

treemap

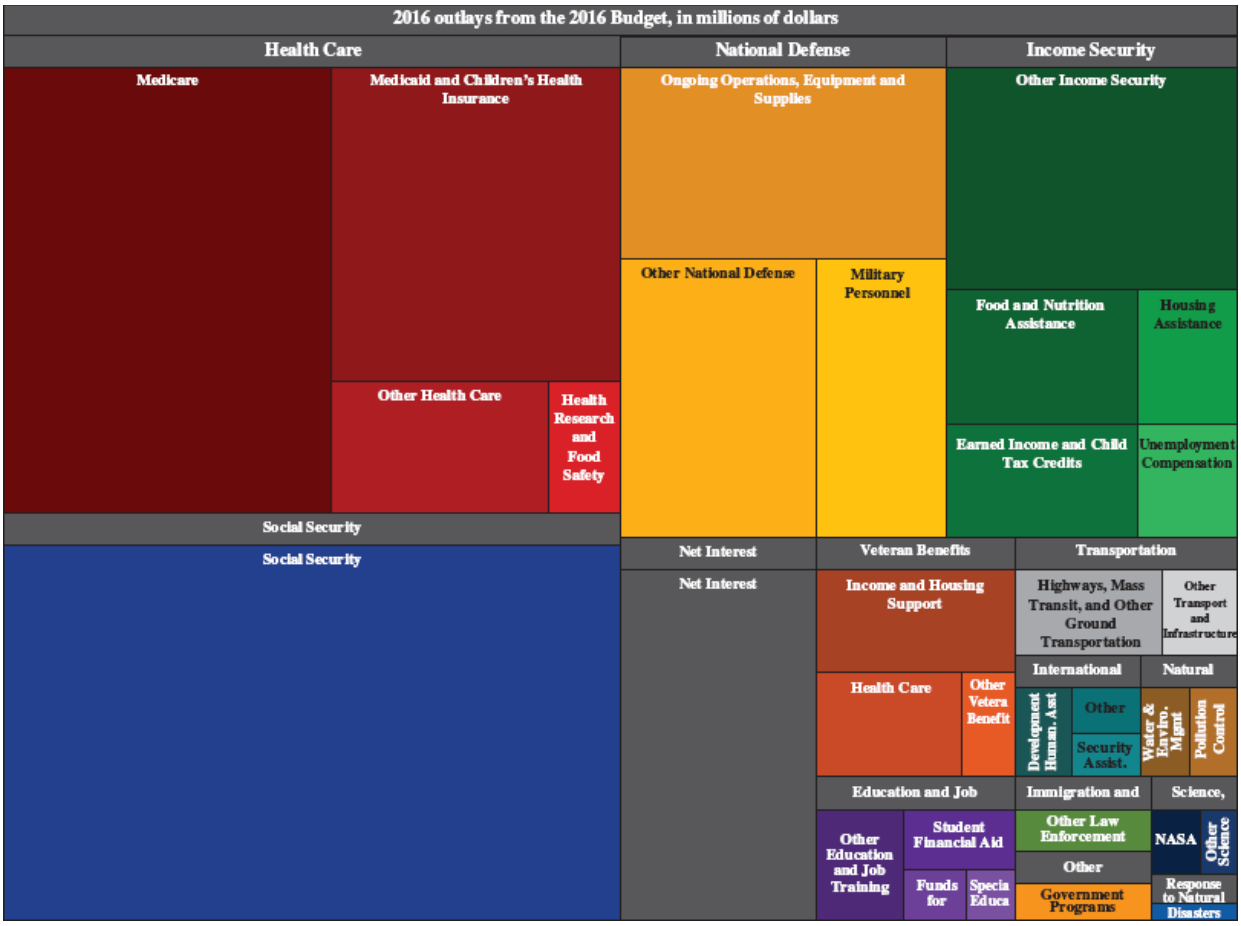
A chart that breaks down hierarchical data into various categories and subcategories.

An interesting example of a treemap is shown in Figure 2.19. This treemap breaks down the 2016 budget for the United States. It was generated by the US Office of Management and Budget under the Obama administration to help taxpayers visualize where their tax dollars were going. The various categories are labeled and divided by color. Each category is further divided into subcategories. The size of each rectangle clearly conveys how much is spent in each category and subcategory. The visualization helps put the size of the various government programs into context.

FIGURE 2.19

A treemap that breaks down the 2016 budget for the United States.

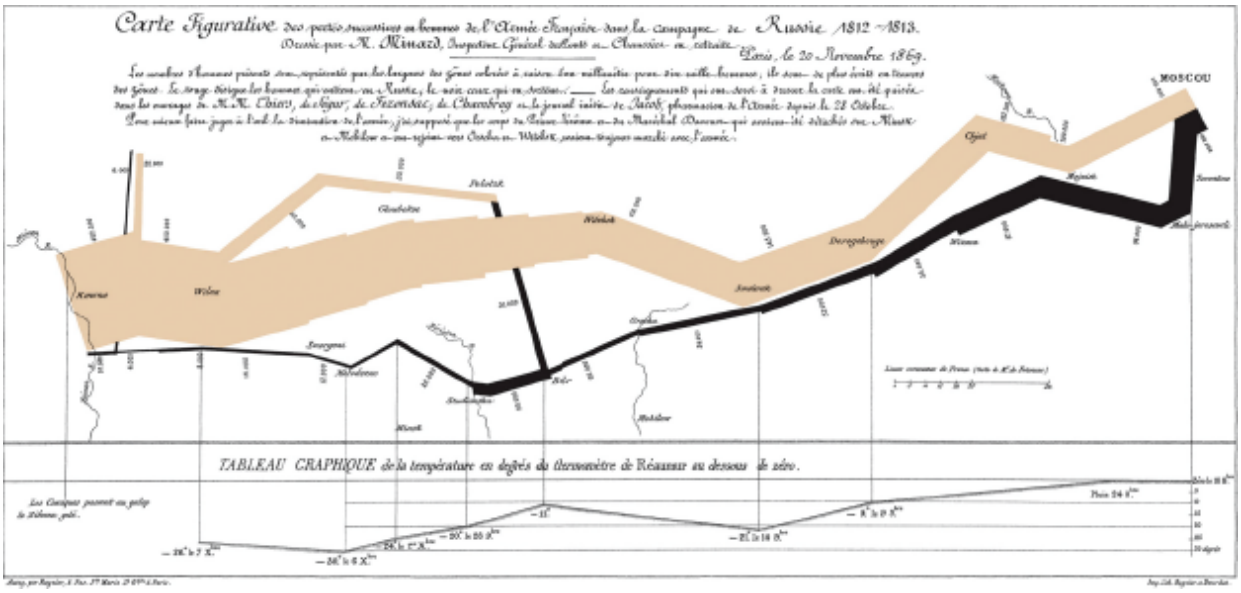
(Source: US Office of Management and Budget)



We conclude with a data visualization that *The Economist* described as one of "history's best charts" and John Corbett described as "the best statistical graphic ever drawn." This chart, shown in Figure 2.20, was created in 1869 by Charles Joseph Menard to describe Napoleon's march to Moscow in 1812. This march was historically devastating, starting with 470,000 soldiers and returning with only 10,000. The chart includes a map showing the journey (toward Moscow in brown, retreating to France in black) with the width of the lines representing the total number of soldiers. A line chart on the bottom also shows the winter cold (Celsius) temperatures that played a key role in Napoleon's defeat. This chart conveys an extraordinary amount of information in a visual way that effectively tells the story of the staggering devastation.

FIGURE 2.20

A data visualization created by Charles Joseph Minard in 1869 to describe Napoleon's march to Moscow in 1812.



Review *Questions*

. What are the four steps of descriptive analytics?
. What has caused the data surge during this era of big data?
. What is the difference between a numerical and categorical variable?
. Give three examples of types of errors that are corrected during data cleaning?
. What is done during the three steps of the ETL process?
. What is the Knowledge Discovery in Databases (KDD) process?
. How are summary statistics useful in exploring the data? page 57
. How is sorting and filtering useful in exploring the data?
. How are charts useful in exploring the data?
. What is data visualization?
. What is the familiarization objective of descriptive analytics? page 58
. What is the communication objective of descriptive analytics?
. What is the ultimate goal of descriptive analytics?

2.4 PERFORMING PREDICTIVE ANALYTICS

Predictive analytics is focused on using models to create *predictions* of what is likely to happen in the future. Following a brief introduction, we will describe the five steps outlined below for performing predictive analytics.

STEP 1: Develop a model
STEP 2: Partition the data
STEP 3: Test and refine the current model
STEP 4: Repeat steps 1–3 for several models, and then choose the best
STEP 5: Implementation

The use of descriptive analytics is important for an organization to better understand what has been happening to date. However, in order to prepare for what lies ahead, it also is important to gain a better understanding of what is likely to happen in the future. This is where predictive analytics plays a key role because its focus is on using data to predict future events, trends, or behaviors. The basic approach is to use predictive models to analyze historical data, including identifying trends and relationships, in order to extrapolate into the future.

Predictive analytics is sometimes referred to as *data mining,* a broad term that sometimes is used to encompass most of the nonroutine tasks of business analytics. It also is sometimes misunderstood because the term seems to describe a focus on the extraction of relevant data from various sources. However, the term is a misnomer because the goal is the extraction of *patterns and knowledge* from large amounts of data rather than the extraction (mining) of data itself.

So what is the appropriate definition of data mining? The SAS Institute (a prominent software company) provides the following definition.

Data mining is the process of finding anomalies, patterns, and correlations within large data sets to predict outcomes.

data mining

The process of finding anomalies, patterns, and correlations within large data sets to predict outcomes.

A considerable number of **algorithms** (systematic solution procedures) have been developed for performing data mining, including several presented in Chapter 3. The application of these algorithms is often referred to as either predictive analytics or data mining. Hereafter, we will use the term predictive analytics to describe this sort of analysis.

Business firms of almost any kind tend to be substantial users of predictive analytics, especially when addressing certain questions that commonly arise in the marketing area. For example, given the data about past sales of various products, business firms typically want the best forecasts of the future sales of these products to guide future production plans. Similarly, given information about the firm's customers, the marketing department commonly wants to develop a marketing campaign that will particularly appeal to a certain group of these customers and lead to future sales. In addition to business firms dealing with marketing, the heaviest users of predictive analytics are organizations that specialize in such areas as actuarial science, insurance, health care, financial services, and credit scoring.

Predictive analytics is very widely used in the marketing area.

Chapters 3 and 4 describe key techniques that are used for predictive analytics. The focus of Chapter 3 is on making predictions about a particular kind of event. For example, is a particular customer likely to purchase a particular product? The focus of Chapter 4 is on

time series forecasting (e.g., forecasting future sales based on historical sales data). In addition, certain traditional techniques of management science (queueing models and computer simulation) presented in Chapters 13–15 can be very useful for predictive analytics.

time series forecasting

Methods that use past observations in a time series to forecast what the next value will be.

Vignette

Vungle Inc. is a global mobile advertising network. Founded in 2011 in Silicon Valley, it quickly found great success. More than a decade later, it now serves over 4 billion video views per month on 1 billion unique devices, while generating over $75 million annual revenue. It is consistently ranked #1 for cross-platform user retention by industry mobile performance indexes. Just prior to a merger with Liftoff in late 2021, it employed approximately 300 people, many of whom are software engineers, business developers, and data scientists, located in several countries across the globe.

Mobile devices have revolutionized the advertising industry. When a customer enters an advertising network through a mobile device, a personalized decision needs to be made immediately about which advertisement to show the customer. Armed with “big data” about individual customers, Vungle can process a significant amount of data about the visitor and then makes this decision in about six milliseconds (0.006 second). Thus, there is no visible hesitation before the advertisement appears. The objective is to make the best possible prediction about what would interest the customer and so maximize the revenue that results from the visitor viewing the advertisement and subsequently making a related purchase.

Vungle had developed an effective procedure for doing this shortly after its founding. However, business analysts with strong training in business analytics soon undertook a major study to improve this procedure further. Using the **best predictive analytics methods, including machine learning and classification algorithms,** they developed a state-of-the-art ad-serving algorithm. A careful comparison with the original procedure showed an estimated **23 percent increase in revenue.**

This outstanding application of predictive analytics led to Vungle being chosen as a finalist for a prestigious INFORMS prize called the 2016 Daniel H. Wagner Prize for Excellence in Operations Research Practice.

Source: B. de Reyck, I. Fragkos, Y. Grushka-Cockayne, C. Lichendahl, H. Guerin, and A. Kritzer, "Vungle Inc. Improves Monetization Using Big Data Analytics," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 47, no. 1 (September–October 2017): 454–466. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

The predictive analytics process begins by developing a model for making the kind of prediction that is desired by management. This model needs to spell out a systematic procedure (an "algorithm") for making this prediction. The relevant data will drive this procedure. In order to test the model, the data often will be partitioned into at least two parts, where one part will be used to develop and apply the model, whereas the other part will be used to test the validity of the model and refine it further.

See Chapters 3 and 4 for details about key techniques for predictive analytics.

There usually are several reasonable options for the algorithm part of the model. These several versions will need to be tested and compared in order to choose the best one. This then enables the desired prediction to be made and implemented.

This process can be broken down into the five steps outlined above. We now will describe these five steps in turn.

STEP 1: Develop a Model

Models come in many different forms. **Models for predictive analytics** refer to a systematic procedure for applying an algorithm to make a prediction based upon relevant data. This procedure begins with defining what you want to predict and then identifying the data that are relevant. The final step is to choose one of the many available algorithms of predictive analytics to make this prediction.

model for predictive analytics

A systematic procedure for applying an algorithm to make a prediction based upon relevant data.

Determining what you want to predict requires careful communication with management. Different types of models are needed depending on whether the goal is to predict a numerical outcome (e.g., sales for next quarter) or a yes-or-no outcome (e.g., is this customer likely to buy this product). These kinds of models (prediction models and classification models) will be described in the next subsection.

The dataset typically contains numerous variables. A key part of developing an effective model for making a prediction is determining which of these variables to include within the model. For example, some variables may be highly correlated with the outcome and therefore very helpful in making an accurate prediction, while others may have little correlation and therefore little predictive power.

The final step in developing the model is to choose the most appropriate algorithm for making the prediction. Commonly, several algorithms will be tried, tested, and refined, and then compared to see which performs the best.

Algorithms are widely used throughout various areas of business analytics and management science. Here is a general definition.

An **algorithm** follows a prescribed set of steps (often iterating these steps repeatedly) until it concludes with a solution. In business analytics and management science,

these steps usually involve calculations performed by a computer.

algorithm

A systematic procedure that follows a prescribed set of steps until it concludes with a solution.

When dealing with predictive analytics, the solution refers to a prediction. Chapter 3 presents several algorithms of this type.

For example, a particularly intuitive algorithm presented in Section 3.2 is the **k-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm.** When attempting to predict what a prospective customer will do, the algorithm follows these steps. First, it performs calculations to determine a number (a prechosen value, denoted by *k*) of historical customers whose characteristics are the most similar to the prospective customer. Second, it uses the observed behavior of these customers (the *k* nearest neighbors of this customer) to predict what the prospective customer will do. We will refer to this algorithm repeatedly later in this chapter to illustrate the role of algorithms in predictive analytics, including during the ongoing case study at First Bank. While the details of this algorithm won't be presented until Chapter 3, only the basic intuition of the algorithm presented above is needed to follow along in this chapter.

k-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm

An intuitive algorithm that is often used for performing predictive analytics.

Prediction and Classification Models

In predictive analytics, there are two major categories of models—prediction models and classification models. These categories of models will be defined below using two examples presented previously.

Recall the VRX example from Section 1.4, where VRX was trying to predict how sales for one of its products (the VRX2000) would vary

as a function of the advertising level. The available data consists of historical data from past quarters, each with a given advertising level that resulted in a particular sales level. Based on the historical data, a prediction model was created (using regression) to estimate what the sales level would be for any given advertising level. A model that predicts a numeric outcome like this is referred to as a **prediction model**.

prediction model

A model that predicts a numeric outcome.

The First Bank case study from Section 2.1 presents an example where a different kind of prediction is needed. Rather than predicting a numeric value (like sales), First Bank needs to predict a future binary (yes-or-no) outcome—will a prospective customer default or not? The prediction will be based upon various characteristics of that customer (e.g., their annual income, credit score, etc.). The available data for making this prediction consists of the characteristics of past customers combined with their observed outcomes. A model that attempts to predict a yes-or-no outcome like this is referred to as **classification model.** More generally, there may be several possible outcomes rather than just yes-or-no. In that case, each possible outcome is referred to as a **class,** and the classification model will predict the outcome's likely class.

classification model

A model that attempts to predict a yes-or-no outcome (or perhaps one of several possible outcomes).

class

When using a classification model, each possible outcome is referred to as a class.

A basic approach for addressing this kind of classification question is to determine a subset of the previous customers whose characteristics are most similar to the prospective customer. (As mentioned in the introduction to this Step 1 subsection, this is the

approach used by the KNN algorithm for predictive analytics.) Then classify the prospective customer based on the past outcomes of this subset of previous customers. Chapter 3 will describe several classification models that each use different approaches for choosing the subset of previous customers to use for making the classification.

The First Bank example describes classifying a prospective customer by using information about past customers. However, applications can be much broader than this. It isn't even necessary that the predictions need to be about people. There sometimes is interest in applying predictive analytics to other *entities* (products, groups, companies, other types of organizations, etc.) rather than just individual people. For each kind of entity, we still are talking about some *activity,* as well as a large number of *representatives* of this entity who have engaged in this activity in the past and achieved some *outcome.*

Some Terminology for Prediction and Classification Models

The records for the past representatives (up to the present time) are referred to as the **historical records** and the one for the new representative (the one for whom a prediction is needed) is called the **predictor record.**

historical record
An entity for which data have already been collected.

predictor record
A new entity for whom a prediction is needed.

The variable we are trying to predict is the **outcome variable** or **outcome** for short. It is usually denoted by *Y* (sometimes referred to as the dependent variable, output variable, response, or label). The variables representing the characteristics of the records that are used to make the prediction are referred to as the

predictor variables. They are usually denoted by X (sometimes called an independent variable, input variable, or feature).

outcome variable (or outcome for short)

The variable we are trying to predict.

predictor variable

A variable representing one of the characteristics of the historical records that is being used to make the desired prediction.

Returning to the Case Study: Developing the Model at First Bank

A key decision that the loan officers at First Bank need to make regularly is whether to approve an unsecured loan for a particular applicant. To make this decision, they need to predict the likelihood of default for the applicant. To assist with this decision, the study team will develop a classification model to classify potential loan applicants based on their likelihood of default.

Note the meaning of these key terms (historical record, predictor record, outcome and predictor variables).

A follow-up decision for approved loans is to determine the interest rate to charge. This is also driven by the likelihood of default. If the expected rate of default is extremely low, First Bank can charge a relatively low interest rate and still make a profit. If the expected rate of default is higher, then First Bank would need to charge a high enough interest rate to still make a reasonable profit overall, despite the losses that arise from the customers that default.

In consultation with the CEO and the VP of the loan department, the study team feels that the loan applicants should be classified into categories: A, B, C, and D. Category A (*prime*) applicants would be those estimated to have a very low chance of default and be given the lowest interest rates. Category B (*nearly prime*) applicants would have a somewhat higher (but still low) chance of default with somewhat higher interest rates. Category C (*subprime*) applicants

would have relatively high expected rates of default, so would be charged relatively high interest rates. Finally, category D applicants have a high enough expected default rate that the loan should be denied.

Choosing the Variables to Include in the Model at First Bank

To develop their model, the study team needs to choose the output variable and predictor variables from the dataset. Since they are attempting to classify the applicants based upon their likelihood of default, the output variable is chosen as the binary variable *Default.*

But which of the other variables should be included as predictor variables in the model? It might seem that *every* other variable from the dataset should be included as a predictor variable, allowing the model to use *all* available information to predict the outcome.

In fact, more is not necessarily better. Having more predictor variables makes the model more complex and requires more records to accurately assess the relationships between the variables. There may be overlap in the information conveyed by certain pairs of variables. Other variables may be unrelated to the outcome. Reducing the dimension of the model (e.g., including *fewer* variables as predictor variables) often can improve the accuracy of the model.

The correlation table (visually represented as a heat map in Figure 2.10) can be very helpful in determining which potential variables to include or exclude. For example, this table shows a very strong positive correlation between *Debt* and *Income,* which indicates very strong information overlap between this pair of variables. Generally, when variables are strongly correlated like this, they should not *both* be included as predictor variables.

There is also a strong positive correlation between *Credit* and *Rate.* Recall that the interest rate (*Rate*) has been determined by First Bank *after* the loan is approved, based entirely upon the applicant's credit score (*Credit).* Therefore, *Rate* does not provide

additional predictive information beyond the *Credit* variable, so *Rate* should not be used as a predictor variable.

The correlation table can be further used to estimate the predictive power of the variables. A strong correlation between a particular variable and *Default* (the *outcome* variable) indicates a close relationship between the two. This suggests that this particular variable may have strong predictive power for the outcome and therefore is a good candidate to be a predictor variable.

The bottom row of the correlation table in Figure 2.10 shows the correlation between each *numerical* variable and the outcome (*Default*). This reveals that *Credit, dti,* and *Rate* show the strongest correlation (negative for *Credit* and positive for *dti* and *Rate*) with *Default.* As discussed above, *Rate* is based directly on *Credit,* and thus should not be included as a predictor variable. However, *dti* and *Credit* appear to have fairly strong predictive power and so are strong candidates to be predictor variables. The other numerical variables show little correlation with *Default,* suggesting little predictive power.

Some caveats with this correlation analysis should be mentioned. First, a near-zero correlation between a variable and the outcome does not *necessarily* mean that the variable has little predictive power. If the relationship is nonlinear (e.g., if the outcome first declines with the variable and then increases), there could be a strong relationship that implies significant predictive power despite having near-zero correlation. These sorts of relationships are hidden in the correlation table, but can be revealed visually through the charts generated when exploring the data. The second caveat is that the correlation table only includes numeric variables. For categorical variables, bar charts like those in Figure 2.14 can be used instead to examine the relationship between the variable and outcome.

It occasionally can be useful to combine variables, transform variables, or create new variables. For example, the study team notices that *Debt* and *Income* are not closely correlated with the outcome. On the other hand, if these variables are combined (as they were) into a separately calculated variable, *dti* (the debt-to-income

ratio), by dividing the monthly debt payment by the monthly income, this new variable *does* appear to be a powerful predictor of the outcome.

When examining the bar chart in Figure 2.14(d) that shows the default rate based on *Employment* (the number of years the applicant has been employed), the study team notices a distinct drop in the default rate when the applicant has been employed for two years or more. The team considers transforming *Employment* from a categorical variable (with *six* possible values) to a binary variable (with *two* possible values), with value 1 if the applicant has been employed two years or more, and 0 otherwise. Transforming a categorical variable to a binary variable like this is another way to reduce the dimension of the model and may improve accuracy.

Also, some algorithms require that variables be numerical while other algorithms require that variables be categorical. This sometimes requires transforming variables to a form that can be used by the algorithm. For example, numerical variables can be transformed to categorical variables by "binning." By creating categories ("bins") such as low, medium, and high, a numerical variable can be converted to a categorical variable by assigning it the appropriate category based on the original variable's numerical value. A categorical variable (even nominal categorical variables with no ordering) can be transformed into several numerical variables by creating a dummy variable for each possible category of the categorical variable. The dummy variable takes on the value of 1 if the original variable is a member of that category, and 0 otherwise.

Binning will be demonstrated in Section 3.4.

After carefully evaluating all the variables, the study team decides to use *Credit* and *dti* as predictor variables in their classification model. The team also will experiment with using the binary version of *Employment* as a predictor variable to see if this improves the performance of the model.

Choosing the Algorithm for the Model at First Bank

The study team plans to try a number of different algorithms for classifying the loan applicants to First Bank, including several that are covered in Chapter 3. The first one they will try is the KNN algorithm that was briefly described in the introduction to this Step 1 subsection.

STEP 2: Partition the Data

The basic approach with the models of predictive analytics is to use historical data to analyze the relationship between the predictor variable(s) and the resulting outcome(s). Intuitively, it might seem that we should want the predictive analytics models to fit the existing historical data as precisely as possible. In fact, it is not necessarily desirable to fit the data that closely. As discussed in Section 1.4, we need to be very careful to avoid *overfitting* the data.

We demonstrate below the pitfalls of overfitting the data and then show how *partitioning* can be used to try to avoid overfitting.

Overfitting the Data

The future is uncertain. Therefore, some *randomness* is expected in future outcomes. Furthermore, there may be various additional factors beyond the chosen predictor variables that might influence the outcome. Thus, we expect a fair amount of *noise* in the historical data. But taken as a whole, all the data provide a *signal* as to the likely outcome for a new predictor record. As much as possible, we want the model to account for the *signal,* but not the *noise.*

page 63

As described in Section 1.4, a model that fits the historical data *too* precisely is referred to as **overfitting the data** because it is overly accounting for the noise.

overfitting the data

Making a predictive model less accurate when using new data sets by having the model align *too* closely to the given data instead of taking into account the inherent idiosyncrasies in the given data due to randomness.

The goal for the models of predictive analytics is *not* to perfectly fit the *historical* data, but rather to effectively predict an outcome based on the predictor variables for a *new* predictor record. A model that overfits to the historical data will incorporate and account for too much of the noise, potentially to the point of missing the main signal, and therefore may make poor predictions with new data. Often a model that *less precisely* matches the historical data, but better captures the general structure of the relationship between the data for the historical records and their outcomes (the signal), will perform significantly better when making predictions about the future based on new data.

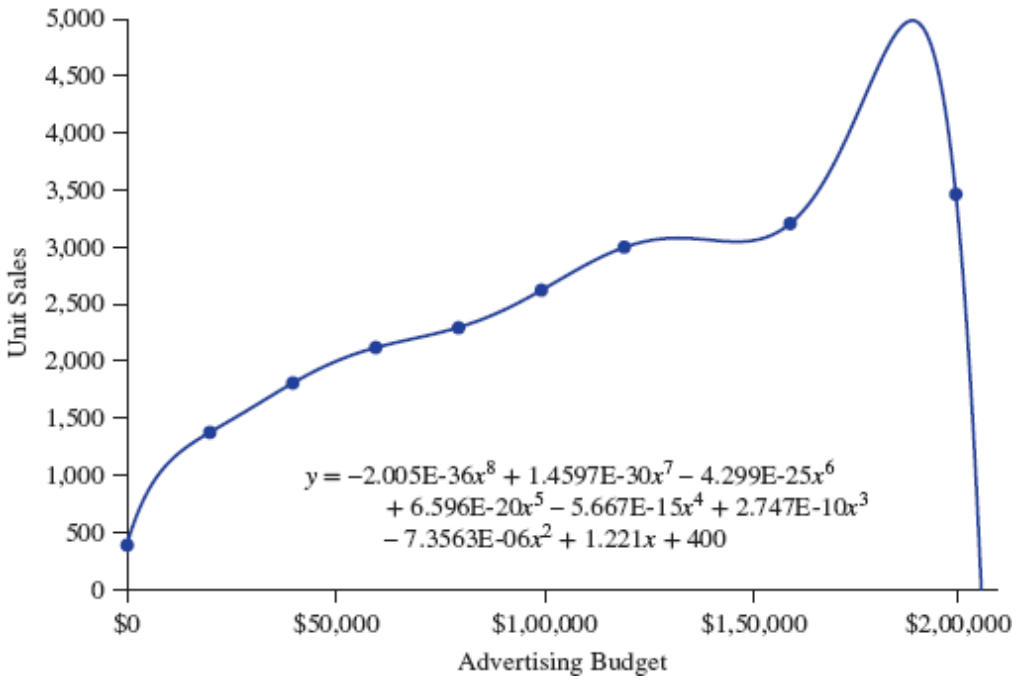
Models that capture the signal in the data rather than fit to the noise will typically make better predictions for *new* predictor records.

Recall the VRX example from Section 1.4, where VRX was trying to predict how sales for one of its products (the VRX2000) would vary as a function of the advertising level. Based upon historical data (as shown in the scatter plot of Figure 1.1 in Section 1.4), several possible relationships between sales and advertising were considered, including a linear relationship (as shown in Figure 1.2), a second-order polynomial (as shown in Figure 1.3), and a square root relationship (as shown in Figure 1.5).

One can fit the model to the historical data even more precisely than any of these functions by using a higher-order polynomial. For example, see Figure 1.4, which uses a sixth-order polynomial. Now consider fitting the historical data with an *eighth-order* polynomial. If x is the advertising budget, and y is the predicted unit sales, then the eighth-order polynomial that best fits the historical data is shown in Figure 2.21. This function fits the historical data *precisely.* The curve passes *exactly* through each data point.

FIGURE 2.21

Fitting an eighth-order polynomial to the historical data involving unit sales versus advertising budget for the VRX2000. (See Table 1.1 in Section 1.4 for the precise data.)



An eighth-order polynomial is a polynomial that includes terms for x, x^2, x^3, all the way up to x^8, and takes the form $y = a_8x^8 + a_7x^7 + a_6x^6 + a_5x^5 + a_4x^4 + a_3x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0$.

However, this is a clear example of overfitting the data. While the function matches the *historical* data perfectly, it likely would do a poor job at predicting a *future* outcome based upon the advertising budget. For example, one would not expect the unit sales to oscillate with the advertising budget like this function predicts, spiking way up for advertising budgets around $190,000, then falling off rapidly for advertising budgets just over $200,000. In fact, this formula would predict *negative* sales for advertising budgets well over $200,000, which is clearly absurd.

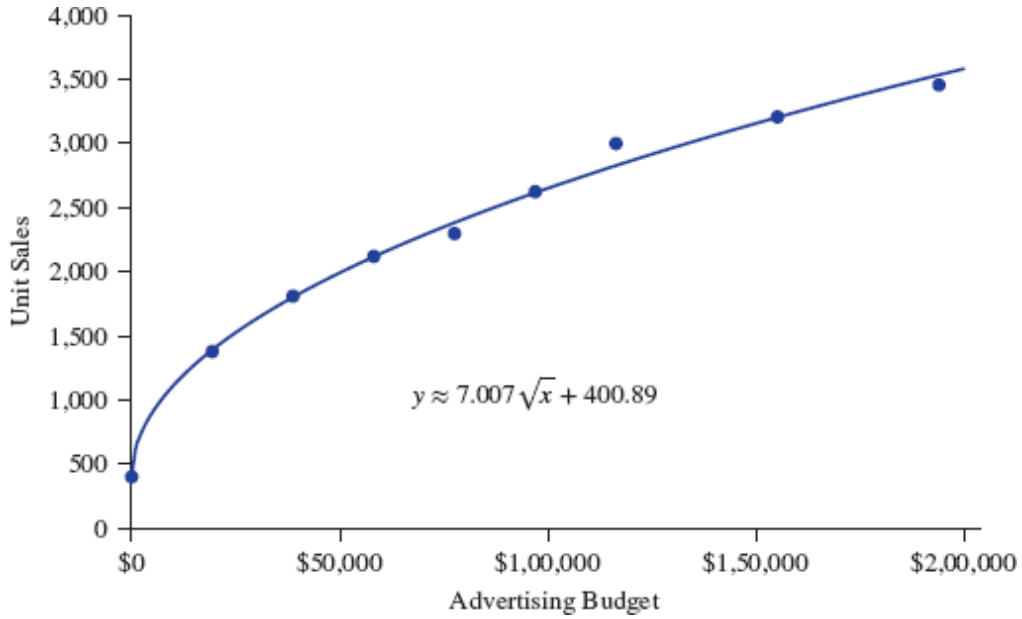
Consider instead the much simpler square root formula that was developed in Section 1.4 to predict sales as a function of advertising, as shown in Figure 1.5 and repeated here in Figure 2.22. While this function doesn't fit the *historical* data as precisely (the curve does not

go *exactly* through each data point), it leads to a much more believable prediction for future data. It effectively captures the general overall relationship between sales and advertising (the signal), without overfitting to the noise in the data.

page 64

FIGURE 2.22

Predicting unit sales with a square root function of the advertising budget for the VRX 2000.



Sometimes a simpler model is more effective than a complex model at capturing the signal rather than the noise.

Partition the Data

In the preceding subsection, we saw an example of overfitting the historical data. So how does one avoid the pitfall of overfitting the historical data? Remember that while the various predictive analytics models typically base the prediction on *historical* data, the goal is to most effectively predict a future outcome for a predictor record based on the *new* data for that predictor record. A key question is how well do the models perform when faced with new data?

A model can be validated over time by waiting to see how well it performs as new data comes in, checking to see how well the predicted outcomes match up with the actual outcomes. However, this can be a long, slow process, since you need to wait for the new data.

A quicker approach to validate (and sometimes improve) the model is to split up (partition) the historical data set into two parts—a **training partition** and a **validation partition.** The data from the training partition are used to develop ("train") the model, and then the model is validated using the data from the validation partition. Thus, even though the records in the validation partition actually are *historical* records with known outcomes, they are treated as if they are *predictor* records so their *predictions* can be compared to their known outcomes. Since the validation data are separate from the training data (and thus new to the model), this allows us to see how the model performs on "new" data. The data usually are *randomly* partitioned into these two sets so as to avoid any bias in either partition.

training partition

A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to develop ("train") the model.

validation partition

A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to validate the model after a training partition is used to develop the model.

In addition to validating the model to make sure that it continues to perform well with new data, the validation partition can also be used as part of the process of building the model. This idea will be explored further in step 3 below.

When the validation data set is used to help build the model, it helps prevent overfitting the model to the training data. However, it raises the (lesser) risk of overfitting the model to the validation data. Sometimes a third partition is created (called a **test partition**) to

further test the model after utilizing both the training data and validation data to build the model.

test partition

A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that can be used to further validate the model after using the training and validation partitions.

The partitioning approach described in this subsection is frequently used because it can be very effective. However, it does require a substantial number of historical records (at least a hundred, and preferably thousands or more) so that each partition has an adequate number of historical records to perform its job well.

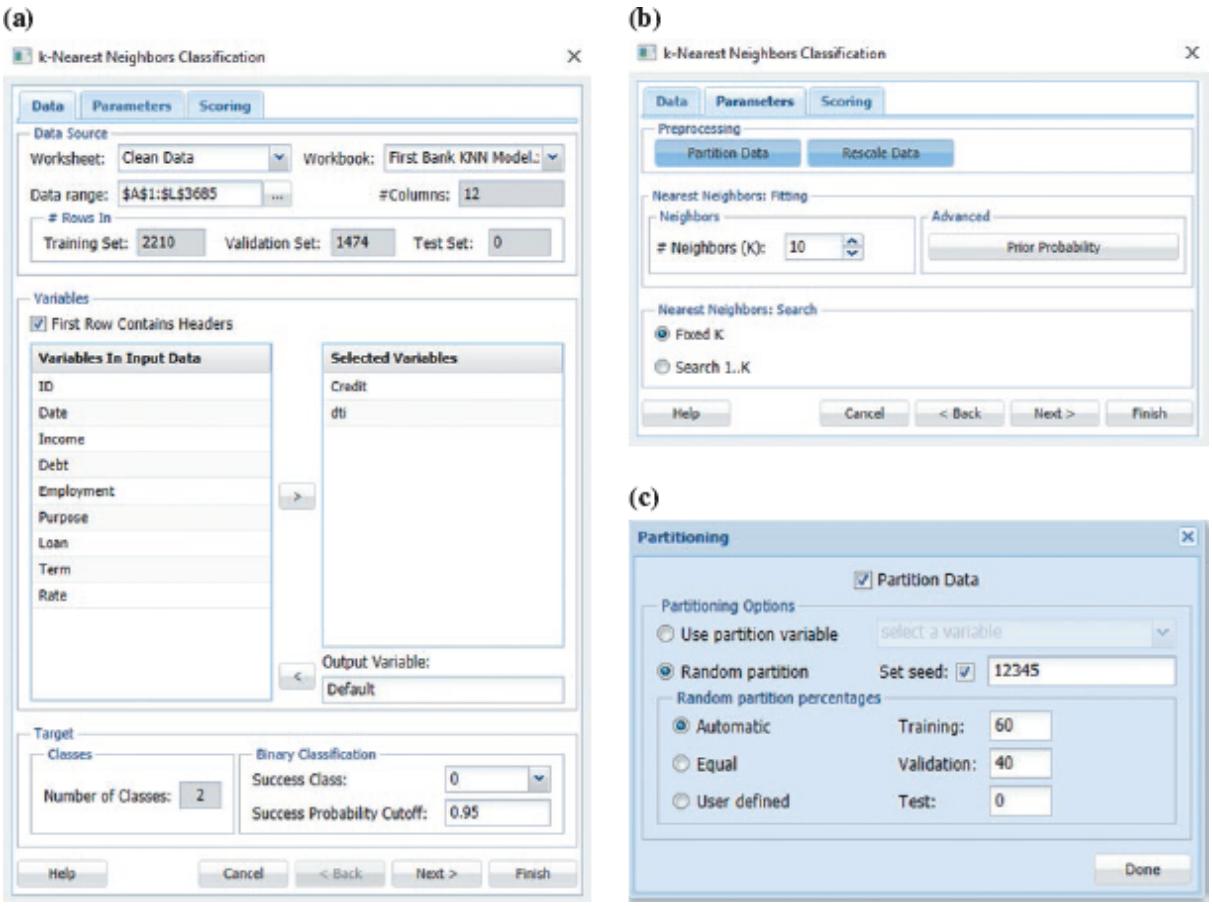
Returning to the Case Study: Partition the Data at First Bank

The study team is preparing to use the KNN algorithm. (See the sixth paragraph in the Step 1 subsection above for an introduction to this algorithm.) Partitioning the data can help with (1) validating the model, (2) choosing the best value for *k* (the number of "nearest neighbors" used in the KNN algorithm to classify a new prediction record), and (3) making sure that the model is not overfitting the data.

This partitioning is easily implemented with Analytic Solver. Choosing the algorithm (*k Nearest Neighbors*) from the *Classify* menu on the *Data Mining* tab brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 2.23(a). This dialog box is used to choose the variables and other settings for the algorithm. After specifying the variables (*Credit* and *dti* for predictor variables and *Default* for the Output variable), clicking *Next* reveals the contents of the *Parameters* tab shown in (b). Clicking the *Partition* button in (b) then reveals the *Partitioning* dialog box shown in (c). Selecting *Random partition* and *Automatic* in (c) will partition the data randomly, with 60 percent of records in the training partition and 40 percent in the validation partition. Alternative ratios for the partition can be selected by choosing *User defined* and specifying any desired ratio.

FIGURE 2.23

The (a) *Data* tab and (b) *Parameters* tab of the *k Nearest Neighbors Classification* dialog box for Analytic Solver. Clicking the *Partition* button in (b) reveals (c), the Partitioning dialog box that is used to set the parameters for how the data set will be partitioned.



(a, b and c) Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

STEP 3: Test and Refine the Model

A variety of tools and metrics are available for comparing the performance of different algorithms (including different variations of the same basic algorithm) for performing predictive analytics. These include confusion matrices, error reports, and various metrics (e.g., accuracy, specificity, and sensitivity), as well as visual graphics such

as lift charts. All of these will be considered as we return to the case study below.

Returning to the Case Study: Testing the KNN Model at First Bank

The study team will apply the KNN algorithm introduced in the Step 1 subsection to classify whether loan applicants should be considered for category A (a *prime* loan)—the category that is considered least likely to default and so is given the most preferred interest rates. In consultation with the CEO and the VP of the loan department, it is decided that only customers that are predicted to have no more than a 5 percent chance of default should be classified into category A.

Don't sweat the details of this algorithm. It will be explained in detail in Chapter 3.

The study team therefore uses the settings for the KNN algorithm in Analytic Solver that were shown back in Figure 2.23(a). The predictor variables are *Credit* and *dti.* The output variable is *Default.* The "success" class for the output variable is 0 (since 0 means no default), and the probability cutoff is set at 0.95 (requiring at least an estimated 95 percent chance of no default). The team decides to start with a *k* value of 40 for the KNN algorithm, meaning the predictor record will be classified based upon the historical data from the 40 "nearest neighbors" (the 40 historical records whose characteristics are most similar to those for the predictor record). This value for *k* is entered in the dialog box of Figure 2.23(b), and the data are also rescaled using standardization (a concept that will be covered in Chapter 3).

Recall that back in step 2, the data was partitioned into a training partition and a validation partition. To test the performance of the algorithm on "new" data, the algorithm will be applied to the data in the validation partition. The 40 nearest neighbors from the training partition will be used to classify each of the records (treated as the predictor record) from the validation partition. Then, since we know the outcome for each record in the validation set, we can compare the predicted outcome from the algorithm to the actual outcome.

The **Confusion Matrix** in Figure 2.24(a) shows how the predicted outcomes compare to the actual outcomes. For example, reading down each column of the confusion matrix, the algorithm predicted 0 (not likely to default) a total of 222 times. In fact, 213 of these 222 records didn't default, so the algorithm predicted correctly for these records. However, nine of the 222 records actually did default (so the algorithm predicted incorrectly in these few cases). The algorithm predicted 1 (relatively likely to default) for a total of 1,252 records, whereas only 223 of these records actually did default. Thus, 222 were predicted correctly but 1,029 were not. This result did not unduly worry the study team since it is far more important to avoid defaults than to classify a customer too low.

FIGURE 2.24

The performance of the KNN algorithm when using the Data Mining tab in Analytic Solver, displaying a (a) confusion matrix, (b) error report, and (c) other metrics for the First Bank case study when using a training partition with 2,211 historical records and a validation partition with 1,474 historical records that are treated as predictor records.

(a)

Confusion Matrix		
Actual\Predicted	0	1
0	213	1029
1	9	223

(b)

Error Report			
Class	# Cases	# Errors	% Error
0	1,242	1,029	82.85024155
1	232	9	3.879310345
Overall	1,474	1,038	70.42062415

(c)

Metrics	
Metric	Value
Accuracy (#correct)	436
Accuracy (%correct)	29.579376
Specificity	0.9612069
Sensitivity (Recall)	0.1714976
Precision	0.9594595
F1 score	0.2909836
Success Class	0
Success Probability	0.95

(a, b and c) Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

confusion matrix

A matrix that shows how the predicted outcomes compare to the actual outcomes when using a predictive analytics algorithm.

The accuracy of the algorithm on the validation data is presented in a different way in the *Error Report* table in Figure 2.24(b). Here it shows that 1,242 of the records didn't default (indicated by 0). Of these, 1,029 were predicted to be relatively likely to default (so an error in prediction) leading to an error rate of 1,029/1,242 = 82.9 percent. On the other hand, 232 records in the validation set did default (indicated by 1). Of these 232 records, nine were predicted to be unlikely to default, leading to an error rate of 9/232 = 3.9 percent. Overall, there were 1,038 prediction errors out of 1,474, for an error rate of 70.4 percent.

Finally, the *Metrics* table in Figure 2.24(c) shows some additional statistics. For example, the *accuracy* (the overall rate of correct predictions) was 29.6 percent. The *specificity* (defined as the ability to correctly predict a negative outcome) is 96.1 percent, while the *sensitivity* (defined as the ability to correctly predict a positive outcome) is 17.1 percent.

It may appear that the KNN algorithm performed poorly with an *accuracy* of only 29.6 percent. In fact, consider a naïve algorithm that simply predicts that *all* records will not default. Since 1,242 out of 1,474 records did not default, this simple-minded algorithm would have been significantly *more* accurate with an *accuracy* of 1,242/1,474 = 84.3 percent.

In this particular case, the accuracy rate is deceiving. Remember that a classification of 1 by the algorithm does *not* mean that the record is *likely* to default; rather, it is just a prediction that the probability of default exceeds 5 percent. This means that even a record classified as 1 may still have as high as a nearly 95 percent chance to *not* default. The study team fully expects *most* of the records with a classification of 1 to not default and so is therefore not alarmed by the low accuracy.

For First Bank, the main goal of the algorithm is not to correctly predict whether or not a loan will default. Rather, the main goal is to correctly find a set of loan applicants that are *almost certain* to not default, and therefore should be eligible for

category A (*prime*) loans. These prime loans will be given the lowest interest rates. If more than even just a few of these loans ends in default, there is not enough profit earned on interest to overcome the potential losses from default.

So if accuracy is not the critical performance metric here, what is? It is more important for First Bank that the algorithm correctly predict a substantial likelihood of a negative outcome (default). That is, if the loan will default, it should *almost never* be classified as eligible for a prime loan. The *specificity* of the algorithm measures the ability to correctly predict this negative outcome. The study team is pleased with the specificity of 96.1 percent.

For First Bank, correctly predicting the substantial likelihood of negative outcomes (default), as measured by specificity, is critical as each default on a prime loan greatly reduces the bank's profits. On the other hand, correctly predicting the positive outcomes (no default), as measured by sensitivity, is not as important. If a record with positive outcome is not classified in category A (*prime*), usually the record simply gets assigned to a lower category (e.g., B, C, or D).

Reconsider the naïve algorithm mentioned earlier of predicting *all* records to not default. While it would have a significantly superior *accuracy* and *sensitivity* of 84.3 percent (compared to 29.6 and 17.1 percent, respectively, for KNN), its *specificity* would have been 0 percent. It would incorrectly predict *every* negative outcome. Since specificity is the most important metric for First Bank, this naïve algorithm would be a disaster.

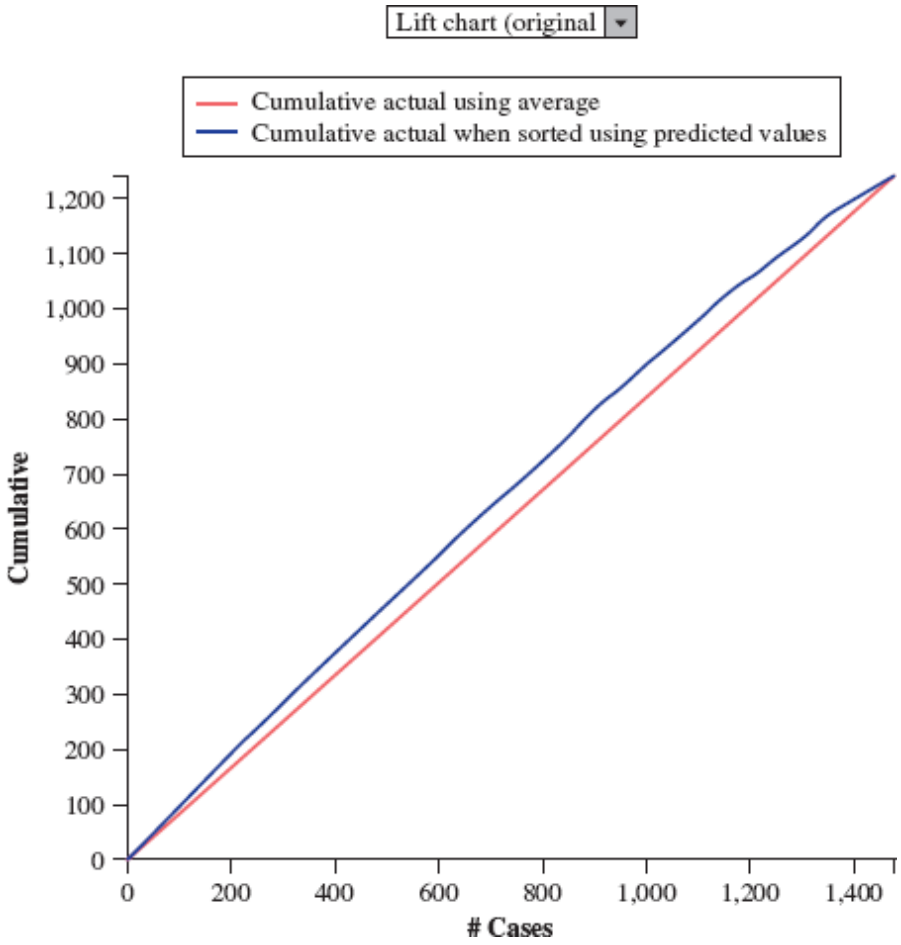
The Role of Lift Charts in Assessing the Effectiveness of an Algorithm

Figure 2.24 provides substantial information about the effectiveness of the KNN algorithm for First Bank. However, it does require some effort to decipher the significance of the various statistics. It would be helpful to have a quick and easy way of assessing the effectiveness of an algorithm by just looking at a chart. This is help that *lift charts* can provide.

A lift chart can be generated by Analytic Solver's Data Mining tab. Figure 2.25 shows the lift chart that results from applying the KNN algorithm to the case study. Here is how to interpret such a chart.

FIGURE 2.25

The lift chart for the KNN algorithm (with k = 40) as generated by Analytic Solver's Data Mining tab when it is applied to the validation partition for the First Bank case study.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

A **lift chart** graphically shows the improvement that an algorithm provides when compared against a random guess that is represented by the straight diagonal line. The curve in the chart shows what happens each time another historical

record (playing the role of a predictor record) in the validation partition is classified based on the data in the training partition. The horizontal axis represents the number of these historical records that have been plotted so far. When dealing with yes-or-no outcomes, where yes is the desirable outcome, the vertical axis represents the number of these historical records that had desirable outcomes. Since the straight diagonal line shows the *average* number of positive outcomes that would occur with just random guesses, the height of the curve above this line (except near the end) is measuring the effectiveness of the algorithm.

lift chart

A chart that visually displays the effectiveness of a predictive analytics algorithm for any given application.

The crucial step in generating a lift chart is *sorting* the historical records in the validation partition so that the first ones considered are the ones with the *most favorable classification* (i.e., the ones with the highest predicted probability of a favorable outcome) according to the algorithm. The sorting then works down to the historical records with the *least favorable classification* at the end. Therefore, an *effective algorithm* should find that *almost all* of the initial historical records in the validation partition had desirable outcomes whereas *almost none* of the historical records at the end had desirable outcomes. (The *almost* is needed because *randomness* in outcomes prevents perfect results.) This is exactly what the curve in Figure 2.25 shows. It initially goes up with the maximum possible slope of 1 (rising by one positive outcome for each record considered), gradually reducing in slope as the negative outcomes start becoming more prominent.

As mentioned above, the straight diagonal line shows the *average* number of positive outcomes that would occur if the historical records were instead simply chosen in random order, without the benefit of any algorithm. Since 1,242 out of 1,474 historical records in the validation data set had positive outcomes, each randomly chosen

record considered would have a 1,242/1,474 probability of a positive outcome. Thus, this is a straight line, rising with a constant slope of 1,242/1,474.

Therefore, comparing the curved line with the straight line measures the effectiveness of the algorithm. If the algorithm is effective, you would expect it to rise more quickly than average at first (since it has sorted the historical records with the most favorable classification first) and thus rise above the diagonal line. (Because the straight line in Figure 2.25 has a slope so close to one, it is impressive that the curved line initially rises above the straight line as well as it does.) If the algorithm is ineffective (so that the sorted list is no better than one chosen in random order), then you would expect the curved line to roughly follow the diagonal line (perhaps bouncing above and below due to the randomness in the data). Except near the end, the *height* of the curve above the diagonal line (i.e., the size of the gap) is measuring the effectiveness of the algorithm.

For the specific application displayed in Figure 2.25, the sorting of the historical records in the validation partition is done in a straightforward way. Since k = 40 for this application of the KNN algorithm, the most favorable classification of a record in the validation partition is when all 40 nearest neighbors in the training partition had a desirable outcome, the second most favorable classification of a record is when 39 of the 40 nearest neighbors had a desirable outcome, and so on down to the least favorable classification. While breaking ties arbitrarily, this provides the desired sorting.

We described lift charts above for the case of yes-or-no outcomes. However, lift charts also can be used in a similar way with *numerical outcomes.* In this case, the historical records in the validation partition would be sorted by their predicted numerical outcomes (largest to smallest). The straight diagonal line would be based on the expected numerical outcome of a randomly ordered list.

Refining the KNN Model at First Bank

The study team can use the various metrics to compare the performance of the KNN algorithm to other algorithms, and this idea will be explored in step 4. But these same metrics can also be used to refine an algorithm. The KNN algorithm has a key parameter denoted by *k* which represents the number of nearest neighbors to consider when making a prediction for a record.

As will be discussed in greater detail in Section 3.2 (where full coverage of the KNN algorithm is presented), there are tradeoffs in choosing *k.* At one extreme, with *k* = 1, the prediction is based *solely* on the single nearest data point to the predictor record. Because of randomness, statisticians tell us that we should not rely on a sample size of one. But as *k* gets larger, the prediction starts to be based on historical records that are less and less similar to the prediction record.

page 69

The study team wants to know which value of *k* provides the best performance. Trying different values for *k* and comparing the performance metrics can help answer this question.

Table 2.1 summarizes the performance metrics when performing the KNN algorithm for First Bank using several different values of *k.* For better specificity, it appears that a relatively high value of *k* (40 or 50) gives the best performance. It is not surprising that the algorithm performs poorly on specificity for smaller values of *k* (e.g., 10). It is hard to accurately determine whether the rate of default is no more than 5 percent (1 in 20) by examining only 10 records!

TABLE 2.1

The performance of the KNN algorithm in Analytic Solver's Data Mining tab is shown for several different values of *k* for the First Bank case study. Using *k* = 40 or *k* = 50 gives the best performance with over 96 percent specificity.

k	Accuracy (percent)	Specificity (percent)	Sensitivity (percent)
10	40.2	85.8	31.7

k	Accuracy (percent)	Specificity (percent)	Sensitivity (percent)
20			
	44.6	85.3	37.0
30	34.1	91.8	23.3
40	29.6	96.1	17.1
50	32.0	96.6	20.0

Note that the ideal specificity in this case is not 100 percent. For example, a naïve algorithm that simply classified *all* records as likely to default would achieve 100 percent specificity, since every record that actually did default would have been classified as such. But this would not be a very useful algorithm.

Recall that 0.95 was set as the cutoff for the estimated probability of default when classifying records. This means that it should be *expected* that up to 5 percent of the records classified as 0 (unlikely to default) will default. Thus, given the cutoff, a reasonable target value for specificity would be in the upper 90's. KNN with $k = 40$ or $k = 50$ hits this target.

STEP 4: Repeat Steps 1–3 for Several Models and then Choose the Best

There are many predictive analytics models available for performing classification. Several are covered in Chapter 3, including KNN, classification trees, logistic regression, and naïve Bayes.

As will be discussed in Chapter 3, each of the various types of models have different strengths and weaknesses. It is generally a good idea to repeat steps 1 to 3 for several different models and see which performs the best for the particular application.

Returning to the Case Study: Exploring Several Models and Choosing the Best

The study team has developed, partitioned, tested, and refined the KNN model to classify whether loan applicants should be considered for category A (a *prime* loan). They will now perform these same steps for three other classification models: classification trees, logistic regression, and naïve Bayes. Since these models will not be covered until Chapter 3, the details will not be described here, but the results can be seen in the *First Bank Other Models* spreadsheet available at **www.mhhe/Hillier7e**.

Recall that when choosing the variables for the model in step 1, the study team also wanted to explore using a binary version of the *Employment* variable (1 if employed two years or longer, 0 otherwise) as an additional predictor variable. Therefore, the team will test all the algorithms both with and without this additional predictor variable (beyond *Credit* and *dti*).

A summary of the performance of each of these algorithms when using the training partition to determine the model and the validation partition to test the model is shown in Table 2.2. The team observes that adding *Employment* as a predictor variable seems to make the KNN algorithm *less* effective on all metrics, but slightly improves the accuracy of the classification tree and logistic regression models, while having no impact on naïve Bayes.

TABLE 2.2

The performance of various classification models when applied to the validation partition of the First Bank dataset. Each model is tested using either just *Credit and dti* as predictor variables or adding *Employment* as a third predictor variable.

	Using *Credit* and *dti* as Predictor Variables			Using *Credit*, *dti*, and *Employment* as Predictor Variables		
Classification Model	**Accuracy (percent)**	**Specificity (percent)**	**Sensitivity (percent)**	**Accuracy (percent)**	**Specificity (percent)**	**Sensitivity (percent)**
KNN	32.0	96.6	20.0	30.1	95.8	18.7
Classification Tree	37.0	93.5	29.6	39.7	93.5	29.6
Logistic Regression	29.4	98.2	16.6	29.7	98.3	16.9
Naïve Bayes	35.8	97.0	24.3	35.8	97.0	24.3

Since specificity is the most important metric for First Bank, the study team is most impressed with KNN, logistic regression, and naïve Bayes. The study team appreciates that KNN is so simple and intuitive. Therefore, they decide to move forward with using KNN with $k = 50$ nearest neighbors and using only *Credit* and *dti* as predictor variables.

page 70

STEP 5: Implementation

After testing the various models and choosing the one that performs best, that model can be used to make classifications or predictions moving forward, as illustrated below.

Returning to the Case Study: Implementing the Model at First Bank

The loan officers at First Bank have forwarded to the department's VP three loan applications that they consider promising candidates to be considered for a *prime* loan in category A. The data for these loan applicants are shown in Figure 2.26.

FIGURE 2.26

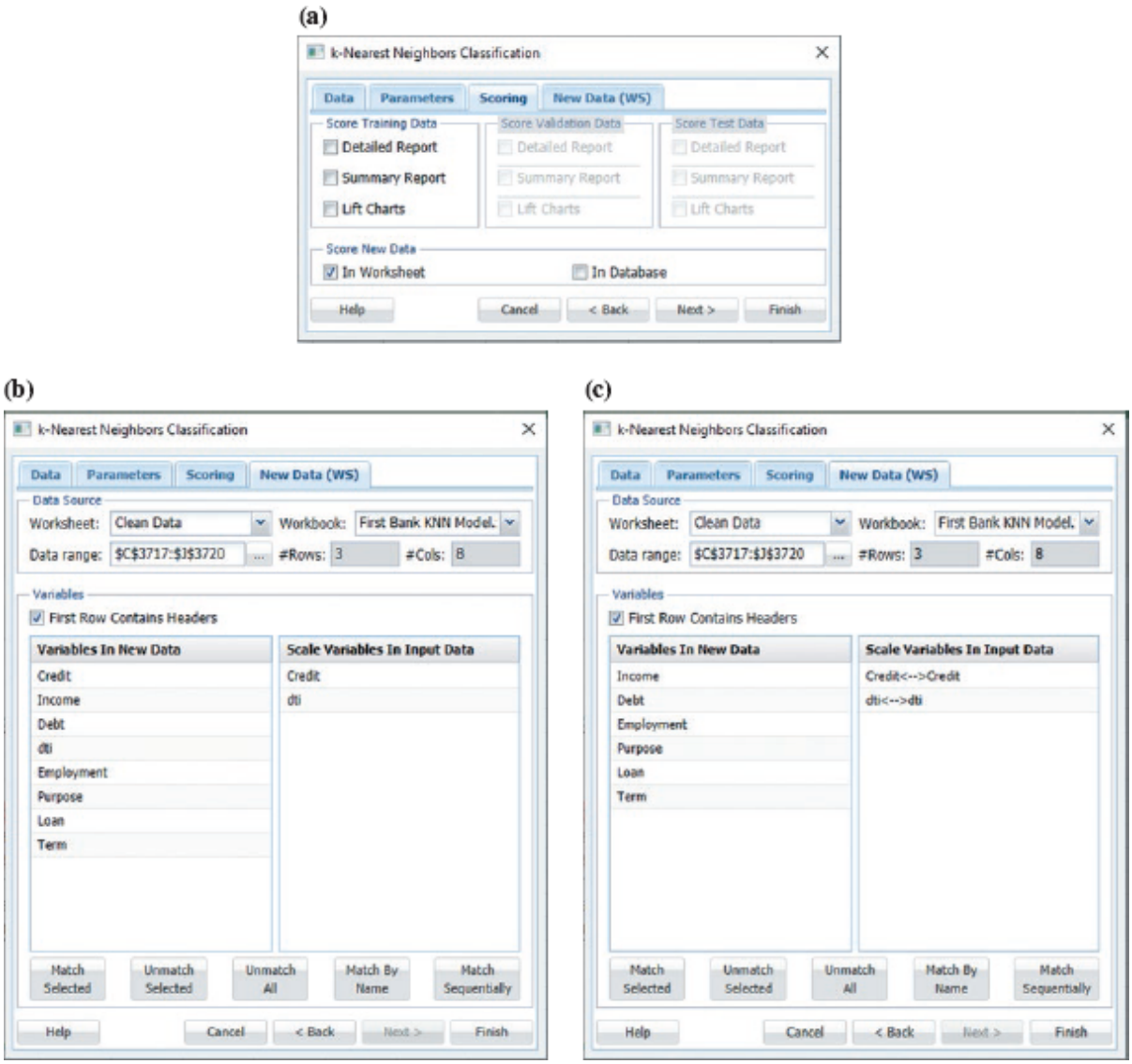
Data records for three new loan applicants at First Bank.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
3716	**New Records to be Classified**									
3717			Credit	Income	Debt	dti	Employment	Purpose	Loan	Term
3718	New Loan Applicant 1		784	68	2033	35.9%	3-4	O	7.5	36
3719	New Loan Applicant 2		765	122	2635	25.9%	5+	DC	15.0	60
3720	New Loan Applicant 3		722	95	877	11.1%	4-5	EE	8.6	36

The study team and the VP are excited to try out the newly developed model to classify these loan applicants. Scoring new records with a classification model is straightforward with Analytic Solver. The required settings are shown in Figure 2.27. On the scoring tab of the *k-Nearest Neighbors Classification* dialog box shown in (a), select the checkbox to score new data in the worksheet. Then in (b), specify where the new data is stored in the worksheet (C3717:J3720 with headers in the first row, as shown in Figure 2.26). The variables in the new data records need to be "matched" with the variables in the historical data set. If the variables are labeled identically in the first row for the new predictor record data and for the historical data, then the variables can be matched by clicking the *Match by Name* button. This matches the variables as shown in (c) of the figure.

FIGURE 2.27

The settings required in Analytic Solver's k-Nearest Neighbors Classification dialog box to have the algorithm classify the three new loan applicants at First Bank.



(a, b and c) Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Clicking *Finish* then runs the algorithm for the model and scores the new predictor records, as shown in Figure 2.28. The classification of each record is based upon the prediction for the output variable of *Default.* The last two columns show the estimated probability that the output variable will be 1 (Default) or 0 (No Default), respectively. Then the record is classified as 0 or 1 in the second column (labeled *Prediction: Default*), based upon whether the probability of no default is at least 0.95.

FIGURE 2.28

The results of applying the KNN model to the new loan applicants at First Bank.

Record ID	Prediction: Default	PostProb: 0	PostProb: 1
Record 1	1	0.92	0.08
Record 2	1	0.94	0.06
Record 3	0	0.98	0.02

Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The model suggests that the third loan applicant should be classified in category A for a *prime* loan, with a 98 percent chance of no default. However, the first two loan applicants fall short (92 and 94 percent chance of no default, respectively). These loans should be classified in category B for a *near prime* loan if the cutoff for this category is no more than 92 percent.

Review *Questions*

. What are the five steps for performing predictive analytics?
. What is data mining?
. What are some marketing applications of predictive analytics?
. What does the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm base its predictions upon?
. What is the difference between a prediction model and a classification model?
. What is the difference between an historical record and a predictor record?
. What is the difference between a predictor variable and an outcome variable?
. Give two ways correlation can be used when choosing variables to include in the model.
. What does it mean to overfit to the data?
. Give two reasons for partitioning the data.
.. What is the difference between specificity and sensitivity?

2.5 PERFORMING PRESCRIPTIVE ANALYTICS

Prescriptive analytics is the stage of the analytics approach that involves using *decision models,* including optimization models, to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making. This is the stage where management science is particularly powerful. page 72 (Machine learning is one tool of business analytics that also has capability for performing prescriptive analytics.)

Following a brief introduction, we will describe the five steps outlined below for performing prescriptive analytics.

STEP 1: Formulate a decision model
STEP 2: Learn how to derive solutions from the model
STEP 3: Test the model
STEP 4: Prepare to apply the model
STEP 5: Implementation

After completing the predictive analytics stage of analyzing the problem, what lies ahead? This all depends on the first stage of analyzing a problem (define the problem) that was described in Section 2.2. The managers who requested the analysis of the problem at that stage also needed to identify the appropriate objectives of the study from the viewpoint of management. It may be that they wanted nothing further after obtaining solid predictions of what lies ahead, in which case the study skips over the stage described in this section. However, managers frequently also want the study to go on to the prescriptive analytics stage that focuses on an analysis of how to improve decision making about what should be done in the future.

This next stage begins by formulating a decision model that addresses the decisions that are of concern to management. There are many types of decision models, including various optimization

models. The most popular of these decision models are described in many of the chapters of this book.

The next step is to learn how to derive solutions (including hopefully an optimal solution) from the decision model. Fortunately, systematic solution procedures (so-called *algorithms*) now are readily available for solving even huge versions of popular decision models.

Before actually solving a decision model, it is important to carefully test and refine the model to make sure that it accurately defines the problem of interest. Some techniques are available for doing this. When ready, the study team will prepare to apply the model, perhaps repeatedly, as desired by management. Once applied, the study team needs to work with management to implement the resulting new systems and procedures.

Now let us take a closer look below at each of these steps in turn.

STEP 1: Formulate a Decision Model

Step 1 involves taking the definition of the decision maker's problem and then reformulating this problem in a form that is convenient for analysis. The conventional management science approach for doing this is to construct a model that represents the essence of the problem. We already introduced models for predictive analytics in the previous section. Models for prescriptive analytics are quite different since they focus on making a decision (or perhaps multiple decisions) instead of a prediction. To distinguish between the two types of models, we will refer to the ones for prescriptive analytics as *decision models.*

Decision models are expressed in terms of mathematical symbols and expressions. The decision model for a business problem is the system of equations and related mathematical expressions that describe the essence of the problem. Thus, if there are n related quantifiable decisions to be made, they are represented as **decision variables** (say, x_1, x_2, . . ., x_n) whose respective values are to be determined. The appropriate measure of performance (e.g., profit) is then expressed as a mathematical function of these decision

variables (e.g., $P = 3x_1 + 2x_2 + \ldots + 5x_n$). This function is called the **objective function.** Any restrictions on the values that can be assigned to these decision variables are also expressed mathematically, typically by means of inequalities or equations (e.g., $x_1 + 3x_1\ x_2 + 2x_2 \leq 10$). Such mathematical expressions for the restrictions usually are called **constraints.** The constants (namely, the coefficients and right-hand sides) in the constraints and the objective function are called the **parameters** of the model. The decision model might then say that the problem is to choose the values of the decision variables so as to maximize the objective function, subject to the specified constraints. Such a model, and its minor variations, typifies the decision models of management science.

decision model

A mathematical model that is used for making decisions that prescribe what should be done in the future as a recommendation to management.

decision variable

An algebraic variable that represents a quantifiable decision to be made.

objective function

A mathematical expression in a decision model that gives the overall measure of performance for a problem in terms of the decision variables.

constraint

An inequality or equation in a decision model that expresses some restrictions on the values that can be assigned to the decision variables.

parameter

One of the constants in a decision model.

Decision models play a crucial role in performing prescriptive analytics.

Determining the appropriate values to assign to the parameters of the model (one value per parameter) is both

a critical and a challenging part of the model-building process. In contrast to textbook problems where the numbers are given to you, determining parameter values for real problems requires *gathering relevant data.* As discussed in Section 2.3, gathering accurate data frequently is difficult, but the tools of descriptive analytics can be helpful in this process. Additional work then is needed to integrate the data into the model by converting the data into the values of the parameters of the model.

The value assigned to a parameter often is, of necessity, only a rough estimate. Because of the uncertainty about the true value of such a parameter, it is important to analyze how the solution derived from the model would change (if at all) if the value assigned to the parameter were to be changed to other plausible values. This process is referred to as **what-if analysis** (or *sensitivity analysis*), as discussed further in the Step 2 subsection (and much of Chapter 8).

what-if analysis

An analysis of *what* would happen to the solution derived from a decision model *if* the values assigned to one or more of the parameters were to be changed to other plausible values. Also called *post-optimality analysis* (or *sensitivity analysis*).

Managers frequently ask questions that lead to doing what-if analysis.

Although we refer to “the” decision model of a business problem, real problems normally don’t have just a single “right” model. Step 3 in this section will describe how the process of testing a model typically leads to a succession of models that provide better and better representations of the problem. It is even possible that two or more completely different types of models may be developed to help analyze the same problem.

You will see numerous examples of decision models throughout the remainder of this book. One particularly important type that is studied in Chapters 5–9 is the **linear programming model,** where the mathematical functions appearing in both the objective function and the constraints are all linear functions. (A *linear function* is a mathematical expression that consists of a sum of terms where each term is simply a constant times a single variable.) Linear

programming models have been widely used to study a great variety of problems. For example, specific linear programming models are constructed in Chapter 6 to fit such diverse problems as determining (1) the mix of products that maximizes profit, (2) the mix of advertising media that will maximize the expected number of exposures to the advertising, (3) the mix of commercial real-estate development projects that will be most profitable in the long run, (4) personnel scheduling that will provide a satisfactory level of service at a minimum cost, and so forth.

linear programming model

A decision model where the mathematical functions appearing in both the objective function and the constraints are all linear functions.

Here are some pitfalls to be avoided when you use decision models.

Decision models have many advantages over a verbal description of the problem. One advantage is that a decision model describes a problem much more concisely. This tends to make the overall structure of the problem more comprehensible, and it helps to reveal important cause-and-effect relationships. In this way, it indicates more clearly what additional data are relevant to the analysis. It also facilitates dealing with the problem in its entirety and considering all its interrelationships simultaneously. Finally, a decision model forms a bridge to the use of mathematical techniques and computers to analyze the problem. Indeed, packaged software has become widely available for solving many decision models.

However, there are pitfalls to be avoided when you use decision models. Such a model is necessarily an abstract idealization of the problem, so approximations and simplifying assumptions generally are required if the model is to be *tractable* (capable of being solved). Therefore, care must be taken to ensure that the model remains a valid representation of the problem. The proper criterion for judging the validity of a model is whether the model predicts the relative effects of the alternative courses of action with sufficient accuracy to permit a sound decision. Consequently, it is not necessary to include

unimportant details or factors that have approximately the same effect for all the alternative courses of action considered. It is not even necessary that the absolute magnitude of the measure of performance be approximately correct for the various alternatives, provided that their relative values (i.e., the differences between their values) are sufficiently precise. Thus, all that is required is that there be a high correlation between the prediction by the model and what would actually happen in the real world. To ascertain whether this requirement is satisfied, it is important to do considerable testing and consequent modifying of the model, which will be the subject of the Step 2 subsection.

Linear programming models are the most common type of decision model because of their numerous applications.

Although this testing phase is placed later in this section, much of this model validation work actually is conducted during the model-building phase of the study to help guide the construction of the decision model.

When developing a model, a good approach is to begin with a very simple version and then move in evolutionary fashion toward more elaborate models that more nearly reflect the complexity of the real problem. This process of **model enrichment** continues only as long as the model remains tractable. The basic trade-off under constant consideration is between the precision and the tractability of the model.

model enrichment

The process of beginning with a very simple version of a model and then moving in evolutionary fashion toward more elaborate models that more nearly reflect the complexity of the real problem.

An Application Vignette

Prior to its merger with United Airlines that was completed in 2012, **Continental Airlines** was a major U.S. air carrier that transported passengers, cargo, and mail. It operated more than 2,000 daily departures to well over 100 domestic destinations and nearly 100 foreign destinations. Following the merger under the name of **United Airlines,** the combined airline had a fleet of over 700 aircraft serving up to 370 destinations.

Airlines like Continental (and now under its reincarnation as part of United Airlines) face schedule disruptions daily because of unexpected events, including inclement weather, aircraft mechanical problems, and crew unavailability. These disruptions can cause flight delays and cancellations. As a result, crews may not be in position to service their remaining scheduled flights. Airlines must reassign crews quickly to cover open flights and to return them to their original schedules in a cost-effective manner while honoring all government regulations, contractual obligations, and quality-of-life requirements.

To address such problems, a team of business analysts at Continental Airlines used management science to develop a detailed **decision model to begin applying prescriptive analytics** to the problem of reassigning crews to flights as soon as such emergencies arise. Because the airline has thousands of crews and daily flights, the model needed to be huge to consider all possible pairings of crews with flights. Therefore, the model has **millions of decision variables** and **many thousands of constraints.** In its first year of use (mainly in 2001), the model was applied four times to recover from major schedule disruptions (two snowstorms, a flood, and the September 11 terrorist attacks). This led to **savings of approximately $40 million** in just this initial year. Subsequent applications extended to many daily minor disruptions as well.

With Continental Airlines showing the way, **other major airlines** subsequently scrambled to apply prescriptive analytics in a similar way. In fact, some airlines already had a long history of applying prescriptive analytics in other ways, so they had the

expertise to be able to add this application soon as well. **Today, the airline industry continues to be a leader in applying prescriptive analytics** in a wide variety of ways that have had a dramatic impact on the bottom line. Thus, decades after Continental Airlines led the way with an especially important application, major airlines have both adopted this particular methodology and extended it to many other large-scale problems as well.

This ground breaking initiative led to Continental winning the prestigious **First Prize** in the 2002 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: G. Yu, M. Arguello, G. Song, S. M. McCowan, and A. White, "A New Era for Crew Recovery at Continental Airlines," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 33, no. 1 (January–February 2003): 15–22. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

A crucial step in formulating a decision model is the construction of the objective function. This requires developing a quantitative measure of performance that encompasses each of the decision maker's ultimate objectives that were identified while the problem was being defined. If there are multiple objectives, their respective measures commonly are then transformed and combined into a composite measure, called the **overall measure of performance.** This overall measure might be something tangible (e.g., profit) corresponding to a higher goal of the organization, or it might be something that attempts to combine multiple objectives. In the latter case, the task of developing this measure tends to be complex, requiring a careful comparison of the objectives and their relative importance.

overall measure of performance

A composite measure of how well the decision maker's ultimate objectives are being achieved.

After the overall measure of performance is developed, the objective function is then obtained by expressing this measure as a mathematical function of the decision variables. Alternatively, there also are methods for explicitly considering multiple objectives simultaneously. One such method, called *goal programming,* is described in Chapter 19, one of the "Web chapters" on this book's website.

Returning to the Case Study: Formulating a Decision Model for First Bank

As discussed in Section 2.2, the CEO of First Bank stated that the main goal is to make decisions that will maximize the bank's expected profit. The study team feels that there are two types of decisions that will directly impact the expected profit. First, they need to determine the interest rates to charge potential customers whose loan applications have been approved. Recall that in the Step 1 subsection of Section 2.4, classification models were used to categorize such customers into various default risk categories (A, B, C, and D), where loans will not be approved for category D customers. What interest rate should be charged for customers in categories A, B, and C? Second, given the available funding, what is the best mix of unsecured and secured loans to include within First Bank's portfolio? To help make these decisions, the study team plans to use two decision models.

page 75

The first decision model will address the decision of choosing the interest rates. There is a tradeoff in this choice. The higher the interest rate, the more income First Bank will receive from the customers that pay off their loans. However, the bank loan industry is a competitive business, so customers will go elsewhere if the interest rate charged is too high. Furthermore, First Bank would like to maintain competitive interest rates to keep their regular customers happy.

In this first decision model, the decision variable would be the interest rate to charge customers in a given default risk category. The

objective would be to maximize the expected profit. This would be calculated based upon the expected earnings from each customer (factoring in the default risk) and the expected number of customers. Furthermore, a constraint can be set on the maximum interest rate in order to be competitive. This type of decision model is a nonlinear programming model. These types of models and how to solve them will be covered in Chapter 11.

Once the interest rates across the various categories of unsecured loans are determined using the first decision model, then the study team will be ready to address the second decision involving choosing the best portfolio of secured and unsecured loans. Fortunately, a management science pioneer, Harry Markowitz, already has developed a popular kind of decision model for optimizing a portfolio. A common form for this portfolio optimization model is to minimize the risk in the portfolio subject to a constraint that the expected rate of return meets or exceeds a specified minimum. This kind of model is fully described in Section 11.3.

Harry Markowitz won a Nobel prize in Economics for developing this foundational model for modern portfolio theory.

For First Bank, the decision variables for the second decision model would be the fraction of the loan portfolio devoted to each type of loan. This would include separate variables for the categories (A, B, and C) of unsecured loans as well as for each of the various types of secured loans (e.g., car loans and home loans). The objective is to minimize the risk, which is measured as the amount of variability in the return. For First Bank, this variability would be due to the risk of default. One constraint would require a minimum desired return. Another constraint would ensure that the fractions of the loan portfolio devoted to each category must add up to one to represent the complete portfolio.

It is difficult to determine the best tradeoff between risk and return. To do this, the study team will try several different values for the minimum desired return and re-solve the model to determine the level of risk associated with each level of return. Summarizing these

results through data visualization will then help management to explore this tradeoff.

STEP 2: Learn How to Derive Solutions from the Model

After a decision model is formulated for the problem under consideration, the next phase in the study is to develop a procedure (usually a computer-based procedure) for deriving solutions to the problem from this model. You might think that this must be the major part of the study, but actually it is not in most cases. Sometimes, in fact, it is a relatively simple step, in which one of the standard algorithms (systematic solution procedures) of management science or business analytics is applied on a computer by using one of a number of readily available software packages. For experienced business analysts, finding a solution is the fun part, whereas the real work comes in the preceding and following steps, including the post-optimality analysis discussed later in this section.

Since this book later points out how to obtain solutions for various important types of decision models, little needs to be said about it here. However, we do need to discuss the nature of such solutions.

A common theme in management science especially is the search for an **optimal solution** (the best feasible solution according to the objective function). Indeed, many procedures have been developed for finding such solutions for certain kinds of problems. However, it needs to be recognized that these solutions are optimal only with respect to the model being used. Since the model necessarily is an idealized rather than an exact representation of the real problem, there cannot be any utopian guarantee that the optimal solution for the model will prove to be the best possible solution that could have been implemented for the real problem. There just are too many imponderables and uncertainties associated with real problems. However, if the model is well formulated and tested, the resulting solution should tend to be a good approximation to an ideal course of action for the real problem. Therefore, rather than be deluded into demanding the impossible, the test of the

practical success of the study should be whether it provides a better guide for action than can be obtained by other means.

optimal solution

A best solution with respect to a decision model for a particular problem.

Numerous algorithms are available for quickly finding an optimal solution for many kinds of decision models.

The late Herbert Simon (an eminent management scientist and a Nobel Laureate in economics) pointed out that **satisficing** is much more prevalent than optimizing in actual practice. In coining the term satisficing as a combination of the words satisfactory and optimizing, Simon was describing the tendency of managers to seek a solution that is “good enough” for the problem at hand. Rather than trying to develop an overall measure of performance to optimally reconcile conflicts between various desirable objectives (including well-established criteria for judging the performance of different segments of the organization), a more pragmatic approach may be used. Goals may be set to establish minimum satisfactory levels of performance in various areas, based perhaps on past levels of performance or on what the competition is achieving. Some decision models include constraints that require the goals to achieve at least their minimum satisfactory levels of performance. If a solution is found that enables all these goals to be met, it is likely to be adopted without further ado. Such is the nature of satisficing.

satisficing

Finding a solution that is good enough (but not necessarily optimal) for the problem at hand.

Optimizing a decision model actually means satisficing the outcome in practice.

The distinction between optimizing and satisficing reflects the difference between theory and the realities frequently faced in trying to implement that theory in practice. In the words of one of England’s

pioneering management science leaders, Samuel Eilon, “Optimizing is the science of the ultimate; satisficing is the art of the feasible.”

Teams of business analysts attempt to bring as much of the “science of the ultimate” as possible to the decision-making process. However, the successful team does so in full recognition of the overriding need of the decision maker to obtain a satisfactory guide for action in a reasonable period of time. Therefore, the goal of the study should be to conduct the study in an optimal manner, regardless of whether this involves finding an optimal solution for the model. Thus, in addition to pursuing the science of the ultimate, the team should also consider the cost of the study and the disadvantages of delaying its completion, and then attempt to maximize the net benefits resulting from the study.

In recognition of this concept, study teams occasionally use only **heuristic procedures** (i.e., intuitively designed procedures that do not guarantee an optimal solution) to find a good suboptimal solution. This is most often the case when the time or cost required to find an optimal solution for an adequate model of the problem would be exorbitant. In recent decades, great progress has been made in developing efficient and effective **metaheuristics** that provide both a general structure and strategy guidelines for designing a specific heuristic procedure to fit a particular kind of problem. The use of metaheuristics is continuing to grow.

heuristic procedure

An intuitively designed procedure for seeking a good (but not necessarily optimal) solution for the problem at hand.

metaheuristics

A general kind of solution method that provides both a general structure and strategy guidelines for designing a specific heuristic procedure to fit a particular kind of problem.

When it is too difficult to find an optimal solution, heuristic procedures and metaheuristics can be very helpful.

The discussion thus far has implied that the study seeks to find only one solution, which may or may not be required to be optimal. In

fact, this usually is not the case. An optimal solution for the original model may be far from ideal for the real problem, so additional analysis is needed. Therefore, **post-optimality analysis** (analysis done after finding an optimal solution) is a very important part of most studies. This analysis also is sometimes referred to as **what-if analysis** because it involves addressing some questions about *what* would happen to the optimal solution *if* different assumptions are made about future conditions. These questions often are raised by the managers who will be making the ultimate decisions rather than by the study team.

post-optimality analysis

Analysis done after finding an optimal solution for a decision model. Also called *what-if analysis.*

The advent of powerful spreadsheet software now has frequently given spreadsheets a central role in conducting post-optimality analysis. One of the great strengths of a spreadsheet is the ease with which it can be used interactively by anyone, including managers, to see what happens to the optimal solution (according to the current version of the model) when changes are made to the model. This process of experimenting with changes in the model also can be very helpful in providing understanding of the behavior of the model and increasing confidence in its validity.

In part, post-optimality analysis involves conducting what-if analysis to determine which parameters of the model are most critical (the “sensitive parameters”) in determining the solution. A common definition of sensitive parameter (used throughout this book) is the following:

For a decision model with specified values for all its parameters, any of its parameters is said to be a **sensitive parameter** if (without changing any other parameter values) its value cannot be changed without changing the optimal solution.

sensitive parameter

A decision model's parameter whose value cannot be changed (while not changing any other parameter values) without changing the optimal solution.

Identifying the sensitive parameters is important, because this identifies the parameters whose value must be assigned with special care to avoid distorting the output of the model.

The value assigned to a parameter commonly is just an estimate of some quantity (e.g., unit profit) whose exact value will become known only after the solution has been implemented. Therefore, after the sensitive parameters are identified, special attention is given to estimating each one more closely, or at least its range of likely values. One then seeks a solution that remains a particularly good one for all the various combinations of likely values of the sensitive parameters.

Very good estimates are needed for the values of the sensitive parameters.

If the solution is implemented on an ongoing basis, any later change in the value of a sensitive parameter immediately signals a need to change the solution.

In some cases, certain parameters of the model represent policy decisions (e.g., resource allocations). If so, there frequently is some flexibility in the values assigned to these parameters. Perhaps some can be increased by decreasing others. Post-optimality analysis includes the investigation of such trade-offs.

In conjunction with the study phase discussed in the Step 3 subsection, post-optimality analysis also involves obtaining a sequence of solutions that comprises a series of improving approximations to the ideal course of action. Thus, the apparent weaknesses in the initial solution are used to suggest improvements in the model, its input data, and perhaps the solution procedure. A new solution is then obtained, and the cycle is repeated. This process continues until the improvements in the succeeding solutions become too small to warrant continuation. Even then, a number of alternative solutions (perhaps solutions that are optimal for one of several plausible versions of the model and its input data) may be presented to management for the final selection. As suggested in Section 2.2,

this presentation of alternative solutions would normally be done whenever the final choice among these alternatives should be based on considerations that are best left to the judgment of management.

STEP 3: Test the Model

Developing a large decision model is analogous in some ways to developing computer software. When the software coding is first completed, it inevitably contains many bugs. The code must be thoroughly tested to try to find and correct as many bugs as possible. Eventually, after a long succession of improvements, the programmer (or programming team) concludes that the software now is generally giving reasonably valid results. Although some minor bugs undoubtedly remain hidden in the code (and may never be detected), the major bugs have been sufficiently eliminated that the software now can be reliably used.

Debugging a large decision model has the same challenges as debugging computer software.

Similarly, the first version of a large decision model inevitably contains many flaws. Some relevant factors or interrelationships may not have been incorporated into the model, and some parameters frequently have not been estimated correctly. This is inevitable, given the difficulty of communicating and understanding all the aspects and subtleties of a complex operational problem as well as the difficulty of collecting reliable data. Therefore, before you use the model, it must be thoroughly tested to try to identify and correct as many flaws as possible. Eventually, after a long succession of improved models, the study team concludes that the current model now is giving reasonably valid results. Although some minor flaws undoubtedly remain hidden in the model (and may never be detected), the major flaws have been sufficiently eliminated so that the model now can be reliably used.

This process of testing and improving a model to increase its validity is commonly referred to as **model validation.** It is difficult to describe how model validation is done, because the process depends

greatly on the nature of the problem being considered and the model being used. However, we can make a few general comments.

model validation

The process of testing and improving a model to increase its validity.

Since the study team may spend months developing all the detailed pieces of the model, it is easy to “lose the forest for the trees.” Therefore, after the details (“the trees”) of the initial version of the model are completed, a good way to begin model validation is to take a fresh look at the overall model (“the forest”) to check for obvious errors or oversights. The group doing this review preferably should include at least one individual who did not participate in the formulation of the model. Reexamining the definition of the problem and comparing it with the model may help to reveal mistakes. It is also useful to make sure that any mathematical expressions are dimensionally consistent in the units used. Additional insight into the validity of the model can sometimes be obtained by varying the values of the parameters and/or the decision variables and checking to see whether the output from the model behaves in a plausible manner. This is often especially revealing when the parameters or variables are assigned extreme values near their maxima or minima.

page 78

A more systematic approach to testing the model is to use a **retrospective test.** When it is applicable, this test involves using historical data to reconstruct the past and then determining how well the model and the resulting solution would have performed if they had been used. Comparing the effectiveness of this hypothetical performance with what actually happened then indicates whether using this model tends to yield a significant improvement over current practice. It may also indicate areas where the model has shortcomings and requires modifications. Furthermore, by using alternative solutions from the model and estimating their hypothetical historical performances, considerable evidence can be gathered regarding how well the model predicts the relative effects of alternative courses of actions.

retrospective test

A test that involves using historical data to reconstruct the past and then determining how well the model and the resulting solution would have performed if they had been used.

Using a retrospective test is a very common way of testing a model.

On the other hand, a disadvantage of retrospective testing is that it uses the same data that guided the formulation of the model. The crucial question is whether the past is truly representative of the future. If it is not, then the model might perform quite differently in the future than it would have in the past.

To circumvent this disadvantage of retrospective testing, it is sometimes useful to further test the model by continuing the status quo temporarily. This provides new data that were not available when the model was constructed. These data are then used in the same ways as described earlier in this section to evaluate the model.

The Step 2 subsection in Section 2.4 describes the advantages of partitioning the data when performing predictive analytics. This enables holding back some of the data in order to then use it later to further test the model. This works well when performing predictive analytics. However, the nature of the data is quite different when performing prescriptive analytics, so this partitioning technique seldom is used with prescriptive analytics.

Documenting the process used for model validation is important. This helps to increase confidence in the model for subsequent users. Furthermore, if concerns arise in the future about the model, this documentation will be helpful in diagnosing where problems may lie.

STEP 4: Prepare to Apply the Model

What happens after the testing phase has been completed and an acceptable decision model has been developed? If the model is to be used repeatedly, the next step is to install a well-documented system for applying the model as needed by management. This system will include the model, the solution procedure (including post-optimality analysis), and operating procedures for implementation. Then, even

as personnel changes, the system can be called on at regular intervals to provide specific conclusions.

This system usually is computer-based. In fact, a considerable number of different types of computer software often need to be used and integrated. Databases and management information systems may provide up-to-date input for the model each time it is used, in which case a user interface needs to be developed. After a solution procedure is applied to a decision model, additional computer software may trigger the implementation of the results automatically. In other cases, an *interactive* computer-based system called a **decision support system** is installed to help managers use data and models to support (rather than replace) their decision making as needed. Additional software may generate *managerial reports* (in the language of management) that interpret the output of the model and its implications for application.

decision support system

An interactive computer-based system that helps managers use data and models to support their decisions.

In major studies, several months (or longer) may be required to develop, test, and install this computer system. Part of this effort involves developing and implementing a process for maintaining the system throughout its future use. As conditions change over time, this process should modify the computer system (including the model or models) accordingly.

page 79

STEP 5: Implementation

After a system is developed for applying the model, the last phase of a major study is to implement this system as ordered by management. This phase is a critical one because it is here, and only here, that the benefits of the study are reaped. Therefore, it is important for the study team to participate in launching this phase, both to make sure that model solutions are accurately translated to

an operating procedure and to rectify any flaws that are uncovered in the solutions.

The success of the implementation phase depends a great deal upon the support of both top management and operating management. The study team is much more likely to gain this support if it has kept management well informed and encouraged management's active guidance throughout the course of the study. Good communications help to ensure that the study accomplishes what management wanted, and also give management a greater sense of ownership of the study and its implementation.

The implementation phase involves several steps. First, the study team gives operating management a careful explanation of the new system to be adopted and how it relates to operating realities. Next, these two parties share the responsibility for developing the procedures required to put this system into operation. Operating management then makes sure that a detailed indoctrination is given to the personnel involved. If successful, the new system may be used for years to come. With this in mind, the study team monitors the initial experience with the operation of the system and seeks to identify any modifications that should be made in the future.

Throughout the entire period during which the new system is being used, it is important to continue to obtain feedback on how well the system is working and whether the assumptions of the model continue to be satisfied. When significant deviations from the original assumptions occur, the model should be revisited to determine if any modifications should be made in the system. The post-optimality analysis done earlier (as described in the above Step 2 subsection) can be helpful in guiding this review process.

Upon culmination of a study, it is appropriate for the study team to document its methodology clearly and accurately enough so that the work is reproducible. Replicability should be part of the professional ethical code of business analysts. Replicability also is especially crucial when controversial public policy issues are being studied.

Review *Questions*

. What are the components of a decision model?
. What is *what-if analysis?*
. What are the characteristics of a linear programming model?
. What are the many advantages of a decision model over a verbal description of a problem?
. What are some pitfalls to be avoided when using decision models?
. What is the process of *model enrichment?*
. What are the two types of decision models being planned for First Bank?
. What is the distinction between the optimal solution for a decision model and the best possible solution for the real problem?
. What is meant by satisficing rather than optimizing the outcome of a study?
. What are *heuristic procedures* and *metaheuristics?*
.. Why is *post-optimality analysis* often an important part of a study?
. What are the sensitive parameters of a decision model and why is it important to identify them?
. Why is it often important to test a model before it is used?
. What are the advantages and disadvantages of retrospective testing?
. Why is it often important to develop a well-documented system for applying the models?
. Why is this system usually computer based?
. Why is it important for the study team to participate in launching the implementation phase?
. What are the several steps of the implementation phase?

2.6 Summary

This chapter has provided an overview of the analysis process that teams of business analysts use when they

apply business analytics and management science to conduct major studies to analyze managerial problems. The study is conducted under the guidance of management to help meet their needs. In effect, the study team and management become partners in a major project to better address an important managerial concern.

Section 2.1 presents a case study that is used throughout the chapter to illustrate the analysis process that is being described. The case study involves a bank that needs to improve its procedures for evaluating applications for unsecured loans and setting appropriate interest rates for different categories of customers.

Once management has assigned a team of business analysts with the task of studying a particular problem, the first task for the team is to work with management to carefully define the problem from the viewpoint of management. Section 2.2 describes the complementary roles of the study team and management when performing this task.

The goal of descriptive analysis is to analyze the relevant data to develop and communicate information about the performance of the company to date. Accomplishing this requires (1) gathering and organizing the relevant data, (2) cleaning the data, (3) exploring the data, and (4) communicating performance information by using data visualization. Section 2.3 fully describes each of these four steps. *Data visualization* is a key tool of descriptive analytics, so considerable attention is given to accomplishing this by carefully selecting the most effective visual graphics.

Predictive analytics uses models to develop predictions of what is likely to happen in the future. The steps for doing this are (1) develop a model, (2) partition the data, (3) test and refine the model, (4) repeat steps 1–3 for several models and then choose the best one, and (5)

implementation. Section 2.4 is devoted to describing these steps. Special emphasis is given to both the key role of partitioning the data and the importance of not overfitting the data. The *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm for solving predictive models also is introduced. (This algorithm and several others will be presented in Chapter 3.)

Prescriptive analytics involves prescribing the best options for managerial decision making about what should be done in the future. Because the focus is on making decisions instead of predictions, *decision models* (mathematical models that describe the problem and the needed decisions) now are used. Various kinds of decision models and their applications are presented in some of the subsequent chapters of this book. Meanwhile, Section 2.5 describes the following steps for performing prescriptive analytics: (1) formulate a decision model, (2) learn how to derive solutions from the model, (3) test the model, (4) prepare to apply the model, and (5) implementation.

Glossary

algorithm A systematic procedure that follows a prescribed set of steps until it concludes with a solution. (Section 2.4), 60

bar chart A chart where each possible value of a categorical variable is represented by a separate bar. (Section 2.3), 51

big data Refers to the era of big data we have entered in recent decades where enormous and increasing amounts of transactional data commonly are available for analysis. (Section 2.3), 41

boxplot A chart that highlights various statistics for the distribution of a numerical variable. (Section 2.3), 53

categorical variable A type of variable that can take on only a small number of values that represent the few possible categories. (Section 2.3), 43

class When using a classification model, each possible outcome is referred to as a class. (Section 2.4), 60

classification model A model that attempts to predict a yes-or-no outcome (or perhaps one of several possible outcomes). (Section 2.4) 60

communication objective The descriptive analytics objective of reframing raw data to make it understandable and meaningful to managers, investors, and other stakeholders. (Section 2.3), 55

confusion matrix A matrix that shows how the predicted outcomes compare to the actual outcomes when using a predictive analytics algorithm. (Section 2.4), 66

constraint An inequality or equation in a decision model that expresses some restrictions on the values that can be assigned to the decision variables. (Section 2.5), 72

correlation coefficient A measure of how much two numerical variables tend to move in tandem. (Section 2.3), 48

correlation table A table that shows the correlation for every pair of numerical variables in the dataset. (Section 2.3), 48

dataset A collection of data. (Section 2.3), 43

data cleaning The automated process of correcting and reformatting the relevant data stored in a large database. (Section 2.3), 43

data dictionary A dictionary that describes the meaning of each variable for the records. (Section 2.3), 43

data familiarization objective The descriptive analytics objective of exploring the data in order to become thoroughly familiar with all of the relevant data. (Section 2.3), 55

data mining The process of finding anomalies, patterns, and correlations within large data sets to predict outcomes. (Section 2.4), 58

data scientist A common title given to highly trained practitioners of data science or business analytics. (Section 2.3), 41

page 81

data visualization The goal of data visualization is to communicate information clearly and efficiently to managers and other users through the careful selection of the most effective visual graphics. (Section 2.3), 55

data warehouse A system that aggregates data from many sources into a single collection. (Section 2.3), 41

decision model A mathematical model that is used for making decisions that prescribe what should be done in the future as a recommendation to management. (Section 2.5), 72

decision support system An interactive computer-based system that helps managers use data and models to support their decisions. (Section 2.5), 78

decision variable An algebraic variable that represents a quantifiable decision to be made. (Section 2.5), 72

ETL process A data integration process that *extracts* the relevant data from various sources, *transforms* the data into a standard form, and *loads* the data into a target data store.(Section 2.3), 44

heat map A color-coded table that uses the intensity of the colors to highlight the more striking values in the table. (Section 2.3), 49

heuristic procedure An intuitively designed procedure for seeking a good (but not necessarily optimal) solution for the problem at hand. (Section 2.5), 76

histogram A chart that organizes a group of data points for a numerical variable into user-specified ranges. (Section 2.3), 53

historical record An entity for which data have already been collected. (Section 2.4), 60

***k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm** An intuitive algorithm that is often used for performing predictive analytics. (Section 2.4), 60

knowledge discovery in databases (KDD) process A systematic sampling process through databases to find the relevant data and discover useful knowledge. (Section 2.3), 46

lift chart A chart that visually displays the effectiveness of a predictive analytics algorithm for any given application. (Section 2.4), 68

line chart A chart that is used primarily for showing how a numerical variable changes over time. (Section 2.3), 54

linear programming model A decision model where the mathematical functions appearing in both the objective function and the constraints are all linear functions. (Section 2.5), 73

long-run profit maximization An attractive objective for a decision model because it considers future profits (while considering the time value of money) in addition to short-term profits. (Section 2.2), 39

map chart A chart that plots data on a map to show geographical information. (Section 2.3), 55

metaheuristics A general kind of solution method that provides both a general structure and strategy guidelines

for designing a specific heuristic procedure to fit a particular kind of problem. (Section 2.5), 76

model enrichment The process of beginning with a very simple version of a model and then moving in evolutionary fashion toward more elaborate models that more nearly reflect the complexity of the real problem. (Section 2.5), 74

model for predictive analytics A systematic procedure for applying an algorithm to make a prediction based upon relevant data. (Section 2.4), 59

model validation The process of testing and improving a model to increase its validity. (Section 2.5), 77

numerical variable A variable that takes on numerical values. (Section 2.3), 43

objective function A mathematical expression in a decision model that gives the overall measure of performance for a problem in terms of the decision variables. (Section 2.5), 72

optimal solution A best solution with respect to a decision model for a particular problem. (Section 2.5), 75

outcome variable (or outcome for short) The variable we are trying to predict. (Section 2.4), 61

overall measure of performance A composite measure of how well the decision maker's ultimate objectives are being achieved. (Section 2.5), 74

overfitting the data Making a predictive model less accurate when using new data sets by having the model align *too* closely to the given data instead of taking into account the inherent idiosyncrasies in the given data due to randomness. (Section 2.4), 63

parameter One of the constants in a decision model. (Section 2.5), 72

performance metrics Numerical measures of performance. (Section 2.3), 46

post-optimality analysis Analysis done after finding an optimal solution for a decision model. Also called *what-if analysis.* (Section 2.5), 76

prediction model A model that predicts a numeric outcome. (Section 2.4), 60

predictor record A new entity for whom a prediction is needed. (Section 2.4), 60

predictor variable A variable representing one of the characteristics of the historical records that is being used to make the desired prediction. (Section 2.4), 61

record An entity for which data have been (or will be) collected. (Section 2.3), 43

retrospective test A test that involves using historical data to reconstruct the past and then determining how well the model and the resulting solution would have performed if they had been used. (Section 2.5), 78

satisficing Finding a solution that is good enough (but not necessarily optimal) for the problem at hand. (Section 2.5), 76

scatter plot A two-dimensional graph that uses dots to represent the various simultaneous values for two different numerical variables. (Section 2.3), 53

sensitive parameter A decision model's parameter whose value cannot be changed (while not changing any other parameter values) without changing the optimal solution. (Section 2.5), 77

Tableau A popular software package for performing more advanced data visualization. (Section 2.3), 55

test partition A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that can be used to further validate the model after using the training and page 82 validation partitions. (Section 2.4), 64

time series forecasting Methods that use past observations in a time series to forecast what the next value will be. (Section 2.4), 58

training partition A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to develop ("train") the model. (Section 2.4), 64

treemap A chart that breaks down hierarchical data into various categories and subcategories. (Section 2.3), 55

validation partition A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to validate the model after a training partition is used to develop the model. (Section 2.4), 64

variable A measured characteristic or outcome for a record. (Section 2.3), 43

what-if analysis An analysis of *what* would happen to the solution derived from a decision model *if* the values assigned to one or more of the parameters were to be changed to other plausible values. Also called *post-optimality analysis* (or *sensitivity analysis*). (Section 2.5), 73

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

First Bank Data

First Bank KNN Model

First Bank Other Models

Pathfinder College Data

Friendly Bank Data

Excel Add-In:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

2.S1. Category D Loan Applicants at First Bank

In the First Bank case study considered in this chapter, applicants for unsecured loans are classified as category D if they have a high enough expected default rate that the loan should be denied. The CEO and the VP of the loan department have determined that applicants that are estimated to have a greater than 25 percent chance of default should fall into category D and be denied a loan. Use the dataset on the *Clean Data* tab of the *First Bank Data* spreadsheet available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** to answer each of the following questions.

a. First Bank is considering requiring *Credit* ≥ 600 and *dti* ≤ 36 percent to approve a loan (and avoid category D). Filter the dataset and use the AGGREGATE function to determine what the average default rate would have been for historical customers that met each of the following criteria.

(i) *Credit* ≥ 600 and dti ≤ 36 percent.
(ii) *Credit* < 600.
(iii) *dti* > 36 percent.

b. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records). Use *Credit* and *dti* as predictor variables with the data standardized. Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 10$ (based on the historical data in the training partition), when it is used to classify applicants as to whether they are likely to default (defined as greater than a 25 percent chance).

c. Using *Credit* and *dti* as predictor variables and the data standardized, apply the KNN algorithm to this problem with $k = 10$ to the entire dataset (unpartitioned). Classify each of the following applicants as likely to default (defined as greater than a 25 percent chance) and indicate each applicant's estimated probability of default.

(i) *Credit* = 582 and *dti* = 33.2 percent.
(ii) *Credit* = 624 and *dti* = 36.1 percent.
(iii) *Credit* = 574 and *dti* = 34.4 percent.

Problems

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem where Analytic Solver (or similar software) is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

2.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the predictive analytics study done at Vungle Inc. that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 2.4. Briefly describe how a key technique of predictive analytics was applied in this study.

2.2. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done at Continental Airlines that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 2.5. Briefly describe how a decision model was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

2.3. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

page 83

a. The goal of a study team of business analysts commonly is to make a decision that solves a difficult managerial problem.

b. When dealing with profit-making organizations, a study team usually uses the objective of maximizing long-run profits.

c. Business analytics places a special focus on analyzing data.

2.4. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. Business analysts who specialize mainly in management science often are referred to as data scientists.

b. Data mining can be defined as a method of searching for where data can be located.

c. Data cleaning refers to finding and either correcting or removing faulty data.

2.5. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. The goal of descriptive analytics is to describe the analytical tools that are being used in a study.

b. The goal of data visualization is to find the data so it can be visualized.

c. The focus of predictive analytics is on predicting which analytical tools should be used for conducting a study.

2.6.* Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. Business analysts who are highly trained in management science have a special expertise for performing prescriptive analytics.

b. The decision model of a business problem is the system of equations and related mathematical expressions that describe the essence of the problem.

c. The proper criterion for judging the validity of a decision model is whether the model predicts the relative effects of the alternative courses of action with sufficient accuracy to permit a sound decision.

2.7. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. When developing a decision model, a good approach is to begin with elaborate models that reflect the complexity of the real problem.

b. Management science provides algorithms for quickly finding an optimal solution for many kinds of decision models.

c. When using a decision model, it is particularly important to find and implement an optimal solution.

2.8. Label each of the following statements as True or False. If false, explain why.

a. What-if analysis provides an alternative form of analysis when it is not possible to obtain an optimal solution.

b. Identifying the sensitive parameters in a decision model is important because this identifies the parameters whose value must be assigned with special care to avoid distorting the output of the model.

c. The work of a study team of business analysts is not finished until management finally is ready to begin implementing the resulting changes.

2.9. Pathfinder College is a small liberal arts college that wants to improve its admissions process. In particular, too many of its incoming freshmen have failed to graduate for a variety of reasons, including dropping out, or transferring to another college, or failing to satisfy the graduation standards. Therefore, the admissions office wants to have a better method of predicting whether an applicant would succeed in graduating.

The college primarily uses two predictor variables for evaluating an applicant, namely, the high school grade point average and the SAT score. If either is sufficiently high (either a GPA ≥ 3.30 or an SAT score ≥ 1,200), the applicant is immediately accepted. Such applicants who accept admission usually do well until successfully graduating. However, the admissions office needs to go deeper into its applicant pool to fill up its freshman class. The question is how to predict which of these other applicants are the better bet for successfully graduating. The admissions office wishes to consider an applicant for admission only if the prediction is that the applicant is more likely than not of successfully graduating. (Qualitative information about the applicant also will be considered before making the final admission decision, but the focus of this problem is on how to use the GPA and SAT scores.)

The admissions office has randomly selected 800 students that were previously admitted and enrolled but did not meet the criteria for immediate acceptance. All have now had sufficient time to graduate. The data for these historical records, including their graduation status, are provided in the spreadsheet file titled *Pathfinder College Data* available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

The original data (on the *Original Data* worksheet tab) needs to be cleaned. Perform the following data cleaning tasks.

a. Search for missing data. Identify the students that have missing data by specifying the student number and the data that are missing.

b. Search for mis-entered data by sorting each column to look for outliers. List any suspicious data, indicating the student number, what is suspicious, and if possible, conjecture on the likely true value.

c. Some analysis requires numerical rather than text data. Add another column to the dataset labeled “Graduated 0/1”, and transform the Yes & No data in the “Graduated” column to 0’s and 1’s in the new column with a 1 representing Yes and a 0 representing No.

2.10. Reconsider Problem 2.9. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* tab, explore the data quantitatively by evaluating the summary statistics as follows.

a. For each column of numerical data (*High School GPA, SAT Score, College GPA, Graduated 0/1*) in the dataset, calculate the mean, median, standard deviation, min, and max.

b. Create a correlation table showing the correlation coefficient between each of the following four variables: *High School GPA, SAT*

Score, College GPA, Graduated 0/1. The table should be a 4-by-4 table with the lower diagonal filled similar to Figure 2.10.

2.11. Reconsider Problem 2.9. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, apply sorting and filtering on the dataset to explore the data as follows.

a. Sort the data by *High School GPA.* Comment on observed results regarding graduations for those with the highest and lowest high school GPAs.

b. Sort the data by *SAT Score.* Comment on observed results regarding graduations for those with the highest and lowest SAT scores.

page 84

c. Sort the data by *College GPA.* Comment on observed results regarding graduations for those with the highest and lowest SAT scores.

2.12.* Reconsider Problem 2.9. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, apply sorting and filtering on the dataset as follows.

a. For each column of numerical data (*High School GPA, SAT Score, College GPA, Graduated 0/1*) in the dataset, set up the spreadsheet to calculate the mean for the *filtered* data using the AGGREGATE function.

b. If Pathfinder College had admitted all students in the dataset with a High School GPA of at least 2.8 *and* an SAT score of at least 1,000, what would the mean graduation rate have been for these students?

2.13. Reconsider Problem 2.9. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, explore the data visually as follows.

a. Generate a scatter plot with *College GPA* on the vertical axis and *High School GPA* on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

b. Generate a scatter plot with *College GPA* on the vertical axis and *SAT Score* on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

c. Generate a scatter plot with *SAT Score* on the vertical axis and *High School GPA* on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

AS 2.14. Reconsider Problem 2.9. Using all the data (unpartitioned) on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab rescaled with standardization, apply the KNN algorithm to this problem with $k = 7$ and the data standardized. Assuming an applicant is classified as a likely success (and admitted) if they are at least 50 percent likely to graduate, classify each of the following applicants and also indicate the applicant's estimated probability of graduating.

a. The applicant has a GPA of 2.99 and a SAT score of 1,020.

b. The applicant has a GPA of 2.78 and a SAT score of 1,160.

c. The applicant has a GPA of 3.26 and a SAT score of 890.

AS 2.15. Reconsider Problem 2.9. Using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records).

a. Searching over values of k from 1 to 9, find the best value for k in the KNN algorithm when it is used to classify applicants from the validation partition as likely to graduate (or not).

b. Using the best value for *k* determined in part *a,* determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the algorithm.

c. Using the best value for *k* determined in part *a,* generate the lift chart for the algorithm.

2.16.* Friendly Bank is very active with making loans to deserving people in the local community. However, the bank does need to carefully evaluate each loan to make sure that the recipient of the loan will likely repay the loan as scheduled. Therefore, the bank needs to obtain a prediction of whether this is likely and what the probability is. The bank primarily uses the annual income and the credit rating of the person applying for the loan as the predictor variables for obtaining this prediction.

The bank has compiled all of the historical records of substantial loans and their outcomes over recent years. This information is provided in the spreadsheet titled *Friendly Bank Data* available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Only loans that have concluded (either paid off in full or ending in default) are included, resulting in 4,985 total records.

The original data (on the *Original Data* worksheet tab) needs to be cleaned. Perform the following data cleaning tasks.

a. Search for missing data. Identify the loan applicants that have missing data by specifying the loan number and the data that is missing.

b. Search for mis-entered data by sorting each column to look for outliers. List any suspicious data, indicating the loan number, what is suspicious, and if possible, conjecture on the likely true value.

c. Some analysis requires numerical rather than text data. Add another column to the dataset

labeled “Default 0/1” and transform the Yes & No data in the “Default” column to 0’s and 1’s in the new column with a 1 representing Yes and a 0 representing No.

2.17. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, explore the data quantitatively by evaluating the summary statistics as follows.

a. For each column of numerical data (*Annual Income, Credit Score, Late Payments, Default 0/1*) in the dataset, calculate the mean, median, standard deviation, minimum, and maximum.

b. Create a correlation table showing the correlation coefficient between each pair of the following four variables: *Annual Income, Credit Score, Late Payments, Default 0/1.* The table should be a 4-by-4 table with the lower diagonal filled similar to Figure 2.10.

2.18. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, apply sorting and filtering on the dataset to explore the data as follows.

a. Sort the data by *Annual Income.* Comment on observed results regarding loan defaults for those with the highest and lowest annual incomes.

b. Sort the data by *Credit Score.* Comment on observed results regarding loan defaults for those with the highest and lowest credit scores.

c. Sort the data by *Late Payments.* Comment on observed results regarding loan defaults for those with the highest and lowest number of late payments.

2.19. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, apply sorting and filtering on the dataset as follows.

a. For each column of numerical data (*Annual Income, Credit Score, Late Payments, Default 0/1*) in the dataset, set up the spreadsheet to calculate the mean for the *filtered* data using the AGGREGATE function.

b. If Friendly Bank had approved all applicants with incomes above $35,000 *and* credit scored above 600, what would the mean default rate have been for these applicants?

2.20. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Now using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, explore the data visually as follows.

page 85

a. Generate a scatter plot with late payments on the vertical axis and annual income on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

b. Generate a scatter plot with late payments on the vertical axis and credit score on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

AS 2.21. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Using all the data (unpartitioned) on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab rescaled with standardization, apply the KNN algorithm with $k = 10$ to this problem to classify each of the following applicants as either likely to default (defined as more than a 10 percent chance of default) or not likely to default (defined as a 10 percent chance of default or less). Also indicate the estimated probability of default for each.

a. The loan applicant has an annual income of $54,000 and a credit rating of 750.

b. The loan applicant has an annual income of $112,000 and a credit rating of 630.

c. The loan applicant has an annual income of $87,000 and a credit rating of 690.

AS 2.22. Reconsider Problem 2.16. Using the data on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records).

a. Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 10$ (based on the historical data in the training partition), when it is used to classify applicants as to whether they are likely to default (defined as greater than a 10 percent chance of default).

b. Generate the lift chart for the algorithm with $k = 10$.

Case 2-1

Vacations at Vegas Villas

Vegas Villas is a time-share resort located several blocks off the strip in Las Vegas. There are a variety of types of units in the Vegas Villas, including single-room studios, one-, two-, and three-bedroom suites, and a few presidential suites. All include full kitchens, a barbeque grill on the patio, washer and dryer in suite, large flat screen TVs, a fireplace, and more. The resort grounds include amenities such as a pool, waterslides, several hot tubs, a lazy river, two tennis courts, a putting green, a gourmet restaurant, and a bar.

Owners buy in to the Vegas Villas by purchasing a number of vacation credits that then renew annually. These credits can then be used to book stays throughout each year. The minimum purchase is 3,000 vacation credits, which would allow for a two-night weekend stay in a studio each year. Larger units and longer stays are available

with additional vacation credits. While you incur a large up-front cost to buy in by purchasing vacation credits, this purchase also makes you a partial owner of the property. Since your vacation credits renew each year, you can then visit the property every year at no cost. The only ongoing expenses are maintenance fees due annually.

Silver State Development (SSD) is the developer of the Vegas Villas. To entice new buyers, SSD offers bargain vacations in Las Vegas. For $69, you can spend three nights in the Vegas Villas, have a free meal at the gourmet restaurant, and see your choice of one of several Las Vegas shows. The only catch is that you are required to attend a 90-minute presentation where sales representatives go through the benefits of ownership in the Vegas Villas with you, one-on-one, with the hope you will buy in with a purchase of vacation credits.

The bargain vacations allow the potential buyers an opportunity to experience the resort and see first-hand the benefits of ownership. SSD has been moderately successful at turning these bargain vacations into sales of vacation credits with a 25 percent success rate. However, offering these bargain vacations is a costly endeavor. Therefore, SSD would only like to offer them to those who would be likely to buy vacation credits.

SSD requires a completed survey to claim a bargain vacation. The collected data includes household income, age, marital status, and the number of times visiting Las Vegas in the previous five years. Furthermore, SSD tracks which vacationers have gone on to purchase credits at Vegas Villas and how many credits were purchased. They would like to use the data to help predict likely buyers and therefore determine who should be offered a bargain vacation.

The dataset includes 842 historical records and is provided in the spreadsheet file titled *Vegas Villas Data* available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. A data dictionary for the dataset is shown below.

Variable	Description

Variable	Description
Record	Record number
Income	Household income ($thousands/year)
Age	Age in years (for married couples, age of older spouse)
Marital Status	Married or Single
Visits	Number of visits to Las Vegas in the previous five years
Purchased	Were vacation credits purchased? (Yes or No)
Credits	Number of vacation credits purchased

Use these data to perform each of the following steps of a descriptive and predictive analytics study. For parts *a, b,* and *c,* use the dataset on the *Original Data* tab of the spreadsheet.

Clean the data:

a. Search for missing data. Identify the records that have missing data by specifying the record number and the data that are missing.
b. Search for mis-entered data by sorting each column to look for outliers. List any suspicious data, indicating the record number, what is suspicious, and if possible, conjecture on the likely true value.
c. Some analysis requires numerical rather than text data. Add two columns to the dataset labeled “Married 0/1” and “Purchased 0/1.” Transform the data in the “Marital Status” column to 0’s and 1’s in the new “Married 0/1” column with a 1 representing Married and a 0 representing Single. Transform the Yes and No data in the “Purchased” column to 0’s and 1’s in the new “Purchased 0/1” column with a 1 representing Yes and a 0 representing No.

Assume now that missing and suspicious data have been investigated and that all of the data have been cleaned as needed. The cleaned data are available on the *Clean Data* tab of the spreadsheet file. For the remaining parts, use the dataset on the *Clean Data* tab to perform the analysis.

Explore the data quantitatively:

d. For each column of numerical data (*Income, Age, Visits, Married 0/1, Purchased 0/1, Credits Purchased*) in the dataset, calculate the mean, median, standard deviation, minimum, and maximum.

e. Create a correlation table showing the correlation coefficient between each pair of the following five variables: *Income, Age, Married 0/1, Visits, Purchased 0/1.* The table should be a 5-by-5 table with the lower diagonal filled in similar to Figure 2.10.

f. Sort the data by *Income.* Comment on observed results regarding the purchase of vacation credits for those with the highest and lowest income. Repeat, but now sorting by *Age* and then *Visits.*

Explore the data visually:

g. Generate a scatter plot with *Credits* on the vertical axis and *Income* on the horizontal axis. Comment on any observations.

h. Generate a bar chart showing the probability of purchase by *Marital Status.* Comment on any observations.

Develop a model:

i. Predictor variables that have a large impact on whether or not a purchase of vacation credits is made are good candidates to include in a classification model such as KNN. Based on the exploration of the data, which predictor variables are good candidates?

Partition the dataset to refine the model:

j. Using the predictor variables determined in part *i,* apply the KNN algorithm. Rescale the data using standardization. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records). Searching over values of *k* from 1 to 10, find the value for *k* in the KNN algorithm that maximizes the accuracy (or equivalently, minimizes misclassification) when it is used to classify potential buyers from the validation partition as likely to purchase (at least a 25 percent chance) or not (less than a 25 percent chance).

k. Using the best value for *k* determined in part *j,* determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN algorithm.

Make predictions:

l. Apply the KNN algorithm using the entire (unpartitioned) data set, with the predictor variables determined in part *i* and the best value for *k* determined in part *j.* Classify each of the following potential buyers as either likely to purchase (at least a 25 percent chance) or not (less than a 25 percent chance). Also indicate the estimated probability of purchase for each.

Potential Buyer	Income	Age	Marital Status	Visits
1	93	34	Married	3
2	132	42	Married	1
3	55	28	Single	7

PART 2 (Chapters 3–4) | Models for Predictive Analytics

CHAPTER 3

Classification and Prediction Models for Predictive Analytics

This book has five parts. Chapters 3 and 4 comprise Part 2, which has the theme of presenting models for predictive analytics. To clarify the role of Chapter 3 in this endeavor, we begin by providing an introduction to Part 2, after which we will focus on presenting Chapter 3.

Introduction to Part 2 (Chapters 3–4): Models for Predictive Analytics

As described in Section 1.3, **predictive analytics** involves using models to create predictions of what is likely to happen in the future. For example, companies often are interested in predicting some kind of future behavior for a prospective customer. Section 2.4 describes and illustrates the step-by-step process that is needed to get ready to perform predictive analytics. Part 2 now will focus on presenting several popular models for actually performing predictive analytics, as

well as describing some traditional forecasting methods for making predictions.

Section 2.4 describes the two major categories of models for performing predictive analytics. One category is **prediction models** for predicting numerical outcomes. The other is **classification models** for predicting the category of an outcome. **Chapter 3** presents some popular models of both types after presenting a case study to illustrate the application of the models. A powerful software package (**Analytic Solver Data Mining,** first introduced in Section 2.4) also is presented for applying the models.

Most of **Chapter 4** is concerned with a different type of prediction, namely, forecasting a future quantity of some type based on the series of quantities of this type observed in the past. This is referred to as **time series forecasting.** One prominent type of application is that numerous companies use time series forecasting to obtain *sales forecasts* for their products.

Section 4.5 then describes causal forecasting with **linear regression,** which approximates the relationship between a dependent variable and an independent variable by a straight line. The field of Statistics has a very long history of developing and applying both time series forecasting and linear regression, so both now are widely used statistical forecasting methods for performing predictive analytics. However, managers sometimes prefer using the kinds of **judgmental forecasting methods** that are described in Section 4.6.

Following this focus on performing *predictive* analytics, Chapters 5–12 will turn to models for performing *prescriptive* analytics. (Chapters 13–15 will consider a mixture of the two types of analytics.)

Resumption of Chapter Three

Learning Objectives:

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Perform predictive analytics on your own.

2. Understand when to order a study to perform predictive analytics.
3. Become conversant with managing such studies.
4. Understand the concept of the model based on the KNN algorithm for classification and prediction.
5. Understand the concept of models based on classification tree algorithms or prediction tree algorithms.
6. Understand the concept of how classification and regression trees are created and then be able to read and interpret such a tree.
7. Use the Analytic Solver Data Mining software package for performing predictive analytics.
8. Describe the kind of problem that would fit using a model based on the naïve Bayes algorithm or multiple linear regression or logistic regression.
9. Describe the kind of managerial guidance that the technique for affinity analysis and recommendation systems can provide.

Recall that predictive analytics is focused on using models to create predictions of what is likely to happen in the future. There are two basic types of predictions—*how-much* predictions and *which-category* predictions. The first type involves predicting a numerical value. In the second case, there are only a small number of categories (perhaps just two) of outcomes, so the category of the outcome is being predicted. The Step 1 subsection of Section 2.4 describes the corresponding two major categories of models—**prediction models** for predicting numerical outcomes and **classification models** for predicting the category of the outcome. This chapter will consider both types of models.

Section 2.4 has described the five-step process for performing predictive analytics. This process begins by developing a model that provides a systematic procedure for applying an algorithm to make a prediction based upon relevant data. Given enough data, the next step is to partition the historical data into at least two parts, a **training partition** for developing the model and a **validation partition** that later can be used for testing the model. This then leads to testing and refining the model. This entire process probably will be repeated

several times with alternative models in order to choose the best one that then will be implemented.

training partition

A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to develop (“train”) the model. (See also Section 3.2)

validation partition

A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to validate the model after a training partition is used to develop the model. (See also Section 3.2)

We will continue to use the terminology for predictive analytics that was introduced in Section 2.4, so you might find it helpful to review that section and its terms in the glossary for Chapter 2. For example, when a prediction is desired regarding the **outcome** of what a prospective customer will do, we refer to that customer (and the record of its characteristics) as the **predictor record.** All similar previous customers (including their records and outcomes) are referred to as the **historical records.** The **predictor variables** represent the characteristics of the records that are being used to make the desired prediction. A prediction of the outcome for the predictor record can then be made in a variety of ways, as exemplified by the five types of models presented in this chapter. The business analytics discipline has made great progress in learning how to do this well.

outcome

When predicting a future behavior, the outcome refers to the behavior that actually occurred. Also refers to the observed behavior of historical records. (See also Sections 3.2, 3.3)

predictor record

When making a prediction about the future behavior of a new customer (or another entity), that new customer and its characteristics (the predictor variables) are referred to as the predictor record. (See also Sections 3.2, 3.3)

historical record

When making a prediction about the future behavior of a customer (or another entity) based on the outcomes for similar customers in the past (up to the present time), the information about the characteristics of *each* past customer, including its relevant data (the predictor variables) and outcome, is referred to as an historical record. (See also Sections 3.2, 3,3)

predictor variable

A key characteristic of a record (both historical records and the predictor record) that is used (along with other predictor variables) to make predictions. (See also Section 3.2)

Although Section 2.4 provides a relatively thorough description of the overall process for performing predictive analytics, it does not attempt to describe the various models that are available for driving this process. (The one exception is that a model based on the *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm is briefly introduced, but without any details.) We now will devote this chapter to presenting several of these models. The case study introduced in Section 3.1 will be used to illustrate these models.

3.1 A CASE STUDY: THE EVERGREEN SOLAR PREDICTIVE ANALYTICS PROBLEM

Since childhood, Jennifer has had a strong interest in preserving the environment. She is alarmed by the latest studies on global warming, ever-increasing carbon dioxide emissions, water pollution, and so much more. She does everything she can to help save the planet. She is careful to reduce, reuse, and recycle whenever possible. She travels responsibly, walking or biking when possible, or using public transit. She tries to eat sustainably, cutting down on meat and dairy products, while consuming local produce as much as possible.

Jennifer feels that one of her best decisions was to have solar panels installed on the roof of her home. In addition to eliminating her electric bills, it is particularly important to her that solar is a 100

percent clean, renewable energy source. She knows this is helping reduce our reliance on oil, coal, or natural gas for producing electricity, and thereby reducing harmful emissions.

However, the habits of one person can only help so much. Jennifer wanted to make a bigger difference. This led her to form a startup company called **Evergreen Solar** that installs solar panels on residential rooftops. Given her personal positive experience with "going solar," she wanted to help others do the same.

Evergreen Solar has been in business for about a year now and has completed installations on several homes. To keep costs low, this is a very small operation. Jennifer handles all the sales personally, has a crew of three installers, and maintains a storage facility for keeping solar panels and other materials in stock.

Two of the challenges of growing this business are finding new potential customers and then completing the sale. She gets some potential leads from her prior satisfied customers, as well as customers expressing an interest through the company's website. These then lead to the sales pitch that Jennifer handles personally.

Solar installations are complicated and every home is different. The effectiveness of solar panels will be influenced by the roofline and direction (e.g., in the northern hemisphere, a southern exposure is best for facing the sun), the possible shade caused by tall trees, buildings, or nearby mountains, and the local weather patterns. The costs can be influenced by the number of solar panels required to meet energy needs, whether electrical upgrades are needed, whether backup battery power is desired, and whether roofing upgrades or repairs will be needed. The fiscal benefits of solar can depend on the customer's tax situation (significant federal and state tax credits often are available) and whether their local electricity supplier offers net metering, a solar incentive that allows you to effectively store energy in the grid. In particular, when you produce more electricity than needed (on a sunny day), the excess energy is sent to the grid in exchange for credits. Then, at night or in the rain, when the solar panels are underproducing, you pull energy from the grid using these credits.

Because there are so many details that are specific and unique to each customer's particular home, Jennifer feels that a very personal approach to sales is best. To help entice potential sales leads to hear the sales pitch, Jennifer offers a fully paid, three-course gourmet meal at a high-end restaurant. During the meal, she tries to really get to know the potential customer personally. She also will go over many of the benefits of solar power and try to get the potential customer excited about the prospect of going solar. This is followed up with a home visit where the roof and electrical system in the home are inspected and a "shade analysis" is done, examining nearby trees and structures and their potential impact for blocking the sun. Finally, a full bid is created, detailing the various options, installation costs, expected annual savings from lower electrical bills, tax impacts, and so on. Then, with luck, the potential customer becomes an actual customer and schedules an installation!

Because every home is different, a very personal (and fairly expensive) approach to the sales of solar panels is needed.

Jennifer really enjoys her work. She likes meeting new people and she is excited each time a new customer goes through with installation, knowing the positive impact this is having on the environment. However, the cost of attracting potential customers is quite high. Between the cost of the restaurant meal, roof inspection, electrical inspection, shade analysis, and the hours required to put together the bid, each sales pitch ends up costing several hundred dollars. If it ends in a sale, all is well, since she makes back these costs and more with profits from the installation. However, when a customer chooses not to have solar installed, the cost results in a significant loss.

An Application Vignette

Ingram Micro is the world's largest distributor of technology products. Headquartered in Irvine, California, it operates in a high-

volume low-margin environment by purchasing these products from approximately 1,400 suppliers (including the world's largest technology companies) and then selling them to more than 200,000 customers (solution providers and value-added resellers) worldwide, who then sell these products to end customers (retail firms). Each year, it reaches more than 10 million businesses and processes over 100 million orders. It is a global Fortune 100 company. (In December 2016, it became a subsidiary of the Chinese HNA Group in order to better reach business opportunities in emerging markets.)

Because of the great range of its product mix, Ingram Micro arguably has the largest amount of transaction data in the information technology distribution and manufacturer world. To process and exploit these massive amounts of data, the company has a state-of-the-art information technology and analytics department that has been branded as the Global Business Intelligence and Analytics (GBIA) center of excellence. By 2015, it had grown to having more than 40 management scientists, data scientists, and other engineers.

GBIA developed an advanced data infrastructure that provides the foundations for the company's operations. This infrastructure includes a centralized data warehouse, processes for extracting relevant data, and algorithms for performing such analytics tasks as **data mining**.

This data infrastructure initially drove a sophisticated application of **predictive analytics** to guide the company's marketing efforts throughout North America, with the intention of extending this pilot project to the rest of the world later. Obtaining relatively precise forecasts of the upcoming demand over the huge portfolio of products is vital for these marketing efforts. These forecasts are based on two sources. One is the huge number of *buying signals* from the company's customers that exist in various places in the company's data. The more challenging source is *purchase-intent signals* from the end customers of the products. These signals are garnered through the online activities of the end

customers. The company gathers an average daily feed of seven million records, which provide a treasure trove of insights about the anticipated behavior and intent of the end customers. These forecasts then provide the basis for data-driven marketing campaigns.

These and related uses of big data and analytics have had a dramatic impact on Ingram Micro's bottom line. At the time of the publication of the article cited below, the implementation of this approach in North America was generating approximately **$350 million of incremental product revenue** and **$10 million of incremental gross profit per year.** This success then led to rolling out the same approach in other regions of the world.

This dramatic application of predictive analytics resulted in Ingram Micro winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2015 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: R. Mookherjee and co-authors, "End-to-End Predictive Analytics and Optimization in Ingram Micro's Two-Tier Distribution Business," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*), **46, no. 1,** (January–February 2016), 49–73. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

When customers choose to decline solar, the most common reason given is that the solar panels are too expensive. While the long run savings on the electric bill usually will fully pay back the cost of the panels within 6–12 years, the upfront cost can be intimidating and difficult to afford for many (even with Evergreen Solar's competitive financing). Another factor is that the upfront cost is influenced by the amount of sunshine that reaches the roof of the particular home, where this amount depends on the direction of the roof, the shade, the weather, and more.

When the business was just starting up, Jennifer would follow up on every lead and offer a sales pitch. The free meal has proven to be very enticing, and most take her up on the offer to hear the sales pitch and then receive the home inspection and bid. However, after

the sales pitch and bid, only about half have then chosen to go through with installation.

Her business has been growing, so it has become increasingly difficult for Jennifer to have the time to follow up on every new sales lead, especially when so many do not pan out. Because of the high cost of the sales pitch, the inspections, and creating the bid, as well as the time factor, Jennifer has decided that she now wants to follow up on a new sales lead only when it is a promising one.

Because the sales process is so expensive, Jennifer wants to only pursue leads that she thinks are likely to go ahead with having solar installed.

Jennifer would therefore like to obtain a prediction for each new sales lead regarding whether the lead is *likely* or *not likely* to have solar installed. After collecting and exploring the data on prior sales leads (following the procedures described in Section 2.3), Jennifer determines that the two primary drivers of whether or not a lead will have solar installed is their household income and how much sun their house rooftop receives. Therefore, Jennifer follows the procedures described in Section 2.4 to choose annual household income and peak sun hours (defined below) as the predictor variables, and whether or not the household went through with installation as the output variable. Table 3.1 shows these data for each of the 16 prior households that received her sales pitch, home inspection, and bid.

page 91

The two primary indicators of whether a household will have solar installed appear to be their household income and how much sun their house receives.

A **peak sun hour** is defined as one hour when the intensity of sunlight reaches an average of one kilowatt of energy per square meter. It is not the same as hours of sunshine, since it also accounts for the strength and intensity of the sun's radiation. Winter months and locations further from the equator will see less peak sun hours since sunlight is filtered through more layers of the atmosphere. The hours of sunlight, direction of the panels (directly facing the sun is best), clouds,

and shade will all impact peak sun hours. The Peak Sun Hours (PSH) measure is then the average daily number of peak sun hours, averaged over the course of the entire year.

peak sun hour

One hour when the intensity of sunlight reaches an average of one kilowatt of energy per square meter.

Figure 3.1 shows a scatter plot of the data from Table 3.1. For each household, an X is shown if the customer declined solar, and an ¡ is shown if the customer did have solar installed. A subscript next to each marker also indicates the household number from Table 3.1. The location of each marker on the chart is based upon the household income (as measured on the horizontal axis) and the peak sun hours (as measured on the vertical axis).

FIGURE 3.1

A scatter plot showing the previous households (the historical records) and whether they installed solar (the outcomes), based on household income and peak sun hours for the Evergreen Solar case study.

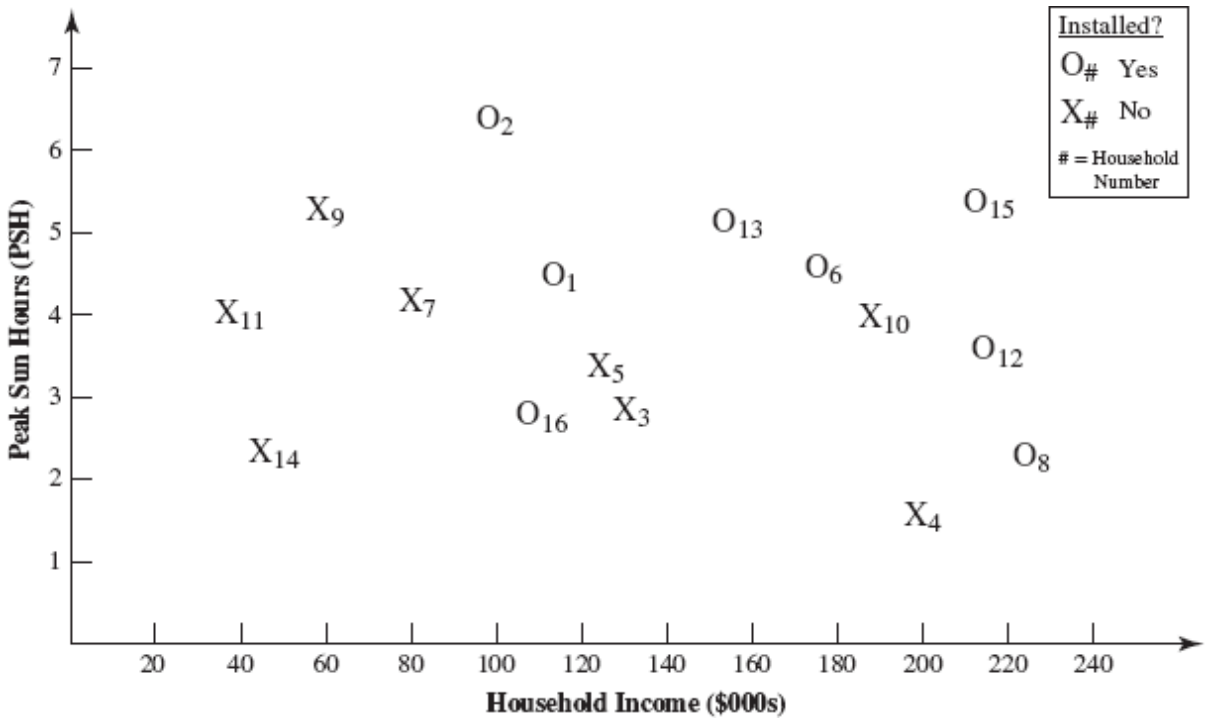


TABLE 3.1

Household income, peak sun hours, and solar installed data for all 16 prior households for the Evergreen Solar Case Study

Household Number	Annual Household Income ($000)	Peak Sun Hours (PSH)	Solar Installed?
1	114	4.5	Yes
2	98	6.4	Yes
3	130	2.9	No
4	198	1.6	No
5	124	3.4	No
6	175	4.6	Yes
7	80	4.2	No
8	224	2.3	Yes

Household Number	Annual Household Income ($000)	Peak Sun Hours (PSH)	Solar Installed?
9	58	5.3	No
10	188	4.0	No
11	38	4.1	No
12	215	3.6	Yes
13	154	5.2	Yes
14	45	2.7	No
15	212	5.4	Yes
16	108	2.8	Yes

Based on this scatter plot, her previous exploration of the other data, and her own experience, Jennifer now is convinced that household income and how much sun a house gets are the two primary indicators of whether a household will eventually choose to have solar installed. She would like to use the data in Table 3.1 and the corresponding data for each new sales lead to obtain a prediction of whether or not that lead would be likely to have solar installed. To begin, she would like to be able to obtain a yes-or-no prediction (referred to as a *classification*) on whether a prospective customer is more likely to have solar installed than not. (She eventually would also like a prediction of the net profit from a prospective customer that would consider both the profit if solar is installed and the loss if solar is declined.)

In fact, Jennifer now has just obtained a *new sales lead.* This new potential customer (the *predictor record)* has an annual household income of $115,000 and Jennifer has estimated (based on the location of their home) that their rooftop would receive 3.0 peak sun hours. Most of the rest of the chapter will present procedures for predicting the outcome for these kinds of situations and then will apply it to this particular sales lead.

Review *Questions*

. Why is it so important for Evergreen Solar to only pursue new sales leads that are likely to have solar installed?

. How is a peak sun hour defined?

. What are the two primary indicators of whether a household will have solar installed?

3.2 MODELS BASED ON THE *k*-NEAREST-NEIGHBORS (KNN) ALGORITHM

page 92

Section 2.4 briefly introduced models based on the ***k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm.** This is a particularly popular type of model because it is a relatively simple and intuitive one. After choosing a small integer value for *k,* the basic idea is to identify the *k* historical records (the "*k* nearest neighbors") that are most similar to the predictor record and then to use the outcomes for those historical records to predict the outcome for the predictor record.

k-nearest-neighbors algorithm

One popular algorithm for classification and prediction that uses the *k* historical records that are closest to the predictor record (the "*k* nearest neighbors") as the region to which the predictor record is classified.

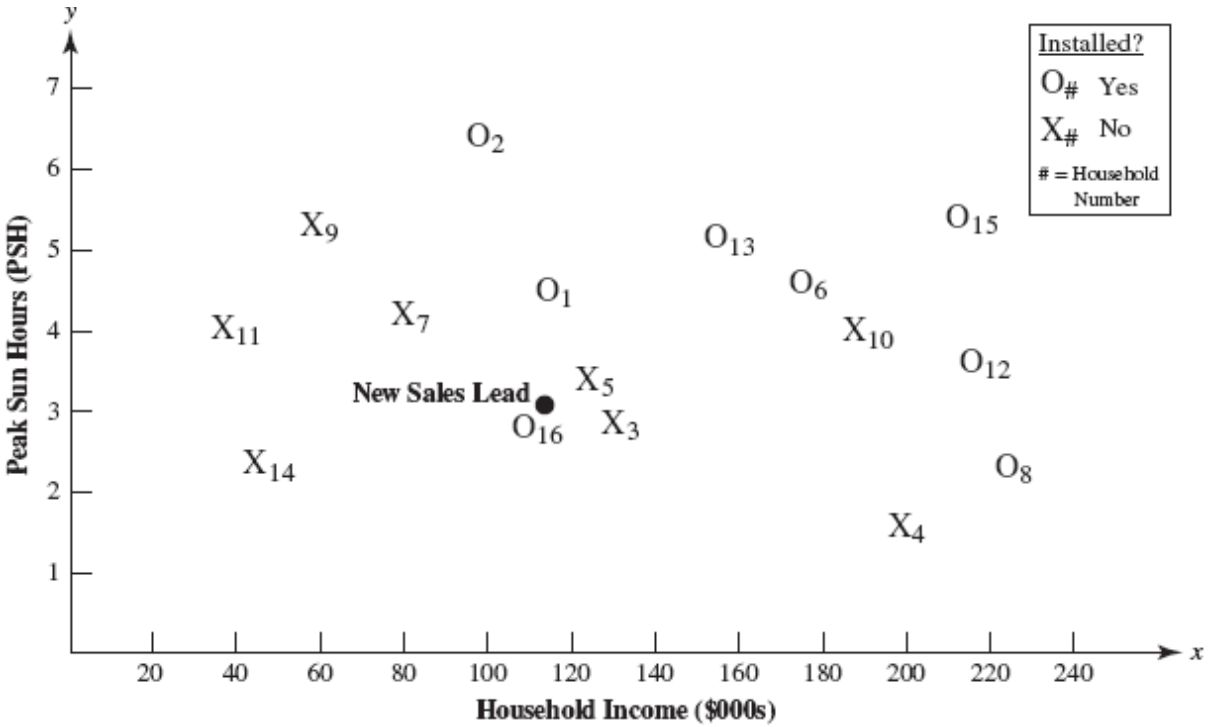
When there are just two predictor variables, it becomes particularly easy to follow what the KNN algorithm is doing by displaying it in a two-dimensional scatter plot. To illustrate, consider the Evergreen Solar case study in Section 3.1, where the two predictor variables used to make a prediction for each household are the *annual household income* and the *peak sun hours* of the house's rooftop. This enabled showing the pairs of data as points on the scatter plot shown in Figure 3.1 in Section 3.1.

As reported at the end of the preceding section, Jennifer (the owner of Evergreen Solar) has received a *new sales lead.* Therefore, she would like to obtain a yes-or-no prediction on whether this sales lead is more likely to have solar installed or not.

This new potential customer (the *predictor record)* has an annual household income of $115,000, and Jennifer has estimated (based on the location of their home) that their rooftop would receive 3.0 peak sun hours. Adding this data point (labeled New Sales Lead) to Figure 3.1 leads to Figure 3.2, which is just what is needed to start applying the algorithm. Note how easy it is to see in Figure 3.2 that three historical records (those for households 16, 3, and 5) are close to the predictor record and the rest of the historical records are considerably further away. These three nearest neighbors of the predictor record become the leading candidates to provide the prediction for the predictor record (the new sales lead). We soon will use this case study to illustrate the full application of the algorithm.

FIGURE 3.2

A scatter plot showing the new sales lead (the predictor record), the previous households (the historical records), and whether they had solar installed (the outcomes), based on household income and peak sun hours (the predictor variables) for the Evergreen Solar case study.



What makes the application of the KNN algorithm to the case study so transparent is that only two predictor variables are needed to describe the characteristics of the historical records and the predictor record, so we can use the scatter plot in Figure 3.2 to visualize the problem. Many other applications will need more than two predictor variables. With three predictor variables, it still is somewhat possible to visualize distances between data points, but this notion becomes quite abstract with more than three predictor variables. Fortunately, a formula is available for calculating the distance between data points for any number of predictor variables. We'll spell that out near the end of this section, but we will focus mainly on two predictor variables and illustrating the procedure with the case study.

Summary of the KNN Algorithm

page 93

Here is a summary of the algorithm when we also identify the corresponding terminology for the case study in parentheses.

KNN algorithm

An abbreviated name of the *k-nearest-neighbors algorithm* described next.

Given a new **predictor record** (new sales lead), make a decision about the value of the following number.

> *k* = number of historical records to include when predicting the outcome for the predictor record.

Then find the *k* **historical records** (the households and their data) whose **predictor variables** (annual household income and peak sun hours) are most similar to those for the predictor record in the sense that they are the *k nearest neighbors to the predictor record* on a scatter plot. Then use the **outcomes** (whether the households had solar installed or not) of these *k* historical records to predict the likely outcome for the predictor record.

This raises two important questions:

1. What are the calculations that are needed to determine the nearest neighbors?
2. What value should be chosen for *k*?

The next subsections will address these two questions.

Finding the Nearest Neighbors for the Case Study

As described above, after the predictor record is plotted on the same scatter plot as the original data to yield Figure 3.2, the nearest neighbors to the predictor record are those data points that are closest to the data point for the predictor record on the scatter plot. The distance is measured in the usual way as the Euclidean distance (the straight-line distance) between the two points. To write the equation for this distance, let's label the Household Income axis as the *x*-axis and the Peak Sun Hours axis as the *y*-axis. Suppose that the historical record of interest has coordinates (x_1, y_1) and the predictor record has coordinates (x_2, y_2). Then, according to the Pythagorean Theorem for the length of the hypotenuse of a right

triangle, the distance between this historical record and the predictor record is

$$\text{Distance between } (x_1, y_1) \text{ and } (x_2, y_2) = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}.$$

The nearest neighbor to the predictor record is the record that is closest in Euclidean (straight-line) distance to the predictor record on a scatter plot.

For example, with the predictor record at (x_2, y_2) = (115, 3.0) and household 16 at (x_1, y_1) = (108, 2.8).

$$= \sqrt{(108 - 115)^2 + (2.8 - 3.0)^2}$$
$$= 7.00$$

page 94

Household 16 appears in Figure 3.2 to be the one that is the closest to the predictor record. Is there another one that actually has a shorter distance to the predictor record? Let's check household 1 at (x_1, y_1) = (114, 4.5), which appears in Figure 3.2 to be much further away from the predictor record than household 16 is. In this case,

$$\text{Distance between household 1 and the predictor record} = \sqrt{(114 - 115)^2 + (2.8 - 4.5)^2}$$
$$= 1.80,$$

which is much less than for household 16. What happened? Do you see the problem? Let's explore this in the next subsection.

Let's pause briefly to mention the one adjustment needed when there are more than two predictor variables. If a larger number (say, *p*) is needed, the data points now would have *p* dimensions instead of just two. The formula for calculating the distance between an historical record and the predictor record now would be

$$\text{Distance between } (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_p) \text{ and } (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_p) = \sqrt{\Sigma_{i=1}^{p} (x_i - y_i)^2}.$$

The Importance of Rescaling the Data Appropriately

The problem with the surprising distance results above for households 16 and 1 is that, even though the two predictor variables are presumed to be of comparable importance, the very different scaling of the two predictor variables makes the annual household income far more important than the peak sun hours.

Whenever the predictor variables have different units of measurement or are scaled differently, it is essential to rescale these variables. For example, in Table 3.1, the household income values vary from 38 up to 224 (in units of thousands of dollars) while the peak sun hours vary from 1.6 to 6.4. Without rescaling, the variability in the household income dimension (typically in the tens or hundreds) will dominate the variability in the peak sun hour dimension (all single digits). This would cause the differences in household income to dominate the distance measurements.

Rescaling the predictor variables is essential before applying the KNN algorithm if the predictor variables have different units of measurement and/or substantially different magnitudes.

One common way to rescale the data is to **normalize the data,** where all values are rescaled so that they range from 0 to 1. This is easily accomplished by noting the minimum and maximum value for each column of data (e.g., the minimum and maximum for the household income and for the peak sun hours in Table 3.1). Then rescale each data value as follows:

$$\text{Normalized Value} = \frac{\text{Original Value} - \text{Minimum}}{\text{Maximum} - \text{Minimum}}.$$

normalizing the data

Rescaling each type of data so that its values range from 0 to 1.

This will cause all values to be on the same scale, ranging from 0 to 1.

Another way to rescale the data is to **standardize the data** (based on the standard normal distribution). This rescaling method begins by making computer calculations that use standard statistical formulas for computing the sample mean and the sample standard deviation for each column of data (e.g., the sample mean and sample standard deviation for the household income and for the peak sun hours in Table 3.1). Then each data point is rescaled as the number of standard deviations it is above or below the sample mean (known in statistics as a *z*-score) in each dimension as follows:

$$\text{Standardized Value} = \frac{\text{Original Value} - \text{Mean}}{\text{Standard Deviation}}.$$

standardizing the data

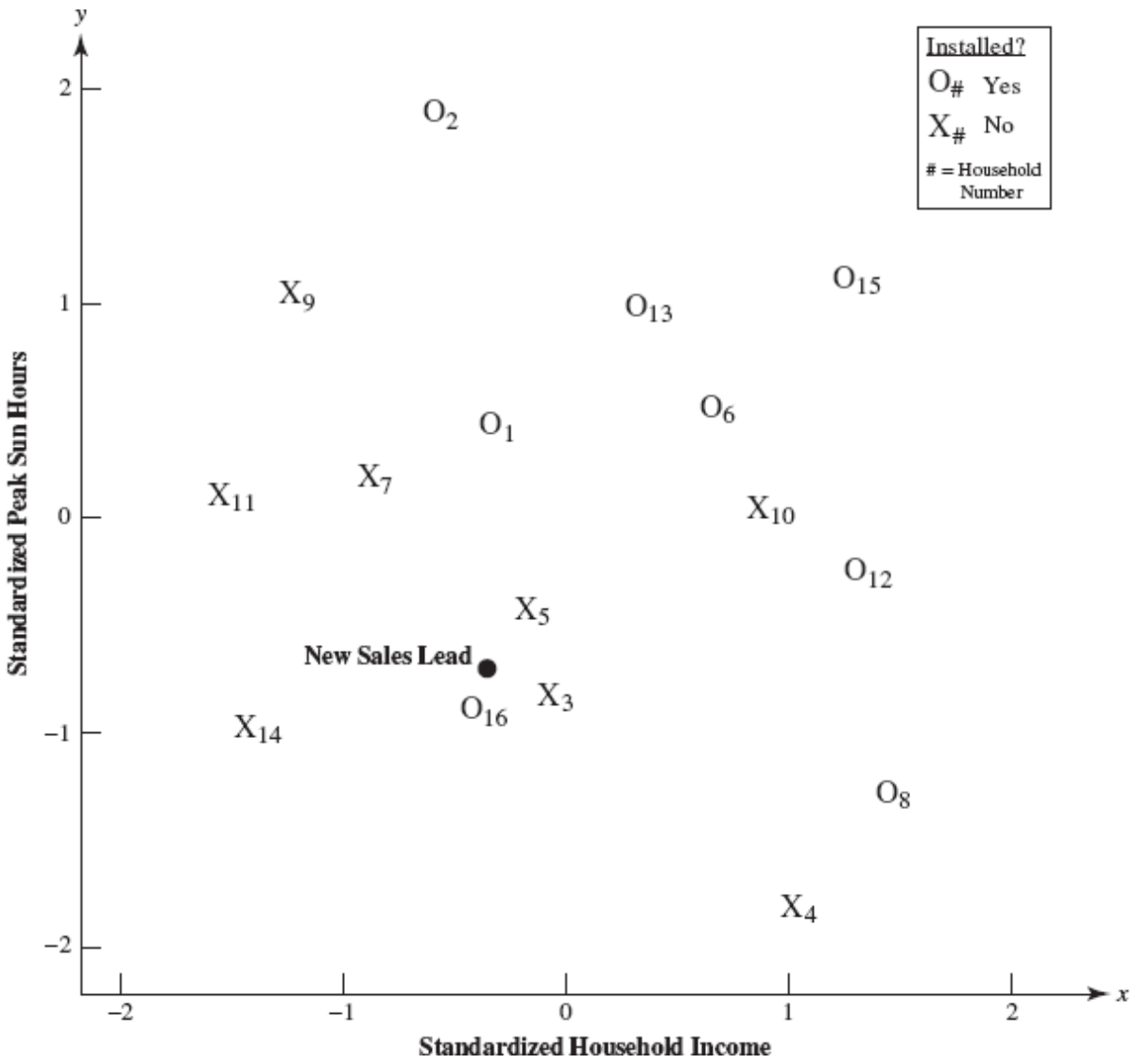
Rescaling each type of data so that it measures the number of standard deviations above or below the mean for a standard normal distribution.

This will put all data values on the same scale, with most values typically falling in the range from −2 to +2. (Figure 3.9 later will illustrate how Analytic Solver can perform standardizing the data.)

The data from Table 3.1 are plotted with standardized data in Figure 3.3. Comparing Figure 3.3 to Figure 3.2, notice that the relative locations of the data in the scatter plot don't change; it essentially just rescales the axes. Now the values of the two predictor variables vary a similar amount (roughly from −2 to +2), so neither will dominate in the distance measurement.

FIGURE 3.3

A scatter plot showing the new sales lead (the predictor record), the previous households (the historical records), and whether they installed solar (the outcomes), based on standardized values for the household income and peak sun hours (the predictor variables) for the case study.



Choosing *k* = Number of Historical Records to Include in the Prediction

How do we choose the value of *k* to use in the KNN algorithm? To start, let's see what the effect would be of choosing a couple sample values of *k* for the case study.

If *k* = 1, the algorithm would classify the new sales lead (the predictor record) based on the outcome of the single nearest neighbor. As seen in Figure 3.3, household 16 is the nearest neighbor (slightly closer to the new sales lead than either household 3 or 5).

Since household 16 chose to have solar installed, the new lead would be classified as likely to have solar installed as well.

If k = 3, the algorithm would find the three nearest neighbors to the new sales lead. Figure 3.3 shows clearly that the three nearest neighbors are households 16, 3, and 5. One of these households (16) did have solar installed, but two (3 and 5) did not. Since the *majority* of the nearest neighbors chose not to have solar installed, the prediction for the new sales lead would be that it is *not* likely to have solar installed.

The KNN algorithm classifies a new record (the predictor record) based upon the outcome of the k nearest neighbors, so the value of k can affect the result.

What should we make of the unfortunate fact that the algorithm leads to a different prediction for the new sales lead depending on whether k = 1 or k = 3? Let's explore this further.

The value of k can be chosen anywhere from k = 1 up to $k = n$, where n is the total number of historical records in the data set. There is a tradeoff associated with the choice of k. At one extreme, with k = 1, the algorithm ignores information provided by other similar historical records, so the prediction for the predictor record is based *solely* on the single nearest data point. Because of randomness, statisticians tell us that we should not rely on a sample size of one. If this nearest neighbor is not typical of other data in the "neighborhood," this can be a problem. This certainly seems like a problem for the case study. Household 16 (the nearest neighbor to the new sales lead) did indeed have solar installed, but most of the other neighbors near household 16 on the scatter plot did not. This suggests that household 16 might be somewhat atypical because of the randomness that is inherent in the decisions made by individual households. In short, the major danger of using k = 1 is that the resulting prediction would be based on only a single data point where that data point may or may not be typical. This would be a case of *overfitting the data.* (Recall that we discussed this danger of **overfitting the data** in Sections 1.4 and 2.4.)

overfitting the data

Continuing to split regions to the point where predictions would be based on overly small sample sizes. (Sections 3.2 and 3.3)

A small value for *k* makes the algorithm more sensitive to the local data.

Considering more neighbors (a higher value of *k*) can help smooth things out, since the resulting prediction would be based on more data (the several nearest neighbors). On the other hand, choosing *k* too large can reduce the procedure's ability to account for the local structure of the data, since it may start including data that is far away from the predictor record and so may be irrelevant for making a prediction. Taken to the extreme, choosing $k = n$ would include *every* piece of data, so it would simply predict the outcome for the predictor record based on the outcomes for the majority of the overall data set. While this incorporates lots of data, thus reducing the impact of randomness, it may end up using a lot of irrelevant and misleading information.

A higher value of *k* smooths the results by considering more data.

To illustrate the smoothing effect of choosing a larger value for *k,* compare Figure 3.4 (showing the results when $k = 1$) and Figure 3.5 (showing the results when $k = 3$). In each figure, if a new sales lead is in the shaded region, the algorithm would predict that the new sales lead (the predictor record) will have solar installed. For Figure 3.4 ($k = 1$), these are the regions on the scatter plot where the nearest neighbor had solar installed. For Figure 3.5 ($k = 3$), these are the regions where the majority of the three nearest neighbors had solar installed.

FIGURE 3.4

The shaded region shows where the KNN algorithm would predict that a new sales lead (the predictor record) is likely to have solar installed when $k = 1$ for the case study.

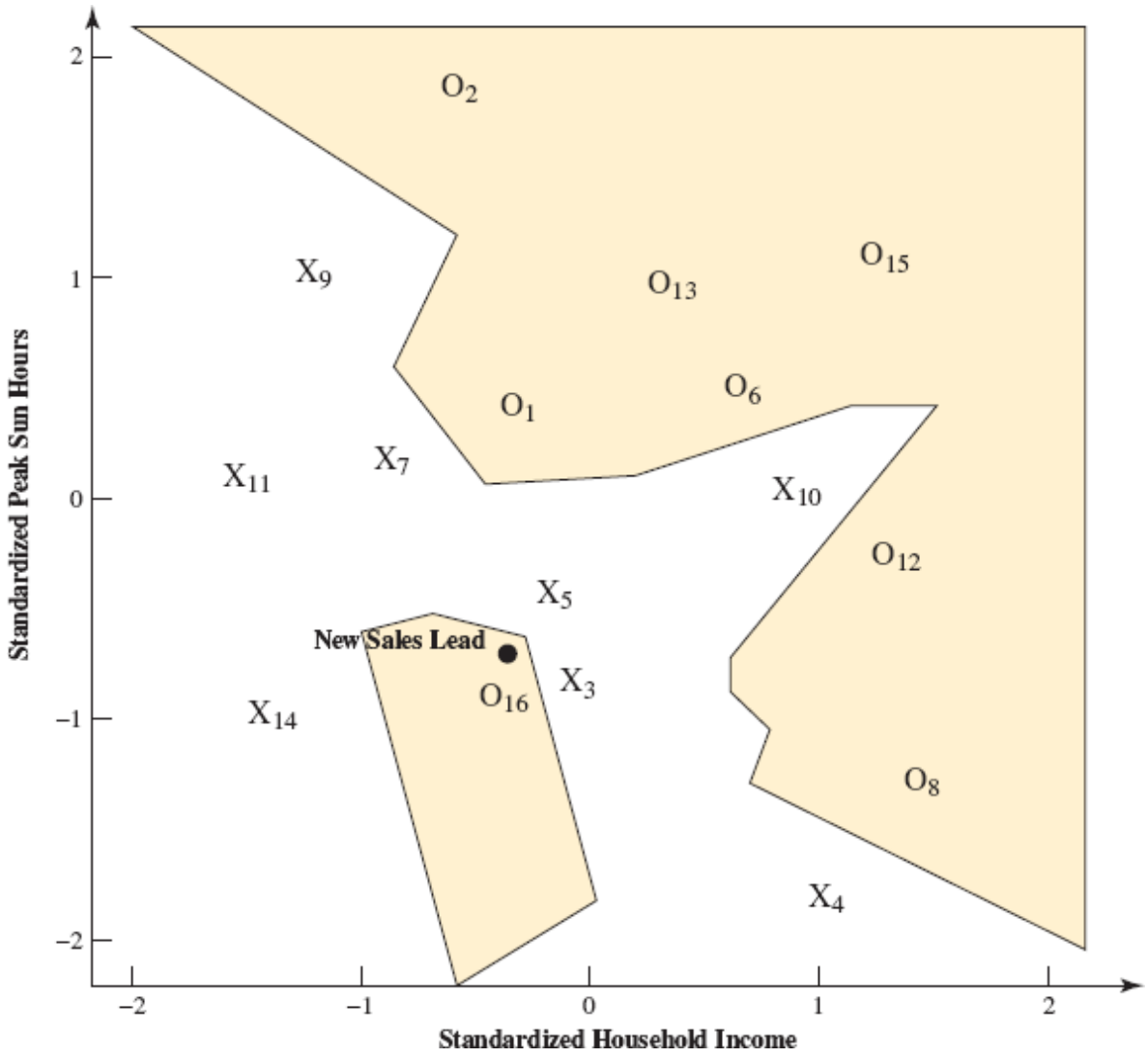
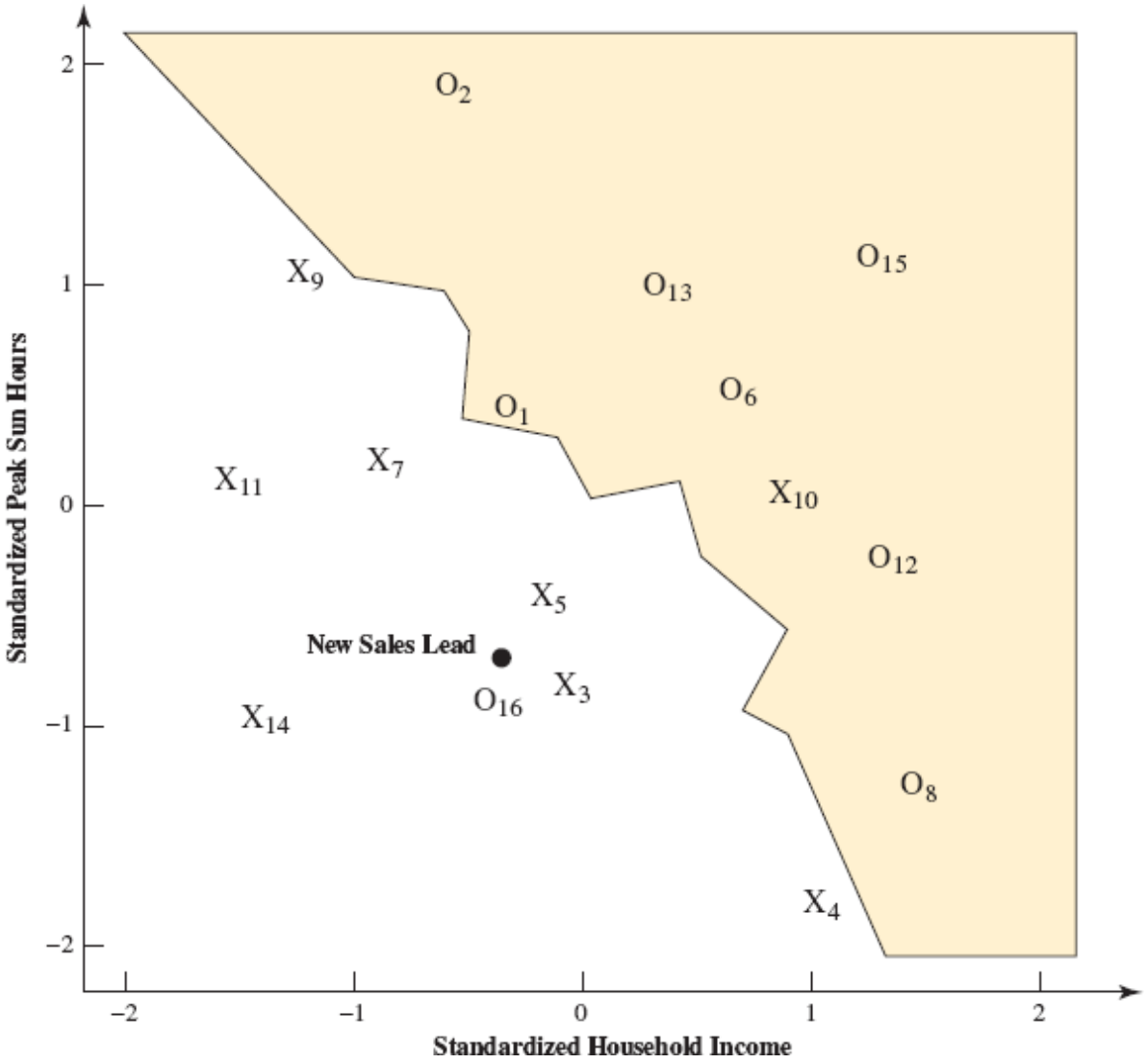


FIGURE 3.5

The shaded region shows where the KNN algorithm would predict that a new sales lead (the predictor record) is likely to install solar when $k = 3$ for the case study.



In Figure 3.4 (for $k = 1$), notice the impact that households 16 and 10 each have on the results. While household 16 did have solar installed, it is in a region of the scatter plot that is surrounded by other households that did *not* have solar installed. It is likely atypical due to the inherent randomness with which households make decisions. Most households with similar income and peak sun hours did not have solar installed, but this one did for some reason. Perhaps there were other outside factors that led household 16 to go ahead with having solar installed in addition to household income and peak sun hours (e.g., perhaps they are avid environmentalists or have significant electrical needs). Household 16, all on its own, has created a fairly significant shaded region where the

algorithm would predict that other new sales leads would also have solar installed. If household 16 truly is atypical, this may lead to the algorithm providing incorrect predictions for new sales leads in this region.

In a similar way (but in the opposite direction), household 10 did *not* have solar installed, but is in a region of the scatter plot where most other households *did* have solar installed. This causes a significant area of Figure 3.4 (around household 10) to *not* be shaded. If household 10 is also atypical, this may lead the algorithm to provide incorrect predictions for new sales leads in this region as likely to decline solar.

Figure 3.5 demonstrates how increasing *k* from 1 to 3 helps smooth things out. A single outlier does not have the same impact on the shaded regions. By accounting for the three nearest neighbors (instead of just one), a single atypical value can be "out-voted" by the other (perhaps more typical) data nearby when making a prediction for a new sales lead.

It is typically advantageous to choose $k > 1$ to smooth the results. By considering several nearest neighbors, rather than a single data point, the algorithm avoids overfitting to the noise caused by single outliers. Also, an odd number for *k* is preferred with yes-or-no outcomes, so that there will be no ties when making the prediction. But *k* should not be so large that the data considered is no longer similar enough to that for the new sales lead. For Jennifer's problem, she only has a small amount of data (16 historical records). Therefore, she is hesitant to set *k* higher than 3 for fear that the more distant neighbors would not be similar enough to the new sales lead. For larger data sets (e.g., with hundreds or thousands of historical records), it is not uncommon to use significantly higher values for *k.* For example, *k* values of up to 50 were used in the First Bank case study in Chapter 2 where there were thousands of historical records.

It often is best to choose $k > 1$ but to also avoid an overly large value.

For larger data sets with hundreds or thousands of historical records, significantly higher values of *k* are usually better.

Predicting Numerical Outcomes with the KNN Algorithm

We have seen how the KNN algorithm can be used for the case study to make a prediction for a new sales lead based on the outcomes of its nearby neighbors. The outcomes in this case were **yes-or-no outcomes** where a yes would indicate a desirable outcome (the new sales lead did choose to have solar installed) and a no would indicate an undesirable outcome (the new sales lead declined solar). With just two classes of outcomes, the model based on the KNN algorithm is called a **classification model** because its goal is to identify the class that is more likely to occur.

page 98

yes-or-no outcomes

A situation where only two outcomes are possible, so the desirable outcome can be labeled *yes* and then the undesirable outcome can be labeled *no.*

classification model

A model for predicting the class of the predictor record's outcome. Introduction

However, more complicated types of outcomes sometimes are of interest. One possibility would be to have *discrete outcomes* where there are a few (but more than two) classes of outcomes. The approach would be similar to the case of yes-or-no outcomes. The model based on the KNN algorithm still would be a classification model because its goal still is to identify the most likely class for the predictor record. This classification would be based on the most common outcome for the *k* nearest neighbors.

Another important case is to have **numerical outcomes,** so the outcome can have any numerical value over some range. Fortunately, the KNN algorithm can be adjusted fairly easily to predict the value of a numerical outcome. In this case, the model based on the KNN algorithm is called a **prediction model.** We now will illustrate this kind of model with the case study.

numerical outcomes

A situation where the outcomes can have any numerical value over some range.

prediction model

A model for predicting the predictor record's numerical outcome. Introduction

The KNN algorithm also can predict the value of a numerical outcome.

Returning to the case study, suppose Jennifer has collected some additional data for each of her prior customers, including the bid cost (which includes the cost of the sales pitch, inspections,and preparing the bid), the cost of installation, and the revenue. Finally, the net profit is calculated, as shown in Table 3.2. For customers that had solar installed, the net profit would include the revenue received from the customer, minus both the cost of the installation and the bid cost. For customers that declined solar, the net profit would only account for the bid cost (and hence is a negative number).

TABLE 3.2

Cost, revenue, and profit data for all 16 previous customers of Evergreen Solar

Household Number	Bid Cost ($000)	Installation Cost ($000)	Revenue ($000)	Net Profit ($000)
1	0.62	15.46	21.90	5.82
2	0.73	10.64	19.84	8.47
3	0.65	0	0	−0.65
4	0.54	0	0	−0.54
5	0.42	0	0	−0.42
6	0.75	17.53	27.89	9.61
7	0.45	0	0	−0.45
8	0.78	20.92	31.53	9.83
9	0.54	0	0	−0.54
10	0.67	0	0	−0.67
11	0.53	0	0	−0.53
12	0.84	33.49	51.02	16.69
13	1.02	19.27	28.70	8.41
14	0.63	0	0	−0.63
15	0.95	24.33	39.00	13.72
16	0.82	18.07	27.57	8.68

Jennifer now wants to use the KNN algorithm to predict the net profit that would be earned on the same new sales lead, where the household has an income of $115,000 and peak sun hours of 3.0. The only change occurs at the prediction step, so the algorithm begins by determining the nearest neighbors based on distance just as before when using the data in Table 3.1 and the standardized scatter plot of Figure 3.3. When using k = 3, the three neighbors nearest to the new sales lead (the predictor record) are again households 16, 3, and 5.

However, rather than making a prediction based on the majority outcome among the k nearest neighbors, the prediction now is based on the average of the numerical outcomes of these nearest neighbors. Therefore, the prediction for the net profit earned on the new sales lead would be the average net profit earned by households 16, 3, and 5, so

$$\text{Prediction} = \frac{8.68 - 0.65 - 0.42}{3} = \$2.54 \text{ thousand.}$$

(Sometimes a weighted average is used, with the highest weights given to the closest neighbors and progressively smaller weights assigned as the distance to other neighbors increases.)

Although the calculations for the KNN algorithm are reasonably straightforward, a computer normally is used to do this for problems of significant size. We show below how Analytic Solver can be used in this way.

Using Analytic Solver to Apply the KNN Algorithm to the Case Study

In preparation for applying Analytic Solver, Jennifer has collected all of the relevant data in a spreadsheet (combining the data from Tables 3.1 and 3.2). This dataset, along with a data dictionary, is shown in Figure 3.6.

FIGURE 3.6

The dataset for the 16 prior customers of Evergreen Solar, along with a data dictionary.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Household**	**Income**	**PSH**	**Install?**	**Bid**	**Installation**	**Revenue**	**Profit**
2	1	114	4.5	Yes	0.62	15.46	21.90	5.82
3	2	98	6.4	Yes	0.73	10.64	19.84	8.47
4	3	130	2.9	No	0.65	0	0	–0.65
5	4	198	1.6	No	0.54	0	0	–0.54
6	5	124	3.4	No	0.42	0	0	–0.42
7	6	175	4.6	Yes	0.75	17.53	27.89	9.61
8	7	80	4.2	No	0.45	0	0	–0.45
9	8	224	2.3	Yes	0.78	20.92	31.53	9.83
10	9	58	5.3	No	0.54	0	0	–0.54
11	10	188	4.0	No	0.67	0	0	–0.67
12	11	38	4.1	No	0.53	0	0	–0.53
13	12	215	3.6	Yes	0.84	33.49	51.02	16.69
14	13	154	5.2	Yes	1.02	19.27	28.70	8.41
15	14	45	2.7	No	0.63	0	0	–0.63
16	15	212	5.4	Yes	0.95	24.33	39.00	13.72
17	16	108	2.8	Yes	0.82	18.07	27.57	8.68

Variable	Description
Household	Household number
Income	Household income ($thousands/year)
PSH	Peak sun hours
Install?	Did the customer install solar? (Yes/No)
Bid	Bid cost ($thousands)
Installation	Installation cost ($thousands)
Revenue	Revenue from installation ($thousands)
Profit	Net profit ($thousands)

A little time now has passed. In addition to the new sales lead analyzed earlier, Jennifer now has four other new sales leads as well. Thus, all five are *predictor records.* Figure 3.7 shows the key data for these five predictor records (labeled as New Lead 1 through 5). Analytic Solver Data Mining will be used to apply KNN to all five of these predictor records to predict the outcome for each one.

FIGURE 3.7

Spreadsheet of data for the new sales leads for Evergreen Solar.

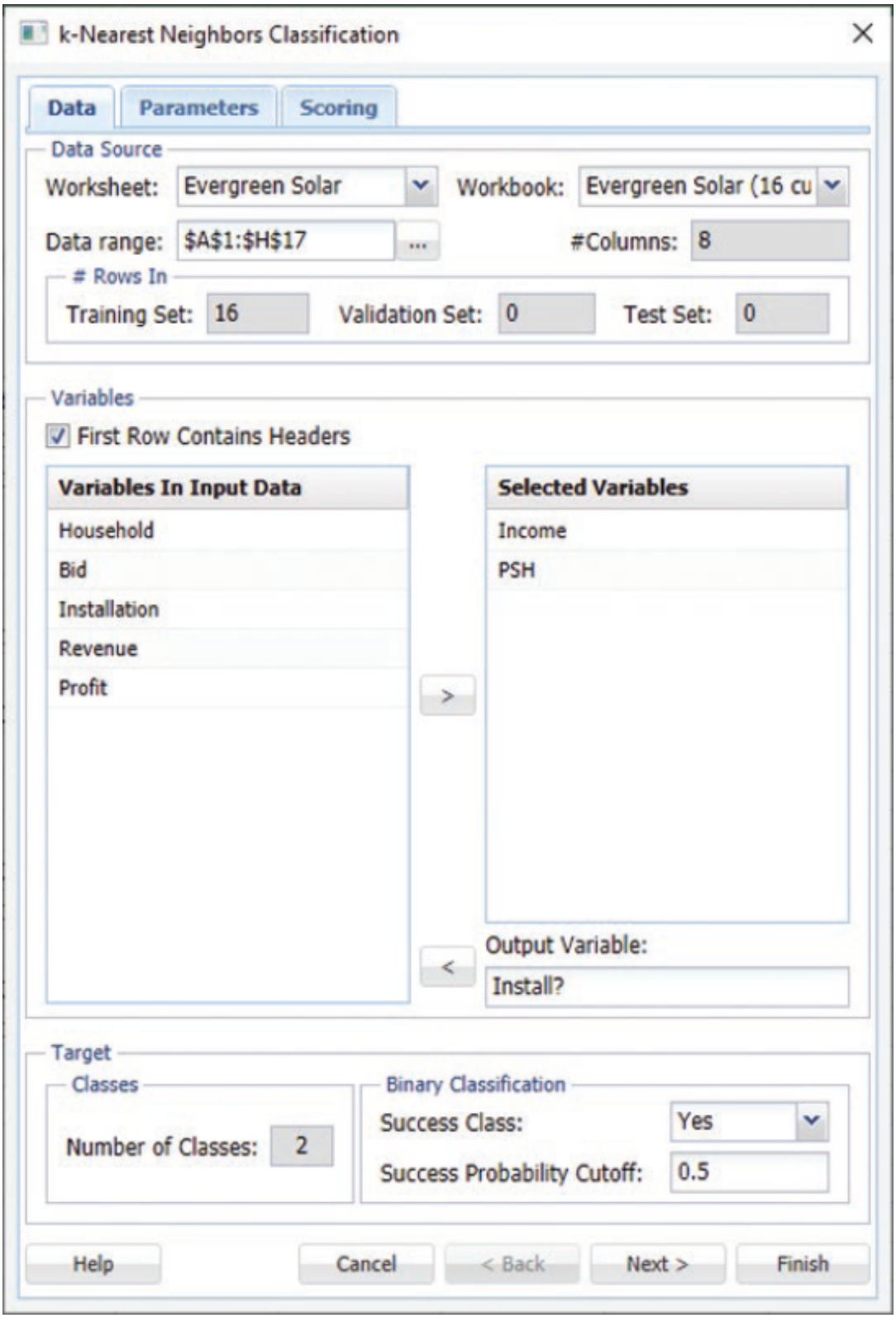
	A	B	C
19	**Household**	**Income**	**PSH**
20	New Lead 1	115	3.0
21	New Lead 2	186	5.1
22	New Lead 3	220	3.8
23	New Lead 4	77	5.9
24	New Lead 5	164	3.6

We will use Analytic Solver to consider the two types of outcomes discussed earlier for the case study. One type is *yes-or-no outcomes,* where the question is whether a new sales lead is likely to choose to have solar installed—yes or no? The second type is *numerical outcomes,* where the desired prediction is the net profit if the new sales lead is pursued. We begin with the first type.

To apply KNN for classification (to determine whether a new sales lead is likely to choose to have solar installed), choose *k-Nearest Neighbors* from the *Classify* menu on the Data Mining tab. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 3.8. Analytic Solver attempts to guess the location of the data in the spreadsheet, and in this case does so correctly as cells A1:H17. (This can be modified as needed if the initial guess is not correct). The checkbox also is checked to indicate that the first row of the data contains headers which label the data for that column.

FIGURE 3.8

The initial dialog box for the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when performing classification in Analytic Solver Data Mining. It indicates that the data are located in cells A1:H17 from the spreadsheet shown in Figure 3.6. It also specifies that the predictor variables for the case study are *Income* and *PSH,* and the output variable is *Install?*



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Next, the key variables that characterize a record need to be selected. The *Variables in Input Data* box initially lists all of the columns of data in the data set. To choose *Income* and *PSH* as the predictor variables, click on them and then click the right arrow to move these variables to the *Selected Variables* box (as shown in Figure 3.8 after completing this move).

page 100

Since Jennifer wants to classify predictor records by whether or not they choose to have solar installed, the output variable is *Install?,* so this variable is selected from the *Variables in Input Data* box and moved to the *Output Variable* box (as shown in Figure 3.8 after completing this move).

page 101

At the bottom of the dialog box in Figure 3.8, the output variable is identified as having two classes (Yes and No). Which of these is considered a "success" can be chosen in the bottom right portion of the menu. (Yes is considered a success because it refers to a record that chooses to go ahead with having solar installed.) Finally, the cutoff probability needed in order to predict that a new sales lead will be a success is specified as 0.5 (the default). This means that if more than half (0.5) of the nearest neighbors had solar installed, the new sales lead will be classified as likely to have solar installed.

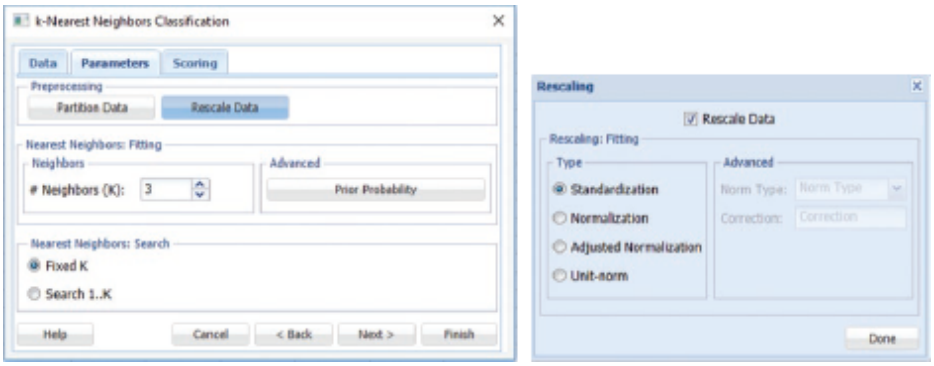
In a different scenario, where the unsuccessful outcome is particularly bad (e.g., a bank customer defaulting on a loan), the focus may shift to estimating the probability of this outcome. In this case, the cutoff probability for success (no default) might be set very high. For example, perhaps only a customer with a 95 percent chance or higher of not defaulting would be classified as "unlikely to default." (The First Bank case study in Chapter 2 used this cutoff probability for its prime loans.)

Clicking on Next at the bottom of the dialog box in Figure 3.8 (or the Parameter tab at the top) leads to the Parameters tab of the *k*-Nearest Neighbors dialog box, as shown in Figure 3.9. Here, the value of *k* (the number of nearest neighbors used by the algorithm to make the prediction) is chosen as 3. Also, since the data for the two

predictor variables are using drastically different scales, the *Rescale Data* button is pressed. This pops up the dialog box shown on the right side of Figure 3.9, where the method of re-scaling is chosen as *Standardization* (using z-scores based on the standard normal distribution).

FIGURE 3.9

The Parameters tab of the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when performing classification in Analytic Solver Data Mining. The number of neighbors (*k*) is specified as 3. The data is rescaled using standardization.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The Parameters tab also includes a *Partition* button that can be used to partition the dataset. Section 2.4 described the five-step process for performing predictive analytics, where Step 2 is to partition the data. This involves splitting up the historical records into (at least) two parts—**a training partition** for developing the model and a **validation partition** for testing the model. This partitioning is an important part of most applications of predictive analytics.

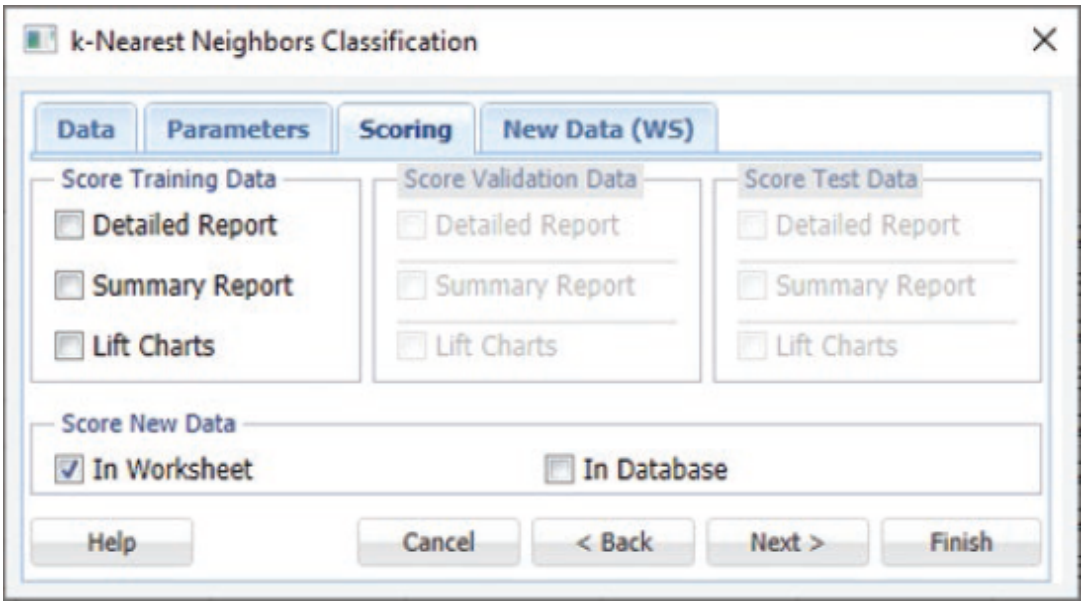
However, this partitioning will *not* be done at this point for the case study. The reason is that a reasonably large number of historical records (say, at least a hundred) are required. The case study has only 16 historical records, so all of them are needed for immediately applying the model. This partitioning process *will* be applied in Section 3.5 when we revisit the case study after a few years have passed. Then Jennifer will have enough historical records to be able

to use partitioning to test the various models covered in Sections 3.2–3.4.

Clicking Next at the bottom of the dialog box shown in Figure 3.9 (or Scoring at the top) leads to the Scoring tab of the dialog box shown in Figure 3.10. Here it is indicated that the new data to score is included in the worksheet by checking that checkbox. This adds a fourth tab *New Data (WS)* to the dialog box.

FIGURE 3.10

The Scoring tab of the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when performing classification in Analytic Solver Data Mining.



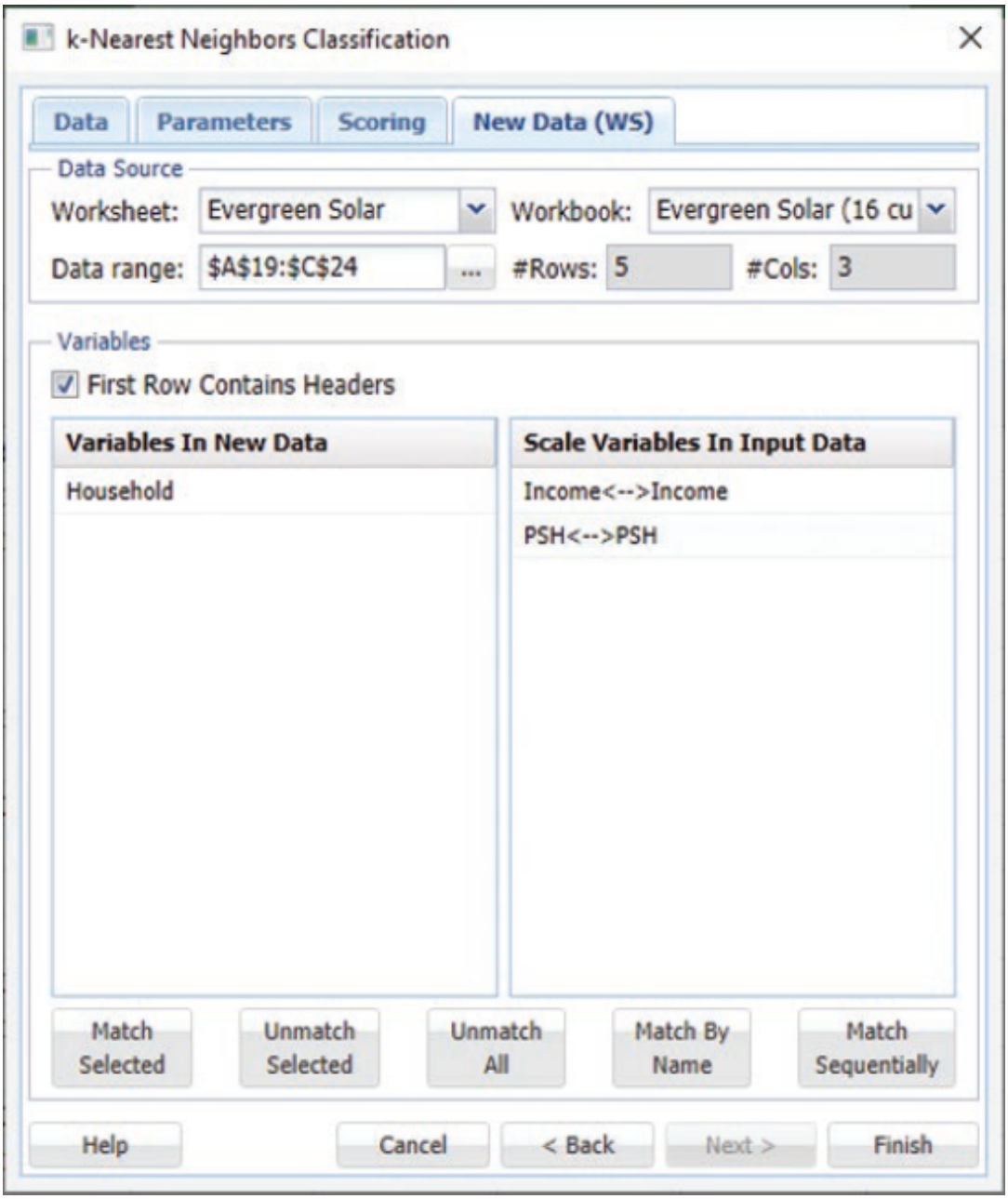
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Clicking Next on the Scoring tab in Figure 3.10 (or on the New Data (WS) tab) leads to the fourth and final tab of the dialog box shown in Figure 3.11. Here the source of the new data is selected (cells A19:C24 of the spreadsheet shown in Figure 3.7) and the first row is selected as containing headers (labels for the data). Finally, the columns of data in the new data (cells A19:C24 of Figure 3.7) need to be matched up with the columns of data in the input data (cells A1:H17 of Figure 3.6). If you are careful to use the same labels in the headers for the input data and the new data, this can be done

simply by clicking the *Match by Name* button, which correctly matches up *Income* and *PSH* from the two sets of data. The result is shown in Figure 3.11.

FIGURE 3.11

The New Data tab of the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when performing classification in Analytic Solver Data Mining for the Evergreen Solar case study. The data range is specified as A19:C23 and the variables in the new data were matched to the input data using *Match By Name.*



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Clicking *Finish* in this New Data tab then runs the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm (with $k = 3$) for each of the five predictor records (new sales leads). Analytic Solver creates several new tabs in the workbook to display the results. All of the Analytic Solver settings are summarized on the left side of Figure 3.12. On the right side of the figure, a table classifies each of the five

predictor records. Predictor records 2, 3, and 4 receive the prediction that they are likely to have solar installed, while predictor records 1 and 5 receive the prediction that they are likely to decline solar. A posterior probability for each is also indicated, page 103 determined by the proportion of the three nearest neighbors that fell into each class. Predictor records 2 and 5 were unanimous (all three nearest neighbors were in the same class), while for predictor records 1, 3, and 4, the prediction was made based on a 2-1 majority among the three nearest neighbors.

FIGURE 3.12

The Analytic Solver settings (left) and results (right) of the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when it is applied to the five predictor records (new sales leads) for the Evergreen solar case study. The results indicate that Evergreen Solar's new predictor records 2, 3, and 4 are likely to have solar installed, but new predictor records 1 and 5 are likely to decline solar.

Analytic Solver Settings

k-Nearest Neighbor Classification
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Install?*
Success Class: Yes
Success Probability Cutoff: 0.5
Partition Data: No
Re-Scale Data: Standardization
 # Neighbors (*K*): 3 (fixed)
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

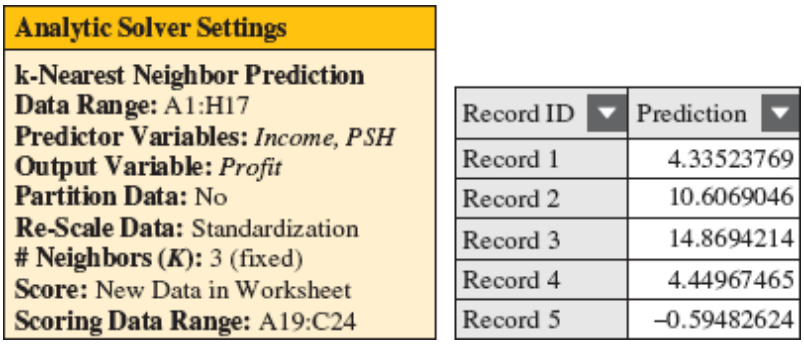
Record ID	Prediction: Install?	PostProb: No	PostProb: Yes
Record 1	No	0.666666667	0.333333333
Record 2	Yes	0	1
Record 3	Yes	0.333333333	0.666666667
Record 4	Yes	0.333333333	0.666666667
Record 5	No	1	0

In much the same way, the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm can be used to make predictions of numerical values. Jennifer would like to use this algorithm to predict the net profit that would be earned if a new sales lead (predictor record) were to be pursued. To do so, choose *k-Nearest Neighbors* from the *Predict* menu on the Data Mining tab. This brings up a dialog box much like Figure 3.8. The same data is entered, except now the output variable would be *Profit* instead of *Install?.* The following tabs of the dialog box, as shown in Figures 3.9–3.11, are then filled out in the same way as before.

Clicking *Finish* then runs the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm (with k = 3) for each of the five predictor records (new sales leads). All of the Analytic Solver settings are summarized on the left side of Figure 3.13. The right side of the same figure shows a table that predicts the net profit that would be earned for each of the five predictor records.

FIGURE 3.13

The Analytic Solver settings (left) and results (right) of the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm when predicting the expected net profit for each of the five predictor records (new sales leads) for the Evergreen Solar case study.



Analytic Solver Settings

k-Nearest Neighbor Prediction
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Profit*
Partition Data: No
Re-Scale Data: Standardization
 # Neighbors (*K*): 3 (fixed)
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

Record ID	Prediction
Record 1	4.33523769
Record 2	10.6069046
Record 3	14.8694214
Record 4	4.44967465
Record 5	–0.59482624

The KNN algorithm is just one of several popular models for performing predictive analytics. Having obtained these results by using the KNN algorithm, Jennifer plans to repeat this process with some of these other models to choose the one that works best for her application. You will see this story play out over the remainder of the chapter.

Pros and Cons of the KNN Algorithm

A key advantage of the KNN algorithm lies in its simplicity. It doesn't require any work to create a model or determine any parameters (other than choosing a value of *k*). Therefore, once the *k* nearest neighbors have been identified, the algorithm can be used immediately to predict the outcome for the predictor record. The procedure also is readily understood because it is so intuitive.

However, a downside to the algorithm is that there is some work required to make each prediction. Determining the *k* nearest neighbors requires calculating the distance to the predictor record from each of the historical records in the data set (unless a scatter plot is available to make this determination visually). This can be especially cumbersome if there are thousands of historical records in the data set. Fortunately, this can still be done quite quickly with a computer, as illustrated with Analytic Solver above.

page 104

Although the KNN algorithm doesn't require much work to develop the underlying model, it can require a lot of calculations to identify the *k* nearest neighbors.

A more important disadvantage of the algorithm is that it needs to be reapplied from scratch for each new predictor record. This is a serious drawback when there are many predictor records to be considered. Fortunately, the algorithm presented in the next section is well suited for the case where there will be many predictor records.

Review *Questions*

. How are the nearest neighbors determined in the KNN algorithm?
. When is it important to rescale the data?
. What does it mean to normalize the data?
. What does it mean to standardize the data?
. What is the tradeoff in choosing different values of *k* in KNN algorithm?
. What are yes-or-no outcomes? What is an example for the case study?
. What are numerical outcomes? What is an example for the case study?
. How can Analytic Solver be used to solve models based on the KNN algorithm?
. What are the pros of using the KNN algorithm?
. What are the cons of using the KNN algorithm?

3.3 MODELS BASED ON CLASSIFICATION TREE AND REGRESSION TREE ALGORITHMS

Returning to the original version of the Evergreen Solar case study again, Jennifer still needs to decide whether to go ahead with her new sales lead, a household which has an annual income of $115,000 and a rooftop with 3.0 peak sun hours. The historical information she has available for making this decision consists of the 16 historical records shown in Table 3.1 in Section 3.1. Each historical record provides the predictor variables (the annual household income and the rooftop's peak sun hours) for that previous potential customer. The table also indicates that eight of these potential customers did proceed to have solar installed and the other eight declined. Referring to the scatter plot shown in Figure 3.3 in the preceding section, the location of the data point for the new sales lead relative to the data points for the 16 historical records suggests that Jennifer's decision will be a close call. She still wants to begin by obtaining a yes-or-no prediction about whether the new sales lead is more likely to have solar installed instead of declining solar.

Jennifer now has learned what the *k*-nearest neighborhoods (KNN) algorithm (described in the preceding section) can do to guide her decision. She has mixed feelings about what she has learned. She likes the fact that the KNN algorithm is a relatively simple and intuitive procedure that enables classifying a new sales lead based upon just the most similar households (the "nearest neighbors"). She is a little concerned that the prediction for the new sales lead can be different when choosing different values of *k* (the number of historical records to include when making the prediction). However, her main concern is that she would have to repeat the entire algorithm from scratch every time she has a new sales lead. She hopes to have many new sales leads in the coming months and years. She doesn't

like the idea of having to do a lot of calculations every time for each new sales lead. It is important to quickly follow up on a new sales lead if it is a promising one.

Therefore, Jennifer wonders if there is another procedure that would provide her with a simple decision rule that would allow her to quickly determine whether a new sales lead should be pursued. In fact, **classification trees** can be used to create simple rules to classify new predictor records. It appears that the **classification tree algorithm** presented in this section may be just what she wants. It still will need to be updated occasionally as the database is expanded over time. Jennifer has just 16 historical records currently, which is on the small side, so she looks forward to being able to use a considerably larger database to guide her decisions in due time, but she is comfortable with updating her decision rule only occasionally.

classification tree

A diagram consisting of nodes and connecting branches that identifies the various regions of historical records and then enables classifying any new predictor record as belonging to one of these regions.

classification tree algorithm

An algorithm that uses a classification tree to perform predictive analytics when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes (or possibly discrete outcomes with more than two distinct outcomes).

Introduction to the Classification Tree Algorithm

To review, we still are considering the type of classification problem that was considered through most of the preceding section. Here is a summary of this type (while inserting the corresponding terminology for the case study in parentheses).

> Given a **predictor record** (a new sales lead), we wish to predict the **outcome** (either decline solar or have solar installed) for the predictor record by analyzing the outcomes of the **historical records** (previous potential customers and their data). The analysis will consider **classes** of possible outcomes (yes-or-no on having solar installed) rather than numerical values (the net profit). Therefore, the analysis will

lead to **classifying the outcome** by identifying which class is relatively likely to occur rather than predicting a numerical outcome. (The regression tree algorithm presented later in this section will do the latter.)

class

One of the categories of possible outcomes for the predictor record.

classifying the outcome

Identifying which of the predictor record's possible outcomes is relatively likely to occur.

The main difference between the KNN algorithm presented in the preceding section and the classification tree algorithm we are presenting here lies in how they identify which historical records upon which to base the prediction. The KNN algorithm does not do much work up front. Instead, for each new predictor record, the KNN algorithm finds the *k* nearest neighbors (with some computational effort) and then uses their outcomes to make the prediction.

In contrast, most of the work of the classification tree algorithm is done up front. It carefully splits up the historical records into a set of regions in such a way that most of the records within each region had similar outcomes. With these regions created, the classification of a new predictor record simply requires matching the predictor record to a region and then classifying the record based on the predominant outcome in that region. The algorithm is easily reapplied for a considerable number of future predictor records before the set of regions needs to be updated.

The classification tree algorithm can be summarized as follows.

Outline of the Classification Tree Algorithm:

1. **Split** the historical records into regions.
   a. Start with one large region for all the historical records.
   b. **Split** the historical records in one of the current regions into two new regions based on a dividing line for a single predictor variable that will leave some of the records in each of the two new regions. (The procedure for choosing this dividing line will be described a

little later.) The goal each time is that the historical records in each region should be as homogeneous as possible.

c. **Repeat step b** as desired until a stopping rule is reached. At this point, the historical records in each region should be at least nearly homogeneous, without overfitting.

2. **Match** the predictor record(s) with the appropriate region based on the value of its predictor variables.
3. **Classify** the likely outcome for the predictor record(s) based on the outcomes for the historical records in the matched region.

If there are only two predictor variables, this algorithm is easily visualized with a scatter plot of the data points for the historical records. Then splitting can be done by simply adding vertical lines and/or horizontal dividing lines that form the boundaries of the regions. This visual approach is helpful for building intuition and will be used to demonstrate splitting in the next subsection. The following subsection then presents a method of measuring homogeneity to determine the best location for the dividing lines in the scatter plot.

Another way to track the splits and regions is to systematically build a classification tree where each new branch of the tree represents a split and the final nodes of the tree represent the regions. This approach does not require using a scatter plot and so is not limited to using only two predictor variables. The presentation of this approach appears a little later in this section.

Following this presentation, we will turn to making predictions of numerical quantities with **regression trees.** For the case study, this involves predicting Evergreen Solar's net profit (on the average) from the new sales lead, just as was done with the KNN algorithm in the latter part of the preceding section.

regression tree

A close variant of a classification tree that is used when dealing with numerical outcomes.

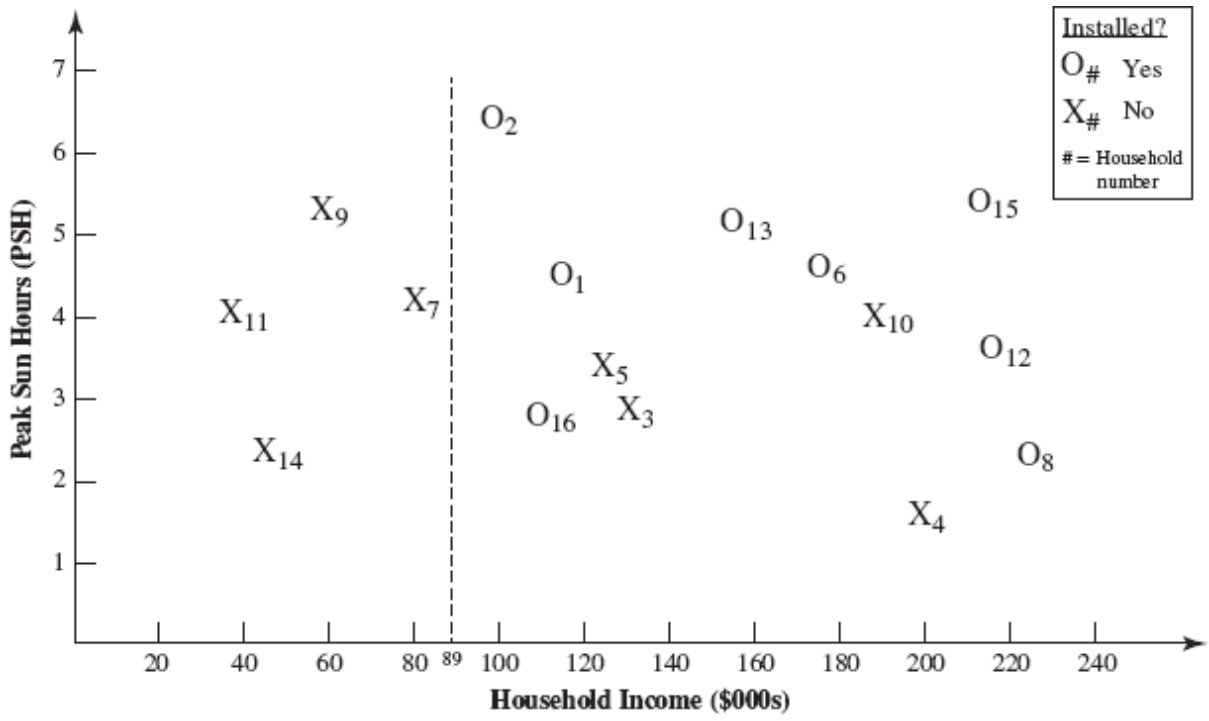
The current section will conclude with a discussion of the pros and cons of classification trees and regression trees.

Splitting the Historical Records into Regions for the Case Study

Reconsider the data presented in Table 3.1 and the corresponding scatter plot of Figure 3.1 in Section 3.1. This scatter plot shows all 16 historical records for the case study in one big region. What the splitting step of the classification tree algorithm does is to split this big region into smaller and smaller regions. To get started, Figure 3.14 shows one option for the first such split, where the dashed line divides the scatter plot into two regions—those historical records with household income at or below $89 thousand and those with household incomes greater than $89 thousand.

FIGURE 3.14

An initial splitting of the data, splitting the historical records into two regions—those with household incomes ≤ $89 thousand and those with household income > $89 thousand—for the Evergreen Solar case study.



Since the case study has just two predictor variables (household income and peak sun hours), it is easy to split a region into two new regions by simply inserting a horizontal or vertical dividing line in the scatter plot. In a problem with more than two predictor variables, the concept is similar, but the split breaks the region down into multidimensional rectangles. This is hard to visualize with a scatter plot, so classification trees are typically used in this case (as will be demonstrated later).

For the split created in Figure 3.14 (dividing at a household income of $89 thousand), note that *all* of the historical records to the left of the dividing line (4 out of 4) have the same outcome—solar was *not* installed. *Most* of the data to the right (8 out of 12) also have the same outcome—solar *was* installed. Therefore, it appears that this split does a rather good job of creating new regions such that each one is relatively homogenous.

However, this is just one of a few reasonable options that are available for the first split. Are there any objective tests available for determining which option is best? Yes, the technique described below is one such test.

Measuring Homogeneity with the Gini Index

The goal when splitting a region is to create two new regions such that each one is as homogenous as possible. How can we measure the homogeneity of a particular region? One measure that has been designed for this is the following version of the *Gini Index.*

> The **Gini Index** measures the *lack of homogeneity of a region.* Its values range from 0 to 0.5, where a value of 0 indicates that the region is *completely homogeneous,* whereas a value of 0.5 indicates that the region is *completely lacking in homogeneity.*

Gini index

An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a region when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes.

> The Gini Index is calculated as follows when there are two possible outcomes (e.g., decline solar or have solar installed) for

each record. For a given region, let

p_i = fraction of the historical records in the region that have outcome *i,* for *i* = 1, 2.

Then the Gini Index for that region is

$$\text{Gini Index} = 1 - p_1^2 - p_2^2.$$

This index reaches the minimum value of 0 when all of the historical records in the region have the same outcome (so $p_1 = 1$ or $p_2 = 1$). It reaches its maximum value of 0.5 when the region is evenly split between the two classes (so $p_1 = p_2 = 0.5$).

page 107

Here is how the Gini Index can reach its minimum value of 0 and its maximum value of 0.5.

To illustrate these calculations, consider the case study with the two regions shown in Figure 3.14. For any record, the two possible outcomes are the following.

Outcome 1: The historical record declined solar.

Outcome 2: The historical record had solar installed.

Before any splitting occurs, we know that eight historical records had outcome 1 and the other eight historical records had outcome 2, so $p_1 = p_2 = 0.5$. Therefore,

$$\text{Gini Index (before any splitting)} = 1 - p_1^2 - p_2^2 = 0.5,$$

which indicates a *complete lack of homogeneity.*

Now consider the case study with the two regions shown in Figure 3.14. For the region on the left in this figure, all four historical records have outcome 1 (decline solar), so the Gini Index for this region is

$$\text{Gini Index (Household Income} \leq \$89 \text{ thousand)} = 1 - \left(\frac{4}{4}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{0}{4}\right)^2 = 0,$$

so this region is *completely homogeneous.* For the region on the right, where four historical records have outcome 1 and eight have outcome 2, its Gini Index is

$$\text{Gini Index (Household Income} > \$89 \text{ thousand)} = 1 - \left(\frac{4}{12}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{8}{12}\right)^2 = 0.44,$$

so this region is largely, but not totally, lacking in homogeneity.

The Gini Index only evaluates the lack of homogeneity of *individual* regions. It often is useful to also evaluate the o*verall* lack of homogeneity of a *group* of regions (e.g., the pair of new regions created by splitting a region). This measure is provided by the *Overall Gini Index.*

> The **Overall Gini Index** measures the *overall lack of homogeneity* of a *group* of regions. Its values range from 0 (all of the regions are completely homogeneous) to 0.5 (all of the regions are completely lacking in homogeneity).

overall Gini index

An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a group of regions when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes.

The overall Gini Index for any group of regions is calculated as the weighted average of the Gini Index for each of the regions in the group, where the weighting is based on how many historical records fall into each region. For example, consider the pair of regions shown in Figure 3.14 for the case study. With the dividing line set at a household income of $89 thousand, 4 historical records are in the region on the left side and the other 12 historical records are in the region on the right side. Therefore, using the Gini Index for each of the two regions calculated above, the overall Gini Index for the pair of regions in Figure 3.6 is

$$\text{Overall Gini Index (two regions in Figure 3.14)} = \left(\frac{4}{16}\right)(0) + \left(\frac{12}{16}\right)(0.44) = 0.33.$$

We now are in a position to say why the split in Figure 3.14 actually is the best possible initial split.

The Selection Rule for Each New Split: The region that is selected next for a split into two new regions during the splitting step of the classification tree algorithm should be the one that *maximizes the improvement in the overall homogeneity.*

Here is how to select the next split of a region into two new regions.

The improvement in the overall homogeneity by doing the split shown in Figure 3.14 is

$$\text{Gini Index (before any splitting)} - \text{Overall Gini Index (two new regions in Figure 3.14)}$$
$$= 0.5 - 0.33 = 0.17.$$

To guide each next step (a further splitting) of this process, the classification tree algorithm makes full use of the Gini Index for each region and the Overall Gini Index for the pair of new regions generated by a split. For the first step for the case study that led to the split shown in Figure 3.14, the algorithm considers each of the possible splits from adding either one vertical line or one horizontal line. There are 16 data points in this figure's scatter plot and there is no repeating of the data values along either axis. Therefore, moving from left to right on the scatter plot, there are 15 candidates for a vertical dividing line (when using the midpoint between adjacent values of household incomes). In a similar way, when moving from the bottom to the top of the scatter plot, there are 15 candidates for a horizontal dividing line (when using the midpoint between adjacent values of peak sun hours).

page 108

To select the first split, the classification tree algorithm considers all 30 candidates for a dividing line and then chooses the one that leads to the smallest overall Gini Index (and therefore the most homogenous regions). For the data represented in Figure 3.14 (which comes from Table 3.1), the dividing line that *maximizes the improvement in the overall homogeneity* is indeed the one shown in Figure 3.14. Specifically, this line divides the household income at $89 thousand (the midpoint between household 7's income of $80 thousand and household 2's income of $98 thousand).

Dividing the data at a household income of $89 thousand maximizes the improvement in the overall homogeneity of the regions.

Following this split, the classification tree algorithm would continue on to select additional splits that maximize the improvement in the overall homogeneity. We will continue that story, but first let us pause here to introduce classification trees, the other approach for performing and recording the splitting step.

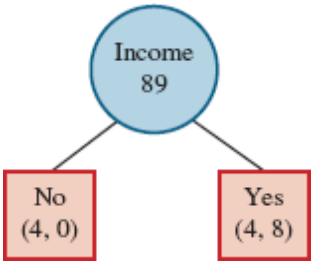
Classification Trees

Using a scatter plot to illustrate the process of forming regions is useful for building intuition about what is happening. However, in practice, a *classification tree* is more commonly used instead to do this work. The overall process, including all of the calculations, remains just the same, but a classification tree is more versatile and more amenable to execution on a computer than using a scatter plot.

What does a classification tree look like? Figure 3.15 shows the classification tree after the initial split of the case study where the households have been divided into those with incomes less than or equal to $89 thousand and those with incomes greater than $89 thousand.

FIGURE 3.15

The initial classification tree for the case study after a single split at an Income of $89 thousand, where smaller values go to the left branch and larger values go to the right branch.



This figure actually is conveying a considerable amount of information in a compact space, but first we need to explain how to "read" a classification tree. There are two kinds of nodes in a classification tree. A **circular node** represents a split based upon a

dividing line for one predictor variable. The word “Income” in the circular node in Figure 3.15 indicates that annual household income is the type of data that is being considered for this split. The number 89 in this node indicates that the split is occurring at $89 thousand. Those historical records with income values less than or equal to the dividing line ($89 thousand) will be split into the left branch, while those historical records with income values greater than the dividing line will be split into the right branch.

circular node

A node in a classification tree or a regression tree that represents a decision to split a region into new regions.

Square nodes each represent a region that has not been split further. The pair of numbers in parentheses within each square node indicate the number of historical records in that region that (1) had outcome 1 (declined solar) and (2) had outcome 2 (installed solar). These numbers indicate the following:

square node

A node in a classification tree or regression tree that represents a region of historical records.

For the historical records with income ≤ $89 thousand, four declined solar and zero had solar installed.

For the historical records with income > $89 thousand, four declined solar and eight had solar installed.

Finally, the square node on the left includes a “No” and the square node on the right includes a “Yes.” These words define the two classes of outcomes regarding whether the predictor record will have solar installed. Therefore, if the splitting process were to end now and the new sales lead (the predictor record) were to be matched with the region corresponding to one of these nodes, the predictor record would be classified as belonging to that class. The conclusion would

be that the predictor record is likely to have the outcome defined by that class.

The “No” or “Yes” in the square nodes in Figure 3.15 indicate the current prediction that the sales lead is likely to have the outcome associated with the matching node.

However, it would be very premature at this point to terminate the splitting process. We haven’t even considered peak sun hours yet. Furthermore, if the new sales lead (the predictor record) fits the region on the right, it can’t be very reassuring to predict that the predictor record is “likely to install solar” when fully one third of the historical records in that region declined solar. In addition, recall that the overall Gini Index for the current pair of regions was calculated to be 0.33. We would want this number to be much closer to 0 to achieve a reasonably high level of homogeneity for each of the regions.

Let us continue the splitting process. We’ll start with the intuitive scatter plot approach again and then will return to constructing the complete classification tree.

Further Splitting of the Data Set

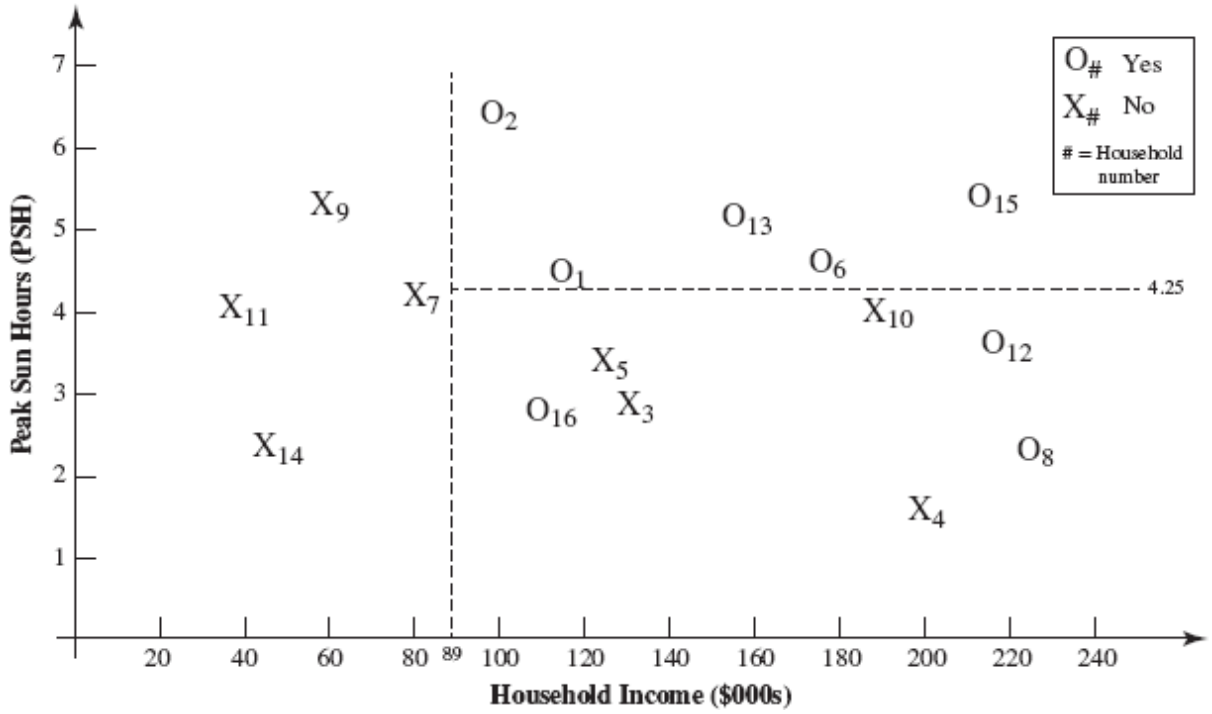
The scatter plot in Figure 3.14 can be further split by splitting a current region into two new regions. There is no point in splitting the region on the left any further, as it is already completely homogenous. However, we can further split the region on the right just as before by inserting another dividing line that can be either vertical (again) or horizontal.

The historical records can be further split by splitting a current region into two new regions.

For example, Figure 3.16 shows the region to the right of the initial dividing line of a household income of $89 thousand after this region has been further split into two new regions by using a horizontal dividing line set at a peak sun hour value of 4.25. The general goal of the new split is the same as for the initial split: make the two new regions as homogenous as possible.

FIGURE 3.16

The second split of the data, splitting the right region (household income > $89 thousand) into two new regions—those with peak sun hours ≤ 4.25 and those with peak sun hours > 4.25—for the case study.

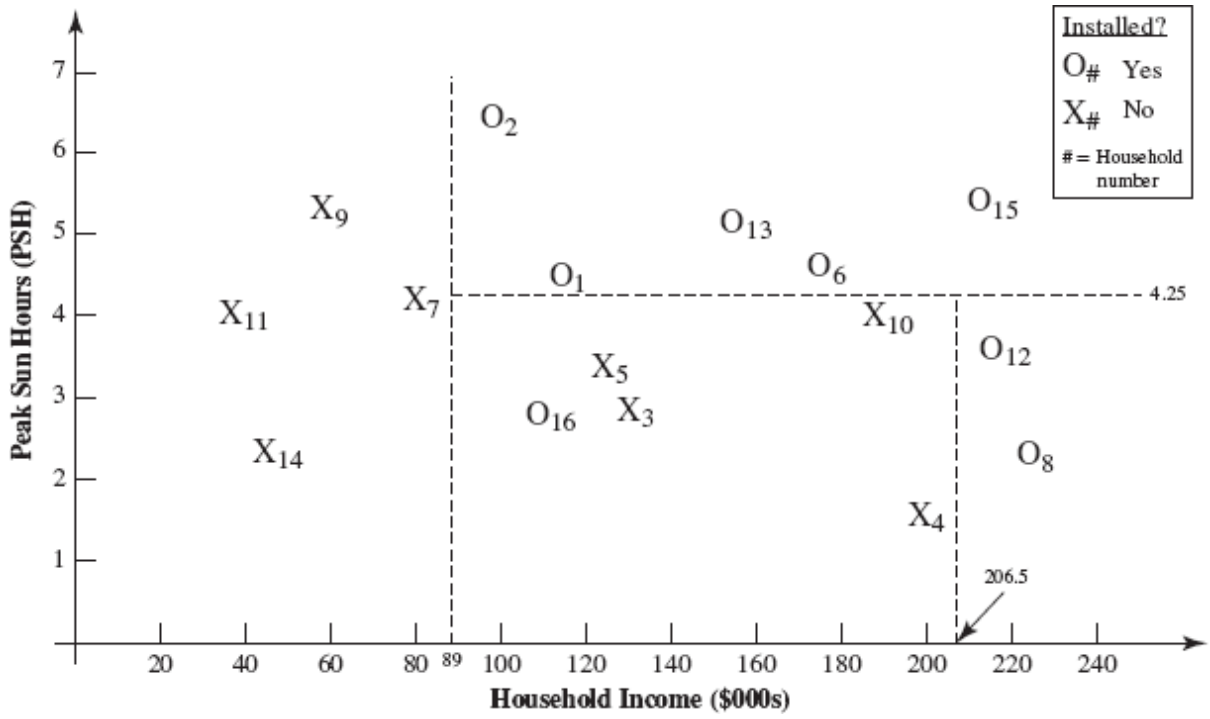


In fact, the classification trees algorithm chooses this particular split because it maximizes the improvement in the overall homogeneity of the regions. We already have a perfectly homogeneous region on the left and now the new region on the upper right also is perfectly homogenous (all five households installed solar). However, the new region on the lower right is far from homogeneous (three households installed solar and four did not). What should we do next?

Since the region in the lower right-hand portion of Figure 3.16 is the only one that is not homogeneous, the next step for the classification tree algorithm is to split this region into two new regions. This leads to the third split of the data shown in Figure 3.17, where a vertical dividing line has been inserted at household income = $206.5 thousand.

FIGURE 3.17

The third split of the data, splitting the lower right region in Figure 3.16 (household income > $89 thousand and peak sun hours ≤ 4.25) into two new regions—those with household income ≤ $206.5 thousand and those with household income > $206.5 thousand—for the case study.



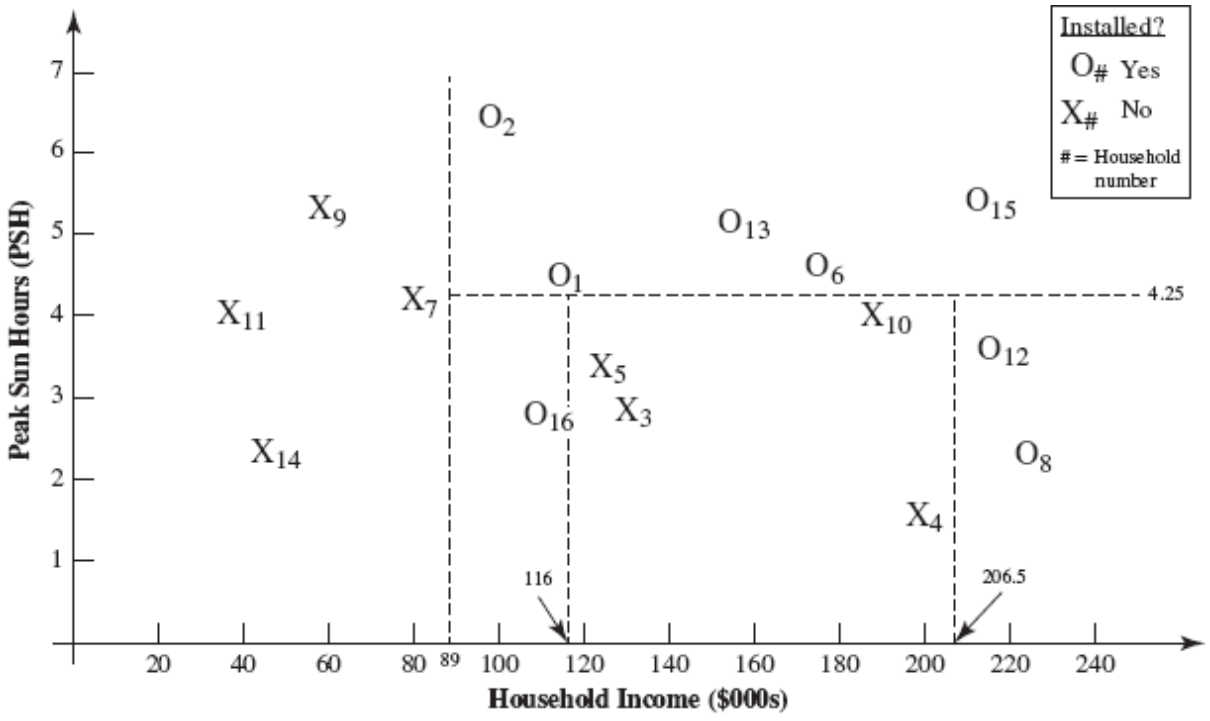
This third split looks very promising. One of the two new regions (the one on the lower far-right) is completely homogeneous. Along with the two original regions, this means that three of the four regions now are completely homogeneous. The only one that is not is the other new region. However, even this region is close since it has only one record that chose to proceed with solar while all of the other four historical records declined solar.

It is possible to have *every* region completely homogeneous by having just one more split that inserts a vertical dividing line at household income = $116 thousand for the one region that wasn't completely homogeneous. Figure 3.18 shows the end result where

every region now is perfectly homogenous. But is this what we should really want?

FIGURE 3.18

The full splitting of the data so that each region is completely homogenous for the case study.



Avoid Overfitting the Data

Jennifer has been pleased with what the splitting step of the classification algorithm had been doing. However, she is concerned by the final split in Figure 3.18 that resulted from inserting a vertical dividing line at a household income of 116. This suggests that households making *less* income (89 < income ≤ 116) are likely to install solar, but those making somewhat *more* income (116 < income ≤ 206.5) are not. This does not make sense to Jennifer. Her instincts tell her that customers with more income will generally be more inclined to install solar, not less.

This issue reveals a danger with continuing the splitting after it has already obtained an excellent set of regions. It may be

overfitting the data. Continuing the splitting continues to increase the number of regions, which means that the average number of historical records per region continues to decrease. For example, the fourth split for the case study shown in Figure 3.18 resulted in household 16 being the only record in its region. Remember that there typically is significant *randomness* in the outcomes for individual historical records. By making a classification based on such a small amount of data, you may be fitting to the noise (the randomness) in the data while ignoring intuitive information about the more typical outcomes of historical records in the various areas of a scatter plot. This is analogous to using $k = 1$ (generally an undesirably small value of k) for the k-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm. As described in the preceding section, it is better to have more data to help smooth out the impact of noise in the data.

page 111

Typically, as the splitting continues, its performance will improve initially as the splitting of the data account for increasingly homogeneous regions. Then the performance will reach a peak and start getting worse due to overfitting the data as fewer and fewer historical records are included within each region.

Continuing the splitting too long can lead to overfitting the data.

Therefore, it is generally a good idea to have a **stopping rule** for the splitting part of the classification tree algorithm before it starts overfitting the data. For example, one popular stopping rule is to impose a lower bound on the number of historical records in a region, so a splitting would be prohibited if it would create a new region with too few historical records.

stopping rule

A rule for terminating an algorithm before it starts overfitting the data.

If there is enough data to partition the data set, another approach to avoid overfitting is to *prune* some of the branches from the classification tree. This idea will be explored in Section 3.5.

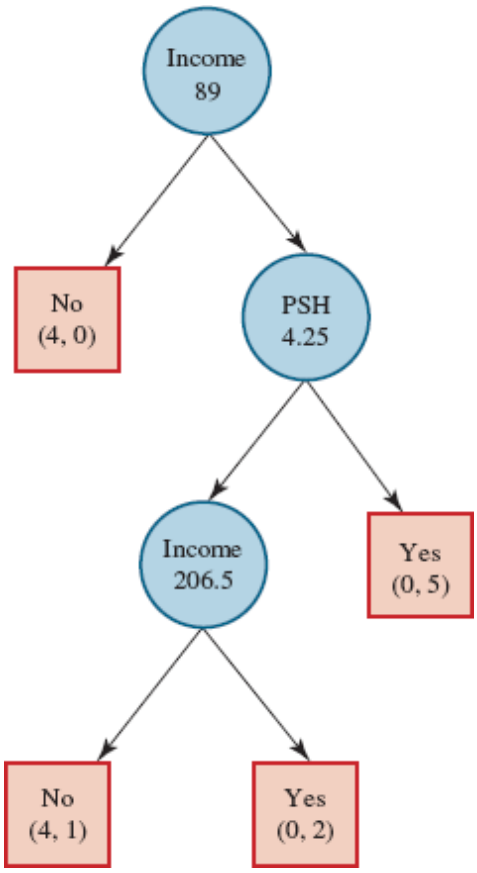
The Final Classification Tree for the Case Study

For Evergreen Solar, there is a very limited amount of data (just the data for 16 historical records). But Jennifer feels that a region shouldn't be split into new smaller regions if this results in a region with only a single historical record (which could very well be an outlier). Therefore, she will use this *stopping rule* in the algorithm. The final split shown in Figure 3.18 (based on the household income dividing line of 116) is not allowed since it would result in a region with only a single historical record.

When including this stopping rule, the application of the classification tree algorithm yields the final classification tree in Figure 3.19. The scatter charts in Figures 3.14, 3.16, and 3.17 vividly display the sequence of splits that led to the final set of regions while using the classification tree algorithm with the stopping rule mentioned above. The classification tree in Figure 3.19 also provides this same information, but does so much more succinctly.

FIGURE 3.19

The final classification tree for the case study, where splits are not allowed if they result in a region with only a single record.



Executing the Matching Step

Once the final classification tree has been completed (such as the one in Figure 3.19 for the case study), it now becomes easy to execute the matching step for both the current predictor record and a succession of future predictor records as they arise (until it is time to update the classification tree again). As specified at the beginning of this section, the matching step consists of matching the current predictor record with the region whose predictor variables are most similar to those of the predictor record. This only requires moving down the classification tree one level at a time, moving either to the left (if the current data value for the predictor record is less-than-or-equal to the data value specified in the circular node) or to the right otherwise, and then stopping when a terminal square node is reached.

page 112

When applying this procedure to the case study and its current new sales lead (which has a household income of $115,000 and a

rooftop that has 3.0 peak sun hours), the relevant classification tree is the one shown in Figure 3.19. Comparing the data for this new sales lead to the corresponding data specified in the circular nodes, the path down the tree goes first to the right (since 115 > 89), then to the left (since 3.0 ≤ 4.25), and then to the left again (since 115 ≤ 206.5) to reach the square node on the left at the bottom of the tree. Based on these three inequalities, this square node represents the region that best fits the new sales lead.

Executing the Classification Step

The classification step of the classification tree algorithm is quite straightforward. Once the current predictor record has been matched with a particular region (as described in the preceding subsection), the outcomes for the historical records in this region would be used to classify the predictor record. The classification tree algorithm already has displayed the information needed to do this for each of the final regions and recorded the prediction for that region in its square node. (For the case study, see the “yes” or “no” in each square node for the classification tree in Figure 3.19, where “yes” indicates a prediction that the predictor record is “likely to go ahead and have solar installed,” whereas “no” indicates a “likely to decline solar” prediction.)

Focusing now on the region that the predictor record matches, the next step is to look at the outcomes for the historical records in that region. If the outcomes differ, the outcome for the *majority* of the historical records would be used for the prediction for the predictor record. (For more complicated problems where there are more than two possible outcomes, the most common of the outcomes for the historical records normally would be used for the prediction.) If it is a close call, this can be reflected in the statement of the prediction by only saying that the outcome for the predictor record is “fairly likely” instead of “likely” to be “such and such.” The statement might also say that there is a “significant chance that the outcome for the predictor record could be ‘such and such’ instead.” Including this latter statement, and perhaps even giving estimated probabilities of other incomes, is especially important when dealing with the

possibility of particularly undesirable outcomes. For example, if a bank is considering making a loan to a customer (like the First Bank case study of Chapter 2), there needs to be a major focus on making sure that the estimated probability of default is below some small cutoff.

For the case study, the current new sales lead (the predictor record) has been matched with the region in the lower left corner of the classification tree in Figure 3.19. The (4, 1) recorded in that node indicates that the corresponding region has four historical records with outcome 1 (decline solar) and one record with outcome 2 (going ahead with having solar installed). Therefore, based on using the majority outcome, the *prediction* for this sales lead is that it likely will end up declining solar. This is indicated by the "No" in the corresponding square node in Figure 3.19.

Jennifer is pleased with the classification tree shown in Figure 3.19. As just illustrated by the current new sales lead, it leads to a very straightforward rule for classifying future sales leads as well. She has decided to pursue a new sales lead only if the prediction is that the sales lead is likely to move ahead to have solar installed. Therefore, she now knows by "reading" the classification tree that she should not pursue any lead where the household income is less than $89,000. If the household income exceeds this limit, she still should pursue the lead if the peak sun hours is > 4.25, and otherwise only pursue the lead if the household income is very high (> $206,500).

Making Numerical Predictions with Regression Trees

We have assumed so far that the outcome for each record can be described verbally (e.g., had solar installed or declined solar for the case study). For example, the outcomes for the case study are *yes-or-no outcomes* (as discussed in the preceding section) because it indicates whether solar will be installed—yes or no. page 113 Suppose now that the outcome is measured instead by a **numerical outcome variable.** For the case study, this already was

considered briefly near the end of the preceding section (see Table 3.2 and the accompanying discussion) when the outcome was measured by the *net profit* from each of these 16 historical customers. This measure had the advantage of still incorporating the effect of the customer's decision on whether to have solar installed or not, while it also incorporated other cost considerations.

numerical output variable

The variable that expresses a numerical outcome.

We have just seen the fundamental role that a classification tree can play for making predictions about the outcome of a predictor record when the possible outcomes can be described verbally. When the goal is to predict a *numerical* outcome (such as the net profit), a **regression tree** (a close variant of a classification tree) is used instead.

Regression trees can be used to predict the value of a numerical outcome.

The **regression tree algorithm** is very similar to the classification tree algorithm. The goal of the splitting step still is to create a set of regions such that the historical records within each region are as homogenous as possible. Just like with classification trees, this is done by choosing a dividing line for a single type of data at a time. The splitting is repeated several times, each time splitting a region into new relatively homogeneous regions.

regression tree algorithm

An algorithm that uses a regression tree to perform predictive analytics when dealing with numerical outcomes.

The regression tree algorithm diverges from the classification trees algorithm in just two ways: (1) how homogeneity is measured and (2) how the final prediction is made. For classification trees, where outcomes are described with words instead of numbers, homogeneity is measured by the Gini Index. For regression trees, where outcomes are expressed by the numerical values of the output

variable, the process of measuring the homogeneity of a region begins by calculating the *mean* of these output variable values of the outcomes for the historical records in that region. The homogeneity of the region then is calculated as follows:

The regression tree algorithm differs from the classification trees algorithm only in how it measures homogeneity and how the final prediction is made.

The regression tree algorithm typically measures the *lack of homogeneity of a region* by calculating the *Regression Index.* After calculating *the mean* of the output variable values of the outcomes for the historical records in that region, the **Regression Index** is the sum of the square of the deviations of these output variable values from this mean.

regression index

An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a region when dealing with numerical outcomes.

To illustrate the Regression Index, consider again Table 3.2 in the preceding section which shows the net profit (the output variable) for each of the 16 historical records for the case study. Seven of these historical records are in the lower, right-hand region in Figure 3.16. Table 3.2 indicates that the net profits in thousands of dollars for these seven historical records are 8.68, −0.42, −0.65, −0.67, −0.54, 16.69, and 9.83. The *mean* of these seven net profits is 4.70. Therefore, the Regression Index for this region is

$$\text{Regression Index (income} > 89, \text{PSH} \leq 4.25) = (8.68 - 4.70)^2 + (-0.42 - 4.70)^2 + \ldots + (9.83 - 4.70)^2 = 294.7.$$

This very large number relative to the individual net profits indicates a strong lack of homogeneity for this region.

However, splitting this region into two new regions, as shown in Figure 3.17, hopefully would substantially improve the overall

homogeneity. The new region on the left has five historical records with a mean net profit of 1.28 and the new region on the right has two historical records with a mean net profit of 13.26. Calculating the Regression Index as illustrated above for each of these new regions yields

Regression Index (89 < income ≤ 206.5, PSH ≤ 4.25) = 68.5
Regression Index (income > 206.5, FSH ≤ 4.25) = 23.5

These numbers suggest a substantial improvement in the overall homogeneity, but how do we measure this? This is what the *Overall Regression Index* provides.

When dealing with numerical outcomes, the **Overall Regression Index** measures the *lack of homogeneity of a group of regions,* such as the two new regions obtained by splitting a current region.

overall regression index
An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a group of regions when dealing with numerical outcomes.

The Overall Regression Index is calculated in just the same way as for the Overall Gini Index, namely, by calculating the *weighted average* of the individual regions, where the weighting is based on the number of historical records in each of the new regions. Thus, for the splitting of the lower, right-hand region shown in Figure 3.16 into the two new regions shown in Figure 3.17, the calculation is

$$\text{Overall Regression Index (two new regions in Figure 3.17)} = \left(\frac{5}{7}\right)(68.5) + \left(\frac{2}{7}\right)(23.5) = 55.6,$$

which provides a very substantial reduction from the Regression Index of 295 for the original region before it was split. In particular, the

improvement from choosing the region in the lower, right-hand portion of Figure 3.16 as the one to split is

$$\text{Improvement in Homogeneity} = 294.7 - 55.6 = 239.1.$$

Since the regression tree algorithm chooses the next region to split as the one that will yield the greatest improvement in homogeneity, it turns out that this particular region will be chosen because no other split will do as well.

We now can summarize the splitting step for the regression tree algorithm by specifying the one change from the classification tree algorithm described earlier in this section.

> **The Key Change in the Splitting Step:** The splitting step for the regression tree algorithm is identical to the splitting step for the classification tree algorithm *except* that when measuring the *lack of homogeneity* of a region or a group of regions, the Regression Index replaces the Gini Index and the Overall Regression Index replaces the Overall Gini Index.

Therefore, at each iteration, the algorithm looks at all of the possible ways of performing another split of a region and then uses the above key change in the splitting step to choose the split that causes the greatest improvement in homogeneity by creating the two new regions.

Once the splitting step has been completed, the *match step* proceeds in the usual way. In particular, the predictor record is matched with a particular region when the predictor variables for the predictor record fits inside the boundary of that region.

The biggest change from the classification tree algorithm now comes in the final step, which now is called the *prediction step* because the algorithm now is predicting a numerical value instead of a classification of the outcome. Rather than predicting a type of behavior (e.g., decline solar or proceed to have solar installed), we

now need to make a prediction in terms of the numerical output variable (e.g., the expected net profit).

> **The Prediction Step:** The prediction normally is expressed as the *mean value* of the output variable for all of the historical records in the region designated by the match step.

Since the regression tree algorithm has so few differences from the classification tree algorithms, we will not pursue it further here. However, because a computer normally is used to execute both of these algorithms, we now will demonstrate how Analytic Solver does this.

Using Analytic Solver to Apply These Algorithms to the Case Study

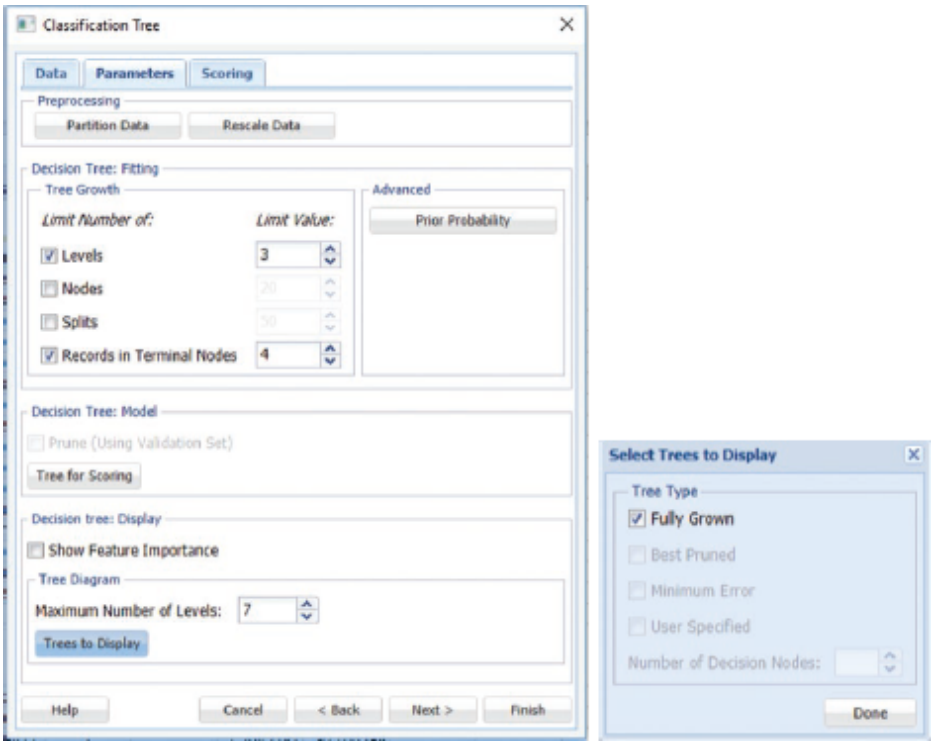
To apply the classification tree algorithm with Analytic Solver Data Mining, choose *Classification Tree* from the *Classify* menu on the Data Mining tab. This brings up basically the same dialog box for selecting the data as was shown in Figure 3.8 for the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm, and it is filled out in exactly the same way.

Clicking *Next* leads to the Parameters tab of the dialog box shown in Figure 3.20. Unlike the Data tab, the Parameters tab for classification trees differs significantly from the equivalent tab shown in Figure 3.9 for the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm. Options are included for limiting the tree growth to avoid overfitting. These options can limit the maximum number of levels of the tree, the maximum number of nodes, the maximum number of "splits" (regions being split), and/or the minimum number of historical records needed to allow splitting a terminal node. Figure 3.20 uses the options where splitting is not allowed after level 3 or if the number of historical records in a node is less than 4. To display the final classification tree, the *Trees to Display* button is selected, which pops up the dialog box

shown to the right of Figure 3.20 that selects the option of displaying a fully grown tree.

FIGURE 3.20

The Parameters tab of the classification tree algorithm in Analytic Solver Data Mining. Tree growth is limited to three levels and the minimum number of historical records required to allow splitting a node is set equal to four.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The scoring and new data tabs are then filled out in the same way that they were for the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm in Figures 3.10 and 3.11, respectively. Clicking *Finish* then runs the classification tree algorithm and creates several new tabs in the workbook to display the results. Figure 3.21 shows all the Analytic Solver settings and the full classification tree that can be used to classify predictor records (new sales leads). (Depending on which version of Analytic Solver you are using, it may instead show only a table listing the nodes, parents and children; selecting the table and clicking on the Chart button on the

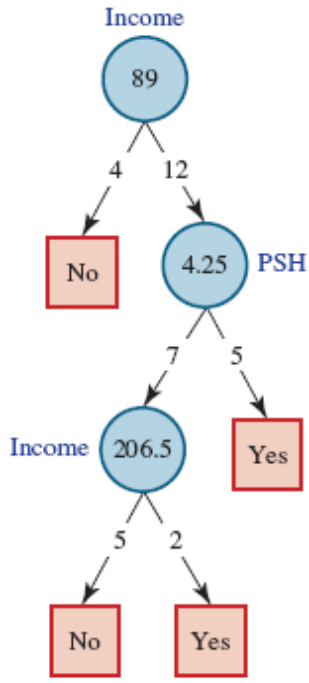
Data Mining tab will then yield the classification tree shown in Figure 3.21.)

FIGURE 3.21

The settings (top left), classification tree (right), and predictions (bottom left) made for Evergreen Solar's five predictor records (new sales leads) by the Classification Tree algorithm of Analytic Solver.

Analytic Solver Settings

Classification Tree
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Install?*
Success Class: Yes
Success Probability Cutoff: 0.5
Partition Data: No
Re-Scale Data: No
Number of Levels: 3
Records in Terminal Node: 4
Display: Fully Grown Tree
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24



Record ID	Prediction: Install?	PostProb: No	PostProb: Yes
Record 1	No	0.8	0.2
Record 2	Yes	0	1
Record 3	Yes	0	1
Record 4	No	1	0
Record 5	No	0.8	0.2

The table shown on the bottom left of Figure 3.21 provides the prediction for each of the five predictor records (new sales leads) based on the classification tree. Predictor records 2 and 3 are classified as likely to have solar installed, while predictor records 1, 4, and 5 are classified as likely to decline solar. Just as with the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm (as shown in Figure 3.12), a posterior probability for each predictor record is provided, as determined by the proportion of the historical records in the final node that fell into the predicted class. Predictor records 2, 3 and 4 received a classification that was based on a unanimous result (all historical

page 115

records in the final node were in the same class), while for predictor records 1 and 5, the classification was made based on a 4-1 majority.

It is interesting to compare the classifications in Figure 3.12 (based on the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm) with the classifications in Figure 3.21 (based on the classification tree algorithm). The algorithms agree for four out of the five predictor records, but disagree on predictor record 4, with the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm classifying it as likely to have solar installed while the classification tree algorithm classifies it as likely to decline solar instead.

Using Analytic Solver Data Mining to Apply the Regression Tree Algorithm

To make predictions of a numerical outcome (e.g., net profit), regression trees can be used in much the same way as classification trees. Now Jennifer would like to use the regression tree algorithm to predict the net profit that would be earned on new sales leads (predictor records) if they were to be pursued. To do so, choose *Regression Tree* from the *Predict* menu on the Data Mining tab. This brings up a dialog box much like in Figure 3.8. The same data is entered, except now the output variable would be *Profit* instead of *Install?.* The following tabs of the dialog box (as shown in Figures 3.10, 3.11, 3.20) are then filled out in the same way as before. Clicking *Finish* then runs the regression tree algorithm. All of the Analytic Solver settings and the resulting regression tree are shown in Figure 3.22. (Again, depending on which version of Analytic Solver you are using, it may instead show only a table listing the nodes, parents and children; selecting the table and clicking on the Chart button will then yield the tree shown in Figure 3.22.)

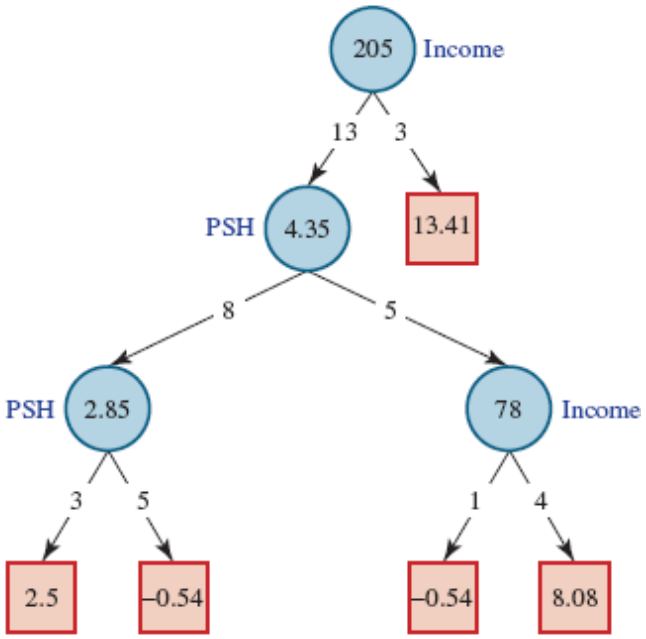
FIGURE 3.22

The settings (top left), regression tree (right), and predictions (bottom left) made for Evergreen Solar's five predictor records (new sales leads) by the Regression Tree algorithm of Analytic Solver.

Analytic Solver Settings

Regression Tree
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Profit*
Partition Data: No
Re-Scale Data: No
Number of Levels: 3
Records in Terminal Node: 4
Display: Fully Grown Tree
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

Record ID	Prediction: Profit
Record 1	–0.544
Record 2	8.0775
Record 3	13.41333333
Record 4	–0.54
Record 5	–0.544



Analytic Solver also creates a table that predicts the net profit that would be earned for each of the five predictor records, as shown on the bottom left of Figure 3.22. Again, it is interesting to compare the predictions in Figure 3.13 (based on the *k*-nearest-neighbors algorithm) with the predictions in Figure 3.22 (based on the regression tree algorithm). The predictions are fairly similar for predictor records 2, 3, and 5, but differ somewhat for predictor records 1 and 4.

Pros and Cons of Classification Tree and Regression Tree Algorithms

An appealing property of either the classification tree or the regression tree algorithms is that it is easy to interpret visually. In addition, once the tree has been constructed, there is no need to make additional calculations for each new predictor record. (This is in contrast to the *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm where calculations are needed to find the nearest neighbors for each new predictor record.) Instead, given the predictor variables for a new predictor record, it is trivial to drop the predictor record down the tree

and immediately match the record to a region in order to determine its classification or prediction.

A classification tree or regression tree is easy to understand and makes it simple to classify a new predictor record.

Another advantage of classification and regression tree algorithms is that they don't assume any particular relationship between the data for a predictor record and its outcome. For example, *linear regression* (first introduced in Section 1.4 and covered more fully in Sections 3.4 and 4.5) assumes a linear relationship between its data and its output, whereas a classification tree or regression tree can allow for a more complicated relationship.

However, there are some challenges and issues associated with classification tree and regression tree algorithms. First, they require a significant amount of computational work to create the tree and then this work will need to be repeated occasionally before the tree becomes outdated. (Fortunately, software is readily available for doing this work, as demonstrated above with Analytic Solver.) Second, they can be very sensitive to the particular data. A small change in the data can lead to a very different tree. Third, they also require a fair amount of data to operate effectively. Finally, it can be a challenge to avoid overfitting the data.

Review *Questions*

. What is the rule that the classification tree algorithm uses when selecting the next region to split into new smaller regions?

. What do the Gini Index and the Overall Gini Index measure?

. What is the danger of continuing the splitting step portion of the classification tree algorithm too long?

. What is the new kind of outcome that requires switching from the classification tree algorithm to the regression tree algorithm?

. What do the Regression Index and the Overall Regression Index measure?

. How is the regression tree algorithm different from the classification tree algorithm?

. Compared to the KNN algorithm, what is the main advantage of the classification tree or regression tree algorithms?

. Compared to the KNN algorithm, what is a disadvantage of the classification tree or regression tree algorithms?

3.4 OTHER MODELS BASED ON ALGORITHMS FOR CLASSIFICATION AND PREDICTION

This chapter focuses on both classification and prediction models for predictive analytics. Recall that classification models deal with classes of outcomes (e.g., yes-or-no outcomes) and so make *classifications* about which *class* is likely to occur. By contrast, prediction models deal with numerical values of some measure of performance (e.g., net profit) and so make *predictions* about what this numerical value will be. Both types of models use some algorithm for making the calculations needed to draw their conclusion.

You now have seen two popular types of algorithms in the two preceding sections. Section 3.2 presented the *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm, which provides an intuitive way of quickly performing predictive analytics for a single predictor record. This algorithm can be adapted to either classification or prediction. The models described in Section 3.3 are well suited for performing predictive analytics for a series of predictor records. These models are based on the classification tree algorithm for yes-or-no outcomes (or at least discrete outcomes) and the regression tree algorithm for numerical outcome variables.

We now will introduce three other popular models that can be used for either classification or prediction (or both).

The Naïve Bayes Algorithm

The **naïve Bayes algorithm** (hereafter referred to as simply *naïve Bayes*) is named for the Reverend Thomas Bayes because of its use of the well-known "Bayes theorem." (Reverend Bayes was a nonconforming 18th century English minister who won renown as a philosopher and mathematician. He also made a fundamental contribution to decision analysis, the subject of Chapter 12.)

This algorithm focuses mainly on classification and then ends with an innovative prediction step that expresses the prediction as a probability. However, it is quite different from the algorithms considered in Sections 3.2 and 3.3. A key difference is that all of the predictor variables are required to be categorical. A **categorical variable** is one that can take on only a limited set of values or categories. Examples would include gender (male or female), homeowner (yes or no), blood type (A, B, AB, O), or hair color (blonde, red, brown, black).

categorical variable

A variable that can take on only a limited set of values or categories.

A numerical predictor variable can be used with naïve Bayes if it is first converted into a categorical variable by **binning,** whereby numerical values are categorized into "bins" (e.g., low, medium, high). For the Evergreen Solar case study introduced in Section 3.1, the two predictor variables (annual household income and the peak sun hours on the household's rooftop) are both numerical. page 118 These could each be turned into categorical variables by binning the numerical values into a set of categories. For example, we could bin household incomes as follows:

binning

Converting a numerical predictor variable into a categorical variable whereby numerical values are categorized into bins that define a range of values.

Low Income:	Household Income < $60,000,
Medium Income:	$60,000 ≤ Household Income < $160,000,
High Income:	Household Income ≥ $160,000.

Similarly, we could bin peak sun hours as follows

Low PSH:	PSH < 2.5,
Medium PSH:	2.5 ≤ PSH < 5.0,
High PSH:	PSH ≥ 5.0.

Binning the numerical data from Table 3.1 leads to the categorical data shown in Table 3.3.

TABLE 3.3

Household income (binned into high, medium, low), peak sun hours (binned into high, medium, low), and solar installed data for all 16 prior households for the Evergreen Solar case study

Household Number	Annual Household Income	Peak Sun Hours	Solar Installed?
1	Medium	Medium	Yes
2	Medium	High	Yes
3	Medium	Medium	No
4	High	Low	No
5	Medium	Medium	No
6	High	Medium	Yes

Household Number	Annual Household Income	Peak Sun Hours	Solar Installed?
7	Medium	Medium	No
8	High	Low	Yes
9	Low	High	No
10	High	Medium	No
11	Low	Medium	No
12	High	Medium	Yes
13	Medium	High	Yes
14	Low	Medium	No
15	High	High	Yes
16	Medium	Medium	Yes

Applying predictive analytics when dealing with *categorical* predictor variables instead of numerical predictor variables does create new challenges. Proceeding in the usual way (*complete Bayes* below) can work fine on very small problems like the case study. However, it has a *major flaw,* namely, the approach can quickly fall apart for problems with a larger number of predictor variables and/or categories. Therefore, a different method (*naïve Bayes*) is needed for calculating the estimated probability that the predictor record will have the desired outcome.

Before detailing how naïve Bayes works, it is helpful to first describe how the **complete Bayes classification algorithm** works. (We will refer to this algorithm hereafter as simply *complete Bayes.*) We then detail the *major flaw* in this approach (at least for problems with more than a few predictor variables and categories). Next, we describe an alternative approach for doing complete Bayes that utilizes *Bayes theorem* (a famous theorem in the field of Statistics). This alternative approach does not fix the major flaw. However, it

does lead directly to *naïve Bayes* that uses an approximation to largely avoid the major flaw. The four subsubsections below present this story.

complete Bayes classification algorithm

An extension of the naïve Bayes algorithm that uses historical records whose values of their predictor variables are a perfect match for the predictor record.

Complete Bayes (Direct Method)

Given a set of historical records, there is a direct method to implement complete Bayes that is very straightforward. To classify a new predictor record, find all historical records in the data set whose predictor variables have categorical values that are a *perfect match* for the predictor variables in the predictor record. This set of historical records whose categorical values for the predictor variables perfectly match the corresponding categorical values for the predictor record is called the **matching set.** In the matching set, determine which outcome is most prevalent. We then predict that the new predictor record also is likely to have this same outcome.

page 119

matching set

The set of historical records whose categorical values for the predictor variables perfectly match the corresponding categorical values for the predictor record. (Section 3.4)

Similarly, we can also estimate the probability of an outcome based on the proportion of the historical records in the matching set that have this outcome. Let the possible *outcomes* be denoted by Y_1, Y_2, . . . , Y_m and let the vector $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_p)$ be the set of *predictor variables* for the *predictor record.* (Keep in mind that both outcomes and predictor variables now are *categorical* variables with only a limited number of values or categories.) The probability of the desired outcome, say Y_1, *given* a set of predictor variable values $\mathbf{x}$ is denoted by

$P(Y_1 | \mathbf{x})$ = conditional probability of outcome Y_1, given that the predictor variable values for the predictor record are given by the vector $\mathbf{x}$.

$P(Y_1 \mid \mathbf{x})$ is easily calculated as simply the proportion of records in the matching set that have outcome Y_1.

To demonstrate, consider the Evergreen Solar case study presented in Section 3.1. As described there and in subsequent sections, the owner (Jennifer) wants to classify a new sales lead with household income of $115 thousand and a rooftop with 3.0 peak sun hours. Using the binning described above, this sales lead (the predictor record) would fall into the medium category for both household income ($60,000–$160,000) and peak sun hours (2.5–5.0). To classify this predictor record, we first find all other households in the historical records that fall into these same categories (i.e., have *both* medium household income *and* medium peak sun hours). Referring to the data in Table 3.3, the matching set would be households 1, 3, 5, 7, and 16. Of the households in the matching set, households 1 and 16 had solar installed, whereas households 3, 5, and 7 did not. Since more households in the matching set did not have solar installed, we would predict that the predictor record is *not* likely to have solar installed. We can also estimate the probability that the new sales lead would have solar installed based upon the matching set. Since 2 out of 5 households had solar installed, the estimated probability that the new sales lead would have solar installed is 2/5 or 40 percent.

A Major Flaw with Complete Bayes

However, there is a major drawback with complete Bayes. It can only work if there are some historical records in the matching set. With just a couple predictor variables and very few categories for each, complete Bayes can work well. In this case, there typically will be historical records in the matching set on which to base the prediction. However, if there are significantly more predictor variables (which is quite common in practice) and/or more categories available for each

predictor variable, it can become fairly likely that there are *no* records in the matching set.

As one example, consider a problem of moderate size that has 16 predictor variables and 5 categories for each. There then would be 16^5 = 1,048,576 possible combinations of possible values for the predictor variables. Even with a fairly large data set of tens of thousands of historical records, it can be difficult to find *any* historical records that match the predictor record. Thus, it can become quite common that there will be no records in the matching set. This would cause the algorithm to break down, because there must be at least one historical record (and preferably considerably more than one) in the matching set on which to base the classification and prediction. This is just one example, but the same thing also can easily occur even with smaller numbers of predictor variables and categories.

Complete Bayes often breaks down unless there are only a small number of predictor variables and a small number of categories for each predictor variable.

Fortunately, naïve Bayes avoids this issue. However, naïve Bayes is built upon an alternative approach for performing complete Bayes that uses Bayes' Theorem. So, in order to describe naïve Bayes, we first will show this alternative approach for performing complete Bayes.

Complete Bayes (Using Bayes Theorem)

We have described a direct method for calculating the estimated probability of an outcome *given* a set of predictor variable values. The probability of the desired outcome Y_1 given a set of predictor variable values **x**, denoted by $P(Y_1 \mid \mathbf{x})$, is simply the proportion of records in the matching set that have outcome Y_1.

An alternative approach for determining $P(Y_1 \mid \mathbf{x})$ is to employ Bayes' theorem, which says that

$$P(Y_1|\mathbf{x}) = \frac{P(\mathbf{x}|Y_1)P(Y_1)}{\Sigma_i P(\mathbf{x}|Y_i)P(Y_i)}.$$

Thus, we can calculate $P(Y_1 \mid \mathbf{x})$ by first determining $P(\mathbf{x} \mid Y_i)$ and $P(Y_i)$ for $i=1, 2, \ldots, m$. Then, plugging into Bayes' theorem yields the desired result.

For example, in the case study, the predictor record is the new sales lead and its predictor variable values are medium income and medium PSH. The desirable outcome is that this sales lead will choose to have solar installed. Therefore, the left hand side of Bayes theorem is *P*(install solar | medium income & medium PSH). To calculate this probability, we need to start by determining *P*(medium income & medium PSH | install solar) and *P*(install solar). Multiplying these two quantities provides the numerator in Bayes theorem. The denominator consists of this same product plus the product of *P*(medium income & medium PSH | no solar), and *P*(no solar). All of these quantities are easily calculated based upon the historical data in Table 3.3 as follows:

Calculation	**Explanation**
P(medium income & medium PSH | install solar) = 0.25	2 of 8 households that installed solar had medium income and medium PSH
P(install solar) = 0.5	8 of 16 households installed solar
P(medium income & medium PSH | no solar) = 0.375	3 of 8 households with no solar install had medium income and medium PSH
P(no solar) = 0.5	8 of 16 households had no solar install

Then, plugging into Bayes' Formula,

$$
\begin{aligned}
&P(\text{install solar}|\text{medium income and medium PSH}) \\
&= \frac{P(\text{medium income \& medium PSH} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{install solar})}{\left(\begin{array}{c} P(\text{medium income \& medium PSH} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{install solar}) \\ + P(\text{medium income \& medium PSH} \mid \text{no solar}) \times P(\text{no solar}) \end{array}\right)} \\
&= \frac{(0.25)(0.5)}{(0.25)(0.5) + (0.375)(0.5)} \\
&= 0.4
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that this probability is the same 0.4 that was calculated using the direct method for complete Bayes presented earlier, based on the data in the matching set (two of the five historical records with both medium income and medium PSH installed solar). Either approach can be used and will always yield the same result. While this alternative approach is less straightforward, it is still sometimes used if, for example, data to estimate $P(\mathbf{x} \mid Y_i)$ and $P(Y_i)$ are more readily available than data to directly estimate $P(Y_i \mid \mathbf{x})$.

Unfortunately, this alternative approach for complete Bayes does not fix the major flaw described earlier. Regardless of whether the direct method or the Bayes' Theorem approach is used, there are still (potentially) *so many* possible combinations for **x** that there may not be any historical records that match the specific combination for the predictor record.

Naïve Bayes

To alleviate the problem that complete Bayes has with the (potentially) astronomical number of possible combinations of predictor values, naïve Bayes doesn't focus on the *combinations* of predictor variables. Rather it focuses on each *individual* predictor variable separately.

Recall that Bayes' Theorem says

$$P(Y_1|\mathbf{x}) = \frac{P(\mathbf{x}|Y_1)P(Y_1)}{\Sigma_i P(\mathbf{x}|Y_i)P(Y_i)}.$$

In contrast to complete Bayes, naïve Bayes does not directly calculate the probability of the particular *combination* of predictor

variable values, $P(\mathbf{x} \mid Y_i)$. It instead determines the probabilities for each *individual* predictor variable separately, $P(x_1 \mid Y_i)$, $P(x_2 \mid Y_i)$, . . . , and $P(x_p \mid Y_i)$.It then "naïvely" assumes that the combined probability is equal to the product of the individual probabilities,

Recall that Bayes' Theorem says

$$P(\mathbf{x} \mid Y_i) = P(x_1 \mid Y_i) \times P(x_2 \mid Y_i) \times \ldots \times P(x_p \mid Y_i).$$

For example, in the case study, if we want to know *P*(install solar | medium income and medium PSH), we can first determine *P*(medium income | install solar), *P*(medium PSH | install solar), page 121 *P*(install solar), *P*(medium income | no solar), *P*(medium PSH | no solar), and *P*(no solar). All of these are easily calculated based upon the historical data in Table 3.3 as follows:

Calculation	Explanation
P(medium income | install solar) = 0.5	4 of 8 households that installed solar had medium income
P(medium PSH | install solar) = 0.5	4 of 8 households that installed solar had medium PSH
P(install solar) = 0.5	8 of 16 households installed solar
P(medium income | no solar) = 0.375	3 of 8 households with no solar install had medium income
P(medium PSH | no solar) = 0.75	6 of 8 households with no solar install had medium PSH
P(no solar) = 0.5	8 of 16 households had no solar install

Then, plugging into Bayes' Formula,

$$P(\text{install solar} \mid \text{medium income \& medium PSH})$$

$$= \frac{P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{install solar})}{\left(\begin{array}{c} P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{install solar}) \\ + P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{no solar}) \times P(\text{medium income} \mid \text{install solar}) \times P(\text{no solar}) \end{array}\right)}$$

$$= \frac{(0.5)(0.5)(0.5)}{[(0.5)(0.5)](0.5] + [(0.375)(0.75)](0.5)}$$

$$= 0.471$$

The underlying assumption of naïve Bayes is that each of the *joint probabilities* considered above is equal to the product of the individual probabilities. This assumption holds exactly when the predictor variables are *independent* (i.e., when the likelihood that each individual predictor variable takes on any particular categorical value does *not* depend on the categorical values of the other predictor variables). However, any correlation between the variables violates the assumption

Even if the predictor variables are not independent, naïve Bayes can still perform well.

Completely independent predictor variables are uncommon in practice, so this assumption usually is violated to some extent. This means that the calculated probabilities will not be completely accurate. Nevertheless, the procedure can still work quite well. This is because we don't need to know the exact probabilities for each outcome to learn about either their relative values or which outcome is most likely. While using naïve Bayes typically leads to some error in the calculated probabilities of each outcome, the rank-ordering of the likelihood of the various outcomes is usually reasonably accurate.

Naïve Bayes can be performed using Analytic Solver by choosing Naïve Bayes from the *Classify* menu on the *Data Mining* tab and then applying the settings summarized in Figure 3.23.

FIGURE 3.23

The Analytic Solver settings (top) and results (bottom) of the *Naïve Bayes* algorithm when it is applied to the predictor records (new sales leads) for the Evergreen Solar case study.

Analytic Solver Settings
Naïve Bayes Classification
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Install?*
Success Class: Yes
Success Probability Cutoff: 0.5
Partition Data: No
Rescale Data: No
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

Classification:

Record ID	Prediction: Install?	PostProb: No	PostProb: No
Record 1	No	0.470588235	0.529411765
Record 2	Yes	0.857142857	0.142857143
Record 3	Yes	0.571428571	0.428571429
Record 4	Yes	0.8	0.2
Record 5	Yes	0.571428571	0.428571429

The end result of applying naïve Bayes for the new sales lead with household income of $115 thousand and a rooftop with 3.0 peak sun hours (Record 1 in Figure 3.23) is that it estimates the probability that this customer would have solar installed at 47.1 percent (the same probability as calculated by hand earlier). Since it is more likely that the customer would not have solar installed, the predictor record is classified as *not* likely to have solar installed. Notice that naïve Bayes makes the same prediction as complete Bayes, although with a slightly different estimated probability (47.1 percent compared to 40 percent for complete Bayes).

An advantage of naïve Bayes is that *all* of the data can be used to calculate the individual probabilities for each predictor variable. In comparison, complete Bayes ends up using *only* the data from the matching set (those historical records that exactly match the predictor record for *every* predictor variable) to make the prediction. Unfortunately, the matching set may be very small or even empty. However, a disadvantage of naïve Bayes is that the calculated probabilities with naïve Bayes will be somewhat inaccurate if the predictor variables are not independent. This disadvantage makes

naïve Bayes not so useful for estimating the probability of an outcome. However, as discussed earlier, naïve Bayes can nevertheless still be quite accurate for classification since the rank-ordering of the outcomes is usually reasonably accurate. Another potential disadvantage of naïve Bayes occurs if the predictor record contains a predictor variable value that has not occurred in any of the historical records, since then the result would be an estimated probability of zero for the outcome under consideration.

Multiple Linear Regression

Multiple linear regression is a popular method for predicting a numerical outcome that is assumed to be proportional to each of the predictor variable values. In other words, the goal is to try to determine the relationship between a numerical outcome variable (say y) and each of the predictor variables (say x_1, x_2, . . . , x_p), where the assumption is that

$$y \approx a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \ldots + a_p x_p + b$$

multiple linear regression

A method for predicting a numerical outcome that is assumed to be proportional to each of the predictor variable values.

We have already provided an example of linear regression in Section 1.4. Recall the VRX example introduced in that section, where this company was trying to predict how sales for one of its products (the VRX2000) would vary as a function of the advertising level. In this case, the (single) predictor variable is

$$x = \text{Advertising Budget},$$

and the output variable is

$$y = \text{expected sales of the VRX2000}.$$

In Section 1.4, it was estimated (using linear regression) that the best fit line is

$$y \approx 0.0139x + 1046.6.$$

A graph of the scatter plot of the data and this linear regression line is shown in Figure 1.2. Linear regression with a single predictor variable also will be considered in more detail in Section 4.5.

This same concept can be applied when there are multiple predictor variables. For example, consider the Evergreen Solar case study. Let's say that the owner, Jennifer, would like to predict the net profit that a new sales lead would generate, based upon the household income and the peak sun hours on the household's rooftop. Here the predictor variables would be

$$x_1 = \text{household income},$$
$$x_2 = \text{peak sun hours},$$

and the output variable would be

$$y = \text{net profit}.$$

The goal of multiple linear regression is to determine the values of a_1, a_2, and b such that the function

$$y \approx a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + b$$

makes as accurate a prediction as possible. The standard statistical method for doing this is referred to as the *method of least squares.*

Multiple linear regression can be performed using Analytic Solver by choosing *Linear Regression* from the *Predict* menu on the *Data Mining* tab and then applying the settings shown in Figure 3.24.

page 123

FIGURE 3.24

The Analytic Solver settings (top) and results (bottom) for the Multiple Linear Regression algorithm when it is applied to the predictor records (new sales leads) for the Evergreen Solar case study.

Analytic Solver Settings

Multiple Linear Regression
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Profit*
Partition Data: No
Rescale Data: No
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

Coefficients:

Predictor	Estimate
Intercept	−11.150082
Income	0.0635532
PSH	1.870839

Predictions:

Record ID	Prediction: Profit
Record 1	1.771052413
Record 2	10.2120913
Record 3	9.940809215
Record 4	4.781464161
Record 5	6.007662435

Using the historical records from the 16 prior customers, the result is the following formula for estimating the net profit of a customer (based on the coefficients table of Figure 3.24):

$$\text{Net Profit (\$thousands)} \approx 0.0636\ (\textit{Income}) + 1.871\ (\textit{PSH}) - 11.15$$

For the new sales lead with a household income of $115 thousand and a rooftop with 3.0 peak sun hours (Record 1 in the prediction table of Figure 3.24), this would lead to the following estimate for net profit.

$$\text{Net Profit (\$thousands)} \approx 0.0636\ (115) + 1.871\ (3.0) - 11.15 = 1.771 = \$1{,}771.$$

An advantage of multiple linear regression is that it is easy to implement and easy to interpret. It clearly shows the impact that each individual predictor variable has on the prediction. This can be particularly useful for identifying predictor variables that are having a very significant impact on the outcomes. In fact, multiple linear

regression is often used in the natural and social sciences *primarily* for this type of explanatory modeling. There, the focus is not so much on predicting an outcome, but rather on determining how much a variable impacts the outcome. For example, is smoking associated with higher rates of lung cancer?

Multiple linear regression is easy to implement, easy to interpret, and clearly shows the impact of each predictor variable.

One concern with multiple linear regression is that the model assumes that the effect of each predictor variable on the prediction is *exactly* proportional to its value. Thus, the coefficient of the predictor variable in the regression function is assumed to indicate exactly how much the prediction will increase (or decrease) per unit of change in the predictor variable. Moreover, it assumes that any change in a predictor variable has the same impact regardless of the values of the other predictor variables. If either or both of these assumptions do not hold fairly closely, this can lead to poor predictions.

Logistic Regression

Logistic regression is closely related to multiple linear regression. However, instead of trying to predict a *numerical outcome* as multiple linear regression does, logistic regression is used to predict which *categorical outcome* is likely to occur out of just a few possibilities (e.g., have solar installed or not).

logistic regression

A method of predicting the probability of a particular categorical outcome by determining a relationship between that probability and the values of the predictor variables.

Recall that with multiple linear regression, the goal is to try to determine the relationship between a numerical outcome variable (say y), and each of the predictor variables (say x_1, x_2, . . . , x_p), where the assumption is that

$$y \approx a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \ldots + a_px_p + b.$$

This implies that the outcome *y* is a *numerica*l outcome.

However, as mentioned above, logistic regression does not deal with numerical outcomes. Instead, it deals with an outcome variable that is a *categorical* variable with just a few possible values. In fact, it frequently has just two possible values corresponding to yes-or-no outcomes. This outcome variable is a random variable with some unknown probability distribution. Let's denote this random variable by *Y* and let's also denote the most desirable outcome by A. The goal for logistic regression commonly is to estimate

$$P(Y = \text{A}) = \text{probability that the outcome will be A.}$$

Might it still be possible to use the multiple linear regression equation for *Y* to calculate this probability? The answer is yes. This is, in fact, the crux of the logistic regression method.

Continuing the case study to illustrate how this is done, the event A refers to a new sales lead deciding to have solar installed. It is well understood that that the probability of this outcome is closely related to the predictor variables (household income and the peak sun hours for the household's rooftop) for this sales lead. In particular, this probability keeps increasing as each of these predictor variables increases. Therefore, by choosing the coefficients of the predictor variables appropriately, *P* (*Y* = A) can be approximated by the expression for multiple linear regression, so that

$$P(Y = \text{A}) \approx a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \ldots + a_px_p + b.$$

However, a problem with this approach is that this probability calculation is not guaranteed to be between 0 and 1 even though a probability is required to be within this range. The fix is to instead estimate *P*(*Y*) as

$$P(Y = A) \approx \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_px_p + b)}}.$$

This is known as the *logistic response function.* It is guaranteed to be between 0 and 1 regardless of the values of the predictor variables.

As with multiple linear regression, the goal then is to determine the values of a_1, a_2, . . ., a_p, and b such that the function is as accurate as possible. These are usually estimated using *maximum likelihood estimation.* The algorithm to determine these values will not be detailed here.

Logistic regression can be performed using Analytic Solver by choosing *Logistic Regression* from the *Classify* menu on the *Data Mining* tab and then applying the settings shown in Figure 3.25.

FIGURE 3.25

The Analytic Solver settings (top) and results (bottom) for the Logistic Regression algorithm when it is applied to the predictor records (new sales leads) for the Evergreen Solar case study.

Analytic Solver Settings

Logistic Regression Classification
Data Range: A1:H17
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Profit*
Success Class: Yes
Success Probability Cutoff: 0.5
Partition Data: No
Re-Scale Data: No
Score: New Data in Worksheet
Scoring Data Range: A19:C24

Coefficients:

Predictor	Estimate
Intercept	−7.8277908
Income	0.0272102
PSH	1.053257

Classification:

Record ID	Prediction: Install?	PostProb: Yes	PostProb: No
Record 1	No	0.176702596	0.823297404
Record 2	Yes	0.931177093	0.068822907
Record 3	Yes	0.896675982	0.103324018
Record 4	Yes	0.618127796	0.381872204
Record 5	Yes	0.605014514	0.394985486

Using the historical records from the 16 prior customers, the result for the case study is the following formula (based on the coefficients table in Figure 3.25) for estimating the likelihood of having solar installed.

$$P(\text{install solar}) \approx \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(0.0272\,(\text{Income}) + 1.0533\,(\text{PSH}) - 7.828)}}.$$

For the new sales lead with a household income of $115 thousand and a rooftop with 3.0 peak sun hours (Record 1 in the classification table in Figure 3.25), this becomes

$$P(\text{install solar}) \approx \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(0.0272\,(115) + 1.0533\,(3.0) - 7.828)}} = 0.177.$$

Since the probability is less than half, this customer is classified as *not* likely to have solar installed. A contribution of logistic regression is that it has considerably refined this prediction by estimating that the probability is 1 −0.177 = 0.823 that this customer will decide to not have solar installed.

Logistic regression shares many of the same pros and cons as multiple linear regression. Like multiple linear regression, it is easy to implement and easy to interpret (except for the logistic function). It also can be used to see which predictor variables are having the greater impact on the outcome. On the negative side, it makes the same shaky assumption as for multiple linear regression that the impact of each predictor variable is independent of the values of the other predictor variables. If this assumption does not nearly hold, this will significantly reduce the accuracy of the estimated probability.

Choosing the Best Algorithm

This chapter has presented five types of algorithms for performing some form of predictive analytics. These include the *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm presented in Section 3.2 and the classification tree or regression tree algorithm presented in Section 3.3, as well as the three algorithms (naïve Bayes, multiple linear regression, and logistic regression) introduced in this section. While these are five of the most prominently used algorithms, there are dozens of other algorithms that have been developed in this area as well.

Each of these five algorithms has its special strengths that fit it well for certain kinds of applications. The KNN algorithm is so intuitive that it could even be applied by inspection for problems of moderate size. However, it must be reapplied from scratch for each new predictor record. By contrast, the classification tree or regression tree algorithm can be reapplied quickly to a succession of new predictor records.

A key feature of the naïve Bayes algorithm is that it uses categorical variables for the predictor variables so that ranges of values and special categories can be considered with the predictor variables. Multiple linear regression is specially designed for predicting a numerical value that is assumed to be proportional to each of the predictor variables. When this proportionality assumption holds and a few categorical outcomes are being considered, logistic regression is designed for obtaining a close approximation of the probability that a predictor record will have a particular outcome.

It often is not obvious in advance which algorithm will perform the best for any particular application. One way to choose the best algorithm is to compare prediction accuracies. This can be measured by comparing error rates when using a validation or test partition of the data set, as described in Section 2.4. It is common to try multiple algorithms, compare the prediction accuracy, and choose the algorithm that performs the best. This will be done when we revisit the case study in Section 2.5. Ensembles of models sometimes are used simultaneously so that the results can be combined if that appears to improve the accuracy.

Beyond prediction accuracy, it can sometimes be important that the algorithm be easy to understand and explain. This can be especially important if you need to justify the modeling approach and results to a customer or decision maker. The KNN algorithm, the classification tree or regression tree algorithm, and multiple linear regression are relatively easy to understand and explain.

Another distinction among the algorithms is whether they are global or local. Logistic regression and multiple linear regression are *global* algorithms in the sense that they assume increasing (or

decreasing) a predictor variable value will always change the prediction in a similar way (e.g., more income will always make one more likely to have solar installed), regardless of the current value of this or the other predictor variables. In contrast, the KNN algorithm and the classification or regression tree algorithms are *local* algorithms in the sense that they can identify local regions (or "pockets") that lead to particular outcomes. For example, perhaps a pocket of medium incomes is likely to have solar installed, but not higher or lower income values. Or perhaps there is a local combination of income and peak sun hours that behave a certain way. Depending on the nature of the relationship between the predictor variables and the outcome, a local algorithm or global algorithm may be more appropriate.

Review *Questions*

page 126

. What is the main assumption behind the naïve Bayes algorithm?
. How can numerical predictor variables be converted to categorical predictor variables?
. What type of relationship between the predictor variables and the outcome is assumed with multiple linear regression?
. What is the main difference between multiple linear regression and logistic regression?
. Beyond predictive accuracy, what aspect of an algorithm is useful when you need to justify the algorithm and results to a customer or decision maker?
. Which algorithms are local algorithms and which are global algorithms?

3.5 REVISITING THE CASE STUDY: REFINING AND TESTING THE MODELS

A few years have passed and Jennifer has now made sales pitches to 100 customers since the founding of her company. All of the resulting data (including each customer's decision on whether to go ahead with having solar installed) are available in the *Evergreen Solar (100 Customers)* spreadsheet available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. A portion of this spreadsheet is shown in Figure 3.26.

FIGURE 3.26

The data for 100 previous customers of Evergreen Solar (the first several households and last several households are shown, while households 6–94 are hidden).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Household**	**Income**	**PSH**	**Install?**	**Bid**	**Installation**	**Revenue**	**Profit**
2	1	114	4.5	Yes	0.62	15.46	21.90	5.82
3	2	98	6.4	Yes	0.73	10.64	19.84	8.47
4	3	130	2.9	No	0.65	0	0	–0.65
5	4	198	1.6	No	0.54	0	0	–0.54
6	5	124	3.4	No	0.42	0	0	–0.42
96	95	175	6.4	Yes	0.63	26.88	43.39	15.88
97	96	91	4.6	Yes	0.85	11.55	17.08	4.68
98	97	197	3.8	Yes	0.65	26.89	41.63	14.09
99	98	85	2.2	No	0.74	0	0	–0.74
100	99	91	5.1	No	0.56	0	0	–0.56
101	100	172	6.6	Yes	0.98	21.87	33.32	10.47

With just 16 historical records when the case study was first considered in Section 3.1, it was not possible to test the model well. Now with 100 customers, there is sufficient data to partition the dataset into a training set and validation set. Partitioning the dataset allows us to perform two of the key steps of predictive analytics discussed in Section 2.4. First, it can be used to test and refine the current model (Step 3). The validation set can be used to refine the KNN and classification tree models. Second, it can be used to test the various models and choose the best one (Step 4). We will

conclude the case study by testing all five models to see how they perform.

Apply Data Partitioning to Refine the KNN Model by Choosing the Best Value for *k*

For the model based on the *KNN algorithm,* partitioned data can help determine the best value for *k* (the number of nearest neighbors to consider). The training set data are treated by the KNN algorithm as the historical data and the algorithm is then applied to classify each record in the validation set and to compare this classification with the actual outcome for that record. This is repeated for various values of *k* to see which value of *k* leads to the best performance of the algorithm (the highest proportion of correct classifications in the validation data set). This value of *k* is then chosen to deal with new predictor records moving forward.

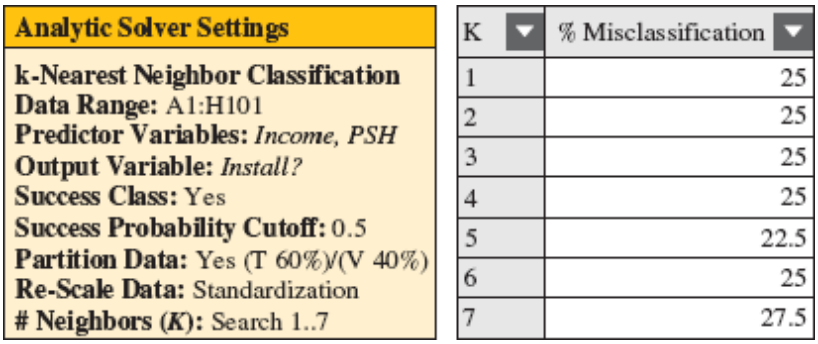
To apply the KNN algorithm to the expanded dataset, the same steps detailed in Section 3.2 are applied (see Figures 3.8–3.12) with two key differences. First, the dataset is partitioned by pressing the *Partition Data* button on the *Parameters* tab (see Figure 3.9) and choosing the *Random Partition* button with the default partitioning (60% of the data allocated to the training set and the remaining 40% to the validation set). Second, on the same Parameters tab, the *Search 1..K* option is chosen, with an upper limit of *K* = 7 selected in this case. This will tell Analytic Solver to evaluate the KNN algorithm on the *validation set* for each value of *k* from 1 up to 7 to see which value of *k* performs the best.

page 127

Figure 3.27 summarizes the Analytic Solver settings and results from the KNN model for each value of *k* from 1 to 7. For each value of *k,* the table shows what percentage of historical records in the validation data set led to a “misclassification” (an incorrect classification of whether that customer chose to have solar installed or not). Using *k* = 5 gives the best performance, with just 22.5 percent of historical records yielding an incorrect classification. Therefore, Jennifer will use *k* = 5 for this model going forward.

FIGURE 3.27

The performance of the KNN algorithm in Analytic Solver Data Mining is shown for seven different values of *k.* Using *k* = 5 gives the best performance with a 22.5 percent rate of incorrect predictions.



Analytic Solver Settings

k-Nearest Neighbor Classification
Data Range: A1:H101
Predictor Variables: *Income, PSH*
Output Variable: *Install?*
Success Class: Yes
Success Probability Cutoff: 0.5
Partition Data: Yes (T 60%)/(V 40%)
Re-Scale Data: Standardization
 # Neighbors (*K*): Search 1..7

K	% Misclassification
1	25
2	25
3	25
4	25
5	22.5
6	25
7	27.5

By using the validation partition to test the accuracy of the model on new data for different values of *k,* the performance of the algorithm can be improved by determining the best value for *k.*

Apply Data Partitioning to Prune the Classification Tree

When using the *classification tree* model, partitioned data can be used to help decide how deep to build the tree. One approach is to build a full classification tree based upon the training partition. Then **prune the tree** in various ways by removing some of the branches that were added at the bottom of the tree. Data from the validation partition are used to see which pruned tree performs the best in terms of making correct predictions for the historical records in that partition. (The same approach also can be used for the *regression tree* model.)

To do this with Analytic Solver for the expanded dataset, the same steps detailed in Section 3.3 are applied (see Figures 3.20 and 3.21), with several key differences on the *Parameters* tab shown in Figure 3.28. First, the data is partitioned (just as done with the KNN algorithm above). Second, to keep the tree from growing too large, it is limited in this case to no splitting after five levels or if there are fewer than five historical records in a node.

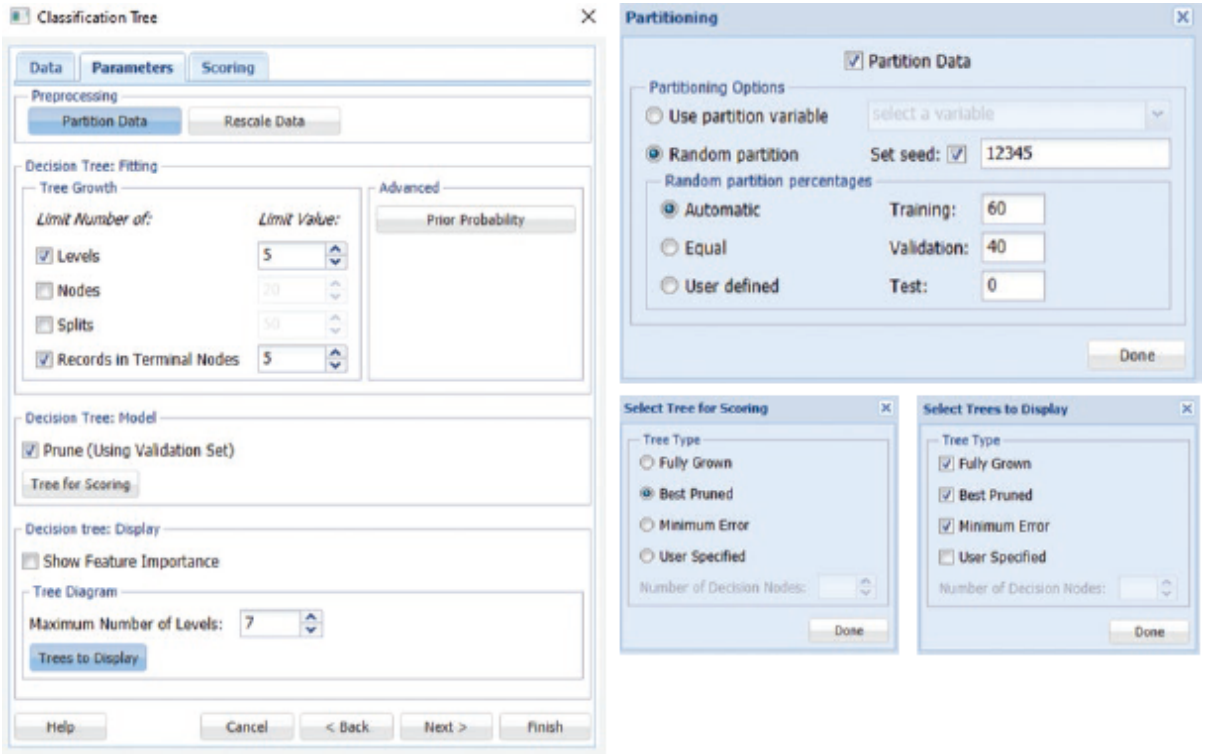
page 128

Clicking the *Tree for Scoring* button allows choosing which tree will be

used to “score” (or evaluate the prediction accuracy of) the validation data set. *Full Tree* uses the complete, unpruned tree. *Best Pruned* will choose the simplest tree (the one with the fewest branches) that still performs well. *Minimum Error* will choose the tree that leads to the fewest prediction errors. You can separately choose which trees to display by clicking the *Trees to Display* button and choosing any or all of these same options.

FIGURE 3.28

The Parameters tab of the classification tree algorithm in Analytic Solver Data Mining. The data is partitioned 60¯40 into a training set and a validation set. A fully grown, best pruned, and minimum error tree will be displayed.

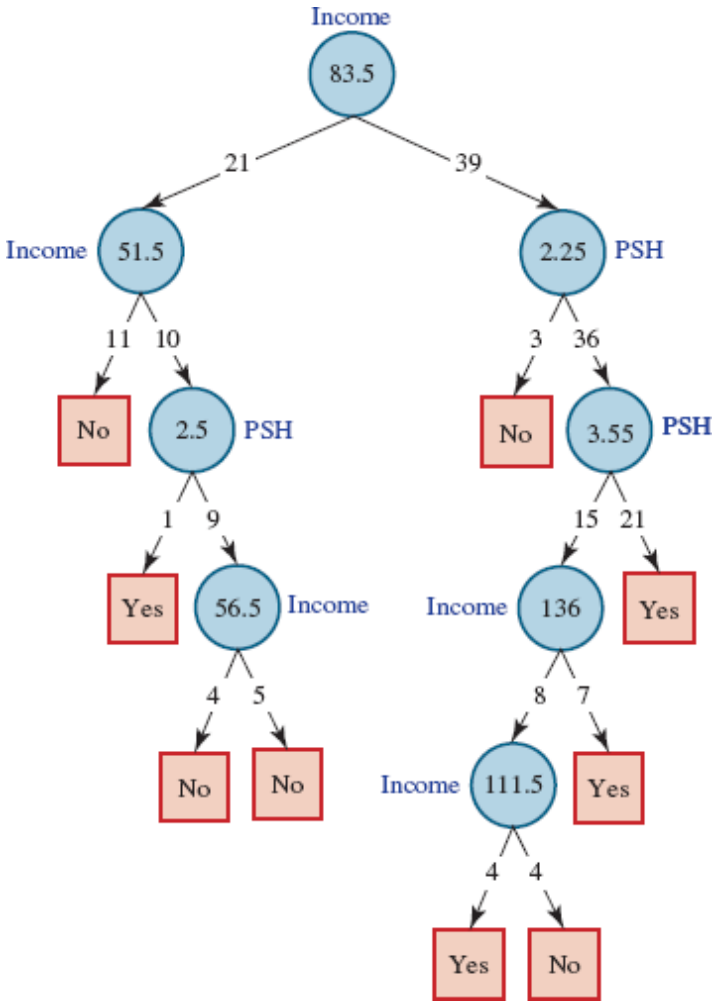


Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc

Clicking *Finish* runs the classification tree algorithm on the training set data. The full (unpruned) tree is shown in Figure 3.29.

FIGURE 3.29

The full classification tree for the training set data for the Evergreen Solar case study.

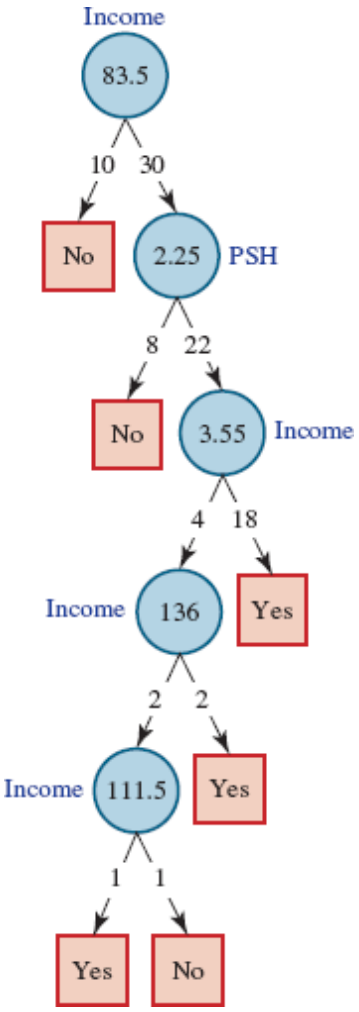


The full classification tree is likely overfitting to the training data. Typically, the initial branches improve the accuracy of the algorithm. However, as the tree is built deeper and deeper, the individual nodes have less and less data. The final branches may very well be fitting to the noise in the training data and therefore not actually improving how well the tree would perform on new data. To check this, the tree is tested with the validation data set. The algorithm considers pruning each of these deeper branches (toward the bottom of the tree) to see if this helps or hurts the accuracy of the tree when classifying the historical records from the validation data set. For the *minimum error*

tree, the algorithm considers pruning *all* possible combinations of branches to see which pruned tree performs the very best on the validation set (by predicting the outcomes accurately for the most historical records). It turns out that the minimum error tree prunes three decision nodes (those to the left of the initial node), leading to the classification tree shown in Figure 3.30.

FIGURE 3.30

The minimum error tree when aplying the classification tree algorithm in Analytic Solver Data Mining to the validation data set for the Evergreen Solar case study.

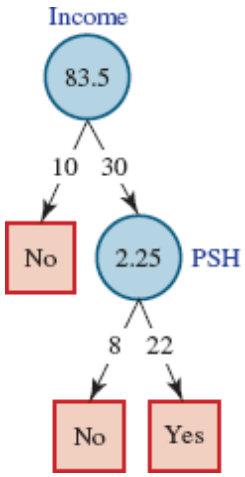


The *best pruned* classification tree will (potentially) prune a little bit further to create a simpler tree (with fewer branches) so long as

the additional pruning does not reduce the accuracy significantly. In this case, the best pruned tree prunes the three bottom nodes on the right, resulting in the remarkably simple classification tree shown in Figure 3.31.

FIGURE 3.31

The best pruned tree when applying the classification tree algorithm in Analytic Solver Data Mining to the validation data set for the Evergreen Solar case study.



It might seem intuitive to prefer the *minimum error* tree over the *best pruned* tree, since it has (by definition) the best overall performance on the validation set. However, the best pruned tree has a pair of potential advantages over the minimum error tree. First, it typically results in a simpler tree with fewer branches. This leads to classification rules that are simpler to follow. Second, the *minimum error* tree might be performing better on the validation data set because it actually may be overfitting to the validation data. Sometimes a little additional pruning can actually improve the performance of the algorithm on new data since it might smooth out this overfitting. Sometimes a third partition (a *test partition*) is used to further test the pruned tree on new data.

page 129

The best pruned tree tries to strike a balance between having a fairly simple tree (and therefore simpler rules to follow when classifying new historical records), while still maintaining good overall

accuracy. For these reasons, Jennifer feels that the best pruned tree is the one that she will use going forward to classify new sales leads and predict their outcomes. She especially likes how simple the resulting decision rule is when using this tree. Only pursue a new sales lead if their income is greater than $83.5 thousand *and* their PSH is greater than 2.25.

The *minimum error* tree may be overfitting to the validation data, so the additional pruning of the *best pruned* tree may actually improve the performance on new data.

Applying Data Partitioning to Test the Various Models

In addition to refining the models, partitioned data can also be used to test their performance. This will now be done for all of the models considered in this chapter by using Analytic Solver. To test the models using the validation set, one or more of the *Score Validation Data* settings (e.g., a Summary Report and/or Lift Chart) need to be turned on in the *Scoring* tab of Analytic Solver's dialog box for the algorithm. (See Figure 3.10 for the *Scoring* tab for the KNN model.) The summary report will display a confusion matrix, error report, and various metrics covered in Section 2.4 (see Figure 2.24). A lift chart (also covered in Section 2.4) provides a chart that helps visualize the effectiveness of the model (see Figure 2.25).

First, we test how well the various models classify the various customers as likely to install solar or not. Table 3.4 gives a comparison of the specificity (defined as the ability to correctly predict a negative outcome), sensitivity (defined as the ability to correctly predict a positive outcome), and overall error rates for the various classification models considered in this chapter. Details of the analysis leading to these results are left as an exercise (see Solved Problem 3.S2, including a fully worked-out solution available at **www.mhhe/Hillier7e)**.

TABLE 3.4

Comparison of Accuracy, Specificity, and Sensitivity for the various classification models when using the validation data set for the Evergreen Solar Case Study

Classification Model	Accuracy (percent)	Specificity (percent)	Sensitivity (percent)
KNN (k = 5)	77.5	72.2	81.8
Classification Tree (best pruned)	80.0	77.8	81.8
Naïve Bayes	67.5	50.0	81.8
Logistic Regression	75.0	66.7	81.8

It is interesting to compare the results across the models. The classification tree model has the highest accuracy, but just barely. The classification tree model also has the highest specificity (correctly predicting a negative outcome). All four algorithms had the same sensitivity (correctly predicting a positive outcome).

Jennifer is pleased with the performance of all the algorithms. The classification tree model has the added benefit of being simple to implement since it allows for a simple decision rule to follow when deciding whether to pursue a lead. She therefore plans to continue using the classification tree model, updating it to include the new data.

Next, we test how well the various models predict the net profit for each of the various customers. Each model is evaluated based upon the mean absolute deviation (MAD) and mean square error (MSE) in Table 3.5. MAD measures the average of the absolute value of the difference between the predicted net profit and the actual net profit in the validation set. MSE measures the average of the *square* of the difference between the predicted net profit and the actual net profit. Details of the analysis leading to these results are left as an exercise (see Solved Problem 3.S3, including a fully worked-out solution available at **www.mhhe/Hillier7e**).

TABLE 3.5

Comparison of the mean absolute deviation (MAD) and mean square error (MSE) for the various prediction models when using the validation data set for the Evergreen Solar case study.

Prediction Model	MSE	MAD
KNN (k = 5)	17.85	2.91
Regression Tree (best pruned)	16.09	2.86
Multiple Linear Regression	18.88	3.14

These results suggest that the regression tree is the most effective model for predicting the net profit most accurately in this case, but all three models perform fairly similarly.

Review *Questions*

. Now that Jennifer has had 100 customers, what does this allow her to do to allow for refining and/or testing a model that was not feasible earlier when she had data from just 16 previous customers?

. How can data partitioning be used to refine a KNN model?

. How can data partitioning be used to refine a classification tree model?

. After using data partitioning to test the various models of interest, what was Jennifer's conclusion about which model she would continue using?

3.6 AFFINITY ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATION SYSTEMS

The models and algorithms considered so far are designed to predict the behavior of a predictor record based on the behavior of historical

records who have characteristics similar to those of the predictor record. However, predictive analytics sometimes deal with other types of predictions as well. For example, when a retail business sells some product to a customer, the business often wants to predict whether the customer perhaps could be persuaded to purchase a certain similar product as well. In other words, what is the degree of association between various pairs of products? This section briefly introduces this application of predictive analytics.

Large databases of customer transactions can readily be used to analyze the degree of association among the products purchased. Are there any products that commonly are sold together? If not, are there certain products that at least tend to be purchased together? The goal of **affinity analysis** is to determine the degree of association between such products from the viewpoint of customers in order to identify "what goes with what." The products of greatest affinity then lead to **recommendation systems** that recommend that such products should be promoted together. Modern online retailers tend to make heavy use of recommendation systems.

page 131

affinity analysis

The analysis of the degree of association between products that might be purchased together in order to better identify "what goes with what."

recommendation systems

Uses affinity analysis to develop recommendations for which products should be promoted together.

Amazon makes extensive use of affinity analysis and recommendation systems.

Amazon certainly is one prominent example. Perhaps you have seen this yourself. While you are browsing to search for a good choice for a particular kind of product, Amazon will keep bringing a variety of options to your attention. Once you make your decision, they may tell you that people who like that product also like these other complementary items. Perhaps a day or two after your purchase, you are likely to receive a friendly message promoting

products that are closely associated with your recent purchase. This approach certainly works for Amazon. It has been credited with substantially increasing the company's revenues.

Netflix has been another leading example. After a customer has selected (and perhaps rated) a number of movies, Netflix uses both that information and the data on how other customers with similar tastes selected and rated their movies to provide the customer with a recommendation on which movie to select next. The result is that customers frequently made their next choice based on this recommendation, and Netflix thinks that this approach has helped to keep their loyal customers happy.

Brick-and-mortar retail establishments also can use this kind of approach. For example, it can be helpful to guide product placement, weekly promotional offers, and the bundling of products. In this context, this approach is sometimes called **market basket analysis.**

market basket analysis

The analysis of which products should be promoted and/or packaged together.

The framework for analyzing such applications actually is somewhat analogous to the framework assumed throughout this chapter. When considering the likelihood that a purchaser of product A might then purchase product B as well, a predictor record would be someone who has just purchased product A. The historical records would be customers who previously also purchased product A and perhaps purchased product B as well. Comparing the characteristics of these historical records and the predictor record, what is the likelihood that the predictor record also would purchase product B? The models and algorithms presented in this chapter can be adapted to fit this kind of application as well.

Review *Questions*

. What is the goal of *affinity analysis?*

. What is the connection between affin*ity analysis* and *recommendation systems?*

. What are some examples of modern online retailers that make heavy use of recommendation systems?

3.7 Summary

Section 3.1 introduces a case study that is used to illustrate the models and their algorithms presented later in this chapter. The case involves a start-up company called Evergreen Solar that installs solar panels on residential rooftops. Because of the substantial up-front costs involved with pursuing a new sales lead, the company's owner (Jennifer) needs to focus on only those leads that are quite promising. Therefore, Jennifer needs to find a good procedure for predicting whether a new sales lead is likely to go ahead with having solar installed. She feels that the key characteristics (the *predictor variables*) of both her past prospective customers (the *historical records*) and a new sales lead (a *predictor record*) for predicting such an *outcome* are the annual household income and the rooftop's peak sun hours for each prospective customer.

Section 3.2 presents the *k*-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm. It uses the *k* historical records whose data points (based on the predictor variables) are nearest to the data point for the predictor record to make classification or prediction decisions. When the outcomes are yes-or-no outcomes, these decisions are based on the outcomes for these *k* historical records. When the outcomes are numerical outcomes, the prediction of the outcome for the predictor record is the average of the outcomes of the *k* historical records.

Although the KNN algorithm provides an intuitive procedure for predicting outcomes, it does require making all of the calculations again for each new predictor record. The *classification tree and regression tree algorithms* presented in Section 3.3 avoids this problem. Once the classification tree or regression tree has been constructed, it can be used repeatedly for classifying each new predictor record as belonging to the appropriate subregion within the overall region of historical records. (The tree will need to be updated occasionally.) The classification tree algorithm is applicable when dealing with *yes-or-no outcomes* (or other discrete outcomes with more than two choices), whereas the regression algorithm deals with *numerical outcomes.*

Section 3.4 introduces three more algorithms for performing predictive analytics. The naïve Bayes algorithm enables using predictor variables that are *categorical* variables (variables that can take on only a limited set of values or categories). *Multiple linear regression* is a popular method for predicting a numerical outcome that is assumed to be proportional to each of the predictor values. *Logistic regression* is designed for obtaining a close approximation of the probability that a predictor record will have a particular outcome.

Section 3.5 focuses on refining and testing the models presented in this chapter. When the number of historical records is sufficiently large (say, at least 100), a popular approach is to partition these historical records into a training partition and a validation partition. The *training partition* is used to develop the model and then the *validation partition* is used to test the model. This section illustrates how to use data partitioning to (1) choose the best value of *k* (the number of nearest neighbors to use) for the KNN model, (2) prune a classification tree appropriately, and (3) obtain and

compare the results when applying the various models to the case study.

Section 3.6 introduces affinity analysis and recommendation systems. *Affinity analysis* analyzes the degree of association between products from the viewpoint of customers. *Recommendation systems* then develop and apply recommendations for which products should be promoted together.

Glossary

affinity analysis The analysis of the degree of association between products that might be purchased together in order to better identify "what goes with what." (Section 3.6), 130

binning Converting a numerical predictor variable into a categorical variable whereby numerical values are categorized into bins that define a range of values. (Section 3.4), 117

categorical variable A variable that can take on only a limited set of values or categories. (Section 3.4), 117

circular node A node in a classification tree or a regression tree that represents a decision to split a region into new regions. (Section 3.3), 108

class One of the categories of possible outcomes for the predictor record. (Section 3.3), 105

classification The act of using an analysis of historical records to classify a predictor record as being likely to have an outcome that fits a particular class. (Section 3.2), 98

classification model A model for predicting the class of the predictor record's outcome. (Introduction, Section 3.2), 88, 98

classification tree A diagram consisting of nodes and connecting branches that identifies the various regions of historical records and then enables classifying any new predictor record as belonging to one of these regions. (Section 3.3), 104

classification tree algorithm An algorithm that uses a classification tree to perform predictive analytics when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes (or possibly discrete outcomes with more than two distinct outcomes). (Section 3.3), 104

classifying the outcome Identifying which of the predictor record's possible outcomes is relatively likely to occur. (Section 3.3), 105

complete Bayes classification algorithm An extension of the naïve Bayes algorithm that uses historical records whose values of their predictor variables are a perfect match for the predictor record. (Section 3.4), 118

Gini index An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a region when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes. (Section 3.3), 106

historical record When making a prediction about the future behavior of a customer (or another entity) based on the outcomes for similar customers in the past (up to the present time), the information about the characteristics of *each* past customer, including its relevant data (the predictor variables) and outcome, is referred to as an historical record. (Introduction, Sections 3.2, 3,3), 88, 93, 105

KNN algorithm An abbreviated name of the *k-nearest-neighbors algorithm* described next. (Section 3.2), 93

***k*- nearest-neighbors algorithm** One popular algorithm for classification and prediction that uses the *k* historical records that are closest to the predictor record (the "*k*

nearest neighbors") as the region to which the predictor record is classified. (Section 3.2), 92

logistic regression A method of predicting the probability of a particular categorical outcome by determining a relationship between that probability and the values of the predictor variables. (Section 3.4), 123

market basket analysis The analysis of which products should be promoted and/ or packaged together. (Section 3.6), 131

matching set The set of historical records whose categorical values for the predictor variables perfectly match the corresponding categorical values for the predictor record. (Section 3.4), 118

multiple linear regression A method for predicting a numerical outcome that is assumed to be proportional to each of the predictor variable values. (Section 3.4), 122

naïve Bayes algorithm A popular classification algorithm when the predictor variables are categorical variables. (Section 3.4), 137

normalizing the data Rescaling each type of data so that its values range from 0 to 1. (Section 3.2), 94

numerical outcomes A situation where the outcomes can have any numerical value over some range. (Section 3.2), 98

numerical output variable The variable that expresses a numerical outcome. (Section 3.3), 113

outcome When predicting a future behavior, the outcome refers to the behavior that actually occurred. Also refers to the observed behavior of historical records. (Introduction, Sections 3.2, 3.3), 88, 93, 105

overall Gini index An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a group of regions when dealing with yes-or-no outcomes. (Section 3.3), 113

overall regression index An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a group of regions when dealing with numerical outcomes. (Section 3.3), 113

overfitting the data Continuing to split regions to the point where predictions would be based on overly small sample sizes. (Sections 3.2 and 3.3), 96, 110

peak sun hour One hour when the intensity of sunlight reaches an average of one kilowatt of energy per square meter. (Section 3.1), 91

prediction model A model for predicting the predictor record's numerical outcome. (Introduction, Section 3.2), 87, 98

predictor record When making a prediction about the future behavior of a new customer (or another entity), that new customer and its characteristics (the predictor variables) are referred to as the predictor record. (Introduction, Sections 3.2, 3.3), 88, 93, 105

predictor variable A key characteristic of a record (both historical records and the predictor record) that is used (along with other predictor variables) to make predictions. (Introduction, Section 3.2), 88, 105

recommendation systems Uses affinity analysis to develop recommendations for which products should be promoted together. (Section 3.6), 131

regression index An index that measures the lack of homogeneity of a region when dealing with numerical outcomes. (Section 3.3), 106

regression tree A close variant of a classification tree that is used when dealing with numerical outcomes.

(Section 3.3), 105

regression tree algorithm An algorithm that uses a regression tree to perform predictive analytics when dealing with numerical outcomes. (Section 3.3), 113

square node A node in a classification tree or regression tree that represents a region of historical records. (Section 3.3), 108

standardizing the data Rescaling each type of data so that it measures the number of standard deviations above or below the mean for a standard normal distribution. (Section 3.2), 94

stopping rule A rule for terminating an algorithm before it starts overfitting the data. (Section 3.3), 111

training partition A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to develop ("train") the model. (Introduction, Section 3.2), 88, 101

validation partition A portion of the available historical data for a predictive analytics model that is used to validate the model after a training partition is used to develop the model. (Introduction, Section 3.2), 88, 101

yes-or-no outcomes A situation where only two outcomes are possible, so the desirable outcome can be labeled *yes* and then the undesirable outcome can be labeled *no.* (Section 3.2), 98

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Evergreen Solar (16 customers)

Evergreen Solar (20 customers)

Evergreen Solar (100 customers)

First Bank Data

Pathfinder College Data

Friendly Bank Data

Vegas Villas Data

Excel Add-Ins:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

3.S1. Applying Classification Trees to First Bank

Reconsider the First Bank case study first introduced in Section 2.1. The dataset for First Bank is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. In Chapter 2, the KNN model was used to classify whether loan applicants are unlikely to default (5 percent chance or less) and so should be approved for a prime loan. Using *Credit* and *dti* as predictor variables, now build a classification tree model to make this same type of classification. Use a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule. Use the resulting classification tree to classify the three loan applicants shown in Figure 2.26.

3.S2. Comparing Classification Models for Evergreen Solar

Reconsider the Evergreen Solar case study considered throughout this chapter. Using the *Evergreen Solar (100 customers)* dataset available at

www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e, partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (40 percent of the records). page 134

a. Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 5$ (based on the historical data in the training partition) when it is used to classify potential customers from the validation partition as likely to purchase (or not), based on a 50 percent cutoff.

b. Repeat part *a* for the classification tree model with no splitting after five levels or if there are fewer than five historical records in a node. Score the model using the best pruned tree.

c. Repeat part *a* for the naïve Bayes model using the *Evergreen Solar (100 customers)* dataset on the *Binned Data* worksheet tab, where *Income* and *PSH* have each been binned into High, Medium, and Low.

d. Repeat part *a* for the logistic regression model.

e. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

3.S3. Comparing Prediction Models for Evergreen Solar

Reconsider the Evergreen Solar case study considered throughout this chapter. Using the *Evergreen Solar (100 customers)* dataset available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e,** partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (40 percent of the records).

a. Determine the MAD and MSE for the KNN algorithm with $k = 5$ (based on the historical data in the training partition) when it is used to predict the Profit from potential customers in the validation partition.

b. Repeat part *a* for the regression tree algorithm with no splitting after five levels or if there are fewer than five historical records in a node. Score the model using the best pruned tree.

c. Repeat part *a* for the multiple linear regression model.

d. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

Problems

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem where Analytic Solver (or similar software) is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

3.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the predictive analytics study done at Ingram Micro that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 3.1. Briefly describe how data mining and predictive analytics were applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

3.2. Reconsider Figure 3.5, which shows the application of the KNN algorithm with $k = 3$ to the new sales lead (the predictor record) for the case study while using standardized values of the predictor variables. The prediction for the new sales lead is that it is *not* likely to have solar installed but the *estimated probability* that the new sales lead actually will have solar installed is a relatively high 1/3 since one of the three nearest neighbors (among all the historical records) *did* have solar installed. It is well understood for this application that substantially decreasing the value of one of these predictor variables for the new sales lead should tend to substantially decrease this probability while substantially increasing that predictor

variable should have the opposite effect. This problem explores this further.

a. Without changing the value of the household income, use visual inspection for the new sales lead to determine how its estimated probability changes (if at all) over the following standardized values of peak sun hours: −1.5, −1.0, −0.5, 0, +0.5. How much did these major changes in the peak sun hours change the estimated probability?

b. Without changing the value of peak sun hours for the new sales lead, use visual inspection to determine how its estimated probability changes (if at all) over the following standardized value of household income: −1.0, −0.5, 0, +0.5, +1.0. How much did these major changes in the household income change the estimated probability?

c. Comment on how the *randomness* of the outcome for individual historical records can lead to the results in parts *a* and *b.*

d. Comment on how greatly increasing the number of historical records and increasing the value of *k* a little should substantially improve the accuracy of the estimated probability that the new sales lead will have solar installed, including showing more accurately how these probabilities change as the predictor variables change.

3.3.* Figure 3.19 shows the final classification tree for the case study. For each of the following new sales leads (predictor records), read down this classification tree to obtain the prediction about whether or not this new sales lead will have solar installed. Also identify the path followed down the tree.

a. A new sales lead that has an annual household income of $250,000 and a rooftop that has 3.5 peak sun hours.

b. A new sales lead that has an annual household income of $100,000 and a rooftop that has 5.5 peak sun hours.

c. A new sales lead that has an annual household income of $150,000 and a rooftop that has 2.3 peak sun hours.

3.4. Figures 3.16 and 3.17 show the second and third splitting of the data into regions when applying the classification tree algorithm to the case study.

a. Calculate the values of the Gini Index for each of the two new regions created by the second split, as well as the Overall Gini Index and the improvement in the overall homogeneity.

b. Repeat part *a* for the two new regions created by the third split.

3.5. The *Making Numerical Predictions with Regression Trees* subsection of Section 3.3 discusses how, when the outcome is measured by a numerical output variable, the regression tree algorithm splits the data into regions to maximize homogeneity of the regions. At one page 135 point, it states that the Regression Index for the two new regions shown in Figure 3.17 are 68.5 and 23.5. Show the calculation that gives each of these two values.

AS 3.6.* As first described in Problem 2.9, Pathfinder College is a small liberal arts college that wants to improve its admissions process. In particular, too many of its incoming freshmen have failed to graduate for a variety of reasons, including dropping out, or transferring to another college, or failing to satisfy the graduation standards. Therefore, the admissions office wants to have a better

method of predicting whether an applicant would succeed in graduating.

The college primarily uses two predictor variables for evaluating an applicant, namely, the high school grade point average and the SAT score. If either is sufficiently high (either a GPA ≥ 3.30 or an SAT score ≥ 1200), the applicant is immediately accepted. Such applicants who accept admission usually do well until successfully graduating. However, the admissions office needs to go deeper into its applicant pool to fill up its freshman class. The question is how to predict which of these other applicants are the better bet for successfully graduating. The admissions office wishes to consider an applicant for admission only if the prediction is that the applicant is more likely than not of successfully graduating.

The admissions office has randomly selected 800 students who were previously admitted and enrolled but did not meet the criteria for immediate acceptance. All have now had sufficient time to graduate. The data for these historical records, including their graduation status, are provided in the spreadsheet file titled *Pathfinder College Data* available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The admissions office currently is evaluating the three applicants listed below and so wishes a prediction for each one of the likelihood of eventually graduating.

Using all the data (unpartitioned) on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, apply the KNN algorithm to this problem, with $k = 7$ with the data rescaled using standardization. Assuming an applicant is classified as a likely success (and admitted) if they are at least 50 percent likely to graduate, classify each of the following applicants and indicate the estimated probability of graduating.

a. The applicant has a GPA of 3.21 and a SAT score of 920.

b. The applicant has a GPA of 2.84 and a SAT score of 1120.

c. The applicant has a GPA of 3.03 and a SAT score of 1010.

AS 3.7. Reconsider Problem 3.6. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the 800 records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the 800 records).

a. Searching over values of *k* from 1 to 9, find the best value for *k* in the KNN algorithm.

b. Generate the lift chart for this algorithm with the best value of *k* when applied to the validation data.

AS 3.8. Reconsider Problem 3.6. The admissions office now would like to predict the college GPA of the three applicants (*a, b,* and *c*). Apply the KNN algorithm with *k* = 7 to predict the college GPA for each of the three applicants.

AS 3.9. Reconsider Problem 3.6.

a. Assuming an applicant is classified as a likely success (and admitted) if they are at least 50% likely to graduate, apply the classification tree algorithm to generate a classification tree. Allow a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule.

b. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

c. Repeat part *a,* but now generate a classification tree assuming an applicant is classified as a likely success (and admitted) if they are at least 60% likely to graduate.

d. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.10. Reconsider Problem 3.6. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the 800 records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the 800 records).

a. Using a maximum of seven splits as the stopping rule, generate the best pruned classification tree.

b. Generate the lift chart when applied to the validation data.

c. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.11. Reconsider Problem 3.6.

a. Apply the regression tree algorithm to predict the college GPA of applicants based on the predictor variables of high school GPA and SAT score. Generate a regression tree using a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule.

b. Use the resulting regression tree to predict the college GPA of each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.12. Reconsider Problem 3.6. The data for GPA and SAT score have each now been binned into five categories (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High, and High) on the Binned Data worksheet tab. Apply naïve Bayes to the binned dataset to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (a, b, and c) as likely to graduate (or not), based on a 50 percent cutoff.

AS 3.13.* Reconsider Problem 3.6.

a. Apply multiple linear regression so as to predict the college GPA of applicants based on the predictor variables of high school GPA and SAT score. Determine the prediction equation for the college GPA as a function of the high school GPA and SAT score.

b. Use the resulting multiple linear regression model to predict the college GPA of each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.14. Reconsider Problem 3.6.

a. Apply logistic regression so as to classify applicants as either likely to graduate (or not). Determine the logistic response function giving the probability of graduation as a function of high school GPA and SAT score.

b. Use the resulting logistic regression model to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.6 (*a, b,* and *c*) as likely to graduate (or not), based on a 50 percent cutoff.

AS 3.15. Reconsider Problem 3.6. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the 800 records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the 800 records).

page 136

a. Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 5$ (based on the historical data in the training partition), when it is used to classify applicants from the validation partition as likely to graduate (or not), based on a 50 percent cutoff.

b. Repeat part *a* with the classification tree model, with a maximum of seven splits as the stopping rule and using the best pruned tree.

c. Repeat part *a* with the naïve Bayes model using the data on the *Binned Data* worksheet tab.

d. Repeat part *a* with the logistic regression model.

e. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

AS 3.16. Reconsider Problem 3.6. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the 800 records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the 800 records).

a. Determine the MAD and MSE when using the KNN algorithm with $k = 5$ to predict the GPA of applicants from the validation partition.

b. Repeat part *a* with the regression tree algorithm, with a maximum of seven splits as the stopping rule and using the best pruned tree.

c. Repeat part *a* with the multiple linear regression model.

d. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

AS 3.17. As first described in Problem 2.16, Friendly Bank is very active with making loans to deserving people in the local community. However, the bank does need to carefully evaluate each loan to make sure that the recipient of the loan will likely repay the loan as scheduled. Therefore, the bank needs to obtain a prediction of whether this is likely and what the probability is. The bank primarily uses the annual income and the credit rating of the person applying for the loan as the predictor variables for obtaining this prediction.

The bank has compiled all of the historical records of substantial loans and their outcomes over recent years. This information is provided in the spreadsheet titled *Friendly Bank Data* available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Only loans that have concluded (either paid off in full or

ending in default) are included, resulting in 4,985 total records.

The bank currently is evaluating the three loan applications described below. Using all the data (unpartitioned) on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab with the data rescaled using standardization, apply the KNN algorithm with $k = 10$ to this problem to classify each of the following applicants as either likely to default (defined as more than a 10 percent chance of default) or not likely to default (defined as a 10 percent chance of default or less). Also indicate the estimated probability of default for each.

a. The loan applicant has an annual income of $110,000 and a credit rating of 640.

b. The loan applicant has an annual income of $58,000 and a credit rating of 740.

c. The loan applicant has an annual income of $82,000 and a credit rating of 700.

AS 3.18. Reconsider Problem 3.17. Now apply the KNN algorithm with $k = 10$ to predict the number of late payments for each of the three applicants (*a, b,* and *c*).

AS 3.19. Reconsider Problem 3.17.

a. Apply the classification tree algorithm, allowing a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule. Assuming an applicant is classified as likely to default if they exceed a 10 percent chance of default, generate a classification tree.

b. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

c. Repeat part *a,* but now generate a classification tree assuming an applicant is classified as likely to default if they exceed a 5 percent chance of default.

d. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.20. Reconsider Problem 3.17.

a. Apply the regression tree algorithm to predict the number of late payments based on the predictor variables of annual income and credit score. Generate a regression tree using a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule.

b. Use the resulting regression tree to predict the number of late payments for each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.21. Reconsider Problem 3.17. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the 800 records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the 800 records).

a. Using a maximum of seven splits as the stopping rule, generate the best pruned regression tree to predict the number of late payments based on the predictor variables of annual income and credit score.

b. Generate the lift chart when applied to the validation data.

c. Use the resulting regression tree to predict the number of late payments for each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.22. Reconsider Problem 3.17. The historical data for annual income and credit score have each now been binned into five categories (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium High, and High) on the *Binned Data* worksheet tab. Apply naïve Bayes to the binned dataset to classify

each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) as to whether they are likely to default (defined as greater than a 10 percent chance of default).

AS 3.23. Reconsider Problem 3.17.

a. Apply multiple linear regression to determine the prediction equation for the number of late payments as a function of the annual income and credit score.

b. Use the resulting multiple linear regression model to predict the number of late payments for each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

AS 3.24.* Reconsider Problem 3.17.

a. Apply logistic regression so as to classify applicants as to whether they are likely to default (defined as greater than a 10 percent chance of default). Determine the logistic response function giving the probability of no default as a function of annual income and credit score.

b. Use the resulting logistic regression model to classify each of the three applicants from Problem 3.17 (*a, b,* and *c*) under consideration.

page 137

AS 3.25. Reconsider Problem 3.17. Partition the 4,985 historical records of interest into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records).

a. Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 10$ (based on the historical data in the training partition), when it is used to classify applicants as to whether they are likely to default (defined as greater than a 10 percent chance of default).

b. Repeat part *a* with the classification tree model, with a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule and using the full tree.

c. Repeat part *a* with the naïve Bayes model using the data on the *Binned Data* worksheet tab.

d. Repeat part *a* with the logistic regression model.

e. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

AS 3.26. Reconsider Problem 3.17. Partition the 4,985 historical records of interest into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records).

a. Determine the MAD and MSE when using the KNN algorithm with $k = 10$ to predict the number of late payments of applicants from the validation partition.

b. Repeat part *a* with the regression tree algorithm, with a maximum of seven splits as the stopping rule and using the full tree.

c. Repeat part *a* with the multiple linear regression model.

d. Comment on which model(s) perform best.

Case 3-1

Evergreen Solar Decides to Use Naïve Bayes

As discussed throughout Chapter 3, the owner of **Evergreen Solar** (Jennifer) has been exploring different ways of performing predictive analytics in order to better predict whether any new sales lead is sufficiently likely to go ahead with having solar installed to justify her spending the time and money involved to pursue this sales lead. With just 16 historical records, she has found that there are several ways

of making a helpful prediction, but that the prediction does not have much precision because the historical data are so limited. In fact, she has found that either predictor variable (the annual household income or the rooftop's peak sun hours) often can be changed rather substantially without changing the prediction. Therefore, it seems sufficient to only specify that each predictor variable falls within a fairly broad range in order to make the prediction.

Jennifer now has been given a demonstration of how **the naïve Bayes algorithm** (see Section 3.4) could be used to provide her predictions. She is excited that this algorithm only uses *categorical variables,* so the values of the predictor variables only need to be specified as being within a fairly broad range. Section 3.4 identifies these ranges and labels them as low, medium, and high. (See Table 3.3 for the labels assigned to the 16 historical records.) Jennifer understands that a new sales lead is unlikely to have solar installed if either predictor variable is in the low category but that this likelihood increases rather rapidly as the predictor variable increases substantially. Therefore, she has concluded that she can immediately decide *not* to pursue a new sales lead if either predictor variable is in the low category but that she *should pursue* a new sales lead if either predictor variable is in the high category and the other one is not in the low category. She loves the idea that she can make the decision so easily and so immediately.

naïve Bayes algorithm

A popular classification algorithm when the predictor variables are categorical variables.

However, what if both predictor variables are in the medium category? This case is not clear yet. The demonstration of the naïve Bayes algorithm that Jennifer received actually did involve a new sales lead that fits this case. But the resulting prediction for this sales lead was somewhat ambiguous (a prediction that this sales lead was *not* likely to have solar installed but that the *estimated probability* that it actually would have solar installed was quite high at 0.471.) Jennifer would like to obtain more information to help her decide what to do about such cases.

Fortunately, some time now has passed, so Jennifer recently has gone ahead with four more new sales leads, so she now has 20 historical records instead of 16 with which to apply the naïve Bayes algorithm again. The data for these four additional historical records are shown below.

Household Number	Annual Household Income	Peak Sun Hours	Solar Installed?
17	Medium	Medium	No
18	High	Medium	Yes
19	Medium	High	Yes
20	High	Low	No

In addition, Jennifer now has a brand new sales lead (labeled below as the predictor record) that has both medium household income and medium peak sun hours.

page 138

a. Use the complete Bayes algorithm (direct method) to predict whether this predictor record is likely to have solar installed and to estimate the probability that this will happen.
b. Use the version of the complete Bayes algorithm that uses Bayes theorem to obtain the results requested in part *a.*
c. Now use the naïve Bayes algorithm to obtain the results requested in part *a.*
d. The results from this application of the naïve Bayes algorithm with 20 historical records did not change much from when 16 historical records were used in Section 3.4. Jennifer can see some significant differences in the predictor values in the medium categories for the various historical records and she would like to differentiate better between the predictor records hat fall into these categories. What would you recommend that she do in the future to

better predict which of these predictor records she should pursue in the future?

e. Use Analytic Solver to apply the naïve Bayes algorithm to perform part *c*.

Case 3-2

Revisiting Vacations at Vegas Villas

Reconsider Case 2-1, Vacations at Vegas Villas. As in the final part of that case study, Silver State Development (SSD) would like to classify each of the following potential buyers as either likely to purchase (at least a 25 percent chance) or not (less than a 25 percent chance). They would also like to predict how many vacation credits they each might purchase.

Potential Buyer	Income	Age	Marital Status	Visits
1	93	34	Married	3
2	132	42	Married	1
3	55	28	Single	7

For each model, use *Income* and *Visits* as the predictor variables.

a. Using the entire dataset on the *Clean Data* worksheet tab, generate a classification tree to classify potential buyers as likely to purchase vacation credits (or not). Allow a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule. Use the resulting classification tree to classify each of the three potential buyers.

b. Generate a regression tree to predict the number of vacation credits a potential buyer might purchase. Allow a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule. Use the resulting regression tree to predict how many vacation credits each of the three potential buyers will purchase.

c. The historical data for *Income* and *Visits* have each now been binned into five categories (Low, Medium Low, Medium, Medium

High, and High) on the *Binned Data* worksheet tab. Apply naïve Bayes to the binned dataset to classify each of the three potential buyers as likely to purchase (or not).

d. Apply multiple linear regression to determine a prediction equation for the number of vacation credits purchased as a function of *Income* and *Visits.* Use the resulting multiple linear regression model to predict the number of vacation credits purchased for each of the three potential buyers.

e. Apply logistic regression to determine the logistic response function giving the probability of purchasing vacation credits as a function of *Income* and *Visits.* Use the resulting logistic regression model to classify each of the three potential buyers as likely to purchase or not.

f. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records). Determine the accuracy, sensitivity, and specificity for the KNN model with $k = 10$ (based on the historical data in the training partition), when it is used to classify potential buyers from the validation partition as likely to purchase (or not). Repeat for the classification tree model with four splits as the stopping rule and using the full tree for scoring. Then repeat for both naïve Bayes using the binned data set and the logistic regression model. Which model(s) perform best?

g. Partition the historical records into a training partition (60 percent of the records) and a validation partition (the remaining 40 percent of the records). Determine the MAD and MSE when using the KNN algorithm with $k = 10$ to predict the number of vacation credits purchased for each potential buyer from the validation partition. Repeat for the regression tree algorithm with a maximum of four splits as the stopping rule and using the full tree. Then repeat for the multiple linear regression model. Which model(s) perform best?

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 4

Predictive Analytics Based on Traditional Forecasting Methods

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe some important types of forecasting applications.
2. Identify two common measures of the accuracy of forecasting methods.
3. Adjust forecasting data to consider seasonal patterns.
4. Describe several forecasting methods that use the pattern of historical data to forecast a future value.
5. Apply these methods either by hand or with the software provided.
6. Compare these methods to identify the conditions when each is particularly suitable.
7. Describe and apply an approach to forecasting that relates the quantity of interest to one or more other quantities.
8. Describe several forecasting methods that use expert judgment.

Chapter 3 has presented some key techniques of business analytics. Many of these are innovative techniques for conducting *predictive analytics* to predict some type of behavior (e.g., will a prospective customer go ahead to purchase an offered product) based on the observed behavior of similar cases in the past. For some applications, the prediction will involve a simple

act (deciding whether to purchase a particular product). For other applications, the prediction may be expressed in terms of the consequences of this act (e.g., the resulting profit). These kinds of techniques have mainly been developed over recent years within the business analytics community and now are widely used.

Long before the development of the techniques presented in Chapter 3, a number of other techniques also have been available to make predictions about the future. These techniques are commonly referred to as **forecasting methods** because they focus on using historical data to make a *forecast* of what the value of some future quantity will turn out to be. These traditional forecasting methods now are a very important part of the toolkit for performing predictive analytics. This chapter introduces these methods.

One prominent type of forecasting method is **time series forecasting.** A *time series* is a series of observations over time of some quantity of interest. For example, the month-by-month record of the past sales of a particular product is a time series. A company commonly has great interest in using this time series to forecast the sales in the next month in order to guide production decisions. A number of **statistical forecasting methods** have been developed for using statistical techniques to obtain these forecasts from various types of time series. These methods may take into account such factors as trends in the time series, the effect of seasonal factors, and so forth.

page 140

statistical forecasting methods

A method that applies statistical techniques to use historical data to forecast future quantities. (See also Sections 4.1–4.5)

These statistical forecasting methods have a long history. They largely were developed within the field of Statistics many decades ago. They have since been widely used by management scientists and now by the business analytics community as well.

We have mentioned *sales forecasting* as a widely used application of statistical forecasting methods. However, there are many other areas where some type of forecasting also is needed. Here are a few. How much will the economy grow over the next year? Where is the stock market headed? What about interest rates? How will consumer tastes be changing? What will be the hot new products?

Forecasters have answers to all these questions. Unfortunately, these answers will more than likely be wrong. Nobody can accurately predict the

future every time.

Nevertheless, the future success of any business depends heavily on how savvy its management is in spotting trends and developing appropriate strategies. The leaders of the best companies often seem to have a sixth sense for when to change direction to stay a step ahead of the competition, but this sixth sense actually is guided by frequent use of the best forecasting techniques. These companies seldom get into trouble by badly misestimating what the demand will be for their products. Many other companies do. The ability to forecast well makes the difference.

The ability to forecast future sales of their products is particularly important for many companies. As mentioned above, when historical sales data are available, some proven statistical forecasting methods have been developed for using these data to forecast future demand. Such methods assume that historical trends will continue, so management then needs to make adjustments to reflect current changes in the marketplace.

In addition to time series forecasting, another important type of statistical forecasting method is **causal forecasting with linear regression.** This method approximates the relationship between a quantity of interest (the dependent variable) and a related quantity (the independent variable) by a straight line. (Recall that linear regression was applied previously in Section 1.4.)

Several **judgmental forecasting methods** that solely use expert judgment also are available. These methods are especially valuable when little or no historical sales data are available or when major changes in the marketplace make these data unreliable for forecasting purposes.

Forecasting product demand is just one important application of these forecasting methods. For other applications, forecasts might be needed for such diverse quantities as the need for spare parts, production yields, and staffing needs. Forecasting techniques also are heavily used for forecasting economic trends on a regional, national, or even international level.

We begin the chapter with an overview of the techniques of time series forecasting in their simplest form. Section 4.2 then introduces a typical case study that will be carried through much of the chapter to illustrate how these techniques commonly need to be adapted to incorporate such practical considerations as seasonal demand patterns. Section 4.3 applies time series forecasting to the case study and then Section 4.4 describes this application from a broader perspective. Section 4.5 presents causal forecasting with linear regression. Section 4.6 describes judgmental forecasting methods.

Excel templates for various forecasting methods are included at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

4.1 AN OVERVIEW OF THE TECHNIQUES OF TIME SERIES FORECASTING

To illustrate various forecasting techniques, consider the following problem.

A Forecasting Problem

Fastchips is a leading producer of microprocessors. Six months ago, it launched the sales of its latest microprocessor. The month-by-month sales (in thousands) of the microprocessor over the initial six months have been

17 25 24 26 30 28

In this highly competitive market, sales can shift rather quickly, depending largely on when competitors launch the latest version of their microprocessors. Therefore, it always is important to have a forecast of the next month's sales to guide what the production level should be.

page 141

Let us look at some alternative ways of obtaining this forecast.

Some Forecasting Techniques

The most straightforward technique is the **last-value forecasting method** (sometimes also called the *naïve method*), which says simply to use the last month's sales as the forecast for the next month. For Fastchips, this yields

Forecast = 28

last-value forecasting method

A method that uses the last value of a time series as the forecast of the next value. (See also Section 4.3)

This is a reasonable forecasting method when conditions tend to change so quickly that sales before the last month's are not a reliable indicator of future sales.

The **averaging forecasting method** says to use the average of *all* the monthly sales to date as the forecast for the next month. This gives

$$\text{Forecast} = \frac{17 + 25 + 24 + 26 + 30 + 28}{6} = 25$$

averaging forecasting method

A method that uses the average of all the past observations from a time series as a forecast of the next value. (See also Section 4.3)

for Fastchips. This is a reasonable forecasting method when conditions tend to remain so stable that even the earliest sales are a reliable indicator of future sales (a dubious assumption for Fastchips).

The **moving-average forecasting method** provides a middle ground between the last-value and averaging methods by using the average of the monthly sales for only the most recent months as the forecast for the next month. The number of months being used must be specified. For example, a three-month moving average forecast for Fastchips is

$$\text{Forecast} = \frac{26 + 30 + 28}{3} = 28$$

moving-average forecasting method

A method that uses the average of the last *n* observations from a time series as a forecast of the next value. (See also Section 4.3)

This is a reasonable forecasting method when conditions tend to change occasionally but not extremely rapidly.

The **exponential smoothing forecasting method** provides a more sophisticated version of the moving-average method in the way that it gives primary consideration to sales in only the most recent months. In particular, rather than giving equal weight to the sales in the most recent months, the exponential smoothing method gives the greatest weight to the last month and then progressively smaller weights to the older months. (The formula for this method will be given in Section 4.3.) This forecasting method is a reasonable one under the same conditions as described for the moving-average method.

exponential smoothing forecasting method

A method that gives the greatest weight to the last value in a time series and then progressively smaller values to the older values. (See also Section 4.3)

Additional sophistication is added to the exponential smoothing forecasting method by using **exponential smoothing with trend**. This latter

method adjusts exponential smoothing by also directly considering any current upward or downward trend in the sales. (Formulas are given in Section 4.3.)

exponential smoothing with trend

An adjustment of the exponential smoothing forecasting method that projects the current trend forward to help forecast the next value of a time series (and perhaps subsequent values as well). (See also Section 4.3)

If the sales data show a relatively constant trend in some direction, then **linear regression** provides a reasonable forecasting method. This method uses a two-dimensional graph with sales measured along the vertical axis and time measured along the horizontal axis. After plotting the sales data month by month, this method finds a line passing through the midst of the data as closely as possible. The extension of the line into future months provides the forecast of sales in these future months. (Back in Section 1.4, Figure 1.5 shows a case where linear regression fits very well, whereas it does not in Figure 1.2.)

Section 4.5 fully presents the linear regression method. The other forecasting methods mentioned above are described in detail in Section 4.3 and then evaluated from a broader perspective in Section 4.4. The discussion in all three sections is in the context of the case study introduced in Section 4.2.

Which of these forecasting techniques should Fastchips use? On the basis of the sales data so far, it appears that either the moving-average forecasting method or the exponential smoothing forecasting method would be a reasonable choice. However, as time goes on, further analysis should be done to see which of the forecasting methods provides the smallest **forecasting errors** (the absolute value of the difference between the actual sales and forecasted sales).

forecasting error

The deviation of the forecast from the realized quantity. (See also Section 4.2)

After determining the forecasting error in each of a number of months for any forecasting method, one common measure of the accuracy of that method is the *average* of these forecasting errors. (This average is more precisely defined as the **mean absolute deviation**, which is abbreviated as **MAD**, but we commonly will refer to it more simply as the *average forecasting error.*) This is a reasonable measure of accuracy when

the seriousness of a forecasting error is considered to be roughly proportional to the size of the forecasting error.

mean absolute deviation (MAD)

The average forecasting error. (See also Section 4.2)

MAD

An acronym for mean absolute deviation, which refers to the average forecasting error. (See also Section 4.2)

However, instead of assuming proportionality, there are some situations where the consequences of incurring forecasting errors somewhat larger than hoped are very serious. For such situations, another popular measure of the accuracy of a forecasting method is the average of the *square* of its forecasting errors. (This measure is referred to as the **mean square error**, which is abbreviated as **MSE**.) Throughout this chapter, MAD and MSE values are used to help analyze which forecasting method should be used in the case study.

mean square error (MSE)

The average of the square of the forecasting errors. (See also Section 4.2)

MSE

An acronym for mean square error, the average of the square of the forecasting errors. (See also Section 4.2)

For some types of products, the sales to be anticipated in a particular month are influenced by the time of the year. For example, a product which is popular for holiday gifts could well have December sales that are twice as large as January sales. For any product influenced by seasonal factors, it is important to incorporate these seasonal factors into the forecasts. This plays a fundamental role in the analysis of the case study throughout the chapter.

Although we have described the various forecasting techniques in terms of forecasts of sales month by month for the Fastchips problem, other forecasting applications can be somewhat different. The quantity being forecasted might be something other than sales and the periods involved might be something like quarters or years instead of months. For example, this chapter's case study involves forecasts of the number of calls to a call center on a quarterly basis.

When using any of these forecasting techniques, it is also important to look behind the numbers to try to understand what is driving the quantity being forecasted in order to adjust the forecast provided by the forecasting technique in an appropriate way. This is a key lesson provided by the analysis of the case study. When there are factors that are driving changes in the quantity being forecasted, the judgmental forecasting methods described in Section 4.6 also can play a useful role.

A summary of the formulas for all the forecasting techniques described above (and elaborated upon throughout the chapter) is provided at the end of the chapter.

Review *Questions*

. What is the last-value forecasting method and when might it be a reasonable method to use?
. What is the averaging forecasting method and when might it be a reasonable method to use?
. What is the moving-average forecasting method and when might it be a reasonable method to use?
. How does the exponential smoothing forecasting method differ from the moving-average forecasting method?
. How does exponential smoothing with trend differ from the exponential smoothing forecasting method?
. How does the linear regression forecasting method obtain forecasts?
. What are the two main measures of the accuracy of a forecasting method?

4.2 A CASE STUDY: THE COMPUTER CLUB WAREHOUSE (CCW) PROBLEM

The **Computer Club Warehouse** (commonly referred to as **CCW**) sells various computer products online at bargain prices. Its products include desktop and laptop computers, peripherals, hardware accessories, supplies, software, and computer-related furniture. While many orders are placed directly online, CCW also relies heavily on a call center in order to provide personal service via chat or phone to customers making difficult option decisions. The same call center is also used to provide CCW's renowned *White Glove Service.* This post-purchase service allows customers to contact

support via chat, phone, or video call for assistance with installation, assembly, or other issues.

The CCW Call Center

The call center is never closed. During busy hours, it is staffed by dozens of agents. These agents receive two week's training before beginning work. This training emphasizes how to efficiently and courteously handle customer inquiries about the entire product line offered by CCW. The agents are then closely monitored during a probationary period to assess their performance. Any agents that do not meet the level of service expected by CCW are not retained. Although the agents are well paid, the tedium and pressure associated with the job leads to a fairly high turnover rate.

If an agent is not free when a call arrives, it is placed on hold with a recorded message giving expected wait time and then background music. Chat requests are handled similarly, with a message indicating expected wait time if an agent is not immediately available. While most customers are willing to wait at least a short while, many are not. Therefore, it is very important to have enough agents on duty to minimize waiting. On the other hand, because of the high labor costs for the agents, CCW tries to avoid having so many agents on duty that they have significant idle time.

Consequently, obtaining forecasts of the demand for the agents is crucial to the company.

The Call Center Manager, Lydia Weigelt

The current manager of the call center is Lydia Weigelt. As the top student in her graduating class from business school, she was wooed by several top companies before choosing CCW. Extremely bright and hard driving, she is being groomed to enter top management at CCW in the coming years.

When Lydia was hired a little over three years ago, she was assigned to her current position in order to learn the business from the ground up. The call center is considered to be the nerve center of the entire CCW operation.

Before Lydia's arrival, the company had suffered from serious management problems with the call center. Orders were not being processed efficiently. A few were even misdirected. Staffing levels never seemed to be right. Management directives to adjust the levels kept overcompensating in the opposite direction. Data needed to get a handle on the staffing level problem hadn't been kept. Morale was low.

All that changed when Lydia arrived. One of her first moves was to install procedures for gathering the data needed to make decisions on staffing levels. The key data included a detailed record of call volume and how much of the volume was being handled by each agent. Efficiency improved substantially. Despite running a tight ship, Lydia took great pains to praise and reward good work. Morale increased dramatically.

Although gratified by the great improvement in the operation of the call center, Lydia still has one major frustration. At the end of each quarter, when she knows how many agents are not being retained at the end of their probationary period, she makes a decision on how many new agents to hire to go through the next training session (held at the beginning of each quarter). She has developed an excellent procedure for estimating the staffing level needed to cover any particular call volume. However, each time she has used this procedure to set the staffing level for the upcoming quarter, based on her forecast of the call volume, the forecast usually has turned out to be considerably off. Therefore, she still isn't getting the right staffing levels.

Better forecasts of call volume are needed.

Lydia has concluded that her next project should be to develop a better forecasting method to replace the current one.

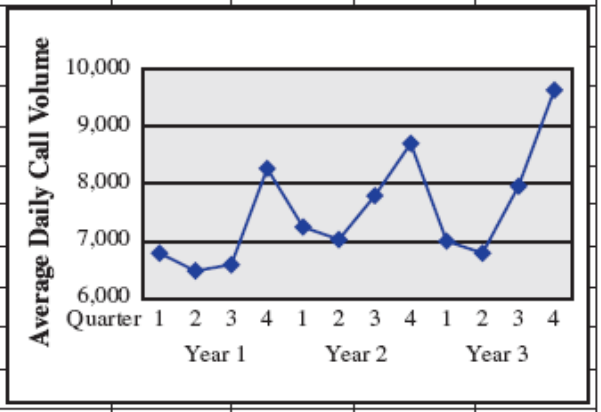
Lydia's Current Forecasting Method

Thanks to Lydia's data-gathering procedures installed shortly after her arrival, reliable data on call volume now are available for the past three years. Figure 4.1 shows the average number of calls received per day in each of the four quarters of these years. The right side also displays these same data to show the pattern graphically. This graph was generated by selecting the data in D4:D15 and then selecting a Line chart from the Insert tab of the ribbon.

FIGURE 4.1

The average number of calls received per day at the CCW call center in each of the four quarters of the past three years.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	**CCW's Average Daily Call Volume**								
2									
3		Year	Quarter	Call Volume					
4		1	1	6,809					
5		1	2	6,465					
6		1	3	6,569					
7		1	4	8,266					
8		2	1	7,257					
9		2	2	7,064					
10		2	3	7,784					
11		2	4	8,724					
12		3	1	6,992					
13		3	2	6,822					
14		3	3	7,949					
15		3	4	9,650					



Note that the sales in Quarter 4 jump up each year during the holiday season. When Lydia first joined CCW, the president told her about the "25 percent rule" that the company had traditionally used to forecast call volume (and sales).

page 144

Forecasts need to take into account the seasonal pattern of increased sales in Quarter 4 due to holiday purchases.

The 25 Percent Rule: Since sales are relatively stable through the year except for a substantial increase during the Christmas season, assume that each quarter's call volume will be the same as for the preceding quarter, except for adding 25 percent for Quarter 4. Thus,

Forecast for Quarter 2 = Call volume for Quarter 1
Forecast for Quarter 3 = Call volume for Quarter 2
Forecast for Quarter 4 = 1.25(Call volume for Quarter 3)

The forecast for the next year's Quarter 1 then would be obtained from the current year's Quarter 4 by

$$\text{Forecast for next Quarter 1} = \frac{\text{Call volume for Quarter 4}}{1.25}$$

This is the forecasting method that Lydia has been using. (Referring back to the forecasting methods introduced in Section 4.1, this 25 percent rule is a

last-value forecasting method along with a seasonal adjustment for Quarter 4.)

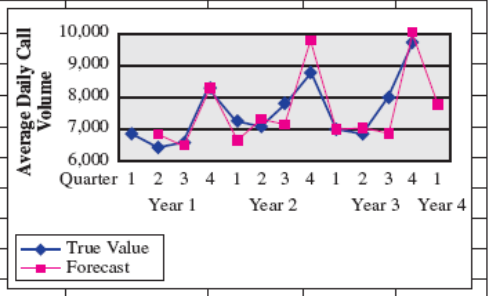
Figure 4.2 shows the forecasts that Lydia obtained with this method. Column F gives the **forecasting error** (the deviation of the forecast from what then turned out to be the true value of the call volume) in each case. Since the total of the 11 forecasting errors is 4,662, the average is

$$\text{Average forecasting error} = \frac{4{,}662}{11} = 424$$

FIGURE 4.2

This spreadsheet records the results of applying the 25 percent rule over the past three years to forecast the average daily call volume for the upcoming quarter.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	**Lydia's Current Forecasting Method for CCW's Average Daily Call Volume**											
2												
3						**Forecasting**						
4		**Year**	**Quarter**	**Data**	**Forecast**	**Error**		**Mean Absolute Deviation**				
5		1	1	6,809				MAD =	424			
6		1	2	6,465	6,809	344						
7		1	3	6,569	6,465	104		**Mean Square Error**				
8		1	4	8,266	8,211	55		MSE =	317,815			
9		2	1	7,257	6,613	644						
10		2	2	7,064	7,257	193						
11		2	3	7,784	7,064	720						
12		2	4	8,724	9,730	1,006						
13		3	1	6,992	6,979	13						
14		3	2	6,822	6,992	170						
15		3	3	7,949	6,822	1,127						
16		3	4	9,650	9,936	286						
17		4	1		7,720							
18		4	2									
19		4	3									
20		4	4									



Range Name	Cells
Data	D5:D20
Forecast	E5:E20
ForecastingError	F5:F20

	E	F
3		**Forecasting**
4	**Forecast**	**Error**
5		
6	=D5	=ABS(D6-E6)
7	=D6	=ABS(D7-E7)
8	=1.25*D7	=ABS(D8-E8)
9	=D8/1.25	=ABS(D9-E9)
10	=D9	=ABS(D10-E10)
11	:	:
12	:	:

	H	I
5	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	H	I
8	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/ COUNT(ForecastingError)

forecasting error

The deviation of the forecast from the realized quantity. (See also Section 4.1)

As mentioned in Section 4.1, the average forecasting error is commonly called **MAD,** which stands for **mean absolute deviation.** Its formula is

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\text{Sum of forecasting errors}}{\text{Number of forecasts}}$$

MAD is simply the average of the forecasting errors.

Thus, in this case, cell I5 gives

$$\text{MAD} = 424$$

To put this value of MAD = 424 into perspective, note that 424 is over 5 percent of the average daily call volume in most quarters. With forecasting errors ranging as high as 1,127, two of the errors are well over 10 percent. Although errors of this size are common in typical applications of forecasting, greater accuracy is needed for this particular application. Errors of 5 and 10 percent make it impossible to properly set the staffing level for a quarter. No wonder Lydia is *mad* about the poor job that the 25 percent rule is doing. A better forecasting method is needed.

page 145

Another popular measure of the accuracy of forecasting methods is called the **mean square error** and is abbreviated as **MSE.** Its formula is

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{\text{Sum of square of forecasting errors}}{\text{Number of forecasts}}$$

MSE is the average of the *square* of the forecasting errors.

Thus, in Figure 4.2,

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{(344)^2 + (104)^2 + \ldots + (286)^2}{11}$$
$$= 317{,}815$$

as given in cell I8. The advantage of squaring the forecasting errors is that it increases the weight of the large errors relative to the weight given to the small errors. Small errors are only to be expected with even the best forecasting methods and, since such errors have no serious consequences, decreasing their weight is desirable. It is the large forecasting

page 146

errors that have serious consequences. Therefore, it is good to give a relatively large penalty to a forecasting method that occasionally allows large forecasting errors while rewarding a forecasting method that consistently keeps the errors reasonably small. When comparing two such methods, this can result in the former kind of method receiving the larger value of MSE even though it has the smaller MAD value. Thus, MSE provides a useful complement to MAD by providing additional information about how consistently a forecasting method avoids seriously large errors. However, the disadvantage of MSE compared to MAD is a greater difficulty in interpreting the significance of its value for an individual forecasting method. (For example, it is difficult to attach an intuitive meaning to the value of MSE = 317,815 obtained above.) Consequently, Lydia (who is familiar with both measures) will focus most of her attention on MAD values while keeping her eye on MSE values as well.

A bad forecasting error greatly increases the value of the MSE.

The Plan to Find a Better Forecasting Method

Lydia remembers taking a management science course in college. She recalls that one of the topics in the course was *forecasting,* so she decides to review her textbook and class notes on this topic.

This review reminds her that she is dealing with what is called a *time series.*

A **time series** is a series of observations over time of some quantity of interest. For example, the series of observations of average daily call volume for the most recent 12 quarters, as given in Figure 4.1, constitute a time series.

time series

A series of observations over time of some quantity of interest. (Section 4.2).

She also is reminded that a variety of statistical methods are available for using the historical data from a time series to forecast a future observation in the series. These types of statistical forecasting methods are referred to as **time series forecasting methods.** Her task now is to review these methods, along with other statistical forecasting methods, and assess which one is best suited for her particular forecasting problem.

time series forecasting methods

A method that uses the past observations in a time series to forecast what the next value will be. (Also see Section 4.3).

To assist her in this task for a few weeks, Lydia gains approval from the CCW president to contract for the services of a consultant (a former classmate) from a management science consulting firm that specializes largely in forecasting.

The next section begins to describe their approach to this problem.

Review *Questions*

. How does the Computer Club Warehouse (CCW) operate?
. What are the consequences of not having enough agents on duty in the CCW call center? Of having too many?
. What is Lydia's current major frustration?
. What is CCW's 25 percent rule?
. What is MAD?
. What is MSE?
. What is a time series?

4.3 APPLYING TIME SERIES FORECASTING METHODS TO THE CASE STUDY

As mentioned at the end of the preceding section, *time series forecasting methods* are statistical forecasting methods that use a *time series* (a series of observations over time of some quantity of interest) to forecast a future observation in the series based on its previous values. Several of these methods were introduced in Section 4.1. We focus in this section on further describing these methods and applying them to the case study, where the quantity of interest to be forecasted is the average daily call volume for the next quarter.

Figure 4.1 in the preceding section highlights the seasonal pattern of CCW's call volumes, with a large jump up each fourth quarter. Therefore, before considering specific forecasting methods, Lydia

and the consultant begin by addressing how to deal with this seasonal pattern.

Considering Seasonal Effects

For many years, the folklore at CCW has been that the call volume (and sales) will be pretty stable over the first three quarters of a year and then will jump up by about 25 percent in Quarter 4. This has been the basis for the 25 percent rule.

To check how close this folklore still is to reality, the consultant uses the data previously given in Figure 4.1 to calculate the average daily call volume for each quarter over the past three years. For example, the average for Quarter 1 is

$$\text{Average (Quarter1)} = \frac{(6{,}809 + 7{,}257 + 6{,}992}{3} = 7{,}019$$

These averages for all four quarters are shown in the second column of Table 4.1. Underneath this column, the *overall average* over all four quarters is calculated to be 7,529. Dividing the average for each quarter by this overall average gives the *seasonal factor* shown in the third column.

TABLE 4.1

Calculation of the Seasonal Factors for the CCW Problem

Quarter	Three-Year Average	Seasonal Factor
1	7,019	$\frac{7{,}019}{7{,}529} = 0.93$
2	6,784	$\frac{6{,}784}{7{,}529} = 0.90$
3	7,434	$\frac{7{,}434}{7{,}529} = 0.99$
4	$\text{Total} = \frac{8{,}880}{30{,}117}$ $\text{Average} = \frac{30{,}117}{4} = 7{,}529$	$\frac{8{,}880}{7{,}529} = 1.18$

In general, the **seasonal factor** for any period of a year (a quarter, a month, etc.) measures how that period compares to the overall average for an entire year. Specifically, using historical data, the seasonal factor is calculated to be

$$\text{Seasonal factor} = \frac{\text{Average for the period}}{\text{Overall average}}$$

seasonal factor

A factor for any period of a year that measures how that period compares to the overall average for an entire year.

This Excel template calculates seasonal factors on either a monthly or quarterly basis.

An Excel template is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for calculating these seasonal factors. Figure 4.3 shows this template applied to the CCW problem.

FIGURE 4.3

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for calculating seasonal factors is applied here to the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Estimating Seasonal Factors for CCW**						
2							
3				**True**			
4		**Year**	**Quarter**	**Value**		**Type of Seasonality**	
5		1	1	6,809		Quarterly	
6		1	2	6,465			
7		1	3	6,569			
8		1	4	8,266			**Estimate for**
9		2	1	7,257		**Quarter**	**Seasonal Factor**
10		2	2	7,064		1	0.9323
11		2	3	7,784		2	0.9010
12		2	4	8,724		3	0.9873
13		3	1	6,992		4	1.1794
14		3	2	6,822			
15		3	3	7,949			
16		3	4	9,650			

Range Name	Cells
SeasonalFactor	G10:G21
TrueValue	D5:D41
TypeOfSeasonality	F5

	G
8	**Estimate for**
9	**Seasonal Factor**
10	=AVERAGE(D5,D9,D13)/AVERAGE(TrueValue)
11	=AVERAGE(D6,D10,D14)/AVERAGE(TrueValue)
12	=AVERAGE(D7,D11,D15)/AVERAGE(TrueValue)
13	=AVERAGE(D8,D12,D16)/AVERAGE(TrueValue)

Note the significant differences in the seasonal factors for the first three quarters, with Quarter 3 considerably above the other two. This makes sense to Lydia, who has long suspected that back-to-school buying should give a small boost to sales in Quarter 3.

In contrast to the 25 percent rule, the seasonal factor for Quarter 4 is only 19 percent higher than that for Quarter 3. (However, the Quarter 4 factor *is* about 25 percent above 0.94, which is the *average* of the seasonal factors for the first three quarters.)

Although data on call volumes are not available prior to the most recent three years, reliable sales data have been kept. Upon checking these data several years back, Lydia finds the same seasonal patterns occurring.

Conclusion: The seasonal factors given in Table 4.1 appear to accurately reflect subtle but important differences in all the seasons.

Therefore, these factors now will be used, instead of the 25 percent rule, to indicate seasonal patterns until such time as future data indicate a shift in these patterns.

The Seasonally Adjusted Time Series

It is much easier to analyze sales data and detect new trends if the data are first adjusted to remove the effect of seasonal patterns. To remove the seasonal effects from the time series shown in Figure 4.1, each of these average daily call volumes needs to be divided by the corresponding seasonal factor given in Table 4.1 and Figure 4.3. Thus, the formula is

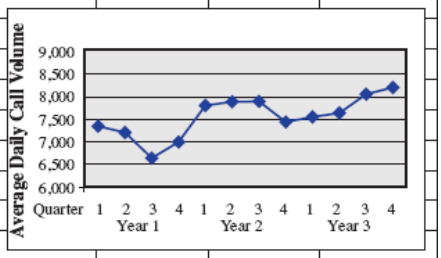
$$\text{Seasonally adjusted call volume} = \frac{\text{Actual call volume}}{\text{Seasonal factor}}$$

Applying this formula to all 12 call volumes in Figure 4.1 gives the seasonally adjusted call volumes shown in column F of the Excel template in Figure 4.4.

FIGURE 4.4

The seasonally adjusted time series for the CCW problem obtained by dividing each actual average daily call volume in Figure 4.1 by the corresponding seasonal factor obtained in Figure 4.3.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Seasonally Adjusted Time Series for CCW									
2										
3				Seasonal	Actual	Seasonally Adjusted				
4		Year	Quarter	Factor	Call Volume	Call Volume				
5		1	1	0.93	6,809	7,322				
6		1	2	0.90	6,465	7,183				
7		1	3	0.99	6,569	6,635				
8		1	4	1.18	8,266	7,005				
9		2	1	0.93	7,257	7,803				
10		2	2	0.90	7,064	7,849				
11		2	3	0.99	7,784	7,863				
12		2	4	1.18	8,724	7,393				
13		3	1	0.93	6,992	7,518				
14		3	2	0.90	6,822	7,580				
15		3	3	0.99	7,949	8,029				
16		3	4	1.18	9,650	8,178				



	F
3	Seasonally Adjusted
4	Call Volume
5	=E5/D5
6	=E6/D6
7	=E7/D7
8	=E8/D8
9	:
10	:

In effect, these seasonally adjusted call volumes show what the call volumes would have been if the calls that occur because of the time of the year (holiday shopping, back-to-school shopping, etc.) had been spread evenly throughout the year instead. Compare the plots in Figures 4.4 and 4.1. After considering the smaller vertical scale in Figure 4.4, note how much less fluctuation this figure has than Figure 4.1 because of removing seasonal effects. However, this figure still is far from completely flat because fluctuations in call volume occur for other reasons besides just seasonal effects. For example, hot new products attract a flurry of calls. A jump also occurs just after the mailing of a catalog. Some random fluctuations occur without any apparent explanation. Figure 4.4 enables seeing and analyzing these fluctuations in sales volumes that are not caused by seasonal effects.

Removing seasonal effects provides a much clearer picture of trends.

The pattern in these remaining fluctuations in the **seasonally adjusted time series** (especially the pattern for the most recent data points) is particularly helpful for forecasting where the next data point will fall. Thus, in Figure 4.4, the data points fall in the range between 6,635 and 8,178, with an average of 7,529. However, the last few data points are trending upward above this average, and the last point is the highest in the entire time series.

This suggests that the next data point for the upcoming quarter probably will be above the 7,529 average and may well be near or even above the last data point of 8,178. page 149

seasonally adjusted time series

An adjustment of the original time series that removes seasonal effects.

The various **time series forecasting methods** use different approaches to projecting forward the pattern in the seasonally adjusted time series to forecast the next data point. The main methods will be presented in this section.

After obtaining a forecast for the seasonally adjusted time series, all these methods then convert this forecast to a forecast of the actual call volume (without seasonal adjustments), as outlined below.

Outline for Forecasting Call Volume

1. Select a time series forecasting method.
2. Apply this method to the seasonally adjusted time series to obtain a forecast of the seasonally adjusted call volume for the next quarter.[1]
3. Multiply this forecast by the corresponding seasonal factor in Table 4.1 to obtain a forecast of the actual call volume (without seasonal adjustment).

If seasonal adjustments are not needed, you can obtain your forecast directly from the original time series and then skip step 3.

The following descriptions of forecasting methods focus on how to perform step 2, that is, how to forecast the next data point for a given time series. We also include a spreadsheet in each case that applies steps 2 and 3 throughout the past three years and then calculates both MAD (the average forecasting error) and MSE (the average of the square of the forecasting errors). Lydia and the consultant are paying particular attention to the MAD values to assess which method seems best suited for forecasting CCW call volumes. page 150

The Last-Value Forecasting Method

The **last-value forecasting method** ignores all the data points in a time series except the last one. It then uses this last value as the forecast of what the next data point will turn out to be, so the formula is simply

$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Last value}$$

Figure 4.5 shows what would have happened if this method had been applied to the CCW problem over the past three years. (We are supposing that the seasonal factors given in Table 4.1 already were being used then.) Column E gives the values of the seasonally adjusted call volumes from column F of Figure 4.4. Each of these values then becomes the seasonally adjusted *forecast* for the *next* quarter, as shown in column F.

FIGURE 4.5

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for the last-value method with seasonal adjustments is applied here to the CCW problem.

Last-Value Forecasting Method with Seasonality for CCW

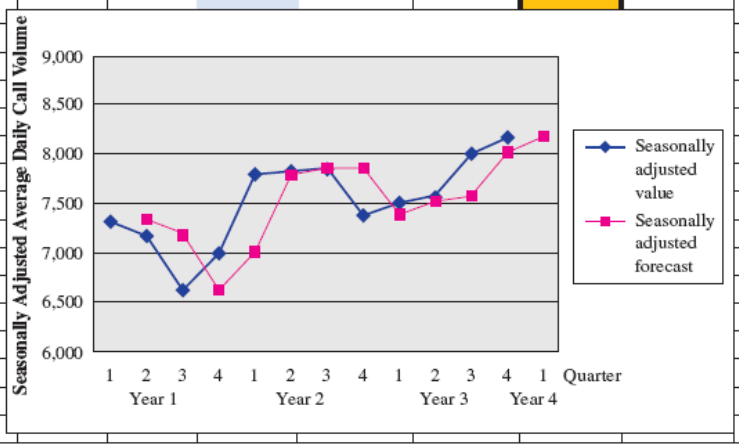
Year	Quarter	True Value	Seasonally Adjusted Value	Seasonally Adjusted Forecast	Actual Forecast	Forecasting Error
1	1	6,809	7,322			
1	2	6,465	7,183	7,322	6,589	124
1	3	6,569	6,635	7,183	7,112	543
1	4	8,266	7,005	6,635	7,830	436
2	1	7,257	7,803	7,005	6,515	742
2	2	7,064	7,849	7,803	7,023	41
2	3	7,784	7,863	7,849	7,770	14
2	4	8,724	7,393	7,863	9,278	554
3	1	6,992	7,518	7,393	6,876	116
3	2	6,822	7,580	7,518	6,766	56
3	3	7,949	8,029	7,580	7,504	445
3	4	9,650	8,178	8,029	9,475	175
4	1			8,178	7,606	
4	2					

Type of Seasonality: Quarterly

Quarter	Seasonal Factor
1	0.93
2	0.90
3	0.99
4	1.18

Mean Absolute Deviation
MAD = 295

Mean Square Error
MSE = 145,909



Range Name	Cells
ActualForecast	G6:G30
ForecastingError	H6:H30
MAD	K23
MSE	K26
SeasonalFactor	K9:K20
SeasonallyAdjustedForecast	F6:F30
SeasonallyAdjustedValue	E6:E30
TrueValue	D6:D30
TypeOfSeasonality	K6

	E	F	G	H
3	Seasonally	Seasonally		
4	Adjusted	Adjusted	Actual	Forecasting
5	Value	Forecast	Forecast	Error
6	=D6/K9			
7	=D7/K10	=E6	=K10*F7	=ABS(D7-G7)
8	=D8/K11	=E7	=K11*F8	=ABS(D8-G8)
9	=D9/K12	=E8	=K12*F9	=ABS(D9-G9)
10	=D10/K9	=E9	=K9*F10	=ABS(D10-G10)
11	=D11/K10	=E10	=K10*F11	=ABS(D11-G11)
12	:	:	:	:
13	:	:	:	:

	J	K
23	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	J	K
26	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/COUNT(ForecastingError)

Rows 22–33 show separate plots of these values in columns E and F. Note how the plot of the seasonally adjusted *forecasts* follows exactly the same path as the plot of the values of the seasonally adjusted call volumes but shifted to the right by one quarter. Therefore, each time there is a large

shift up or down in the call volume, the forecasts are one quarter late in catching up with the shift.

Multiplying each seasonally adjusted forecast in column F by the corresponding seasonal factor in column K gives the forecast of the actual call volume (without seasonal adjustment) presented in column G. The difference between this forecast and the actual call volume in column D gives the forecasting error in column H.

Thus, column G is using the following formula:

$$\text{Actual forecast} = \text{Seasonal factor} \times \text{Seasonally adjusted forecast}$$

as indicated by the equations at the bottom of the figure. For example, since cell K9 gives 0.93 as the seasonal factor for Quarter 1, the forecast of the actual call volume for Year 2, Quarter 1 given in cell G10 is

$$\text{Actual forecast} = (0.93)(7{,}005) = 6{,}515$$

Since the true value of this call volume turned out to be 7,257, the forecasting error calculated in cell H10 for this quarter is

$$\text{Forecasting error} = 7{,}257 - 6{,}515 = 742$$

Summing these forecasting errors over all 11 quarters of forecasts gives a total of 3,246, so the average forecasting error given in cell K23 is

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{3{,}246}{11} = 295$$

This compares with MAD = 424 for the 25 percent rule that Lydia has been using (as described in the preceding section).

Similarly, the average of the *square* of these forecasting errors is calculated in cell K26 as

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{(124)^2 + (543)^2 + \cdots + (175)^2}{11} = 145{,}909$$

This value also is considerably less than the corresponding value, MSE = 317,815, shown in Figure 4.2 for the 25 percent rule.

Except for its graph, Figure 4.5 displays one of the templates in this chapter's Excel files. In fact, two Excel templates are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for each of the forecasting methods presented in this section. One template performs all the calculations for you for the case where no seasonal adjustments are needed. The second template does the same when seasonal adjustments are included, as illustrated by this figure. With all templates of the second type, you have complete flexibility for what to enter as the seasonal factors. One option is to *calculate* these factors based on historical data (as was done with another Excel template in Figure 4.3). Another is to *estimate* them based on historical experience, as with the 25 percent rule.

page 151

page 152

The 25 percent rule actually is a *last-value forecasting method* as well, but with different seasonal factors. Since this rule holds that the call volume in the fourth quarter will average 25 percent more than *each* of the first three quarters, its seasonal factors are essentially 0.94 for Quarters 1, 2, and 3 and 1.18 (25 percent more than 0.94) for Quarter 4. Thus, the lower value of MAD in Figure 4.5 is entirely due to refining the seasonal factors in Table 4.1.

Lydia is enthusiastic to see the substantial improvement obtained by simply refining the seasonal factors. However, the consultant quickly adds a note of caution. The forecasts obtained in Figure 4.5 are using the same data that were used to calculate these refined seasonal factors, which creates some bias for these factors to tend to perform better than on new data (future call volumes). Fortunately, Lydia also has checked older sales data to confirm that these seasonal factors seem quite accurate. The consultant agrees that it appears that these factors should provide a significant improvement over the 25 percent rule.

The last-value forecasting method sometimes is called the **naïve method,** because statisticians consider it naïve to use just a *sample size of one* when additional relevant data are available. However, when conditions are changing rapidly, it may be that the last value is the only relevant data point for forecasting the next value under current conditions. Therefore, managers who are anything but naïve do occasionally use this method under such circumstances.

naïve method

Another name for the last-value forecasting method.

This method is a good one to use when conditions are changing rapidly.

The Averaging Forecasting Method

The **averaging forecasting method** goes to the other extreme. Rather than using just a sample size of one, this method uses *all* the data points in the time series and simply *averages* these points. Thus, the forecast of what the next data point will turn out to be is

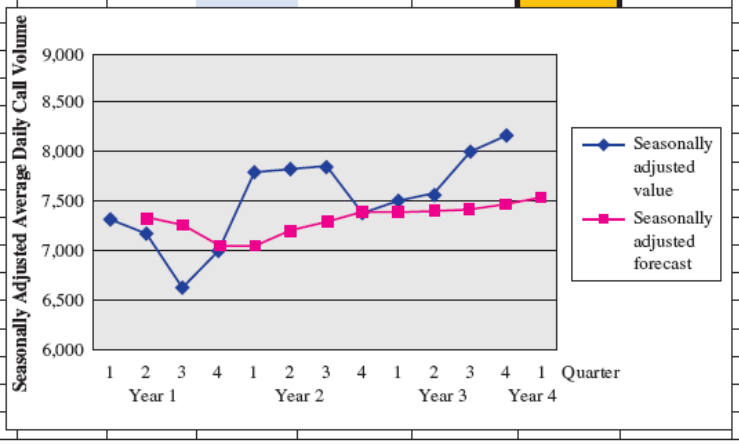
$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Average of all data to date}$$

Using the corresponding Excel template to apply this method to the CCW problem over the past three years gives the seasonally adjusted forecasts shown in column F of Figure 4.6. At the bottom of the figure, the equation entered into each of the column F cells is just the average of the column E cells in the preceding rows. The middle of the figure shows a plot of these seasonally adjusted *forecasts* for all three years next to the values of the seasonally adjusted call volumes. Note how each forecast lies at the average of *all* the preceding call volumes. Therefore, each time there is a large shift in the call volume, the subsequent forecasts are very slow in catching up with the shift.

FIGURE 4.6

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for the averaging method with seasonal adjustments is applied here to the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Averaging Forecasting Method with Seasonality for CCW**										
2											
3					**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**					
4				**True**	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**			
5		**Year**	**Quarter**	**Value**	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**			**Type of Seasonality**
6		1	1	6,809	7,322						Quarterly
7		1	2	6,465	7,183	7,322	6,589	124			
8		1	3	6,569	6,635	7,252	7,180	611		**Quarter**	**Seasonal Factor**
9		1	4	8,266	7,005	7,047	8,315	49		1	0.93
10		2	1	7,257	7,803	7,036	6,544	713		2	0.90
11		2	2	7,064	7,849	7,190	6,471	593		3	0.99
12		2	3	7,784	7,863	7,300	7,227	557		4	1.18
13		2	4	8,724	7,393	7,380	8,708	16			
14		3	1	6,992	7,518	7,382	6,865	127			
15		3	2	6,822	7,580	7,397	6,657	165			
16		3	3	7,949	8,029	7,415	7,341	608			
17		3	4	9,650	8,178	7,471	8,816	834			
18		4	1			7,530	7,003				
19		4	2								
20											
21											
22										**Mean Absolute Deviation**	
23										MAD =	400
24											
25										**Mean Square Error**	
26										MSE =	242,876
27											
28											
29											
30											
31											
32											
33											
34											
35											



Range Name	Cells
ActualForecast	G6:G30
ForecastingError	H6:H30
MAD	K23
MSE	K26
SeasonalFactor	K9:K20
SeasonallyAdjustedForecast	F6:F30
SeasonallyAdjustedValue	E6:E30
TrueValue	D6:D30
TypeOfSeasonality	K6

	E	F	G	H
3	**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**		
4	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**
5	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**
6	=D6/K9			
7	=D7/K10	=AVERAGE(E$6:E6)	=K10*F7	=ABS(D7-G7)
8	=D8/K11	=AVERAGE(E$6:E7)	=K11*F8	=ABS(D8-G8)
9	=D9/K12	=AVERAGE(E$6:E8)	=K12*F9	=ABS(D9-G9)
10	=D10/K9	=AVERAGE(E$6:E9)	=K9*F10	=ABS(D10-G10)
11	=D11/K10	=AVERAGE(E$6:E10)	=K10*F11	=ABS(D11-G11)
12	:	:	:	:
13	:	:	:	:

	J	K
23	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	J	K
26	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/COUNT(ForecastingError)

Multiplying all the seasonally adjusted forecasts in column F by the corresponding seasonal factors in column K then gives the *forecasts of the actual call volumes* shown in column G. Based on the resulting forecasting errors given in column H, the average forecasting error in this case (cell K23) is

$$\text{MAD} = 400$$

which is considerably larger than the 295 obtained for the last-value forecasting method. Similarly, the average of the square of the forecasting errors given in cell K26 is

$$\text{MSE} = 242{,}876$$

which also is considerably larger than the corresponding value of 145,909 for the last-value forecasting method.

Lydia is quite surprised, since she expected an average to do much better than a sample size of one. The consultant agrees that averaging should perform considerably better if conditions remain the same throughout the time series. However, it appears that the conditions affecting the CCW call volume have been changing significantly over the past three years. The call volume was quite a bit higher in year 2 than in year 1, and then jumped up again late in year 3, apparently as popular new products became available. Therefore, the Year 1 values were not very relevant for forecasting under the changed conditions of years 2 and 3. Including the year 1 call volumes in the overall average caused *every* forecast for years 2 and 3 to be too low, sometimes by large amounts.

The averaging forecasting method is a good one to use when conditions are very stable, which is not the case for CCW.

The Moving-Average Forecasting Method

page 153

page 154

Rather than using old data that may no longer be relevant, the **moving-average forecasting method** averages the data for only the most recent time periods. Let

n = Number of most recent periods considered particularly relevant for forecasting the next period

Then the forecast for the next period is

$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Average of last } n \text{ values}$$

Lydia and the consultant decide to use $n = 4$, since conditions appear to be relatively stable for only about four quarters (one year) at a time.

With n = 4, the first forecast becomes available after four quarters of call volumes have been observed. Thus, the initial seasonally adjusted forecasts in cells F10:F12 of Figure 4.7 are

Y1, Q1: $$\text{Seas. adj. forecast} = \frac{7{,}322 + 7{,}186 + 6{,}635 + 7{,}005}{4} = 7{,}036$$

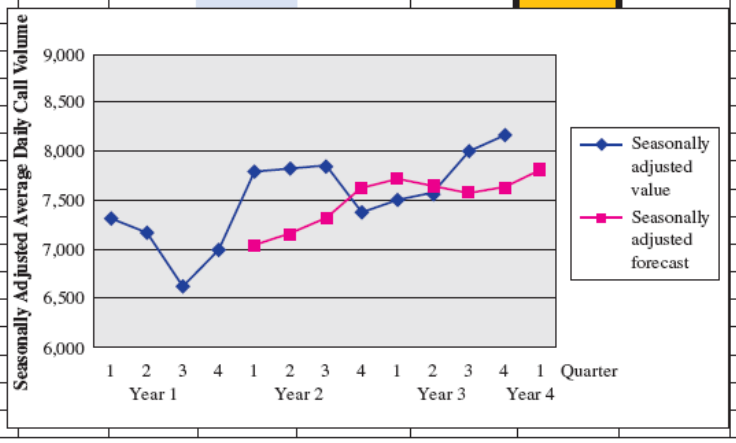
Y1, Q2: $$\text{Seas. adj. forecast} = \frac{7{,}183 + 6{,}635 + 7{,}005 + 7{,}803}{4} = 7{,}157$$

Y1, Q3: $$\text{Seas. adj. forecast} = \frac{6{,}635 + 7{,}005 + 7{,}803 + 7{,}849}{4} = 7{,}323$$

FIGURE 4.7

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for the moving-average method with seasonal adjustments is applied here to the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Moving-Average Forecasting Method with Seasonality for CCW**										
2											
3					**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**					
4				**True**	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**		**Number of previous**	
5		**Year**	**Quarter**	**Value**	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**		**periods to consider**	
6		1	1	6,809	7,322					*n* =	4
7		1	2	6,465	7,183						
8		1	3	6,569	6,635						**Type of Seasonality**
9		1	4	8,266	7,005						Quarterly
10		2	1	7,257	7,803	7,036	6,544	713			
11		2	2	7,064	7,849	7,157	6,441	623		**Quarter**	**Seasonal Factor**
12		2	3	7,784	7,863	7,323	7,250	534		1	0.93
13		2	4	8,724	7,393	7,630	9,003	279		2	0.90
14		3	1	6,992	7,518	7,727	7,186	194		3	0.99
15		3	2	6,822	7,580	7,656	6,890	68		4	1.18
16		3	3	7,949	8,029	7,589	7,513	436			
17		3	4	9,650	8,178	7,630	9,004	646			
18		4	1			7,826	7,279				
19		4	2								
20											
21											
22											
23											
24											
25										**Mean Absolute Deviation**	
26										MAD =	437
27											
28										**Mean Square Error**	
29										MSE =	238,816
30											
31											
32											
33											
34											
35											



Range Name	Cells
ActualForecast	G6:G30
ForecastingError	H6:H30
MAD	K26
MSE	K29
NumberOfPeriods	K6
SeasonalFactor	K12:K23
SeasonallyAdjustedForecast	F6:F30
SeasonallyAdjustedValue	E6:E30
TrueValue	D6:D30
TypeOfSeasonality	K9

	E	F	G	H
3	**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**		
4	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**
5	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**
6	=D6/K12			
7	=D7/K13			
8	=D8/K14			
9	=D9/K15			
10	=D10/K12	=AVERAGE(E6:E9)	=K12*F10	=ABS(D10-G10)
11	=D11/K13	=AVERAGE(E7:E10)	=K13*F11	=ABS(D11-G11)
12	=D12/K14	=AVERAGE(E8:E11)	=K14*F12	=ABS(D12-G12)
13	=D13/K15	=AVERAGE(E9:E12)	=K15*F13	=ABS(D13-G13)
14	=D14/K12	=AVERAGE(E10:E13)	=K12*F14	=ABS(D14-G14)
15	=D15/K13	=AVERAGE(E11:E14)	=K13*F15	=ABS(D15-G15)
16	:	:	:	:
17	:	:	:	:

	J	K
26	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	J	K
29	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/COUNT(ForecastingError)

Note how each forecast is updated from the preceding one by lopping off one observation (the oldest one) and adding one new one (the most recent observation).

Column F of Figure 4.7 shows all the seasonally adjusted forecasts obtained in this way with the equations at the bottom. For each of these forecasts, note in the plot how it lies at the average of the four preceding (seasonally adjusted) call volumes. Consequently, each time there is a large shift in the call volume, it takes four quarters for the forecasts to fully catch up with this shift (by which time another shift may already have occurred). Consequently, the average of the eight forecasting errors in column H is

$$\text{MAD} = 437$$

the highest of any of the methods so far, including even the 25 percent rule. The average of the square of the forecasting errors is somewhat better at

$$\text{MSE} = 238{,}816$$

since this is slightly lower than for the averaging method and considerably below the value for the 25 percent rule, but it is still substantially higher than for the last-value method.

Lydia is very puzzled about this surprisingly high MAD value. The moving-average method seemed like a very sensible approach to forecasting, with more rationale behind it than any of the previous methods. (It uses only recent history *and* it uses multiple observations.) So why should it do so poorly?

The moving-averaging forecasting method is a good one to use when conditions don't change much over the number of time periods included in the average.

The consultant explains that this is indeed a very good forecasting method when conditions remain pretty much the same over *n* time periods (or four quarters in this case). For example, the seasonally adjusted call volumes remained reasonably stable throughout year 2 and the first half of year 3. Consequently, the forecasting error dropped all the way down to 68 (cell H15) for the last of these six quarters. However, when conditions shift sharply, as with the big jump up in call volumes at the beginning of year 2, and then again in the middle of year 3, the next few forecasting errors tend to be very large.

Thus, the moving-average method is somewhat slow to respond to changing conditions. One reason is that it places the *same* weight on each of the last *n* values in the time series even though the older values may be less representative of current conditions than the last value observed.

The next method corrects this weighting defect.

The Exponential Smoothing Forecasting Method

The **exponential smoothing forecasting method** modifies the moving-average method by placing the greatest weight on the last value in the time series and then progressively smaller weights on the older values. However, rather than needing to calculate a *weighted average* each time, it uses a simpler formula to obtain the same result.

page 155

page 156

This formula for forecasting the next value in the time series combines the *last value* and the *last forecast* (the one used one time period ago to forecast this last value) as follows:

$$\text{Forecast} = \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Last forecast})$$

where α (the Greek letter alpha) is a constant between 0 and 1 called the **smoothing constant.** For example, if the last value in a particular time series is 24, the last forecast is 20, and $\alpha = 0.25$, then the forecast of the next value in the time series is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Forecast} &= 0.25(24) + 0.75(20)\\ &= 21\end{aligned}$$

smoothing constant

A parameter of the exponential smoothing forecasting method that gives the weight to be placed on the last value in the time series.

Two Excel templates (one without seasonal adjustments and one with) are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for applying this formula to generate a series of forecasts (period by period) for a time series when you specify the value of α.

The choice of the value for the smoothing constant α has a substantial effect on the forecast, so the choice should be made with care. A small value (say, $\alpha = 0.1$) is appropriate if conditions are remaining relatively stable. However, a larger value (say, $\alpha = 0.3$) is needed if significant changes in the conditions are occurring relatively frequently. Because of the frequent shifts in the CCW seasonally adjusted time series, Lydia and the consultant conclude that $\alpha = 0.5$ would be an appropriate value. (The values selected for most applications are between 0.1 and 0.3, but a larger value can be used in this kind of situation.)

The more unstable the conditions, the larger the smoothing constant α needs to be (but never bigger than 1).

When making the first forecast, there is no *last forecast* available to plug into the right-hand side of the above formula. Therefore, to get started, a reasonable approach is to make an *initial estimate* of the average value anticipated for the time series. This initial estimate is then labeled as the *last forecast* when using the formula for forecasting the second value in the time series after observing its first value (now labeled as the *last value*).

CCW call volumes have averaged just over 7,500 for the past three years, and the level of business just prior to Year 1 was comparable. Consequently, Lydia and the consultant decide to use

$$\text{Initial estimate} = 7{,}500$$

to begin retrospectively generating the forecasts over the past three years. Recall that the first few seasonally adjusted call volumes are 7,322, 7,183, and 6,635. Thus, using the above formula with $\alpha = 0.5$ for the second quarter onward, the first few seasonally adjusted forecasts are

Y1, Q1: Seas. adj. forecast = 7,500

Y1, Q2: Seas. adj. forecast = 0.5(7,322) + 0.5(7,500) = 7,411

Y1, Q3: Seas. adj. forecast = 0.5(7,183) + 0.5(7,411) = 7,297

Y1, Q4: Seas. adj. forecast = 0.5(6,635) + 0.5(7,297) = 6,966

To see why these forecasts are weighted averages of the time series values to date, look at the calculations for Quarters 2 and 3. Since

$$0.5(7{,}322) + 0.5(7{,}500) = 7{,}411$$

the forecast for Quarter 3 can be written as

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Seas. adj. forecast} &= 0.5(7{,}183) + 0.5(7{,}411)\\ &= 0.5(7{,}183) + 0.5[0.5(7{,}322) + 0.5(7{,}500)]\\ &= 0.5(7{,}183) + 0.25(7{,}322) + 0.25(7{,}500)\\ &= 7{,}297\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the forecast for Quarter 4 is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Seas. adj. forecast} &= 0.5(6{,}635) + 0.5(7{,}297)\\ &= 0.5(6{,}635) + 0.5[0.5(7{,}183) + 0.25(7{,}322) + 0.25(7{,}500)]\\ &= 0.5(6{,}635) + 0.25(7{,}183) + 0.125(7{,}322) + 0.125(7{,}500))\\ &= 6{,}966\end{aligned}$$

The exponential smoothing forecasting method places the greatest weight on the last value and then decreases the weights as the values get older.

Thus, this latter forecast places a weight of 0.5 on the last value, 0.25 on the next-to-last value, and 0.125 on the next prior value (the first one), with the remaining weight on the initial estimate. In subsequent quarters as more and more values are considered by the forecast, the same pattern continues of placing less and less weight on the values as they get older. Thus, with any choice of α, the weights prior to the initial estimate would be α, $\alpha(1-\alpha)$, $\alpha(1-\alpha)^2$, and so forth.

Therefore, choosing the value of α amounts to using this pattern to choose the desired progression of weights on the time series values. With frequent shifts in the time series, a large weight needs to be placed on the most recent value, with rapidly decreasing weights on older values. However, with a relatively stable time series, it is desirable to place a significant weight on many values in order to have a large sample size.

Further insight into the choice of α is provided by an alternative form of the forecasting formula.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Forecast} &= \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1-\alpha)(\text{Last forecast})\\ &= \alpha(\text{Last value}) + \text{Last forecast} - \alpha(\text{Last forecast})\\ &= \text{Last forecast} + \alpha(\text{Last value} - \text{Last forecast})\end{aligned}$$

where the absolute value of (Last value − Last forecast) is just the last forecasting error. Therefore, the bottom form of this formula indicates that each new forecast is adjusting the last forecast by adding or subtracting the quantity α *times the last forecasting error.* If the forecasting error usually is mainly due to random fluctuations in the time series values, then only a small value of α should be used for this adjustment. However, if the forecasting error often is largely due to a shift in the time series, then a large value of α is needed to make a substantial adjustment quickly.

Using $\alpha = 0.5$, the Excel template in Figure 4.8 provides all the results for CCW with this forecasting method. Rows 22–32 show a plot of all the seasonally adjusted forecasts next to the true values of the seasonally adjusted call volumes. Note how each forecast lies midway between the

preceding call volume and the preceding forecast. Therefore, each time there is a large shift in the call volume, the forecasts largely catch up with the shift rather quickly. The resulting average of the forecasting errors in column H is given in cell K28 as

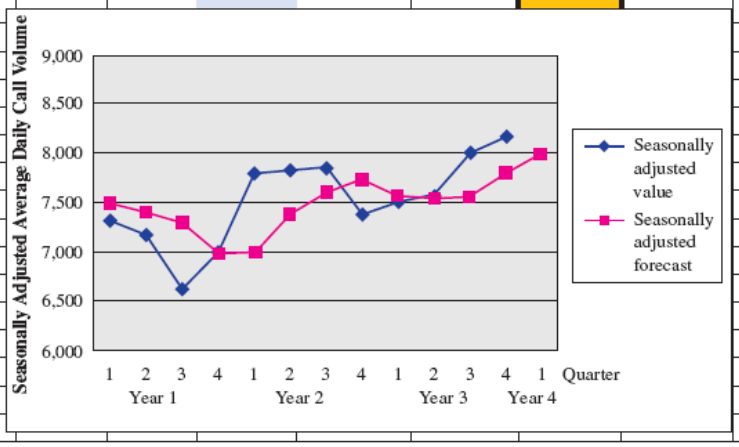
$$\text{MAD} = 324$$

FIGURE 4.8

page 158

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for the exponential smoothing method with seasonal adjustments is applied here to the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Exponential Smoothing Forecasting Method with Seasonality for CCW**										
2											
3					**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**					
4				**True**	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**		**Smoothing Constant**	
5		**Year**	**Quarter**	**Value**	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**		α =	0.5
6		1	1	6,809	7,322	7,500	6,975	166			
7		1	2	6,465	7,183	7,411	6,670	205		**Initial Estimate**	
8		1	3	6,569	6,635	7,297	7,224	655		Average =	7,500
9		1	4	8,266	7,005	6,966	8,220	46			
10		2	1	7,257	7,803	6,986	6,497	760			**Type of Seasonality**
11		2	2	7,064	7,849	7,394	6,655	409			Quarterly
12		2	3	7,784	7,863	7,622	7,545	239			
13		2	4	8,724	7,393	7,742	9,136	412		**Quarter**	**Seasonal Factor**
14		3	1	6,992	7,518	7,568	7,038	46		1	0.93
15		3	2	6,822	7,580	7,543	6,789	33		2	0.90
16		3	3	7,949	8,029	7,561	7,486	463		3	0.99
17		3	4	9,650	8,178	7,795	9,199	451		4	1.18
18		4	1			7,987	7,428				
19		4	2								
20											
21											
22											
23											
24											
25											
26											
27										**Mean Absolute Deviation**	
28										MAD =	324
29											
30										**Mean Square Error**	
31										MSE =	157,836
32											
33											
34											
35											



Range Name	Cells
ActualForecast	G6:G30
Alpha	K5
ForecastingError	H6:H30
InitialEstimate	K8
MAD	K28
MSE	K31
SeasonalFactor	K14:K25
SeasonallyAdjustedForecast	F6:F30
SeasonallyAdjustedValue	E6:E30
TrueValue	D6:D30
TypeOfSeasonality	K11

	E	F	G	H
3	**Seasonally**	**Seasonally**		
4	**Adjusted**	**Adjusted**	**Actual**	**Forecasting**
5	**Value**	**Forecast**	**Forecast**	**Error**
6	=D6/K14	=InitialEstimate	=K14*F6	=ABS(D6-G6)
7	=D7/K15	=Alpha*E6+(1-Alpha)*F6	=K15*F7	=ABS(D7-G7)
8	=D8/K16	=Alpha*E7+(1-Alpha)*F7	=K16*F8	=ABS(D8-G8)
9	=D9/K17	=Alpha*E8+(1-Alpha)*F8	=K17*F9	=ABS(D9-G9)
10	=D10/K14	=Alpha*E9+(1-Alpha)*F9	=K14*F10	=ABS(D10-G10)
11	=D11/K15	=Alpha*E10+(1-Alpha)*F10	=K15*F11	=ABS(D11-G11)
12	:	:	:	:
13	:	:	:	:

	J	K
28	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	J	K
31	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/COUNT(ForecastingError)

This is significantly smaller than for the previous forecasting methods, except for the value of MAD = 295 for the last-value forecasting method. The same comparison also holds for the average of the square of the forecasting errors, which is calculated in cell K31 as

MSE = 157,836

Lydia is somewhat frustrated at this point. She feels that she needs a method with average forecasting errors well below 295. Realizing that the last-value forecasting method is considered the *naïve* method, she had expected that such a popular and sophisticated method as exponential smoothing would beat it easily.

The consultant is somewhat surprised also. However, he points out that the difference between MAD = 324 for exponential smoothing and MAD = 295 for last-value forecasting is really too small to be statistically significant. If the same two methods were to be applied the *next* three years, exponential smoothing might come out ahead. Lydia is not impressed.

Although he isn't ready to mention it to Lydia yet, the consultant is beginning to develop an idea for a whole new approach that might give her the forecasting precision she needs. But first he has one more time series forecasting method to present.

To lay the groundwork for this method, the consultant explains a major reason why exponential smoothing did not fare well in this case. Look at the plot of seasonally adjusted call volumes in Figure 4.8. Note the distinct trend downward in the first three quarters, then a sharp trend upward for the next two, and finally a major trend upward for the last five quarters. Also note the large gap between the two plots (meaning large forecasting errors) by the end of each of these trends. The reason for these large errors is that exponential smoothing forecasts lag well behind such a trend because they place significant weight on values near the beginning of the trend. Although a large value of $\alpha = 0.5$ helps, exponential smoothing forecasts tend to lag further behind such a trend than last-value forecasts.

The next method adjusts exponential smoothing by also estimating the current trend and then projects this trend forward to help forecast the next value in the time series.

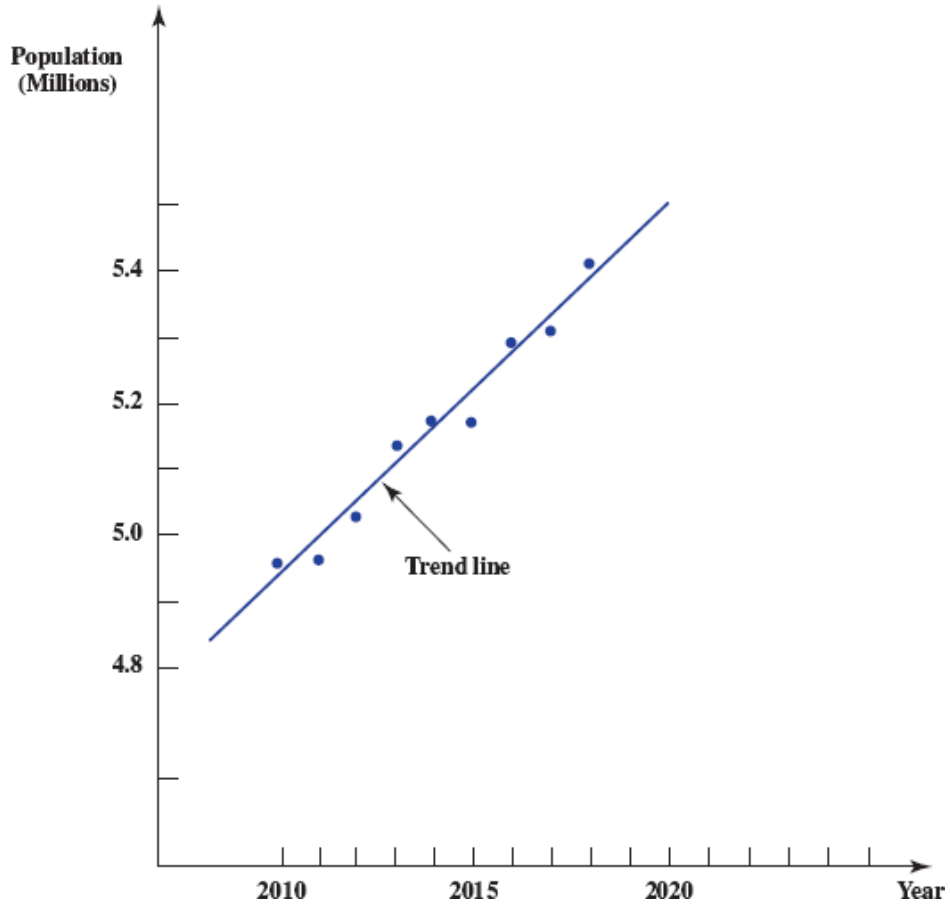
Exponential Smoothing with Trend

Exponential smoothing with trend uses the recent values in the time series to estimate any current upward or downward **trend** in these values. It is especially designed for the kind of time series depicted in Figure 4.9 where an upward (or downward) trend tends to continue for a considerable number of periods (but not necessarily indefinitely). This particular figure shows the

estimated population of a certain state of the United States at midyear over a series of years. The line in the figure (commonly referred to as a *trend line*) shows the basic trend that the time series is following, but with fluctuations on both sides of the line. Because the basic trend is upward in this case, forecasts based on any of the preceding forecasting methods would tend to be considerably too low. However, by developing an estimate of the current slope of this trend line, and then adjusting the forecast to consider this slope, considerably more accurate forecasts should be obtained. This is the basic idea behind exponential smoothing with trend.

FIGURE 4.9

A time series that gives the estimated population of a certain state of the United States over a series of years. The trend line shows the basic upward trend of the population.



trend

The average change from one time series value to the next if the current pattern continues.

Trend is defined as

$$\text{Trend} = \text{Average change from one time series value to the next if the current pattern continues}$$

The formula for forecasting the next value in the time series, then is modified from the preceding method by *adding the estimated trend.* Thus, the new formula is

$$\text{Forecast} = \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1 - \alpha)\,(\text{Last forecast}) + \text{Estimated trend}$$

(A separate box describes how this formula can be easily modified to forecast *beyond* the next value in the time series as well.)

Adding the estimated trend enables the forecast to keep up with the current trend in the data.

FORECASTING MORE THAN ONE TIME PERIOD AHEAD

We have focused thus far on forecasting what will happen in the *next* time period (the next quarter in the case of CCW). However, managers sometimes need to forecast further into the future. How can the various time series forecasting methods be adapted to do this?

In the case of the last-value, averaging, moving-average, and exponential smoothing methods, the forecast for the next period also is the best available forecast for subsequent periods as well. However, when there is a *trend* in the data, it is important to take this trend into account for long-range forecasts. *Exponential smoothing with trend* provides a way of doing this. In particular, after determining the *estimated trend,* this method's forecast for *n* time periods into the future is

$$\text{Forecast for } n \text{ periods from now} = \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1 - \alpha)\,(\text{Last forecast}) + (n \times \text{Estimated trend})$$

Exponential smoothing also is used to obtain and update the *estimated trend* each time. The formula is

$$\text{Estimate of trend} = \beta(\text{Latest trend}) + (1 - \beta)\,(\text{Last estimate of trend})$$

where β (the Greek letter beta) is the **trend smoothing constant,** which, like α, must be between 0 and 1. *Latest trend* refers to the trend based on just the last two values in the time series and the last two forecasts. Its formula is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Latest trend} = {} & \alpha(\text{Last value} - \text{Next-to-last value}) \\ & + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Last forecast} - \text{Next-to-last forecast})\end{aligned}$$

trend smoothing constant

A smoothing constant for estimating the trend when using exponential smoothing with trend.

The trend smoothing constant β is used to apply exponential smoothing to estimating the trend.

Getting started with this forecasting method requires making two initial estimates about the status of the time series just prior to beginning forecasting. These initial estimates are

1. Initial estimate of the *average value* of the time series if the conditions just prior to beginning forecasting were to remain unchanged without any trend.
2. Initial estimate of the *trend* of the time series just prior to beginning forecasting.

The forecast for the first period being forecasted then is

$$\text{First forecast} = \text{Initial estimate of average value} + \text{Initial estimate of trend}$$

The second forecast is obtained from the above formulas, where the *initial estimate of trend* is used as the last estimate of trend in the formula for estimated trend and the *initial estimate of average value* is used as both the next-to-last value and the next-to-last forecast in the formula for latest trend. The above formulas then are used directly to obtain subsequent forecasts.

Since the calculations involved with this method are relatively involved, a computer commonly is used to implement the method. Two Excel templates (one without seasonal adjustments and one with) are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for this method.

The Excel templates for this method perform the calculations for you.

The considerations involved in choosing the trend smoothing constant β are similar to those for α. A large value of β (say, $\beta = 0.3$) is more responsive to recent changes in the trend, whereas a relatively small value (say, $\beta = 0.1$) uses more data in a significant way to estimate trend.

After trying various combinations of α and β on the CCW problem, the consultant concludes that $\alpha = 0.3$ and $\beta = 0.3$ perform about as well as any. Both values are on the high end of the typically used range (0.1 to 0.3), but the frequent changes in the CCW time series call for large values. However, lowering α from the 0.5 value used with the preceding method seems justified since incorporating trend into the analysis would help respond more quickly to changes.

When applying exponential smoothing *without* trend earlier, Lydia and the consultant chose 7,500 as the initial estimate of the average value of the seasonally adjusted call volumes. They now note that there was no noticeable trend in these call volumes just prior to the retrospective generation of forecasts three years ago. Therefore, to apply exponential smoothing with trend, they decide to use

$$\text{Initial estimate of average value} = 7{,}500$$
$$\text{Initial estimate of trend} = 0$$

Working with the seasonally adjusted call volumes given in several recent figures, these initial estimates lead to the following seasonally adjusted forecasts.

page 161

Y1, Q1:	Seas. adj. forecast = 7,500 + 0 = 7,500
Y1, Q2:	Latest trend = 0.3(7,322 − 7,500) + 0.7(7,500 − 7,500) = − 53.4
	Estimated trend = 0.3(− 53.4) + 0.7(0) = − 16
	Seas. adj. forecast = 0.3(7,322) + 0.7(7,500) − 16 = 7,431
Y1, Q3:	Latest trend = 0.3(7,183 − 7,322) + 0.7(7,431 − 7,500) = − 90
	Estimated trend = 0.3(− 90) + 0.7(− 16) = − 38.2
	Seas. adj. forecast = 0.3(7,183) + 0.7(7,431) − 38.2 = 7,318

The Excel template in Figure 4.10 shows the results from these calculations for all 12 quarters over the past three years, as well as for the upcoming quarter. The middle of the figure shows the plots of all the seasonally adjusted call volumes and seasonally adjusted forecasts. Note how each trend up or down in the call volumes causes the forecasts to gradually trend in the same direction, but then the trend in the forecasts takes a couple quarters to turn around when the trend in call volumes suddenly reverses

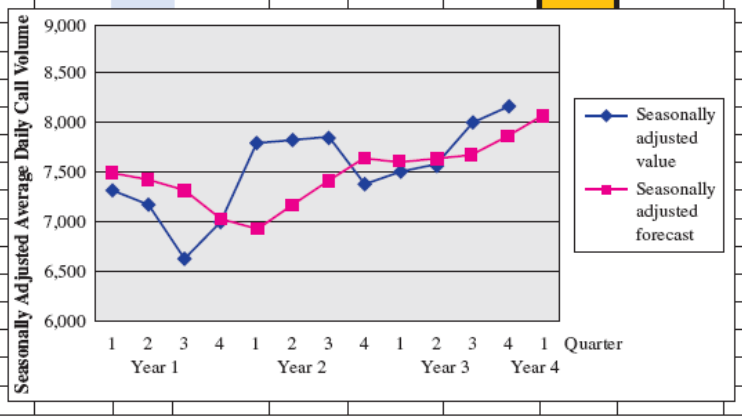
direction. The resulting forecasting errors in column J then give an average forecasting error (cell M30) of

$$\text{MAD} = 345$$

FIGURE 4.10

The Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for the exponential smoothing with trend method with seasonal adjustments is applied here to the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	**Exponential Smoothing with Trend Forecasting Method with Seasonality for CCW**												
2													
3					Seasonally			Seasonally					
4				True	Adjusted	Latest	Estimated	Adjusted	Actual	Forecasting		**Smoothing Constant**	
5		Year	Quarter	Value	Value	Trend	Trend	Value	Forecast	Error		α =	0.3
6		1	1	6,809	7,322		0	7,500	6,975	166		β =	0.3
7		1	2	6,465	7,183	-54	-16	7,430	6,687	222			
8		1	3	6,569	6,635	-90	-38	7,318	7,245	676		**Initial Estimate**	
9		1	4	8,266	7,005	-243	-100	7,013	8,276	10		Average =	7,500
10		2	1	7,257	7,803	-102	-100	6,910	6,427	830		Trend =	0
11		2	2	7,064	7,849	167	-20	7,158	6,442	622			
12		2	3	7,784	7,863	187	42	7,407	7,333	451			**Type of Seasonality**
13		2	4	8,724	7,393	179	83	7,627	9,000	276			Quarterly
14		3	1	6,992	7,518	13	62	7,619	7,085	93			
15		3	2	6,822	7,580	32	53	7,642	6,877	55		**Quarter**	**Seasonal Factor**
16		3	3	7,949	8,029	34	47	7,670	7,594	355		1	0.93
17		3	4	9,650	8,178	155	80	7,858	9,272	378		2	0.90
18		4	1			176	108	8,062	7,498			3	0.99
19		4	2									4	1.18
20													
21													
22													
23													
24													
25													
26													
27													
28													
29												**Mean Absolute Deviation**	
30												MAD =	345
31													
32												**Mean Square Error**	
33												MSE =	180,796
34													



	E	F	G	H	I	J
3	Seasonally			Seasonally		
4	Adjusted	Latest	Estimated	Adjusted	Actual	Forecasting
5	Value	Trend	Trend	Forecast	Forecast	Error
6	=D6/M16		=InitialEstimateTrend	=InitialEstimateAverage+InitialEstimateTrend	=M16*H6	=ABS(D6-I6)
7	=D7/M17	=Alpha*(E6-InitialEstimateAverage)+(1-Alpha)*(H6-InitialEstimateAverage)	=Beta*F7+(1-Beta)*G6	=Alpha*E6+(1-Alpha)*H6+G7	=M17*H7	=ABS(D7-I7)
8	=D8/M18	=Alpha*(E7-E6)+(1-Alpha)*(H7-H6)	=Beta*F8+(1-Beta)*G7	=Alpha*E7+(1-Alpha)*H7+G8	=M18*H8	=ABS(D8-I8)
9	=D9/M19	=Alpha*(E8-E7)+(1-Alpha)*(H8-H7)	=Beta*F9+(1-Beta)*G8	=Alpha*E8+(1-Alpha)*H8+G9	=M19*H9	=ABS(D9-I9)
10	=D10/M16	=Alpha*(E9-E8)+(1-Alpha)*(H9-H8)	=Beta*F10+(1-Beta)*G9	=Alpha*E9+(1-Alpha)*H9+G10	=M16*H10	=ABS(D10-I10)
11	=D11/M17	=Alpha*(E10-E9)+(1-Alpha)*(H10-H9)	=Beta*F11+(1-Beta)*G10	=Alpha*E10+(1-Alpha)*H10+G11	=M17*H11	=ABS(D11-I11)
12	:	:	:	:	:	:

Range Name	Cells
ActualForecast	I6:I30
Alpha	M5
Beta	M6
ForecastingError	J6:J30
InitialEstimateAverage	M9
InitialEstimateTrend	M10
MAD	M30
MSE	M33
SeasonalFactor	M16:M27
SeasonallyAdjustedForecast	H6:H30
SeasonallyAdjustedValue	E6:E30
TrueValue	D6:D30
TypeOfSeasonality	M13

	L	M
30	MAD =	=AVERAGE(ForecastingError)

	L	M
33	MSE =	=SUMSQ(ForecastingError)/COUNT(ForecastingError)

When the trend in the data suddenly reverses direction, it takes a little while for the estimated trend to turn around.

a little above the 324 value for regular exponential smoothing and 295 for last-value forecasting. A similar result is obtained when using the square of the forecasting errors since the mean square error given in cell M33,

$$\text{MSE} = 180{,}796$$

also is a little above the MSE values for these other two forecasting methods.

Table 4.2 summarizes the values of MAD and MSE for all the forecasting methods so far. Here is Lydia's reaction to the large MAD value for exponential smoothing with trend.

TABLE 4.2

The Average Forecasting Error (MAD) and Mean Square Error (MSE) for the Various Time Series Forecasting Methods When Forecasting CCW Call Volumes

Forecasting Method	1MAD	MSE
CCW's 25 percent rule	424	317,815
Last-value method	295	145,909
Averaging method	400	242,876
Moving-average method	437	238,816
Exponential smoothing	324	157,836
Exponential smoothing with trend	345	180,796

Lydia: I'm very discouraged. These time series forecasting methods just aren't doing the job I need. I thought this exponential smoothing with trend method would do the job. It sounded like an excellent method that also would deal with the trends we keep encountering.

Consultant: Yes, it is a very good method under the right circumstances. When you have trends that may occasionally shift some over time, it should do a great job.

Lydia: So what went wrong here?

Consultant: Well, look at the trends you have here in the seasonally adjusted time series. You have a fairly sharp downward trend the first three quarters and then suddenly a very sharp upward trend for a couple quarters.

Then it flattens out before a big drop in the eighth quarter. Then suddenly it is going up again. It is really tough to keep up with such abrupt big shifts in the trends. This method is better suited for much more gradual shifts in the trends.

Lydia: OK. But aren't there any other methods? None of these will do.

Consultant: There is one other main time series forecasting method. It is called the **ARIMA** method, which is an acronym for AutoRegressive Integrated Moving Average. It also is sometimes called the Box-Jenkins method, in honor of its founders. It is a very sophisticated method, but some excellent software is available for implementing it. Another nice feature is that it is well-suited for dealing with strong seasonal patterns.

ARIMA

An acronym for the AutoRegressive Integrated Moving Average method, a sophisticated time series forecasting method commonly referred to as the Box-Jenkins method.

The ARIMA method is another good forecasting method, but it requires much more data than CCW currently has available.

Lydia: Sounds good. So shouldn't we be trying this ARIMA method?

Consultant: Not at this point. It is such a sophisticated method that it requires a great amount of past data, say, a minimum of 50 time periods. We don't have nearly enough data.

Lydia: A pity. So what are we going to do? I haven't seen anything that will do the job.

Consultant: Cheer up. I have an idea for how we can use one of these time series forecasting methods in a different way that may do the job you want.

Lydia: Really? Tell me more.

Consultant: Well, let me hold off on the details until we can check out whether this is going to work. What I would like you to do is contact CCW's marketing manager and set up a meeting between the three of us. page 162 Also, send him your data on call volumes for the past three years. page 163 Ask him to dig out his sales data for the same period and compare it to your data.

Lydia: OK. What should I tell him is the purpose of the meeting?

Consultant: Explain what we're trying to accomplish here about forecasting call volumes. Then tell him that we're trying to understand better what has been causing these sudden shifts in call volumes. He knows more

about what has been driving sales up or down than anybody. We just want to pick his brain about this.

Lydia: OK. Will do.

The Meeting with the Marketing Manager

This meeting takes place a few days later. As you eavesdrop (after the preliminaries), you will find it helpful to refer to the call volume data in one of the recent spreadsheets, such as Figure 4.10.

Lydia: Did you receive the call volume data I mailed to you?

Marketing manager: Yes, I did.

Consultant: How does it compare with your own sales data for these three years?

Marketing manager: Your data track mine pretty closely. I see the same ups and downs in both sets of data.

Lydia: That makes sense, since it's the calls to my call center that generate those sales.

Marketing manager: Right.

Consultant: Now, let me check on what caused the ups and downs. Three years ago, what we labeled as Year 1 in our data, there was a definite trend down for most of the year. What caused that?

Marketing manager: Yes, I remember that year all too well. It wasn't a very good year. The new Game Station had been scheduled to come out early that year. Then they kept pushing the release date back. People kept waiting. They didn't manage to get it out until the beginning of the next year, so we even missed the holiday sales.

Lydia: But our call volume did jump up a little more than usual during that holiday season.

Marketing manager: Yes. So did sales. I remember that we came out with a new networking tool, one with faster data transfer, in time for the holiday season. It turned out to be very popular for a few months. It really bailed us out during that slow period.

Consultant: Then the Game Station was released and sales jumped the next year.

Marketing manager: Right.

Lydia: What happened late in the year? We weren't as busy as we expected to be.

Marketing manager: There wasn't any major change in our product mix during that period. No new hot products.

Consultant: Then sales moved back up the next year. Last year.

Marketing manager: Yes, last year was a rather good year. We had a couple new products that did very well. One was a new game controller that came out early in the year. Very inexpensive. The other was a new monitor that was released in July. We were able to offer it at a very competitive price and our customers gobbled it up.

Consultant: Thanks. That really clarifies what lies behind those call volume numbers we've been working with. Now I have another key question for you. When you look at your sales data and do your own forecasting, what do you see as the key factors that drive total sales up or down?

Marketing manager: There really is just one big factor: Do we have any hot new products out there? We have well over a hundred products. But most of them just fill a small niche in the market. Many of them are old standbys that, with updates, just keep going indefinitely. All these small-niche products together provide most of our total sales. A nice stable market base. Then, in addition, we should have three or four major new products out there. Maybe a couple that have been out for a few months but still have some life left in them. Then one or two just coming out that we hope will do very well.

The one big factor that drives total sales up or down is whether the company has just released any hot new products.

Consultant: I see. A large market base and then three or four major new products.

Marketing manager: That's what we shoot for.

Consultant: Are you able to predict how well a major new product will do?

Marketing manager: I try. I've gotten better at it. I'm usually fairly close on what the initial response will be, but it is difficult to predict how long the product will hold up. I would like to have a better handle on it.

Consultant: Thanks very much for all your information. It has verified what I've been suspecting for awhile now.

Lydia: What's that?

Consultant: That we really need to coordinate directly with what is driving sales in order to do a better job of forecasting call volumes.

Forecasting call volumes better requires coordinating directly with what is driving sales.

Lydia: Good thought!

Consultant: How would the two of you feel about coordinating in developing better procedures for forecasting both sales and call volumes?

Lydia: You bet.

Marketing manager: Sounds good.

We will return to this story in the next two sections. However, as you have seen above, the calculations required for the more sophisticated forecasting methods are fairly cumbersome. Consequently, software commonly is used for applications of forecasting like the CCW study. Therefore, let us pause briefly to describe the availability of forecasting software.

Forecasting Software

Because of its widespread usage in practice, an article in the August 2020 issue of *ORMS Today* (a publication of INFORMS) presents a survey of forecasting software. It covers dozens of forecasting software packages by various vendors.

A few of these packages are being marketed by Frontline Systems, which also is the developer of Analytic Solver. The main features of these packages now have been incorporated into Analytic Solver. The various forecasting methods are included on the “Data Mining” tab (along with some data mining tools not included in this book). In addition to the more advanced forecasting methods described in this chapter, Analytic Solver includes a powerful method called ARIMA. (Recall that the consultant told Lydia about ARIMA during their conversation just before meeting with the marketing manager.)

ARIMA is widely used for detailed forecasting studies based on extensive data. However, it also is a sophisticated method that requires a strong background in the field of Statistics, so we will not describe it further. Furthermore, due to the advanced nature of this and other forecasting software included within Analytic Solver, we will not go into the details of how to use this software. We instead have provided convenient Excel templates that are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for each of the forecasting methods covered in this chapter.

Review *Questions*

. What does a seasonal factor measure?

. What is the formula for calculating the seasonally adjusted call volume from the actual call volume and the seasonal factor?

. What is the formula for calculating the forecast of the actual call volume from the seasonal factor and the seasonally adjusted forecast?

. Why is the last-value forecasting method sometimes called the *naïve method?*

. Why did the averaging forecasting method not perform very well on the case study?

. What is the rationale for replacing the averaging forecasting method by the moving-average forecasting method?

. How does the exponential smoothing forecasting method modify the moving-average forecasting method?

. With exponential smoothing, when is a small value of the smoothing constant appropriate? A larger value?

. What is the formula for obtaining the next forecast with exponential smoothing? What is added to this formula when using exponential smoothing with trend?

. What does the marketing manager say is the one big factor that drives CCW's total sales up or down?

4.4 THE TIME SERIES FORECASTING METHODS IN PERSPECTIVE

Section 4.3 presented several methods for forecasting the next value of a time series in the context of the CCW case study. We now will take a step back to place into perspective just what these methods are trying to accomplish. After providing this perspective, CCW's consultant then will give his recommendation for setting up a forecasting system.

The Goal of the Forecasting Methods

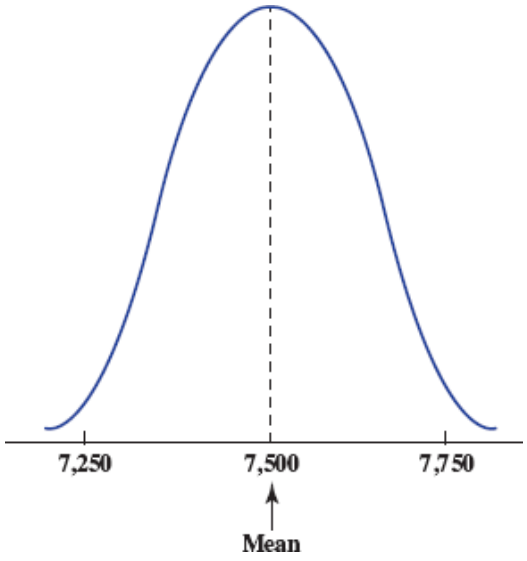
It actually is something of a misnomer to talk about forecasting *the* value of the next observation in a time series (such as CCW's call volume in the next quarter). It is impossible to predict *the* value precisely, because this next value can turn out to be anything over some range. What it will be depends upon future circumstances that are beyond our control.

The next value in a time series cannot be forecasted with certainty because it has a probability distribution rather than a fixed value that definitely will occur.

In other words, the next value that will occur in a time series is a *random variable.* It has some *probability distribution.* For example, Figure 4.11 shows a typical probability distribution for the CCW call volume in a future quarter in which the mean of this distribution happens to be 7,500. This distribution indicates the relative likelihood of the various possible values of the call volume. Nobody can say in advance which value actually will occur.

FIGURE 4.11

A typical probability distribution of what the average daily call volume will be for CCW in a quarter when the mean is 7,500.



So what is the meaning of the single number that is selected as the "forecast" of the next value in the time series? If it were possible, we would like this number to be the *mean* of the distribution. The reason is that random observations from the distribution tend to cluster around the mean of the distribution. Therefore, using the mean as the forecast would tend to minimize the average forecasting error.

Unfortunately, we don't actually know what this probability distribution is, let alone its mean. The best we can do is use all the available data (past values from the time series) to estimate the mean as closely as possible.

The goal of time series forecasting methods is to estimate the *mean* of the underlying probability distribution of the next value of the time series as closely as possible.

Given some random observations from a single probability distribution, the best estimate of its mean is the *sample average* (the average of all these observations). Therefore, if a time series has exactly the same distribution for each and every time period, then the *averaging forecasting method* provides the best estimate of the mean.

However, other forecasting methods commonly are used instead because the distribution may be changing over time.

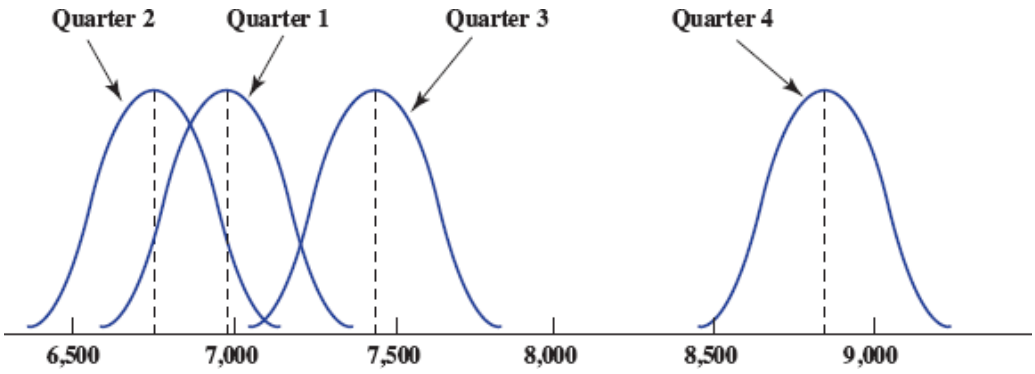
Problems Caused by Shifting Distributions

Section 4.3 began by considering seasonal effects. This then led to estimating CCW's seasonal factors as 0.93, 0.90, 0.99, and 1.18 for Quarters 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively.

If the overall average daily call volume for a year is 7,500, these seasonal factors imply that the probability distributions for the four quarters of that year fall roughly as shown in Figure 4.12. Since these distributions have different means, we should no longer simply average the random observations (observed call volumes) from all four quarters to estimate the mean for any one of these distributions.

FIGURE 4.12

Typical probability distributions of CCW's average daily call volumes in the four quarters of a year in which the overall average is 7,500.

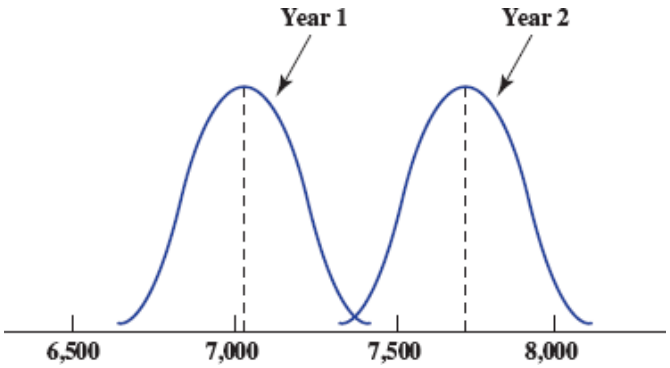


This complication is why the preceding section seasonally adjusted the time series. Dividing each quarter's call volume by its seasonal factor shifts the distribution of this seasonally adjusted call volume over to basically the distribution shown in Figure 4.11 with a mean of 7,500. This allows averaging the seasonally adjusted values to estimate this mean.

Unfortunately, even after seasonally adjusting the time series, the probability distribution may not remain the same from one year to the next (or even from one quarter to the next). For example, as CCW's marketing manager explained, total sales jumped substantially at the beginning of Year 2 when the new Game Station became available. This also caused the average daily call volume to increase by about 10 percent, from just over 7,000 in Year 1 to over 7,700 in Year 2. Figure 4.13 compares the resulting distributions for typical quarters (seasonally adjusted) in the two years.

FIGURE 4.13

Comparison of typical probability distributions of CCW's average daily call volumes (seasonally adjusted) in years 1 and 2.



Random observations from the Year 1 distribution in this figure provide a poor basis for estimating the mean of the Year 2 distribution. Yet, except for the last-value method, *each* of the forecasting methods presented in the preceding section placed at least some weight on these observations from Year 1 to estimate the mean for *each* quarter in Year 2. This was a major part of the reason why both the average forecasting errors (MAD) and the mean square errors (MSE) were higher for these methods than for the last-value method.

Judging from the marketing manager's information, it appears that some shift in the distribution also occurred several times from just one quarter to the next rather than from only one year to the next. This further added to the forecasting errors.

When the probability distribution for a time series shifts frequently, recent data quickly become outdated for forecasting purposes.

Comparison of the Forecasting Methods

Section 4.3 presented five methods for forecasting the next value in a time series. Which of these methods is particularly suitable for a given application depends greatly on how *stable* the time series is.

A time series is said to be **stable** if its underlying probability distribution usually remains the same from one time period to the next. (Any shifts that do occur in the distribution are both infrequent and small.) A time series is **unstable** if both frequent and sizable shifts in the distribution tend to occur.

stable time series

A time series whose underlying probability distribution usually remains the same from one time period to the next.

unstable time series

A time series that has frequent and sizable shifts in its underlying probability distribution.

CCW's seasonally adjusted time series shown in Figure 4.4 (and many subsequent figures) appears to have had several shifts in the distribution, including the sizable one depicted in Figure 4.13. Therefore, this time series is an example of a relatively *unstable* one.

Here is a summary of which type of time series fits each of the forecasting methods.

Last-value method: Suitable for a time series that is so unstable that even the next-to-last value is not considered relevant for forecasting the next value.

The key factor in choosing a forecasting method is how stable the time series is.

Averaging method: Suitable for a very stable time series where even its first few values are considered relevant later for forecasting the next value.

Moving-average method: Suitable for a moderately stable time series where the last few values are considered relevant for forecasting the next

value. The number of values included in the moving average reflects the anticipated degree of stability in the time series.

Exponential smoothing method: Suitable for a time series in the range from somewhat unstable to rather stable, where the value of the smoothing constant needs to be adjusted to fit the anticipated degree of stability. Refines the moving-average method by placing the greatest weight on the most recent values, but is not as readily understood by managers as the moving-average method.

Exponential smoothing with trend: Suitable for a time series where the mean of the distribution tends to follow a trend either up or down, provided that changes in the trend occur only occasionally and gradually.

Unfortunately for CCW, its seasonally adjusted time series proved to be a little too unstable for any of these methods except the last-value method, which is considered to be the least powerful of these forecasting methods. Even when using exponential smoothing with trend, the changes in the trend occurred too frequently and sharply.

In light of these considerations, the consultant now is ready to present his recommendations to Lydia for a new forecasting procedure.

The Consultant's Recommendations

1. Forecasting should be done monthly rather than quarterly in order to respond more quickly to changing conditions.
2. Hiring and training of new agents also should be done monthly instead of quarterly in order to fine-tune staffing levels to meet changing needs.
3. Recently retired agents should be offered the opportunity to work part-time on an on-call basis to help meet current staffing needs more closely.
4. Since sales drive call volume, the forecasting process should begin by forecasting sales.
5. For forecasting purposes, total sales should be broken down into the major components described by the marketing manager, namely, (1) the relatively stable market base of numerous small-niche products and (2) *each* of the few (perhaps three or four) major new products whose success or failure can significantly drive total sales up or down. These major new products would be identified by the marketing manager on an ongoing basis.

page 168

orecasting call volume should begin by separately forecasting the major components of total sales.

5. Exponential smoothing with a relatively small smoothing constant is suggested for forecasting sales of the marketing base of numerous small-niche products. However, before making a final decision on the forecasting method, retrospective testing should be conducted to check how well this particular method would have performed over the past three years. This testing also should guide selection of the value of the smoothing constant.
7. Exponential smoothing with trend, with relatively large smoothing constants, is suggested for forecasting sales of *each* of the major new products. Once again, retrospective testing should be conducted to check this decision and to guide choosing values for the smoothing constants. The marketing manager should be asked to provide the initial estimate of anticipated sales in the first month for a new product. He also should be asked to check the subsequent exponential smoothing forecasts and make any adjustments he feels are appropriate based on his knowledge of what is happening in the marketplace.
3. Because of the strong seasonal sales pattern, seasonally adjusted time series should be used for each application of these forecasting methods.
9. After separately obtaining forecasts of actual sales for each of the major components of total sales identified in recommendation 5, these forecasts should be summed to obtain a forecast of total sales.
0. *Causal forecasting with linear regression* (as described in the next section) should be used to obtain a forecast of *call volume* from this forecast of total sales.

The next section describes how to obtain a forecast of call volume from a forecast of total sales.

Lydia accepts these recommendations with considerable enthusiasm. She also agrees to work with the marketing manager to gain his cooperation.

Read on to see how the last recommendation is implemented.

Review *Questions*

. What kind of variable is the next value that will occur in a time series?
. What is the goal of time series forecasting methods?
. Is the probability distribution of CCW's average daily call volume the same for every quarter?
. What is the explanation for why the average forecasting errors were higher for the other time series forecasting methods than for the supposedly less powerful last-value method?

. What is the distinction between a *stable* time series and an *unstable* time series?
. What is the consultant's recommendation regarding what should be forecasted instead of call volumes to begin the forecasting process?
. What are the major components of CCW's total sales?

4.5 CAUSAL FORECASTING WITH LINEAR REGRESSION

We have focused so far on *time series forecasting methods,* that is, methods that forecast the next value in a time series based on its previous values. These methods have been used retrospectively in Section 4.3 to forecast CCW's call volume in the next quarter based on its previous call volumes.

Causal Forecasting

However, the consultant's last recommendation suggests another approach to forecasting. It is really sales that drive call volume, and sales can be forecasted considerably more precisely than call volume. Therefore, it should be possible to obtain a better forecast of call volume by relating it directly to forecasted sales. This kind of approach is called *causal forecasting* (or *correlational forecasting*).

For the CCW problem, call volume is the dependent variable and total sales is the independent variable.

Causal forecasting obtains a forecast of the quantity of interest (the **dependent variable**) by relating it directly to one or more other quantities (the **independent variables**) that drive the quantity of interest.

causal forecasting

Obtaining a forecast of the dependent variable by relating it directly to one or more independent variables.

dependent variable

The quantity of interest when doing causal forecasting.

independent variable

A quantity that drives the value of the dependent variable in causal forecasting.

Table 4.3 shows some examples of the kinds of situations where causal forecasting sometimes is used. In each of the first four cases, the indicated dependent variable can be expected to go up or down rather directly with the independent variable(s) listed in the rightmost column. The last case also applies when some quantity of interest (e.g., sales of a product) tends to follow a steady trend upward (or downward) with the passage of time (the independent variable that drives the quantity of interest).

TABLE 4.3

Possible Examples of Causal Forecasting

Type of Forecasting	Possible Dependent Variable	Possible Independent Variables
Sales	Sales of a product	Amount of advertising
Spare parts	Demand for spare parts	Usage of equipment
Economic trends	Gross domestic product	Various economic factors
CCW call volume	Call volume	Total sales
Any quantity	This same quantity	Time

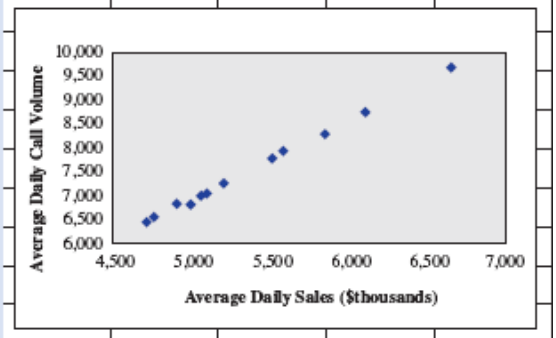
Linear Regression

At Lydia's request, the marketing manager brought sales data for the past three years to their recent meeting. These data are summarized in Figure 4.14. In particular, column D gives the average daily sales (in units of thousands of dollars) for each of the 12 past quarters. Column E repeats the data given previously on average daily call volumes. None of the data have been seasonally adjusted.

FIGURE 4.14

The data needed to do causal forecasting for the CCW problem by relating call volume to sales.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	CCW's Average Daily Sales and Call Volume									
2										
3				Sales	Call					
4		Year	Quarter	($thousands)	Volume					
5		1	1	4,894	6,809					
6		1	2	4,703	6,465					
7		1	3	4,748	6,569					
8		1	4	5,844	8,266					
9		2	1	5,192	7,257					
10		2	2	5,086	7,046					
11		2	3	5,511	7,784					
12		2	4	6,107	8,724					
13		3	1	5,052	6,992					
14		3	2	4,985	6,822					
15		3	3	5,576	7,949					
16		3	4	6,647	9,650					



The right side of the figure was generated by selecting the data in D5:E16 and then selecting an XY Scatter Chart from the Chart tab of the ribbon. This graph shows a plot of the data in columns D and E on a two-dimensional graph. Thus, each of the 12 points in the graph shows the combination of sales and call volume for one of the 12 quarters (without identifying which quarter).

This graph shows a close relationship between call volume and sales. Each increase or decrease in sales is accompanied by a roughly proportional increase or decrease in call volume. This is not surprising since customers often need help from the call center with their orders or require the *White Glove Service* after purchase.

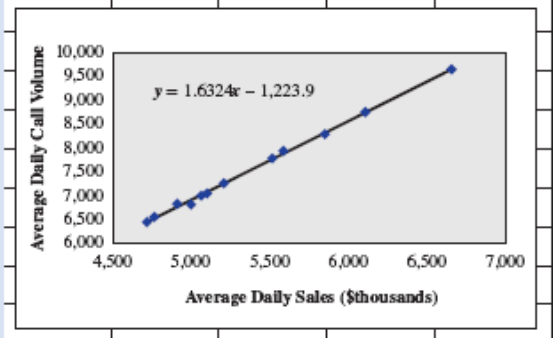
It appears from this graph that the relationship between call volume and sales can be approximated by a straight line. Figure 4.15 shows such a line. (This line was generated by right-clicking on one of the data points in the graph in Figure 4.14, choosing *Add Trendline* and then specifying *Linear Trend.* The equation above the line is added by choosing *Display Equation on Chart* under Trendline Options.) This line is referred to as a *linear regression line.*

page 170

FIGURE 4.15

Figure 4.14 has been modified here by adding a trend line to the graph.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	CCW's Average Daily Sales and Call Volume									
2										
3				Sales	Call					
4		Year	Quarter	($thousands)	Volume					
5		1	1	4,894	6,809					
6		1	2	4,703	6,465					
7		1	3	4,748	6,569					
8		1	4	5,844	8,266					
9		2	1	5,192	7,257					
10		2	2	5,086	7,064					
11		2	3	5,511	7,784					
12		2	4	6,107	8,724					
13		3	1	5,052	6,992					
14		3	2	4,985	6,822					
15		3	3	5,576	7,949					
16		3	4	6,647	9,650					



When doing causal forecasting with a single independent variable, **linear regression** involves approximating the relationship between the dependent variable (call volume for CCW) and the independent variable (sales for CCW) by a straight line. This **linear regression line** is drawn on a graph with the independent variable on the horizontal axis and the dependent variable on the vertical axis. The line is constructed after plotting a number of points showing each observed value of the independent variable and the corresponding value of the dependent variable.

linear regression

Approximating the relationship between the dependent variable and the independent variable(s) by a straight line. (Also see Section 4.1.)

linear regression line

The line that approximates the relationship between the dependent variable and the independent variable(s) when using causal forecasting.

Thus, the linear regression line in Figure 4.15 can be used to estimate what the call volume should be for a particular value of sales. In general, the equation for the linear regression line has the form

$$y = a + bx$$

A linear regression line estimates what the value of the dependent variable should be for any particular value of the independent variable.

where

y = Estimated value of the dependent variable, as given by the linear regression line

a = Intercept of the linear regression line with the y-axis

b = Slope of the linear regression line

x = Value of the independent variable

The equation for a linear regression line is called the regression equation.

(If there is more than one independent variable, then this **regression equation** has a term, a constant times the variable, added on the right-hand side for *each* of these variables.) For the linear regression line in this figure, the exact values of *a* and *b* happen to be

$$a = -1{,}223.9 \quad b = 1.6324$$

regression equation
The equation for a linear regression line.

Figure 4.16 shows the Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** that can also be used to find these values of *a* and *b.* You need to input all the observed values of the independent variable (sales) and of the dependent variable (call volume) in columns C and D, and then the template performs all the calculations. On the right, note that you have the option of inserting a value for *x* (sales) in cell J10 and then the template calculates the corresponding value of *y* (call volume) that lies on the linear regression line. This calculation can be repeated for as many values of *x* as desired. In addition, column E already shows these calculations for each value of *x* in column C, so each cell in column E gives the estimate of call volume provided by the linear regression line for the corresponding sales level in column C. The difference between this estimate and the actual call volume in column D gives the estimation error in column F. The *square* of this error is shown in column G.

page 171

FIGURE 4.16

The Excel template available at www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e for doing causal forecasting with linear regression, as illustrated here for the CCW problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**Linear Regression of Call Volume vs. Sales Volume for CCW**									
2										
3		**Time**	**Independent**	**Dependent**		**Estimation**	**Square**		**Linear Regression Line**	
4		**Period**	**Variable**	**Variable**	**Estimate**	**Error**	**of Error**		$y = a + bx$	
5		1	4,894	6,809	6,765	43.85	1,923		$a =$	-1,223.86
6		2	4,703	6,465	6,453	11.64	136		$b =$	1.63
7		3	4,748	6,569	6,527	42.18	1,780			
8		4	5,844	8,266	8,316	49.93	2,493			
9		5	5,192	7,257	7,252	5.40	29		**Estimator**	
10		6	5,086	7,064	7,079	14.57	212		if $x =$	5,000
11		7	5,511	7,784	7,772	11.66	136			
12		8	6,107	8,724	8,745	21.26	452		then $y =$	6,938.18
13		9	5,052	6,992	7,023	31.07	965			
14		10	4,985	6,822	6,914	91.70	8,408			
15		11	5,576	7,949	7,878	70.55	4,977			
16		12	6,647	9,650	9,627	23.24	540			

Range Name	Cells
a	J5
b	J6
DependentVariable	D5:D34
Estimate	E5:E34
EstimationError	F5:F34
IndependentVariable	C5:C34
SquareOfError	G5:G34
x	J10
y	J12

	E	F	G
3		**Estimation**	**Square**
4	**Estimate**	**Error**	**of Error**
5	=a+b*C5	=ABS(D5-E5)	=F5^2
6	=a+b*C6	=ABS(D6-E6)	=F6^2
7	=a+b*C7	=ABS(D7-E7)	=F7^2
8	=a+b*C8	=ABS(D8-E8)	=F8^2
9	=a+b*C9	=ABS(D9-E9)	=F9^2
10	:	:	:
11	:	:	:

	I	J
5	$a =$	=INTERCEPT(DependentVariable,IndependentVariable)
6	$b =$	=SLOPE(DependentVariable,IndependentVariable)

	I	J
12	then $y =$	=a+b*x

The procedure used to obtain *a* and *b* is called the **method of least squares.** This method chooses the values of *a* and *b* that *minimize* the sum of the *square of the estimation errors* given in column G of Figure 4.16. Thus, the sum of the numbers in column G (22,051) is the minimum possible. Any significantly different values of *a* and *b* would give different estimation errors that would cause this sum to be larger.

method of least squares

The procedure used to obtain the constants in the equation for a linear regression line.

The method of least squares chooses the values of *a* and *b* that make the sum of the resulting numbers in column G as small as possible.

The *average* of the square of the estimation errors in column G (1,838) has an interesting interpretation. Suppose that the sales for a quarter could be known in advance (either because of advance orders or an exact prediction). In this case, using the linear regression line to forecast call volume would give a mean square error (MSE) of 1,838. What the method of

least squares has done is place the linear regression line exactly where it would minimize MSE in this situation. Note that this minimum value of MSE = 1,838 is roughly 1 percent of the MSE values given earlier in Table 4.2 for the time series forecasting methods presented in Section 4.3.

The numbers in column F also are interesting. Averaging these numbers reveals that the *average estimation error* for the 12 quarters is only 35. This indicates that if the sales for a quarter were known in advance (or could be predicted exactly), then using the linear regression line to forecast call volume would give an average forecasting error (MAD) of only 35. This is only about 10 percent of the values of MAD obtained for the various time series forecasting methods in Section 4.3.

For some applications of causal forecasting, the value of the independent variable will be known in advance. This is not the case here, where the independent variable is the total sales for the upcoming time period. However, the consultant is confident that a very good forecast of total sales can be obtained by following his recommendations. This forecast can then be used as the value of the independent variable for obtaining a good forecast of call volume from the linear regression line.

CCW's New Forecasting Procedure

1. Obtain a forecast of total (average daily) sales for the upcoming month by implementing the consultant's recommendations presented at the end of Section 4.4.
2. Use this forecast as the value of total sales in forecasting the average daily call volume for the upcoming month from the linear regression line identified in Figures 4.15 and 4.16.

Seasonal adjustments play a role in step 1 of this procedure, but not in step 2. Based on the consultant's recommendations (see recommendation no. 8), seasonal adjustments should be incorporated into whatever forecasting method is used in step 1. However, a forecast of seasonally adjusted sales would then be converted back into a forecast of actual sales for use in step 2. By using a forecast of actual sales, the forecast of call volume obtained from the linear regression line in step 2 will be the desired forecast of actual call volume rather than seasonally adjusted call volume.

The CCW Case Study a Year Later

A year after implementing the consultant's recommendations, Lydia gives him a call.

Lydia: I just wanted to let you know how things are going. And to congratulate you on the great job you did for us. Remember that the 25 percent rule was giving us MAD values over 400? And then the various time series forecasting methods were doing almost as badly?

Consultant: Yes, I do remember. You were pretty discouraged there for a while.

Lydia: I sure was! But I'm feeling a lot better now. I just calculated MAD for the first year under your new procedure. 120. Only 120!

Consultant: Great. That's the kind of improvement we like to see. What do you think has made the biggest difference?

Lydia: I think the biggest factor was tying our forecasting into forecasting sales. We never had much feeling for where call volumes were headed. But we have a much better handle on what sales will be because, with the marketing manager's help, we can see what is causing the shifts.

Consultant: Yes. I think that is a real key to successful forecasting. You saw that we can get a lot of garbage by simply applying a time series forecasting method to historical data without understanding what is causing the shifts. You have to get behind the numbers and see what is really going on, then design the forecasting procedure to catch the shifts as they occur, like we did by having the marketing manager identify the major new products that impact total sales and then separately forecasting sales for each of them.

A key to successful forecasting is to understand what is causing shifts so that they can be caught as soon as they occur.

Lydia: Right. Bringing the marketing manager in on this was a great move. He's a real supporter of the new procedure now, by the way. He says it is giving him valuable information as well.

A good forecasting procedure combines a well-constructed statistical forecasting procedure and a savvy manager who understands what is driving the numbers and so is able to make appropriate adjustments in the forecasts.

Consultant: Good. Is he making adjustments in the statistical forecasts, based on his knowledge of what is going on in the marketplace, like I recommended?

Lydia: Yes, he is. You have a couple fans here. We really appreciate the great job you did for us.

Review *Questions*

. What is causal forecasting?
. When applying causal forecasting to the CCW problem, what is the dependent variable and what is the independent variable?
. When doing causal forecasting with a single independent variable, what does linear regression involve?
. What is the form of the equation for a linear regression line with a single independent variable? With more than one independent variable?
. What is the name of the method for obtaining the value of the constants in the regression equation for a linear regression line?
. How does the MAD value for CCW's new forecasting procedure compare with that for the old procedure that used the 25 percent rule?

4.6 JUDGMENTAL FORECASTING METHODS

We have focused so far on statistical forecasting methods that base the forecast on historical data. However, such methods cannot be used if no data are available, or if the data are not representative of current conditions. In such cases, **judgmental forecasting methods** can be used instead.

judgmental forecasting methods
A method that uses expert judgment to make forecasts.

Judgmental forecasting methods use expert opinion to make forecasts.

Even when good data are available, some managers prefer a judgmental method instead of a formal statistical method. In many other cases, a combination of the two may be used. For example, in the CCW case study, the marketing manager uses his judgment, based on his long experience and his knowledge of what is happening in the marketplace, to adjust the sales forecasts obtained from time series forecasting methods.

Here is a brief overview of the main judgmental forecasting methods.

1. **Manager's opinion:** This is the most informal of the methods, because it simply involves a single manager using his or her best judgment to make the forecast. In some cases, some data may be available to help make this

judgment. In others, the manager may be drawing solely on experience and an intimate knowledge of the current conditions that drive the forecasted quantity.

manager's opinion

A judgmental forecasting method that involves using a single manager's best judgment to make the forecast.

2. **Jury of executive opinion:** This method is similar to the first one, except now it involves a small group of high-level managers who pool their best judgments to collectively make the forecast. This method may be used for more critical forecasts for which several executives share responsibility and can provide different types of expertise.

jury of executive opinion

A judgmental forecasting method that involves a small group of high-level managers pooling their best judgment to collectively make the forecast.

3. **Salesforce composite:** This method is often used for sales forecasting when a company employs a salesforce to help generate sales. It is a *bottom-up approach* whereby each sales person provides an estimate of what sales will be in his or her region. These estimates then are sent up through the corporate chain of command, with managerial review at each level, to be aggregated into a corporate sales forecast.

salesforce composite

A judgmental forecasting method that aggregates the sales forecasts of the salesforce from their various regions.

4. **Consumer market survey:** This method goes even further than the preceding one in adopting a *grass-roots approach* to sales forecasting. It involves surveying customers and potential customers regarding their future purchasing plans and how they would respond to various new features in products. This input is particularly helpful for designing new products and then in developing the initial forecasts of their sales. It also is helpful for planning a marketing campaign.

consumer market survey

A judgmental forecasting method that uses surveys of customers and potential customers.

5. **Delphi method:** This method employs a panel of experts in different locations who independently fill out a series of questionnaires. However, the results from each questionnaire are provided with the next one, so each expert then can evaluate this group information in adjusting his or her responses next time. The goal is to reach a relatively narrow spread of conclusions from most of the experts. The decision makers then assess this input from the panel of experts to develop the forecast. This involved process normally is used only at the highest levels of a corporation or government to develop long-range forecasts of broad trends.

Delphi method
A judgmental forecasting method that uses input from a panel of experts in different locations.

An Application Vignette

Compañia Sud Americana de Vapores (CSAV) is one of the world's largest shipping companies. First founded in 1872, the company has grown to become the most global firm in Chile, with regional offices on four continents. It has operations in over 100 countries while using more than 2,000 terminals and depots worldwide. The company's main business is shipping cargo using containers on large container ships. Despite the pandemic that began in early 2020, the company's quarterly profits exceeded $1 billion in the third quarter of 2021.

Once loaded containers reach their destination and are unloaded, it is important to quickly send the empty containers to where they will be most needed for subsequent shipments. Therefore, CSAV and researchers from the University of Chile conducted a project to apply management science to more effectively make these decisions quickly on a global basis. The result was the development of an *Empty Container Logistics Optimization System (ECO).*

ECO uses both an advanced network optimization model and a sophisticated inventory model. However, both of these models need to be driven by relatively precise forecasts of the demand for empty containers. The **forecasting methods** used to generate these forecasts are a combination of certain **time series forecasting methods** (moving average and seasonally adjusted moving average with trend) and two types of **judgmental forecasting methods.** One of the latter types is *sales-force composite*—a consensus forecast model in which the sales agents

worldwide register their demand expectations. The other is *manager's opinion*—whereby logistics planners provide information that must be considered in the forecasts.

This extensive application of management science and business analytics, including a combination of forecasting methods, resulted in *savings of* **$81 million** in its first full year. These cost reductions were mainly the result of reducing empty container inventories by 50 percent and increasing container turnover by 60 percent. More than a decade later, these ongoing savings have helped the company to reach new records in its profits.

These dramatic results resulted in CSAV winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2011 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: R. Epstein and 14 co-authors, "A Strategic Empty Container Logistics Optimization in a Major Shipping Company," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 42, no. 1 (January–February 2012): 5–16. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Review *Questions*

. Statistical forecasting methods cannot be used under what circumstances?
. Is judgmental forecasting used only when statistical forecasting methods cannot be used?
. How does the jury of executive opinion method differ from the manager's opinion method?
. How does the salesforce composite method begin?
. When is a market survey particularly helpful?
. When might the Delphi method be used?

4.7 Summary

The future success of any business depends heavily on the ability of its management to forecast well. Forecasting may be needed in several areas, including sales, the need for spare parts, production yields, economic trends, and staffing needs.

The Computer Club Warehouse (CCW) case study illustrates a variety of approaches to forecasting, some of which prove unsatisfactory for this particular application. Ultimately, it becomes necessary to get behind the CCW data to understand just what is driving the call volumes at its call center in order to develop a good forecasting system.

A time series is a series of observations over time of some quantity of interest. Several statistical forecasting methods use these observations in some way to forecast what the next value will be. These methods include the last-value method, the averaging method, the moving-average method, the exponential smoothing method, and exponential smoothing with trend.

The goal of all these methods is to estimate the mean of the underlying probability distribution of the next value of the time series as closely as possible. This may require using seasonal factors to seasonally adjust the time series, as well as identifying other factors that may cause this underlying probability distribution to shift from one time period to the next.

Another statistical forecasting approach is called causal forecasting. This approach obtains a forecast of the quantity of interest (the dependent variable) by relating it directly to one or more other quantities (the independent variables) that drive the quantity of interest. Frequently, this involves using linear regression to approximate the relationship between the dependent variable and the independent variable(s) by a straight line.

The software accompanying this book includes Excel templates for the various statistical forecasting methods.

Still another key category of forecasting methods is judgmental methods. This category involves basing the forecast on a manager's opinion, a jury of executive opinion, a salesforce composite, a consumer market survey, or the Delphi method.

Glossary

ARIMA An acronym for the AutoRegressive Integrated Moving Average method, a sophisticated time series forecasting method commonly referred to as the Box-Jenkins method. (Section 4.3), 161

averaging forecasting method A method that uses the average of all the past observations from a time series as a forecast of the next value. (Sections 4.1 and 4.3), 141

causal forecasting Obtaining a forecast of the dependent variable by relating it directly to one or more independent variables. (Section 4.5), 168

consumer market survey A judgmental forecasting method that uses surveys of customers and potential customers. (Section 4.6), 173

Delphi method A judgmental forecasting method that uses input from a panel of experts in different locations. (Section 4.6), 173

dependent variable The quantity of interest when doing causal forecasting. (Section 4.5), 168

exponential smoothing forecasting method A method that gives the greatest weight to the last value in a time series and then progressively smaller weights to the older values. (Sections 4.1 and 4.3), 141

exponential smoothing with trend An adjustment of the exponential smoothing forecasting method that projects the current trend forward to help forecast the next value of a time series (and perhaps subsequent values as well). (Sections 4.1 and 4.3), 141

forecasting error The deviation of the forecast from the realized quantity. (Sections 4.1 and 4.2), 141

forecasting method A method that uses historical data to forecast future quantities. (Introduction), 139

independent variable A quantity that drives the value of the dependent variable in causal forecasting. (Section 4.5), 168

judgmental forecasting method A method that uses expert judgment to make forecasts. (Introduction and Section 4.6), 173

jury of executive opinion A judgmental forecasting method that involves a small group of high-level managers pooling their best judgment to collectively make the forecast. (Section 4.6), 173

last-value forecasting method A method that uses the last value of a time series as the forecast of the next value. (Sections 4.1 and 4.3), 141

linear regression Approximating the relationship between the dependent variable and the independent variable(s) by a straight line. (Sections 4.1 and 4.5), 170

linear regression line The line that approximates the relationship between the dependent variable and the independent variable(s) when using causal forecasting. (Section 4.5), 170

MAD An acronym for mean absolute deviation, which refers to the average forecasting error. (Sections 4.1 and 4.2), 142

manager's opinion A judgmental forecasting method that involves using a single manager's best judgment to make the forecast. (Section 4.6), 173

mean absolute deviation (MAD) The average forecasting error. (Sections 4.1 and 4.2), 142

mean square error (MSE) The average of the square of the forecasting errors. (Sections 4.1 and 4.2), 142

method of least squares The procedure used to obtain the constants in the equation for a linear regression line. (Section 4.5), 171

moving-average forecasting method A method that uses the average of the last *n* observations from a time series as a forecast of the next value. (Sections 4.1 and 4.3), 141

MSE An acronym for mean square error, the average of the square of the forecasting errors. (Sections 4.1 and 4.2), 142

naïve method Another name for the last-value forecasting method. (Section 4.3), 152

regression equation The equation for a linear regression line. (Section 4.5), 170

salesforce composite A judgmental forecasting method that aggregates the sales forecasts of the salesforce from their various regions. (Section 4.6), 173

seasonal factor A factor for any period of a year that measures how that period compares to the overall average for an entire year. (Section 4.3), 147

seasonally adjusted time series An adjustment of the original time series that removes seasonal effects. (Section 4.3), 148

smoothing constant A parameter of the exponential smoothing forecasting method that gives the weight to be placed on the last value in the time series. (Section 4.3), 156

stable time series A time series whose underlying probability distribution usually remains the same from one time period to the next. (Section 4.4), 167

statistical forecasting method A method that apply statistical techniques to use historical data to forecast future quantities. (Introduction and Sections 4.1–4.5), 139

time series A series of observations over time of some quantity of interest. (Section 4.2), 146

time-series forecasting methods A method that uses the past observations in a time series to forecast what the next value will be. (Introduction and Sections 4.2 and 4.3), 146

trend The average change from one time series value to the next if the current pattern continues. (Section 4.3), 159

trend smoothing constant A smoothing constant for estimating the trend when using exponential smoothing with trend. (Section 4.3), 160

unstable time series A time series that has frequent and sizable shifts in its underlying probability distribution. (Section 4.4), 167

Summary of Key Formulas

page 176

Forecasting error = Difference between a forecasted value and the true value then obtained (Section 4.2)

$$\text{MAD} = \frac{\text{Sum of forecasting errors}}{\text{Number of forecasts}}$$ (Section 4.2)

$$\text{MSE} = \frac{\text{Sum of square of forecasting errors}}{\text{Number of forecasts}}$$ (Section 4.2)

$$\text{Seasonal factor} = \frac{\text{Average for the period}}{\text{Overall average}}$$ (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Seasonally adjusted value} = \frac{\text{Actual value}}{\text{Seasonal factor}}$$ (Section 4.3)

Last-Value Method: (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Last value}$$

Averaging Method: (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Average of all data to date}$$

Moving-Average Method: (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Forecast} = \text{Average of last } n \text{ values}$$

Exponential Smoothing Method: (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Forecast} = \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Last forecast})$$

Exponential Smoothing with Trend: (Section 4.3)

$$\text{Forecast} = \alpha(\text{Last value}) + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Last forecast}) + \text{Estimated trend}$$

$$\text{Estimated trend} = \beta(\text{Latest trend}) + (1 - \beta)(\text{Last estimate of trend})$$

$$\text{Latest trend} = \alpha(\text{Last value} - \text{Next-to-last value}) + (1 - \alpha)(\text{Last forecast} - \text{Next-to-last forecast})$$

Linear Regression Line (with only one independent variable): (Section 4.5)

$$y = a + bx$$

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Seasonal Factors

Last-Value (with and without Seasonality)

Averaging (with and without Seasonality)

Moving-Average (with and without Seasonality)

Exponential Smoothing (with and without Seasonality)

Exponential with Trend (with and without Seasonality)

Linear Regression

Excel Add-In:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

4.S1. Forecasting Charitable Donations at the Union Mission

Cash donations (in thousands of dollars) at the Union Mission for 2019–2021 were as shown below.

Quarter	Donations
Q1 2019	242
Q2 2019	282
Q3 2019	254
Q4 2019	345
Q1 2020	253
Q2 2020	290
Q3 2020	262
Q4 2020	352

Quarter	Donations
Q1 2021	270
Q2 2021	286
Q3 2021	271
Q4 2021	378

a. Ignoring seasonal effects, compare both the MAD and MSE values for the last-value method, the averaging method, the moving-average method (based on the most recent 4 quarters), the exponential smoothing method (with an initial estimate of 275 and a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.2$), and the exponential smoothing method with trend (with initial estimates of 275 for the average value, 2 for the trend, along with smoothing constants of $\alpha = 0.2$ and $\beta = 0.2$) when they are applied retrospectively to the years 2019–2021.

b. Determine the seasonal factors for the four quarters.

c. Repeat part *a,* but now consider the seasonal effects.

d. Using the forecasting method from part *a* or *c* with the lowest MAD value, make long-range forecasts for charitable donations in each of the quarters of 2022.

Problems

The first 16 problems should be done by hand without using the templates in this chapter's Excel files. To the left of the subsequent problems (or their parts), we have inserted the symbol E (for Excel) to indicate that one of these templates can be helpful. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

4.1.* The Hammaker Company's newest product has had the following sales during its first five months: 5, 17, 29, 41, 39. The sales manager now wants a forecast of sales in the next month.

page 177

a. Use the last-value method.

b. Use the averaging method.

c. Use the moving-average method with the three most recent months.

d. Given the sales pattern so far, do any of these methods seem inappropriate for obtaining the forecast? Why?

4.2. Sales of stoves have been going well for the Good-Value Department Store. These sales for the past five months have been 15, 18, 12, 17, 13. Use the following methods to obtain a forecast of sales for the next month.

a. The last-value method.

b. The averaging method.

c. The moving-average method with three months.

d. If you feel that the conditions affecting sales next month will be the same as in the last five months, which of these methods do you prefer for obtaining the forecast? Why?

4.3.* You have been forecasting sales the last four quarters. These forecasts and the true values that subsequently were obtained are shown below.

Quarter	Forecast	True Value
1	327	345
2	332	317
3	328	336
4	330	311

Calculate the forecasting error for each quarter. Then calculate MAD and MSE.

4.4. Sharon Johnson, sales manager for the Alvarez-Baines Company, is trying to choose between two methods for forecasting sales that she has been using during the past five months. During these months, the two methods obtained the forecasts shown next for the company's most important product, where the subsequent actual sales are shown on the right.

Month	Forecast		Actual Sales
	Method 1	Method 2	
1	5,324	5,208	5,582
2	5,405	5,377	4,906
3	5,195	5,462	5,755
4	5,511	5,414	6,320
5	5,762	5,549	5,153

a. Calculate and compare MAD for these two forecasting methods. Then do the same with MSE.

b. Sharon is uncomfortable with choosing between these two methods based on such limited data, but she also does not want to delay further before making her choice. She does have similar sales data for the three years prior to using these forecasting methods the past five months. How can these older data be used to further help her evaluate the two methods and choose one?

4.5. Figure 4.1 shows CCW's average daily call volume for each quarter of the past three years and Figure 4.4 gives the seasonally adjusted call volumes. Lydia Weigelt now wonders what these seasonally adjusted call volumes would have been had she started using seasonal factors two years ago rather than applying them retrospectively now.

a. Use only the call volumes in year 1 to determine the seasonal factors for year 2 (so that the "average" call volume for each quarter is just the actual call volume for that quarter in year 1).

b. Use these seasonal factors to determine the seasonally adjusted call volumes for year 2.

c. Use the call volumes in years 1 and 2 to determine the seasonal factors for year 3.

d. Use the seasonal factors obtained in part *c* to determine the seasonally adjusted call volumes for year 3.

4.6. Even when the economy is holding steady, the unemployment rate tends to fluctuate because of seasonal effects. For example, unemployment generally goes up in Quarter 3 (summer) as students (including new graduates) enter the labor market. The unemployment rate then tends to go down in Quarter 4 (fall) as students return to school and temporary help is hired for the holiday season. Therefore, using seasonal factors to obtain a seasonally adjusted unemployment rate is helpful for painting a truer picture of economic trends.

Over the past 10 years, one state's average unemployment rates (not seasonally adjusted) in Quarters 1, 2, 3, and 4 have been 6.2 percent, 6.0 percent, 7.5 percent, and 5.5 percent, respectively. The overall average has been 6.3 percent.

a. Determine the seasonal factors for the four quarters.

b. Over the next year, the unemployment rates (not seasonally adjusted) for the four quarters turn out to be 7.8 percent, 7.4 percent, 8.7 percent, and 6.1 percent. Determine the seasonally adjusted unemployment rates for the four quarters. What does this progression of rates suggest about whether the state's economy is improving?

4.7. Ralph Billett is the manager of a real estate agency. He now wishes to develop a forecast of the number of houses that will be sold by the agency over the next year.

The agency's quarter-by-quarter sales figures over the last three years are shown below. page 178

Quarter	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
1	23	19	21
2	22	21	26
3	31	27	32
4	26	24	28

a. Determine the seasonal factors for the four quarters.

b. After considering seasonal effects, use the last-value method to forecast sales in Quarter 1 of next year.

c. Assuming that each of the quarterly forecasts is correct, what would the last-value method forecast as the sales in each of the four quarters next year?

d. Based on his assessment of the current state of the housing market, Ralph's best judgment is that the agency will sell 100 houses next year. Given this forecast for the year, what is the quarter-by-quarter forecast according to the seasonal factors?

4.8.* You are using the moving-average forecasting method based on the last four observations. When making the forecast for the last period, the oldest of the four observations was 1,945 and the forecast was 2,083. The true value for the last period then turned out to be 1,977. What is your new forecast for the next period?

4.9. You are using the moving-average forecasting method based on sales in the last three months to forecast sales for the next month. When making the forecast for last month, sales for the third month prior to last month were 805. The forecast for last month was 782 and then the actual sales turned out to be 793. What is your new forecast for next month?

4.10. After graduating from college with a degree in mathematical statistics, Ann Preston has been hired by the Monty Ward Company to apply statistical methods for forecasting the company's sales. For one of the company's products, the moving-average method based on sales in the 10 most recent months already is being used. Ann's first task is to update last month's forecast to obtain the forecast for next month. She learns that the forecast for last month was 1,551 and that the actual sales then turned out to be 1,532. She also learns that the sales for the 10th month before last month were 1,632. What is Ann's forecast for next month?

4.11. The J. J. Bone Company uses exponential smoothing to forecast the average daily call volume at its call center. The forecast for last month was 782, and then the actual value turned

out to be 792. Obtain the forecast for next month for each of the following values of the smoothing constant: $\alpha = 0.1, 0.3, 0.5$.

4.12.* You are using exponential smoothing to obtain monthly forecasts of the sales of a certain product. The forecast for last month was 2,083, and then the actual sales turned out to be 1,973. Obtain the forecast for next month for each of the following values of the smoothing constant: $\alpha = 0.1, 0.3, 0.5$.

4.13. Three years ago, the Admissions Office for Ivy College began using exponential smoothing with a smoothing constant of 0.25 to forecast the number of applications for admission each year. Based on previous experience, this process was begun with an initial estimate of 5,000 applications. The actual number of applications then turned out to be 4,600 in the first year. Thanks to new favorable ratings in national surveys, this number grew to 5,300 in the second year and 6,000 last year.

a. Determine the forecasts that were made for each of the past three years.

b. Calculate MAD and MSE for these three years.

c. Determine the forecast for next year.

4.14. Reconsider Problem 4.13. Notice the steady trend upward in the number of applications over the past three years—from 4,600 to 5,300 to 6,000. Suppose now that the Admissions Office of Ivy College had been able to foresee this kind of trend and so had decided to use exponential smoothing with trend to do the forecasting. Suppose also that the initial estimates just over three years ago had been *average value = 3,900* and *trend = 700.* Then, with any values of the smoothing constants, the forecasts obtained by this forecasting method would have been exactly correct for all three years.

Illustrate this fact by doing the calculations to obtain these forecasts when the smoothing constant is $\alpha = 0.25$ and the trend smoothing constant is $\beta = 0.25$.

4.15.* Exponential smoothing with trend, with a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.2$ and a trend smoothing constant of $\beta = 0.3$, is being used to forecast values in a time series. At this point, the last two values have been 535 and then 550. The last two forecasts have been 530 and then 540. The last estimate of trend has been

10. Use this information to forecast the next value in the time series.

4.16. The Healthwise Company produces a variety of exercise equipment. Healthwise management is very pleased with the increasing sales of its newest model of exercise bicycle. The sales during the last two months have been 4,655 and then 4,935.

Management has been using exponential smoothing with trend, with a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.1$ and a trend smoothing constant of $\beta = 0.2$, to forecast sales for the next month each time. The forecasts for the last two months were 4,720 and then 4,975. The last estimate of trend was 240.

Calculate the forecast of sales for next month.

4.17.* Ben Swanson, owner and manager of Swanson's Department Store, has decided to use statistical forecasting to get a better handle on the demand for his major products. However, Ben now needs to decide which forecasting method is most appropriate for each category of product. One category is major household appliances, such as washing machines, which have a relatively stable sales level. Monthly sales of washing machines last year are shown below.

Month	Sales
January	23
February	24
March	22
April	28
May	22
June	27
July	20
August	26
September	21
October	29

Month	Sales
November	23
December	28

page 179

a. Considering that the sales level is relatively stable, which of the most basic forecasting methods—the last-value method, the averaging method, or the moving-average method—do you feel would be most appropriate for forecasting future sales? Why?

E *b.* Use the last-value method retrospectively to determine what the forecasts would have been for the last 11 months of last year. What are MAD and MSE?

E *c.* Use the averaging method retrospectively to determine what the forecasts would have been for the last 11 months of last year. What are MAD and MSE?

d. Use the moving-average method with $n = 3$ retrospectively to determine what the forecasts would have been for the last nine months of last year. What are MAD and MSE?

e. Use their MAD values to compare the three methods.

f. Use their MSE values to compare the three methods.

g. Do you feel comfortable in drawing a definitive conclusion about which of the three forecasting methods should be the most accurate in the future based on these 12 months of data?

E 4.18. Reconsider Problem 4.17. Ben Swanson now has decided to use the exponential smoothing method to forecast future sales of washing machines, but he needs to decide on which smoothing constant to use. Using an initial estimate of 24, apply this method retrospectively to the 12 months of last year with $\alpha = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4$, and 0.5. Compare MAD for these five values of the smoothing constant α. Then do the same with MSE.

4.19. Management of the Jackson Manufacturing Corporation wishes to choose a statistical forecasting method for forecasting total sales for the corporation. Total sales (in millions of dollars) for each month of last year are shown below.

Month	Sales
January	126
February	137
March	142
April	150
May	153
June	154
July	148
August	145
September	147
October	151
November	159
December	166

a. Note how the sales level is shifting significantly from month to month—first trending upward and then dipping down before resuming an upward trend. Assuming that similar patterns would continue in the future, evaluate how well you feel each of the five forecasting methods introduced in Section 4.3 would perform in forecasting future sales.

E *b.* Apply the last-value method, the averaging method, and the moving-average method (with $n = 3$) retrospectively to last year's sales and compare their MAD values. Then compare their MSE values.

E *c.* Using an initial estimate of 120, apply the exponential smoothing method retrospectively to last year's sales with $\alpha = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4$, and 0.5. Compare both MAD and MSE for these five values of the smoothing constant α.

E *d.* Using initial estimates of 120 for the average value and 10 for the trend, apply exponential smoothing with trend

retrospectively to last year's sales. Use all combinations of the smoothing constants where α = 0.1, 0.3, or 0.5 and β = 0.1, 0.3, or 0.5. Compare both MAD and MSE for these nine combinations.

e. Which one of the above forecasting methods would you recommend that management use? Using this method, what is the forecast of total sales for January of the new year?

4.20. Reconsider Problem 4.19. Use the lessons learned from the CCW case study to address the following questions.

a. What might be causing the significant shifts in total sales from month to month that were observed last year?

b. Given your answer to part *a,* how might the basic statistical approach to forecasting total sales be improved?

c. Describe the role of managerial judgment in applying the statistical approach developed in part *b.*

E 4.21. Choosing an appropriate value of the smoothing constant α is a key decision when applying the exponential smoothing method. When relevant historical data exist, one approach to making this decision is to apply the method retrospectively to these data with different values of α and then choose the value of α that gives the smallest MAD. Use this approach for choosing α with each of the following time series representing monthly sales. In each case, use an initial estimate of 50 and compare α = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, and 0.5.

a. 51, 48, 52, 49, 53, 49, 48, 51, 50, 49

b. 52, 50, 53, 51, 52, 48, 52, 53, 49, 52

c. 50, 52, 51, 55, 53, 56, 52, 55, 54, 53

E 4.22. The choice of the smoothing constants, α and β, has a considerable effect on the accuracy of the forecasts obtained by using exponential smoothing with trend. For each of the following time series, set α = 0.2 and then compare MAD obtained with β = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, and 0.5. Begin with initial estimates of 50 for the average value and 2 for the trend.

a. 52, 55, 55, 58, 59, 63, 64, 66, 67, 72, 73, 74

b. 52, 55, 59, 61, 66, 69, 71, 72, 73, 74, 73, 74

c. 52, 53, 51, 50, 48, 47, 49, 52, 57, 62, 69, 74

4.23. The Andes Mining Company mines and ships copper ore. The company's sales manager, Juanita Valdes, has been using the moving-average method based on the last three years of sales to forecast the demand for the next year. However, she has become dissatisfied with the inaccurate forecasts being provided by this method.

The annual demands (in tons of copper ore) over the past 10 years are 382, 405, 398, 421, 426, 415, 443, 451, 446, 464.

a. Explain why this pattern of demands inevitably led to significant inaccuracies in the moving-average forecasts.

E *b.* Determine the moving-average forecasts for the past seven years. What are MAD and MSE? What is the forecast for next year?

page 180

E *c.* Determine what the forecasts would have been for the past 10 years if the exponential smoothing method had been used instead with an initial estimate of 380 and a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.5$. What are MAD and MSE? What is the forecast for next year?

E *d.* Determine what the forecasts would have been for the past 10 years if exponential smoothing with trend had been used instead. Use initial estimates of 370 for the average value and 10 for the trend, with smoothing constants $\alpha = 0.25$ and $\beta = 0.25$.

e. Based on the MAD and MSE values, which of these three methods do you recommend using hereafter?

E 4.24.* The Pentel Microchip Company has started production of its new microchip. The first phase in this production is the wafer fabrication process. Because of the great difficulty in fabricating acceptable wafers, many of these tiny wafers must be rejected because they are defective. Therefore, management places great emphasis on continually improving the wafer fabrication process to increase its *production yield* (the percentage of wafers fabricated in the current lot that are of acceptable quality for producing microchips).

So far, the production yields of the respective lots have been 15 percent, 21 percent, 24 percent, 32 percent, 37 percent, 41 percent, 40 percent, 47 percent, 51 percent, and 53 percent. Use exponential smoothing with trend to forecast the production yield of the next lot. Begin with initial estimates of 10 percent for the average value and 5 percent for the trend. Use smoothing constants of $\alpha = 0.2$ and $\beta = 0.2$.

4.25. The Centerville Water Department provides water for the entire town and outlying areas. The number of acre-feet of water consumed in each of the four seasons of the three preceding years is shown below.

Season	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Winter	25	27	24
Spring	47	46	49
Summer	68	72	70
Fall	42	39	44

page 181

E *a.* Determine the seasonal factors for the four seasons.

E *b.* After considering seasonal effects, use the last-value method to forecast water consumption next winter.

c. Assuming that each of the forecasts for the next three seasons is correct, what would the last-value method forecast as the water consumption in each of the four seasons next year?

E *d.* After considering seasonal effects, use the averaging method to forecast water consumption next winter.

E *e.* After considering seasonal effects, use the moving-average method based on four seasons to forecast water consumption next winter.

f. After considering seasonal effects, use the exponential smoothing method with an initial estimate of 46 and a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.1$ to forecast water consumption next winter.

E *g.* Compare both the MAD and MSE values of these four forecasting methods when they are applied retrospectively to the last three years.

4.26. Reconsider Problem 4.7. Ralph Billett realizes that the last-value method is considered to be the naïv forecasting method, so he wonders whether he should be using another method. Therefore, he has decided to use the available Excel templates that consider seasonal effects to apply various statistical forecasting methods retrospectively to the past three years of data and compare both their MAD and MSE values.

E *a.* Determine the seasonal factors for the four quarters.

E *b.* Apply the last-value method.

E *c.* Apply the averaging method.

E *d.* Apply the moving-average method based on the four most recent quarters of data.

E *e.* Apply the exponential smoothing method with an initial estimate of 25 and a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.25$.

E *f.* Apply exponential smoothing with trend with smoothing constants of $\alpha = 0.25$ and $\beta = 0.25$. Use initial estimates of 25 for the average value and 0 for the trend.

E *g.* Compare both the MAD and MSE values for these methods. Use the one with the smallest MAD to forecast sales in Quarter 1 of next year.

h. Use the forecast in part *g* and the seasonal factors to make long-range forecasts now of the sales in the remaining quarters of next year.

E 4.27. Transcontinental Airlines maintains a computerized forecasting system to forecast the number of customers in each fare class who will fly on each flight in order to allocate the available reservations to fare classes properly. For example, consider *economy-class customers* flying in midweek on the noon flight from New York to Los Angeles. The following table shows the average number of such passengers during each month of the year just completed. The table also shows the seasonal factor that has been assigned to each month based on historical data.

Month	Average Number	Seasonal Factor
January	68	0.90
February	71	0.88
March	66	0.91
April	72	0.93
May	77	0.96
June	85	1.09
July	94	1.17
August	96	1.15
September	80	0.97
October	73	0.91
November	84	1.05
December	89	1.08

a. After considering seasonal effects, compare both the MAD and MSE values for the last-value method, the averaging method, the moving-average method (based on the most recent three months), and the exponential smoothing method (with an initial estimate of 80 and a smoothing constant of α = 0.2) when they are applied retrospectively to the past year.

page 182

b. Use the forecasting method with the smallest MAD value to forecast the average number of these passengers flying in January of the new year.

4.28. Reconsider Problem 4.27. The economy is beginning to boom so the management of Transcontinental Airlines is predicting that the number of people flying will steadily increase this year over the relatively flat (seasonally adjusted) level of last year. Since the forecasting methods considered in Problem 4.27 are

relatively slow in adjusting to such a trend, consideration is being given to switching to exponential smoothing with trend.

Subsequently, as the year goes on, management's prediction proves to be true. The following table shows the corresponding average number of passengers in each month of the new year.

Month	Average Number
January	75
February	76
March	81
April	84
May	85
June	99
July	107
August	108
September	94
October	90
November	106
December	110

E *a.* Repeat part *a* of Problem 4.27 for the two years of data.

E *b.* After considering seasonal effects, apply exponential smoothing with trend to just the new year. Use initial estimates of 80 for the average value and 2 for the trend, along with smoothing constants of $\alpha = 0.2$ and $\beta = 0.2$. Compare MAD for this method to the MAD values obtained in part *a.* Then do the same with MSE.

c. Repeat part *b* when exponential smoothing with trend is begun at the beginning of the first year and then applied to both years, just like the other forecasting methods in part *a.* Use the same initial estimates and smoothing constants except change the initial estimate of trend to 0.

d. Based on these results, which forecasting method would you recommend that Transcontinental Airlines use hereafter?

4.29. Quality Bikes is a wholesale firm that specializes in the distribution of bicycles. In the past, the company has maintained ample inventories of bicycles to enable filling orders immediately, so informal rough forecasts of demand were sufficient to make the decisions on when to replenish inventory. However, the company's new president, Marcia Salgo, intends to run a tighter ship. Scientific inventory management is to be used to reduce inventory levels and minimize total variable inventory costs. At the same time, Marcia has ordered the development of a computerized forecasting system based on statistical forecasting that considers seasonal effects. The system is to generate three sets of forecasts—one based on the moving-average method, a second based on the exponential smoothing method, and a third based on exponential smoothing with trend. The average of these three forecasts for each month is to be used for inventory management purposes.

The following table gives the available data on monthly sales of 10-speed bicycles over the past three years. The last column also shows monthly sales this year, which is the first year of operation of the new forecasting system.

	Past Sales			
Month	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Current Sales This Year
January	352	317	338	364
February	329	331	346	343
March	365	344	383	391
April	358	386	404	437
May	412	423	431	458
June	446	472	459	494
July	420	415	433	468
August	471	492	518	555
September	355	340	309	387
October	312	301	335	364
November	567	629	594	662
December	533	505	527	581

E *a.* Determine the seasonal factors for the 12 months based on past sales.

E *b.* After considering seasonal effects, apply the moving-average method based on the most recent three months to forecast monthly sales for each month of this year.

E *c.* After considering seasonal effects, apply the exponential smoothing method to forecast monthly sales this year. Use an initial estimate of 420 and a smoothing constant of $\alpha = 0.2$.

E *d.* After considering seasonal effects, apply exponential smoothing with trend to forecast monthly sales this year. Use initial estimates of 420 for the average value and 0 for the trend, along with smoothing constants of $\alpha = 0.2$ and $\beta = 0.2$.

e. Compare both the MAD and MSE values obtained in parts *b, c,* and *d.*

f. Calculate the combined forecast for each month by averaging the forecasts for that month obtained in parts *b, c,* and *d.* Then calculate MAD for these combined forecasts.

g. Based on these results, what is your recommendation for how to do the forecasts next year?

4.30.* Long a market leader in the production of heavy machinery, the Spellman Corporation recently has been enjoying a steady increase in the sales of its new lathe. The sales over the past 10 months are shown below.

Month	Sales
1	430
2	446
3	464
4	480
5	498
6	514

Month	Sales
7	532
8	548
9	570
10	591

Because of this steady increase, management has decided to use *causal forecasting,* with the month as the independent variable and sales as the dependent variable, to forecast sales in the coming months.

a. Plot these data on a two-dimensional graph with the month on the horizontal axis and sales on the vertical axis.

E *b.* Find the formula for the linear regression line that fits these data.

c. Plot this line on the graph constructed in part *a.*

d. Use this line to forecast sales in month 11.

e. Use this line to forecast sales in month 20.

f. What does the formula for the linear regression line indicate is roughly the average growth in sales per month?

4.31. Reconsider Problems 4.13 and 4.14. Since the number of applications for admission submitted to Ivy College has been increasing at a steady rate, causal forecasting can be used to forecast the number of applications in future years by letting the year be the independent variable and the number of applications be the dependent variable.

a. Plot the data for years 1, 2, and 3 on a two-dimensional graph with the year on the horizontal axis and the number of applications on the vertical axis.

b. Since the three points in this graph line up in a straight line, this straight line is the linear regression line. Draw this line.

E *c.* Find the formula for this linear regression line.

d. Use this line to forecast the number of applications for each of the next five years (years 4 through 8).

e. As these next years go on, conditions change for the worse at Ivy College. The favorable ratings in the national surveys that had propelled the growth in applications turn unfavorable. Consequently, the number of applications turn out to be 6,300 in year 4 and 6,200 in year 5, followed by sizable drops to 5,600 in year 6 and 5,200 in year 7. Does it still make sense to use the forecast for year 8 obtained in part *d?* Explain.

E *f.* Plot the data for all seven years. Find the formula for the linear regression line based on all these data and plot this line. Use this formula to forecast the number of applications for year 8. Does the linear regression line provide a close fit to the data? Given this answer, do you have much confidence in the forecast it provides for year 8? Does it make sense to continue to use a linear regression line when changing conditions cause a large shift in the underlying trend in the data?

E *g.* Apply exponential smoothing with trend to all seven years of data to forecast the number of applications in year 8. Use initial estimates of 3,900 for the average and 700 for the trend, along with smoothing constants of α = 0.5 and β = 0.5. When the underlying trend in the data stays the same, causal forecasting provides the best possible linear regression line (according to the method of least squares) for making forecasts. However, when changing conditions cause a shift in the underlying trend, what advantage does exponential smoothing with trend have over causal forecasting?

4.32. Reconsider Problem 4.23. Despite some fluctuations from year to year, note that there has been a basic trend upward in the annual demand for copper ore over the past 10 years. Therefore, by projecting this trend forward, causal forecasting can be used to forecast demands in future years by letting the year be the independent variable and the demand be the dependent variable.

a. Plot the data for the past 10 years (years 1 through 10) on a two-dimensional graph with the year on the

horizontal axis and the demand on the vertical axis.

E *b.* Find the formula for the linear regression line that fits these data.

c. Plot this line on the graph constructed in part *a.*

d. Use this line to forecast demand next year (year 11).

e. Use this line to forecast demand in year 15.

f. What does the formula for the linear regression line indicate is roughly the average growth in demand per year?

4.33. Luxury Cruise Lines has a fleet of ships that travel to Alaska repeatedly every summer (and elsewhere during other times of the year). A considerable amount of advertising is done each winter to help generate enough passenger business for that summer. With the coming of a new winter, a decision needs to be made about how much advertising to do this year. page 183

The following table shows the amount of advertising (in thousands of dollars) and the resulting sales (in thousands of passengers booked for a cruise) for each of the past five years.

Amount of advertising ($1,000s)	225	400	350	275	450
Sales (thousands of passengers)	16	21	20	17	23

a. To use causal forecasting to forecast sales for a given amount of advertising, which need to be the dependent variable and the independent variable?

b. Plot the data on a graph.

E *c.* Find the formula for the linear regression line that fits these data. Then plot this line on the graph constructed in part *b.*

d. Forecast the sales that would be attained by expending $300,000 on advertising.

e. Estimate the amount of advertising that would need to be done to attain a booking of 22,000 passengers.

f. According to the linear regression line, about how much increase in sales can be attained on the average per $1,000 increase in the amount of advertising?

4.34. To support its large fleet, North American Airlines maintains an extensive inventory of spare parts, including wing flaps. The number of wing flaps needed in inventory to replace damaged wing flaps each month depends partially on the number of flying hours for the fleet that month, since increased usage increases the chances of damage.

The following table shows both the number of replacement wing flaps needed and the number of thousands of flying hours for the entire fleet for each of several recent months.

Thousands of flying hours	**162**	**149**	**185**	**171**	**138**	**154**
Number of wing flaps needed	12	9	13	14	10	11

a. Identify the dependent variable and the independent variable for doing causal forecasting of the number of wing flaps needed for a given number of flying hours.

b. Plot the data on a graph.

E *c.* Find the formula for the linear regression line.

d. Plot this line on the graph constructed in part *b.*

e. Forecast the average number of wing flaps needed in a month in which 150,000 flying hours are planned.

f. Repeat part *e* for 200,000 flying hours.

E 4.35. Joe Barnes is the owner of Standing Tall, one of the major roofing companies in town. Much of the company's business comes from building roofs on new houses. Joe has learned that general contractors constructing new houses typically will subcontract the roofing work about two months after construction begins. Therefore, to help him develop long-range schedules for his work crews, Joe has decided to use county records on the number of housing construction permits issued each month to

forecast the number of roofing jobs on new houses he will have two months later.

Joe has now gathered the following data for each month over the past year, where the second column gives the number of housing construction permits issued in that month and the third column shows the number of roofing jobs on new houses that were subcontracted out to Standing Tall in that month. Use a causal forecasting approach to develop a forecasting procedure for Joe to use hereafter.

Month	Permits	Jobs
January	323	19
February	359	17
March	396	24
April	421	23
May	457	28
June	472	32
July	446	34
August	407	37
September	374	33
October	343	30
November	311	27
December	277	22

4.36. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for GSAV that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 4.6. Briefly describe how forecasting methods, including judgmental forecasting methods, were applied as part of this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

Case 4-1

Finagling the Forecasts

Mark Lawrence has been pursuing a vision for more than two years. This pursuit began when he became frustrated in his role as director of Human Resources at **Cutting Edge,** a large company manufacturing computers and computer peripherals. At that time, the Human Resources Department under his direction provided records and benefits administration to the 60,000 Cutting Edge employees throughout the United States, and 35 separate records and benefits administration centers existed across the country. Employees contacted these records and benefits centers to obtain information about dental plans and stock options, change tax forms and personal information, and process leaves of absence and retirements. The decentralization of these administration centers caused numerous headaches for Mark. He had to deal with employee complaints often since each center interpreted company policies differently—communicating inconsistent and sometimes inaccurate answers to employees. His department also suffered high operating costs since operating 35 separate centers created inefficiency.

His vision? To centralize records and benefits administration by establishing one administration center. This centralized records and benefits administration center would perform two distinct functions: data management and customer service. The data management function would include updating employee records after performance reviews and maintaining the human resource management system. The customer service function would include establishing a call center to answer employee questions concerning records and benefits and to process records and benefits changes over the phone.

One year after proposing his vision to management, Mark received the go-ahead from Cutting Edge corporate headquarters. He prepared his “to do” list—specifying computer and phone systems requirements, installing hardware and software, integrating data from the 35 separate administration centers, standardizing record-keeping and response procedures, and staffing the administration center. Mark delegated the systems requirements, installation, and integration jobs to a competent group of technology specialists. He took on the responsibility of standardizing procedures and staffing the administration center.

Mark had spent many years in human resources and therefore had little problem with standardizing record-keeping and response procedures. He encountered trouble in determining the number of representatives needed to staff the center, however. He was particularly worried about staffing the call

center since the representatives answering phones interact directly with customers—the 60,000 Cutting Edge employees. The customer service representatives would receive extensive training so that they would know the records and benefits policies backwards and forwards—enabling them to answer questions accurately and process changes efficiently. Overstaffing would cause Mark to suffer the high costs of training unneeded representatives and paying the surplus representatives the high salaries that go along with such an intense job. Understaffing would cause Mark to continue to suffer the headaches from customer complaints—something he definitely wanted to avoid.

The number of customer service representatives Mark needed to hire depends on the number of calls that the records and benefits call center will receive. Mark therefore needs to forecast the number of calls that the new centralized center will receive. He approached the forecasting problem by using judgmental forecasting. He studied data from one of the 35 decentralized administration centers and learned that the decentralized center had serviced 15,000 customers and had received 2,000 calls per month. He concluded that since the new centralized center would service four times the number of customers—60,000 customers—it would receive four times the number of calls—8,000 calls per month.

Mark slowly checked off the items on his “to do” list, and the centralized records and benefits administration center opened one year after Mark had received the go-ahead from corporate headquarters.

Now, after operating the new center for 13 weeks, Mark’s call center forecasts are proving to be terribly inaccurate. The number of calls the center receives is roughly three times as large as the 8,000 calls per month that Mark had forecasted. Because of demand overload, the call center is slowly going to hell in a handbasket. Customers calling the center must wait an average of five minutes before speaking to a representative, and Mark is receiving numerous complaints. At the same time, the customer service representatives are unhappy and on the verge of quitting because of the stress created by the demand overload. Even corporate headquarters has become aware of the staff and service inadequacies, and executives have been breathing down Mark’s neck demanding improvements.

Mark needs help, and he approaches you to forecast demand for the call center more accurately.

Luckily, when Mark first established the call center, he realized the importance of keeping operational data, and he provides you with the number of calls received on each day of the week over the last 13 weeks. The data

(shown next) begins in week 44 of the last year and continues to week 5 of the current year.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Week 44	1,130	851	859	828	726
Week 45	1,085	1,042	892	840	799
Week 46	1,303	1,121	1,003	1,113	1,005
Week 47	2,652	2,825	1,841	0	0
Week 48	1,949	1,507	989	990	1,084
Week 49	1,260	1,134	941	847	714
Week 50	1,002	847	922	842	784
Week 51	823	0	0	401	429
Week 52/1	1,209	830	0	1,082	841
Week 2	1,362	1,174	967	930	853
Week 3	924	954	1,346	904	758
Week 4	886	878	802	945	610
Week 5	910	754	705	729	772

Mark indicates that the days where no calls were received were holidays.

a. Mark first asks you to forecast daily demand for the next week using the data from the past 13 weeks. You should make the forecasts for all the days of the next week now (at the end of week 5), but you should provide a different forecast for each day of the week by treating the forecast for a single day as being the actual call volume on that day.

   1. From working at the records and benefits administration center, you know that demand follows “seasonal” patterns within the week. For example, more employees call at the beginning of the week when they are fresh and productive than at the end of the week when they are planning for the weekend. You therefore realize that you must account for the seasonal patterns and adjust the data that Mark gave you accordingly. What is the day-by-day seasonally adjusted call volume for the past 13 weeks?
   2. Using the seasonally adjusted call volume, forecast the daily demand for the next week using the last-value forecasting method.
   3. Using the seasonally adjusted call volume, forecast the daily demand for the next week using the averaging forecasting method.

4. Using the seasonally adjusted call volume, forecast the daily demand for the next week using the moving-average forecasting method. You decide to use the five most recent days in this analysis.
5. Using the seasonally adjusted call volume, forecast the daily demand for the next week using the exponential smoothing forecasting method. You decide to use a smoothing constant of 0.1 because you believe that demand with seasonal effects remains relatively stable. Use the daily call volume average over the past 13 weeks for the initial estimate.

b. After one week, the period you have forecasted passes. You realize that you are able to determine the accuracy of your forecasts because you now have the actual call volumes from the week you had forecasted. The actual call volumes are shown below.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Week 6	723	677	521	571	498

c. At the end of the hour, Mark arrives at your desk with two data sets: weekly case volumes for the decentralized center and weekly case volumes for the centralized center. You ask Mark if he has data for daily case volumes, and he tells you that he does not. You therefore first have to forecast the weekly demand for the next week and then break this weekly demand into daily demand.

page 186

The decentralized center was shut down last year when the new centralized center opened, so you have the decentralized case data spanning from week 44 of two years ago to week 5 of last year. You compare this decentralized data to the centralized data spanning from week 44 of last year to week 5 of this year. The weekly case volumes are shown in the following table.

For each of the forecasting methods, calculate the mean absolute deviation for the method and evaluate the performance of the method. When calculating the mean absolute deviation, you should use the actual forecasts you found in part *a* above. You should not recalculate the forecasts based on the actual values. In your evaluation, provide an explanation for the effectiveness or ineffectiveness of the method.

You realize that the forecasting methods that you have investigated do not provide a great degree of accuracy, and you decide to use a creative approach to forecasting that combines the statistical and judgmental approaches. You know that Mark had used data from one of the 35

decentralized records and benefits administration centers to perform his original forecasting. You therefore suspect that call volume data exists for this decentralized center. Because the decentralized centers performed the same functions as the new centralized center currently performs, you decide that the call volumes from the decentralized center will help you forecast the call volumes for the new centralized center. You simply need to understand how the decentralized volumes relate to the new centralized volumes. Once you understand this relationship, you can use the call volumes from the decentralized center to forecast the call volumes for the centralized center.

You approach Mark and ask him whether call center data exist for the decentralized center. He tells you that data exist, but data do not exist in the format that you need. Case volume data—not call volume data—exist. You do not understand the distinction, so Mark continues his explanation. There are two types of demand data—case volume data and call volume data. Case volume data count the actions taken by the representatives at the call center. Call volume data count the number of calls answered by the representatives at the call center. A case may require one call or multiple calls to resolve it. Thus, the number of cases is always less than or equal to the number of calls.

You know you only have case volume data for the decentralized center, and you certainly do not want to compare apples and oranges. You therefore ask if case volume data exist for the new centralized center. Mark gives you a wicked grin and nods his head. He sees where you are going with your forecasts, and he tells you that he will have the data for you within the hour.

1. Using Mark's data shown in the table below, find a mathematical relationship between the decentralized case volume data and the centralized case volume data.
2. Now that you have a relationship between the weekly decentralized case volume and the weekly centralized case volume, you are able to forecast the weekly case volume for the new center. Unfortunately, you do not need the weekly case volume; you need the daily call volume. To calculate call volume from case volume, you perform further analysis and determine that each case generates an average of 1.5 calls. To calculate daily call volume from weekly call volume, you decide to use the seasonal factors as conversion factors. Given the following case volume data from the decentralized center for week 6 of last year, forecast the daily call volume for the new center for week 6 of this year.

	Week 6
Decentralized case volume	613

3. Using the actual call volumes given in part *b,* calculate the mean absolute deviation and evaluate the effectiveness of this forecasting method.
4. Which forecasting method would you recommend Mark use and why? As the call center continues its operation, how would you recommend improving the forecasting procedure?

	Decentralized Case Volume	Centralized Case Volume
Week 44	612	2,052
Week 45	721	2,170
Week 46	693	2,779
Week 47	540	2,334
Week 48	1,386	2,514
Week 49	577	1,713
Week 50	405	1,927
Week 51	441	1,167
Week 52/1	655	1,549
Week 2	572	2,126
Week 3	475	2,337

	Decentralized Case Volume	Centralized Case Volume
Week 4	530	1,916
Week 5	595	2,098

[1]This forecast also can be projected ahead to subsequent quarters, but we are focusing on just the next quarter.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

PART 3 (Chapters 5–9) | Using Linear Pr
Prescriptive Analytics

CHAPTER 5

Linear Programming: Basic Concepts

This part has five chapters. Chapters 5–9 comprise Part 3, which has the theme of using linear programming to perform prescriptive analytics. To clarify the role of Chapter 5 in this endeavor, we begin by providing an introduction to Part 3, after which we will focus on presenting Chapter 5.

Introduction to Part 3 (Chapters 5–9): Using Linear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics

Part 1 (Chapters 1 and 2) has described the essence of *management science* and *business analytics.* One key conclusion was that the joint arrival of **the era of big data** and **the analytics revolution** has enabled these disciplines to have a dramatic impact on improving the operation of numerous businesses and other organizations around the world. Another conclusion was that these are overlapping disciplines that complement each other extremely well because they collectively have great power for performing all three stages of analytics (descriptive analytics, predictive analytics, and prescriptive analytics). **Business analytics** (often called **data science** or just **analytics** instead) has developed a powerful methodology for performing descriptive analytics and predictive analytics. Section 2.3 describes the performance of descriptive analytics and Section 2.4 does the same for

predictive analytics. **Part 2 (Chapters 3 and 4)** also is devoted to predictive analytics.

Management science (often called **operations research** instead) has a long history of using powerful techniques for performing prescriptive analytics. In addition, several of the traditional techniques of management science (e.g., the forecasting methods described throughout Chapter 4) also are very useful for performing predictive analytics.

Part 3 (Chapters 5–9) now will turn the focus to just the third stage of analytics, namely, **prescriptive analytics** (using decision models, including optimization models, to *prescribe* the best options for managerial decision making). This is the stage where management science has special expertise. Thus, the goal now will be to start the process of describing the powerful decision models of management science that can better prescribe what businesses should do in the future. In particular, these five chapters will highlight the most widely used type of decision model, **linear programming.**

Linear programming deals with a wide variety of problems that often involve allocating limited resources among competing activities in the best possible way. Such a problem is formulated as a **decision model** that includes an **objective function** and a number of **constraints.** One key assumption is the **continuous-variables assumption,** which requires that the decision variables representing the levels of the activities can take on any nonnegativity values (not just integer values) as long as they satisfy all the constraints. Another assumption is the **proportionality assumption,** which requires that the contribution of each activity to the objective function or to the left-hand side of a constraint is *proportional* to the level of the activity. This leads to all the mathematical functions in the decision model being **linear functions**. Still another key assumption is the **certainty assumption,** which requires that all the numbers in the decision model (excluding the decision variables representing the levels of the activities) are *known constants.* (Just as for the various other models of management science and business analytics, these assumptions are made with the understanding that they may be only approximations of reality, but that sufficiently close approximations can still lead to sufficiently valid conclusions.)

Looking ahead, **Part 4 (Chapters 10 and 11)** will describe other management science decision models where either the continuous-variables assumption or the proportionality assumption does not hold and **Part 5 (Chapters 12–15)** will do the same when the certainty assumption does not hold.

Can linear programming decision models be solved reasonably easily? Yes, indeed! Linear programming algorithms now are so powerful that huge decision models with **many thousands (or occasionally even millions)** of decision variables and constraints now are being solved in practice! (Rest easy. We will not venture into the advanced topic of describing these algorithms that are widely available in management science software packages.)

Chapter 5 presents the **basic concepts** of linear programming. **Chapter 6** focuses on the **formulation and applications** of linear programming, with many examples. Since we will be using spreadsheet models throughout Part 3 (and elsewhere), **Chapter 7** is devoted to **the art of modeling with spreadsheets.**

Rather than considering just one version of a linear programming model, management frequently wants *what-if analysis* done to determine how the conclusions would change with other plausible versions of the model. Therefore, **Chapter 8** elaborates on **what-if analysis** for linear programming.

Some of the most important applications of linear programming involve optimizing the operation of networks. Therefore, **Chapter 9** focuses on these kinds of network optimization problems. Often, the models for these problems represent networks with goods flowing through them. One objective might then be to minimize the cost of the flows. Another might be to maximize the flows. Another might be to minimize the distance (or time or cost) for going from one end of the network to the other.

This book's website also includes additional information about linear programming. Chapters 5, 8, and 9 all have a supplement there. In addition, the website has some informative "Web chapters," including Chapter 16 (Solution Concepts for Linear Programming), Chapter 17 (Transportation and Assignment Problems), and Chapter 19 (Goal Programming).

Resumption of Chapter Five

Learning Objectives:

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Explain what linear programming is.
2. Identify the three key questions to be addressed in formulating any spreadsheet model.
3. Name and identify the purpose of the four kinds of cells used in linear programming spreadsheet models.

4. Formulate a basic linear programming model in a spreadsheet from a description of the problem.
5. Present the algebraic form of a linear programming model from its formulation on a spreadsheet.
6. Apply the graphical method to solve a two-variable linear programming problem.
7. Use Excel to solve a linear programming spreadsheet model.

The management of any organization regularly must make decisions about how to allocate its resources to various activities to best meet organizational objectives. Linear programming is a powerful tool for performing prescriptive analytics that aids management in making such decisions. It is applicable to both profit-making and not-for-profit organizations, as well as page 189 governmental agencies. The resources being allocated to activities can be, for example, money, different kinds of personnel, and different kinds of machinery and equipment. In many cases, a wide variety of resources must be allocated simultaneously. The activities needing these resources might be various production activities (e.g., producing different products), marketing activities (e.g., advertising in different media), financial activities (e.g., making capital investments), or some other activities. Some problems might even involve activities of *all* these types (and perhaps others), because they are competing for the same resources.

You will see as we progress that even this description of the scope of linear programming is not sufficiently broad. Some of its applications go beyond the allocation of resources. However, activities always are involved. Thus, a recurring theme in linear programming is the need to find the *best mix* of activities—which ones to pursue and at what levels.

Like the other management science techniques for performing prescriptive analytics, linear programming uses a *mathematical model* to represent the problem being studied. The word *linear* in the name refers to the form of the mathematical expressions in this model. *Programming* does not refer to computer programming; rather, it is essentially a synonym for planning. Thus, linear programming means the *planning of activities* represented by a *linear* mathematical model.

Because it comprises a major part of management science, linear programming takes up several chapters of this book. Furthermore, many of the lessons learned about how to apply linear programming also will carry over to the application of other management science techniques.

This chapter focuses on the basic concepts of linear programming.

5.1 A CASE STUDY: THE WYNDOR GLASS CO. PRODUCT-MIX PROBLEM

Hemant Shah has had an excellent track record during his seven years as manager of new product development for the Wyndor Glass Company. Although the company is a small one, it has been experiencing considerable growth largely because of the innovative new products developed by Hemant's group. Wyndor's president, John Hill, has often acknowledged publicly the key role that Hemant has played in the recent success of the company.

Therefore, John felt considerable confidence six months ago in asking Hemant's group to develop the following new products:

- An 8-foot glass door with aluminum framing.
- A 4-foot × 6-foot double-hung, wood-framed window.

Although several other companies already had products meeting these specifications, John felt that Hemant would be able to work his usual magic in introducing exciting new features that would establish new industry standards.

Background

The **Wyndor Glass Co.** produces high-quality glass products, including windows and glass doors that feature handcrafting and the finest workmanship. Although the products are expensive, they fill a market niche by providing the highest quality available in the industry for the most discriminating buyers. The company has three plants that simultaneously produce the components of its products.

Plant 1 produces aluminum frames and hardware.

Plant 2 produces wood frames.

Plant 3 produces the glass and assembles the windows and doors.

Because of declining sales for certain products, top management has decided to revamp the company's product line. Unprofitable products are being discontinued, releasing production capacity to launch the two new products developed by Hemant Shah's group if management approves their release.

The 8-foot glass door requires some of the production capacity in Plants 1 and 3, but not Plant 2. The 4-foot × 6-foot double-hung window needs only Plants 2 and 3.

Management now needs to address two issues:

1. Should the company go ahead with launching these two new products?
2. If so, what should be the *product mix*—the number of units of each produced per week—for the two new products?

Management's Discussion of the Issues

Having received Hemant Shah's memorandum describing the two new products, John Hill now has called a meeting to discuss the current issues. In addition to John and Hemant, the meeting includes Binh Nguyen, vice president for manufacturing, and Ana Hernandez, vice president for marketing.

Let's eavesdrop on the meeting.

John Hill (president): Binh, we will want to rev up to start production of these products as soon as we can. About how much production output do you think we can achieve?

Binh Nguyen (vice president for manufacturing): We do have a little available production capacity, because of the products we are discontinuing, but not a lot. We should be able to achieve a production rate of a few units per week for each of these two products.

John: Is that all?

Binh: Yes. These are complicated products requiring careful crafting. And, as I said, we don't have much production capacity available.

John: Ana, will we be able to sell several of each per week?

Ana Hernandez (vice president for marketing): Easily.

John: Good. Now there's one more issue to resolve. With this limited production capacity, we need to decide how to split it between the two products. Do we want to produce the same number of both products? Or mostly one of them? Or even just produce as much as we can of one and postpone launching the other one for a little while?

Hemant Shah (manager of new product development): It would be dangerous to hold one of the products back and give our competition a chance to scoop us.

Ana: I agree. Furthermore, launching them together has some advantages from a marketing standpoint. Since they share a lot of the same special features, we can combine the advertising for the two products. This is going to make a big splash.

John: OK. But which mixture of the two products is going to be most profitable for the company?

The issue is to find the most profitable mix of the two new products.

Binh: I have a suggestion.

John: What's that?

Binh: A couple times in the past, our Analytics Department has helped us with these same kinds of product-mix decisions, and they've done a good job. They ferret out all the relevant data and then dig into some detailed analysis of the issue. I've found their input very helpful. And this is right down their alley. It's a small department but their special skills are certainly impressive.

John: Yes, you're right. That's a good idea. Let's get our Analytics Department working on this issue. Binh, will you coordinate with them?

The meeting ends.

The Analytics Department Begins Its Work

At the outset, the Analytics Department spends considerable time with Binh Nguyen to clarify the general problem and specific issues that management wants addressed. A particular concern is to ascertain the appropriate objective for the problem from management's viewpoint. Binh points out that John Hill posed the issue as determining which mixture of the two products is going to be most profitable for the company.

Therefore, with Binh's concurrence, the group defines the key issue to be addressed as follows.

Question: Which combination of *production rates* (the number of units produced per week) for the two new products would *maximize the total profit* from both of them?

An Application Vignette

At the time of this application during the first years of the 21st century, **Swift & Company** was a diversified protein-producing business based in Greeley, Colorado. With annual sales of over $8 billion, beef and related products were by far the largest portion of the company's business. In 2007, following this dramatic application, JBS S.A. (a Brazilian company that processes fresh beef and pork) purchased Swift & Company in a $1.5 billion, all-cash deal. The acquisition made the newly consolidated company the largest beef processor in the world. After several subsequent acquisitions in the United States, JBS S.A. reported $53 billion of revenue in 2020.

To improve the company's sales and manufacturing performance prior to this acquisition, upper management of Swift & Company concluded that it needed to achieve three major objectives. One was to enable the company's customer service representatives to talk to their more than 8,000 customers with accurate information about the availability of current and future inventory while considering requested delivery dates and maximum product age upon delivery. A second was to produce an efficient shift-level schedule for each plant over a 28-day horizon. A third was to accurately determine whether a plant can ship a requested order-line-item quantity on the requested date and time given the availability of cattle and constraints on the plant's capacity.

To meet these three challenges, a management science team developed an *integrated system of* **45 linear programming models** based on three model formulations to dynamically schedule its beef-fabrication operations at five plants in real time as it receives orders. *The total audited benefits realized in the first year* of operation of this system were **$12.74 million,** including $12 million due to *optimizing the product mix.* Other benefits include a reduction in orders lost, a reduction in price discounting, and better on-time delivery. This impact of linear programming continued to grow in the subsequent years.

This dramatic application of linear programming resulted in Swift & Company winning the prestigious honor of being one of the five worldwide finalists in 2005 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: A. Bixby, B. Downs, and M. Self, "A Scheduling and Capable-to-Promise Application for Swift & Company," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 36, no. 1 (January–February 2006), 69–86. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

The group also concludes that it should consider *all* possible combinations of production rates of both new products permitted by the available production capacities in the three plants. For example, one alternative (despite Hemant Shah's and Ana Hernandez's objections) is to forgo producing one of the products for now (thereby setting its production rate equal to zero) in order to produce as much as possible of the other product. (We must not neglect the possibility that maximum profit from both products might be attained by producing none of one and as much as possible of the other.)

The Analytics Department next identifies the information it needs to gather to conduct this study:

1. Available production capacity in each of the plants.
2. How much of the production capacity in each plant would be needed by each product.
3. Profitability of each product.

Concrete data are not available for any of these quantities, so estimates have to be made. Estimating these quantities requires enlisting the help of key personnel in other units of the company.

Binh Nguyen's staff develops the estimates that involve production capacities. Specifically, the staff estimates that the production facilities in Plant 1 needed for the new kind of doors will be available approximately four hours per week. (During the rest of the time, Plant 1 will continue with current products.) The production facilities in Plant 2 will be available for the new kind of windows about 12 hours per week. The facilities needed for both products in Plant 3 will be available approximately 18 hours per week.

The amount of each plant's production capacity actually used by each product depends on its production rate. It is estimated that each door will require one hour of production time in Plant 1 and three hours in Plant 3. For each window, about two hours will be needed in Plant 2 and two hours in Plant 3.

By analyzing the cost data and the pricing decision, the Accounting Department estimates the profit from the two products. The projection is that the profit per unit will be $300 for the doors and $500 for the windows.

Table 5-1 summarizes the data now gathered.

TABLE 5.1

page 192

Data for the Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem

Plant	Production Time Used for Each Unit Produced		Available per Week
	Doors	Windows	
1	1 hour	0	4 hours
2	0	2 hours	12 hours
3	3 hours	2 hours	18 hours
Unit profit	$300	$500	

The Analytics Department recognizes this as being a classic **product-mix problem**. Therefore, the next step is to develop a *mathematical model*—that is, a *linear programming model*—to represent the problem so that it can be solved mathematically. The next four sections focus on how to develop this model and then how to solve it to find the most profitable mix between the two products, assuming the estimates in Table 5-1 are accurate.

product-mix problem

A type of linear programming problem where the objective is to find the most profitable mix of production levels for the products under consideration. (Section 5.1), 192

Review *Questions*

. What were the two issues addressed by management?

. The Analytics Department was asked to help analyze which of these issues?

. How did this group define the key issue to be addressed?

. What information did the group need to gather to conduct its study?

5.2 FORMULATING THE WYNDOR PROBLEM ON A SPREADSHEET

Spreadsheets provide a powerful and intuitive tool for displaying and analyzing many management problems. We now will focus on how to do this for the Wyndor problem with the popular spreadsheet package Microsoft Excel.

Formulating a Spreadsheet Model for the Wyndor Problem

Figure 5.1 displays the Wyndor problem by transferring the data in Table 5.1 onto a spreadsheet. (Columns E and F are being reserved for later entries described below.) We will refer to the cells showing the data as **data cells**. To distinguish the data cells from other cells in the spreadsheet, they are shaded light blue. (In the textbook figures, the light blue shading appears as light gray.) The spreadsheet is made easier to interpret by using *range names.* (A **range name** is simply a descriptive name given to a cell or range of cells that immediately identifies what is there. Excel allows you to use range names instead of the corresponding cell addresses in Excel equations, since this usually makes the equations much easier to interpret at a glance.) The data cells in the Wyndor Glass Co. problem are given the range names UnitProfit (C4:D4), HoursUsedPerUnitProduced (C7:D9), and HoursAvailable (G7:G9). To enter a range name, select the range of cells, select the range of cells, choose Define Name from the Formulas tab, then type a name, and click OK. (See Appendix A for further details about defining and using range names.)

data cells

The cells in the spreadsheet that show the data of the problem.

range name

A descriptive name given to a cell or range of cells that immediately identifies what is there.

FIGURE 5.1

The initial spreadsheet for the Wyndor problem after transferring the data in Table 5.1 into data cells.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5							Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced				Available
7		Plant 1	1	0			4
8		Plant 2	0	2			12
9		Plant 3	3	2			18

Excel Tip Cell shading and borders can be added by using the borders button and the fill color button in the Font Group of the Home tab.

Excel Tip See the section on using range names in Appendix A for tips on adding range names.

Three questions need to be answered to begin the process of using the spreadsheet to formulate a mathematical model (in this case, a **linear programming model**) for the problem.

linear programming model
The mathematical model that represents a linear programming problem. (See also Section 5.3)

These are the three key questions to be addressed in formulating any spreadsheet model.

1. What are the *decisions* to be made?
2. What are the *constraints* on these decisions?
3. What is the overall *measure of performance* for these decisions?

The preceding section described how Wyndor's Analytics Department spent considerable time with Binh Nguyen, vice president for manufacturing, to clarify management's view of their problem. These discussions provided the following answers to these questions.

1. The decisions to be made are the *production rates* (number of units produced per week) for the two new products.
2. The constraints on these decisions are that the number of hours of production time used per week by the two products in the respective plants cannot exceed the number of hours available.
3. The overall measure of performance for these decisions is the *total profit* per week from the two products.

Some students find it helpful to organize their thoughts by answering these three key questions before beginning to formulate the spreadsheet model.

Figure 5.2 shows how these answers can be incorporated into the spreadsheet. Based on the first answer, the *production rates* of the two products are placed in cells C12 and D12 to locate them in the columns for these products just under the data cells. Since we don't know yet what these production rates should be, they are just entered as zeroes in Figure 5.2. (Actually, any trial solution can be entered, although *negative* production rates

should be excluded since they are impossible.) Later, these numbers will be changed while seeking the best mix of production rates. Therefore, these cells containing the decisions to be made are called **changing cells**. To highlight the changing cells, they are shaded bright yellow with a light border. (In the textbook figures, the bright yellow appears as gray.) The changing cells are given the range name UnitsProduced (C12:D12).

changing cells

The cells in the spreadsheet that show the values of the decision variables. (Section 5.2)

The changing cells contain the decisions to be made.

FIGURE 5.2

The complete spreadsheet for the Wyndor problem with an initial trial solution (both production rates equal to zero) entered into the changing cells (C12 and D12).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	0	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	0	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0	0			$0

Using the answer to the second question, the total number of hours of production time used per week by the two products in the respective plants is entered in cells E7, E8, and E9, just to the right of the corresponding data cells. The total number of production hours depends on the production rates of the two products, so this total is zero when the production rates are zero. With positive production rates, the total number of production hours used per week in a plant is the sum of the production hours used per week by the respective products. The production hours used by a product is the number of hours needed for *each* unit of the product *times* the number of units being

produced. Therefore, when positive numbers are entered in cells C12 and D12 for the number of doors and windows to produce per week, the data in cells C7:D9 are used to calculate the total production hours per week as follows:

The colon in C7:D9 is Excel shorthand for the *range from* C7 to D9; that is, the entire block of cells in column C or D and in row 7, 8, or 9.

Production hours in Plant 1 = 1(# of doors) + 0(# of windows)
Production hours in Plant 2 = 0(# of doors) + 2(# of windows)
Production hours in Plant 3 = 3(# of doors) + 2(# of windows)

Consequently, the Excel equations for the three cells in column E are

E7 = C7*C12 + D7*D12
E8 = C8*C12 + D8*D12
E9 = C9*C12 + D9*D12

where each asterisk denotes multiplication. Since each of these cells provides output that depends on the changing cells (C12 and D12), they are called **output cells**.

output cells

The cells in the spreadsheet that provide output that depends on the changing cells. These cells frequently are used to help specify constraints.

Notice that each of the equations for the output cells involves the sum of two products. There is a function in Excel called SUMPRODUCT that will sum up the product of each of the individual terms in two different ranges of cells when the two ranges have the same number of rows and the same number of columns. Each product being summed is the product of a term in the first range and the term in the corresponding location in the second range. For example, consider the two ranges, C7:D7 and C12:D12, so that each range has one row and two columns. In this case, SUMPRODUCT (C7:D7, C12:D12) takes each of the individual terms in the range C7:D7, multiplies them by the corresponding term in the range C12:D12, and then sums up these individual products, just as shown in the first equation above. Applying the range name for UnitsProduced (C12:D12), the formula for E7 becomes =SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7, UnitsProduced). Although optional with such short equations, the SUMPRODUCT function is especially handy as a shortcut for entering longer equations.

The SUMPRODUCT function is used extensively in linear programming spreadsheet models.

The formulas in the output cells E7:E9 are very similar. Rather than typing each of these formulas separately into the three cells, it is quicker (and less prone to typos) to type the formula just once in E7 and then copy the formula down into cells E8 and E9. To do this, first enter the formula = SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7, UnitsProduced) in cell E7. Then select cell E7 and drag the fill handle (the small box on the lower right corner of the cell cursor) down through cells E8 and E9.

When copying formulas, it is important to understand the difference between relative and absolute references. In the formula in cell E7, the reference to cells C7:D7 is based upon the *relative position* to the cell containing the formula. In this case, the relative position is the two cells in the same row and immediately to the left. This is known as a **relative reference**. When this formula is copied to new cells using the fill handle, the reference is automatically adjusted to refer to the new cell(s) at the same relative location (the two cells in the same row and immediately to the left). The formula in E8 becomes = SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8, UnitsProduced) and the formula in E9 becomes = SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9, UnitsProduced). This is exactly what we want, since we always want the hours used at a given plant to be based upon the hours used per unit produced at that same plant (the two cells in the same row and immediately to the left).

relative reference

A reference to a cell whose address is based upon its position relative to the cell containing the formula. (See also Appendix A)

In contrast, the reference to the UnitsProduced in E7 is called an **absolute reference**. These references do not change when they are filled into other cells but instead always refer to the same absolute cell locations.

absolute reference

A reference to a cell (or a column or a row) with a fixed address, as indicated either by using a range name or by placing a $ sign in front of the letter and number of the cell reference. (See also Appendix A)

You can make the column absolute and the row relative (or vice versa) by putting a $ sign in front of only the letter (or number) of the cell reference.

To make a relative reference, simply enter the cell addresses (e.g., C7:D7). By contrast, references referred to by a range name are treated as absolute references. Another way to make an absolute reference to a range

of cells is to put $ signs in front of the letter and number of the cell reference (e.g., $C$12:$D$12). See Appendix A for more details about relative and absolute referencing and copying formulas.

Excel Tip After entering a cell reference, repeatedly pressing the F4 key (or command-T on a Mac) will rotate among the four possibilities of relative and absolute references (e.g., C12, $C$12, C$12, $C12).

Next, ≤ signs are entered in cells F7, F8, and F9 to indicate that each total value to their left cannot be allowed to exceed the corresponding number in column G. (On the computer ≤ (or ≥) is often represented as <= (or >=), since there is no ≤ (or ≥) key on the keyboard.) The spreadsheet still will allow you to enter trial solutions that violate the ≤ signs. However, these ≤ signs serve as a reminder that such trial solutions need to be rejected if no changes are made in the numbers in column G.

page 195

Finally, since the answer to the third question is that the overall measure of performance is the total profit from the two products, this profit (per week) is entered in cell G12. Much like the numbers in column E, it is the sum of products. Since cells C4 and D4 give the profit from *each* door and window produced, the total profit per week from these products is

$$\text{Profit} = \$300(\#\text{of doors}) + \$500(\#\text{ of windows})$$

Hence, the equation for cell G12 is

$$\text{G12} = \text{SUMPRODUCT(C4:D4, C12:D12)}$$

Utilizing range names of TotalProfit (G12), UnitProfit (C4:D4), and UnitsProduced (C12:D12), this equation becomes

$$\text{TotalProfit} = \text{SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit, UnitsProduced)}$$

This is a good example of the benefit of using range names for making the resulting equation easier to interpret.

TotalProfit (G12) is a special kind of output cell. It is our objective to make this cell as large as possible when making decisions regarding production rates. Therefore, TotalProfit (G12) is referred to as the **objective cell**. This cell is shaded orange with a heavy border. (In the textbook figures, the orange

appears as gray and is distinguished from the changing cells by its darker shading and heavy border.)

objective cell

The cell in the spreadsheet that shows the overall measure of performance of the decisions.

The bottom of Figure 5.3 summarizes all the formulas that need to be entered in the Hours Used column and in the Total Profit cell. Also shown is a summary of the range names (in alphabetical order) and the corresponding cell addresses.

FIGURE 5.3

The spreadsheet model for the Wyndor problem, including the formulas for the objective cell Total-Profit (G12) and the other output cells in column E, where the goal is to maximize the objective cell.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	0	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	0	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0	0			$0

Range Name	Cell
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C12:D12

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7, UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8, UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9, UnitsProduced)

	G
11	Total Profit
12	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit, UnitsProduced)

This completes the formulation of the spreadsheet model for the Wyndor problem.

With this formulation, it becomes easy to analyze any trial solution for the production rates. Each time production rates are entered in cells C12 and D12, Excel immediately calculates the output cells for hours used and total profit. For example, Figure 5.4 shows the spreadsheet when the production rates are set at four doors per week and three windows per week. Cell G12 shows that this yields a total profit of $2,700 per week. Also note that E7 = G7, E8 < G8, and E9 = G9, so the ≤ signs in column F are all satisfied. Thus, this trial solution is *feasible.* However, it would *not* be feasible to further increase both production rates, since this would cause E7 > G7 and E9 > G9.

FIGURE 5.4

page 196

The spreadsheet for the Wyndor problem with a new trial solution entered into the changing cells, UnitsProduced (C12:D12).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	4	3			$2,700

Does this trial solution provide the best mix of production rates? Not necessarily. It might be possible to further increase the total profit by simultaneously increasing one production rate and decreasing the other. However, it is not necessary to continue using trial and error to explore such possibilities. We shall describe in Section 5.5 how the Excel Solver can be used to quickly find the best (optimal) solution.

Characteristics of a Linear Programming Model on a Spreadsheet

The spreadsheet model displayed in Figure 5.3 is an example of a *linear programming* model. The reason is that it possesses all the following characteristics.

1. Decisions need to be made on the levels of a number of activities, so *changing cells* are used to display these levels. (The two activities for the Wyndor problem are the production of the two new products, so the changing cells display the number of units produced per week for each of these products.)
2. These activity levels can have any value (including fractional values) that satisfy a number of constraints. (The production rates for Wyndor's new products are restricted only by the constraints on the number of hours of production time available in the three plants.)
3. Each **constraint** describes a restriction on the feasible values for the levels of the activities, where a constraint commonly is displayed by having an output cell on the left, a mathematical sign (≤ , ≥ , or =) in the middle, and a data cell on the right. (Wyndor's three constraints involving hours available in the plants are displayed in Figures 5.2–5.4 by having output cells in column E, ≤ signs in column F, and data cells in column G.)

constraint

A restriction on the feasible values of the decision variables. (See also Section 5.3)

4. The decisions on activity levels are to be based on an overall measure of performance, which is entered in the *objective cell.* The goal is to either *maximize* the objective cell or *minimize* the objective cell, depending on the nature of the measure of performance. (Wyndor's overall measure of performance is the total profit per week from the two new products, so this measure has been entered in the objective cell G12, where the goal is to maximize this objective cell.)
5. The Excel equation for each *output cell* (including the objective cell) can be expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function,[1] where each term in the sum is the product of a *data cell* and a *changing cell.* (The bottom of Figure 5.3 shows how a SUMPRODUCT function is used for each output cell for the Wyndor problem.)

page 197

Linear programming models are not the only models that can have characteristics 1, 3, and 4. However, characteristics 2 and 5 are *key assumptions* of linear programming. Therefore, these are the two key

characteristics that together differentiate a linear programming model from other kinds of mathematical models that can be formulated on a spreadsheet.

Characteristic 2 rules out situations where the activity levels need to have *integer* values. For example, such a situation would arise in the Wyndor problem if the decisions to be made were the *total* numbers of doors and windows to produce (which must be integers) rather than the numbers per week (which can have fractional values since a door or window can be started in one week and completed in the next week). When the activity levels do need to have integer values, a similar kind of model (called an *integer programming* model) is used instead by making a small adjustment on the spreadsheet, as will be illustrated in Section 6.2.

Characteristic 5 describes the so-called *proportionality assumption* of linear programming, which states that each term in an output cell must be proportional to a particular changing cell. This prohibits those cases where the Excel equation for an output cell cannot be expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function. To illustrate such a case, suppose that the weekly profit from producing Wyndor's new windows can be *more* than doubled by doubling the production rate because of economies in marketing larger amounts. This would mean that this weekly profit is *not* simply proportional to this production rate, so the Excel equation for the objective cell would need to be more complicated than a SUMPRODUCT function. Consideration of how to formulate such models will be deferred to Chapter 11.

Additional examples of formulating linear programming models on a spreadsheet are provided in Section 5.7 and in both of this chapter's solved problems presented at the end of the chapter. (All of these examples also will illustrate the procedure described in the next section for using algebra to formulate linear programming models.)

Summary of the Formulation Procedure

The procedure used to formulate a linear programming model on a spreadsheet for the Wyndor problem can be adapted to many other problems as well. Here is a summary of the steps involved in the procedure.

1. Gather the data for the problem (such as summarized in Table 5.1 for the Wyndor problem).
2. Enter the data into *data cells* on a spreadsheet.
3. Identify the decisions to be made on the levels of activities and designate *changing cells* for displaying these decisions.

4. Identify the constraints on these decisions and introduce *output cells* as needed to specify these constraints.
5. Choose the overall measure of performance to be entered into the *objective cell.*
6. Use a SUMPRODUCT function to enter the appropriate value into each output cell (including the objective cell).

This procedure does not spell out the details of how to set up the spreadsheet. There generally are alternative ways of doing this rather than a single "right" way. One of the great strengths of spreadsheets is their flexibility for dealing with a wide variety of problems. (Chapter 7 will go into much more detail on the art of modeling with spreadsheets.)

Review *Questions*

. What are the three questions that need to be answered to begin the process of formulating a linear programming model on a spreadsheet?
. What are the roles for the data cells, the changing cells, the output cells, and the objective cell when formulating such a model?
. What is the form of the Excel equation for each output cell (including the objective cell) when formulating such a model?

5.3 THE MATHEMATICAL MODEL IN THE SPREADSHEET

There are two widely used methods for formulating a linear programming model. One is to formulate it directly on a spreadsheet, as described in the preceding section. The other is to use algebra to present the model. The two versions of the model are equivalent. The only difference is whether the language of spreadsheets or the language of algebra is used to describe the model. Both versions have their advantages, and it can be helpful to be bilingual. For example, the two versions lead to different, but complementary, ways of analyzing problems like the Wyndor problem (as discussed in the next two sections). Since this book emphasizes the spreadsheet approach, we will only briefly describe the algebraic approach.

A linear programming model can be formulated either as a spreadsheet model or as an algebraic model.

Formulating the Wyndor Model Algebraically

The reasoning for the algebraic approach is similar to that for the spreadsheet approach. In fact, except for making entries on a spreadsheet, the initial steps are just as described in the preceding section for the Wyndor problem.

1. Gather the relevant data (Table 5.1 in Section 5.1).
2. Identify the decisions to be made (the production rates for the two new products).
3. Identify the constraints on these decisions (the production time used in the respective plants cannot exceed the amount available).
4. Identify the overall measure of performance for these decisions (the total profit from the two products).
5. Convert the verbal description of the constraints and measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions (see below).

To start performing step 5, note that Table 5.1 indicates that the number of hours of production time available per week for the two new products in the respective plants are 4, 12, and 18. Using the data in this table for the number of hours used per door or window produced then leads to the following quantitative expressions for the constraints:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Plant 1:} && (\#\text{ of doors}) && \leq 4 \\ &\text{Plant 2:} && && 2(\#\text{ of windows}) \leq 12 \\ &\text{Plant 3:} && 3(\#\text{ of doors}) + && 2(\#\text{ of windows}) \leq 18 \end{aligned}$$

In addition, negative production rates are impossible, so two other constraints on the decisions are

$$(\#\text{ of doors}) \geq 0 \qquad (\#\text{ of windows}) \geq 0$$

The overall measure of performance has been identified as the total profit from the two products. Since Table 5.1 gives the unit profits for doors and windows as \$300 and \$500, respectively, the expression obtained in the preceding section for the total profit per week from these products is

$$\text{Profit} = \$300(\#\text{ of doors}) + \$500(\#\text{ of windows})$$

The goal is to make the decisions (number of doors and number of windows) so as to maximize this profit, subject to satisfying all the constraints identified

above.

To state this objective in a compact algebraic model, we introduce algebraic symbols to represent the measure of performance and the decisions. Let

P = Profit (total profit per week from the two products, in dollars)

D = # of doors (number of the special new doors to be produced per week)

W = # of windows (number of the special new windows to be produced per week)

Substituting these symbols into the above expressions for the constraints and the measure of performance (and dropping the dollar signs in the latter expression), the linear programming model for the Wyndor problem now can be written in algebraic form as shown below.

Algebraic Model

Choose the values of *D* and *W* so as to maximize

$$P = 300D + 500W$$

subject to satisfying all the following constraints:

$$\begin{aligned} D &\leq 4 \\ 2W &\leq 12 \\ 3D + 2W &\leq 18 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$D \geq 0 \qquad W \geq 0$$

Terminology for Linear Programming Models

Much of the terminology of algebraic models also is sometimes used with spreadsheet models. Here are the key terms for both kinds of models in the context of the Wyndor problem.

1. *D* and *W* (or C12 and D12 in Figure 5.3) are the **decision variables**.

decision variable

An algebraic variable that represents a decision regarding the level of a particular activity. The value of the decision variable appears in a changing cell on the spreadsheet.

2. 300*D* + 500*W* [or SUMPRODUCT (UnitProfit, UnitsProduced)] is the **objective function**.

objective function

The part of a linear programming model that expresses what needs to be either maximized or minimized, depending on the objective for the problem. The value of the objective function appears in the objective cell on the spreadsheet.

3. *P* (or G12) is the *value of the objective function* (or *objective value* for short).
4. *D* ≥ 0 and *W* ≥ 0 (or C12 ≥ 0 and D12 ≥ 0) are called the **nonnegativity constraints** (or *nonnegativity conditions*).

nonnegativity constraint

A constraint that expresses the restriction that a particular decision variable must be nonnegative (greater than or equal to zero).

5. The other constraints are referred to as **functional constraints** (or *structural constraints*).

functional constraint

A constraint with a function of the decision variables on the left-hand side. All constraints in a linear programming model that are not nonnegativity constraints are called functional constraints.

6. The **parameters** of the model are the constants in the algebraic model (the numbers in the data cells).

parameter

The parameters of a linear programming model are the constants (coefficients or right-hand sides) in the functional constraints and the objective function. Each parameter represents a quantity (e.g., the amount available of a resource) that is of importance for the analysis of the problem.

7. *Any* choice of values for the decision variables (regardless of how desirable or undesirable the choice) is called a **solution** for the model.

solution

Any single assignment of values to the decision variables, regardless of whether the assignment is a good one or even a feasible one.

8. A **feasible solution** is one that satisfies all the constraints, whereas an **infeasible solution** violates at least one constraint.

feasible solution

A solution that simultaneously satisfies all the constraints in the linear programming model.

infeasible solution

A solution that violates at least one of the constraints in the linear programming model.

). The *best* feasible solution, the one that maximizes *P* (or G12), is called the **optimal solution**. (It is possible to have a *tie* for the best feasible solution, in which case all the tied solutions are called optimal solutions.)

optimal solution

The best feasible solution according to the objective function.

Assumptions of Linear Programming Models

Regardless of whether you are using the spreadsheet version or the algebraic version, a model that satisfies the following assumptions normally qualifies to be a full-fledged linear programming model.

- **The Continuous-Variables Assumption:** The decision variables can take on any nonnegative values (not just integer values) over the range permitted by the constraints. (Chapter 10 describes *integer programming models* that can be used instead if this assumption is violated.)
- **The Proportionality Assumption:** The contribution of each activity to the objective function or to the left-hand side of a functional constraint is *proportional* to the level of the activity. (Chapter 11 describes *nonlinear programming models* that can be used instead if this assumption is violated.)
- **The Certainty Assumption:** All the parameters in the model can be estimated well enough that they can be treated as *known constants.* (Chapters 12–15 describe several traditional *uncertainty models* that might be used instead if this assumption is violated because there is too much uncertainty about what the values of the parameters will turn out to be.)

Fortunately, these assumptions commonly are sufficiently close approximations of reality that linear programming can be applied very widely. Management science has a large toolkit of powerful techniques for performing prescriptive analytics (and sometimes predictive analytics as well), but linear programming stands out as the most important of these techniques.

Comparisons of Algebraic Models and Spreadsheet Models

So what are the relative advantages of algebraic models and spreadsheet models? An algebraic model provides a very concise and explicit statement of the problem. Sophisticated software packages that can solve huge problems generally are based on algebraic models because of both their compactness and their ease of use in rescaling the size of a problem. Management science practitioners with an extensive mathematical background find algebraic models very useful. For others, however, spreadsheet models are far more intuitive. Both managers and business students training to be managers generally live with spreadsheets, not algebraic models. Therefore, the emphasis throughout this book is on spreadsheet models.

Management scientists often use algebraic models, but managers generally prefer spreadsheet models.

Review *Questions*

. When formulating a linear programming model, what are the initial steps that are the same with either a spreadsheet formulation or an algebraic formulation?

. When formulating a linear programming model algebraically, algebraic symbols need to be introduced to represent which kinds of quantities in the model?

. What are decision variables for a linear programming model? The objective function? Nonnegativity constraints? Functional constraints?

. What is meant by a feasible solution for the model? An optimal solution?

5.4 THE GRAPHICAL METHOD FOR SOLVING TWO-VARIABLE PROBLEMS

Linear programming problems having only two decision variables, like the Wyndor problem, can be solved by a **graphical method**.

graphical method

A method for solving linear programming problems with two decision variables on a two-dimensional graph.

Although this method cannot be used to solve problems with more than two decision variables (and most linear programming problems have far more than two), it still is well worth learning. The procedure provides *geometric intuition* about what linear programming is and what it is trying to achieve. This intuition is very helpful in analyzing linear programming models, including larger problems that cannot be solved directly by the graphical method. For example, it enables visualizing what is happening when performing what-if analysis for linear programming (the subject of Chapter 8).

It is more convenient to apply the graphical method to the *algebraic version* of the linear programming model rather than the spreadsheet version. We shall *briefly* illustrate the method by using the algebraic model obtained for the Wyndor problem in the preceding section. (A *far more detailed description* of the graphical method, including its application to the Wyndor problem, is provided in the supplement to this chapter that is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.) For this purpose, keep in mind that

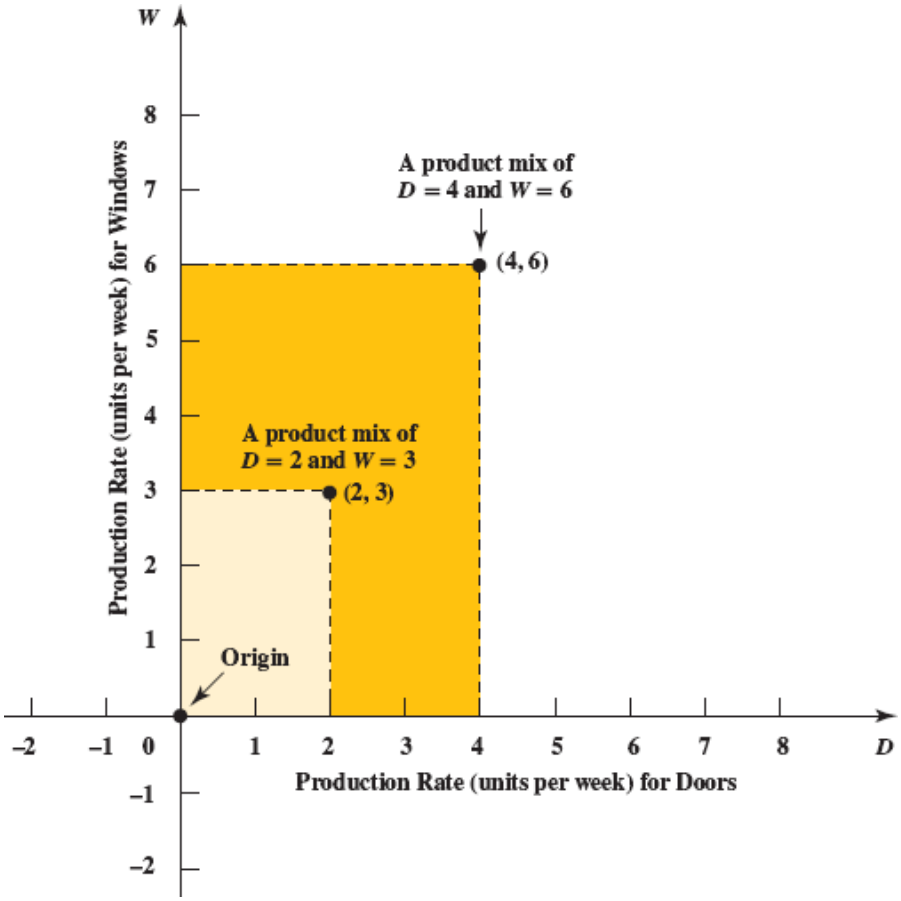
D = Production rate for the special new doors (the number in changing cell C12 of the spreadsheet)

W = Production rate for the special new windows (the number in changing cell D12 of the spreadsheet)

The key to the graphical method is the fact that possible solutions can be displayed as points on a two-dimensional graph that has a horizontal axis giving the value of *D* and a vertical axis giving the value of *W.* Figure 5.5 shows some sample points.

FIGURE 5.5

Graph showing the points (*D, W*) = (2, 3) and (*D, W*) = (4, 6) for the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem.



Notation: Either (*D, W*) = (2, 3) or just (2, 3) refers to the solution where *D* = 2 and *W* = 3, as well as to the corresponding point in the graph. Similarly, (*D, W*) = (4, 6) means *D* = 4 and *W* = 6, whereas the origin (0, 0) means *D* = 0 and *W* = 0.

To find the optimal solution (the best feasible solution), we first need to display graphically where the feasible solutions are. To do this, we must consider each constraint, identify the solutions graphically that are permitted by that constraint, and then combine this information to identify the solutions permitted by all the constraints. The solutions permitted by all the constraints are the feasible solutions and the portion of the two-dimensional graph where the feasible solutions lie is referred to as the **feasible region**.

feasible region

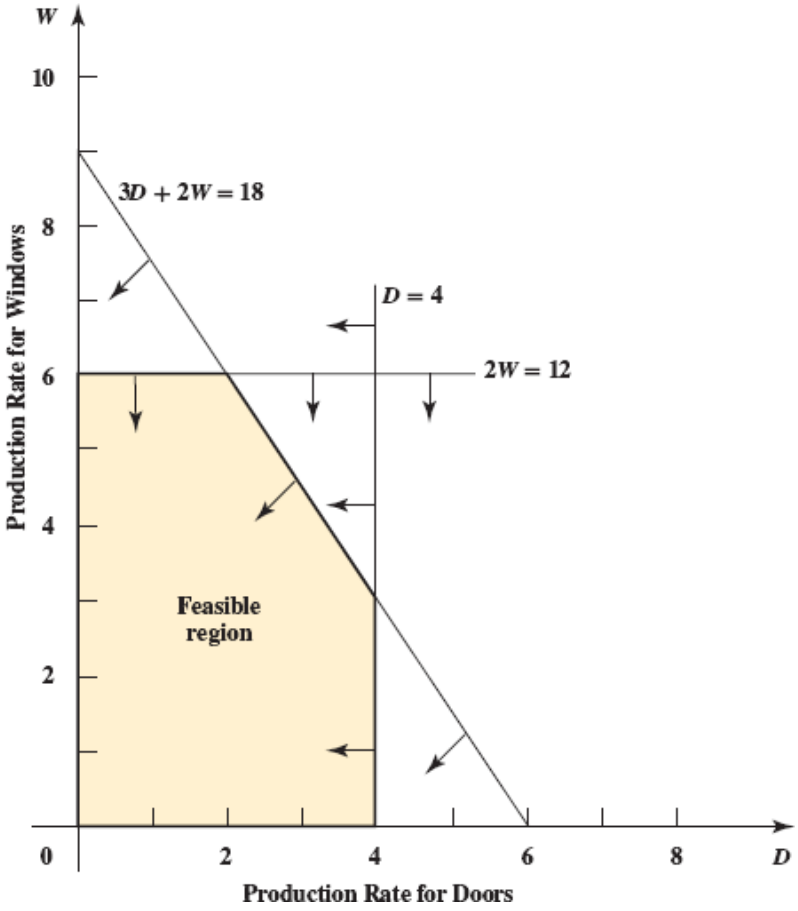
The geometric region that consists of all the feasible solutions.

The shaded region in Figure 5.6 shows the feasible region for the Wyndor problem. We now will outline how this feasible region was identified by considering the five constraints one at a time.

page 201

FIGURE 5.6

Graph showing how the feasible region is formed by the constraint boundary lines, where the arrows indicate which side of each line is permitted by the corresponding constraint.



To begin, the constraint $D \geq 0$ implies that consideration must be limited to points that lie on or to the right of the W axis. Similarly, the constraint $W \geq 0$ restricts consideration to the points on or above the D axis.

page 202

Next, consider the first functional constraint, $D \leq 4$, which limits the usage of Plant 1 for producing the special new doors to a maximum of four hours per week. The solutions permitted by this constraint are those that lie on, or to the left of, the vertical line that intercepts the D axis at $D = 4$, as indicated by the arrows pointing to the left from this line in Figure 5.6.

The second functional constraint, $2W \leq 12$, has a similar effect, except now the boundary of its permissible region is given by a *horizontal* line with the equation, $2W = 12$ (or $W = 6$), as indicated by the arrows pointing downward from this line in Figure 5.6. The line forming the boundary of what is permitted by a constraint is sometimes referred to as a **constraint boundary line**, and its equation may be called a **constraint boundary equation**. Frequently, a *constraint boundary line* is identified by its equation.

constraint boundary line

For linear programming problems with two decision variables, the line forming the boundary of the solutions that are permitted by the constraint.

constraint boundary equation

The equation for the constraint boundary line.

For each of the first two functional constraints, $D \leq 4$ and $2W \leq 12$, note that the equation for the constraint boundary line ($D = 4$ and $2W = 12$, respectively) is obtained by replacing the inequality sign with an equality sign. For *any* constraint with an inequality sign (whether a functional constraint or a nonnegativity constraint), the general rule for obtaining its constraint boundary equation is to substitute an equality sign for the inequality sign.

For any constraint with an inequality sign, its constraint boundary equation is obtained by replacing the inequality sign by an equality sign.

We now need to consider one more functional constraint, $3D + 2W \leq 18$. Its constraint boundary equation

$$3D + 2W = 18$$

includes both variables, so the boundary line it represents is neither a vertical line nor a horizontal line. Therefore, the boundary line must intercept (cross through) both axes somewhere. But where?

> When a constraint boundary line is neither a vertical line nor a horizontal line, the line *intercepts* the D axis at the point on the line where $W = 0$. Similarly, the line *intercepts* the W axis at the point on the line where $D = 0$.

Hence, the constraint boundary line $3D + 2W = 18$ intercepts the D axis at the point where $W = 0$.

When $W = 0$, $3D + 2W = 18$ becomes $3D = 18$
so the intercept with the D axis is at $D = 6$

Similarly, the line intercepts the W axis where $D = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{When } D = 0, 3D + 2W = 18 & \text{becomes } 2W = 18 \\ \text{so the intercept with the } D \text{ axis is at} & W = 9 \end{array}$$

Consequently, the constraint boundary line is the line that passes through these two intercept points, as shown in Figure 5.6.

The location of a slanting constraint boundary line is found by identifying where it intercepts each of the two axes.

Checking whether (0, 0) satisfies a constraint indicates which side of the constraint boundary line satisfies the constraint.

As indicated by the arrows emanating from this line in Figure 5.6, the solutions permitted by the constraint $3D + 2W \leq 18$ are those that lie on the *origin* side of the constraint boundary line $3D + 2W = 18$. The easiest way to verify this is to check whether the origin itself, $(D, W) = (0, 0)$, satisfies the constraint.[2] If it does, then the permissible region lies on the side of the constraint boundary line where the origin is. Otherwise, it lies on the other side. In this case,

$$3(0) + 2(0) = 0$$

so $(D, W) = (0, 0)$ satisfies

$$3D + 2W \leq 18$$

(In fact, the origin satisfies *any* constraint with a ≤ sign and a positive right-hand side.)

A feasible solution for a linear programming problem must satisfy *all* the constraints *simultaneously.* The arrows in Figure 5.6 indicate that the nonnegative solutions permitted by each of these constraints lie on the side of the constraint boundary line where the origin is (or actually on the line itself). Therefore, the *feasible solutions* are the nonnegative solutions that lie nearer to the origin than *all three* constraint boundary lines (or actually on the line nearest the origin at that point).

page 203

Having identified the feasible region, the final step is to find which of these feasible solutions is the best one—the *optimal solution.* For the Wyndor problem, the objective happens to be to *maximize* the total profit per week from the two products (denoted by P). Therefore, we want to find the feasible solution (D, W) that makes the value of the objective function

$$P = 300D + 500W$$

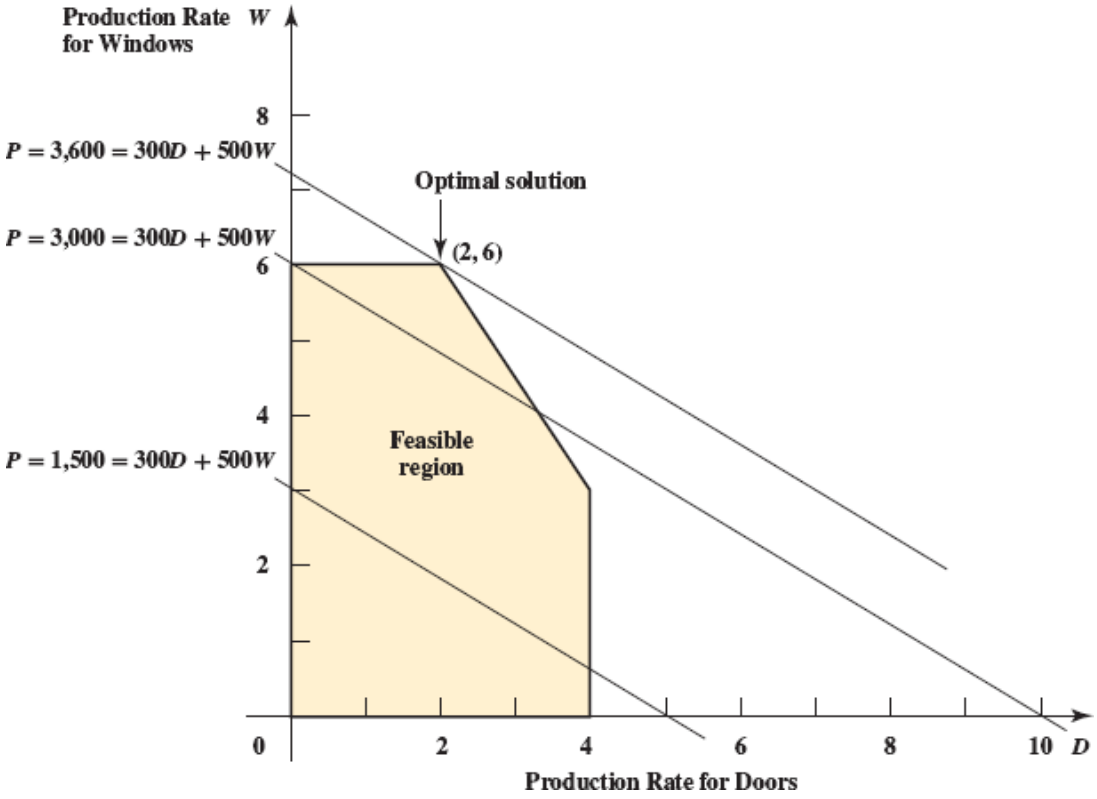
as large as possible.

To accomplish this, we need to be able to locate all the points (*D, W*) on the graph that give a specified value of the objective function. For example, consider a value of P = 1,500 for the objective function. Which points (*D, W*) give $300D + 500W = 1{,}500$?

This equation is the equation of a *line.* Just as when plotting constraint boundary lines, the location of this line is found by identifying its intercepts with the two axes. When $W = 0$, this equation yields $D = 5$, and similarly, $W = 3$ when $D = 0$, so these are the two intercepts, as shown by the bottom slanting line passing through the feasible region in Figure 5.7.

FIGURE 5.7

Graph showing three objective function lines for the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem, where the top one passes through the optimal solution.



P = 1,500 is just one sample value of the objective function. For any other specified value of *P,* the points *(D, W)* that give this value of P also lie on a line called an *objective function line.*

An **objective function line** is a line whose points all have the same value of the objective function.

objective function line

For a linear programming problem with two decision variables, a line whose points all have the same value of the objective function.

For the bottom objective function line in Figure 5.7, the points on this line that lie in the feasible region provide alternate ways of achieving an objective function value of P = 1,500. Can we do better? Let us try doubling the value of P to P = 3,000. The corresponding objective function line

$$300D + 500W = 3{,}000$$

is shown as the middle line in Figure 5.7. (Ignore the top line for the moment.) Once again, this line includes points in the feasible region, so P = 3,000 is achievable.

page 204

Let us pause to note two interesting features of these objective function lines for P = 1,500 and P = 3,000. First, these lines are *parallel.* Second, *doubling* the value of P from 1,500 to 3,000 also *doubles* the value of W at which the line intercepts the W axis from W = 3 to W = 6. These features are no coincidence, as indicated by the following properties.

Key Properties of Objective Function Lines: All objective function lines for the same problem are *parallel.* Furthermore, the value of W at which an objective function line intercepts the W axis is *proportional* to the value of P.

These key properties of objective function lines suggest the strategy to follow to find the optimal solution. We already have tried P = 1,500 and P = 3,000 in Figure 5.7 and found that their objective function lines include points in the feasible region. Increasing P again will generate another parallel objective function line farther from the origin. The objective function line of special interest is the one farthest from the origin that still includes a point in the feasible region. This is the third objective function line in Figure 5.7. The point on this line that is in the feasible region, (D, W) = (2, 6), is the optimal solution since no other feasible solution has a larger value of P.

Optimal Solution

D = 2 (Produce 2 special new doors per week)
W = 6 (Produce 6 special new windows per week)

These values of *D* and *W* can be substituted into the objective function to find the value of *P.*

$$P = 300D + 500W = 300(2) + 500(6) = 3,600$$

This has been a fairly quick description of the graphical method. You can go to the supplement to this chapter that is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** if you would like to see a fuller description of how to use the graphical method to solve the Wyndor problem.

The end of Section 5.7 will provide another example of the graphical method, where the objective in that case is to minimize instead of maximize the objective function. An additional example also is included in the first of this chapter's solved problems (Problem 5.S-1) presented at the end of the chapter.

Summary of the Graphical Method

The graphical method can be used to solve any linear programming problem having only two decision variables. The method uses the following steps:

1. Draw the constraint boundary line for each functional constraint. Use the origin (or any point not on the line) to determine which side of the line is permitted by the constraint.
2. Find the feasible region by determining where all constraints are satisfied simultaneously.
3. Determine the slope of one objective function line. All other objective function lines will have the same slope.
4. Move a straight edge with this slope through the feasible region in the direction of improving values of the objective function. Stop at the last instant that the straight edge still passes through a point in the feasible region. This line given by the straight edge is the optimal objective function line.
5. A feasible point on the optimal objective function line is an optimal solution.

Review *Questions*

. The graphical method can be used to solve linear programming problems with how many decision variables?
. What do the axes represent when applying the graphical method to the Wyndor problem?
. What is a constraint boundary line? A constraint boundary equation?
. What is the easiest way of determining which side of a constraint boundary line is permitted by the constraint?

5.5 USING EXCEL'S SOLVER TO SOLVE LINEAR PROGRAMMING PROBLEMS

The graphical method is very useful for gaining geometric intuition about linear programming, but its practical use is severely limited by only being able to solve tiny problems with two decision variables. Another procedure that will solve linear programming problems of any reasonable size is needed. Fortunately, Excel includes a tool called **Solver** that will do this once the spreadsheet model has been formulated as described in Section 5.2. (Section 5.6 will show how the Analytic Solver software package, which includes a more advanced version of Solver, can be used to solve this same problem.) To access Solver the first time, you need to install it. In Windows versions of Excel, choose Excel Options from the File menu, then click on Add-Ins on the left side of the window, select Manage Excel Add-Ins at the bottom of the window, and then press the Go button. Make sure Solver is selected in the Add-Ins dialog box, and then it should appear on the Data tab. For Mac versions of Excel, select Add-Ins from the Tools menu, make sure Solver is selected, then click OK; Solver should now appear on the Data tab.

Solver

The spreadsheet tool that is used to specify the model in the spreadsheet and then to obtain an optimal solution for that model.

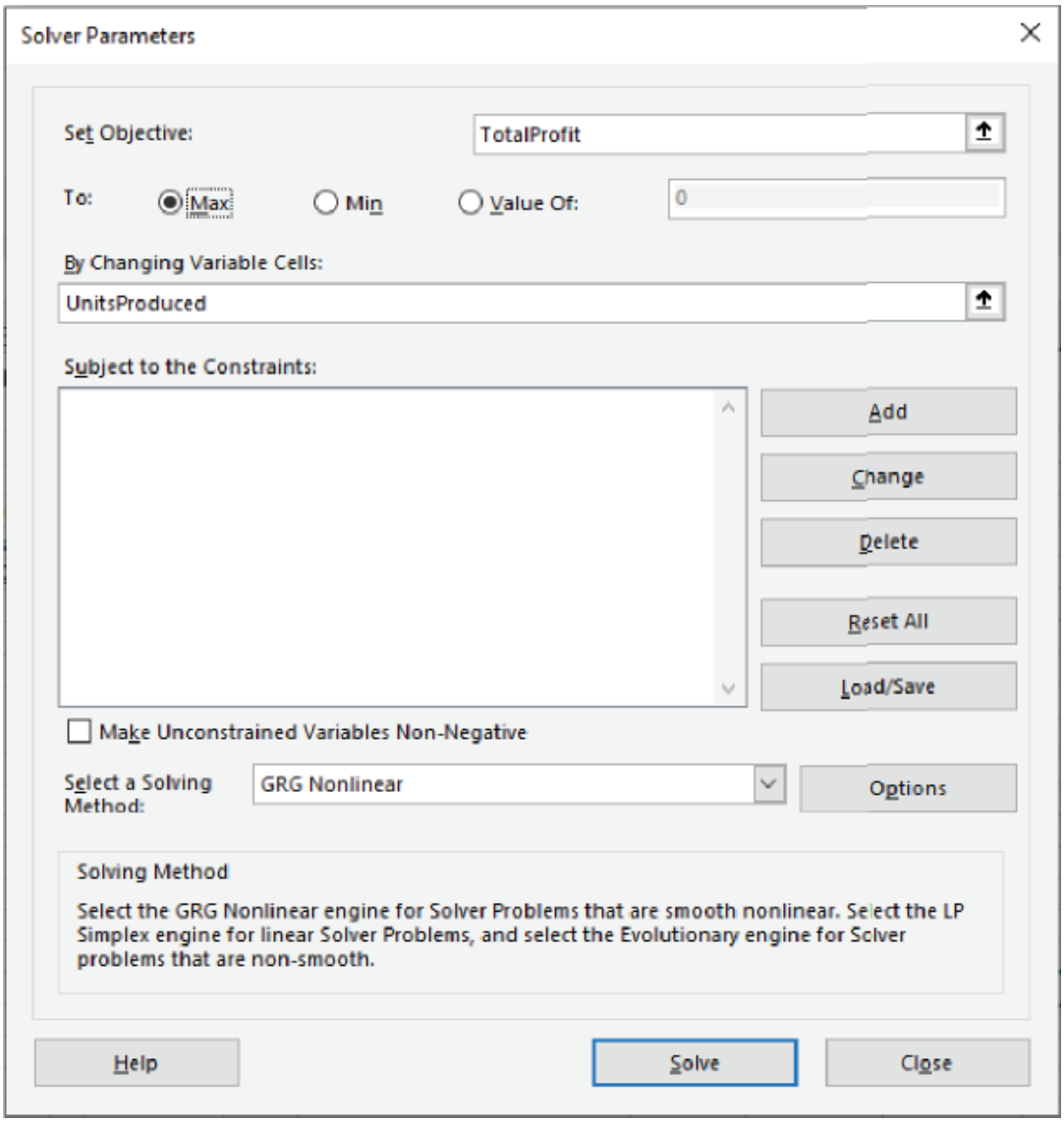
Excel Tip If you select cells by clicking on them, they will first appear in the dialog box with their cell addresses and with dollar signs (e.g., *$C$9:$D$9*). You can ignore the dollar signs. Solver eventually will replace both the cell addresses and the dollar signs with the corresponding range name (if a range name has been defined for the given cell addresses), but only after either adding a constraint or closing and reopening the Solver dialog box.

Figure 5.3 in Section 5.2 shows the spreadsheet model for the Wyndor problem. The values of the decision variables (the production rates for the two products) are in the *changing cells,* UnitsProduced (C12:D12), and the value of the objective function (the total profit per week from the two products) is in the *objective cell* TotalProfit (G12). To get started, an arbitrary trial solution has been entered by placing zeroes in the changing cells. Solver will then change these to the optimal values after solving the problem.

This procedure is started by choosing Solver on the Data tab. Figure 5.8 shows the Solver dialog box that is used to tell Solver where each component of the model is located on the spreadsheet.

FIGURE 5.8

The incomplete Solver dialog box after specifying the first components of the model for the Wyndor problem. TotalProfit (G12) is being maximized by changing UnitsProduced (C12:D12). Figure 5.9 will demonstrate the addition of constraints and then Figure 5.10 will demonstrate the changes needed to specify that the problem being considered is a linear programming problem. (The default *Solving Method* shown here—*GRG Nonlinear*—is not applicable to linear programming problems.)



Microsoft Corporation

You have the choice of typing the range names, typing the cell addresses, or probably the easiest method, clicking on the cells in the spreadsheet. Figure 5.8 shows the results of the last method—clicking on the cell for TotalProfit (G12) for the objective cell. Since the goal is to maximize the objective cell, Max also has been selected. The next entry in the Solver dialog box identifies the *changing cells,* specified by selecting the cells for UnitsProduced (C12:D12).

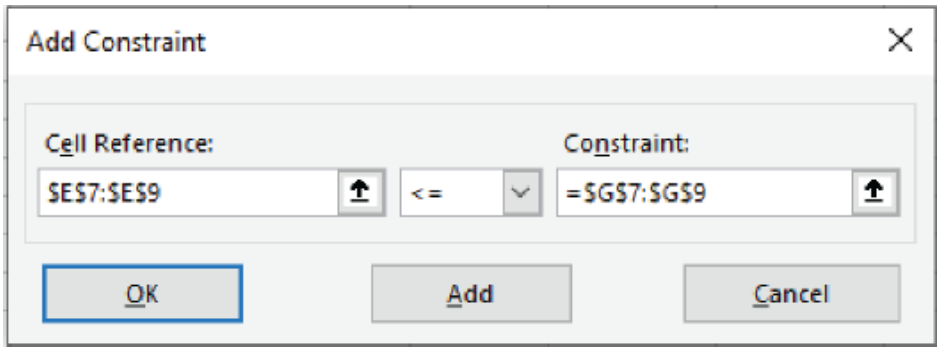
Solver Tip To select changing cells, click and drag across the range of cells. If the changing cells are not contiguous, you can type a comma and then select another range of cells. Up to 200 changing cells can be selected with the basic version of Solver that comes with Excel.

The Add Constraint dialog box is used to specify all the functional constraints.

Next, the cells containing the functional constraints need to be specified. This is done by clicking on the Add button on the Solver dialog box. This brings up the Add Constraint dialog box shown in Figure 5.9. The ≤ signs in cells F7, F8, and F9 of Figure 5.3 are a reminder that the cells in HoursUsed (E7:E9) all need to be less than or equal to the corresponding cells in HoursAvailable (G7:G9). These constraints are specified for Solver by entering HoursUsed (or E7:E9) on the left-hand side of the Add Constraint dialog box and then entering Hours Available (or G7:G9) on the right-hand side. For the sign between these two sides, there is a menu to choose between <=, =, or >=, so >= has been chosen. This choice is needed even though ≤ signs were previously entered in column F of the spreadsheet because the Solver only uses the constraints that are specified with the Add Constraint dialog box.

FIGURE 5.9

The Add Constraint dialog box after specifying that cells E7, E8, and E9 in Figure 5.3 are required to be less than or equal to cells G7, G8, and G9, respectively.



Microsoft Corporation

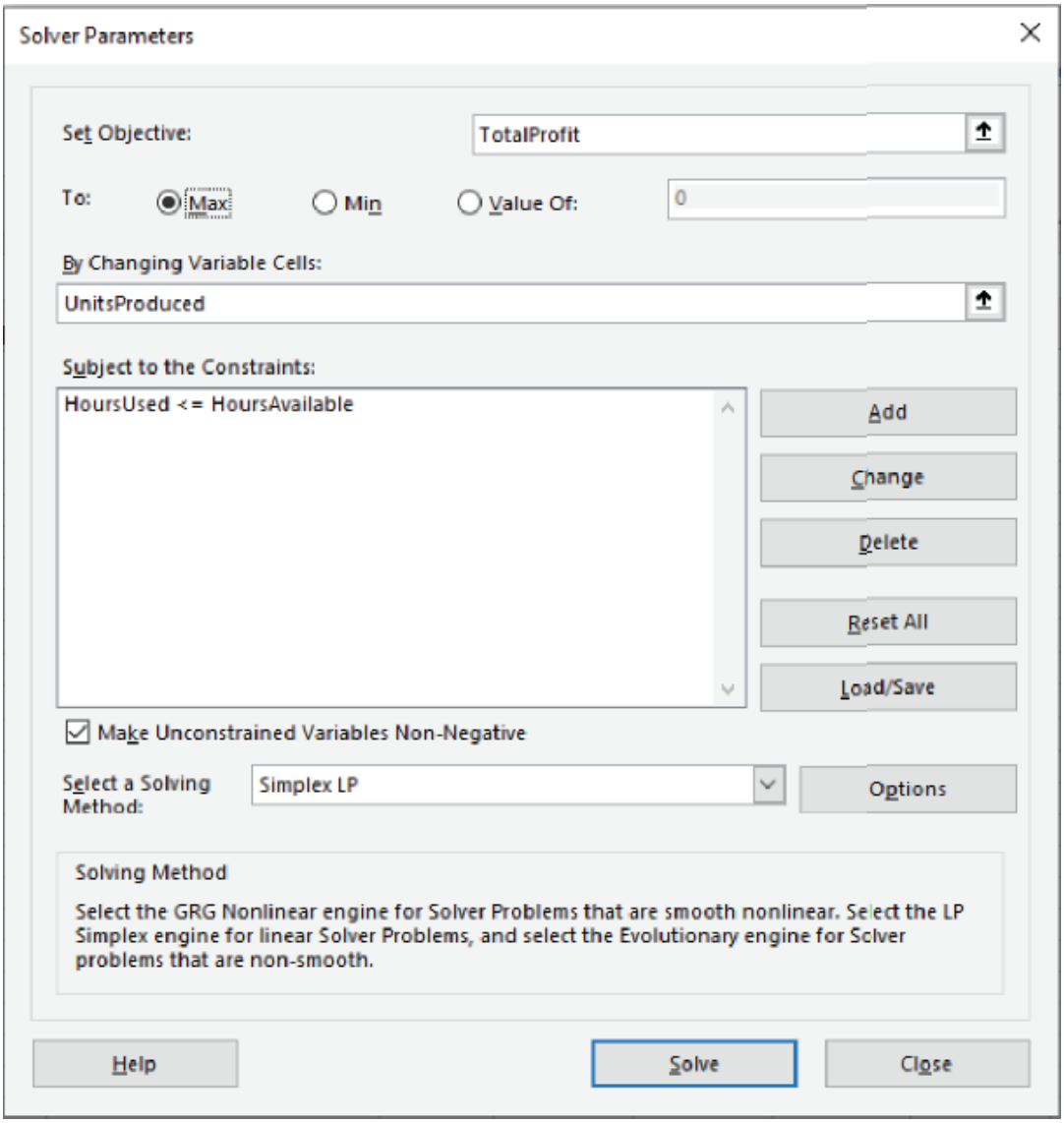
If there were more functional constraints to add, you would click on Add to bring up a new Add Constraint dialog box. However, since there are no more in this example, the next step is to click on OK to go back to the Solver dialog box.

When solving a linear programming problem, be sure to specify that nonnegativity constraints are needed and that the model is linear by choosing Simplex LP.

Before asking Solver to solve the model, two more steps need to be taken. We need to tell Solver that nonnegativity constraints are needed for the changing cells to reject negative production rates. We also need to specify that this is a *linear* programming problem so the simplex method (the standard method used by Solver to solve linear programming problems) can be used. This is demonstrated in Figure 5.10, where the *Make Unconstrained Variables Non-Negative* option has been checked and the *Solving Method* chosen is *Simplex LP* (rather than *GRG Nonlinear* or *Evolutionary,* which are used for solving nonlinear problems). The Solver dialog box shown in this figure now summarizes the complete model. Note that after returning from the Add Constraint dialog box, Solver has now converted all of the cell addresses to the corresponding range names that were defined for these cells (TotalProfit for G12, UnitsProduced for C12:D12, HoursUsed for E7:E9, and HoursAvailable for G7:G9). Defining range names makes the model in Solver much easier to interpret.

FIGURE 5.10

The completed Solver dialog box after specifying the entire model in terms of the spreadsheet.



Microsoft Corporation

When you define range names for cells in your spreadsheet, these range names are displayed by Solver. This makes the model in Solver much easier to interpret.

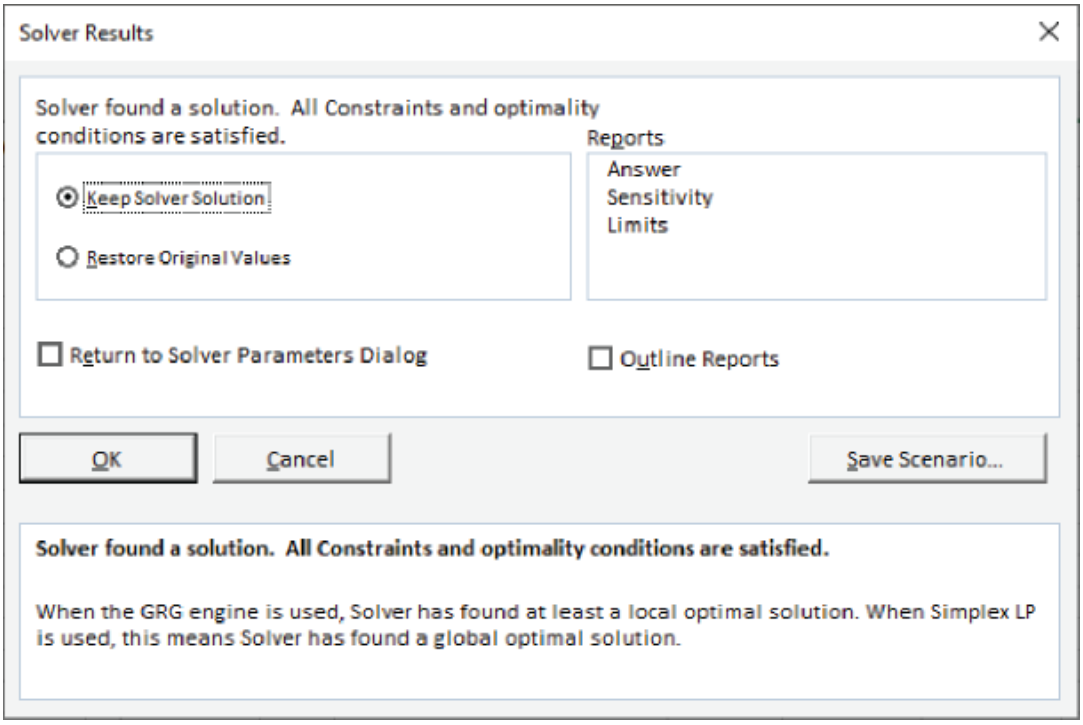
Now you are ready to click on Solve in the Solver dialog box, which will start the solving of the problem in the background. Within a few seconds (for a small problem), Solver will then indicate the results. Typically, it will indicate that it has found an optimal solution, as specified in the Solver Results dialog box shown in Figure 5.11. If the model has no feasible solutions or no optimal solution, the dialog box will indicate that instead by stating that “Solver could not find a feasible solution” or that “The Objective Cell values do not converge.” (Section 16.1 will describe how

these possibilities can occur.) The dialog box also presents the option of generating various reports. One of these (the Sensitivity Report) will be discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

FIGURE 5.11

page 207

The Solver Results dialog box that indicates that an optimal solution has been found.



Microsoft Corporation

After solving the model and clicking OK in the Solver Results dialog box, Solver replaces the original numbers in the changing cells with the optimal numbers, as shown in Figure 5.12. Thus, the optimal solution is to produce two doors per week and six windows per week, just as was found by the graphical method in the preceding section. The spreadsheet also indicates the corresponding number in the objective cell (a total profit of $3,600 per week), as well as the numbers in the output cells HoursUsed (E7:E9).

page 208

FIGURE 5.12

The spreadsheet obtained after solving the Wyndor problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: Total Profit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7, UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8, UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9, UnitsProduced)

	G
11	Total Profit
12	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit, UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cell
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C12:D12

Solver Tip The message “Solver could not find a feasible solution” means that there are no solutions that satisfy all the constraints. The message “The Objective Cell values do not converge” means that Solver could not find a best solution, because better solutions always are available (e.g., if the constraints do not prevent infinite profit). The message “The linearity conditions required by this LP Solver are not satisfied” means Simplex LP was chosen as the Solving Method, but the model is not linear.

The entries needed for the Solver dialog box are summarized in the *Solver Parameters* box shown on the bottom left of Figure 5.12. This more compact

summary of the Solver Parameters will be shown for all of the many models that involve the Solver throughout the book.

At this point, you might want to check what would happen to the optimal solution if any of the numbers in the data cells were to be changed to other possible values. This is easy to do because Solver saves all the addresses for the objective cell, changing cells, constraints, and so on when you save the file. All you need to do is make the changes you want in the data cells and then click on Solve in the Solver dialog box again. (Chapter 8 will focus on this kind of *what-if analysis,* including how to use the Solver's Sensitivity Report to expedite the analysis.)

To assist you with experimenting with these kinds of changes, **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** includes Excel files for this chapter (as for others) that provide a complete formulation and solution of the examples here (the Wyndor problem and the one in Section 5.7) in a spreadsheet format. We encourage you to "play" with these examples to see what happens with different data, different solutions, and so forth. You might also find these spreadsheets useful as templates for homework problems.

page 209

Review *Questions*

. Which dialog box is used to enter the addresses for the objective cell and the changing cells?

. Which dialog box is used to specify the functional constraints for the model?

. Which options normally need to be chosen to solve a linear programming model?

5.6 ANALYTIC SOLVER

Frontline Systems, the original developer of the standard Solver included with Excel (hereafter referred to as Excel's Solver), also has developed Premium versions of Solver that provide greatly enhanced functionality. The company now features a particularly powerful Premium Solver called *Analytic Solver.* We are excited to provide access to the Excel add-in, Analytic Solver.

Instructions for obtaining a low-priced student license to download this software are provided in both the preface and **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The downloaded software works only with Excel for Windows. However, a cloud-based version of this software is also available at **AnalyticSolver.com**. The cloud-based version works along with Excel (on either Mac or Windows) and

is designed to look and feel as much as possible like the downloaded Analytic Solver add-in for Excel.

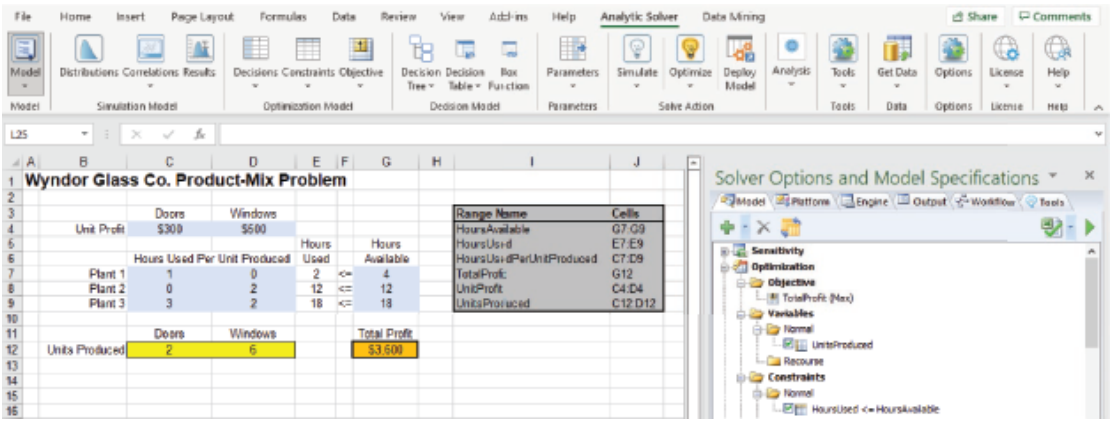
While Excel's Solver is sufficient for most of the problems considered in this book, Analytic Solver includes a number of important features not available with Excel's Solver. Where either Excel's Solver or Analytic Solver can be used, the book will often use the term Solver generically to mean either Excel's Solver or Analytic Solver. Where there are differences, the book will include instructions for both Excel's Solver and Analytic Solver. The enhanced features of Analytic Solver will be highlighted as they come up throughout the book. However, if you and your instructor prefer to focus on only using Excel's Solver, you will find that there is plenty of material to cover in the book that does not require the use of Analytic Solver. In this case, you can skip this section and continue on without loss of continuity.

When Analytic Solver is installed, two new tabs are available on the Excel ribbon named Analytic Solver and Data Mining. Choosing the Analytic Solver tab will reveal the ribbon shown in Figure 5.13. (The Data Mining tab will not be used in this chapter, but was introduced earlier in Chapters 3 and 4.) The buttons on this tab will be used to interact with Analytic Solver. This same figure also reveals a nice feature of Analytic Solver—the Solver Options and Model Specifications pane (showing the objective cell, changing cells, constraints, etc.)—that can be seen alongside your main spreadsheet, with both visible simultaneously. This pane can be toggled on (to see the model) or off (to hide the model and leave more room for the spreadsheet) by clicking on the Model button on the far left of the Analytic Solver tab. Also, since the model was already set up with Excel's Solver in Section 5.5, it is already set up in the Model pane, with the objective specified as TotalProfit (G12) with changing cells UnitsProduced (C12:D12) and the constraints HoursUsed (E7:E9) <= HoursAvailable (G7:G9). The data for Excel's Solver and Analytic Solver are compatible with each other. Making a change with one makes the same change in the other. Thus, you can work with either Excel's Solver or Analytic Solver, and then go back and forth, without losing any Solver data.

page 210

FIGURE 5.13

The screenshot for the Wyndor problem that shows both the ribbon and the *Solver Options and Model Specifications pane* that are revealed after choosing the Analytic Solver tab on the Excel ribbon.



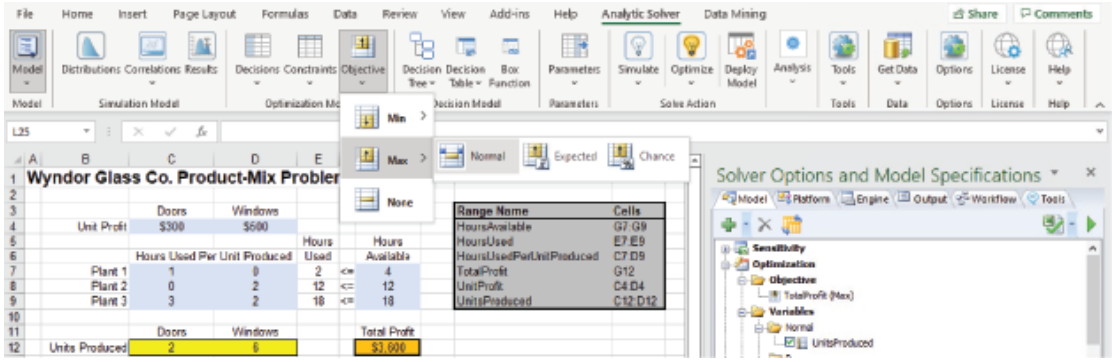
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

If the model had not been previously set up with Excel's Solver, the steps for doing so with Analytic Solver are analogous to the steps used with Excel's Solver as covered in Section 5.5. In both cases, we need to specify the location of the objective cell, the changing cells, and the functional constraints, and then click to solve the model. However, the user interface is somewhat different. Analytic Solver uses the buttons on the Analytic Solver tab instead of the Solver dialog box. We will now walk you through the steps to set up the Wyndor problem in Analytic Solver.

To specify TotalProfit (G12) as the objective cell, select the cell in the spreadsheet and then click on the Objective button on the Analytic Solver tab. As shown in Figure 5.14, this will drop down a menu where you can choose to minimize (Min) or maximize (Max) the objective cell. Within the options of Min or Max are further options (Normal, Expected, Chance). For now, we will always choose the Normal option.

FIGURE 5.14

The screenshot for the Wyndor problem that shows the drop-down menu generated by clicking on the Objective button on the Analytic Solver tab after choosing TotalProfit (G12) as the objective cell.



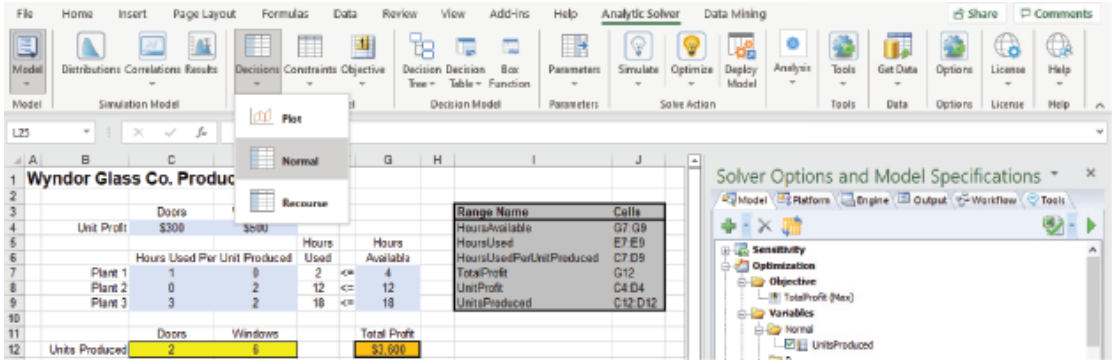
Microsoft Excel and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Analytic Solver Tip Another way to add an objective, changing cells, or constraints using Analytic Solver is to click on the big green plus (+) on the Mode pane and choose Add Objective, Add Variable, or Add Constraint, respectively.

To specify UnitsProduced (C12:D12) as the changing cells, select these cells in the spreadsheet and then click on the Decisions button on the Analytic Solver tab. As shown in Figure 5.15, this will drop down a menu where you can choose various options (Plot, Normal, Recourse). For linear programming, we will always choose the Normal option.

FIGURE 5.15

The screenshot for the Wyndor problem that shows the drop-down menu generated by clicking on the Decision button on the Analytic Solver tab after choosing UnitsProduced (C12:D12) as the changing variable cells.



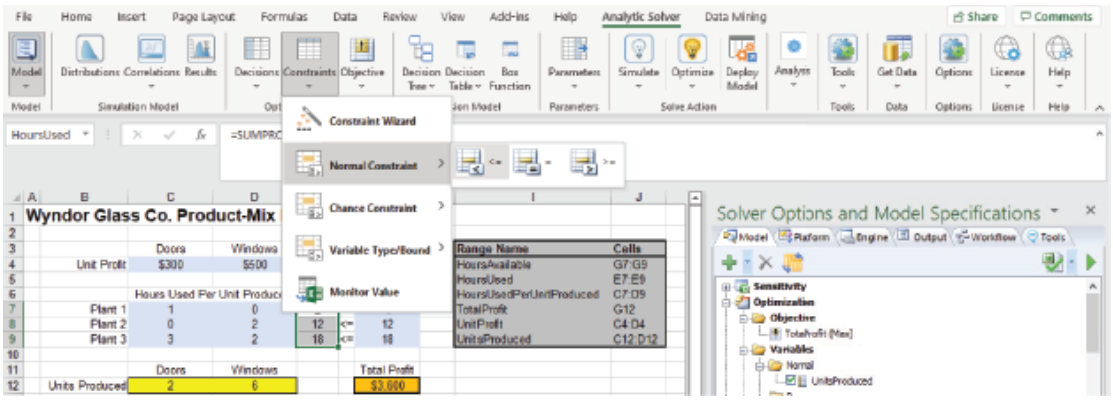
Microsoft Excel and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Next the functional constraints need to be specified. For the Wyndor problem, the functional constraints are HoursUsed (E7:E9) <= HoursAvailable (G7:G9). To enter these constraints in Analytic Solver, select the cells

representing the left-hand side of these constraints (HoursUsed, or E7:E9) and click the Constraints button on the Analytic Solver tab. As shown in Figure 5.16, this drops down a menu for various kinds of constraints. For linear programming functional constraints, choose Normal Constraint and then the type of constraint desired (either <=, =, or >=). For the Wyndor problem, choosing <= would then bring up the Add Constraint dialog box shown in Figure 5.17. This is much like the Add Constraint dialog box for Excel's Solver (see Figure 5.9). HoursUsed and <= already are filled in when the Add Constraint dialog box is brought up (because the HoursUsed cells were selected and <= was chosen under the Constraints button menu). The Add Constraint dialog box then can be used to fill in the remaining right-hand side of the constraint—HoursAvailable (G7:G9)—by clicking in the box labeled Constraint and choosing these cells on the spreadsheet. Figure 5.17 shows the dialog box after this has been done.

FIGURE 5.16

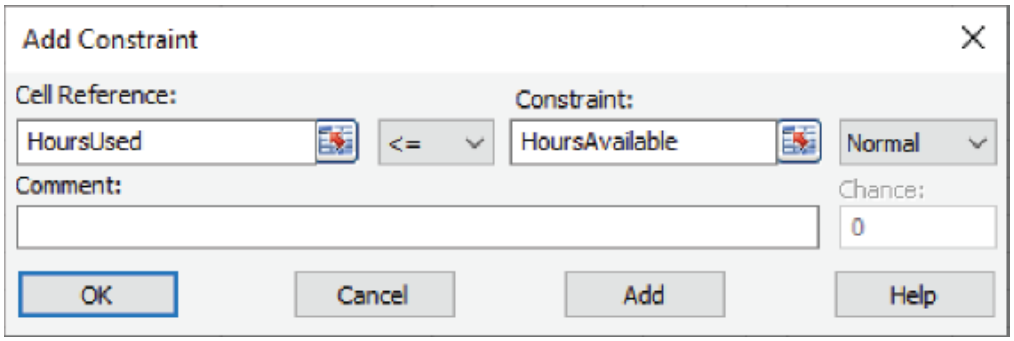
The screenshot of the Wyndor problem that shows the drop-down menu generated by clicking on the Constraints button on the Analytic Solver tab after choosing HoursUsed (E7:E9) as the left-hand side of the functional constraints.



Microsoft Excel

FIGURE 5.17

The Add Constraint dialog box that is brought up after choosing <= in Figure 5.16. This dialog box also shows HoursAvailable (G7:G9) as the right-hand side of the functional constraints after clicking in the Constraint box and choosing these cells on the spreadsheet.

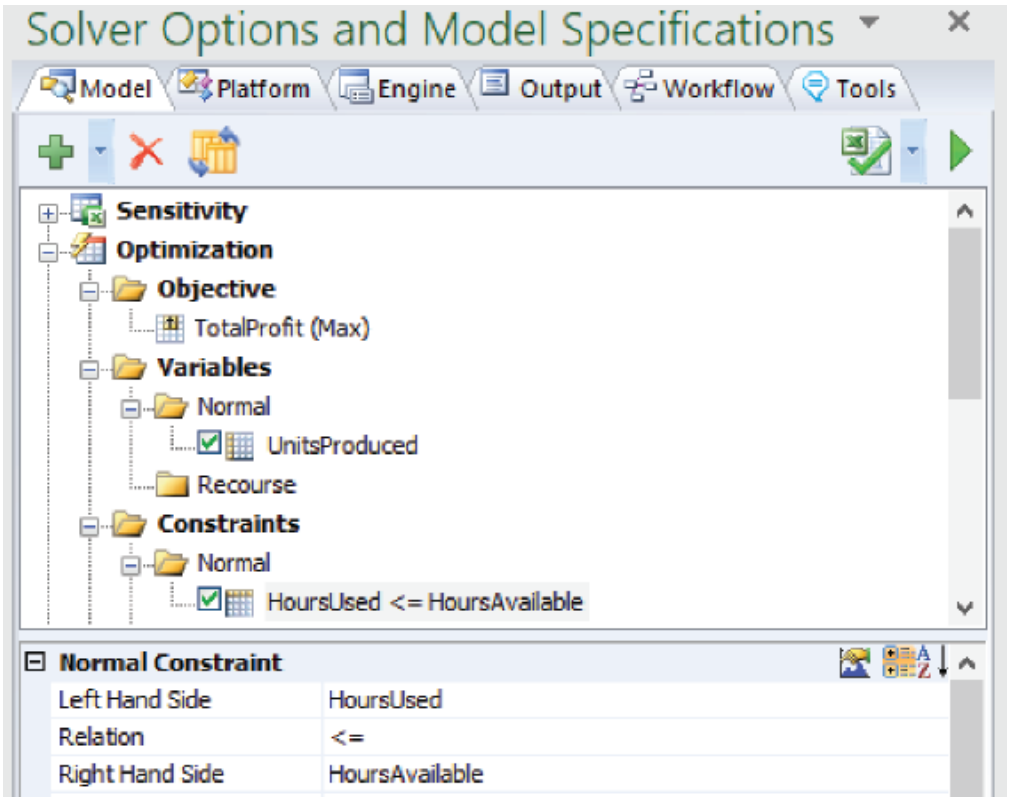


Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Changes to the model can easily be made within the Model pane shown in Figure 5.13. For example, to delete an element of the model (e.g., the objective, changing cells, or constraints), select that part of the model and then click on the red X near the top of the Model pane. To change an element of the model, click on that element in the Model pane. The bottom of the Model pane will then show information about that element. For example, clicking on the Hours Used <= HoursAvailable constraint in the Model pane will then show the information seen in Figure 5.18. Clicking on any piece of the information will allow you to change it (e.g., you can change <= to >=, or you can change the cell references for either side of the constraint).

FIGURE 5.18

This figure shows the result of clicking on the HoursUsed < = Hours Available constraint in the Model pane prior to considering possible changes in the constraint.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

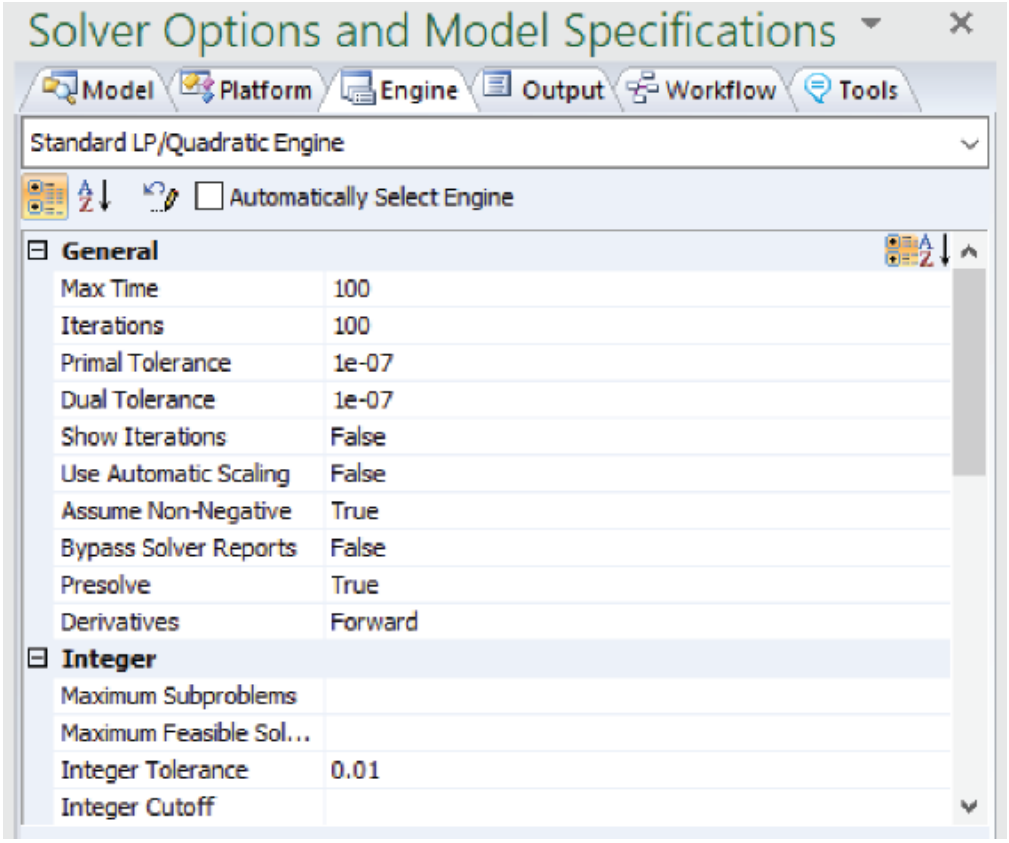
Selecting the Engine tab at the top of the Model pane will show information about the algorithm that will be used to solve the problem as well as a variety of options for that algorithm.

Analytic Solver Tip Double-clicking on any element of the model (e.g., the objective, any of the changing cells, or any of the constraints) will bring up a dialog box allowing you to make changes to that part of the model.

The drop-down menu at the top will allow you to choose the algorithm. For a linear programming model (such as the Wyndor problem), you will want to choose the Standard LP/Quadratic Engine. This is equivalent to the Simplex LP option in Excel's Solver. To make unconstrained variables nonnegative (as we did in Figure 5.10 with Excel's Solver), be sure that the Assume Nonnegative option is set to true. Figure 5.19 shows the model pane after making these selections.

FIGURE 5.19

The Engine tab of the Model pane after selecting the Standard LP/-Quadratic Engine and setting the Assume Nonnegative option to True.

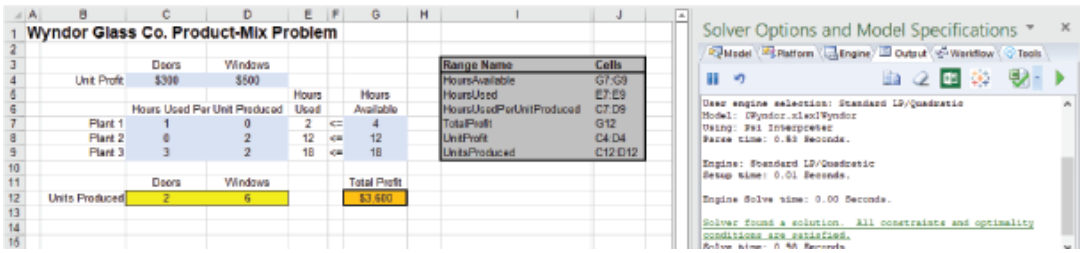


Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Once the model is all set up in Analytic Solver, the model would be solved by clicking on the Optimize button under Analysis on the Analytic Solver tab or the green arrow button on the Model pane. Just like Excel's Solver, this will then display the results of solving the model on the spreadsheet, as shown in Figure 5.20. As seen in this figure, the Output tab of the Model pane also will show a summary of the solution process, including the message (similar to Figure 5.11) that "Solver found a solution. All constraints and optimality conditions are satisfied."

FIGURE 5.20

A screenshot showing the final solution of the Wyndor problem and the Output tab of the model pane showing a summary of the solution process.



Microsoft Excel and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Review *Questions*

. Which button on the Analytic Solver tab should be pressed to specify the objective cell?

. Which button on the Analytic Solver tab should be pressed to specify the changing cells?

. Which button on the Analytic Solver tab should be pressed to enter the constraints?

. Which button on the Analytic Solver tab should be pressed to solve the model?

5.7 A MINIMIZATION EXAMPLE—THE PROFIT & GAMBIT CO. ADVERTISING-MIX PROBLEM

The analysis of the Wyndor Glass Co. case study in Sections 5.2, 5.5, and 5.6 illustrated how to formulate and solve one type of linear programming model on a spreadsheet. The same general approach can be applied to many other problems as well. The great flexibility of linear programming and spreadsheets provides a variety of options for how to adapt the formulation of the spreadsheet model to fit each new problem. Our next example illustrates some options not used for the Wyndor problem.

Planning an Advertising Campaign

The **Profit & Gambit Co.** produces cleaning products for home use. This is a highly competitive market, and the company continually struggles to increase its small market share. Management has decided to undertake a major new advertising campaign that will focus on the following three key products:

- A spray prewash stain remover.
- A liquid laundry detergent.
- A powder laundry detergent.

This campaign will use both television and the print media. A commercial has been developed to run on national television that will feature the liquid detergent. The advertisement for the print media will promote all three products and will include coupons that consumers can use to purchase the products at reduced prices. The general goal is to increase the sales of each of these products (but especially the liquid detergent) over the next year by a significant percentage over the past year. Specifically, management has set the following goals for the campaign:

- Sales of the stain remover should increase by at least 3 percent.
- Sales of the liquid detergent should increase by at least 18 percent.
- Sales of the powder detergent should increase by at least 4 percent.

Table 5.2 shows the estimated increase in sales for each *unit* of advertising in the respective outlets.[3] (A *unit* is a standard block of advertising that Profit & Gambit commonly purchases, but other amounts also are allowed.) The reason for − 1 percent for the powder detergent in the Television column is that the TV commercial featuring the new liquid detergent will take away some sales from the powder detergent. The bottom row of the table shows the cost per unit of advertising for each of the two outlets.

TABLE 5.2

Data for the Profit & Gambit Co. Advertising-Mix Problem

Product	Increase in Sales per Unit of Advertising		Minimum Required Increase
	Television	Print Media	
Stain remover	0%	1%	3%
Liquid detergent	3	2	18

Product	Increase in Sales per Unit of Advertising		Minimum Required Increase
	Television	Print Media	
Powder detergent	–1	4	4
Unit cost	$1 million	$2 million	

Management's objective is to determine how much to advertise in each medium to meet the sales goals at a minimum total cost.

Formulating a Spreadsheet Model for This Problem

page 214

The procedure summarized at the end of Section 5.2 can be used to formulate the spreadsheet model for this problem. Each step of the procedure is repeated below, followed by a description of how it is performed here.

1. Gather the data for the problem. This has been done as presented in Table 5.2.
2. Enter the data into *data cells* on a spreadsheet. The top half of Figure 5.21 shows this spreadsheet. The data cells are in columns C and D (rows 4 and 8 to 10), as well as in cells G8:G10. Note how this particular formatting of the spreadsheet has facilitated a direct transfer of the data from Table 5.2.

FIGURE 5.21

The spreadsheet model for the Profit & Gambit problem, including the formulas for the objective cell TotalCost (G14) and the other output cells in column E, as well as the specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells, AdvertisingUnits (C14:D14), show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Profit & Gambit Co. Advertising-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Television	Print Media			
4		Unit Cost ($millions)	1	2			
5							
6					Increased		Minimum
7			Increase in Sales per Unit of Advertising		Sales		Increase
8		Stain Remover	0%	1%	3%	≥	3%
9		Liquid Detergent	3%	2%	18%	≥	18%
10		Powder Detergent	−1%	4%	8%	≥	4%
11							
12							Total Cost
13			Television	Print Media			($millions)
14		Advertising Units	4	3			10

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing (Variable) Cells:
AdvertisingUnits
Subject to the Constraints:
IncreasedSales >= MinimumIncrease

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
6	Increased
7	Sales
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8, AdvertisingUnits)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9, AdvertisingUnits)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:D10, AdvertisingUnits)

	G
12	Total Cost
13	($millions)
14	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitCost, AdvertisingUnits)

Range Name	Cells
AdvertisingUnits	C14: D14
IncreasedSales	E8: E10
IncreasedSalesPerUnitAdvertising	C8: D10
MinimumIncrease	G8: G10
TotalCost	G14
UnitCost	C4: D4

3. Identify the decisions to be made on the levels of activities and designate *changing cells* for making these decisions. In this case, the activities of concern are *advertising on television* and *advertising in the print media,* so the *levels* of these activities refer to the *amount* of advertising in these media. Therefore, the decisions to be made are

Decision 1: TV = Number of units of advertising on television
Decision 2: PM = Number of units of advertising in the print media

The two gray cells with light borders in Figure 5.21—C14 and D14—have been designated as the changing cells to hold these numbers:

$$\text{TV} \rightarrow \text{cell C14} \qquad \text{PM} \rightarrow \text{cell D14}$$

with AdvertisingUnits as the range name for these cells. (See the bottom of Figure 5.21 for a list of all the range names.) These are natural locations for the changing cells, since each one is in the column for the corresponding advertising medium. To get started, an arbitrary trial solution (such as all zeroes) is entered into these cells. (Figure 5.21 shows the optimal solution after having already applied Solver.)

Unlike the Wyndor problem, we need to use ≥ signs for these constraints.

1. Identify the constraints on these decisions and introduce *output cells* as needed to specify these constraints. The three constraints imposed by management are the goals for the increased sales for the respective products, as shown in the rightmost column of Table 5.2. These constraints are

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Stain remover:} && \text{Total increase in sales} \geq 3\% \\ &\text{Liquid detergent:} && \text{Total increase in sales} \geq 18\% \\ &\text{Powder detergent:} && \text{Total increase in sales} \geq 4\% \end{aligned}$$

The second and third columns of Table 5.2 indicate that the *total* increases in sales from both forms of advertising are

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Total for stain remover} &&= 1\% \text{ of PM} \\ &\text{Total for liquid detergent} &&= 3\% \text{ of TV} + 2\% \text{ of PM} \\ &\text{Total for powder detergent} &&= -1\% \text{ of TV} + 4\% \text{ of PM} \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, since rows 8, 9, and 10 in the spreadsheet are being used to provide information about the three products, cells E8, E9, and E10 are introduced as output cells to show the total increase in sales for the respective products. In addition, ≥ signs have been entered in column F to remind us that the increased sales need to be at least as large as the numbers in column G. (The use of ≥ signs here rather than ≤ signs is one key difference from the spreadsheet model for the Wyndor problem in Figure 5.3.)

Unlike the Wyndor problem, the objective now is to minimize the objective cell.

5. Choose the overall measure of performance to be entered into the *objective cell.* Management's stated objective is to determine how much to advertise in each medium to meet the sales goals at a *minimum total cost.* Therefore, the *total cost* of the advertising is entered in the objective cell TotalCost (G14). G14 is a natural location for this cell since it is in the same row as the changing cells. The bottom row of Table 5.2 indicates that the number going into this cell is

$$\text{Cost} = (\$1 \text{ million})\,\text{TV} + (\$2 \text{ million})\,\text{PM} \rightarrow \text{cell G14}$$

6. Use a SUMPRODUCT function to enter the appropriate value into each output cell (including the objective cell). Based on the above expressions for cost and total increases in sales, the SUMPRODUCT functions needed here for the output cells are those shown under the right side of the spreadsheet in Figure 5.21. Note that each of these functions involves the relevant data cells and the changing cells, AdvertisingUnits (C14:D14).

This spreadsheet model is a linear programming model, since it possesses all the characteristics of such models enumerated in Section 5.2.

Applying Solver to This Model

The procedure for using Solver to obtain an optimal solution for this model is basically the same as described in Section 5.5 (for Excel's Solver) or Section 5.6 (for Analytic Solver). The Solver parameters are shown below the left-hand side of the spreadsheet in Figure 5.21. In addition to specifying the objective cell and changing cells, the constraints that IncreasedSales ≥ MinimumIncrease have been specified in this box by using the Add Constraint dialog box. Since the objective is to *minimize* total cost, Min also has been selected. (This is in contrast to the choice of Max for the Wyndor problem.)

Two options are also specified at the bottom of the Solver Parameters box on the lower left-hand side of Figure 5.21. The changing cells need nonnegativity constraints (specified in the main Solver dialog box in Excel's Solver, or on the Engine tab of the Model pane in Analytic Solver) because negative values of advertising levels are not possible alternatives. Choosing the Simplex LP solving method in Excel's Solver (or the Standard LP/Quadratic Engine in Analytic Solver) specifies that this is a linear programming model.

After running Solver, the optimal solution shown in the changing cells of the spreadsheet in Figure 5.21 is obtained.

An Application Vignette

Based in South Korea, **Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd. (SEC),** is a leading merchant of dynamic and static random access memory devices and other advanced digital integrated circuits. It is the world's largest memory chip manufacturer since 1993 and the largest semiconductor company since 2017. As of 2019, it is the world's second largest technology company by revenue.

Cycle time is the industry's term for the elapsed time from the release of a batch of blank silicon wafers into the fabrication process until completion of the devices that are fabricated on those wafers. Reducing cycle times is an ongoing goal since it both decreases costs and enables offering shorter lead times to potential customers, a real key to maintaining or increasing market share in a very competitive industry.

Three factors present particularly major challenges when striving to reduce cycle times. One is that the product mix changes continually. Another is that the company often needs to make substantial changes in the fab-out schedule inside the target cycle time as it revises forecasts of customer demand. The third is that the machines of a general type are not homogeneous so only a small number of machines are qualified to perform each device step.

At the turn of the century, a management science team developed a large **linear programming model** *with tens of thousands of decision variables and functional constraints* to cope with these challenges. The objective function involved minimizing back-orders and finished-goods inventory.

The ongoing implementation of this model enabled the company to reduce manufacturing cycle times to fabricate dynamic random access memory devices from more than 80 days to less than 30 days. This tremendous improvement and the resulting reduction in both manufacturing costs and sale prices enabled Samsung to capture *an additional* **$200 million** *in annual sales revenue* in the subsequent years.

This dramatic application of linear programming resulted in Samsung winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2001 of what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: R. C. Leachman, J. Kang, and Y. Lin, "SLIM: Short Cycle Time and Low Inventory in Manufacturing at Samsung Electronics," *Interfaces* (now *INFOMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 32, no. 1 (January–February 2002): 61–77. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Optimal Solution

C14 = 4 (Undertake 4 units of advertising on television)
C14 = 3 (Undertake 3 units of advertising in the print media)

The objective cell indicates that the total cost of this advertising plan would be $10 million.

The Mathematical Model in the Spreadsheet

When performing step 5 of the procedure for formulating a spreadsheet model, the total cost of advertising was determined to be

$$\text{Cost} = \text{TV} + 2\,\text{PM}\,(\text{in millions of dollars})$$

where the goal is to choose the values of TV (number of units of advertising on television) and PM (number of units of advertising in the print media) so as to minimize this cost. Step 4 identified three functional constraints:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Stain remover:} && 1\%\ \text{of PM} \geq 3\% \\ &\text{Liquid detergent:} && 3\%\ \text{of TV} + 2\%\ \text{of PM} \geq 18\% \\ &\text{Powder detergent:} && -1\%\ \text{of TV} + 4\%\ \text{of PM} \geq 4\% \end{aligned}$$

Choosing the Make Variables Non-Negative option with Solver recognized that TV and PM cannot be negative. Therefore, after dropping the percentage signs from the functional constraints, the complete mathematical model in the spreadsheet can be stated in the following succinct form.

$$\text{Minimize Cost} = \text{TV} + 2\,\text{PM}\,(\text{in millions of dollars})$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Stain remover increased sales:} && \text{PM} \geq 3 \\ &\text{Liquid detergent increased sales:} && 3\,\text{TV} + 2\,\text{PM} \geq 18 \\ &\text{Powder detergent increased sales:} && -\text{TV} + 4\,\text{PM} \geq 4 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$TV \geq 0 \qquad PM \geq 0$$

Implicit in this statement is “Choose the values of TV and PM so as to . . . .” The term “subject to” is shorthand for “Choose these values *subject to* the requirement that the values satisfy all the following constraints.”

This model is the *algebraic* version of the *linear programming* model in the spreadsheet (Figure 5.21). Note how the parameters (constants) of this algebraic model come directly from the numbers in Table 5.2. In fact, the entire model could have been formulated directly from this table.

The differences between this algebraic model and the one obtained for the Wyndor problem in Section 5.3 lead to some interesting changes in how the graphical method is applied to solve the model. To further expand your geometric intuition about linear programming, we briefly describe this application of the graphical method next.

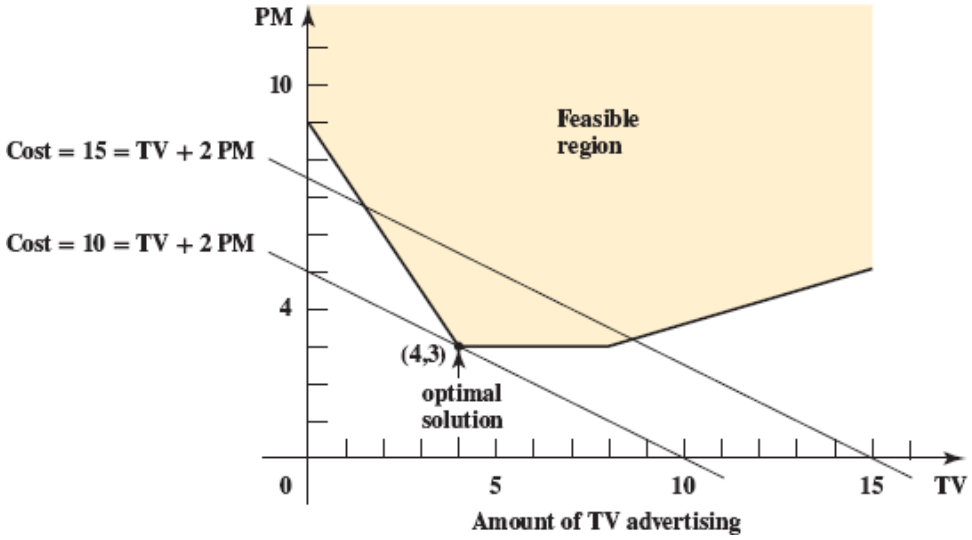
Since this linear programming model has only two decision variables, it can be solved by the graphical method described in Section 5.4. The method needs to be adapted in two ways to fit this particular problem. First, because all the functional constraints now have a ≥ sign with a positive right-hand side, after obtaining the constraint boundary lines in the usual way, the arrows indicating which side of each line satisfies that constraint now all point *away* from the origin. Second, the method is adapted to *minimization* by moving the objective function lines in the direction that *reduces* Cost and then stopping at the last instant that an objective function line still passes through a point in the feasible region, where such a point then is an optimal solution. The supplement to this chapter includes a description of how the graphical method is applied to the Profit & Gambit problem in this way.

Figure 5.22 shows the resulting *final* graph that identifies the optimal solution as

$$TV = 4 \quad \text{(use 4 units of TV advertising)}$$
$$PM = 3 \quad \text{(use 3 units of print media advertising)}$$

FIGURE 5.22

Graph showing two objective function lines for the Profit & Gambit Co. advertising-mix problem, where the bottom one passes through the optimal solution.



Review *Questions*

. What kind of product is produced by the Profit & Gambit Co.?

. Which advertising media are being considered for the three products under consideration?

. What is management's objective for the problem being addressed?

. What was the rationale for the placement of the objective cell and the changing cells in the spreadsheet model?

. The algebraic form of the linear programming model for this problem differs from that for the Wyndor Glass Co. problem in which two major ways?

page 218

5.8 LINEAR PROGRAMMING FROM A BROADER PERSPECTIVE

Linear programming is an invaluable aid to managerial decision making in all kinds of companies throughout the world. The emergence of powerful spreadsheet packages has helped to further spread the use of this technique. The ease of formulating and solving small linear programming models on a spreadsheet now enables some managers with a very modest background in management science and business analytics to do this themselves on their own desktop.

Many linear programming studies are major projects involving decisions on the levels of many hundreds or thousands of activities. For such studies, sophisticated software packages that go beyond spreadsheets generally are

used for both the formulation and solution processes. These studies normally are conducted by technically trained teams of management scientists, sometimes called *operations research analysts.* Management instigates the study and then clarifies its objectives and needs, but the team does the rest.

Consequently, there is little reason for a manager to know the details of how linear programming models are solved beyond the rudiments of using Solver. (Even most management science teams will use commercial software packages for solving their models on a computer rather than developing their own software.) Similarly, a manager does not need to know the technical details of how to formulate complex models, how to validate such a model, how to interact with the computer when formulating and solving a large model, how to efficiently perform what-if analysis with such a model, and so forth. Therefore, these details are de-emphasized in this book. A student who becomes interested in conducting technical analyses as part of a management science team should plan to take additional, more technically oriented courses in management science.

So what does an enlightened manager need to know about linear programming? A manager needs to have a good intuitive feeling for what linear programming is. One objective of this chapter is to begin to develop that intuition. That's the purpose of studying the graphical method for solving two-variable problems. It is rare to have a *real* linear programming problem with as few as two decision variables. Therefore, the graphical method has essentially no practical value for solving real problems. However, it has great value for conveying the basic notion that linear programming involves pushing up against constraint boundaries and moving objective function values in a favorable direction as far as possible. Chapter 16, available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e,** also demonstrates that this approach provides considerable geometric insight into how to analyze larger models by other methods.

A manager must also have an appreciation for the relevance and power of linear programming to encourage its use where appropriate. For *future* managers using this book, this appreciation is being promoted by using application vignettes and their linked articles to describe *real* applications of linear programming and the resulting impact, as well as by including (in miniature form) various realistic examples and case studies that illustrate what can be done.

Certainly a manager must be able to recognize situations where linear programming is applicable. We focus on developing this skill in Chapter 6, where you will learn how to recognize the *identifying features* for each of the

major types of linear programming problems (and their mixtures). Chapters 7–9 that complete Part 3 (Using Linear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics) will further illuminate the scope of linear programming.

In addition, a manager should recognize situations where linear programming should *not* be applied. Part 4 (Using Integer or Nonlinear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics) and Part 5 (Traditional Uncertainty Models for Performing Predictive or Prescriptive Analytics) will explore situations where other techniques are needed.

A manager needs to be able to distinguish between competent and shoddy studies using linear programming (or any other management science and business analytics technique). Therefore, another goal of both Chapter 2 and the upcoming chapters is to demystify the overall process involved in conducting a major study, all the way from first studying a problem to final implementation of the managerial decisions based on the study. This is one purpose of the case studies throughout the book.

Finally, a manager must understand how to interpret the results of a linear programming study. He or she especially needs to understand what kinds of information can be obtained through *what-if analysis,* as well as the implications of such information for managerial decision making. Chapter 8 focuses on these issues.

page 219

Review *Questions*

. Does management generally get heavily involved with the technical details of a linear programming study?

. What is the purpose of studying the graphical method for solving problems with two decision variables when essentially all real linear programming problems have more than two?

. List the things that an enlightened manager should know about linear programming.

5.9 Summary

Linear programming is a powerful technique for aiding managerial decision making for certain kinds of problems. The basic approach is to formulate a mathematical model called a linear programming model to represent the problem and then to analyze this model.

Any linear programming model includes decision variables to represent the decisions to be made, constraints to represent the restrictions on the feasible values of these decision variables, and an objective function that expresses the overall measure of performance for the problem.

Spreadsheets provide a flexible and intuitive way of formulating and solving a linear programming model. The data are entered into data cells. Changing cells display the values of the decision variables, and an objective cell shows the value of the objective function. Output cells are used to help specify the constraints. After formulating the model on the spreadsheet, Solver is used to quickly find an optimal solution. Analytic Solver also provides a more powerful method for finding an optimal solution.

The graphical method can be used to solve a linear programming model having just two decision variables. This method provides considerable insight into the nature of linear programming models and optimal solutions.

Glossary

absolute reference A reference to a cell (or a column or a row) with a fixed address, as indicated either by using a range name or by placing a $ sign in front of the letter and number of the cell reference. (Section 5.2 and Appendix A), 194

changing cells The cells in the spreadsheet that show the values of the decision variables. (Section 5.2), 193

constraint A restriction on the feasible values of the decision variables. (Sections 5.2 and 5.3), 196, 198

constraint boundary equation The equation for the constraint boundary line. (Section 5.4), 202

constraint boundary line For linear programming problems with two decision variables, the line forming the boundary of the solutions that are permitted by the constraint. (Section 5.4), 202

data cells The cells in the spreadsheet that show the data of the problem. (Section 5.2), 192

decision variable An algebraic variable that represents a decision regarding the level of a particular activity. The value of the

decision variable appears in a changing cell on the spreadsheet. (Section 5.3), 199

feasible region The geometric region that consists of all the feasible solutions. (Section 5.4), 200

feasible solution A solution that simultaneously satisfies all the constraints in the linear programming model. (Section 5.3), 199

functional constraint A constraint with a function of the decision variables on the left-hand side. All constraints in a linear programming model that are not nonnegativity constraints are called functional constraints. (Section 5.3), 199

graphical method A method for solving linear programming problems with two decision variables on a two-dimensional graph. (Section 5.4), 200

infeasible solution A solution that violates at least one of the constraints in the linear programming model. (Section 5.3), 199

linear programming model The mathematical model that represents a linear programming problem. (Sections 5.2 and 5.3), 192, 198

nonnegativity constraint A constraint that expresses the restriction that a particular decision variable must be nonnegative (greater than or equal to zero). (Section 5.3), 199

objective cell The cell in the spreadsheet that shows the overall measure of performance of the decisions. (Section 5.2), 195

objective function The part of a linear programming model that expresses what needs to be either maximized or minimized, depending on the objective for the problem. The value of the objective function appears in the objective cell on the spreadsheet. (Section 5.3), 199

objective function line For a linear programming problem with two decision variables, a line whose points all have the same value of the objective function. (Section 5.4), 203

page 220

optimal solution The best feasible solution according to the objective function. (Section 5.3), 199

output cells The cells in the spreadsheet that provide output that depends on the changing cells. These cells frequently are

used to help specify constraints. (Section 5.2), 194

parameter The parameters of a linear programming model are the constants (coefficients or right-hand sides) in the functional constraints and the objective function. Each parameter represents a quantity (e.g., the amount available of a resource) that is of importance for the analysis of the problem. (Section 5.3), 199

product-mix problem A type of linear programming problem where the objective is to find the most profitable mix of production levels for the products under consideration.

range name A descriptive name given to a cell or range of cells that immediately identifies what is there. (Section 5.2), 192

relative reference A reference to a cell whose address is based upon its position relative to the cell containing the formula. (Section 5.2 and Appendix A), 194

solution Any single assignment of values to the decision variables, regardless of whether the assignment is a good one or even a feasible one. (Section 5.3), 199

Solver The spreadsheet tool that is used to specify the model in the spreadsheet and then to obtain an optimal solution for that model. (Section 5.5), 205

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

Excel Files:

Wyndor

Profit & Gambit

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Supplement to This Chapter:

More About the Graphical Method for Linear Programming

Solved Problem

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

5.S1. Back Savers Production Problem

Back Savers is a company that produces backpacks primarily for students. They are considering offering some combination of two different models—the Collegiate and the Mini. Both are made out of the same rip-resistant nylon fabric. Back Savers has a long-term contract with a supplier of the nylon and receives a 5,000-square-foot shipment of the material each week. Each Collegiate requires 3 square feet while each Mini requires 2 square feet. The sales forecasts indicate that at most 1,000 Collegiates and 1,200 Minis can be sold per week. Each Collegiate requires 45 minutes of labor to produce and generates a unit profit of $32. Each Mini requires 40 minutes of labor and generates a unit profit of $24. Back Savers has 35 laborers that each provides 40 hours of labor per week. Management wishes to know what quantity of each type of backpack to produce per week in order to maximize the total profit.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

c. Use the graphical method by hand to solve this model.

5.S2. Conducting a Marketing Survey

The marketing group for a cell phone manufacturer plans to conduct a telephone survey to determine consumer attitudes toward a new cell phone that is currently under development. In order to have a sufficient sample size to conduct the analysis, they need to contact at least 100 young males (under age 40), 150 older males (over age 40), 120 young females (under age 40), and 200 older females (over age 40). It costs $1 to make a daytime phone call and $1.50 to make an evening phone call (because of higher labor costs). This cost is incurred whether or not anyone answers the phone. The table below shows the likelihood of a given customer type answering each phone call. Assume the survey is conducted with whoever first answers the phone. Also, because of limited evening staffing, at most one-third of phone calls placed can be evening phone calls. How should the

marketing group conduct the telephone survey so as to meet the sample size requirements at the lowest possible cost?

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

Who Answers?	Daytime Calls	Evening Calls
Young male	10%	20%
Older male	15%	30%
Young female	20%	20%
Older female	35%	25%
No answer	20%	5%

Problems

page 221

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem or part where Analytic Solver is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

5.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for Swift & Company that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 5.1. Briefly describe how linear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

5.2. Reconsider the Wyndor Glass Co. case study introduced in Section 5.1. Suppose that the estimates of the unit profits for the two new products now have been revised to \$600 for the doors and \$300 for the windows.

a. Formulate and solve the revised linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

c. Use the graphical method to solve this revised model.

5.3. Reconsider the Wyndor Glass Co. case study introduced in Section 5.1. Suppose that Binh Nguyen (Wyndor's vice president for manufacturing) now has found a way to provide a little additional production time in Plant 2 to the new products.

a. Use the graphical method to find the new optimal solution and the resulting total profit if *one* additional hour per week is provided.

b. Repeat part *a* if *two* additional hours per week are provided instead.

c. Repeat part *a* if *three* additional hours per week are provided instead.

d. Use these results to determine how much each additional hour per week would be worth in terms of increasing the total profit from the two new products.

5.4. Use Solver to do Problem 5.3.

5.5. The following table summarizes the key facts about two products, A and B, and the resources, Q, R, and S, required to produce them.

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit Produced		Amount of Resource Available
	Product A	Product B	
Q	2	1	2
R	1	2	2
S	3	3	4
Profit/unit	$3,000	$2,000	

All the assumptions of linear programming hold.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.6.* This is your lucky day. You have just won a $20,000 prize. You are setting aside $8,000 for taxes and partying expenses, but you have decided to invest the other $12,000. Upon hearing this news, two different friends have offered you an opportunity to become a partner in two different entrepreneurial ventures, one planned by each friend. In both cases, this investment would involve expending some of your time next summer as well as putting up cash. Becoming a *full* partner in the first friend's venture would require an investment of $10,000 and 400 hours, and your estimated profit (ignoring the value of your time) would be $9,000. The corresponding figures for the second friend's venture are $8,000 and 500 hours, with an estimated profit to you of $9,000. However, both friends are flexible and would allow you to come in at any *fraction* of a full partnership you would like. If you choose a fraction of a full partnership, all the above figures given for a full partnership (money investment, time investment, and your profit) would be multiplied by this same fraction.

Because you were looking for an interesting summer job anyway (maximum of 600 hours), you have decided to participate in one or both friends' ventures in whichever combination would maximize your total estimated profit. You now need to solve the problem of finding the best combination.

a. Describe the analogy between this problem and the Wyndor Glass Co. problem discussed in Section 5.1. Then construct and fill in a table like Table 5.1 for this problem, identifying both the activities and the resources.

b. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

c. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

d. Formulate a spreadsheet model for this problem. Identify the data cells, the changing cells, and the objective cell. Also show the Excel equation for each output cell expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function. Then use Solver to solve this model.

e. Indicate why this spreadsheet model is a linear programming model.

f. Formulate this same model algebraically.

g. Identify the decision variables, objective function, nonnegativity constraints, functional constraints, and parameters in both the algebraic version and spreadsheet version of the model.

h. Use the graphical method by hand to solve this model. What is your total estimated profit?

5.7. You are given the following linear programming model in algebraic form, where x_1 and x_2 are the decision variables and Z is the value of the overall measure of performance.

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad Z = x_1 + 2x_2$$

subject to

Constraint on resource 1: $x_1 + x_2 \leq 5$ (amount available)

onstraint on resource 2: $x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 9$ (amount available)

and

$$x_1 \geq 0 \qquad x_2 \geq 0$$

a. Identify the objective function, the functional constraints, and the nonnegativity constraints in this model.

b. Incorporate this model into a spreadsheet.

c. Is $(x_1, x_2) = (3, 1)$ a feasible solution?

d. Is $(x_1, x_2) = (1, 3)$ a feasible solution?

e. Use Solver to solve this model.

5.8. You are given the following linear programming model in algebraic form, where x_1 and x_2 are the decision variables and Z is the value of the overall measure of performance.

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad Z = 3x_1 + 2x_2$$

subject to

Constraint on resource 1: $3x_1 + x_2 \leq 9$ (amount available)

Constraint on resource 2: $x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 8$ (amount available)

and

$$x_1 \geq 0 \qquad x_2 \geq 0$$

a. Identify the objective function, the functional constraints, and the nonnegativity constraints in this model.

b. Incorporate this model into a spreadsheet.

c. Is $(x_1, x_2) = (2, 1)$ a feasible solution?

d. Is $(x_1, x_2) = (2, 3)$ a feasible solution?

e. Is $(x_1, x_2) = (0, 5)$ a feasible solution?

f. Use Solver to solve this model.

5.9. The Whitt Window Company is a company with only three employees that makes two different kinds of handcrafted windows: a wood-framed and an aluminum framed window. They earn $60 profit for each wood-framed window and $30 profit for each aluminum-framed window. Doug makes the wood frames and can make 6 per day. Linda makes the aluminum frames and can make 4 per day. Bob forms and cuts the glass and can make 48 square feet of glass per day. Each wood-framed window uses 6 square feet of glass and each aluminum-framed window uses 8 square feet of glass.

The company wishes to determine how many windows of each type to produce per day to maximize total profit.

a. Describe the analogy between this problem and the Wyndor Glass Co. problem discussed in Section 5.1. Then construct and fill in a table like Table 5.1 for this problem, identifying both the activities and the resources.

b. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

c. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative

expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

d. Formulate a spreadsheet model for this problem. Identify the data cells, the changing cells, and the objective cell. Also show the Excel equation for each output cell expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function. Then use Solver to solve this model.

e. Indicate why this spreadsheet model is a linear programming model.

f. Formulate this same model algebraically.

g. Identify the decision variables, objective function, nonnegativity constraints, functional constraints, and parameters in both the algebraic version and spreadsheet version of the model.

h. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

i. A new competitor in town has started making wood-framed windows as well. This may force the company to lower the price it charges and so lower the profit made for each wood-framed window. How would the optimal solution change (if at all) if the profit per wood-framed window decreases from $60 to $40? From $60 to $20?

j. Doug is considering lowering his working hours, which would decrease the number of wood frames he makes per day. How would the optimal solution change if he only makes 5 wood frames per day?

5.10. The Apex Television Company has to decide on the number of 65″ and 55″ sets to be produced at one of its factories. Market research indicates that at most 280 of the 65″ sets and 70 of the 55″ sets can be sold per month. The maximum number of work-hours available is 3,500 per month. A 65″ set requires 20 work-hours and a 55″ set requires 10 work-hours. Each 65″ set sold produces a profit of $270 and each 55″ set produces a profit of $180. A wholesaler has agreed to purchase all the television sets produced if the numbers do not exceed the maxima indicated by the market research.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

c. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

5.11. The WorldLight Company produces two light fixtures (Products 1 and 2) that require both metal frame parts and electrical components. Management wants to determine how many units of each product to produce per week so as to maximize profit. For each unit of Product 1, one unit of frame parts and two units of electrical components are required. For each unit of Product 2, three units of frame parts and two units of electrical components are required. The company has a weekly supply of 3,000 units of frame parts and 4,500 units of electrical components. Each unit of Product 1 gives a profit of $13, and each unit of Product 2, up to 900 units, gives a profit of $26. Any excess over 900 units of Product 2 brings no profit, so such an excess has been ruled out.

a. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

b. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

c. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

d. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.12. The Primo Insurance Company is introducing two new product lines: special risk insurance and mortgages. The expected profit is $5 per unit on special risk insurance and $2 per unit on mortgages.

Management wishes to establish sales quotas for the new product lines to maximize total expected profit. The work requirements are shown below:

Department	Work-Hours per Unit		Work-Hours Available
	Special Risk	Mortgage	
Underwriting	3	2	2,400

Department	Work-Hours per Unit		Work-Hours Available
	Special Risk	Mortgage	
Administration	0	1	800
Claims	2	0	1,200

a. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

page 223

b. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

c. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

d. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.13.* You are given the following linear programming model in algebraic form, with x_1 and x_2 as the decision variables and constraints on the usage of four resources:

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad \text{Profit} = 2x_1 + x_2$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} x_2 &\le 10 \quad \text{(resource 1)} \\ 2x_1 + 5x_2 &\le 60 \quad \text{(resource 2)} \\ x_1 + x_2 &\le 18 \quad \text{(resource 3)} \\ 3x_1 + x_2 &\le 44 \quad \text{(resource 4)} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$x_1 \ge 0 \qquad x_2 \ge 0$$

a. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

b. Incorporate this model into a spreadsheet and then use Solver to solve this model.

AS 5.14. Use Analytic Solver to formulate and solve the model shown in Problem 5.13 in a spreadsheet.

5.15. Because of your knowledge of management science, your boss has asked you to analyze a product mix problem involving two products and two resources. The model is shown below in algebraic form, where x_1 and x_2 are the production rates for the two products and P is the total profit.

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad P = 3x_1 + 2x_2$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 &\leq 8 \quad \text{(resource 1)} \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &\leq 10 \quad \text{(resource 2)} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$x_1 \geq 0 \qquad x_2 \geq 0$$

a. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

b. Incorporate this model into a spreadsheet and then use Solver to solve this model.

AS 5.16. Use Analytic Solver to formulate and solve the model shown in Problem 5.15 in a spreadsheet.

5.17. Independently consider each of the following changes in the Wyndor problem. In each case, apply the graphical method by hand to this new version of the problem, describe your conclusion, and then explain how and why the nature of this conclusion is different from the original Wyndor problem.

a. The unit profit for the windows now is $200.

b. To justify introducing these two new products, Wyndor management now requires that the total number of doors and windows produced per week must be at least 10.

c. The functional constraints for Plants 2 and 3 now have been inadvertently deleted from the model.

5.18. Weenies and Buns is a food processing plant that manufactures buns and frankfurters for hot dogs. They grind their

own flour for the buns at a maximum rate of 200 pounds per week. Each bun requires 0.1 pound of flour. They currently have a contract with Pigland, Inc., which specifies that a delivery of 800 pounds of pork product is delivered every Monday. Each frankfurter requires 1/4 pound of pork product. All the other ingredients in the buns and frankfurters are in plentiful supply. Finally, the labor force at Weenies and Buns consists of five employees working full time (40 hours per week each). Each bun requires two minutes of labor, and each frankfurter requires three minutes of labor. Each bun yields a profit of $0.20, and each frankfurter yields a profit of $0.40.

Weenies and Buns would like to know how many buns and how many frankfurters they should produce each week so as to achieve the highest possible profit.

a. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

b. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

c. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

d. Formulate this same model algebraically.

e. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

5.19. The Oak Works is a family-owned business that makes handcrafted dining room tables and chairs. They obtain the oak from a local tree farm, which ships them 2,500 pounds of oak each month. Each table uses 50 pounds of oak while each chair uses 25 pounds of oak. The family builds all the furniture itself and has 480 hours of labor available each month. Each table or chair requires six hours of labor. Each table nets Oak Works $400 in profit, while each chair nets $100 in profit. Since chairs are often sold with the tables, they want to produce *at least* twice as many chairs as tables.

The Oak Works would like to decide how many tables and chairs to produce so as to maximize profit.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet by using the Excel Solver.

b. Use Analytic Solver to formulate and solve this model in a spreadsheet.

AS

c. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.20. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for Samsung Electronics that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 5.6. Briefly describe how linear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

5.21. Nutri-Jenny is a weight-management center. It produces a wide variety of frozen entrées for consumption by its clients. The entrées are strictly monitored for nutritional content to ensure that the clients are eating a balanced diet. One new entrée will be a beef sirloin tips dinner. It will consist of beef tips and gravy, plus some combination of peas, carrots, and a dinner roll. Nutri-Jenny would like to determine what quantity of each item to include in the entrée to meet the nutritional requirements, while costing as little as possible. The nutritional information for each item and its cost are given in the accompanying table.

page 224

Item	Calories (per oz.)	Calories from Fat (per oz.)	Vitamin A (IU per oz.)	Vitamin C (mg per oz.)	Protein (g, per oz.)	Cost (per oz.)
Beef tips	54	19	0	0	8	40¢
Gravy	20	15	0	1	0	35¢
Peas	15	0	15	3	1	15¢
Carrots	8	0	350	1	1	18¢
Dinner roll	40	10	0	0	1	10¢

The nutritional requirements for the entrée are as follows: (1) it must have between 280 and 320 calories, (2) calories from fat should be no more than 30 percent of the total number of calories, and (3) it must have at least 600 IUs of vitamin A, 10 milligrams of vitamin C, and 30 grams of protein. Furthermore, for practical reasons, it must include at least 2 ounces of beef, and it must have at least half an ounce of gravy per ounce of beef.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet by using the Excel Solver.

AS *b.* Use Analytic Solver to formulate and solve this model in a spreadsheet.

c. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.22. Ralph Edmund loves steaks and potatoes. Therefore, he has decided to go on a steady diet of only these two foods (plus some liquids and vitamin supplements) for all his meals. Ralph realizes that this isn't the healthiest diet, so he wants to make sure that he eats the right quantities of the two foods to satisfy some key nutritional requirements. He has obtained the following nutritional and cost information.

Grams of Ingredient per Serving			
Ingredient	**Steak**	**Potatoes**	**Daily Requirement (grams)**
Carbohydrates	5	15	≥ 50
Protein	20	5	≥ 40
Fat	15	2	≤ 60
Cost per serving	$4	$2	

Ralph wishes to determine the number of daily servings (may be fractional) of steak and potatoes that will meet these requirements at a minimum cost.

a. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

b. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

c. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

d. Formulate this same model algebraically.

e. Use the graphical method by hand to solve this model.

5.23. Dwight is an elementary school teacher who also raises pigs for supplemental income. He is trying to decide what to feed

his pigs. He is considering using a combination of pig feeds available from local suppliers. He would like to feed the pigs at minimum cost while also making sure each pig receives an adequate supply of calories and vitamins. The cost, calorie content, and vitamin content of each feed is given in the table below.

Contents	Feed Type A	Feed Type B
Calories (per pound)	800	1,000
Vitamins (per pound)	140 units	70 units
Cost (per pound)	$0.40	$0.80

Each pig requires at least 8,000 calories per day and at least 700 units of vitamins. A further constraint is that no more than 1/3 of the diet (by weight) can consist of Feed Type A, since it contains an ingredient that is toxic if consumed in too large a quantity.

a. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

b. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

c. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

d. Formulate this same model algebraically.

5.24. Reconsider the Profit & Gambit Co. problem described in Section 5.7. Suppose that the estimated data given in Table 5.2 now have been changed as shown in the table that accompanies this problem.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model on a spreadsheet for this revised version of the problem.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

c. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

d. What were the key changes in the data that caused your answer for the optimal solution to change from the one for the original version of the problem?

Product	Increase in Sales per Unit of Advertising		Minimum Required Increase
	Television	Print Media	
Stain remover	0%	1.5%	3%
Liquid detergent	3	4	18
Powder detergent	−1	2	4
Unit cost	$1 million	$2 million	

e. Write a paragraph to the management of the Profit & Gambit Co. presenting your conclusions from the above parts. Include the potential effect of further refining the key data in the above table. Also point out the leverage that your results might provide to management in negotiating a decrease in the unit cost for either of the advertising media.

5.25. You are given the following linear programming model in algebraic form, with x_1 and x_2 as the decision variables:

$$\text{Minimize} \qquad \text{Cost} = 40x_1 + 50x_2$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Constraint 1:} \quad & 2x_1 + 3x_2 \geq 30 \\ \text{Constraint 2:} \quad & x_1 + x_2 \geq 12 \\ \text{Constraint 3:} \quad & 2x_1 + x_2 \geq 20 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$x_1 \geq 0 \qquad x_2 \geq 0$$

a. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

b. How does the optimal solution change if the objective function is changed to Cost = $40x_1 + 70x_2$?

c. How does the optimal solution change if the third functional constraint is changed to $2x_1 + x_2 \geq 15$?

d. Now incorporate the original model into a spreadsheet and use Solver to solve this model.

e. Use Excel to do parts *b* and *c.*

5.26. The Learning Center runs a day camp for 6- to 10-year-olds during the summer. Its manager, Elizabeth Reed, is trying to reduce the center's operating costs to avoid having to raise the tuition fee. Elizabeth is currently planning what to feed the children for lunch. She would like to keep costs to a minimum, but also wants to make sure she is meeting the nutritional requirements of the children. She has already decided to go with peanut butter and jelly sandwiches, and some combination of apples, milk, and/or cranberry juice. The nutritional content of each food choice and its cost are given in the table that accompanies this problem.

The nutritional requirements are as follows. Each child should receive between 300 and 500 calories, but no more than 30 percent of these calories should come from fat. Each child should receive at least 60 milligrams (mg) of vitamin C and at least 10 grams (g) of fiber.

To ensure tasty sandwiches, Elizabeth wants each child to have a minimum of 2 slices of bread, 1 tablespoon (tbsp) of peanut butter, and 1 tbsp of jelly, along with at least 1 cup of liquid (milk and/or cranberry juice).

Elizabeth would like to select the food choices that would minimize cost while meeting all these requirements.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

Food Item	Calories from Fat	Total Calories	Vitamin C (mg)	Fiber (g)	Cost (¢)
Bread (1 slice)	15	80	0	4	6
Peanut butter (1 tbsp)	80	100	0	0	5
Jelly (1 tbsp)	0	70	4	3	8
Apple	0	90	6	10	35
Milk (1 cup)	60	120	2	0	20
Cranberry juice (1 cup)	0	110	80	1	40

Case 5-1

Auto Assembly

Automobile Alliance, a large automobile manufacturing company, organizes the vehicles it manufactures into three families: a family of trucks, a family of small cars, and a family of midsized and luxury cars. One plant outside Detroit, Michigan, assembles two models from the family of midsized and luxury cars. The first model, the Family Thrillseeker, is a four-door sedan with vinyl seats, plastic interior, standard features, and excellent gas mileage. It is marketed as a smart buy for middle-class families with tight budgets, and each Family Thrillseeker sold generates a modest profit of $3,600 for the company. The second model, the Classy Cruiser, is a two-door luxury sedan with leather seats, wooden interior, custom features, and navigational capabilities. It is marketed as a privilege of affluence for upper-middle-class families, and each Classy Cruiser sold generates a healthy profit of $5,400 for the company.

Rachel Rosencrantz, the manager of the assembly plant, is currently deciding the production schedule for the next month. Specifically, she must decide how many Family Thrillseekers and how many Classy Cruisers to assemble in the plant to maximize profit for the company. She knows that the plant possesses a capacity of 48,000 labor-hours during the month. She also knows that it takes six labor-hours to assemble one Family Thrillseeker and 10.5 labor-hours to assemble one Classy Cruiser.

Because the plant is simply an assembly plant, the parts required to assemble the two models are not produced at the plant. Instead, they are shipped from other plants around the Michigan area to the assembly plant. For example, tires, steering wheels, windows, seats, and doors all arrive from various supplier plants. For the next month, Rachel knows that she will only be able to obtain 20,000 doors from the door supplier. A recent labor strike

forced the shutdown of that particular supplier plant for several days, and that plant will not be able to meet its production schedule for the next month. Both the Family Thrillseeker and the Classy Cruiser use the same door parts, with four needed for the Family Thrillseeker and two for the Classy Cruiser.

In addition, a recent company forecast of the monthly demands for different automobile models suggests that the demand for the Classy Cruiser is limited to 3,500 cars. There is no limit on the demand for the Family Thrillseeker within the capacity limits of the assembly plant.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model to determine the number of Family Thrillseekers and the number of Classy Cruisers that should be assembled.

Before she makes her final production decisions, Rachel plans to explore the following questions independently, except where otherwise indicated.

b. The marketing department knows that it can pursue a targeted $500,000 advertising campaign that will raise the demand for the Classy Cruiser next month by 20 percent. Should the campaign be undertaken?

c. Rachel knows that she can increase next month's plant capacity by using overtime labor. She can increase the plant's labor-hour capacity by 25 percent. With the new assembly plant capacity, how many Family Thrillseekers and how many Classy Cruisers should be assembled?

d. Rachel knows that overtime labor does not come without an extra cost. What is the maximum amount she should be willing to pay for all overtime labor beyond the cost of this labor at regular-time rates? Express your answer as a lump sum.

e. Rachel explores the option of using both the targeted advertising campaign and the overtime labor-hours. The advertising campaign raises the demand for the Classy Cruiser by 20 percent, and the overtime labor increases the plant's labor-hour capacity by 25 percent. How many Family Thrillseekers and how many Classy Cruisers should be assembled using the advertising campaign and overtime labor-hours if the profit from each Classy Cruiser sold continues to be 50 percent more than for each Family Thrillseeker sold?

f. Knowing that the advertising campaign costs $500,000 and the maximum usage of overtime labor-hours costs $1,600,000 beyond regular time rates, is the solution found in part *e* a wise decision compared to the solution found in part *a*?

g. Automobile Alliance has determined that dealerships are actually heavily discounting the price of the Family Thrillseekers to move them off the lot.

Because of a profit- sharing agreement with its dealers, the company is not making a profit of $3,600 on the Family Thrillseeker but instead is making a profit of $2,800. Determine the number of Family Thrillseekers and the number of Classy Cruisers that should be assembled given this new discounted profit.

h. The company has discovered quality problems with the Family Thrillseeker by randomly testing Thrillseekers at the end of the assembly line. Inspectors have discovered that in over 60 percent of the cases, two of the four doors on a Thrillseeker do not seal properly. Because the percentage of defective Thrillseekers determined by the random testing is so high, the floor foreman has decided to perform quality control tests on every Thrillseeker at the end of the line. Because of the added tests, the time it takes to assemble one Family Thrillseeker has increased from 6 hours to 7.5 hours. Determine the number of units of each model that should be assembled given the new assembly time for the Family Thrillseeker.

i. The board of directors of Automobile Alliance wishes to capture a larger share of the luxury sedan market and therefore would like to meet the full demand for Classy Cruisers. They ask Rachel to determine by how much the profit of her assembly plant would decrease as compared to the profit found in part *a.* They then ask her to meet the full demand for Classy Cruisers if the decrease in profit is not more than $2,000,000.

j. Rachel now makes her final decision by combining all the new considerations described in parts *f, g,* and *h.* What are her final decisions on whether to undertake the advertising campaign, whether to use overtime labor, the number of Family Thrillseekers to assemble, and the number of Classy Cruisers to assemble?

Case 5-2

Cutting Cafeteria Costs

A cafeteria at **All-State University** has one special dish it serves like clockwork every Thursday at noon. This supposedly tasty dish is a casserole that contains sautéed onions, boiled sliced potatoes, green beans, and cream of mushroom soup. Unfortunately, students fail to see the special quality of this dish, and they loathingly refer to it as the Killer Casserole. The students reluctantly eat the casserole, however, because the cafeteria provides only a limited selection of dishes for Thursday's lunch (namely, the casserole).

Maria Gonzalez, the cafeteria manager, is looking to cut costs for the coming year, and she believes that one sure way to cut costs is to buy less expensive and perhaps lower quality ingredients. Because the casserole is a weekly staple of the cafeteria menu, she concludes that if she can cut costs on the ingredients purchased for the casserole, she can significantly reduce overall cafeteria operating costs. She therefore decides to invest time in determining how to minimize the costs of the casserole while maintaining nutritional and taste requirements.

Maria focuses on reducing the costs of the two main ingredients in the casserole, the potatoes and green beans. These two ingredients are responsible for the greatest costs, nutritional content, and taste of the dish.

Maria buys the potatoes and green beans from a wholesaler each week. Potatoes cost $0.40 per pound (lb), and green beans cost $1.00 per lb.

All-State University has established nutritional requirements that each main dish of the cafeteria must meet. Specifically, the dish must contain 180 grams (g) of protein, 80 milligrams (mg) of iron, and 1,050 mg of vitamin C. (There are 454 g in one lb and 1,000 mg in one g.) For simplicity when planning, Maria assumes that only the potatoes and green beans contribute to the nutritional content of the casserole.

Because Maria works at a cutting-edge technological university, she has been searching for information on the Internet to find the nutritional content of potatoes and green beans. Her research yields the following nutritional information about the two ingredients.

	Potatoes	Green Beans
Protein	1.5 g per 100 g	5.67 g per 10 ounces
Iron	0.3 mg per 100 g	3.402 mg per 10 ounces
Vitamin C	12 mg per 100 g	28.35 mg per 10 ounces

(There are 28.35 g in one ounce.)

Edson Branner, the cafeteria cook who is surprisingly concerned about taste, informs Maria that an edible casserole must contain at least a six-to-five ratio in the weight of potatoes to green beans.

Given the number of students who eat in the cafeteria, Maria knows that she must purchase enough potatoes and green beans to prepare a minimum of 10 kilograms (kg) of casserole each week. (There are 1,000 g in one kg.) Again, for simplicity in planning, she assumes that only the potatoes and

green beans determine the amount of casserole that can be prepared. Maria does not establish an upper limit on the amount of casserole to prepare since she knows all leftovers can be served for many days thereafter or can be used creatively in preparing other dishes.

a. Determine the amount of potatoes and green beans Maria should purchase each week for the casserole to minimize the ingredient costs while meeting nutritional, taste, and demand requirements.

Before she makes her final decision, Maria plans to explore the following questions independently, except where otherwise indicated.

b. Maria is not very concerned about the taste of the casserole; she is only concerned about meeting nutritional requirements and cutting costs. She therefore forces Edson to change the recipe to allow only for at least a one-to-two ratio in the weight of potatoes to green beans. Given the new recipe, determine the amount of potatoes and green beans Maria should purchase each week.

c. Maria decides to lower the iron requirement to 65 mg since she determines that the other ingredients, such as the onions and cream of mushroom soup, also provide iron. Determine the amount of potatoes and green beans Maria should purchase each week given this new iron requirement.

d. Maria learns that the wholesaler has a surplus of green beans and is therefore selling the green beans for a lower price of $0.50 per lb. Using the same iron requirement from part *c* and the new price of green beans, determine the amount of potatoes and green beans Maria should purchase each week.

e. Maria decides that she wants to purchase lima beans instead of green beans since lima beans are less expensive and provide a greater amount of protein and iron than green beans. Maria again wields her absolute power and forces Edson to change the recipe to include lima beans instead of green beans. Maria knows she can purchase lima beans for $0.60 per lb from the wholesaler. She also knows that lima beans contain 22.68 g of protein and 6.804 mg of iron per 10 ounces of lima beans and no vitamin C. Using the new cost and nutritional content of lima beans, determine the amount of potatoes and lima beans Maria should purchase each week to minimize the ingredient costs while meeting nutritional, taste, and demand requirements. The nutritional requirements include the reduced iron requirement from part *c.*

f. Will Edson be happy with the solution in part *e?* Why or why not?

y. An All-State student task force meets during Body Awareness Week and determines that All-State University's nutritional requirements for iron are too lax and that those for vitamin C are too stringent. The task force urges the university to adopt a policy that requires each serving of an entrée to contain at least 120 mg of iron and at least 500 mg of vitamin C. Using potatoes and lima beans as the ingredients for the dish and using the new nutritional requirements, determine the amount of potatoes and lima beans Maria should purchase each week.

Case 5-3

Staffing a Call Center

California Children's Hospital has been receiving numerous customer complaints because of its confusing, decentralized appointment and registration process. When customers want to make appointments or register child patients, they must contact the clinic or department they plan to visit. Several problems exist with this current strategy. Parents do not always know the most appropriate clinic or department they must visit to address their children's ailments. They therefore spend a significant amount of time on the phone being transferred from clinic to clinic until they reach the most appropriate clinic for their needs. The hospital also does not publish the phone numbers of all clinics and departments, and parents must therefore invest a large amount of time in detective work to track down the correct phone number. Finally, the various clinics and departments do not communicate with each other. For example, when a doctor schedules a referral with a colleague located in another department or clinic, that department or clinic almost never receives word of the referral. The parent must contact the correct department or clinic and provide the needed referral information.

In efforts to reengineer and improve its appointment and registration process, the children's hospital has decided to centralize the process by establishing one call center devoted exclusively to appointments and registration. The hospital is currently in the middle of the planning stages for the call center. Lenny Davis, the hospital manager, plans to operate the call center from 7 AM to 9 PM during the weekdays.

Several months ago, the hospital hired an ambitious management consulting firm, Creative Chaos Consultants, to forecast the number of calls the call center would receive each hour of the day. Since all appointment and registration-related calls would be received by the call center, the consultants

decided that they could forecast the calls at the call center by totaling the number of appointment and registration-related calls received by all clinics and departments. The team members visited all the clinics and departments, where they diligently recorded every call relating to appointments and registration. They then totaled these calls and altered the totals to account for calls missed during data collection. They also altered totals to account for repeat calls that occurred when the same parent called the hospital many times because of the confusion surrounding the decentralized process. Creative Chaos Consultants determined the average number of calls the call center should expect during each hour of a weekday. The following table provides the forecasts.

Work Shift	Average Number of Calls
7 AM to 9 AM	40 calls per hour
9 AM to 11 AM	85 calls per hour
11 AM to 1 PM	70 calls per hour
1 PM to 3 PM	95 calls per hour
3 PM to 5 PM	80 calls per hour
5 PM to 7 PM	35 calls per hour
7 PM to 9 PM	10 calls per hour

After the consultants submitted these forecasts, Lenny became interested in the percentage of calls from Spanish speakers since the hospital services many Spanish patients. Lenny knows that he has to hire some operators who speak Spanish to handle these calls. The consultants performed further data collection and determined that, on average, 20 percent of the calls were from Spanish speakers.

Given these call forecasts, Lenny must now decide how to staff the call center during each two-hour shift of a week-day. During the forecasting project, Creative Chaos Consultants closely observed the operators working at the individual clinics and departments and determined the number of calls operators process per hour. The consultants informed Lenny that an operator is able to process an average of six calls per hour. Lenny also knows that he has both full-time and part-time workers available to staff the call center. A full-time employee works eight hours per day, but because of paperwork that must also be completed, the employee spends only four hours per day on the

phone. To balance the schedule, the employee alternates the two-hour shifts between answering phones and completing paperwork. Full-time employees can start their day either by answering phones or by completing paperwork on the first shift. The full-time employees speak either Spanish or English, but none of them are bilingual. Both Spanish-speaking and English-speaking employees are paid $15 per hour for work before 5 PM and $18 per hour for work after 5 PM. The full-time employees can begin work at the beginning of the 7 AM to 9 AM shift, 9 àm to 11 AM shift, 11 AM to 1 PM shift, or 1 PM to 3 PM shift. The part-time employees work for four hours, only answer calls, and only speak English. They can start work at the beginning of the 3 PM to 5 PM shift or the 5 PM to 7 PM shift, and, like the full-time employees, they are paid $15 per hour for work before 5 PM and $18 per hour for work after 5 PM.

For the following analysis, consider only the labor cost for the time employees spend answering phones. The cost for paperwork time is charged to other cost centers.

a. How many Spanish-speaking operators and how many English-speaking operators does the hospital need to staff the call center during each two-hour shift of the day in order to answer all calls? Please provide an integer number since half a human operator makes no sense.

b. Lenny needs to determine how many full-time employees who speak Spanish, full-time employees who speak English, and part-time employees he should hire to begin on each shift. Creative Chaos Consultants advises him that linear programming can be used to do this in such a way as to minimize operating costs while answering all calls. Formulate a linear programming model of this problem.

c. Obtain an optimal solution for the linear programming model formulated in part *b* to guide Lenny's decision.

d. Because many full-time workers do not want to work late into the evening, Lenny can find only one qualified English- speaking operator willing to begin work at 1 PM. Given this new constraint, how many full-time English-speaking operators, full-time Spanish-speaking operators, and part-time operators should Lenny hire for each shift to minimize operating costs while answering all calls?

e. Lenny now has decided to investigate the option of hiring bilingual operators instead of monolingual operators. If all the operators are bilingual, how many operators should be working during each two-hour shift to answer all phone calls? As in part *a,* please provide an integer answer.

f. If all employees are bilingual, how many full-time and part-time employees should Lenny hire to begin on each shift to minimize operating costs while answering all calls? As in part *b,* formulate a linear programming model to guide Lenny's decision.

g. What is the maximum percentage increase in the hourly wage rate that Lenny can pay bilingual employees over monolingual employees without increasing the total operating costs?

h. What other features of the call center should Lenny explore to improve service or minimize operating costs?

Source: This case is based on an actual project completed by a team of master's students in what is now the Department of Management Science and Engineering at Stanford University.

[1]There also are some special situations where a SUM function can be used instead because all the numbers that would have gone into the corresponding data cells are 1's.

[2]The one case where using the origin to help determine the permissible region does *not* work is if the constraint boundary line passes through the origin. In this case, any other point *not* lying on this line can be used just like the origin.

[3] A simplifying assumption is being made that each additional unit of advertising in a particular outlet will yield the same increase in sales regardless of how much advertising already is being done. This becomes a poor assumption when the levels of advertising under consideration can reach a saturation level (as in Case 11-1), but is a reasonable approximation for the small levels of advertising being considered in this problem.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) © McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 6

Linear Programming: Formulation and Applications

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Recognize various kinds of managerial problems to which linear programming can be applied.
2. Describe the five major categories of linear programming problems, including their identifying features.
3. Formulate a linear programming model from a description of a problem in any of these categories.
4. Describe the difference between resource constraints and benefit constraints, including the difference in how they arise.
5. Describe fixed-requirement constraints and where they arise.
6. Identify the kinds of Excel functions that linear programming spreadsheet models use for the output cells, including the objective cell.
7. Identify the four components of any linear programming model and the kind of spreadsheet cells used for each component.
8. Understand the flexibility that managers have in prescribing key considerations that can be incorporated into a linear programming model.

Chapter 5 introduced the basic concepts of linear programming for performing prescriptive analytics, but only considered two tiny examples (the Wyndor case

study introduced in Section 5.1 and the Profit & Gambit problem considered in Section 5.7) that only begin to illustrate the great power and versatility of this technique. This chapter will expand considerably further on the great application potential of linear programming by describing and illustrating several different types of linear programming problems. The many examples also will be supplemented by five solved problems presented at the end of the chapter.

Linear programming problems come in many guises. And their models take various forms. This diversity can be confusing to both students and managers, making it difficult to recognize when linear programming can be applied to address a managerial problem. Since managers instigate management science studies, the ability to recognize the applicability of linear programming is an important managerial skill. This chapter focuses largely on developing this skill.

The usual textbook approach to trying to teach this skill is to present a series of diverse examples of linear programming applications. The weakness of this approach is that it emphasizes differences rather than the common threads between these applications. Our approach will be to emphasize these common threads—the **identifying features**—that tie together linear programming problems even when they arise in very different contexts. We will describe some broad categories of linear programming problems and the identifying features that characterize them. Then we will use diverse examples, but with the purpose of illustrating and emphasizing the common threads among them.

page 231

identifying feature

A feature of a model that identifies the category of linear programming problem it represents.

We will focus on the following five key categories of linear programming problems:

- resource-allocation problems
- cost–benefit–trade-off problems
- mixed problems
- transportation problems
- assignment problems

In each case, an important identifying feature is the nature of the restrictions on what decisions can be made, and thus the nature of the resulting functional constraints in the linear programming model. For each

category, you will see how the basic data for a problem lead directly to a linear programming model with a certain distinctive form. Thus, model formulation becomes a by-product of proper problem formulation.

The chapter begins with a case study (Section 6.1) that will illustrate the systematic procedure for formulating and solving the model for any linear programming problem. Section 6.2 will point out why the initial version of the case study turns out to be one example of a resource-allocation problem. However, we then return to the case study in Section 6.4, where additional managerial considerations turn the problem into a mixed problem.

Sections 6.2–6.6 focus on the five categories of linear programming problems in turn. (Section 6.4 also briefly introduces still another category, *fixed-requirements problems,* where this category provides the framework for the more specific categories considered in Sections 6.5 and 6.6.) Section 6.7 then takes a broader look at the formulation of linear programming models from a managerial perspective. That section (along with Section 6.4) highlights the importance of having the model accurately reflect the managerial view of the problem. These (and other) sections also describe the flexibility available to managers for having the model structured to best fit their view of the important considerations.

6.1 A CASE STUDY: THE SUPER GRAIN CORP. ADVERTISING-MIX PROBLEM

Claire Syverson, vice president for marketing of the **Super Grain Corporation,** is facing a daunting challenge: how to break into an already overly crowded breakfast cereal market in a big way. Fortunately, the company's new breakfast cereal—*Crunchy Start*—has a lot going for it: Great taste. Nutritious. Crunchy from start to finish. She can recite the litany in her sleep now. It has the makings of a winning promotional campaign.

However, Claire knows that she has to avoid the mistakes she made in her last campaign for a breakfast cereal. That had been her first big assignment since she won this promotion, and what a disaster! She thought she had developed a really good campaign. But somehow it had failed to connect with the most crucial segments of the market—young children and parents of young children. She also has concluded that it was a mistake not to include coupons in the advertising. Oh well. Live and learn.

But she had better get it right this time, especially after the big stumble last time. The company's president, David Sloan, already has impressed on her

how important the success of Crunchy Start is to the future of the company. She remembers exactly how David concluded the conversation. “The company’s shareholders are not happy. We need to get those earnings headed in the right direction again.” Claire had heard this tune before, but she saw in David’s eyes how deadly serious he was this time.

Claire often uses spreadsheets to help organize her planning. Her management science and business analytics course in business school impressed upon her how valuable spreadsheet modeling can be. She regrets that she did not rely more heavily on spreadsheet modeling for the last campaign. That was a mistake that she is determined not to repeat.

Now it is time for Claire to carefully review and formulate the problem in preparation for formulating a spreadsheet model.

page 232

The Problem

Claire already has employed a leading advertising firm, Giacomi & Jackowitz, to help design a nationwide promotional campaign that will achieve the largest possible exposure for Crunchy Start. Super Grain will pay this firm a fee based on services performed (not to exceed $1 million) and has allocated an additional $4 million for advertising expenses.

Giacomi & Jackowitz has identified the three most effective advertising media for this product:

Medium 1: Television commercials on Saturday morning programs for children.

Medium 2: Advertisements on various social media outlets.

Medium 3: Advertisements in Sunday supplements of major newspapers.

The problem now is to determine which *levels* should be chosen for these *advertising activities* to obtain the most effective *advertising mix.*

To determine the *best mix of activity levels* for this particular advertising problem, it is necessary (as always) to identify the *overall measure of performance* for the problem and then the contribution of each activity toward this measure. An ultimate goal for Super Grain is to maximize its profits, but it is difficult to make a direct connection between advertising exposure and profits. Therefore, as a rough surrogate for profit, Claire decides to use *expected number of exposures* as the overall measure of performance, where each viewing of an advertisement by some individual counts as one exposure.

Giacomi & Jackowitz has made preliminary plans for advertisements in the three media. The firm also has estimated the expected number of exposures for each advertisement in each medium, as given in the bottom row of Table 6.1.

TABLE 6.1

Cost and Exposure Data for the Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem

Cost Category	Costs		
	Each TV Commercial	Each Social Media Ad	Each Sunday Ad
Ad budget	$300,000	$150,000	$100,000
Planning budget	90,000	30,000	40,000
Expected number of exposures	1,300,000	600,000	500,000

The number of advertisements that can be run in the different media are restricted by both the advertising budget (a limit of $4 million) and the planning budget (a limit of $1 million for the fee to Giacomi & Jackowitz). Another restriction is that there are only five commercial spots available for running different commercials (one commercial per spot) on children's television programs Saturday morning (medium 1) during the time of the promotional campaign. (The other two media have an ample number of spots available.) Consequently, the three *resources* for this problem are:

Resource 1: Advertising budget ($4 million).
Resource 2: Planning budget ($1 million).
Resource 3: TV commercial spots available (5).

Table 6.1 shows how much of the advertising budget and the planning budget would be used by each advertisement in the respective media.

- The first row gives the cost per advertisement in each medium.
- The second row shows Giacomi & Jackowitz's estimates of its total cost (including overhead and profit) for designing and developing each

advertisement for the respective media.[1] (This cost represents the billable fee from Super Grain.)

- The last row then gives the expected number of exposures per advertisement.

Analysis of the Problem

Claire decides to formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet. The formulation procedure summarized at the end of Section 5.2 guides this process. Like any linear programming model, this model will have four components:

1. The data
2. The decisions
3. The constraints
4. The measure of performance

The spreadsheet needs to be formatted to provide the following kinds of cells for these components:

Data → data cells
Decisions → changing cells
Constraints → output cells
Measure of performance → objective cell

Figure 6.1 shows the spreadsheet model formulated by Claire. Let us see how she did this, including why she structured the spreadsheet in this way, by considering each of the components of the model individually.

FIGURE 6.1

The spreadsheet model for the Super Grain problem (Section 6.1), including the objective cell TotalExposures (H13) and the other output cells BudgetSpent (F8:F9), as well as thee specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells NumberOfAds (C13:E13) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem**							
2								
3			TV Spots	Social Media Ads	SS Ads			
4		Exposures per Ad	1,300	600	500			
5		(thousands)						
6						Budget		Budget
7			Cost per Ad ($thousands)			Spent		Available
8		Ad Budget	300	150	100	4,000	≤	4,000
9		Planning Budget	90	30	40	1,000	≤	1,000
10								
11								Total Exposures
12			TV Spots	Social Media Ads	SS Ads			(thousands)
13		Number of Ads	0	20	10			17,000
14			≤					
15		Max TV Spots	5					

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalExposures
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
NumberOfAds
Subject to the Constraints:
BudgetSpent <= BudgetAvailable
TVSpots <= MaxTVSpots

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	F
6	Budget
7	Spent
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:E8,NumberOfAds)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:E9,NumberOfAds)

	H
11	Total Exposures
12	(thousands)
13	=SUMPRODUCT(ExposuresPerAd,NumberOfAds)

Range Name	Cells
BudgetAvailable	H8: H9
BudgetSpent	F8: F9
CostPerAd	C8: E9
ExposuresPerAd	C4: E4
MaxTVSpots	C15
NumberOfAds	C13: E13
TotalExposures	H13
TVSpots	C13

Four kinds of cells are needed for these four components of a spreadsheet model.

The Data

It is best to begin structuring the spreadsheet by deciding where to locate the data cells. Most of these cells normally are placed in the upper left-hand portion of the spreadsheet. The structure of the rest of the model will then follow the structure of the data cells. When some or all of the data are being obtained from a well-constructed table, the clarity of the spreadsheet usually is enhanced by retaining the format of the table when inserting the data into the spreadsheet.

Claire followed these guidelines when she chose cells C4:E4 and C8:E9 to be the data cells to hold the information in Table 6.1 when using units of

thousands of dollars. These data cells have been given the range names: ExposuresPerAd (C4:E4), CostPerAd (C8:E9), BudgetAvailable (H8:H9), and MaxTVSpots (C15).

The other relevant kind of data here is the information given earlier about the amounts available of the three resources for the problem (the advertising budget, the planning budget, and the commercial spots available). Claire chose the locations of the data cells holding this information (H8:H9 and C15) to fit with the constraints that will be inserted a little later.

The Decisions

The problem has been defined as determining the most effective advertising mix among the three media selected by Giacomi & Jackowitz. Therefore, there are three decisions: Decision 1: *TV* = Number of commercials for separate spots on television.

Decision 2: *SM* = Number of advertisements on social media.

Decision 3: *SS* = Number of advertisements in Sunday supplements.

The decisions already made for the locations of the data cells have designated columns C, D, and E to be the columns for these media. Therefore, the changing cells to hold these three decisions have been placed in row 13 in these columns:

$$TV \rightarrow \text{cell C13} \qquad SM \rightarrow \text{cell D13} \qquad SS \rightarrow \text{cell E13}$$

These changing cells are collectively referred to by the range name NumberOfAds (C13:E13).

The Constraints

These changing cells need to be nonnegative. In addition, constraints are needed for the three resources. The first two resources are the ad budget and planning budget. Data for these two budgets already have been placed in data cells in rows 8 and 9, so the constraints involving these budgets need to appear in these same two rows. The amounts *spent* from these two budgets are shown in the range BudgetSpent (F8:F9) and the amounts *available* from these budgets are shown in the range of data cells BudgetAvailable (H8:H9). As suggested by the ≤ signs entered into column G, the corresponding constraints are

page 234

$$\text{Total spending on advertising} \le 4{,}000 \qquad \text{(Ad budget in \$1,000s)}$$
$$\text{Total cost of planning} \le 1{,}000 \qquad \text{(Planning budget in \$1,000s)}$$

Using the data in columns C, D, and E for the resources, these totals are

$$\text{Total spending on advertising} = 300TV + 150SM + 100SS$$
$$\text{Total cost of planning} = 90TV + 30SM + 40SS$$

page 235

These sums of products on the right-hand side are entered into the output cells BudgetSpent (F8:F9) by using the SUMPRODUCT functions shown in the lower right-hand side of Figure 6.1. Although the ≤ signs entered in column G are only cosmetic (trial solutions still can be entered in the changing cells that violate these inequalities), they will serve as a reminder later to use these same ≤ signs when entering the constraints in Solver.

The third resource is TV spots for different commercials. Five such spots are available for purchase. The number of spots used is one of the changing cells (C13). Since this cell will be used in a constraint, we assign the cell its own range name: TVSpots (C13). The maximum number of TV spots available is in the data cell MaxTVSpots (C15). Thus, the required constraint is TVSpots ≤ MaxTVSpots.

Excel Tip Range names may overlap. For instance, we have used NumberOfAds to refer to the whole range of changing cells, C13:E13, and TVSpots to refer to the single cell, C13.

The Measure of Performance

Claire Syverson is using *expected number of exposures* as the overall measure of performance, so let

> Exposure = Expected number of exposures (in thousands) from all the advertising

The data cells ExposuresPerAd (C4:E4) provide the expected number of exposures (in thousands) per advertisement in the respective media and the changing cells NumberOfAds (C13:E13) give the number of each type of advertisement. Therefore,

$$\text{Exposure} = 1{,}300TV + 600SM + 500SS$$
$$= \text{SUMPRODUCT (ExposuresPerAd, NumberOfAds)}$$

is the formula that needs to be entered into the objective cell, TotalExposures (H13).

Summary of the Formulation

The above analysis of the four components of the model has formulated the following linear programming model (in algebraic form) on the spreadsheet:

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad \text{Exposure} = 1{,}300\,TV + 600\,SM + 500SS$$

subject to

$$\begin{array}{lrl} \text{Ad spending:} & 300\,TV + 150\,SM + 100\,SS & \leq 4{,}000 \\ \text{Planning costs:} & 90\,TV + 30\,SM + 40\,SS & \leq 1{,}000 \\ \text{Number of television spots:} & TV & \leq 5 \end{array}$$

and

$$TV \geq 0 \qquad SM \geq 0 \qquad SS \geq 0$$

The difficult work of defining the problem and gathering all the relevant data, including the information in Table 6.1, leads directly to this formulation.

Solving the Model

To solve the spreadsheet model formulated above, some key information needs to be entered into Solver. The lower left-hand side of Figure 6.1 shows the needed entries: the objective cell (TotalExposures), the changing cells (NumberOfAds), the goal of maximizing the objective cell, and the constraints BudgetSpent ≤ BudgetAvailable and TVSpots ≤ MaxTVSpots. Two options are also specified at the bottom of the Solver Parameters box on the lower left-hand side of Figure 6.1. The changing cells need nonnegativity constraints because negative values of advertising are not possible. Choose the Simplex LP (Excel's Solver) or Standard LP/Quadratic Engine (Analytic Solver) solving method, because this is a linear programming model. Running Solver then finds an optimal solution for the model and displays it in the changing cells.

Excel Tip With Excel's Solver, the Solver dialog box is used to tell Solver the location on the spreadsheet of several of the elements of the model: the changing cells, the objective cell, and the constraints. With Analytic Solver, the Decisions, Constraints, and Objective menu on the Analytic Solver tab are used along with the Model pane.

The optimal solution given in row 13 of the spreadsheet provides the following plan for the promotional campaign:

Do not run any television commercials.

Run 20 advertisements on social media.

Run 10 advertisements in Sunday supplements.

Since TotalExposures (H13) gives the expected number of exposures in thousands, this plan would be expected to provide 17,000,000 exposures.

Evaluation of the Adequacy of the Model

When she chose to use a linear programming model to represent this advertising-mix problem, Claire recognized that this kind of model does not provide a perfect match to this problem. However, a mathematical model is intended to be only an approximate representation of the real problem. Approximations and simplifying assumptions generally are required to have a workable model. All that is really needed is that there be a reasonably high correlation between the prediction of the model and what would actually happen in the real problem. The team now needs to check whether this criterion is satisfied.

One assumption of linear programming is that *fractional* solutions are allowed. For the current problem, this means that a fractional number (e.g., 3½) of television commercials (or of ads on social media or in Sunday supplements) should be allowed. This is technically true, since a commercial can be aired for less than a normal run, or an ad can be run in just a fraction of the usual social media outlets or Sunday supplements. However, one defect of the model is that it assumes that Giacomi & Jackowitz's cost for planning and developing a commercial or ad that receives only a fraction of its usual run is only that fraction of its usual cost, even though the actual cost would be the same as for a full run. Fortunately, the optimal solution obtained was an *integer* solution (0 television commercials, 20 ads on social media, and 10 ads in Sunday supplements), so the assumption that fractional solutions are allowed was not even needed.

Linear programming models allow fractional solutions.

Although it is possible to have a fractional number of a normal run of commercials or ads, a normal run tends to be much more effective than a fractional run. Therefore, it would have been reasonable for Claire to drop the assumption that fractional solutions are allowed. If Claire had done this and the optimal solution for the linear programming model had not turned out to be

integer, constraints can be added to require the changing cells to be integer. (The TBA Airlines example in the next section provides an illustration of this type of constraint.) After adding such constraints, the model is called an *integer programming model* instead of a linear programming model, but it still can be readily solved by Solver.

Another key assumption of linear programming is that the appropriate equation for each of the output cells, including the objective cell, is one that can be expressed as a SUMPRODUCT of data cells and changing cells (or occasionally just a SUM of changing cells). For the objective cell (cell H13) in Figure 6.1, this implies that the expected number of exposures to be obtained from each advertising medium is *proportional* to the number of advertisements in that medium. This proportionality seems true, since each viewing of the advertisements by some individual counts as another exposure. Another implication of using a SUMPRODUCT function is that the expected number of exposures to be obtained from an advertising medium is unaffected by the number of advertisements in the other media. Again, this implication seems valid, since viewings of advertisements in different media count as separate exposures.

Linear programming models should use SUM or SUMPRODUCT functions for the output cells, including the objective cell.

Although a SUMPRODUCT function is appropriate for calculating the expected number of exposures, the choice of this number for the overall measure of performance is somewhat questionable. Management's real objective is to maximize the profit generated as a result of the advertising campaign, but this is difficult to measure so *expected number of exposures* was selected to be a surrogate for profit. This would be valid if profit were proportional to the expected number of exposures. However, proportionality is only an approximation in this case because too many exposures for the same individual reach a saturation level where the impact (potential profit) from one more exposure is substantially less than for the first exposure. (When proportionality is not a reasonable approximation, Chapter 11 will describe nonlinear models that can be used instead.) To check how reasonable it is to use expected number of exposures as a surrogate for profit, Claire meets with Sid Jackowitz, one of the senior partners of Giacomi & Jackowitz. Sid indicates that the contemplated promotional campaign (20 advertisements on social media and 10 in Sunday supplements) is a relatively modest one well below saturation levels. Most readers will only notice these ads once or twice, and a second notice is very helpful for reinforcing the first one. Furthermore, the viewers of social media and Sunday supplements are sufficiently different that the interaction of the advertising impact in these two media should be small.

Consequently, Claire concludes that using expected number of exposures for the objective cell in Figure 6.1 provides a reasonable approximation. (A continuation of this case study in Case 11-1 will delve into the more complicated analysis that is required in order to use profit directly as the measure of performance to be recorded in the objective cell instead of making this approximation.)

Next, Claire quizzes Sid about his firm's costs for planning and developing advertisements in these media. Is it reasonable to assume that the cost in a given medium is proportional to the number of advertisements in that medium? Is it reasonable to assume that the cost of developing advertisements in one medium would not be substantially reduced if the firm had just finished developing advertisements in another medium that might have similar themes? Sid acknowledges that there is some carryover in ad planning from one medium to another, but that the carryover is quite limited because of the distinct differences in these media. Furthermore, he feels that the proportionality assumption is quite reasonable for any given medium since the amount of work involved in planning and developing each additional advertisement in the medium is nearly the same as for the first one in the medium. The total fee that Super Grain will pay Giacomi & Jackowitz will eventually be based on a detailed accounting of the amount of work done by the firm. Nevertheless, Sid feels that the cost estimates previously provided by the firm (as entered in cells C9, D9, and E9 in units of thousands of dollars) give a reasonable basis for roughly projecting what the fee will be for any given plan (the entries in the changing cells) for the promotional campaign.

Based on this information, Claire concludes that using a SUMPRODUCT function for cell F9 provides a reasonable approximation. Doing the same for cell F8 is clearly justified. Given her earlier conclusions as well, Claire decides that the linear programming model incorporated into Figure 6.1 (plus any expansions of the model needed later for the detailed planning) is a sufficiently accurate representation of the real advertising-mix problem. It will not be necessary to refine the results from this model by turning next to a more complicated kind of mathematical model (such as those to be described in Chapter 11).

Therefore, Claire sends a memorandum to the company's president, David Sloan, describing a promotional campaign that corresponds to the optimal solution from the linear programming model (no TV commercials, 20 ads on social media, and 10 ads in Sunday supplements). She also requests a meeting to evaluate this plan and discuss whether some modifications should be made.

We will pick up this story again in Section 6.4.

Review *Questions*

. What is the problem being addressed in this case study?
. What overall measure of performance is being used?
. What are the assumptions of linear programming that need to be checked to evaluate the adequacy of using a linear programming model to represent the problem under consideration?

6.2 RESOURCE-ALLOCATION PROBLEMS

In the opening paragraph of Chapter 5, we described managerial problems involving the allocation of an organization's resources to its various productive activities. Those were *resource-allocation* problems.

Resource-allocation problems are linear programming problems involving the *allocation of resources to activities.* The *identifying feature* for any such problem is that each functional constraint in the linear programming model is a **resource constraint,** which has the form

$$\text{Amount of resource used} \leq \text{Amount of resource available}$$

only for one of the resources.

resource-allocation problem
A type of linear programming problem concerned with allocating resources to activities. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in its model is a resource constraint.

resource constraint
A functional constraint with a ≤ sign. The left-hand side represents the amount of some resource that is used by the activities under consideration, and the right-hand side represents the amount available of that resource.

The amount of a resource used depends on which activities are undertaken, the levels of those activities, and how heavily those activities need to use the resource. Thus, the resource constraints place limits on the levels of the activities. The objective is to choose the levels of the activities so as to maximize some overall measure of performance (such as total profit) from the activities while satisfying all the resource constraints.

Beginning with the Super Grain case study and then the Wyndor case study from Chapter 5, we will look at four examples that illustrate the characteristics of resource-allocation problems. These examples also demonstrate how this type of problem can arise in a variety of contexts.

The Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem

The linear programming model formulated in Section 6.1 for the Super Grain case study is one example of a resource-allocation problem. The three *activities* under consideration are the advertising in the three types of media chosen by Giacomi & Jackowitz.

Activity 1: TV commercials
Activity 2: Social media ads
Activity 3: Sunday ads

The decisions being made are the *levels* of these activities, that is, the *number* of TV commercials, social media ads, and Sunday ads to run.

An initial step in formulating any resource-allocation problem is to identify the activities and the resources.

The *resources* to be allocated to these activities are

Resource 1: Advertising budget ($4 million).
Resource 2: Planning budget ($1 million).
Resource 3: TV spots available for different commercials (5).

where the *amounts available* of these resources are given in parentheses. Thus, this problem has three resource constraints:

1. Advertising budget used ≤ $4 million
2. Planning budget used ≤ $1 million
3. TV spots used ≤ 5

Rows 8–9 and cells C13:C15 in Figure 6.1 show these constraints in a spreadsheet. Cells C8:E9 give the amount of the advertising budget and the planning budget used by *each unit* of each activity, that is, the amount used by one TV spot, one social media ad, and one Sunday ad, respectively.

Cells C4, D4, and E4 on this spreadsheet give the *contribution per unit of each activity* to the overall measure of performance (expected number of exposures).

Characteristics of Resource-Allocation Problems

Other resource-allocation problems have the same kinds of characteristics as the Super Grain problem. In each case, there are *activities* where the decisions to be made are the *levels* of these activities. The contribution of each activity to the overall measure of performance is proportional to the level of that activity. Commonly, this measure of performance is the *total profit* from the activities, but occasionally it is something else (as in the Super Grain problem).

For each proposed activity, a decision needs to be made as to how much of the activity to do. In other words, what should the level of the activity be?

Every problem of this type has a resource constraint for each resource. The amounts of the resources used depend on the levels of the activities. For each resource, the amount used by each activity is proportional to the level of that activity.

The manager or management science team studying a resource allocation problem needs to gather (with considerable help) three kinds of data:

These three kinds of data are needed for any resource-allocation problem.

1. The *amount available* of each resource.
2. The amount of each resource needed by each activity. Specifically, for each combination of resource and activity, the *amount of the resource used per unit of the activity* must be estimated.
3. The *contribution per unit of each activity* to the overall measure of performance.

Generally there is considerable work involved in developing these data. A substantial amount of digging and consultation is needed to obtain the best estimates available in a timely fashion. This step is critical. Well-informed estimates are needed to obtain a valid linear programming model for guiding managerial decisions. The dangers involved in inaccurate estimates are one reason why *what-if analysis* (Chapter 8) is such an important part of most linear programming studies.

The Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem

The product-mix problem facing the management of the Wyndor Glass Co. in Section 5.1 is to determine the most profitable mix of production rates for the two new products, considering the limited availability of spare production capacity in the company's three plants. This is a resource-allocation problem.

The *activities* under consideration are

Activity 1: Produce the special new doors.

Activity 2: Produce the special new windows.

The decisions being made are the *levels* of these activities, that is, the production rates for the doors and windows. Production rate is being measured as the number of units (doors or windows) produced per week. Management's objective is to maximize the total profit generated by the two new products, so the overall measure of performance is total profit. The contribution of each product to profit is proportional to the production rate for that product.

The *resources* to be allocated to these activities are

Resource 1: Production capacity in Plant 1.

Resource 2: Production capacity in Plant 2.

Resource 3: Production capacity in Plant 3.

Each of the three functional constraints in the linear programming model formulated in Section 5.2 (see rows 7–9 of the spreadsheet in Figure 5.3 or 5.4) is a *resource constraint* for one of these three resources. Column E shows the amount of production capacity used in each plant and column G gives the amount available.

Table 5.1 in Section 5.1 provides the data for the Wyndor problem. You already have seen how the numbers in Table 5.1 become the parameters in the linear programming model in either its spreadsheet formulation (Section 5.2) or its algebraic form (Section 5.3).

The TBA Airlines Problem

TBA Airlines is a small regional company that specializes in short flights in small passenger airplanes. The company has been doing well and management has decided to expand its operations.

The Problem

The basic issue facing management now is whether to purchase more small airplanes to add some new short flights or to start moving into the national market by purchasing some large airplanes for new cross-country flights (or both). Many factors will go into management's final decision, but the most important one is which strategy is likely to be most profitable.

The first row of Table 6.2 shows the estimated net annual profit (inclusive of capital recovery costs) from each type of airplane purchased. The second row gives the purchase cost per airplane and also notes that the total amount of capital available for airplane purchases is $500 million. The third row records the fact that management does not want to purchase more than five small airplanes because of limited possibilities for adding lucrative short flights, whereas they have not specified a maximum number for large airplanes (other than that imposed by the limited capital available).

TABLE 6.2

Data for the TBA Airlines Problem

	Small Airplane	Large Airplane	Capital Available
Net annual profit per airplane	$14 million	$44 million	
Purchase price per airplane	$50 million	$150 million	$500 million
Maximum purchase quantity	5	No maximum	

How many airplanes of each type should be purchased to maximize the total net annual profit?

Formulation

This is a *resource-allocation problem.* The activities under consideration are

Activity 1: Purchase small airplanes.
Activity 2: Purchase large airplanes.

The decisions to be made are the levels of these activities, that is,

S = Number of small airplanes to purchase

L = Number of large airplanes to purchase

The one resource to be allocated to these activities is

Resource: Investment capital ($500 million).
Thus, there is a single resource constraint:

$$\text{Investment capital spent} \leq \$500 \text{ million}$$

In addition, management has specified one side constraint:

$$\text{Number of small airplanes purchased} \leq 5$$

Figure 6.2 shows the formulation of a spreadsheet model for this problem, where the data in Table 6.2 have been transferred into the data cells—UnitProfit (C4:D4), CapitalPerUnitPurchased (C8:D8), CapitalAvailable (G8), and MaxSmallAirplanes (C14). The resource constraint then appears in cells C8:G8 while C12:C14 shows the side constraint. The objective for this problem is to maximize the total net annual profit, so the equation for the objective cell is

$$\text{TotalProfit}(G12) = \text{SUMPRODUCT}(\text{UnitProfit}, \text{UnitsPurchased})$$

FIGURE 6.2

A spreadsheet model for the TBA Airlines integer programming problem where the changing cells, UnitsProduced (C12:D12), show the optimal airplane purchases obtained by Solver, and the objective cell, TotalProfit (G12), gives the resulting total profit in millions of dollars.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**TBA Airlines Airplane Purchasing Problem**						
2							
3			Small Airplane	Large Airplane			
4		Unit Profit ($millions)	14	44			
5							
6					Capital		Capital
7			Capital per Unit Purchased		Spent		Available
8		Capital ($millions)	50	150	500	<=	500
9							
10							Total Profit
11			Small Airplane	Large Airplane			($millions)
12		Number Purchased	1	3			146
13			<=				
14		Maximum Small Airplanes	5				

	E
6	Capital
7	Spent
8	=SUMPRODUCT(CapitalPerUnitPurchased,NumberPurchased)

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
NumberPurchased
Subject to the Constraints:
CapitalSpent <= CapitalAvailable
NumberPurchased = integer
SmallAirplanes <= MaxSmallAirplanes

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	G
10	Total Profit
11	($millions)
12	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,NumberPurchased)

Range Name	Cells
Capital Available	G8
CapitalPerUnitPurchased	C8:D8
CapitalSpent	E8
MaxSmallAirplanes	C14
NumberPurchased	C12:D12
SmallAirplanes	C12
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4

Since the TBA Airlines problem is a resource-allocation problem, this spreadsheet model has essentially the same form as the Super Grain and Wyndor problems except for one small difference. The changing cells in this case must have *integer* values since it is not feasible for the company to purchase and operate a fraction of an airplane. Therefore, constraints that the changing cells need to be integer are added. With Excel's Solver, use the Add Constraint dialog box to choose the range of these cells (C12:D12) as the left-hand side and then choose int from the pop-up menu between the left-hand and right-hand side. In Analytic Solver, choose the changing cells (C12:D12), and then under the Constraint menu on the Analytic Solver tab of the ribbon, choose Integer under the Variable Type/Bound submenu.

These changing cells in Figure 6.2 show the optimal solution, (*S, L*) = (1, 3), obtained after running Solver.

One of the assumptions of linear programming is that the changing cells are allowed to have *any* values, including *fractional* values, that satisfy the

functional and nonnegativity constraints. Therefore, technically speaking, the TBA problem is not a linear programming problem because of adding the constraints

$$\text{NumberPurchased} = \text{integer}$$

Excel Tip To constrain a range of changing cells to be integer in Excel's Solver, choose the range of cells in the left-hand side of the Add Constraint dialog box and choose int from the pop-up menu. Clicking OK then enters the constraint that these cells = integer in the Solver dialog box. In Analytic Solver, select the range of cells to be constrained integer, and then under the Constraint menu on the Analytic Solver tab of the ribbon, choose Integer under the Variable Type/Bound submenu.

that are displayed in the Solver Parameters box in Figure 6.2. Such a problem that fits linear programming except for adding such constraints is called an **integer programming problem.** The method used by Solver to solve integer programming problems is quite different from that for solving linear programming problems. In fact, integer programming problems tend to be much more difficult to solve than linear programming problems so there is considerably more limitation on the size of the problem. However, this doesn't matter when dealing with small problems. From the spreadsheet modeler's viewpoint, there is virtually no distinction between linear programming and integer programming problems. They are formulated in exactly the same way. Then, at the very end, a decision needs to be made as to whether any of the changing cells need to be restricted to integer values. If so, those constraints are added as described above. Keep this option in mind as we continue to discuss the formulation of various types of linear programming problems throughout the chapter.

integer programming problem

A variation of a linear programming problem that has the additional restriction that some or all of the decision variables must have integer values.

Summary of the Formulation

The above formulation of a model with one resource constraint and one side constraint for the TBA Airlines problem now can be summarized (in algebraic form) as follows:

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad \text{Profit} = 14S + 44L$$

subject to

$$50S + 150L \leq 500$$
$$S \leq 5$$

and

$$S \geq 0 \; L \geq 0$$

Excel Tip Even when a changing cell is constrained to be integer, rounding errors occasionally will cause Excel to return a non-integer value very close to an integer (e.g., 1.23E-10, meaning 0.000000000123). To make the spreadsheet cleaner, you may replace these "ugly" representations by their proper integer values in the changing cells.

Capital Budgeting

Financial planning is one of the most important areas of application for resource-allocation problems. The resources being allocated in this area are quite different from those for applications in the *production planning* area (such as the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem), where the resources tend to be *production facilities* of various kinds. For financial planning, the resources tend to be *financial assets* such as cash, securities, accounts receivable, lines of credit, and so forth. Our specific example involves *capital budgeting,* where the resources are amounts of investment capital available at different points in time.

The Problem

The **Think-Big Development Co.** is a major investor in commercial real-estate development projects. It currently has the opportunity to share in three large construction projects: Project 1: Construct a high-rise office building.

Project 2: Construct a hotel.

Project 3: Construct a shopping center.

An Application Vignette

A key part of a country's financial infrastructure is its securities markets. By allowing a variety of financial institutions and their clients to trade stocks, bonds, and other financial securities, they help fund both public and private initiatives. Therefore, the efficient operation of its securities markets plays a crucial role in providing a platform for the economic growth of the country.

Each central securities depository and its system for quickly settling security transactions are part of the operational backbone of securities markets and a key component of financial system stability. In Mexico, an institution called **INDEVAL** provides both the central securities depository and its security settlement system for the entire country. This security settlement system uses electronic book entries, modifying cash and securities balances, for the various parties in the transactions.

The total value of the securities transactions the INDEVAL settles has averaged over **$250 billion** daily for many years and the business continues to grow. In mid-2021, INDEVAL reported that its custody of securities reached historical highs in the second quarter of 2021. This makes INDEVAL the main liquidity conduit for Mexico's entire financial sector. Therefore, it is extremely important that INDEVAL's system for clearing securities transactions be an exceptionally efficient one that maximizes the amount of cash that can be delivered almost instantaneously after the transactions. Because of past dissatisfaction with this system, INDEVAL's board of directors ordered a major study in 2005 to completely redesign the system.

Following more than 12,000 man-hours devoted to this redesign, the new system was successfully launched in November 2008. The core of the new system is a large **linear programming model** that is applied many times daily to choose which pending transactions should be settled immediately with the depositor's available balances. *Linear programming is ideally suited for this application* because it can maximize the value of the transactions settled while taking into account the various relevant constraints.

This application of linear programming has substantially enhanced and strengthened the Mexican financial infrastructure by reducing its daily liquidity requirements by **$130 billion.** It also reduces the intraday financing costs for market participants by more than **$150 million** annually. This application also led to INDEVAL winning the prestigious first prize in the 2010 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Applied Analytics, Operations Research, and the Management Sciences.

Source: D. Muñoz, M. de Lascurain, O. Romeo-Hernandez, F. Solis, L. de los Santoz, A. Palacios-Brun, F. Herrería, and J. Villaseñor, "INDEVAL Develops a New Operating and Settlement System Using Operations Research," *Interfaces* (now *INFIRMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 41, no. 1 (January–February 2011): 8–17. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

Each project requires each partner to make investments at four different points in time: a down payment now, and additional capital after one, two, and three years. Table 6.3 shows for each project the *total* amount of investment capital required from all the partners at these four points in time. Thus, a partner taking a certain percentage share of a project is obligated to invest that percentage of each of the amounts shown in the table for the project.

TABLE 6.3

Financial Data for the Projects Being Considered for Partial Investment by the Think-Big Development Co.

	Investment Capital Requirements		
Year	**Office Building**	**Hotel**	**Shopping Center**
0	$40 million	$80 million	$90 million
1	60 million	80 million	50 million
2	90 million	80 million	20 million
3	10 million	70 million	60 million
Net present value	$45 million	$70 million	$50 million

Excel Tip In Excel's Solver Options, the *Integer Optimality* (%) setting (1 percent by default) causes Solver to stop solving an integer programming problem when it finds a feasible solution whose objective function value is within the specified percentage of being optimal. In Analytic Solver, the equivalent setting is Integer Tolerance under the Engine tab of the Solver model (see Figure 5.19). This is useful to speed up solving large problems. For smaller problems (e.g., homework problems), this option should be set to 0 to guarantee finding an optimal solution.

All three projects are expected to be very profitable in the long run. So the management of Think-Big wants to invest as much as possible in some or all of them. Management is willing to commit all the company's investment capital currently available, as well as all additional investment capital expected to become available over the next three years. The objective is to determine the *investment mix* that will be most profitable, based on current estimates of profitability.

Since it will be several years before each project begins to generate income, which will continue for many years thereafter, we need to take into account the *time value of money* in evaluating how profitable it might be. This

is done by *discounting* future cash outflows (capital invested) and cash inflows (income), and then adding discounted net cash flows, to calculate a project's *net present value.*

Based on current estimates of future cash flows (not included here except for outflows), the estimated net present value for each project is shown in the bottom row of Table 6.3. All the investors, including Think-Big, then will split this net present value in proportion to their share of the total investment.

page 243

For each project, *participation shares* are being sold to major investors, such as Think-Big, who become the partners for the project by investing their proportional shares at the four specified points in time. For example, if Think-Big takes a 10 percent share of the office building, it will need to provide $4 million now, and then $6 million, $9 million, and $1 million in 1 year, 2 years, and 3 years, respectively.

The company currently has $25 million available for capital investment. Projections are that another $20 million will become available after one year, $20 million more after two years, and another $15 million after three years. What share should Think-Big take in the respective projects to maximize the total net present value of these investments?

Formulation

This is a *resource-allocation problem.* The activities under consideration are

Activity 1: Invest in the construction of an office building.

Activity 2: Invest in the construction of a hotel.

Activity 3: Invest in the construction of a shopping center.

Thus, the decisions to be made are the levels of these activities, that is, what participation share to take in investing in each of these projects. A participation share can be expressed as either a fraction or a percentage of the entire project, so the entire project is considered to be one "unit" of that activity.

The resources to be allocated to these activities are the funds available at the four investment points. Funds not used at one point are available at the next point. (For simplicity, we will ignore any interest earned on these funds.) Therefore, the *resource constraint* for each point must reflect the cumulative funds to that point.

Resource 1: Total investment capital available now.

Resource 2: Cumulative investment capital available by the end of one year.

Resource 3: Cumulative investment capital available by the end of two years.

Resource 4: Cumulative investment capital available by the end of three years.

Since the amount of investment capital available is $25 million now, another $20 million in one year, another $20 million in two years, and another $15 million in three years, the amounts available of the resources are the following: Amount of resource 1 available = $25 million

Amount of resource 2 available = $(25 + 20) million = $45 million

Amount of resource 3 available = $(25 + 20 + 20) million = $65 million

Amount of resource 4 available = $(25 + 20 + 20 + 15) million = $80 million

Table 6.4 shows all the data involving these resources. The rightmost column gives the amounts of resources available calculated above. The middle columns show the *cumulative* amounts of the investment capital requirements listed in Table 6.3. For example, in the Office Building column of Table 6.4, the second number ($100 million) is obtained by adding the first two numbers ($40 million and $60 million) in the Office Building column of Table 6.3.

TABLE 6.4

Resource Data for the Think-Big Development Co. Investment-Mix Problem

	Cumulative Investment Capital Required for an Entire Project			
Resource	Office Building	Hotel	Shopping Center	Amount of Resource Available
1 (Now)	$ 40 million	$ 80 million	$ 90 million	$25 million
2 (End of year 1)	100 million	160 million	140 million	45 million
3 (End of year 2)	190 million	240 million	160 million	65 million
4 (End of year 3)	200 million	310 million	220 million	80 million

The Data As with any resource-allocation problem, three kinds of data need to be gathered. One is the amounts available of the resources, as given in the rightmost column of Table 6.4. A second is the amount of each resource needed by each project, which is given in the middle columns of this table. A third is the contribution of each project to the overall

measure of performance (net present value), as given in the bottom row of Table 6.3.

The first step in formulating the spreadsheet model is to enter these data into data cells in the spreadsheet. In Figure 6.3, the data cells (and their range names) are NetPresentValue (C5:E5), CapitalRequired (C9:E12), and CapitalAvailable (H9:H12). To save space on the spreadsheet, these numbers are entered in units of millions of dollars.

FIGURE 6.3

The spreadsheet model for the Think-Big problem, including the formulas for the objective cell TotalNPV (H16) and the other output cells CapitalSpent (F9:F12), as well as the specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells ParticipationShare (C16:E16) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Think-Big Development Co. Capital Budgeting Program**							
2								
3			Office		Shopping			
4			Building	Hotel	Center			
5		Net Present Value	45	70	50			
6		($millions)				Cumulative		Cumulative
7						Capital		Capital
8			Cumulative Capital Required ($millions)			Spent		Available
9		Now	40	80	90	25	≤	25
10		End of Year 1	100	160	140	44.76	≤	45
11		End of Year 2	190	240	160	60.58	≤	65
12		End of Year 3	200	310	220	80	≤	80
13								
14			Office		Shopping			Total NPV
15			Building	Hotel	Center			($millions)
16		Participation Share	0.00%	16.50%	13.11%			18.11

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalNPV
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
ParticipationShare
Subject to the Constraints:
CapitalSpent <= CapitalAvailable

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
CapitalAvailable	H9:H12
CapitalRequired	C9:E12
CapitalSpent	F9:F12
ParticipationShare	C16:E16
NetPresentValue	C5:E5
TotalNPV	H16

	F
6	Cumulative
7	Capital
8	Spent
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:E9,ParticipationShare)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:E10,ParticipationShare)
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:E11,ParticipationShare)
12	=SUMPRODUCT C12:E12,ParticipationShare)

	H
14	Total NPV
15	($millions)
16	=SUMPRODUCT(NetPresentValue,ParticipationShare)

The Decisions With three activities under consideration, there are three decisions to be made.

Decision 1: *OB* = Participation share in the office building.
Decision 2: *H* = Participation share in the hotel.
Decision 3: *SC* = Participation share in the shopping center.

For example, if Think-Big management were to decide to take a one-tenth participation share (i.e., a 10 percent participation share) in each of these projects, then

$$OB = 0.1 = 10\%$$
$$H = 0.1 = 10\%$$
$$SC = 0.1 = 10\%$$

However, it may not be desirable to take the same participation share (expressed as either a fraction or a percentage) in each of the projects, so the idea is to choose the best combination of values of *OB, H,* and *SC.* In Figure 6.3, the participation shares (expressed as percentages) have been placed in changing cells under the data cells (row 16) in the columns for the three projects, so

$$OB \rightarrow \text{cell C16} \quad H \rightarrow \text{D16} \quad SC \rightarrow \text{cell E16}$$

where these cells are collectively referred to by the range name ParticipationShare (C16:E16).

The Constraints The numbers in these changing cells make sense only if they are nonnegative, so the Make Variables Nonnegative option will need to be selected in the Excel's Solver dialog box (or equivalently in Analytic Solver, set the Assume Non-Negative option to True in the Engine tab of the Model pane). In addition, the four resources require resource constraints:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Total invested now} && \leq 25 \text{ (millions of dollars available)}\\
&\text{Total invested within 1 year} && \leq 45 \text{ (millions of dollars available)}\\
&\text{Total invested within 2 years} && \leq 65 \text{ (millions of dollars available)}\\
&\text{Total invested within 3 years} && \leq 80 \text{ (millions of dollars available)}
\end{aligned}$$

The data in columns C, D, and E indicate that (in millions of dollars)

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Total invested now} && = 40\,OB + 80\,H + 90\,SC\\
&\text{Total invested within 1 year} && = 100\,OB + 160\,H + 140\,SC\\
&\text{Total invested within 2 years} && = 190\,OB + 240\,H + 160\,SC\\
&\text{Total invested within 3 years} && = 200\,OB + 310\,H + 220\,SC
\end{aligned}$$

These totals are calculated in the output cells CapitalSpent (F9:F12) using the SUMPRODUCT function, as shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 6.3. Finally, ≤ signs are entered into column G to indicate the resource constraints that will need to be entered in Solver.

The Measure of Performance The objective is to

$$\text{Maximize } NPV = \text{total } \textit{net present value} \text{ of the investments}$$

NetPresentValue (C5:E5) shows the net present value of each entire project, while ParticipationShare (C16:E16) shows the participation share for each of the projects. Therefore, the total net present value of all the participation shares purchased in all three projects is (in millions of dollars)

$$\begin{aligned}
NPV &= 45O\,B + 70\,H + 50\,SC\\
&= \text{SUMPRODUCT(NetPresentValue, ParticipationShare)}\\
&\rightarrow \text{cell H16}
\end{aligned}$$

Summary of the Formulation This completes the formulation of the linear programming model on the spreadsheet, as summarized below (in algebraic form).

$$\text{Maximize } NPV = 45\,OB + 70\,H + 50\,SC$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Total invested now:} && 40\,OB + 80\,H + 90\,SC \le 25\\
&\text{Total invested within 1 year:} && 100\,OB + 160\,H + 140\,SC \le 45\\
&\text{Total invested within 2 years:} && 190\,OB + 240\,H + 160\,SC \le 65\\
&\text{Total invested within 3 years:} && 200\,OB + 310\,H + 220\,SC \le 80
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$OB \ge 0 \quad H \ge 0 \quad SC \ge 0$$

where all these numbers are in units of millions of dollars.

Note that this model possesses the key *identifying feature* for resource-allocation problems, namely, each functional constraint is a *resource constraint* that has the form

$$\text{Amount of resource used} \leq \text{Amount of resource available}$$

Solving the Model The lower left-hand side of Figure 6.3 shows the entries needed in Solver to specify the model, along with the selection of the usual two options. The spreadsheet shows the resulting optimal solution in row 16, namely, Invest nothing in the office building.

Invest in 16.50 percent of the hotel.

Invest in 13.11 percent of the shopping center.

TotalNPV (H16) indicates that this investment program would provide a total net present value of $18.11 million.

This amount actually is only an estimate of what the total net present value would turn out to be, depending on the accuracy of the financial data given in Table 6.3. There is some uncertainty about the construction costs for the three real estate projects, so the actual investment capital requirements for years 1, 2, and 3 may deviate somewhat from the amounts specified in this table. Because of the risk involved in these projects, the net present value for each one also might deviate from the amounts given at the bottom of the table. Chapter 8 describes one approach to analyzing the effect of such deviations. Chapters 14 and 15 will present another technique, called *computer simulation,* for systematically taking future uncertainties into account. Section 15.4 will focus on further analysis of this same example.

Another Look at Resource Constraints

These examples of resource-allocation problems illustrate a variety of resources: financial allocations for advertising and planning purposes, TV commercial spots available for purchase, available production capacities of different plants, the total amount of capital available for investment, and cumulative investment capital available by certain times. However, these illustrations only scratch the surface of the realm of possible resources that need to be allocated to activities in resource-allocation problems. In fact, by interpreting *resource* sufficiently broadly, *any* restriction on the decisions to be made that has the form

$$\text{Amount used} \leq \text{Amount available}$$

can be thought of as a *resource constraint,* where the thing whose amount is being measured is the corresponding "resource." Since *any* functional constraint with a ≤ sign in a linear programming model (including the side constraint limiting the number of small airplanes that can be purchased in the TBA Airlines example) can be verbalized in this form, any such constraint can be thought of as a resource constraint.

Hereafter, we will use *resource constraint* to refer to *any* functional constraint with a ≤ sign in a linear programming model. The constant on the right-hand side represents the *amount available* of a resource. Therefore, the left-hand side represents the *amount used* of this resource. In the algebraic form of the constraint, the coefficient (positive or negative) of each decision variable is the *resource usage per unit* of the corresponding activity.

Summary of the Formulation Procedure for Resource-Allocation Problems

The four examples illustrate that the following steps are used for any resource-allocation problem to define the specific problem, gather the relevant data, and then formulate the linear programming model.

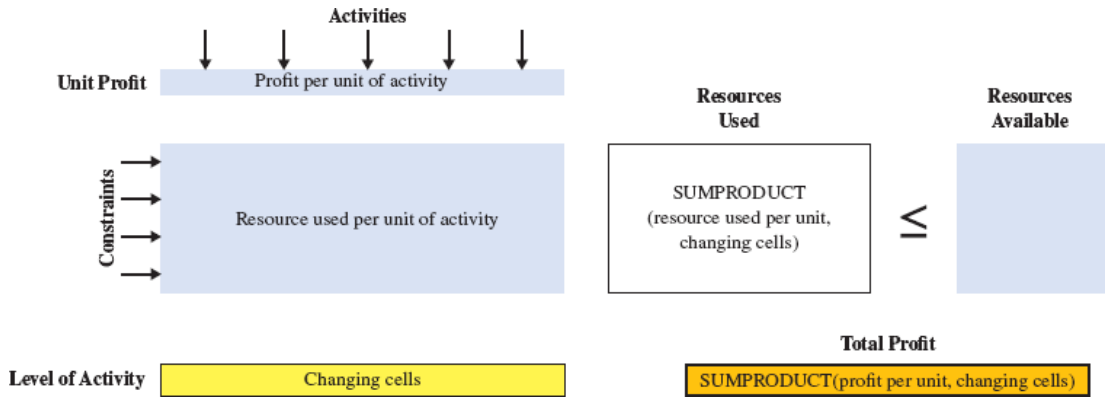
1. Since any linear programming problem involves finding the *best mix* of levels of various activities, identify these *activities* for the problem at hand. The decisions to be made are the levels of these activities.
2. From the viewpoint of management, identify an appropriate *overall measure of performance* (commonly *profit,* or a surrogate for profit) for solutions of the problem.
3. For each activity, estimate the *contribution per unit of the activity* to this overall measure of performance.

page 247

4. Identify the *resources* that must be allocated to the activities.
5. For each resource, identify the *amount available* and then the *amount used per unit of each activity.*
6. Enter the data gathered in steps 3 and 5 into *data cells* in a spreadsheet. A convenient format is to have the data associated with each activity in a separate column, the data for the unit profit and each constraint in a separate row, and to leave two blank columns between the *activity* columns and the *amount of resource available* column. Figure 6.4 shows a template of the overall format of a spreadsheet model for resource-allocation problems.

FIGURE 6.4

A template of a spreadsheet model for pure resource-allocation problems.



7. Designate *changing cells* for displaying the decisions on activity levels.
8. For the two blank columns created in step 6, use the left one as a *Totals* column for *output cells* and enter ≤ signs into the right one for all the resources. In the row for each resource, use the SUMPRODUCT function to enter the *total amount used* in the Totals column.
9. Designate an *objective cell* for displaying the overall measure of performance. Use a SUMPRODUCT function to enter this measure of performance.

All the functional constraints in this linear programming model in a spreadsheet are *resource constraints,* that is, constraints with a ≤ sign. This is the *identifying feature* that classifies the problem as being a resource-allocation problem.

Review *Questions*

1. What is the identifying feature for a resource-allocation problem?
2. What is the form of a resource constraint?
3. What are the three kinds of data that need to be gathered for a resource-allocation problem?
4. Compare the types of activities for the four examples of resource-allocation problems.
5. Compare the types of resources for the four examples of resource-allocation problems.

6.3 COST–BENEFIT–TRADE-OFF PROBLEMS

Cost–benefit–trade-off problems have a form that is very different from resource-allocation problems. The difference arises from *managerial objectives* that are very different for the two kinds of problems.

For resource-allocation problems, limits are set on the use of various resources (including financial resources), and then the objective is to make the most effective use (according to some overall measure of performance) of these given resources.

A cost–benefit–trade-off formulation enables management to specify minimum goals for the benefits that need to be achieved by the activities.

For cost–benefit–trade-off problems, management takes a more aggressive stance, prescribing what *benefits* must be achieved by the activities under consideration (regardless of the resulting resource usage), and then the objective is to achieve all these benefits with *minimum cost.* By prescribing a *minimum acceptable level* for each kind of benefit, and then minimizing the cost needed to achieve these levels, management hopes to obtain an appropriate *trade-off* between cost and benefits. (You will see in Chapter 8 that *what-if analysis* plays a key role in providing the additional information needed for management to choose the best trade-off between cost and benefits.)

page 248

Cost–benefit–trade-off problems are linear programming problems where the mix of levels of various *activities* is chosen to achieve minimum acceptable levels for various *benefits* at a minimum cost. The *identifying feature* is that each functional constraint is a **benefit constraint,** which has the form

$$\text{Level achieved} \geq \text{Minimum acceptable level}$$

for one of the benefits.

cost–benefit–trade-off problem

A type of linear programming problem involving the trade-off between the total cost of the activities under consideration and the benefits to be achieved by these activities. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in the linear programming model is a benefit constraint.

benefit constraint

A functional constraint with a ≥ sign. The left-hand side is interpreted as the level of some benefit that is achieved by the activities under consideration, and the right-hand side is the minimum acceptable level for that benefit.

These three kinds of data are needed for any cost–benefit–trade-off problem.

Interpreting *benefit* broadly, we can think of *any* functional constraint with a ≥ sign as a *benefit constraint.* In most cases, the *minimum acceptable level* will be prescribed by management as a policy decision, but occasionally this number will be dictated by other circumstances.

For any cost–benefit–trade-off problem, a major part of the study involves identifying all the activities and benefits that should be considered and then gathering the data relevant to these activities and benefits.

Three kinds of data are needed:

1. The *minimum acceptable level* for each benefit (a managerial policy decision).
2. For each benefit, the *contribution of each activity* to that benefit (per unit of the activity).
3. The *cost* per unit of each activity.

Let's examine two examples of cost–benefit–trade-off problems.

The Profit & Gambit Co. Advertising-Mix Problem

As described in Section 5.7, the Profit & Gambit Co. will be undertaking a major new advertising campaign focusing on three cleaning products. The two kinds of advertising to be used are television and the print media. Management has established minimum goals—the minimum acceptable increase in sales for each product—to be gained by the campaign.

The problem is to determine how much to advertise in each medium to meet all the sales goals at a minimum total cost.

The activities in this cost–benefit–trade-off problem are

An initial step in formulating any cost–benefit–trade-off problem is to identify the activities and the benefits.

Activity 1: Advertise on television.

Activity 2: Advertise in the print media.

The benefits being sought from these activities are

Benefit 1: Increased sales for a spray prewash stain remover.

Benefit 2: Increased sales for a liquid laundry detergent.

Benefit 3: Increased sales for a powder laundry detergent.

Management wants these increased sales to be at least 3 percent, 18 percent, and 4 percent, respectively. As shown in Section 5.7, each benefit leads to a *benefit constraint* that incorporates the managerial goal for the *minimum acceptable level* of increase in the sales for the corresponding product, namely, Level of benefit 1 achieved ≥ 3%

Level of benefit 2 achieved ≥ 18%

Level of benefit 3 achieved ≥ 4%

The data for this problem are given in Table 5.2 (in Section 5.7). Section 5.7 describes how the linear programming model is formulated directly from the numbers in this table.

This example provides an interesting contrast with the Super Grain Corp. case study in Section 6.1, which led to a formulation as a resource-allocation problem. Both are advertising-mix problems, yet they lead to entirely different linear programming models. They differ because of the differences in the managerial view of the key issues in each case:

page 249

- As the vice president for marketing of Super Grain, Claire Syverson focused first on how much to spend on the advertising campaign and then set limits (an advertising budget of $4 million and a planning budget of $1 million) that led to resource constraints.
- The management of Profit & Gambit instead focused on what it wanted the advertising campaign to accomplish and then set goals (minimum required increases in sales) that led to benefit constraints.

From this comparison, we see that it is not the nature of the *application* that determines the classification of the resulting linear programming formulation. Rather, it is the nature of the *restrictions* imposed on the decisions regarding the mix of activity levels. If the restrictions involve *limits* on the usage of resources, that identifies a resource-allocation problem. If the restrictions involve *goals* on the levels of benefits, that characterizes a cost–benefit–trade-off problem. Frequently, the nature of the restrictions arise from the way management frames the problem.

However, we don’t want you to get the idea that every linear programming problem falls entirely and neatly into either one type or the other. In the preceding section and this one, we are looking at *pure* resource-allocation problems and *pure* cost–benefit–trade-off problems. Although many *real* problems tend to be either one type or the other, it is fairly common to have *both* resource constraints and benefit constraints, even though one may predominate. (In the next section, you will see an example of how both types of constraints can arise in the same problem when the management of the

Super Grain Corp. introduces additional considerations into the analysis of their advertising-mix problem.) Furthermore, we still need to consider additional categories of linear programming problems in the remaining sections of this chapter.

Now, another example of a pure cost–benefit–trade-off problem.

Personnel Scheduling

One of the common applications of cost–benefit–trade-off analysis involves personnel scheduling for a company that provides some kind of service, where the objective is to schedule the work times of the company's employees so as to minimize the cost of providing the level of service specified by management. The following example illustrates how this can be done.

The Problem

Union Airways is adding more flights to and from its hub airport and so needs to hire additional customer service agents. However, it is not clear just how many more should be hired. Management recognizes the need for cost control while also consistently providing a satisfactory level of service to the company's customers, so a desirable trade-off between these two factors is being sought. Therefore, a management science and business analytics team is studying how to schedule the agents to provide satisfactory service with the smallest personnel cost.

Based on the new schedule of flights, an analysis has been made of the *minimum* number of customer service agents that need to be on duty at different times of the day to provide a satisfactory level of service. (The queueing models presented in Chapter 13 can be used to determine the minimum numbers of agents needed to reduce the waiting times incurred by customers down to reasonable levels.) These numbers are shown in the last column of Table 6.5 for the time periods given in the first column. The other entries in this table reflect one of the provisions in the company's current contract with the union that represents the customer service agents. The provision is that each agent works an eight-hour shift. The authorized shifts are Shift 1: 6:00 AM to 2:00 PM.

Shift 2: 8:00 AM to 4:00 PM.

Shift 3: Noon to 8:00 PM.

Shift 4: 4:00 PM to midnight.

Shift 5: 10:00 PM to 6:00 AM.

TABLE 6.5

Data for the Union Airways Personnel Scheduling Problem

	Time Periods Covered by Shift					
Time Period	1	2	3	4	5	Minimum Number of Agents Needed
6:00 AM to 8:00 AM	✓					48
8:00 AM to 10:00 AM	✓	✓				79
10:00 AM to noon	✓	✓				65
Noon to 2:00 PM	✓	✓	✓			87
2:00 PM to 4:00 PM		✓	✓			64
4:00 PM to 6:00 PM			✓	✓		73
6:00 PM to 8:00 PM			✓	✓		82
8:00 PM to 10:00 PM				✓		43
10:00 PM to midnight				✓	✓	52
Midnight to 6:00 AM					✓	15
Daily cost per agent	$170	$160	$175	$180	$195	

Check marks in the main body of Table 6.5 show the time periods covered by the respective shifts. Because some shifts are less desirable than others, the wages specified in the contract differ by shift. For each shift, the daily compensation (including benefits) for each agent is shown in the bottom row. The problem is to determine how many agents should be assigned to the respective shifts each day to minimize the *total* personnel cost for agents, based on this bottom row, while meeting (or surpassing) the service requirements given in the last column.

page 250

Formulation

This problem is, in fact, a pure cost–benefit–trade-off problem. To formulate the problem, we need to identify the *activities* and *benefits* involved.

Activities correspond to shifts.

The *level* of each activity is the number of agents assigned to that shift.

A *unit* of each activity is one agent assigned to that shift.

Thus, the general description of a linear programming problem as finding the *best mix of activity levels* can be expressed for this specific application as finding the *best mix of shift sizes.*

Benefits correspond to time periods.

For each time period, the *benefit* provided by the activities is the service that agents provide customers during that period.

The *level* of a benefit is measured by the number of agents on duty during that time period.

Once again, a careful formulation of the problem, including gathering all the relevant data, leads rather directly to a spreadsheet model. This model is shown in Figure 6.5, and we outline its formulation below.

The Data As indicated in this figure, all the data in Table 6.5 have been entered directly into the data cells CostPerShift (C5:G5), ShiftWorksTimePeriod (C8:G17), and MinimumNeeded (J8:J17). For the ShiftWorksTimePeriod (C8:G17) data, an entry of 1 indicates that the corresponding shift includes that time period whereas 0 indicates not. Like any cost–benefit–tradeoff problem, these numbers indicate the contribution of each activity to each benefit. Each agent working a shift contributes either 0 or 1 toward the minimum number of agents needed in a time period.

The Decisions Since the activities in this case correspond to the five shifts, the decisions to be made are

S_1 = Number of agents to assign to Shift 1 (starts at 6 AM)

S_2 = Number of agents to assign to Shift 2 (starts at 8 AM)

S_3 = Number of agents to assign to Shift 3 (starts at noon)

S_4 = Number of agents to assign to Shift 4 (starts at 4 PM)

S_5 = Number of agents to assign to Shift 5 (starts at 10 PM)

The changing cells to hold these numbers have been placed in the activity columns in row 21, so

$$S_1 \rightarrow \text{cell C21} \quad S_2 \rightarrow \text{cell} \quad \text{D21} \ldots S_5 \rightarrow \text{cell G21}$$

where these cells are collectively referred to by the range name NumberWorking (C21:G21).

The Constraints These changing cells need to be nonnegative. In addition, we need 10 *benefit constraints,* where each one specifies that the *total* number of agents serving in the corresponding time period listed in column B must be no less than the minimum acceptable number given in column J. Thus, these constraints are

page 251

page 252

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{Total number of agents serving } 6-8 \text{ AM} & \geq 48 \quad \text{(min. acceptable)} \\
\text{Total number of agents serving } 8-10 \text{ AM} & \geq 79 \quad \text{(min. acceptable)} \\
 & \vdots
\end{array}
$$

Since columns C to G indicate which of the shifts serve each of the time periods, these totals are

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{Total number of agents serving } 6-8 \text{ AM} & = S_1 \\
\text{Total number of agents serving } 8-10 \text{ AM} & = S_1 + S_2 \\
 & \vdots \\
\text{Total number of agents serving midnight} - 6 \text{ AM} & = S_5
\end{array}
$$

These totals are calculated in the output cells TotalWorking (H8:H17) using the SUMPRODUCT functions shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 6.5.

One other type of constraint is that the number of agents assigned to each shift must have an integer value. These constraints for the five shifts should be added in the same way as described for the TBA Airlines problem in Section 6.2. In particular, with Excel's Solver they are added in the Add Constraint dialog box by entering NumberWorking on the left-hand side and then choosing int from the pop-up menu between the left-hand side and the right-hand side. The set of constraints, NumberWorking = integer, then appears in the Solver Parameters, as shown in Figure 6.5. In Analytic Solver, select the range of cells to be constrained integer, and then under the Constraint menu on the Analytic Solver tab of the ribbon, choose Integer under the Variable Type/Bound submenu.

The Measure of Performance The objective is to

$$
\text{Minimize} \qquad \text{Cost} = \text{Total daily personnel cost for all agents}
$$

Since CostPerShift (C5:G5) gives the daily cost per agent on each shift and NumberWorking (C21:G21) gives the number of agents working each shift,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{Cost} &= 170\,S_1 + 160\,S_2 + 175\,S_3 + 180\,S_4 + 195\,S_5 \quad \text{(in dollars)} \\
&= \text{SUMPRODUCT (CostPerShift, NumberWorking)} \\
&\rightarrow \text{cell J21}
\end{aligned}
$$

Summary of the Formulation The above steps provide the complete formulation of the linear programming model on a spreadsheet, as

summarized below (in algebraic form).

$$\text{Minimize} \quad \text{Cost} = 170\,S_1 + 160\,S_2 + 175\,S_3 + 180\,S_4 + 195\,S_5 \text{ (in dollars)}$$

subject to

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Total agents } 6-8 & S_1 \geq 48 \\ \text{Total agents } 8-10 \text{ AM} & S_1 + S_2 \geq 79 \\ \vdots & \\ \text{Total agents midnight } 6 \text{ AM} & S_5 \geq 15 \end{array}$$

and

$$S_1 \geq 0 \qquad S_2 \geq 0 \qquad S_3 \geq 0 \qquad S_4 \geq 0 \qquad S_5 \geq 0$$

Solving the Model The lower left-hand corner of Figure 6.5 shows the entries needed in Solver, along with the selection of the usual two options. After solving, NumberWorking (C21:G21) in the spreadsheet shows the resulting optimal solution for the number of agents that should be assigned to each shift. TotalCost (J21) indicates that this plan would cost $30,610 per day.

FIGURE 6.5

The spreadsheet model for the Union Airways problem, including the formulas for the objective cell TotalCost (J21) and the other output cells TotalWorking (H8:H17), as well as the specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells NumberWorking (C21:G21) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**Union Airways Personnel Scheduling Problem**									
2										
3			6AM–2PM	8AM–4PM	Noon–8PM	4PM–Midnight	10PM–6AM			
4			Shift	Shift	Shift	Shift	Shift			
5		Cost per Shift	$170	$160	$175	$180	$195			
6								Total		Minimum
7		Time Period		Shift Works Time Period? (1=yes, 0=no)				Working		Needed
8		6AM–8AM	1	0	0	0	0	48	≥	48
9		8AM–10AM	1	1	0	0	0	79	≥	79
10		10AM–12PM	1	1	0	0	0	79	≥	65
11		12PM–2PM	1	1	1	0	0	118	≥	87
12		2PM–4PM	0	1	1	0	0	70	≥	64
13		4PM–6PM	0	0	1	1	0	82	≥	73
14		6PM–8PM	0	0	1	1	0	82	≥	82
15		8PM–10PM	0	0	0	1	0	43	≥	43
16		10PM–12AM	0	0	0	1	1	58	≥	52
17		12AM–6AM	0	0	0	0	1	15	≥	15
18										
19			6AM–2PM	8AM–4PM	Noon–8PM	4PM–Midnight	10PM–6AM			
20			Shift	Shift	Shift	Shift	Shift			Total Cost
21		Number Working	48	31	39	43	15			$30,610

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
NumberWorking
Subject to the Constraints:
NumberWorking = integer
TotalWorking >= MinimumNeeded

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
CostPerShift	C5:G5
MinimumNeeded	J8:J17
NumberWorking	C21:G21
ShiftWorksTimePeriod	C8:G17
TotalCost	J21
TotalWorking	H8:H17

	H
6	Total
7	Working
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:G8,NumberWorking)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:G9,NumberWorking)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:G10,NumberWorking)
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:G11,NumberWorking)
12	=SUMPRODUCT(C12:G12,NumberWorking)
13	=SUMPRODUCT(C13:G13,NumberWorking)
14	=SUMPRODUCT(C14:G14,NumberWorking)
15	=SUMPRODUCT(C15:G15,NumberWorking)
16	=SUMPRODUCT(C16:G16,NumberWorking)
17	=SUMPRODUCT(C17:G17,NumberWorking)

	J
20	Total Cost
21	=SUMPRODUCT(CostPerShift,NumberWorking)

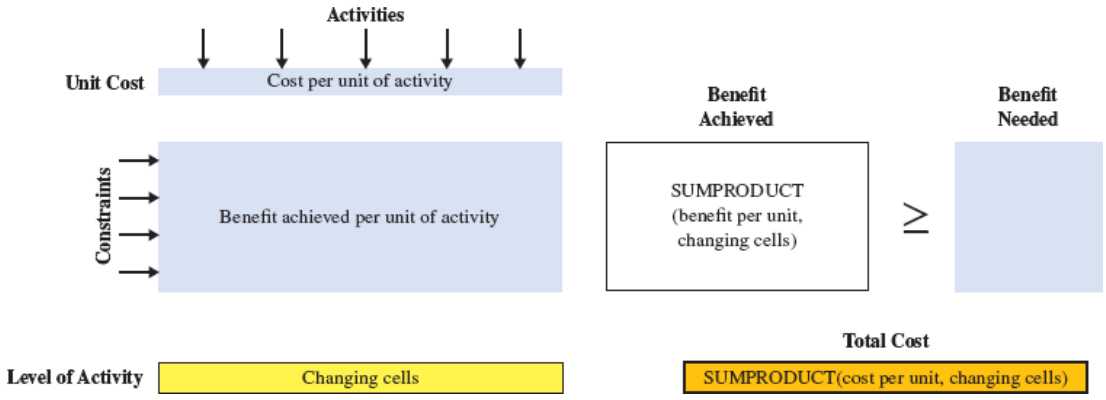
Summary of the Formulation Procedure for Cost–Benefit–Trade-Off Problems

The nine steps in formulating any cost–benefit–trade-off problem follow the same pattern as presented at the end of the preceding section for resource-allocation problems, so we will not repeat them here. The main differences are that the overall measure of performance now is the total cost of the activities (or some surrogate of total cost chosen by management) in steps 2 and 3, benefits now replace resources in steps 4 and 5, and ≥ signs now are entered to the right of the output cells for benefits in step 8. Figure 6.6 shows a

template of the format of a spreadsheet model for cost–benefit–trade-off problems.

FIGURE 6.6

A template of a spreadsheet model for pure cost–benefit–trade-off problems.



All the functional constraints in the resulting model are *benefit constraints,* that is, constraints with a ≥ sign. This is the *identifying feature* of a pure cost–benefit–trade-off problem.

Review *Questions*

. What is the difference in managerial objectives between resource-allocation problems and cost–benefit–trade-off problems?
. What is the identifying feature of a cost–benefit–trade-off problem?
. What is the form of a benefit constraint?
. What are the three kinds of data that need to be gathered for a cost–benefit–trade-off problem?
. Compare the types of activities for the two examples of cost–benefit–trade-off problems.
. Compare the types of benefits for the two examples of cost–benefit–trade-off problems.

6.4 MIXED PROBLEMS

Sections 6.2 and 6.3 each described a broad category of linear programming problems—resource-allocation and cost–benefit–trade-off problems. As summarized in Table 6.6, each features one of the first two types of functional constraints shown there. In fact, the *identifying feature* of a *pure*

resource-allocation problem is that *all* its functional constraints are *resource constraints.* The *identifying feature* of a *pure* cost–benefit–trade-off problem is that *all* its functional constraints are *benefit constraints.* (Keep in mind that the functional constraints include *all* the constraints of a problem *except* its nonnegativity constraints.) TABLE 6.6

Types of Functional Constraints

Type	Form*	Typical Interpretation	Main Usage
Resource constraint	LHS ≤ RHS	For some resource, Amount used ≤ Amount available	Resource-allocation problems and mixed problems
Benefit constraint	LHS ≥ RHS	For some benefit, Level achieved ≥ Minimum acceptable level	Cost–benefit–trade-off problems and mixed problems
Fixed-requirement constraint	LHS = RHS	For some quantity, Amount provided = Required amount	Fixed-requirements problems and mixed problems

*LHS = Left-hand side (a SUMPRODUCT function).
RHS = Right-hand side (a constant).

The bottom row of Table 6.6 shows the last of the three types of functional constraints, namely, **fixed-requirement constraints,** which require that the left-hand side of each such constraint must exactly equal some fixed amount. Thus, since the left-hand side represents the amount provided of some quantity, the form of a fixed-requirement constraint is

fixed-requirement constraint
A functional constraint with an = sign. The left-hand side represents the amount provided of some type of quantity, and the right-hand side represents the required amount for that quantity.

$$\text{Amount provided} = \text{Required amount}$$

The *identifying feature* of a *pure* **fixed-requirements problem** is that it is a linear programming problem where *all* its functional constraints are fixed-requirement constraints. The next two sections will describe two particularly

prominent types of fixed-requirement problems called *transportation problems* and *assignment problems.*

fixed-requirements problem

A type of linear programming problem concerned with optimizing how to meet a number of fixed requirements. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in its model is a fixed-requirement constraint.

However, before turning to these types of problems, we first will use a continuation of the Super Grain case study from Section 6.1 to illustrate how many linear programming problems fall into another broad category called *mixed problems.*

Many linear programming problems do not fit completely into any of the previously discussed categories (pure resource-allocation problems, cost–benefit–trade-off problems, and fixed-requirement problems) because the problem's functional constraints include more than one of the types shown in Table 6.6. Such problems are called **mixed problems.**

mixed problem

Any linear programming problem that includes at least two of the three types of functional constraints (resource constraints, benefit constraints, and fixed-requirement constraints).

Now let us see how a more careful analysis of the Super Grain case study turns this resource-allocation problem into a mixed problem that includes all three types of functional constraints shown in Table 6.6.

Super Grain Management Discusses Its Advertising-Mix Problem

The description of the Super Grain case study in Section 6.1 ends with Clair Syverson (Super Grain's vice president for marketing) sending a memorandum to the company's president, David Sloan, requesting a meeting to evaluate her proposed promotional campaign for the company's new breakfast cereal.

Soon thereafter, Claire Syverson and David Sloan meet to discuss plans for the campaign.

David Sloan (president): Thanks for your memo, Claire. The plan you outline for the promotional campaign looks like a reasonable one. However, I

am surprised that it does not make any use of TV commercials. Why is that?

Claire Syverson (vice president for marketing): Well, as I described in my memo, I used a spreadsheet model to see how to maximize the number of exposures from the campaign and this turned out to be the plan that does this. I also was surprised that it did not include TV commercials, but the model indicated that introducing commercials would provide less exposures on a dollar-for-dollar basis than social media ads and Sunday supplement ads. Don't you think it makes sense to use the plan that maximizes the number of exposures?

David: Not necessarily. Some exposures are a lot less important than others. For example, we know that middle-aged adults are not big consumers of our cereals, so we don't care very much how many of those people see our ads. On the other hand, young children are big consumers. Having TV commercials on the Saturday morning programs for children is our primary method of reaching young children. You know how important it will be to get young children to ask their parents for Crunchy Start. That is our best way of generating first-time sales. Those commercials also get seen by a lot of parents who are watching the programs with their kids. What we need is a commercial that is appealing to both parents and kids, and that gets the kids immediately bugging their parents to go buy Crunchy Start. I think that is a real key to a successful campaign.

Claire: Yes, that makes a lot of sense. In fact, I already have set some goals regarding the number of young children and the number of parents of young children that need to be reached by this promotional campaign.

David: Good. Did you include those goals in your spreadsheet model?

Claire: No, I didn't.

David: Well, I suggest that you incorporate them directly into your model. I suspect that maximizing exposures while also meeting your goals will give us a high impact plan that includes some TV commercials.

Claire: Good idea. I'll try it.

David: Are there any other factors that the plan in your memo doesn't take into account as well as you would like?

Claire: Well, yes, one. The plan doesn't take into account my budget for coupons on social media and in newspapers.

David: You should be able to add that to your model as well. Why don't you go back and see what happens when you incorporate these additional

considerations?

Claire: OK, will do. You seem to have had a lot of experience with spreadsheet modeling.

David: Yes. It is a great tool as long as you maintain some healthy skepticism about what comes out of the model. No model can fully take into account everything that we must consider when dealing with managerial problems. This is especially true the first time or two you run the model. You need to keep asking, what are the missing quantitative considerations that I still should add to the model? Then, after you have made the model as complete as possible and obtained a solution, you still need to use your best managerial judgment to weigh intangible considerations that cannot be incorporated into the model.

Incorporating Additional Managerial Considerations into the Super Grain Model

Therefore, David and Claire conclude that the spreadsheet model needs to be expanded to incorporate some additional considerations. In particular, since the promotional campaign is for a breakfast cereal that should have special appeal to young children, they feel that two audiences should be targeted—*young children* and *parents of young children.* (This is why one of the three advertising media recommended by Giacomi & Jackowitz is commercials on children's television programs Saturday morning.) Consequently, Claire now has set two new goals for the campaign.

Goal 1: The advertising should be seen by at least five million young children.

Goal 2: The advertising should be seen by at least five million parents of young children.

In effect, these two goals are *minimum acceptable levels* for two special *benefits* to be achieved by the advertising activities.

Benefit 1: Promoting the new breakfast cereal to young children.

Benefit 2: Promoting the new breakfast cereal to parents of young children.

Because of the way the goals have been articulated, the *level* of each of these benefits is measured by the *number of people* in the specified category that are reached by the advertising.

To enable constructing the corresponding *benefit constraints* (as described in Section 6.3), Claire asks Giacomi & Jackowitz to estimate how much each advertisement in each of the media will contribute to each benefit, as measured by the number of people reached in the specified category. These estimates are given in Table 6.7.

TABLE 6.7

Benefit Data for the Revised Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem

	Number Reached in Target Category (in millions)			
Target Category	Each TV Commercial	Each Social Media Ad	Each Sunday Ad	Minimum Acceptable Level
Young children	1.2	0.1	0	5
Parents of young children	0.5	0.2	0.2	5

It is interesting to observe that management wants special consideration given to these two kinds of benefits even though the original spreadsheet model (Figure 6.1) already takes them into account to some extent. As described in Section 6.1, the *expected number of exposures* is the overall measure of performance to be maximized. This measure counts up all the times that an advertisement is seen by any individual, including all those individuals in the target audiences. However, maximizing this *general* measure of performance does *not* ensure that the two *specific goals* prescribed by management (Claire Syverson) will be achieved.

page 256

Claire feels that achieving these goals is essential to a successful promotional campaign. Therefore, she complements the general objective with specific benefit constraints that *do* ensure that the goals will be achieved. Having benefit constraints added to incorporate managerial goals into the model is a prerogative of management.

Claire has one more consideration she wants to incorporate into the model. She is a strong believer in the promotional value of *coupons* (coupons that shoppers can print from social media or clip from printed advertisements to obtain a refund of a designated amount when purchasing the advertised item). Consequently, she always earmarks a major portion of her annual marketing budget for the redemption of these coupons. She still has $1,490,000 left from this year's allotment for coupon redemptions. Because of the importance of Crunchy Start to the company, she has decided to use this entire remaining allotment in the campaign promoting this cereal.

Benefit constraints are useful for incorporating managerial goals into the model.

This *fixed amount* for coupon redemptions is a *fixed requirement* that needs to be expressed as a *fixed-requirement constraint.* As described at the beginning of this section, the form of a fixed-requirement constraint is that, for some type of quantity,

$$\text{Amount provided} = \text{Required amount}$$

In this case, the quantity involved is the amount of money provided for the redemption of coupons. To specify this constraint in the spreadsheet, we need to estimate how much each advertisement in each of the media will contribute toward fulfilling the required amount for the quantity. Both medium 2 (advertisements on social media) and medium 3 (advertisements in Sunday supplements of major newspapers) will feature coupons. The estimates of the amount of coupon redemption per advertisement in each of these media is given in Table 6.8.

TABLE 6.8

Data for the Fixed-Requirement Constraint for the Revised Super Grain Corp. Advertising- Mix Problem

	Contribution toward Required Amount			
Requirement	Each TV Spot	Each Social Media Ad	Each Sunday Ad	Required Amount
Coupon redemption	0	$40,000	$120,000	$1,490,000

Formulation of the Revised Spreadsheet Model

Figure 6.7 shows one way of formatting the spreadsheet to expand the original spreadsheet model in Figure 6.1 to incorporate the additional managerial considerations. We then outline the four components of the revised model next.

FIGURE 6.7

The spreadsheet model for the revised Super Grain problem, including the formulas for the objective cell TotalExposures (H19) and the other output cells in column F, as well as the specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells NumberOfAds (C19:E19) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Super Grain Corp. Advertising-Mix Problem**							
2								
3			TV Spots	Social Media Ads	SS Ads			
4		Exposures per Ad	1,300	600	500			
5		(thousands)						
6			Cost per Ad ($thousands)			Budget Spent		Budget Available
7		Ad Budget	300	150	100	3,775	≤	4,000
8		Planning Budget	90	30	40	1,000	≤	1,000
9								
10			Number Reached per Ad (millions)			Total Reached		Minimum Acceptable
11		Young Children	1.2	0.1	0	5	≥	5
12		Parents of Young Children	0.5	0.2	0.2	5.85	≥	5
13								
14			TV Spots	Social Media Ads	SS Ads	Total Redeemed		Required Amount
15		Coupon Redemption	0	40	120	1,490	=	1,490
16		per Ad ($thousands)						
17								Total Exposures
18			TV Spots	Social Media Ads	SS Ads			(thousands)
19		Number of Ads	3	14	7.75			16,175
20			≤					
21		Maximum TV Spots	5					

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalExposures
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
NumberOfAds
Subject to the Constraints:
BudgetSpent <= Budget Available
TVSpots <= MaxTVSpots
TotalReached >= MinimumAcceptable
TotalRedeemed = RequiredAmount

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
BudgetAvailable	H7:H8
BudgetSpent	F7:F8
CostPerAd	C7:E8
CouponRedemptionPerAd	C15:E15
ExposuresPerAd	C4:E4
MaxTVSpots	C21
MinimumAcceptable	H11:H12
NumberOfAds	C19:E19
NumberReachedPerAd	C11:E12
RequiredAmount	H15
TotalExposures	H19
TotalReached	F11:F12
TotalRedeemed	F15
TVSpots	C19

	F
6	Budget Spent
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:E7,NumberOfAds)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:E8,NumberOfAds)
9	
10	Total Reached
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:E11,NumberOfAds)
12	=SUMPRODUCT(C12:E12,NumberOfAds)
13	
14	Total Redeemed
15	=SUMPRODUCT(CouponRedemptionPerAd, NumberOfAds)

	H
17	Total Exposures
18	(thousands)
19	=SUMPRODUCT(ExposuresPerAd,NumberOfAds)

The Data

Additional data cells in NumberReachedPerAd (C11:E12), MinimumAcceptable (H11:H12), CouponRedemptionPerAd (C15:E15), and RequiredAmount (H15) give the data in Tables 6.7 and 6.8.

The Decisions

Recall that, as before, the decisions to be made are

TV = Number of commercials on television

SM = Number of advertisements on social media

SS = Number of advertisements in Sunday supplements

The changing cells to hold these numbers continue to be in NumberOfAds (C19:E19).

The Constraints

In addition to the original constraints, we now have two benefit constraints and one fixed-requirement constraint. As specified in rows 11 and 12, columns F to H, the benefit constraints are

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Total number of young children reached} \geq 5 \text{ (goal 1 in millions)}\\&\text{Total number of parents reached} \geq 5 \text{ (goal 2 in millions)}\end{aligned}$$

Using the data in columns C to E of these rows,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total number of young children reached} &= 1.2TV + 0.1SM + 0SS\\&= \text{SUMPRODUCT (C11:E11, NumberOfAds)}\\&\rightarrow \text{cell F11}\\\text{Total number of parents reached} &= 0.5TV + 0.2SM + 0.2SS\\&= \text{SUMPRODUCT (C12:E12, NumberOfAds)}\\&\rightarrow \text{cell F12}\end{aligned}$$

These output cells are given the range name TotalReached (F11:F12).

page 257

The fixed-requirement constraint indicated in row 15 is that

$$\text{Total coupon redemption} = 1{,}490 \text{ (allotment in \$1,000s)}$$

CouponRedemptionPerAd (C15:E15) gives the number of coupons redeemed per ad, so

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total coupon redemption} &= 0TV + 40SM + 120SS\\&= \text{SUMPRODUCT (CouponRedemptionPerAd, NumberOfAds)}\\&\rightarrow \text{cell F15}\end{aligned}$$

These same constraints are specified in Solver, along with the original constraints, in Figure 6.7.

The Measure of Performance

The measure of performance continues to be

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Exposure} &= 1{,}300TV + 600SM + 500SS \\ &= \text{SUMPRODUCT(ExposuresPerAd, NumberOfAds)} \\ &\rightarrow \text{cell H19}\end{aligned}$$

so the objective cell is again TotalExposures (H19).

Summary of the Formulation

The above steps have resulted in formulating the following linear programming model (in algebraic form) on a spreadsheet.

$$\text{Maximize Exposure} = 1{,}300TV + 600SM + 500SS$$

subject to the following constraints:

1. *Resource constraints:*

$$\begin{aligned} 300TV + 150SM + 100SS &\le 4{,}000 && \text{(ad budget in \$1,000s)} \\ 90TV + 30SM + 40SS &\le 1{,}000 && \text{(planning budget in \$1,000s)} \\ TV &\le 5 && \text{(television spots available)}\end{aligned}$$

2. *Benefit constraints:*

$$\begin{aligned} 1.2TV + 0.1SM &\ge 5 && \text{(millions of young children)} \\ 0.5TV + 0.2SM + 0.2SS &\ge 5 && \text{(millions of parents)}\end{aligned}$$

3. *Fixed-requirement constraint:*

$$40SM + 120SS = 1{,}490 \qquad \text{(coupon budget in \$1,000s)}$$

4. *Nonnegativity constraints:*

$$TV \ge 0 \qquad SM \ge 0 \qquad SS \ge 0$$

Solving the Model

The lower left-hand corner of Figure 6.7 shows the entries needed in Solver, along with the selection of the usual two options. Solver then finds the optimal solution given in row 19. This optimal solution provides the following plan for the promotional campaign: Run 3 television commercials.

Run 14 advertisements on social media.

Run 7.75 advertisements in Sunday supplements (so the eighth advertisement would appear in only 75 percent of the newspapers).

Although the expected number of exposures with this plan is only 16,175,000, versus the 17,000,000 with the first plan shown in Figure 6.1, both Claire Syverson and David Sloan feel that the new plan does a much better job of meeting all of management's goals for this campaign. They decide to adopt the new plan.

page 258

page 259

An Application Vignette

The **Chevron Corporation** is one of the world's leading integrated energy companies. It explores extensively for crude oil and natural gas throughout the world. Thanks to its vast reserves, it produces nearly 2 million barrels of crude oil per day and similar amounts of natural gas. It then uses its refineries to refine and market nearly 3 million barrels per day of transportation fuels, chemicals, and lubricants. The company announced earnings of $6.1 billion for the third quarter of 2021 while also announcing plans to help combat climate change by lowering carbon intensity in its operations and growing lower carbon businesses.

Dating nearly back to the invention of linear programming in 1947, Chevron quickly became one of the heaviest users of this exciting new technique. The earliest applications involved the following *blending problem.* Any single grade of gasoline needs to be blended from about three to ten components (different forms of processed crude oil), where no single component meets the quality specifications of the grade of gasoline but various combinations of the components can accomplish this. A typical refinery might have 20 different components to be blended into four or more grades of gasoline differing in octane and other properties by marketing area. Linear programming of the mixed type can achieve huge savings by solving for how to minimize the total cost of accomplishing all this blending.

As time went on, the exponential growth in computing power enabled Chevron to greatly expand its use of linear programming. One application involves optimizing the combination of refined products (gasoline, jet, diesel fuels) to produce to maximize the total profit. Another application involves periodically determining the optimal way to run the refining processing units when changes occur in crude oil prices, raw material availability, product prices, product specifications, and equipment capabilities. Still another

application of linear programming (along with also using *decision analysis,* the subject of Chapter 12) involves optimizing the use of capital for new projects to improve its refining system on an ongoing basis.

The combination of **all these applications of linear programming** to minimize the total cost or maximize the total profit in various ways has had continuing dramatic impact on Chevron's bottom line. The estimated cumulative value to Chevron now approaches **$1 billion annually.** In recognition of this and related work, the Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS) awarded Chevron the prestigious **2015 INFORMS Prize** for its long and innovative history in applying advanced analytics and management science across the company.

In addition, the link below describes how linear programming is used in the seven company-owned refineries to select the most profitable raw materials, evaluate product options, optimize refinery processes, and promote efficient capital investments. This dramatic application resulted in Chevron winning the prestigious honor in 2013 of being one of the six worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: T. Kutz, M. Davis, R. Creek, N. Kenaston, C. Stenstrom, and M. Connor, *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 44, no. 1 (January-February 2014): 39–54. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

This case study illustrates a common theme in real applications of linear programming—the continuing evolution of the linear programming model. It is common to make later adjustments in the initial version of the model, perhaps even many times, as experience is gained in using the model. Frequently, these adjustments are made to more adequately reflect some important managerial considerations. This may result in a mixed problem because the new functional constraints needed to incorporate the managerial considerations may be of a different type from those in the original model.

A model may need to be modified a number of times before it adequately incorporates all the important considerations.

Other Applications of Linear Programming

This case study provides a relatively simple example of a small mixed problem. Most of the linear programming problems (including mixed problems) that arise in practice are *much* larger, sometimes involving hundreds or thousands (or possibly even millions) of activities and constraints. A major

reason why linear programming is such an extremely important tool for performing prescriptive analytics is that it fits so many managerial problems and also can handle the massive problems, including corporate-wide problems, that occasionally arise. Over the many decades of the development of this tool, a powerful technology has been developed for almost automatically converting the relevant data into the formulation of a linear programming model and then solving the model, followed by *what-if analysis* (to be described by Chapter 8) for further refining how management should proceed. (We will not discuss this technology further, but students who choose to take more advanced courses in operations research and management science can look forward to learning more about how highly trained analysts can do all of this.) It may seem that the models for the much larger linear programming applications arising in practice must be considerably more complicated than for the case study. However, the important thing to page 260 remember is that any linear programming problem can have only three types of functional constraints—resource constraints, benefit constraints, and fixed-requirement constraints—where each type is formulated just as illustrated above for the case study.

There are numerous kinds of managerial problems to which linear programming can be applied. We don't have nearly enough space available to give examples of all the most important kinds of applications. However, if you would like to explore this further, we suggest that you go through the five solved problems that are summarized in front of the Problems section for this chapter. Reading the seven cases that follow the Problems section, as well as the application vignettes in both this chapter and the preceding chapter, also will further illustrate the unusually wide applicability of linear programming.

Meanwhile, we soon will turn to two more categories of linear programming problems in the next two sections.

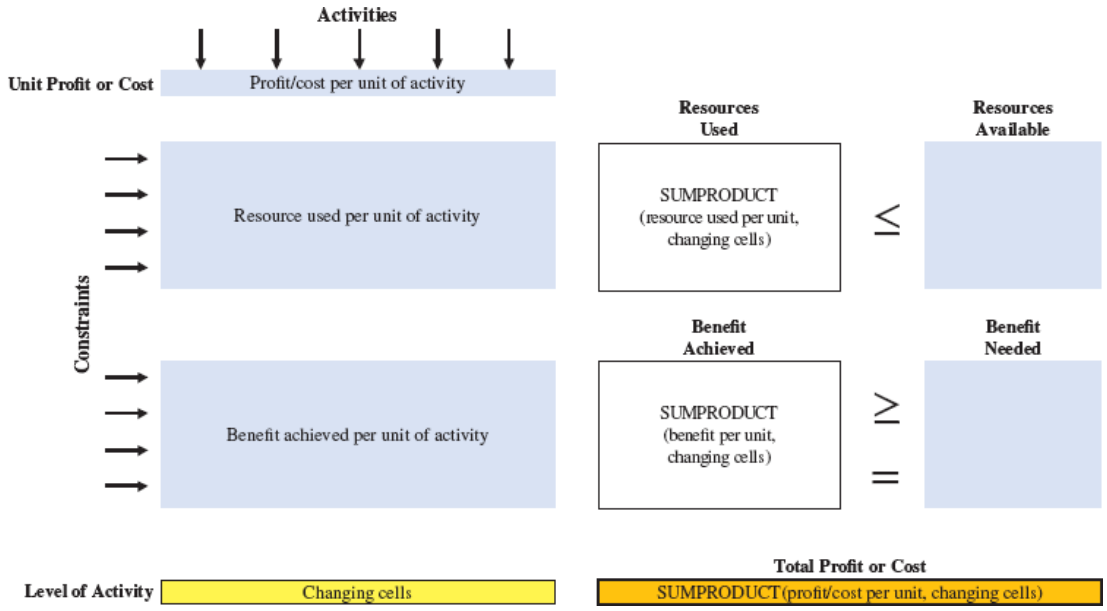
Summary of the Formulation Procedure for Mixed Linear Programming Problems

The procedure for formulating mixed problems is similar to the one outlined at the end of Section 6.2 for resource-allocation problems. However, pure resource-allocation problems only have resource constraints whereas mixed problems can include all three types of functional constraints (resource constraints, benefit constraints, and fixed-requirement constraints). Therefore, the following summary for formulating mixed problems includes separate steps for dealing with these different types of constraints. Also see Figure 6.8 for a template of the format for a spreadsheet model of mixed problems. (This

format works well for most mixed problems, including those encountered in this chapter, but more flexibility is occasionally needed, as will be illustrated in the next chapter.)

FIGURE 6.8

A template of a spreadsheet model for mixed problems.



1. Since any linear programming problem involves finding the *best mix* of levels of various activities, identify these *activities* for the problem at hand. The decisions to be made are the *levels* of these activities.
2. From the viewpoint of management, identify an appropriate *overall measure of performance* for solutions of the problem.
3. For each activity, estimate the *contribution per unit* of the activity to this overall measure of performance.
4. Identify any *resources* that must be allocated to the activities (as described in Section 6.2). For each one, identify the *amount available* and then the *amount used per unit of each activity.*

page 261

5. Identify any *benefits* to be obtained from the activities (as described in Section 6.3). For each one, identify the *minimum acceptable level* prescribed by management and then the *benefit contribution per unit of each activity.*
6. Identify any *fixed requirements* that, for some type of quantity, the amount provided must equal a required amount (as described in Section 6.4). For each fixed requirement, identify the *required amount* and then the *contribution toward this required amount per unit of each activity.*

7. Enter the data gathered in steps 3–6 into *data cells* in a spreadsheet.
8. Designate *changing cells* for displaying the decisions on activity levels.
9. Use *output cells* to specify the constraints on resources, benefits, and fixed requirements.
0. Designate an *objective cell* for displaying the overall measure of performance.

Review *Questions*

1. What types of functional constraints can appear in a mixed linear programming problem?
2. What managerial goals needed to be incorporated into the expanded linear programming model for the Super Grain Corp. problem?
3. Which categories of functional constraints are included in the new linear programming model?
4. Why did management adopt the new plan even though it provides a smaller expected number of exposures than the original plan recommended by the original linear programming model?

6.5 TRANSPORTATION PROBLEMS

One of the most common applications of linear programming involves optimizing a shipping plan for transporting goods. In a typical application, a company has several plants producing a certain product that needs to be shipped to the company's customers (or perhaps to distribution centers). How much should each plant ship to each customer in order to minimize the total cost? Linear programming can provide the answer. This type of linear programming problem is called a **transportation problem.**

transportation problem
A type of linear programming problem that typically involves finding a shipping plan that minimizes the total cost of transporting a product from a number of plants to a number of customers.

This kind of application normally needs two kinds of functional constraints. One kind specifies that the amount of the product produced at each plant must equal the total amount shipped to customers. The other kind specifies that the total amount received from the plants by each customer must equal the amount ordered. These are *fixed-requirement constraints,* which makes the

problem a *fixed-requirements problem.* However, there also are variations of this problem where resource constraints or benefit constraints are needed.

Transportation problems are a particularly important special type of linear programming problem for three reasons. First, the prototype example described above (optimizing a shipping plan for transporting goods) is a very common type of application. Second, the structure of the model for a transportation problem also fits a considerable number of other applications that may not have much to do with transportation. Third, when dealing with very large transportation problems, the special structure of this model enables streamlining the standard solution procedure for linear programming problems to greatly speed up the process.

Transportation problems and assignment problems (described in the next section) are such important types of linear programming problems that the entire Chapter 17 (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) is devoted to further describing these two related types of problems and providing examples of a wide variety of applications.

We provide below an example of a typical transportation problem.

The Big M Company Transportation Problem

The **Big M Company** produces a variety of heavy duty machines at two factories. One of its products is a large turret lathe. Orders have been received from three customers to purchase some of these turret lathes next month. These lathes will be shipped individually, and Table 6.9 shows what the cost will be for shipping each lathe from each factory to each customer. This table also shows how many lathes have been ordered by each customer and how many will be produced by each factory. The company's distribution manager now wants to determine how many machines to ship from each factory to each customer to minimize the total shipping cost.

page 262

TABLE 6.9

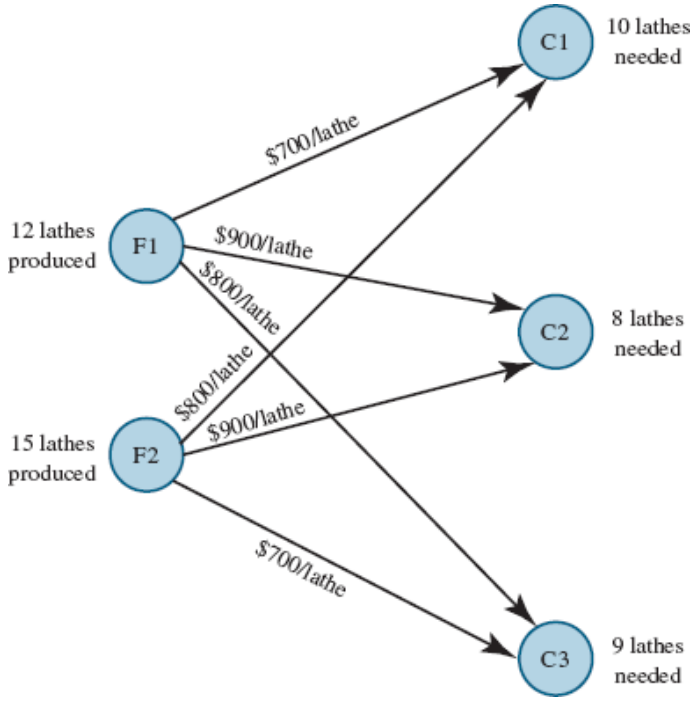
Some Data for the Big M Company Distribution-Network Problem

	Shipping Cost for Each Lathe			
To	**Customer 1**	**Customer 2**	**Customer 3**	**Output**
From				
Factory 1	$700	$900	$800	12 lathes
Factory 2	800	900	700	15 lathes
Order size	10 lathes	8 lathes	9 lathes	

Figure 6.9 depicts the distribution network for this problem. This network ignores the geographical layout of the factories and customers and instead lines up the two factories in one column on the left and the three customers in one column on the right. Each arrow shows one of the shipping lanes through this distribution network.

FIGURE 6.9

The distribution network for the Big M Company problem.



Formulation of the Problem in Linear Programming Terms

We need to identify the *activities* and *requirements* of this transportation problem to formulate it as a linear programming problem. In this case, two kinds of activities have been mentioned—the *production* of the turret lathes at the two factories and the *shipping* of these lathes along the various shipping lanes. However, we know the specific amounts to be produced at each factory, so no decisions need to be made about the production activities. The decisions to be made concern the levels of the *shipping activities*—how many lathes to ship through each shipping lane. Therefore, we need to focus on the shipping activities for the linear programming formulation.

The *activities* correspond to shipping lanes, depicted by arrows in Figure 6.9.

The *level* of each activity is the number of lathes shipped through the corresponding shipping lane.

Just as any linear programming problem can be described as finding the best mix of activity levels, this one involves finding the *best mix of shipping amounts* for the various shipping lanes. The decisions to be made are S_{F1-C1} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 1 to Customer 1

S_{F1-C2} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 1 to Customer 2

S_{F1-C3} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 1 to Customer 3

page 263

S_{F2-C1} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 2 to Customer 1

S_{F2-C2} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 2 to Customer 2

S_{F2-C3} = Number of lathes shipped from Factory 2 to Customer 3

so six changing cells will be needed in the spreadsheet.

The objective is to

$$\text{Minimize Cost} = \text{Total cost for shipping the lathes}$$

Using the shipping costs given in Table 6.9,

$$\text{Cost} = 700\,S_{F1\text{-}C1} + 900\,S_{F1\text{-}C2} + 800\,S_{F1\text{-}C3} + 800\,S_{F2\text{-}C1} + 900\,S_{F2\text{-}C2} + 700\,S_{F2\text{-}C3}$$

is the quantity in dollars to be entered into the objective cell. (We will use a SUMPRODUCT function to do this a little later.)

The spreadsheet model also will need five constraints involving *fixed requirements.* Both Table 6.9 and Figure 6.9 show these requirements.

Requirement 1: Factory 1 must ship 12 lathes.

Requirement 2: Factory 2 must ship 15 lathes.

Requirement 3: Customer 1 must receive 10 lathes.

Requirement 4: Customer 2 must receive 8 lathes.

Requirement 5: Customer 3 must receive 9 lathes.

Thus, there is a specific requirement associated with each of the five locations in the distribution network shown in Figure 6.9.

All five of these requirements can be expressed in constraint form as

$$\text{Amount provided} = \text{Required amount}$$

For example, Requirement 1 can be expressed algebraically as

$$S_{\text{F1-C1}} + S_{\text{F1-C2}} + S_{\text{F1-C3}} = 12$$

where the left-hand side gives the total number of lathes shipped from Factory 1, and 12 is the required amount to be shipped from Factory 1. Therefore, this constraint restricts $S_{\text{F1}} - {}_{\text{C1}}$, $S_{\text{F1}}-{}_{\text{C2}}$, and $S_{\text{F1}} - {}_{\text{C3}}$ to values that sum to the required amount of 12. In contrast to the ≤ form for resource constraints and the ≥ form for benefit constraints, the constraints express *fixed requirements* that must hold with equality, so this transportation problem falls into the category of fixed-requirements problems introduced in the preceding section. However, Chapter 17 (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) gives several examples that illustrate how variants of transportation problems can have resource constraints or benefit constraints as well. For example, if 12 lathes represent the manufacturing capacity of Factory 1 (the maximum number that can be shipped) rather than a requirement for how many must be shipped, the constraint just given for Requirement 1 would become a ≤ resource constraint instead. Such variations can be incorporated readily into the spreadsheet model.

Formulation of the Spreadsheet Model

In preparation for formulating the *model,* the *problem* has been formulated above by identifying the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance, as well as gathering all the important data displayed in Table 6.9. All this information leads to the spreadsheet model shown in Figure 6.10. The data cells include ShippingCost (C5:E6), Output (H11:H12), and OrderSize (C15:E15), incorporating all the data from Table 6.9. The changing cells are UnitsShipped (C11:E12), which give the decisions on the amounts to be shipped through the respective shipping lanes. The output cells are TotalShippedOut (F11:F12) and TotalToCustomer (C13:E13), where the SUM functions entered into these cells are shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 6.10. The constraints are that TotalShippedOut is required to equal Output and TotalToCustomer is required to equal OrderSize. These constraints have been specified on the spreadsheet and entered into Solver. The objective cell is TotalCost (H15), where its SUMPRODUCT function gives the total shipping cost. The lower left-hand corner of Figure 6.10 shows the entries needed in Solver, along with the selection of the usual two options.

FIGURE 6.10

The spreadsheet model for the Big M Company problem, including the formulas for the objective cell TotalCost (H15) and the other output cells TotalShippedOut (F11:F12) and TotalToCustomer (C13:E13), as well as the specifications needed to set up Solver. The changing cells UnitsShipped (C11:E12) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Big M Company Distribution Problem**							
2								
3		**Shipping Cost**						
4		**(per Lathe)**	Customer 1	Customer 2	Customer 3			
5		Factory 1	$700	$900	$800			
6		Factory 2	$800	$900	$700			
7								
8						Total		
9						Shipped		
10		**Units Shipped**	Customer 1	Customer 2	Customer 3	Out		Output
11		Factory 1	10	2	0	12	=	12
12		Factory 2	0	6	9	15	=	15
13		Total to Customer	10	8	9			
14			=	=	=			**Total Cost**
15		Order Size	10	8	9			$20,500

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: TotalCost **To:** Min **By Changing Variable Cells:** UnitsShipped **Subject to the Constraints:** TotalShippedOut = Output TotalToCustomer = OrderSize **Solver Options:** Make Variables Nonnegative Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	**Cells**
OrderSize	C15:E15
Output	H11:H12
ShippingCost	C5:E6
TotalCost	H15
TotalShippedOut	F11:F12
TotalToCustomer	C13:E13
UnitsShipped	C11:E12

	F
8	Total
9	Shipped
10	Out
11	=SUM(C11:E11)
12	=SUM(C12:E12)

	B	C	D	E
13	Total to Customer	=SUM(C11:C12)	=SUM(D11:D12)	=SUM(E11:E12)

	H
14	Total Cost
15	=SUMPRODUCT(ShippingCost,UnitsShipped)

Careful *problem* formulation needs to precede *model* formulation.

Here is an example where SUM functions are used for output cells instead of SUMPRODUCT functions.

The layout of the spreadsheet is different than for all the prior linear programming examples in the book. Rather than a separate column for each activity and a separate row for each constraint, the cost data and changing cells are laid out in a table format. This format provides a more natural and compact way of displaying the constraints and results.

UnitsShipped (C11:E12) in the spreadsheet in Figure 6.10 shows the result of applying Solver to obtain an optimal solution for the number of lathes to ship

through each shipping lane. TotalCost (H15) indicates that the total shipping cost for this shipping plan is $20,500.

Since any transportation problem is a special type of linear programming problem, it makes the standard assumption that fractional solutions are allowed. However, we actually don't want this assumption for this particular application since only *integer* numbers of lathes can be shipped from a factory to a customer. Fortunately, even while making the standard assumption, the numbers in the optimal solution shown in UnitsShipped (C11:E12) only have integer values. This is no coincidence. Because of the form of its model, almost any transportation problem (including this one) is guaranteed in advance to have an optimal solution that has only integer values despite the fact that fractional solutions also are allowed. In particular, as long as the data for the problem includes only integer values for all the supplies and demands (which are the outputs and order sizes in the Big M Company problem), any transportation problem with feasible solutions is guaranteed to have an optimal solution with integer values for all its decision variables. Therefore, it is not necessary to add constraints to the model that require these variables to have only integer values.

page 265

To summarize, here is the algebraic form of the linear programming model that has been formulated in the spreadsheet:

$$\text{Minimize Cost} = 700\,S_{\text{F1-C1}} + 900\,S_{\text{F1-C2}} + 800\,S_{\text{F1-C3}} + 800\,S_{\text{F2-C1}} + 900\,S_{\text{F2-C2}} + 700\,S_{\text{F2-C3}}$$

subject to the following constraints:

1. *Fixed-requirement constraints:*

$$\begin{aligned}
S_{\text{F1–C1}} + S_{\text{F1–C2}} + S_{\text{F1–C3}} &= 12 \quad \text{(Factory 1)}\\
S_{\text{F2–C1}} + S_{\text{F2–C2}} + S_{\text{F2–C3}} &= 15 \quad \text{(Factory 2)}\\
S_{\text{F1–C1}} + S_{\text{F2–C1}} &= 10 \quad \text{(Customer 1)}\\
S_{\text{F1–C2}} + S_{\text{F2–C2}} &= 8 \quad \text{(Customer 2)}\\
S_{\text{F1–C3}} + S_{\text{F2–C3}} &= 9 \quad \text{(Customer 3)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. *Nonnegativity constraints:*

$$S_{\text{F1-C1}} \ge 0 \qquad S_{\text{F1-C2}} \ge 0 \qquad S_{\text{F1-C3}} \ge 0 \qquad S_{\text{F2-C1}} \ge 0 \qquad S_{\text{F2-C2}} \ge 0 \qquad S_{\text{F2-C3}} \ge 0$$

Review *Questions*

. Why are transportation problems given this name?

. What is an identifying feature of transportation problems?

. How does the form of a fixed-requirement constraint differ from that of a resource constraint? A benefit constraint?

. What are the quantities with fixed requirements in the Big M Company problem?

6.6 ASSIGNMENT PROBLEMS

We now turn to another special type of linear programming problem called **assignment problems**. As the name suggests, this kind of problem involves making *assignments.* Frequently, these are assignments of people to jobs. Thus, many applications of the assignment problem involve aiding managers in matching up their personnel with tasks to be performed. Other applications might instead involve assigning machines, vehicles, or plants to tasks.

Here is a typical example.

An Example: The Sellmore Company Problem

The marketing manager of the **Sellmore Company** will be holding the company's annual sales conference soon for sales regional managers and personnel. To assist in the administration of the conference, he is hiring four temporary employees (Ann, Ian, Joan, and Sean), where each will handle one of the following four tasks:

1. Word processing of written presentations.
2. Computer graphics for both oral and written presentations.
3. Preparation of conference packets, including copying and organizing written materials.
4. Handling of advance and on-site registrations for the conference.

He now needs to decide which person to assign to each task.

page 266

Although each temporary employee has at least the minimal background necessary to perform any of the four tasks, they differ considerably in how efficiently they can handle the different types of work. Table 6.10 shows how many hours each would need for each task. The rightmost column gives the hourly wage based on the background of each employee.

TABLE 6.10

Data for the Sellmore Co. Problem

	Required Time per Task (Hours)				
Temporary Employee	Word Processing	Graphics	Packets	Registrations	Hourly Wage
Aliyah	35	41	27	40	$14
Ian	47	45	32	51	12
Joan	39	56	36	43	13
Mihir	32	51	25	46	15

Decisions need to be made regarding which person to assign to each task.

Formulation of a Spreadsheet Model

Figure 6.11 shows a spreadsheet model for this problem. Table 6.10 is entered at the top. Combining these required times and wages gives the cost (cells D15:G18) for each possible assignment of a temporary employee to a task, using equations shown at the bottom of Figure 6.11. This *cost table* is just the way that any assignment problem is displayed. The objective is to determine which assignments should be made to minimize the sum of the associated costs.

FIGURE 6.11

A spreadsheet formulation of the Sellmore Co. problem as an assignment problem, including the objective cell TotalCost (J30) and the other output cells Cost (D15:G18), TotalAssignments (H24:H27), and TotalAssigned (D28:G28), as well as the specifications needed to set up the model. The values of 1 in the changing cells Assignment (D24:G27) show the optimal plan obtained by Solver for assigning the people to the tasks.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**Sellmore Co. Assignment Problem**									
2										
3					**Task**					
4		**Required Time**		Word					Hourly	
5		**(Hours)**		Processing	Graphics	Packets	Registrations		Wage	
6			Aliyah	35	41	27	40		$14	
7		Assignee	Ian	47	45	32	51		$12	
8			Joan	39	56	36	43		$13	
9			Mihir	32	51	25	46		$15	
10										
11										
12					**Task**					
13				Word						
14		**Cost**		Processing	Graphics	Packets	Registrations			
15			Aliyah	$490	$574	$378	$560			
16		Assignee	Ian	$564	$540	$384	$612			
17			Joan	$507	$728	$468	$559			
18			Mihir	$480	$765	$375	$690			
19										
20										
21					**Task**					
22		**Assignment**		Word				Total		
23				Processing	Graphics	Packets	Registrations	Assignments		Supply
24			Aliyah	0	0	1	0	1	=	1
25		Assignee	Ian	0	1	0	0	1	=	1
26			Joan	0	0	0	1	1	=	1
27			Mihir	1	0	0	0	1	=	1
28			Total Assigned	1	1	1	1			
29				=	=	=	=			Total Cost
30			Demand	1	1	1	1			$1,957

	B	C	D	E	F	G
13			Word			
14	**Cost**		Processing	Graphics	Packets	Registrations
15		Aliyah	=D6*I6	=E6*I6	=F6*I6	=G6*I6
16	Assignee	Ian	=D7*I7	=E7*I7	=F7*I7	=G7*I7
17		Joan	=D8*I8	=E8*I8	=F8*I8	=G8*I8
18		Mihir	=D9*I9	=E9*I9	=F9*I9	=G9*I9

	H
22	Total
23	Assignments
24	=SUM(D24:G24)
25	=SUM(D25:G25)
26	=SUM(D26:G26)
27	=SUM(D27:G27)

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
Assignment
Subject to the Constraints:
TotalAssigned = Demand
TotalAssignments = Supply

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	J
29	Total Cost
30	=SUMPRODUCT(Cost,Assignment)

Range Name	**Cells**
Assignment	D24:G27
Cost	D15:G18
Demand	D30:G30
HourlyWage	I6:I9
RequiredTime	D6:G9
Supply	J24:J27
TotalAssigned	D28:G28
TotalAssignments	H24:H27
TotalCost	J30

	C	D	E	F	G
28	Total Assigned	=SUM(D24:D27)	=SUM(E24:E27)	=SUM(F24:F27)	=SUM(G24:G27)

Using Cost (D15:G18), the objective is to minimize the total cost of the assignments.

Cost (D15:G18) provides what is called the **cost table** for this assignment problem because it specifies what the *cost* would be for assigning any

particular assignee to any particular task. The cost table plays a special role for any assignment problem because it immediately provides all of the data needed (other than identifying the assignees and tasks involved) for completely identifying the assignment problem. This makes "formulating" an assignment problem very straightforward because you only need to work out what the cost would be for each combination of a particular assignee performing a particular task.

cost table

The table that provides all of the relevant data for an assignment problem by showing the cost for assigning any particular assignee to any particular task.

A value of 1 in a changing cell indicates that the corresponding assignment is being made, whereas 0 means that the assignment is not being made.

To prepare for solving the Sellmore Co. problem, the values of 1 in Supply (J24:J27) indicate that each person (assignee) listed in column C must perform exactly one task. The values of 1 in Demand (D30:G30) indicate that each task must be performed by exactly one person. These requirements then are specified in the constraints given in Solver.

Each of the changing cells Assignment (D24:G27) is given a value of 1 when the corresponding assignment is being made, and a value of 0 otherwise. Therefore, the Excel equation for the objective cell, TotalCost = SUMPRODUCT(Cost, Assignment), gives the total cost for the assignments being made. The Solver Parameters box specifies that the goal is to minimize this objective cell.

Excel Tip When solving an assignment problem, rounding errors occasionally will cause Excel to return a noninteger value very close to 0 (e.g., 1.23 E-10, meaning 0.000000000123) or very close to 1 (e.g., 0.9999912). To make the spreadsheet cleaner, you may replace these "ugly" representations by their proper value of 0 or 1 in the changing cells.

The changing cells in Figure 6.11 show the optimal solution obtained after running Solver. This solution is

Assign Aliyah to prepare conference packets.
Assign Ian to do the computer graphics.
Assign Joan to handle registrations.
Assign Mihir to do the word processing.

The total cost given in cell J30 is $1,957.

Characteristics of Assignment Problems

Note that all the functional constraints of the Sellmore Co. problem (as shown in cells H24:J27 and D28:G30 of Figure 6.11) are fixed-requirement constraints which require each person to perform exactly one task and require each task to be performed by exactly one person. Thus, like the Big M Company transportation problem, the Sellmore Co. is a fixed-requirements problem. This is a characteristic of all pure assignment problems. However, Chapter 17 (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) gives some examples of variants of assignment problems where this is not the case.

Like the changing cells Assignment (D24:G27) in Figure 6.11, the changing cells in the spreadsheet model for any pure assignment problem gives a value of 1 when the corresponding assignment is being made and a value of 0 otherwise. Since the fixed-requirement constraints require only each row or column of changing cells to add up to 1 (which could happen, e.g., if two of the changing cells in the same row or column had a value of 0.5 and the rest 0), this would seem to necessitate adding the constraints that each of the changing cells must be *integer.* After choosing the Solver option to make the changing cells nonnegative, this then would force each of the changing cells to be 0 or 1. However, it turned out to be unnecessary to add the constraints that require the changing cells to have values of 0 or 1 in Figure 6.11 because Solver gave an optimal solution that had only values of 0 or 1 anyway. In fact, a general characteristic of pure assignment problems is that Solver always provides such an optimal solution without needing to add the integer constraints.

page 267
page 268

An Application Vignette

Taylor Communications (formerly the *Standard Register Company* before its acquisition and rebranding by the Taylor Corporation in 2016) is one of the largest printing conglomerates in the world. It provides high volume print production of forms and print stationery for major firms in and near the United States. It operates dozens of manufacturing facilities across the United States and Mexico. It had 4,000 employees in 2021.

The print market is highly competitive, so company management must continually address the strategic challenge of minimizing the total cost of producing and distributing its products in order to offer competitive pricing. A wide variety of printing presses are available in the various manufacturing facilities and each press has the capacity to perform multiple print jobs.

However, the cost of performing any given job can differ greatly from one press to the next. Furthermore, the cost of transporting the finished product to the customer can vary greatly depending on which manufacturing facility is used and the resulting distance to the customer.

Given a large number of print jobs that need to be performed over the next time period, the problem is to assign the print jobs to presses. The cost of each individual assignment is the sum of the cost of producing that job on that press and the cost of transporting the finished job to the customer. The objective is to select all of the assignments of jobs to presses so as to minimize the total cost of all the assignments. This is in fact an **assignment problem** as described in the current section except for the modification that a given press might be able to handle multiple jobs. Therefore, a constraint is added for each press that the total processing time for all of the jobs being assigned to that press cannot exceed the total processing time that is available at that press.

Periodically solving this very large assignment problem and implementing this solution has provided an estimated **annual savings of over $10 million.**

Source: S. L. Ahire, M. F. Gorman, D. Dwiggins, and O. Mudry, "Operations Research Helps Reshape Operations Strategy at Standard Register Company," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 37, no. 6 (November–December 2007): 553–565. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

As described further in Chapter 17, available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e,** another interesting characteristic of any pure assignment problem is that it can be viewed as a special type of pure transportation problem. In particular, every fixed-requirement constraint in the corresponding transportation problem would require that either a row or column of changing cells add up to 1. This would result in Solver giving an optimal solution where every changing cell has a value of either 0 or 1, just as for the original assignment problem.

Review *Questions*

. Why are assignment problems given this name?
. Pure assignment problems have what type of functional constraints?
. What is the interpretation of the changing cells in the spreadsheet model of a pure assignment problem?
. What is the role of a cost table in an assignment problem?

6.7 MODEL FORMULATION FROM A BROADER PERSPECTIVE

Formulating and analyzing a linear programming model provides information to help managers make their decisions. That means the model must accurately reflect the managerial view of the problem: Both the measure of performance and the constraints in a model need to reflect the managerial view of the problem.

- The overall *measure of performance* must capture what management wants accomplished.
- When management limits the amounts of resources that will be made available to the activities under consideration, these limitations should be expressed as *resource constraints.*
- When management establishes minimum acceptable levels for benefits to be gained from the activities, these managerial goals should be incorporated into the model as *benefit constraints.*
- If management has fixed requirements for certain quantities, then *fixed-requirement constraints* are needed.

page 269

With the help of spreadsheets, some managers now are able to formulate and solve small linear programming models themselves. However, larger linear programming models may be formulated by *management science and business analytics teams,* not managers. When this is done, the team must thoroughly understand the managerial view of the problem. This requires clear communication with management from the very beginning of the study and maintaining effective communication as new issues requiring managerial guidance are identified. Management needs to clearly convey its view of the problem and the important issues involved. A manager cannot expect to obtain a helpful linear programming study without making clear just what help is wanted.

Linear programming studies need strong managerial input and support.

As is necessary in any textbook, the examples in this chapter are far smaller, simpler, and more clearly spelled out than is typical of real applications. Many real studies require formulating complicated linear programming models involving hundreds or thousands (or possibly even millions) of decisions and constraints. In these cases, there usually are many ambiguities about just what should be incorporated into the model. Strong

managerial input and support are vital to the success of a linear programming study for such complex problems.

When dealing with huge real problems, there is no such thing as “the” correct linear programming model for the problem. The model continually evolves throughout the course of the study. Early in the study, various techniques are used to test initial versions of the model to identify the errors and omissions that inevitably occur when constructing such a large model. This testing process is referred to as **model validation.**

model validation

The process of checking and testing a model to develop a valid model.

Once the basic formulation has been validated, there are many reasonable variations of the model that might be used. Which variation to use depends on such factors as the assumptions about the problem that seem most reasonable, the estimates of the parameters of the model that seem most reliable, and the degree of detail desired in the model.

In large linear programming studies, a good approach is to begin with a relatively simple version of the model and then use the experience gained with this model to evolve toward more elaborate models that more nearly reflect the complexity of the real problem. This process of **model enrichment** continues only as long as the model remains reasonably easy to solve. It must be curtailed when the study’s results are needed by management. Managers often need to curb the natural instinct of management science and business analytics teams to continue adding “bells and whistles” to the model rather than winding up the study in a timely fashion with a less elegant but adequate model.

model enrichment

The process of using experience with a model to identify and add important details that will provide a better representation of the real problem.

When managers study the output of the current model, they often detect some undesirable characteristics that point toward needed model enrichments. These enrichments frequently take the form of new *benefit constraints* to satisfy some managerial goals not previously articulated. (Recall that this is what happened in the Super Grain case study.) Even though many reasonable variations of the model could be used, an *optimal solution* can be solved for only with respect to one specific version of the model at a time. This is why *what-if analysis* is such an important part of a linear programming study. After

obtaining an optimal solution with respect to one specific model, management will have many what-if questions: What-if analysis addresses some key questions that remain after formulating and solving a model.

- What if the estimates of the parameters in the model are incorrect?
- How do the conclusions change if different plausible assumptions are made about the problem?
- What happens when certain managerial options are pursued that are not incorporated into the current model?

Chapter 8 is devoted primarily to describing how what-if analysis addresses these and related issues, as well as how managers use this information.

Because managers *instigate* a management science and business analytics study, they need to know enough about linear programming models and their formulation to be able to recognize managerial problems to which linear programming can be applied. Furthermore, since managerial input is so important for linear programming studies, managers need to understand the kinds of managerial concerns that can be incorporated into the model. Developing these two skills have been the most important goals of this chapter.

Review *Questions*

. A linear programming model needs to reflect accurately whose view of the problem?
. What is meant by *model validation?*
. What is meant by the process of *model enrichment?*
. Why is what-if analysis an important part of a linear programming study?

6.8 Summary

Functional constraints with a ≤ sign are called *resource constraints,* because they require that the *amount used* of some resource must be *less than or equal to* the *amount available* of that resource. The identifying feature of pure *resource-allocation problems* is that all their functional constraints are resource constraints.

Functional constraints with a ≥ sign are called *benefit constraints,* since their form is that the *level achieved* for some

benefit must be *greater than or equal to* the *minimum acceptable level* for that benefit. Frequently, benefit constraints express goals prescribed by management. If every functional constraint is a benefit constraint, then the problem is a *cost–benefit–trade-off problem.*

Functional constraints with an = sign are called *fixed-requirement constraints,* because they express the fixed requirement that, for some quantity, the *amount provided* must be *equal to* the *required amount.* The identifying feature of *fixed-requirements problems* is that their functional constraints are fixed-requirement constraints. One prominent type of fixed-requirements problem is transportation problems, which sometimes involve finding a shipping plan that minimizes the total cost of transporting a product from a number of plants to a number of customers. Another prominent type is assignment problems, which commonly involves assigning people to tasks so as to minimize the total cost of performing these tasks.

Linear programming problems that do not fit into any of these three categories are called *mixed problems.*

In many real applications, a management science and business analytics team formulates and analyzes large linear programming models to help guide managerial decision making. Such teams need strong managerial input and support to help ensure that their work really meets management's needs.

Glossary

assignment problem A type of linear programming problem that typically involves assigning people to tasks so as to minimize the total cost of performing these tasks. (Section 6.6), 265

benefit constraint A functional constraint with a ≥ sign. The left-hand side is interpreted as the level of some benefit that is achieved by the activities under consideration, and the right-hand side is the minimum acceptable level for that benefit. (Section 6.3), 248

cost table The table that provides all of the relevant data for an assignment problem by showing the cost for assigning any particular assignee to any particular task. (Section 6.6), 266

cost–benefit–trade-off problem A type of linear programming problem involving the trade-off between the total cost of the

activities under consideration and the benefits to be achieved by these activities. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in the linear programming model is a benefit constraint. (Section 6.3), 248

fixed-requirement constraint A functional constraint with an = sign. The left-hand side represents the amount provided of some type of quantity, and the right-hand side represents the required amount for that quantity. (Section 6.4), 254

fixed-requirements problem A type of linear programming problem concerned with optimizing how to meet a number of fixed requirements. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in its model is a fixed-requirement constraint. (Section 6.4), 254

identifying feature A feature of a model that identifies the category of linear programming problem it represents. (Chapter introduction), 231

integer programming problem A variation of a linear programming problem that has the additional restriction that some or all of the decision variables must have integer values. (Section 6.2), 241

mixed problem Any linear programming problem that includes at least two of the three types of functional constraints (resource constraints, benefit constraints, and fixed-requirement constraints). (Section 6.4), 254

model enrichment The process of using experience with a model to identify and add important details that will provide a better representation of the real problem. (Section 6.7), 269

model validation The process of checking and testing a model to develop a valid model. (Section 6.7), 269

resource-allocation problem A type of linear programming problem concerned with allocating resources to activities. Its identifying feature is that each functional constraint in its model is a resource constraint. (Section 6.2), 237

resource constraint A functional constraint with a ≤ sign. The left-hand side represents the amount of some resource that is used by the activities under consideration, and the right-hand side represents the amount available of that resource. (Section 6.2), 237

transportation problem A type of linear programming problem that typically involves finding a shipping plan that minimizes the total cost of transporting a product from a number of plants to a number of customers. (Section 6.5), 261

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.

Excel Files:

Super Grain

TBA Airlines

Think-Big

Union Airways

Big M

Revised Super Grain

Sellmore

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

6.S1. Farm Management

Dwight and Hattie have run the family farm for over 30 years. They are currently planning the mix of crops to plant on their 120-acre farm for the upcoming season. The table gives the labor-hours and fertilizer required per acre, as well as the total expected profit per acre for each of the potential crops under consideration. Dwight, Hattie, and their children can work at most 6,500 total hours during the upcoming season. They have 200 tons of fertilizer available. What mix of crops should be planted to maximize the family's total profit?

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem in a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

Crop	Labor Required (hours per acre)	Fertilizer Required (tons per acre)	Expected Profit (per acre)
Oats	50	1.5	$500
Wheat	60	2	$600
Corn	105	4	$950

6.S2. Diet Problem

The kitchen manager for Sing Sing prison is trying to decide what to feed its prisoners. She would like to offer some combination of milk, beans, and oranges. The goal is to minimize cost, subject to meeting the minimum nutritional requirements imposed by law. The cost and nutritional content of each food, along with the minimum nutritional requirements, are shown below. What diet should be fed to each prisoner?

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem in a spreadsheet.

b. Formulate this same model algebraically.

	Milk (gallons)	Navy Beans (cups)	Oranges (large Calif. Valencia)	Minimum Daily Requirement
Niacin (mg)	3.2	4.9	0.8	13.0
Thiamin (mg)	1.12	1.3	0.19	1.5
Vitamin C (mg)	32.0	0.0	93.0	45.0
Cost ($)	2.00	0.20	0.25	

6.S3. Cutting Stock Problem

Decora Accessories manufactures a variety of bathroom accessories, including decorative towel rods and shower curtain rods. Each of the accessories includes a rod made out of stainless steel. However, many different lengths are needed: 12, 18, 24, 40,

and 60 inches. Decora purchases 60-inch rods from an outside supplier and then cuts the rods as needed for their products. Each 60-inch rod can be used to make a number of smaller rods. For example, a 60-inch rod could be used to make a 40-inch and an 18-inch rod (with 2 inches of waste), or five 12-inch rods (with no waste). For the next production period, Decora needs twenty-five 12-inch rods, fifty-two 18-inch rods, forty-five 24-inch rods, thirty 40-inch rods, and twelve 60-inch rods. What is the fewest number of 60-inch rods that can be purchased to meet their production needs? Formulate and solve an integer programming model in a spreadsheet.

6.S4. Producing and Distributing AEDs at Heart Start

Heart Start produces automated external defibrillators in each of two different plants (A and B). The unit production costs and monthly production capacity of the two plants are indicated in the table below. The automated external defibrillators are sold through three wholesalers. The shipping cost from each plant to the warehouse of each wholesaler along with the monthly demand from each wholesaler are also indicated in the table. The management of Heart Start now has asked their top management scientist (you) to address the following two questions. How many automated external defibrillators should be produced in each plant, and how should they be distributed to each of the three wholesaler warehouses so as to minimize the combined cost of production and shipping? Formulate and solve a linear programming model in a spreadsheet.

	Unit Shipping Cost			Unit Production Cost	Monthly Production Capacity
	Warehouse 1	Warehouse 2	Warehouse 3		
Plant A	$22	$14	$30	$600	100
Plant B	$16	$20	$24	$625	120
Monthly Demand	80	60	70		

6.S5. Bidding for Classes

In the MBA program at a prestigious university in the Pacific Northwest, students bid for electives in the second year of their program. Each student has 100 points to bid (total) and must take two electives. There are four electives available: Management

Science (MS), Finance (Fin), Operations Management (OM), and Marketing (Mkt). Each class is limited to 5 students. The bids submitted for each of the 10 students are shown in the table below.

page 272

Student Bids for Classes				
Student	**MS**	**Fin**	**OM**	**Mkt**
Hyun	60	10	10	20
Fred	20	20	40	20
Alicia	45	45	5	5
Eric	50	20	5	25
Susan	30	30	30	10
Liz	50	50	0	0
Carlos	70	20	10	0
Haresh	25	25	35	15
Tony	35	15	35	15
Jasmine	60	10	10	20

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model to determine an assignment of students to classes so as to maximize the total bid points of the assignments.

b. Does the resulting solution seem like a fair assignment?

c. Which alternative objectives might lead to a fairer assignment?

Problems

An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

6.1. Reconsider the Super Grain Corp. case study as presented in Section 6.1. The advertising firm, Giacomi & Jackowitz, now has suggested a fourth promising advertising medium—radio commercials—to promote the company's new breakfast cereal, Crunchy Start. Young children are potentially major consumers of this cereal, but parents of young children (the major potential purchasers) often are too busy to do much reading (so may miss the company's advertisements in Sunday supplements) or even to watch the Saturday morning programs for children where the company's television commercials are aired. However, these parents do tend to listen to the radio during the commute to and from work. Therefore, to better reach these parents, Giacomi & Jackowitz suggests giving consideration to running commercials for

Crunchy Start on nationally syndicated radio programs that appeal to young adults during typical commuting hours.

Giacomi & Jackowitz estimates that the cost of developing each new radio commercial would be $50,000, and that the expected number of exposures per commercial would be 900,000. The firm has determined that 10 spots are available for different radio commercials, and each one would cost $200,000 for a normal run.

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the revised advertising-mix problem that includes this fourth advertising medium. Identify the data cells, the changing cells, and the objective cell. Also show the Excel equation for each output cell expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function.

b. Indicate why this spreadsheet model is a linear programming model.

c. Express this model in algebraic form.

6.2. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for INDEVAL that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 6.2. Briefly describe how linear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various benefits that resulted from this study.

6.3.* Consider a resource-allocation problem having the following data.

page 273

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
1	2	1	10
2	3	3	20
3	2	4	20

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
Contribution per unit	$20	$30	

Contribution per unit = profit per unit of the activity.

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

page 274

b. Use the spreadsheet to check the following solutions: (x_1, x_2) = (2, 2), (3, 3), (2, 4), (4, 2), (3, 4), (4, 3). Which of these solutions are feasible? Which of these feasible solutions has the best value of the objective function?

c. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

d. Express this model in algebraic form.

e. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

6.4. Consider a resource-allocation problem having the following data.

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity			Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	3	
A	30	20	0	500
B	0	10	40	600
C	20	20	30	1,000
Contribution per unit	$50	$40	$70	

Contribution per unit = profit per unit of the activity.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Express this model in algebraic form.

6.5. Consider a resource-allocation problem having the following data.

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity 1	2	3	4	Amount of Resource Available
P	3	5	−2	4	400
Q	4	−1	3	2	300
R	6	3	2	−1	400
S	−2	2	5	3	300
Contribution per unit	$11	$9	$8	$9	

Contribution per unit = profit per unit of the activity.

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Make five guesses of your own choosing for the optimal solution. Use the spreadsheet to check each one for feasibility and, if feasible, for the value of the objective function. Which feasible guess has the best objective function value?

c. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

6.6.* The Omega Manufacturing Company has discontinued the production of a certain unprofitable product line. This act created considerable excess production capacity. Management is considering devoting this excess capacity to one or more of three products, Products 1, 2, and 3. The available capacity of the machines that might limit output is summarized in the following table.

Machine Type	Available Time (in Machine-Hours per Week)
Milling machine	500
Lathe	350

Machine Type	Available Time (in Machine-Hours per Week)
Grinder	150

The number of machine-hours required for each unit of the respective products are shown in the next table.

	Productivity Coefficient (in Machine-Hours per Unit)		
Machine Type	**Product 1**	**Product 2**	**Product 3**
Milling machine	9	3	5
Lathe	5	4	0
Grinder	3	0	2

The Sales Department indicates that the sales potential for Products 1 and 2 exceeds the maximum production rate and that the sales potential for product 3 is 20 units per week. The unit profit would be $50, $20, and $25, respectively, for Products 1, 2, and 3. The objective is to determine how much of each product Omega should produce to maximize profit.

a. Indicate why this is a resource-allocation problem by identifying both the activities and the limited resources to be allocated to these activities.

b. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

c. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

d. Formulate a spreadsheet model for this problem. Identify the data cells, the changing cells, the objective cell, and the other output cells. Also show the Excel equation for

each output cell expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function. Then use Solver to solve the model.

e. Summarize the model in algebraic form.

6.7. Carlos Butler is the production manager for the Bilco Corporation, which produces three types of spare parts for automobiles. The manufacture of each part requires processing on each of two machines, with the following processing times (in hours).

	Part		
Machine	**A**	**B**	**C**
1	0.02	0.03	0.05
2	0.05	0.02	0.04

Each machine is available 40 hours per month. Each part manufactured will yield a unit profit as follows:

	Part		
	A	**B**	**C**
Profit	$50	$40	$30

Carlos wants to determine the mix of spare parts to produce to maximize total profit.

a. Identify both the activities and the resources for this resource-allocation problem.

b. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Make three guesses of your own choosing for the optimal solution. Use the spreadsheet to check each one for feasibility and, if feasible, for the value of the objective function. Which feasible guess has the best objective function value?

d. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

e. Express the model in algebraic form.

6.8. Consider the following algebraic formulation of a resource-allocation problem with three resources, where the decisions to be made are the levels of three activities (A_1, A_2, and A_3).

$$\text{Maximize Profit} = 20A_1 + 40A_2 + 30A_3$$

subject to

Resource 1 : 3 *A*1 + 5 *A*2 + 4 *A*3 ≤ 400 (amount *A*vailable)

Resource 2 : *A*1 + *A*2 + *A*3 ≤ 100 (amount available)

Resource 3 : *A*1 + 3 *A*2 + 2 *A*3 ≤ 200 (amount available)

and

$$A_1 \geq 0 \quad A_2 \geq 0 \quad A_3 \geq 0$$

Formulate and solve the spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.9. Consider a cost–benefit–trade-off problem having the following data.

	Benefit Contribution per Unit of Each Activity		
Benefit	**1**	**2**	**Minimum Acceptable Level**
1	65	63	60
2	2	2	30
3	7	9	126
Unit cost	$60	$50	

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Use the spreadsheet to check the following solutions: (x_1, x_2) = (7, 7), (7, 8), (8, 7), (8, 8), (8, 9), (9, 8). Which of these solutions are feasible? Which of these feasible solutions has the best value of the objective function?

c. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

d. Express the model in algebraic form.

e. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

6.10. Consider a cost–benefit–trade-off problem having the following data.

	Benefit Contribution per Unit of Each Activity				
Benefit	1	2	3	4	Minimum Acceptable Level
P	2	– 1	4	3	80
Q	1	4	– 1	2	60
R	3	5	4	– 1	110
Unit cost	$400	$600	$500	$300	

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Make five guesses of your own choosing for the optimal solution. Use the spreadsheet to check each one for feasibility and, if feasible, for the value of the objective function. Which feasible guess has the best objective function value?

c. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

6.11.* Fred Jonasson manages a family-owned farm. To supplement several food products grown on the farm, Fred also raises pigs for market. He now wishes to determine the quantities of the available types of feed (corn, tankage, and alfalfa) that should be given to each pig. Since pigs will eat any mix of these feed types, the objective is to determine which mix will meet certain nutritional requirements at a *minimum cost.* The number of units of each type of basic nutritional ingredient contained within a kilogram of each feed type is given in the following table, along with the daily nutritional requirements and feed costs.

Nutritional Ingredient	Kilogram of Corn	Kilogram of Tankage	Kilogram of Alfalfa	Minimum Daily Requirement
Carbohydrates	90	20	40	200
Protein	30	80	60	180
Vitamins	10	20	60	150
Cost (¢)	84	72	60	

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Use the spreadsheet to check if $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (1, 2, 2)$ is a feasible solution and, if so, what the daily cost would be for this diet. How many units of each nutritional ingredient would this diet provide daily?

c. Take a few minutes to use a trial-and-error approach with the spreadsheet to develop your best guess for the optimal solution. What is the daily cost for your solution?

d. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

e. Express the model in algebraic form.

6.12. Maureen Laird is the chief financial officer for the Alva Electric Co., a major public utility in the Midwest. The company has scheduled the construction of new hydroelectric plants 5, 10, and 20 years from now to meet the needs of the growing population in the region served by the company. To cover the construction costs, Maureen needs to invest some of the company's money now to meet these future cash flow needs. Maureen may purchase only three kinds of financial assets, each of which costs $1 million per unit. Fractional units may be purchased. The assets produce income 5, 10, and 20 years from now, and that income is needed to cover minimum cash flow requirements in those years, as shown in the following table.

	Income per Unit of Asset			
Year	Asset 1	Asset 2	Asset 3	Minimum Cash Flow Required
5	$8 million	$4 million	$2 million	$1.6 billion
10	2 million	2 million	4 million	400 million
20	0	6 million	8 million	1.2 billion

Maureen wishes to determine the mix of investments in these assets that will cover the cash flow requirements while minimizing the total amount invested.

a. Formulate a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Use the spreadsheet to check the possibility of purchasing 100 units of asset 1, 100 units of asset 2, and 200 units of asset 3. How much cash flow would this mix of investments generate 5, 10, and 20 years from now? What would be the total amount invested?

c. Take a few minutes to use a trial-and-error approach with the spreadsheet to develop your best guess for the optimal solution. What is the total amount invested for your solution?

d. Use Solver to find an optimal solution.

e. Summarize the model in algebraic form.

6.13. Web Mercantile sells many household products through an online catalog. The company needs substantial warehouse space for storing its goods. Plans now are being made for leasing warehouse storage space over the next five months. Just how much space will be required in each of these months is known. However, since these space requirements are quite different, it may be most economical to lease only the amount needed each month on a month-by-month basis. On the other hand, the additional cost for leasing space for additional months is much less than for the first month, so it may be less expensive to lease the maximum amount needed for the entire five months. Another option is the intermediate approach of changing the total amount of space leased (by adding a new lease and/or having an old lease expire) at least once but not every month.

The space requirement and the leasing costs for the various leasing periods are as follows.

page 275

Month	Required Space (Square Feet)
1	30,000
2	20,000

Month	Required Space (Square Feet)
3	40,000
4	10,000
5	50,000

Leasing Period (Months)	Cost per Sq. Ft. Leased
1	$ 65
2	100
3	135
4	160
5	190

The objective is to minimize the total leasing cost for meeting the space requirements.

a. Indicate why this is a cost–benefit–trade-off problem by identifying both the activities and the benefits being sought from these activities.

b. Identify verbally the decisions to be made, the constraints on these decisions, and the overall measure of performance for the decisions.

c. Convert these verbal descriptions of the constraints and the measure of performance into quantitative expressions in terms of the data and decisions.

d. Formulate a spreadsheet model for this problem. Identify the data cells, the changing cells, the objective cell, and the other output cells. Also show the Excel equation for each output cell expressed as a SUMPRODUCT function. Then use Solver to solve the model.

e. Summarize the model in algebraic form.

6.14. Consider the following algebraic formulation of a cost–benefit–trade-off problem involving three benefits, where the

decisions to be made are the levels of four activities (A_1, A_2, A_3, and A_4):

$$\text{Minimize Cost} = 2A_1 + A_2 - A_3 + 3A_4$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Benefit 1: } 3A_1 + A_2 - 2A_3 + 5A_4 \geq 80 \text{ (minimum acceptable level)} \\
&\text{Benefit 2: } A_1 - A_2 + A_4 \geq 10 \text{ (minimum acceptable level)} \\
&\text{Benefit 3: } A_1 + A_2 - A_3 + 2A_4 \geq 30 \text{ (minimum acceptable level)}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$A_1 \geq 0 \qquad A_2 \geq 0 \qquad A_3 \geq 0 \qquad A_4 \geq 0$$

Formulate and solve the spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.15. Larry Edison is the director of the Computer Center for Buckly College. He now needs to schedule the staffing of the center. It is open from 8 AM until midnight. Larry has monitored the usage of the center at various times of the day and determined that the following number of computer consultants (qualified graduate students) are required.

Time of Day	Minimum Number of Consultants Required to Be on Duty
8 AM–noon	6
Noon–4 PM	8
4 PM–8 PM	12
8 PM–midnight	6

Two types of computer consultants can be hired: full-time and part-time. The full-time consultants work for eight consecutive hours in any of the following shifts: morning (8 AM–4 PM), afternoon (noon–8 PM), and evening (4 PM–midnight). Full-time consultants are paid $17.50 per hour.

Part-time consultants can be hired to work any of the four shifts listed in the table. Part-time consultants are paid $15 per hour.

An additional requirement is that during every time period, there must be at least two full-time consultants on duty for every part-time consultant on duty.

Larry would like to determine how many full-time and part-time consultants should work each shift to meet the above requirements at the minimum possible cost.

a. Which category of linear programming problem does this problem fit? Why?

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Summarize the model in algebraic form.

6.16.* The Medequip Company produces precision medical diagnostic equipment at two factories. Three medical centers have placed orders for this month's production output. The following table shows what the cost would be for shipping each unit from each factory to each of these customers. Also shown are the number of units that will be produced at each factory and the number of units ordered by each customer.

A decision now needs to be made about the shipping plan for how many units to ship from each factory to each customer.

a. Which category of linear programming problem does this problem fit? Why?

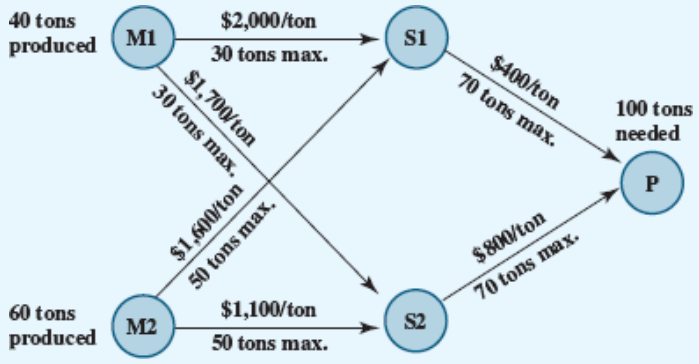
b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Summarize this formulation in algebraic form.

From \ To	Unit Shipping Cost: Customer 1	Customer 2	Customer 3	Output
Factory 1	$600	$800	$700	400 units
Factory 2	400	900	600	500 units
Order size	300 units	200 units	400 units	

6.17. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for the Chevron Corporation that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 6.4. Briefly describe how linear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various benefits that resulted from this study.

6.18. The Fagersta Steelworks currently is working two mines to obtain its iron ore. This iron ore is shipped to either of two storage facilities. When needed, it then is shipped on to the company's steel plant. The diagram below depicts this distribution network, page 276 where M1 and M2 are the two mines, S1 and S2 are the two storage facilities, and P is the steel plant. The diagram also shows the monthly amounts produced at the mines and needed at the plant, as well as the shipping cost and the maximum amount that can be shipped per month through each shipping lane.



Management now wants to determine the most economical plan for shipping the iron ore from the mines through the distribution network to the steel plant.

a. Identify all the requirements that will need to be expressed in fixed-requirement constraints.

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Express this model in algebraic form.

6.19.* Al Ferris has $60,000 that he wishes to invest now in order to use the accumulation for purchasing a retirement annuity in five years. After consulting with his financial advisor, he has been offered four types of fixed-income investments, which we will label as investments *A, B, C,* and *D.*

Investments *A* and *B* are available at the beginning of each of the next five years (call them years 1 to 5). Each dollar invested in *A* at the beginning of a year returns $1.40 (a profit of $0.40) two years later (in time for immediate reinvestment). Each dollar invested in *B* at the beginning of a year returns $1.70 three years later.

Investments *C* and *D* will each be available at one time in the future. Each dollar invested in *C* at the beginning of year 2 returns $1.90 at the end of year 5. Each dollar invested in *D* at the beginning of year 5 returns $1.30 at the end of year 5.

Al wishes to know which investment plan maximizes the amount of money that can be accumulated by the beginning of year 6.

a. For this problem, all its functional constraints can be expressed as fixed-requirement constraints. To do this, let A_t, B_t, C_t, and D_t be the amounts invested in investments *A, B, C,* and *D,* respectively, at the beginning of year t for each t where the investment is available and will mature by the end of year 5. Also let R_t be the number of available dollars *not* invested at the beginning of year t (and so available for investment in a later year). Thus, the amount invested at the beginning of year t *plus* R_t must equal the number of dollars available for investment at that time. Write such an equation in terms of the relevant variables above for the beginning of each of the five years to obtain the five fixed-requirement constraints for this problem.

b. Formulate a complete linear programming model for this problem in algebraic form.

c. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

6.20. The Metalco Company desires to blend a new alloy of 40 percent tin, 35 percent zinc, and 25 percent lead from several available alloys having the following properties.

	Alloy				
Property	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**
Percentage of tin	60	25	45	20	50
Percentage of zinc	10	15	45	50	40
Percentage of lead	30	60	10	30	10
Cost ($/lb)	22	20	25	24	27

The objective is to determine the proportions of these alloys that should be blended to produce the new alloy at a minimum cost.

a. Identify all the requirements that will need to be expressed in fixed-requirement constraints.

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Express this model in algebraic form.

6.21. The Weigelt Corporation has three branch plants with excess production capacity. Fortunately, the corporation has a new product ready to begin production, and all three plants have this capability, so some of the excess capacity can be used in this way. This product can be made in three sizes—large, medium, and small—that yield a net unit profit of $420, $360, and $300, respectively. Plants 1, 2, and 3 have the excess capacity to produce 750, 900, and 450 units per day of this product, respectively, regardless of the size or combination of sizes involved.

The amount of available in-process storage space also imposes a limitation on the production rates of the new product. Plants 1, 2, and 3 have 13,000, 12,000, and 5,000 square feet, respectively, of in-process storage space available for a day's production of this product. Each unit of the large, medium, and small sizes produced per day requires 20, 15, and 12 square feet, respectively.

Sales forecasts indicate that if available, 900, 1,200, and 750 units of the large, medium, and small sizes, respectively, would be sold per day.

At each plant, some employees will need to be laid off unless most of the plant's excess production capacity can be used to

produce the new product. To avoid layoffs if possible, management has decided that the plants should use the same percentage of their excess capacity to produce the new product.

Management wishes to know how much of each of the sizes should be produced by each of the plants to maximize profit.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this mixed problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Express the model in algebraic form.

6.22.* A cargo plane has three compartments for storing cargo: front, center, and back. These compartments have capacity limits on both *weight* and *space,* as summarized below.

Compartment	Weight Capacity (Tons)	Space Capacity (Cubic Feet)
Front	12	7,000
Center	18	9,000
Back	10	5,000

page 277

Furthermore, the weight of the cargo in the respective compartments must be the same proportion of that compartment's weight capacity to maintain the balance of the airplane.

The following four cargoes have been offered for shipment on an upcoming flight as space is available.

Cargo	Weight (Tons)	Volume (Cubic Feet/Ton)	Profit ($/Ton)
1	20	500	320
2	16	700	400
3	25	600	360
4	13	400	290

Any portion of these cargoes can be accepted. The objective is to determine how much (if any) of each cargo should be accepted and how to distribute each among the compartments to maximize the total profit for the flight.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this mixed problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Express the model in algebraic form.

6.23. Comfortable Hands is a company that features a product line of winter gloves for the entire family—men, women, and children. They are trying to decide what mix of these three types of gloves to produce.

Comfortable Hands's manufacturing labor force is unionized. Each full-time employee works a 40-hour week. In addition, by union contract, the number of full-time employees can never drop below 20. Nonunion, part-time workers also can be hired with the following union-imposed restrictions: (1) each part-time worker works 20 hours per week and (2) there must be at least two full-time employees for each part-time employee.

All three types of gloves are made out of the same 100 percent genuine cowhide leather. Comfortable Hands has a long-term contract with a supplier of the leather and receives a 5,000-square-foot shipment of the material each week. The material requirements and labor requirements, along with the *gross profit* per glove sold (not considering labor costs), are given in the following table.

Glove	Material Required (Square Feet)	Labor Required (Minutes)	Gross Profit (per Pair)
Men's	2	30	$ 16
Women's	1.5	45	20
Children's	1	40	12

Each full-time employee earns $26 per hour, while each part-time employee earns $20 per hour. Management wishes to know what mix of each of the three types of gloves to produce per week, as well as how many full-time and part-time workers to employ.

They would like to maximize their *net profit*—their gross profit from sales minus their labor costs.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Summarize this formulation in algebraic form.

6.24. Oxbridge University maintains a powerful mainframe computer for research use by its faculty, Ph.D. students, and research associates. During all working hours, an operator must be available to operate and maintain the computer, as well as to perform some programming services. Beryl Ingram, the director of the computer facility, oversees the operation.

It is now the beginning of the fall semester and Beryl is confronted with the problem of assigning different working hours to her operators. Because all the operators are currently enrolled in the university, they are available to work only a limited number of hours each day.

There are six operators (four undergraduate students and two graduate students). They all have different wage rates because of differences in their experience with computers and in their programming ability. The following table shows their wage rates, along with the maximum number of hours that each can work each day.

		Maximum Hours of Availability				
Operators	Wage Rate	Mon.	Tue.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.
K. C.	$20.00/hour	6	0	6	0	6
D. H.	$20.20/hour	0	6	0	6	0
H. B.	$19.80/hour	4	8	4	0	4
S. C.	$19.60/hour	5	5	5	0	5
K. S.	$21.60/hour	3	0	3	8	0
N. K.	$22.60/hour	0	0	0	6	2

Each operator is guaranteed a certain minimum number of hours per week that will maintain an adequate knowledge of the operation. This level is set arbitrarily at 8 hours per week for the undergraduate students (K. C., D. H., H. B., and S. C.) and 7 hours per week for the graduate students (K. S. and N. K.).

The computer facility is to be open for operation from 8 AM to 10 PM Monday through Friday with exactly one operator on duty during

these hours. On Saturdays and Sundays, the computer is to be operated by other staff.

Because of a tight budget, Beryl has to minimize cost. She wishes to determine the number of hours she should assign to each operator on each day. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.25. Slim-Down Manufacturing makes a line of nutritionally complete, weight-reduction beverages. One of its products is a strawberry shake that is designed to be a complete meal. The strawberry shake consists of several ingredients. Some information about each of these ingredients is given next.

Ingredient	Calories from Fat (per tbsp.)	Total Calories (per tbsp.)	Vitamin Content (mg/ tbsp.)	Thickeners (mg/ tbsp.)	Cost (¢/ tbsp.)
Strawberry flavoring	1	50	20	3	10
Cream	75	100	0	8	8
Vitamin supplement	0	0	50	1	25
Artificial sweetener	0	120	0	2	15
Thickening agent	30	80	2	25	6

The nutritional requirements are as follows. The beverage must total between 380 and 420 calories (inclusive). No more than 20 percent of the total calories should come from fat. There must be at least 50 milligrams (mg) of vitamin content. For taste reasons, there must be at least two tablespoons (tbsp.) of strawberry flavoring for each tbsp. of artificial sweetener. Finally, to maintain proper thickness, there must be exactly 15 mg of thickeners in the beverage.

page 278

Management would like to select the quantity of each ingredient for the beverage that would minimize cost while meeting the above requirements.

a. Identify the requirements that lead to resource constraints, to benefit constraints, and to fixed-

requirement constraints.

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Summarize this formulation in algebraic form.

6.26. Joyce and Marvin run a day care for preschoolers. They are trying to decide what to feed the children for lunches. They would like to keep their costs down, but they also need to meet the nutritional requirements of the children. They have already decided to go with peanut butter and jelly sandwiches, and some combination of graham crackers, milk, and orange juice. The nutritional content of each food choice and its cost are given in the table below.

Food Item	Calories from Fat	Total Calories	Vitamin C (mg)	Protein (g)	Cost (¢)
Bread (1 slice)	10	70	0	3	5
Peanut butter (1 tbsp.)	75	100	0	4	4
Strawberry jelly (1 tbsp.)	0	50	3	0	7
Graham cracker (1 cracker)	20	60	0	1	8
Milk (1 cup)	70	150	2	8	15
Juice (1 cup)	0	100	120	1	35

The nutritional requirements are as follows. Each child should receive between 400 and 600 calories. No more than 30 percent of the total calories should come from fat. Each child should consume at least 60 milligrams (mg) of vitamin C and 12 grams (g) of protein. Furthermore, for practical reasons, each child needs exactly 2 slices of bread (to make the sandwich), at least twice as much peanut butter as jelly, and at least 1 cup of liquid (milk and/or juice).

Joyce and Marvin would like to select the food choices for each child that minimize cost while meeting the above requirements.

a. Identify the requirements that lead to resource constraints, to benefit constraints, and to fixed-

requirement constraints.

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

c. Express the model in algebraic form.

6.27. The Cost-Less Corp. supplies its four retail outlets from its four plants. The shipping cost per shipment from each plant to each retail outlet is given next.

	Unit Shipping Cost			
Retail Outlet:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
Plant				
1	$500	$600	$400	$200
2	200	900	100	300
3	300	400	200	100
4	200	100	300	200

Plants 1, 2, 3, and 4 make 10, 20, 20, and 10 shipments per month, respectively. Retail outlets 1, 2, 3, and 4 need to receive 20, 10, 10, and 20 shipments per month, respectively.

The distribution manager, Randy Smith, now wants to determine the best plan for how many shipments to send from each plant to the respective retail outlets each month. Randy's objective is to minimize the total shipping cost.

Formulate this problem as a transportation problem on a spreadsheet and then use Solver to obtain an optimal solution.

6.28. The Childfair Company has three plants producing child push chairs that are to be shipped to four distribution centers. Plants 1, 2, and 3 produce 12, 17, and 11 shipments per month, respectively. Each distribution center needs to receive 10 shipments per month. The distance from each plant to the respective distribution centers is given below.

	Distance to Distribution Center (Miles)			
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**
Plant				
1	800	1,300	400	700
2	1,100	1,400	600	1,000
3	600	1,200	800	900

The freight cost for each shipment is $100 plus 50 cents/mile.

How much should be shipped from each plant to each of the distribution centers to minimize the total shipping cost?

Formulate this problem as a transportation problem on a spreadsheet and then use Solver to obtain an optimal solution.

6.29. The Onenote Co. produces a single product at three plants for four customers. The three plants will produce 60, 80, and 40 units, respectively, during the next week. The firm has made a commitment to sell 40 units to customer 1, 60 units to customer 2, and at least 20 units to customer 3. Both customers 3 and 4 also want to buy as many of the remaining units as possible. The net profit associated with shipping a unit from plant *i* for sale to customer *j* is given by the following table.

	Customer			
	1	2	3	4
Plant				
1	$800	$700	$500	$200
2	500	200	100	300
3	600	400	300	500

Management wishes to know how many units to sell to customers 3 and 4 and how many units to ship from each of the plants to each of the customers to maximize profit. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.30. The Move-It Company has two plants building forklift trucks that then are shipped to three distribution centers. The production costs are the same at the two plants, and the cost of shipping each truck is shown below for each combination of plant and distribution center.

page 279

	Distribution Center		
	1	2	3
Plant			
A	$800	$700	$400

	Distribution Center		
	1	**2**	**3**
B	600	800	500

A total of 60 forklift trucks are produced and shipped per week. Each plant can produce and ship any amount up to a maximum of 50 trucks per week, so there is considerable flexibility on how to divide the total production between the two plants so as to reduce shipping costs. However, each distribution center must receive exactly 20 trucks per week.

Management's objective is to determine how many forklift trucks should be produced at each plant, and then what the overall shipping pattern should be to minimize total shipping cost. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.31. Redo Problem 6.30 when any distribution center may receive any quantity between 10 and 30 forklift trucks per week in order to further reduce total shipping cost, provided only that the total shipped to all three distribution centers must still equal 60 trucks per week.

6.32. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for the Standard Register Company (now Taylor Communications) that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 6.6. Briefly describe how the model for the assignment problem was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

6.33. Consider the assignment problem having the following cost table.

	Job		
	1	**2**	**3**
Person			
A	$5	$7	$4
B	3	6	5

	Job		
	1	2	3
C	2	3	4

The optimal solution is A-3, B-1, C-2, with a total cost of $10.

Formulate this problem on a spreadsheet and then use Solver to obtain the optimal solution identified above.

6.34. Four cargo ships will be used for shipping goods from one port to four other ports (labeled 1, 2, 3, 4). Any ship can be used for making any one of these four trips. However, because of differences in the ships and cargoes, the total cost of loading, transporting, and unloading the goods for the different ship– port combinations varies considerably, as shown in the following table.

	Port			
	1	2	3	4
Ship				
1	$500	$400	$600	$700
2	600	600	700	500
3	700	500	700	600
4	500	400	600	600

The objective is to assign the four ships to four different ports in such a way as to minimize the total cost for all four shipments.

a. Describe how this problem fits into the format for an assignment problem.

b. Formulate and solve this problem on a spreadsheet.

6.35. Reconsider Problem 6.30. Now distribution centers 1, 2, and 3 must receive exactly 10, 20, and 30 units per week, respectively. For administrative convenience, management has decided that each distribution center will be supplied totally by a single plant, so that one plant will supply one distribution center and the other plant will supply the other two distribution centers. The choice of these

assignments of plants to distribution centers is to be made solely on the basis of minimizing total shipping cost.

Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

6.36. Vincent Cardoza is the owner and manager of a machine shop that does custom order work. This Wednesday afternoon, he has received calls from two customers who would like to place rush orders. One is a trailer hitch company that would like some custom-made heavy-duty tow bars. The other is a mini-car-carrier company that needs some customized stabilizer bars. Both customers would like as many as possible by the end of the week (two working days). Since both products would require the use of the same two machines, Vincent needs to decide and inform the customers this afternoon about how many of each product he will agree to make over the next two days.

Each tow bar requires 3.2 hours on machine 1 and 2 hours on machine 2. Each stabilizer bar requires 2.4 hours on machine 1 and 3 hours on machine 2. Machine 1 will be available for 16 hours over the next two days and machine 2 will be available for 15 hours. The profit for each tow bar produced would be $130 and the profit for each stabilizer bar produced would be $150.

Vincent now wants to determine the mix of these production quantities that will maximize the total profit.

a. Formulate an integer programming model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve the model on a spreadsheet.

6.37. Pawtucket University is planning to buy new copier machines for its library. Three members of its Management Science Department are analyzing what to buy. They are considering two different models: Model A, a high-speed copier, and Model B, a lower speed but less expensive copier. Model A can handle 20,000 copies a day and costs $6,000. Model B can handle 10,000 copies a day but only costs $4,000. They would like to have at least six copiers so that they can spread them throughout the library. They also would like to have at least one high-speed copier. Finally, the copiers need to be able to handle a capacity of at least 75,000 copies per day. The objective is to determine the mix of these two copiers that will handle all these requirements at minimum cost.

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

b. Formulate this same model in algebraic form.

6.38. Northeastern Airlines is considering the purchase of new long-, medium-, and short-range jet passenger airplanes. The purchase price would be $201 million for each long-range plane, $150 million for each medium-range plane, and $105 million for each short-range plane. The board of directors has authorized a maximum commitment of $4.5 billion for these purchases. Regardless of which airplanes are purchased, air travel of all distances is expected to be sufficiently large that these planes would be utilized at essentially maximum capacity. It is estimated that the net annual profit (after capital recovery costs are subtracted) would be $12.6 million per long-range plane, $9 million per medium-range plane, and $6.9 million per short-range plane.

It is predicted that enough trained pilots will be available to the company to crew 30 new airplanes. If only short-range planes were purchased, the maintenance facilities would be able to handle 40 new planes. However, each medium-range plane is equivalent to $\frac{11}{3}$ short-range planes, and each long-range plane is equivalent to $\frac{12}{3}$ short-range planes in terms of their use of the maintenance facilities.

The information given here was obtained by a preliminary analysis of the problem. A more detailed analysis will be conducted subsequently. However, using the preceding data as a first approximation, management wishes to know how many planes of each type should be purchased to maximize profit.

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

b. Formulate this model in algebraic form.

Case 6-1

Shipping Wood to Market

Alabama Atlantic is a lumber company that has three sources of wood and five markets to be supplied. The annual availability of wood at sources 1, 2,

and 3 is 15, 20, and 15 million board feet, respectively. The amount that can be sold annually at markets 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 is 11, 12, 9, 10, and 8 million board feet, respectively.

	Unit Cost by Rail ($1,000s) to Market					Unit Cost by Ship ($1,000s) to Market				
Source	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5
1	61	72	45	55	66	31	38	24	—	35
2	69	78	60	49	56	36	43	28	24	31
3	59	66	63	61	47	—	33	36	32	26

In the past, the company has shipped the wood by train. However, because shipping costs have been increasing, the alternative of using ships to make some of the deliveries is being investigated. This alternative would require the company to invest in some ships. Except for these investment costs, the shipping costs in thousands of dollars per million board feet by rail and by water (when feasible) is given by the above table for each route.

The capital investment (in thousands of dollars) in ships required for each million board feet to be transported annually by ship along each route is given next.

	Unit Investment for Ships ($1,000s) to Market				
Source	1	2	3	4	5
1	275	303	238	—	285
2	293	318	270	250	265
3	—	283	275	268	240

Considering the expected useful life of the ships and the time value of money, the equivalent uniform annual cost of these investments is one-tenth the amount given in the table. The objective is to determine the overall shipping plan that minimizes the total equivalent uniform annual cost (including shipping costs).

You are the head of the management science and business analytics team that has been assigned the task of determining this shipping plan for each of the three options listed next.

Option 1: Continue shipping exclusively by rail.

Option 2: Switch to shipping exclusively by water (except where only rail is feasible).

Option 3: Ship by either rail or water, depending on which is less expensive for the particular route.

Present your results for each option. Compare.

Finally, consider the fact that these results are based on current shipping and investment costs, so that the decision on the option to adopt now should take into account management's projection of how these costs are likely to change in the future. For each option, describe a scenario of future cost changes that would justify adopting that option now.

Case 6-2

Capacity Concerns

Bentley Hamilton throws the business section of *The New York Times* onto the conference room table and watches as his associates jolt upright in their overstuffed chairs.

Mr. Hamilton wants to make a point.

He throws the front page of *The Wall Street Journal* on top of *The New York Times* and watches as his associates widen their eyes once heavy with boredom.

Mr. Hamilton wants to make a big point.

He then throws the front page of the *Financial Times* on top of the newspaper pile and watches as his associates dab the fine beads of sweat off their brows.

Mr. Hamilton wants his point indelibly etched into his associates' minds.

"I have just presented you with three leading financial newspapers carrying today's top business story," Mr. Hamilton declares in a tight, angry voice. "My dear associates, our company is going to hell in a hand basket! Shall I read you the headlines? From *The New York Times,* '**CommuniCorp** stock drops to lowest in 52 weeks.' From *The Wall Street Journal,* 'CommuniCorp loses 25 percent of the wireless router market in only one year.' Oh, and my favorite, from the *Financial Times,* 'CommuniCorp cannot CommuniCate: CommuniCorp stock drops because of internal communications disarray.' How did our company fall into such dire straits?"

Mr. Hamilton next points at a line sloping slightly upward on the conference room display. "This is a graph of our productivity over the last 12 months. As you can see from the graph, productivity in our router production facility has

increased steadily over the last year. Clearly, productivity is not the cause of our problem."

Mr. Hamilton next displays a second graph showing a line sloping steeply upward. "This is a graph of our missed or late orders over the last 12 months." Mr. Hamilton hears an audible gasp from his associates. "As you can see from the graph, our missed or late orders have increased steadily and significantly over the past 12 months. I think this trend explains why we have been losing market share, causing our stock to drop to its lowest level in 52 weeks. We have angered and lost the business of retailers, our customers who depend upon on-time deliveries to meet the demand of consumers."

"Why have we missed our delivery dates when our productivity level should have allowed us to fill all orders?" Mr. Hamilton asks. "I called several departments to ask this question."

"It turns out that we have been producing routers for the hell of it!" Mr. Hamilton says in disbelief. "The marketing and sales departments do not communicate with the manufacturing department, so manufacturing executives do not know what routers to produce to fill orders. The manufacturing executives want to keep the plant running, so they produce routers regardless of whether the routers have been ordered. Finished routers are sent to the warehouse, but marketing and sales executives do not know the number and styles of routers in the warehouse. They try to communicate with warehouse executives to determine if the routers in inventory can fill the orders, but they rarely receive answers to their questions."

Month 1	Month 2	Month 3	Month 4	Month 5
IN education				
	Install IN in sales			
		Install IN in manu-facturing		
			Install IN in ware-house	
				Install IN in marketing

Mr. Hamilton pauses and looks directly at his associates. "Ladies and gentlemen, it seems to me that we have a serious internal communications problem. I intend to correct this problem immediately. I want to begin by installing a companywide computer network to ensure that all departments

have access to critical documents and are able to communicate with each other more easily. Because this intranet will represent a large change from the current communications infrastructure, I expect some bugs in the system and some resistance from employees. I therefore want to phase in the installation of the intranet."

Mr. Hamilton passes the following time line and requirements chart to his associates (IN = intranet).

Department	Number of Employees
Sales	60
Manufacturing	200
Warehouse	30
Marketing	75

Mr. Hamilton proceeds to explain the time line and requirements chart. "In the first month, I do not want to bring any department onto the intranet; I simply want to disseminate information about it and get buy-in from employees. In the second month, I want to bring the sales department onto the intranet since the sales department receives all critical information from customers. In the third month, I want to bring the manufacturing department onto the intranet. In the fourth month, I want to install the intranet at the warehouse, and in the fifth and final month, I want to bring the marketing department onto the intranet. The chart below lists the number of employees requiring access to the intranet in each department."

Mr. Hamilton turns to Emily Jones, the head of Corporate Information Management. "I need your help in planning for the installation of the intranet. Specifically, the company needs to purchase servers for the internal network. Employees will connect to company servers and download information to their own desktop computers."

Mr. Hamilton passes Emily the following chart detailing the types of servers available, the number of employees each server supports, and the cost of each server.

Type of Server	Number of Employees Server Supports	Cost of Server

Mini Desktop Server	Up to 30 employees	$ 2,500
Desktop Server	Up to 80 employees	5,000
Workstation Server	Up to 200 employees	10,000
Full Rack Server	Up to 2,000 employees	25,000

"Emily, I need you to decide what servers to purchase and when to purchase them to minimize cost and to ensure that the company possesses enough server capacity to follow the intranet implementation timeline," Mr. Hamilton says. "For example, you may decide to buy one large server during the first month to support all employees, or buy several small servers during the first month to support all employees, or buy one small server each month to support each new group of employees gaining access to the intranet."

"There are several factors that complicate your decision," Mr. Hamilton continues. We can get a discount of 10 percent off each workstation server purchased, but only if we purchase servers in the first or second month. We can get a 25 percent discount off all full rack servers purchased in the first two months. You are also limited in the amount of money you can spend during the first month. CommuniCorp has already allocated much of the budget for the next two months, so you only have a total of $9,500 available to purchase servers in months 1 and 2. Finally, the manufacturing department requires at least one of the three more powerful servers. Have your decision on my desk at the end of the week."

a. Emily first decides to evaluate the number and type of servers to purchase on a month-to-month basis. For each month, formulate a spreadsheet model to determine which servers Emily should purchase in that month to minimize costs in that month and support the new users given your results for the preceding months. How many and which types of servers should she purchase in each month? How much is the total cost of the plan?

b. Emily realizes that she could perhaps achieve savings if she bought a larger server in the initial months to support users in the final months. She therefore decides to evaluate the number and type of servers to purchase over the entire planning period. Formulate a

spreadsheet model to determine which servers Emily should purchase in which months to minimize total cost and support all new users. How many and which types of servers should she purchase in each month? How much is the total cost of the plan?

c. Why is the answer using the first method different from that using the second method?

d. Are there other costs for which Emily is not accounting in her problem formulation? If so, what are they?

e. What further concerns might the various departments of CommuniCorp have regarding the intranet?

Case 6-3

Fabrics and Fall Fashions

From the 10th floor of her office building, Katherine Rally watches the swarms of New Yorkers fight their way through the streets infested with yellow cabs and the sidewalks littered with hot dog stands. On this sweltering July day, she pays particular attention to the fashions worn by the various women and wonders what they will choose to wear in the fall. Her thoughts are not simply random musings; they are critical to her work since she owns and manages **TrendLines,** an elite women's clothing company.

Today is an especially important day because she must meet with Ted Lawson, the production manager, to decide upon next month's production plan for the fall line. Specifically, she must determine the quantity of each clothing item she should produce given the plant's production capacity, limited resources, and demand forecasts. Accurate planning for next month's production is critical to fall sales since the items produced next month will appear in stores during September and women generally buy the majority of the fall fashions when they first appear in September.

She turns back to her sprawling glass desk and looks at the numerous papers covering it. Her eyes roam across the clothing patterns designed almost six months ago, the lists of material requirements for each pattern, and the lists of demand forecasts for each pattern determined by customer surveys at fashion shows. She remembers the hectic and sometimes nightmarish days of designing the fall line and presenting it at fashion shows in New York, Milan, and Paris. Ultimately, she paid her team of six designers a total of $860,000 for their work on her fall line. With the cost of hiring runway models, hair stylists, and make-up artists; sewing and fitting clothes; building the set;

choreographing and rehearsing the show; and renting the conference hall, each of the three fashion shows cost her an additional $2,700,000.

She studies the clothing patterns and material requirements. Her fall line consists of both professional and casual fashions. She determined the price for each clothing item by taking into account the quality and cost of material, the cost of labor and machining, the demand for the item, and the prestige of the TrendLines brand name.

page 283

The fall professional fashions include.

Clothing Item	Material Requirements	Price	Labor and Machine Cost
Tailored wool slacks	3 yards of wool 2 yards of acetate for lining	$300	$160
Cashmere sweater	1.5 yards of cashmere	450	150
Silk blouse	1.5 yards of silk	180	100
Silk camisole	0.5 yard of silk	120	60
Tailored skirt	2 yards of rayon 1.5 yards of acetate for lining	270	120
Wool blazer	2.5 yards of wool 1.5 yards of acetate for lining	320	140

The fall casual fashions include.

Clothing Item	Material Requirements	Price	Labor and Machine Cost
Velvet pants	3 yards of velvet 2 yards of acetate for lining	$175	$350

Clothing Item	Material Requirements	Price	Labor and Machine Cost
Cotton sweater	1.5 yards of cotton	130	60
Cotton miniskirt	0.5 yard of cotton	75	40
Velvet shirt	1.5 yards of velvet	200	160
Button-down blouse	1.5 yards of rayon	120	90

She knows that for the next month, she has ordered 45,000 yards of wool, 28,000 yards of acetate, 9,000 yards of cashmere, 18,000 yards of silk, 30,000 yards of rayon, 20,000 yards of velvet, and 30,000 yards of cotton for production. The prices of the materials are listed below.

Material	Price per Yard
Wool	$ 9.00
Acetate	1.50
Cashmere	60.00
Silk	13.00
Rayon	2.25
Velvet	12.00
Cotton	2.50

Any material that is not used in production can be sent back to the textile wholesaler for a full refund, although scrap material cannot be sent back to the wholesaler.

She knows that the production of both the silk blouse and cotton sweater leaves leftover scraps of material. Specifically, for the production of one silk blouse or one cotton sweater, 2 yards of silk and cotton, respectively, are needed. From these 2 yards, 1.5 yards are used for the silk blouse or the cotton sweater and 0.5 yard is left as scrap material. She does not want to

waste the material, so she plans to use the rectangular scrap of silk or cotton to produce a silk camisole or cotton miniskirt, respectively. Therefore, whenever a silk blouse is produced, a silk camisole is also produced. Likewise, whenever a cotton sweater is produced, a cotton miniskirt is also produced. Note that it is possible to produce a silk camisole without producing a silk blouse and a cotton miniskirt without producing a cotton sweater.

The demand forecasts indicate that some items have limited demand. Specifically, because the velvet pants and velvet shirts are fashion fads, TrendLines has forecasted that it can sell only 5,500 pairs of velvet pants and 6,000 velvet shirts. TrendLines does not want to produce more than the forecasted demand because once the pants and shirts go out of style, the company cannot sell them. TrendLines can produce less than the forecasted demand, however, since the company is not required to meet the demand. The cashmere sweater also has limited demand because it is quite expensive, and TrendLines knows it can sell at most 4,000 cashmere sweaters. The silk blouses and camisoles have limited demand because many women think silk is too hard to care for, and TrendLines projects that it can sell at most 12,000 silk blouses and 15,000 silk camisoles.

The demand forecasts also indicate that the wool slacks, tailored skirts, and wool blazers have a great demand because they are basic items needed in every professional wardrobe. Specifically, the demand is 7,000 pairs of wool slacks and 5,000 wool blazers. Katherine wants to meet at least 60 percent of the demand for these two items to maintain her loyal customer base and not lose business in the future. Although the demand for tailored skirts could not be estimated, Katherine feels she should make at least 2,800 of them.

a. Ted is trying to convince Katherine not to produce any velvet shirts since the demand for this fashion fad is quite low. He argues that this fashion fad alone accounts for $500,000 of the fixed design and other costs. The net contribution (price of clothing item – materials cost – labor cost) from selling the fashion fad should cover these fixed costs. Each velvet shirt generates a net contribution of $22. He argues that given the net contribution, even satisfying the maximum demand will not yield a profit. What do you think of Ted's argument?

b. Formulate and solve a linear programming problem to maximize profit given the production, resource, and demand constraints.

Before she makes her final decision, Katherine plans to explore the following questions independently, except where otherwise indicated.

c. The textile wholesaler informs Katherine that the velvet cannot be sent back because the demand forecasts show that the demand for velvet will decrease in the future. Katherine can therefore get no

refund for the velvet. How does this fact change the production plan?

d. What is an intuitive economic explanation for the difference between the solutions found in parts *b* and *c?*

e. The sewing staff encounters difficulties sewing the arms and lining into the wool blazer since the blazer pattern has an awkward shape and the heavy wool material is difficult to cut and sew. The increased labor time to sew a wool blazer increases the labor and machine cost for each blazer by $80. Given this new cost, how many of each clothing item should TrendLines produce to maximize profit?

page 284

f. The textile wholesaler informs Katherine that since another textile customer canceled his order, she can obtain an extra 10,000 yards of acetate. How many of each clothing item should TrendLines now produce to maximize profit?

g. TrendLines assumes that it can sell every item that was not sold during September and October in a big sale in November at 60 percent of the original price. Therefore, it can sell all items in unlimited quantity during the November sale. (The previously mentioned upper limits on demand only concern the sales during September and October.) What should the new production plan be to maximize profit?

Case 6-4

New Frontiers

Rob Richman, president of **AmeriBank,** takes off his glasses, rubs his eyes in exhaustion, and squints at the clock in his study. It reads 3 AM. For the last several hours, Rob has been poring over AmeriBank's financial statements from the last three quarters of operation. AmeriBank, a medium-sized bank with branches throughout the United States, is headed for dire economic straits. The bank, which provides transaction, savings, investment, and loan services, has been experiencing a steady decline in its net income over the past year, and trends show that the decline will continue. The bank is simply losing customers to nonbank and foreign bank competitors.

AmeriBank is not alone in its struggle to stay out of the red. From his daily industry readings, Rob knows that many American banks have been suffering significant losses because of increasing competition from nonbank and foreign

bank competitors offering services typically in the domain of American banks. Because the nonbank and foreign bank competitors specialize in particular services, they are able to better capture the market for those services by offering less expensive, more efficient, more convenient services. For example, large corporations now turn to foreign banks and commercial paper offerings for loans, and affluent Americans now turn to money-market funds for investment. Banks face the daunting challenge of distinguishing themselves from nonbank and foreign bank competitors.

Rob has concluded that one strategy for distinguishing AmeriBank from its competitors is to improve services that nonbank and foreign bank competitors do not readily provide: transaction services. He has decided that a more convenient transaction method must logically succeed the automatic teller machine, and he believes that electronic banking over the Internet allows this convenient transaction method. Over the Internet, customers are able to perform transactions on their desktop computers either at home or work. The explosion of the Internet means that most potential customers understand and use it. He therefore feels that if AmeriBank offers Web banking (as the practice of Internet banking is commonly called), the bank will attract many new customers.

Before Rob undertakes the project to make Web banking possible, however, he needs to understand the market for Web banking and the services AmeriBank should provide over the Internet. For example, should the bank only allow customers to access account balances and historical transaction information over the Internet, or should the bank develop a strategy to allow customers to make deposits and withdrawals over the Internet? Should the bank try to recapture a portion of the investment market by continuously running stock prices and allowing customers to make stock transactions over the Internet for a minimal fee? Therefore, Rob has concluded that a major survey project should be undertaken to learn what customers want.

Because AmeriBank is not in the business of performing surveys, Rob has decided to outsource the survey project to a professional survey company. He has opened the project up for bidding by several survey companies and will award the project to the company that is willing to perform the survey for the least cost. Rob provided each survey company with a list of survey requirements to ensure that AmeriBank receives the needed information for planning the Web banking project.

Because different age groups require different services, AmeriBank is interested in surveying four different age groups. The first group encompasses customers who are 18 to 25 years old. The bank assumes that this age group

has limited yearly income and performs minimal transactions. The second group encompasses customers who are 26 to 40 years old. This age group has significant sources of income, performs many transactions, requires numerous loans for new houses and cars, and invests in various securities. The third group encompasses customers who are 41 to 50 years old. These customers typically have the same level of income and perform the same number of transactions as the second age group, but the bank assumes that these customers are less likely to use Web banking since they have not become as comfortable with the explosion of computers or the Internet. Finally, the fourth group encompasses customers who are 51 years of age and over. These customers commonly crave security and require continuous information on retirement funds. The bank believes that it is highly unlikely that many customers in this age group will use Web banking, but the bank desires to learn the needs of this age group for the future. AmeriBank wants to interview 2,000 customers with at least 20 percent from the first age group, at least 27.5 percent from the second age group, at least 15 percent from the third age group, and at least 15 percent from the fourth age group.

Rob understands that some customers are uncomfortable with using the Internet. He therefore wants to ensure that the survey includes a mix of customers who know the Internet well and those that have less exposure to the Internet. To ensure that AmeriBank obtains the correct mix, he wants to interview at least 15 percent of customers from the Silicon Valley where Internet use is high, at least 35 percent of customers from big cities where Internet use is medium, and at least 20 percent of customers from small towns where Internet use is low.

Sophisticated Surveys is one of three survey companies competing for the project. It has performed an initial analysis of these survey requirements to determine the cost of surveying different populations. The costs per person surveyed are listed in the following table.

page 285

	Age Group			
Region	**18 to 25**	**26 to 40**	**41 to 50**	**51 and over**
Silicon Valley	$4.75	$6.50	$6.50	$5.00
Big cities	5.25	5.75	6.25	6.25
Small towns	6.50	7.50	7.50	7.25

Sophisticated Surveys explores the following options cumulatively.

a. Formulate a linear programming model to minimize costs while meeting all survey constraints imposed by AmeriBank.

b. If the profit margin for Sophisticated Surveys is 15 percent of cost, what bid will it submit?

c. After submitting its bid, Sophisticated Surveys is informed that it has the lowest cost but that AmeriBank does not like the solution. Specifically, Rob feels that the selected survey population is not representative enough of the banking customer population. Rob wants at least 50 people of each age group surveyed in each region. What is the new bid made by Sophisticated Surveys?

d. Rob feels that Sophisticated Surveys oversampled the 18-to-25-year-old population and the Silicon Valley population. He imposes a new constraint that no more than 600 individuals can be surveyed from the 18-to-25-year-old population and no more than 650 individuals can be surveyed from the Silicon Valley population. What is the new bid?

e. When Sophisticated Surveys calculated the cost of reaching and surveying particular individuals, the company thought that reaching individuals in young populations would be easiest. In a recently completed survey, however, Sophisticated Surveys learned that this assumption was wrong. The new costs for surveying the 18-to-25-year-old population are listed below.

Region	Cost per Person
Silicon Valley	$6.50
Big cities	6.75
Small towns	7.00

Given the new costs, what is the new bid?

f. To ensure the desired sampling of individuals, Rob imposes even stricter requirements. He fixes the exact percentage of people that should be surveyed from each population. The requirements are listed next.

Population	Percentage of People Surveyed
18 to 25	25%
26 to 40	35

Population	Percentage of People Surveyed
41 to 50	20
51 and over	20
Silicon Valley	20
Big cities	50
Small towns	30

By how much would these new requirements increase the cost of surveying for Sophisticated Surveys? Given the 15 percent profit margin, what would Sophisticated Surveys bid?

Case 6-5

Assigning Students to Schools

The **Springfield School Board** has made the decision to close one of its middle schools (sixth, seventh, and eighth grades) at the end of this school year and reassign all of next year's middle school students to the three remaining middle schools. The school district provides busing for all middle school students who must travel more than approximately a mile, so the school board wants a plan for reassigning the students that will minimize the total busing cost. The annual cost per student for busing from each of the six residential areas of the city to each of the schools is shown in the following table (along with other basic data for next year), where 0 indicates that busing is not needed and a dash indicates an infeasible assignment.

					Busing Cost per Student		
Area	Number of Students	Percentage in 6th Grade	Percentage in 7th Grade	Percentage in 8th Grade	School 1	School 2	School 3
1	450	32	38	30	$300	$ 0	$700
2	600	37	28	35	—	400	500
3	550	30	32	38	600	300	200
4	350	28	40	32	200	500	—
5	500	39	34	27	0	—	400
6	450	34	28	38	500	300	0
				School capacity:	900	1,100	1,000

The school board also has imposed the restriction that each grade must constitute between 30 and 36 percent of each school's

population. The above table shows the percentage of each area's middle school population for next year that falls into each of the three grades. The school attendance zone boundaries can be drawn so as to split any given area among more than one school, but assume that the percentages shown in the table will continue to hold for any partial assignment of an area to a school.

You have been hired as a management science consultant to assist the school board in determining how many students in each area should be assigned to each school.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem.

b. What is your resulting recommendation to the school board?

After seeing your recommendation, the school board expresses concern about all the splitting of residential areas among multiple schools. They indicate that they "would like to keep each neighborhood together."

c. Adjust your recommendation as well as you can to enable each area to be assigned to just one school. (Adding this restriction may force you to fudge on some other constraints.) How much does this increase the total busing cost? (This line of analysis will be pursued more rigorously in Case 7-3.) The school board is considering eliminating some busing to reduce costs. Option 1 is to only eliminate busing for students traveling 1 to 1.5 miles, where the cost per student is given in the table as $200. Option 2 is to also eliminate busing for students traveling 1.5 to 2 miles, where the estimated cost per student is $300.

d. Revise the model from part *a* to fit Option 1, and solve. Compare these results with those from part *b,* including the reduction in total busing cost.

e. Repeat part *d* for Option 2.

The school board now needs to choose among the three alternative busing plans (the current one or Option 1 or Option 2). One important factor is busing costs. However, the school board also wants to place equal weight on a second factor: the inconvenience and safety problems caused by forcing students to travel by foot or bicycle a substantial distance (more than a mile, and especially more than 1.5 miles). Therefore, they want to choose a plan that provides the best trade-off between these two factors.

f. Use your results from parts *b, d,* and *e* to summarize the key information related to these two factors that the school board needs

to make this decision.

g. Which decision do you think should be made? Why?

Note: This case will be continued in later chapters (Cases 8-4 and 10-3), so we suggest that you save your analysis, including your basic spreadsheet model.

Case 6-6

Reclaiming Solid Wastes

The **Save-It Company** operates a reclamation center that collects four types of solid waste materials and then treats them so that they can be amalgamated (treating and amalgamating are separate processes) into a salable product. Three different grades of this product can be made, depending on the mix of the materials used. (See the first table.) Although there is some flexibility in the mix for each grade, quality standards specify the minimum or maximum amount of the materials allowed in that product grade. (This minimum or maximum amount is the weight of the material expressed as a percentage of the total weight for that product grade.) For each of the two higher grades, a fixed percentage is specified for one of the materials. These specifications are given in the first table along with the cost of amalgamation and the selling price for each grade.

The reclamation center collects its solid waste materials from some regular sources and so is normally able to maintain a steady rate for treating them. The second table gives the quantities available for collection and treatment each week, as well as the cost of treatment, for each type of material.

Grade	Specification	Amalgamation Cost per Pound	Selling Price per Pound

Grade	Specification	Amalgamation Cost per Pound	Selling Price per Pound
A	Material 1: Not more than 30% of the total Material 2: Not less than 40% of the total Material 3: Not more than 50% of the total Material 4: Exactly 20% of the total	$3.00	$8.50
B	Material 1: Not more than 50% of the total Material 2: Not less than 10% of the total Material 4: Exactly 10% of the total	2.50	7.00
C	Material 1: Not more than 70% of the total	2.00	5.50

Material	Available Pounds/Week	Treatment Cost per Pound	Additional Restrictions
1	3,000	$3.00	1. For each material, at least half of the pounds/week available should be collected and treated.
2	2,000	6.00	

Material	Available Pounds/Week	Treatment Cost per Pound	Additional Restrictions
3	4,000	4.00	2. $30,000 per week should be used to treat these materials.
4	1,000	5.00	

page 287

The Save-It Company is solely owned by Green Earth, an organization that is devoted to dealing with environmental issues; Save-It's profits are all used to help support Green Earth's activities. Green Earth has raised contributions and grants, amounting to $30,000 per week, to be used exclusively to cover the entire treatment cost for the solid waste materials. The board of directors of Green Earth has instructed the management of Save-It to divide this money among the materials in such a way that *at least half* of the amount available of each material is actually collected and treated. These additional restrictions are listed in the second table.

Within the restrictions specified in the two tables, management wants to allocate the materials to product grades so as to maximize the total weekly profit (total sales income *minus* total amalgamation cost).

a. Formulate this problem in linear programming terms by identifying all the activities, resources, benefits, and fixed requirements that lurk within it.

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this linear programming problem.

c. Express this linear programming model in the spreadsheet in algebraic form.

Case 6-7

Project Pickings

Tazer, a pharmaceutical manufacturing company, entered the pharmaceutical market 15 years ago with the introduction of six new drugs. Five of the six drugs were simply permutations of existing drugs and therefore did not sell very heavily. The sixth drug, however, addressed hypertension and was a

huge success. Since Tazer had a patent on the hypertension drug, it experienced no competition, and profits from the hypertension drug alone kept Tazer in business. Pharmaceutical patents remain in force for 20 years, so this one has five more years before it expires.

During the past 15 years, Tazer continued a moderate amount of research and development, but it never stumbled upon a drug as successful as the hypertension drug. One reason is that the company never had the motivation to invest heavily in innovative research and development. The company was riding the profit wave generated by its hypertension drug and did not feel the need to commit significant resources to finding new drug breakthroughs.

Now Tazer is beginning to fear the pressure of competition. Tazer knows that once the patent expires in five years, generic drug manufacturing companies will swarm into the market like vultures. Historical trends show that generic drugs decrease sales of branded drugs by 75 percent.

Tazer is therefore looking to invest significant amounts of money in research and development this year to begin the search for a new breakthrough drug that will offer the company the same success as the hypertension drug. Tazer believes that if the company begins extensive research and development now, the probability of finding a successful drug shortly after the expiration of the hypertension patent will be high.

As head of research and development at Tazer, you are responsible for choosing potential projects and assigning project directors to lead each of the projects. After researching the needs of the market, analyzing the shortcomings of current drugs, and interviewing numerous scientists concerning the promising areas of medical research, you have decided that your department will pursue five separate projects, which are listed below: Project Up: Develop a more effective antidepressant that does not cause serious mood swings.

Project Stable: Develop a drug that addresses manic-depression.

Project Choice: Develop a less intrusive birth control method for women.

Project Hope: Develop a vaccine to prevent HIV infection.

Project Release: Develop a more effective drug to lower blood pressure.

For each of the five projects, you are only able to specify the medical ailment the research should address since you do not know what compounds will exist and be effective without research.

You also have five senior scientists to lead the five projects. You know that scientists are very temperamental people and will only work well if they are challenged and motivated by the project. To ensure that the senior scientists

are assigned to projects they find motivating, you have established a bidding system for the projects. You have given each of the five scientists 1,000 bid points. They assign bids to each project, giving a higher number of bid points to projects they most prefer to lead.

The table below provides the bids from the five senior scientists for the five individual projects.

You decide to evaluate a variety of scenarios you think are likely.

a. Given the bids, you need to assign one senior scientist to each of the five projects to maximize the preferences of the scientists. What are the assignments?

b. Dr. Rollins is being courted by Harvard Medical School to accept a faculty position. You are fighting desperately to keep her at Tazer, but the prestige of Harvard may lure her away. If this were to happen, the company would give up the project with the least enthusiasm. Which project would not be done?

	Unit Cost by Rail ($1,000s) to Market					Unit Cost by Ship ($1,000s) to Market				
Source	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5
1	61	72	45	55	66	31	38	24	—	35
2	69	78	60	49	56	36	43	28	24	31
3	59	66	63	61	47	—	33	36	32	26

c. If Dr. Rollins leaves, you do not want to sacrifice any project since researching only four projects decreases the probability of finding a breakthrough new drug. You decide that either Dr. Zuner or Dr. Mickey could lead two projects. Under these new conditions with just four senior scientists, which scientists will lead which projects to maximize preferences?

page 288

d. After Dr. Zuner was informed that she and Dr. Mickey are being considered for two projects, she decided to change her bids. Dr. Zuner's new bids for each of the projects are shown next.

Project Up: 20
Project Stable: 450
Project Choice: 451
Project Hope: 39
Project Release: 40

Under these new conditions with just four senior scientists, which scientists will lead which projects to maximize preferences?

e. Do you support the assignments found in part *d?* Why or why not?

f. Now you again consider all five scientists. You decide, however, that several scientists cannot lead certain projects. In particular, Dr. Mickey does not have experience with research on the immune system, so he cannot lead Project Hope. His family also has a history of manic-depression, and you feel that he would be too personally involved in Project Stable to serve as an effective project leader. Dr. Mickey therefore cannot lead Project Stable. Dr. Kvaal also does not have experience with research on the immune system and cannot lead Project Hope. In addition, Dr. Kvaal cannot lead Project Release because he does not have experience with research on the cardiovascular system. Finally, Dr. Rollins cannot lead Project Up because her family has a history of depression and you feel she would be too personally involved in the project to serve as an effective leader. Because Dr. Mickey and Dr. Kvaal cannot lead two of the five projects, they each have only 600 bid points. Dr. Rollins has only 800 bid points because she cannot lead one of the five projects. The following table provides the new bids of Dr. Mickey, Dr. Kvaal, and Dr. Rollins.

Project	Dr. Mickey	Dr. Kvaal	Dr. Rollins
Project Up	300	86	Can't lead
Project Stable	Can't lead	343	50
Project Choice	125	171	50
Project Hope	Can't lead	Can't lead	100
Project Release	175	Can't lead	600

Which scientists should lead which projects to maximize preferences?

g. You decide that Project Hope and Project Release are too complex to be led by only one scientist. Therefore, each of these projects will be assigned two scientists as project leaders. You decide to hire two more scientists in order to staff all projects: Dr. Arriaga and Dr. Santos. Because of religious reasons, neither of them want to lead Project Choice and so they assign 0 bid points to this project. The table below lists all projects, scientists, and their bids.

Which scientists should lead which projects to maximize preferences?

h. Do you think it is wise to base your decision in part *g* only on an optimal solution for a variant of an assignment problem?

[1]When presenting its estimates in this form, the firm is making two simplifying assumptions. One is that its cost for designing and developing each additional advertisement in a medium is roughly the same as for the first advertisement in that medium. The second is that its cost when working with one medium is unaffected by how much work it is doing (if any) with the other media.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 7

The Art of Modeling with Spreadsheets

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the general process for modeling in spreadsheets.
2. Describe some guidelines for building good spreadsheet models.
3. Apply both the general process for modeling in spreadsheets and the guidelines in this chapter to develop your own spreadsheet model from a description of the problem.
4. Identify some deficiencies in a poorly formulated spreadsheet model.
5. Apply a variety of techniques for debugging a spreadsheet model.

Nearly all managers now make extensive use of spreadsheets to analyze business problems. What they are doing is *modeling* with spreadsheets.

Spreadsheet modeling is a major emphasis throughout this book. Section 1.4 introduced a spreadsheet model for choosing an advertising budget. Section 4.3 used spreadsheet models for applying time series forecasting methods. Section 5.2 described how to use spreadsheets to formulate linear programming models. Chapter 6 focused on spreadsheet models for five key categories of linear programming problems: resource-allocation problems, cost–benefit –trade-off problems, mixed problems, transportation problems, and assignment problems. Many kinds of spreadsheet models are discussed in subsequent chapters as well. However, those presentations focus mostly on the characteristics of spreadsheet models that fit the management science and business analytics techniques (such as linear programming) being

covered in those chapters. We devote this chapter instead to the general *process* of building models with spreadsheets.

Modeling in spreadsheets is more an art than a science. There is no systematic procedure that invariably will lead to a single correct spreadsheet model. For example, if two people were given exactly the same business problem to analyze with a spreadsheet, their spreadsheet models would likely look quite different. There is no one right way of modeling any given problem. However, some models will be better than others.

Although no completely systematic procedure is available for modeling in spreadsheets, there is a general process that should be followed. This process has four major steps: (1) *plan* the spreadsheet model, (2) *build* the model, (3) *test* the model, and (4) *analyze* the model and its results. After introducing a case study in Section 7.1, the next section will describe this plan–build–test–analyze process in some detail and illustrate the process in the context of the case study. Section 7.2 also will discuss some ways of overcoming common stumbling blocks in the modeling process.

Unfortunately, despite its logical approach, there is no guarantee that the plan–build–test–analyze process will lead to a “good” spreadsheet model. A good spreadsheet model is easy to understand, easy to debug, and easy to modify. Section 7.3 presents some guidelines for building such models. This section also uses the case study in Section 7.1 to illustrate the difference between appropriate formulations and poor formulations of a model.

Even with an appropriate formulation, the initial versions of large spreadsheet models commonly will include some small but troublesome errors, such as inaccurate references to cell addresses or typographical errors when entering equations into cells. Indeed, some studies have shown that a surprisingly large number of errors typically occur in the first version of such models. These errors often can be difficult to track down. Section 7.4 presents some helpful ways to debug a spreadsheet model and root out such errors.

The overriding goal of this chapter is to provide a solid foundation for becoming a successful spreadsheet modeler. However, this chapter by itself will not turn you into a highly skilled modeler. Ultimately, to reach this point, you also will need to study various examples of good spreadsheet models in the different areas of management science and business analytics. In addition, you will need to have lots of practice in formulating your own models. This process will continue throughout the remainder of this book.

7.1 A CASE STUDY: THE EVERGLADE GOLDEN YEARS COMPANY CASH FLOW PROBLEM

The ***Everglade Golden Years Company*** operates upscale retirement communities in certain parts of southern Florida. The company was founded in 1946 by Alfred Lee, who was in the right place at the right time to enjoy many successful years during the boom in the Florida economy as many wealthy retirees flooded into the area. Today, the company continues to be run by the Lee family, with Alfred's great grandson, Sheldon Lee, as the CEO.

Because of the Covid-19 pandemic that began in early 2020, the past few years have been difficult ones for Everglade and the company's credit rating has suffered accordingly. Furthermore, the demand for retirement community housing has been light and Everglade has been unable to maintain full occupancy. However, this market has picked up recently and the future is looking brighter. Everglade has recently broken ground for the construction of a new retirement community and has more new construction planned over the next 10 years (2024 through 2033).

With only $1 million in cash reserves and negative cash flows looming soon, loans will be needed to satisfy the company policy of maintaining a balance of at least $500,000 at all times.

Julie Lee is the chief financial officer (CFO) at Everglade. She has spent the last week in front of her computer trying to come to grips with the company's imminent cash flow problem. Julie has projected Everglade's net cash flows over the next 10 years as shown in Table 7.1. With less money currently coming in than would be provided by full occupancy and with all the construction costs for the new retirement community, Everglade will have negative cash flow for the next few years. With only $1 million in cash reserves, it appears that Everglade will need to take out some loans in order to meet its financial obligations. Also, to protect against uncertainty, company policy dictates maintaining a balance of at least $500,000 in cash reserves at all times.

TABLE 7.1

Projected Net Cash Flows for the Everglade Golden Years Company over the Next 10 Years

Year	Projected Net Cash Flow (millions of dollars)
2024	−8
2025	−2
2026	−4
2027	3
2028	6
2029	3
2030	−4
2031	7
2032	−2
2033	10

Given the company's weak credit rating, the company's bank has offered two types of loans to Everglade at fairly high interest rates. The first type is a 10-year loan with interest-only payments made annually and then the entire principal repaid in a single balloon payment after 10 years. The interest rate on this long-term loan is 5 percent per year and it requires providing substantial collateral. The second option is a series of one-year loans that do not require significant collateral. These loans can be taken out each year as needed, but each must be repaid (with interest) the following year. Each new loan can be used to help repay the loan for the preceding year if needed. The interest rate for these short-term loans currently is projected to be 7 percent per year.

page 291

Armed with her cash flow projections and the loan options from the bank, Julie schedules a meeting with the CEO, Sheldon Lee. Their discussion is as follows:

Julie: Well, we really seem to be in a pickle. There is no way to meet our cash flow problems without borrowing money. Given the combination of our still-shaky credit rating, our unfavorable cash flows the next few years, and the current upward trend in interest rates, loans will be expensive.

Sheldon: I was afraid of that. What are our options?

Julie: I've talked to the bank, and we can take out a 10-year loan with an interest rate of 5 percent if we put up a lot of collateral. The other option is a series of one-year loans with very little collateral at a projected rate of 7 percent.

Sheldon: I'm not worried about the collateral because the Lee family has made it through rougher times for over 75 years and the future now looks bright after we get past this current rough patch. Once we get past our planned construction, we should be in great shape 10 years from now. But wow. That 5 percent rate sounds a lot better than the 7 percent for the one-year loans. Can we just borrow all that we need using the 10-year loan?

Julie: That was my initial reaction as well. However, after looking at the cash flow projections, I'm not sure the answer is so clear-cut. While we have negative cash flow for the next few years, the situation looks much brighter down the road. With a 10-year loan, we are obligated to keep the loan and make the interest payments for 10 years. The one-year loans are more flexible. We can borrow the money only in the years we need it. This way we can save on interest payments in the future.

Sheldon: Okay. I can see how the flexibility of the one-year loans could save us some money. Those loans also will look better if interest rates come down in future years.

Julie: Or they could go higher instead. There's no way to predict future interest rates, so we might as well just plan on the basis of the current projection of 7 percent per year.

Sheldon: Yes, you're right. So which do you recommend, a 10-year loan or a series of one-year loans?

Julie: Well, there's actually another option as well. We could consider a combination of the two types of loans. We could borrow some money long-term to get the lower interest rate and borrow some money short-term to retain flexibility.

Sheldon: That sounds complicated. What we want is a plan that will keep us solvent throughout the 10 years and then leave us with as large a cash balance as possible at the end of the 10 years after paying off all the loans. I also would like to see the amounts of the interest payments and when loan payments are due. Could you set this up on a spreadsheet to figure out the best plan?

The objective is to develop a financial plan that will keep the company solvent and then maximize the cash balance in 2034, after all the loans are paid off.

Julie: You bet. I'll try that and get back to you.

Sheldon: Great. Let's plan to meet again next week when you have your report ready.

You'll see in the next two sections how Julie carefully develops her spreadsheet model for this cash flow problem.

Review *Questions*

. What is the advantage of the long-term loan for Everglade?
. What is the advantage of the series of short-term loans for Everglade?
. What is the objective for the financial plan that needs to be developed?

7.2 OVERVIEW OF THE PROCESS OF MODELING WITH SPREADSHEETS

You will see later that a linear programming model can be incorporated into a spreadsheet to solve this problem. However, you also will see that the format of this spreadsheet model does not fit readily into any of the categories of linear programming models described in Chapter 6. Even the page 292 template given in Figure 6.8 that shows the format for a spreadsheet model of *mixed problems* (the broadest category of linear programming problems) does not help in formulating the model for the current problem. The reason is that the Everglade cash flow management problem is an example of a more complicated type of linear programming problem (a *dynamic problem* with many time periods) that requires starting from scratch in carefully formulating the spreadsheet model. Therefore, this example will nicely illustrate the process of modeling with spreadsheets when dealing with complicated problems of any type, including those discussed later in the book that do not fit linear programming.

Spaghetti code is a term from computer programming. It refers to computer code that is not logically organized and thus jumps all over the place, so it is jumbled like a plate of spaghetti.

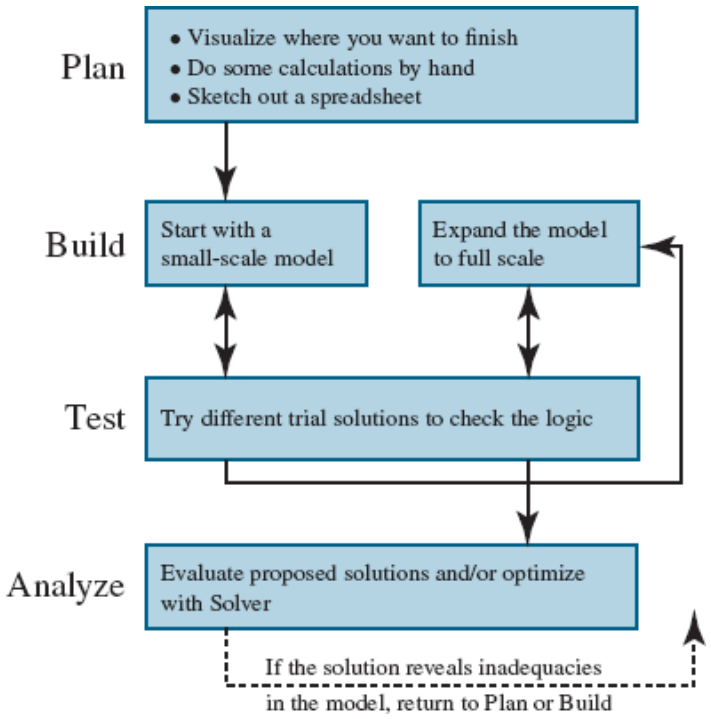
When presented with a problem like the Everglade problem, the temptation is to jump right in, launch Excel, and start entering a model. Resist this urge. Developing a spreadsheet model without proper planning inevitably leads to a model that is poorly organized and filled with "spaghetti code."

Part of the challenge of planning and developing a spreadsheet model is that there is no standard procedure to follow. It is more an art than a science.

However, to provide you with some structure as you begin learning this art, we suggest that you follow the modeling process depicted in Figure 7.1.

FIGURE 7.1

A flow diagram for the general plan–build–test– analyze process for modeling with spreadsheets.



As suggested by the figure, the four major steps in this process are to (1) plan, (2) build, (3) test, and (4) analyze the spreadsheet model. The process mainly flows in this order. However, the two-headed arrows between Build and Test indicate a back-and-forth process where testing frequently results in returning to the Build step to fix some problems discovered during the Test step. This back-and-forth movement between Build and Test may occur several times until the modeler is satisfied with the model. At the same time that this back and forth movement is occurring, the modeler may be involved with further building of the model. One strategy is to begin with a small version of the model to establish its basic logic and then, after testing verifies its accuracy, to expand to a full-scale model. Even after completing the testing and then the analyzing of the model, the process may return to the Build step or even the Plan step if the Analysis step reveals inadequacies in the model.

A modeler might go back and forth between the Build and Test steps several times.

Each of these four major steps may also include some detailed steps. For example, Figure 7.1 lists three detailed steps within the Plan step. Initially, when dealing with a fairly complicated problem, it is helpful to take some time to perform each of these detailed steps manually one at a time. However, as you become more experienced with modeling in spreadsheets, you may find yourself merging some of the detailed steps and quickly performing them mentally. An experienced modeler often is able to do some of these steps mentally, without working them out explicitly on paper. However, if you find yourself getting stuck, it is likely that you are missing a key element from one of the previous detailed steps. You then should go back a step or two and make sure that you have thoroughly completed those preceding steps.

page 293

We now describe the various components of the modeling process in the context of the Everglade cash flow problem. At the same time, we also point out some common stumbling blocks encountered while building a spreadsheet model and how these can be overcome.

Plan: Visualize Where You Want to Finish

One common stumbling block in the modeling process occurs right at the very beginning. Given a complicated situation like the one facing Julie at Everglade, sometimes it can be difficult to decide how to even get started. At this point, rather than focusing on the model and how to get it started, it can be helpful to think about what you need when you are done. For example, in Julie's case, she would be thinking now about what information she should provide in her final report to Sheldon. What kinds of numbers need to be included in the report? The answer to this question can quickly lead you to the heart of the problem and help get the modeling process started.

The main question Julie is faced with is *which loan,* or *combination of loans,* to use and in *what amounts,* so one set of numbers that are clearly needed will be the size of the loans to take. The long-term loan is taken in a single lump sum. Therefore, a single number is needed to indicate how much money to borrow now at the long-term rate. The short-term loan can be taken in any or all of the 10 years, so there are 10 numbers needed to indicate how much to borrow at the short-term rate in each given year.

In the report, Julie would also need to assure Sheldon that the business will remain solvent through the next 10 years. Therefore, the cash balances will need to be tracked over the next 10 years to make sure they can maintain the needed minimum balance. The report would also include information on when loan and interest payments are due and in what amounts. Finally, any

data that have been collected would be included, such as the various interest rates and projected net cash flows from the business. Table 7.2 summarizes the list of numbers that Julie would need to include in the final report.

TABLE 7.2

List of numbers that Julie will need to include in her final report to Sheldon

Numbers Needed for Final Report
Size of long-term loan
Size of short-term loans
Cash balance each year
Loan payments each year
Interest payments each year
Projected net cash flows each year
Loan interest rates

Given this list of numbers that are needed in the end, then you can start to think about how these numbers would fit into a model to try to find a good answer to the problem. Here are three questions you should ask yourself:

- What are the *decisions* that need to be addressed in the model? (The numbers representing these decisions will need to be displayed as *changing cells* in the model.)
- What is the *objective* (the overall measure of performance) that should be pursued when making these decisions? (The number representing the overall measure of performance will be the *objective cell* of the model.)
- What are the other kinds of *numbers* that need to be included in the spreadsheet model? (*data* will go into *data cells.* Certain other *results* will need to be calculated before making the decisions and these results will go into *output cells.*)

The *decisions* that Julie needs to address are the size of the loans to take (the first two sets of numbers in Table 7.2). These 11 numbers will be the *changing cells* in the spreadsheet model.

The *objective* when making these decisions is to maximize the cash balance after 10 years while also keeping the company solvent through 10 years. Therefore, the final cash balance will be the *objective cell* of the spreadsheet model.

The *other numbers* in the list represent either data (projected net cash flow from the business each year and loan interest rates) or results (cash balances each year, loan payments each year, and interest payments each year). The data will go into *data* cells in the spreadsheet model, while the results will need to be calculated, and will go into *output cells* in the spreadsheet model.

It is important to distinguish between the numbers that represent decisions (changing cells) and those that represent results (output cells). For instance, it may be tempting to include the cash balances as changing cells. These cells clearly change depending on the decisions made. However, the cash balances are a *result* of how much is borrowed, how much is paid, and all of the other cash flows. They cannot be chosen independently but instead are a function of the other numbers in the spreadsheet. The distinguishing characteristic of changing cells (the loan amounts) is that they do not depend on anything else. They represent the independent decisions being made. They impact the other numbers, but not vice versa.

At this stage in the process, you should have a clear idea of what the answer will look like, including what and how many changing cells are needed, and what kind of results (output cells) should be obtained.

At this point, you should know what changing cells and output cells are needed.

Plan: Do Some Calculations by Hand

When building a model, another common stumbling block can arise when trying to enter a formula in one of the output cells. For example, just how does Julie keep track of the cash balances in the Everglade cash flow problem? What formulas need to be entered? There are a lot of factors that enter into this calculation, so it is easy to get overwhelmed.

If you are getting stuck at this point, it can be a very useful exercise to do some calculations by hand. Just pick some numbers for the changing cells and determine with a calculator or pencil and paper what the results should be. For example, pick some loan amounts for Everglade and then calculate the company's resulting cash balance at the end of the first couple of years.

To illustrate, suppose that Everglade takes a long-term loan of $6 million and then adds short-term loans of $2 million in 2024 and $5 million in 2025. How much cash would the company have left at the end of 2024 and at the end of 2025?

These two quantities can be calculated by hand as follows. In 2024, Everglade has some initial money in the bank ($1 million), a negative cash flow from its business operations (−$8 million), and a cash inflow from the long-term and short-term loans ($6 million and $2 million, respectively). Thus, the ending balance for 2024 would be:

Ending balance (2024) = Starting balance	$1 million
+ Cash flow (2024)	−$8 million
+ LT loan (2024)	+$6 million
+ ST loan (2024)	+$2 million
	$1 million

The calculations for the year 2025 are a little more complicated. In addition to the starting balance left over from 2024 ($1 million), negative cash flow from business operations for 2025 (−$2 million), and a new short-term loan for 2025 ($5 million), the company will need to make interest payments on its 2024 loans as well as pay back the short-term loan from 2024. The ending balance for 2025 is therefore:

Ending balance (2025) = Starting balance (from end of 2024)	$1 million
+ Cash flow (2025)	−$2 million
+ ST loan (2025)	+$5 million
−LT interest payment	−(5%)($6 million)
−ST interest payment	−(7%)($2 million)
−ST loan payback (2024)	−$2 million
	$1.56 million

Doing calculations by hand can help in a couple of ways. First, it can help clarify what formula should be entered for an output cell. For instance, looking at the by-hand calculations above, it appears that the formula for the ending balance for a particular year should be

page 295

$$\text{Ending balance} = \text{Starting balance} + \text{Cash flow} + \text{Loans} - \text{Interest payments} - \text{Loan paybacks}$$

Hand calculations can clarify what formulas are needed for the output cells.

Once a spreadsheet is laid out, this equation will make it straightforward to enter the proper cell references in the formula for the ending balance for any year in the spreadsheet model.

The second advantage of using hand calculations is that they can help to verify the spreadsheet model after it has been constructed. By plugging in a long-term loan of $6 million, along with short-term loans of $2 million in 2024 and $5 million in 2025, into a completed spreadsheet, the ending balances should be the same as calculated above. If they're not, this suggests an error in the spreadsheet model (assuming the hand calculations are correct).

Plan: Sketch Out a Spreadsheet

Any model typically has a large number of different elements that need to be included on the spreadsheet. For the Everglade problem, these would include some data cells (interest rates, starting balance, minimum balances, and cash flows), some changing cells (loan amounts), and a number of output cells (interest payments, loan paybacks, and ending balances). Therefore, a potential stumbling block can arise when trying to organize and lay out the spreadsheet model. Where should all the pieces fit on the spreadsheet? How do you begin putting together the spreadsheet?

Plan where the various blocks of data cells, changing cells, and output cells should go on the spreadsheet by sketching your layout ideas on paper.

Before firing up Excel and blindly entering the various elements, it can be helpful to sketch a layout of the spreadsheet. Is there a logical way to arrange the elements? A little planning at this stage can go a long way toward building a spreadsheet that is well organized. Don't bother with numbers at this point. Simply sketch out blocks on a piece of paper for the various data cells, changing cells, and output cells, and label them. Concentrate on the layout.

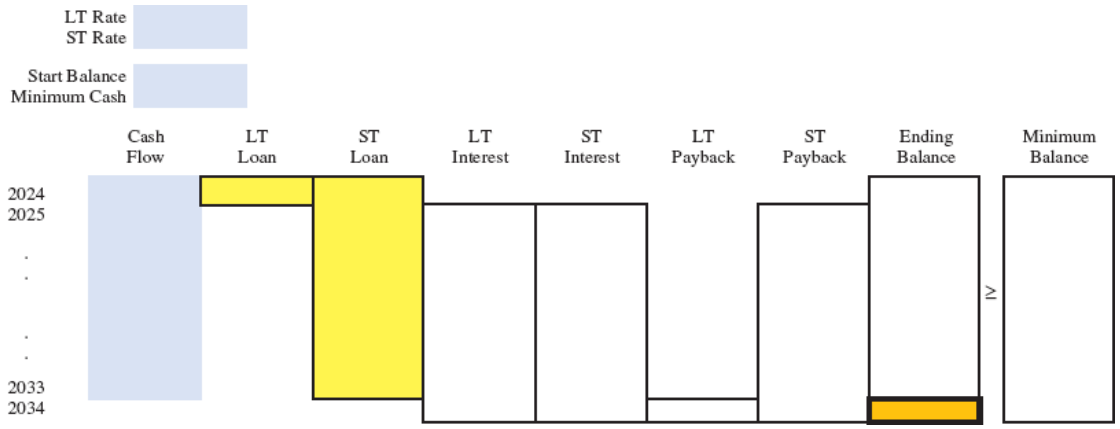
When sketching the layout, a key question for each block of numbers is whether it should be laid out in a row or a column, or as a two-dimensional table? When addressing this question for the various blocks of numbers, you should also ask whether there are common row or column headings for different blocks of cells? If so, try to arrange the blocks in consistent rows or columns so they can utilize a single set of headings.

Another guideline for sketching the layout is to try to arrange the spreadsheet so that it starts with the data at the top and progresses logically toward the objective cell at the bottom. This will be easier to understand and follow than if the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell are all scattered throughout the spreadsheet.

A sketch of a potential spreadsheet layout for the Everglade problem is shown in Figure 7.2. The data cells for the interest rates, starting balance, and minimum cash balance are at the top of the spreadsheet. All of the remaining elements in the spreadsheet then follow the same structure. The rows represent the different years (from 2024 through 2034). All the various cash inflows and outflows are then broken out in the columns, starting with the projected cash flow from the business operations (with data for each of the 10 years), continuing with the loan inflows, interest payments, and loan paybacks, and culminating with the ending balance (calculated for each year). The long-term loan is a one-time loan (in 2024), so it is sketched as a single cell. The short-term loan can occur in any of the 10 years (2024 through 2033), so it is sketched as a block of cells. The interest payments start one year after the loans. The long-term loan is paid back 10 years later (2034).

FIGURE 7.2

Sketch of the spreadsheet for Everglade's cash flow problem.



Organizing the elements with a consistent structure, like in Figure 7.2, not only saves having to retype the year labels for each element, but also makes the model easier to understand. Everything that happens in a given year is arranged together in a single row.

It is generally easiest to start sketching the portion of the layout where the data would be placed. The structure of the rest of the model should then follow the structure of the data cells. For example, once the projected cash flows data from Table 7.1 are sketched as a vertical column (with each year in a row), then it follows that the other cash flows should be structured the same way.

Note that the sketch of the layout shown in Figure 7.2 has a logical progression to the spreadsheet. The data for the problem are located at the top and left side of the spreadsheet. Then, since the cash flow, loan amounts, interest payments, and loan paybacks are all part of the calculation for the ending balance, the columns are arranged this way, with the ending balance directly to the right of all these other elements. Since Sheldon has indicated that the objective is to maximize the ending balance in 2034, this cell is designated to be the objective cell.

The sketch of a spreadsheet in Figure 7.2 has a logical progression, starting with the data on the top left and then moving through the calculations toward the objective cell on the bottom right.

Each year, the balance must be greater than the minimum required balance ($500,000). Since this will be a constraint in the model, it is logical to arrange the balance and minimum balance blocks of numbers adjacent to each other in the spreadsheet. You can put the ≥ signs on the sketch to remind yourself that these will be constraints.

Build: Start with a Small Version of the Spreadsheet

Once you've thought about a logical layout for the spreadsheet, it is finally time to open a new worksheet in Excel and start building the model. If it is a complicated model, you may want to start by building a small, readily manageable version of the model. The idea is to first make sure that you've got the logic of the model worked out correctly for the small version before expanding the model to full scale.

Work out the logic for a small version of the spreadsheet model before expanding to full size.

For example, in the Everglade problem, we could get started by building a model for just the first two years (2024 and 2025), like the spreadsheet shown in Figure 7.3.

FIGURE 7.3

A small version (years 2024 and 2025 only) of the spreadsheet for the Everglade cash flow management problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1		**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem (Years 2024 and 2025)**										
2												
3		LT Rate	5%									
4		ST Rate	7%									
5					(all cash figures in millions of dollars)							
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	−8	6	2					1.00	≥	0.50
12		2025	−2		5	−0.30	−0.14		−2.00	1.56	≥	0.50

	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
9	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11					=StartBalance+SUM(C11:I11)	≥	=MinimumCash
12	= −LTRate*LTLoan	= −STRate*E11		= −E11	=J11+SUM(C12:I12)	≥	=MinimumCash

Range Name	Cell
LTLoan	D11
LTRate	C3
MinimumCash	C7
StartBalance	C6
STRate	C4

This spreadsheet is set up to follow the layout suggested in the sketch of Figure 7.2. The loan amounts are in columns D and E. Since the interest payments are not due until the following year, the formulas in columns F and G refer to the loan amounts from the preceding year (LTLoan, or D11, for the long-term loan, and E11 for the short-term loan). The loan payments are calculated in columns H and I. Column H is blank because the long-term loan does not need to be repaid until 2034. The short-term loan is repaid one year later, so the formula in cell I12 refers to the short-term loan taken the preceding year (cell E11). The ending balance in 2024 is the starting balance plus the sum of all the various cash flows that occur in 2024 (cells C11:I11). The ending balance in 2025 is the ending balance in 2024 (cell J11) plus the sum of all the various cash flows that occur in 2025 (cells C12:I12). All these formulas are summarized below the spreadsheet in Figure 7.3.

Building a small version of the spreadsheet works very well for spreadsheets that have a time dimension. For example, instead of jumping right into a 10-year planning problem, we can start with the simpler problem of just looking at a couple of years. Once this smaller model is working correctly, you then can expand the model to 10 years.

Even if a spreadsheet model does not have a time dimension, the same concept of starting small can be applied. For example, if certain constraints considerably complicate a problem, start by working on a simpler problem without the difficult constraints. Get the simple model working and then move on to tackle the difficult constraints. If a model has many sets of output cells, you can build up a model piece by piece by working on one set of output cells at a time, making sure each set works correctly before moving on to the next.

Test: Test the Small Version of the Model

If you do start with a small version of the model first, be sure to test this version thoroughly to make sure that all the logic is correct. It is far better to fix a problem early, while the spreadsheet is still a manageable size, rather than later after an error has been propagated throughout a much larger spreadsheet.

To test the spreadsheet, try entering values in the changing cells for which you know what the values of the output cells should be, and then see if the spreadsheet gives the results that you expect. For example, in Figure 7.3, if zeroes are entered for the loan amounts, then the interest payments and loan payback quantities also should be zero. If $1 million is borrowed for both the long-term loan and the short-term loan, then the interest payments the following year should be $50,000 and $70,000, respectively. (Recall that the interest rates are 5 and 7 percent, respectively.) If Everglade takes out a $6 million long-term loan and a $2 million short-term loan in 2024, plus a $5 million short-term loan in 2025, then the ending balances should be $1 million for 2024 and $1.56 million for 2025 (based on the calculations done earlier by hand). All these tests work correctly for the spreadsheet in Figure 7.3, so we can be fairly certain that it is correct.

Try entering numbers in the changing cells for which you know what the values of the output cells should be.

If the output cells are not giving the results that you expect, then carefully look through the formulas to see if you can determine and fix the problem. Section 7.4 will give further guidance on some ways to debug a spreadsheet model.

Build: Expand the Model to Full-Scale Size

Once a small version of the spreadsheet has been tested to make sure all the formulas are correct and everything is working properly, the model can be

expanded to full-scale size. Excel's fill commands often can be used to quickly copy the formulas into the remainder of the model.

To illustrate this process, consider the small version of the Everglade spreadsheet in Figure 7.3, The formulas in columns F, G, I, J, and L can be copied using the Fill Down command in the Editing Group of the Home tab to obtain all the formulas shown in Figure 7.4. For example, selecting cells G12:G21 and choosing Fill Down will take the formula in cell G12 and copy it (while adjusting the cell address in Column E for the formula) into cells G13 through G21. We explain next how this works.

FIGURE 7.4

A complete spreadsheet model for the Everglade cash flow management problem, including the equations entered into the objective cell EndBalance (J21) and all the other output cells, to be used before calling on Solver. The entries in the changing cells, LTLoan (D11) and STLoan (E11:E20), are only a trial solution at this stage.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem**											
2												
3		LT Rate	5%									
4		ST Rate	7%									
5						(all cash figures in millions of dollars)						
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	−8	6	2					1.00	≥	0.5
12		2025	−2		5	−0.30	−0.14		−2	1.56	≥	0.5
13		2026	−4		0	−0.30	−0.35		−5	−8.09	≥	0.5
14		2027	3		0	−0.30	0		0	−5.39	≥	0.5
15		2028	6		0	−0.30	0		0	0.31	≥	0.5
16		2029	3		0	−0.30	0		0	3.01	≥	0.5
17		2030	−4		0	−0.30	0		0	−1.29	≥	0.5
18		2031	7		0	−0.30	0		0	5.41	≥	0.5
19		2032	−2		0	−0.30	0		0	3.11	≥	0.5
20		2033	10		0	−0.30	0		0	12.81	≥	0.5
21		2034				−0.30	0	−6	0	6.51	≥	0.5

	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
9	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11					=StartBalance+SUM(C11:I11)	≥	=MinimumCash
12	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E11		=−E11	=J11+SUM(C12:I12)	≥	=MinimumCash
13	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E12		=−E12	=J12+SUM(C13:I13)	≥	=MinimumCash
14	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E13		=−E13	=J13+SUM(C14:I14)	≥	=MinimumCash
15	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E14		=−E14	=J14+SUM(C15:I15)	≥	=MinimumCash
16	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E15		=−E15	=J15+SUM(C16:I16)	≥	=MinimumCash
17	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E16		=−E16	=J16+SUM(C17:I17)	≥	=MinimumCash
18	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E17		=−E17	=J17+SUM(C18:I18)	≥	=MinimumCash
19	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E18		=−E18	=J18+SUM(C19:I19)	≥	=MinimumCash
20	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E19		=−E19	=J19+SUM(C20:I20)	≥	=MinimumCash
21	=−LTRate*LTLoan	=−STRate*E20	=−LTLoan	=−E20	=J20+SUM(C21:I21)	≥	=MinimumCash

Range Name	Cells
CashFlow	C11:C20
EndBalance	J21
EndingBalance	J11:J21
LTLoan	D11
LTRate	C3
MinimumBalance	L11:L21
MinimumCash	C7
StartBalance	C6
STLoan	E11:E20
STRate	C4

Excel Tip A shortcut for filling down or filling across to the right is to select the cell you want to copy, click on the fill handle (the small box in the lower right-hand corner of the selection rectangle), and drag through the cells you want to fill.

Before using the fill commands to copy formulas, be sure that the relative and absolute references have been used appropriately. (Appendix A provides details about relative and absolute references.) A reference to a range name is an *absolute reference.* For example, in G12 (= − STRate*E11), using a range name STRate for the short-term loan interest rate makes this an absolute reference. When copied into cells G13:G21, the short-term loan interest rate used will always be the value in STRate (C4).

By contrast, a reference to a specific cell address is a *relative reference.* For example, the reference to E11 (the loan amount from the previous year) in the formula for G12 is a relative reference. E11 is two cells to the left and one cell up. When the formula is copied from G12 into G13:G21, the reference in each of these cells will continue to be two cells to the left and one cell up. This is exactly what we want, since we always want the interest payment to be based on the short-term loan that was taken one year ago (two cells to the left and one cell up).

Excel Tip A shortcut for changing a cell reference from relative to absolute is to press the F4 key on a PC or command-T on a Mac.

After using the Fill Down command to copy the formulas in columns F, G, I, J, and L and entering the LT loan payback into cell H21, the complete model appears as shown in Figure 7.4.

Test: Test the Full-Scale Version of the Model

Just as it was important to test the small version of the model, it needs to be tested again after it is expanded to full-scale size. The procedure is the same one followed for testing the small version, including the ideas that will be presented in Section 7.4 for debugging a spreadsheet model.

Analyze: Analyze the Model

Before using Solver, the spreadsheet in Figure 7.4 is merely an evaluative model for Everglade. It can be used to evaluate any proposed solution, including quickly determining what interest and loan payments will be required and what the resulting balances will be at the end of each year. For example, LTLoan (D11) and STLoan (E11:E20) in Figure 7.4 show one possible plan, which turns out to be unacceptable because EndingBalance (J11:J21) indicates that a negative ending balance would result in three of the years.

To optimize the model, Solver is used as shown in Figure 7.5 to specify the objective cell, the changing cells, and the constraints. Everglade management wants to find a combination of loans that will keep the company solvent throughout the next 10 years (2024–2033) and then will leave as large a cash balance as possible in 2034 after paying off all the loans. Therefore, the objective cell to be maximized is EndBalance (J21) and the changing cells are the loan amounts LTLoan (D11) and STLoan (E11:E20). To assure that Everglade maintains a minimum balance of at least $500,000 at the end of each year, the constraints for the model are EndingBalance (J11:J21) ≥ MinimumBalance (L11:L21).

FIGURE 7.5

A complete spreadsheet model for the Everglade cash flow management problem after calling on Solver to obtain the optimal solution shown in the changing cells, LTLoan (D11) and STLoan (E11:E20). The objective cell EndBalance (J21) indicates that the resulting cash balance in 2034 will be $5.39 million if all the data cells prove to be accurate.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1		**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem**										
2												
3		LT Rate	5%									
4		ST Rate	7%									
5						(all cash figures in millions of dollars)							
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	–8	4.65	2.85					0.50	≥	0.50
12		2025	–2		5.28	–0.23	–0.20		–2.85	0.50	≥	0.50
13		2026	–4		9.88	–0.23	–0.37		–5.28	0.50	≥	0.50
14		2027	3		7.81	–0.23	–0.69		–9.88	0.50	≥	0.50
15		2028	6		2.59	–0.23	–0.55		–7.81	0.50	≥	0.50
16		2029	3		0	–0.23	–0.18		–2.59	0.50	≥	0.50
17		2030	–4		4.23	–0.23	0		0	0.50	≥	0.50
18		2031	7		0	–0.23	–0.30		–4.23	2.74	≥	0.50
19		2032	–2		0	–0.23	0		0	0.51	≥	0.50
20		2033	10		0	–0.23	0		0	10.27	≥	0.50
21		2034				–0.23	0	–4.65	0	5.39	≥	0.50

	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
9	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11					= StartBalance+SUM(C11:I11)	≥	=MinimumCash
12	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E11		=–E11	=J11+SUM(C12:I12)	≥	=MinimumCash
13	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E12		=–E12	=J12+SUM(C13:I13)	≥	=MinimumCash
14	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E13		=–E13	=J13+SUM(C14:I14)	≥	=MinimumCash
15	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E14		=–E14	=J14+SUM(C15:I15)	≥	=MinimumCash
16	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E15		=–E15	=J15+SUM(C16:I16)	≥	=MinimumCash
17	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E16		=–E16	=J16+SUM(C17:I17)	≥	=MinimumCash
18	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E17		=–E17	=J17+SUM(C18:I18)	≥	=MinimumCash
19	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E18		=–E18	=J18+SUM(C19:I19)	≥	=MinimumCash
20	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E19		=–E19	=J19+SUM(C20:I20)	≥	=MinimumCash
21	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E20	=–LTLoan	=–E20	=J20+SUM(C21:I21)	≥	=MinimumCash

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: EndBalance
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
LTLoan, STLoan
Subject to the Constraints:
EndingBalance >= MinimumBalance

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
CashFlow	C11:C20
EndBalance	J21
EndingBalance	J11:J21
LTLoan	D11
LTRate	C3
MinimumBalance	L11:L21
MinimumCash	C7
StartBalance	C6
STLoan	E11:E20
STRate	C4

After running Solver, the optimal solution is shown in Figure 7.5. The changing cells, LTLoan (D11) and STLoan (E11:E20), give the loan amounts in the various years. The objective cell EndBalance (J21) indicates that the ending balance in 2034 will be $5.39 million.

Conclusion of the Case Study

The spreadsheet model developed by Everglade's CFO, Julie Lee, is the one shown in Figure 7.5. Her next step is to submit a report to her CEO, Sheldon Lee, that recommends the plan obtained by this model.

Soon thereafter, Sheldon and Julie meet to discuss her report.

Sheldon: Thanks for your report, Julie. Excellent job. Your spreadsheet really lays everything out in a very understandable way.

Julie: Thanks. It took a little while to get the spreadsheet organized properly and to make sure it was operating correctly, but I think the time spent was worthwhile.

Sheldon: Yes, it was. You can't rush those things. But one thing is still bothering me.

Julie: What's that?

Sheldon: It has to do with our forecasts for the company's future cash flows. We have been assuming that the cash flows in the coming years will be the ones shown in column C of your spreadsheet. Those are good estimates, but we both know that they are only estimates. A lot of changes that we can't foresee now are likely to occur over the next 10 years. When there is a shift in the economy, or when other unexpected developments occur that impact the company, those cash flows can change a lot. How do we know if your recommended plan will still be a good one if those kinds of changes occur?

Julie: A very good question. To answer it, we should do some *what-if analysis* to see what would happen if those kinds of changes occur. Now that the spreadsheet is set up properly, it will be easy to do that by simply changing some of the cash flows in column C and seeing what would happen with the current plan. You can try out any change or changes you want and immediately see the effect. Each time you change a future cash flow, you also have the option of trying out changes on short-term loan amounts to see what kind of adjustments would be needed to maintain a balance of at least $500,000 in every year.

OK, are you ready? Shall we do some what-if analysis now?

Sheldon: Let's do.

Fortunately, Julie had set up the spreadsheet properly (providing a data cell for the cash flow in each of the next 10 years) to enable performing *what-if analysis* immediately by simply trying different numbers in some of these data cells. (The next chapter will focus on describing the importance of what-if

analysis and alternative ways of performing this kind of analysis.) After spending half an hour trying different numbers, Sheldon and Julie conclude that the plan in Figure 7.5 will be a sound initial financial plan for the next 10 years, even if future cash flows deviate somewhat from current forecasts. If deviations do occur, adjustments will of course need to be made in the short-term loan amounts. At any point, Julie also will have the option of returning to the company's bank to try to arrange another long-term loan for the remainder of the 10 years at a lower interest rate than that offered for short-term loans. If so, essentially the same spreadsheet model as in Figure 7.5 can be used, along with Solver, to find the optimal adjusted financial plan for the remainder of the 10 years.

Providing a data cell for each piece of data makes it easy to check what would happen if the correct value for a piece of data differs from its initial estimate.

A predictive analytics technique called *computer simulation* provides another effective way of taking the uncertainty of future cash flows into account. Chapters 14 and 15 will describe this technique and then Problem 15.24 will continue the analysis of this same case study.

Review *Questions*

. What is a good way to get started with a spreadsheet model if you don't even know where to begin?
. What are two ways in which doing calculations by hand can help you?
. Describe a useful way to get started organizing and laying out a spreadsheet.
. What types of values should be put into the changing cells to test the model?
. What is the difference between an absolute cell reference and a relative cell reference?

An Application Vignette

Welch's, Inc., is the world's largest processor of Concord and Niagara grapes. It is a cooperative company that (as of 2021) is owned by more than 900 farmer families that grow its grapes. Such products as Welch's grape jelly and Welch's grape juice have been enjoyed by generations of American consumers.

Every September, growers begin delivering grapes to processing plants that then press the raw grapes into juice. Time must pass before the grape juice is ready for conversion into finished jams, jellies, juices, and concentrates.

Deciding how to use the grape crop is a complex task given changing demand and uncertain crop quality and quantity. Typical decisions include what recipes to use for major product groups, the transfer of grape juice between plants, and the mode of transportation for these transfers.

Because Welch's lacked a formal system for optimizing raw material movement and the recipes used for production, a management science team developed a preliminary **linear programming model.** This was a large model with 8,000 decision variables that focused on the component level of detail. Small-scale testing proved that the model worked.

To make the model more useful, the team then revised it by aggregating demand by product group rather than by component. This reduced its size to 324 decision variables and 361 functional constraints. **The model then was incorporated into a spreadsheet.**

The company has run the continually updated version of this *spreadsheet model* each month to provide senior management with information on the optimal logistics plan generated by Solver. The *savings* from using and optimizing this model were *approximately* **$150,000** *in the first year alone.* The ability to continually update the spreadsheet model has only increased its value ever since. A major advantage of incorporating the linear programming model into a spreadsheet has been the ease of explaining the model to managers with differing levels of mathematical understanding. This has led to a widespread appreciation of the management science approach for both this application and others.

Source: E. W. Schuster and S. J. Allen, "Raw Material Management at Welch's, Inc.," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 28, no. 5 (September—October 1998): 13–24. (A link to this article is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

7.3 SOME GUIDELINES FOR BUILDING "Good" SPREADSHEET MODELS

There are many ways to set up a model on a spreadsheet. While one of the benefits of spreadsheets is the flexibility they offer, this flexibility also can be dangerous. Although Excel provides many features (such as range names,

shading, borders, etc.) that allow you to create “good” spreadsheet models that are easy to understand, easy to debug, and easy to modify, it is also easy to create “bad” spreadsheet models that are difficult to understand, difficult to debug, and difficult to modify. The goal of this section is to provide some guidelines that will help you to create “good” spreadsheet models.

Enter the Data First

Any spreadsheet model is driven by the data in the spreadsheet. The form of the entire model is built around the structure of the data. Therefore, it is always a good idea to enter and carefully lay out all the data before you begin to set up the rest of the model. The model structure then can conform to the layout of the data as closely as possible.

All the data should be laid out on the spreadsheet before beginning to formulate the rest of the spreadsheet model.

The reason for entering the data first is that it is easier to set up the rest of the model when the data are already on the spreadsheet. In the Everglade problem (see Figure 7.5), the data for the cash flows have been laid out in the first columns of the spreadsheet (B and C), with the year labels in column B and the data in cells C11:C20. Once the data are in place, the layout for the rest of the model quickly falls into place around the structure of the data. It is only logical to lay out the changing cells and output cells using the same structure, with each of the various cash flows in columns that utilize the same row labels from column B.

Now reconsider the spreadsheet model developed in Section 5.2 for the Wyndor Glass Co. problem. The spreadsheet is repeated here in Figure 7.6. The data for the Hours Used per Unit Produced have been laid out in the center of the spreadsheet in cells C7:D9. The output cells, HoursUsed (E7:E9), then have been placed immediately to the right of these data and to the left of the data on HoursAvailable(G7:G9), where the row labels for these output cells are the same as for all these data. This makes it easy to interpret the three constraints being laid out in rows 7–9 of the spreadsheet model. Next, the changing cells and objective cell have been placed together in row 12 below the data, where the column labels for the changing cells are the same as for the columns of data above.

FIGURE 7.6

The spreadsheet model formulated in Section 5.2 for the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7,UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8,UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,UnitsProduced)

	G
11	Total Profit
12	=SUMPRODUCT(Unit Profit,UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cells
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C12:D12

The locations of the data occasionally will need to be shifted somewhat to better accommodate the overall model. However, with this caveat, the model structure generally should conform to the data as closely as possible.

Organize and Clearly Identify the Data

Related data should be grouped together in a convenient format and entered into the spreadsheet with labels that clearly identify the data. For data that are laid out in tabular form, the table should have a heading that provides a general description of the data and then each row and column should have a

label that will identify each entry in the table. The units of the data also should be identified. Different types of data should be well separated in the spreadsheet. However, if two tables need to use the same labels for either their rows or columns, then be consistent in making them either rows in both tables or columns in both tables.

Provide labels in the spreadsheet that clearly identify all the data.

In the Wyndor Glass Co. problem (Figure 7.6), the three sets of data have been grouped into tables and clearly labeled Unit Profit, Hours Used per Unit Produced, and Hours Available. The units of the data are identified (dollar signs are included in the unit profit data and hours are indicated in the labels of the time data). Finally, all three data tables make consistent use of rows and columns. Since the Unit Profit data have their product labels (Doors and Windows) in columns C and D, the Hours Used per Unit Produced data use this same structure.

page 304

This structure also is carried through to the changing cells (Units Produced). Similarly, the data for each plant (rows 7–9) are in the rows for both the Hours Used per Unit Produced data *and* the Hours Available data. Keeping the data oriented the same way is not only less confusing, but it also makes it possible to use the SUMPRODUCT function. Recall that the SUMPRODUCT function assumes that the two ranges are exactly the same shape (i.e., the same number of rows *and* the same number of columns). If the Unit Profit data and the Units Produced data had *not* been oriented the same way (e.g., one in a column and the other in a row), it would not have been possible to use the SUMPRODUCT function in the Total Profit calculation.

Similarly, for the Everglade problem (Figure 7.5), the five sets of data have been grouped into cells and tables and clearly labeled ST Rate, LT Rate, Start Balance, Cash Flow, and Minimum Cash. The units of the data are identified (cells F5:I5 specify that all cash figures are in millions of dollars), and all the tables make consistent use of rows and columns (years in the rows).

Enter Each Piece of Data into One Cell Only

If a piece of data is needed in more than one formula, then refer to the original data cell rather than repeating the data in additional places. This makes the model much easier to modify. If the value of that piece of data

changes, it only needs to be changed in one place. You do not need to search through the entire model to find all the places where the data value appears.

Every formula using the same piece of data should refer to the same single data cell.

For example, in the Everglade problem (Figure 7.5), there is a company policy of maintaining a cash balance of at least $500,000 at all times. This translates into a constraint for the minimum balance of $500,000 at the end of each year. Rather than entering the minimum cash position of 0.5 (in millions of dollars) into all the cells in column L, it is entered once in MinimumCash (C7) and then referred to by the cells in MinimumBalance (L11:L21). Then, if this policy were to change to, say, a minimum of $200,000 cash, the number would need to be changed in only one place.

Separate Data from Formulas

Avoid using numbers directly in formulas. Instead, enter any needed numbers into data cells and then refer to the data cells as needed. For example, in the Everglade problem (Figure 7.5), all the data (the interest rates, starting balance, minimum cash, and projected cash flows) are entered into separate data cells on the spreadsheet. When these numbers are needed to calculate the interest charges (in columns F and G), loan payments (in columns H and I), ending balances (column J), and minimum balances (column L), the data cells are referred to rather than entering these numbers directly in the formulas.

Formulas should refer to data cells for any needed numbers.

Separating the data from the formulas has a couple advantages. First, all the data are visible on the spreadsheet rather than buried in formulas. Seeing all the data makes the model easier to interpret. Second, the model is easier to modify since changing data only requires modifying the corresponding data cells. You don’t need to modify any formulas. This proves to be very important when it comes time to perform what-if analysis (the subject of the next chapter) to see what the effect would be if some of the estimates in the data cells were to take on other plausible values.

Keep It Simple

Avoid the use of powerful Excel functions when simpler functions are available that are easier to interpret. As much as possible, stick to SUMPRODUCT or SUM functions. This makes the model easier to understand and also helps to ensure that the model will be linear. (Linear

models are considerably easier to solve than others.) Try to keep formulas short and simple. If a complicated formula is required, break it out into intermediate calculations with subtotals. For example, in the Everglade spreadsheet, each element of the loan payments is broken out explicitly: LT Interest, ST Interest, LT Payback, and ST Payback. Some of these columns could have been combined (e.g., into two columns with LT Payments and ST Payments, or even into one column for all Loan Payments). However, this makes the formulas more complicated and also makes the model harder to test and debug. As laid out, the individual formulas for the loan payments are so simple that their values can be predicted easily without even looking at the formula. This simplifies the testing and debugging of the model.

page 305

Make the spreadsheet as easy to interpret as possible.

Use Range Names

One way to refer to a block of related cells (or even a single cell) in a spreadsheet formula is to use its cell address (e.g., L11:L21 or C3). However, when reading the formula, this requires looking at that part of the spreadsheet to see what kind of information is given there. As mentioned previously in Section 5.2, a better alternative is to assign a descriptive **range name** to the block of cells that immediately identifies what is there. (This is done by selecting the block of cells, clicking on the name box on the left of the formula bar above the spreadsheet, and then typing a name.) This is especially helpful when writing a formula for an output cell. Writing the formula in terms of range names instead of cell addresses makes the formula much easier to interpret. Range names also make the description of the model in Solver much easier to understand.

range name

A descriptive name given to a range of cells that immediately identifies what is there.

Range names make formulas much easier to interpret.

Figure 7.5 illustrates the use of range names for the Everglade spreadsheet model. For example, consider the formula for long-term interest in cell F12. Since the long-term rate is given in cell C3 and the long-term loan amount is in cell D11, the formula for the long-term interest could have been written as = − C3*D11. However, by using the range name LTRate for cell C3

and the range name LTLoan for cell D11, the formula instead becomes = −LTRate*LTLoan, which is much easier to interpret at a glance.

On the other hand, be aware that it is easy to get carried away with defining range names. Defining too many range names can be more trouble than it is worth. For example, when related data are grouped together in a table, we recommend giving a range name only for the entire table rather than for the individual rows and columns. In general, we suggest defining range names only for each group of data cells, the changing cells, the objective cell, and both sides of each group of constraints (the left-hand side and the right-hand side).

Care also should be taken to assure that it is easy to quickly identify which cells are referred to by a particular range name. Use a name that corresponds exactly to the label on the spreadsheet. For example, in Figure 7.5, columns J and L are labeled Ending Balance and Minimum Balance on the spreadsheet, so we use the range names EndingBalance and Minimum-Balance. Using exactly the same name as the label on the spreadsheet makes it quick and easy to find the cells that are referred to by a range name.

Spaces are not allowed in range names. When a range name has more than one word, we have used capital letters to distinguish the start of each new word in a range name (e.g., MinimumBalance). Another way is to use the underscore character (e.g., Minimum_Balance).

When desired, a list of all the range names and their corresponding cell addresses can be pasted directly into the spreadsheet by choosing Paste from the Use in Formula menu on the Formulas tab, and then clicking Paste List. Such a list (after reformatting) is included below essentially all the spreadsheets displayed in this text.

When modifying an existing model that utilizes range names, care should be taken to assure that the range names continue to refer to the correct range of cells. When inserting a row or column into a spreadsheet model, it is helpful to insert the row or column into the middle of a range rather than at the end. For example, to add another product to a product-mix model with four products, add a column between Products 2 and 3 rather than after Product 4. This will automatically extend the relevant range names to span across all five columns since these range names will continue to refer to everything between Product 1 and Product 4, including the newly inserted column for the fifth product. Similarly, deleting a row or column from the middle of a range will contract the span of the relevant range names appropriately. You can double-check the cells that are referred to by a range name by choosing that range name from the name box (on the left of the formula bar above the

spreadsheet). This will highlight the cells that are referred to by the chosen range name.

Use Relative and Absolute References to Simplify Copying Formulas

Whenever multiple related formulas will be needed, try to enter the formula just once and then use Excel's fill commands to replicate the formula. Not only is this quicker than retyping the formula, but it is also less prone to error.

Excel's fill commands provide a quick and reliable way to replicate a formula into multiple cells.

page 306

We saw a good example of this when discussing the expansion of the model to full-scale size in the preceding section. Starting with the two-year spreadsheet in Figure 7.3, fill commands were used to copy the formulas in columns F, G, I, J, and L for the remaining years to create the full-scale, 10-year spreadsheet in Figure 7.4.

Using relative and absolute references for related formulas not only aids in building a model but also makes it easier to modify an existing model or template. For example, suppose that you have formulated a spreadsheet model for a product-mix problem but now wish to modify the model to add another resource and its constraint. This requires inserting a row into the spreadsheet. If the output cells are written with proper relative and absolute references, then it is simple to copy the existing formulas into the inserted row.

Use Borders, Shading, and Colors to Distinguish between Cell Types

It is important to be able to easily distinguish between the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell in a spreadsheet. One way to do this is to use different borders and cell shading for each of these different types of cells. Data cells are blue, changing cells are yellow with a light border, and the objective cell is orange with a heavy border.

Make it easy to spot all the cells of the same type.

Obviously, you may use any scheme that you like. The important thing is to be consistent, so that you can quickly recognize the types of cells. Then, when you want to examine the cells of a certain type, the color will immediately guide you there.

Show the Entire Model on the Spreadsheet

Solver uses a combination of the spreadsheet and the Solver dialog box (or the model pane in Analytic Solver) to specify the model to be solved. Therefore, it is possible to include certain elements of the model (such as the ≤ , =, or ≥ signs and/or the right-hand sides of the constraints) in Solver without displaying them in the spreadsheet. However, we strongly recommend that *every* element of the model be displayed *on the spreadsheet.* Every person using or adapting the model, or referring back to it later, needs to be able to interpret the model. This is much easier to do by viewing the model on the spreadsheet than by trying to decipher it from Solver. Furthermore, a printout of the spreadsheet does not include information from Solver.

In particular, all the elements of a constraint should be displayed on the spreadsheet. For each constraint, three adjacent cells should be used for the total of the left-hand side, the ≤, =, or ≥ sign in the middle, and the right-hand side. (Note in Figure 7.5 that this was done in columns J, K, and L of the spreadsheet for the Everglade problem.) As mentioned earlier, the changing cells and objective cell should be highlighted in some manner (e.g., with borders and/or cell shading). A good test is that you should not need to go to Solver to determine any element of the model. You should be able to identify the changing cells, the objective cell, and all the constraints in the model just by looking at the spreadsheet.

Display every element of the model on the spreadsheet rather than relying on only Solver to include certain elements.

A Poor Spreadsheet Model

It is certainly possible to set up a linear programming spreadsheet model without utilizing any of these ideas. Figure 7.7 shows an alternative spreadsheet formulation for the Everglade problem that violates nearly every one of these guidelines. This formulation can still be solved using Solver, which in fact yields the same optimal solution as in Figure 7.5. However, the formulation has many problems. It is not clear which cells yield the solution (borders and/ or shading are not used to highlight the changing cells and objective cell). Without going to Solver, the constraints in the model cannot be identified (the spreadsheet does not show the entire model). The spreadsheet also does not show most of the data. For example, to determine the data used for the projected cash flows, the interest rates, or the starting balance, you need to dig into the formulas in column E (the data are not separate from

the formulas). If any of these data change, the actual formulas need to be modified rather than simply changing a number on the spreadsheet. Furthermore, the formulas and the model in Solver are difficult to interpret (range names are not utilized).

FIGURE 7.7

page 307

A poor formulation of the spreadsheet model for the Everglade cash flow management problem.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**A Poor Formulation of the Everglade Cash Flow Problem**				
2					
3			LT	ST	Ending
4		Year	Loan	Loan	Balance
5		2024	4.65	2.85	0.50
6		2025		5.28	0.50
7		2026		9.88	0.50
8		2027		7.81	0.50
9		2028		2.59	0.50
10		2029		0	0.50
11		2030		4.23	0.50
12		2031		0	2.74
13		2032		0	0.51
14		2033		0	10.27
15		2034			5.39

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: E15
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
C5, D5:D14
Subject to the Constraints:
E5:E15 >= 0.5

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
3	Ending
4	Balance
5	=1–8+C5+D5
6	=E5–2+D6–$C$5*(0.05)–D5*(1.07)
7	=E6–4+D7–$C$5*(0.05)–D6*(1.07)
8	=E7+3+D8–$C$5*(0.05)–D7*(1.07)
9	=E8+6+D9–$C$5*(0.05)–D8*(1.07)
10	=E9+3+D10–$C$5*(0.05)–D9*(1.07)
11	=E10–4+D11–$C$5*(0.05)–D10*(1.07)
12	=E11+7+D12–$C$5*(0.05)–D11*(1.07)
13	=E12–2+D13–$C$5*(0.05)–D12*(1.07)
14	=E13+10+D14–$C$5*(0.05)–D13*(1.07)
15	=E14+D15–$C$5*(1.05)–D14*(1.07)

Compare Figures 7.5 and 7.7. Applying the guidelines for good spreadsheet models (as is done for Figure 7.5) results in a model that is easier to understand, easier to debug, and easier to modify. This is especially important for models that will have a long life span. If this model is going to be reused months later, the “good” model of Figure 7.5 immediately can be understood, modified, and reapplied as needed, whereas deciphering the spreadsheet model of Figure 7.7 again would be a great challenge.

Review *Questions*

. Which part of the model should be entered first on the spreadsheet?
. Should numbers be included in formulas or entered separately in data cells?
. How do range names make formulas and the model in Solver easier to interpret? How should range names be chosen?
. What are some ways to distinguish data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cells on a spreadsheet?
. How many cells are needed to completely specify a constraint on a spreadsheet?

7.4 DEBUGGING A SPREADSHEET MODEL

No matter how carefully it is planned and built, even a moderately complicated model usually will not be error-free the first time it is run. Often the mistakes are immediately obvious and quickly corrected. However, sometimes an error is harder to root out. Following the guidelines in Section 7.3 for developing a good spreadsheet model can make the model *much* easier to debug. Even so, much like debugging a computer program, debugging a spreadsheet model can be a difficult task. This section presents some tips and a variety of Excel features that can make debugging easier.

Debugging a spreadsheet model sometimes is as challenging as debugging a computer program.

As a first step in debugging a spreadsheet model, test the model using the principles discussed in the first subsection on testing in Section 7.2. In particular, try different values for the changing cells for which you can predict the correct result in the output cells and see if they calculate as expected. Values of 0 are good ones to try initially because usually it is then obvious what should be in the output cells. Try other simple values, such as all 1s,

where the correct results in the output cells are reasonably obvious. For more complicated values, break out a calculator and do some manual calculations to check the various output cells. Include some very large values for the changing cells to ensure that the calculations are behaving reasonably for these extreme cases.

If you have defined range names, be sure that they still refer to the correct cells. Sometimes they can become disjointed when you add rows or columns to the spreadsheet. To test the range names, you can either select the various range names in the name box, which will highlight the selected range in the spreadsheet, or paste the entire list of range names and their references into the spreadsheet.

If you have added rows or columns to the spreadsheet, make sure that each of the range names still refers to the correct cells.

Excel Tip Pressing control-~ toggles the worksheet between viewing values and viewing formulas in all the output cells

Carefully study each formula to be sure it is entered correctly. A very useful feature in Excel for checking formulas is the **toggle** to switch back and forth between viewing the formulas in the worksheet and viewing the resulting values in the output cells. By default, Excel shows the values that are calculated by the various output cells in the model. Typing control-~ switches the current worksheet to instead display the formulas in the output cells, as shown in Figure 7.8. Typing control-~ again switches back to the standard view of displaying the values in the output cells (like Figure 7.5).

FIGURE 7.8

The spreadsheet obtained by toggling the spreadsheet in Figure 7.5 once to replace the values in the output cells by the formulas entered into those cells. Using the toggle feature in Excel once more will restore the view of the spreadsheet shown in Figure 7.5.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem**											
2												
3		LT Rate	0.05									
4		ST Rate	0.07									
5						(all cash figures in millions of dollars)							
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	–8	4.65124	2.84759					=StartBalance+SUM(C11:I11)	≥	=MinimumCash
12		2025	–2		5.28073	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E11		=–E11	=J11+SUM(C12:I12)	≥	=MinimumCash
13		2026	–4		9.88295	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E12		=–E12	=J12+SUM(C13:I13)	≥	=MinimumCash
14		2027	3		7.80732	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E13		=–E13	=J13+SUM(C14:I14)	≥	=MinimumCash
15		2028	6		2.58639	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E14		=–E14	=J14+SUM(C15:I15)	≥	=MinimumCash
16		2029	3		0	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E15		=–E15	=J15+SUM(C16:I16)	≥	=MinimumCash
17		2030	–4		4.23256	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E16		=–E16	=J16+SUM(C17:I17)	≥	=MinimumCash
18		2031	7		0	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E17		=–E17	=J17+SUM(C18:I18)	≥	=MinimumCash
19		2032	–2		0	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E18		=–E18	=J18+SUM(C19:I19)	≥	=MinimumCash
20		2033	10		0	=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E19		=–E19	=J19+SUM(C20:I20)	≥	=MinimumCash
21		2034				=–LTRate*LTLoan	=–STRate*E20	=–LTLoan	=–E20	=J20+SUM(C21:I21)	≥	=MinimumCash

toggle

The act of switching back and forth between viewing the results in the output cells and viewing the formulas entered into those output cells.

Another useful set of features built into Excel are the **auditing tools**. The auditing tools are available in the Formula Auditing group of the Formulas Tab.

The auditing tools can be used to graphically display which cells make direct links to a given cell. For example, selecting LTLoan (D11) in Figure 7.5 and then Trace Dependents generates the arrows on the spreadsheet shown in Figure 7.9.

FIGURE 7.9

The spreadsheet obtained by using the Excel auditing tools to trace the dependents of the LT Loan value in cell D11 of the spreadsheet in Figure 7.5.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1		**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem**										
2												
3		LT Rate	5%									
4		ST Rate	7%									
5						(all cash figures in millions of dollars)						
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	–8	4.65	2.85					0.50	≥	0.5
12		2025	–2		5.28	–0.23	–0.20		–2.85	0.50	≥	0.5
13		2026	–4		9.88	–0.23	–0.37		–5.28	0.50	≥	0.5
14		2027	3		7.81	–0.23	–0.69		–9.88	0.50	≥	0.5
15		2028	6		2.59	–0.23	–0.55		–7.81	0.50	≥	0.5
16		2029	3		0	–0.23	–0.18		–2.59	0.50	≥	0.5
17		2030	–4		4.23	–0.23	0		0	0.50	≥	0.5
18		2031	7		0	–0.23	–0.30		–4.23	2.74	≥	0.5
19		2032	–2		0	–0.23	0		0	0.51	≥	0.5
20		2033	10		0	–0.23	0		0	10.27	≥	0.5
21		2034				–0.23	0	–4.65	0	5.39	≥	0.5

auditing tools

A set of tools provided by Excel to aid in debugging a spreadsheet model.

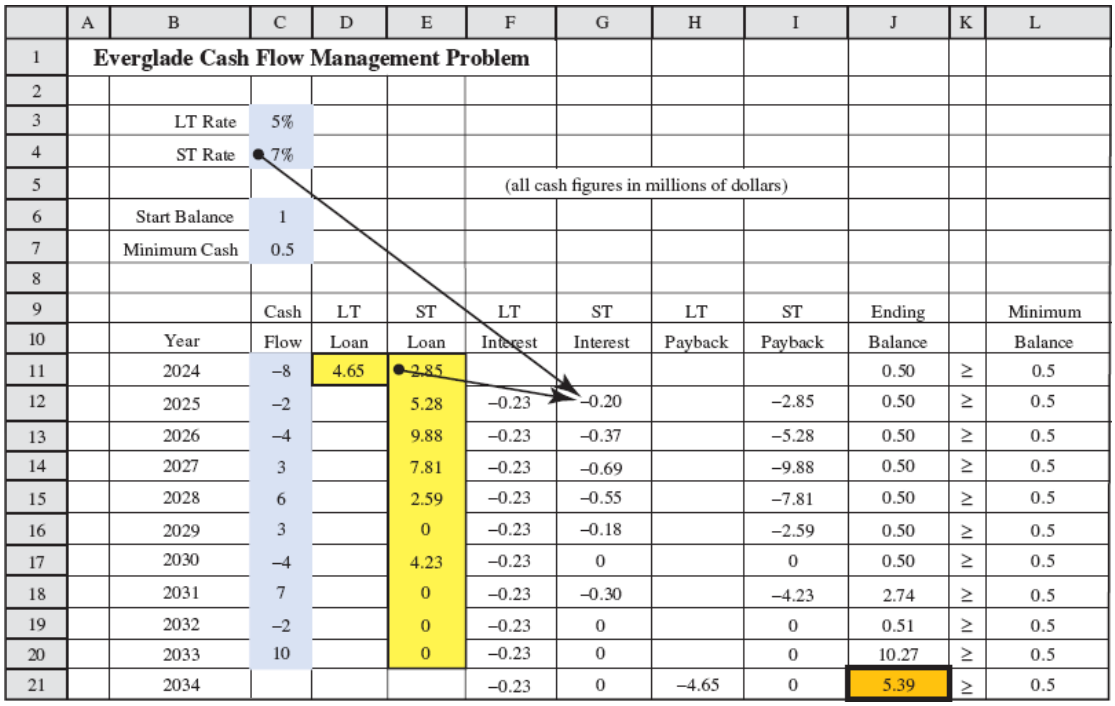
Excel's auditing tools enable you to either trace forward or backward to see the linkages between cells.

You now can immediately see that LTLoan (D11) is used in the calculation of LT Interest for every year in column F, in the calculation of LTPayback (H21), and in the calculation of the ending balance in 2024 (J11). This can be very illuminating. Think about what output cells LTLoan should impact directly. There should be an arrow to each of these cells. If, for example, LTLoan is missing from any of the formulas in column F, the error will be immediately revealed by the missing arrow. Similarly, if LTLoan is mistakenly entered in any of the short-term loan output cells, this will show up as extra arrows.

You also can trace backward to see which cells provide the data for any given cell. These can be displayed graphically by choosing Trace Precedents. For example, choosing Trace Precedents for the ST Interest cell for 2025 (G12) displays the arrows shown in Figure 7.10. These arrows indicate that the ST Interest cell for 2025 (G12) refers to the ST Loan in 2024 (E11) and to STRate (C4).

FIGURE 7.10

The spreadsheet obtained by using the Excel auditing tools to trace the precedents of the ST Interest (2025) calculation in cell G12 of the spreadsheet in Figure 7.5.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1		**Everglade Cash Flow Management Problem**										
2												
3		LT Rate	5%									
4		ST Rate	7%									
5						(all cash figures in millions of dollars)						
6		Start Balance	1									
7		Minimum Cash	0.5									
8												
9			Cash	LT	ST	LT	ST	LT	ST	Ending		Minimum
10		Year	Flow	Loan	Loan	Interest	Interest	Payback	Payback	Balance		Balance
11		2024	−8	4.65	2.85					0.50	≥	0.5
12		2025	−2		5.28	−0.23	−0.20		−2.85	0.50	≥	0.5
13		2026	−4		9.88	−0.23	−0.37		−5.28	0.50	≥	0.5
14		2027	3		7.81	−0.23	−0.69		−9.88	0.50	≥	0.5
15		2028	6		2.59	−0.23	−0.55		−7.81	0.50	≥	0.5
16		2029	3		0	−0.23	−0.18		−2.59	0.50	≥	0.5
17		2030	−4		4.23	−0.23	0		0	0.50	≥	0.5
18		2031	7		0	−0.23	−0.30		−4.23	2.74	≥	0.5
19		2032	−2		0	−0.23	0		0	0.51	≥	0.5
20		2033	10		0	−0.23	0		0	10.27	≥	0.5
21		2034				−0.23	0	−4.65	0	5.39	≥	0.5

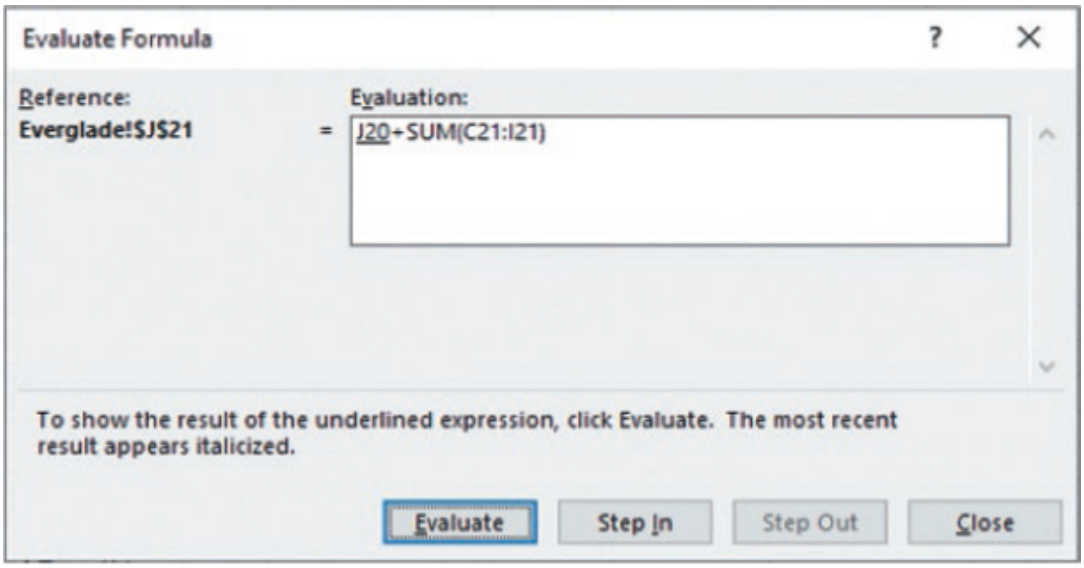
When you are done, choose Remove Arrows.

The auditing tools can also be used to see how each component of a formula evaluates, one step at a time. For example, selecting the objective cell EndBalance (J21) and then Evaluate Formula brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 7.11. (The Evaluate Formula tool is Windows-only, so unfortunately it is not available for Mac versions of Excel.) Inside the evaluation box is the formula in the selected cell, = J20 + SUM(C21:I21), with one component of the formula underlined. Pressing the Evaluate button evaluates the underlined component of the formula (J20 becomes 10.273. . .) and then underlines the next component of the formula, SUM(C21:I21). As shown at the bottom of the figure, each press of the Evaluate button evaluates the underlined component of the formula and then underlines the next component of the formula to be evaluated. Three presses fully evaluate the formula to show the end result of 5.39. This tool can be particularly useful for evaluating complicated formulas to make sure they are set up correctly.

page 309
page 310
page 311

FIGURE 7.11

The dialog box for the Evaluate Formula auditing tool when applied to the formula in EndBalance (J21). Successive presses of the Evaluate button evaluate the underlined portion of the formula, step-by-step, as shown below the dialog box.



After pressing *Evaluate* one time: *10.2734725406406+SUM(C21:I21)*

After pressing *Evaluate* two times: *10.2734725406406+-4.88380261585925*

After pressing *Evaluate* three times: *5.39*

Microsoft Corporation

The Evaluate Formula auditing tool can be used to evaluate a formula one step at a time. (This particular auditing tool is only available in Windows versions of Excel.)

Review *Questions*

. What is a good first step for debugging a spreadsheet model?

. How do you toggle between viewing formulas and viewing values in output cells?

. Which Excel tools can be used to trace the dependents or precedents for a given cell or evaluate a formula in a cell?

7.5 Summary

There is a considerable art to modeling well with spreadsheets. This chapter focuses on providing a foundation for learning this art.

The general process of modeling in spreadsheets has four major steps: (1) plan the spreadsheet model, (2) build the model, (3) test the model, and (4) analyze the model and its results. During the planning step, it is helpful to begin by visualizing where you want to finish and then doing some calculations by hand to clarify the needed computations before starting to sketch out a logical layout for the spreadsheet. Then, when you are ready to undertake the building step, it is a good idea to start by building a small, readily manageable version of the model before expanding the model to full-scale size. This enables you to test the small version first to get all the logic straightened out correctly before expanding to a full-scale model and undertaking a final test. After completing all of this, you are ready for the analysis step, which involves applying the model to evaluate proposed solutions and perhaps using Solver to optimize the model.

Using this plan–build–test–analyze process should yield a spreadsheet model, but it doesn't guarantee that you will obtain a good one. Section 7.3 describes in detail the following guidelines for building "good" spreadsheet models:

- Enter the data first.
- Organize and clearly identify the data.
- Enter each piece of data into one cell only.
- Separate data from formulas.
- Keep it simple.
- Use range names.
- Use relative and absolute references to simplify copying formulas.
- Use borders, shading, and colors to distinguish between cell types.
- Show the entire model on the spreadsheet.

page 312

Even if all these guidelines are followed, a thorough debugging process may be needed to eliminate the errors that lurk within the initial version of the model. It is important to check whether the output cells are giving correct results for various values of the changing cells. Other items to check include whether range names refer to the appropriate cells and whether formulas have been

entered into output cells correctly. Excel provides a number of useful features to aid in the debugging process. One is the ability to toggle the worksheet between viewing the results in the output cells and the formulas entered into those output cells. Several other helpful features are available with Excel's auditing tools.

Glossary

auditing tools A set of tools provided by Excel to aid in debugging a spreadsheet model. (Section 7.4), 308

range name A descriptive name given to a range of cells that immediately identifies what is there. (Section 7.3), 305

toggle The act of switching back and forth between viewing the results in the output cells and viewing the formulas entered into those output cells. (Section 7.4), 308

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available **at www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

Excel Files:

Everglade

Wyndor

Everglade Problem 7.12

Everglade Problem 7.13

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

7.S1. Production and Inventory Planning Model

Surfs Up produces high-end surfboards. A challenge faced by Surfs Up is that their demand is highly seasonal. Demand exceeds

production capacity during the warm summer months, but is very low in the winter months. To meet the high demand during the summer, Surfs Up typically produces more surfboards than are needed in the winter months and then carries inventory into the summer months. Their production facility can produce at most 50 boards per month using regular labor at a cost of $125 each. Up to 10 additional boards can be produced by utilizing overtime labor at a cost of $135 each. The boards are sold for $200. Because of storage cost and the opportunity cost of capital, each board held in inventory from one month to the next incurs a cost of $5 per board. Since demand is uncertain, Surfs Up would like to maintain an ending inventory (safety stock) of at least 10 boards during the warm months (May–September) and at least 5 boards during the other months (October–April). It is now the start of January and Surfs Up has 5 boards in inventory. The forecast of demand over the next 12 months is shown in the following table. Formulate and solve a linear programming model in a spreadsheet to determine how many surfboards should be produced each month to maximize total profit.

Forecasted Demand											
Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
10	14	15	20	45	65	85	85	40	30	15	15

7.S2. Aggregate Planning: Manpower Hiring/Firing/Training

page 313

Cool Power produces air-conditioning units for large commercial properties. Because of the low cost and efficiency of its products, the company has been growing from year to year. Also, seasonality in construction and weather conditions create production requirements that vary from month to month. Cool Power currently has 10 fully trained employees working in manufacturing. Each trained employee can work 160 hours per month and is paid a monthly wage of $4,000. New trainees can be hired at the beginning of any month. Because of their lack of initial skills and required training, a new trainee provides only 100 hours of useful labor in the first month, but is still paid a full monthly wage of $4,000. Furthermore, because of required interviewing and training, there is a $2,500 hiring cost for each employee hired. After one month, a trainee is considered fully trained. An employee

can be fired at the beginning of any month, but must be paid two weeks of severance pay ($2,000). Over the next 12 months, Cool Power forecasts the labor requirements shown in the following table. Since management anticipates higher requirements next year, Cool Power would like to end the year with at least 12 fully trained employees. How many trainees should be hired and/or workers fired in each month to meet the labor requirements at the minimum possible cost? Formulate and solve a linear programming spreadsheet model.

Labor Requirements (hours)											
Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1,600	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,800	3,200	3,600	3,200	1,600	1,200	800	800

Problems

An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in Appendix B.

7.1. Consider the Everglade cash flow problem discussed in this chapter. Suppose that extra cash is kept in an interest—bearing savings account. Assume that any cash left at the end of a year earns 3 percent interest the following year. Make any necessary modifications to the spreadsheet and re-solve. (The original spreadsheet for this problem is available among the Excel files for this chapter in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

7.2.* The Pine Furniture Company makes fine country furniture. The company's current product lines consist of end tables, coffee tables, and dining room tables. The production of each of these tables requires 8, 15, and 80 pounds of pine wood, respectively. The tables are handmade and require one hour, two hours, and four hours, respectively. Each table sold generates $50, $100, and $220 profit, respectively. The company has 3,000 pounds of pine wood and 200 hours of labor available for the coming week's production. The chief operating officer (COO) has asked you to do some spreadsheet modeling with these data to analyze what the product mix should be for the coming week and make a recommendation.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the

objective be? What numbers will the COO need?

b. Suppose that Pine Furniture were to produce three end tables and three dining room tables. Calculate by hand the amount of pine wood and labor that would be required, as well as the profit generated from sales.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model and then solve it.

7.3. Reboot, Inc., is a manufacturer of hiking boots. Demand for boots is highly seasonal. In particular, the demand in the next year is expected to be 3,000, 4,000, 8,000, and 7,000 pairs of boots in quarters 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively. With its current production facility, the company can produce at most 6,000 pairs of boots in any quarter. Reboot would like to meet all the expected demand, so it will need to carry inventory to meet demand in the later quarters. Each pair of boots sold generates a profit of $20 per pair. Each pair of boots in inventory at the end of a quarter incurs $8 in storage and capital recovery costs. Reboot has 1,000 pairs of boots in inventory at the start of quarter 1. Reboot's top management has given you the assignment of doing some spreadsheet modeling to analyze what the production schedule should be for the next four quarters and making a recommendation.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers are needed?

b. Suppose that Reboot were to produce 5,000 pairs of boots in each of the first two quarters. Calculate by hand what the ending cash positions would be after year 1 and year 2.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for years 1 and 2, and then thoroughly test the model.

e. Expand the model to full scale and then solve it.

7.4.* The Fairwinds Development Corporation is considering taking part in one or more of three different development projects—A, B, and C—that are about to be launched. Each project requires a significant investment over the next few years and then would be sold upon completion. The projected cash flows (in millions of dollars) associated with each project are shown in the table below.

Year	Project A	Project B	Project C
1	−4	−8	−10
2	−6	−8	−7
3	−6	−4	−7
4	24	−4	−5
5	0	30	23
6	0	0	44

Fairwinds has $10 million available now and expects to receive $6 million from other projects by the end of each year (1 through 6) that would be available for the ongoing investments the following year in projects A, B, and C. By acting now, the company may participate in each project either fully, fractionally (with other development partners), or not at all. If Fairwinds participates at less than 100 percent, then all the cash flows associated with that project are reduced proportionally. Company policy requires ending each year with a cash balance of at least $1 million.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers will top management need?

b. Suppose that Fairwinds were to participate in Project A fully and in Project C at 50 percent. Calculate by hand the ending inventory, profit from sales, and inventory costs for quarters 1 and 2.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for quarters 1 and 2, and then thoroughly test the model.

e. Expand the model to full scale, and then solve it.

7.5. Read the referenced article that fully describes the linear programming study done on a spreadsheet for Welch's, Inc., that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 7.3. Briefly describe how spreadsheet modeling was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

Labor Requirements (hours for Allen Furniture)

Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
3,400	4,000	4,200	4,200	3,000	2,800	3,000	4,000	4,500	5,000	5,200	4,800

7.6. Decorum, Inc., manufactures high-end ceiling fans. Their sales are seasonal with higher demand in the warmer summer months. Typically, sales average 400 units per month. However, in the hot summer months (June, July, and August), sales spike up to 600 units per month. Decorum can produce up to 500 units per month at a cost of $300 each. By bringing in temporary workers, Decorum can produce up to an additional 75 units at a cost of $350 each. Decorum sells the ceiling fans for $500 each. Decorum can carry inventory from one month to the next, but at a cost of $20 per ceiling fan per month. Decorum has 25 units in inventory at the start of January. Assuming Decorum must produce enough ceiling fans to meet demand, how many ceiling fans should Decorum produce each month (using their regular labor force and/or temporary workers) over the course of the next year so as to maximize their total profit?

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers will Decorum require?

b. Suppose Decorum builds 450 ceiling fans in January and 550 (utilizing temporary workers) in February. Calculate by hand the total costs for January and February.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for January and February and thoroughly test the model.

e. Build and solve a linear programming spreadsheet model to maximize the profit over all 12 months.

7.7. Allen Furniture is a manufacturer of hand-crafted furniture. At the start of January, Allen employs 20 trained craftspeople. They have forecasted their labor needs over the next 12 months as shown in the following table. Each trained craftsperson provides 200 labor-hours per month and is paid a wage of $3,000 per month. Hiring new craftspeople requires advertising, interviewing, and then training at a cost of $2,500 per hire. New hires are called apprentices for their first month. Apprentices spend their first month observing and learning. They are paid $2,000 for the month, but provide no labor. In their second month, apprentices are reclassified as trained craftspeople. The union contract allows for firing a craftsperson at the beginning of a month, but $1,500 must be given in severance pay. Moreover, at most 10 percent of the trained craftspeople can be fired in any month. Allen would like to start next year with at least 25 trained craftspeople. How many apprentices should be hired and how many craftspeople should be fired in each month to meet the labor requirements for this next year at the minimum possible cost?

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers will Allen require?

b. Suppose one apprentice is hired in January. Calculate by hand how many labor-hours would be available in January and February. Calculate by hand the total costs in January and February.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for January and February and thoroughly test the model.

e. Build and solve a linear programming spreadsheet model to maximize the profit over all 12 months.

7.8. Refer to the scenario described in Problem 6.13 in the preceding chapter, but ignore the instructions given there. Focus instead on using spreadsheet modeling to address Web Mercantile's problem by doing the following.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers will Web Mercantile require?

b. Suppose that Web Mercantile were to lease 30,000 square feet for all five months and then 20,000 additional square feet for the last three months. Calculate the total costs by hand.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for months 1 and 2, and then thoroughly test the model.

e. Expand the model to full scale, and then solve it.

7.9.* Refer to the scenario described in Problem 6.15 in the preceding chapter, but ignore the instructions given there. Focus instead on using spreadsheet modeling to address Larry Edison's problem by doing the following.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What are the numbers that Larry will require?

b. Suppose that Larry were to hire three full-time workers for the morning shift, two for the afternoon shift, and four for the evening shift, as well as three part-time workers for each of the four shifts. Calculate by hand how many workers would be working at each time of the day and what the total cost would be for the entire day.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model and then solve it.

7.10. Refer to the scenario described in Problem 6.19 in the preceding chapter, but ignore the instructions given there. Focus instead on using spreadsheet modeling to address Al Ferris's problem by doing the following.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers will Al require?

b. Suppose that Al were to invest $20,000 each in investment A (year 1), investment B (year 2), and investment C (year 2). Calculate by hand what the ending cash position would be after each year.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for years 1 through 3, and then thoroughly test the model.

e. Expand the model to full scale, and then solve it.

7.11. In contrast to the spreadsheet model for the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem shown in Figure 7.6, the following spreadsheet is an example of a poorly formulated spreadsheet model for this same problem. Referring to Section 7.3, identify the guidelines violated by the model below. Then explain how each guideline has been violated and why the model in Figure 7.6 is a better alternative.

	A	B	C	D
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. (Poor Formulation)**			
2				
3		Doors Produced	2	
4		Windows Produced	6	
5		Hours Used (Plant 1)	2	
6		Hours Used (Plant 2)	12	
7		Hours Used (Plant 3)	18	
8		Total Profit	$3,600	

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: C8
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
C3:C4
Subject to the Constraints:
C5 <= 4
C6 <= 12
C7 <= 18
Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	B	C
5	Hours Used (Plant 1)	=1*C3+0*C4
6	Hours Used (Plant 2)	=0*C3+2*C4
7	Hours Used (Plant 3)	=3*C3+2*C4
8	Total Profit	=300*C3+500*C4

7.12. Refer to the spreadsheet file named "Everglade Problem 7.12," available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. This file contains a formulation of the Everglade problem considered in this chapter. However, three errors are included in this formulation. page 316 Use the ideas presented in Section 7.4 for debugging a spreadsheet model to find the errors. In particular, try different trial values for which you can predict the correct results. Use the toggle to examine all the formulas, and use the auditing tools to check precedence and dependence relationships among the various changing cells, data cells, and output cells. Describe the errors found and how you found them.

7.13. Refer to the spreadsheet file named "Everglade Problem 7.13," available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. This file contains a formulation of the Everglade problem considered in this chapter. However, three errors are included in this formulation. Use the ideas presented in Section 7.4 for debugging a spreadsheet model to find the errors. In particular, try different trial values for which you can predict the correct results. Use the toggle to examine all the formulas, and use the auditing tools to check precedence and dependence relationships among the various changing cells, data

cells, and output cells. Describe the errors found and how you found them.

Case 7-1

Prudent Provisions for Pensions

Among its many financial products, the Prudent Financial Services Corporation (normally referred to as PFS) manages a well-regarded pension fund that is used by a number of companies to provide pensions for their employees. PFS's management takes pride in the rigorous professional standards used in operating the fund. Since the near-collapse of the financial markets during the protracted Great Recession that began in late 2007 and then the near collapse of the economy during the pandemic that began in early 2020, PFS has redoubled its efforts to provide prudent management of the fund.

It is now December 2023. The total pension payments that will need to be made by the fund over the next 10 years are shown in the following table.

Year	Pension Payments ($ millions)
2024	8
2025	12
2026	13
2027	14
2028	16
2029	17
2030	20
2031	21
2032	22
2033	24

By using interest as well, PFS currently has enough liquid assets to meet all these pension payments. Therefore, to safeguard the pension fund, PFS

would like to make a number of investments whose payouts would match the pension payments over the next 10 years. The only investments that PFS trusts for the pension fund are a money market fund and bonds. The money market fund pays an annual interest rate of 2 percent. The characteristics of each unit of the four bonds under consideration are shown in the table below.

	Current Price	Coupon Rate	Maturity Date	Face Value
Bond 1	$980	4%	Jan. 1, 2025	$1,000
Bond 2	920	2	Jan. 1, 2027	1,000
Bond 3	750	0	Jan. 1, 2029	1,000
Bond 4	800	3	Jan. 1, 2032	1,000

All of these bonds will be available for purchase on January 1, 2024, in as many units as desired. The coupon rate is the percentage of the face value that will be paid in interest on January 1 of each year, starting one year after purchase and continuing until (and including) the maturity date. Thus, these interest payments on January 1 of each year are in time to be used toward the pension payments for that year. Any excess interest payments will be deposited into the money market fund. To be conservative in its financial planning, PFS assumes that all the pension payments for the year occur at the beginning of the year immediately after these interest payments (including a year's interest from the money market fund) are received. The entire face value of a bond also will be received on its maturity date. Since the current price of each bond is less than its face value, the actual yield of the bond exceeds its coupon rate. Bond 3 is a zero—coupon bond, so it pays no interest but instead pays a face value on the maturity date that greatly exceeds the purchase price.

PFS would like to make the smallest possible investment (including any deposit into the money market fund) on January 1, 2024, to cover all its required pension payments through 2033. Some spreadsheet modeling needs to be done to see how to do this.

a. Visualize where you want to finish. What are the decisions that need to be made? What should the objective be? What numbers are needed by PFS management?
b. Suppose that PFS were to invest $30 million in the money market fund and purchase 10,000 units each of bond 1 and bond 2 on January 1, 2024. Calculate by hand the payments received from bonds 1 and 2 on January 1 of 2025 and 2026. Also calculate the resulting balance in the money market fund on January 1 of 2024, 2025, and 2026 after receiving these payments,

making the pension payments for the year, and depositing any excess into the money market fund.

c. Make a rough sketch of a spreadsheet model, with blocks laid out for the data cells, changing cells, output cells, and objective cell.

d. Build a spreadsheet model for years 2024 through 2026, and then thoroughly test the model.

e. Expand the model to consider all years through 2033, and then solve it.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 8

What-If Analysis for Linear Programming

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Explain what is meant by *what-if analysis*.
2. Summarize the benefits of what-if analysis.
3. Enumerate the different kinds of changes in the model that can be considered by what-if analysis.
4. Describe how the spreadsheet formulation of the problem can be used to perform any of these kinds of what-if analysis.
5. Use parameter analysis reports generated by Analytic Solver to systematically investigate the effect of changing either one or two data cells to various other trial values.
6. Find how much any single coefficient in the objective function can change without changing the optimal solution.
7. Evaluate simultaneous changes in objective function coefficients to determine whether the changes are small enough that the original optimal solution must still be optimal.
8. Predict how the value in the objective cell would change if a small change were to be made in the right-hand side of one or more of the functional constraints.
9. Find how much the right-hand side of a single functional constraint can change before this prediction becomes no longer valid.
10. Evaluate simultaneous changes in right-hand sides to determine whether the changes are small enough that this prediction must still be valid.
11. Describe the goal of robust optimization and how it is implemented with independent parameters.

2. Use chance constraints to deal with constraints that actually can be violated a little bit.

Chapters 5 to 7 have described and illustrated how to formulate a linear programming model on a spreadsheet to represent a variety of managerial problems, and then how to use Solver to find an optimal solution for this model. You might think that this would finish our story about linear programming: Once the manager learns the optimal solution, she would immediately implement this solution and then turn her attention to other matters. However, this is not the case. The enlightened manager demands much more from linear programming, and linear programming has much more to offer her—as you will discover in this chapter.

An optimal solution is only optimal with respect to a particular mathematical model that provides only a rough representation of the real problem. A manager is interested in much more than just finding such a solution. The purpose of a linear programming study is to help guide management's final decision by providing insights into the likely consequences of pursuing various managerial options under a variety of assumptions about future conditions. Most of the important insights are gained while conducting analysis *after* finding an optimal solution for the original version of the basic model. This analysis is commonly referred to as **what-if analysis** because it involves addressing some questions about *what* would happen to the optimal solution *if* different assumptions were made about future conditions. Spreadsheets play a central role in addressing these *what-if questions.*

page 318

what-if analysis

Analysis that addresses questions about what would happen to the optimal solution if different assumptions were made about future conditions.

This chapter focuses on the types of information provided by what-if analysis and why it is valuable to managers. The first section provides an overview. Section 8.2 returns to the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix case study (Section 5.1) to describe the what-if analysis that is needed in this situation. The next four sections then perform this what-if analysis, using a variety of procedures that are applicable to any linear programming problem. Section 8.7 extends this approach further to provide a way of obtaining a solution that is virtually guaranteed to be feasible. Section 8.8 describes how to deal with constraints that actually can be violated a little bit without serious complications.

8.1 THE IMPORTANCE OF WHAT-IF ANALYSIS TO MANAGERS

The examples and problems in the preceding chapters on linear programming have provided the data needed to determine precisely all the numbers that should go into the data cells for the spreadsheet formulation of the linear programming model. (Recall

that these numbers are referred to as the **parameters of the model.**) Real applications seldom are this straightforward. Substantial time and effort often are needed to track down the needed data. Even then, it may be possible to develop only rough estimates of the parameters of the model.

parameters of the model

The parameters of a linear programming model are the constants (coefficients or right-hand sides) in the functional constraints and the objective function.

For example, in the Wyndor case study, two key parameters of the model are the coefficients in the objective function that represent the unit profits of the two new products. These parameters were estimated to be $300 for the doors and $500 for the windows. However, these unit profits depend on many factors—the costs of raw materials, production, shipping, advertising, and so on, as well as such things as the market reception to the new products and the amount of competition encountered. Some of these factors cannot be estimated with real accuracy until long after the linear programming study has been completed and the new products have been on the market for some time.

In real applications, many of the numbers in the model may be only rough estimates.

Therefore, before Wyndor's management makes a decision on the product mix, it will want to know what the effect would be if the unit profits turn out to differ significantly from the estimates. For example, would the optimal solution change if the unit profit for the doors turned out to be $200 instead of the estimate of $300? How inaccurate can the estimate be in either direction before the optimal solution changes?

What happens to the optimal solution if an error is made in estimating a parameter of the model?

Such questions are addressed in Section 8.3 when only one estimate may be inaccurate. Section 8.4 will address similar questions when multiple estimates may be inaccurate.

If the optimal solution will remain the same over a wide range of values for a particular coefficient in the objective function, then management will be content with a fairly rough estimate for this coefficient. On the other hand, if even a small error in the estimate would change the optimal solution, then management will want to take special care to refine this estimate. Management sometimes will get involved directly in adjusting such estimates to its satisfaction.

Here then is a summary of the first benefit of what-if analysis:

1. Typically, many of the parameters of a linear programming model are only *estimates* of quantities (e.g., unit profits) that cannot be determined precisely at this time. What-if analysis reveals how close each of these estimates needs to be to avoid obtaining an erroneous optimal solution, and therefore pinpoints the **sensitive parameters** (those parameters where extra care is

needed to refine their estimates because even small changes in their values can change the optimal solution).

sensitive parameter

A parameter is considered sensitive if even a small change in its value can change the optimal solution.

Several sections describe how what-if analysis provides this benefit for the most important parameters. Sections 8.3 and 8.4 do this for the coefficients in the objective function (these numbers typically appear in the spreadsheet in the row for the unit contribution of each activity toward the overall measure of performance). Sections 8.5 and 8.6 do the same for the *right-hand sides of the functional constraints* (these are the numbers that typically are in the right-hand column of the spreadsheet just to the right of the ≤, ≥, or = signs).

page 319

Businesses operate in a dynamic environment. Even when management is satisfied with the current estimates and implements the corresponding optimal solution, conditions may change later. For example, suppose that Wyndor's management is satisfied with $300 as the estimate of the unit profit for the doors, but increased competition later forces a price reduction that reduces this unit profit. Does this change the optimal product mix? The what-if analysis shown in Section 8.3 immediately indicates in advance which new unit profits would leave the optimal product mix unchanged, which can help guide management in its new pricing decision. Furthermore, if the optimal product mix is unchanged, then there is no need to solve the model again with the new coefficient. Avoiding solving the model again is no big deal for the tiny two-variable Wyndor problem, but it is extremely welcome for real applications that may have hundreds or thousands of constraints and variables. In fact, for such large models, it may not even be practical to re-solve the model repeatedly to consider the many possible changes of interest.

Thus, here is the second benefit of what-if analysis:

2. If conditions change after the study has been completed (a common occurrence), what-if analysis leaves signposts that indicate (without solving the model again) whether a resulting change in a parameter of the model changes the optimal solution.

What happens to the optimal solution if conditions change in the future?

Again, several subsequent sections describe how what-if analysis does this.

These sections focus on studying how changes in the parameters of a linear programming model affect the optimal solution. This type of what-if analysis commonly is referred to as **sensitivity analysis,** because it involves checking how *sensitive* the optimal solution is to the value of each parameter. Sensitivity analysis is a vital part of what-if analysis.

sensitivity analysis

The part of what-if analysis that focuses on individual parameters of the model. It involves checking how sensitive the optimal solution is to the value of each parameter.

However, rather than being content with the passive sensitivity analysis approach of checking the effect of parameter estimates being inaccurate, what-if analysis often goes further to take a proactive approach. An analysis may be made of various possible managerial actions that would result in changes to the model.

A prime example of this proactive approach arises when certain parameters of the model represent *managerial policy decisions* rather than quantities that are largely outside the control of management. For example, for the Wyndor product-mix problem, the right-hand sides of the three functional constraints (4, 12, 18) represent the number of hours of production time in the three respective plants being made available per week for the production of the two new products. Management can change these three resource amounts by altering the production levels for the old products in these plants. Therefore, after learning the optimal solution, management will want to know the impact on the profit from the new products if these resource amounts are changed in certain ways. One key question is how much this profit can be increased by increasing the available production time for the new products in just one of the plants. Another is how much this profit can be increased by simultaneously making helpful changes in the available production times in all the plants. If the profit from the new products can be increased enough to more than compensate for the profit lost by decreasing the production levels for certain old products, management probably will want to make the change.

We now can summarize the third benefit of what-if analysis:

3. When certain parameters of the model represent managerial policy decisions, what-if analysis provides valuable guidance to management regarding the impact of altering these policy decisions.

What happens if managerial policy decisions change?

Sections 8.5 and 8.6 will explore this benefit further.

What-if analysis sometimes goes even further in providing helpful guidance to management. For example, when there is considerable uncertainty about what the actual values of the model parameters will turn out to be, management might want to identify a solution that is virtually guaranteed to be both feasible and nearly optimal for all plausible combinations of the actual values of these parameters. Section 8.7 will introduce a *robust optimization technique* for doing this. Section 8.8 then will describe how to use *chance constraints* to deal with constraints that can be violated a little bit without serious complications.

Throughout this chapter, the focus is on how and when to use what-if analysis while applying linear programming. What-if analysis also is important to managers when applying the various other techniques of management science and business analytics.

Although the procedures may need to be adapted to fit other kinds of applications, this chapter illustrates the importance of including what-if analysis in almost any study that involves performing prescriptive analytics.

Review *Questions*

. What are the *parameters* of a linear programming model?
. How can inaccuracies arise in the parameters of a model?
. What does what-if analysis reveal about the parameters of a model that are only estimates?
. Is it always inappropriate to make only a fairly rough estimate for a parameter of a model? Why?
. How is it possible for the parameters of a model to be accurate initially and then become inaccurate at a later date?
. How does what-if analysis help management prepare for changing conditions?
. What is meant by *sensitivity analysis?*
. For what kinds of managerial policy decisions does what-if analysis provide guidance?

8.2 CONTINUING THE WYNDOR CASE STUDY

We now return to the case study introduced in Section 5.1 involving the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem.

To review briefly, recall that the company is preparing to introduce two new products:

- An 8-foot glass door with aluminum framing.
- A 4-foot × 6-foot double-hung wood-framed window.

To analyze which mix of the two products would be most profitable, the company's Analytics Department introduced two decision variables:

D = Production rate of this new kind of door
W = Production rate of this new kind of window

where this rate measures the number of units produced per week. Three plants will be involved in the production of these products. Based on managerial decisions regarding how much these plants will continue to be used to produce current products, the number of hours of production time per week being made available in Plants 1, 2, and 3 for the new products is 4, 12, and 18, respectively. After obtaining rough estimates that the profit per unit will be $300 for the doors and $500 for the windows, the Analytics Department then formulated the linear programming model shown in Figure 5.12 and repeated here in Figure 8.1, where the objective is to choose the values of *D* and *W* in the changing cells UnitsProduced (C12:D12) so as to maximize the total profit (per week) given in the objective cell TotalProfit (G12). Applying Solver to this

model yielded the optimal solution shown on this spreadsheet and summarized as follows:

Optimal Solution

$D = 2$ (Produce 2 doors per week.)
$W = 6$ (Produce 6 windows per week.)
Profit = 3,600 (The estimated total weekly profit is $3,600.)

FIGURE 8.1

The spreadsheet model and its optimal solution for the original Wyndor problem before beginning what-if analysis.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7, UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8, UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9, UnitsProduced)

	G
11	Total Profit
12	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit, UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cells
DoorsProduced	C12
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitProfitPerDoor	C4
UnitProfitPerWindow	C12
UnitsProduced	C12:D12
WindowsProduced	D12

However, this optimal solution assumes that all the estimates that provide the parameters of the model (as shown in the UnitProfit (C4:D4), HoursUsedPerUnitProduced (C7:D9), and HoursAvailable (G7:G9) data cells) are accurate.

The head of the Analytics Department, Lisa Taylor, now is ready to meet with management to discuss the group's recommendation that the above product mix be used.

Management's Discussion of the Recommended Product Mix

Lisa Taylor (head of Analytics Department): I asked for this meeting so we could explore what questions the two of you would like us to pursue further. In particular, I am especially concerned that we weren't able to better pin down just what the numbers should be to go into our model. Which estimates do you think are the shakiest?

Binh Nguyen (vice president for manufacturing): Without question, the estimates of the unit profits for the two products. Since the products haven't gone into production yet, all we could do is analyze the data from similar current products and page 321 then try to project what the changes would be for these new products. We have some numbers, but they are pretty rough. We would need to do a lot more work to pin down the numbers better.

John Hill (president): We may need to do that. Lisa, do you have a way of checking how far off one of these estimates can be without changing the optimal product mix?

Lisa: Yes, we do. We can quickly find what we call the *allowable range* for each unit profit. As long as the true value of the unit profit is within this allowable range, and the other unit profit is correct, the optimal product mix will not change. If this range is pretty wide, you don't need to worry about refining the estimate of the unit profit. However, if the range is quite narrow, then it is important to pin down the estimate more closely.

The allowable range for a unit profit indicates how far its estimate can be off without affecting the optimal product mix.

John: What happens if both estimates are off?

Lisa: We can provide a way of checking whether the optimal product mix might change for any new combination of unit profits you think might be the true one.

John: Great. That's what we need. There's also another thing. Binh gave you the numbers for how many hours of production time we're making available per week in the three plants for these new products. I noticed you used these numbers on your spreadsheet.

Lisa: Yes. They're the right-hand sides of our constraints. Is something page 322 wrong with these numbers?

John: No, but we would like your group to provide us with some analysis of what the effect would be if we change any one of those numbers. How much more profit could we get from the new products for each additional hour of production time per week we provide in one of the plants? That sort of thing.

Lisa: Yes, we can get that analysis to you right away also.

John: We might also be interested in changing the available production hours for two or three of the plants. Other key numbers that can only be estimated are the production rates of the doors and windows in Plant 3. What happens if those estimates are uncertain?

Lisa: No problem. We'll give you information about all of that as well.

Summary of Management's What-If Questions

Here is a summary of John Hill's what-if questions that Lisa and her group will be addressing in the coming sections.

1. What happens if the estimate of the unit profit of one of Wyndor's new products is inaccurate? (Section 8.3)
2. What happens if the estimates of the unit profits of both of Wyndor's new products are inaccurate? (Section 8.4)
3. What happens if a change is made in the number of hours of production time per week being made available to Wyndor's new products in one of the plants? (Section 8.5)
4. What happens if simultaneous changes are made in the number of hours of production time per week being made available to Wyndor's new products in all the plants? (Section 8.6)
5. What happens if the production rates of doors and windows at Plant 3 are uncertain? (Sections 8.7 and 8.8)

Review *Questions*

1. Which estimates of the parameters in the linear programming model for the Wyndor problem are most questionable?
2. Which numbers in this model represent tentative managerial decisions that management might want to change after receiving the Analytics Department's analysis?

8.3 THE EFFECT OF CHANGES IN ONE OBJECTIVE FUNCTION COEFFICIENT

Section 8.1 began by discussing the fact that many of the parameters of a linear programming model typically are only *estimates* of quantities that cannot be

determined precisely at the time. What-if analysis (or *sensitivity analysis* in particular) reveals how close each of these estimates needs to be to avoid obtaining an erroneous optimal solution.

We focus in this section on how sensitivity analysis does this when the parameters involved are *coefficients in the objective function.* (Recall that each of these coefficients gives the *unit contribution* of one of the activities toward the overall measure of performance.) In the process, we will address the first of the what-if questions posed by Wyndor management in the preceding section.

Question 1: What happens if the estimate of the unit profit of one of Wyndor's new products is inaccurate?

To start this process, first consider the question of what happens if the estimate of $300 for the unit profit for Wyndor's new kind of door is inaccurate. To address this question, let

PD = Unit profit for the new kind of door
= Cell C4 in the spreadsheet (see Figure 8.1)

Although P_D = $300 in the current version of Wyndor's linear programming model, we now want to explore how much larger or how much smaller P_D can be and still have (D, W) = (2, 6) as the optimal solution. In other words, how much can the estimate of $300 for the unit profit for these doors be off before the model will give an erroneous optimal solution?

Using the Spreadsheet to Do Sensitivity Analysis

page 323

One of the great strengths of a spreadsheet is the ease with which it can be used interactively to perform various kinds of what-if analysis, including the sensitivity analysis being considered in this section. Once Solver has been set up to obtain an optimal solution, you can immediately find out what would happen if one of the parameters of the model were to be changed to some other value. All you have to do is make this change on the spreadsheet and then run Solver again.

Run Solver again and the spreadsheet immediately reveals the effect of changing any values in the data cells.

To illustrate, Figure 8.2 shows what would happen if the unit profit for doors were to be decreased from P_D = $300 to P_D = $200. Comparing with Figure 8.1, there is no change at all in the optimal solution. In fact, the *only* changes in the new spreadsheet are the new value of P_D in cell C4 and a decrease of $200 in the total profit shown in cell G12 (because each of the two doors produced per week provides $100 less profit). Because the optimal solution does not change, we now know that the original estimate of P_D = $300 can be considerably *too high* without invalidating the model's optimal solution.

FIGURE 8.2

The revised Wyndor problem where the estimate of the unit profit for doors has been decreased from P_D = \$300 to P_D = \$200, but no change occurs in the optimal solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	\$200	\$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			\$3,400

But what happens if this estimate is *too low* instead? Figure 8.3 shows what would happen if P_D were to be increased to P_D = \$500. Again, there is no change in the optimal solution.

FIGURE 8.3

The revised Wyndor problem where the estimate of the unit profit for doors has been increased from P_D = \$300 to P_D = \$500, but no change occurs in the optimal solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	\$500	\$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			\$4,000

Because the original value of P_D = \$300 can be changed considerably in either direction without changing the optimal solution, P_D is said to be *not a sensitive parameter.* It is not necessary to pin down this estimate with great accuracy to have confidence that the model is providing the correct optimal solution.

This may be all the information that is needed about P_D. However, if there is a good possibility that the true value of P_D will turn out to be outside this broad range from $200 to $500, further investigation would be desirable. How much higher or lower can P_D be before the optimal solution would change? page 324

Figure 8.4 demonstrates that the optimal solution would indeed change if P_D were increased all the way up to P_D = $1,000. Thus, we now know that this change occurs somewhere between $500 and $1,000 during the process of increasing P_D.

FIGURE 8.4

The revised Wyndor problem where the estimate of the unit profit for doors has been increased from P_D = $300 to P_D = $1,000, which results in a change in the optimal solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$1,000	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	4	3			$5,500

Using a Parameter Analysis Report Generated by Analytic Solver to Do Sensitivity Analysis Systematically

To pin down just when the optimal solution will change, we could continue selecting new values of P_D at random. However, a better approach is to systematically consider a range of values of P_D.

The Analytic Solver, first introduced for linear programming in Section 5.6, can generate a *parameter analysis report* that is designed to do just this sort of analysis. Instructions for obtaining this software are available in the preface and at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

In preparation for running a parameter analysis report, several additional range names were defined for specific cells that will be changed (e.g., UnitProfitPerDoor for C4) and for the specific changing cells (DoorsProduced and WindowsProduced for C12 and D12, respectively). This allows the resulting report to show the results with more informative names for each of these cells.

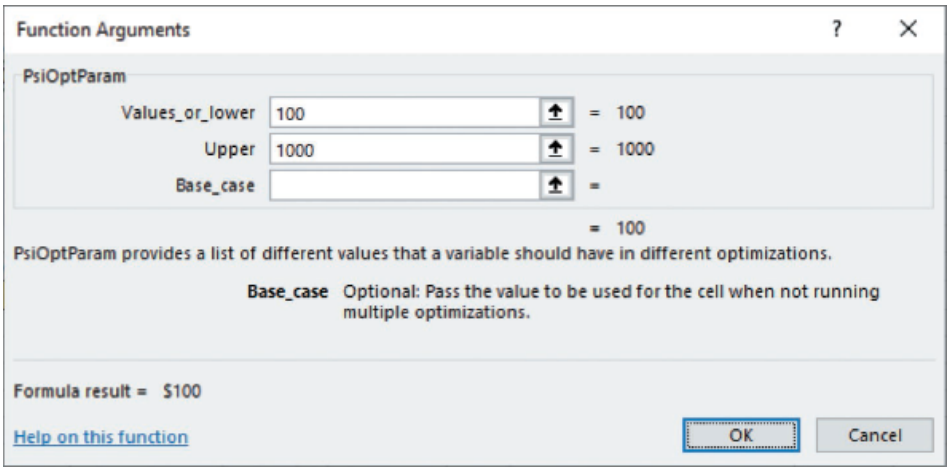
The data cell containing a parameter that will be systematically varied (UnitProfitPerDoor, or C4, in this case) is referred to as a **parameter cell.** A parameter analysis report is used to show the results in the changing cells and/or the objective cell for various trial values in the parameter cell. For each trial value, these results are obtained by using Solver to re-solve the problem.

parameter cell
A data cell containing a parameter that will be systematically varied when generating a parameter analysis report.

To generate a parameter analysis report, the first step is to define the parameter cell. In this case, select cell C4 (UnitProfitPerDoor) and choose Parameters > Optimization on the Analytic Solver tab. In the parameter cell dialog box, shown in Figure 8.5, enter the range of trial values for the parameter cell. The page 325 entries shown specify that P_D will be systematically varied from $100 to $1,000. If desired, additional parameter cells could be defined in this same way, but we will not do so at this point.

FIGURE 8.5

The parameter cell dialog box for P_D specifies here that this parameter cell for the Wyndor problem will be systematically varied from $100 to $1,000.



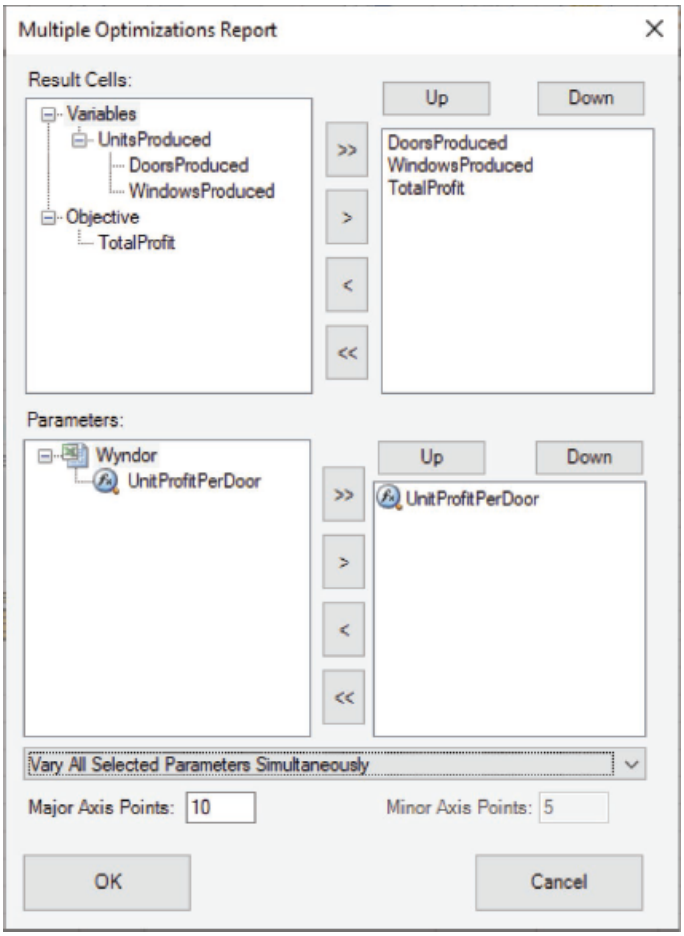
Microsoft Corporation

Next choose Reports > Optimization > Parameter Analysis under Analysis on the Analytic Solver tab. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 8.6 that allows you to specify which parameter cells to vary and which results to show. The choice of which parameter cells to vary is made under Parameters in the bottom half of the dialog box. Clicking on (>>) will select all of the parameter cells defined so far (moving them to the box on the right). In the Wyndor example, only one parameter has been defined, so this causes the single parameter cell (UnitProfitPerDoor) to appear on the right. If more parameter cells had been defined, particular parameter cells can be chosen for immediate analysis by clicking on the + next to Wyndor to reveal the list of

parameter cells that have been defined in the Wyndor spreadsheet. Clicking on (>) then moves individual parameter cells to the list on the right.

FIGURE 8.6

The dialog box for the parameter analysis report specifies here for the Wyndor problem that the UnitProfitPerDoor parameter cell will be varied and that results from all the changing cells (DoorsProduced and WindowsProduced) and the objective cell (Total-Profit) will be shown.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The choice of which results to show as the parameter cell is varied is made in the upper half of the dialog box. Clicking on (>>) will cause *all* of the changing cells (DoorsProduced and WindowsProduced) and the objective cell (Total-Profit) to appear in the list on the right. To instead choose a subset of these cells, click on the small + next to Variables (or Objective) to reveal a list of all the changing cells (or objective cell) and then click on > to move that changing cell (or objective cell) to the right.

Finally, enter the number of Major Axis Points to specify how many different values of the parameter cell will be shown in the parameter analysis report. The values will be spread evenly between the lower and upper values specified in the parameters cell

dialog box in Figure 8.5. With 10 major axis points, a lower value of $100, and an upper value of $1,000, the parameter analysis report will show results for P_D of $100, $200, $300, . . ., $1,000.

Clicking on the OK button generates the parameter analysis report shown in Figure 8.7. One at a time, the trial values listed in the first column of the table are put into the parameter cell (UnitProfitPerDoor) and then Solver is called on to re-solve the problem. The optimal results for that particular trial value of the parameter cell are then shown in the remaining columns—DoorsProduced, WindowsProduced, and TotalProfit. This is repeated automatically for each remaining trial value of the parameter cell. The end result (which happens very quickly for small problems) is the completely-filled-in parameter analysis report shown in Figure 8.7.

page 326

FIGURE 8.7

The parameter analysis report that shows the effect of systematically varying the estimate of the unit profit for doors for the Wyndor problem.

	A	B	C	D
1	UnitProfitPerDoor	DoorsProduced	WindowsProduced	TotalProfit
2	$100	2	6	$3,200
3	$200	2	6	$3,400
4	$300	2	6	$3,600
5	$400	2	6	$3,800
6	$500	2	6	$4,000
7	$600	2	6	$4,200
8	$700	2	6	$4,400
9	$800	4	3	$4,700
10	$900	4	3	$5,100
11	$1,000	4	3	$5,500

The parameter analysis report reveals that the optimal solution remains the same all the way from P_D = $100 (and perhaps lower) to P_D = $700, but that a change occurs somewhere between $700 and $800. We next could systematically consider values of P_D between $700 and $800 to determine more closely where the optimal solution changes. However, here is a shortcut. The range of values of P_D over which (D, W) = (2, 6) remains as the optimal solution is referred to as the **allowable range for an objective function coefficient,** or just the **allowable range** for short. Upon request, Solver will provide a report called the *sensitivity report* that reveals exactly what this allowable range is.

allowable range for an objective function coefficient

The range of values for a particular coefficient in the objective function over which the optimal solution for the original model remains optimal.

Using the Sensitivity Report to Find the Allowable Range

As was shown in Figure 5.12, when Excel's Solver gives the message that it has found a solution, it also gives on the right a list of three reports that can be provided. By selecting the second one (labeled Sensitivity), you will obtain the sensitivity report. With Analytic Solver, this same report is obtained by choosing Reports > Optimization > Sensitivity under Analysis on the Analytic Solver tab.

Figure 8.8 shows the relevant part of this report for the Wyndor problem. The Final Value column indicates the optimal solution. The next column gives the *reduced costs,* which can provide some useful information when any of the changing cells equal zero in the optimal solution, which is not the case here. (For a zero-valued changing cell, the corresponding reduced cost can be used to determine what the effect would be of either increasing that changing cell or making a change in its coefficient in the objective function.) Because of the relatively technical nature of these interpretations of reduced costs, we will not discuss them further here, but will provide a full explanation in the supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The next three columns provide the information needed to identify the *allowable range* for each coefficient in the objective function. The Objective Coefficient column gives the current value of each coefficient, and then the next two columns give the *allowable increase* and the *allowable decrease* from this value to remain within the allowable range.

page 327

FIGURE 8.8

Part of the sensitivity report generated by Solver for the original Wyndor problem (Figure 8.1), where the last three columns enable identifying the allowable ranges for the unit profits for doors and windows.

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$C$12	DoorsProduced	2	0	300	450	300
$D$12	WindowsProduced	6	0	500	1E + 30	300

Reduced costs are described in the supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Don't worry about this relatively technical subject (unless your instructor assigns this supplement).

For example, consider P_D, the coefficient of D in the objective function. Since D is the production rate for these special doors, the Doors row in the table provides the following information (without the dollar sign) about P_D:

Current value of P_D:	300	
Allowable increase in P_D:	450	So $P_D \leq 300 + 450 = 750$
Allowable decrease in P_D:	300	So $P_D \geq 300 - 300 = 0$
Allowable range for P_D:	$0 \leq P_D \leq 750$	

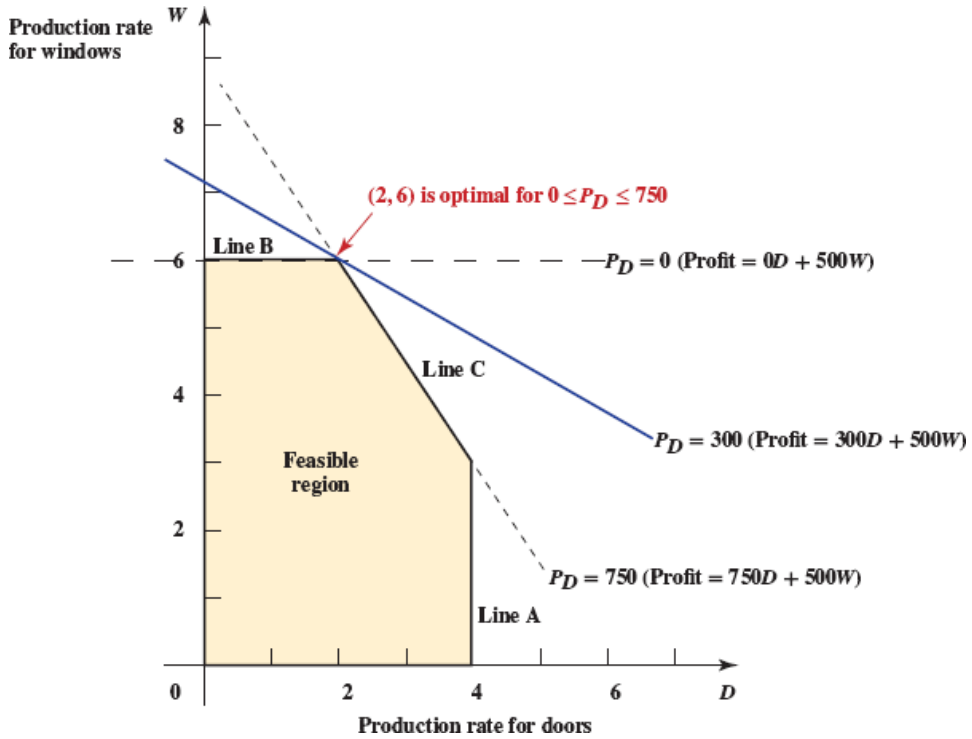
The sensitivity report generated by Solver reveals the allowable range for each coefficient in the objective function.

Therefore, if P_D is changed from its current value (without making any other change in the model), the current solution (D, W) = (2, 6) will remain optimal so long as the new value of P_D is within this allowable range.

Figure 8.9 provides graphical insight into this allowable range. For the original value of P_D = 300, the solid line in the figure shows the slope of the objective function line passing through (2, 6). At the lower end of the allowable range, when P_D = 0, the objective function line that passes through (2, 6) now is line B in the figure, so every point on the line segment between (0, 6) and (2, 6) is an optimal solution. For any value of P_D < 0, the objective function line will have rotated even further so that (0, 6) becomes the only optimal solution. At the upper end of the allowable range, when P_D = 750, the objective function line that passes through (2, 6) becomes line C, so every point on the line segment between (2, 6) and (4, 3) becomes an optimal solution. For any value of P_D > 750, the objective function line is even steeper than line C, so (4, 3) becomes the only optimal solution.

FIGURE 8.9

The two dashed lines that pass through solid constraint boundary lines are the objective function lines when P_D (the unit profit for doors) is at an endpoint of its allowable range, $0 \le P_D \le 750$. Therefore, either line or any objective function line in between still yields (D, W) = (2, 6) as an optimal solution for the Wyndor problem.



Conclusion: The allowable range for P_D is $0 \le P_D \le 750$, because (D, W) = (2, 6) remains optimal over this range but not beyond. (When $P_D = 0$ or $P_D = 750$, there are multiple optimal solutions, but (D, W) = (2, 6) still is one of them.) With the range this wide around the original estimate of \$300 ($P_D = 300$) for the unit profit for doors, we can be quite confident of obtaining the correct optimal solution for the true unit profit even though the discussion in Section 8.2 indicates that this estimate is fairly rough.

page 328

The sensitivity report also can be used to find the allowable range for the unit profit for Wyndor's other new product. In particular, let

PW = Unit profit for Wyndor's new kind of window
= Cell D4 in the spreadsheet

Referring to the Windows row of the sensitivity report (Figure 8.8), this row indicates that the allowable decrease in P_W is 300 (so $P_W \ge 500 - 300 = 200$) and the allowable increase is 1E + 30. What is meant by 1E + 30? This is shorthand in Excel for 10^{30} (1 with 30 zeroes after it). This tremendously huge number is used by Excel to represent *infinity.* Therefore, the allowable range of P_W is obtained from the sensitivity report as follows:

Current value of P_W:	500	
Allowable increase in P_W:	Unlimited	So P_W has no upper limit
Allowable decrease in P_W:	300	So $P_W \ge 500 - 300 = 200$
Allowable range:	$P_W \ge 200$	

The allowable range is quite wide for both objective function coefficients. Thus, even though P_D = \$300 and P_W = \$500 were only rough estimates of the true unit profit for the doors and windows, respectively, we can still be confident that we have obtained the correct optimal solution.

We are not always so lucky. For some linear programming problems, even a small change in the value of certain coefficients in the objective function can change the optimal solution. As first mentioned in Section 8.1, such coefficients are referred to as *sensitive parameters.* The sensitivity report will immediately indicate which of the objective function coefficients (if any) are sensitive parameters. These are parameters that have a small allowable increase and/or a small allowable decrease. Hence, extra care should be taken to refine these estimates.

A parameter is considered sensitive if even a small change in its value can change the optimal solution.

Once this has been done and the final version of the model has been solved, the allowable ranges continue to serve an important purpose. As indicated in Section 8.1, the second benefit of what-if analysis is that if conditions change after the study has been completed (a common occurrence), what-if analysis leaves signposts that

indicate (without solving the model again) whether a resulting change in a parameter of the model changes the optimal solution. Thus, if weeks, months, or even years later, the unit profit for one of Wyndor's new products changes substantially, its allowable range indicates immediately whether the old optimal product mix still is the appropriate one to use. Being able to draw an affirmative conclusion without reconstructing and solving the revised model is extremely helpful for any linear programming problem, but especially so when the model is a large one.

Review *Questions*

. What type of report can Analytic Solver generate to show how the optimal solution varies for a defined range of values of a parameter cell?

. What is meant by the *allowable range* for a coefficient in the objective function?

. What is the significance if the true value for a coefficient in the objective function turns out to be so different from its estimate that it lies outside its allowable range?

. In Solver's sensitivity report, what is the interpretation of the Objective Coefficient column? The Allowable Increase column? The Allowable Decrease column?

8.4 THE EFFECT OF SIMULTANEOUS CHANGES IN OBJECTIVE FUNCTION COEFFICIENTS

The coefficients in the objective function typically represent quantities (e.g., unit profits) that can only be estimated because of considerable uncertainty about what their true values will turn out to be. The allowable ranges described in the preceding section deal with this uncertainty by focusing on just one coefficient at a time. In effect, the allowable range for a particular coefficient assumes that the original estimates for all the other coefficients are completely accurate so that this coefficient is the only one whose true value may differ from its original estimate.

page 329

In actuality, the estimates for *all* the coefficients (or at least more than one of them) may be inaccurate simultaneously. The crucial question is whether this is likely to result in obtaining the wrong optimal solution. If so, greater care should be taken to refine these estimates as much as possible, at least for the more crucial coefficients. On the other hand, if what-if analysis reveals that the anticipated errors in estimating the coefficients are unlikely to affect the optimal solution, then management can be reassured that the current linear programming model and its results are providing appropriate guidance.

This section focuses on how to determine, without solving the problem again, whether the optimal solution might change if certain changes occur simultaneously in the coefficients of the objective function (due to their true values differing from their estimates). In the process, we will address the second of Wyndor management's what-if questions.

Question 2: What happens if the estimates of the unit profits of both of Wyndor's new products are inaccurate?

Using the Spreadsheet for This Analysis

Once again, a quick-and-easy way to address this kind of question is to simply try out different estimates on the spreadsheet formulation of the model and see what happens each time after running Solver again.

In this case, the optimal product mix indicated by the model is heavily weighted toward producing the windows (6 per week) rather than the doors (only 2 per week). Since there is equal enthusiasm for both new products, management is concerned about this imbalance. Therefore, management has raised a what-if question. What would happen if the estimate of the unit profit for the doors ($300) were too low and the corresponding estimate for the windows ($500) were too high? Management feels that the estimates could easily be off in these directions. If this were the case, would this lead to a more balanced product mix being the most profitable one?

This question can be answered in a matter of seconds simply by substituting new estimates of the unit profits in the original spreadsheet in Figure 8.1 and running Solver again. Figure 8.10 shows that new estimates of $450 for doors and $400 for windows causes no change at all in the solution for the optimal product mix. (The total profit does change, but this occurs only because of the changes in the unit profits.) Would even larger changes in the estimates of unit profits finally lead to a change in the optimal product mix? Figure 8.11 shows that this does happen, yielding a relatively balanced product mix of (D, W) = (4, 3), when estimates of $600 for doors and $300 for windows are used.

FIGURE 8.10

The revised Wyndor problem where the estimates of the unit profits for doors and windows have been changed to P_D = $450 and P_W = $400, respectively, but no change occurs in the optimal solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$450	$400			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,300

FIGURE 8.11

The revised Wyndor problem where the estimates of the unit profits for doors and windows have been changed to $600 and $300, respectively, which results in a change in the optimal solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$600	$300			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	4	3			$3,300

Using a Two-Way Parameter Analysis Report Generated by Analytic Solver for This Analysis

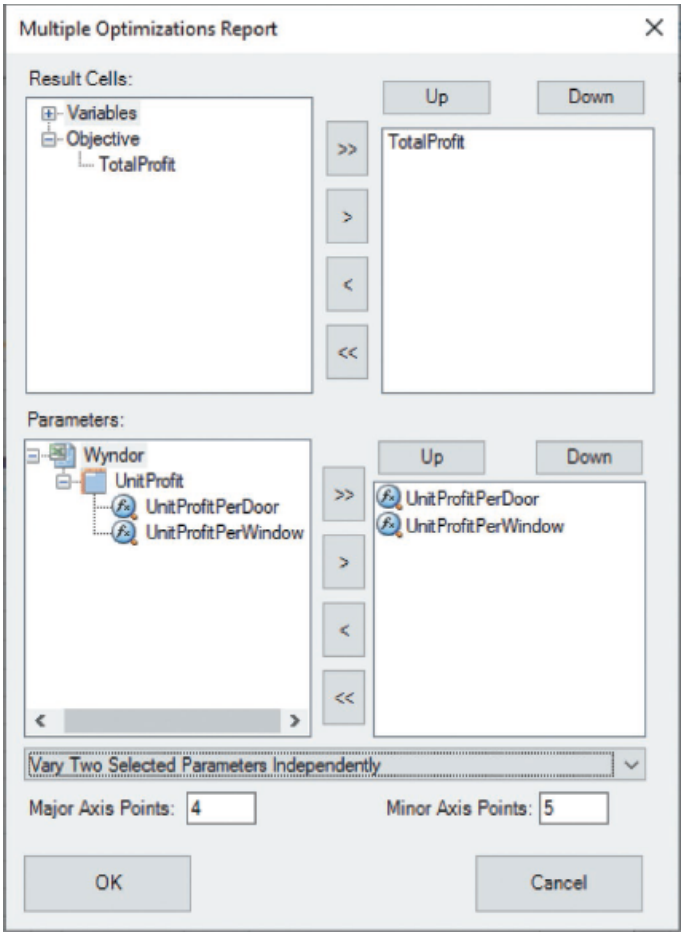
Using Analytic Solver, a two-way parameter analysis report provides a way of systematically investigating the effect if the estimates of both unit profits are inaccurate. This kind of parameter analysis table shows the results in a single output cell for various trial values in two parameter cells. Therefore, for example, it can be used to show how TotalProfit (G12) in Figure 8.1 varies over a range of trial values in the two parameter cells, UnitProfitPerDoor (C4) and UnitProfitPerWindow (D4). For each pair of trial values in these data cells, Solver is called on to re-solve the problem.

To create such a two-way parameter analysis report for the Wyndor problem, both Unit-ProfitPerDoor (C4) and UnitProfitPerWindow (D4) need to be defined as parameter cells. In turn, select cells C4 and D4, then choose Parameters > Optimization on the Analytic Solver tab, and then enter the range of trial values for each parameter cell (as was done in Figure 8.5 in the preceding section). For this example, UnitProfitPerDoor (C4) will be varied from $300 to $600 while UnitProfitPerWindow (D4) will be varied from $100 to $500.

Next, choose Reports > Optimization > Parameter Analysis under Analysis on the Analytic Solver tab to bring up the dialog box shown in Figure 8.12. For a two-way parameter analysis report, two parameter cells are chosen, but only a single result can be shown. Under Parameters, clicking on (>>) chooses both of the defined parameter cells, UnitProfitPerDoor and UnitProfitPer-Window. Under Results, click on (<<) to clear out the list of cells on the right, click on the + next to Objective to reveal the objective cell (TotalProfit), select TotalProfit, and then click on > to move this cell to the right.

FIGURE 8.12

The dialog box for the parameter analysis report specifies here that the UnitProfitPerDoor and UnitProfitPerWindow parameter cells will be varied and results from the objective cell (Total-Profit) will be shown for the Wyndor problem.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The next step is to choose Vary Two Selected Parameters Independently from the menu toward the bottom of the window (as opposed to the other two options—Vary All Selected Parameters Simultaneously or One At a Time). This will allow both parameter cells to be varied independently over their entire ranges. The number of different values of the first parameter cell and the second parameter cell to be shown in the parameter analysis report are entered in Major Axis Points and Minor Axis Points, respectively. These values will be spread evenly over the range of values specified in the parameter dialog box for each parameter cell. Therefore, choosing 4 and 5 for the respective number of values, as shown in Figure 8.12, will vary UnitProfitPerDoor over the four values of $300, $400, $500, and $600 while simultaneously varying UnitProfitPerWindow over the five values of $100, $200, $300, $400, and $500.

Clicking on the OK button generates the parameter analysis report shown in Figure 8.13. The trial values for the respective parameter cells are listed in the first column and first row of the table. For each combination of a trial value from the first column and from the first row, Solver has solved for the value of the output cell of interest (the objective cell for this example) and entered it into the corresponding column and row of the table.

FIGURE 8.13

The parameter analysis report that shows how the optimal total profit changes when systematically varying the estimate of both the unit profit for doors and the unit profit for windows for the Wyndor problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	TotalProfit	UnitProfitPerWindow				
2	UnitProfitPerDoor	$100	$200	$300	$400	$500
3	$300	$1,500	$1,800	$2,400	$3,000	$3,600
4	$400	$1,900	$2,200	$2,600	$3,200	$3,800
5	$500	$2,300	$2,600	$2,900	$3,400	$4,000
6	$600	$2,700	$3,000	$3,300	$3,600	$4,200

page 331

It also is possible to choose either DoorsProduced or WindowsProduced instead of Total-Profit as the result to show in the dialog box in Figure 8.12. A similar parameter analysis report then could have been generated to show either the optimal number of doors to produce or the optimal number of windows to produce for each combination of values for the unit profits. These two parameter analysis reports are shown in Figure 8.14. The upper right-hand corner (cell F3) of both reports, taken together, gives the optimal solution of (D, W) = (2, 6) when using the original unit-profit estimates of $300 for doors and $500 for windows. Moving down from this cell corresponds to increasing this profit estimate for doors, while moving to the left amounts to decreasing the profit estimate for windows. Moving to the lower-left corner of both tables reveals that (D, W) = (4, 3) becomes the optimal solution for these values of the profit estimates. However, (D, W) = (2, 6) continues to be the optimal solution for all the cells near F3. This indicates that the original estimates of unit profit would need to be very inaccurate indeed before the optimal product mix would change. Although the estimates are fairly rough, management is confident that they are not that inaccurate. Therefore, there is no need to expend the considerable effort that would be needed to refine the estimates.

FIGURE 8.14

The pair of parameter analysis reports that show how the optimal number of doors to produce (top report) and the optimal number of windows to produce (bottom report) change when systematically varying the estimate of both the unit profit for doors and the unit profit for windows for the Wyndor problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	DoorsProduced	UnitProfitPerWindow				
2	UnitProfitPerDoor	$100	$200	$300	$400	$500
3	$300	4	2	2	2	2
4	$400	4	4	2	2	2
5	$500	4	4	4	2	2
6	$600	4	4	4	2	2

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	WindowsProduced	UnitProfitPerWindow				
2	UnitProfitPerDoor	$100	$200	$300	$400	$500
3	$300	3	6	6	6	6
4	$400	3	3	6	6	6
5	$500	3	3	3	6	6
6	$600	3	3	3	6	6

What-if analysis shows that there is no need to refine Wyndor's estimates of the unit profits for doors and windows.

At this point, it continues to appear that (*D, W*) = (2, 6) is the best product mix for initiating the production of the two new products (although additional what-if questions remain to be addressed in subsequent sections). However, we also now know from Figure 8.14 that as conditions change in the future, if the unit profits for both products change enough, it may be advisable to change the product mix later. We still need to leave clear signposts behind to signal when a future change in the product mix should be considered, as described next.

page 332

Gleaning Additional Information from the Sensitivity Report

The preceding section described how the data in the sensitivity report enable finding the allowable range for an individual coefficient in the objective function when that coefficient is the only one that changes from its original value. These same data (the allowable increase and allowable decrease in each coefficient) also can be used to analyze the effect of *simultaneous* changes in these coefficients. Here is how.

The 100 Percent Rule for Simultaneous Changes in Objective Function Coefficients: If simultaneous changes are made in the coefficients of the objective function, calculate for each change the percentage of the allowable change (increase or decrease) for that coefficient to remain within its allowable range. If the *sum* of the percentage changes does *not* exceed 100 percent, the original optimal solution definitely will still be optimal. (If the sum *does* exceed 100 percent, then we cannot be sure.)

A sum ≤ 100 percent guarantees that the original optimal solution is still optimal.

This rule does not spell out what happens if the sum of the percentage changes *does* exceed 100 percent. The consequence depends on the directions of the changes in the coefficients. Exceeding 100 percent may or may not change the optimal solution, but so long as 100 percent is not exceeded, the original optimal solution *definitely* will still be optimal.

Keep in mind that we can safely use the entire allowable increase or decrease in a single objective function coefficient only if none of the other coefficients have changed at all. With simultaneous changes in the coefficients, we focus on the *percentage* of the allowable increase or decrease that is being used for each coefficient.

To illustrate, consider the Wyndor problem again, along with the information provided by the sensitivity report in Figure 8.8. Suppose conditions have changed after the initial study, and the unit profit for doors (P_D) has increased from \$300 to \$450 while the unit profit for windows (P_W) has decreased from \$500 to \$400. The calculations for the 100 percent rule then are

$$
\begin{aligned}
&P_D\text{: \$300} \rightarrow \text{\$450 (an increase of \$150)} \\
&\quad \text{Percentage of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{150}{450}\right)\% = 33\tfrac{1}{3}\% \\
&P_W\text{: \$500} \rightarrow \text{\$400 (a decrease of \$100)} \\
&\quad \text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{100}{300}\right)\% = 33\tfrac{1}{3}\% \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{Sum} = 66\tfrac{2}{3}\%
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the sum of the percentages does not exceed 100 percent, the original optimal solution (*D, W*) = (2, 6) definitely is still optimal, just as we found earlier in Figure 8.10.

page 333

Now suppose conditions have changed even further, so P_D has increased from \$300 to \$600 while P_W has decreased from \$500 to \$300. The calculations for the 100 percent rule now are

$$
\begin{aligned}
&P_D\text{: \$300} \rightarrow \text{\$600 (an increase of \$300)} \\
&\quad \text{Percentage of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{300}{450}\right)\% = 66\tfrac{2}{3}\% \\
&P_W\text{: \$500} \rightarrow \text{\$300 (a decrease of \$200)} \\
&\quad \text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{200}{300}\right)\% = 66\tfrac{2}{3}\% \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{Sum} = 133\tfrac{1}{3}\%
\end{aligned}
$$

Since the sum of the percentages now exceeds 100 percent, the 100 percent rule says that we can no longer guarantee that (*D, W*) = (2, 6) is still optimal. In fact, we found earlier in both Figures 8.11 and 8.14 that the optimal solution has changed to (*D, W*) = (4, 3).

These results suggest how to find just where the optimal solution changes while P_D is being increased and P_W is being decreased in this way. Since 100 percent is midway between 66 ⅔ percent and 133 ⅓ percent, the sum of the percentage changes

will equal 100 percent when the values of P_D and P_W are midway between their values in the above cases. In particular, P_D = \$525 is midway between \$450 and \$600 and P_W = \$350 is midway between \$400 and \$300. The corresponding calculations for the 100 percent rule are

$$P_D\text{: } \$300 \rightarrow \$525 \text{ (an increase of } \$225)$$

$$\text{Percentage of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{225}{450}\right)\% = 50\%$$

$$P_W\text{: } \$500 \rightarrow \$350 \text{ (a decrease of } \$150)$$

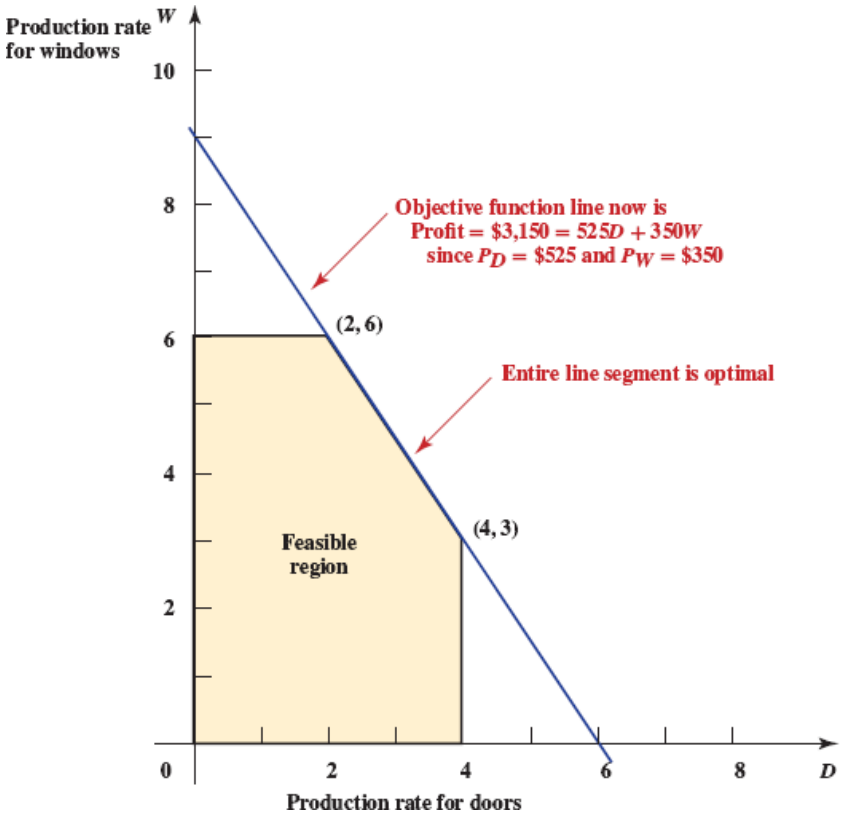
$$\text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{150}{300}\right)\% = 50\%$$

$$\text{Sum} = 100\%$$

Although the sum of the percentages equals 100 percent, the fact that it does not *exceed* 100 percent guarantees that (*D, W*) = (2, 6) is still optimal. Figure 8.15 shows graphically that *both* (2, 6) and (4, 3) are now optimal, as well as all the points on the line segment connecting these two points. However, if P_D and P_W were to be changed any further from their original values (so that the sum of the percentages exceeds 100 percent), the objective function line would be rotated so far toward the vertical that (*D, W*) = (4, 3) would become the only optimal solution.

FIGURE 8.15

When the estimates of the unit profits for doors and windows change to P_D = \$525 and P_W = \$350, which lies at the edge of what is allowed by the 100 percent rule, the graphical method shows that (*D, W*) = (2, 6) still is an optimal solution. In addition, every other point on the line segment between this solution and (4, 3) also is optimal.



At the same time, keep in mind that having the sum of the percentages of allowable changes exceed 100 percent does not automatically mean that the optimal solution will change. For example, suppose that the estimates of both unit profits are halved. The resulting calculations for the 100 percent rule are

$$P_D\text{: } \$300 \rightarrow \$150 \text{ (an decrease of } \$150)$$

$$\text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{150}{450}\right)\% = 50\%$$

$$P_W\text{: } \$500 \rightarrow \$250 \text{ (a decrease of } \$250)$$

$$\text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{250}{300}\right)\% = 83\%$$

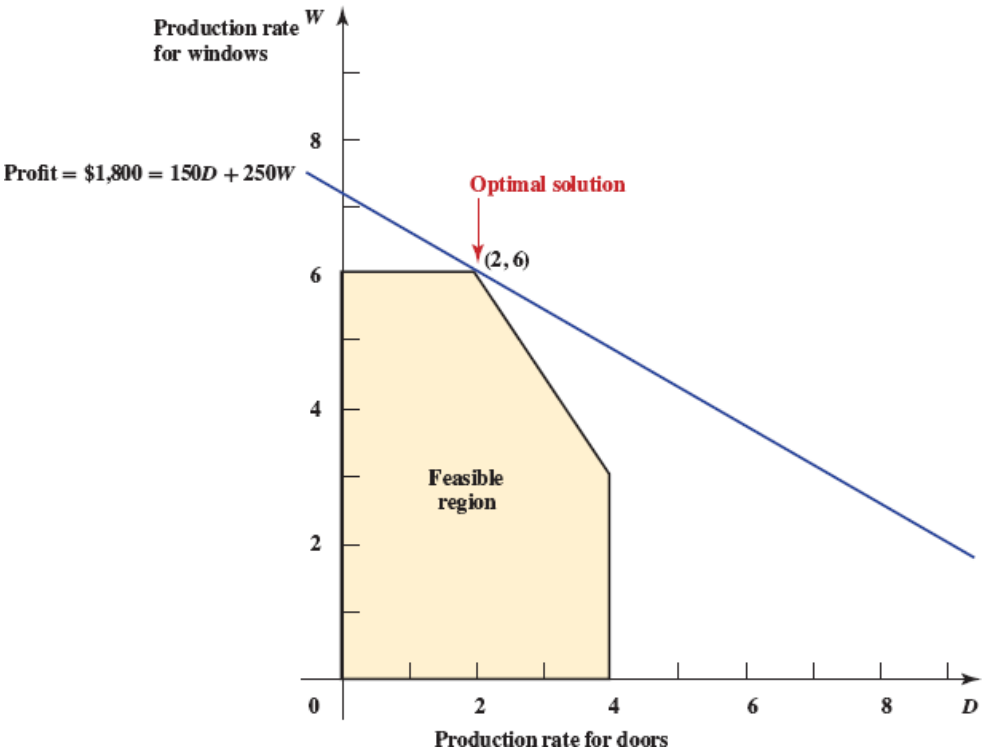
$$\text{Sum} = 133\%$$

Even though this sum exceeds 100 percent, Figure 8.16 shows that the original optimal solution is still optimal. In fact, the objective function line has the same slope as the original objective function line (the solid line in Figure 8.9). This happens whenever *proportional changes* are made to all the unit profits, which will automatically lead to the same optimal solution.

FIGURE 8.16

When the estimates of the unit profits for doors and windows change to P_D = $150 and P_W = $250 (half their original values), the graphical method shows that the optimal

solution still is (*D, W*) = (2, 6). This occurs even though the 100 percent rule says that the optimal solution might change.



Here is an example where the original optimal solution is still optimal even though the sum exceeds 100 percent.

Comparisons

page 334

You now have seen three approaches to investigating what happens if simultaneous changes occur in the coefficients of the objective function: (1) try out changes directly on a spreadsheet, (2) use a two-way parameter analysis report, and (3) apply the 100 percent rule.

page 335

The spreadsheet approach is a good place to start, especially for less experienced modelers, because it is simple and quick. If you are only interested in checking one specific set of changes in the coefficients, you can immediately see what happens after making the changes in the spreadsheet.

More often, there will be numerous possibilities for what the true values of the coefficients will turn out to be, because of uncertainty in the original estimates of these coefficients. The parameter analysis report is useful for systematically checking a variety of possible changes in one or two objective function coefficients. Trying out representative possibilities on the spreadsheet may provide all the insight that is needed. Perhaps the optimal solution for the original model will remain optimal over nearly all these possibilities, so this solution can be confidently used. Or perhaps it will become clear that the original estimates need to be refined before selecting a solution.

When the spreadsheet approach and/or parameter analysis report does not provide a clear conclusion, the 100 percent rule can usefully complement this approach in the following ways:

- The 100 percent rule can be used to determine just how large the changes in the objective function coefficients need to be before the original optimal solution may no longer be optimal.
- When the model has a large number of decision variables (as is common for real problems), it may become impractical to use the spreadsheet approach to systematically try out a variety of simultaneous changes in many or all of the coefficients in the objective function because of the huge number of representative possibilities. The parameter analysis report can only be used to systematically check possible changes in—at most—two coefficients at a time. However, by dividing each coefficient's allowable increase or allowable decrease by the number of decision variables, the 100 percent rule immediately indicates how much each coefficient can be safely changed without invalidating the current optimal solution.
- After completing the study, if conditions change in the future that cause some or all of the coefficients in the objective function to change, the 100 percent rule quickly indicates whether the original optimal solution must remain optimal. If the answer is affirmative, there is no need to take all the time that may be required to reconstruct the (revised) spreadsheet model. The time saved can be very substantial for large models.

Review *Questions*

. How many result cells can be selected for display in Analytic Solver's two-way parameter analysis report?

. In the 100 percent rule for simultaneous changes in objective function coefficients, what are the percentage changes that are being considered?

. In this 100 percent rule, if the sum of the percentage changes does not exceed 100 percent, what does this say about the original optimal solution?

. In this 100 percent rule, if the sum of the percentage changes exceeds 100 percent, does this mean that the original optimal solution is no longer optimal?

8.5 THE EFFECT OF SINGLE CHANGES IN A CONSTRAINT

We now turn our focus from the coefficients in the objective function to the effect of changing the functional constraints. The changes might occur either in the coefficients on the left-hand sides of the constraints or in the values of the right-hand sides.

We might be interested in the effect of such changes for the same reason we are interested in this effect for objective function coefficients, namely, that these parameters of the model are only *estimates* of quantities that cannot be determined

precisely at this time so we want to determine the effect if these estimates are inaccurate.

However, a more common reason for this interest is the one discussed at the end of Section 8.1, namely, that the right-hand sides of the functional constraints may well represent *managerial policy decisions* rather than quantities that are largely outside the control of management. Therefore, after the model has been solved, management will want to analyze the effect of altering these policy decisions in a variety of ways to see if these decisions can be improved. What-if analysis provides valuable guidance to management in determining the effect of altering these policy decisions. (Recall that this was cited as the third benefit of what-if analysis in Section 8.1.)

page 336

When the right-hand sides represent managerial policy decisions, what-if analysis provides guidance regarding the effect of altering these decisions.

This section describes how to perform what-if analysis when making changes in just one spot (a coefficient or a right-hand side) of a single constraint. The next section then will deal with simultaneous changes in the constraints.

The procedure for determining the effect if a single change is made in a constraint is the same regardless of whether the change is in a coefficient on the left-hand side or in the value on the right-hand side. (The one exception is that the Solver sensitivity report provides information about changes in the right-hand side but does not do so for the left-hand side.) Therefore, we will illustrate the procedure by making changes in a right-hand side.

In particular, we return to the Wyndor case study to address the third what-if question posed by Wyndor management in Section 8.2.

Question 3: What happens if a change is made in the number of hours of production time per week being made available to Wyndor's new products in one of the plants?

The number of hours available in each plant is the value of the right-hand side for the corresponding constraint, so we want to investigate the effect of changing this right-hand side for one of the plants. With the original optimal solution, (*D, W*) = (2, 6), only 2 of the 4 available hours in Plant 1 are used, so changing this number of available hours (barring a large decrease) would have no effect on either the optimal solution or the resulting total profit from the two new products. However, it is unclear what would happen if the number of available hours in either Plant 2 or Plant 3 were to be changed. Let's start with Plant 2.

Using the Spreadsheet for This Analysis

Referring back to Section 8.2, Figure 8.1 shows the spreadsheet model for the original Wyndor problem before beginning what-if analysis. The optimal solution is (*D, W*) = (2, 6) with a total profit of $3,600 per week from the two new products. Cell G8 shows that

12 hours of production time per week are being made available for the new products in Plant 2.

To see what happens if a specific change is made in this number of hours, all you need to do is substitute the new number in cell G8 and run Solver again. For example, Figure 8.17 shows the result if the number of hours is increased from 12 to 13. The corresponding optimal solution in C12:D12 gives a total profit of $3,750. Thus, the resulting change in profit would be

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Incremental profit} &= \$3{,}750 - \$3{,}600\\ &= \$150\end{aligned}$$

FIGURE 8.17

The revised Wyndor problem where the hours available in Plant 2 per week have been increased from 12 (as in Figure 8.1) to 13, which results in an increase of $150 in the total profit per week from the two new products.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	1.667	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	13	≤	13
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	1.667	6.5			$3,750

Since this increase in profit is obtained by adding just one more hour in Plant 2, it would be interesting to see the effect of adding several more hours. Figure 8.18 shows the effect of adding five more hours. Comparing Figure 8.18 to Figure 8.17, the additional profit from providing five more hours would be

page 337

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Incremental profit} &= \$4{,}500 - \$3{,}750\\ &= \$750 \text{ from adding 5 hours}\\ &= \$150 \text{ per hour added}\end{aligned}$$

FIGURE 8.18

A further revision of the Wyndor problem in Figure 8.17 to further increase the hours available in Plant 2 from 13 to 18, which results in a further increase in total profit of $750 (which is the $150 per hour added in Plant 2).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	18	≤	18
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0	9			$4,500

So far, each additional hour provided in Plant 2 adds $150 to profit.

Would adding even more hours increase profit even further? Figure 8.19 shows what would happen if a total of 20 hours per week were made available to the new products in Plant 2. Both the optimal solution and the total profit are the same as in Figure 8.18, so increasing from 18 to 20 hours would not help. (The reason is that the 18 hours available in Plant 3 prevent producing more than 9 windows per week, so only 18 hours can be used in Plant 2.) Thus, it appears that 18 hours is the maximum that should be considered for Plant 2.

FIGURE 8.19

A further revision of the Wyndor problem in Figure 8.18 to further increase the hours available in Plant 2 from 18 to 20, which results in no change in total profit because the optimal solution cannot make use of these additional hours.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	18	≤	20
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0	9			$4,500

However, the fact that the total profit from the two new products can be increased substantially by increasing the number of hours per week made available to the new products from 12 to 18 does not mean that these additional hours should be provided

automatically. The production time made available for these two new products can be increased only if it is decreased for other products. Therefore, management will need to assess the disadvantages of decreasing the production time for any other products (including both lost profit and less tangible disadvantages) before deciding whether to increase the production time for the new products. This analysis also might lead to *decreasing* the production time made available to the two new products in one or more of the plants.

Now management needs to consider the trade-off between adding production time for the new products and decreasing it for other products.

Using a Parameter Analysis Report Generated by Analytic Solver for This Analysis

Using Analytic Solver, a parameter analysis report can be used to systematically determine the effect of making various changes in one of the parameters in a constraint. For example, Figure 8.20 displays a parameter analysis report (obtained by following the same procedure used to generate a parameter analysis report in Section 8.3) to show how the changing cells and total profit change as the number of available hours in Plant 2 range between 4 and 20.

FIGURE 8.20

The parameter analysis report that shows the effect of varying the number of hours of production time being made available per week in Plant 2 for Wyndor's new products.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	HoursAvailableInPlant2	DoorsProduced	WindowsProduced	TotalProfit	Incremental Profit
2	4	4	2	$2,200	
3	5	4	2.5	$2,450	$250
4	6	4	3	$2,700	$250
5	7	3.667	3.5	$2,850	$150
6	8	3.333	4	$3,000	$150
7	9	3	4.5	$3,150	$150
8	10	2.667	5	$3,300	$150
9	11	2.333	5.5	$3,450	$150
10	12	2	6	$3,600	$150
11	13	1.667	6.5	$3,750	$150
12	14	1.333	7	$3,900	$150
13	15	1	7.5	$4,050	$150
14	16	0.667	8	$4,200	$150
15	17	0.333	8.5	$4,350	$150
16	18	0	9	$4,500	$150
17	19	0	9	$4,500	$0
18	20	0	9	$4,500	$0

An interesting pattern is apparent in the incremental profit column. Starting at 12 hours available at Plant 2 (the current allotment), each additional hour allocated yields an additional $150 in profit (up to making 18 hours available). Similarly, if hours are taken away from Plant 2, each hour lost causes a loss of $150 profit (down to making six hours available). This rate of change in the profit for increases or decreases in the right-hand side of a constraint is known as the **shadow price.**

shadow price

The shadow price for a functional constraint is the rate at which the optimal value of the objective function can be increased by increasing the right-hand side of the constraint by a small amount.

> Given an optimal solution and the corresponding value of the objective function for a linear programming model, the **shadow price** for a functional constraint is the *rate* at which the value of the objective function can be increased by increasing the right-hand side of the constraint by a small amount.

However, the shadow price of $150 for the Plant 2 constraint is valid only within a range of values near 12 (in particular, between 6 hours and 18 hours). If the number of available hours is increased beyond 18 hours, then the incremental profit drops to zero. If the available hours are reduced below six hours, then profit drops at a faster rate of $250 per hour. Therefore, letting RHS denote the value of the right-hand side, the shadow price of $150 is valid for

$$6 \leq \text{RHS} \leq 18$$

This range is known as the **allowable range for the right-hand side** (or just **allowable range** for short).

allowable range for the right-hand side

The range of values for the right-hand side of a functional constraint over which this constraint's shadow price remains valid.

> The *allowable range for the right-hand side* of a functional constraint is the range of values for this right-hand side over which this constraint's shadow price remains valid.

Unlike the allowable range for objective function coefficients described in Section 8.3, a change that is within the allowable range for the right-hand side does *not* mean the original solution is still optimal. In fact, any time the shadow price is not zero, a change to a right-hand side leads to a change in the optimal solution. The shadow price indicates how much the value of the objective function will change as the optimal solution changes.

page 339

Using the Sensitivity Report to Obtain the Key Information

As illustrated earlier, it is straightforward to use a parameter analysis report to calculate the *shadow price* for a functional constraint, as well as to find (or at least closely approximate) the *allowable range* for the right-hand side of this constraint over which

the shadow price remains valid. However, this same information also can be obtained immediately from Solver's sensitivity report for all the functional constraints. Figure 8.21 shows the full sensitivity report provided by Solver for the original Wyndor problem after obtaining the optimal solution given in Figure 8.1. The top half is the part already shown in Figure 8.8 for finding allowable ranges for the objective function coefficients. The bottom half focuses on the functional constraints, including providing the shadow prices for these constraints in the fourth column. The first three columns remind us that (1) the output cells for these constraints in Figure 8.1 are cells E7 to E9, (2) these cells give the number of production hours used per week in the three plants, and (3) the final values in these cells are 2, 12, and 18 (as shown in column E of Figure 8.1). (We will discuss the last three columns a little later.)

FIGURE 8.21

The complete sensitivity report generated by Solver for the original Wyndor problem as formulated in Figure 8.1.

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$C$12	DoorsProduced	2	0	300	450	300
$D$12	WindowsProduced	6	0	500	1E + 30	300

Constraints

Cell	Name	Final Value	Shadow Price	Constraint R. H. Side	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$E$7	Plant 1 Used	2	0	4	1E + 30	2
$E$8	Plant 2 Used	12	150	12	6	6
$E$9	Plant 3 Used	18	100	18	6	6

The shadow price given in the fourth column for each constraint tells us how much the value of the objective function [objective cell (G12) in Figure 8.1] would increase if the right-hand side of that constraint (cell G7, G8, or G9) were to be increased by 1. Conversely, it also tells us how much the value of the objective function would *decrease* if the right-hand side were to be decreased by 1. The shadow price for the Plant 1 constraint is 0, because this plant already is using less hours (2) than are available (4) so there would be no benefit to making an additional hour available. However, Plants 2 and 3 are using all the hours available to them for the two new products (with the product mix given by the changing cells). Thus, it is not surprising that the shadow prices indicate that the objective cell would increase if the hours available in either Plant 2 or Plant 3 were to be increased.

To express this information in the language of management, the value of the objective function for this problem [objective cell (G12) in Figure 8.1] represents the *total profit* in dollars per week from the two new products under consideration. The right-hand side of each functional constraint represents the number of hours of production time being made available per week for these products in the plant that corresponds to this constraint. Therefore, the shadow price for a functional constraint

informs management as to how much the total profit from the two new products could be increased for each additional hour of production time made available to these products per week in the corresponding plant. Conversely, the shadow price indicates how much this profit would decrease for each reduction of an hour of production time in that plant. This interpretation of the shadow price remains valid as long as the change in the number of hours of production time is not very large.

The shadow prices reveal the relationship between profit and the amount of production time made available in the plants.

Specifically, this interpretation of the shadow price remains valid as long as the number of hours of production time remains within its *allowable range.* Solver's sensitivity report provides all the data needed to identify the allowable range of each functional constraint. Refer back to the bottom of this report given in Figure 8.21. The final three columns enable calculation of this range. The "Constraint R. H. Side" column indicates the original value of the right-hand side before any change is made. Adding the number in the "Allowable Increase" column to this original value then gives the upper endpoint of the allowable range. Similarly, subtracting the number in the "Allowable Decrease" column from this original value gives the lower endpoint. Using the fact that 1E + 30 represents infinity (∞), these calculations of the allowable ranges are shown below, where a subscript has been added to each RHS to identify the constraint involved.

page 340

$$\text{Plant 1 constraint: } 4 - 2 \le \text{RHS}_1 \le 4 + \infty, \quad \text{so } 2 \le \text{RHS}_1 \text{ (no upper limit)}$$
$$\text{Plant 2 constraint: } 12 - 6 \le \text{RHS}_2 \le 12 + 6, \quad \text{so } 6 \le \text{RHS}_2 \le 18$$
$$\text{Plant 3 constraint: } 18 - 6 \le \text{RHS}_3 \le 18 + 6, \quad \text{so } 12 \le \text{RHS}_3 \le 24.$$

Here is how to find the allowable ranges for the right-hand sides from the sensitivity report.

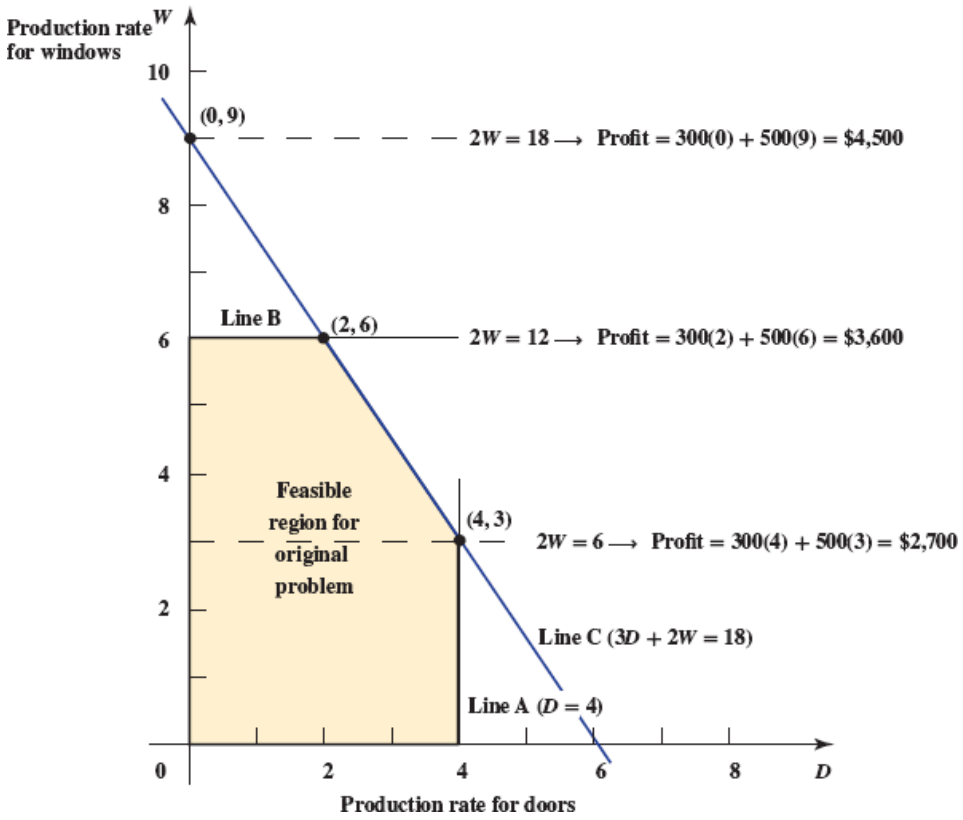
In the case of the Plant 2 constraint, Figure 8.22 provides graphical insight into why $6 \le \text{RHS} \le 18$ is the range of validity for the shadow price. The optimal solution for the original problem, $(D, W) = (2, 6)$, lies at the intersection of line B and line C. The equation for line B is $2W = 12$ because this is the constraint boundary line for the Plant 2 constraint ($2W \le 12$). However, if the value of this right-hand side ($\text{RHS}_2 = 12$) is changed, line B will either shift upward (for a larger value of RHS_2) or downward (for a smaller value of RHS_2). As line B shifts, the boundary of the feasible region shifts accordingly and the optimal solution continues to lie at the intersection of the shifted line B and line C—provided the shift in line B is not so large that this intersection is no longer feasible. Each time RHS_2 is increased (or decreased) by 1, this intersection shifts enough to increase (or decrease) Profit by the amount of the shadow price ($150). Figure 8.22 indicates that this intersection remains feasible (and so optimal) as RHS_2 increases from 12 to 18, because the feasible region expands upward as line B shifts upward. However, for values of RHS_2 larger than 18, this intersection is no longer feasible because it gives a negative value of D (the production rate for doors). Thus, each increase of 1 above 18 no longer increases Profit by the amount of the shadow price. Similarly, as RHS_2 decreases from 12 to 6, this intersection

page 341

remains feasible (and so optimal) as line B shifts down accordingly. However, for values of RHS_2 less than 6, this intersection is no longer feasible because it violates the Plant 1 constraint ($D \leq 4$) whose boundary line is line A. Hence, each decrease of 1 below 6 no longer decreases Profit by the amount of the shadow price. Consequently, $6 \leq RHS \leq 18$ is the allowable range over which the shadow price is valid.

FIGURE 8.22

A graphical interpretation of the allowable range, $6 \leq RHS_2 \leq 18$, for the right-hand side of Wyndor's Plant 2 constraint.



Summary

Recall again that the right-hand side of each functional constraint for the Wyndor problem represents the number of hours of production time per week in the corresponding plant that is being made available to the two new products. The *shadow price* for each constraint reveals how much the total profit from these new products would increase for each additional hour of production time made available in the corresponding plant for these products. This interpretation of the shadow price remains valid as long as the number of hours remains within its *allowable range.* Therefore, each shadow price can be applied by management to evaluate a change in its original decision regarding the number of hours as long as the new number is within the corresponding allowable range. This evaluation also would need to take into account

how the change in the number of hours made available to the new products would impact the production rates and profits for the company's other products.

Review *Questions*

. Why might it be of interest to investigate the effect of making changes in a functional constraint?
. Why might it be possible to alter the right-hand side of a functional constraint?
. What is meant by a *shadow price?*
. How can a shadow price be found by using the spreadsheet? By using a parameter analysis report? By using Solver's sensitivity report?
. Why are shadow prices of interest to managers?
. Can shadow prices be used to determine the effect of *decreasing* rather than increasing the right-hand side of a functional constraint?
. What does a shadow price of 0 tell a manager?
. Which columns of Solver's sensitivity report are used to find the allowable range for the right-hand side of a functional constraint?
. Why are these allowable ranges of interest to managers?

8.6 THE EFFECT OF SIMULTANEOUS CHANGES IN THE CONSTRAINTS

The preceding section described how to perform what-if analysis to investigate the effect of changes in a single spot of a constraint. We now turn our consideration to the effect of simultaneous changes in the constraints.

The need to consider these simultaneous changes arises frequently. There may be considerable uncertainty about the estimates for a number of the parameters in the functional constraints, so questions will arise as to the effect if the true values of the parameters simultaneously deviate significantly from the estimates. Since the right-hand sides of the constraints often represent managerial policy decisions, questions will arise about what would happen if some of these decisions were to be changed. These decisions frequently are interrelated and so need to be considered simultaneously.

Managerial policy decisions involving right-hand sides frequently are interrelated, so changes in these decisions should be considered simultaneously.

We outline next how the usual three methods for performing what-if analysis can be applied to considering simultaneous changes in the constraints. The third one (using Solver's sensitivity report) is only helpful for changing right-hand sides. For the first two (using the spreadsheet and using a parameter analysis report), the procedure is the same regardless of whether the changes are in the coefficients on the left-hand sides

or in the right-hand sides of the constraints (or both). Since changing the right-hand sides is the more important case, we will focus on this case.

In particular, we now will deal with the fourth of Wyndor management's what-if questions.

Question 4: What happens if simultaneous changes are made in the number of hours of production time per week being made available to Wyndor's new products in all the plants?

page 342

In particular, after seeing that the Plant 2 constraint has the largest shadow price (150), versus a shadow price of 100 for the Plant 3 constraint, management now is interested in exploring a specific type of simultaneous change in these production hours. By shifting the production of one of the company's current products from Plant 2 to Plant 3, it is possible to increase the number of production hours available to the new products in Plant 2 by decreasing the number of production hours available in Plant 3 by the same amount. Management wonders what would happen if these simultaneous changes in production hours were made.

Using the Spreadsheet for This Analysis

According to the shadow prices, the effect of shifting one hour of production time per week from Plant 3 to Plant 2 would be as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{RHS}_2\text{: } 12 \rightarrow 13 \quad &\text{Change in total profit} = \quad \text{Shadow price} = \$150 \\ \text{RHS}_3\text{: } 18 \rightarrow 17 \quad &\text{Change in total profit} = -\text{Shadow price} = \underline{-100} \\ &\text{Net increase in total profit} = \quad \$50 \end{aligned}$$

However, we don't know if these shadow prices remain valid if *both* right-hand sides are changed by this amount.

We now are checking to see whether the shadow prices remain valid for evaluating specific simultaneous changes in the right-hand sides.

A quick way to check this is to substitute the new right-hand sides into the original spreadsheet in Figure 8.1 and run Solver again. The resulting spreadsheet in Figure 8.23 shows that the net increase in total profit (from \$3,600 to \$3,650) is indeed \$50, so the shadow prices are valid for these particular simultaneous changes in right-hand sides.

FIGURE 8.23

The revised Wyndor problem where column G in Figure 8.1 has been changed by shifting one of the hours available in Plant 3 to Plant 2 and then re-solving.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	1.333	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	13	≤	13
9		Plant 3	3	2	17	≤	17
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	1.333	6.5			$3,650

How long will these shadow prices remain valid if we continue shifting production hours from Plant 3 to Plant 2? We could continue checking this by substituting other combinations of right-hand sides into the spreadsheet and re-solving each time. However, a more systematic way of doing this is to use a parameter analysis report, as described next.

Using a Parameter Analysis Report Generated by Analytic Solver for This Analysis

Since it can become tedious, or even impractical, to use the spreadsheet to investigate a large number of simultaneous changes in the right-hand sides, let us see how Analytic Solver's parameter analysis report can be used to do this analysis more systematically.

We could use a two-way parameter analysis report to investigate how the profit and optimal production rates vary for different combinations of the number of hours available in Plant 2 and Plant 3. However, in this case we aren't interested in *all* combinations of hours in the two plants, but rather only those combinations that involve a simple *shifting* of available hours from Plant 3 to Plant 2. For this analysis, we will see that a one-way parameter analysis table is sufficient.

page 343

For each hour reduced in Plant 3, an additional hour is made available in Plant 2. Thus, the number of available hours in Plant 2 is a function of the number of available hours in Plant 3. In particular, since there are 30 total hours available at the two plants ($RHS_2 + RHS_3 = 30$), the number of available hours in Plant 2 (RHS_2) is

$$RHS_2 = 30 - RHS_3$$

Figure 8.24 shows the Wyndor Glass Co. spreadsheet with the data cell for the number of available hours in Plant 2 replaced by the above formula. Because of this

formula, whenever the number of available hours in Plant 3 is reduced, the number of available hours in Plant 2 will automatically increase by the same amount. Now a one-way parameter analysis report can be used to investigate various numbers of available hours in Plant 3 (with the corresponding automatic adjustment made to the available hours at Plant 2). HoursAvailableInPlant3 (G9) is specified as a parameter cell with a range of trial values from 18 down to 12. A parameter analysis report is then generated in Figure 8.25 to show how DoorsProduced (C12), WindowsProduced (D12), and TotalProfit (G12) vary as HoursAvailableInPlant3 (G9) varies from 18 down to 12. A column was added to the left of the parameter analysis report to show how HoursAvailableInPlant2 varies correspondingly with the different values of HoursAvailableInPlant3. Also, we have calculated the incremental profit (in column F) for each hour shifted from Plant 3 to Plant 2.

page 344

FIGURE 8.24

By inserting a formula into cell G8 that keeps the total number of hours available in Plant 2 and Plant 3 equal to 30, it will be possible to generate a one-way parameter analysis report (see Figure 8.25) that shows the effect of shifting more and more of the hours available from Plant 3 to Plant 2.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2								
3			Doors	Windows				
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500				
5					Hours		Hours	
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available	
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4	Total (Plants 2 & 3)
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12	30
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18	
10								
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit	
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600	

	G	H
5	Hours	
6	Available	
7	4	Total (Plants 2 & 3)
8	=H8-G9	30
9	18	

Again there is a pattern to the incremental profit. For each hour shifted from Plant 3 to Plant 2 (up to 3 hours), an additional profit of $50 is achieved. However, if more than 3 hours are shifted, the incremental profit per hour shifted becomes –$250. Thus, it appears worthwhile to shift up to 3 available hours from Plant 3 to Plant 2, but no more.

Although a one-way parameter analysis report is limited to enumerating trial values for only one data cell, you have just seen how such a parameter analysis report still can systematically investigate a large number of simultaneous changes in two data

cells by entering a formula for the second data cell in terms of the first one. The two data cells considered above happened to be right-hand sides of constraints, but either or both could have been coefficients on the left-hand side instead. It is even possible to enter formulas for multiple data cells in terms of the one whose trial values are being enumerated. Furthermore, by using a two-way parameter analysis report, trial values can be enumerated simultaneously for two data cells, with the possibility of entering formulas for additional data cells in terms of these two.

Gleaning Additional Information from the Sensitivity Report

Despite the versatility of a parameter analysis report, it cannot handle a number of important cases. The most important one is where management wants to explore various possibilities for changing its policy decisions that correspond to changing several right-hand sides simultaneously in a variety of ways. Although the spreadsheet can be used to see the effect of any combination of simultaneous changes, it can take an exorbitant amount of time to systematically investigate a large number of simultaneous changes in right-hand sides in this way. Fortunately, Solver's sensitivity report provides valuable information for guiding such an investigation. In particular, there is a *100 percent rule* (analogous to the one presented in Section 8.4) that uses this information to conduct this kind of investigation.

Recall that the 100 percent rule described in Section 8.4 is used to investigate simultaneous changes in *objective function coefficients.* The new 100 percent rule presented next investigates simultaneous changes in *right-hand sides* in a similar way.

This 100 percent rule reveals whether the simultaneous changes in the right-hand sides are small enough to guarantee that the shadow prices are still valid.

The data needed to apply the new 100 percent rule for the Wyndor problem are given by the last three columns in the bottom part of the sensitivity report in Figure 8.21. Keep in mind that we can safely use the entire allowable decrease or increase from the current value of a right-hand side only if none of the other right-hand sides are changed at all. With simultaneous changes in the right-hand sides, we focus for each change on the *percentage* of the allowable decrease or increase that is being used. As detailed next, the 100 percent rule basically says that we can safely make the simultaneous changes only if the *sum* of these percentages does not exceed 100 percent.

The 100 Percent Rule for Simultaneous Changes in Right-Hand Sides: The shadow prices remain valid for predicting the effect of simultaneously changing the right-hand sides of some of the functional constraints as long as the changes are not too large. To check whether the changes are small enough, calculate for each change the percentage of the allowable change (decrease or increase) for that right-hand side to remain within its allowable range. If the *sum* of the percentage changes does *not* exceed 100 percent, the shadow

prices definitely will still be valid. (If the sum *does* exceed 100 percent, then we cannot be sure.)

To illustrate this rule, consider again the simultaneous changes (shifting one hour of production time per week from Plant 3 to Plant 2) that led to Figure 8.23. The calculations for the 100 percent rule in this case are

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{RHS}_2\text{: } 12 \rightarrow 13 \text{ (an increase of 1)} \\
&\qquad \text{Percentage of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{1}{6}\right) = 16\tfrac{2}{3}\% \\
&\text{RHS}_3\text{: } 18 \rightarrow 17 \text{ (a decrease of 1)} \\
&\qquad \text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = 100\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)\% = 16\tfrac{2}{3}\% \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{Sum} = 33\tfrac{1}{3}\%
\end{aligned}$$

Since the sum of 33 ⅓ percent is less than 100 percent, the shadow prices definitely are valid for predicting the effect of these changes, as was illustrated in Figure 8.23. page 345

The fact that 33 ⅓ percent is one-third of 100 percent suggests that the changes can be three times as large as above without invalidating the shadow prices. To check this, let us apply the 100 percent rule with these larger changes.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{RHS}_2\text{: } 12 \rightarrow 15 \text{ (an increase of 3)} \\
&\qquad \text{Percentage of allowable increase} = \left(\frac{3}{6}\right)\% = 50\% \\
&\text{RHS}_3\text{: } 18 \rightarrow 15 \text{ (a decrease of 3)} \\
&\qquad \text{Percentage of allowable decrease} = \left(\frac{3}{6}\right)\% = 50\% \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{Sum} = 100\%
\end{aligned}$$

Because the sum does *not exceed* 100 percent, the shadow prices are still valid, but these are the largest changes in the right-hand sides that can provide this guarantee. In fact, Figure 8.25 demonstrated that the shadow prices become invalid for larger changes.

FIGURE 8.25

The parameter analysis report that shows the effect of shifting more and more of the hours available from Plant 3 to Plant 2 for the Wyndor problem

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	HoursAvailableInPlant2	HoursAvailableInPlant3	DoorsProduced	WindowsProduced	TotalProfit	Incremental Profit
2	12	18	2	6	$3,600	
3	13	17	1.333	6.5	$3,650	$50
4	14	16	0.667	7	$3,700	$50
5	15	15	0	7.5	$3,750	$50
6	16	14	0	7	$3,500	-$250
7	17	13	0	6.5	$3,250	-$250
8	18	12	0	6	$3,000	-$250

Review *Questions*

- Why might it be of interest to investigate the effect of making simultaneous changes in the functional constraints?
- How can the spreadsheet be used to investigate simultaneous changes in the functional constraints?
- What are the capabilities of a parameter analysis report for investigating simultaneous changes in the functional constraints?
- Why might a manager be interested in considering simultaneous changes in right-hand sides?
- What is the 100 percent rule for simultaneous changes in right-hand sides?
- What are the data needed to apply the 100 percent rule for simultaneous changes in right-hand sides?
- What is guaranteed if the sum of the percentages of allowable changes in the right-hand sides does not exceed 100 percent?
- What is the conclusion if the sum of the percentages of allowable changes in the right-hand sides does exceed 100 percent?

8.7 ROBUST OPTIMIZATION

As described in the preceding sections, what-if analysis provides an important way of dealing with uncertainty about the true values of the parameters in a linear programming model. One main purpose of what-if analysis is to identify each of the *sensitive parameters,* namely, each of the parameters where even a small change in its value can change the optimal solution. This is valuable information since these are the parameters that need to be estimated with special care to minimize the risk of obtaining an erroneous optimal solution.

Unfortunately, it often is not possible to estimate the sensitive parameters with as much accuracy as desired. The true values of these parameters may not become known until considerably later when the optimal solution (according to the model) is actually implemented. Therefore, even after estimating the sensitive parameters as carefully as possible, significant estimation errors can occur for these parameters along with even larger estimation errors for the other parameters. This can lead to unfortunate consequences. Perhaps the optimal solution (according to the model) will not be optimal after all. In fact, it may not even be feasible.

The seriousness of these unfortunate consequences depends somewhat on whether there is any latitude in the functional constraints in the model. It is useful to make the following distinction between these constraints.

A **soft constraint** is a constraint that can be violated a little bit without very serious complications. By contrast, a **hard constraint** is a constraint that *must* be satisfied.

soft constraint

A constraint that can be violated a little bit without very serious complications.

hard constraint

A constraint that *must* be satisfied.

Robust optimization is especially designed for dealing with problems with hard constraints.

The goal of **robust optimization** is to find a solution for the model that is guaranteed to remain feasible and near-optimal for all plausible combinations of the actual values for the parameters. Such a solution is called a **robust solution.**

robust optimization

An optimization procedure that finds a solution that is guaranteed to remain feasible and near-optimal for all plausible combinations of the actual values for the parameters.

robust solution

A solution found by using robust optimization.

This is a daunting goal, but an elaborate theory of robust optimization now has been developed. Much of this theory is beyond the scope of this book, but we will introduce the basic concept by considering the following straightforward case of independent parameters.

Robust Optimization with Independent Parameters

This case makes four basic assumptions, where assumption 3 defines **independent parameters.**

1. Each parameter has a **range of uncertainty** surrounding its estimated value.
2. This parameter can take any value between the minimum and maximum specified by this range of uncertainty.
3. This value is uninfluenced by the values taken on by the other parameters.
4. All the functional constraints are in either ≤ or ≥ form.

independent parameters

Parameters whose values are uninfluenced by the values taken on by the other parameters.

range of uncertainty

The range between the minimum and maximum possible value for a parameter.

To guarantee that the solution will remain feasible regardless of the values taken on by these parameters within their ranges of uncertainty, we just need to assign the *most conservative* value to each uncertain parameter and then find the optimal solution for the revised problem.

Example

We now will illustrate the robust optimization approach for this case of independent parameters by addressing the fifth what-if question posed by Wyndor management.

Generally, in robust optimization, each uncertain parameter should be assigned its most conservative value within the range of uncertainty.

Question 5: What happens if the production rates of doors and windows at Plant 3 are uncertain?

In particular, because of the brand new production processes used to assemble the windows and doors at Plant 3, management is unsure exactly how many hours will be required to produce each window and each door. The initial estimates (as given in Table 5.1) of 3 hours per door and 2 hours per window could be off by as much as *half an hour* each.

In this case, we are dealing with the following two uncertain parameters:

H_{D3} = production hours required per door in Plant 3

H_{W3} = production hours required per window in Plant 3

Because the production processes are different for doors and windows, the value of each of these parameters is uninfluenced by the value of the other one, so these are independent parameters. Since the initial estimates of $H_{D3} = 3$ and $H_{W3} = 2$ could each be off by as much as half an hour, their ranges of uncertainty are

Range of uncertainty for H_{D3} = 2.5–3.5 hours

Range of uncertainty for H_{W3} = 1.5–2.5 hours

The actual values of these parameters will not become known until some time *after* production has begun, but a decision is needed now regarding the initial production schedule for the doors and windows in the three plants.

Recall that the model for the Wyndor problem includes a constraint that the total number of hours devoted to doors and windows in Plant 3 cannot exceed 18 hours per week. This is a *hard constrain*t (it *must* be satisfied), as are the corresponding constraints for Plants 1 and 2. Therefore, management would like to choose a production rate for windows and doors that is guaranteed to be remain feasible and also should be at least nearly optimal.

By setting all of the uncertain parameters at their most conservative values and running Solver again for the revised problem, a robust solution has been found that is guaranteed to be feasible for all plausible combinations of actual values for the uncertain parameters.

Applying the procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters, each uncertain parameter is assigned the most conservative value in its range of uncertainty. It is most conservative to assume each door requires the maximum value in its range of uncertainty, or 3.5 hours. Similarly, it is most conservative to assume each window requires 2.5 hours. Making this change in the spreadsheet page 347 model and running Solver yields the spreadsheet shown in Figure 8.26. Producing 0.857 doors and 6 windows per week yields a profit of $3,257 and is guaranteed to be feasible if the hours required per door and window fall anywhere within their ranges of uncertainty.

FIGURE 8.26

Applying robust optimization to the Wyndor problem, each uncertain parameter has been set to its most conservative value in its range of uncertainty: $H_{D3} = 3.5$ and $H_{W3} = 2.5$. Running Solver then yields this robust solution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0.857	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3.5	2.5	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0.857	6			$3,257

The General Procedure for Robust Optimization with Independent Parameters

The above example considers a case of whether the only uncertain parameters were the coefficients in a single functional constraint. However, robust optimization with independent parameters can also be implemented when there is a range of uncertainty for various other parameters in the model, including objective coefficients and the right-hand side of the constraints. Simply choose the most conservative value for each parameter as follows:

- For each functional constraint in ≤ form, use the *maximum* value for each uncertain coefficient on the left of the ≤ and the *minimum* value for an uncertain right-hand side.

- For each functional constraint in ≥ form, use the *minimum* value for each uncertain coefficient on the left of the ≥ and the *maximum* value for an uncertain right-hand side.
- For an objective function in maximization form, use the *minimum* value of each uncertain coefficient.
- For an objective function in minimization form, use the *maximum* value for each uncertain coefficient.

Then run Solver again for the revised model. The resulting solution is guaranteed to be feasible so long as all parameters fall somewhere within their ranges of uncertainty.

Review *Questions*

. What is meant by a soft constraint?
. What is meant by a hard constraint?
. What is the goal of robust optimization?
. What are the four basic assumptions of robust optimization with independent parameters?
. In the general procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters, how should the value of an uncertain coefficient on the left-hand-side of a functional constraint be chosen from within its range of uncertainty?
. In the general procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters, how should the value of an uncertain coefficient in the objective function be chosen from within its range of uncertainty?
. In the general procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters, how should the value of an uncertain right-hand side of a functional constraint be chosen from within its range of uncertainty?

8.8 CHANCE CONSTRAINTS WITH ANALYTIC SOLVER

The parameters of a linear programming model often remain uncertain until the actual values of these parameters can be observed at some later time when the adopted solution is implemented for the first time. The preceding section described how robust optimization deals with this uncertainty by revising the values of the parameters in the model to ensure that the resulting solution will be feasible when it finally is implemented. When dealing with independent parameters, this involves identifying an upper and lower bound on the possible value of each uncertain parameter. The estimated value of the parameter then is replaced by whichever of these two bounds is the more conservative one.

This is a useful approach when dealing with hard constraints, that is, those constraints that must be satisfied. However, it does have certain shortcomings. One is

that it can be extremely conservative in tightening the model far more than is realistically necessary. This is especially true when dealing with large models with hundreds or thousands (perhaps even millions) of parameters. Another is that it might not be possible to accurately identify an upper and lower bound for an uncertain parameter. In fact, it might not even have an upper and lower bound. This is the case, for example, when the underlying probability distribution for a parameter is a normal distribution, which has long tails with no bounds.

Two shortcomings of robust optimization are that (1) it can be extremely conservative, and (2) it can be difficult to accurately identify an upper and lower bound for an uncertain parameter.

Chance constraints are useful when dealing with soft constraints, that is, those constraints that can be violated a little bit without very serious complications. Therefore, rather than requiring that a soft constraint must be satisfied, it would make sense to require only that it probably will be satisfied but there is a small chance that it will be violated a little bit. This is what a chance constraint does.

Chance constraints are useful when dealing with soft constraints.

> A **chance constraint** only requires that the original constraint will be satisfied with some very high probability while leaving a small chance that it will be violated a little bit.

chance constraint

A modification of a constraint which only requires that the original constraint will be satisfied with some very high probability while leaving a small chance that it will violated a little bit.

The Analytic Solver includes the ability to define uncertain parameters. It also can include chance constraints.

To implement chance constraints in Analytic Solver, each of the uncertain parameters must first be specified as following a particular probability distribution. This concept will be covered in much more detail in Chapter 15 (Computer Simulation with Analytic Solver). For the purpose of demonstrating chance constraints now, a simple formula for specifying that a parameter should follow the uniform distribution (and later the normal distribution) will be shown. Chapter 15 will consider various more advanced probability distributions and other methods of defining them using the menus on the Analytic Solver tab.

Chance Constraints with the Uniform Distribution

We now will illustrate chance constraints by again addressing the fifth what-if question posed by Wyndor management in the preceding section.

Question 5: What happens if the production rates of doors and windows at Plant 3 are uncertain?

As discussed in the preceding section, the introduction of brand new production processes for assembling the windows and doors in Plant 3 results in uncertainty about how many hours will be required to assemble each window and each door there. The range of uncertainty for the hours required per door is 2.5–3.5, while the range of uncertainty for the hours required per window is 1.5–2.5. If we assume that any value within these ranges is equally likely, this would mean that each of these parameters follows the *uniform distribution.*

Analytic Solver includes a function called PsiUniform(*Min, Max*) to specify that a value should follow the uniform distribution over the range from *Min* to *Max.* As shown in Figure 8.27, =PsiUniform(2.5, 3.5) is entered in cell C9 and =PsiUniform(1.5, 2.5) is entered in cell D9. Analytic Solver then generates a random value from the specified uniform distribution (shown as 2.737 and 2.317 in cells C9 and D9, respectively).

FIGURE 8.27

A spreadsheet model for applying chance constraints to the Wyndor problem before finding a final solution. The hours used per door and per window produced have been specified to follow the uniform distribution in cells C9 and D9, respectively.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	2.737	2.317	19.375	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600

	C	D
9	=PsiUniform(2.5,3.5)	=PsiUniform(1.5,2.5)

In the original Wyndor problem, it was optimal to produce 2 doors per week and 6 windows per week. However, with the uncertainty in the production rates at Plant 3, this solution could lead to using too many hours at Plant 3. In fact, this happens for the particular random values that Analytic Solver has generated in cells C9 and D9 of Figure 8.27. At these production rates, 19.375 hours would be used at Plant 3 while only 18 hours are available. There still is a little more work that needs to be done before finding a final solution. Wyndor management still needs to define a chance constraint for Plant 3. Then Analytic Solver will be used to solve the model to find a solution such that the original constraint would usually be satisfied.

page 349

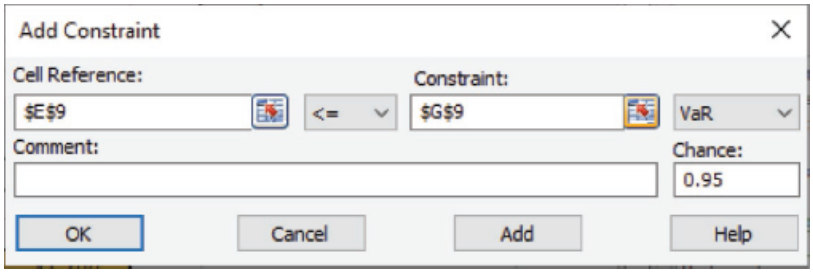
Robust optimization was used in the preceding section to find a solution that *guarantees* a feasible solution, with no more than 18 hours used per week in Plant 3. However, management now realizes there may be some flexibility with this constraint. For example, there may actually be some flexibility with the number of hours available for doors and windows in Plant 3. If more than 18 hours were required in some week, overtime could be used to meet the requirements. However, overtime is expensive and management would like to avoid this most of the time.

Therefore, in contrast to what was done with robust optimization in the preceding section, management will no longer *absolutely require* meeting the constraint that no more than 18 hours will be used in a given week in plant 3. Instead, they have decided that they would like to require that this constraint be satisfied at least 95 percent of the time. This can be done using a chance constraint.

To implement this chance constraint in Analytic Solver, choose cell E9 (hours used in Plant 3 in Figure 8.27), and then select <= from Constraints > Chance Constraints on the Analytic Solver tab. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 8.28. Cell E9 is already chosen as the left-hand side of the constraint. Choose cell G9 for the right-hand side of the constraint. Finally, under Chance, choose the probability that the constraint should be satisfied. The default value of 0.95 is entered in Figure 8.28. Click OK to accept this chance constraint.

FIGURE 8.28

This Add Constraint dialog box specifies a chance constraint that E9 is required to be less than or equal to G9 with probability 0.95.



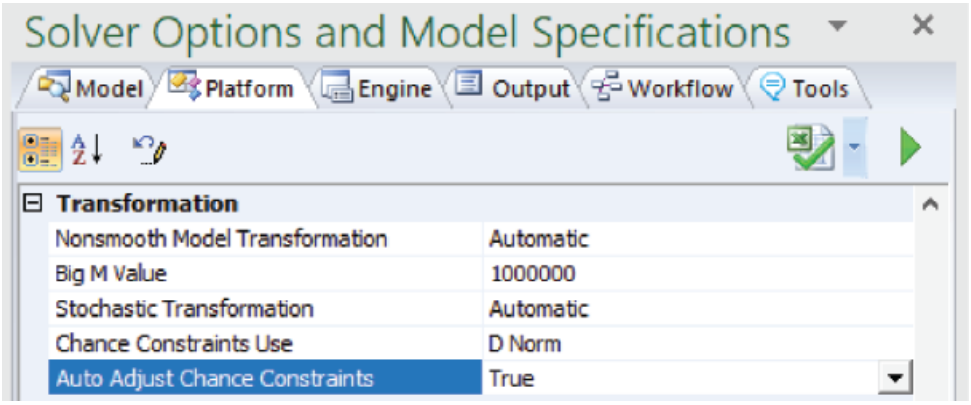
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

An important option for chance constraints in Analytic Solver is found under the Platform tab in the Model pane. Auto Adjust Chance Constraints, as shown in Figure 8.29, can be set to either True or False (and is False by default). Set at False, the solution will often be *very* conservative in the sense that it usually will give a probability that actually is considerably higher than the one specified in the chance box shown in Figure 8.28. Setting this option to True causes Solver to automatically re-optimize the initial conservative solution to find a better solution that still meets the requirements of each chance constraint with the probability specified in the chance box. Therefore, this option generally should be set to True to find better (albeit less conservative) solutions.

page 350

FIGURE 8.29

The Platform tab of Analytic Solver's Model pane that shows the Auto Adjust Chance Constraints option set to True.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

With Auto Adjust Chance Constraints set to true, the model is then solved by clicking on the Optimize button under Analysis on the Analytic Solver tab. Analytic Solver will then find a solution that maximizes TotalProfit (G12) while meeting all the hard constraints (E7:E8 ≤ G7:G8) and yields at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original constraint (E9 ≤G9). This solution is shown in Figure 8.30.

FIGURE 8.30

The spreadsheet obtained after solving the Wyndor problem with Analytic Solver to maximize the TotalProfit (G12) while meeting the hard constraints (E7:E8 ≤ G7:G8) and having at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original constraint (E9 ≤ G9).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	1.103	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3.108	2.193	16.584	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	1.103	6			$3,331

Setting the Auto Adjust Chance Constraints option to True results in a better solution while still meeting the requirements of the chance constraints.

It is interesting to compare the solution found by robust optimization and shown in Figure 8.26 with the solution shown in Figure 8.30 when a chance constraint has been used. With robust optimization (requiring that no more than 18 hours *ever* will be used in any week), 0.857 doors and 6 windows are produced per week, yielding a profit of $3,257. When using a chance constraint (requiring just a 95 percent chance that no more than 18 hours are used in Plant 3 in any given week), 1.103 doors and 6 windows should be produced per week, yielding a higher profit of $3,331. This comparison between the two approaches is typical in other cases as well. In general, robust optimization yields a very conservative solution while chance constraints with uniform distributions allow for a better solution if there is some flexibility in the original constraints.

Generally, robust optimization yields a more conservative solution than when using chance constraints with uniform distributions.

Chance Constraints with the Normal Distribution

The robust optimization procedure discussed in the preceding section requires that each uncertain parameter have a specified range of uncertainty (a minimum and a maximum). While the uniform distribution for an uncertain parameter meets the requirement of having a range of uncertainty, many other distributions do not. page 351 For example, the normal distribution has long tails with no minimum or maximum. Therefore, the procedure for robust optimization discussed in the preceding section cannot be used. However, chance constraints can still be used.

Suppose management is now more uncertain about the hours used per door and window at Plant 3. The uniform distribution assumed a *maximum* deviation of 0.5 hours from the original estimate, so the range for this distribution is 2.5–3.5 hours for doors and 1.5–2.5 hours for windows. Management now feels that these parameters should follow the normal distribution, with a *standard deviation* of 0.5 hours. Given the long tails of the normal distribution, this leads to the possibility that the hours used could deviate well more than 0.5 hours from the original estimates.

Analytic Solver includes a function called PsiNormal(*Mean, Standard Deviation*) to specify the normal distribution. Figure 8.31, shows the model revised to use the normal distribution, with =PsiNormal(3, 0.5) entered in cell C9 and =PsiNormal(2, 0.5) entered in cell D9. Analytic Solver has generated a random value from the specified normal distribution (shown as 2.543 and 2.256 in cells C9 and D9, respectively). The chance constraint is defined in the same way as with the uniform distribution, with 0.95 again entered into the chance box. After clicking the Optimize button on the Analytic Solver tab, Figure 8.31 shows the new optimal solution. Now 0.298 doors and 6 windows should be produced per week, leading to a profit of $3,089. This leads to a 95 percent chance of satisfying the *original* constraint for Plant 3.

FIGURE 8.31

The spreadsheet obtained after solving the Wyndor problem with a chance constraint for Plant 3 when the hours used per door and per window produced have been

specified to follow the normal distribution.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**					
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	0.298	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	2.543	2.256	14.295	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	0.298	6			$3,089

	C	D
9	=PsiNormal(3, 0.5)	=PsiNormal(2, 0.5)

It is interesting to compare the solution in Figure 8.30 (which assumes uniform distributions with a *maximum* deviation of 0.5 hours) to the solution in Figure 8.31 (which assumes normal distributions with a *standard deviation* of 0.5 hours). With normal distributions, just 0.298 doors are produced per week instead of 1.103 when using uniform distributions, leading to a smaller profit of $3,089 as compared to $3,331. This more conservative solution is necessary to maintain the 95 percent probability of satisfying the original constraint for Plant 3 given the higher variability in the production rates with this particular normal distribution. (A normal distribution with a considerably smaller standard deviation would lead to a considerably less conservative solution.

A more conservative solution is necessary to satisfy a chance constraint when the variability is increased in the corresponding parameter.

Review *Questions*

. Are chance constraints more useful for hard constraints or soft constraints?

. What Analytic Solver function is used to specify a value that follows the uniform distribution?

. Which approach will lead to a more conservative solution—robust optimization with specified ranges of uncertainty or using chance constraints with uniform distributions over these same ranges of uncertainty?

. What Analytic Solver function is used to specify a value that follows the normal distribution?

8.9 Summary

What-if analysis is analysis done *after* finding an optimal solution for the original version of the basic model. This analysis provides important insights to help guide managerial decision making. This chapter describes how this is done when the basic model is a linear programming model. The spreadsheet for the model, the parameter analysis report available with Analytic Solver, and the sensitivity report generated by Solver all play a central role in this process.

The coefficients in the objective function typically represent quantities that can only be roughly estimated when the model is formulated. Will the optimal solution obtained from the model be the correct one if the true value of one of these coefficients is significantly different from the estimate used in the model? The spreadsheet can be used to quickly check specific changes in the coefficient. The parameter analysis report enables the systematic investigation of many trial values for this coefficient. For a broader investigation, the *allowable range* for each coefficient identifies the interval within which the true value must lie in order for this solution to still be the correct optimal solution. These ranges are easily calculated from the data in the sensitivity report provided by Solver.

What happens if there are significant inaccuracies in the estimates of two or more coefficients in the objective function? Specific simultaneous changes can be checked with the spreadsheet. A two-way parameter analysis report can systematically investigate various simultaneous changes in two coefficients. To go further, the *100 percent rule for simultaneous changes in objective function coefficients* provides a convenient way of checking whole ranges of simultaneous changes, again by using the data in Solver's sensitivity report.

What-if analysis usually extends to considering the effect of changes in the functional constraints as well. Occasionally, changes in the coefficients of these constraints will be considered because of the uncertainty in their original estimates. More frequently, the changes considered will be in the right-hand sides of the constraints. The right-hand sides frequently represent managerial policy decisions. In such cases, *shadow prices* provide valuable guidance to management about the potential effects of altering these policy decisions. The shadow price for each constraint is easily found by using the spreadsheet, a parameter analysis report, or the sensitivity report.

Shadow price analysis can be validly applied to investigate possible changes in right-hand sides as long as these changes are not too large. The *allowable range* for each right-hand side indicates just how far it can be changed, assuming no other changes are made. If other right-hand sides

are changed as well, the *100 percent rule for simultaneous changes in right-hand sides* enables checking whether the changes definitely are not too large. Solver's sensitivity report provides the key information needed to find each allowable range or to apply this 100 percent rule. Both the spreadsheet and the parameter analysis report also can sometimes be used to help investigate these simultaneous changes.

In cases where there is much uncertainty about what the true values of the model parameters will turn out to be, management may want to be sure that the proposed "optimal" solution will at least turn out to be feasible. This is particularly important if it would be completely unacceptable to violate any of the constraints even a little bit. *Robust optimization* provides a way of identifying a solution that is virtually guaranteed to be feasible as well as nearly optimal regardless of what the true values of the model parameters turn out to be.

If the model includes some constraints that actually can be violated a little bit without serious complications, *chance constraints* can be used to represent these constraints. A chance constraint requires that the original constraint *probably* will be satisfied but allows a small probability for violating the original constraint by a small amount.

Glossary

allowable range for an objective function coefficient The range of values for a particular coefficient in the objective function over which the optimal solution for the original model remains optimal. (Section 8.3), 326

allowable range for the right-hand side The range of values for the right-hand side of a functional constraint over which this constraint's shadow price remains valid. (Section 8.5), 338

chance constraint A modification of a constraint which only requires that the original constraint will be satisfied with some high probability while leaving a small chance that it will violated a little bit. (Section 8.8), 348

hard constraint A constraint that *must* be satisfied. (Section 8.7), 345

independent parameters Parameters whose values are uninfluenced by the values taken on by the other parameters. (Section 8.7), 346

parameter cell A data cell containing a parameter that will be systematically varied when generating a parameter analysis report. (Section 8.3), 324

parameters of the model The parameters of a linear programming model are the constants (coefficients or right-hand sides) in the functional constraints and the objective function. (Section 8.1), 318

range of uncertainty The range between the minimum and maximum possible value for a parameter. (Section 8.7), 346

robust optimization An optimization procedure that finds a solution that is guaranteed to remain feasible and near-optimal for all plausible combinations of the actual values for the parameters. (Section 8.7), 346

robust solution A solution found by using robust optimization. (Section 8.7), 346

sensitive parameter A parameter is considered sensitive if even a small change in its value can change the optimal solution. (Section 8.1), 318

sensitivity analysis The part of what-if analysis that focuses on individual parameters of the model. It involves checking how sensitive the optimal solution is to the value of each parameter. (Section 8.1), 319

shadow price The shadow price for a functional constraint is the rate at which the optimal value of the objective function can be increased by increasing the right-hand side of the constraint by a small amount. (Section 8.5), 338

soft constraint A constraint that can be violated a little bit without very serious complications. (Section 8.7), 345

what-if analysis Analysis that addresses questions about what would happen to the optimal solution if different assumptions were made about future conditions. (Chapter introduction), 318

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Wyndor.

Profit & Gambit.

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Supplement to This Chapter:

Reduced Costs

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

8.S1. Sensitivity Analysis at Stickley Furniture

Stickley Furniture is a manufacturer of fine hand-crafted furniture. During the next production period (the eight-hour shift tomorrow), management is considering producing dining room tables, dining room chairs, and/or bookcases. The time required for each item to go through the two stages of production (assembly and finishing), the amount of wood required (fine cherry wood), and the corresponding unit profits are given in the following table, along with the amount of each resource available in the upcoming production period.

	Tables	Chairs	Bookcases	Available
Assembly (minutes)	80	40	50	8,100
Finishing) (minutes)	30	20	30	4,500
Wood (pounds)	80	10	50	9,000
Unit profit	$360	$125	$300	

After formulating a linear programming model to determine the production levels that would maximize profit, the solved model and the corresponding sensitivity report are shown below.

a. Suppose the profit per table increases by $100. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

b. Suppose the profit per chair increases by $100. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

c. Suppose the profit per table increases by $90 and the profit per bookcase decreases by $50. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

d. Suppose a worker in the assembly department calls in sick, so eight fewer hours will be available tomorrow in the assembly department. How much would this affect total profit? Would it change the optimal production quantities?

e. Explain why the shadow price for the wood constraint is zero.

f. A new worker has been hired who is trained to do both assembly and finishing. She will split her time between the two areas, so there now are four additional hours available tomorrow in both assembly and finishing. How much would this affect total profit? Would this change the optimal production quantities?

	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
3		Tables	Chairs	Bookcases			
4	Unit Profit	$360	$125	$300			
5							
6		Resources Required per Unit			Used		Available
7	Assembly (minutes)	80	40	50	8,100	<=	8,100
8	Finishing (minutes)	30	20	30	4,500	<=	4,500
9	Woods (pounds)	80	10	50	8,100	<=	9,000
10							
11		Tables	Chairs	Bookcases			Total Profit
12	Production	20	0	130			$46,200

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$C$12	Production Tables	20	0	360	120	60
$D$12	Production Chairs	0	–88.333	125	88.333	1E + 30
$E$12	Production Bookcases	130	0	300	60	75

Constraints

Cell	Name	Final Value	Shadow Price	Constraint R. H. Side	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$F$7	Assembly (minutes) Used	8,100	2	8,100	900	600
$F$8	Finishing (minutes) Used	4,500	6.67	4,500	360	1,462.5
$F$9	Wood (pounds) Used	8,100	0	9,000	1E + 30	900

g. Based on the sensitivity report given above, is it wise to have the new worker in part *f* split her time equally between assembly and finishing, or would some other plan be better?

page 354

h. Use Analytic Solver and a parameter analysis report to determine how the optimal production quantities and total profit will change depending on how the new worker in part *f* allocates her time between assembly and finishing. In particular, assume 0, 1, 2, . . . , or 8 hours are added to assembly, with a corresponding 8, 7, 6, . . . , or 0 hours added to finishing. (The original spreadsheet is contained in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Problems

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem (or its parts) where Analytic Solver is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

8.1.* One of the products of the G. A. Tanner Company is a special kind of toy that provides an estimated unit profit of $3. Because of a large demand for this toy, management would like to increase its production rate from the current level of 1,000 per day. However, a limited supply of two subassemblies (A and B) from vendors makes this difficult. Each toy

requires two subassemblies of type A, but the vendor providing these subassemblies would only be able to increase its supply rate from the current 2,000 per day to a maximum of 3,000 per day. Each toy requires only one subassembly of type B, but the vendor providing these subassemblies would be unable to increase its supply rate above the current level of 1,000 per day.

Because no other vendors currently are available to provide these subassemblies, management is considering initiating a new production process internally that would simultaneously produce an equal number of subassemblies of the two types to supplement the supply from the two vendors. It is estimated that the company's cost for producing one subassembly of each type would be $2.50 more than the cost of purchasing these subassemblies from the two vendors. Management wants to determine both the production rate of the toy and the production rate of each pair of subassemblies (one A and one B) that would maximize the total profit.

page 355

Viewing this problem as a resource-allocation problem, one of the company's managers has organized its data as follows:

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	Produce Toys	Produce Subassemblies	
Subassembly A	2	–1	3,000
Subassembly B	1	–1	1,000
Unit profit	$3	–$2.50	

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

b. Since the stated unit profits for the two activities are only estimates, management wants to know how much each of these estimates can be off before the optimal solution would change. Begin exploring this question for the first activity (producing toys) by using the spreadsheet and Solver to manually generate a table that gives the optimal solution and total profit as the unit profit for this activity increases in 50¢ increments from $2.00 to $4.00. What conclusion can be drawn about how much the estimate of this unit profit can differ in each direction from its original value of $3.00 before the optimal solution would change?

c. Repeat part *b* for the second activity (producing subassemblies) by generating a table as the unit profit for this activity increases in 50¢ increments from –$3.50 to –$1.50 (with the unit profit for the first activity fixed at $3).

AS *d.* Use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate all the data requested in parts *b* and *c,* except use 25¢ increments instead of 50¢ increments. Use these data to refine your conclusions in parts *b* and *c.*

e. Use Solver's sensitivity report to find the allowable range for the unit profit of each activity.

AS *f.* Use a two-way parameter analysis report to systematically generate the total profit as the unit profits of the two activities are changed simultaneously as described in parts *b* and *c.*

g. Use the information provided by Solver's sensitivity report to describe how far the unit profits of the two activities can change simultaneously before the optimal solution might change.

8.2. Consider a resource-allocation problem having the following data:

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
1	1	2	10
2	1	3	12
Unit profit	$2	$5	

The objective is to determine the number of units of each activity to undertake so as to maximize the total profit.

While doing what-if analysis, you learn that the estimates of the unit profits are accurate only to within ± 50 percent. In other words, the ranges of *likely values* for these unit profits are $1 to $3 for activity 1 and $2.50 to $7.50 for activity 2.

a. Formulate a spreadsheet model for this problem based on the original estimates of the unit profits. Then use Solver to find an optimal solution and to generate the sensitivity report.

b. Use the spreadsheet and Solver to check whether this optimal solution remains optimal if the unit profit for activity 1 changes from $2 to $1. From $2 to $3.

c. Also check whether the optimal solution remains optimal if the unit profit for activity 1 still is $2 but the unit profit for activity 2 changes from $5 to $2.50. From $5 to $7.50.

AS *d.* Use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and total profit as the unit profit of activity 1 increases in 20 cent increments from $1 to $3 (without changing the unit profit of activity 2). Then do the same as the unit profit of activity 2 increases in 50 cent increments from $2.50 to $7.50 (without changing the unit profit of activity 1). Use these results to estimate the allowable range for the unit profit of each activity.

e. Use the sensitivity report to find the allowable range for the unit profit of each activity. Then use these ranges to check your results in parts *b to d.*

AS *f.* Use a two-way parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal total profit as the unit profit of the two activities are changes simultaneously as described in part *d.*

8.3. Consider the Big M Co. problem presented in Section 6.5, including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.10 showing its formulation and optimal solution.

There is some uncertainty about what the unit costs will be for shipping through the various shipping lanes. Therefore, before adopting the optimal solution in Figure 6.10, management wants additional information about the effect of inaccuracies in estimating these unit costs.

Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report preparatory to addressing the following questions.

a. Which of the unit shipping costs given in Table 6.9 has the smallest margin for error without invalidating the optimal solution given in Figure 6.10? Where should the greatest effort be placed in estimating the unit shipping costs?

b. What is the allowable range for each of the unit shipping costs?

c. How should the allowable range be interpreted to management?

d. If the estimates change for more than one of the unit shipping costs, how can you use the sensitivity report to determine whether the optimal solution might change?

8.4.* Consider the Union Airways problem presented in Section 6.3, including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.5 showing its formulation and optimal solution.

Management is about to begin negotiations on a new contract with the union that represents the company's customer service agents. This might result in some small changes in the daily costs per agent given in Table 6.5 for the various shifts. Several possible changes

listed below are being considered separately. In each case, management would like to know whether the change might result in the solution in Figure 6.5 no longer being optimal. Answer this question in parts *a* to *e* by using the spreadsheet and Solver directly. If the optimal solution changes, record the new solution.

a. The daily cost per agent for shift 2 changes from $160 to $165.

b. The daily cost per agent for shift 4 changes from $180 to $170.

c. The changes in parts *a* and *b* both occur.

d. The daily cost per agent increases by $4 for shifts 2, 4, and 5, but decreases by $4 for shifts 1 and 3.

e. The daily cost per agent increases by 2 percent for each shift.

f. Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report for this problem. Suppose that the above changes are being considered later without having the spreadsheet model immediately available on a computer. Show in each case how the sensitivity report can be used to check whether the original optimal solution must still be optimal.

AS *g.* For each of the five shifts in turn, use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and total cost when the only change is that the daily cost per agent on that shift increases in $3 increments from $15 less than the current cost up to $15 more than the current cost.

8.5. Consider the Think-Big Development Co. problem presented in Section 6.2, including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.3 showing its formulation and optimal solution. In parts *a to g,* use the spreadsheet and Solver to check whether the optimal solution would change and, if so, what the new optimal solution would be, if the estimates in Table 6.3 of the net present values of the projects were to be changed in each of the following ways. (Consider each part by itself.)

a. The net present value of project 1 (a high-rise office building) increases by $200,000.

b. The net present value of project 2 (a hotel) increases by $200,000.

c. The net present value of project 1 decreases by $5 million.

d. The net present value of project 3 (a shopping center) decreases by $200,000.

e. All three changes in parts *b, c,* and *d* occur simultaneously.

f. The net present values of projects 1, 2, and 3 change to $46 million, $69 million, and $49 million, respectively.

g. The net present values of projects 1, 2, and 3 change to $54 million, $84 million, and $60 million, respectively.

h. Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report for this problem. For each of the preceding parts, suppose that the change occurs later without having the spreadsheet model immediately available on a computer. Show in each case how the sensitivity report can be used to check whether the original optimal solution must still be optimal.

AS *i.* For each of the three projects in turn, use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and the total net present value when the only change is that the net present value of that project increases in $1 million increments from $5 million less than the current value up to $5 million more than the current value.

8.6. University Ceramics manufactures plates, mugs, and steins that include the campus name and logo for sale in campus bookstores. The time required for each item to go through the two stages of production (molding and finishing), the material required (clay), and the corresponding unit profits are given in the following table, along with the amount of each resource available for tomorrow's eight-hour shift.

	Plates	Mugs	Steins	Available
Molding (minutes)	4	6	3	2,400
Finishing (minutes)	8	14	12	7,200
Clay (ounces)	5	4	3	3,000
Unit Profit	$3.10	$4.75	$4.00	

A linear programming model has been formulated in a spreadsheet to determine the production levels for tomorrow that would maximize profit. The solved spreadsheet model and corresponding sensitivity report are shown below.

For each of the following parts, answer the question as specifically and completely as is possible without re-solving the problem with Solver. *Note:* Each part is independent (i.e., any change made in one part does not apply to any other parts).

a. Suppose the profit per plate decreases from $3.10 to $2.80. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

b. Suppose the profit per stein *increases* by $0.30 and the profit per plate *decreases* by $0.25. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		Plates	Mugs	Steins			
2	Unit Profit	$3.10	$4.75	$4.00			
3							
4		Resource Required per Unit			Used		Available
5	Molding (minutes)	4	6	3	2,400	<=	2,400
6	Finishing (minutes)	8	14	12	7,200	<=	7,200
7	Clay (ounces)	5	4	3	2,700	<=	3,000
8							
9		Plates	Mugs	Steins			Total Profit
10	Production	300	0	400			$2,530

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$B$10	Production Plates	300	0	3.10	2.23	0.37
$C$10	Production Mugs	0	−0.46	4.75	0.46	
$D$10	Production Steins	400	0	4.00	0.65	1.37

Constraints

Cell	Name	Final Value	Shadow Price	Constraint R. H. Side	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$E$5	Molding (minutes) Used	2,400	0.22	2,400	200	600
$E$6	Finishing (minutes) Used	7,200	0.28	7,200	2,400	2,400
$E$7	Clay (ounces) Used	2,700	0	3,000	1E + 30	

c. Suppose a worker in the molding department calls in sick. Now eight fewer hours are available tomorrow in the molding department. How much would this affect total profit? Would it change the optimal production quantities? page 357

d. Suppose one of the workers in the molding department is also trained to do finishing. Would it be a good idea to have this worker shift some of her time from the molding department to the finishing department? Indicate the rate at which this would increase or decrease total profit per minute shifted. How many minutes can be shifted before this rate might change?

e. The allowable decrease for the mugs' objective coefficient and for the available clay constraint are both missing from the sensitivity report. What numbers should be there? Explain how you were able to deduce each number.

8.7. Ken and Larry, Inc., supplies its ice cream parlors with three flavors of ice cream: chocolate, vanilla, and banana. Due to extremely hot weather and a high demand for its products, the company has run short of its supply of ingredients: milk, sugar, and cream. Hence, they will not be able to fill all the current orders received from their retail outlets, the ice cream parlors. Due to these circumstances, the company has decided to choose the amount of each flavor to produce that will maximize total profit, given the constraints on the supply of the basic ingredients.

The chocolate, vanilla, and banana flavors generate, respectively, \$1.00, \$0.90, and \$0.95 of profit per gallon sold. The company has only 200 gallons of milk, 150 pounds of sugar, and 60 gallons of cream left in its inventory. The linear programming formulation for this problem is shown below in algebraic form.

Let

C = Gallons of chocolate ice cream produced
V = Gallons of vanilla ice cream produced
B = Gallons of banana ice cream produced
Maximize Profit = $1.00C + 0.90V + 0.95B$

subject to

Milk: $0.45\,C + 0.50\,V + 0.40\,B \leq 200$ gallons
Sugar: $0.50\,C + 0.40\,V + 0.40\,B \leq 150$ pounds
Cream: $0.10\,C + 0.15\,V + 0.20\,B \leq 60$ gallons

and

$$C \geq 0 \qquad V \geq 0 \qquad B \geq 0$$

This problem was solved using Solver. The spreadsheet (already solved) and the sensitivity report are shown below. (*Note:* The numbers in the sensitivity report for the milk constraint are missing on purpose, since you will be asked to fill in these numbers in part *f.*)

page 358

For each of the following parts, answer the question as specifically and completely as possible without solving the problem again with Solver. *Note:* Each part is independent (i.e., any change made to the model in one part does not apply to any other parts).

a. What is the optimal solution and total profit?

b. Suppose the profit per gallon of banana changes to \$1.00. Will the optimal solution change and what can be said about the effect on total profit?

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		Chocolate	Vanilla	Banana			
2	Unit Profit	$1.00	$0.90	$0.95			
3							
4		Resources Used per Gallon Produced			Used		Available
5	Milk	0.45	0.5	0.4	180	≤	200
6	Sugar	0.5	0.4	0.4	150	≤	150
7	Cream	0.1	0.15	0.2	60	≤	60
8							
9		Chocolate	Vanilla	Banana			Total Profit
10	Gallons Produced	0	300	75			$341.25

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$B$10	Gallons Produced Chocolate	0	–0.0375	1	0.0375	1E + 30
$C$10	Gallons Produced Vanilla	300	0	0.9	0.05	0.0125
$D$10	Gallons Produced Banana	75	0	0.95	0.0214	0.05

Constraints

Cell	Name	Final Value	Shadow Price	Constraint R. H. Side	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$E$5	Milk Used					
$E$6	Sugar Used	150	1.875	150	10	30
$E$7	Cream Used	60	1	60	15	3.75

c. Suppose the profit per gallon of banana changes to 92¢. Will the optimal solution change and what can be said about the effect on total profit?

d. Suppose the company discovers that three gallons of cream have gone sour and so must be thrown out. Will the optimal solution change and what can be said about the effect on total profit?

e. Suppose the company has the opportunity to buy an additional 15 pounds of sugar at a total cost of $15. Should it do so? Explain.

f. Fill in all the sensitivity report information for the milk constraint, given just the optimal solution for the problem. Explain how you were able to deduce each number.

8.8. Colonial Furniture produces hand-crafted colonial-style furniture. Plans are now being made for the production of rocking chairs, dining room tables, and/or armoires over the next week. These products go through two stages of production (assembly and finishing). The table below gives the time required for each item to go through these two stages, the amount of

wood required (fine cherry wood), and the corresponding unit profits, along with the amount of each resource available next week.

	Rocking Chair	Dining Room Table	Armoire	Available
Assembly (minutes)	100	180	120	3,600
Finishing (minutes)	60	80	80	2,000
Wood (pounds)	30	180	120	4,000
Unit Profit	$240	$720	$600	

A linear programming model has been formulated in a spreadsheet to determine the production levels that would maximize profit. The solved spreadsheet model and corresponding sensitivity report are shown below.

page 359

For each of the following parts, answer the question as specifically and completely as is possible without re-solving the problem with Solver. *Note:* Each part is independent (i.e., any change made in one problem part does not apply to any other parts).

a. Suppose the profit per armoire decreases by $50. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

b. Suppose the profit per table decreases by $60 and the profit per armoire increases by $90. Will this change the optimal production quantities? What can be said about the change in total profit?

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1		Rocking	Dining Room				
2		Chair	Table	Armoire			
3	Unit Profit	$240	$720	$600			
4							
5		Resource Required per Unit			Used		Available
6	Assembly (minutes)	100	180	120	3,600	<=	3,600
7	Finishing (minutes)	60	80	80	2,000	<=	2,000
8	Wood (pounds)	30	180	120	3,600	<=	4,000
9							
10		Rocking	Dining Room				
11		Chair	Table	Armoire			Total Profit
12	Production	0	10	15			$16,200

Variable Cells

Cell	Name	Final Value	Reduced Cost	Objective Coefficient	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$B$12	Production Chair	0	−230	240	230	1E + 30
$C$12	Production Table	10	0	720	180	120
$D$12	Production Armoire	15	0	600	120	120

Constraints

Cell	Name	Final Value	Shadow Price	Constraint R. H. Side	Allowable Increase	Allowable Decrease
$E$6	Assembly (minutes) Used	3,600	2.00	3,600	400	600
$E$7	Finishing (minutes) Used	2,000	4.50	2,000	400	400
$E$8	Wood (pounds) Used	3,600		4,000		

c. Suppose a part-time worker in the assembly department calls in sick for one day, so that now four fewer hours are available that day in the assembly department. How much would this affect total profit? Would it change the optimal production quantities?

d. Suppose one of the workers in the assembly department is also trained to do finishing. Would it be a good idea to have this worker shift some of his time from the assembly department to the finishing department? Indicate the rate at which this would increase or decrease total profit per minute shifted. How many minutes can be shifted before this rate might change?

e. The shadow price and allowable range for the wood constraint are missing from the sensitivity report. What numbers should be there? Explain how you were able to deduce each number.

8.9. David, LaDeana, and Lydia are the sole partners and workers in a company that produces fine clocks. David and LaDeana are each available to work a maximum of 40 hours per week at the company, while Lydia is available to work a maximum of 20 hours per week.

The company makes two different types of clocks: a grandfather clock and a wall clock. To make a clock, David (a mechanical engineer) assembles the inside mechanical parts of the clock while LaDeana (a woodworker) produces the hand-carved wood casings. Lydia is responsible for taking orders and shipping the clocks. The amount of time required for each of these tasks is shown next.

Task	Time Required	
	Grandfather Clock	Wall Clock
Assemble clock mechanism	6 hours	4 hours
Carve wood casing	8 hours	4 hours
Shipping	3 hours	3 hours

Each grandfather clock built and shipped yields a profit of $300, while each wall clock yields a profit of $200.

The three partners now want to determine how many clocks of each type should be produced per week to maximize the total profit.

a. Formulate a linear programming model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Use graphical analysis to solve the model. Then check if the optimal solution would change if the unit profit for grandfather clocks were changed from $300 to $375 (with no other changes in the model). Then check if the optimal solution would change if, in addition to this change in the unit profit for the grandfather clocks, the estimated unit profit for wall clocks also changed from $200 to $175.

c. Formulate and solve the original version of this model on a spreadsheet.

d. Use Solver to check the effect of the changes specified in part *b.*

AS e. Use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and total profit as the unit profit for grandfather clocks is increased in $20 increments from $150 to $450 (with no change in the unit profit for wall clocks). Then do the same as the unit profit for wall clocks is increased in $20 increments from $50 to $350 (with no change in the unit profit for grandfather clocks). Use this information to estimate the allowable range for the unit profit of each type of clock.

AS f. Use a two-way parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal total profit as the unit profits for the two types of clocks are changed simultaneously as specified in part *e,* except use $50 increments instead of $20 increments.

g. For each of the three partners in turn, use Solver to determine the effect on the optimal solution and the total profit if that partner alone were to increase his or her maximum number of work hours available per week by 5 hours.

AS h. Use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and the total profit when the only change is that David's maximum number of hours available to work per week changes to each of the following values: 35, 37, 39, 41, 43, 45. Then do the same when the only change is that LaDeana's maximum number of hours available to work per week changes in the same way. Then do the same when the only change is that Lydia's maximum number of hours available to work per week changes to each of the following values: 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25.

i. Generate a sensitivity report and use it to determine the allowable range for the unit profit for each type of clock and the allowable

range for the maximum number of hours each partner is available to work per week.

j. To increase the total profit, the three partners have agreed that one of them will slightly increase the maximum number of hours available to work per week. The choice of which one will be based on which one would increase the total profit the most. Use the sensitivity report to make this choice. (Assume no change in the original estimates of the unit profits.)

k. Explain why one of the shadow prices is equal to zero.

l. Can the shadow prices in the sensitivity report be validly used to determine the effect if Lydia were to change her maximum number of hours available to work per week from 20 to 25? If so, what would be the increase in the total profit?

m. Repeat part *l* if, in addition to the change for Lydia, David also were to change his maximum number of hours available to work per week from 40 to 35.

n. Use graphical analysis to verify your answer in part *m.*

8.10.* Reconsider Problem 8.1. After further negotiations with each vendor, management of the G. A. Tanner Company has learned that either of them would be willing to consider increasing their supply of their respective subassemblies over the previously stated maxima (3,000 subassemblies of type A per day and 1,000 of type B per day) if the company would pay a small premium over the regular price for the extra subassemblies. The size of the premium for each type of subassembly remains to be negotiated. The demand for the toy being produced is sufficiently high that 2,500 per day could be sold if the supply of subassemblies could be increased enough to support this production rate. Assume that the original estimates of unit profits given in Problem 8.1 are accurate.

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem with the original maximum supply levels and the additional constraint that no more than 2,500 toys should be produced per day.

b. Without considering the premium, use the spreadsheet and Solver to determine the shadow price for the subassembly A constraint by solving the model again after increasing the maximum supply by one. Use this shadow price to determine the maximum premium that the company should be willing to pay for each subassembly of this type.

c. Repeat part *b* for the subassembly B constraint.

AS d. Estimate how much the maximum supply of subassemblies of type A could be increased before the shadow price (and the corresponding premium) found in part *b* would no longer be valid

by using a parameter analysis report to generate the optimal solution and total profit (excluding the premium) as the maximum supply increases in increments of 100 from 3,000 to 4,000.

AS *e.* Repeat part *d* for subassemblies of type B by using a parameter analysis report as the maximum supply increases in increments of 100 from 1,000 to 2,000.

f. Use Solver's sensitivity report to determine the shadow price for each of the subassembly constraints and the allowable range for the right-hand side of each of these constraints.

page 361

8.11. Reconsider the model given in Problem 8.2. While doing what-if analysis, you learn that the estimates of the right-hand sides of the two functional constraints are accurate only to within ± 50 percent. In other words, the ranges of *likely values* for these parameters are 5 to 15 for the first right-hand side and 6 to 18 for the second right-hand side.

a. After solving the original spreadsheet model, determine the shadow price for the first functional constraint by increasing its right-hand side by one and solving again.

AS *b.* Use a parameter analysis report to generate the optimal solution and total profit as the right-hand side of the first functional constraint is incremented by 1 from 5 to 15. Use this table to estimate the allowable range for this right-hand side, that is, the range over which the shadow price obtained in part *a* is valid.

c. Repeat part *a* for the second functional constraint.

AS *d.* Repeat part *b* for the second functional constraint where its right-hand side is incremented by 1 from 6 to 18.

e. Use Solver's sensitivity report to determine the shadow price for each functional constraint and the allowable range for the right-hand side of each of these constraints.

8.12. Consider a resource-allocation problem having the following data:

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
1	1	3	8
2	1	1	4
Unit profit	$1	$2	

The objective is to determine the number of units of each activity to undertake so as to maximize the total profit.

a. Use the graphical method to solve this model.

b. Use graphical analysis to determine the shadow price for each of these resources by solving again after increasing the amount of that resource available by one.

c. Use the spreadsheet model and Solver instead to do parts *a* and *b.*

AS *d.* For each resource in turn, use a parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal solution and the total profit when the only change is that the amount of that resource available increases in increments of 1 from 4 less than the original value up to 6 more than the original value. Use these results to estimate the allowable range for the amount available for each resource.

e. Use Solver's sensitivity report to obtain the shadow prices. Also use this report to find the range for the amount of each resource available over which the corresponding shadow price remains valid.

f. Describe why these shadow prices are useful when management has the flexibility to change the amounts of the resources being made available.

8.13. Follow the instructions of Problem 8.12 for a resource-allocation problem that again has the objective of maximizing total profit and that has the following data:

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	**2**	
1	1	0	4
2	1	3	15
3	2	1	10
Unit profit	$3	$2	

8.14.* Consider the Super Grain Corp. case study as presented in Section 6.1, including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.1 showing its formulation and

optimal solution. Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report. Then use this report to independently address each of the following questions.

a. How much could the total expected number of exposures be increased for each additional $1,000 added to the advertising budget?

b. Your answer in part *a* would remain valid for how large of an increase in the advertising budget?

c. How much could the total expected number of exposures be increased for each additional $1,000 added to the planning budget?

d. Your answer in part *c* would remain valid for how large of an increase in the planning budget?

e. Would your answers in parts *a* and *c* definitely remain valid if *both* the advertising budget and planning budget were increased by $100,000 each?

f. If only $100,000 can be added to *either* the advertising budget or the planning budget, where should it be added to do the most good?

g. If $100,000 must be *removed* from either the advertising budget or the planning budget, from which budget should it be removed to do the least harm?

8.15. Follow the instructions of Problem 8.14 for the continuation of the Super Grain Corp. case study as presented in Section 6.4 including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.7 showing its formulation and optimal solution.

8.16. Consider the Union Airways problem presented in Section 6.3, including the spreadsheet in Figure 6.5 showing its formulation and optimal solution.

Management now is considering increasing the level of service provided to customers by increasing one or more of the numbers in the rightmost column of Table 6.5 for the minimum number of agents needed in the various time periods. To guide them in making this decision, they would like to know what impact this change would have on total cost.

page 362

Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report in preparation for addressing the following questions.

a. Which of the numbers in the rightmost column of Table 6.5 can be increased without increasing total cost? In each case, indicate how much it can be increased (if it is the only one being changed) without increasing total cost.

b. For each of the other numbers, how much would the total cost increase per increase of 1 in the number? For each answer,

indicate how much the number can be increased (if it is the only one being changed) before the answer is no longer valid.

c. Do your answers in part *b* definitely remain valid if all the numbers considered in part *b* are simultaneously increased by 1?

d. Do your answers in part *b* definitely remain valid if all 10 numbers are simultaneously increased by 1?

e. How far can all 10 numbers be simultaneously increased by the same amount before your answers in part *b* may no longer be valid?

8.17. Reconsider the example illustrating the use of robust optimization that was presented in Section 8.7. Wyndor management now feels that the analysis described in this example was overly conservative for three reasons: (1) it is unlikely that the true values of the parameters, H_{D3} and H_{W3}, will be as far as half an hour off of the original estimate, (2) it is even more unlikely that *both* estimates will turn out to simultaneously lean toward the undesirable end of their ranges of uncertainty, and (3) there is a bit of latitude in the constraint to compensate for violating it by a tiny bit. Therefore, Wyndor management has asked its staff (you) to solve the model again while using ranges of uncertainty that are half as wide as those used in Section 8.7.

a. Apply the procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters. What is the resulting optimal solution and how much would this increase the total profit per week?

b. If Wyndor would need to pay a penalty of \$150 per week to the distributor if the production rates fall below these new guaranteed minimum amounts, should Wyndor use these new guarantees?

8.18. Reconsider the example illustrating the use of robust optimization that was presented in Section 8.7. Wyndor management now feels that there is uncertainty in *all* of the parameters of the problem—the unit profit per door and window (P_D and P_W), the hours of production time used for each door or window produced across the three plants (H_{D1}, H_{W2}, H_{D3}, and H_{W3}) and the three right-hand sides representing the hours available at each plant (RHS_1, RHS_2, and RHS_3). The original estimates along with the ranges of uncertainty are shown in the next table. Apply the procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters to find the solution that maximizes profit when the solution also is guaranteed to be feasible.

Parameter	Original Estimate	Range of Uncertainty
P_D	\$300	\$250–\$350
P_W	\$500	\$400–\$600

Parameter	Original Estimate	Range of Uncertainty
H_{D1}	1	0.9–1.1
H_{W2}	2	1.6–2.4
H_{D3}	3	2.5–3.5
H_{W3}	2	1.8–2.2
RHS_1	4	3.5–4.5
RHS_2	12	11–13
RHS_3	18	16–20

8.19.* Reconsider Problem 8.12. Now suppose that all of the parameters are uncertain, with ranges of uncertainty as given in the table below. Use the procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters to find the solution that maximizes profit when the solution also is guaranteed to be feasible.

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
1	0.9–1.1	2.7–3.3	7.2–8.8
2	0.8–1.2	0.7–1.3	3.5–4.5
Unit profit	\$0.90–\$1.10	\$1.75–\$2.25	

8.20. Reconsider Problem 8.13. Now suppose that all of the parameters are uncertain, with ranges of uncertainty as given in the table below. Use the procedure for robust optimization with independent parameters to find the solution that maximizes profit when the solution also is guaranteed to be feasible.

	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity

Resource	Resource Usage per Unit of Each Activity		Amount of Resource Available
	1	2	
Resource	1	2	Amount of Resource Available
1	0.8–1.2	0	3.6–4.4
2	0.9–1.1	2.5–3.5	13.5–16.5
3	1.6–2.4	0.7–1.3	9.5–10.5
Unit profit	$2.90–$3.10	$1.80–$2.20	

AS 8.21 Reconsider the example illustrating the use of chance constraints that was presented in Section 8.8. Suppose that after a more careful consideration of the hours required per door and window in Plant 3, H_{D3} and H_{W3}, Wyndor management has considerably narrowed the range of what these times might turn out to be.

a. H_{D3} and H_{W3} are now considered equally likely to be anywhere between 15 minutes below and 15 minutes above the original estimates of 3 hours and 2 hours, respectively. Use a chance constraint and Analytic Solver to find the solution that maximizes total profit while requiring at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original constraint for the third plant.

page 363

b. Repeat part *a,* but now require at least a 99 percent chance of satisfying the constraint at the third plant.

c. Now assume H_{D3} and H_{W3} follow the normal distribution with means equal to the original estimates of 3 hours and 2 hours, respectively, and each with a standard deviation of 0.25 hours. Use a chance constraint and Analytic Solver to find the solution that maximizes total profit while requiring at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original constraint for the third plant.

d. Repeat part *c,* but now require at least a 99 percent chance of satisfying the original constraint at the third plant.

AS 8.22.* Reconsider Problem 8.12, but now assume that the amount of resource 1 available and the amount of resource 2 available are both uncertain. In particular, each follows the normal distribution, with means

equal to the original estimates of 8 and 4, respectively, but each with a standard deviation of 0.5. Use a chance constraint and Analytic Solver to find the maximum profit while requiring for each original constraint that there be at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying that constraint.

AS 8.23. Reconsider Problem 8.13, but now assume that the available amount of resource 1 and available amount of resource 2 are both uncertain.

a. If each unit of activity 1 is equally likely to use anywhere between 1.5 and 2.5 units of resource 3, while each unit of activity 2 is equally likely to use anywhere between 0.7 and 1.3 units of resource 3, then use a chance constraint and Analytic Solver to find the maximum profit while requiring at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original third constraint.

b. If the amount of resource 3 used per unit of each activity follows the normal distribution, with means equal to the original estimates, but each with a standard deviation of 0.3, then use a chance constraint and Analytic Solver to find the maximum profit while requiring at least a 95 percent chance of satisfying the original third constraint.

Case 8-1

Selling Soap

Reconsider the **Profit & Gambit Co.** advertising-mix problem presented in Section 5.7. Recall that a major advertising campaign is being planned that will focus on three key products: a stain remover, a liquid detergent, and a powder detergent. Management has made the following policy decisions about what needs to be achieved by this campaign.

- Sales of the stain remover should increase by at least 3 percent.
- Sales of the liquid detergent should increase by at least 18 percent.
- Sales of the powder detergent should increase by at least 4 percent.

The spreadsheet in Figure 5.21 shows the linear programming model that was formulated for this problem. The minimum required increases in the sales of the three products are given in the data cells Minimum Increase (G8:G10). The changing cells Advertising Units (C14:D14) indicate that an optimal solution for the model is to undertake four units of advertising on television and three units of advertising in the print media. The objective cell TotalCost (G14) shows that the total cost for this advertising campaign would be $10 million.

After receiving this information, Profit & Gambit management now wants to analyze the trade-off between the total advertising cost and the resulting benefits achieved by increasing the sales of the three products. Therefore, a management science and business analytics team (you) has been given the assignment of developing the information that management will need to analyze this trade-off and decide whether it should change any of its policy decisions regarding the required minimum increases in the sales of the three products. In particular, management needs some detailed information about how the total advertising cost would change if it were to change any or all of these policy decisions.

a. For each of the three products in turn, use graphical analysis to determine how much the total advertising cost would change if the required minimum increase in the sales of that product were to be increased by 1 percent (without changing the required minimum increases for the other two products).

b. Use the spreadsheet shown in Figure 5.21 (available in **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) to obtain the information requested in part *a.*

c. For each of the three products in turn, use a parameter analysis report to determine how the optimal solution for the model and the resulting total advertising cost would change if the required minimum increase in the sales of that product were to be systematically varied over a range of values (without changing the required minimum increases for the other two products). In each case, start the range of values at 0 percent and increase by 1 percent increments up to double the original minimum required increase.

d. Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report and indicate how the report is able to provide the information requested in part *a.* Also use the report to obtain the allowable range for the required minimum increase in the sales of each product. Interpret how each of these allowable ranges relates to the results obtained in part *c.*

e. Suppose that all the original numbers in Minimum Increase (G8:G10) were to be increased simultaneously by the same amount. How large can this amount be before the shadow prices provided by the sensitivity report may no longer be valid?

page 364

f. Below is the beginning of a memorandum from the management science and business analytics team to Profit & Gambit management that is intended to provide management with the information it needs to perform its trade-off analysis. Write the rest of this memorandum based on a summary of the results obtained in the preceding parts. Present your information in clear, simple terms that use the language of management. Avoid technical terms such as shadow prices, allowable ranges, and so forth.

MEMORANDUM

To: Profit & Gambit management

From: The Management Science and Business Analytics Team

Subject: The trade-off between advertising expenditures and increased sales

As instructed, we have been continuing our analysis of the plans for the major new advertising campaign that will focus on our spray prewash stain remover, our liquid formulation laundry detergent, and our powder laundry detergent.

Our recent report presented our preliminary conclusions on how much advertising to do in the different media to meet the sales goals at a minimum total cost:

Allocate $4 million to advertising on television.

Allocate $6 million to advertising in the print media.

Total advertising cost: $10 million.

We estimate that the resulting increases in sales will be

Stain remover: 3 percent increase in sales

Liquid detergent: 18 percent increase in sales

Powder detergent: 8 percent increase in sales

You had specified that these increases should be at least 3 percent, 18 percent, and 4 percent, respectively, so we have met the minimum levels for the first two products and substantially exceeded it for the third.

However, you also indicated that your decisions on these minimum required increases in sales (3 percent, 18 percent, and 4 percent) had been tentative ones. Now that we have more specific information on what the advertising costs and the resulting increases in sales will be, you plan to reevaluate these decisions to see if small changes might improve the trade-off between advertising cost and increased sales.

To assist you in reevaluating your decisions, we now have analyzed this trade-off for each of the three products. Our best estimates are the following.

Case 8-2

Controlling Air Pollution

The **Nori & Leets Co.** is one of the major producers of steel in its part of the world. It is located in the city of Steeltown and is the only large employer there. Steeltown has grown and prospered along with the company, which now employs nearly 50,000 residents. Therefore, the attitude of the townspeople always has been, “What’s good for Nori & Leets is good for the town.” However, this attitude is now changing; uncontrolled air pollution from the company’s furnaces is ruining the appearance of the city and endangering the health of its residents.

A recent stockholders' revolt resulted in the election of a new enlightened board of directors for the company. These directors are determined to follow socially responsible policies, and they have been discussing with Steeltown city officials and citizens' groups what to do about the air pollution problem. Together they have worked out stringent air quality standards for the Steeltown airshed.

The three main types of pollutants in this airshed are particulate matter, sulfur oxides, and hydrocarbons. The new standards require that the company reduce its annual emission of these pollutants by the amounts shown in the following table.

Pollutant	Required Reduction in Annual Emission Rate (million pounds)
Particulates	60
Sulfur oxides	150
Hydrocarbons	125

Reduction in Emission Rate from the Maximum Feasible Use of an Abatement Method

	Taller Smokestacks		Filters		Better Fuels	
Pollutant	Blast Furnaces	Open-Hearth Furnaces	Blast Furnaces	Open-Hearth Furnaces	Blast Furnaces	Open-Hearth Furnaces
Particulates	12	9	25	20	17	13
Sulfur oxides	35	42	18	31	56	49
Hydrocarbons	37	53	28	24	29	20

The board of directors has instructed management to have the engineering staff determine how to achieve these reductions in the most economical way.

page 365

The steelworks have two primary sources of pollution, namely, the blast furnaces for making pig iron and the open-hearth furnaces for changing iron into steel. In both cases, the engineers have decided that the most effective abatement methods are (1) increasing the height of the smokestacks,[1] (2) using filter devices (including gas traps) in the smokestacks, and (3) including cleaner, high-grade materials among the fuels for the furnaces. Each of these methods has a technological limit on how heavily it can be used (e.g., a maximum feasible increase in the height of the smokestacks), but there also is considerable flexibility for using the method at a fraction of its technological limit.

The table above shows how much emissions (in millions of pounds per year) can be eliminated from each type of furnace by fully using any abatement method to its technological limit.

For purposes of analysis, it is assumed that each method also can be less fully used to achieve any fraction of the abatement capacities shown in this table. Furthermore, the fractions can be different for blast furnaces and open-hearth furnaces. For either type of furnace, the emission reduction achieved by each method is not substantially affected by whether or not the other methods also are used.

After these data were developed, it became clear that no single method by itself could achieve all the required reductions. On the other hand, combining all three methods at full capacity on both types of furnaces (which would be prohibitively expensive if the company's products are to remain competitively priced) is much more than adequate. Therefore, the engineers concluded that they would have to use some combination of the methods, perhaps with fractional capacities, based on their relative costs. Furthermore, because of the differences between the blast furnaces and the open-hearth furnaces, the best combinations may well be different for the two types of furnaces.

An analysis was conducted to estimate the total annual cost that would be incurred by each abatement method. A method's annual cost includes increased operating and maintenance expenses, as well as reduced revenue due to any loss in the efficiency of the production process caused by using the method. The other major cost is the start-up cost (the initial capital outlay) required to install the method. To make this one-time cost commensurable with the ongoing annual costs, the time value of money was used to calculate the annual expenditure that would be equivalent in value to this start-up cost.

This analysis led to the total annual cost estimates given in the following table for using the methods at their full abatement capacities.

Total Annual Cost from the Maximum Feasible Use of an Abatement Method

Abatement Method	Blast Furnaces	Open-Hearth Furnaces
Taller smokestacks	$8 million	$10 million
Filters	7 million	6 million
Better fuels	11 million	9 million

It also was determined that the cost of a method being used at a lower level is roughly proportional to the fraction of the abatement capacity (given in the preceding table) that is achieved. Thus, for any given fraction achieved, the total annual cost would be roughly that fraction of the corresponding quantity in the cost table.

The stage now is set to develop the general framework of the company's plan for pollution abatement. This plan needs to specify which types of abatement methods will be used and at what fractions of their abatement capacities for (1) the blast furnaces and (2) the open-hearth furnaces.

You have been asked to head a management science and business analytics team to analyze this problem. Management wants you to begin by determining which plan would minimize the total annual cost of achieving the required reductions in annual emission rates for the three pollutants.

a. Identify verbally the components of a linear programming model for this problem.

b. Display the model on a spreadsheet.
c. Obtain an optimal solution and generate the sensitivity report.

Management now wants to conduct some what-if analysis with your help. Since the company does not have much prior experience with the pollution abatement methods under consideration, the cost estimates given in the third table are fairly rough, and each one could easily be off by as much as 10 percent in either direction. There also is some uncertainty about the values given in the second table, but less so than for the third table. By contrast, the values in the first table are policy standards and so are prescribed constants.

However, there still is considerable debate about where to set these policy standards on the required reductions in the emission rates of the various pollutants. The numbers in the first table actually are preliminary values tentatively agreed upon before learning what the total cost would be to meet these standards. Both the city and company officials agree that the final decision on these policy standards should be based on the *trade-off* between costs and benefits. With this in mind, the city has concluded that each 10 percent increase in the policy standards over the current values (all the numbers in the first table) would be worth $3.5 million to the city. Therefore, the city has agreed to reduce the company's tax payments to the city by $3.5 million for *each* 10 percent increase in the policy standards (up to 50 percent) that is accepted by the company.

page 366

Finally, there has been some debate about the *relative* values of the policy standards for the three pollutants. As indicated in the first table, the required reduction for particulates now is less than half of that for either sulfur oxides or hydrocarbons. Some have argued for decreasing this disparity. Others contend that an even greater disparity is justified because sulfur oxides and hydrocarbons cause considerably more damage than particulates. Agreement has been reached that this issue will be reexamined after information is obtained about which trade-offs in policy standards (increasing one while decreasing another) are available without increasing the total cost.

d. Identify the parameters of the linear programming model that should be classified as *sensitive parameters.* Make a resulting recommendation about which parameters should be estimated more closely, if possible.
e. Analyze the effect of an inaccuracy in estimating each cost parameter given in the third table. If the true value were 10 percent less than the estimated value, would this change the optimal solution? Would it change if the true value were 10 percent more than the estimated value? Make a resulting recommendation about where to focus further work in estimating the cost parameters more closely.
f. For each pollutant, specify the rate at which the total cost of an optimal solution would change with any small change in the required reduction in the annual emission rate of the pollutant. Also specify how much this required reduction can be changed (up or down) without affecting the rate of change in the total cost.

g. For each unit change in the policy standard for particulates given in the first table, determine the change in the opposite direction for sulfur oxides that would keep the total cost of an optimal solution unchanged. Repeat this for hydrocarbons instead of sulfur oxides. Then do it for a simultaneous and equal change for both sulfur oxides and hydrocarbons in the opposite direction from particulates.

h. Letting θ denote the percentage increase in all the policy standards given in the first table, use a parameter analysis report to systematically find an optimal solution and the total cost for the revised linear programming problem for each $\theta = 10, 20, 30, 40, 50$. Considering the tax incentive offered by the city, use these results to determine which value of θ (including the option of $\theta = 0$) should be chosen by the company to minimize its total cost of both pollution abatement and taxes.

i. For the value of θ chosen in part *h,* generate the sensitivity report and repeat parts *f* and *g* so that the decision makers can make a final decision on the relative values of the policy standards for the three pollutants.

Case 8-3

Farm Management

The **Ploughman family** owns and operates a 640-acre farm that has been in the family for several generations. The Ploughmans always have had to work hard to make a decent living from the farm and have had to endure some occasional difficult years. Stories about earlier generations overcoming hardships due to droughts, floods, and so forth, are an important part of the family history. However, the Ploughmans enjoy their self-reliant lifestyle and gain considerable satisfaction from continuing the family tradition of successfully living off the land during an era when many family farms are being abandoned or taken over by large agricultural corporations.

John Ploughman is the current manager of the farm, while his wife Eunice runs the house and manages the farm's finances. John's father, Grandpa Ploughman, lives with them and still puts in many hours working on the farm. John and Eunice's children, Frank, Phyllis, and Carl, also are given heavy chores before and after school.

The entire family can produce a total of 4,000 person-hours worth of labor during the winter and spring months and 4,500 person-hours during the summer and fall. If any of these person-hours are not needed, the three Ploughman children will use them to work on neighboring farms for $7/hour during the winter and spring months and $7.70/hour during the summer and fall.

The farm supports two types of livestock, dairy cows and laying hens, as well as three crops: soybeans, corn, and wheat. (All three are cash crops, but the corn also is a feed crop for the cows and the wheat also is used for chicken feed.) The crops are harvested during the late summer and fall. During the winter months, John, Eunice, and Grandpa make a decision about the mix of livestock and crops for the coming year.

Currently, the family has just completed a particularly successful harvest that has provided an investment fund of $28,000 that can be used to purchase more livestock.

(Other money is available for ongoing expenses, including the next planting of crops.) The family currently has 30 cows valued at $49,000 and 2,000 hens valued at $7,000. They wish to keep all this livestock and perhaps purchase more. Each new cow would cost $2,100, and each new hen would cost $4.20.

Over a year's time, the value of a herd of cows will decrease by about 10 percent and the value of a flock of hens will decrease by about 25 percent due to aging.

Each cow will require two acres of land for grazing and 10 person-hours of work per month, while producing a net annual cash income of $1,190 for the family. The corresponding figures for each hen are no significant acreage, 0.05 person-hours per month, and an annual net cash income of $5.95. The chicken house can accommodate a maximum of 5,000 hens, and the size of the barn limits the herd to a maximum of 42 cows.

For each acre planted in each of the three crops, the first table on the next page gives the number of person-hours of work that will be required during the first and second halves of the year, as well as a rough estimate of the crop's net value (in either income or savings in purchasing feed for the livestock).

page 367

To provide much of the feed for the livestock, John wants to plant at least one acre of corn for each cow in the coming year's herd and at least 0.05 acre of wheat for each hen in the coming year's flock.

John, Eunice, and Grandpa now are discussing how much acreage should be planted in each of the crops and how many cows and hens to have for the coming year. Their objective is to maximize the family's monetary worth at the end of the coming year (the *sum* of the net income from the livestock for the coming year *plus* the net value of the crops for the coming year *plus* what remains from the investment fund *plus* the value of the livestock at the end of the coming year *plus* income from working on a neighboring farm *minus* living expenses of $56,000 for the year).

	Soybeans	Corn	Wheat
Winter and spring, person-hours	1.0	0.9	0.6
Summer and fall, person-hours	1.4	1.2	0.7
Net value	$98	$84	$56

a. Identify verbally the components of a linear programming model for this problem.
b. Display the model on a spreadsheet.
c. Obtain an optimal solution and generate the sensitivity report. What does the model predict regarding the family's monetary worth at the end of the coming year?
d. Find the allowable range for the net value per acre planted for each of the three crops.

The above estimates of the net value per acre planted in each of the three crops assume good weather conditions. Adverse weather conditions would harm the crops and greatly reduce the resulting value. The scenarios particularly feared by the family

are a drought, a flood, an early frost, *both* a drought and an early frost, and *both* a flood and an early frost. The estimated net values for the year under these scenarios are shown next.

	Net Value per Acre Planted		
Scenario	**Soybeans**	**Corn**	**Wheat**
Drought	–$14	–$21	0
Flood	21	28	$14
Early frost	70	56	42
Drought and early frost	–21	–28	–14
Flood and early frost	14	14	7

e. Find an optimal solution under each scenario after making the necessary adjustments to the linear programming model formulated in part *b.* In each case, what is the prediction regarding the family's monetary worth at the end of the year?

f. For the optimal solution obtained under each of the six scenarios (including the good weather scenario considered in parts *a* to *d*), calculate what the family's monetary worth would be at the end of the year if each of the other five scenarios occurs instead. In your judgment, which solution provides the best balance between yielding a large monetary worth under good weather conditions and avoiding an overly small monetary worth under adverse weather conditions?

Grandpa has researched what the weather conditions were in past years as far back as weather records have been kept and obtained the data shown in the table below. With these data, the family has decided to use the following approach to making its planting and livestock decisions. Rather than the optimistic approach of assuming that good weather conditions will prevail (as done in parts *a* to *d*), the *average* net value under all weather conditions will be used for each crop (weighting the net values under the various scenarios by the frequencies in the following table).

Scenario	**Frequency**
Good weather	40%
Drought	20
Flood	10
Early frost	15
Drought and early frost	10
Flood and early frost	5

g. Modify the linear programming model formulated in part *b* to fit this new approach.

h. Repeat part *c* for this modified model.

i. Use a shadow price obtained in part *h* to analyze whether it would be worthwhile for the family to obtain a bank loan with a 10 percent interest rate to purchase more livestock now beyond what can be obtained with the $28,000 from the investment fund.

j. For each of the three crops, use the sensitivity report obtained in part *h* to identify how much latitude for error is available in estimating the net value per acre planted for that crop without changing the optimal solution. Which two net values need to be estimated most carefully? If both estimates are incorrect simultaneously, how close do the estimates need to be to guarantee that the optimal solution will not change? Use a two-way parameter analysis report to systematically generate the optimal monetary worth as these two net values are varied simultaneously over ranges that go up to twice as far from the estimates as needed to guarantee that the optimal solution will not change.

This problem illustrates a kind of situation that is frequently faced by various kinds of organizations. To describe the situation in general terms, an organization faces an uncertain future where any one of a number of scenarios may unfold. Which one will occur depends on conditions that are outside the control of the organization. The organization needs to choose the levels of various activities, but the unit contribution of each activity to the overall measure of performance is greatly affected by which scenario unfolds. Under these circumstances, what is the best mix of activities?

k. Think about specific situations outside of farm management that fit this description. Describe one.

Case 8-4

Assigning Students to Schools (Revisited)

Reconsider Case 6-5. The **Springfield School Board** still has the policy of providing busing for all middle school students who must travel more than approximately a mile. Another current policy is to allow splitting residential areas among multiple schools if this will reduce the total busing cost. (This latter policy will be reversed in Case 10-3.) However, before adopting a busing plan based on part *a* of Case 6-5, the school board now wants to conduct some what-if analysis.

a. If you have not already done so for part *a* of Case 6-5, formulate and solve a linear programming model for this problem on a spreadsheet.

b. Use Solver to generate the sensitivity report.

One concern of the school board is the ongoing road construction in area 6. These construction projects have been delaying traffic considerably and are likely to affect the cost of busing students from area 6, perhaps increasing costs as much as 10 percent.

c. Use the sensitivity report to check how much the busing cost from area 6 to school 1 can increase (assuming no change in the costs for the other schools) before the current optimal solution would no longer be optimal. If the allowable increase is less than 10 percent, use Solver to find the new optimal solution with a 10 percent increase.

d. Repeat part *c* for school 2 (assuming no change in the costs for the other schools).

e. Now assume that the busing cost from area 6 would increase by the same percentage for all the schools. Use the sensitivity report to determine how large this percentage can be before the current optimal solution might no longer be optimal. If the allowable increase is less than 10 percent, use Solver to find the new optimal solution with a 10 percent increase.

The school board has the option of adding some old portable classrooms to increase the capacity of one or more of the middle schools for a few years. However, this is a costly move that the board would only consider if it would significantly decrease busing costs. Each portable classroom holds 20 students and has a leasing cost of $2,500 per year. To analyze this option, the school board decides to assume that the road construction in area 6 will wind down without significantly increasing the busing costs from that area.

f. For each school, use the corresponding shadow price from the sensitivity report to determine whether it would be worthwhile to add any portable classrooms.

g. For each school where it is worthwhile to add any portable classrooms, use the sensitivity report to determine how many could be added before the shadow price would no longer be valid (assuming this is the only school receiving portable classrooms).

h. If it would be worthwhile to add portable classrooms to more than one school, use the sensitivity report to determine the combinations of the number to add for which the shadow prices definitely would still be valid. Then use the shadow prices to determine which of these combinations is best in terms of minimizing the total cost of busing students and leasing portable classrooms. Use Solver for finding the corresponding optimal solution for assigning students to schools.

i. If part *h* was applicable, modify the best combination of portable classrooms found there by adding one more to the school with the most favorable shadow price. Use Solver to find the corresponding optimal solution for assigning students to schools and to generate the corresponding sensitivity report. Use this information to assess whether the plan developed in part *h* is the best one available for minimizing the total cost of busing students and leasing portables. If not, find the best plan.

[1]Subsequent to this study, this particular abatement method has become a controversial one. Because its effect is to reduce ground-level pollution by spreading emissions over a greater distance, environmental groups contend that this creates more acid rain by keeping sulfur oxides in the air longer. Consequently, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency adopted new rules to remove incentives for using tall smokestacks.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 9

Network Optimization Problems

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Formulate network models for various types of network optimization problems.
2. Describe the characteristics of minimum-cost flow problems, maximum flow problems, and shortest path problems.
3. Identify some areas of application for these types of problems.
4. Identify several categories of network optimization problems that are special types of minimum-cost flow problems.
5. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for a minimum-cost flow problem, a maximum flow problem, or a shortest path problem from a description of the problem.

This chapter focuses on how to analyze networks, so let's begin with a description of what they are. A *network* can be defined as a *system* with a number of *components* where there are direct *connections* between various pairs of components. These connections might be actual physical connections, such as the wires in an electrical network. In other cases, the network might be a diagram that depicts the locations of the components of the system and then uses lines between certain pairs of components to identify direct relationships between these components. For example, if you refer back to Section 6.5, Figure 6.9 shows a network that depicts a distribution system with two types of components (factories and customers)

where the lines from factories to customers identify the feasible shipping routes.

Networks arise in numerous settings and in a variety of guises. Transportation, electrical, and communication networks pervade our daily lives. Network representations also are widely used for problems in such diverse areas as production, distribution, project planning, facilities location, resource management, and financial planning—to name just a few examples. In fact, a network representation provides such a powerful visual and conceptual aid for portraying the relationships between the components of systems that it is used in virtually every field of scientific, social, and economic endeavor.

This chapter focuses on how to use spreadsheet models to optimize the operation of certain kinds of networks. All of these networks are designed to provide *flow* of some type from certain points of origin along various permissible routes to certain destinations. For example, this flow might involve the shipment of goods or resources through the network. Or perhaps the objective is to identify the optimal route through the network, in which case the flow simply involves travel along that route. Or perhaps the "flow" simply represents actions that cause a transition from some state (a condition at some point in time) to another state. For each type of network, we will show how a spreadsheet model can formulate and solve the problem of how to operate the network in an optimal manner.

One of the most exciting developments in management science and business analytics in recent decades has been the unusually rapid advance in both the methodology and application of network optimization problems. A number of algorithmic breakthroughs have had a major impact, as have ideas from computer science concerning data structures and efficient data manipulation. Consequently, algorithms and software now are available and are being used to solve huge problems on a routine basis that would have been completely intractable a few decades ago. However, we will only consider small examples in this chapter.

This chapter presents the network optimization problems that have been particularly helpful in dealing with managerial issues. We focus on the nature of these problems and their applications rather than on the technical details and the algorithms used to solve the problems. Using spreadsheet models and Solver will enable us to maintain this focus.

You already have seen some examples of network optimization problems in Chapter 6. As mentioned above, transportation problems (described in

Section 6.5) have a network representation that is shown in Figure 6.9 already cited earlier. A typical transportation problem involves shipping some products from certain factories to certain customers, where the objective is to identify the shipping plan that minimizes the total cost of these shipments. Assignment problems (Section 6.6) have a similar network representation (as described further in Chapter 17 at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**). Therefore, both transportation problems and assignment problems are simple types of network optimization problems.

Like transportation problems and assignment problems, many other network optimization problems (including all the types considered in this chapter) also are special types of *linear programming* problems. Consequently, after formulating a spreadsheet model for these problems, they can be readily solved by Solver.

Section 9.1 discusses an especially important type of network optimization problem called a *minimum-cost flow problem.* A typical application involves minimizing the cost of shipping goods through a distribution network. Thus, this problem is similar to a transportation problem except now there are some intermediate points (e.g., warehouses) in the distribution network. In fact, both transportation problems and assignment problems are special types of minimum cost flow problems.

Section 9.3 presents *maximum flow problems,* which are concerned with such issues as how to maximize the flow of goods through a distribution network. Section 9.2 lays the groundwork by introducing a case study of a maximum flow problem.

Section 9.4 considers *shortest path problems.* In their simplest form, the objective is to find the shortest route through a network between two locations.

A supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** discusses *minimum spanning-tree problems,* which are concerned with minimizing the cost of providing either direct or indirect connections between all users of a system. This is the only network optimization problem considered in this book that is not, in fact, a special type of linear programming problem.

9.1 MINIMUM-COST FLOW PROBLEMS

Before describing the general characteristics of minimum-cost flow problems, let us first look at an example. For clarity, this first example is a tiny one, but

otherwise it is typical of the sometimes huge minimum-cost flow problems that arise in practice.

An Example: The Distribution Unlimited Co. Problem

The **Distribution Unlimited Co.** has two factories producing a product that needs to be shipped to two warehouses. Here are some details.

Factory 1 is producing 80 units.
Factory 2 is producing 70 units.
Warehouse 1 needs 60 units.
Warehouse 2 needs 90 units.

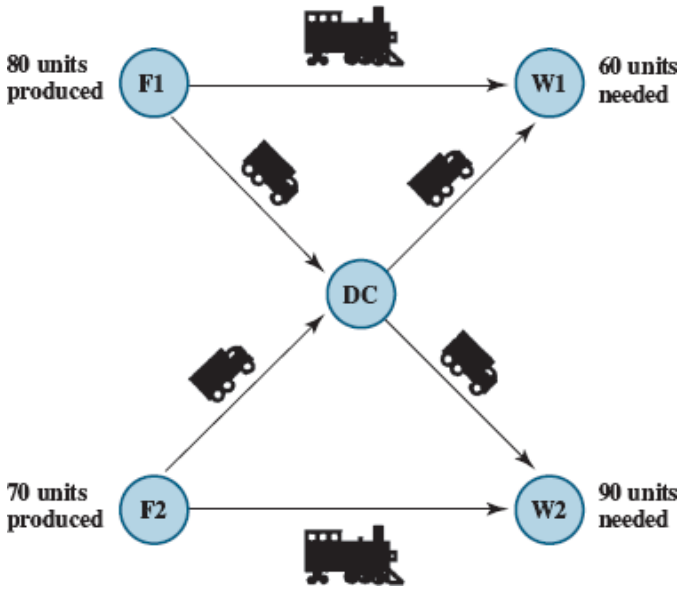
(Each unit corresponds to a full truckload of the product.)

Figure 9.1 shows the distribution network available for shipping this product, where F1 and F2 are the two factories, W1 and W2 are the two warehouses, and DC is a distribution center. The arrows show feasible shipping lanes. In particular, there is a rail link from Factory 1 to Warehouse 1 and another from Factory 2 to Warehouse 2. (Any amounts can be shipped along these rail links.) In addition, independent truckers are available to ship up to 50 units from each factory to the distribution center, and then to ship up to 50 units from the distribution center to each warehouse. (Whatever is shipped to the distribution center must subsequently be shipped on to the warehouses.) Management's objective is to determine the shipping plan (how many units to ship along each shipping lane) that will minimize the total shipping cost.

page 371

FIGURE 9.1

The distribution network for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem, where each feasible shipping lane is represented by an arrow.



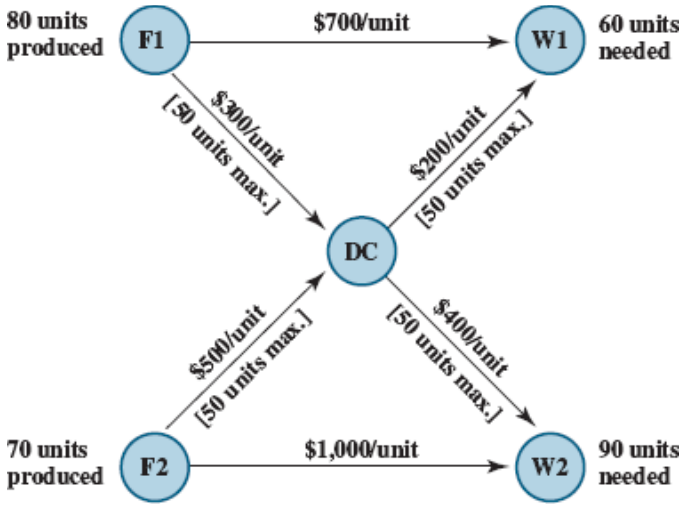
The objective is to minimize the total shipping cost through the distribution network.

If you have read the description of *transportation problems* in Section 6.5 (as illustrated in Figure 6.9), you will notice that this minimum-cost flow problem resembles a transportation problem. However, the key difference is that this example includes an intermediate destination (the distribution center), which does not fit the definition of a transportation problem. Many applications include such intermediate destinations, which makes minimum-cost flow problems a valuable generalization of transportation problems.

The shipping costs differ considerably among these shipping lanes. The cost per unit shipped through each lane is shown above the corresponding arrow in the *network* in Figure 9.2.

FIGURE 9.2

The data for the distribution network for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem.



To make the network less crowded, the problem usually is presented even more compactly, as shown in Figure 9.3. The number in square brackets next to the location of each facility indicates the net number of units (outflow minus inflow) generated there. Thus, the number of units terminating at each warehouse is shown as a negative number. The number at the distribution center is 0 since the number of units leaving *minus* the number of units arriving must equal 0. The number on top of each arrow shows the unit shipping cost along that shipping lane. Any number in square brackets underneath an arrow gives the maximum number of units that can be shipped along that shipping lane. (The absence of a number in square brackets underneath an arrow implies that there is no limit on the shipping amount there.) This network provides a complete representation of the problem, including all the necessary data, so it constitutes a *network model* for this minimum-cost flow problem.

page 372

FIGURE 9.3

A network model for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem as a minimum-cost flow problem.

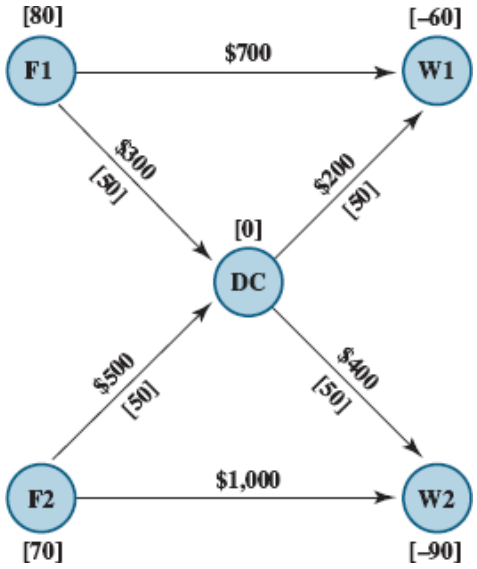


Figure 9.3 illustrates how a minimum-cost flow problem can be completely depicted by a network.

An Application Vignette

With headquarters on the Stanford University campus, **Hewlett-Packard (HP)** has a very long history as a particularly progressive company that makes heavy use of Stanford graduates. It generated $27.8 billion in revenue in the 2021 fiscal year, ranking it 56 on the Fortune 500 list. (Hewlett-Packard Enterprise ranks 106 after it split from the Hewlett-Packard Company in 2015.)

HP offers many innovative products to meet the diverse needs of more than 1 billion customers. The breadth of its product offering has helped the company achieve unparalleled market reach. However, offering multiple similar products also can cause serious problems—including confusing sales representatives and customers—that can adversely affect the revenue and costs for any particular product. Therefore, it is important to find the right balance between too much product variety and too little.

With this in mind, HP top management made managing product variety a strategic business priority many years ago. HP has been a leader in applying management science and business analytics to its important business problems for decades, so it was only natural that many of the company's top management scientists were called on to address this problem as well.

The heart of the methodology that was developed to address this problem involved formulating and applying a network optimization model. After excluding proposed products that do not have a sufficiently high return on investment, the remaining proposed products can be envisioned as flows through a network that can help fill some of the projected orders on the right-hand side of the network. The resulting model is a special type of **minimum cost flow problem** (related to the special type discussed in the next two sections).

Following its implementation by the beginning of 2005, this application of a minimum cost flow problem had a dramatic impact in enabling HP businesses to increase operational focus on their most critical products. This yielded companywide *profit improvements of over* **$500 million** between 2005 and 2008, and then about **$180 million** *annually* thereafter. It also yielded a variety of important qualitative benefits for HP.

These dramatic results led to HP winning the prestigious first prize in the international 2009 competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: J. Ward and 20 co-authors, "HP Transforms Product Portfolio Management with Operations Research," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 40, no. 1 (January–February 2010): 17–32. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

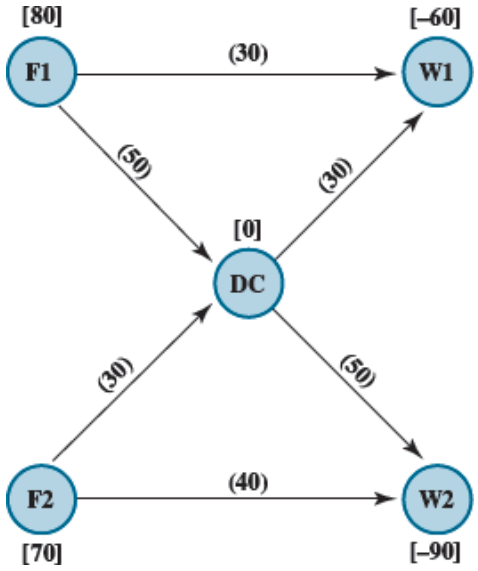
Since this is such a tiny problem, you probably can see what the optimal solution must be. (Try it.) This solution is shown in Figure 9.4, where the shipping amount along each shipping lane is given in parentheses. (To avoid confusion, we delete the unit shipping costs and shipping capacities in this figure.) Combining these shipping amounts with the unit shipping costs given in Figures 9.2 and 9.3, the total shipping cost for this solution (when starting by listing the costs from F1, then from F2, and then from DC) is

page 373

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total shipping cost} &= 30(\$700) + 50(\$300) + 30(\$500) + 40(\$1,000) \\ &\quad + 30(\$200) + 50(\$400) \\ &= \$117{,}000\end{aligned}$$

FIGURE 9.4

The optimal solution for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem, where the shipping amounts are shown in parentheses over the arrows.



General Characteristics

This example possesses all the general characteristics of any minimum-cost flow problem. Before summarizing these characteristics, here is the terminology you will need.

Terminology

1. The model for any minimum-cost flow problem is represented by a *network* with flow passing through it.
2. The circles in the network are called **nodes**.

node

A junction point of a network, shown as a labeled circle.

. supply node has net flow going out whereas a demand node has net flow coming in.

3. Each node where the net amount of flow generated (outflow minus inflow) is a fixed *positive* number is a **supply node**. (Thus, F1 and F2 are the supply nodes in Figure 9.3.)

supply node

A node where the net amount of flow generated (outflow minus inflow) is a fixed positive number.

4. Each node where the net amount of flow generated is a fixed *negative* number is a **demand node**. (Consequently, W1 and W2 are the demand nodes in the example.)

demand node

A node where the net amount of flow generated (outflow minus inflow) is a fixed negative number, so that flow is absorbed there.

5. Any node where the net amount of flow generated is fixed at *zero* is a **transshipment node**. (Thus, DC is the transshipment node in the example.) Having the amount of flow out of the node equal the amount of flow into the node is referred to as **conservation of flow**.

transshipment node

A node where the amount of flow out equals the amount of flow in.

conservation of flow

Having the amount of flow out of a node equal to the amount of flow into that node.

6. The arrows in the network are called **arcs**.

arc

A channel through which flow may occur from one node to another, shown as an arrow between the nodes pointing in the direction in which flow is allowed.

7. The maximum amount of flow allowed through an arc is referred to as the **capacity** of that arc.

capacity of an arc

The maximum amount of flow allowed through the arc.

Using this terminology, the general characteristics of minimum-cost flow problems (the model for this type of problem) can be described in terms of the following assumptions.

Assumptions of a Minimum-Cost Flow Problem

1. *At least one* of the nodes is a *supply node,* so each one specifies its own fixed *positive* number for the net amount of flow generated there.
2. *At least one* of the other nodes is a *demand node,* so each one specifies its own fixed *negative* number for the net amount of flow generated there.
3. All the remaining nodes are *transshipment nodes,* so each one specifies a fixed value of *zero* for the net amount of flow generated there.
4. Flow through an arc is only allowed in the direction indicated by the arrowhead, where the maximum amount of flow is given by the *capacity* of

that arc. (If flow can occur in both directions, this would be represented by a pair of arcs pointing in opposite directions.)

5. The network has enough arcs with sufficient capacity to enable all the flow generated at the *supply nodes* to reach all the *demand nodes.*
6. The cost of the flow through each arc is *proportional* to the amount of that flow, where the cost per unit flow is known.
7. The objective is to minimize the total cost of sending the available supply through the network to satisfy the given demand. (An alternative objective is to maximize the total profit from doing this.)

A *solution* for this kind of problem needs to specify how much flow is going through each arc. To be a *feasible* solution, the amount of flow through each arc cannot exceed the capacity of that arc and the net amount of flow generated at each node must equal the specified amount for that node. The following property indicates when the problem will have feasible solutions.

Since the arrowhead on an arc indicates the direction in which flow is allowed, a pair of arcs pointing in opposite directiovns is used if flow can occur in both directions.

Feasible Solutions Property: Under the above assumptions, a minimum-cost flow problem will have feasible solutions if and only if the sum of the supplies from its supply nodes *equals* the sum of the demands at its demand nodes.

The objective is to minimize the total cost of supplying the demand nodes.

Note that this property holds for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem, because the sum of its supplies is 80 + 70 = 150 and the sum of its demands is 60 + 90 = 150.

Applications occasionally do arise where the sum of the supplies from the supply nodes does *not* equal the sum of the demands at its demand nodes (an “unbalanced problem”). For example, suppose that the sum of the supplies exceeds the sum of the demands by some amount (the “extra supply”). In this case, the “supplies” actually represent the *maximum* amounts that could be supplied rather than *fixed* amounts, so part of the problem is to determine exactly how much should be produced at each supply node to exactly meet the demands at the demand nodes. Such a problem no longer exactly fits the definition of a minimum-cost flow problem because it violates assumption 1. Nevertheless, Solver can still

solve the problem by using the corresponding spreadsheet model that includes ≤ constraints for the amounts produced at each supply node. Alternatively, the problem can be converted back into a minimum-cost flow problem by adding a "dummy demand node" to the network where the demand at this node equals the "extra supply" at the supply nodes. By adding an arc with a zero cost per unit flow (and a large arc capacity) from each supply node to the dummy demand node, the network now becomes a minimum-cost flow problem because it now satisfies the feasible solutions property.

For many applications of minimum-cost flow problems, management desires a solution with *integer* values for all the flow quantities (e.g., integer numbers of *full* truckloads along each shipping lane). The model does not include any constraints that require this for feasible solutions. Fortunately, such constraints are not needed because of the following property.

Integer Solutions Property: As long as all its supplies, demands, and arc capacities have integer values, any minimum-cost flow problem with feasible solutions is guaranteed to have an optimal solution with integer values for all its flow quantities.

See in Figure 9.3 that all the assumptions needed for this property to hold are satisfied for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem. In particular, all the supplies (80 and 70), demands (60 and 90), and arc capacities (50) have integer values. Therefore, all the flow quantities in the optimal solution given in Figure 9.4 (30 three times, 50 two times, and 40) have integer values. This ensures that only full truckloads will be shipped into and out of the distribution center. (Remember that each unit corresponds to a full truckload of the product.)

Now let us see how to obtain an optimal solution for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem by formulating a spreadsheet model and then applying Solver.

Using Excel to Formulate and Solve Minimum-Cost Flow Problems

Figure 9.5 shows a spreadsheet model that is based directly on the network representation of the problem in Figure 9.3. The arcs are listed in columns B and C, along with their capacities (unless unlimited) in column F and their

costs per unit flow in column G. The changing cells Ship (D4:D9) show the flow amounts through these arcs and the objective cell TotalCost (D11) provides the total cost of this flow by using the equation

$$D11 = SUMPRODUCT(Ship, UnitCost)$$

FIGURE 9.5

A spreadsheet model for the Distribution Unlimited Co. minimum-cost flow problem, including the objective cell TotalCost (D11) and the other output cells NetFlow (J4:J8), as well as the equations entered into these cells and the other specifications needed to set up the model. The changing cells Ship (D4:D9) show the optimal shipping quantities through the distribution network obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1	**Distribution Unlimited Co. Minimum Cost Flow Problem**											
2												
3		**From**	**To**	**Ship**		**Capacity**	**Unit Cost**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
4		F1	W1	30			$700		F1	80	=	80
5		F1	DC	50	≤	50	$300		F2	70	=	70
6		DC	W1	30	≤	50	$200		DC	0	=	0
7		DC	W2	50	≤	50	$400		W1	-60	=	-60
8		F2	DC	30	≤	50	$500		W2	-90	=	-90
9		F2	W2	40			$1,000					
10												
11			**Total Cost**	$117,000								

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: TotalCost **To:** Min **By Changing Variable Cells:** Ship **Subject to the Constraints:** D5:D8 <= Capacity NetFlow = SupplyDemand **Solver Options:** Make Variables Nonnegative Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	**Cells**
Capacity	F5:F8
From	B4:B9
NetFlow	J4:J8
Nodes	I4:I8
Ship	D4:D9
SupplyDemand	L4:L8
To	C4:C9
TotalCost	D11
UnitCost	G4:G9

	J
3	**Net Flow**
4	=SUMIF(From,I4,Ship)-SUMIF(To,I4,Ship)
5	=SUMIF(From,I5,Ship)-SUMIF(To,I5,Ship)
6	=SUMIF(From,I6,Ship)-SUMIF(To,I6,Ship)
7	=SUMIF(From,I7,Ship)-SUMIF(To,I7,Ship)
8	=SUMIF(From,I8,Ship)-SUMIF(To,I8,Ship)

	C	D
11	**Total Cost**	=SUMPRODUCT(Ship,UnitCost)

The first set of constraints in the Solver Parameters box, D5:D8 ≤ Capacity (F5:F8), ensures that the arc capacities are not exceeded.

Capacity constraints like these are needed in any minimum-cost flow problem that has any arcs with limited capacity.

Similarly, Column I lists the nodes, column J calculates the actual net flow generated at each node (given the flows in the changing cells), and column L

specifies the net amount of flow that needs to be generated at each node. Thus, the second set of constraints in the Solver Parameters box is NetFlow (J4:J8) = SupplyDemand (L4:L8), requiring that the actual net amount of flow generated at each node must equal the specified amount.

Any minimum-cost flow problem needs net flow constraints like this for every node.

The equations entered into NetFlow (J4:J8) use the difference of two SUMIF functions to calculate the net flow (outflow minus inflow) generated at each node. In particular, the first SUMIF function calculates the flow leaving the node and the second one calculates the flow entering the node. (If you haven't used SUMIF functions previously, the nearby Excel tip defines what this kind of function does.)

For example, consider the F1 node (I4) and the calculation in J4 of the net flow for this node. The equation for this net flow is

$$J4 = \text{SUMIF(From,I4,Ship)} - \text{SUMIF(To,I4,Ship)}$$

page 375

SUMIF(From,I4,Ship) sums each individual entry in Ship (D4:D9) if that entry is in a row where the entry in From (B4:B9) is the same as in I4. Since I4 = F1 and the only rows that have F1 in the From column are rows 4 and 5, the sum in the Ship column is only over these same rows, so this sum is D4 + D5. Similarly, SUMIF(To,I4,Ship) sums each individual entry in Ship (D4:D9) if that entry is in a row where the entry in To (C4:C9) is the same as in I4. However, F1 never appears in the To column, so this sum is 0. Therefore, the overall equation for J4 yields

$$J4 = D4 + D5 - 0 = 30 + 50 - 0 = 80,$$

Excel Tip SUMIF(A, B, C) adds up each entry in the range C for which the corresponding entry in range A equals B. This function is especially useful in network problems for calculating the net flow generated at a node.

which is the net flow generated at the F1 node.

While it appears more complicated to use the SUMIF function rather than just entering J4 = D4 + D5, J5 = D8 + D9, J6 = D6 + D7 − D5 − D8, and so on, it is actually simpler. The SUMIF formula only needs to be entered once (in cell J4). It can then be copied down into the remaining cells in NetFlow (J5:J8). For a problem with many nodes, this is much quicker and (perhaps more significantly) less prone to error. In a large problem, it is all too easy to

miss an arc when determining which cells in the Ship column to add and subtract to calculate the net flow for a given node.

The first Solver option specifies that the flow amounts cannot be negative. The second acknowledges that this is still a linear programming problem.

Running Solver gives the optimal solution shown in Ship (D4:D9) in Figure 9.5. This is the same solution as displayed in Figure 9.4.

Solving Large Minimum-Cost Flow Problems More Efficiently

Because minimum-cost flow problems are a special type of linear programming problem, and the *simplex method* can solve any linear programming problem, it also can solve any minimum-cost flow problem in the standard way. For example, Solver uses the simplex method to solve this type (or any other type) of linear programming problem. This works fine for small problems, like the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem, and for considerably larger ones as well. Therefore, the approach illustrated in Figure 9.5 will serve you well for any minimum-cost flow problem encountered in this book and for many that you will encounter subsequently.

However, we should mention that a different approach is sometimes needed in practice to solve really big problems. Because of the special form of minimum-cost flow problems, it is possible to greatly *streamline* the simplex method to solve them far more quickly. In particular, rather than going through all the algebra of the simplex method, it is possible to execute the same steps far more quickly by working directly with the network for the problem.

This streamlined version of the simplex method is called the **network simplex method.** The network simplex method can solve some huge problems that are much too large for the ordinary simplex method.

network simplex method

The network simplex method can solve much larger minimum-cost flow problems (sometimes with millions of nodes and arcs) than can the ordinary simplex method used by Solver.

Like the ordinary simplex method, the network simplex method not only finds an optimal solution but also can be a valuable aid to managers in conducting the kinds of what-if analyses described in Chapter 8.

Many companies now use the network simplex method to solve their minimum-cost flow problems. Some of these problems are huge, with many tens of thousands (or hundreds of thousands) of nodes and arcs.

Occasionally, the number of arcs will even be far larger, perhaps into the millions.

Although Solver does not, other commercial software packages for linear programming commonly include the network simplex method.

Another important advance in fairly recent years has been the development of excellent *graphical interfaces* for modeling minimum-cost flow problems. These interfaces make the design of the model and the interpretation of the output of the network simplex method completely visual and intuitive with no mathematics involved. This is very helpful for managerial decision making.

Some Applications

Probably the most important kind of application of minimum-cost flow problems is to the operation of a distribution network, such as the one depicted in Figures 9.1–9.4 for the Distribution Unlimited Co. problem. As summarized in the first row of Table 9.1, this kind of application involves determining a plan for shipping goods from their *sources* (factories, etc.) to *intermediate storage facilities* (as needed) and then on to the *customers.*

TABLE 9.1

Typical Kinds of Applications of Minimum-Cost Flow Problems

Kind of Application	Supply Nodes	Transshipment Nodes	Demand Nodes
Operation of a distribution network	Sources of goods	Intermediate storage facilities	Customers
Solid waste management	Sources of solid waste	Processing facilities	Landfill locations
Operation of a supply network	Vendors	Intermediate warehouses	Processing facilities
Coordinating product mixes at plants	Plants	Production of a specific product	Market for a specific product

Kind of Application	Supply Nodes	Transshipment Nodes	Demand Nodes
Cash flow management	Sources of cash at a specific time	Short-term investment options	Needs for cash at a specific time

For some applications of minimum-cost flow problems, all the transshipment nodes are *processing facilities* rather than intermediate storage facilities. This is the case for *solid waste management,* as indicated in Table 9.1. Here, the flow of materials through the network begins at the sources of the solid waste, then goes to the facilities for processing these waste materials into a form suitable for landfill, and then sends them on to the various landfill locations. However, the objective still is to determine the flow plan that minimizes the total cost, where the cost now is for both shipping and processing.

An Application Vignette

CSX Transportation, Inc., is one of the leading freight railroads in the United States. It has a 20,000-mile rail network that serves over nearly two-thirds of the U.S. population in 23 states while also extending into parts of Canada. This rail network serves 70 ports and thousands of production and distribution facilities through track connections to numerous short-line and regional railroads. The company's net earnings were $968 million for the third quarter of 2021. In December 2021, CSX received recognition for the ninth consecutive year as one of the top companies globally for taking action to address global change by CDP, a global environmental non-profit group.

Each day, CSX allocates hundreds of empty railcars among hundreds of customer orders. This allocation problem is a complex one because the source of the railcars is a 90,000-railcar fleet in a network with thousands of geographic locations. The combination of the hundreds of allocation decisions made each day has a great impact on costs and also must take into account customer preferences and service requirements. Furthermore, the allocation of railcars to customers must be made dynamically while receiving a steady flow of information updates on customer railcar orders and empty railcar availability. Throughout the day, equipment availability

changes as customers return empty railcars and send new and updated railcar orders while CSX takes railcars offline for cleaning or maintenance. How can the continually changing allocations be made in any kind of optimal manner that attempts to minimize costs among all possible feasible solutions?

Over a period of years, CSX tried a number of methods to address this exceptionally challenging problem. It then turned to a new approach that was based on successively solving a sequence of very large **minimum-cost flow problems.** This approach succeeded in providing an industry-leading *dynamic car-planning (DCP) system.* This DCP system cost $5 million and two years to develop, partially because it required developing a sophisticated data management system for continually updating minimum-cost flow problems that needed to be solved as conditions kept changing.

The basic idea of the DCP system is that at any moment of time, the problem of minimizing the total cost of allocating the available railcars to the current customer orders is indeed a large minimum-cost flow problem. Then because the conditions (the available railcars and the current customer orders) are continually changing, an updated minimum-cost flow problem is solved every 15 minutes throughout the day. The updated minimum-cost flow model takes about 1 minute to load and about 10 seconds to solve. The final key is that when the current model specifies allocating a certain railcar to a certain customer order, that decision is deferred until the moment that it needs to be implemented. Therefore, a railcar isn't officially allocated until it actually needs to be, at which point it is allocated in an optimal way according to the current minimum-cost flow problem.

In 2016, the MIT Center for Transportation & Logistics issued a report entitled "Optimization Tools Lighten the Load on Stressed Freight Networks." This report included the story of how CSX developed the DCP system as the industry's first real-time, fully integrated equipment distribution optimization system. It also mentioned that CSX is continuing to enhance the DCP system. For example, CSX has improved the system's real-time reporting information on train operations and the status of cars. It also has introduced a web-based order management system and visibility tools.

CSX estimates that the DCP system, including its extensive use of solving minimum-cost flow problems, has saved the company more than **$51 million** annually and also has saved **$1.4 billion** in capital expenditures because of more efficient railcar allocation. This dramatic

application of network optimization techniques resulted in CSX Transportation winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six 2009 worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: M. F. Gorman, D. Acharya, and D. Sellers, "CSX Railway Uses OR to Cash in on Optimized Equipment Distribution," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 40, no. 1 (January–February 2010): 5–16. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

In other applications, the *demand nodes* might be processing facilities. For example, in the third row of Table 9.1, the objective is to find the minimum-cost plan for obtaining supplies from various possible vendors, storing these goods in warehouses (as needed), and then shipping the supplies to the company's processing facilities (factories, etc.).

The next kind of application in Table 9.1 (coordinating product mixes at plants) illustrates that arcs can represent something other than a shipping lane for a physical flow of materials. This application involves a company with several plants (the supply nodes) that can produce the same products but at different costs. Each arc from a supply node represents the production of one of the possible products at that plant, where this arc leads to the transshipment node that corresponds to this product. Thus, this transshipment node has an arc coming in from each plant capable of producing this product, and then the arcs leading out of this node go to the respective customers (the demand nodes) for this product. The objective is to determine how to divide each plant's production capacity among the products so as to minimize the total cost of meeting the demand for the various products.

The last application in Table 9.1 (cash flow management) illustrates that different nodes can represent some event that occurs at different times. In this case, each supply node represents a specific time (or time period) when some cash will become available to the company (through maturing accounts, notes receivable, sales of securities, borrowing, etc.). The supply at each of these nodes is the amount of cash that will become available then. Similarly, each demand node represents a specific time (or time period) when the company will need to draw on its cash reserves. The demand at each such node is the amount of cash that will be needed then. The objective is to maximize the company's income from investing the cash between each time it becomes available and when it will be used. Therefore, each transshipment node represents the choice of a specific

short-term investment option (e.g., purchasing a certificate of deposit from a bank) over a specific time interval. The resulting network will have a succession of flows representing a schedule for cash becoming available, being invested, and then being used after the maturing of the investment.

Special Types of Minimum-Cost Flow Problems

There are five important categories of network problems that turn out to be special types of minimum-cost flow problems.

One is the **transportation problems** discussed in Section 6.5. Recall that a typical kind of transportation problem involves minimizing the cost of shipping something (e.g., many units of a particular product) from a number of sources (e.g., plants producing this product) directly to a number of destinations (e.g., customers). Figure 6.9 shows the network representation of a typical transportation problem. In our current terminology, the sources and destinations of a transportation problem are the supply nodes and demand nodes, respectively. Thus, a transportation problem is just a minimum-cost flow problem without any transshipment nodes and without any capacity constraints on the arcs (all of which go directly from a supply node to a demand node).

transportation problem

A special type of minimum-cost flow problem that previously was described in Section 6.5.

A second category is the **assignment problems** discussed in Section 6.6. Recall that this kind of problem involves assigning a group of people (or other operational units) to a group of tasks where each person is to perform a single task. An assignment problem can be viewed as a special type of transportation problem whose sources are the assignees and whose destinations are the tasks. This then makes the assignment problem also a special type of minimum-cost flow problem with the characteristics described in the preceding paragraph. In addition, each person is a supply node with a supply of 1 and each task is a demand node with a demand of 1.

assignment problem

A special type of minimum-cost flow problem that previously was described in Section 6.6.

A third special type of minimum-cost flow problem is **transshipment problems.** This kind of problem is just like a transportation problem except for the additional feature that the shipments from the sources (supply nodes) to

the destinations (demand nodes) might also pass through intermediate transfer points (transshipment nodes) such as distribution centers. Like a transportation problem, there are no capacity constraints on the arcs. Consequently, any minimum-cost flow problem where each arc can carry any desired amount of flow is a transshipment problem. For example, if the data in Figure 9.2 were altered so that any amounts (within the ranges of the supplies and demands) could be shipped into and out of the distribution center, the Distribution Unlimited Co. would become just a transshipment problem.[1]

transshipment problem

A transshipment problem is just a minimum-cost flow problem that has unlimited capacities for all its arcs.

Because of their close relationship to a general minimum-cost flow problem, we will not discuss transshipment problems further.

The other two important special types of minimum-cost flow problems are **maximum flow problems** and **shortest path problems,** which will be described in Sections 9.3 and 9.4 after presenting a case study of a maximum flow problem in the next section.

In case you are wondering why we are bothering to point out that these five kinds of problems are special types of minimum-cost flow problems, here is one very important reason. It means that the *network simplex method* can be used to solve huge problems of any of these types that might be difficult or impossible for the ordinary simplex method to solve. It is true that other efficient *special-purpose algorithms* also are available for each of these kinds of problems. However, recent implementations of the network simplex method have become so powerful that it now provides an excellent alternative to these other algorithms in most cases. This is especially valuable when the available software package includes the network simplex method but not another relevant special-purpose algorithm. Furthermore, even after finding an optimal solution, the network simplex method can continue to be helpful in aiding managerial what-if sessions along the lines discussed in Chapter 8.

page 379

The network simplex method can be used to solve huge problems of any of these five special types.

Review *Questions*

. Name and describe the three kinds of nodes in a minimum-cost flow problem.

. What is meant by the *capacity* of an arc?
. What is the usual objective for a minimum-cost flow problem?
. What property is necessary for a minimum-cost flow problem to have feasible solutions?
. What is the integer solutions property for minimum-cost flow problems?
. What is the name of the streamlined version of the simplex method that is designed to solve minimum-cost flow problems very efficiently?
. What are a few typical kinds of applications of minimum-cost flow problems?
. Name five important categories of network optimization problems that turn out to be special types of minimum-cost flow problems.

9.2 A CASE STUDY: THE BMZ CO. MAXIMUM FLOW PROBLEM

What a day! First being called into his boss's office and then receiving an urgent telephone call from the company president himself. Fortunately, he was able to reassure them that he has the situation under control.

Although his official title is Supply Chain Manager for the BMZ Company, Karl Schmidt often tells his friends that he really is the company's *crisis manager.* One crisis after another. The supplies needed to keep the production lines going haven't arrived yet. Or the supplies have arrived but are unusable because they are the wrong size. Or an urgent shipment to a key customer has been delayed. This current crisis is typical. One of the company's most important distribution centers—the one in Los Angeles—urgently needs an increased flow of shipments from the company.

Karl was chosen for this key position because he is considered a rising young star. Having just received his MBA degree from a top American business school four years ago, he is the youngest member of upper-level management in the entire company. His business school training in the latest management science and business analytics techniques has proven invaluable in improving supply chain management throughout the company. The crises still occur, but the frequent chaos of past years has been eliminated.

Karl has a plan for dealing with the current crisis. This will mean calling on prescriptive analytics once again.

Background

The **BMZ Company** is a European manufacturer of luxury automobiles. Although its cars sell well in all the developed countries, its exports to the United States are particularly important to the company.

BMZ has a well-deserved reputation for providing excellent service. One key to maintaining this reputation is having a plentiful supply of automobile replacement parts readily available to the company's numerous dealerships and authorized repair shops. These parts are mainly stored in the company's distribution centers and then delivered promptly when needed. One of Karl Schmidt's top priorities is avoiding shortages at these distribution centers.

The company has several distribution centers in the United States. However, the closest one to the Los Angeles center is over 1,000 miles away in Seattle, so supplies for the Los Angeles center currently are forwarded from the supply centers in New York and New Orleans that receive their supplies directly from Europe. Since BMZ cars are becoming especially popular in California, it is particularly important to keep the Los Angeles center well supplied. Therefore, the fact that supplies there are currently dwindling is a matter of real concern to BMZ top management—as Karl learned forcefully today.

page 380

Most of the automobile replacement parts are produced at the company's main factory in Stuttgart, Germany, along with the production of new cars. It is this factory that has been supplying the Los Angeles center with spare parts after first shipping them to New York and New Orleans. Some of these parts are bulky, and very large numbers of certain parts are needed, so the total volume of the supplies has been relatively massive—over 300,000 cubic feet of goods arriving monthly. Now a much larger amount will be needed over the next month to replenish the dwindling inventory.

The Problem

Karl needs to execute a plan quickly for shipping as much as possible from the main factory to the distribution center in Los Angeles over the next month. He already has recognized that this is a *maximum flow problem*—a problem of maximizing the flow of replacement parts from the factory to this distribution center.

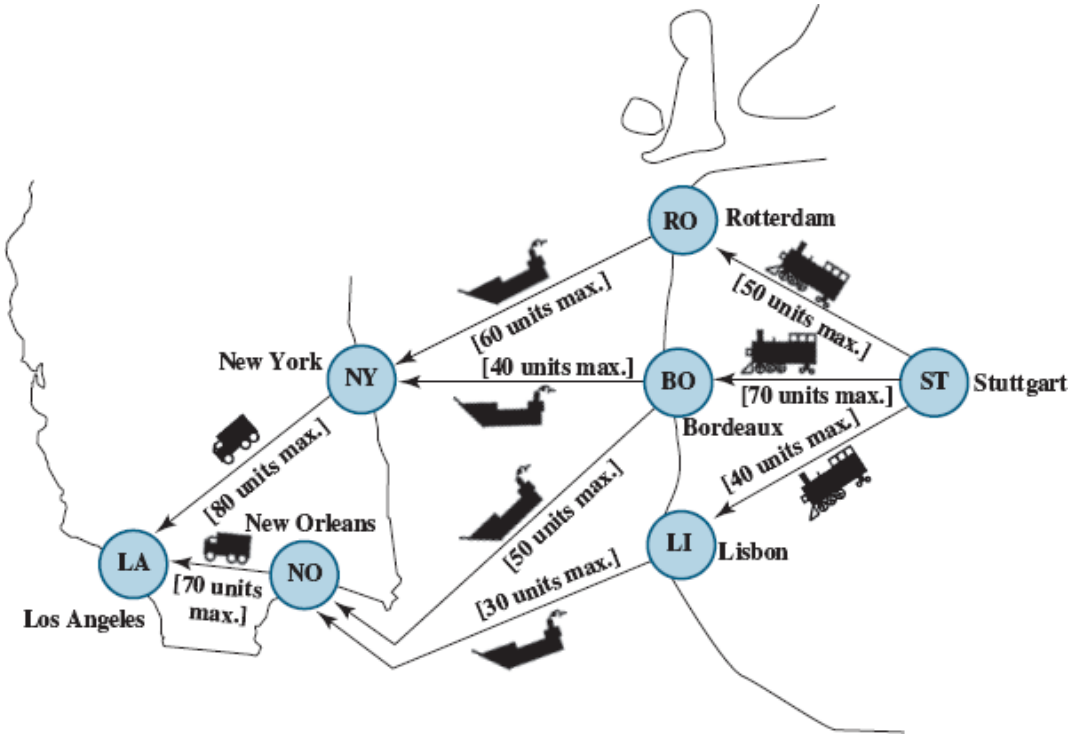
The problem is to maximize the flow of automobile replacement parts from the factory in Stuttgart, Germany, to the distribution center in Los Angeles.

The factory is producing far more than can be shipped along a single route to this one distribution center. Therefore, the limiting factor on how much can be shipped is the limited capacity of the company's distribution network.

This distribution network is depicted in Figure 9.6, where the nodes labeled ST and LA are the factory in Stuttgart and the distribution center in Los Angeles, respectively. There is a rail head at the factory, so shipments first go by rail to one of three European ports: Rotterdam (node RO), Bordeaux (node BO), and Lisbon (node LI). They then go by ship to ports in the United States, either New York (node NY) or New Orleans (node NO). Finally, they are shipped by truck from these ports to the distribution center in Los Angeles.

FIGURE 9.6

The BMZ Co. distribution network from its main factory in Stuttgart, Germany, to a distribution center in Los Angeles.



The organizations operating these railroads, ships, and trucks are independently owned companies that ship goods for numerous firms. Because of prior commitments to their regular customers, these companies are unable to drastically increase the allocation of space to any single customer on short notice. Therefore, the BMZ Co. is only able to secure a limited amount of shipping space along each shipping lane over the next

month. The amounts available are given in Figure 9.6, using units of *hundreds of cubic meters.* (Since each unit of 100 cubic meters is a little over 3,500 cubic feet, these are large volumes of goods that need to be moved.)

Model Formulation

Figure 9.7 shows the *network model* for this maximum flow problem. Rather than showing the geographical layout of the distribution network, this network simply lines up the nodes (representing the cities) in evenly spaced columns. The arcs represent the shipping lanes, where the capacity of each arc (given in square brackets under the arc) is the amount of shipping space available along that shipping lane. The objective is to determine how much flow to send through each arc (how many units to ship through each shipping lane) to maximize the total number of units flowing from the factory in Stuttgart to the distribution center in Los Angeles.

FIGURE 9.7

A network model for the BMZ Co. problem as a maximum flow problem, where the number in square brackets below each arc is the capacity of that arc.

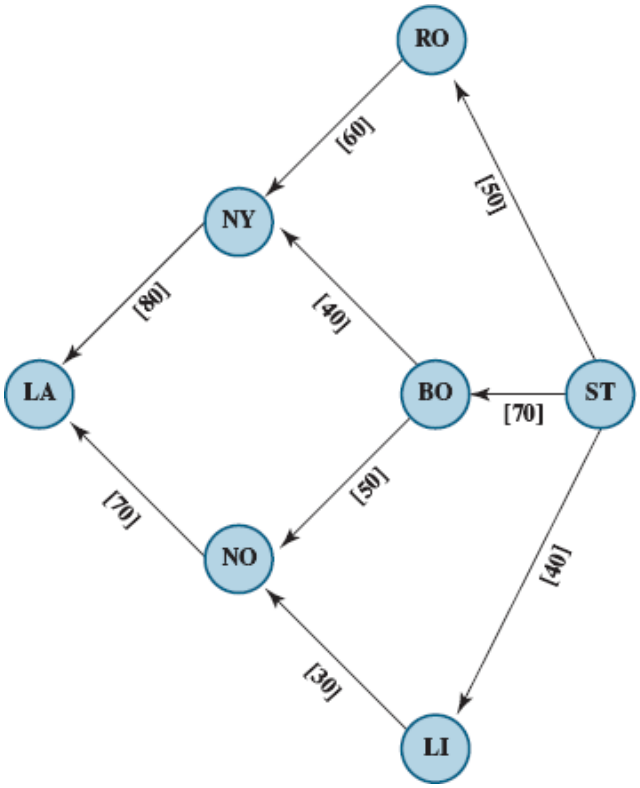


Figure 9.8 shows the corresponding spreadsheet model for this problem when using the format introduced in Figure 9.5. The main difference from the model in Figure 9.5 is the change in the objective. Since we are no longer minimizing the total cost of the flow through the network, column G in Figure 9.5 can be deleted in Figure 9.8. The objective cell MaxFlow (D14) in Figure 9.8 now needs to give the total number of units flowing from Stuttgart to Los Angeles. Thus, the equations at the bottom of the figure include D14 = I4, where I4 gives the net flow leaving Stuttgart to go to Los Angeles. As in Figure 9.5, the equations in Figure 9.8 entered into NetFlow (I4:I10) again use the difference of two SUMIF functions to calculate the net flow generated at each node. Since the objective is to maximize the flow shown in MaxFlow (D14), the Solver Parameters box specifies that this objective cell is to be maximized. After running Solver, the optimal solution shown in the changing cells Ship (D4:D12) is obtained for the amount that BMZ should ship through each shipping lane.

FIGURE 9.8

A spreadsheet model for the BMZ Co. maximum flow problem, including the equations entered into the objective cell MaxFlow (D14) and the other output cells NetFlow (I4:I10), as well as the other specifications needed to set up the model. The changing cells Ship (D4:D12) show the optimal shipping quantities through the distribution network obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**BMZ Co. Maximum Flow Problem**										
2											
3		**From**	**To**	**Ship**		**Capacity**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
4		Stuttgart	Rotterdam	50	≤	50		Stuttgart	150		
5		Stuttgart	Bordeaux	70	≤	70		Rotterdam	0	=	0
6		Stuttgart	Lisbon	30	≤	40		Bordeaux	0	=	0
7		Rotterdam	New York	50	≤	60		Lisbon	0	=	0
8		Bordeaux	New York	30	≤	40		New York	0	=	0
9		Bordeaux	New Orleans	40	≤	50		New Orleans	0	=	0
10		Lisbon	New Orleans	30	≤	30		Los Angeles	-150		
11		New York	Los Angeles	80	≤	80					
12		New Orleans	Los Angeles	70	≤	70					
13											
14			**Maximum Flow**	150							

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: MaxFlow **To:** Max **By Changing Variable Cells:** Ship **Subject to the Constraints:** I5:I9 = SupplyDemand Ship <= Capacity **Solver Options:** Make Variables Nonnegative Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	**Cells**
Capacity	F4:F12
From	B4:B12
MaxFlow	D14
NetFlow	I4:I10
Nodes	H4:H10
Ship	D4:D12
SupplyDemand	K5:K9
To	C4:C12

	I
3	**Net Flow**
4	=SUMIF(From,H4,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H4,Ship)
5	=SUMIF(From,H5,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H5,Ship)
6	=SUMIF(From,H6,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H6,Ship)
7	=SUMIF(From,H7,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H7,Ship)
8	=SUMIF(From,H8,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H8,Ship)
9	=SUMIF(From,H9,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H9,Ship)
10	=SUMIF(From,H10,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H10,Ship)

	C	D
14	**Maximum Flow**	=I4

In contrast to the spreadsheet model in Figure 9.5, which *minimizes* TotalCost (D11), the spreadsheet model in Figure 9.8 *maximizes* the objective cell MaxFlow (D14).

However, Karl is not completely satisfied with this solution. He has an idea for doing even better. This will require formulating and solving another maximum flow problem. (This story continues in the middle of the next section.)

Review *Questions*

. What is the current crisis facing the BMZ Co.?

. When formulating this problem in network terms, what is flowing through BMZ's distribution network? From where to where?

. What is the objective of the resulting maximum flow problem?

9.3 MAXIMUM FLOW PROBLEMS

Like a minimum-cost flow problem, a maximum flow problem is concerned with *flow through a network.* However, the objective now is different. Rather than minimizing the cost of the flow, the objective now is to find a flow plan that maximizes the amount flowing through the network. This is how Karl Schmidt was able to find a flow plan that maximizes the number of units of automobile replacement parts flowing through BMZ's distribution network from its factory in Stuttgart to the distribution center in Los Angeles.

General Characteristics

Except for the difference in objective (maximize flow vs. minimize cost), the characteristics of the maximum flow problem are quite similar to those for the minimum-cost flow problem. However, there are some minor differences, as we will discuss after summarizing the assumptions.

Assumptions of a Maximum Flow Problem

1. All flow through the network originates at one node, called the **source,** and terminates at one other node, called the **sink.** (The source and sink in the BMZ problem are the factory in Stuttgart and the distribution center in Los Angeles, respectively, as represented by nodes ST and LA in Figure 9.7.)

page 383

source

The node for a maximum flow problem at which all flow through the network originates.

sink

The node for a maximum flow problem at which all flow through the network terminates.

2. All the remaining nodes are *transshipment nodes.* (These are nodes RO, BO, LI, NY, and NO in the BMZ problem.)
3. Flow through an arc is only allowed in the direction indicated by the arrowhead, where the maximum amount of flow is given by the *capacity* of that arc. At the *source,* all arcs point away from the node. At the *sink,* all arcs point into the node.
4. The objective is to maximize the total amount of flow from the source to the sink. This amount is measured in either of two equivalent ways, namely, either the amount *leaving the source* or the amount *entering the sink.* (Cells D14 and I4 in Figure 9.8 use the amount leaving the source.)

An Application Vignette

The network for transport of natural gas on the Norwegian Continental Shelf, with approximately 5,000 miles of subsea pipelines, is the world's largest offshore pipeline network. **Gassco** is a company entirely owned by the Norwegian state, which operates this network. Another company that is largely state owned, **StatoilHydro,** is the main Norwegian supplier of natural gas to markets throughout Europe and elsewhere. In 2020, 107 billion standard cubic meters of dry gas were delivered to Europe.

Gassco and StatoilHydro together use prescriptive analytics techniques to optimize both the configuration of the network and the routing of the natural gas. The main model used for this routing is a multicommodity network-flow model in which the different hydrocarbons and contaminants in natural gas constitute the commodities. The objective function for the model is to *maximize the total flow* of the natural gas from the supply points (the offshore drilling platforms) to the demand points (typically import terminals). However, in addition to the usual supply-and-demand constraints, the model also includes constraints involving pressure-flow relationships, maximum delivery pressures, and technical pressure bounds on pipelines. Therefore, this model is **a generalization of the model for the maximum flow problem** described in this section.

This key application of prescriptive analytics, along with a few others, has had a dramatic impact on the efficiency of the operation of this offshore pipeline network. The resulting *accumulated savings* were estimated to be approximately **$2 billion** in the period 1995–2008. Comparable savings have continued to the present day.

This dramatic application of prescriptive analytics resulted in these two companies jointly winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six 2008 worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: F. Romo, A. Tomasgard, L. Hellemo, M. Fodstad, B. H. Eidesen, and B. Pedersen, "Optimizing the Norwegian Natural Gas Production and Transport," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 39, no. 1 (January–February 2009): 46–56. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

The objective is to find a flow plan that maximizes the flow from the source to the sink.

The source and sink of a maximum flow problem are analogous to the supply nodes and demand nodes of a minimum-cost flow problem. These are the only nodes in both problems that do not have conservation of flow (flow out equals flow in). Like the supply nodes, the source *generates flow.* Like the demand nodes, the sink *absorbs flow.*

However, there are two differences between these nodes in a minimum-cost flow problem and the corresponding nodes in a maximum flow problem.

One difference is that, whereas supply nodes have fixed supplies and demand nodes have fixed demands, the source and sink do not. The reason is that the objective is to maximize the flow leaving the source and entering the sink rather than fixing this amount.

Although a maximum flow problem has only a single source and a single sink, variants with multiple sources and sinks also can be solved, as illustrated in the next subsection.

The second difference is that, whereas the number of supply nodes and the number of demand nodes in a minimum-cost flow problem may be *more than one,* there can be *only one* source and *only one* sink in a maximum flow problem. However, variants of maximum flow problems that have multiple sources and sinks can still be solved by Solver, as you now will see illustrated by the BMZ case study introduced in the preceding section.

Continuing the Case Study with Multiple Supply Points and Multiple Demand Points

Here is Karl Schmidt's idea for how to improve upon the flow plan obtained at the end of Section 9.2 (as given in column D of Figure 9.8).

The company has a second, smaller factory in Berlin, north of its Stuttgart factory, for producing automobile parts. Although this factory normally is used to help supply distribution centers in northern Europe, Canada, and the northern United States (including one in Seattle), it also is able to ship to the distribution center in Los Angeles. Furthermore, the distribution center in Seattle has the capability of supplying parts to the customers of the distribution center in Los Angeles when shortages occur at the latter center.

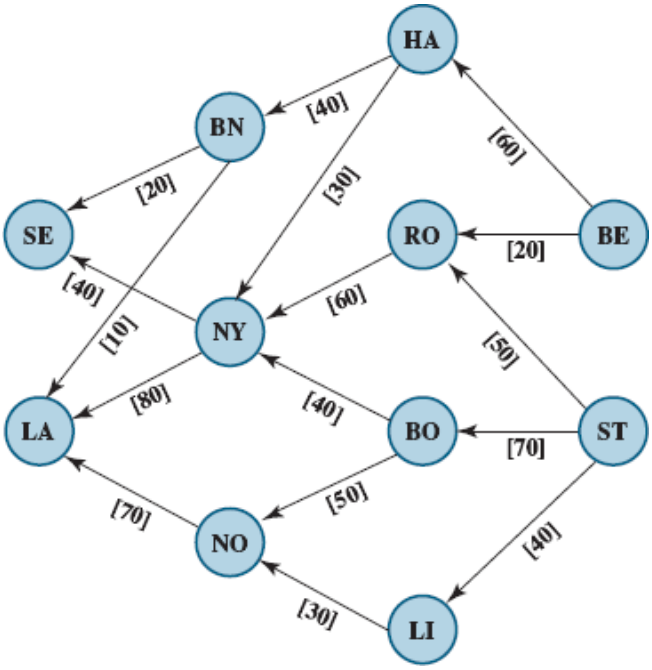
page 384

In this light, Karl now has developed a better plan for addressing the current inventory shortages in Los Angeles. Rather than simply maximizing shipments from the Stuttgart factory to Los Angeles, he has decided to maximize the total shipments from both factories to the distribution centers in both Los Angeles and Seattle.

Figure 9.9 shows the network model representing the expanded distribution network that encompasses both factories and both distribution centers. In addition to the nodes shown in Figures 9.6 and 9.7, node BE is the second, smaller factory in Berlin; nodes HA and BN are additional ports used by this factory in Hamburg and Boston, respectively; and node SE is the distribution center in Seattle. As before, the arcs represent the shipping lanes, where the number in square brackets below each arc is the capacity of that arc, that is, the maximum number of units that can be shipped through that shipping lane over the next month.

FIGURE 9.9

A network model for the expanded BMZ Co. problem as a variant of a maximum flow problem, where the number in square brackets below each arc is the capacity of that arc.



The corresponding spreadsheet model is displayed in Figure 9.10. The format is the same as in Figure 9.8. However, the objective cell MaxFlow (D21) now gives the total flow from Stuttgart and Berlin, so D21 = I4 + I5 (as shown by the equation for this objective cell given at the bottom of the figure).

FIGURE 9.10

A spreadsheet model for the expanded BMZ Co. problem as a variant of a maximum flow problem with sources in both Stuttgart and Berlin and sinks in

both Los Angeles and Seattle. Using the objective cell MaxFlow (D21) to maximize the total flow from the two sources to the two sinks, Solver yields the optimal shipping plan shown in the changing cells Ship (D4:D19).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**BMZ Co. Expanded Maximum Flow Problem**										
2											
3		**From**	**To**	**Ship**		**Capacity**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
4		Stuttgart	Rotterdam	40	≤	50		Stuttgart	140		
5		Stuttgart	Bordeaux	70	≤	70		Berlin	80		
6		Stuttgart	Lisbon	30	≤	40		Hamburg	0	=	0
7		Berlin	Rotterdam	20	≤	20		Rotterdam	0	=	0
8		Berlin	Hamburg	60	≤	60		Bordeaux	0	=	0
9		Rotterdam	New York	60	≤	60		Lisbon	0	=	0
10		Bordeaux	New York	30	≤	40		Boston	0	=	0
11		Bordeaux	New Orleans	40	≤	50		New York	0	=	0
12		Lisbon	New Orleans	30	≤	30		New Orleans	0	=	0
13		Hamburg	New York	30	≤	30		Los Angeles	-160		
14		Hamburg	Boston	30	≤	40		Seattle	-60		
15		New Orleans	Los Angeles	70	≤	70					
16		New York	Los Angeles	80	≤	80					
17		New York	Seattle	40	≤	40					
18		Boston	Los Angeles	10	≤	10					
19		Boston	Seattle	20	≤	20					
20											
21			**Maximum Flow**	220							

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: MaxFlow
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
Ship
Subject to the Constraints:
I6:I12 = SupplyDemand
Ship <= Capacity
Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	**Cells**
Capacity	F4:F19
From	B4:B19
MaxFlow	D21
NetFlow	I4:I14
Nodes	H4:H14
Ship	D4:D19
SupplyDemand	K6:K12
To	C4:C19

	I
3	**Net Flow**
4	=SUMIF(From,H4,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H4,Ship)
5	=SUMIF(From,H5,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H5,Ship)
6	=SUMIF(From,H6,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H6,Ship)
7	=SUMIF(From,H7,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H7,Ship)
8	=SUMIF(From,H8,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H8,Ship)
9	=SUMIF(From,H9,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H9,Ship)
10	=SUMIF(From,H10,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H10,Ship)
11	=SUMIF(From,H11,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H11,Ship)
12	=SUMIF(From,H12,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H12,Ship)
13	=SUMIF(From,H13,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H13,Ship)
14	=SUMIF(From,H14,Ship)-SUMIF(To,H14,Ship)

	C	D
21	**Maximum Flow**	=I4+I5

The changing cells Ship (D4:D19) in this figure show the optimal solution obtained for the number of units to ship through each shipping lane over the next month. Comparing this solution with the one in Figure 9.8 shows the impact of Karl Schmidt's decision to expand the distribution network to include the second factory and the distribution center in Seattle. As indicated in column I of the two figures, the number of units going to Los Angeles directly has been increased from 150 to 160, in addition to the 60 units going to

Seattle as a backup for the inventory shortage in Los Angeles. This plan solved the crisis in Los Angeles and won Karl commendations from top management.

Some Applications

The applications of maximum flow problems and their variants are somewhat similar to those for minimum-cost flow problems described in the preceding section when management's objective instead is to *maximize flow* rather than to *minimize cost.* Here are some typical kinds of applications.

1. Maximize the flow through a distribution network, as for the BMZ Co. problem.
2. Maximize the flow through a company's supply network from its vendors to its processing facilities.
3. Maximize the flow of oil through a system of pipelines.
4. Maximize the flow of water through a system of aqueducts.
5. Maximize the flow of vehicles through a transportation network.
6. Maximize the flow of data through a computer network.

page 385

Solving Very Large Problems

page 386

The expanded BMZ network in Figure 9.9 has 11 nodes and 16 arcs. However, the networks for most real applications are considerably larger, and occasionally vastly larger with many thousands of nodes and arcs. For huge networks, Solver may not be capable of solving such large maximum flow problems even if they still can be formulated as illustrated in Figures 9.8 and 9.10.

Fortunately, management scientists have other ways of efficiently formulating huge maximum flow problems and then solving them. For example, an extremely efficient special-purpose algorithm has been developed specifically for solving maximum flow problems. Another solution approach is to reformulate the problem to fit the format for a minimum-cost flow problem so that the network simplex method can be applied. These special algorithms are available in some software packages, but not in Solver. Thus, if you should ever encounter a maximum flow problem or a variant that is beyond the scope of Solver (which won't happen in this book), rest assured that it probably can be formulated and solved in another way.

Review *Questions*

. How does the objective of a maximum flow problem differ from that for a minimum-cost flow problem?

. What are the *source* and the *sink* for a maximum flow problem? For each, in what direction do all their arcs point?

. What are the two equivalent ways in which the total amount of flow from the source to the sink can be measured?

. The source and sink of a maximum flow problem are different from the supply nodes and demand nodes of a minimum-cost flow problem in what two ways?

. What are a few typical kinds of applications of maximum flow problems?

9.4 SHORTEST PATH PROBLEMS

The most common applications of shortest path problems are for what the name suggests—finding the *shortest path* between two points. Here is an example.

An Example: The Littletown Fire Department Problem

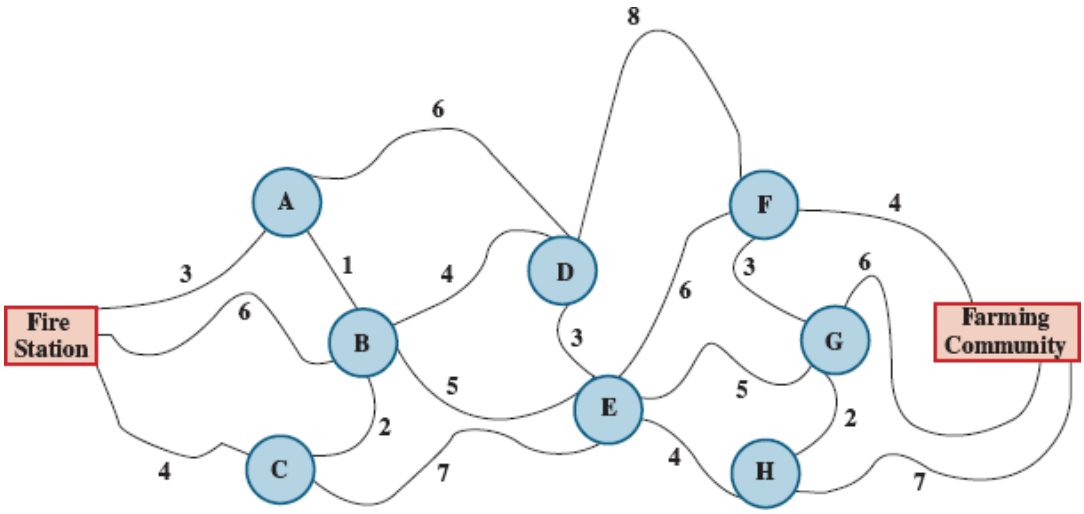
Littletown is a small town in a rural area. Its fire department serves a relatively large geographical area that includes many farming communities. Since there are numerous roads throughout the area, many possible routes may be available for traveling to any given farming community from the fire station. Since time is of the essence in reaching a fire, the fire chief wishes to determine in advance the *shortest path* from the fire station to each of the farming communities.

The objective is to find the shortest route from the fire station to the farming community.

Figure 9.11 shows the road system connecting the fire station to one of the farming communities, including the mileage along each road. Can you find which route from the fire station to the farming community minimizes the total number of miles?

FIGURE 9.11

The road system between the Littletown Fire Station and a certain farming community, where A, B, . . ., H are junctions and the number next to each road shows its distance in miles.



An Application Vignette

The **Swedish forest industry** is one of Sweden's most important business sectors. This industry accounts for 9–12 percent of the country's employment, exports, sales, and added value. In 2020, 85 percent of all products that originate from this industry were exported, generating an annual export value of 145 billion Swedish krona (approximately $16 billion).

The forest industry is the largest buyer of transport services in Sweden. Each year, 80 million tons of logs and forest bioenergy are transported from about 200,000 new harvest areas to more than 800 mills and to terminals used for intermediate storage. More than 2,000 trucks and 5,000 drivers transport more than 2 million truckloads annually at a cost of more than $0.8 billion.

Given this huge cost for transport services, a real key to the efficiency of the forest industry is to identify the best route for each of the more than 2 million truckloads each year. Therefore, a consortium of forest companies and governmental agencies initiated a major project to address this problem. The study team included both business analytics and management science professionals. One product of this study was the development of the *Swedish National Road Database* (SNRD) to provide relevant road information that covered the entire country. Another product was an innovative new prescriptive analytics procedure called the *Calibrated Route Finder* (CRF) that the entire industry would use. With

SNRD providing road information as input, CRF then focuses on identifying the best route from the origin to the destination for each truckload.

The CRF procedure is based on repeatedly applying the efficient algorithm for **shortest path problems** described in Section 9.4. However, rather than simply assuming that the shortest route must be the best route, this procedure takes into account such factors as the condition of the roads, the amount of hilliness, the amount of curvature, and so on. Therefore, the procedure places weights on these and other factors (such as speed, environmental factors, traffic safety, driver stress, fuel consumption, CO2 emissions, and costs) in addition to distance.

All major forest companies in Sweden now use CRF. The estimated savings is in the range of **$40–120 million annually.** This dramatic application of prescriptive analytics described in the paper cited below led to the co-authors winning the 2016 international competition for the prestigious Daniel H. Wagner Prize for Excellence in Operations Research Practice that is administered by INFORMS.

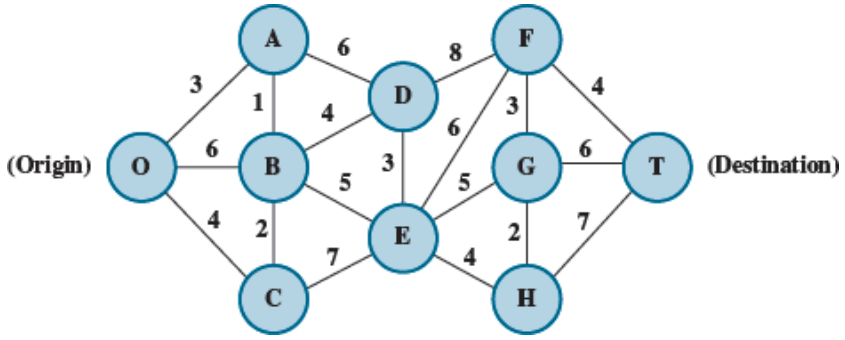
Source: M. Rönnqvist, G. Svenson, P. Flisberg, and L.-E. Jönsson, "Calibrated Route Finder: Improving the Safety, Environmental Consciousness, and Cost Effectiveness of Truck Routing in Sweden," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 47, no. 5 (September–October 2017): 372–395. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

Model Formulation for the Littletown Problem

Figure 9.12 gives a network representation of this problem, which ignores the geographical layout and the curves in the roads. (When lining up the nodes in columns as in this figure, the selection of which nodes should go together in a column is somewhat arbitrary, but the selections here fit both the geography and the road system well.) This network model is the usual way of representing a shortest path problem. The junctions now are nodes of the network, where the fire station and farming community are two additional nodes labeled as O (for *origin*) and T (for *destination*), respectively. Since travel (flow) can go in either direction between the nodes, the lines connecting the nodes now are referred to as **links**[2] instead of *arcs.* A link between a pair of nodes allows travel in either direction, whereas an arc allows travel in only the direction indicated by an arrowhead, so the lines in Figure 9.12 need to be links instead of arcs. (Notice that the links do not have an arrowhead at either end.)

FIGURE 9.12

The network representation of Figure 9.11 as a shortest path problem.



links

In a shortest path problem, travel goes from the origin to the destination through a series of links (such as roads) that connect pairs of nodes (junctions) in the network.

Have you found the shortest path from the origin to the destination yet? (Try it now before reading further.) It is

$$O \rightarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow E \rightarrow F \rightarrow T$$

with a total distance of 19 miles.

page 388

This problem (like any shortest path problem) can be thought of as a special kind of minimum-cost flow problem (Section 9.1) where the *miles traveled* now are interpreted to be the *cost* of flow through the network. A trip from the fire station to the farming community is interpreted to be a flow of 1 on the chosen path through the network, so minimizing the cost of this flow is equivalent to minimizing the number of miles traveled. The fire station is considered to be the one supply node, with a supply of 1 to represent the start of this trip. The farming community is the one demand node, with a demand of 1 to represent the completion of this trip. All the other nodes in Figure 9.12 are transshipment nodes, so the net flow generated at each is 0.

Figure 9.13 shows the spreadsheet model that results from this interpretation. The format is basically the same as for the minimum-cost flow problem formulated in Figure 9.5, except now there are no arc capacity constraints and the unit cost column is replaced by a column of distances in miles. The flow quantities given by the changing cells OnRoute (D4:D27) are 1 for each arc that is on the chosen path from the fire station to the farming community and 0 otherwise. The objective cell TotalDistance (D29) gives the

total distance of this path in miles. (See the equation for this cell at the bottom of the figure.) Columns B and C together list all the vertical links in Figure 9.12 twice, once as a downward arc and once as an upward arc, since either direction might be on the chosen path. The other links are only listed as left-to-right arcs, since this is the only direction of interest for choosing a shortest path from the origin to the destination.

FIGURE 9.13

A spreadsheet model for the Littletown Fire Department shortest path problem, including the equations entered into the objective cell TotalDistance (D29) and the other output cells SupplyDemand (K4:K13). The values of 1 in the changing cells OnRoute (D4:D27) reveal the optimal solution obtained by Solver for the shortest path (19 miles) from the fire station to the farming community.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Littletown Fire Department Shortest Path Problem**										
2											
3		**From**	**To**	**On Route**		**Distance**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
4		Fire St.	A	1		3		Fire St.	1	=	1
5		Fire St.	B	0		6		A	0	=	0
6		Fire St.	C	0		4		B	0	=	0
7		A	B	1		1		C	0	=	0
8		A	D	0		6		D	0	=	0
9		B	A	0		1		E	0	=	0
10		B	C	0		2		F	0	=	0
11		B	D	0		4		G	0	=	0
12		B	E	1		5		H	0	=	0
13		C	B	0		2		Farm Comm.	−1	=	−1
14		C	E	0		7					
15		D	E	0		3					
16		D	F	0		8					
17		E	D	0		3					
18		E	F	1		6					
19		E	G	0		5					
20		E	H	0		4					
21		F	G	0		3					
22		F	Farm Comm.	1		4					
23		G	F	0		3					
24		G	H	0		2					
25		G	Farm Comm.	0		6					
26		H	G	0		2					
27		H	Farm Comm.	0		7					
28											
29			**Total Distance**	19							

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalDistance
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
OnRoute
Subject to the Constraints:
NetFlow = SupplyDemand

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
Distance	F4:F27
From	B4:B27
NetFlow	I4:I13
Nodes	H4:H13
OnRoute	D4:D27
SupplyDemand	K4:K13
To	C4:C27
TotalDistance	D29

	I
3	**Net Flow**
4	=SUMIF(From,H4,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H4,OnRoute)
5	=SUMIF(From,H5,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H5,OnRoute)
6	=SUMIF(From,H6,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H6,OnRoute)
7	=SUMIF(From,H7,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H7,OnRoute)
8	=SUMIF(From,H8,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H8,OnRoute)
9	=SUMIF(From,H9,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H9,OnRoute)
10	=SUMIF(From,H10,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H10,OnRoute)
11	=SUMIF(From,H11,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H11,OnRoute)
12	=SUMIF(From,H12,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H12,OnRoute)
13	=SUMIF(From,H13,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H13,OnRoute)

	C	D
29	**Total Distance**	=SUMPRODUCT(OnRoute,Distance)

This spreadsheet model is like one for a minimum-cost flow problem with no arc capacity constraints except that distances replace unit costs and travel on a chosen path is interpreted as a flow of 1 through this path.

Column K shows the net flow that needs to be generated at each of the nodes. Using the equations at the bottom of the figure, each column I cell then calculates the *actual* net flow at that node by adding the flow out and

subtracting the flow in. The corresponding constraints, Nodes (H4:H13) = SupplyDemand (K4:K13), are specified in the Solver Parameters box.

The solution shown in OnRoute (D4:D27) is the optimal solution obtained after running Solver. It is exactly the same as the shortest path given earlier.

Just as for minimum-cost flow problems and maximum flow problems, special algorithms are available for solving large shortest path problems very efficiently, but these algorithms are not included in Solver. Using a spreadsheet formulation and Solver is fine for problems of the size of the Littletown problem and somewhat larger, but you should be aware that vastly larger problems can still be solved by other means.

General Characteristics

Except for more complicated variations beyond the scope of this book, all shortest path problems share the characteristics illustrated by the Littletown problem. Here are the basic assumptions.

Assumptions of a Shortest Path Problem

1. You need to choose a path through the network that starts at a certain node, called the **origin,** and ends at another certain node, called the **destination.**

origin
The node at which travel through the network is assumed to start for a shortest path problem.

destination
The node at which travel through the network is assumed to end for a shortest path problem.

2. The lines connecting certain pairs of nodes commonly are *links* (which allow travel in either direction), although arcs (which only permit travel in one direction) also are allowed.
3. Associated with each link (or arc) is a nonnegative number called its **length.** (Be aware that the drawing of each link in the network typically makes no effort to show its true length other than giving the correct number next to the link.)

length of a link or arc
The number (typically a distance, a cost, or a time) associated with including the link or arc in the selected path for a shortest path problem.

4. The objective is to find the shortest path (the path with the minimum total length) from the origin to the destination.

Some Applications

Not all applications of shortest path problems involve minimizing the distance traveled from the origin to the destination. In fact, they might not even involve travel at all. The links (or arcs) might instead represent activities of some other kind, so choosing a path through the network corresponds to selecting the best sequence of activities. The numbers giving the "lengths" of the links might then be, for example, the costs of the activities, in which case the objective would be to determine which sequence of activities minimizes the total cost.

The objective is to find the shortest path from the origin to the destination.

Here are three categories of applications.

page 389

1. Minimize the total *distance* traveled, as in the Littletown example. page 390
2. Minimize the total *cost* of a sequence of activities, as in the example that follows in the subsection below.
3. Minimize the total *time* of a sequence of activities, as in the example involving the Quick Company at the end of this section.

An Example of Minimizing Total Cost

Sarah has just graduated from high school. As a graduation present, her parents have given her a car fund of $21,000 to help purchase and maintain a certain three-year-old used car for college. Since operating and maintenance costs go up rapidly as the car ages, Sarah's parents tell her that she will be welcome to trade in her car on another three-year-old car one or more times during the next three summers if she determines that this would minimize her total net cost. They also inform her that they will give her a new car in four years as a college graduation present, so she should definitely plan to trade in her car then. (These are pretty nice parents!)

Table 9.2 gives the relevant data for *each* time Sarah purchases a three-year-old car. For example, if she trades in her car after two years, the next car will be in ownership year 1 during her junior year, and so forth.

TABLE 9.2

Sarah's Data Each Time She Purchases a Three-Year-Old Car

	Operating and Maintenance Costs for Ownership Year				Trade-in Value at End of Ownership Year			
Purchase Price	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
$12,000	$2,000	$3,000	$4,500	$6,500	$8,500	$6,500	$4,500	$3,000

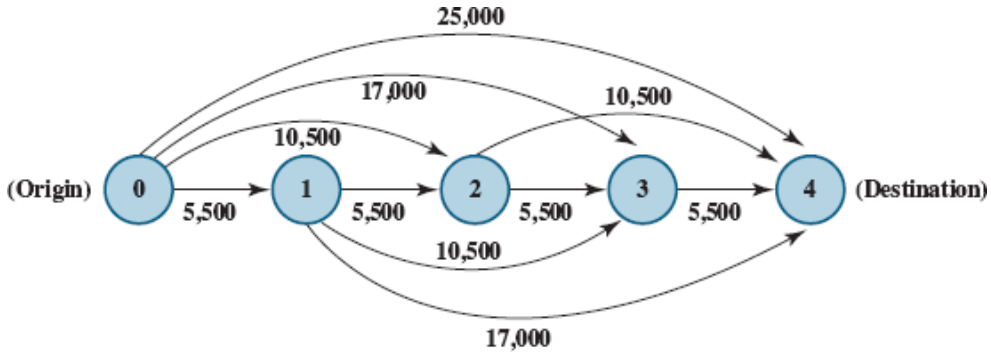
When should Sarah trade in her car (if at all) during the next three summers to minimize her total net cost of purchasing, operating, and maintaining the car(s) over her four years of college?

Sarah needs a schedule for trading in her car that will minimize her total net cost.

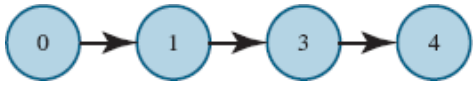
Figure 9.14 shows the network formulation of this problem as a shortest path problem. Nodes 1, 2, 3, and 4 are the end of Sarah's first, second, third, and fourth years of college, respectively. Node 0 is now, before starting college. Each arc from one node to a second node corresponds to the activity of purchasing a car at the time indicated by the first of these two nodes and then trading it in at the time indicated by the second node. Sarah begins by purchasing a car now, and she ends by trading in a car at the end of year 4, so node 0 is the *origin* and node 4 is the *destination.*

FIGURE 9.14

Formulation of the problem of when Sarah should trade in her car as a shortest path problem. The node labels measure the number of years from now. Each arc represents purchasing a car and then trading it in later.



The number of arcs on the path chosen from the origin to the destination indicates how many times Sarah will purchase and trade in a car. For example, consider the path



This corresponds to purchasing a car now, then trading it in at the end of year 1 to purchase a second car, then trading in the second car at the end of year 3 to purchase a third car, and then trading in this third car at the end of year 4.

Since Sarah wants to minimize her total net cost from now (node 0) to the end of year 4 (node 4), each arc length needs to measure the net cost of that arc's cycle of purchasing, maintaining, and trading in a car. Therefore,

$$\text{Arc length} = \text{Purchase price} + \text{Operating and maintenance costs} - \text{Trade-in value}$$

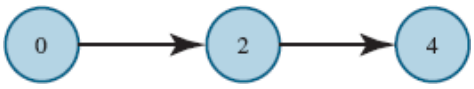
For example, consider the arc from node 1 to node 3. This arc corresponds to purchasing a car at the end of year 1, operating and maintaining it during ownership years 1 and 2, and then trading it in at the end of ownership year 2. Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Length of arc from ① to ③} &= 12,000 + 2,000 + 3,000 - 6,500 \\ &= 10,500 \text{ (in dollars)}\end{aligned}$$

The arc lengths calculated in this way are shown next to the arcs in Figure 9.14. Adding up the lengths of the arcs on any path from node 0 to node 4 then gives the total net cost for that particular plan for trading in cars over the next four years. Therefore, finding the shortest path from the origin to the destination identifies the plan that will minimize Sarah's total net cost.

The sum of the arc lengths on any path through this network gives the total net cost of the corresponding plan for trading in cars.

Figure 9.15 shows the corresponding spreadsheet model, formulated in just the same way as for Figure 9.13 except that distances are now costs. Thus, the objective cell TotalCost (D23) now gives the total cost that is to be minimized. The changing cells OnRoute (D12:D21) in the figure display the optimal solution obtained after running Solver. Since values of 1 indicate the path being followed, the shortest path turns out to be



Trade in the first car at the end of year 2.
Trade in the second car at the end of year 4.

FIGURE 9.15

A spreadsheet model that formulates Sarah’s problem as a shortest path problem where the objective is to minimize the total cost instead of the total distance. The bottom of the figure shows the equations entered in the objective cell TotalCost (D23) and the other output cells Cost (E12:E21) and NetFlow (H12:H16). After applying Solver, the values of 1 in the changing cells OnRoute (D12:D21) identify the shortest (least expensive) path for scheduling trade-ins.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**Sarah's Car Purchasing Problem**									
2										
3				Trade-in						
4			Operating & Maint. Cost	Value at End of Year	Purchase Price					
5		Year 1	$2,000	$8,500	$12,000					
6		Year 2	$3,000	$6,500						
7		Year 3	$4,500	$4,500						
8		Year 4	$6,500	$3,000						
9										
10										
11		**From**	**To**	**On Route**	**Cost**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
12		Year 0	Year 1	0	$5,500		Year 0	1	=	1
13		Year 0	Year 2	1	$10,500		Year 1	0	=	0
14		Year 0	Year 3	0	$17,000		Year 2	0	=	0
15		Year 0	Year 4	0	$25,000		Year 3	0	=	0
16		Year 1	Year 2	0	$5,500		Year 4	-1	=	-1
17		Year 1	Year 3	0	$10,500					
18		Year 1	Year 4	0	$17,000					
19		Year 2	Year 3	0	$5,500					
20		Year 2	Year 4	1	$10,500					
21		Year 3	Year 4	0	$5,500					
22										
23			**Total Cost**	$21,000						

Range Name	Cells
Cost	E12:E21
From	B12:B21
NetFlow	H12:H16
Nodes	G12:G16
OnRoute	D12:D21
OpMaint1	C5
OpMaint2	C6
OpMaint3	C7
OpMaint4	C8
PurchasePrice	E5
SupplyDemand	J12:J16
To	C12:C21
TotalCost	D23
TradeIn1	D5
TradeIn2	D6
TradeIn3	D7
TradeIn4	D8

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
OnRoute
Subject to the Constraints:
NetFlow = SupplyDemand

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
11	**Cost**
12	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1-TradeIn1
13	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2-TradeIn2
14	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2+OpMaint3-TradeIn3
15	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2+OpMaint3+OpMaint4-TradeIn4
16	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1-TradeIn1
17	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2-TradeIn2
18	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2+OpMaint3-TradeIn3
19	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1-TradeIn1
20	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1+OpMaint2-TradeIn2
21	=PurchasePrice+OpMaint1-TradeIn1

	H
11	**Net Flow**
12	=SUMIF(From,G12,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,G12,OnRoute)
13	=SUMIF(From,G13,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,G13,OnRoute)
14	=SUMIF(From,G14,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,G14,OnRoute)
15	=SUMIF(From,G15,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,G15,OnRoute)
16	=SUMIF(From,G16,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,G16,OnRoute)

	C	D
23	**Total Cost**	=SUMPRODUCT(OnRoute,Cost)

The objective cell now is TotalCost instead of TotalDistance.

The length of this path is 10,500 + 10,500 = 21,000, so Sarah's total net cost is $21,000, as given by the objective cell. Recall that this is exactly the amount in Sarah's car fund provided by her parents. (These are *really* nice parents!)

An Example of Minimizing Total Time

The **Quick Company** has learned that a competitor is planning to come out with a new kind of product with great sales potential. Quick has been working on a similar product that had been scheduled to come to market in 20 months. However, research is nearly complete and Quick's management now wishes to rush the product out to meet the competition.

There are four nonoverlapping phases left to be accomplished, including the remaining research (the first phase) that currently is being conducted at a normal pace. However, each phase can instead be conducted at a priority or crash level to expedite completion. These are the only levels that will be considered for the last three phases, whereas both the normal level and these two levels will be considered for the first phase. The times required at these levels are shown in Table 9.3.

TABLE 9.3

Time Required for the Phases of Preparing Quick Co.'s New Product

Level	Remaining Research	Development	Design of Manufacturing System	Initiate Production and Distribution
Normal	5 months	—	—	—
Priority	4 months	3 months	5 months	2 months
Crash	2 months	2 months	3 months	1 month

Management now has allocated $30 million for these four phases. The cost of each phase at the levels under consideration is shown in Table 9.4.

TABLE 9.4

Cost for the Phases of Preparing Quick Co.'s New Product

Level	Remaining Research	Development	Design of Manufacturing System	Initiate Production and Distribution
Normal	$3 million	—	—	—
Priority	6 million	$6 million	$ 9 million	$3 million
Crash	9 million	9 million	12 million	6 million

The objective is to minimize the total time for the project.

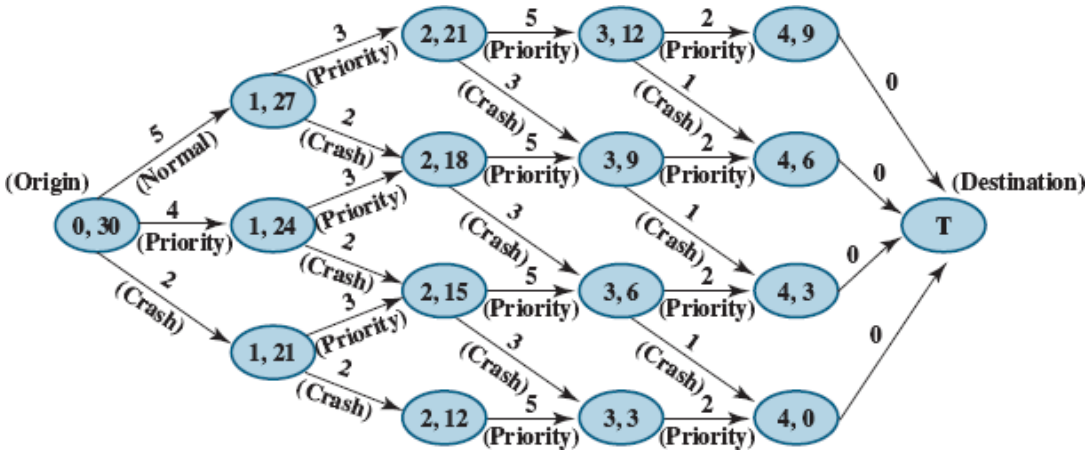
Management wishes to determine at which level to conduct each of the four phases to minimize the total time until the product can be marketed, subject to the budget restriction of $30 million.

Figure 9.16 shows the network formulation of this problem as a shortest path problem. Each node indicates the situation at that point in time. Except for the destination, a node is identified by two numbers:

1. The number of phases completed.
2. The number of millions of dollars left for the remaining phases.

FIGURE 9.16

Formulation of the Quick Co. problem as a shortest path problem. Except for the dummy destination, the arc labels indicate, first, the number of phases completed and, second, the amount of money left (in millions of dollars) for the remaining phases. Each arc length gives the time (in months) to perform that phase.



The origin is *now,* when 0 phases have been completed and the entire budget of $30 million is left. Each arc represents the choice of a particular level of effort (identified in parentheses below the arc) for that phase. [There are no crash arcs emanating from the (2, 12) and (3, 3) nodes because this level of effort would require exceeding the budget of $30 million for the four phases.] The *time* (in months) required to perform the phase with this level of effort then is the *length* of the arc (shown above the arc). Time is chosen as the measure of arc length because the objective is to minimize the total time for all four phases. Summing the arc lengths for any particular path through the network gives the total time for the

page 392
page 393

plan corresponding to that path. Therefore, the shortest path through the network identifies the plan that minimizes total time.

The sum of the arc lengths on any path through this network gives the total time of the corresponding plan for preparing the new product.

All four phases have been completed as soon as any one of the four nodes with a first label of 4 has been reached. So why doesn't the network just end with these four nodes rather than having an arc coming out of each one? The reason is that a shortest path problem is required to have only a single destination. Consequently, a **dummy destination** is added at the right-hand side.

dummy destination

A fictitious destination introduced into the formulation of a shortest path problem with multiple possible termination points to satisfy the requirement that there be just a single destination.

> When real travel through a network can end at more than one node, an arc with length 0 is inserted from each of these nodes to a **dummy destination** so that the network will have just a single destination.

Since each of the arcs into the dummy destination has length 0, this addition to the network does not affect the total length of a path from the origin to its ending point.

Figure 9.17 displays the spreadsheet model for this problem. Once again, the format is the same as in Figures 9.13 and 9.15, except now the quantity of concern in column F and the objective cell TotalTime (D32) is time rather than distance or cost. Since Solver has already been run, the changing cells OnRoute (D4:D30) indicate which arcs lie on the path that minimizes the total time. Thus, the shortest path is

FIGURE 9.17

A spreadsheet model that formulates the Quick Co. problem as a shortest path problem where the objective is to minimize the total time instead of the total distance, so the objective cell is TotalTime (D32). The other output cells are NetFlow (I4:I20). The values of 1 in the changing cells OnRoute (D4:D30) reveal the shortest (quickest) path obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Quick Co. Product Development Scheduling Problem**										
2											
3		**From**	**To**	**On Route**		**Time**		**Nodes**	**Net Flow**		**Supply/Demand**
4		(0, 30)	(1, 27)	0		5		(0, 30)	1	=	1
5		(0, 30)	(1, 24)	0		4		(1, 27)	0	=	0
6		(0, 30)	(1, 21)	1		2		(1, 24)	0	=	0
7		(1, 27)	(2, 21)	0		3		(1, 21)	0	=	0
8		(1, 27)	(2, 18)	0		2		(2, 21)	0	=	0
9		(1, 24)	(2, 18)	0		3		(2, 18)	0	=	0
10		(1, 24)	(2, 15)	0		2		(2, 15)	0	=	0
11		(1, 21)	(2, 15)	1		3		(2, 12)	0	=	0
12		(1, 21)	(2, 12)	0		2		(3, 12)	0	=	0
13		(2, 21)	(3, 12)	0		5		(3, 9)	0	=	0
14		(2, 21)	(3, 9)	0		3		(3, 6)	0	=	0
15		(2, 18)	(3, 9)	0		5		(3, 3)	0	=	0
16		(2, 18)	(3, 6)	0		3		(4, 9)	0	=	0
17		(2, 15)	(3, 6)	0		5		(4, 6)	0	=	0
18		(2, 15)	(3, 3)	1		3		(4, 3)	0	=	0
19		(2, 12)	(3, 3)	0		5		(4, 0)	0	=	0
20		(3, 12)	(4, 9)	0		2		(T)	-1	=	-1
21		(3, 12)	(4, 6)	0		1					
22		(3, 9)	(4, 6)	0		2					
23		(3, 9)	(4, 3)	0		1					
24		(3, 6)	(4, 3)	0		2					
25		(3, 6)	(4, 0)	0		1					
26		(3, 3)	(4, 0)	1		2					
27		(4, 9)	(T)	0		0					
28		(4, 6)	(T)	0		0					
29		(4, 3)	(T)	0		0					
30		(4, 0)	(T)	1		0					
31											
32			**Total Time**	10							

Range Name	Cells
From	B4:B30
NetFlow	I4:I20
Nodes	H4:H20
OnRoute	D4:D30
SupplyDemand	K4:K20
Time	F4:F30
To	C4:C30
TotalTime	D32

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalTime
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
OnRoute
Subject to the Constraints:
NetFlow = SupplyDemand

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	I
3	**Net Flow**
4	=SUMIF(From,H4,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H4,OnRoute)
5	=SUMIF(From,H5,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H5,OnRoute)
6	=SUMIF(From,H6,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H6,OnRoute)
7	=SUMIF(From,H7, OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H7,OnRoute)
8	=SUMIF(From,H8,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H8,OnRoute)
9	=SUMIF(From,H9,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H9,OnRoute)
10	=SUMIF(From,H10,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H10,OnRoute)
11	=SUMIF(From,H11,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H11,OnRoute)
12	=SUMIF(From,H12,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H12,OnRoute)
13	=SUMIF(From,H13,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H13,OnRoute)
14	=SUMIF(From,H14,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H14,OnRoute)
15	=SUMIF(From,H15,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H15,OnRoute)
16	=SUMIF(From,H16,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H16,OnRoute)
17	=SUMIF(From,H17,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H17,OnRoute)
18	=SUMIF(From,H18,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H18,OnRoute)
19	=SUMIF(From,H19,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H19,OnRoute)
20	=SUMIF(From,H20,OnRoute)-SUMIF(To,H20,OnRoute)

	C	D
32	**Total Time**	=SUMPRODUCT(OnRoute,Time)

The objective cell now is TotalTime instead of TotalDistance.

with a total length of 2 + 3 + 3 + 2 + 0 = 10 months, as given by TotalTime (D32). The resulting plan for the four phases is shown in Table 9.5. Although this plan does consume the entire budget of $30 million, it reduces the time until the product can be brought to market from the originally planned 20 months down to just 10 months.

page 394

TABLE 9.5

The Optimal Solution Obtained by Solver for Quick Co.'s Shortest Path Problem

Phase	Level	Time	Cost
Remaining research	Crash	2 months	$ 9 million
Development	Priority	3 months	6 million
Design of manufacturing system	Crash	3 months	12 million

Phase	Level	Time	Cost
Initiate production and distribution	Priority	2 months	3 million
Total		10 months	$30 million

Given this information, Quick's management now must decide whether this plan provides the best trade-off between time and cost. What would be the effect on total time of spending a few million more dollars? What would be the effect of reducing the spending somewhat instead? It is easy to provide management with this information as well by quickly solving some shortest path problems that correspond to budgets different from $30 million. The ultimate decision regarding which plan provides the best time–cost trade-off then is a judgment decision that only management can make.

Review *Questions*

page 395

. What are the origin and the destination in the Littletown Fire Department example?

. What is the distinction between an arc and a link?

. What are the supply node and the demand node when a shortest path problem is interpreted as a minimum-cost flow problem? With what supply and demand?

. What are three measures of the length of a link (or arc) that lead to three categories of applications of shortest path problems?

. What is the objective for Sarah's shortest path problem?

. When does a dummy destination need to be added to the formulation of a shortest path problem?

. What kind of trade-off does the management of the Quick Co. need to consider in making its final decision about how to expedite its new product to market?

9.5 Summary

Networks of some type arise in a wide variety of contexts. Network representations are very useful for portraying the relationships and connections between the components of systems. Each component is represented by a point in the network called a *node,*

and then the connections between components (nodes) are represented by lines called *arcs* (for one-way travel) or *links* (for two-way travel).

Frequently, a flow of some type must be sent through a network, so a decision needs to be made about the best way to do this. The kinds of network optimization models introduced in this chapter provide a powerful tool for making such decisions.

The model for minimum-cost flow problems plays a central role among these network optimization models, both because it is so broadly applicable and because it can be readily solved. Solver solves spreadsheet formulations of reasonable size, page 396 and the network simplex method can be used to solve larger problems, including huge problems with many thousands of nodes and arcs. A minimum-cost flow problem typically is concerned with optimizing the flow of goods through a network from their points of origin (the *supply nodes*) to where they are needed (the *demand nodes*). The objective is to minimize the total cost of sending the available supply through the network to satisfy the given demand. One typical application (among several) is to optimize the operation of a distribution network.

Special types of minimum-cost flow problems include transportation problems and assignment problems (discussed in Chapter 6) as well as two prominent types introduced in this chapter: maximum flow problems and shortest path problems.

Given the limited capacities of the arcs in the network, the objective of a maximum flow problem is to maximize the total amount of flow from a particular point of origin (the *source*) to a particular terminal point (the *sink*). For example, this might involve maximizing the flow of goods through a company's supply network from its vendors to its processing facilities.

A shortest path problem also has a beginning point (the *origin*) and an ending point (the *destination*), but now the objective is to find a path from the origin to the destination that has the minimum total *length.* For some applications, length refers to distance, so the objective is to minimize the total distance traveled. However, some applications instead involve minimizing either the total cost or the total time of a sequence of activities.

Glossary

arc A channel through which flow may occur from one node to another, shown as an arrow between the nodes pointing in the direction in which flow is allowed. (Section 9.1), 373

assignment problem A special type of minimum-cost flow problem that previously was described in Section 6.6. (Section 9.1), 378

capacity of an arc The maximum amount of flow allowed through the arc. (Section 9.1), 373

conservation of flow Having the amount of flow out of a node equal to the amount of flow into that node. (Section 9.1), 373

demand node A node where the net amount of flow generated (outflow minus inflow) is a fixed negative number, so that flow is absorbed there. (Section 9.1), 373

destination The node at which travel through the network is assumed to end for a shortest path problem. (Section 9.4), 388

dummy destination A fictitious destination introduced into the formulation of a shortest path problem with multiple possible termination points to satisfy the requirement that there be just a single destination. (Section 9.4), 393

length of a link or arc The number (typically a distance, a cost, or a time) associated with including the link or arc in the selected path for a shortest path problem. (Section 9.4), 388

link A channel through which flow may occur in either direction between a pair of nodes, shown as a line between the nodes. (Section 9.4), 387

network simplex method A streamlined version of the simplex method for solving minimum-cost flow problems very efficiently. (Section 9.1), 376

node A junction point of a network, shown as a labeled circle. (Section 9.1), 373

origin The node at which travel through the network is assumed to start for a shortest path problem. (Section 9.4), 388

sink The node for a maximum flow problem at which all flow through the network terminates. (Section 9.3), 382

source The node for a maximum flow problem at which all flow through the network originates. (Section 9.3), 382

supply node A node where the net amount of flow generated (outflow minus inflow) is a fixed positive number. (Section 9.1), 373

transportation problem A special type of minimum-cost flow problem that previously was described in Section 6.5. (Section 9.1), 378

transshipment node A node where the amount of flow out equals the amount of flow in. (Section 9.1), 373

transshipment problem A special type of minimum-cost flow problem where there are no capacity constraints on the arcs. (Section 9.1), 378

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

Excel Files:

Distribution Unlimited

BMZ

Expanded BMZ

Littletown Fire Department

Sarah

Quick

Excel Add-In:

Analytic Solver

Supplement to This Chapter:

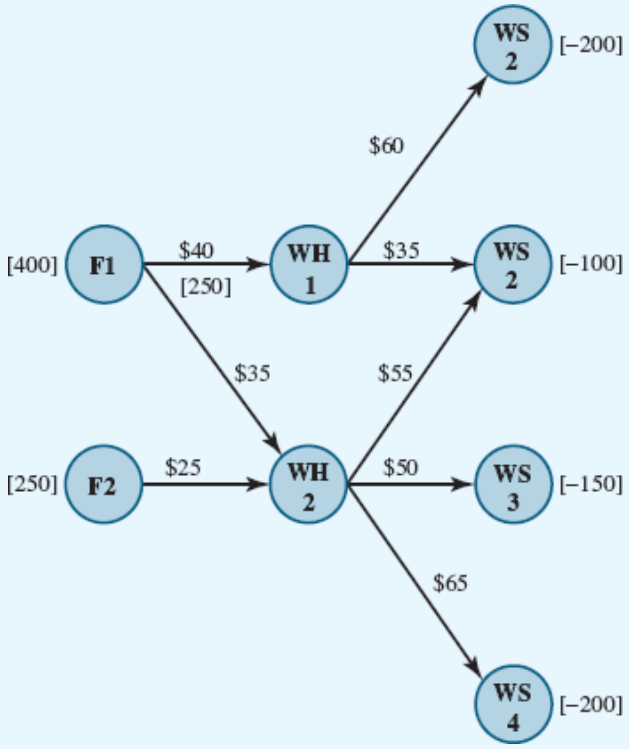
Minimum Spanning-Tree Problems

Solved Problems

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**

9.S1. Distribution at Heart Beats

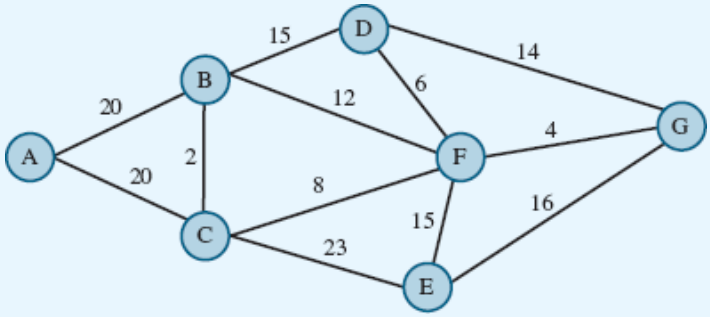
Heart Beats is a manufacturer of medical equipment. The company's primary product is a device used to monitor the heart during medical procedures. This device is produced in two factories and shipped to two warehouses. The product is then shipped on demand to four third-party wholesalers. All shipping is done by truck. The product distribution network is shown below. The annual production capacity at factories 1 and 2 is 400 and 250, respectively. The annual demand at wholesalers 1, 2, 3, and 4 is 200, 100, 150, and 200, respectively. The cost of shipping one unit in each shipping lane is shown on the arcs. Because of limited truck capacity, at most 250 units can be shipped from Factory 1 to Warehouse 1 each year. Formulate and solve a network optimization model in a spreadsheet to determine how to distribute the product at the lowest possible annual cost.



9.S2. Assessing the Capacity of a Pipeline Network

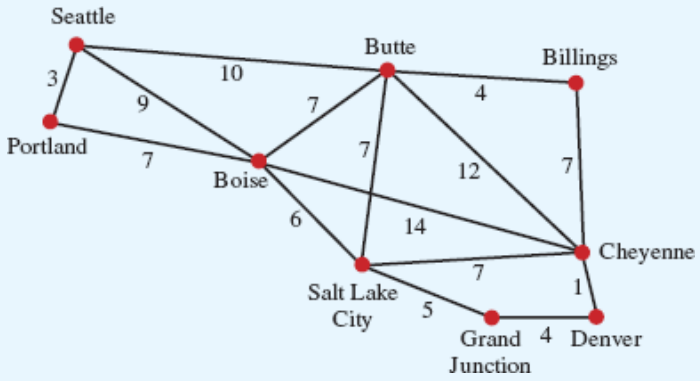
Exxo 76 is an oil company that operates the pipeline network shown below, where each pipeline is labeled with its maximum flow rate in million cubic feet (MMcf) per day. A new oil well has been

constructed near A. They would like to transport oil from the well near A to their refinery at G. Formulate and solve a network optimization model to determine the maximum flow rate from A to G.



9.S3. Driving to the Mile-High City

Sarah and Jennifer have just graduated from college at the University of Washington in Seattle and want to go on a road trip. They have always wanted to see the mile-high city of Denver. Their road atlas shows the driving time (in hours) between various city pairs, as shown below. Formulate and solve a network optimization model to find the quickest route from Seattle to Denver.



Problems

An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

9.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for Hewlett-Packard that is summarized in the application vignette

presented in Section 9.1. Briefly describe how the model for a special type of minimum-cost flow problem was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

9.2. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for CSX Transportation, Inc., that is summarized in the second application vignette presented in Section 9.1. Briefly describe how a sequence of very large minimum-cost flow problems was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

9.3.* Consider the transportation problem having the unit shipping costs shown in the following table.

	Destination			
Source	1	2	3	Supply
1	6	7	4	40
2	5	8	6	60
Demand	30	40	30	

page 398

a. Formulate a network model for this problem as a minimum-cost flow problem by drawing a network similar to Figure 9.3.

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

9.4. Reconsider Problem 9.3. Suppose now that the demand at each of the destinations has been reduced by 10, so that the new demands are 20, 30, and 20 at destinations 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Introduce a dummy destination in order to satisfy the feasible solutions property and then repeat parts *a* and *b* to determine how much each source should supply to each destination for this new version of the problem,

a. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem without introducing a dummy destination.

b. Now convert this problem into a minimum-flow cost flow problem by introducing a dummy destination and making

the other needed adjustments. Then draw a network similar to Figure 9.3 for this minimum-cost flow problem.)

c. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the minimum-cost flow problem obtained in part *b.* Then compare the resulting optimal flow plan (while ignoring the flows into the dummy destination) with the optimal flow plan obtained in part *a* without using a dummy destination.

9.5. The Makonsel Company is a fully integrated company that both produces goods and sells them at its retail outlets. After production, the goods are stored in the company's two warehouses until needed by the retail outlets. Trucks are used to transport the goods from the two plants to the warehouses, and then from the warehouses to the three retail outlets.

Using units of full truckloads, the first table below shows each plant's monthly output, its shipping cost per truckload sent to each warehouse, and the maximum amount that it can ship per month to each warehouse.

For each retail outlet (RO), the second table below shows its monthly demand, its shipping cost per truckload from each warehouse, and the maximum amount that can be shipped per month from each warehouse.

Management now wants to determine a distribution plan (number of truckloads shipped per month from each plant to each warehouse and from each warehouse to each retail outlet) that will minimize the total shipping cost.

a. Draw a network that depicts the company's distribution network. Identify the supply nodes, transshipment nodes, and demand nodes in this network.

b. Formulate a network model for this problem as a minimum-cost flow problem by inserting all the necessary data into the network drawn in part *a.* (Use the format depicted in Figure 9.3 to display these data.)

c. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

From \ To	Unit Shipping Cost		Shipping Capacity		
	Warehouse 1	Warehouse 2	Warehouse 1	Warehouse 2	Output
Plant 1	$425	$560	125	150	200
Plant 2	510	600	175	200	300

From \ To	Unit Shipping Cost			Shipping Capacity		
	RO1	RO2	RO3	RO1	RO2	RO3
Warehouse 1	$470	$505	$490	100	150	100
Warehouse 2	390	410	440	125	150	75
Demand	150	200	150	150	200	150

9.6. The Audiofile Company produces boomboxes. However, management has decided to subcontract out the production of the speakers needed for the boomboxes. Three vendors are available to supply the speakers. Their price for each shipment of 1,000 speakers is shown below.

Vendor	Price
1	$22,500
2	22,700
3	22,300

Each shipment would go to one of the company's two warehouses. In addition to the price for each shipment, each vendor would charge a shipping cost for which it has its own formula based on the mileage to the warehouse. These formulas and the mileage data are shown below.

Vendor	Charge per Shipment	Warehouse 1	Warehouse 2
1	$300 + 40¢/mile	1,600 miles	400 miles

Vendor	Charge per Shipment	Warehouse 1	Warehouse 2
2	$200 + 50¢/mile	500 miles	600 miles
3	$500 + 20¢/mile	2,000 miles	1,000 miles

Whenever one of the company's two factories needs a shipment of speakers to assemble into the boomboxes, the company hires a trucker to bring the shipment in from one of the warehouses. The cost per shipment is given next, along with the number of shipments needed per month at each factory.

page 399

	Unit Shipping Cost	
	Factory 1	Factory 2
Warehouse 1	$200	$700
Warehouse 2	400	500
Monthly demand	10	6

Each vendor is able to supply as many as 10 shipments per month. However, because of shipping limitations, each vendor is only able to send a maximum of six shipments per month to each warehouse. Similarly, each warehouse is only able to send a maximum of six shipments per month to each factory.

Management now wants to develop a plan for each month regarding how many shipments (if any) to order from each vendor, how many of those shipments should go to each warehouse, and then how many shipments each warehouse should send to each factory. The objective is to minimize the sum of the purchase costs (including the shipping charge) and the shipping costs from the warehouses to the factories.

a. Draw a network that depicts the company's supply network. Identify the supply nodes, transshipment nodes, and demand nodes in this network.

b. This problem is only a *variant* of a minimum-cost flow problem because the supply from each vendor is a *maximum* of 10 rather than a fixed amount of 10. However, it can be converted to a full-fledged minimum-cost flow problem by adding a dummy demand node that receives (at zero cost) all the unused supply capacity at the vendors. Formulate a network model for this minimum-cost flow problem by inserting all the necessary data into the network drawn in part *a* supplemented by this dummy demand node. (Use the format depicted in Figure 9.3 to display these data.)

c. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the company's problem.

9.7.* Consider Figure 9.9 (in Section 9.3), which depicts the BMZ Co. distribution network from its factories in Stuttgart and Berlin to the distribution centers in both Los Angeles and Seattle. This figure also gives in brackets the maximum amount that can be shipped through each shipping lane.

In the weeks following the crisis described in Section 9.2, the distribution center in Los Angeles has successfully replenished its inventory. Therefore, Karl Schmidt (the supply chain manager for the BMZ Co.) has concluded that it will be sufficient hereafter to ship 130 units per month to Los Angeles and 50 units per month to Seattle. (One unit is a hundred cubic meters of automobile replacement parts.) The Stuttgart factory (node ST in the figure) will allocate 130 units per month and the Berlin factory (node BE) will allocate 50 units per month out of their total production to cover these shipments. However, rather than resuming the past practice of supplying the Los Angeles distribution center from only the Stuttgart factory and supplying the Seattle distribution center from only the Berlin factory, Karl has decided to allow either factory to supply either distribution center. He feels that this additional flexibility is likely to reduce the total shipping cost.

The following table gives the shipping cost per unit through each of these shipping lanes.

From \ To	Unit Shipping Cost to Node								
	LI	BO	RO	HA	NO	NY	BN	LA	SE
Node									
ST	$3,200	$2,500	$2,900	—	—	—	—	—	—
BE	—	—	$2,400	$2,000	—	—	—	—	—
LI	—	—	—	—	$6,100	—	—	—	—
BO	—	—	—	—	$6,800	$5,400	—	—	—
RO	—	—	—	—	—	$5,900	—	—	—
HA	—	—	—	—	—	$6,300	$5,700	—	—
NO	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	$3,100	—
NY	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	$4,200	$4,000
BN	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	$3,400	$3,000

Karl wants to determine the shipping plan that will minimize the total shipping cost.

a. Formulate a network model for this problem as a minimum-cost flow problem by inserting all the necessary data into the distribution network shown in Figure 9.9. (Use the format depicted in Figure 9.3 to display these data.)

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

c. What is the total shipping cost for this optimal solution?

9.8. Reconsider Problem 9.7. Suppose now that, for administrative convenience, management has decided that all 130 units per month needed at the distribution center in Los Angeles must come from the Stuttgart factory (node ST) and all 50 units per month needed at the distribution center in Seattle must come from the Berlin factory (node BE). For each of these distribution centers, Karl Schmidt wants to determine the shipping plan that will minimize the total shipping cost.

a. For the distribution center in Los Angeles, formulate a network model for this problem as a minimum-cost flow problem by inserting all the necessary data into the distribution network shown in Figure 9.6. (Use the format depicted in Figure 9.3 to display these data.)

page 400

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the problem formulated in part *a.*

c. For the distribution center in Seattle, draw its distribution network emanating from the Berlin factory at node BE.

d. Repeat part *a* for the distribution center in Seattle by using the network drawn in part *c.*

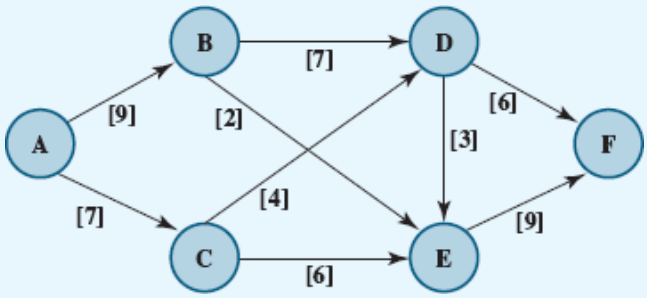
e. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the problem formulated in part *d.*

f. Add the total shipping costs obtained in parts *b* and *e.* Compare this sum with the total shipping cost obtained in part *c* of Problem 9.7 (as given in the back of the book).

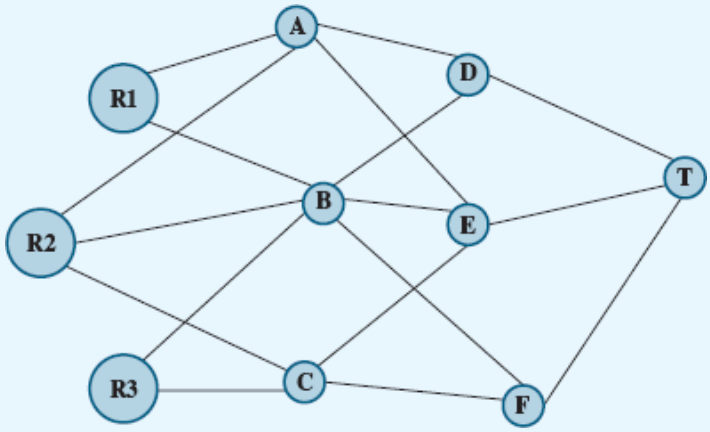
9.9. Consider the maximum flow problem formulated in Figures 9.7 and 9.8 for the BMZ case study. Redraw Figure 9.7 and insert the optimal shipping quantities (cells D4:D12 in Figure 9.8) in parentheses above the respective arcs. Examine the capacities of these arcs. Explain why these arc capacities ensure that the shipping quantities in parentheses must be an optimal solution because the maximum flow cannot exceed 150.

9.10. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for Gassco and StatollHydro that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 9.3. Briefly describe how a generalization of the model for the maximum flow problem was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

9.11.* Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for the maximum flow problem shown next, where node A is the source, node F is the sink, and the arc capacities are the numbers in square brackets shown next to the arcs.



9.12. The diagram depicts a system of aqueducts that originate at three rivers (nodes R1, R2, and R3) and terminate at a major city (node T), where the other nodes are junction points in the system.



Using units of thousands of acre feet, the following tables show the maximum amount of water that can be pumped through each aqueduct per day.

From \ To	A	B	C
R1	75	65	—
R2	40	50	60
R3	—	80	70

From \ To	D	E	F
A	60	45	—
B	70	55	45
C	—	70	90

From \ To	T
D	120
E	190
F	130

The city water manager wants to determine a flow plan that will maximize the flow of water to the city.

a. Formulate this problem as a maximum flow problem by identifying a source, a sink, and the transshipment nodes, and then drawing the complete network that shows the capacity of each arc.

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

9.13. The Texago Corporation has four oil fields, four refineries, and four distribution centers in the locations identified in the next tables. A major strike involving the transportation industries now has sharply curtailed Texago's capacity to ship oil from the four oil fields to the four refineries and to ship petroleum products from the refineries to the distribution centers. Using units of thousands of barrels of crude oil (and its equivalent in refined products), the following tables show the maximum number of units that can be shipped per day from each oil field to each refinery and from each refinery to each distribution center.

	Refinery			
Oil Field	New Orleans	Charleston	Seattle	St. Louis
Texas	11	7	2	8
California	5	4	8	7
Alaska	7	3	12	6
Middle East	8	9	4	15

	Distribution Center			
Refinery	Pittsburgh	Atlanta	Kansas City	San Francisco
New Orleans	5	9	6	4
Charleston	8	7	9	5
Seattle	4	6	7	8
St. Louis	12	11	9	7

page 401

The Texago management now wants to determine a plan for how many units to ship from each oil field to each refinery and from each refinery to each distribution center that will maximize the total number of units reaching the distribution centers.

a. Draw a rough map that shows the location of Texago's oil fields, refineries, and distribution centers. Add arrows to show the flow of crude oil and then petroleum products through this distribution network.

b. Redraw this distribution network by lining up all the nodes representing oil fields in one column, all the nodes representing refineries in a second column, and all the nodes representing distribution centers in a third column. Then add arcs to show the possible flow.

c. Use the distribution network from part *b* to formulate a network model for Texago's problem as a variant of a maximum flow problem.

d. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

9.14. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for the Swedish forest industry that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 9.4. Briefly describe how network optimization models (including for shortest path problems) were applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

9.15. Reconsider the Littletown Fire Department problem presented in Section 9.4 and depicted in Figure 9.11. Due to maintenance work on the one-mile road between nodes A and B, a detour currently must be taken that extends the trip between these nodes to four miles.

Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this revised problem to find the new shortest path from the fire station to the farming community.

9.16. You need to take a trip by car to another town that you have never visited before. Therefore, you are studying a map to determine the shortest route to your destination. Depending on which route you choose, there are five other towns (call them A, B, C, D, E) through which you might pass on the way. The map shows the mileage along each road that directly connects two towns without any intervening towns. These numbers are summarized in the following table, where a dash indicates that there is no road directly connecting these two towns without going through any other towns.

	Miles between Adjacent Towns					
Town	A	B	C	D	E	Destination
Origin	40	60	50	—	—	—
A		10	—	70	—	—
B			20	55	40	—
C				—	50	—
D					10	60
E						80

a. Formulate a network model for this problem as a shortest path problem by drawing a network where nodes represent towns, links represent roads, and numbers indicate the length of each link in miles.

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

c. Use part *b* to identify your shortest route.

d. If each number in the table represented your *cost* (in dollars) for driving your car from one town to the next, would the answer in part *c* now give your minimum-cost route?

e. If each number in the table represented your *time* (in minutes) for driving your car from one town to the next, would the answer in part *c* now give your minimum-time route?

9.17.* At a small but growing airport, the local airline company is purchasing a new tractor for a tractor-trailer train to bring luggage to and from the airplanes. A new mechanized luggage system will be installed in three years, so the tractor will not be needed after that. However, because it will receive heavy use, so that the running and maintenance costs will increase rapidly as it ages, it may still be more economical to replace the tractor after one or two years. The next table gives the total net discounted cost associated with purchasing a tractor (purchase price minus trade-in allowance, plus running and maintenance costs) at the end of year *i* and trading it in at the end of year *j* (where year 0 is now).

	j		
	1	**2**	**3**
i			
0	$8,000	$18,000	$31,000
1		10,000	21,000
2			12,000

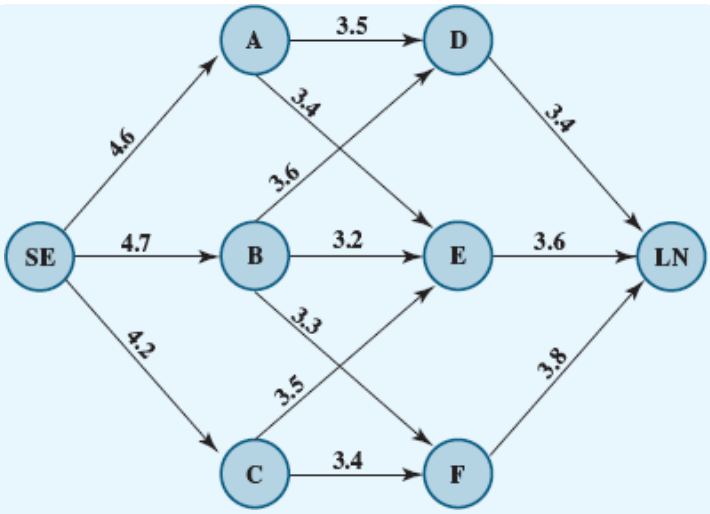
Management wishes to determine at what times (if any) the tractor should be replaced to minimize the total cost for the tractor(s) over three years.

a. Formulate a network model for this problem as a shortest path problem.

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

9.18. One of Speedy Airlines's flights is about to take off from Seattle for a nonstop flight to London. There is some flexibility in choosing the precise route to be taken, depending upon weather conditions. The following network depicts the possible routes under consideration, where SE and LN are Seattle and London, respectively, and the other nodes represent various intermediate locations.

The winds along each arc greatly affect the flying time (and so the fuel consumption). Based on current meteorological reports, the flying times (in hours) for this particular flight are shown next to the arcs. Because the fuel consumed is so expensive, the management of Speedy Airlines has established a policy of choosing the route that minimizes the total flight time.



a. What plays the role of distances in interpreting this problem to be a shortest path problem?

b. Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model for this problem.

Case 9-1

Aiding Allies

Commander Votachev steps into the cold October night and deeply inhales the smoke from his cigarette, savoring its warmth. He surveys the destruction surrounding him—shattered windows, burning buildings, torn roads—and smiles. His two years of work training revolutionaries east of the Ural Mountains has proven successful; his troops now occupy seven strategically important cities in the Russian Federation: Kazan, Perm, Yekaterinburg, Ufa, Samara, Saratov, and Orenburg. His siege is not yet over, however. He looks to the west. Given the political and economic confusion in the Russian Federation at this time, he knows that his troops will be able to conquer Saint Petersburg and Moscow shortly. Commander Votachev will then be able to rule with the wisdom and control exhibited by his communist predecessors Lenin and Stalin.

Across the Pacific Ocean, a meeting of the top security and foreign policy advisors of the **United States** is in progress at the White House. The president has recently been briefed about the communist revolution masterminded by Commander Votachev and is determining a plan of action.

The president reflects upon a similar October long ago in 1917, and he fears the possibility of a new age of radical Communist rule accompanied by chaos, bloodshed, escalating tensions, and possibly nuclear war. He therefore decides that the United States needs to respond and to respond quickly. Moscow has requested assistance from the United States military, and the president plans to send troops and supplies immediately.

The president turns to General Lankletter and asks him to describe the preparations being taken in the United States to send the necessary troops and supplies to the Russian Federation.

General Lankletter informs the president that along with troops, weapons, ammunition, fuel, and supplies, aircraft, ships, and vehicles are being assembled at two port cities with airfields: Boston and Jacksonville. The aircraft and ships will transfer all troops and cargo across the Atlantic Ocean to the Eurasian continent. The general hands the president a list of the types of aircraft, ships, and vehicles being assembled along with a description of each type. The list is shown next.

Transportation Type	Name	Capacity	Speed
Aircraft	C-17 Globemaster	150 tons	400 miles per hour
Ship	Transport	240 tons	35 miles per hour
Vehicle	Palletized Load System Truck	16 tons	60 miles per hour

All aircraft, ships, and vehicles are able to carry both troops and cargo. Once an aircraft or ship arrives in Europe, it stays there to support the armed forces.

The president then turns to Tabitha Neal, who has been negotiating with the NATO countries for the last several hours to use their ports and airfields as stops to refuel and resupply before heading to the Russian Federation. She informs the president that the following ports and airfields in the NATO countries will be made available to the U.S. military.

Ports	Airfields
Napoli	London
Hamburg	Berlin
Rotterdam	Istanbul

The president stands and walks to the map of the world projected on a large screen in the middle of the room. He maps the progress of troops and cargo from the United States to three strategic cities in the Russian Federation that have not yet been seized by Commander Votachev. The three cities are Saint Petersburg, Moscow, and Rostov. He explains that the troops and cargo will be used both to defend the Russian cities and to launch a counter attack against Votachev to recapture the cities he currently occupies. (The map is shown at the end of the case.)

page 403

The president also explains that all Globemasters and transports leave Boston or Jacksonville. All transports that have traveled across the Atlantic must dock at one of the NATO ports to unload. Palletized load system trucks at the NATO ports will then carry all troops and materials unloaded from the ships at the NATO ports to the three strategic Russian cities not yet seized by Votachev. All Globemasters that have traveled across the Atlantic must land at one of the NATO airfields for refueling. The planes will then carry all troops and cargo from the NATO airfields to the three Russian cities.

a. Draw a network showing the different routes troops and supplies may take to reach the Russian Federation from the United States.
b. Moscow and Washington do not know when Commander Votachev will launch his next attack. Leaders from the two countries therefore have agreed that troops should reach each of the three strategic Russian cities as quickly as possible. The president has determined that the situation is so dire that cost is no object—as many Globemasters, transports, and trucks as are necessary will be used to transfer troops and cargo from the United States to Saint Petersburg, Moscow, and Rostov. Therefore, no limitations exist on the number of troops and amount of cargo that can be transferred between any cities.

The president has been given the information in the next table about the length of the available routes between cities.

Given the distance and the speed of the transportation used between each pair of cities, how can the president most quickly move troops from the

United States to each of the three strategic Russian cities? Highlight the path(s) on the network. How long will it take troops and supplies to reach Saint Petersburg? Moscow? Rostov?

From	To	(Kilometers)
Boston	Berlin	7,250 km
Boston	Hamburg	8,250
Boston	Istanbul	8,300
Boston	London	6,200
Boston	Rotterdam	6,900
Boston	Napoli	7,950
Jacksonville	Berlin	9,200
Jacksonville	Hamburg	9,800
Jacksonville	Istanbul	10,100
Jacksonville	London	7,900
Jacksonville	Rotterdam	8,900
Jacksonville	Napoli	9,400
Berlin	Saint Petersburg	1,280
Hamburg	Saint Petersburg	1,880
Istanbul	Saint Petersburg	2,040
London	Saint Petersburg	1,980
Rotterdam	Saint Petersburg	2,200
Napoli	Saint Petersburg	2,970
Berlin	Moscow	1,600
Hamburg	Moscow	2,120
Istanbul	Moscow	1,700
London	Moscow	2,300
Rotterdam	Moscow	2,450

From	To	(Kilometers)
Napoli	Moscow	2,890
Berlin	Rostov	1,730
Hamburg	Rostov	2,470
Istanbul	Rostov	990
London	Rostov	2,860
Rotterdam	Rostov	2,760
Napoli	Rostov	2,800

From	To	(Kilometers)
Berlin	Rostov	1,730
Hamburg	Rostov	2,470
Istanbul	Rostov	990
London	Rostov	2,860
Rotterdam	Rostov	2,760
Napoli	Rostov	2,800

c. The president encounters only one problem with his first plan: He has to sell the military deployment to Congress. Under the War Powers Act, the president is required to consult with Congress before introducing troops into hostilities or situations where hostilities will occur. If Congress does not give authorization to the president for such use of troops, the president must withdraw troops after 60 days. Congress also has the power to decrease the 60-day time period by passing a concurrent resolution.

The president knows that Congress will not authorize significant spending for another country's war, especially when voters have paid so much attention to decreasing the national debt. He therefore decides that he needs to find a way to get the needed troops and supplies to Saint Petersburg, Moscow, and Rostov at the minimum cost.

Each Russian city has contacted Washington to communicate the number of troops and supplies the city needs at a minimum for reinforcement. After analyzing the requests, General Lankletter has

converted the requests from numbers of troops, gallons of gasoline, and so on, to tons of cargo for easier planning. The requirements are listed next.

City	Requirements
Saint Petersburg	320,000 tons
Moscow	440,000 tons
Rostov	240,000 tons

Both in Boston and Jacksonville, there are 500,000 tons of the necessary cargo available. When the United States decides to send a plane, ship, or truck between two cities, several costs occur: fuel costs, labor costs, maintenance costs, and appropriate port or airfield taxes and tariffs. These costs are listed next.

From	To	Cost
Boston	Berlin	$50,000 per Globemaster
Boston	Hamburg	$30,000 per transport
Boston	Istanbul	$55,000 per Globemaster
Boston	London	$45,000 per Globemaster
Boston	Rotterdam	$30,000 per transport
Boston	Napoli	$32,000 per transport
Jacksonville	Berlin	$57,000 per Globemaster
Jacksonville	Hamburg	$48,000 per transport
Jacksonville	Istanbul	$61,000 per Globemaster
Jacksonville	London	$49,000 per Globemaster
Jacksonville	Rotterdam	$44,000 per transport
Jacksonville	Napoli	$56,000 per transport
Berlin	Saint Petersburg	$24,000 per Globemaster
Hamburg	Saint Petersburg	$3,000 per truck

From	To	Cost
Istanbul	Saint Petersburg	$28,000 per Globemaster
London	Saint Petersburg	$22,000 per Globemaster
Rotterdam	Saint Petersburg	$3,000 per truck
Napoli	Saint Petersburg	$5,000 per truck
Berlin	Moscow	$22,000 per Globemaster
Hamburg	Moscow	$4,000 per truck
Istanbul	Moscow	$25,000 per Globemaster
London	Moscow	$19,000 per Globemaster
Rotterdam	Moscow	$5,000 per truck
Napoli	Moscow	$5,000 per truck
Berlin	Rostov	$23,000 per Globemaster
Hamburg	Rostov	$7,000 per truck
Istanbul	Rostov	$2,000 per Globemaster
London	Rostov	$4,000 per Globemaster
Rotterdam	Rostov	$8,000 per truck
Napoli	Rostov	$9,000 per truck

page 404

The president faces a number of restrictions when trying to satisfy the requirements. Early winter weather in northern Russia has brought a deep freeze with much snow. Therefore, General Lankletter is opposed to sending truck convoys in the area. He convinces the president to supply Saint Petersburg only through the air. Moreover, the truck routes into Rostov are quite limited, so that from each port, at most 2,500 trucks can be sent to Rostov. The Ukrainian government is very sensitive about American airplanes flying through its air space. It restricts the U.S. military to at most 200 flights from Berlin to Rostov and to at most

200 flights from London to Rostov. (The U.S. military does not want to fly around the Ukraine and is thus restricted by the Ukrainian limitations.)

How does the president satisfy each Russian city's military requirements at minimum cost? Highlight the path to be used between the United States and the Russian Federation on the network.

l. Once the president releases the number of planes, ships, and trucks that will travel between the United States and the Russian Federation, Tabitha Neal contacts each of the American cities and NATO countries to indicate the number of planes to expect at the airfields, the number of ships to expect at the docks, and the number of trucks to expect traveling across the roads. Unfortunately, Tabitha learns that several additional restrictions exist that cannot be immediately eliminated. Because of airfield congestion and unalterable flight schedules, only a limited number of planes may be sent between any two cities. These plane limitations are given to the right.

From	To	Maximum Number of Airplanes
Boston	Berlin	300
Boston	Istanbul	500
Boston	London	500
Jacksonville	Berlin	500
Jacksonville	Istanbul	700
Jacksonville	London	600
Berlin	Saint Petersburg	500
Istanbul	Saint Petersburg	0
London	Saint Petersburg	1,000
Berlin	Moscow	300
Istanbul	Moscow	100
London	Moscow	200
Berlin	Rostov	0

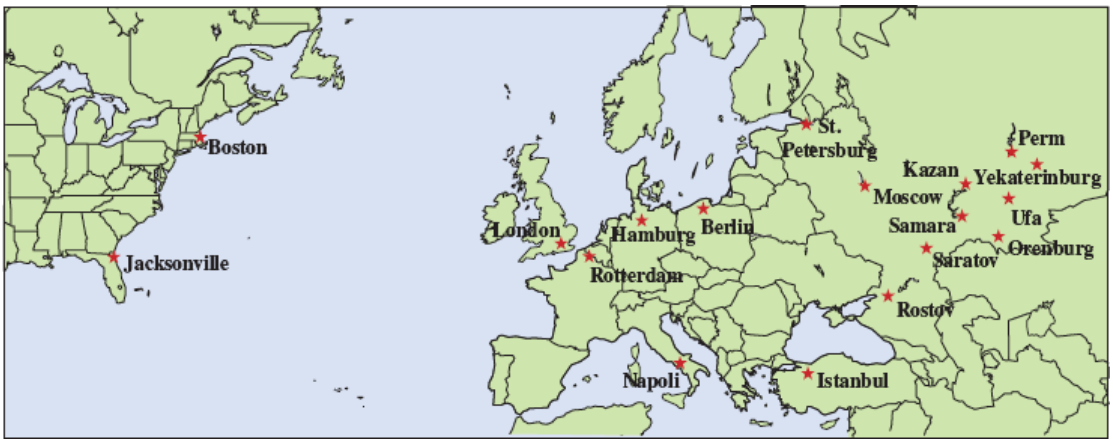
From	To	Maximum Number of Airplanes
Istanbul	Rostov	900
London	Rostov	100

In addition, because some countries fear that citizens will become alarmed if too many military trucks travel the public highways, they object to a large number of trucks traveling through their countries. These objections mean that a limited number of trucks are able to travel between certain ports and Russian cities. These limitations are listed below.

From	To	Maximum Number of Trucks
Rotterdam	Moscow	600
Rotterdam	Rostov	750
Hamburg	Moscow	700
Hamburg	Rostov	500
Napoli	Moscow	1,500
Napoli	Rostov	1,400

Tabitha learns that all shipping lanes have no capacity limits due to the American control of the Atlantic Ocean.

The president realizes that due to all the restrictions, he will not be able to satisfy all the reinforcement requirements of the three Russian cities. He decides to disregard the cost issue and instead to maximize the total amount of cargo he can get to the Russian cities. How does the president maximize the total amount of cargo that reaches the Russian Federation? Highlight the path(s) used between the United States and the Russian Federation on the network.



Case 9-2

Money in Motion

Jake Nguyen runs a nervous hand through his once finely combed hair. He loosens his once perfectly knotted silk tie. And he rubs his sweaty hands across his once immaculately pressed trousers. Today has certainly not been a good day.

Over the past few months, Jake had heard whispers circulating from Wall Street—whispers from the lips of investment bankers and stockbrokers famous for their outspokenness. They had whispered about a coming Japanese economic collapse—whispered because they had believed that publicly vocalizing their fears would hasten the collapse.

And, today, their very fears have come true. Jake and his colleagues gather around a small television dedicated exclusively to the Bloomberg channel. Jake stares in disbelief as he listens to the horrors taking place in the Japanese market. And the Japanese market is taking the financial markets in all other East Asian countries with it on its tailspin. He goes numb. As manager of Asian foreign investment for **Grant Hill Associates,** a small West Coast investment boutique specializing in currency trading, Jake bears personal responsibility for any negative impacts of the collapse. And Grant Hill Associates will experience negative impacts.

Jake had not heeded the whispered warnings of a Japanese collapse. Instead, he had greatly increased the stake Grant Hill Associates held in the Japanese market. Because the Japanese market had performed better than expected over the past year, Jake had increased investments in Japan from $2.5 million to $15 million only one month ago. At that time, one dollar was worth 80 yen.

No longer. Jake realizes that today's devaluation of the yen means that one dollar is worth 125 yen. He will be able to liquidate these investments without any loss in yen, but now the dollar loss when converting back into U.S. currency would be huge. He takes a deep breath, closes his eyes, and mentally prepares himself for serious damage control.

Jake's meditation is interrupted by a booming voice calling for him from a large, corner office. Grant Hill, the president of Grant Hill Associates, yells, "Nguyen, get the hell in here!"

Jake jumps and looks reluctantly toward the corner office hiding the furious Grant Hill. He smooths his hair, tightens his tie, and walks briskly into the office.

Grant Hill meets Jake's eyes upon his entrance and continues yelling, "I don't want one word out of you, Nguyen! No excuses; just fix this debacle! Get all of our money out of Japan! My gut tells me this is only the beginning! Get the money into safe U.S. bonds! NOW! And don't forget to get our cash positions out of Indonesia and Malaysia ASAP with it!"

Jake has enough common sense to say nothing. He nods his head, turns on his heels, and practically runs out of the office.

Safely back at his desk, Jake begins formulating a plan to move the investments out of Japan, Indonesia, and Malaysia. His experiences investing in foreign markets have taught him that when playing with millions of dollars, *how* he gets money out of a foreign market is almost as important as *when* he gets money out of the market. The banking partners of Grant Hill Associates charge different transaction fees for converting one currency into another one and wiring large sums of money around the globe.

And now, to make matters worse, the governments in East Asia have imposed very tight limits on the amount of money an individual or a company can exchange from the domestic currency into a particular foreign currency and withdraw it from the country. The goal of this dramatic measure is to reduce the outflow of foreign investments out of those countries to prevent a complete collapse of the economies in the region. Because of Grant Hill Associates' cash holdings of 10.5 billion Indonesian rupiahs and 28 million Malaysian ringgits, along with the holdings in yen, it is not clear how these holdings should be converted back into dollars.

Jake wants to find the most cost-effective method to convert these holdings into dollars. On his company's website, he always can find on-the-minute exchange rates for most currencies in the world (see Table 1).

TABLE 1

Currency Exchange Rates

From \ To	Yen	Rupiah	Ringgit	U.S. Dollar	Canadian Dollar	Euro	Pound	Peso
Japanese yen	1	50	0.04	0.008	0.01	0.0064	0.0048	0.0768
Indonesian rupiah		1	0.0008	0.00016	0.0002	0.000128	0.000096	0.001536
Malaysian ringgit			1	0.2	0.25	0.16	0.12	1.92
U.S. dollar				1	1.25	0.8	0.6	9.6
Canadian dollar					1	0.64	0.48	7.68
European euro						1	0.75	12
English pound							1	16
Mexican peso								1

The table states that, for example, 1 Japanese yen equals 0.008 U.S. dollars. By making a few phone calls, he discovers the transaction costs (expressed as a percentage of the currency being converted) his company must pay for large currency transactions during these critical times (see Table 2).

TABLE 2

page 406

Transaction Cost (Percent)

From \ To	Yen	Rupiah	Ringgit	U.S. Dollar	Canadian Dollar	Euro	Pound	Peso
Yen	—	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.25	0.5
Rupiah		—	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.75	0.75
Ringgit			—	0.7	0.7	0.4	0.45	0.5
U.S. dollar				—	0.05	0.1	0.1	0.1
Canadian dollar					—	0.2	0.1	0.1
Euro						—	0.05	0.5
Pound							—	0.5
Peso								—

Jake notes that exchanging one currency for another one results in the same transaction cost as a reverse conversion. Finally, Jake finds out the maximum amounts of domestic currencies (expressed as the current equivalent of thousands of dollars) his company is allowed to convert into other currencies in Japan, Indonesia, and Malaysia (see Table 3).

TABLE 3

Transaction Limits in Equivalent of 1,000 Dollars

From \ To	Yen	Rupiah	Ringgit	U.S. Dollar	Canadian Dollar	Euro	Pound	Peso
Yen	—	5,000	5,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	2,000	4,000
Rupiah	5,000	—	2,000	200	200	1,000	500	200
Ringgit	3,000	4,500	—	1,500	1,500	2,500	1,000	1,000

a. Formulate Jake's problem as a minimum-cost flow problem, and draw the network for his problem. Identify the supply and demand nodes for the network.

b. Which currency transactions must Jake perform to convert the investments from yens, rupiahs, and ringgits into U.S. dollars to ensure that Grant Hill Associates has the maximum dollar amount after all transactions have occurred? How much money does Jake have to invest in U.S. bonds?

c. The World Trade Organization forbids transaction limits because they promote protectionism. If no transaction limits exist, what method should Jake use to convert the Asian holdings from the respective currencies into dollars?

d. In response to the World Trade Organization's mandate forbidding transaction limits, the Indonesian government introduces a new tax to protect its currency that leads to a 500 percent increase in transaction costs for transactions of rupiahs. Given these new transaction costs but no transaction limits, what currency transactions should Jake perform to convert the Asian holdings from the respective currencies into dollars?

e. Jake realizes that his analysis is incomplete because he has not included all aspects that might influence his planned currency exchanges. Describe other factors that Jake should examine before he makes his final decision.

Case 9-3

Airline Scheduling

Rachel Cook is very concerned. Until recently, she has always had the golden touch, having successfully launched two start-up companies that made her a very wealthy woman. However, the timing could not have been worse for her latest start-up—a regional airline called Northwest Commuter that operates on the west coast of the United States. All had been well at the beginning. Four airplanes had been leased and the company had become fairly well established as a no-frills airline providing low-cost commuter flights between the west coast cities of Seattle, Portland, and San Francisco. Achieving fast turnaround times between flights had given Northwest Commuter an important competitive advantage. Then the cost of jet fuel began spiraling upward and the company began going heavily into the red (like so many other airlines at the time). Although some of the flights were still profitable, others were losing a lot of money. Fortunately, jet fuel costs now are starting to come down, but it has become clear to Rachel that she needs to find new ways for

Northwest Commuter to become a more efficient airline. In particular, she wants to start by dropping unprofitable flights and then identifying the most profitable combination of flights (including some new ones) for the coming year that could feasibly be flown by the four airplanes.

A little over a decade ago, Rachel had been an honor graduate of a leading MBA program. She had enjoyed the management science and business analytics courses she took then and she has decided to apply spreadsheet modeling to analyze her problem.

The leasing cost for each airplane is $30,000 per day. At the end of the day, an airplane might remain in the city where it landed on its last flight. Another option is to fly empty overnight to another city to be ready to start a flight from there the next morning. The cost of this latter option is $5,000.

Flight Number	From	To	Depart	Arrive	Expected Revenue ($000)
1257	Seattle	San Francisco	8:00 AM	10:00 AM	37
2576	Seattle	Portland	9:30 AM	10:30 AM	20
8312	Seattle	San Francisco	9:30 AM	11:30 AM	25
1109	Seattle	San Francisco	12:00 PM	2:00 PM	27
3752	Seattle	San Francisco	2:30 PM	4:30 PM	23
2498	Seattle	Portland	3:00 PM	4:00 PM	18
8787	Seattle	San Francisco	5:00 PM	7:00 PM	29
8423	Seattle	Portland	6:30 PM	7:30 PM	27
7922	Portland	Seattle	9:00 AM	10:00 AM	20
5623	Portland	San Francisco	9:30 AM	11:00 AM	23
2448	Portland	San Francisco	11:00 AM	12:30 PM	19
1842	Portland	Seattle	12:00 PM	1:00 PM	21
3487	Portland	Seattle	2:00 PM	3:00 PM	22
4361	Portland	San Francisco	4:00 PM	5:30 PM	29
4299	Portland	Seattle	6:00 PM	7:00 PM	27
1288	San Francisco	Seattle	8:00 AM	10:00 AM	32
3335	San Francisco	Portland	8:30 AM	10:00 AM	26
9348	San Francisco	Seattle	10:30 AM	12:30 PM	24
7400	San Francisco	Seattle	12:00 PM	2:00 PM	27
7328	San Francisco	Portland	12:00 PM	1:30 PM	24
6386	San Francisco	Portland	4:00 PM	5:30 PM	28
6923	San Francisco	Seattle	5:00 PM	7:00 PM	32

The accompanying table shows the 22 possible flights that are being considered for the coming year. The last column gives the estimated net revenue (in thousands of dollars) for each flight, given the average number of passengers anticipated for that flight.

a. To simplify the analysis, assume for now that there is virtually no turnaround time between flights so the next flight can begin as soon as the current flight ends. (If an immediate next flight is not available, the airplane

would wait until the next scheduled flight from that city.) Develop a network that displays some of the feasible routings of the flights. (*Hint:* Include separate nodes for each half hour between 8:00 AM and 7:30 PM in each city.) Then develop and apply the corresponding spreadsheet model that finds the feasible combination of flights that maximizes the total profit.

b. Rachel is considering leasing additional airplanes to achieve economies of scale. The leasing cost of each one again would be $30,000 per day. Perform what-if analysis to determine whether it would be worthwhile to have 5, 6, or 7 airplanes instead of 4.

c. Now repeat part *a* under the more realistic assumption that there is a minimum turnaround time of 30 minutes on the ground for unloading and loading passengers between the arrival of a flight and the departure of the next flight by the same airplane. (Most airlines use a considerably longer turnaround time.) Does this change the number of flights that can be flown?

d. Rachel now is considering having each of the four airplanes carry freight instead of flying empty if it flies overnight to another city. Instead of a cost of $5,000, this would result in net revenue of $5,000. Adapt the spreadsheet model used in part *c* to find the feasible combination of flights that maximizes the total profit. Does this change the number of airplanes that fly overnight to another city?

Case 9-4

Broadcasting the Olympic Games

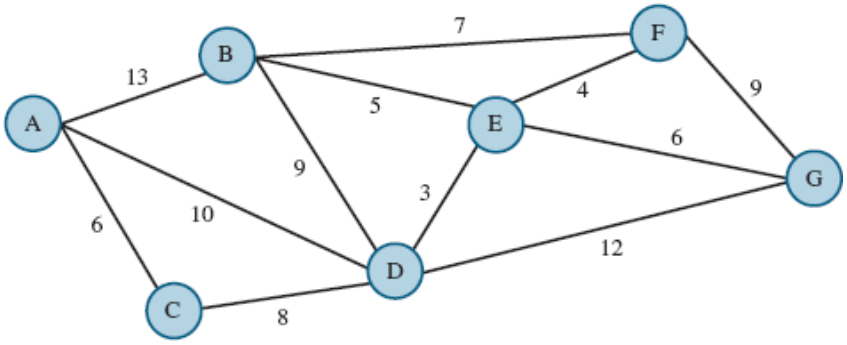
The management of the WBC television network has been celebrating for days. What a coup! After several unsuccessful attempts in recent decades, they finally have hit the big jackpot. They have won the bidding war to gain the rights to broadcast the next Summer Olympic Games!

The price was enormous. However, the advertising income also will be huge. Even if the network loses some money in the process, the gain in prestige should make it all worthwhile. After all, the entire world follows these games closely every four years. Now the entire world receiving the feed of the broadcast from the WBC network will learn what a preeminent network it is.

However, reality also is setting in for WBC management. Telecasting the entire Olympic Games will be an enormously complex task. Many different sporting events will be occurring simultaneously in far-flung venues. An unprecedented amount of live television and live-on-the-Internet coverage of the various sporting events needs to be planned.

Due to the high amount of bandwidth that will be required to transmit the coverage of the games back to its home studios, WBC needs to upgrade its computer network. It operates a private computer network as shown in the network diagram below. The games will be held near node A. WBC's home studios are located at node G. At peak times, coverage of the games will require 35 GB/s (35 gigabytes of data per second) to be sent through the network from node A to node G. The capacity of each link in the network is shown in the diagram below (in GB/s). WBC can divide the transmission and route it through multiple paths of the network from A to G, so long as the total bandwidth required on each link does not exceed the capacity of that link.

page 408



a. By utilizing the entire computer network, what is the maximum bandwidth available (in GB/s) for transmission from the general site of the Olympic Games (node A) to the home studios (node G)? Set up and solve a linear programming spreadsheet model.

b. WBC would like to expand the capacity of the network so it can handle the peak requirement of 35 GB/s from the Olympics site (A) to the home studios (G). WBC can increase the capacity of each link of the computer network by installing additional fiber optic cables. The next table shows the existing capacity of each network segment (in GB/s), the maximum additional capacity that can be added (in GB/s), and the cost to increase the capacity (in millions of dollars per unit GB/s added). Make a copy of the spreadsheet model used to solve part *a* and make any revisions necessary to solve this new problem of handling the peak requirement of 35 GB/s.

Note: This case will be continued in the next chapter (Case 10-4), so we suggest that you save your spreadsheet model from part *b.*

Network Segment		Existing Capacity (GB/s)	Maximum Additional Capacity (GB/s)	Cost per GB/s of Additional Capacity ($million)
From	To			
A	B	13	6	2.8
A	C	6	4	2.5
A	D	10	3	2.8
B	D	9	4	2.5
B	E	5	5	3.1
B	F	7	3	1.6
C	D	8	5	3.9
D	E	3	2	2.8
D	G	12	5	1.6
E	F	4	2	4.6
E	G	6	4	2.9
F	G	9	5	1.8

[1]Be aware that a minimum-cost flow problem that does have capacity constraints on the arcs is sometimes referred to as a *capacitated transshipment problem.* We will not use this terminology.

[2]Another name sometimes used is *undirected arc,* but we will not use this terminology.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

Integer Programming

Introduction to Part 4 (Chapters 10 and 11): Using Integer or Nonlinear Programming to Perform Prescriptive Analytics **Part 3 (Chapters 5–9) has focused on describing linear programming and its applications. Devoting five chapters to this topic was certainly appropriate because linear programming plays a fundamental role in the methodology of management science. It is very widely used for performing prescriptive analytics, and it also is incorporated into some of the other techniques of management science.**

However, as described in the introduction to Part 3, applying linear programming does require satisfying some basic assumptions reasonably closely, so it can't be applied everywhere. One key assumption is the **continuous-variables assumption**, which requires that the decision variables can take on any nonnegative values (not just integer values) as long as they satisfy all the constraints. Another assumption is the **proportionality assumption**, which requires that all the functions in the decision model must be linear functions. Still another key assumption is the **certainty assumption**, which requires (as a close approximation) that all the parameters in the decision model must be known constants.

Both types of decision models presented in Part 4(Chapters 10 and 11) still satisfy the certainty assumption. (Part 5 will focus on the

techniques of management science when this assumption is violated.) However, in each case, one of the other assumptions is violated instead.

Many problems arise in practice that completely fit linear programming except that the **decision variables need to have integer values, thereby violating the continuous-variables assumption**. The name given to such problems is **integer programming** (or integer linear programming). For problems where only some of the decision variables are required to be integer, the name is **mixed integer programming**. Software packages that can solve integer programming or mixed integer programming problems are widely available.

integer programming

A type of problem or model where some or all of its decision variables are required to have integer values. (Section 10.1)

It often is convenient to use **binary variables** (variables whose only values are 0 or 1) to represent **yes-or-no decisions,** where a value of 1 indicates a yes decision and a value of 0 indicates a no decision. The name given to problems with just binary variables is **binary integer programming.** After describing the nature of integer programming in general, **Chapter 10** focuses on using binary integer programming to deal with yes-or-no decisions.

binary variable

A variable whose only possible values are 0 and 1. (Section 10.1)

binary integer programming

A type of problem or model that fits linear programming except that it uses binary decision variables. (Section 10.1)

The other chapter in Part 4, **Chapter 11**, focuses on **nonlinear programming**. Nonlinear programming problems completely fit linear programming except for the one major change that **the proportionality assumption is violated**. Therefore, some or all of the functions in the decision model now are **nonlinear functions** instead of linear functions. Chapter 11 describes how such problems arise and how the analysis should be adjusted accordingly.

This book's website also includes two supplements for Chapter 10.

Resumption of Chapter Ten

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the nature of integer programming.
2. Describe how binary decision variables are used to represent yes-or-no decisions.
3. Use binary decision variables to formulate constraints for mutually exclusive alternatives and contingent decisions.
4. Formulate a binary integer programming model for the selection of projects.
5. Formulate a binary integer programming model for the selection of sites for facilities.
6. Formulate a binary integer programming model for crew scheduling in the travel industry.
7. Formulate other basic binary integer programming models from a description of the problems.
8. Use mixed binary integer programming to deal with setup costs for initiating the production of a product.

Chapters 5–9 have been devoted to describing the various ways that *linear programming* can be used in powerful ways to perform prescriptive analytics. This fundamental tool of management science has made a great impact on numerous businesses around the world. However, linear programming does make some assumptions that occasionally are violated, in which case another approach is needed. Fortunately, management science has a big toolbox of techniques available for using other approaches as needed. The remaining print chapters, starting with this one, present the most widely used alternative techniques.

The title of this chapter is *integer programming* because it resembles linear programming except some or all of its decision variables are required to have integer values. Sometimes these decision variables are binary variables that are restricted to just the values, 0 and 1, in order to represent *yes-or-no decisions.* Section 10.1 describes the nature of integer programming in its various forms. Section 10.2 presents a case study that involves making yes-or-no decisions. The following four sections then illustrate the kinds of important applications that are made possible by using binary decision variables to represent yes-or-no decisions.

10.1 The Nature of Integer Programming

One of the three key assumptions of linear programming is the **continuous-variables assumption,** which requires that the decision variables can take on any nonnegative values (not just integer values) that fall within its feasible range. (The following chapters will consider the other two assumptions and the changed approach needed if either of these assumptions is violated.) What do we have if the continuous-variables assumption is violated because some decision variables must have integer values?

continuous-variables assumption

Requires that the decision variables can take on any nonnegative values (not just integer values) within its feasible range.

A problem that fits linear programming except that some or all of its decision variables are required to have integer values is called an **integer programming problem.** If only some of the decision variables have this restriction, the problem also is referred to as a **mixed integer programming problem.**

(Integer programming also encompasses adding integer constraints to decision variables in models that go beyond linear programming, but we will not delve into these more advanced topics.) Some decision variables make sense only if they have integer values because they are dealing with whole numbers of production quantities, vehicles, shipments, people, and so forth. Therefore, integer programming problems are quite common. For example, the TBA Airlines problem presented in Section 6.2 is one example of a general integer programming problem. Its decision variables are the number of small airplanes and the number of large airplanes to purchase, so these numbers must be integers. We saw there that the model for such a problem is formulated just like for a linear programming problem except for adding the constraint for each integer decision variable that it must be an integer. This is simply done, as shown in the spreadsheet model for this example that is displayed in Figure 6.2.

Another example of an integer programming problem arises when dealing with the kinds of *product-mix problems,* including the Wyndor Glass Company case study, that were introduced in Chapter 5.

For the Wyndor case study, the goal was to find the best mix of *production rates* for the products under consideration. However, in similar situations, the goal instead may be to find the best mix of *production quantities.* This would have arisen for the Wyndor problem if the production facilities were going to be shifted over to a new set of products in another week, so the goal now was to find *how many* of the special doors and windows should be produced in this last week. This turns the original linear programming problem into an integer programming problem. The spreadsheet model shown in Figure 5.12 remains exactly the same except for adding the constraints that the two decision variables (the number of doors and windows to produce) must be integers. Because the optimal solution for the original linear programming program was all integers (produce 2 doors and 6 windows per week), this also is the optimal solution for the integer programming problem.

Solver can readily find an optimal solution for small integer programming problems. However, large integer programming problems can be considerably more difficult to solve than similar linear programming problems. The algorithms for linear programming usually can solve problems of basically any size (occasionally even with millions of constraints and variables) very efficiently and quickly. The algorithms for integer programming tend to take much longer to attempt to solve problems. This is not an issue for small problems (say, under a hundred constraints and variables) but it can start taking a long time to solve medium problems (say, hundreds of constraints and variables). It might not even succeed in reaching an optimal solution for larger problems (say, a few thousand constraints and variables). Fortunately, ongoing research continues to improve these algorithms.

Because of the challenges of solving larger integer programming problems, it is important to think about when integer constraints are *truly* needed. If each variable represents a rate (e.g., production per week), it is usually reasonable to have non-integer solutions. Even if the end result for a decision variable *must* be an integer, if the typical values are large (say, in the hundreds or thousands), it might be reasonable to leave out the integer constraints and then simply round to the nearest integer each of the noninteger values in the optimal solution for the linear programming problem. With such large values of the decision variables, the differences in the value of the objective function resulting from rounding (up or down) are usually relatively insignificant (typically fractions of a percent).

A danger with this rounding approach is that the rounded solution might not be feasible for either the linear or integer programming problem. Rounding strategically can help (e.g., rounding down for resource-constrained problems so that *fewer* resources are used). Even if it is not clear how (or is

not possible) to round strategically to retain feasibility, the rounding approach can still work if there is a bit of flexibility in the constraints such that they can be revised enough to include the rounded solution.

If the values of the decision variables are *not* very large (such as for the TBA Airlines problem presented in Section 6.2 where the decision variables are the number of small airplanes and the number of large airplanes to purchase), then rounding up or down typically *does* lead to significant differences in the value of the objective function (on a percentage basis). In this case, rounding is *not* reasonable and integer constraints are needed.

Because general types of integer programming problems can be formulated just like for linear programming problems (except for adding the integer constraints for the integer-restricted variables), we will not present any related formulation examples. However, there is one special type of integer programming problem that opens up innovative formulation possibilities for dealing with a variety of important applications.

This special type of integer programming problem is where the integer-restricted variables are further restricted to be *binary decision variables.*

Binary decision variables are variables that can have only two values, 0 and 1. They are widely used in integer programming models to represent **yes-or-no decisions,** where a value of 1 corresponds to a yes decision and a value of 0 corresponds to a no decision. Such models are called **binary integer programming (BIP)** models. (We hereafter will use the **BIP** abbreviation.) A BIP model is either *pure* BIP (all of the decision variables are binary decision variables) or *mixed* BIP (only some of the decision variables are binary decision variables).

binary decision variable

A binary variable that represents a yes-or-no decision by assigning a value of 1 for choosing yes and a value of 0 for choosing no.

BIP

Abbreviation for binary integer programming.

Starting with a case study, the next four sections of the chapter present a variety of examples of pure BIP problems. Section 10.6 then provides an example of a mixed BIP problem. For clarity, all of these

examples have been kept quite small, so sometimes they could be solved by simply enumerating and evaluating the options individually without even needing to use BIP solution procedures. However, they are illustrative of the sometimes vastly larger problems that often arise in practice and require the use of BIP solution procedures.

BIP problems arise with considerable frequency in a wide variety of applications, as illustrated in the following sections. In addition, one of the supplements to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** provides additional formulation examples for BIP problems.

You will see throughout this chapter that BIP problems can be formulated on a spreadsheet just as readily as linear programming problems. The difference lies in the greater difficulty of solving BIP problems after they have been formulated. You normally will have no problem solving the small BIP problems found in this book, but Solver may fail on somewhat larger problems. To provide some perspective on this issue, we include a supplement at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** that is entitled Some Perspectives on Solving Binary Integer Programming Problems. This supplement discusses some of the difficulties and pitfalls involved in solving large BIP problems.

Review *Questions*

. What is the continuous-variables assumption?
. What change in a linear programming problem makes it an integer programming problem?
. Comparing a large linear programming problem and the corresponding integer programming problem, which of these problem types tends to be more difficult to solve?
. What is the distinction between pure and mixed integer programming problems?
. What are some examples where the decision variables need to be integers?
. What are binary decision variables?

10.2 A Case Study: The California Manufacturing Co. Problem

The top management of the California Manufacturing Company wants to develop a plan for the expansion of the company. Therefore, a management

science study will be conducted to help guide the decisions that need to be made. The president of the company, Armando Ortega, is about to meet with the company's top management scientist, Steve Chan, to discuss the study that management wants done. Let's eavesdrop on this meeting.

Armando Ortega (president): OK, Steve, here is the situation. With our growing business, we are strongly considering building a new factory. Maybe even two. The factory needs to be close to a large, skilled labor force, so we are looking at near Los Angeles and near San Francisco as the potential sites. We also are considering building one new warehouse. Not more than one. This warehouse would make sense in saving shipping costs only if it is in the metropolitan area of the same city as a new factory. Either Los Angeles or San Francisco. If we decide not to build a new factory at all, we definitely don't want the warehouse either. Is this clear, so far?

Steve Chan (management scientist): Yes, Armando, I understand, What are your criteria for making these decisions?

Armando Ortega: Well, all the other members of top management have joined me in addressing this issue. We have concluded that these two potential sites are very comparable on nonfinancial grounds. Therefore, we feel that these decisions should be based mainly on financial considerations. We have $10 million of capital available for this expansion and we want it to go as far as possible in improving our bottom line. Which feasible combination of investments in factories and warehouses in which locations will be most profitable for the company in the long run? In your language, we want to *maximize the total net present value of these investments.*

Steve Chan: That's very clear. It sounds like a classical management science problem.

What is the most profitable combination of investments?

An Application Vignette

With headquarters in Houston, Texas, **Waste Management, Inc.** is the leading provider of comprehensive waste-management services in North America. With 26,000 collection and transfer vehicles, its 42,000 employees provide services to over 20 million customers throughout the United States and Canada. The company generated over $15 billion in revenue in 2020.

The company's collection-and-transfer vehicles need to follow tens of thousands of daily routes. With an annual operating cost of nearly $120,000 per vehicle, management wanted to have a comprehensive route-management system that would make every route as profitable and efficient as possible. Therefore, a prescriptive analytics team that included a number of consultants was formed to attack this problem.

The heart of the route-management system developed by this team is a **huge mixed BIP model** that optimizes the routes assigned to the respective collection-and-transfer vehicles. Although the objective function takes several factors into account, the primary goal is the minimization of total travel time. The main decision variables are binary variables that equal 1 if the route assigned to a particular vehicle includes a particular possible leg and that equal 0 otherwise. A geographical information system (GIS) provides the data about the distance and time required to go between any two points. All of this is imbedded within a Web-based Java application that is integrated with the company's other systems.

It is estimated that the implementation of this comprehensive route-management system *increased the company's cash flow by* **$648 million** *over the initial five-year period,* largely because of *savings of* **$498 million** in operational expenses over this same period. It also is providing better customer service.

This dramatic application of prescriptive analytics resulted in Waste Management winning the prestigious honor of being one of the seven 2004 worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: S. Sahoo, S. Kim, B.-I. Kim, B. Krass, and A. Popov, Jr., "Routing Optimization for Waste Management," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 35, no. 1 (January–February 2005): 24–36. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Armando Ortega: That's why I called you in, Steve. I would like you to conduct a quick study to determine the most profitable combination of investments. I also would like you to take a look at the amount of capital being made available and its effect on how much profit we can get from these investments. The decision to make $10 million available is only a tentative one. That amount is stretching us, because we now are investigating some other interesting project proposals that would require quite a bit of capital, so we would prefer to use less than $10 million on these particular investments if the last few million don't buy us much. On the other hand, this expansion into

the metropolitan areas of either Los Angeles or San Francisco, or maybe both, is our number one priority. It will have a real positive impact on the future of this company. So we are willing to go out and raise some more capital if it would give us a lot of bang for the buck. Therefore, we also would like you to do some ***what-if analysis*** to tell us what the effect would be if we were to change the amount of capital being made available to anything between $5 million and $15 million.

Steve Chan: Sure, Armando, we do that kind of what-if analysis all the time. We refer to it as *sensitivity analysis* because it involves checking how sensitive the outcome is to the amount of capital being made available.

Armando Ortega: Good. Now, Steve, I need your input within the next couple weeks. Can you do it?

Steve Chan: Well, Armando, as usual, the one question is whether we can gather all the necessary data that quickly. We'll need to get good estimates of the net present value of each of the possible investments. I'll need a lot of help in digging out that information.

Armando Ortega: I thought you would say that. I already have my staff working hard on developing those estimates. I can get you together with them this afternoon.

Steve Chan: Great. I'll get right on it.

Background

The **California Manufacturing Company** is a diversified company with several factories and warehouses throughout California, but none yet near Los Angeles or San Francisco. Because the company is enjoying increasing sales and earnings, management feels that the time may be ripe to expand into one or both of those prime locations. A basic issue is whether to build a new factory near either Los Angeles or San Francisco, or perhaps even near both cities. Management also is considering building at most one new warehouse, but will restrict the choice of location to near a city where a new factory is being built.

The decisions to be made are listed in the second column of Table 10.1 in the form of yes-or-no questions. In each case, giving an answer of yes to the question corresponds to the decision to make the investment to build the indicated facility (a factory or a warehouse) near the indicated location (Los Angeles or San Francisco). The capital required for the investment is given in the rightmost column, where management has

made the tentative decision that the total amount of capital being made available for all the investments is $10 million. (Note that this amount is inadequate for some of the combinations of investments.) The fourth column shows the estimated *net present value* (net long-run profit considering the time value of money) if the corresponding investment is made. (The net present value is 0 if the investment is not made.) Much of the work of Steve Chan's study (with substantial help from the president's staff) has gone into developing these estimates of the net present values. As specified by the company's president, Armando Ortega, the objective now is to find the feasible combination of investments that maximizes the total net present value.

Introducing Binary Decision Variables for the Yes-or-No Decisions

As summarized in the second column of Table 10.1, the problem facing management is to make four interrelated *yes-or-no decisions.* To formulate a mathematical model for this problem, Steve Chan needs to introduce a decision variable for each of these decisions. Since each decision has just two alternatives, choose yes or choose no, the corresponding decision variable only needs to have two values (one for each alternative). Therefore, Steve uses a *binary variable,* whose only possible values are 0 and 1, where 1 corresponds to the decision to choose yes and 0 corresponds to choosing no.

TABLE 10.1

Data for the California Manufacturing Co. Problem

Decision Number	Yes-or-No Question	Decision Variable	Net Present Value (Millions)	Capital Required (Millions)
1	Build a factory near Los Angeles?	x_1	$8	$6
2	Build a factory near San Francisco?	x_2	5	3
3	Build a warehouse near Los Angeles?	x_3	6	5
4	Build a warehouse near San Francisco?	x_4	4	2
				Capital available: $10 million

These decision variables are shown in the second column of Table 10.2. The final two columns give the interpretation of a value of 1 and 0, respectively.

TABLE 10.2

Binary Decision Variables for the California Manufacturing Co. Problem

Decision Number	Decision Variable	Possible Value	Interpretation of a Value of 1	Interpretation of a Value of 0
1	x_1	0 or 1	Build a factory near Los Angeles	Do not build this factory
2	x_2	0 or 1	Build a factory near San Francisco	Do not build this factory
3	x_3	0 or 1	Build a warehouse near Los Angeles	Do not build this warehouse
4	x_4	0 or 1	Build a warehouse near San Francisco	Do not build this warehouse

Dealing with Interrelationships between the Decisions

Recall that management wants no more than one new warehouse to be built. In terms of the corresponding decision variables, x_3 and x_4, this means that no more than one of these variables is allowed to have the value 1. Therefore, these variables must satisfy the constraint

$$x_3 + x_4 \leq 1$$

as part of the mathematical model for the problem.

These two alternatives (build a warehouse near Los Angeles or build a warehouse near San Francisco) are referred to as **mutually exclusive alternatives** because choosing one of these alternatives excludes choosing the other. Groups of two or more mutually exclusive alternatives arise commonly in BIP problems. For each such group where at most one of the alternatives can be chosen, the constraint on the corresponding binary decision variables has the form shown above, namely, the sum of these variables must be *less than or equal to* 1. For some groups of mutually exclusive alternatives in other applications, management will exclude the possibility of choosing *none* of the alternatives, in which case the constraint will set the sum of the corresponding binary decision variables *equal* to 1.

page 415

mutually exclusive alternatives

A group of alternatives where choosing any one alternative excludes choosing any of the others.

The California Manufacturing Co. problem also has another important kind of restriction. Management will allow a warehouse to be built near a particular

city only if a factory also is being built near that city. For example, consider the situation for Los Angeles (LA).

With a group of mutually exclusive alternatives, only one of the corresponding binary decision variables can equal 1.

If decide no, do not build a factory near LA (i.e., if choose $x_1 = 0$),

then cannot build a warehouse near LA (i.e., must choose $x_3 = 0$).

If decide yes, do build a factory near LA (i.e., if choose $x_1 = 1$),

then can either build a warehouse near LA or not (i.e., can choose either $x_3 = 1$ or 0).

How can these interrelationships between the factory and warehouse decisions for LA be expressed in a constraint for a mathematical model? The key is to note that, for either value of x_1, the permissible value or values of x_3 are less than or equal to x_1. Since x_1 and x_3 are binary variables, the constraint

$$x_3 \leq x_1$$

forces x_3 to take on a permissible value given the value of x_1.

Exactly the same reasoning leads to

$$x_4 \leq x_2$$

as the corresponding constraint for San Francisco. Just as for Los Angeles, this constraint forces having no warehouse near San Francisco ($x_4 = 0$) if a factory will not be built there ($x_2 = 0$), whereas going ahead with the factory there($x_2 = 1$) leaves open the decision to build the warehouse there ($x_4 = 0$ or 1).

For either city, the warehouse decision is referred to as a **contingent decision,** because the decision depends on a prior decision regarding whether to build a factory there. In general, one yes-or-no decision is said to be contingent on another yes-or-no decision if it is allowed to be yes *only if* the other is yes. As above, the mathematical constraint expressing this relationship requires that the binary variable for the former decision must be less than or equal to the binary variable for the latter decision.

contingent decision

A yes-or-no decision is a contingent decision if it can be yes only if a certain other yes-or-no decision is yes.

The rightmost column of Table 10.1 reveals one more interrelationship between the four decisions, namely, that the amount of capital expended on the four facilities under consideration cannot exceed the amount available ($10 million). Therefore, the model needs to include a constraint that requires

$$\text{Capital expended} \leq \$10 \text{ million}$$

How can the amount of capital expended be expressed in terms of the four binary decision variables? To start this process, consider the first yes-or-no decision (build a factory near Los Angeles?). Combining the information in the rightmost column of Table 10.1 and the first row of Table 10.2,

$$\text{Capital expended on factory near Los Angeles} = \begin{cases} \$6 \text{ million} & \text{if } x_1 = 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } x_1 = 0 \end{cases}$$
$$= \$6 \text{ million times } x_1$$

By the same reasoning, the amount of capital expended on the other three investment opportunities (in units of millions of dollars) is $3x_2$, $5x_3$, and $2x_4$, respectively. Consequently,

$$\text{Capital expended} = 6x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + 2x_4 \qquad \text{(in millions of dollars)}$$

Therefore, the constraint becomes

$$6x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + 2x_4 \leq 10$$

Excel Tip Beware that rounding errors can occur with Excel. Therefore, even when you add a constraint that a changing cell has to be binary, Excel occasionally will return a noninteger value very close to an integer (e.g., 1.23E-10, meaning 0.000000000123). When this happens, you can replace the noninteger value with the proper integer value.

The BIP Model

page 416

As indicated by Armando Ortega in his conversation with Steve Chan, management's objective is to find the feasible combination of investments that *maximizes* the total net present value of these investments. Thus, the value of the objective function should be

$$\text{NPV} = \text{Total net present value}$$

Excel Tip In the Solver Options, the *Integer Optimality (%)* setting (1 percent by default) causes Solver to stop solving an integer programming problem when it finds a feasible solution whose objective function value is within the specified percentage of being optimal. (In Analytic Solver, this option is called *Integer Tolerance* and is found in the Engine tab of the Model pane.) This is useful for very large BIP problems since it may enable finding a near-optimal solution when finding an optimal solution in a reasonable period of time is not possible. For smaller problems (e.g., all the problems in this book), this option should be set to 0 to guarantee finding an optimal solution.

If the investment is made to build a particular facility (so that the corresponding decision variable has a value of 1), the estimated net present value from that investment is given in the fourth column of Table 10.1. If the investment is not made (so the decision variable equals 0), the net present value is 0. Therefore, continuing to use units of millions of dollars,

$$\text{NPV} = 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 6x_3 + 4x_4$$

is the quantity to enter into the objective cell to be maximized.

Incorporating the constraints developed in the preceding subsection, the complete BIP model then is shown in Figure 10.1. The format is basically the same as for linear programming models. The one key difference arises when using Solver. Each of the decision variables (cells C18:D18 and C16:D16) is constrained to be binary. In Excel's Solver, this is accomplished in the Add Constraint dialog box by choosing each range of changing cells as the left-hand side and then choosing bin from the pop-up menu. In Analytic Solver, this is accomplished by selecting each range of changing cells, and then under the Constraints menu on the Analytic Solver tab, choose Binary in the Variable Type> Bound submenu. The other constraints shown in Solver (see the lower left-hand side of Figure 10.1) have been made quite intuitive by using the suggestive range names given in the lower right-hand side of the figure. For convenience, the equations entered into the output cells in E12 and D20 use a SUMPRODUCT function that includes C17:D17 and either C11:D11 or C5:D5 because the blanks or ≤ signs in these rows are interpreted as zeroes by Solver.

FIGURE 10.1

A spreadsheet formulation of the BIP model for the California Manufacturing Co. case study where the changing cells BuildFactory? (C18:D18) and BuildWarehouse? (C16:D16) give the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**California Manufacturing Co. Facility Location Problem**						
2							
3		**NPV ($millions)**	LA	SF			
4		Warehouse	6	4			
5							
6		Factory	8	5			
7							
8		**Capital Required**					
9		**($millions)**	LA	SF			
10		Warehouse	5	2	Capital		Capital
11					Spent		Available
12		Factory	6	3	9	<=	10
13							
14					Total		Maximum
15		**Build?**	LA	SF	Warehouses		Warehouses
16		Warehouse	0	0	0	<=	1
17			<=	<=			
18		Factory	1	1			
19							
20		Total NPV ($millions)		13			

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalNPV
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
BuildWarehouse?, BuildFactory?
Subject to the Constraints:
BuildFactory? = binary
BuildWarehouse? = binary
BuildWarehouse? <= BuildFactory?
CapitalSpent <= CapitalAvailable
TotalWarehouses <= MaxWarehouses

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
10	Capital
11	Spent
12	= SUMPRODUCT(CapitalRequired,Build?)
13	
14	Total
15	Warehouses
16	= SUM(BuildWarehouse?)

Range Name	Cells
Build?	C16:D18
BuildWarehouse?	C16:D16
BuildFactory?	C18:D18
CapitalAvailable	G12
CapitalRequired	C10:D12
CapitalSpent	E12
MaxWarehouses	G16
NPV	C4:D6
TotalNPV	D20
TotalWarehouses	E16

	C	D
20	Total NPV ($millions)	=SUMPRODUCT(NPV,Build?)

Solver gives the optimal solution shown in C18:D18 and C16:D16 of the spreadsheet, namely, build factories near *both* Los Angeles and San Francisco, but do not build any warehouses. The objective cell (D20)

indicates that the total net present value from building these two factories is estimated to be $13 million.

Note how helpful the range names are for interpreting this BIP spreadsheet model.

Performing What-If Analysis

Now that Steve Chan has used the BIP model to determine what should be done when the amount of capital being made available to these investments is $10 million, his next task is to perform *what-if analysis* on this amount. Recall that Armando Ortega wants him to determine *what* the effect would be *if* this amount were changed to anything else between $5 million and $15 million.

In Chapter 8, we described three different methods of performing what-if analysis on a linear programming spreadsheet model when there is a change in a constraint: using trial and error with the spreadsheet, generating a parameter analysis report, or referring to Solver's sensitivity report. The first two of these can be used on integer programming problems in exactly the same way as for linear programming problems. The third method, however, does not work. The sensitivity report is not available for integer programming problems. This is because the concept of a shadow price and allowable range no longer applies. In contrast to linear programming, the objective function values for an integer programming problem do not change in a predictable manner when the right-hand side of a constraint is changed.

Solver's sensitivity report is *not* available for integer programming problems.

It is straightforward to determine the impact of changing the amount of available capital by trial and error. Simply try different values in the data cell CapitalAvailable (G12) and re-solve with Solver. However, a more systematic way to perform this analysis is to generate a parameter analysis report using Analytic Solver. The parameter analysis report works for integer programming models in exactly the same way as it does for linear programming models (as described in Section 8.3 in the subsection entitled *Using a Parameter Analysis Report Generated by Analytic Solver to Do Sensitivity Analysis Systematically*).

Trial-and-error and/or a parameter analysis report can be used to perform what-if analysis for integer programming problems.

After defining CapitalAvailable (G12) as a parameter cell with values ranging from 5 to 15 ($millions), the parameter analysis report shown in Figure 10.2 was generated by executing the series of steps outlined in

Section 8.3. Note how Figure 10.2 shows the effect on the optimal solution and the resulting total net present value of varying the amount of capital being made available.

FIGURE 10.2

The parameter analysis report generated by Analytic Solver that shows the effect on the optimal solution and the resulting total net present value of systematically varying the amount of capital being made available for these investments.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	CapitalAvailable	BuildWarehouseLA?	BuildWarehouseSF?	BuildFactoryLA?	BuildFactorySF?	TotalINPV
2	5	0	1	0	1	9
3	6	0	1	0	1	9
4	7	0	1	0	1	9
5	8	0	1	0	1	9
6	9	0	0	1	1	13
7	10	0	0	1	1	13
8	11	0	1	1	1	17
9	12	0	1	1	1	17
10	13	0	1	1	1	17
11	14	1	0	1	1	19
12	15	1	0	1	1	19

page 418

What-if analysis also could be performed on any of the other data cells—NPV (C4:D6), CapitalRequired (C10:D12), and MaxWarehouses (G16)—in a similar way with a parameter analysis report (or by using trial and error with the spreadsheet). However, a careful job was done in developing good estimates of the net present value of each of the possible investments, and there is little uncertainty in the values entered in the other data cells, so Steve Chan decides that further what-if analysis is not needed.

Management's Conclusion

Steve Chan's report is delivered to Armando Ortega within the two-week deadline. The report recommends the plan presented in Figure 10.1 (build a factory near both Los Angeles and San Francisco but no warehouses) if management decides to stick with its tentative decision to make $10 million of capital available for these investments. One advantage of this plan is that it only uses $9 million of this capital, which frees up $1 million of capital for other project proposals currently being investigated. The report also highlights the results shown in Figure 10.2 while emphasizing two points. One is that a heavy penalty would be paid (a reduction in the total net present value from $13 million to $9 million) if the amount of capital being made available were to

be reduced below $9 million. The other is that *increasing* the amount of capital being made available by just $1 million (from $10 million to $11 million) would enable a substantial increase of $4 million in the total net present value (from $13 million to $17 million). However, a much larger further increase in the amount of capital being made available (from $11 million to $14 million) would be needed to enable a considerably smaller further increase in the total net present value (from $17 million to $19 million).

Armando Ortega deliberates with other members of top management before making a decision. It is quickly concluded that increasing the amount of capital being made available all the way up to $14 million would be stretching the company's financial resources too dangerously to justify the relatively small payoff. However, there is considerable discussion of the pros and cons of the two options of using either $9 million or $11 million of capital. Because of the large payoff from the latter option (an additional $4 million in total net present value), management finally decides to adopt the plan presented in row 8 of Figure 10.2. Thus, the company will build new factories near both Los Angeles and San Francisco as well as a new warehouse near San Francisco, with an estimated total net present value of $17 million. However, because of the large capital requirements of this plan, management also decides to defer building the warehouse until the two factories are completed so that their profits can help finance the construction of the warehouse.

Review *Questions*

. What are the four interrelated decisions that need to be made by the management of the California Manufacturing Co.?
. Why are binary decision variables appropriate to represent these decisions?
. What is the objective specified by management for this problem?
. What are the mutually exclusive alternatives in this problem? What is the form of the resulting constraint in the BIP model?
. What are the contingent decisions in this problem? For each one, what is the form of the resulting constraint in the BIP model?
. What is the tentative managerial decision concerning which what-if analysis needs to be performed?

10.3 USING BIP FOR PROJECT SELECTION: THE TAZER CORP.

PROBLEM

The California Manufacturing Co. case study focused on four proposed projects: (1) build a factory near Los Angeles, (2) build a factory near San Francisco, (3) build a warehouse near Los Angeles, and (4) build a warehouse near San Francisco. Management needed to make yes-or-no decisions about which of these projects to select. This is typical of many applications of BIP. However, the nature of the projects may vary considerably from one application to the next. Instead of the proposed construction projects in the case study, our next example involves the selection of research and development projects.

This example is adapted from both Case 6-7 and its continuation in Section 15.8, but all the relevant information is repeated below.

The Tazer Corp. Problem

Tazer Corp., a pharmaceutical manufacturing company, is beginning the search for a new breakthrough drug. The following five potential research and development projects have been identified for attempting to develop such a drug.

Project Up:	Develop a more effective antidepressant that does not cause serious mood swings.
Project Stable:	Develop a drug that addresses manic depression.
Project Choice:	Develop a less intrusive birth control method for women.
Project Hope:	Develop a vaccine to prevent HIV infection.
Project Release:	Develop a more effective drug to lower blood pressure.

In contrast to Case 6-7, Tazer management now has concluded that the company cannot devote enough money to research and development to undertake all of these projects. Only $1.2 billion is available, which will be enough for only two or three of the projects. The first row of Table 10.3 shows the amount needed (in millions of dollars) for each of these projects, where the footnote points out the budget constraint that only $1.2 billion is available. The second row estimates each project's probability of being successful. If a

project is successful, it is estimated that the resulting drug would generate the revenue shown in the third row. Thus, the *expected revenue* (in the statistical sense) from a potential drug is the product of its numbers in the second and third rows, whereas its *expected profit* is this expected revenue minus the investment given in the first row. These expected profits are shown in the bottom row of Table 10.3.

TABLE 10.3

Data for the Tazer Project Selection Problem

	Project				
	1 (Up)	2 (Stable)	3 (Choice)	4 (Hope)	5 (Release)
R&D investment ($million)*	400	300	600	500	200
Success rate	50%	35%	35%	20%	45%
Revenue if successful ($million)	1,400	1,200	2,200	3,000	600
Expected profit ($million)	300	120	170	100	70

*Only $1.2 billion is available for R&D investment.

The objective is to choose the projects that will maximize the expected profit while satisfying the budget constraint.

Tazer management now wants to determine which of these projects should be undertaken to maximize their expected total profit.

Formulation with Binary Variables

Because the decision for each of the five proposed research and development projects is a yes-or-no decision, the corresponding decision variables are binary variables. Thus, the decision variable for each project has the following interpretation.

$$\text{Decision Variable} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if approve the project} \\ 0, & \text{if reject the project} \end{cases}$$

Let x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, and x_5 denote the decision variables for the respective projects in the order in which they are listed in Table 10.3.

An Application Vignette

The **Midcontinent Independent System Operator, Inc. (MISO)** is a nonprofit organization formed in 1998 (and renamed in 2013) to administer the generation and transmission of electricity throughout the midwestern United States. As of 2021, it serves approximately 2 million customers (both individuals and businesses) through its control of approximately 6,000 miles of high-voltage transmission lines and more than 1,000 power plants capable of generating massive amounts of electricity. This infrastructure spans 15 midwestern and southern states plus the Canadian province of Manitoba. MISO generates more than $22 billion in annual gross market energy transactions.

The key mission of any regional transmission organization is to reliably and efficiently provide the electricity needed by its customers. MISO transformed the way this was done by using **mixed binary integer programming** to minimize the total cost of providing the needed electricity. Each main binary variable in the model represents a **yes-or-no decision** about whether a particular power plant should be on during a particular time period. After solving this model, the results are then fed into a linear programming model to set electricity output levels and establish prices for electricity trades.

yes-or-no decision

A decision whose only possible choices are (1) yes, go ahead with a certain option or (2) no, decline this option. (Section 10.1)

The mixed BIP model is a massive one which began with about 3,300,000 continuous variables, 450,000 binary variables, and 3,900,000 functional constraints. A special technique (Lagrangian relaxation) is used to obtain an advanced feasible solution for such a huge model.

This innovative application of prescriptive analytics yielded *savings* of approximately **$2.5 billion** over the four years from 2007 to 2010, with an additional savings of about **$7 billion** expected through 2020. These dramatic results led to MISO winning the prestigious **first prize** in the 2011 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: B. Carlson and 12 co-authors, "MISO Unlocks Billions in Savings through the Application of Operations Research for Energy and Ancillary Services Markets," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics)* 42, no. 1 (January–February 2012): 58–73. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

If a project is rejected, there is neither any profit nor any loss, whereas the expected profit if a project is approved is given in the bottom row of Table 10.3. Therefore, when using units of millions of dollars, the expected total profit is

$$P = 300x_1 + 120x_2 + 170x_3 + 100x_4 + 70x_5$$

The objective is to select the projects to approve that will maximize this expected total profit while satisfying the budget constraint.

Other than requiring the decision variables to be binary, the budget constraint limiting the total investment to no more than $1.2 billion is the only constraint that has been imposed by Tazer management on the selection of these research and development projects.

Referring to the first row of Table 10.3, this constraint can be expressed in terms of the decision variables as

$$400x_1 + 300x_2 + 600x_3 + 500x_4 + 200x_5 \leq 1{,}200$$

With this background, the stage now is set for formulating a BIP spreadsheet model for this problem.

A BIP Spreadsheet Model for the Tazer Problem

Figure 10.3 shows a BIP spreadsheet model for this problem. The data in Table 10.3 have been transferred into cells C5:G8. The changing cells are DoProject? (C10:G10) and the objective cell is TotalExpectedProfit (H8). The one functional constraint is depicted in cells H5:J5. In addition, the changing cells DoProject? are constrained to be binary, as shown in the Solver Parameters box.

FIGURE 10.3

A spreadsheet formulation of the BIP model for the Tazer Corp. project selection problem where the changing cells DoProject? (C10:G10) give the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1		**Tazer Corp. Project Selection Problem**								
2										
3										
4			Up	Stable	Choice	Hope	Release	Total		Budget
5		R&D Investment ($million)	400	300	600	500	200	1,200	<=	1,200
6		Success Rate	50%	35%	35%	20%	45%			
7		Revenue If Successful ($million)	1,400	1,200	2,200	3,000	600			
8		Expected Profit ($million)	300	120	170	100	70	540		
9										
10		Do Project?	1	0	1	0	1			

	B	C	D	E	F	G
8	Expected Profit ($million)	=C7*C6-C5	=D7*D6-D5	=E7*E6-E5	=F7*F6-F5	=G7*G6-G5

Range Name	Cells
Budget	J5
DoProject?	C10:G10
ExpectedProfit	C8:G8
RandDInvestment	C5:G5
Revenue	C7:G7
SuccessRate	C6:G6
TotalExpectedProfit	H8
TotalRandD	H5

	H
4	Total
5	=SUMPRODUCT(RandDInvestment,DoProject?)
6	
7	
8	=SUMPRODUCT(ExpectedProfit,DoProject?)

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalExpectedProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
DoProject?
Subject to the Constraints:
DoProject? = binary
TotalRandD <= Budget

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

The changing cells DoProject? (C10:G10) in Figure 10.3 show the optimal solution that has been obtained by Solver, namely, Choose Project Up, Project Choice, and Project Release.

The objective cell indicates that the resulting total expected profit is $540 million.

Review *Questions*

. How are binary variables used to represent managerial decisions on which projects from a group of proposed projects should be selected for approval?

. What types of projects are under consideration in the Tazer Corp. problem?

. What is the objective for this problem?

10.4 USING BIP FOR THE SELECTION OF SITES FOR EMERGENCY SERVICES FACILITIES: THE CALIENTE CITY PROBLEM

Although the problem encountered in the California Manufacturing Co. case study can be described as a *project selection* problem (as was done at the beginning of the preceding section), it could just as well have been called a *site selection* problem. Recall that the company's management needed to select a site (near Los Angeles or near San Francisco) for its new factory as well as for its possible new warehouse. For either of the possible sites for the new factory (or the warehouse), there is a *yes-or-no decision* for whether that site should be selected, so it becomes natural to represent each such decision by a binary decision variable.

Various kinds of site selection problems are one of the most common types of applications of BIP. The kinds of facilities for which sites need to be selected can be of any type. In some cases, several sites are to be selected for several facilities of a particular type, whereas only a single site is to be selected in other cases.

page 422

We will focus here on the selection of sites for emergency services facilities. These facilities might be fire stations, police stations, ambulance centers, and so forth. In any of these cases, the overriding concern commonly is to provide facilities close enough to each part of the area being served that the response time to an emergency anywhere in the area will be sufficiently small. The form of the BIP model then will be basically the same regardless of the specific type of emergency services being considered.

To illustrate, let us consider an example where sites are being selected for fire stations. For simplicity, this example will divide the area being served into only eight tracts instead of the many dozens or hundreds that would be typical in real applications.

The Caliente City Problem

Caliente City is located in a particularly warm and arid part of the United States, so it is especially prone to the occurrence of fires. The city has become a popular place for senior citizens to move to after retirement, so it

has been growing rapidly and spreading well beyond its original borders. However, the city still has only one fire station, located in the congested center of the original town site. The result has been some long delays in fire trucks reaching fires in the outer parts of the city, causing much more damage than would have occurred with a prompt response. The city's residents are very unhappy about this, so the city council has directed the city manager to develop a plan for locating multiple fire stations throughout the city (including perhaps moving the current fire station) that would greatly reduce the response time to any fire. In particular, the city council has adopted the following policy about the maximum acceptable response time for fire trucks to reach a fire anywhere in the city after being notified about the fire.

$$\text{Response time} \leq 10\text{minutes}$$

Having had a management science and business analytics courses in college, the city manager recognizes that BIP provides her with a powerful tool for analyzing this problem. To get started, she divides the city into eight tracts and then gathers data on the estimated response time for a fire in each tract from a potential fire station in each of the eight tracts. These data are shown in Table 10.4. For example, if a decision were to be made to locate a fire station in tract 1 and if that fire station were to be used to respond to a fire in any of the tracts, the second column of Table 10.4 shows what the (estimated) response time would be. (Since the response time would exceed 10 minutes for a fire in tracts 3, 5, 6, 7, or 8, a fire station actually would need to be located nearer to each of these tracts to satisfy the city council's new policy.) The bottom row of Table 10.4 shows what the cost would be of acquiring the land and constructing a fire station in any of the eight tracts. (The cost is far less for tract 5 because the current fire station already is there so only a modest renovation is needed if the decision is made to retain a fire station there.) TABLE 10.4

Response Time and Cost Data for the Caliente City Problem

		Fire Station in Tract							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Response times (minutes) for a fire in tract	1	2	8	18	9	23	22	16	28
	2	9	3	10	12	16	14	21	25
	3	17	8	4	20	21	8	22	17
	4	10	13	19	2	18	21	6	12
	5	21	12	16	13	5	11	9	12
	6	25	15	7	21	15	3	14	8
	7	14	22	18	7	13	15	2	9
	8	30	24	15	14	17	9	8	3
Cost of station ($thousands)		350	250	450	300	50	400	300	200

The objective now is to determine which tracts should receive a fire station to minimize the total cost of the stations while ensuring that each tract has at least one station close enough to respond to a fire in no more than 10 minutes.

The objective is to minimize the total cost of ensuring a response time of no more than 10 minutes.

Formulation with Binary Variables

page 423

For each of the eight tracts, there is a yes-or-no decision as to whether that tract should receive a fire station. Therefore, we let $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_8$ denote the corresponding binary decision variables, where

$$x_j = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if tract } j \text{ is selected to receive a fire station} \\ 0, & \text{if not} \end{cases}$$

for $j = 1, 2, \ldots, 8$.

Since the objective is to minimize the total cost of the fire stations that will satisfy the city council's new policy on response times, the total cost needs to be expressed in terms of these decision variables. Using units of thousands of dollars while referring to the bottom row of Table 10.4, the total cost is

$$C = 350x_1 + 250x_2 + 450x_3 + 300x_4 + 50x_5 + 400x_6 + 300x_7 + 200x_8$$

We also need to formulate constraints in terms of these decision variables that will ensure that no response times exceed 10 minutes. For example, consider tract 1. When a fire occurs there, the row for tract 1 in Table 10.4 indicates that the only tracts close enough that a fire station would provide a response time not exceeding 10 minutes are tract 1 itself, tract 2, and tract 4.

Thus, at least one of these three tracts needs to have a fire station. This requirement is expressed in the constraint

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_4 \geq 1$$

Incidentally, this constraint is called a **set covering constraint** because it *covers* the requirement of having a fire station located in at least one member of the *set* of tracts (tracts 1, 2, and 4) that are within 10 minutes of tract 1. In general, any constraint where a sum of binary variables is required to be greater than or equal to one is referred to as a set covering constraint.

set covering constraint

A constraint that requires the sum of certain binary variables to be greater than or equal to 1.

This constraint ensures that the response time for a fire in tract 1 will be no more than 10 minutes.

Applying the above reasoning for tract 1 to all the tracts leads to the following constraints.

$$\begin{array}{lcccccccc}
\text{Tract 1:} & x_1 & +x_2 & & +x_4 & & & & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 2:} & x_1 & +x_2 & +x_3 & & & & & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 3:} & & x_2 & +x_3 & & +x_6 & & & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 4:} & x_1 & & & +x_4 & & +x_7 & & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 5:} & & & & & +x_5 & +x_7 & & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 6:} & & & x_3 & & +x_6 & & +x_8 & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 7:} & & & & x_4 & & +x_7 & +x_8 & \geq 1 \\
\text{Tract 8:} & & & & & +x_6 & +x_7 & +x_8 & \geq 1
\end{array}$$

These *set covering constraints* (along with requiring the variables to be binary) are all that is needed to ensure that each tract has at least one fire station close enough to respond to a fire in no more than 10 minutes.

This type of BIP model (minimizing total cost where all the functional constraints are set covering constraints) is called a **set covering problem.** Such problems arise fairly frequently. In fact, you will see another example of a set covering problem in Section 10.5.

set covering problem

A type of BIP model where the objective is to minimize some quantity such as total cost and all the functional constraints are set covering constraints.

Having identified the nature of the constraints for the Caliente City problem, it now is fairly straightforward to formulate its BIP spreadsheet model.

A BIP Spreadsheet Model for the Caliente City Problem

Figure 10.4 shows a BIP spreadsheet model for this problem. The data cells ResponseTime (D5:K12) show all the response times given in Table 10.4 and CostOfStation (D14:K14) provides the cost data from the bottom row of this table. There is a yes-or-no decision for each tract as to whether a fire station should be located there, so the changing cells are StationInTract? (D29:K29). The objective is to minimize total cost, so the objective cell is TotalCost (N29).

FIGURE 10.4

page 424

A spreadsheet formulation of the BIP model for the Caliente City site selection problem where the changing cells StationInTract? (D29:K29) show the optimal solution obtained by Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
1		**Caliente City Fire Station Location Problem**												
2														
3					Fire Station in Tract									
4				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8			
5			1	2	8	18	9	23	22	16	28			
6		Response	2	9	3	10	12	16	14	21	25			
7		Times	3	17	8	4	20	21	8	22	17			
8		(minutes)	4	10	13	19	2	18	21	6	12			
9		for a Fire	5	21	12	16	13	5	11	9	12			
10		in Tract	6	25	15	7	21	15	3	14	8			
11			7	14	22	18	7	13	15	2	9			
12			8	30	24	15	14	17	9	8	3			
13														
14		Cost of Station		350	250	450	300	50	400	300	200			
15		($thousands)										Number		
16												Covering		
17			1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	>=	1
18		Response	2	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	>=	1
19		Time	3	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	>=	1
20		<=	4	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	>=	1
21		10	5	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	>=	1
22		Minutes?	6	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	>=	1
23			7	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	2	>=	1
24			8	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	2	>=	1
25														
26														Total
27					Fire Station in Tract									Cost
28				1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8			($thousands)
29		Station in Tract?		0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1			750

	J	K	L
15			Number
16			Covering
17	=IF(J5<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=IF(K5<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=SUMPRODUCT(D17:K17,StationInTract?)
18	=IF(J6<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=IF(K6<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=SUMPRODUCT(D18:K18,StationInTract?)
19	=IF(J7<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=IF(K7<=MaxResponseTime,1,0)	=SUMPRODUCT(D19:K19,StationInTract?)

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
StationInTract?
Subject to the Constraints:
StationInTract? = binary
NumberCovering >= One

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
CostOfStation	D14:K14
MaxResponseTime	B21
NumberCovering	L17:L24
One	N17:N24
ResponseTime	D5:K12
StationInTract?	D29:K29
TotalCost	N29

	N
26	Total
27	Cost
28	($thousands)
29	=SUMPRODUCT(CostOfStation,StationInTract?)

The set covering constraints are displayed in cells L17:N24. The Station-InTract? changing cells have been constrained to be binary, as can be seen in the Solver Parameters box.

After running Solver, the optimal solution shown in the changing cells StationInTract? (D29:K29) in Figure 10.4 is obtained, namely, Select tracts 2,

7, and 8 as the sites for fire stations.

The objective cell TotalCost (N29) indicates that the resulting total cost is $750,000.

Review *Questions*

. How are binary variables used to represent managerial decisions regarding which site or sites should be selected for new facilities?

. What are some types of emergency services facilities for which sites may need to be selected?

. What was the objective for the Caliente City problem?

. What is a set covering constraint and what is a set covering problem?

10.5 USING BIP FOR CREW SCHEDULING: THE SOUTHWESTERN AIRWAYS PROBLEM

The travel industry includes airlines, rail travel, cruise ships, tour companies, etc. All members of this industry face the same problem of needing to assign their crews to the various trips being offered in order to serve the customers on those trips. When assigning a crew to a sequence of trips, it would be particularly convenient to have the last trip end where the first trip begins. With many crews and numerous trips to be covered, what is the most efficient way of assigning all the crews to all the trips? This is referred to as the *crew scheduling problem.*

One way of formulating the crew scheduling problem is to identify many feasible overlapping sequences of trips for each crew. The objective then is to assign each crew to a sequence of trips so as to cover *all* the trips at a minimum cost. Thus, for each feasible sequence of trips, there is a *yes-or-no decision* as to whether a crew should be assigned to that sequence, so a binary decision variable can be used to represent that decision.

For many years, airline companies have been using BIP models to determine how to do their crew scheduling in the most cost-efficient way. Some airlines have saved many millions of dollars annually through this application of BIP. Consequently, other segments of the travel industry now are also using BIP in this way. For example, the application vignette in this section describes how Netherlands Railways achieved a dramatic increase in

profits by applying BIP (and related techniques) in a variety of ways, including crew scheduling.

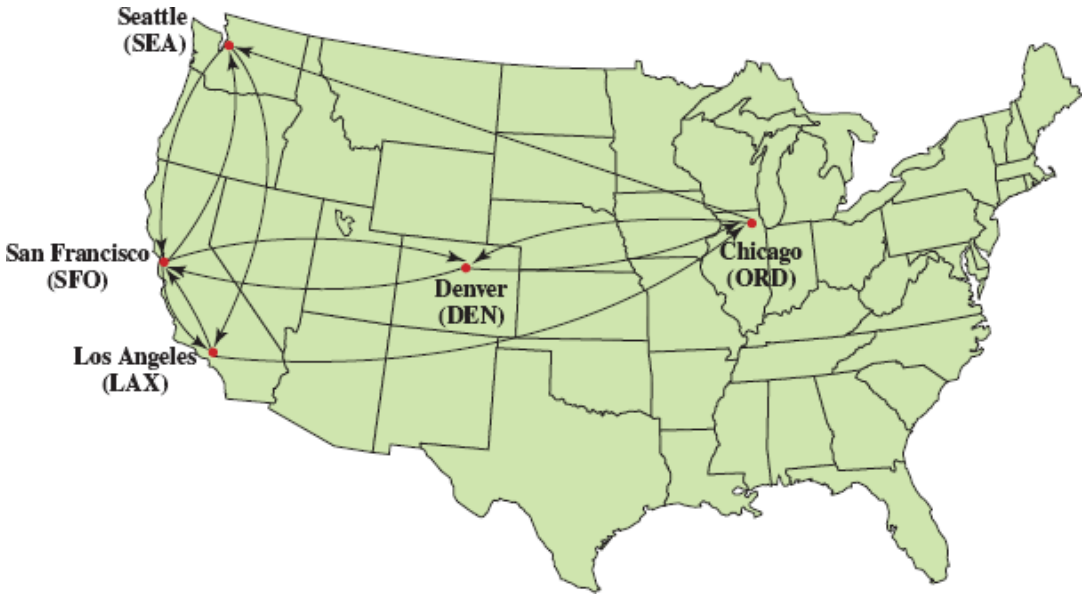
To illustrate the approach, consider the following miniature example of airline crew scheduling.

The Southwestern Airways Problem

Southwestern Airways needs to assign its crews to cover all its upcoming flights. We will focus on just one portion of this problem, namely, the problem of assigning three crews based in San Francisco (SFO) to the 11 flights shown in Figure 10.5. Thus, each crew needs to be assigned to a sequence of flights that begins and ends in San Francisco. Furthermore, the different sequences of flights for these three crews need to "cover" (i.e., include) all 11 flights.

FIGURE 10.5

The arrows show the 11 Southwestern Airways flights that need to be covered by the three crews based in San Francisco.



These 11 flights are listed in the first column of Table 10.5. The other 12 columns show the 12 feasible sequences of flights for a crew. The numbers in each column indicate the order of the flights. For example, sequence 4 says for one crew to begin with flight 1 out of San Francisco, then take flight 4, then take flight 6, and then finally take flight 8 back to San Francisco. This

sequence thereby covers 4 of the 11 flights, so the other two sequences for the other two crews would need to cover the remaining 7 flights.

TABLE 10.5

Data for the Southwestern Airways Problem

Flight		Feasible Sequence of Flights											
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
1.	San Francisco to Los Angeles (SFO–LAX)	1			1			1			1		
2.	San Francisco to Denver (SFO–DEN)		1			1			1			1	
3.	San Francisco to Seattle (SFO–SEA)			1			1			1			1
4.	Los Angeles to Chicago (LAX–ORD)				2			2		3	2		3
5.	Los Angeles to San Francisco (LAX–SFO)	2					3				5	5	
6.	Chicago to Denver (ORD–DEN)				3	3				4			
7.	Chicago to Seattle (ORD–SEA)							3	3		3	3	4
8.	Denver to San Francisco (DEN–SFO)		2		4	4				5			
9.	Denver to Chicago (DEN–ORD)					2			2			2	
10.	Seattle to San Francisco (SEA–SFO)			2				4	4				5
11.	Seattle to Los Angeles (SEA–LAX)						2			2	4	4	2
Cost, $1,000s		2	3	4	6	7	5	7	8	9	9	8	9

The key requirement is that (at most) three of the sequences need to be chosen (one per crew) in such a way that every flight is covered. (It is permissible to have more than one crew on a flight, where the extra crews would fly as passengers, but union contracts require that the extra crews still be paid for their time as if they were working.) The cost of assigning a crew to a particular sequence of flights is given (in thousands of dollars) in the bottom row of the table. The objective is to minimize the total cost of the crew assignments that cover all the flights.

Formulation with Binary Variables

With 12 feasible sequences of flights, we have 12 yes-or-no decisions:

$$\text{Should sequence } j \text{ be assigned to a crew?} \qquad (j = 1, 2, \ldots, 12)$$

Therefore, we use 12 binary variables to represent these respective decisions:

$$x_j = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if sequence } j \text{ is assigned to a crew} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Since the objective is to minimize the total cost of the three crew assignments, we now need to express the total cost in terms of these binary decision variables. Referring to the bottom row of Table 10.5, this total cost (in units of thousands of dollars) is

$$C = 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 + 6x_4 + 7x_5 + 5x_6 + 7x_7 + 8x_8 + 9x_9 + 9x_{10} + 8x_{11} + 9x_{12}$$

An Application Vignette

Netherlands Railways (Nederlandse Spoorwegen Reizigers) is the main Dutch railway operator of passenger trains in this densely populated country. As of 2021, about 4,800 passenger trains currently transport approximately 1.1 million passengers on an average workday. The company's revenues now are approximately 6.6 billion euros (approximately $7.5 billion) per year.

The amount of passenger transport on the Dutch railway network has had a long history of steadily increasing over the years, so a national study in 2002 concluded that three major infrastructure extensions should be undertaken. As a result, a new national timetable for the Dutch railway system, specifying the planned departure and arrival times of every train at every station, would need to be developed. Therefore, the management of Netherlands Railways directed that an extensive management science study should be conducted over the next few years to develop an optimal overall plan for both the new timetable and the usage of the available resources (rolling-stock units and train crews) for meeting this timetable. A task force consisting of several members of the company's Department of Logistics and several prominent scholars from European universities or a software company was formed to conduct this study.

The new timetable was launched in December 2006, along with a new system for scheduling the allocation of rolling-stock units (various kinds of passenger cars and other train units) to the trains meeting this timetable. A new system also was implemented for scheduling the assignment of crews

(with a driver and a number of conductors in each crew) to the trains. **Binary integer programming** and related techniques were used to do all of this. For example, the BIP model used for crew scheduling closely resembles (except for its vastly larger size) the one shown in this section for the Southwestern Airlines problem.

This application of prescriptive analytics immediately resulted in *an additional annual profit of approximately* **$60 million** for the company and this additional profit was expected to increase to **$105 million** annually in the coming years. These dramatic results led to Netherlands Railways winning the prestigious **First Prize** in the 2008 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: L. Kroon, D. Huisman, E. Abbink, P.-J. Fioole, M. Fischetti, G. Maroti, A. Schrijver, A. Steenbeck, and R. Ybema, "The New Dutch Timetable: The OR Revolution," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 39, no. 1 (January–February 2009): 6–17. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**

.)

With only three crews available to cover the flights, we also need the constraint

$$x_1 + x_2 \ldots + x_{12} \leq 3$$

The most interesting part of this formulation is the nature of each constraint that ensures that a corresponding flight is covered. For example, consider the last flight in Table 10.5 (Seattle to Los Angeles). Five sequences (namely, sequences 6, 9, 10, 11, and 12) include this flight. Therefore, at least one of these five sequences must be chosen. The resulting constraint is

$$x_6 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} \geq 1$$

For each of the 11 flights, the constraint that ensures that the flight is covered is constructed in the same way from Table 10.5 by requiring that at least one of the flight sequences that includes that flight is assigned to a crew. Thus, 11 constraints of the following form are needed.

$$\text{Flight 1}: \quad x_1 + x_4 + x_7 \quad + x_{10} \geq 1$$
$$\text{Flight 2}: \quad x_2 + x_5 + x_8 \quad + x_{11} \geq 1$$
$$\vdots$$
$$\text{Flight 11}: x_6 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} \geq 1$$

These are set covering constraints, just like the constraints in the Caliente City problem in Section 10.4.

Note that these constraints have the same form as the constraints for the Caliente City problem in Section 10.4 (a sum of certain binary variables ≥ 1), so these too are *set covering constraints.* Therefore, this crew scheduling problem is another example of a *set covering problem* (where this particular set covering problem also includes the side constraint that $x_1 + x_2 + \cdot + x_{12} \leq 3$).

Having identified the nature of the constraints, the stage now is set for formulating a BIP spreadsheet model for this problem.

A BIP Spreadsheet Model for the Southwestern Airways Problem

Figure 10.6 shows a spreadsheet formulation of the complete BIP model for this problem. The changing cells FlySequence? (C22:N22) contain the values of the 12 binary decision variables.

FIGURE 10.6

A spreadsheet formulation of the BIP model for the Southwestern Airways crew scheduling problem, where FlySequence (C22:N22) shows the optimal solution obtained by Solver. The list of flight sequences under consideration is given in cells A25:D37.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
1	**Southwestern Airways Crew Scheduling Problem**																
2																	
3							Flight Sequence										
4			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12			
5		Cost ($thousands)	2	3	4	6	7	5	7	8	9	9	8	9			At
6																	Least
7		**Includes Segment?**													Total		One
8		SFO–LAX	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	≥	1
9		SFO–DEN	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	≥	1
10		SFO–SEA	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	≥	1
11		LAX–ORD	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	≥	1
12		LAX–SFO	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	≥	1
13		ORD–DEN	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	≥	1
14		ORD–SEA	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	≥	1
15		DEN–SFO	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	≥	1
16		DEN–ORD	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	≥	1
17		SEA–SFO	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	≥	1
18		SEA–LAX	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	≥	1
19																	
20															Total		Number
21			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	Sequences		of Crews
22		Fly Sequence?	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	3	≤	3
23																	
24															Total Cost ($thousands)		18

25	**Flight Sequence Key**	
26	1	SFO-LAX
27	2	SFO-DEN-SFO
28	3	SFO-SEA-SFO
29	4	SFO-LAX-ORD-DEN-SFO
30	5	SFO-DEN-ORD-DEN-SFO
31	6	SFO-SEA-LAX-SFO
32	7	SFO-LAX-ORD-SEA-SFO
33	8	SFO-DEN-ORD-SEA-SFO
34	9	SFO-SEA-LAX-ORD-DEN-SFO
35	10	SFO-LAX-ORD-SEA-LAX-SFO
36	11	SFO-DEN-ORD-SEA-LAX-SFO
37	12	SFO-SEA-LAX-ORD-SEA-SFO

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalCost
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
FlySequence?
Subject to the Constraints:
FlySequence? = binary
Total >= AtLeastOne
TotalSequences <= NumberOfCrews

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	O
7	Total
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:N8,FlySequence?)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:N9,FlySequence?)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:N10,FlySequence?)
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:N11,FlySequence?)
12	=SUMPRODUCT(C12:N12,FlySequence?)
13	=SUMPRODUCT(C13:N13,FlySequence?)
14	=SUMPRODUCT(C14:N14,FlySequence?)
15	=SUMPRODUCT(C15:N15,FlySequence?)
16	=SUMPRODUCT(C16:N16,FlySequence?)
17	=SUMPRODUCT(C17:N17,FlySequence?)
18	=SUMPRODUCT(C18:N18,FlySequence?)
19	
20	Total
21	Sequences
22	=SUM(FlySequence?)

Range Name	Cells
AtLeastOne	Q8:Q18
Cost	C5:N5
FlySequence?	C22:N22
IncludesSegment?	C8:N18
NumberOfCrews	Q22
Total	O8:O18
TotalCost	Q24
TotalSequences	O22

	P	Q
24	Total Cost ($thousands)	=SUMPRODUCT(Cost,FlySequence?)

Solver provides the optimal solution shown in FlySequence? (C22:N22). In terms of the x_j variables, this solution is

$x_3 = 1$ (assign sequence 3 to a crew)
$x_4 = 1$ (assign sequence 4 to a crew)
$x_{11} = 1$ (assign sequence 11 to a crew)

The data in IncludesSegment? (C8:N18) and Cost (C5:N5) come directly from Table 10.5. The last three columns of the spreadsheet are used to show the set covering constraints, Total ≥ AtLeastOne, and the side constraint, TotalSequences ≤ NumberOfCrews. Finally, the changing cells FlySequence? have been constrained to be binary, as shown in the Solver Parameters box.

page 429

We should point out that this BIP model is a tiny one compared to the ones typically used in actual practice. Airline crew scheduling problems involving thousands of possible flight sequences now are being solved by using models similar to the one shown above but with thousands of binary variables rather than just a dozen.

Many airlines are solving huge BIP models of this kind.

Review *Questions*

. What is the crew scheduling problem that is encountered by companies in the travel industry?

. What are the yes-or-no decisions that need to be made when addressing a crew scheduling problem?

. For the Southwestern Airways problem, there is a constraint for each flight to ensure that this flight is covered by a crew. Describe the mathematical form of this constraint. Then explain in words what this constraint is saying.

10.6 USING MIXED BIP TO DEAL WITH SETUP COSTS FOR INITIATING PRODUCTION: THE REVISED WYNDOR PROBLEM

All of the examples considered thus far in this chapter have been *pure BIP problems* (problems where all the decision variables are binary variables). However, *mixed BIP problems* (problems where only some of the decision variables are binary variables) also arise quite frequently because only some

of the decisions to be made are yes-or-no decisions and the rest are how-much decisions.

One important example of this type is the *product-mix problem* introduced in Chapter 5, but now with the added complication that a setup cost must be incurred to initiate the production of each product. Therefore, in addition to the *how-much decisions* of how much to produce of each product, there also is a prior yes-or-no decision for each product of whether to perform a setup to enable initiating its production.

To illustrate this type of problem, we will consider a revised version of the Wyndor Glass Co. product-mix problem that was described in Section 5.1 and analyzed throughout most of Chapter 5.

The Revised Wyndor Problem with Setup Costs

Suppose now that the **Wyndor Glass Co.** will only devote one week each month to the production of the special doors and windows described in Section 5.1, so the question now is *how many* doors and windows to produce during each of these week-long production runs. Since the decisions to be made are no longer the *rates* of production for doors and windows, but rather *how many* doors and windows to produce in individual production runs, these quantities now are required to be *integer.* (Note that this requirement means that these quantities now will be represented by general integer variables that are *not* binary variables, but this will not cause any complications when using Solver to solve the problem.) Each time Wyndor's plants convert from the production of other products to the production of these doors and windows for a week, the following setup costs would be incurred to initiate this production.

Setup cost to produce doors = $700

Setup cost to produce windows = $1,300

Otherwise, all the original data given in Table 5.2 still apply, including a unit profit of $300 for doors and $500 for windows when disregarding these setup costs.

Table 10.6 shows the resulting net profit from producing any feasible quantity for either product. Note that the large setup cost for either product makes it unprofitable to produce less than three units of that product.

page 430

TABLE 10.6

Net Profit ($) for the Revised Wyndor Problem

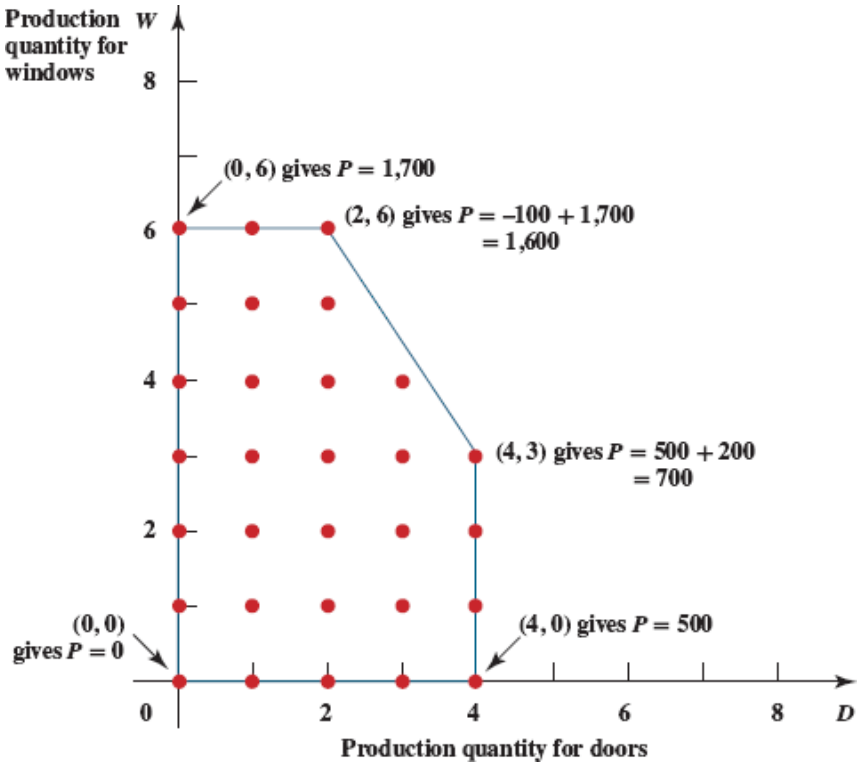
Number of Units Produced	Net Profit ($)	
	Doors	Windows
0	0 (300) − 0 = 0	0 (500) − 0 = 0
1	1 (300) − 700 = − 400	1 (500) − 1,300 = − 800
2	2 (300) − 700 = − 100	2 (500) − 1,300 = − 300
3	3 (300) − 700 = 200	3 (500) − 1,300 = 200
4	4 (300) − 700 = 500	4 (500) − 1,300 = 700
5	Not feasible	5 (500) − 1,300 = 1,200
6	Not feasible	6 (500) − 1,300 = 1,700

The dots in Figure 10.7 show the feasible solutions for this problem. By adding the appropriate entries in Table 10.6, the figure also shows the calculation of the total net profit P for each of the corner points. The optimal solution turns out to be

$$(D, W) = (0, 6) \qquad \text{with} \qquad P = 1{,}700$$

FIGURE 10.7

The dots are the feasible solutions for the revised Wyndor problem. Also shown is the calculation of the total net profit P (in dollars) for each corner point from the net profits given in Table 10.6.



By contrast, the original solution

$$(D, W) = (2, 6) \qquad \text{with} \qquad P = 1{,}600$$

now gives a smaller value of P. The reason that this original solution (which gave P = 3,600 for the original problem) is no longer optimal is that the setup costs reduce the total net profit so much:

$$P = 3{,}600 - 700 - 1{,}300 = 1{,}600$$

Therefore, the graphical method for linear programming can no longer be used to find the optimal solution for this new problem with setup costs.

How can we formulate a model for this problem so that it fits a standard kind of model that can be solved by Solver? Table 10.6 shows that the net profit for either product is no longer *directly proportional* to the number of units produced. Therefore, as it stands, the problem no longer fits either linear programming or BIP. Before, for the original problem without setup costs, the objective function was simply $P = 300D + 500W$. Now we need to subtract from this expression each setup cost *if* the corresponding product will be produced, but we should not subtract the setup

page 431

cost if the product will not be produced. This is where *binary variables* come to the rescue.

Formulation with Binary Variables

For each product, there is a *yes-or-no decision* regarding whether to perform the setup that would enable initiating the production of the product, so the setup cost is incurred only if the decision is *yes.* Therefore, we can introduce a *binary variable* for each setup cost and associate each value of the binary variable with one of the two possibilities for the setup cost. In particular, let

$$y_1 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if perform the setup to produce doors} \\ 0, & \text{if not} \end{cases}$$
$$y_2 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if perform the setup to produce windows} \\ 0, & \text{if not} \end{cases}$$

These binary variables enable subtracting each setup cost only if the setup is performed.

Therefore, the objective function now can be written as

$$P = 300D + 500W - 700y_1 - 1{,}300y_2$$

which fits the format for mixed BIP.

Since a setup is required to produce the corresponding product, these binary variables can be related directly to the production quantities as follows:

$$y_1 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } D > 0 \text{ can hold (can produce doors)} \\ 0, & \text{if } D = 0 \text{ must hold (cannot produce doors)} \end{cases}$$
$$y_2 = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } W > 0 \text{ can hold (can produce windows)} \\ 0, & \text{if } W = 0 \text{ must hold (cannot produce windows)} \end{cases}$$

We need to include constraints in the model that will ensure that these relationships will hold. (An algorithm solving the model only recognizes the objective function and the constraints, not the definitions of the variables.) So what are the constraints of the model? We still need all the constraints of the original model. We also need constraints that *D* and *W* are integers, and that y_1 and y_2 are binary. In addition, we need some ordinary linear programming constraints that will ensure the following relationships: If $y_1 = 0$, then D = 0.

If $y_2 = 0$, then W = 0.

(If $y_1 = 1$, no restrictions are placed on *D* other than those already imposed by the other constraints, and the same thing applies to *W* if $y_2 = 1$.) It is possible

with Excel to use the IF function to represent this relationship between y_1 and D as well as between y_2 and W. Unfortunately, the IF function does not fit the assumptions of linear programming. Consequently, Solver has difficulty solving spreadsheet models that use this function. This is why another formulation with ordinary linear programming constraints is needed instead to express these relationships.

Since the other constraints impose bounds on D and W of $0 \le D \le 4$ and $0 \le W \le 6$, here vare some ordinary linear programming constraints that ensure these relationships:

$$D \le 4y_1$$
$$W \le 6y_2$$

Note that setting $y_1 = 0$ gives $D \le 0$, which forces the nonnegative D to be $D = 0$, whereas setting $y_1 = 1$ gives $D \le 4$, which allows all the values of D already allowed by the other constraints. Then check that the same conclusions apply for W when setting $y_2 = 0$ and $y_2 = 1$.

It was not necessary to choose 4 and 6 for the respective coefficients of y_1 and y_2 in these two constraints. Any coefficients *larger* than 4 and 6 would have the same effect. You just need to avoid *smaller* coefficients, since this would impose undesired restrictions on D and W when $y_1 = 1$ and $y_2 = 1$.

These constraints force the model to refuse production if the corresponding setup is not performed.

An Application Vignette

Vattenfall is a Swedish multinational power company owned by the government of Sweden. (Its name is Swedish for “waterfall.”) The company has approximately 20,000 employees. It is one of Europe’s largest producers and retailers of electricity and heat with major markets in Germany, the Netherlands, Denmark, and the United Kingdom, in addition to Sweden.

These countries have helped to lead in combating climate change and Vattenfall has been a leader in this effort by moving away from the use of fossil fuels. The company has pledged to work toward fossil-free living within one generation. As of 2019, renewals accounted for 35 percent of the company’s total generation capacity, including wind, solar, and hydro power. The company has announced the goal of making fossil-free living

possible within one generation through driving the transition to a sustainable energy system.

In pursuit of this goal, Vattenfall's Wind Division has become the second-largest offshore wind power developer in the world with many major offshore wind farms in operation and under development. It has an annual investment budget for wind farms of about 1.5 billion euros (the equivalent of about $1.75 billion). For example, Vattenfall announced in December 2021 that it was moving ahead with an investment of 769 million euros to develop two offshore wind farms that will cover the consumption of more than 350,000 Danish households.

A key to this success is that Vattenfall became a pioneer several years ago in **applying prescriptive analytics to optimize the design of offshore wind farms.** The main technique of prescriptive analytics being used is **mixed binary integer programming (mixed BIP).**

The traditional design for offshore wind farms is to have long straight rows of wind turbines. The drawback is that when the wind hits one turbine, its flow may be hindered from hitting a downwind turbine as forcefully as it would without interference. This so-called *wake effect* causes an average power loss of approximately 10–20 percent. Using prescriptive analytics to optimize the placement of the wind turbines would substantially reduce this wake effect.

But how can this unusually complicated kind of optimization be done? This is where mixed BIP comes to the rescue. For a typical wind farm, there may be more than 20,000 possible locations for a turbine. For each such location, a binary decision variable can be used to indicate whether a turbine is assigned to that location. Because the magnitude and direction of wind are unpredictable, thousands of wind scenarios need to be weighted based on their probability of occurring in order to estimate the wake effect for each pair of nearby turbines. Solving such a huge and complex BIP model requires breaking the procedure down into solving a sequence of more manageable problems by using an appropriate algorithm (commonly a mixed BIP algorithm). Extensive research (including a Ph.D. dissertation by the first co-author below) succeeded in developing the overall procedure.

Once the design of the wind farm has been completed, prescriptive analytics needs to be applied once more to determine how to optimally design the routing of the cables to bring the power to one or more offshore substations. This requires using the cables to interconnect the turbines to each other and then to the offshore substations. Mixed BIP again is used to

solve for this optimal design that minimizes the sum of the immediate and long-term costs. The main kind of binary decision variable indicates whether a particular turbine should be connected with another particular turbine (or substation) using a specific cable type.

These path-breaking applications of mixed BIP are paying big dividends to Vattenfall. Considering only the wind farm sites that the company had designed or was designing by the time of the publication cited below, these highly innovative optimization tools had provided the company with **an increase in NPV** (Net Present Value) of more than 150 million euros (the equivalent **of more than $175 million**).

More importantly from a societal viewpoint, Vattenfall is making **a significant contribution to combating climate change.** A primary goal in the campaign against climate change has been to drive down the price of renewables/carbon-free energy below that of fossil fuels. Vattenfall is helping to do this.

This dramatic application of prescriptive analytics resulted in Vattenfall winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists for the 2019 Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: M. Fischetti, J. R. Kristoffersen, T. Hjort, M. Monaci, and D. Pisinger, "Vattenfall Optimizes Offshore Wind Farm Design," *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics,* 50, no. 1, (January–February 2020): 80–94. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

On larger problems, it is sometimes difficult to determine the smallest acceptable coefficients for these binary variables. Therefore, it is common to formulate the model by just using a reasonably large number (say, 99 in this case) that is safely larger than the smallest acceptable coefficient.

Generally, if a *how-much* decision x can only be made with $x > 0$ if a corresponding *yes-or-no* decision y is made with $y = 1$, this can be enforced with a **big-number constraint** such as $x \leq 99y$. If $y = 0$, this becomes $x \leq 0$, which reduces to $x = 0$ because of the nonnegativity constraint, $x \geq 0$. If $y = 1$, then this becomes $x \leq 99$. The big number (99 in this example) is chosen to be big enough so that it is safely larger than x could ever become.

big-number constraint

A constraint of the form $x \leq$ (big number) y to enforce that a how-much decision x can only exceed 0 if a corresponding yes-or-no decision y is equal to 1.

With this background, we now are ready to formulate a mixed BIP spreadsheet model for the revised Wyndor problem that uses the big number 99 in these constraints.

A Mixed BIP Spreadsheet Model for the Revised Wyndor Problem

Figure 10.8 shows one way of formulating this model. The format for the first 14 rows is the same as for the original Wyndor problem, so the difference arises in rows 15–17 of the spreadsheet. The values of the binary variables, y_1 and y_2, appear in the new changing cells, Setup? (C17:D17). The bottom of the figure identifies the equations entered into the output cells in row 16, C16 = 99*C17 and D16 = 99*D17. Consequently, the constraints, UnitsProduced (C14:D14) ≤ OnlyIfSetup (C16:D16), impose the relationships that $D \leq 99y_1$ and $W \leq 99y_2$.

FIGURE 10.8

A spreadsheet model for the revised Wyndor problem, where Solver gives the optimal solution shown in the changing cells, UnitsProduced (C14:D14) and Setup? (C17:D17).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix with Setup Costs**							
2								
3			Doors	Windows				
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500				
5		Setup Cost	$700	$1,300				
6								
7					Hours		Hours	
8			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available	
9		Plant 1	1	0	0	≤	4	
10		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12	
11		Plant 3	3	2	12	≤	18	
12								
13			Doors	Windows				
14		Units Produced	0	6				
15			≤	≤	Big Number		Production Profit	$3,000
16		Only if Set Up	0	99	99		−Total Setup Cost	$1,300
17		Setup?	0	1			Total Profit	$1,700

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced, Setup?
Subject to the Constraints:
Setup? = binary
UnitsProduced = integer
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
UnitsProduced <= OnlyIfSetup

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

Range Name	Cells
BigNumber	E16
HoursAvailable	G9:G11
HoursUsed	E9:E11
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C9:D11
OnlyIfSetUp	C16:D16
ProductionProfit	H15
Setup?	C17:D17
SetupCost	C5:D5
TotalProfit	H17
TotalSetupCost	H16
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C14:D14

	E
7	Hours
8	Used
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,UnitsProduced)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:D10,UnitsProduced)
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:D11,UnitsProduced)

	B	C	D
16	Only if Set Up	=BigNumber*C17	=BigNumber*D17

	G	H
15	Production Profit	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)
16	−Total Setup Cost	=SUMPRODUCT(SetupCost,Setup?)
17	Total Profit	=ProductionProfit − TotalSetupCost

The changing cells in this spreadsheet show the optimal solution obtained after applying Solver. Thus, this solution is to not

produce any doors ($y_1 = 0$ and $D = 0$) but to perform the setup to enable producing 6 windows ($y_2 = 1$ and $W = 6$) to obtain a net profit of $1,700.

Note that this optimal solution does indeed satisfy the requirements that $D = 0$ must hold when $y_1 = 0$ and that $W > 0$ can hold when $y_2 = 1$. The constraints do permit performing a setup to produce a product and then not producing any units ($y_1 = 1$ with $D = 0$ or $y_2 = 1$ with $W = 0$), but the objective function causes an optimal solution automatically to avoid this foolish option of incurring the setup cost for no purpose.

Solver easily solves the small spreadsheet model shown in Figure 10.8. However, special integer programming optimization algorithms are needed to attempt to solve much larger problems of this type that includes general integer variables in addition to binary variables. Special BIP optimization algorithms can more easily solve large mixed BIP models that only contain continuous variables in addition to binary variables. However, these algorithms may not be able to solve huge problems of this type even though linear programming optimization algorithms can easily solve most really huge problems that only contain continuous variables.

Review *Questions*

. How does a mixed BIP problem differ from a pure BIP problem?

. Why is a linear programming formulation no longer valid for a product-mix problem when there are setup costs for initiating production?

. How can a binary variable be defined in terms of whether a setup is performed to initiate the production of a certain product?

. What caused the optimal solution for the revised Wyndor problem to differ from that for the original Wyndor problem?

10.7 Summary

A problem that fits linear programming except that some or all of its decision variables are required to have integer values is an integer programming problem. Such problems are quite common. In some cases, the integer-restricted variables are binary decision variables, which are very useful for making yes-or-no decisions.

Managers frequently must make yes-or-no decisions, where the only two possible choices are yes, go ahead with a particular

option, or no, decline this option. A binary integer programming (BIP) model considers various such options simultaneously, with a binary decision variable for each option. Mixed BIP models include some other decision variables as well that represent how-much decisions.

The California Manufacturing Co. case study involves yes-or-no decisions on whether a new factory should be built in certain cities and then whether a new warehouse also should be built in certain cities. This case study also introduced the modeling of mutually exclusive alternatives and contingent decisions, as well as the performance of what-if analysis for BIP models.

Many companies have saved millions of dollars by formulating and solving BIP models for a wide variety of applications. We have described and illustrated some of the most important types, including the selection of projects (e.g., research and development projects), the selection of sites for facilities (e.g., emergency services facilities such as fire stations), and crew scheduling in the travel industry (e.g., airlines). We also have discussed how to use mixed BIP to deal with setup costs for initiating production when addressing product-mix problems.

Glossary

big-number constraint A constraint of the form $x \leq$ (big number) y to enforce that a how-much decision x can only exceed 0 if a corresponding yes- or-no decision y is equal to 1. (Section 10.6), 432

binary decision variable A binary variable that represents a yes-or-no decision by assigning a value of 1 for choosing yes and a value of 0 for choosing no. (Section 10.1), 411

binary integer programming A type of problem or model that fits linear programming except that it uses binary decision variables. (Section 10.1), 409

binary variable A variable whose only possible values are 0 and 1. (Section 10.1), 409

BIP Abbreviation for binary integer programming. (Section 10.1) 411

contingent decision A yes-or-no decision is a contingent decision if it can be yes only if a certain other yes-or-no decision is yes. (Section 10.2), 415

continuous-variables assumption Requires that the decision variables can take on any nonnegative values (not just integer values) within its feasible range. (Section 10.1), 410

integer programming A type of problem or model where some or all of its decision variables are required to have integer values. (Section 10.1), 409

mutually exclusive alternatives A group of alternatives where choosing any one alternative excludes choosing any of the others. (Section 10.2), 414

page 435

set covering constraint A constraint that requires the sum of certain binary variables to be greater than or equal to 1. (Section 10.4), 423

set covering problem A type of BIP model where the objective is to minimize some quantity such as total cost and all the functional constraints are set covering constraints. (Section 10.4), 423

yes-or-no decision A decision whose only possible choices are (1) yes, go ahead with a certain option or (2) no, decline this option. (Section 10.1), 420

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

California Mfg.

Tazer Corp.

Caliente City

Southwestern Airways

Revised Wyndor

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Supplements to This Chapter:

Advanced Formulation Techniques for Binary Integer Programming

Some Perspectives on Solving Binary Integer Programming Problems

Solved Problems

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

10.S1. Capital Budgeting with Contingency Constraints

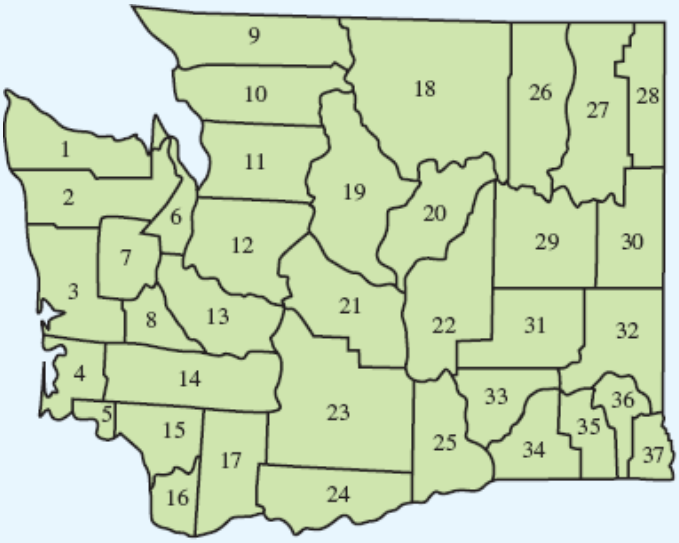
A company is planning its capital budget over the next several years. There are eight potential projects under consideration. A calculation has been made of the expected net present value of each project, along with the cash outflow that would be required over the next four years. These data, along with the cash that is available each year, are shown in the next table. There also are the following contingency constraints: (a) at least one of project 1, 2, or 3 must be done, (b) projects 6 and 7 cannot both be done, and (c) project 5 can only be done if project 6 is done. Formulate and solve a BIP model in a spreadsheet to determine which projects should be pursued to maximize the total expected net present value.

	Cash Outflow Required ($million)								Cash Available ($million)
	Project								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Year 1	1	3	0	3	3	7	2	5	20
Year 2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	4	20
Year 3	2	3	4	2	3	3	6	2	20
Year 4	2	1	0	5	4	2	1	2	20
NPV ($mil)	10	12	11	15	24	17	16	18	

10.S2. Locating Search-and-Rescue Teams

The Washington State legislature is trying to decide on locations at which to base search-and-rescue teams. The teams are expensive, so the legislature would like as few as possible while still providing the desired level of service. In particular, since response time is critical, the legislature would like every county to

either have a team located in that county or in an adjacent county. (The locations and names of the counties are shown below.) Formulate and solve a BIP model in a spreadsheet to determine where the teams should be located.



Counties

1. Clallum
2. Jefferson
3. Grays Harbor
4. Pacific
5. Wahkiakum
6. Kitsap
7. Mason
8. Thurston
9. Whatcom
10. Skagit
11. Snohomish
12. King
13. Pierce
14. Lewis
15. Cowlitz
16. Clark
17. Skamania
18. Okanogan
19. Chelan
20. Douglas
21. Kittitas
22. Grant
23. Yakima
24. Klickitat
25. Benton
26. Ferry
27. Stevens
28. Pend Oreille
29. Lincoln
30. Spokane
31. Adams
32. Whitman
33. Franklin
34. Walla Walla
35. Columbia
36. Garfield
37. Asotin

10.S3. Warehouse Site Selection

page 436

Consider a small company that produces a single product in two plants and serves customers in five different regions.

The company has been using a make-to-order policy of producing the product only in the quantities needed to fill the orders that have come in from the various regions. However, because of the problems caused by the sporadic production schedule, management has decided to smooth out the production rate and ship the product to one or more storage warehouses, which then will use inventory to fill the incoming regional orders. Management now needs to decide where to locate the company's new warehouse(s). There are three locations under consideration. For each location, there is a fixed monthly cost associated with leasing and operating the warehouse there. Furthermore, each potential warehouse location has a maximum capacity for monthly shipments restricted primarily by the number of trucking docks at the site. The product costs $400 to produce at Plant 1 and $300 to produce at Plant 2. The shipping cost from each plant to each potential warehouse location is shown in the first table below. The fixed leasing and operating cost (if open), the shipping costs, and

the capacity (maximum monthly shipments) of each potential warehouse location are shown in the second table below. The monthly demand in each of the customer regions is expected to be 200, 225, 100, 150, and 175 units, respectively. Formulate and solve a BIP model in a spreadsheet to determine which warehouse(s) should be used and how the product should be distributed from plant to warehouse(s) to customer.

Shipping Costs and Capacity of the Plants

	Shipping Cost (per unit)			Capacity (units/month)
	WH 1	WH 2	WH 3	
Plant 1	$25	$50	$75	500
Plant 2	$50	$75	$25	400

Fixed Cost, Shipping Costs, and Capacity of the Warehouses

	Fixed Cost (per month)	Shipping Cost (per unit)					Capacity (units/ month)
		Region 1	Region 2	Region 3	Region 4	Region 5	
WH 1	$50,000	$30	$70	$75	$55	$40	700
WH 2	$30,000	$55	$30	$45	$45	$70	500
WH 3	$70,000	$70	$30	$50	$60	$55	1,000

Problems

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem (or its parts) where Analytic Solver is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

10.1. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for Waste Management, Inc., that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 10.2. Briefly describe how mixed BIP was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

10.2. Reconsider the California Manufacturing Co. case study presented in Section 10.2. The mayor of San Diego now has contacted the company's president, Armando Ortega, to try to persuade him to build a factory and perhaps a warehouse in that city. With the tax incentives being offered the company, Armando's

staff estimates that the net present value of building a factory in San Diego would be $7 million and the amount of capital required to do this would be $4 million. The net present value of building a warehouse there would be $5 million and the capital required would be $3 million. (This option will only be considered if a factory also is being built there.) Armando has asked Steve Chan to revise his previous management science and business analytics study to incorporate these new alternatives into the overall problem. The objective still is to find the feasible combination of investments that maximizes the total net present value, given that the amount of capital available for these investments is $10 million.

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

10.3.* A young couple, Eve and Steven, want to divide their main household chores (marketing, cooking, dishwashing, and laundering) between them so that each has two tasks but the total time they spend on household duties is kept to a minimum. Their efficiencies on these tasks differ, where the time each would need to perform the task is given by the following table.

	Time Needed per Week (Hours)			
	Marketing	Cooking	Dish Washing	Laundry
Eve	4.5	7.8	3.6	2.9
Steven	4.9	7.2	4.3	3.1

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

10.4. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for MISO that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 10.3. Briefly describe how mixed binary integer programming was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

page 437

10.5 A real-estate development firm, Peterson and Johnson, is considering five possible development projects. Using units of

millions of dollars, the following table shows the estimated long-run profit (net present value) that each project would generate, as well as the amount of investment required to undertake the project.

	Development Project				
	1	2	3	4	5
Estimated profit (millions)	$1	$1.8	$1.6	$0.8	$1.4
Capital required (millions)	6	12	10	4	8

The owners of the firm, Dave Peterson and Ron Johnson, have raised $20 million of investment capital for these projects. Dave and Ron now want to select the combination of projects that will maximize their total estimated long-run profit (net present value) without investing more than $20 million.

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

AS *c.* Perform what-if analysis on the amount of investment capital made available for the development projects by generating a parameter analysis report with Analytic Solver to solve the model with the following amounts of investment capital (in millions of dollars): 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 28, and 30. Include both the changing cells and the objective cell as output cells in the parameter analysis report.

10.6. The board of directors of General Wheels Co. is considering seven large capital investments. Each investment can be made only once. These investments differ in the estimated long-run profit (net present value) that they will generate as well as in the amount of capital required, as shown by the following table.

Investment Opportunity	Estimated Profit (millions)	Capital Required (millions)
1	$17	$43

Investment Opportunity	Estimated Profit (millions)	Capital Required (millions)
2	10	28
3	15	34
4	19	48
5	7	17
6	13	32
7	9	23

The total amount of capital available for these investments is $100 million. Investment opportunities 1 and 2 are mutually exclusive, and so are 3 and 4. Furthermore, neither 3 nor 4 can be undertaken unless one of the first two opportunities is undertaken. There are no such restrictions on investment opportunities 5, 6, and 7. The objective is to select the combination of capital investments that will maximize the total estimated long-run profit (net present value).

a. Formulate and solve a BIP model on a spreadsheet for this problem.

AS *b.* Perform what-if analysis on the amount of capital made available for the investment opportunities by generating a parameter analysis report with Analytic Solver to solve the model with the following amounts of capital (in millions of dollars): 80, 90, 100, 110, . . . , and 200. Include both the changing cells and the objective cell as output cells in the parameter analysis report.

10.7. The Fly-Right Airplane Company builds small jet airplanes to sell to corporations for use by their executives. To meet the needs of these executives, the company's customers sometimes order a custom design of the airplanes being purchased. When this occurs, a substantial start-up cost is incurred to initiate the production of these airplanes.

Fly-Right has recently received purchase requests from three customers with short deadlines. However, because the company's

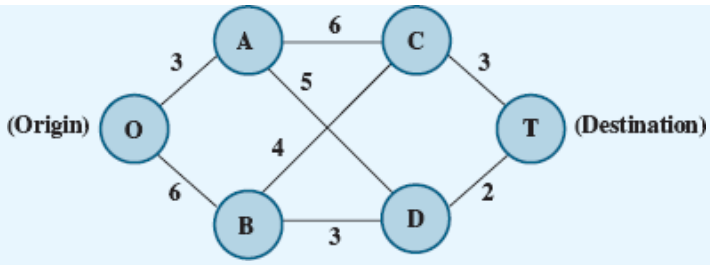
production facilities already are almost completely tied up filling previous orders, it will not be able to accept all three orders. Therefore, a decision now needs to be made on the number of airplanes the company will agree to produce (if any) for each of the three customers.

The relevant data are given in the next table. The first row gives the start-up cost required to initiate the production of the airplanes for each customer. Once production is under way, the marginal net revenue (which is the purchase price minus the marginal production cost) from each airplane produced is shown in the second row. The third row gives the percentage of the available production capacity that would be used for each airplane produced. The last row indicates the maximum number of airplanes requested by each customer (but less will be accepted).

	Customer		
	1	**2**	**3**
Start-up cost	$3 million	$2 million	0
Marginal net revenue	$2 million	$3 million	$0.8 million
Capacity used per plane	20%	40%	20%
Maximum order	3 planes	2 planes	5 planes

Fly-Right now wants to determine how many airplanes to produce for each customer (if any) to maximize the company's total profit (total net revenue minus start-up costs). Formulate and solve a spreadsheet model with both integer variables and binary variables for this problem.

10.8.* Consider the following special type of shortest path problem (discussed in Section 9.4) where the nodes are in columns and the only paths considered always move forward one column at a time.



The numbers along the links represent distances (in miles), and the objective is to find the shortest path from the origin to the destination.

page 438

This problem also can be formulated as a BIP model involving both mutually exclusive alternatives and contingent decisions. Formulate and solve this BIP model on a spreadsheet. Identify the constraints for (1) mutually exclusive alternatives and (2) contingent decisions.

10.9. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for Netherlands Railways that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 10.5. Briefly describe how BIP and related techniques were applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

10.10. Speedy Delivery provides two-day delivery service of large parcels across the United States. Each morning at each collection center, the parcels that have arrived overnight are loaded onto several trucks for delivery throughout the area. Since the competitive battlefield in this business is speed of delivery, the parcels are divided among the trucks according to their geographical destinations to minimize the average time needed to make the deliveries.

On this particular morning, the dispatcher for the Blue River Valley Collection Center, Sharon Lofton, is hard at work. Her three drivers will be arriving in less than an hour to make the day's deliveries. There are nine parcels to be delivered, all at locations many miles apart. As usual, Sharon has loaded these locations into her computer. She is using her company's special software package, a decision support system called Dispatcher. The first thing Dispatcher does is use these locations to generate a considerable number of attractive possible routes for the individual

delivery trucks. These routes are shown in the table below (where the numbers in each column indicate the order of the deliveries), along with the estimated time required to traverse the route.

Delivery Location	Attractive Possible Route									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A	1				1				1	
B		2		1		2			2	2
C	2		3	3			3		3	
D	2					1		1		
E			2	2		3				
F		1			2					
G	3						1	2		3
H			1		3					1
I		3		4			2			
Time (in hours)	6	4	7	5	4	6	5	3	7	6

Dispatcher is an interactive system that shows these routes to Sharon for her approval or modification. (For example, the computer may not know that flooding has made a particular route infeasible.) After Sharon approves these routes as attractive possibilities with reasonable time estimates, Dispatcher next formulates and solves a BIP model for selecting three routes that minimize their total time while including each delivery location on exactly one route.

a. Using the data in the table, demonstrate how Dispatcher can formulate and solve this BIP model on a spreadsheet.

b. Describe how the problem addressed in part *a* is analogous to the crew scheduling problem described in Section 10.4.

10.11. An increasing number of Americans are moving to a warmer climate when they retire. To take advantage of this trend, Sunny Skies Unlimited is undertaking a major real-estate development project. The project is to develop a completely new retirement community (to be called Pilgrim Haven) that will cover several square miles. One of the decisions to be made is where to

locate the two paramedic stations that have been allocated to the community to respond to medical emergencies. For planning purposes, Pilgrim Haven has been divided into five tracts, with no more than one paramedic station to be located in any given tract. Each station is to respond to *all* the medical emergencies that occur in the tract in which it is located as well as in the other tracts that are assigned to this station. Thus, the decisions to be made consist of (1) the tracts to receive a paramedic station and (2) the assignment of each of the other tracts to one of the paramedic stations. The objective is to minimize the overall average of the *response times* to medical emergencies.

The following table gives the average response time to a medical emergency in each tract (the rows) if that tract is served by a station in a given tract (the columns). The last column gives the forecasted average number of medical emergencies that will occur in each of the tracts per day.

		Paramedic Station in Tract					Average Frequency of Medical Emergencies per Day
		1	2	3	4	5	
Response times (min.) to a medical emergency in tract	1	5	20	15	25	10	2
	2	12	4	20	15	25	1
	3	30	15	6	25	15	3
	4	20	10	15	4	12	1
	5	15	25	12	10	5	3

Formulate and solve a BIP model on a spreadsheet for this problem. Identify any constraints that correspond to mutually exclusive alternatives or contingent decisions.

10.12. Reconsider Problem 10.11. The management of Sunny Skies Unlimited now has decided that the decision regarding the locations of the paramedic stations should be based mainly on costs.

The cost of locating a paramedic station in a tract is $200,000 for tract 1, $250,000 for tract 2, $400,000 for tract 3, $300,000 for tract 4, and $500,000 for tract 5. Management's objective now is to determine which tracts should receive a station to minimize the total cost of stations while ensuring that each tract has at least one station close enough to respond to a medical emergency in no

more than 15 minutes. In contrast to the original problem, note that the total number of paramedic stations is no longer fixed. Furthermore, if a tract without a station has more than one station within 15 minutes, it is no longer necessary to assign this tract to just one of these stations.

page 439

a. Formulate the algebraic form of a pure BIP model with five binary variables for this problem.

b. Display and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

10.13. Reconsider the Southwestern Airways crew scheduling problem presented in Section 10.5. Because of a blizzard in the Chicago area, all the flights into and out of Chicago (including flights 4, 6, 7, and 9 in Table 10.5) have been canceled for the time being, so a new crew scheduling plan needs to be developed to cover the seven remaining flights in Table 10.5.

The 12 feasible sequences of flights still are the ones shown in Table 10.5 after deleting the canceled flights. When flights into and out of Chicago had originally been part of a sequence, a crew now would fly as passengers on a Southwestern Airways flight to the next city in the sequence to cover the remaining flights in the sequence. For example, flight sequence 4 now would be San Francisco to Los Angeles to Denver to San Francisco, where a crew would fly as passengers on a flight from Los Angeles to Denver (not shown in the table) to enable serving as the crew from Denver to San Francisco. (Since the original sequence 5 included a round-trip from Denver to Chicago and back, a crew assigned to this sequence now would simply lay over in Denver to await the flight from Denver to San Francisco.) The cost of assigning a crew to any sequence still would be the same as shown in the bottom row of Table 10.5.

The objective still is to minimize the total cost of the crew assignments that cover all the flights. The fact that only 7 flights now need to be covered instead of 11 increases the chance that fewer than three crews will need to be assigned to a flight sequence this time. (The flights where these crews fly as passengers do not need to be covered since they already are assigned to crews that are not based in San Francisco.)

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this problem on a spreadsheet.

10.14. Yakima Construction Corporation (YCC) is considering a number of different development projects. The cash outflows that would be required to complete each project are indicated in the table below, along with the expected net present value of each project (all values in millions of dollars).

	Project				
	1	2	3	4	5
Year 1	$8	$10	$12	$4	$14
Year 2	6	8	6	3	6
Year 3	3	7	6	2	5
Year 4	0	5	6	0	7
NPV	$12	$15	$20	$9	$23

Each project must be done in full (with the corresponding cash flows for all four years) or not done at all. Furthermore, there are the following additional considerations. Project 1 cannot be done unless Project 2 is also undertaken, and projects 3 and 4 would compete with each other, so they should not both be chosen. YCC expects to have the following cash available to invest in these projects: $40 million for year 1, $25 million for year 2, $16 million for year 3, and $12 million for year 4. Any available money not spent in a given year is then available to spend the following year. YCC's policy is to choose their projects so as to maximize their total expected NPV.

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

10.15. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for Vattenfall that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 10.6. Briefly describe how mixed BIP was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

10.16. An electrical utility needs to generate 6,500 megawatts of electricity today. It has five generators. If any electricity is generated by a given generator, that generator must be started up and a fixed start-up cost is incurred. There is an additional cost for each megawatt generated by a generator. These costs, as well as the maximum capacity of each generator, are shown in the following table. The objective is to determine the minimum cost plan that meets the electrical needs for today.

	Generator				
	A	B	C	D	E
Fixed start-up cost	$3,000	$2,000	$2,500	$1,500	$1,000
Cost per megawatt/day generated	$5	$4	$6	$6	$7
Maximum capacity (MW/day)	2,100	1,800	2,500	1,500	3,000

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

10.17. The school board for the Bellevue School District has made the decision to purchase 1,350 additional Macintosh computers for computer laboratories in all its schools. Based on past experience, the school board also has directed that these computers should be purchased from some combination of three companies—Educomp, Macwin, and McElectronics. In all three cases, the companies charge a discounted variable cost per computer and a fixed delivery and installation cost for these large sales to school districts. The next table shows these charges as well as the capacity (the maximum number of computers that can be sold from the limited inventory) for each of the companies.

	Educomp	Macwin	McElectronics
Capacity	700	700	1,000
Fixed cost	$45,000	$35,000	$50,000

	Educomp	Macwin	McElectronics
Variable cost	$750	$775	$700

The school board wants to determine the minimum-cost plan for meeting its computer needs.

a. Formulate a BIP model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Formulate and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

AS *c.* Now suppose that Macwin has not submitted its final bid yet, so the per computer cost is not known with certainty. Generate a parameter analysis report with Analytic Solver to show the optimal order quantities and total cost of the optimal solution when the cost per computer for Macwin is $680, $690, $700, $710, . . . , $790, or $800.

	Average Shipping Cost ($/book)						
Warehouse Site	Northwest	Southwest	Midwest	Southeast	Northeast	Fixed Cost (per week)	Warehouse Capacity (books/week)
Spokane, WA	$2.40	$3.50	$4.80	$6.80	$5.75	$40,000	20,000
Reno, NV	$3.25	$2.30	$3.40	$5.25	$6.00	$30,000	20,000
Omaha, NE	$4.05	$3.25	$2.85	$4.30	$4.75	$25,000	15,000
Harrisburg, PA	$5.25	$6.05	$4.30	$3.25	$2.75	$40,000	25,000
Jacksonville, FL	$6.95	$5.85	$4.80	$2.10	$3.50	$30,000	15,000
Customer demand (per week)	8,000	12,000	9,000	14,000	17,000		

10.18. Noble Amazon sells books online. Management is trying to determine the best sites for the company's warehouses. The five potential sites under consideration are listed in the first column of the above table. Most of the sales come from customers in the United States. The average weekly demand from each region of the country, the average shipping cost from each warehouse site to each region of the country, the fixed cost per week of each warehouse if it is operated, and the maximum capacity of each warehouse (if it is operated) are shown in the following table. Formulate and solve a mixed BIP model in a spreadsheet to determine which warehouse sites Noble Amazon should operate

and how books should be distributed from each warehouse to each region of the country to minimize total cost.

10.19. Aberdeen Computer Corp. (ACC) is located in Aberdeen, Washington. The company has developed Jeeves, a voice-activated Internet assistant for the home. This product is manufactured at four plants, located in Atlanta, Kansas City, Aberdeen, and Austin. After production, the units are shipped to three warehouses, located in Nashville, San Jose, and Houston. ACC sells through the retail channel. In particular, five different retailers currently sell Jeeves—Sears, Best Buy, Staples, Walmart, and Office Depot. ACC makes weekly shipments to the main warehouses of these five retailers. The shipping cost from each plant to each warehouse, along with the production cost and weekly production capacity at each plant, are given in the table below.

	Shipping Cost ($/unit)			Produc-	Capacity
Plant	Nash-ville	San Jose	Hous-ton	tion Cost ($/unit)	(units/ week)
Atlanta	$30	$40	$50	$208	200
Kansas City	$25	$45	$40	$214	300
Aberdeen	$45	$30	$55	$215	300
Austin	$30	$50	$30	$210	400

The shipping cost from each warehouse to each customer, the variable cost (cost per unit moved through the warehouse), the capacity (maximum number of units that can be moved through the warehouse per week) for each warehouse, and the weekly demand for each customer are given in the table at the bottom of the page.

a. Formulate and solve a linear programming model in a spreadsheet to determine the plan for weekly production and distribution of Jeeves from the various plants, through the warehouses, to the customers that will minimize total costs.

b. Now suppose that ACC is considering saving money by closing some of its production facilities and/or warehouses. Suppose there is a fixed cost to operate

each plant and each warehouse as indicated in the following tables. Add binary variables to your model in part *a* to incorporate the decision of which plants and warehouses to keep open so as to minimize total cost (including the fixed costs for any plant or warehouse that is operated).

Plant	Fixed Cost ($/week)
Atlanta	$8,000
Kansas City	$9,000
Aberdeen	$9,000
Austin	$10,000

Warehouse	Fixed Cost ($/week)
Nashville	$4,000
San Jose	$5,000
Houston	$5,000

	Shipping Cost ($/unit)					Variable Cost	Capacity
Warehouse	Target	Best Buy	Staples	Walmart	Office Depot	($/unit)	(units/week)
Nashville	$40	$45	$30	$25	$20	$4	300
San Jose	$15	$50	$25	$15	$40	$5	500
Houston	$50	$35	$15	$40	$50	$5	500
Customer demand (per week)	100	50	75	300	150		

Case 10-1

Assigning Art

It had been a dream come true for Ash Briggs, a struggling artist living in the San Francisco Bay area. He had made a trip to the corner grocery store late one Friday afternoon to buy some milk, and, on impulse, he had also purchased a California lottery ticket. One week later, he was a multimillionaire.

Ash did not want to squander his winnings on materialistic, trivial items. Instead he wanted to use his money to support his true passion: art. Ash knew all too well the difficulties of gaining recognition as an artist in this post-industrial, technological society where artistic appreciation is rare and financial support even rarer. He therefore decided to use the money to fund an exhibit of up-and-coming modern artists at the **San Francisco Museum of Modern Art.**

Ash approached the museum directors with his idea, and the directors became excited immediately after he informed them that he would fund the entire exhibit in addition to donating $1 million to the museum. Celeste McKenzie, a museum director, was assigned to work with Ash in planning the exhibit. The exhibit was slated to open one year from the time Ash met with the directors, and the exhibit pieces would remain on display for two months.

Ash began the project by combing the modern art community for potential artists and pieces. He presented a list (shown below) of artists, their pieces, and the price of displaying each piece[1] to Celeste.

Ash possesses certain requirements for the exhibit. He believes the majority of Americans lack adequate knowledge of art and artistic styles, and he wants the exhibit to educate Americans. Ash wants visitors to become aware of the collage as an art form, but he believes collages require little talent. He therefore decides to include only one collage. Additionally, Ash wants viewers to compare the delicate lines in a three-dimensional wire mesh sculpture to the delicate lines in a two-dimensional computer-generated drawing. He therefore wants at least one wire-mesh sculpture displayed if a computer--generated drawing is displayed. Alternatively, he wants at least one computer--generated drawing displayed if a wire-mesh sculpture is displayed. Furthermore, Ash wants to expose viewers to all painting styles, but he wants to limit the number of paintings displayed to achieve a balance in the exhibit between paintings and other art forms. He therefore decides to include at least one photo-realistic painting, at least one cubist painting, at least one expressionist painting, at least one watercolor painting, and at least one oil painting. At the same time, he wants the number of paintings to be no greater than twice the number of other art forms.

Artist	Piece	Description of Piece	Price
Colin Zweibell	*Perfection*	A wire-mesh sculpture of the human body	$300,000

Artist	Piece	Description of Piece	Price
	Burden	A wire-mesh sculpture of a mule	250,000
	The Great Equalizer	A wire-mesh sculpture of a gun	125,000
Rita Losky	*Chaos Reigns*	A series of computer-generated drawings	400,000
	Who Has Control?	A computer-generated drawing intermeshed with lines of computer code	500,000
	Domestication	A pen-and-ink drawing of a house	400,000
	Innocence	A pen-and-ink drawing of a child	550,000
Norm Marson	*Aging Earth*	A sculpture of trash covering a larger globe	700,000
	Wasted Resources	A collage of various packaging materials	575,000
Candy Tate	*Serenity*	An all-blue watercolor painting	200,000
	Calm before the Storm	A painting with an all-blue watercolor background and a black watercolor center	225,000
Robert Bayer	*Void*	An all-black oil painting	150,000
	Sun	An all-yellow oil painting	150,000
David Lyman	*Storefront Window*	A photo-realistic painting of a jewelry store display window	850,000
	Harley	A photo-realistic painting of a Harley-Davidson motorcycle	750,000
Angie Oldman	*Consumerism*	A collage of magazine advertisements	400,000

Artist	Piece	Description of Piece	Price
	Reflection		175,000
		A mirror (considered a sculpture)	
	Trojan Victory	A wooden sculpture of a condom	450,000
Rick Rawls	*Rick*	A photo-realistic self-portrait (painting)	500,000
	Rick II	A cubist self-portrait (painting)	500,000
	Rick III	An expressionist self-portrait (painting)	500,000
Bill Reynolds	*Beyond*	A science fiction oil painting depicting Mars colonization	650,000
	Pioneers	An oil painting of three astronauts aboard the space shuttle	650,000
Bear Canton	*Wisdom*	A pen-and-ink drawing of an Apache chieftain	250,000
	Superior Powers	A pen-and-ink drawing of a traditional Native American rain dance	350,000
	Living Land	An oil painting of the Grand Canyon	450,000
Helen Row	*Study of a Violin*	A cubist painting of a violin	400,000
	Study of a Fruit Bowl	A cubist painting of a bowl of fruit	400,000
Ziggy Lite	*My Namesake*	A collage of Ziggy cartoons	300,000
	Narcissism	A collage of photographs of Ziggy Lite	300,000

Artist	Piece	Description of Piece	Price
Ash Briggs	*All That Glitters*	A watercolor painting of the Golden Gate Bridge	50,000*
	The Rock	A watercolor painting of Alcatraz	50,000*
	Winding Road	A watercolor painting of Lombard Street	50,000*
	Dreams Come True	A watercolor painting of the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art	50,000*

*Ash does not require personal compensation, and the cost for moving his pieces to the museum from his home in San Francisco is minimal. The cost of displaying his pieces therefore only includes the cost of constructing the display and insuring the pieces.

Ash wants all his own paintings included in the exhibit since he is sponsoring the exhibit and since his paintings celebrate the San Francisco Bay area, the home of the exhibit.

Ash possesses personal biases for and against some artists. Ash is currently having a steamy affair with Candy Tate, and he wants both of her paintings displayed. Ash counts both David Lyman and Rick Rawls as his best friends, and he does not want to play favorites between these two artists. He therefore decides to display as many pieces from David Lyman as from Rick Rawls and to display at least one piece from each of them. Although Ziggy Lite is very popular within art circles, Ash believes Ziggy makes a mockery of art. Ash will therefore only accept one display piece from Ziggy, if any at all.

Celeste also possesses her own agenda for the exhibit. As a museum director, she is interested in representing a diverse population of artists, appealing to a wide audience, and creating a politically correct exhibit. To advance feminism, she decides to include at least one piece from a female artist for every two pieces included from a male artist. To advance environmentalism, she decides to include either one or both of the pieces *Aging Earth* and *Wasted Resources.* To advance Native American rights, she decides to include at least one piece by Bear Canton. To advance science, she decides to include at least one of the following pieces: *Chaos Reigns, Who Has Control?, Beyond,* and *Pioneers.*

Celeste also understands that space is limited at the museum. The museum only has enough floor space for four sculptures and enough wall space for 20 paintings, collages, and drawings.

Finally, Celeste decides that if *Narcissism* is displayed, *Reflection* should also be displayed since *Reflection* also suggests narcissism.

Please explore the following questions independently except where otherwise indicated.

a. Ash decides to allocate $4 million to fund the exhibit. Given the pieces available and the specific requirements from Ash and Celeste, formulate and solve a binary integer programming problem to maximize the number of pieces displayed in the exhibit without exceeding the budget. How many pieces are displayed? Which pieces are displayed?
b. To ensure that the exhibit draws the attention of the public, Celeste decides that it must include at least 20 pieces. Formulate and solve a binary integer programming problem to minimize the cost of the exhibit while displaying at least 20 pieces and meeting the requirements set by Ash and Celeste. How much does the exhibit cost? Which pieces are displayed?
c. An influential patron of Rita Losky's work who chairs the museum's board of directors learns that Celeste requires at least 20 pieces in the exhibit. He offers to pay the minimum amount required on top of Ash's $4 million to ensure that exactly 20 pieces are displayed in the exhibit and that all of Rita's pieces are displayed. How much does the patron have to pay? Which pieces are displayed?

Case 10-2

Stocking Sets

Daniel Holbrook, an expediter at the local warehouse for **Furniture City,** sighed as he moved boxes and boxes of inventory to the side to reach the shelf where the particular item he needed was located. He dropped to his hands and knees and squinted at the inventory numbers lining the bottom row of the shelf. He did not find the number he needed. He worked his way up the shelf until he found the number matching the number on the order slip. Just his luck! The item was on the top row of the shelf! Daniel walked back through the warehouse to find a ladder, stumbling over boxes of inventory littering his path. When he finally climbed the ladder to reach the top shelf, his face crinkled in frustration. Not again! The item he needed was not in stock! All he saw above the inventory number was an empty space covered with dust!

Daniel trudged back through the warehouse to make the dreaded phone call. He dialed the number of Brenda Sims, the saleswoman on the kitchen showroom floor of Furniture City, and informed her that the particular light fixture the customer had requested was not in stock. He then asked her if she wanted him to look for the rest of the items in the kitchen set. Brenda told him that she would talk to the customer and call him back.

Brenda hung up the phone and frowned. Mr. Davidson, her customer, would not be happy. Ordering and receiving the correct light fixture from the regional warehouse would take at least two weeks.

Brenda then paused to reflect upon business during the last month and realized that over 80 percent of the orders for kitchen sets could not be filled because items needed to complete the sets were not in stock at the local warehouse. She also realized that Furniture City was losing customer goodwill and business because of stockouts. The furniture megastore was gaining a reputation for slow service and delayed deliveries, causing customers to turn to small competitors that sold furniture directly from the showroom floor.

page 443

Brenda decided to investigate the inventory situation at the local warehouse. She walked the short distance to the building next door and gasped when she stepped inside the warehouse. What she saw could only be described as chaos. Spaces allocated for some items were overflowing into the aisles of the warehouse while other spaces were completely bare. She walked over to one of the spaces overflowing with inventory to determine what item was overstocked. She could not believe her eyes! The warehouse had at least 30 rolls of pea-green wallpaper! No customer had ordered pea-green wallpaper since 2018!

Brenda marched over to Daniel demanding an explanation. Daniel said that the warehouse had been in such a chaotic state since his arrival one year ago. He said the inventory problems occurred because management had a policy of stocking every furniture item on the showroom floor in the local warehouse. Management only replenished inventory every three months, and when inventory was replenished, management ordered every item regardless of whether it had been sold. Daniel also said that he had tried to make management aware of the problems with overstocking unpopular items and understocking popular items, but management would not listen to him because he was simply an expediter.

Brenda understood that Furniture City required a new inventory policy. Not only was the megastore losing money by making customers unhappy with delivery delays, but it was also losing money by wasting warehouse space.

By changing the inventory policy to stock only popular items and replenish them immediately when sold, Furniture City would ensure that the majority of customers would receive their furniture immediately and that the valuable warehouse space would be utilized effectively.

Brenda needed to sell her inventory policy to management. Using her extensive sales experience, she decided that the most effective sales strategy would be to use her kitchen department as a model for the new inventory policy. She would identify all kitchen sets comprising 85 percent of customer orders. Given the fixed amount of warehouse space allocated to the kitchen department, she would identify the items Furniture City should stock to satisfy the greatest number of customer orders. She would then calculate the revenue from satisfying customer orders under the new inventory policy, using the bottom line to persuade management to accept her policy.

Brenda analyzed her records over the past three years and determined that 20 kitchen sets were responsible for 85 percent of the customer orders. These 20 kitchen sets were composed of up to eight features in a variety of styles. Brenda listed each feature and its popular styles in the tables below.

Floor Tile	Wallpaper	Light Fixtures	Cabinets
(T1) White textured tile	(W1) Plain ivory paper	(L1) One large rectangular frosted fixture	(C1) Light solid wood cabinets
(T2) Ivory textured tile	(W2) Ivory paper with dark brown pinstripes	(L2) Three small square frosted fixtures	(C2) Dark solid wood cabinets
(T3) White checkered tile with blue trim	(W3) Blue paper with marble texture	(L3) One large oval frosted fixture	(C3) Light-wood cabinets with glass doors

Floor Tile	Wallpaper	Light Fixtures	Cabinets
(T4) White checkered tile with light yellow trim	(W4) Light yellow paper with marble texture	(L4) Three small frosted globe fixtures	(C4) Dark-wood cabinets with glass doors

Countertops	Dishwashers	Sinks	Ranges
(O1) Plain light-wood countertops	(D1) White energy-saving dishwasher	(S1) Sink with separate hot and cold water taps	(R1) White electric oven
(O2) Stained light-wood countertops	(D2) Ivory energy-saving dishwasher	(S2) Divided sink with separate hot and cold water taps and garbage disposal	(R2) Ivory electric oven
(O3) White lacquer-coated countertops		(S3) Sink with one hot and cold water tap	(R3) White gas oven
(O4) Ivory lacquer-coated countertops		(S4) Divided sink with one hot and cold water tap and gar bage disposal	(R4) Ivory gas oven

Brenda then created a table (given on page 444445) showing the 20 kitchen sets and the particular features composing each set. To simplify the table, she used the codes shown in parentheses above to represent the particular feature and style. For example, kitchen set 1 consists of floor tile T2, wallpaper W2, light fixture L4, cabinet C2, countertop O2, dishwasher D2,

sink S2, and range R2. Notice that sets 14 through 20 do not contain dishwashers.

Brenda knew she had only a limited amount of warehouse space allocated to the kitchen department. The warehouse could hold 50 square feet of tile and 12 rolls of wallpaper in the inventory bins. The inventory shelves could hold two light fixtures, two cabinets, three countertops, and two sinks. Dishwashers and ranges are similar in size, so Furniture City stored them in similar locations. The warehouse floor could hold a total of four dishwashers and ranges.

Every kitchen set always includes exactly 20 square feet of tile and exactly five rolls of wallpaper. Therefore, 20 square feet of a particular style of tile and five rolls of a particular style of wallpaper are required for the styles to be in stock.

page 445

a. ormulate and solve a binary integer programming problem to maximize the total number of kitchen sets (and thus the number of customer orders) Furniture City stocks in the local warehouse. Assume that when a customer orders a kitchen set, all the particular items composing that kitchen set are replenished at the local warehouse immediately.

b. How many of each feature and style should Furniture City stock in the local warehouse? How many different kitchen sets are in stock?

c. Furniture City decides to discontinue carrying nursery sets, and the warehouse space previously allocated to the nursery department is divided between the existing departments at Furniture City. The kitchen department receives enough additional space to allow it to stock both styles of dishwashers and three of the four styles of ranges. How does the optimal inventory policy for the kitchen department change with this additional warehouse space?

d. Brenda convinces management that the kitchen department should serve as a testing ground for future inventory policies. To provide adequate space for testing, management decides to allocate all the space freed by the nursery department to the kitchen department. The extra space means that the kitchen department can store not only the dishwashers and ranges from part *c,* but also all sinks, all countertops, three of the four light fixtures, and three of the four cabinets. How much does the additional space help?

e. How would the inventory policy be affected if the items composing a kitchen set could not be replenished immediately? Under what conditions is the assumption of immediate replenishment nevertheless justified?

	T1	T2	T3	T4	W1	W2	W3	W4	L1	L2	L3	L4	C1	C2	C3	C4	O1	O2	O3	O4	D1	D2	S1	S2	S3	S4	R1	R2	R3	R4
Set 1		X				X						X		X						X		X		X				X		
Set 2		X			X				X							X				X		X				X		X		
Set 3	X						X			X			X				X				X				X				X	
Set 4			X				X				X				X				X		X		X				X			
Set 5				X				X	X				X					X			X			X			X			
Set 6		X				X				X						X				X		X			X					X
Set 7	X						X					X			X			X			X		X			X				
Set 8		X			X						X		X				X					X			X					X
Set 9		X			X					X					X			X				X		X				X		
Set 10	X				X				X				X						X		X					X			X	
Set 11			X		X						X				X		X				X		X						X	
Set 12		X				X			X					X				X				X				X		X		
Set 13				X				X			X				X		X				X			X					X	
Set 14				X				X				X	X						X				X				X			
Set 15			X				X		X				X				X								X				X	
Set 16			X				X					X	X						X					X		X				
Set 17	X							X		X					X				X							X			X	
Set 18		X					X				X			X						X			X				X			
Set 19		X						X				X				X				X				X						X
Set 20		X					X		X				X					X							X					X

Case 10-3

Assigning Students to Schools (Revisited)

Reconsider Case 6-5. The **Springfield School Board** now has made the decision to prohibit the splitting of residential areas among multiple schools. Thus, each of the six areas must be assigned to a single school.

a. Formulate and solve a BIP model for this problem under the current policy of providing busing for all middle school students who must travel more than approximately a mile.
b. Referring to part *c* of Case 6-5, determine how much the total busing cost increases because of the decision to prohibit the splitting of residential areas among multiple schools.

c, d, e, f. Repeat parts *d, e, f, g* of Case 6-5 under the new school board decision to prohibit splitting of residential areas among multiple schools.

Case 10-4

Broadcasting the Olympic Games (Revisited)

Reconsider part *b* of Case 9-4. Use the spreadsheet model developed there to incorporate the following consideration.

An additional concern not considered in Case 9-4 is that the routers at nodes C and F are each already maxed out. If any additional capacity is built into or out of node C or node F, then the routers at these stations must be upgraded. This would cost a total of $2 million at node C or a total of $3 million at node F. Which network segments should be increased in capacity

and by how much so as to increase the total capacity of the network enough to transmit the peak requirement of 35 GB/s from the Olympics site (A) to the home studios (G) at the lowest possible cost?

[1]The display price includes the cost of paying the artist for loaning the piece to the museum, transporting the piece to San Francisco, constructing the display for the piece, insuring the piece while it is on display, and transporting the piece back to its origin.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 11

Nonlinear Programming

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe how a nonlinear programming model differs from a linear programming model.
2. Recognize when a nonlinear programming model is needed to represent a problem.
3. Formulate a nonlinear programming model from a description of the problem.
4. Construct nonlinear formulas needed for nonlinear programming models.
5. Distinguish between nonlinear programming problems that should be easy to solve and those that may be difficult (if not impossible) to solve.
6. Use the Nonlinear Solver to solve simple types of nonlinear programming problems.
7. Use the multistart feature of Solver to attempt to solve some more difficult nonlinear programming problems.
8. Use Evolutionary Solver to attempt to solve some difficult nonlinear programming problems.
9. Recognize when the separable programming technique is applicable to enable using linear programming with a nonlinear objective function.
10. Apply the separable programming technique when applicable.

L. Use Analytic Solver to analyze a model and choose the most appropriate solving method.

The previous chapters have introduced you to a wide variety of prescriptive analytics models, including various types of linear programming and integer programming models. However, one characteristic shared by all these linear programming and integer programming models is that they all are *linear models,* that is, models where all the functions (mathematical relationships) involved are linear.

When formulating a linear model in a spreadsheet, this means that the Excel functions being used to express the formulas in output cells include only sums (e.g., C1 + C2, or SUM(C1:C2), or C1 − C2) or products of a number (or data cell) and a changing cell (e.g., 2*C4 or the SUMPRODUCT of data cells with changing cells). If any output cell includes the multiplication or division of changing cells (e.g., C4*C5 or C3/C6 or C4^2) or uses almost any Excel function other than SUM or SUMPRODUCT (such as ROUND, ABS, IF, MAX, MIN, SQRT, etc.), then the resulting model will typically not be linear.

A formula automatically becomes nonlinear if it ever multiplies or divides a changing cell by another changing cell or if it assigns an exponent (other than 1) to any changing cell.

Table 11.1 gives various examples of formulas that could be entered into output cells when the data cells are in column D and the changing cells are in column C. The formulas on the left are all linear while those on the right are not. The first four examples in each column are quite similar. Can you see why the formulas on the left are linear while those on the right are not? The key to seeing this distinction for these four examples is that a linear formula permits any calculations that involve only the data cells but restricts each changing cell to having only the most basic arithmetic operations: addition or subtraction and multiplication or division by a constant. For the other examples, note how each of the formulas on the right side of Table 11.1 involves more complicated operations on changing cells, including such Excel operations as ROUND, MAX, MIN, and ABS, as well as IF and SUMIF operations where the IF portion involves changing cells.

TABLE 11.1

Examples of Linear and Nonlinear Formulas in a Spreadsheet When the Data Cells Are in Column D and the Changing Cells Are in Column C

Linear Formulas	Nonlinear Formulas
SUMPRODUCT(D4:D6, C4:C6)	SUMPRODUCT(C4:C6, C1:C3)
[(D1 + D2)/D3]*C4	[(C1 + C2)/C3]* D4
IF(D2 >= 2, 2*C3, 3*C4)	IF(C2 >= 2, 2*C3, 3*C4)
SUMIF(D1:D6, 4, C1:C6)	SUMIF(C1:C6, 4, D1:D6)
SUM(D4:D6)	ROUND(C1)
2*C1 + 3*C4 + C6	MAX(C1, 3)
C1 + C2 + C3	MIN(C1, C2)
	ABS(C1)
	SQRT(C1)
	C1*C2
	C1/C2
	C1^2

Note: Data cells are in D1:D6; changing cells are in C1:C6.

Despite the versatility of linear models, managers occasionally encounter problems where such a model does not quite fit because at least one of the formulas that needs to be entered into output cells is not linear. In most cases, this occurs because the formula for the objective cell needs to be nonlinear, although cases also arise occasionally where a nonlinear formula is needed for one or more output cells appearing in the left-hand side of a functional constraint. If the model is a linear programming model except for having at least one nonlinear formula for an output cell (such as the objective cell), then it is called a *nonlinear programming model.*

For simplicity, we will focus in this chapter on the common case where the only nonlinear formula is for the objective cell. However, do be aware that this approach also can be extended to the other output cells when nonlinear constraints are needed in the model.

Formulating and solving nonlinear programming models often is considerably more challenging than formulating and solving linear programming models. However, these challenges frequently can be overcome, sometimes in relatively straightforward ways. Rest easy. This

chapter focuses on the relatively straightforward types of nonlinear programming which require only reasonably routine spreadsheet modeling and the application of the Nonlinear Solver that is one of the options with Excel's Solver. This is all a manager (or future manager) needs to know about nonlinear programming. A management science specialist should be called on to deal with more difficult types of nonlinear programming.

Because of the close relationship between linear and nonlinear programming, it is sometimes unclear which technique should be used to analyze a managerial problem. This occurs for problems where the appropriate formula for the objective cell is nonlinear but is reasonably close to being linear. In this case, one alternative is to use a linear approximation for the formula so that linear programming can be applied. The advantage is greater ease of formulating and solving the model. Since a model is intended to be only an idealized representation of the real problem, this alternative is reasonable if the linear approximation is a good one. However, the major advantage of using nonlinear programming instead is the greater precision it provides in seeking the best solution for the real problem. When the appropriate nonlinear programming model is not an overly difficult one to formulate and solve, it makes good sense to use this model. If desired, a linear programming model still can be used to perform some quick preliminary analysis, including some what-if analysis, but the greater precision of nonlinear programming should not be foregone lightly for the final analysis.

Nonlinear programming often provides greater precision than linear programming for analyzing managerial problems.

Section 11.1 discusses the challenges encountered when using nonlinear programming and introduces the Nonlinear Solver. Fortunately, there are some "easy" types of nonlinear programming problems that arise fairly frequently. Three such types are presented in Sections 11.2, 11.3, and 11.4. Section 11.5 then describes how some "difficult" nonlinear programming problems still can be solved by applying the Nonlinear Solver multiple times with different starting solutions. However, the Nonlinear Solver is unable to solve some other nonlinear programming problems. Fortunately, both Excel's Solver and Analytic Solver provide an additional procedure called *Evolutionary Solver* for coping with such problems. Evolutionary Solver is described in Section 11.6. Finally, after formulating a model of the problem under consideration, Section 11.7 describes how Analytic Solver can be used to analyze the model and choose the most appropriate solving method.

11.1 THE CHALLENGES OF NONLINEAR PROGRAMMING

In almost every respect, a nonlinear programming model is indistinguishable from a linear programming model. In both cases, decisions need to be made regarding the levels of a number of activities, where these activity levels can have any value (including a fractional value) that satisfies a number of constraints. The decisions regarding activity levels are to be based on an overall measure of performance. When the model is formulated in a spreadsheet, the changing cells display the activity levels, output cells help to represent the constraints, and the objective cell shows the overall measure of performance.

A nonlinear programming model has the same appearance as a linear programming model except for having a nonlinear formula in at least one output cell (commonly the objective cell).

The only way to distinguish a nonlinear programming model from a linear programming model is to examine the formulas entered into the output cells. It is a nonlinear programming model if one or more of these formulas is nonlinear instead of linear. In many applications, such a model has only one nonlinear formula and it is the one entered into the objective cell. (This is the case we focus on in this chapter.) Despite such a small difference in the *appearance* of the two kinds of models, their *application* differs in three major ways.

1. Nonlinear programming is used to model *nonproportional relationships* between activity levels and the overall measure of performance, whereas linear programming assumes a proportional relationship.
2. Constructing the nonlinear formula(s) needed for a nonlinear programming model is considerably more difficult than developing the linear formulas used in linear programming.
3. Solving a nonlinear programming model is often much more difficult (if it is possible at all) than solving a linear programming model.

As these comparisons indicate, using nonlinear programming instead of linear programming raises some new challenges. Let us examine these challenges a little more closely.

The Challenge of Nonproportional Relationships

When either a linear programming model or a nonlinear programming model is formulated in a spreadsheet, the objective cell needs to show the overall measure of performance that results from the activity levels that are displayed in the changing cells. However, nonlinear programming uses a more complicated relationship between the activity levels and the overall measure of performance than does linear programming.

In the case of linear programming, this relationship is assumed to be a particularly simple one. To illustrate, consider again the Wyndor Glass Co. problem introduced in Section 5.1 and formulated in Section 5.2. The activities for this problem are the production of the special new doors and the special new windows, where the levels of these activities are D = Number of doors to be produced per week

W = Number of windows to be produced per week

The overall measure of performance is the total weekly profit obtained from the production and sale of these doors and windows. The unit profit has been estimated to be $300 for each door and $500 for each window. The graphs in Figure 11.1 show the resulting relationship between the level of each activity (D and W) and the contribution of that activity to the overall measure of performance. The straight line in each graph shows a **proportional relationship** because the weekly profit from each product is *proportional* to the production rate for that product. These straight lines also indicate that the objective function

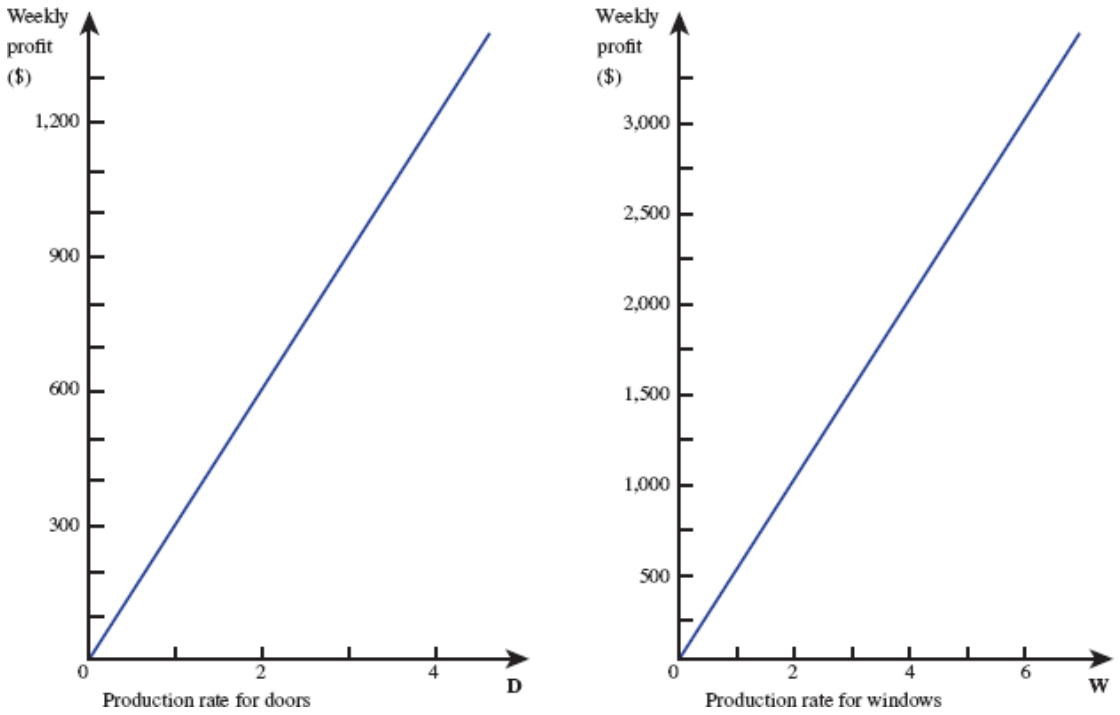
proportional relationship

An activity has a proportional relationship with the overall measure of performance for a problem if the contribution of the activity to this measure is proportional to the level of the activity.

FIGURE 11.1

page 450

Profit graphs for the Wyndor Glass Co. that show the weekly profit from each product versus the production rate for that product.



$$\text{Profit} = \$300D + \$500W$$

is *linear.* The fact that this formula being entered into the objective cell is linear helps to make the overall model a linear programming model.

As illustrated by the Wyndor Glass Co. problem, *every* linear programming problem assumes a proportional relationship between each activity and the overall measure of performance. A summary of this key assumption is given next.

> **Proportionality Assumption of Linear Programming:** The contribution of each activity to the value of the objective function is *proportional* to the level of the activity.[1] In other words, the term in the objective function involving this activity consists of a coefficient times a decision variable, where the coefficient is the contribution per unit of this activity and the decision variable is the level of this activity. (For example, for each product in the Wyndor Glass Co. problem, the coefficient is the product's unit profit and the decision variable is the production rate for the product.)

proportionality assumption

A basic assumption of linear programming that requires the contribution of each activity to the value of the objective function to be proportional to the level of that activity.

Nonlinear programming problems arise when the proportionality assumption of linear programming is violated.

Nonlinear programming problems arise when this assumption is violated. This occurs whenever any activity has a **nonproportional relationship** with the overall measure of performance because the contribution of the activity to this measure of performance is *not proportional* to the level of the activity.

nonproportional relationship

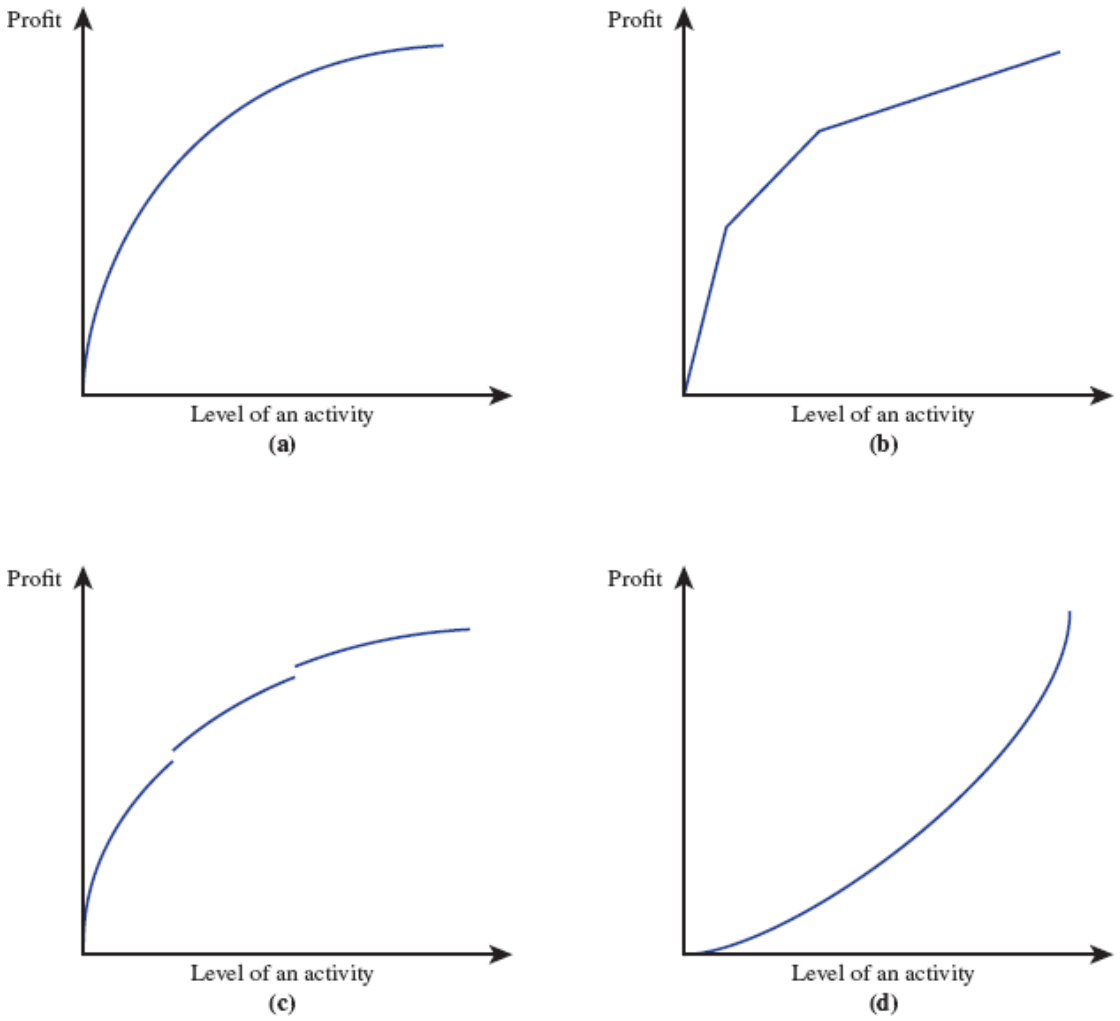
An activity has a nonproportional relationship with the overall measure of performance for a problem if the contribution of the activity to this measure is *not* proportional to the level of the activity.

Figure 11.2 shows four examples of different types of nonproportional relationships. (For definiteness, these graphs assume that the overall measure of performance is profit, but any other measure to be maximized also could be used.)

page 451

FIGURE 11.2

Examples of profit graphs with nonproportional relationships: *(a)* decreasing marginal returns; *(b)* piecewise linear with decreasing marginal returns; *(c)* decreasing marginal returns except for discontinuities; and *(d)* increasing marginal returns.



The first of these examples, shown in Figure 11.2(a), illustrates a profit graph with *decreasing marginal returns.*

Consider any activity where a graph of its profit versus the level of the activity is plotted. Suppose that the *slope* (steepness) of the graph never increases but sometimes decreases as the level of the activity increases. Then the activity is said to have **decreasing marginal returns** because the incremental profit never increases and sometimes decreases for each incremental increase in the level of the activity.

decreasing marginal returns

An activity with a profit graph has decreasing marginal returns if the slope (steepness) of this profit graph never increases but sometimes decreases as the level of the activity increases.

Similarly, in problems where the objective is to minimize the total cost of the activities, an activity is said to have decreasing marginal returns (i.e., decreasing marginal profits) if the slope of its *cost graph* never decreases but sometimes *increases* as the level of the activity increases.[2]

Many activities have decreasing marginal returns.

Since it is frequently difficult to continue increasing profit at the same rate as the level of an activity keeps getting pushed higher and higher, activities with decreasing marginal returns are fairly common. For example, it may be necessary to lower the price of a product to increase its sales. Alternatively, if the price is held constant, the marketing costs may need to go up more than proportionally to attain increases in the level of sales. (The next section begins with an example in which marketing costs behave in this way.) Decreasing marginal returns also occur when less efficient facilities and personnel need to be used to increase the level of an activity.

Figure 11.2(b) illustrates a profit graph that is **piecewise linear** because it consists of a sequence of connected line segments. As the level of the activity increases, the slope of the profit graph remains the same within each line segment but then decreases at the kink where the next line segment begins. Since the slope never increases as the level of the activity increases but does decrease at the kinks, this profit graph also fits the definition of having decreasing marginal returns. This kind of graph might occur, for example, because overtime needs to be used to increase the level of the activity beyond the first kink, and then even more expensive weekend overtime is needed to increase the level beyond the second kink.

piecewise linear

A graph is piecewise linear if it consists of a sequence of connected line segments.

Figure 11.2(c) provides an example of a nonproportional relationship that does not quite have decreasing marginal returns. The reason it does not is that there are spots called **discontinuities** where the profit graph is disconnected because it suddenly jumps up or down. Such discontinuities could occur, for example, because quantity discounts for purchasing a component of a product become available when the production level for the product rises above certain thresholds.

discontinuity

A spot in a graph where it is disconnected because it suddenly jumps up or down.

An activity has increasing marginal returns if its efficiency increases as the level of the activity is increased.

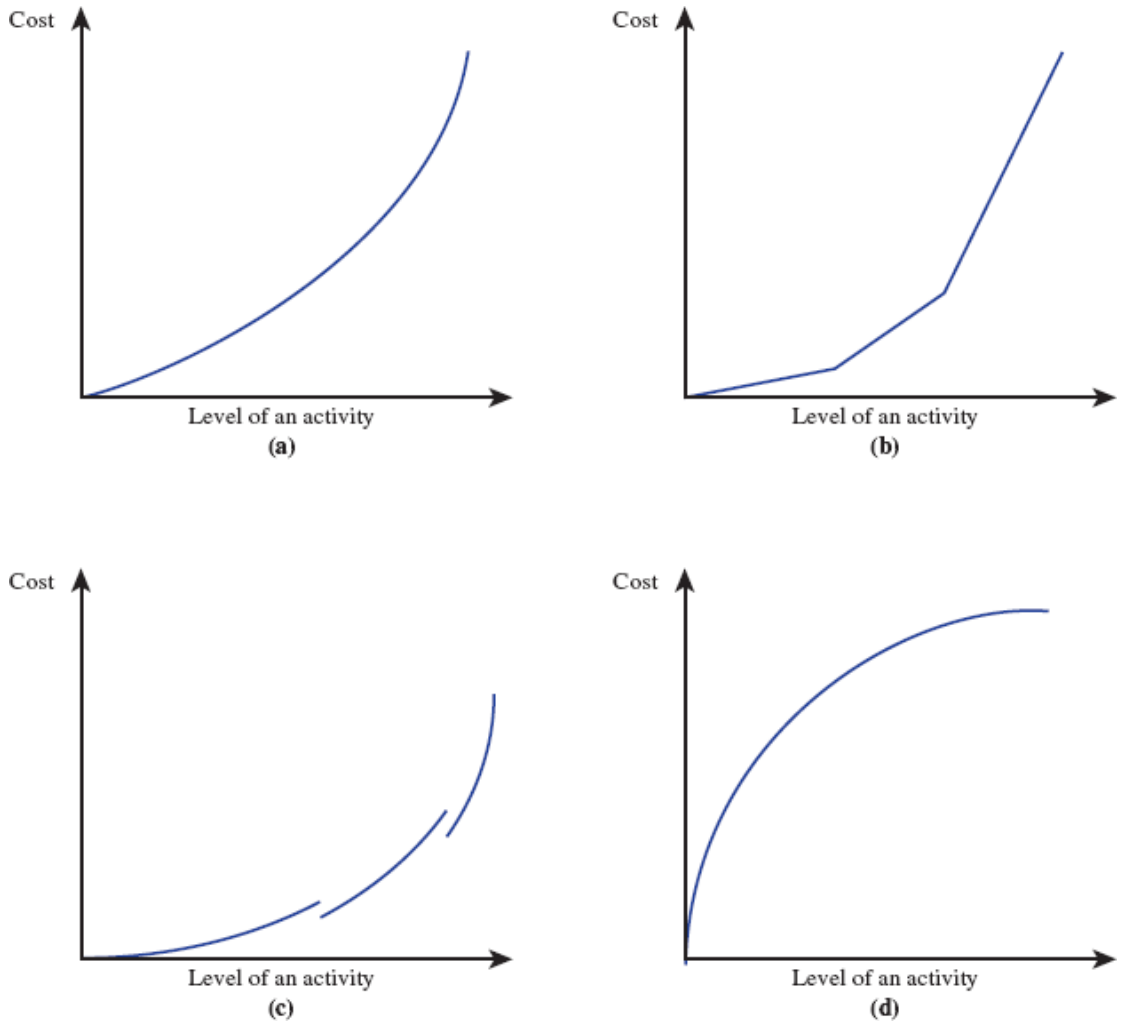
Having activities with decreasing marginal returns is not the only way in which the proportionality assumption can be violated. For example, another way is to have activities with *increasing* marginal returns, as illustrated by Figure 11.2(d). In this case, the slope of the profit graph never decreases but sometimes *increases* as the level of the activity increases. (Similarly, a *cost graph* exhibits increasing marginal returns if its slope never increases but sometimes *decreases* as the level of the activity increases.) This can occur because of the greater efficiencies sometimes achieved at higher levels of an activity.

Profit graphs are used when the overall objective is to maximize the total profit from all the activities. However, *cost graphs* are needed instead when the overall objective is to *minimize* the total cost of all the activities. An activity can violate the proportionality assumption in the same ways that are illustrated in Figure 11.2 if its cost graph has any of the shapes shown in this figure. However, the definitions of increasing marginal returns and decreasing marginal returns get reversed for any given shape when dealing with cost graphs instead of profit graphs (since costs and profits move in opposite directions). In particular, an increasing slope in the cost graph reflects decreasing marginal returns, whereas a decreasing slope reflects increasing marginal returns. (The same conclusion applies to graphs where the objective is to *minimize* some overall measure of performance other than total cost.) Figure 11.3 shows the shapes of cost graphs that fit the same definitions as for the four profit graphs in Figure 11.2.

FIGURE 11.3

page 452

Examples of cost graphs with nonproportional relationships: (*a*) decreasing marginal returns; (*b*) piecewise linear with decreasing marginal returns; (*c*) decreasing marginal returns except for discontinuities; and (*d*) increasing marginal returns. Each cost graph bends in the opposite way from the corresponding profit graph in Figure 11.2.



Figures 11.2 and 11.3 illustrate only some of the possible nonproportional relationships. For example, an activity might have *neither* decreasing marginal returns nor increasing marginal returns because the slope of its graph sometimes decreases and sometimes increases as the level of the activity increases.

In addition, sometimes there are interactions between activities that cause (or help to cause) the objective function to be nonlinear. To illustrate, consider the Wyndor Glass Co. problem again. Suppose now that a major advertising campaign will be required to market either new product if it is produced by itself, but that the same single campaign can be used to effectively promote both products if both are produced. Because a major cost is saved for the second product, their joint profit is somewhat more than the sum of their individual profits when each is produced by itself. In particular, the appropriate objective function might be, say,

$$\text{Profit} = \$300D + \$500W + \$100DW$$

where *DW* denotes the *product* of *D* and *W.* Because of the cross-product term, \$100*DW,* this objective function is nonlinear even though, when either *D* or *W* is fixed at some value, the proportionality assumption still holds for the other product.

Even when the proportionality assumption is satisfied, interactions between activities still can lead to a nonlinear programming model.

When there are interactions between activities in other cases, the total profit from all the activities sometimes will still have decreasing marginal returns. (The common technical term for this is that the objective function is *concave.*) The intuitive interpretation of decreasing marginal returns (a profit graph that never bends up but sometimes bends down) continues to apply here. We will not bother with the complex technical definition that is needed in this case.

page 453

The Challenge of Constructing Nonlinear Formulas

For a linear programming model, it is relatively simple to construct the formula that needs to be entered into the objective cell by using a SUMPRODUCT function. For example, when the objective cell gives the total profit from all the activities (as for the Wyndor Glass Co. problem), each product being summed is simply the product of the unit profit for an activity (as given in a data cell) and the level of that activity (as given in a changing cell).

Considerably more work is needed for a nonlinear programming problem. Even when there are no interactions between activities, it is necessary to construct a nonlinear formula for each activity that represents the contribution of that activity to the objective function that needs to be entered into the objective cell. For example, when the objective is to maximize total profit, the nonlinear formula for each activity needs to correspond to the profit graph for that activity.

One useful method for fitting a nonlinear formula to a graph begins by assuming a general form for the formula. For a profit graph with decreasing marginal returns, it is common to assume a quadratic form, such as The quadratic form for a profit graph (or a cost graph) is widely used.

$$\text{Profit from an activity} = ax^2 + bx + c$$

where x is the level of the activity, a is a *negative* constant, b is a positive constant, and c is any kind of constant. Another possibility is to assume a logarithmic form, like

$$\text{Profit from an activity} = a \ln(x) + b$$

where ln(x) is called the natural logarithm of x.

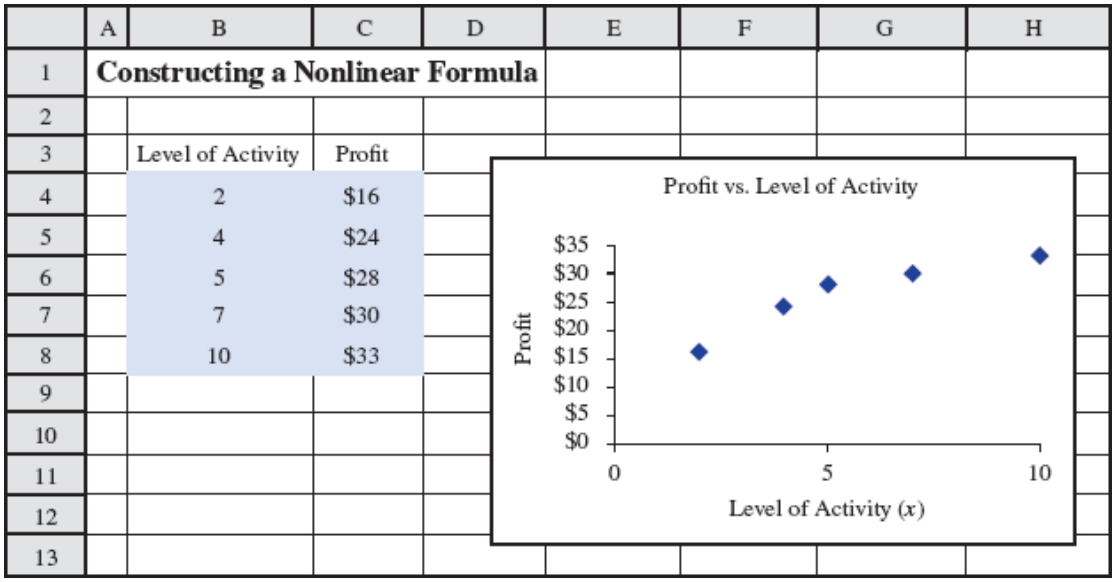
In either case, the next step is to find the appropriate values of the parameters (e.g., a, b, and c). Excel has a built-in **curve fitting method** to find the values of the parameters that best fit the data. For example, suppose that prior data (or at least estimates) are available on the profit that would be achieved at several levels of the activity, as shown in the spreadsheet in Figure 11.4.

curve fitting method

A method for using the known values in a profit or cost graph to find the equation for the graph that best fits these data.

FIGURE 11.4

An example of an activity for which prior data are available on the profit versus the level of the activity, so Excel's curve fitting method can be applied.



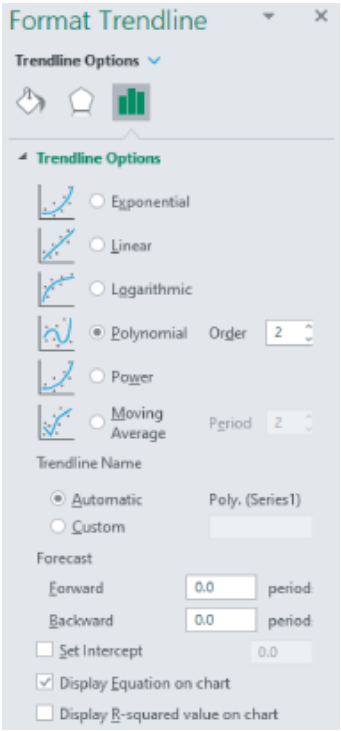
The first step in applying the curve fitting method in Excel is to graph the profit data (profit vs. level of the activity), using a scatter plot. (To create this scatter plot, select the cells in B3:C8, and choose the Scatter option on the

Insert tab of the ribbon.) Next, right-click on one of the data points and choose “Add Trendline” from the menu that pops up. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 11.5. Use this dialog box to choose the *form* of the equation that you want Excel to fit to the data. For example, to fit a quadratic equation to the data, choose Polynomial with Order 2.

FIGURE 11.5

The Format Trendline dialog box that is used to perform the curve fitting method in Excel. For this example, the Polynomial of Order 2 option (a quadratic equation) is chosen for the type of regression. The option to display the equation on the chart is selected.

Microsoft Corporation



The order of a polynomial is the highest exponent used in the polynomial. For a quadratic equation, the order is 2.

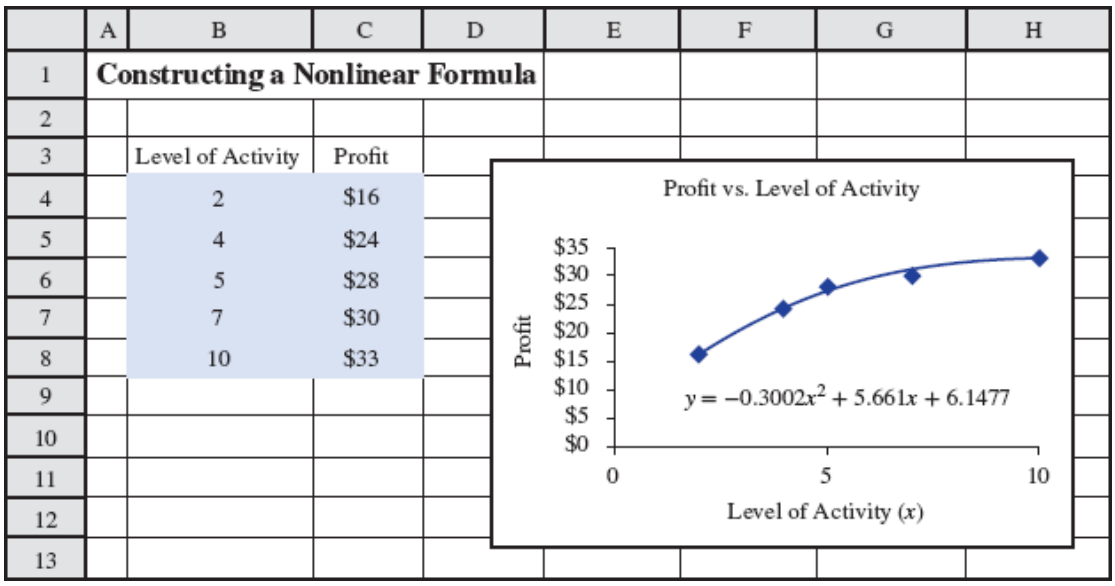
Next choose the option to “Display Equation on chart” and click on OK. Excel then chooses the parameters for the equation of the chosen form that most closely fits the graphed data. For example, the quadratic equation that most closely matches the data in Figure 11.4 is

$$\text{Profit} = -0.3002x^2 + 5.661x + 6.1477$$

This equation is shown and plotted directly on the graph of profit versus activity level, as shown in Figure 11.6.

FIGURE 11.6

The quadratic equation found by Excel that most closely matches the profit versus level of activity data for the example introduced in Figure 11.4.



The quadratic form provides at least a reasonable approximation for many profit graphs, so it is used often. However, it is prudent to check whether the approximation actually is a reasonable one for any particular activity. This is done by estimating the profit that would be obtained by the activity at several different levels in addition to the data being used by the curve fitting method, and then checking whether the profit at these other levels is reasonably close to what is given by the formula. If it is not, one alternative is to collect more data and reapply the curve fitting method to seek a better overall fit. Another alternative is to adopt a different form for the formula (e.g., logarithmic or a polynomial with an order higher than 2) and then to apply the corresponding curve fitting method.

The Challenge of Solving Nonlinear Programming Models

It is easy to solve *linear* programming models with either Solver or a variety of other software packages. Very large problems are solved routinely every day. In fact, the most advanced software packages now are successfully solving

amazingly huge problems. Furthermore, the solution obtained is guaranteed to be optimal.

A variety of algorithms also have been developed for solving, or at least attempting to solve, particular kinds of *nonlinear* programming models. For example, the **Nonlinear Solver** is a solving method provided by Solver that uses one of the best of these algorithms to deal with some nonlinear programming models. (The Nonlinear Solver is called by choosing "GRG Nonlinear" as the solving method in either Excel's Solver dialog box or on the Engine tab of Analytic Solver's Model pane.)

Nonlinear Solver

A solving method provided by Solver that is used to solve, or attempt to solve, some nonlinear programming problems.

However, even when using the Nonlinear Solver, dealing with nonlinear programming models can be a real challenge. They often are much more difficult to solve than linear programming models. Furthermore, even when a solution is obtained, it sometimes cannot be guaranteed to be optimal.

Although some nonlinear programming models can be very difficult to solve, those that have decreasing marginal returns generally are relatively easy.

Fortunately, some types of nonlinear programming models are relatively easy to solve. Cases (*a*) and (*b*) in Figure 11.2 (when maximizing) or in Figure 11.3 (when minimizing) are examples of "easy" types of nonlinear programming models, namely, types where the activities have decreasing marginal returns. As long as all the activities fit either case (except for any that still satisfy the proportionality assumption), formulating the model in a spreadsheet is not especially difficult and Solver [while using the Nonlinear Solver for case (a)] can readily solve the model if it is not unusually large. The next two sections focus on case (*a*) and Section 11.4 considers case (*b*).

Unfortunately, other types of nonlinear programming tend to be more difficult. For example, even though case (*c*) in Figures 11.2 and 11.3 has decreasing marginal returns except at the discontinuities in the graph, the presence of such discontinuities for any of the activities makes it uncertain that the Nonlinear Solver will successfully solve the model. Having increasing marginal returns, as in case (*d*), also can create serious complications.

Far more complicated nonlinear programming models can be constructed than any of those suggested by Figures 11.2 and 11.3. For example, consider the following model in algebraic form.

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad \text{Profit} = 0.5x^5 - 6x^4 + 24.5x^3 - 39x^2 + 20x$$

subject to

$$x \leq 5$$
$$x \geq 0$$

In this case, there is only a single activity, where x represents the level of this activity. Furthermore, there is only a single functional constraint ($x \leq 5$) in addition to the nonnegativity constraint. Nevertheless, Figure 11.7 demonstrates what a difficult time the Nonlinear Solver has in attempting to cope with this problem. The model is straightforward to formulate in a spreadsheet, with x (C5) as the changing cell and Profit (C8) as the objective cell, where the formula for Profit is entered as shown in the lower left-hand corner of Figure 11.7. Note that in the Solver Parameters box shown in the lower right-hand corner of Figure 11.7, *GRG Nonlinear* is chosen as the Solving Method (in the Solver dialog box for Excel's Solver or on the Engine tab of the Model pane for Analytic Solver). Choosing GRG Nonlinear instructs Solver to use the Nonlinear Solver to attempt to solve the model. Trying to use the Simplex LP solving method (or Standard LP/Quadratic Engine for Analytic Solver) instead will result in an error message if, like this example, the model is not linear.

When $x = 0$ is entered as the initial value in the changing cell, the left spreadsheet in Figure 11.7 shows that the Nonlinear Solver then indicates that $x = 0.371$ is the optimal solution with Profit = \$3.19. However, if $x = 3$ is entered as the initial value instead, as in the middle spreadsheet in Figure 11.7, the Nonlinear Solver obtains $x = 3.126$ as the optimal solution with Profit = \$6.13. Trying still another initial value of $x = 4.7$ in the right spreadsheet, the Nonlinear Solver now indicates an optimal solution of $x = 5$ with Profit \$0. What is going on here?

FIGURE 11.7

page 456

An example of a complicated nonlinear programming model where the Nonlinear Solver obtains three different final solutions when it starts with three different initial solutions.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**Solver Solution**				
2	**(Starting with $x = 0$)**				
3					
4					Maximum
5		$x =$	0.371	<=	5
6					
7		Profit = $0.5x^5-6x^4+24.5x^3-39x^2+20x$			
8		=	$3.19		

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**Solver Solution**				
2	**(Starting with $x = 3$)**				
3					
4					Maximum
5		$x =$	3.126	<=	5
6					
7		Profit = $0.5x^5-6x^4+24.5x^3-39x^2+20x$			
8		=	$6.13		

	A	B	C	D	E
1	**Solver Solution**				
2	**(Starting with $x = 4.7$)**				
3					
4					Maximum
5		$x =$	5.000	<=	5
6					
7		Profit = $0.5x^5-6x^4+24.5x^3-39x^2+20x$			
8		=	$0.00		

	B	C
7		Profit = $0.5x^5-6x^4+24.5x^3-39x^2+20x$
8	=	=0.5*x^5-6*x^4+24.5*x^3-39*x^2+20*x

Range Name	Cell
Maximum	E5
x	C5
Profit	C8

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: Profit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
x
Subject to the Constraints:
x <= Maximum
Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: GRG Nonlinear

Plotting the profit graph for such a complicated objective function is a difficult task, but doing so in Figure 11.8 does help to explain the Nonlinear Solver's difficulties with this problem. Starting at $x = 0$, the profit graph does indeed climb to a peak at $x = 0.371$, as reported in the left spreadsheet of Figure 11.7. Starting at $x = 3$ instead, the graph climbs to a peak at $x = 3.126$, which is the solution found in the middle spreadsheet. Using the right spreadsheet's starting solution of $x = 4.7$, the graph climbs until it reaches the boundary imposed by the $x \leq 5$ constraint, so $x = 5$ is the peak in that direction. These three peaks are referred to as the **local maxima** (or *local optima*) because each one is a maximum of the graph within a local neighborhood of that point. However, only the largest of these local maxima is the **global maximum,** that is, the highest point on the entire graph. Thus, the middle spreadsheet in Figure 11.7 did succeed in finding the optimal solution at $x = 3.126$ with Profit = $6.13.

local maximum

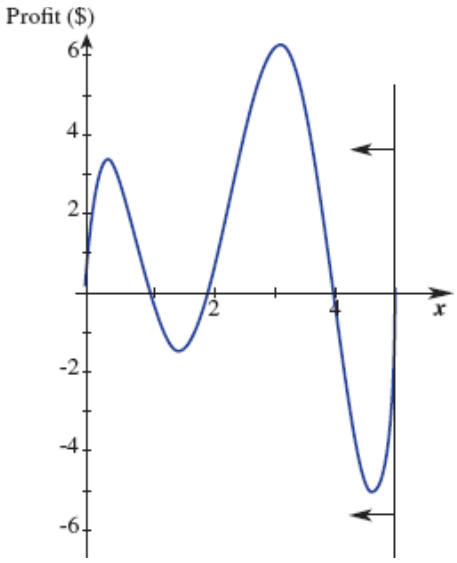
A point at which a graph reaches its maximum within a local neighborhood of that point.

global maximum

The highest point on an entire graph.

FIGURE 11.8

The profit graph for the example considered in Figure 11.7.



The algorithm used by the Nonlinear Solver can be thought of as a mountain climbing procedure. It starts at the initial solution entered into the changing cells and then begins climbing that mountain until it reaches the peak (or is blocked from climbing further by reaching the boundary imposed by the constraints). The procedure terminates when it reaches this peak (or boundary) and reports this solution. It has no way of detecting whether there is a taller mountain somewhere else on the profit graph.

When maximizing, the Nonlinear Solver only climbs to a local maximum and stops. This local maximum may or may not be the global maximum.

When the objective cell is to be minimized instead of maximized, this algorithm reverses direction and climbs down until it reaches the lowest point in that valley (or is blocked by a boundary). Once again, it has no way of detecting whether there is a lower valley somewhere else on the cost graph.

A nonlinear programming problem needs to have decreasing marginal returns to guarantee that the solution obtained by the Nonlinear Solver actually is optimal.

The reason that having decreasing marginal returns for all the activities (except any with a proportional relationship) is an easy type of nonlinear programming problem is that the profit graph (when maximizing) has only one mountain. Therefore, a local maximum at the peak of the mountain (or a boundary) also is a global maximum, so the solution obtained by the Nonlinear Solver is guaranteed to be optimal. For example, the profit graph based on a quadratic form in Figure 11.6 has decreasing marginal returns, so it has only a single mountain and its peak (which happens to be at $x = 9.43$) is the global maximum. Similarly, when minimizing

a cost graph with decreasing marginal returns, there is only one valley so the local minimum at the bottom (or a boundary) also is a global minimum.

Figure 11.7 suggests that one way of dealing with more difficult problems that may have multiple local optima is to apply the Nonlinear Solver repeatedly with a variety of starting solutions and then adopt the best of the final solutions obtained. Although this will not guarantee finding a globally optimal solution, it often will provide a good chance of finding at least a very good solution. Therefore, this is a reasonable approach for some relatively small problems, particularly when a systematic procedure is used to provide a comprehensive cross-section of starting solutions. Solver provides an option for doing this in an automatic way (as will be described in Section 11.5).

However, this kind of approach is not very practical for problems with a large number of decision variables, since a huge number of starting solutions would be required to provide a comprehensive cross-section for such problems. What is needed is an algorithm that occasionally will "jump" from the current mountain to another more promising mountain on the profit graph so that the algorithm is likely to eventually reach the tallest mountain on its own regardless of which starting solution is entered into the changing cells. Solver provides such an algorithm called *Evolutionary Solver.* Although Evolutionary Solver has its limitations as well, it provides an excellent complement to the Nonlinear Solver for attempting to cope with many nonlinear programming problems. Evolutionary Solver and its use are described in Section 11.6.

Review *Questions*

. What are the features of linear programming models that are shared by nonlinear programming models?

. How does the appearance of a nonlinear programming model differ from that of a linear programming model?

. In what three major ways does the application of nonlinear programming models differ from that of linear programming models?

. What is the proportionality assumption of linear programming that is violated by nonlinear programming problems?

. When an activity has decreasing marginal returns, how does the slope of its profit graph behave?

. What could cause the profit graph of an activity to be piecewise linear with decreasing marginal returns?

. What is a common assumption about the form of the formula for the profit of an activity when applying a curve fitting method?

. What are the types of nonlinear programming models that are relatively easy to solve?

. When it is given a starting solution, how does the Nonlinear Solver then proceed to attempt to solve a maximization problem with multiple local maxima?

. What can be done to give the Nonlinear Solver a better chance of obtaining an optimal solution (or at least a very good solution) for a maximization problem with multiple local maxima?

11.2 CONTINUING THE WYNDOR CASE STUDY TO DEAL WITH DECREASING MARGINAL RETURNS

In this section, we will return to the Wyndor Glass Co. case study presented in Section 5.1 to illustrate how to deal with nonlinear programming problems having the following characteristics.

1. The same constraints as for a linear programming model.
2. A nonlinear objective function.
3. Each activity that violates the proportionality assumption of linear programming has *decreasing marginal returns* (as defined in the preceding section and illustrated in Figures 11.2[a] and 11.3[a]).

The Nonlinear Solver can readily solve such problems because the solution it obtains is guaranteed to be optimal for this type of problem.

This is a particularly simple type of nonlinear programming problem. The Nonlinear Solver can readily solve such problems if they are not unusually large. Furthermore, the solution obtained is guaranteed to be optimal for this type of problem.

For some problems of this type, the objective function will include cross-product terms involving the product of two or more decision variables. In this case, whenever all but one of the decision variables are fixed at particular values, the effect on the value of the objective function of increasing the one decision variable must still satisfy either proportionality or decreasing marginal returns for the third characteristic to hold. (The precise mathematical

description of the third characteristic is that an objective function being maximized is required to be *concave* whereas an objective function being minimized is required to be *convex*.) As discussed in the preceding section, it is fairly common for an activity to provide less and less return as the level of the activity is increased, so the activity has decreasing marginal returns. Consequently, nonlinear programming problems with decreasing marginal returns arise fairly frequently. We will go through the continuation of the case study (plus another example in the next section) in some detail to illustrate how this happens and then describe how to formulate and solve such a problem.

In some cases, when the nonlinear objective function is reasonably close to being linear, a linear programming model will be used as an approximation to perform the preliminary analysis and then a more precise nonlinear programming model will be used to do the detailed analysis. This is what is happening below as the story of the Wyndor Glass Co. case study continues to unfold.

Returning to the Wyndor Case Study

As described in Section 5.1, the **Wyndor Glass Co.** produces high-quality glass products, where different parts of the production are performed in three plants. It now is launching two new products (a special kind of door and a special kind of window), where the anticipated profit has been estimated to be $300 per door and $500 per window. Section 5.2 discussed how these estimates of the unit profits, along with information regarding constraints, have led to the formulation of a linear programming model whose objective function to be maximized is Profit = 300D$ + 500W$, where D and W are the number of doors and windows to be produced per week, respectively.

To refresh your memory, Figure 11.9 shows the spreadsheet model that was formulated in Section 5.2 for this problem. Having run Solver, the changing cells UnitsProduced (C12:D12) give the optimal solution, (D, W) = (2, 6), and the objective cell TotalProfit (G12) indicates that this will yield a weekly profit of $3,600, according to the model.

FIGURE 11.9

The spreadsheet model that was formulated in Section 5.2 for the original Wyndor problem introduced in Section 5.1.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Glass Co. Product-Mix Problem**						
2							
3			Doors	Windows			
4		Unit Profit	$300	$500			
5					Hours		Hours
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
7		Plant 1	1	0	2	≤	4
8		Plant 2	0	2	12	≤	12
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
10							
11			Doors	Windows			Total Profit
12		Units Produced	2	6			$3,600

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: Profit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7,UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8,UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,UnitsProduced)

	G
11	Total Profit
12	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cells
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
TotalProfit	G12
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C12:D12

This model assumes that the profit from either of these new products would be *proportional* to the production rate for the product. However, this is a questionable assumption. Therefore, before making a final decision on the production rates, Wyndor management wants a more precise analysis to be done, as described in the following conversation between two members of management.

John Hill (Wyndor president): How are your marketing plans coming along for the launch of our two new products, Ann? Will it be very expensive?

Ana Hernandez (Wyndor vice president for marketing): That depends on what sales volume we need to generate. Our market research indicates

that we would be able to sell small numbers of the new doors and windows with virtually no advertising. However, it also tells us that we would need an extensive advertising campaign if we produce close to what our plants can handle. Has a final decision been made yet on the production rates?

John: No, it hasn't. In fact, that's why I asked you to come see me. We would like to ask for your help.

Ana: Sure. What can I do?

John: Well, basically what we want is your updated input on what the marketing costs per week would need to be to sell each product if the production rate were to be set at each of several alternative values.

Ana: Sure, I can do that. When they started their analysis before, I was asked to estimate the marketing cost per door and per window. I told them $75 per door and $200 per window. Those looked like good estimates at the time.

John: Yes. Those cost estimates were factored in when they developed their estimated profits of $300 per door and $500 per window. Do your cost estimates still look pretty close?

Ana: No, not really. I don't think it makes sense any more to figure our marketing costs on a per door or per window basis. As I was saying before, our costs would be very small with low production rates, but would need to be very substantial with high production rates. Therefore, figuring $75 per door and $200 per window is much too large with low production rates, about right at medium production rates, and much too small at high production rates.

A linear formula is no longer adequate for estimating the marketing costs.

John: Yes, that's what I suspected. That's why we want you to forget about doing it now on a per door or per window basis and instead estimate your weekly marketing costs for each product if the production rate were to be set at each of several alternative values. This will enable the Analytics Department to perform a more precise analysis of what the production rates should be.

Ana: That makes sense. I'll pull these new estimates together right away.

After receiving these estimates, the Analytics Department plotted the weekly marketing cost for each product versus the production rate of the product. Each of these plots showed that the marketing cost increases roughly with the *square* of the production rate as this rate is increased.

Therefore, a *quadratic form* was assumed to apply Excel's curve fitting procedure to each of these plots.

This curve fitting procedure estimated that the weekly marketing costs required to sustain a production rate of D doors per week would be roughly

page 460

$$\text{Marketing cost for doors} = \$25D^2$$

for any fractional or integer value of D permitted by the production constraints. Excluding marketing costs, the gross profit per door sold is about $375. Therefore, the weekly net profit would be roughly

$$\text{Net profit for doors} = \$375D - \$25D^2$$

The corresponding estimates per week for windows are

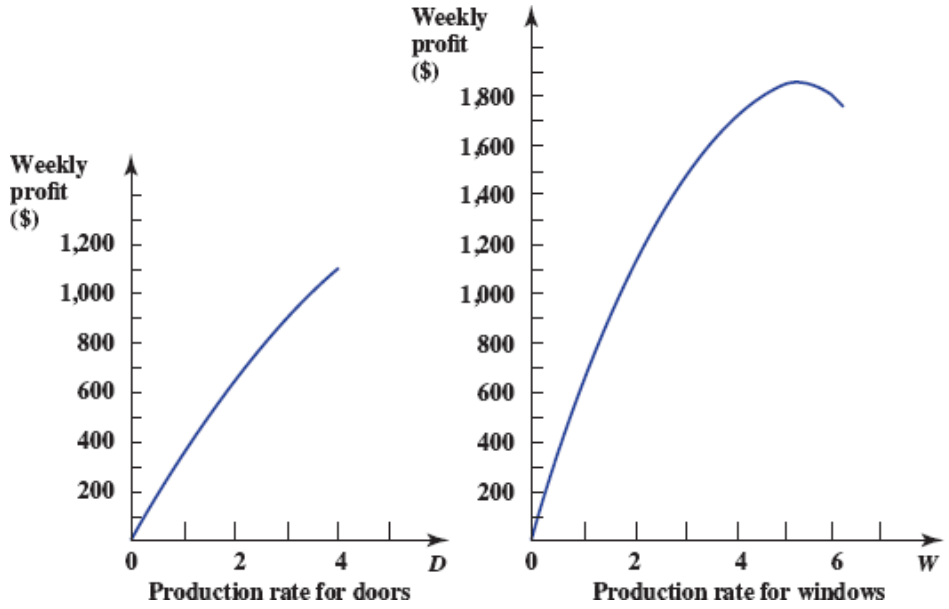
$$\begin{aligned}\text{Marketing cost for windows} &= \$66\tfrac{2}{3}W^2\\ \text{Gross profit for windows} &= \$700W\\ \text{Net profit for windows} &= \$700W - \$66\tfrac{2}{3}W^2\end{aligned}$$

The new estimates of marketing costs cause both the doors and windows to have decreasing marginal returns.

Figure 11.10 shows the resulting profit graphs for both products. Note that both curves show decreasing marginal returns, where this becomes particularly pronounced for larger values of W.

FIGURE 11.10

The smooth curves are the profit graphs for Wyndor's doors and windows for the version of its problem where nonlinear marketing costs must be considered.



Combining the net profit for doors and for windows, the new objective function to be maximized for this problem is

$$\text{Profit} = \$375D - \$25D^2 + \$700W - \$662/3\,W^2$$

subject to the same constraints as before. Because the terms involving D^2 and W^2 have exponents different from 1 for these decision variables, this objective function is a *nonlinear* function. Therefore, the overall problem is a *nonlinear programming* problem. Furthermore, because this objective function has a *quadratic form* (and the problem has all three characteristics listed at the beginning of this section), the overall problem is a special type of nonlinear programming problem called a **quadratic programming** problem. This is a common type of nonlinear programming problem and also a particularly convenient type to formulate and solve. Special algorithms have been developed just to solve quadratic programming problems very efficiently, so commercial management science software packages often include such an algorithm to enable solving huge problems of this type. Analytic Solver includes a special algorithm for quadratic programming problems, whereas Excel's Nonlinear Solver only uses a general algorithm for solving any nonlinear programming problem with decreasing marginal returns.

quadratic programming

A special type of nonlinear programming where the objective function has both a quadratic form and decreasing marginal returns and all the constraints are linear.

A Spreadsheet Formulation

Figure 11.11 shows the formulation of a spreadsheet model for this problem. It is interesting to compare this model with the one for the original Wyndor problem in Figure 11.9. At first glance, they appear to be nearly the same. A closer examination reveals four significant differences.

FIGURE 11.11

page 461

A spreadsheet model for the Wyndor nonlinear programming problem with nonlinear marketing costs, where the changing cells UnitsProduced (C12:D12) show the optimal production rates and the objective cell TotalProfit (H16) gives the resulting total profit per week.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Wyndor Problem with Nonlinear Marketing Costs**							
2								
3			Doors	Windows				
4		Unit Profit (Gross)	$375	$700				
5					Hours		Hours	
6			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available	
7		Plant 1	1	0	3.214	≤	4	
8		Plant 2	0	2	8.357	≤	12	
9		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18	
10								
11			Doors	Windows				
12		Units Produced	3.214	4.179			Gross Profit from Sales	$4,130
13								
14		Marketing Cost	$258	$1,164			Total Marketing Cost	$1,422
15								
16							Total Profit	$2,708

Solver Parameters
Set Objective Cell: Profit
To: Max
By Changing (Variable) Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: GRG Nonlinear or Quadratic (Analytic Solver)

	E
5	Hours
6	Used
7	=SUMPRODUCT(C7:D7,UnitsProduced)
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8,UnitsProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,UnitsProduced)

	G	H
12	Gross Profit from Sales	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)
13		
14	Total Marketing Cost	=SUM(MarketingCost)
15		
16	Total Profit	=GrossProfitFromSales–TotalMarketingCost

	B	C	D
14	Marketing Cost	=25*(DoorsProduced^2)	=66.667*(WindowsProduced^2)

Range Name	Cells
DoorsProduced	C12
GrossProfitFromSales	H12
HoursAvailable	G7:G9
HoursUsed	E7:E9
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C7:D9
MarketingCost	C14:D14
TotalMarketingCost	H14
TotalProfit	H16
UnitProfit	C4:D4
UnitsProduced	C12:D12
WindowsProduced	D12

First, the unit profits in row 4 of Figure 11.9 have been replaced here by the *gross* unit profits, which exclude the marketing costs.

Second, to take the marketing costs into account in calculating the objective cell TotalProfit (H16), the spreadsheet in Figure 11.11 has added several output cells: GrossProfitFromSales (H12), MarketingCost (C14:D14), and TotalMarketingCost (H14).

Third, a fundamental difference lies in the equations entered into certain output cells. In Figure 11.9, the formula for TotalProfit (G12) is expressed in terms of the SUMPRODUCT function that is characteristic of linear programming when each product is the product of a data cell and a changing cell. In Figure 11.11, something else is needed for calculating the marketing cost portion of total profit because that portion of the objective function is nonlinear. For example, consider the term involving D^2 in the objective function. Because the value of D appears in DoorsProduced (C12), Excel expresses D^2 as DoorsProduced^2, where the symbol ^ indicates that the number following this symbol (2) is the exponent of the number in DoorsProduced (C12). The same approach is used for expressing W^2. Therefore, the formula for total marketing cost is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Marketing Cost} &= \text{SUM(MarketingCost)} \\ &= 25^* \text{ (DoorsProduced}^{\wedge}2) + 66.667^* \text{ (WindowsProduced}^{\wedge}2)\end{aligned}$$

Excel Tip When a changing cell needs to be raised to some power in a formula, the symbol ^ is placed between the changing cell and the exponent.

The formula for the objective cell then becomes

$$\text{TotalProfit (H16)} = \text{GrossProfitFromSales (H12)} - \text{TotalMarketingCost (H14)}$$

The fourth difference arises in the selection of the Solver options at the bottom of Figures 11.9 and 11.11. In contrast to Figure 11.9, GRG Nonlinear (i.e., the Nonlinear Solver) is chosen as the solving method (or alternatively, with Analytic Solver, Standard LP/ Quadratic Engine can be chosen). These settings (or the Evolutionary Solver method discussed in Section 11.6) are required when attempting to solve any nonlinear programming model.

For this particular model, running Solver provides the optimal solution shown in UnitsProduced (C12:D12), namely,

$$\begin{aligned}D &= 3.214 \text{ (produce an average of 3.214 doors per week)} \\ W &= 4.179 \text{ (produce an average of 4.179 windows per week)}\end{aligned}$$

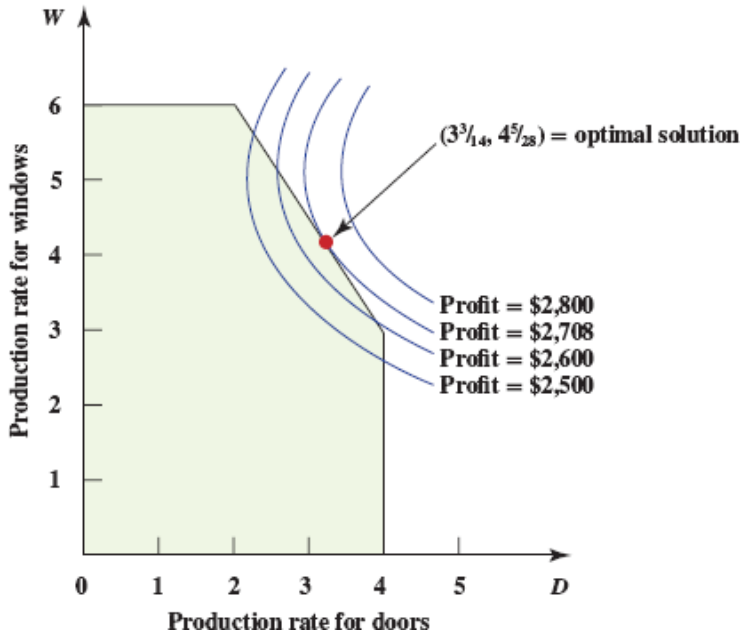
where TotalProfit (H16) shows a resulting weekly profit of $2,708. (Keep in mind that these fractional numbers of doors and windows to be produced still make sense because these numbers are *weekly* production rates rather than total numbers of doors and windows to be produced.) These strange values of *D* and *W* certainly are not intuitive. Figure 11.12 conveys some graphical intuition into why this answer was obtained. The feasible region is the same as for the original Wyndor problem in Chapter 5. However, instead of having objective function *lines* with which to search for an optimal solution, plotting the points that give any constant value for our nonlinear objective function now gives an objective function *curve* instead. Thus, when using the page 463 objective function to calculate Profit for various feasible and infeasible values of (*D, W*), each of the four curves in the figure shows all the values of (*D, W*) that give the fixed value of Profit indicated for that curve. (Plotting these points is a tedious and difficult process, so we will not bother with the details of how it is done.) The figure shows that increasing Profit moves the objective function curve to the right. The largest value of Profit such that the objective function curve still passes through any points in the feasible region is Profit = $2,708. Therefore, using fractions, the one feasible point that the Profit = $2,708 curve passes through,

$$(D, W) = \left(3\tfrac{3}{14}, 4\tfrac{5}{28}\right)$$

is the optimal solution.

FIGURE 11.12

Graphical display of the nonlinear programming formulation of the Wyndor problem with nonlinear marketing costs. The curves are objective function curves for some sample values of Profit and the one (Profit = $2,708) that passes through the optimal solution, (*D*, *W*) = (33/14,45/28).



Since these are not particularly convenient fractions with which to plan weekly production schedules, they should be adjusted slightly. The curve for Profit = $2,708 in Figure 11.12 indicates that any point on the slanting line at the boundary of the feasible region that is close to the optimal solution will provide a weekly profit very close to $2,708. For example,

$$(D, W) = (3\tfrac{1}{3}, 4)$$

gives a weekly profit of $2,706, so management prefers this more convenient weekly production schedule.

By contrast, consider the linear programming solution in Figure 11.9, (*D, W*) = (2, 6), that does not take the nonlinearities in the marketing costs into account. When using the current objective function that incorporates these nonlinearities, (*D, W*) = (2, 6) provides a weekly profit of only $2,450. This illustrates the kind of improvement that can be obtained by replacing an approximate linear programming model by a more precise nonlinear programming model.

The next section presents a prominent example of applying nonlinear programming when the objective function has decreasing marginal returns.

Review *Questions*

. What are the three characteristics of a simple type of nonlinear programming problem that can be readily solved by the Nonlinear Solver?

. For this simple type of nonlinear programming problem, how does the graphical display for a two-variable problem differ from that for a two-variable linear programming problem?

11.3 APPLYING NONLINEAR PROGRAMMING TO PORTFOLIO SELECTION

It now is common practice for professional managers of large stock portfolios to use computer models based partially on nonlinear programming to guide them. Because investors are concerned about both the *expected return* (gain) and the *risk* associated with their investments, nonlinear programming is used to determine a portfolio that, under certain assumptions, provides an optimal trade-off between these two factors. This approach is based largely on path-breaking research done by Harry Markowitz and William Sharpe that helped them win the 1990 Nobel Prize in economics.

One way of formulating their approach is as a nonlinear version of the *cost–benefit trade-off problems* discussed in Section 6.3. In this case, the cost involved is the risk associated with the investments. The benefit is the expected return from the portfolio of investments. Therefore, the general form of the model is

$$\text{Minimize} \quad \text{Risk}$$

This model focuses on the trade-off between risk and expected return from the portfolio of investments.

subject to

$$\text{Expected return} \geq \text{Minimum acceptable level}$$

The measure of risk used here is a basic quantity from probability theory called the *variance* of the return. Using standard formulas from probability theory, the objective function then can be expressed as a nonlinear function of the decision variables (the fractions of the total investment to invest in the respective stocks) that yields *decreasing marginal returns* for the stocks. By adding the constraint on expected return, as well as nonnegativity constraints and a constraint that the fractions of the total investment invested in the

respective stocks sum to 1, we thereby obtain a simple type of nonlinear programming model for optimizing the selection of the portfolio.

An Application Vignette

The **Bank Hapoalim Group** is Israel's largest banking group, providing services throughout the country. In 2020, it had approximately 250 bank branches and seven regional business centers in Israel. It also operates worldwide through dozens of branches, offices, and subsidiaries in major financial centers in North and South America and Europe.

A major part of Bank Hapoalim's business involves providing investment advisors for its customers. To stay ahead of its competitors, management embarked some years ago on a restructuring program to provide these investment advisors with state-of-the-art methodology and technology. A study team was formed to do this.

The team concluded that it needed to develop a flexible decision-support system for the investment advisors that could be tailored to meet the diverse needs of every customer. Each customer would be asked to provide extensive information about his or her needs, including choosing among various alternatives regarding his or her investment objectives, investment horizon, choice of an index to strive to exceed, preference with regard to liquidity and currency, and so forth. A series of questions also would be asked to ascertain the customer's risk-taking classification.

The natural choice of the model to drive the resulting decision-support system (called the *Opti-Money System*) was the **classical nonlinear programming model for portfolio selection** described in this section of the book, with modifications to incorporate all the information about the needs of the individual customer. This model generates an optimal weighting of 60 possible asset classes of equities and bonds in the portfolio, and the investment advisor then works with the customer to choose the specific equities and bonds within these classes.

In a typical year, the bank's investment advisors hold well over 100,000 consultation sessions with its customers while using this decision-support system. After installing the Opti-Money system, the initial *annual earnings* over benchmarks to customers who follow the investment advice provided by the system totaled *approximately* **US$244 million,** *while adding more than* **US$31 million** *to the bank's annual income.* Comparable financial benefits have continued in subsequent years as well.

This dramatic application of advanced analytics resulted in Bank Hapoalim winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six 2003 worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: M. Avriel, H. Pri-Zan, R. Meiri, and A. Peretz, "Opti-Money at Bank Hapoalim: A Model-Based Investment Decision-Support System for Individual Customers," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 34, no. 1 (January–February 2004): 39–50. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

To illustrate the approach, we now will focus on a small numerical example where just three stocks (securities) are being considered for inclusion in the portfolio. Thus, the decision variables are

$$S_1 = \text{Fraction of total investment invested in Stock 1}$$
$$S_2 = \text{Fraction of total investment invested in Stock 2}$$
$$S_3 = \text{Fraction of total investment invested in Stock 3}$$

Since these fractions need to sum to 1,

$$S_1 + S_2 + S_3 = 1$$

will be included as one of the constraints of the model.

Table 11.2 gives the needed data for these three stocks. The second column provides the expected return for each of these stocks, so the expected return for the overall portfolio is

$$\text{Expected return} = (21S_1 + 30S_2 + 8S_3)\%$$

TABLE 11.2

page 465

Data for the Stocks of the Portfolio Selection Example

Stock	Expected Return	Risk (Standard Deviation)	Pair of Stocks	Joint Risk per Stock (Covariance)
1	21%	25%	1 and 2	0.040
2	30	45	1 and 3	−0.005
3	8	5	2 and 3	−0.010

The investor's current choice of the minimum acceptable level for this quantity is

$$\text{Minimum acceptable expected return} = 18\%$$

Since the expected returns of Stocks 1 and 2 exceed 18 percent, this minimum acceptable level will be achieved if these stocks comprise a sufficiently large portion of the portfolio.

However, Stocks 1 and 2 are much riskier than Stock 3. There is no certainty that the expected returns shown in Table 11.2 actually will be achieved, but there is much more uncertainty for Stocks 1 and 2 than for Stock 3. Each stock has an underlying *probability distribution* of what its return will turn out to be. In each case, the *standard deviation* (i.e., the square root of the variance) of this distribution provides a measure of how spread out this distribution is, since there is roughly a two-thirds probability that the return will turn out to be within one standard deviation of the expected return. This measure of the risk of a stock is given in the third column of Table 11.2.

The challenge is to find the right balance between the high return but high risk from Stocks 1 and 2 and the low risk but low return from Stock 3.

However, the risk for the portfolio cannot be obtained solely from the third column, since this column only gives the risk for each individual stock considered in isolation. The risk for the portfolio also is affected by whether the particular stocks tend to move up and down together (increased risk) or tend to move in opposite directions (decreased risk). In the rightmost column of Table 11.2, the *positive* joint risk for Stocks 1 and 2 indicates that these two stocks have some tendency to move in the same direction. However, the *negative* joint risk for the other two pairs of stocks shows that Stock 3 tends to go up when either Stock 1 or 2 goes down, and vice versa. (In the terminology of probability theory, the joint risk for *each* of two stocks is the *covariance* of their returns, as given in the rightmost column of Table 11.2, so the total joint risk for two stocks is two times this covariance.) The data in Table 11.2 typically are obtained by taking samples of the returns of the stocks from a number of previous years and then calculating the averages, standard deviations, and covariances for these samples. Adjustments in the resulting estimate of at least the expected return of a stock also may be made if it appears that the current prospects for the stock are somewhat different than in previous years. Using the formula from probability theory for calculating the overall variance from individual variances (the square of the standard deviations) and covariances, the risk for the entire portfolio is

$$\text{Risk} = (0.25S_1)^2 + (0.45S_2)^2 + (0.05S_3)^2 + 2(0.04)S_1S_2 + 2(-0.005)S_1S_3 + 2(-0.01)S_2S_3$$

Therefore, the algebraic form of the nonlinear programming model for this example is

$$\text{Minimize} \qquad \text{Risk} = (0.25S_1)^2 + (0.45S_2)^2 + (0.05S_3)^2 + 2(0.04)S_1S_2 + 2(-0.005)S_1S_3 + 2(-0.01)S_2S_3$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} 21S_1 + 30S_2 + 8S_3 &\geq 18 \\ S_1 + S_2 + S_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$S_1 \geq 0 \quad S_2 \geq 0 \quad S_3 \geq 0$$

Fortunately, the objective function for this model has *decreasing marginal returns.* (This is not obvious, but it has been verified that Risk, measured by the variance of the return for the entire portfolio, *always* has decreasing marginal returns for any portfolio.) Furthermore, this is a *quadratic programming* model since the objective function is quadratic (terms consisting of a coefficient times the product of two variables are allowed in a quadratic function) and the model has all three characteristics listed at the beginning of this section. Therefore, this is a particularly simple type of nonlinear programming model to solve.

This kind of quadratic programming model is widely used by portfolio managers.

Figure 11.13 shows the corresponding spreadsheet model after having applied Solver. For ease of interpretation, the changing cells Portfolio (C14:E14) give the values of S_1, S_2, and S_3 as percentages rather than fractions. These cells indicate that the optimal solution is

$S_1 = 40.2\%$: Allocate 40.2% of the portfolio to Stock 1
$S_2 = 21.7\%$: Allocate 21.7% of the portfolio to Stock 2
$S_3 = 38.1\%$: Allocate 38.1% of the portfolio to Stock 3

FIGURE 11.13

A spreadsheet model for the portfolio selection example of nonlinear programming, where the changing cells Portfolio (C14:E14) give the

optimal portfolio and the objective cell Variance (C21) shows the resulting risk.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1		**Portfolio Selection Problem (Nonlinear Programming)**						
2								
3			Stock 1	Stock 2	Stock 3			
4		**Expected Return**	21%	30%	8%			
5								
6		**Risk (Stand. Dev.)**	25%	45%	5%			
7								
8		**Joint Risk (Covar.)**	Stock 1	Stock 2	Stock 3			
9		Stock 1		0.040	-0.005			
10		Stock 2			-0.010			
11		Stock 3						
12								
13			Stock 1	Stock 2	Stock 3	**Total**		
14		**Portfolio**	40.2%	21.7%	38.1%	100%	=	100%
15								
16					**Minimum**			
17					**Expected**			
18			**Portfolio**		**Return**			
19		**Expected Return**	18%	≥	18%			
20								
21		**Risk (Variance)**	0.0238					
22								
23		**Risk (Stand. Dev.)**	15.4%					

Range Name	Cells
Covar12	D9
Covar13	E9
Covar23	E10
Covariance	C9:E11
ExpectedReturn	C19
MinExpectedReturn	E19
OneHundredPercent	H14
Portfolio	C14:E14
SD1	C6
SD2	D6
SD3	E6
StandDev	C23
Stock1	C14
Stock2	D14
Stock3	E14
StockExpectedReturn	C4:E4
StockStandDev	C6:E6
Total	F14
Variance	C21

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: Variance
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
Portfolio
Subject to the Constraints:
ExpectedReturn >= MinExpectedReturn
Total = OneHundredPercent

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: GRG Nonlinear
or Quadratic (Analytic Solver)

	F
13	**Total**
14	=SUM(Portfolio)

	B	C
19	**Expected Return**	=SUMPRODUCT(StockExpectedReturn,Portfolio)
20		
21	**Risk (Variance)**	=((SD1*Stock1)^2)+((SD2*Stock2)^2)+((SD3*Stock3)^2)+2*Covar12*Stock1*Stock2+2*Covar13*Stock1*Stock3+2*Covar23*Stock2*Stock3
22		
23	**Risk (Stand. Dev.)**	=SQRT(Variance)

Thus, despite its relatively low return, including a substantial amount of Stock 3 in the portfolio is worthwhile to counteract the high risk associated with Stocks 1 and 2. ExpectedReturn (C19) indicates that this portfolio still achieves an expected return of 18 percent, which equals the minimum acceptable level. The objective cell Variance (C21) gives the risk for the portfolio, namely, the variance of the return for the entire portfolio, as 0.0238. To help interpret this quantity, StandDev (C23) calculates the corresponding standard deviation of the return for the portfolio as $\sqrt{0.0238} = 0.154 = 15.4$ percent. The fact that this standard deviation is less than the expected return is encouraging, because this indicates that it is fairly unlikely that the actual return that eventually is achieved by the portfolio will turn out to be negative. The standard deviation is this small, despite the much larger standard deviations of the returns for Stocks 1 and 2 given in StockStandDev (C6:E6), because of the very small standard deviation for Stock 3 and the negative values in Covar13 (E9) and Covar23 (E10).

There is a good chance that the return for the portfolio will not deviate from the expected return by more than the standard deviation of the return.

This is an example of a cost–benefit trade-off problem since it involves finding the best trade-off between cost (risk) and a benefit (expected return).

Except for the form of the objective function, it is analogous to the cost–benefit trade-off problems discussed in Section 6.3. As discussed further in Chapter 8, analysis of such a problem seldom ends after finding an optimal solution for the original version of the model. The minimum acceptable level stated in the model for the benefit (or benefits) involved is a tentative policy decision. After learning the resulting cost, further analysis is needed to find the best trade-off between costs and benefits. This analysis involves varying the minimum acceptable level for the benefit and seeing what the effect is on the cost. If a lot more benefit can be obtained for relatively little cost, this probably should be done. On the other hand, if decreasing the benefit a little would save a lot of cost, the minimum acceptable level probably should be decreased.

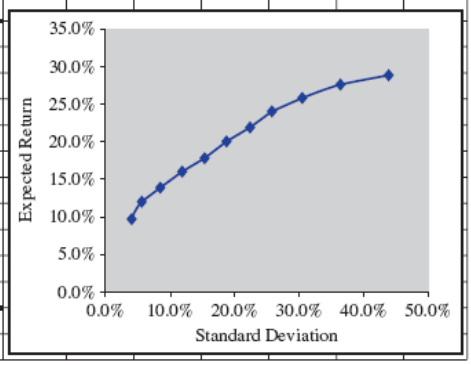
An investor needs the kind of table and graph shown in Figure 11.14 to decide on which portfolio provides the best trade-off between expected return and risk.

One way of applying this approach to the current example is to generate a parameter analysis report with Analytic Solver as described in Chapter 8 to generate a table that gives the expected return and risk provided by an optimal solution for the model for a range of values of the minimum acceptable expected return. Figure 11.14 shows such a table. In the parlance of the world of finance, the pairs of values in columns F and G are referred to as points on the *efficient frontier.* In fact, the right-hand side of Figure 11.14 shows a plot of this efficient frontier. After examining enough such points, the investor then can make a personal decision about which one provides the best trade-off between expected return and risk.

FIGURE 11.14

The parameter analysis report that shows the trade-off between expected return and risk when the model of Figure 11.13 is modified by varying the minimum acceptable expected return as a parameter cell.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	MinExpected Return	Stock 1	Stock 2	Stock 3	Variance	St. Deviation	Return
2	10.0%	8.1%	4.3%	87.6%	0.0015	3.9%	10.0%
3	12.0%	16.2%	8.6%	75.2%	0.0032	5.6%	12.0%
4	14.0%	24.2%	13.0%	62.8%	0.0074	8.6%	14.0%
5	16.0%	32.2%	17.3%	50.5%	0.0143	12.0%	16.0%
6	18.0%	40.2%	21.7%	38.1%	0.0238	15.4%	18.0%
7	20.0%	48.2%	26.1%	25.7%	0.0359	18.9%	20.0%
8	22.0%	56.2%	30.4%	13.4%	0.0506	22.5%	22.0%
9	24.0%	64.2%	34.8%	1.0%	0.0680	26.1%	24.0%
10	26.0%	44.4%	55.6%	0.0%	0.0946	30.8%	26.0%
11	28.0%	22.2%	77.8%	0.0%	0.1394	37.3%	28.0%
12	30.0%	0.0%	100.0%	0.0%	0.2025	45.0%	30.0%
13							
14							



Review *Questions*

. When considering the portfolio model presented in this section, why does it qualify to be a quadratic programming problem?

. When applying nonlinear programming to portfolio selection, a trade-off is being sought between which two factors?

11.4 SEPARABLE PROGRAMMING

Section 11.1 described several types of nonproportional relationships between an activity and the overall measure of performance for a problem. One such relationship is *decreasing marginal returns* and both Sections 11.2 and 11.3 have just focused on nonlinear programming problems where this type of relationship holds for all the activities. We now turn our attention to a related kind of nonproportional relationship where the activities again have decreasing marginal returns. However, the difference is that the profit or cost graph for each activity now is *piecewise linear* because it consists of a sequence of connected line segments. Figure 11.2(b) in Section 11.1 illustrated such a profit graph (or the graph for any other measure of performance to be maximized) and Figure 11.3(b) did the same for a cost graph (or any related graph with minimization).

For nonlinear programming problems with decreasing marginal returns where the profit or cost graphs also are piecewise linear, the separable programming technique converts the problem into an equivalent linear programming problem.

There is a special technique called *separable programming* that is designed to deal with this kind of nonlinear programming problem. Thus, the total profit (or cost) is simply the sum of the profits (or costs) obtained directly from these piecewise linear profit (or cost) graphs for the individual activities.

(No cross-product terms are allowed and each graph must have decreasing marginal returns.) Because of the line segments in each profit or cost graph, this technique converts the formulation of the model into a *linear programming* model. This enables solving the model extremely efficiently and then applying the powerful tools of what-if analysis for linear programming.

The next episode in the saga of the Wyndor Glass Co. problem illustrates this technique.

The Wyndor Glass Co. Problem When Overtime Is Needed

The company now is ready to begin production of its special new doors and windows, based on the planning described in Chapter 5, Chapter 8, and Section 11.2. Because of the nonlinear marketing costs discussed in Section 11.2, the current plan is to use production rates of

$$(D, W) = (3\tfrac{1}{3}, 4)$$

where D and W are the number of doors and windows to be produced per week, respectively.

However, there now is a new development that might alter this production plan for the first four months.

page 468

In particular, the company has accepted a special order for hand-crafted goods to be made in Plants 1 and 2 throughout the next four months. Filling this order will require borrowing certain employees from the work crews for the regular products, so the remaining workers will need to work overtime to utilize the full production capacity of each plant's machinery and equipment for these products.

Without worrying about the new estimates of nonlinear marketing costs yet, how should the original Wyndor model be modified to consider overtime?

Because of this new development, management has asked the Analytics Department to quickly update its model and check whether the current production plan still would be the most profitable one to use during the first four months. To get a quick handle on the problem, this department decides to ignore the nonlinearities in the marketing costs for now and simply modify the original spreadsheet model shown in Figure 11.9 (in the preceding section) to take overtime into account. (After considering this simpler version of the problem, the nonlinearities in the marketing costs will be brought back

into the analysis later in this section.) The constraints in this original model, HoursUsed (E7:E9) ≤ HoursAvailable (G7:G9), are still valid, where overtime would be used to fill some of the hours of production time available in Plants 1 and 2 as given by cells G7 and G8. However, the objective function no longer is valid because the additional cost of using overtime work reduces the profit obtained from each unit of product produced in this way.

For the portion of the work done in Plants 1 and 2, Table 11.3 shows the maximum number of units of each product that can be produced per week on regular time and on overtime. Plant 3 does not need to use overtime, so its unchanged constraint is given in parentheses at the bottom. The fourth column is the sum of the second and third columns, where these sums are implied by the original constraints for Plants 1 and 2 ($D \le 4$ and $2W \le 12$, so $W \le 6$). The final two columns give the estimated profit for each unit produced on regular time and on overtime (in Plants 1 and 2), based on the original estimates of marketing costs rather than those developed in Section 11.2.

TABLE 11.3

Data for the Original Wyndor Problem When Overtime Is Needed

	Maximum Weekly Production			Profit per Unit Produced	
Product	Regular Time	Overtime	Total	Regular Time	Overtime
Doors	3	1	4	$300	$200
Windows	3	3	6	500	100
	(and $3D + 2W \le 18$)				

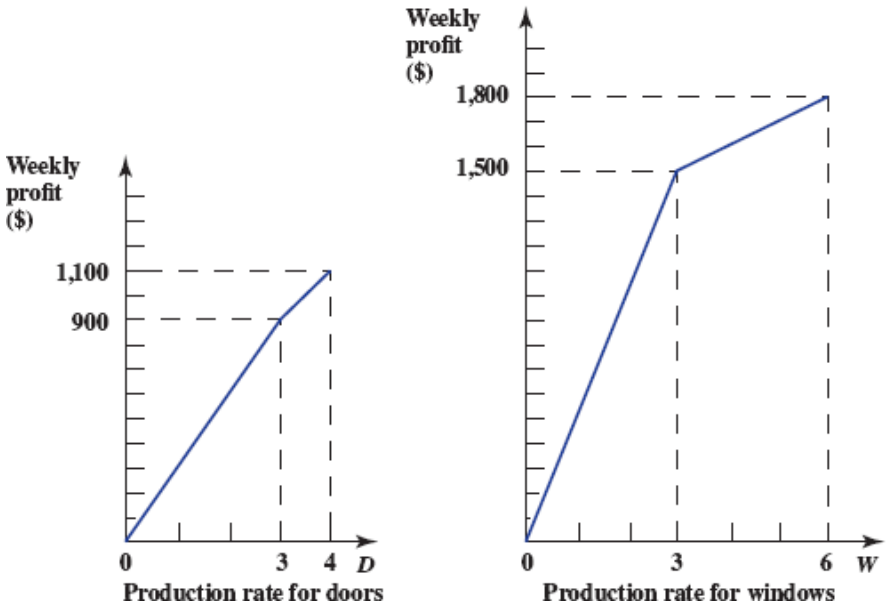
Figure 11.15 plots the weekly profit from each product versus its production rate. Note that the *slope* (steepness) of each profit graph decreases when the production rate is increased sufficiently to require overtime, because the profit per unit produced shown in Table 11.3 is less on overtime than on regular time. Thus, these two products have *decreasing marginal returns.*

FIGURE 11.15

Profit graphs for the Wyndor Glass Co. that show the total weekly profit from each product versus the production rate for that product when overtime is needed to exceed a production rate of three units per week. At this point, these profit graphs are based on the original estimates of marketing

costs rather than the estimates of nonlinear marketing costs developed in Section 11.2.

Microsoft Corporation



Management had considered hiring some temporary workers to avoid the extra expense of using overtime. However, this would mean incurring some training costs, as well as inefficiencies from using inexperienced workers. Therefore, because this is a temporary situation where regular production can resume in four months, management has decided to go ahead and use overtime.

The model needs to provide a solution that uses overtime for a product only if all available regular time for that product has been fully utilized.

However, management does insist that the work crew for each product be fully utilized on regular time before any overtime is used. Furthermore, it feels that the current plans for the production rates should be changed temporarily if this would improve overall profitability.

Applying Separable Programming to This Problem

Since each profit graph in Figure 11.15 is not a straight line, the profit from each product is *not* proportional to its production rate. Consequently, the proportionality assumption of linear programming (discussed in Section 11.1) is violated. However, each profit graph does consist of *two* straight lines (line segments) that are connected together at the point where the slope changes.

Thus, within each line segment, the profit graph looks like the proportionality assumption still holds. This suggests the following key idea.

The key idea is to have a separate decision variable for each line segment in a profit graph (or cost graph).

The Separable Programming Technique: For each activity that violates the proportionality assumption, separate its profit graph into parts, with a line segment in each part. Then, instead of using a single decision variable to represent the level of each such activity, introduce a separate new decision variable for each line segment on that activity's profit graph. Since the proportionality assumption holds for these new decision variables, formulate a linear programming model in terms of these variables.

For the Wyndor problem, these new decision variables are

D_R = Number of doors produced per week on regular time
D_O = Number of doors produced per week on overtime
W_R = Number of windows produced per week on regular time
W_O = Number of windows produced per week on overtime

The unit profits associated with these variables are given in the final two columns of Table 11.3, so these numbers become the coefficients in the objective function. The second and third columns give the maximum values of these variables, so corresponding constraints are introduced into the model. The three functional constraints in the model for the original Wyndor problem also need to hold, but with D replaced by $(D_R + D_O)$ and W replaced by $(W_R + W_O)$. Section 5.3 shows the algebraic form of the model for the original Wyndor problem (where P denotes the total profit per week from the two products, in dollars). Now that we are separately considering the production rates of the two products on regular time and on overtime, this model now expands to choosing the values of the four new decision variables so as to

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad P = 300\,D_R + 200\,D_O + 500\,W_R + 100\,W_O,$$

subject to

$$
\begin{aligned}
D_R \le 3, D_O \le 1, W_R \le 3, W_D &\le 3 \\
D_R + D_O &\le 4 \\
2(W_R + W_O) &\le 12 \\
3(D_R + D_O) + 2(W_R + W_O) &\le 18
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$D_R \ge 0 \qquad D_O \ge 0 \qquad W_R \ge 0 \qquad W_D \ge 0$$

(The second and third rows of constraints could be deleted because they are ensured by the first row of constraints.) The key to the separable programming technique is that this model is a *linear programming model* that fits what was originally a nonlinear programming problem.

The resulting spreadsheet model for this linear programming formulation of the problem is shown in Figure 11.16. The changing cells UnitsProduced (C14:D15) include separate cells for each of the four decision variables. The new constraints, UnitsProduced (C14:D15) ≤ Maximum (F14:G15), enforce the upper bounds on these decision variables indicated by the second and third columns of Table 11.3. The new output cells TotalProduced (C16:D16) sum the production quantities on regular time and overtime for each of the products. This then enables calculating the hours used with the equation, HoursUsed (E8:E10) = SUMPRODUCT (Hours UsedPer UnitProduced, TotalProduced). Otherwise, the model is basically the same as the original linear programming model in Figure 11.9. Note that Simplex LP has been chosen as the solving method, because the new model also has been formulated to become a linear programming model. The proportionality assumption now is satisfied for the new decision variables.

FIGURE 11.16

page 470

A spreadsheet model for the Wyndor separable programming problem when overtime is needed, where the changing cells UnitsProduced (C14:D15) give the optimal production rates obtained by Solver and the objective cell TotalProfit (D18) shows the resulting total profit per week. This model is based on the profit graphs in Figure 11.15 and so does not incorporate the nonlinear marketing costs developed in Section 11.2.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor Problem with Overtime (Separable Programming)**						
2							
3		**Unit Profit**	Doors	Windows			
4		Regular	$300	$500			
5		Overtime	$200	$100			
6					Hours		Hours
7			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
8		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4
9		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12
10		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
11							
12			**Units Produced**			**Maximum**	
13			Doors	Windows		Doors	Windows
14		Regular	3	3	≤	3	3
15		Overtime	1	0	≤	1	3
16		Total Produced	4	3			
17							
18			Total Profit	$2,600			

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
UnitsProduced <= Maximum

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
6	Hours
7	Used
8	=SUMPRODUCT(C8:D8,TotalProduced)
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,TotalProduced)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:D10,TotalProduced)

	B	C	D
16	Total Produced	=SUM(C14:C15)	=SUM(D14:D15)

	C	D
18	Total Profit	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cells
HoursAvailable	G8:G10
HoursUsed	E8:E10
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C8:D10
Maximum	F14:G15
TotalProduced	C16:D16
TotalProfit	D18
UnitProfit	C4:D5
UnitsProduced	C14:D15

Linear programming models generally can be solved *far* more efficiently than nonlinear programming models. Furthermore, *what-if analysis* can be performed *much* easier on linear programming models than on nonlinear

programming models. Therefore, the ability to reformulate the original model to make it fit linear programming is what makes separable programming an especially valuable technique.

However, there is one important factor that is not taken into account explicitly in this formulation. Recall that management insists that regular time production be fully utilized before using any overtime on each product. There are no constraints in the model that enforce this restriction. Consequently, it actually is feasible in the model to have $D_O > 0$ when $D_R < 3$, or to have $W_O > 0$ when $W_R < 3$.

Fortunately, even though such a solution is feasible in the model, it cannot be optimal. The reason is that the activities (producing the two products) have *decreasing marginal returns,* since the unit profit on overtime is less than on regular time for each product. Therefore, to maximize the total profit, an optimal solution automatically will use up all regular time for a product before starting on overtime.

Decreasing marginal returns are needed to use the separable programming technique.

The key is to have decreasing marginal returns. Without it, the linear programming model with this approach may not provide a legitimate optimal solution. This is the reason that separable programming is only applicable when the activities have decreasing marginal returns (except for those activities that satisfy the proportionality assumption).

Figure 11.16 shows the changing cells UnitsProduced (C14:D15) after using Solver to obtain an optimal solution. This optimal solution is

$D_R = 3$, $D_O = 1$: Produce 4 doors per week
$W_R = 3$, $W_O = 0$: Produce 3 windows per week

for a total profit of $2,600 per week given by the objective cell TotalProfit (D18). This compares with a total profit of $2,567 per week (when again ignoring nonlinearities in the marketing costs) for the previous plan (produce 3⅓ doors and 4 windows per week) that had been adopted before the need to use overtime arose.

Applying Separable Programming with Smooth Profit Graphs

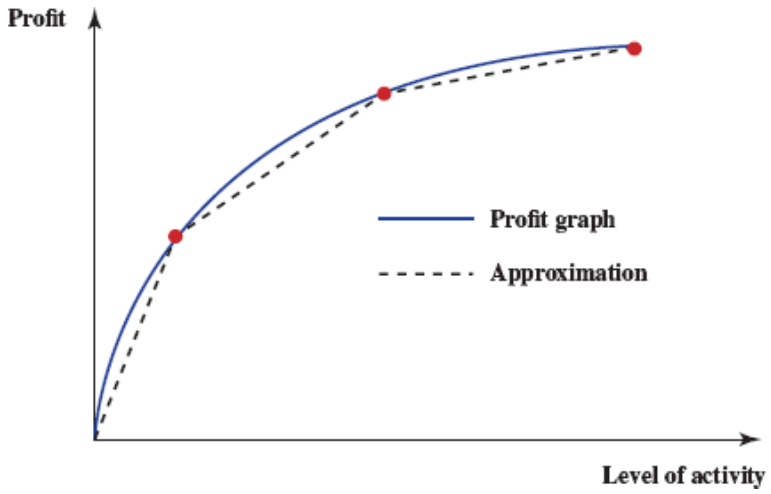
In some applications of separable programming, the profit graphs will be *curves* rather than a series of line segments. This occurs when the marginal

return from an activity decreases on a continuous basis rather than just at certain points.

For example, the solid curve in Figure 11.17 shows such a profit graph for an activity. To apply separable programming, this curve can then be approximated by a series of line segments, such as the dashed-line segments in the figure. By introducing a new decision variable for each of the line segments (and repeating this for other activities with such profit graphs), the approach just illustrated by the Wyndor example can again be used to convert the overall problem into a linear programming problem.

FIGURE 11.17

The solid curve shows a profit graph for an activity whose marginal return decreases on a continuous basis. The dashed-line segments display the kind of approximation used by separable programming.



This is not the only way to solve problems where the activities have profit graphs with shapes similar to the one shown in Figure 11.17. Section 11.2 discusses an example of this same type. The Nonlinear Solver can readily solve such problems by using a nonlinear programming model that employs the formulas for the profit graphs. The advantage is that no approximation is needed, whereas separable programming uses the kind of approximation illustrated in Figure 11.17.

However, the separable programming approach also has certain advantages. One is that converting the problem into a linear programming problem tends to make it quicker to solve, which can be very helpful for large problems. Another advantage is that a linear programming formulation makes available Solver's Sensitivity Report, which

is a great aid to what-if analysis, whereas the sensitivity information provided when using a nonlinear programming model is not nearly as useful. A third important advantage is that the separable programming approach only requires estimating the profit from each activity at a few points, such as the dots in Figure 11.17. Therefore, it is not necessary to use a curve fitting method to estimate the formula for the profit graph, where this estimation would have introduced its own approximation into the process.

The approximation in Figure 11.17 only requires estimating the profit at the three dots rather than estimating a formula for the entire profit graph.

The end of the Wyndor story (below) illustrates the application of both approaches.

The Wyndor Problem with Both Overtime Costs and Nonlinear Marketing Costs

The spreadsheet model in Figure 11.16 provides a good quick estimate of approximately what the production rates should be for the new products over the next four months. This is useful for planning purposes, but the model is a somewhat rough one because it does not take into account the new estimates of nonlinear marketing costs that were developed in Section 11.2. Therefore, the next step for Wyndor's Analytics Department is to enhance the model by incorporating these new estimates.

Recall that Ana Hernandez Wyndor's vice president for marketing, now is estimating that the marketing costs will need to be $\$25D^2$ and $\$66\frac{2}{3}W^2$ to sustain sales of D doors and W windows per week. These costs then would need to be subtracted from the gross profit for each product (the profit excluding marketing costs) to obtain that product's profit. Since the original estimates of marketing costs had been \$75 per door and \$200 per window when estimating the unit profits given in Table 11.3, the group now needs to use the data shown in Table 11.4. The middle columns in this table shows the gross unit profit for each product before subtracting the marketing cost and then the last column gives the formula for calculating the marketing cost for each product.

TABLE 11.4

Data for the Wyndor Problem with Both Overtime Costs and Nonlinear Marketing Costs

Product	Maximum Weekly Production			Gross Unit Profit		Marketing Costs
	Regular Time	Overtime	Total	Regular Time	Overtime	
Doors	3	1	4	$375	$275	25D^2$
Windows	3	3	6	700	300	$66\frac{2}{3}W^2$

Based on these data, the fourth column of Table 11.5 shows the weekly profit that would be obtained by producing *D* doors per week for various values of *D.* This profit is calculated by subtracting the marketing costs in the third column from the gross profit in the second column. The rightmost column gives the incremental profit from the last increase of 1 in the value of *D.* Thus, the incremental profit is calculated by taking the profit in the same row and subtracting the profit in the preceding row. Note the large drop in the incremental profit at $D = 4$ because overtime must be used to increase *D* above 3.

TABLE 11.5

Calculations of Wyndor's Weekly Profit from Producing D Doors per Week

D	Gross Profit	Marketing Costs	Profit	Incremental Profit
0	0	0	0	—
1	$ 375	$ 25	$ 350	$350
2	750	100	650	300
3	1,125	225	900	250
4	1,400	400	1,000	100

Table 11.6 provides the corresponding calculations for windows. In this case, the incremental profit at $W = 4$, $W = 5$, and $W = 6$ actually is negative because of the large extra costs of the overtime that is needed to increase *W* above 3.

TABLE 11.6

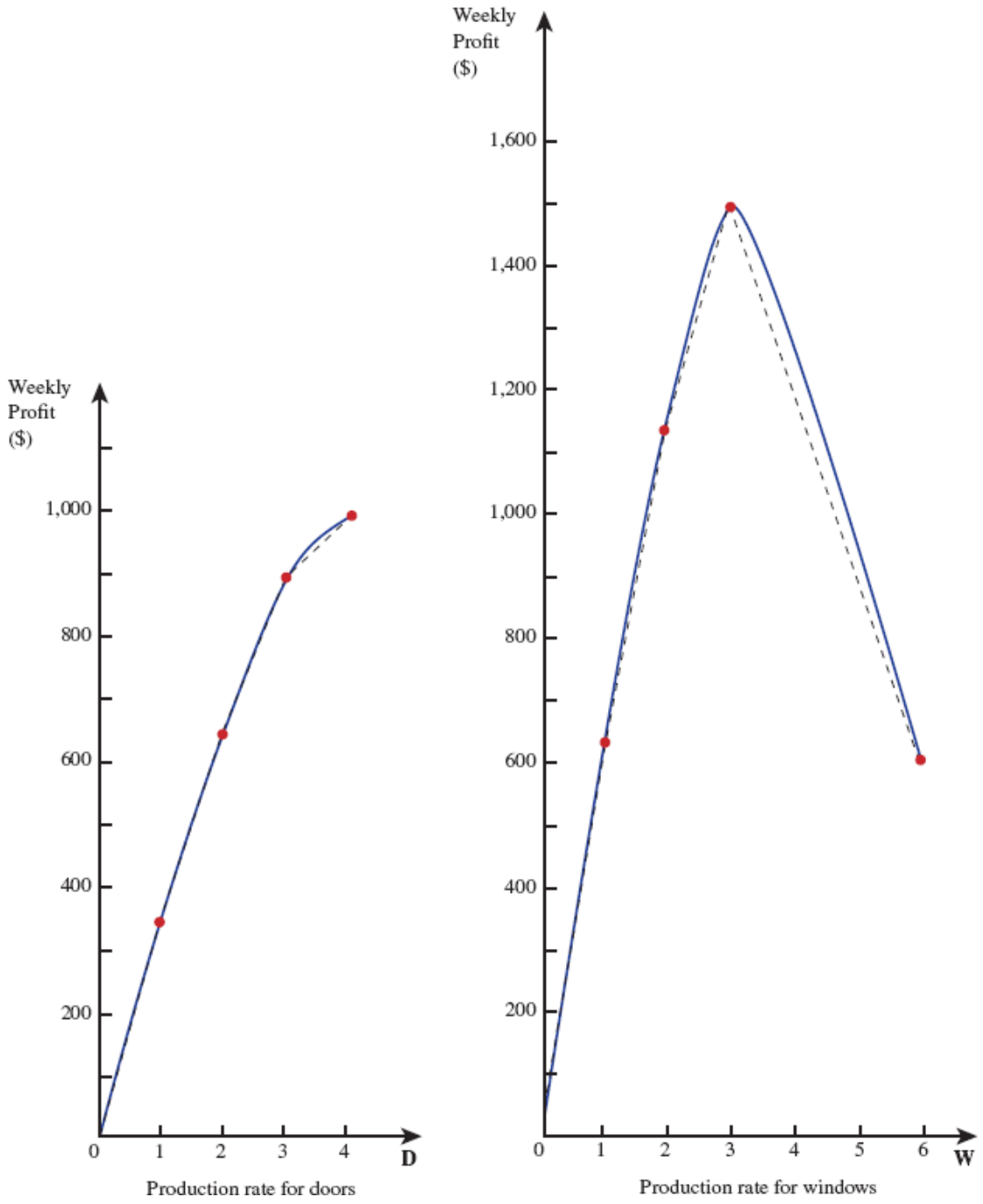
Calculations of Wyndor's Weekly Profit from Producing W Windows per Week

W	Gross Profit	Marketing Costs	Profit	Incremental Profit
0	0	0	0	—
1	$ 700	$ 66⅔	$ 633⅓	$ 633⅓
2	1,400	266⅔	1,133⅓	500
3	2,100	600	1,500	366⅓
4	2,400	1,066⅔	1,333⅓	−166⅓
5	2,700	1,666⅔	1,033⅓	−300
6	3,000	2,400	600	−433⅓

The solid curves in Figure 11.18 show the entire profit graphs for the doors and windows. The slope of each graph always is decreasing as the production rate increases, so both activities have decreasing marginal returns. This decrease in the slope is almost imperceptible at small production rates and then becomes more pronounced at larger rates. There also is a kink in each graph at $D = 3$ or $W = 3$ because overtime is required to increase the production rate further.

FIGURE 11.18

The solid curves show the profit graphs for Wyndor's doors and windows when both overtime costs and nonlinear marketing costs are incorporated into the problem. The dashed-line segments display the approximation used by the separable programming model in Figure 11.19.



It is very reasonable to use separable programming when the piecewise linear graphs approximate the actual profit graphs this closely.

The Analytics Department now wants to use separable programming to determine what the production rates should be to maximize total profit. For this purpose, the group uses the dashed-line segments in Figure 11.18 to obtain piecewise linear graphs that closely approximate the actual profit graphs. The one place where the approximation is not really close is when the

profit graph for windows goes from $1,500, at W = 3, to $600, at W = 6 (an average decrease of $300 per unit of W). Since the profit decreases when W is increased above W = 3, it seems undesirable to increase W this much. Therefore, a particularly close approximation is not needed in this part of the graph, so only a single line segment is used between W = 3 and W = 6.

page 474

Figure 11.19 shows the separable programming spreadsheet model that is based on the piecewise linear profit graphs in Figure 11.18. This model is very similar to the separable programming spreadsheet model in Figure 11.16 that does not incorporate the new estimates of nonlinear marketing costs. The latter model is based on the piecewise linear profit graphs in Figure 11.15, each of which has only two line segments. Therefore, each of the sets of cells, UnitProfit (C4:D5) and UnitsProduced (C14:D15), has only two rows. Because each of the piecewise linear profit graphs in Figure 11.18 has four line segments, each of the corresponding sets of cells in Figure 11.19, UnitProfit (C4:D7) and UnitsProduced (C17:D20), has four rows. The numbers in UnitProfit (C4:D7) are the slopes of the corresponding line segments in Figure 11.18. These slopes come directly from the incremental profits given in Tables 11.5 and 11.6, except for cell D7. This cell is based on the line segment from W = 3 to W = 6 in Figure 11.18, which has a slope of − $300 since the profit is decreasing at the rate of $300 per unit increase in W. This slope of − $300 is the average of the last three incremental profits in Table 11.6. All the other line segments in Figure 11.18 run over only one unit of D or W, so the slope of each of these line segments equals the corresponding incremental profit in Table 11.5 or 11.6.

page 475

FIGURE 11.19

A spreadsheet model for the separable programming formulation of the Wyndor problem when overtime is needed and nonlinear marketing costs also are incorporated into the problem. By summing the columns of the changing cells UnitsProduced (C17:D20), Total Produced (C21:D21) gives the optimal production rates obtained by Solver. The objective cell TotalProfit (D23) shows a resulting weekly profit of $2,500.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Wyndor with Overtime and Marketing Costs (Separable)**						
2							
3		**Unit Profit**	Doors	Windows			
4		Regular (0–1)	$350.00	$633.33			
5		Regular (1–2)	$300.00	$500.00			
6		Regular (2–3)	$250.00	$366.67			
7		Overtime	$100.00	-$300.00			
8							
9					Hours		Hours
10			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available
11		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4
12		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12
13		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18
14							
15			**Units Produced**			**Maximum**	
16			Doors	Windows		Doors	Windows
17		Regular (0–1)	1	1	≤	1	1
18		Regular (1–2)	1	1	≤	1	1
19		Regular (2–3)	1	1	≤	1	1
20		Overtime	1	0	≤	1	3
21		Total Produced	4	3			
22							
23			Total Profit	$2,500			

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
UnitsProduced <= Maximum

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: Simplex LP

	E
9	Hours
10	Used
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:D11,TotalProduced)
12	=SUMPRODUCT(C12:D12,TotalProduced)
13	=SUMPRODUCT(C13:D13,TotalProduced)

	B	C	D
21	Total Produced	=SUM(C17:C20)	=SUM(D17:D20)

	C	D
23	Total Profit	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)

Range Name	Cells
HoursAvailable	G11:G13
HoursUsed	E11:E13
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C11:D13
Maximum	F17:G20
TotalProduced	C21:D21
TotalProfit	D23
UnitProfit	C4:D7
UnitsProduced	C17:D20

Separable programming calculates unit profits for different parts of a profit graph by using the slopes of the line segments in the piecewise linear approximation of the profit graph.

The changing cells in Figure 11.19, UnitsProduced (C17:D20), give the optimal solution obtained by Solver. TotalProduced (C21:D21), which = SUM(UnitsProduced), gives the corresponding total production rates, namely,
D = 4: Produce 4 doors per week, including 1 on overtime
W = 3: Produce 3 windows per week

The objective cell TotalProfit (D23) indicates that the resulting weekly profit would be $2,500.

Figures 11.19 and 11.20 provide a comparison between a separable programming model and the kind of nonlinear programming model discussed in Section 11.2.

To check these results, the Analytics Department also formulates and runs the corresponding nonlinear programming model that employs the formulas for the smooth profit graphs in Figure 11.18. This spreadsheet model is shown in Figure 11.20. It is nearly the same as the one in Figure 11.11 that does not include overtime costs. The one difference is that the single row for UnitProfit (C4:D4) and for UnitsProduced (C12:D12) in Figure 11.11 now is split into two rows each, (C4:D5) and (C15:D16), to differentiate between regular time and overtime. Because of the kink in the profit graphs at *D* = 3 and *W* = 3, the pairs of rows are needed to provide separate formulas for the two parts of each profit graph on either side of the kink. TotalProduced (C17:D17) provides the same optimal solution, (*D, W*) = (4, 3), as the separable programming model in Figure 11.19, with a total profit of $2,500.

FIGURE 11.20

page 476

A spreadsheet model for the nonlinear programming formulation of the Wyndor problem when overtime is needed and nonlinear marketing costs also are incorporated into the problem. Total Produced (C17:D17) gives the optimal production rates obtained by Solver and the objective cell TotalProfit (H20) shows the resulting weekly profit. Note that this nonlinear programming formulation gives the same results as the separable programming formulation in Figure 11.19.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Wyndor With Overtime and Marketing Costs (Nonlinear Programming)**							
2								
3		**Unit Profit (Gross)**	Doors	Windows				
4		Regular	$375	$700				
5		Overtime	$275	$300				
6								
7					Hours		Hours	
8			Hours Used per Unit Produced		Used		Available	
9		Plant 1	1	0	4	≤	4	
10		Plant 2	0	2	6	≤	12	
11		Plant 3	3	2	18	≤	18	
12								
13						**Maximum**		
14		**Units Produced**	Doors	Windows		Doors	Windows	
15		Regular	3	3	≤	3	3	
16		Overtime	1	0	≤	1	3	
17		Total Produced	4	3				
18						Gross Profit from Sales		$3,500
19		Marketing Cost	$400	$600		Total Marketing Cost		$1,000
20							Total Profit	$2,500

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalProfit
To: Max
By Changing Variable Cells:
UnitsProduced
Subject to the Constraints:
HoursUsed <= HoursAvailable
UnitsProduced <= Maximum

Solver Options:
Make Variables Nonnegative
Solving Method: GRG Nonlinear or Quadratic (Analytic Solver)

Range Name	Cells
DoorsProduced	C17
GrossProfitFromSales	H18
HoursAvailable	G9:G11
HoursUsed	E9:E11
HoursUsedPerUnitProduced	C9:D11
MarketingCost	C19:D19
Maximum	F15:G16
TotalMarketingCost	H19
TotalProduced	C17:D17
TotalProfit	H20
UnitProfit	C4:D5
UnitsProduced	C15:D16
WindowsProduced	D17

	E
7	Hours
8	Used
9	=SUMPRODUCT(C9:D9,TotalProduced)
10	=SUMPRODUCT(C10:D10,TotalProduced)
11	=SUMPRODUCT(C11:D11,TotalProduced)

	B	C	D
17	Total Produced	=SUM(C15:C16)	=SUM(D15:D16)
18			
19	Marketing Cost	=25*(DoorsProduced^2)	=66.667*(WindowsProduced^2)

	G	H
18	Gross Profit from Sales	=SUMPRODUCT(UnitProfit,UnitsProduced)
19	Total Marketing Cost	=SUM(MarketingCost)
20	Total Profit	=GrossProfitFromSales–TotalMarketingCost

Based on these results, Wyndor management now adopts production rates of (*D, W*) = (4, 3) for the next four months while overtime is needed.

Following that period, the plan is to switch to (D, W) = (3⅓, 4) because of the results obtained in Section 11.2.

This completes the Wyndor case study. One key lesson is that a management science and business analytics study may involve developing more than just a single model to represent a problem. As the study goes on and additional relevant considerations come to light, the original model may evolve through a series of enhancements into a rather different kind of model. For example, what started as a linear programming model may end up needing to be a nonlinear programming model.

Here is one key lesson from the Wyndor case study.

Review *Questions*

. For each activity that violates the proportionality assumption, what must be the shape of its profit graph (or at least an approximation of the profit graph) in order to apply separable programming?

. What kind of mathematical model is eventually formulated when applying the separable programming technique?

. For problems where the activities have profit graphs with shapes similar to the one shown in Figure 11.17, what are some advantages of using the kind of approximation displayed in this figure to enable applying separable programming?

. For these same problems, what is an advantage of instead using a nonlinear programming model that directly employs the formulas for the profit graphs?

11.5 DIFFICULT NONLINEAR PROGRAMMING PROBLEMS

We saw in Sections 11.2 and 11.3 that even if a model has a nonlinear objective function, so long as the model has certain properties (e.g., linear constraints and maximizing an objective function with decreasing marginal returns), the Nonlinear Solver can easily find an optimal solution. Furthermore, we saw in Section 11.4 that in some cases separable programming can be used to model (or approximate) a nonlinear problem in such a way that *linear* programming can be used to efficiently find an optimal solution.

The Nonlinear Solver often has difficulty solving nonlinear programming models if the constraints are nonlinear or if the profit graphs for any activities are either not smooth or have increasing marginal

returns.

However, nonlinear programming problems come in many guises and forms. For example, for problems where the objective is to maximize total profit, some might have *increasing* marginal returns for the profit from certain activities. Some might have nonlinear functions in the constraints. Some might have profit graphs with several disconnected curves. These other kinds of nonlinear programming problems often are much more difficult, if not impossible, to solve. The reason is that there may be many locally optimal solutions that are not globally optimal. We saw in Figures 11.7 and 11.8 how the Nonlinear Solver can get stuck at these locally optimal solutions without ever finding the globally optimal solution.

One approach for attempting to solve problems that may have multiple local optima is to run the Nonlinear Solver many times, each time starting with a different initial solution entered into the changing cells on the spreadsheet. For each run, the Nonlinear Solver will start its search at the given initial solution (the starting point) and move in a direction that improves the objective function until it finds a local optimum. By trying many starting points, the goal is to find most or all of the local optima. We then pick the best solution found from all the trials. At a minimum, we are likely to end up with a solution that is better than if we just take the first local optimum that the Nonlinear Solver finds. With luck, one of the starting points will yield the globally optimal solution.

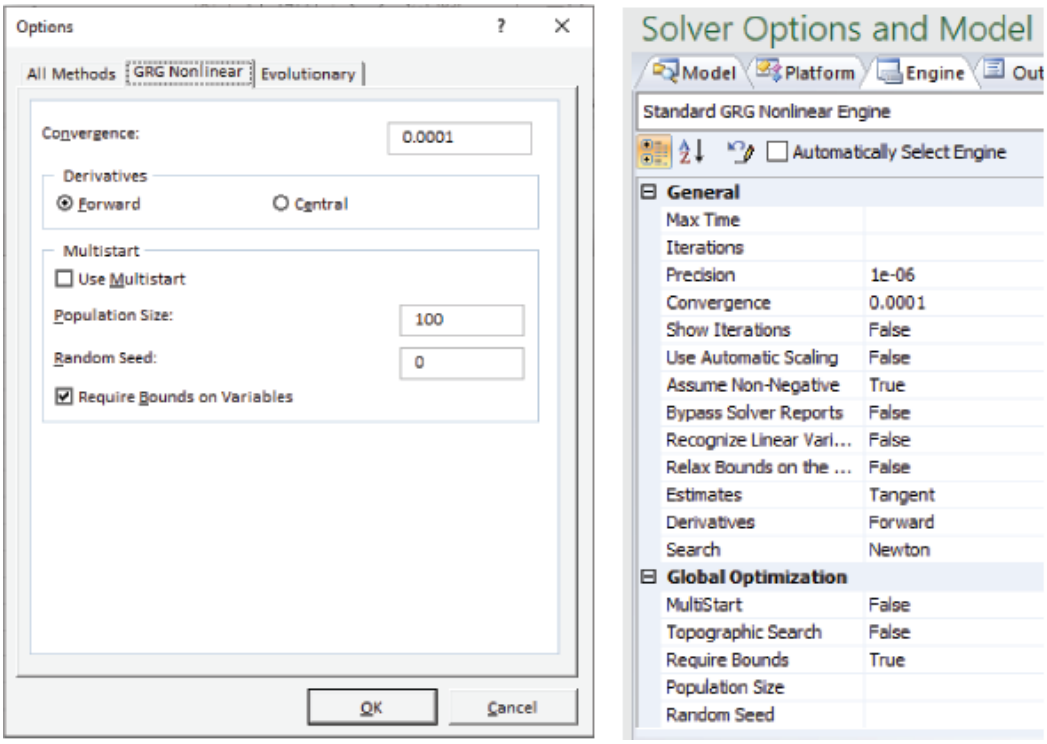
If there are multiple local optima, running the Nonlinear Solver many times with different starting points can sometimes find the global optimum.

For example, consider the model in Figure 11.7 with the corresponding profit graph in Figure 11.8. For any starting point x less than 1.5, the objective function increases by moving toward the local maximum at $x = 0.371$ (Profit = \$3.19). Thus, for any starting point x less than 1.5 (including the starting point $x = 0$ tried in the leftmost spreadsheet in Figure 11.7), the Nonlinear Solver's search will move toward and eventually converge to this local maximum. Similarly, for any starting point x between 1.5 and 4.6 (such as $x = 3$ tried in the center spreadsheet in Figure 11.7), the Nonlinear Solver will converge to the local (and global) maximum at $x = 3.126$ (Profit = \$6.13). Finally, for any starting point x greater than 4.6 (such as $x = 4.7$ tried in the rightmost spreadsheet in Figure 11.7), the Nonlinear Solver will converge to the local maximum at $x = 5$ (Profit = \$0). By trying several starting points, three different local optima are found. The best of these local optima is $x = 3.126$ with a corresponding profit of \$6.13.

The Nonlinear Solver includes an automated way of trying multiple starting points. In Excel's Solver, clicking on the Options button in Solver and then choosing the GRG Nonlinear tab brings up the Nonlinear Solver Options dialog box shown on the left side of Figure 11.21. Selecting the Use Multistart option causes the Nonlinear Solver to randomly select 100 different starting points. (The number of starting points can be varied by changing the Population Size option.) In Analytic Solver, the Multistart option (and Population Size) are set on the Engine tab in the Model pane, as shown on the right side of Figure 11.21. When Multistart is enabled, the Nonlinear Solver then provides the best solution found after solving with each of the different starting points.

FIGURE 11.21

On the left, Excel's Nonlinear Solver Options dialog box provides several parameters for the Nonlinear Solver. The Multistart option causes the Nonlinear Solver to try many random starting points. (The number of starting points can be adjusted by changing the Population Size.) On the right, the same options are available in Analytic Solver under the Engine tab on the Model pane under Global Optimization.



Microsoft Corporation

Frontline Systems, Inc.

This approach has some major limitations.

Unfortunately, there is no guarantee in general of finding a globally optimal solution, no matter how many different starting points are tried. Also, if the profit graphs are not smooth (e.g., if they have discontinuities or kinks), as is typically the case if functions like IF, ABS, MAX, or ROUND are used, then the Nonlinear Solver may not even be able to find local optima. Fortunately, there is another approach available to attempt to solve these difficult nonlinear programming problems. We explore this new approach in the next section.

An Application Vignette

Headquartered in Bonn, Germany, **Deutsche Post DHL** is the largest logistics service provider worldwide. Soon after the time when this application was completed, it employed nearly half a million people in more than 220 countries while delivering approximately 3 million items and 70 million letters each day with over 150,000 vehicles. In 2020, the company generated 66.8 billion EUR in revenue (approximately $75.5 billion). The dramatic story of how DHL quickly achieved this lofty status is one that combines enlightened *managerial leadership,* an innovative *marketing campaign,* and the application of *nonlinear programming* to optimize the use of marketing resources.

Starting as just a German postal service, senior management developed a visionary plan to begin the 21st century by transforming the company into a truly global logistics business. The first step was to acquire and integrate a number of similar companies that already had a strong presence in various other parts of the world. Because customers who operate on a global scale expect to deal with just one provider, the next step was to develop an aggressive marketing program based on extensive marketing research to re-brand DHL as a superior truly global company that could fully meet the needs of these customers. These marketing activities were pursued vigorously in more than 20 of the largest countries on four continents.

This kind of marketing program is very expensive, so it is important to use the limited marketing resources as effectively as possible. Therefore, management scientists developed a *brand choice model* with an objective function that measures this effectiveness. **Nonlinear programming** then

was used to maximize this objective function budget without exceeding the total marketing budget.

This innovative use of *marketing theory* and *nonlinear programming* led to a substantial increase in the global brand value of DHL that enabled it to catapult into a market-leading position. This increase over the first five years was estimated to be **$1.32 billion** (a 32 percent increase). The corresponding *return on investment* was **38 percent.** Comparable financial benefits also continued in the subsequent years.

This dramatic application of prescriptive analytics resulted in DHL winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six 2010 worldwide finalists for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: M. Fischer, W. Giehl, and T. Freundt, "Managing Global Brand Investments at DHL," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 41, no. 1 (January–February 2011): 35–50. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Review *Questions*

. The Nonlinear Solver has difficulty solving nonlinear programming problems with certain properties. List three of these properties.

. What is a method for attempting to solve problems with multiple locally optimal solutions?

11.6 EVOLUTIONARY SOLVER AND GENETIC ALGORITHMS

The Excel Solver includes a number of important solving methods. One of the most useful of these solving methods (and also available in Analytic Solver) is a search procedure called **Evolutionary Solver.**

Evolutionary Solver

A search procedure provided in Solver that uses concepts from genetics, evolution, and the survival of the fittest.

Evolutionary Solver uses an entirely different approach than the Nonlinear Solver to search for an optimal solution for a nonlinear programming model. The philosophy of Evolutionary Solver is

based on genetics, evolution, and the survival of the fittest. Hence, this type of algorithm is sometimes called a **genetic algorithm.**

genetic algorithm

A type of algorithm that uses concepts from genetics.

When dealing with a nonlinear programming problem, the Nonlinear Solver starts with a single solution (the starting point), and then moves in directions that will improve this solution. At any point in time, the Nonlinear Solver is only keeping track of a single solution (the best one found so far). In contrast, Evolutionary Solver begins by randomly generating a large set of candidate solutions, called the **population.** Throughout the solution process, Evolutionary Solver keeps track of the whole population of candidate solutions. Much like trying different starting points with the Nonlinear Solver, this attention to many candidate solutions can help avoid being trapped at a local optimum.

population

The large set of candidate solutions that is randomly generated by Evolutionary Solver.

After generating the population, Evolutionary Solver next creates a new **generation** of the population. The existing population of candidate solutions is paired off to create “offspring” for the next generation. Borrowing from the principles of genetics, the offspring combine some elements from each parent. For example, an offspring could combine some of the changing cell values from one parent and some from the other, while other changing cells might be averaged between the two parents.

generation

A new set of candidate solutions that is created by Evolutionary Solver by pairing off members of the existing population of candidate solutions to create “offspring” for the next generation.

Among the population of solutions in any generation, some solutions will be good (or “fit”) and some will be bad (or “unfit”). The level of fitness is determined by evaluating the objective function at each of the candidate solutions in the population. A penalty is subtracted for any solution that does not satisfy one or more of the constraints. Then, borrowing from the principles of evolution and the survival of the fittest, the “fit” members of the population are allowed to reproduce frequently (create many offspring), while the “unfit”

members are not allowed to reproduce. In this way, the population eventually evolves to become more and more fit.

Another key feature of genetic algorithms is **mutation.** Like gene mutation in biology, Evolutionary Solver will occasionally make a random change in a member of the population. For example, the value of one changing cell might be replaced with a new random value. This mutation can create offspring that are far removed from the rest of the population. This is important, since it can help the algorithm get unstuck if it is getting trapped near a local optimum.

mutation

Similar to gene mutation in biology, this is a random change that Evolutionary Solver occasionally makes in a member of the current population.

Evolutionary Solver keeps creating new generations of solutions until there have been no improvements in several consecutive generations. The algorithm then terminates and the best solution found so far is reported.

Now let us look at an example where Evolutionary Solver is needed to solve the problem.

Selecting a Portfolio to Beat the Market

In Section 11.3, we developed a model for finding a portfolio of stocks that minimizes the risk (variance of the return from the portfolio) subject to achieving at least some desired minimum expected return. The Nonlinear Solver (or the Quadratic Solver in Analytic Solver) could be used for that problem because the constraints were linear whereas the objective function had a smooth quadratic form and had decreasing marginal returns.

Now consider another common goal of portfolio managers—to beat the market. Figure 11.22 shows a spreadsheet model for pursuing this goal when choosing a portfolio from five large stocks traded on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE): Disney (DIS), Boeing (BA), General Electric (GE), Procter & Gamble (PG), and McDonald's (MCD). The quarterly performance (return) of each of these stocks over a six-year period (2015–20) is shown in StockData (D4:H27). The performance of the market as a whole, as measured by the NYSE Composite Index, is shown in column K.

FIGURE 11.22

A spreadsheet model (prior to using Solver) for selecting a portfolio that beat the market most frequently in recent quarters. A starting

solution has been entered in the changing cells Portfolio (D31:H31). The objective cell is NumberBeatingTheMarket (J36).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Beating the Market (Evolutionary Solver)**										
2										Beat	Market
3		Quarter	Year	DIS	BA	GE	PG	MCD	Return	Market?	(NYSE)
4		Q4	2020	46.02%	29.53%	73.64%	0.66%	–1.66%	29.64%	Yes	14.35%
5		Q3	2020	11.27%	–9.84%	–8.65%	16.98%	19.68%	5.89%	No	6.79%
6		Q2	2020	15.43%	22.90%	–13.89%	9.42%	12.31%	9.24%	No	15.45%
7		Q1	2020	–32.81%	–53.95%	–28.79%	–11.41%	–15.80%	–28.55%	No	–25.96%
8		Q4	2019	10.98%	–13.88%	24.97%	1.06%	–7.37%	3.15%	No	6.98%
9		Q3	2019	–6.10%	5.17%	–14.78%	14.17%	3.94%	0.48%	Yes	–0.34%
10		Q2	2019	25.77%	–4.02%	5.22%	6.13%	9.99%	8.62%	Yes	2.78%
11		Q1	2019	2.04%	18.86%	37.44%	14.09%	7.62%	16.01%	Yes	11.63%
12		Q4	2018	–6.23%	–12.88%	–32.31%	11.42%	6.80%	–6.64%	Yes	–13.06%
13		Q3	2018	12.47%	11.39%	–16.31%	7.59%	8.11%	4.65%	Yes	4.62%
14		Q2	2018	4.35%	2.84%	0.96%	–0.63%	0.20%	1.54%	Yes	0.42%
15		Q1	2018	–5.82%	11.73%	–21.57%	–13.06%	–8.57%	–7.46%	No	–2.79%
16		Q4	2017	9.07%	16.63%	–27.11%	1.75%	10.51%	2.17%	No	4.91%
17		Q3	2017	–6.54%	29.32%	–9.72%	5.21%	3.55%	4.36%	Yes	3.80%
18		Q2	2017	–6.30%	12.67%	–9.36%	–2.26%	18.17%	2.58%	Yes	2.34%
19		Q1	2017	9.64%	14.58%	–4.23%	7.71%	7.27%	6.99%	Yes	3.94%
20		Q4	2016	12.23%	19.08%	7.52%	–5.59%	6.33%	7.91%	Yes	3.13%
21		Q3	2016	–4.38%	2.28%	–5.20%	6.83%	–2.68%	–0.63%	No	2.21%
22		Q2	2016	–1.50%	3.14%	–0.98%	3.71%	–4.25%	0.03%	No	2.77%
23		Q1	2016	–4.89%	–11.39%	3.64%	4.56%	7.19%	–0.18%	No	0.63%
24		Q4	2015	2.82%	11.10%	24.62%	11.38%	20.84%	14.15%	Yes	3.51%
25		Q3	2015	–9.94%	–5.00%	–4.27%	–7.30%	4.55%	–4.39%	Yes	–9.31%
26		Q2	2015	8.82%	–6.98%	7.09%	–3.75%	–1.58%	0.72%	Yes	–0.86%
27		Q1	2015	12.78%	16.18%	0.01%	–9.41%	4.90%	4.89%	Yes	0.55%
28											
29				0%	0%	0%	0%	0%			
30				<=	<=	<=	<=	<=	Sum		
31			Portfolio	20.0%	20.0%	20.0%	20.0%	20.0%	100%	=	100%
32				<=	<=	<=	<=	<=			
33				100%	100%	100%	100%	100%			
34									Number of Quarters		
35									Beating the Market		
36										15	

The objective is to find the portfolio that beat the market most frequently.

If we assume that past performance is somewhat of an indicator of the future, then picking a portfolio that beat the market most often during these six years might yield a portfolio that will more than likely beat the market in the future. Thus, the model in Figure 11.22 uses the objective of choosing the portfolio that beat the market for the largest number of quarters during this period.

The changing cells in this model are Portfolio (D31:H31), representing the percentage of the portfolio to invest in each individual stock. The return of the given portfolio for each quarter is calculated in column I. Column J then compares the return of the portfolio to the return of the market and determines whether the portfolio beat the market using the IF functions shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 11.22. The number of quarters in which the portfolio beat the market is then calculated in the objective cell, NumberBeatingTheMarket (J36). As seen in the figure, a portfolio that was evenly split among the five stocks (20 percent in each) would have beaten the market in 15 of the 24 quarters during this six-year period.

The Nonlinear Solver would have little to no chance of solving this model. The objective function is not smooth since changes in the Portfolio can cause instantaneous (nonsmooth) jumps in the objective cell (the number of quarters that the portfolio beats the market). However, the objective cell remains constant for small changes in the changing cells until the change is significant enough to cause a quarter in column J to switch from Yes to No (or No to Yes). An unfortunate consequence of this is that nearly every solution is a local maximum, since very small changes in the portfolio will lead to no improvement in the objective cell. Thus, the Nonlinear Solver typically will stop its search immediately and report the initial solution as a local maximum. Since the Nonlinear Solver cannot solve this model, we will try the Evolutionary Solver.

The Nonlinear Solver can't handle this kind of problem.

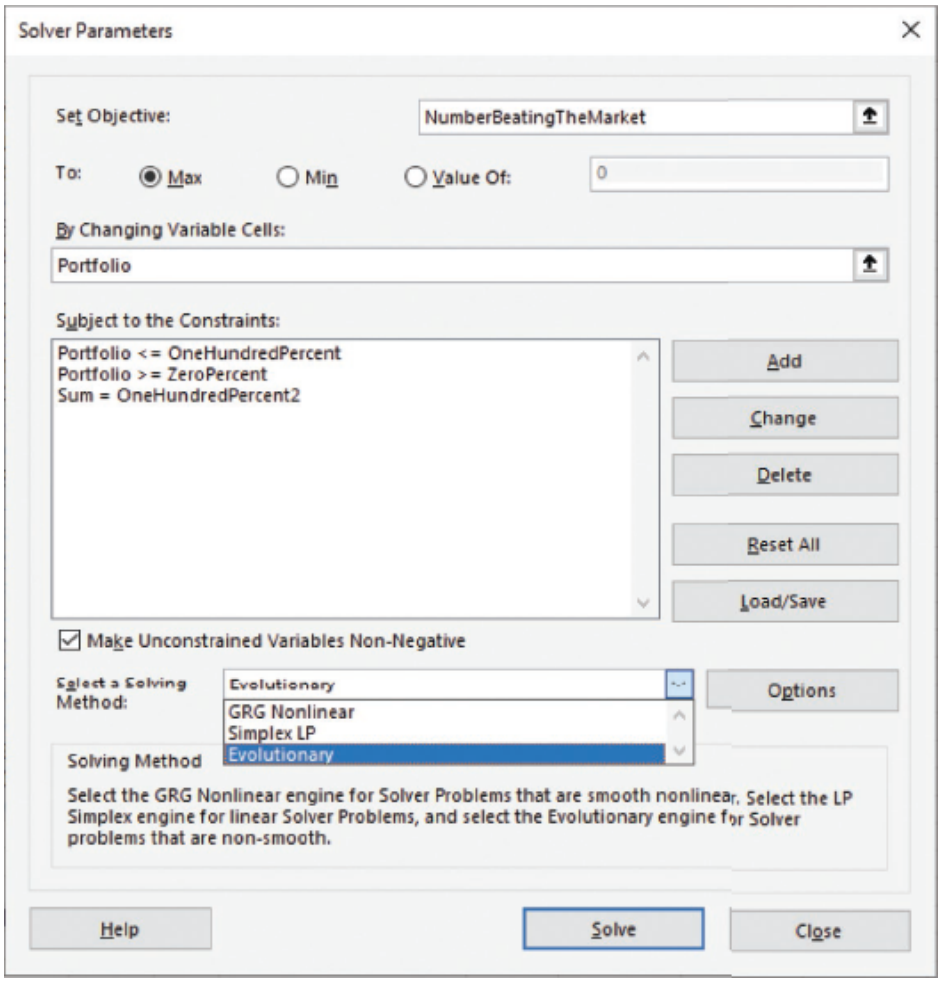
Applying Evolutionary Solver to Portfolio Selection to Beat the Market

Figure 11.23 shows the entries for Excel's Solver dialog box that are needed to solve the model shown in Figure 11.22. The objective cell is NumberBeatingTheMarket (cell J36) and the changing cells are Portfolio (D31:H31). It also must include that (1) the portfolio needs to sum to 100 percent and (2) each individual stock must represent between 0 and 100 percent of the portfolio.

FIGURE 11.23

page 481

Excel's Solver dialog box that is used to complete the spreadsheet model introduced in Figure 11.22. Selecting Evolutionary from the dropdown menu specifies that Evolutionary Solver will be used to solve the problem.



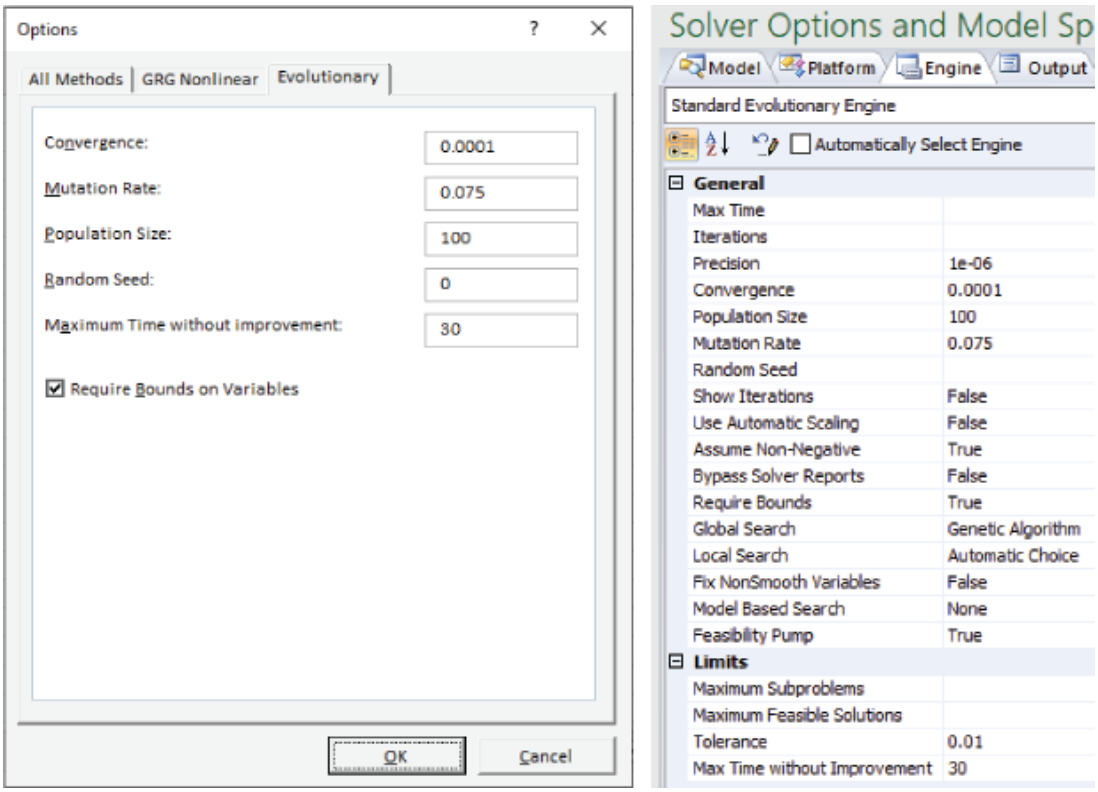
Microsoft Corporation

With Excel's Solver, there is a dropdown menu that gives a choice of which Solving Method to employ. Evolutionary Solver is selected in Figure 11.23 for this model. In Analytic Solver, the solving method is chosen in the Engine tab of the Model pane, as shown on the right side of Figure 11.24.

FIGURE 11.24

page 482

On the left, Excel's Evolutionary Solver Options dialog box provides several parameters for Evolutionary Solver. The default values shown here are reasonable choices for most small applications. On the right, the same options are available in Analytic Solver under the Engine tab on the Model pane.



Microsoft Corporation

Frontline Systems, Inc.

When using Excel's Solver, clicking the Options button and then the Evolutionary tab yields the Evolutionary Solver Options dialog box shown on the left side of Figure 11.24. This allows changing various parameters of the search, such as the maximum time without improvement to allow the search to continue, the size of the population, and the mutation rate. The same parameters are available in Analytic Solver in the Engine tab of the Model pane, as shown on the right side of Figure 11.24. The default values for the parameters displayed in Figure 11.24 are reasonable ones for most small applications. However, feel free to experiment with these parameters. For example, increasing the population size or mutation rate may help with searches that are getting stuck.

Use the Require Bounds on Variables option whenever possible.

The Require Bounds on Variables option is selected by default. This forces all changing cells to be constrained with lower and upper limits. We strongly recommend that you use this option to place bounds on the changing cells whenever possible. This greatly narrows the area over which

Evolutionary Solver needs to search and can increase the chances of finding a good solution.

This solution found by Evolutionary Solver is not guaranteed to be optimal, but it probably is at least close to optimal.

Running Solver then causes Evolutionary Solver to begin its search. Within a minute or so, the solution shown in Figure 11.25 was found. This represents a portfolio that beat the market in 19 of the 24 quarters over this six-year period. Is this solution optimal? Perhaps not. Unfortunately, there is no way to guarantee that we have found an optimal solution. However, it likely is a good solution (close to optimal).

FIGURE 11.25

After running Solver, Evolutionary Solver found the solution shown in the changing cells Portfolio (D31:H31) for the model formulated in Figures 11.22 and 11.23. The objective cell NumberBeatingTheMarket (J36) indicates that this portfolio beat the market in 19 of these 24 quarters. Running Solver again probably would lead to at least a slightly different solution for the portfolio.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Beating the Market (Evolutionary Solver)**										
2										Beat	Market
3		Quarter	Year	DIS	BA	GE	PG	MCD	Return	Market?	(NYSE)
4		Q4	2020	46.02%	29.53%	73.64%	0.66%	–1.66%	16.68%	Yes	14.35%
5		Q3	2020	11.27%	–9.84%	–8.65%	16.98%	19.68%	11.90%	Yes	6.79%
6		Q2	2020	15.43%	22.90%	–13.89%	9.42%	12.31%	11.14%	No	15.45%
7		Q1	2020	–32.81%	–53.95%	–28.79%	–11.41%	–15.80%	–23.15%	Yes	–25.96%
8		Q4	2019	10.98%	–13.88%	24.97%	1.06%	–7.37%	–0.59%	No	6.98%
9		Q3	2019	–6.10%	5.17%	–14.78%	14.17%	3.94%	2.92%	Yes	–0.34%
10		Q2	2019	25.77%	–4.02%	5.22%	6.13%	9.99%	9.72%	Yes	2.78%
11		Q1	2019	2.04%	18.86%	37.44%	14.09%	7.62%	11.95%	Yes	11.63%
12		Q4	2018	–6.23%	–12.88%	–32.31%	11.42%	6.80%	–0.04%	Yes	–13.06%
13		Q3	2018	12.47%	11.39%	–16.31%	7.59%	8.11%	6.95%	Yes	4.62%
14		Q2	2018	4.35%	2.84%	0.96%	–0.63%	0.20%	1.07%	Yes	0.42%
15		Q1	2018	–5.82%	11.73%	–21.57%	–13.06%	–8.57%	–7.86%	No	–2.79%
16		Q4	2017	9.07%	16.63%	–27.11%	1.75%	10.51%	5.88%	Yes	4.91%
17		Q3	2017	–6.54%	29.32%	–9.72%	5.21%	3.55%	4.05%	Yes	3.80%
18		Q2	2017	–6.30%	12.67%	–9.36%	–2.26%	18.17%	6.98%	Yes	2.34%
19		Q1	2017	9.64%	14.58%	–4.23%	7.71%	7.27%	7.57%	Yes	3.94%
20		Q4	2016	12.23%	19.08%	7.52%	–5.59%	6.33%	6.40%	Yes	3.13%
21		Q3	2016	–4.38%	2.28%	–5.20%	6.83%	–2.68%	–0.65%	No	2.21%
22		Q2	2016	–1.50%	3.14%	–0.98%	3.71%	–4.25%	–1.04%	No	2.77%
23		Q1	2016	–4.89%	–11.39%	3.64%	4.56%	7.19%	2.26%	Yes	0.63%
24		Q4	2015	2.82%	11.10%	24.62%	11.38%	20.84%	15.20%	Yes	3.51%
25		Q3	2015	–9.94%	–5.00%	–4.27%	–7.30%	4.55%	–2.09%	Yes	–9.31%
26		Q2	2015	8.82%	–6.98%	7.09%	–3.75%	–1.58%	–0.21%	Yes	–0.86%
27		Q1	2015	12.78%	16.18%	0.01%	–9.41%	4.90%	4.10%	Yes	0.55%
28											
29				0%	0%	0%	0%	0%			
30				<=	<=	<=	<=	<=	Sum		
31			Portfolio	16.1%	11.5%	8.8%	20.5%	43.1%	100%	=	100%
32				<=	<=	<=	<=	<=			
33				100%	100%	100%	100%	100%			
34									Number of Quarters		
35									Beating the Market		
36										19	

Applying Evolutionary Solver to a Traveling Salesman Problem

Elijah Hemings has just completed his MBA degree from the Foster School of Business at the University of Washington in Seattle and would like to celebrate during the summer with a driving tour of the United States, including visits to see a major league baseball game in every American League city. He would then return home to Seattle to start a job in the fall. He would like to plan his route to minimize the travel distance.

This is an example of a well-known problem in management science called the *traveling-salesman problem.* In the generic version of this problem, a salesperson needs to plan a sales trip to a certain set of cities. Starting from a given location (home) and then returning home at the end, the objective is to find the route that minimizes the total travel distance (or time).

Figure 11.26 displays a map of the United States showing each of the 15 American League cities. Elijah will start and end his tour in Seattle. After listing the cities to be visited in alphabetical order, each city has been labeled by both a number (an integer between 1 and 14) and a letter code, as given in cells B6:C19 and E3:R4 of Figure 11.27. The data cells are Distance (D5:R19), giving the travel distance between each pair of cities. A decision needs to be made about the order in which to visit the other cities before returning to Seattle. Therefore, the respective changing cells Route (D23:Q23) indicate which city (referenced by its number label) is visited at each stage of the route. In other words, the first city visited after Seattle will have its number label in D23, the second in E23, and so on. The spreadsheet in Figure 11.27 shows the route if the cities are visited in alphabetical order (Anaheim 1, Baltimore 2, Boston 3, etc.). The total distance of this route is 20,990 miles.

FIGURE 11.26

A map of the United States showing the 15 cities (including Toronto, Canada) with American League ballparks.

FIGURE 11.27

page 484

A spreadsheet model for determining the minimum-distance route from Seattle to the other 14 American League cities and back to Seattle. The changing cells are Route (D23:Q23) and the objective cell is TotalMilesTraveled (R27).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
1		**Tour of the American League Ballparks**																
2																		
3		Distance			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
4		(miles)		SEA	ANA	BAL	BOS	CHI	CLE	DET	HOU	KC	MIN	NY	OAK	TB	TEX	TOR
5			SEA	0	1134	2708	3016	2052	2391	2327	2309	1858	1653	2841	810	3077	2131	2564
6		1	ANA	1134	0	2647	3017	2048	2382	2288	1532	1577	1857	2794	387	2490	1399	2523
7		2	BAL	2708	2647	0	427	717	358	514	1446	1070	1113	199	2623	950	1357	457
8		3	BOS	3016	3017	427	0	994	657	799	1848	1435	1390	222	3128	1293	1753	609
9		4	CHI	2052	2048	717	994	0	348	279	1083	542	410	809	2173	1160	921	515
10		5	CLE	2391	2382	358	657	348	0	172	1297	819	758	471	2483	1108	1189	296
11		6	DET	2327	2288	514	799	279	172	0	1302	769	685	649	2399	1184	1156	240
12		7	KC	1858	1577	1070	1435	542	819	1302	0	742	1176	1628	1917	981	256	1530
13		8	HOU	2309	1532	1446	1848	1083	1297	769	742	0	443	1233	1681	1171	505	1006
14		9	MIN	1653	1857	1113	1390	410	758	685	1176	443	0	1217	1979	1573	949	906
15		10	NY	2841	2794	199	222	809	471	649	1628	1233	1217	0	2930	1150	1559	516
16		11	OAK	810	387	2623	3128	2173	2483	2399	1917	1861	1979	2930	0	2823	1752	2627
17		12	TB	3077	2490	950	1293	1160	1108	1184	981	1171	1573	1150	2823	0	1079	1348
18		13	TEX	2131	1399	1357	1753	921	1189	1156	256	505	949	1559	1752	1079	0	1435
19		14	TOR	2564	2523	457	609	515	296	240	1530	1006	906	516	2627	1348	1435	0
20																		
21																		
22		Tour	Start	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	End
23		Route		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
24		City	SEA	ANA	BAL	BOS	CHI	CLE	DET	HOU	KC	MIN	NY	OAK	TB	TEX	TOR	SEA
25		Miles Traveled		1134	2647	427	994	348	172	1302	742	1176	1217	2930	2823	1079	1435	2564
26																		
27																	Total Miles Traveled	20320

	B	C	D	E	Q	R
24	City	SEA	=INDEX($C$6:$C$19,D23)	=INDEX($C$6:$C$19,E23)	=INDEX($C$6:$C$19,Q23)	SEA
25	Miles Traveled		=INDEX(D6:D19,D23)	=INDEX($E$6:$R$19,D23,E23)	=INDEX($E$6:$R$19,P23,Q23)	=INDEX(D6:D19,Q23)

	Q	R
27	Total Miles Traveled	=SUM(D25:R25)

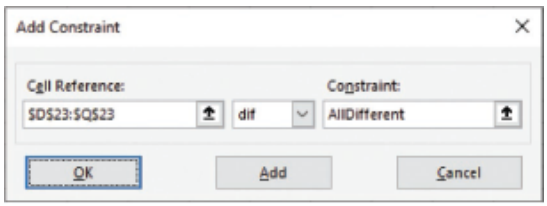
INDEX(*Range, i*) returns the *i*th element in *Range,* where *Range* is a block of cells. INDEX(*Range, a, b*) returns the element in row *a* and column *b* of *Range.*

Row 24 displays the letter code for each city based upon the number label in row 23, using the INDEX function of Excel. Row 25 uses the INDEX function to look up the distance to travel to each city from the preceding city in the route. The objective cell TotalMilesTraveled (R27) adds up the total miles driven in the route.

Because each city needs to be visited exactly once, the one constraint needed in this model is that the changing cells all must be *unique* integers from 1 to 14. Both Excel's Solver and Analytic Solver include a type of constraint, called *alldifferent,* that does just what we need. When *n* changing cells are choosing integers from 1 to *n,* constraining these changing cells to be *alldifferent* forces them to be unique integers from 1 to *n.* To implement the *alldifferent* constraint in Excel's Solver, press the Add button in Solver to bring up the Add Constraint dialog box. Select the changing cells (Route) for the left-hand side of the dialog box and then choose *dif* in the pull-down menu in the center of the dialog box, as shown in Figure 11.28. In Analytic Solver, select the changing cells (Route) and then choose *alldifferent* in the Variable Type/Bound submenu of the Constraints menu.

FIGURE 11.28

The Add Constraint dialog box for Excel's Solver showing the alldifferent constraint.



Microsoft Corporation

The resulting model is not linear because of the INDEX function used to calculate distances and the *alldifferent* constraint. However, the Evolutionary Solver can be used to try to find a good route. After solving with Evolutionary Solver, the resulting solution is shown in both Route (D23:Q23) and C24:R24 in Figure 11.29. This route is much improved over the one shown in Figure 11.27, with a total distance of 9,105 miles instead of 20,990 miles. In this case, Evolutionary Solver has succeeded in finding the optimal solution.

FIGURE 11.29

After adding the alldifferent constraint, Route (D23:Q23) and C24:R24 show the route from Seattle to the other 14 American League cities and back to Seattle that has been obtained by Evolutionary Solver.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
1		Tour of the American League Ballparks																
2																		
3		Distance			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
4		(miles)		SEA	ANA	BAL	BOS	CHI	CLE	DET	HOU	KC	MIN	NY	OAK	TB	TEX	TOR
5			SEA	0	1134	2708	3016	2052	2391	2327	2309	1858	1653	2841	810	3077	2131	2564
6		1	ANA	1134	0	2647	3017	2048	2382	2288	1532	1577	1857	2794	387	2490	1399	2523
7		2	BAL	2708	2647	0	427	717	358	514	1446	1070	1113	199	2623	950	1357	457
8		3	BOS	3016	3017	427	0	994	657	799	1848	1435	1390	222	3128	1293	1753	609
9		4	CHI	2052	2048	717	994	0	348	279	1083	542	410	809	2173	1160	921	515
10		5	CLE	2391	2382	358	657	348	0	172	1297	819	758	471	2483	1108	1189	296
11		6	DET	2327	2288	514	799	279	172	0	1302	769	685	649	2399	1184	1156	240
12		7	HOU	2039	1532	1446	1848	1083	1297	1302	0	742	1176	1628	1917	981	256	1530
13		8	KC	1858	1577	1070	1435	542	819	769	742	0	443	1233	1861	1171	505	1006
14		9	MIN	1653	1857	1113	1390	410	758	685	1176	443	0	1217	1979	1573	949	906
15		10	NY	2841	2794	199	222	809	471	649	1628	1233	1217	0	2930	1150	1559	516
16		11	OAK	810	387	2623	3128	2173	2483	2399	1917	1861	1979	2930	0	2823	1752	2627
17		12	TB	3077	2490	950	1293	1160	1108	1184	981	1171	1573	1150	2823	0	1079	1348
18		13	TEX	2131	1399	1357	1753	921	1189	1156	256	505	949	1559	1752	1079	0	1435
19		14	TOR	2564	2523	457	609	515	296	240	1530	1006	906	516	2627	1348	1435	0
20																		
21		Tour	Start	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	End
22		Route		11	1	13	7	12	2	10	3	14	5	6	4	8	9	
23		City	SEA	OAK	ANA	TEX	HOU	TB	BAL	NY	BOS	TOR	CLE	DET	CHI	KC	MIN	SEA
24		Miles Traveled		810	387	1399	256	981	950	199	222	516	296	172	279	542	443	1653
25																		
26															Total Miles Traveled			9,105

Solver Parameters

Set Objective Cell: TotalMilesDriven
To: Min
By Changing Variable Cells:
Route
Subject to the Constraints:
Route = alldifferent

Solver Options:
Solving Method: Evolutionary

Range Name	Cells
CityName	C5:C19
Distance	D5:R19
MilesTraveled	D24:R24
Route	D22:Q22
TotalMilesTraveled	R26

Advantages and Disadvantages of Evolutionary Solver

Evolutionary Solver has two significant advantages over the Nonlinear Solver for solving difficult nonlinear programming problems. First, the complexity of the objective function does not impact Evolutionary Solver. As long as the function can be evaluated for a given candidate solution (in order to determine the level of fitness), it does not matter if the function has kinks or discontinuities or many local optima. Second, by evaluating whole populations of candidate solutions that aren't necessarily in the same neighborhood as the current best solution, Evolutionary Solver keeps from getting trapped at a local optimum. Furthermore, even if the whole population eventually evolves toward a solution that is only locally optimal, mutation allows for the possibility of getting unstuck. In fact, because of the random mutations, Evolutionary Solver is guaranteed to eventually find an optimal solution for any optimization problem if it runs forever, but this is impractical of course.

Evolutionary Solver can handle problems with complicated objective functions and many local optima.

However, Evolutionary Solver also has several limitations.

On the other hand, it must be pointed out that Evolutionary Solver is not a panacea. First, it can take *much* longer than the Nonlinear Solver to find a final solution. With certain choices of options, the search for better solutions can continue for hours or even days. Second, Evolutionary Solver does not perform well on models that have many constraints. For instance, it would not perform very well on many of the models considered in Chapters 5–9, even though the Linear Solver can solve these models almost instantaneously. Third, Evolutionary Solver is a random process. Running Evolutionary Solver again on the same model usually will yield a different final solution. Finally, the best solution found typically is not optimal (although it may be very close). Evolutionary Solver is not an optimizer in the same sense that the other solution methods in Solver are. It does not continuously move toward better solutions until it reaches a local optimum. Rather it is more like an intelligent search engine, trying out different random solutions. Thus, while it is quite likely to end up with a solution that is very close to optimal, it almost never returns the exact optimal solution on most types of nonlinear programming problems. (However, its chances of finding an optimal solution are much better on problems like the beat-the-market example where the objective cell only takes on integer values.) Consequently, it often can be beneficial to run the Nonlinear Solver after the Evolutionary Solver, starting with the final solution obtained by the Evolutionary Solver, to see if this solution can be improved by searching around its neighborhood.

Review *Questions*

page 486

. Why is the algorithm used by Evolutionary Solver called a genetic algorithm?

. What criterion does Evolutionary Solver use to choose which members of a generation are fit and which are unfit?

. How does mutation help Evolutionary Solver?

. What are two advantages that Evolutionary Solver has over the Nonlinear Solver for solving difficult nonlinear programming problems?

. What are three disadvantages of Evolutionary Solver compared to the Nonlinear Solver?

11.7 USING ANALYTIC SOLVER TO ANALYZE A MODEL AND CHOOSE A SOLVING METHOD

Solver is a powerful tool for solving certain kinds of prescriptive analytics problems, because it provides a choice of solving methods to best fit the problem under consideration. You now have seen all of these solving methods in action, namely,

1. *Simplex LP* (the Linear Solver) that has been used to solve linear programming and BIP problems in the preceding chapters, as well as in Section 11.4.
2. *GRG Nonlinear* (the Nonlinear Solver) that has been used to solve, or attempt to solve, certain nonlinear programming problems in Sections 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, and 11.5.
3. *Quadratic* (the Quadratic Solver available only in Analytic Solver) that is used to solve quadratic programming problems such as the applicatioms in Sections 11.2 and 11.3.
4. *Evolutionary* (the Evolutionary Solver) that has been used to solve certain relatively difficult nonlinear programming problems in Section 11.6.

Each of these solving methods can be very effective when it is a good fit for the problem under consideration. When the spreadsheet model is a linear programming problem, the Linear Solver has some nice features. It is very fast at finding an optimal solution (considerably faster than the Nonlinear Solver and orders of magnitude faster than the Evolutionary Solver on problems of comparable size). When desired, it also provides a very informative Sensitivity Report for doing what-if analysis, as discussed in Chapter 8. The Linear Solver can even be used to solve special kinds of nonlinear programming problems where the separable programming technique can be used to convert the problem into an equivalent linear programming problem, as was demonstrated in Section 11.4.

Unfortunately, the very fast Linear Solver cannot solve other kinds of nonlinear programming problems. However, if the problem has certain nice characteristics (e.g., the objective function is smooth and has decreasing marginal returns), then the Nonlinear Solver (or even the Quadratic Solver if the objective function has a quadratic form) can usually solve the problem very effectively. If the objective function is more complicated (e.g., it has many

peaks like the example shown in Figure 11.8), the MultiStart feature of the Nonlinear Solver still may allow (but doesn't guarantee) finding an optimal solution. If the profit or cost graphs are not smooth (e.g., if they have discontinuities or kinks)—as may happen if functions like IF, ABS, MAX, or ROUND are used—only the Evolutionary Solver typically will be effective at finding good solutions.

Using Analytic Solver to Choose a Solving Method

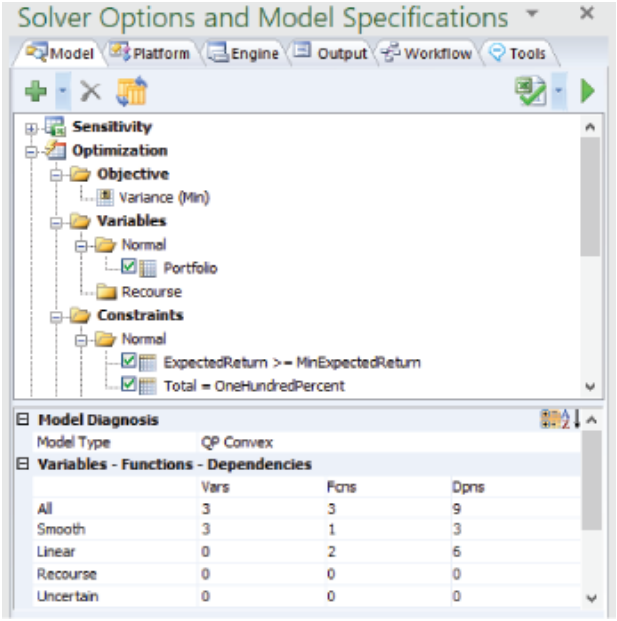
These general guidelines for the applicability of the various solving methods may make it obvious which one should be used for the particular model under consideration. However, this sometimes is far from obvious, especially when dealing with larger models where it is difficult to identify the characteristics of the objective function. Fortunately, Analytic Solver includes a feature that can analyze your model to determine its type so that you can choose the solving method that is most appropriate for that model type. If you wish, it even includes a feature that will automatically select the solving method that is most appropriate for the model. Finally, if you are trying to create a page 487 certain type of model, but the analysis indicates that the model is not of this type, a report can be generated that pinpoints which part of the model does not fit the intended type. (These special features provided by Analytic Solver for analyzing your model are not available with Excel's standard Solver.) Analytic Solver allows you to analyze your model to determine its type so an appropriate solving method can be chosen. It can even automatically choose the right solving method to apply to your model. If a model does not fit an intended type, Analytic Solver can also generate a report to tell you why. These features are not available with Excel's standard Solver.

To demonstrate these features of Analytic Solver, reconsider the portfolio selection example that has been formulated in Figure 11.13. Under the Optimize menu on the Analytic Solver tab, choose *Analyze Original Model* (or press the Analyze without Solving button—the button with a spreadsheet icon with a checkmark—on the upper-right side of the Model tab in the Analytic Solver Model pane). This causes Analytic Solver to analyze the model and provide a report under the Model Diagnosis section in the Model pane, as shown in Figure 11.30.

FIGURE 11.30

After choosing *Analyze Original Model,* the Model Diagnosis section of the Model tab in the Model pane shows information about the model. For the

portfolio selection example formulated in Figure 11.13, it indicates that the model is a convex quadratic programming model.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The Model Diagnosis lists the model type as QP Convex. The QP means that the model is a *quadratic programming problem* (a special kind of nonlinear programming problem described in Section 11.2). Convex means that the objective function has decreasing marginal returns (as illustrated in graph (a) of Figure 11.3 for minimization problems like this one) and is therefore the kind of model that the Nonlinear Solver (or with Analytic Solver, the Quadratic Solver) can solve easily. (The Quadratic Solver is designed to solve quadratic programming problems even more efficiently than the Nonlinear Solver can.) If the Model Diagnosis had listed the model type as NLP Convex instead, then the Nonlinear Solver should be used but the Quadratic Solver would not be applicable.

Under the Variables–Functions–Dependencies section of the Model Diagnosis in Figure 11.30, the analysis of the model is presented in even more detail. Under Vars, the analysis lists how many decision variables there are (3), how many of them occur in a smooth way in the objective function (3), and how many are linear within the objective function (0). The Fcns column gives the same information about all the functions in the model, namely, there are three functions in all, one of which is smooth (but not linear) and two of which are linear. In particular, the objective function (calculating the variance of the portfolio) is smooth but nonlinear, while the other two functions (the

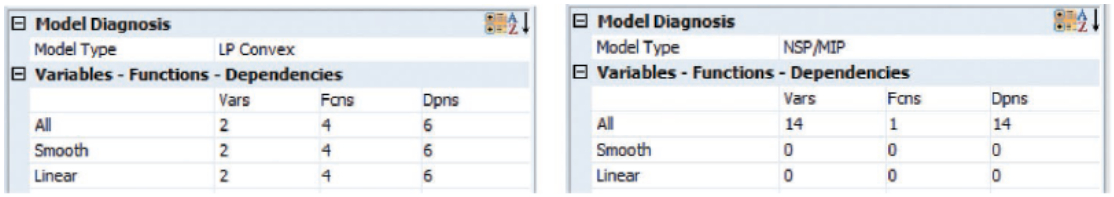
expected return and the sum of the portfolio weights) are linear. The Dpns column counts every time each variable is used among all the functions. This counting indicates that there are nine dependencies in all, since all three variables are used in all three functions, where all three variables are smooth (but not linear) in the objective function and the remaining six dependencies are linear in the other two functions.

page 488

If the same analysis were applied to the original Wyndor problem (Figure 11.9) or the traveling salesman problem formulated in Figure 11.28, then the model diagnosis would be as shown on the left and right side of Figure 11.31, respectively. The left side of Figure 11.31 indicates that the Wyndor problem is LP Convex (a linear programming model) with all linear variables and functions and should therefore be solved by the Linear Solver. The right side of this figure indicates that the traveling salesman problem is NSP (a *nonsmooth problem*) and can therefore be solved effectively by only the Evolutionary Solver.

FIGURE 11.31

The Model Diagnosis section for (a) the original Wyndor problem shown in Figure 11.9 and (b) the traveling salesman problem formulated in Figure 11.28. The diagnosis indicates that these models are linear and nonsmooth, respectively.



Model Diagnosis

Model Type	LP Convex		
Variables - Functions - Dependencies			
	Vars	Fcns	Dpns
All	2	4	6
Smooth	2	4	6
Linear	2	4	6

(a)

Model Diagnosis

Model Type	NSP/MIP		
Variables - Functions - Dependencies			
	Vars	Fcns	Dpns
All	14	1	14
Smooth	0	0	0
Linear	0	0	0

(b)

Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Under the Engine tab of the Analytic Solver Model pane (see Figure 11.21), there is an option to *Automatically Select Engine.* Turning this option on will cause Analytic Solver to use the Solver engine to select the solving method that is most appropriate for the type of model being solved. If Analytic Solver determines that the model is linear, it will use the Linear Solver. If Analytic Solver finds that the model is nonlinear but convex, it will use either the Nonlinear Solver or (if the objective function has a quadratic form) the Quadratic Solver. If Analytic Solver determines that the model is not smooth, it will use the Evolutionary Solver.

Turning on the *Automatically Select Engine* option causes Analytic Solver to automatically select the solving method (Linear, Nonlinear, Quadratic, or Evolutionary) that is most appropriate for your model.

Using Analytic Solver to Further Analyze the Model

For some applications, it may appear that the appropriate model for the problem under consideration should at least come close to fitting a desired model type (e.g., linear programming) for which a very efficient solving method is available. However, after completing an initial formulation of the model, the kind of model diagnosis illustrated by Figures 11.30 and 11.31 may indicate that the model instead fits a less desirable type (e.g., NSP, a nonsmooth problem). This may occur because of a mistake in the formulation. Alternatively, there may be just a small spot in the model where a simple reformulation or approximation could be made to make the model fit the intended model type. Another possible finding is that the model actually needs to *not* fit the intended type in order to adequately represent the problem under consideration. In all these cases, it would be very helpful to be able to pinpoint what in the model is causing it to not fit the intended type.

Rather than spending a lot of time trying to pinpoint these trouble spots through a visual inspection of the model, Analytic Solver provides a way of doing this very quickly and automatically. To illustrate how this is done, we will assume that linear programming has been chosen as the intended model type.

After completing the initial formulation of the model, suppose that Solver gives the error message “The linearity conditions required by this LP Solver are not satisfied.” This indicates that the model does not yet satisfy the linearity assumptions of linear programming. Perhaps it is possible to quickly spot what went wrong, but if not, let us look at an example of how Analytic Solver would do this job for you.

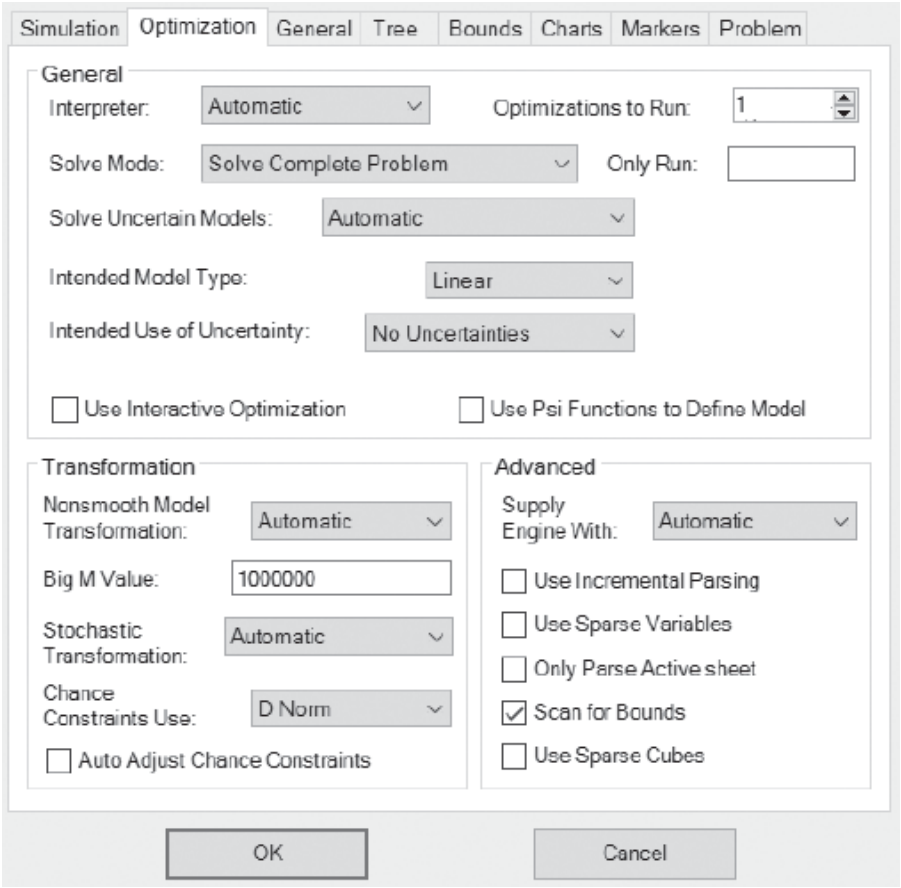
Reconsider the portfolio selection example that has been formulated in Figure 11.13. We know that this model is not linear because of the Risk (Variance) calculation in Variance (C31). However, if we did not recognize this fact, Analytic Solver can provide a structure report to indicate why the model is not linear. First click the Option button on the Analytic Solver tab and select the Optimization tab. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 11.32. Under *Intended Model Type,* choose *Linear* to indicate the type of model you are trying to create. Next choose *Analyze Original Model* under the Optimize menu. As we saw in Figure 11.30, this analysis indicates that the model is not linear because it is QP Convex (a quadratic programming problem) instead. Finally, under the Reports menu on the Analytic Solver tab, choose *Structure*

under *Optimization.* This generates the Structure Report shown in Figure 11.33. In addition to showing how many variables, functions, and dependencies are linear (as we already saw in the Model Diagnosis section of Figure 11.30), this report also indicates which functions and which variables are exceptions to the intended model type (linear programming in this example). In particular, the bottom left-hand side of the report reveals that the reason the model is not linear is because of the function in the objective cell Variance (C21). The bottom right-hand side further spells out that there are three exceptions to linearity within this function, namely, the changing cells Stock1 (C14), Stock2 (D14), and Stock3 (E14) all appear in this function in a nonlinear way. Therefore, the Analytic Solver structure report has completely pinpointed what in the model is causing it to not be linear.

FIGURE 11.32

page 489

The Optimization tab of the Options dialog box is used here to specify what type of model is desired. For this example (the portfolio selection problem formulated in Figure 11.13), the *Intended Model Type* is *Linear.*



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

FIGURE 11.33

The Structure Report for the portfolio selection problem formulated in Figure 11.13 when the intended model type is linear. The report indicates that the objective cell (Variance) is not linear and that the three changing cells—Stock1, Stock2, and Stock3—all appear in this function in a nonlinear way.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
7	Statistics											
8			**Variables**	**Functions**	**Dependents**							
9		All	3	3	9							
10		Smooth	3	3	9							
11		Linear	0	2	6							
12												
13	Objective Cell (Min)						Exception 1		Exception 2		Exception 3	
14		**Cell**	**Name**				**Variable**	**Formula**	**Variable**	**Formula**	**Variable**	**Formula**
15		Variance	Variance				Stock1	Variance	Stock2	Variance	Stock3	Variance

Using a structure report, Analytic Solver can pinpoint where a model is not linear.

For this example, the appropriate conclusion would be that the model actually should not be made to fit linear programming because the function in the objective cell needs to have a quadratic form. However, in other applications, the conclusion might be that the model should be changed to the linear programming type, either because a mistake was made in the initial formulation or because an appropriate reformulation or approximation can be made to fit linear programming.

page 490

Review *Questions*

. When Excel functions like IF, MAX, ABS, or ROUND are used, the resulting model tends to be of what type?

. If Analytic Solver analyzes the model and determines it is QP Convex, which solving method should be used?

. If Analytic Solver analyzes the model and determines it is NLP Convex, which solving method should be used?

. If Analytic Solver analyzes the model and determines it is NSP (nonsmooth), which solving method should be used?

. If the intended model type is linear (linear programming) but Solver gives an error message indicating that the model is not linear, what report in Analytic Solver can be useful to pinpoint where the model is not linear?

11.8 Summary

A nonlinear programming model has the same characteristics as a linear programming model with one key exception. All the mathematical expressions (including the objective function) are linear in a linear programming model, but at least one of these expressions (often just the objective function) is nonlinear in a nonlinear programming model. When formulating the model in a spreadsheet, this means that the model becomes a nonlinear programming model if a nonlinear formula needs to be entered into the objective cell (and perhaps into some other output cells). This chapter focuses on the common case where only the objective cell needs a nonlinear formula. This cell needs a nonlinear formula whenever there is a nonproportional relationship between the level of any of the activities and the overall measure of performance for the problem. This kind of relationship violates the proportionality assumption of linear programming.

Formulating and solving a nonlinear programming model tends to be more difficult than formulating and solving a linear programming model. For example, some nonlinear programming models have a number of locally optimal solutions where only one of these solutions is globally optimal and most of the others are greatly inferior. Unfortunately, after a starting solution is entered into the spreadsheet, the Nonlinear Solver will find only one of these locally optimal solutions, with no indication of whether this is the one that also is globally optimal or perhaps one that is far from optimal. Which locally optimal solution is found depends on the choice of the starting solution.

However, when a nonlinear programming model has decreasing marginal returns, it generally is easy to solve. For this type of problem, a locally optimal solution automatically is also a globally optimal solution. Therefore, the solution found by Solver is guaranteed to be the best solution for the model (or at least one of those tied for being the best).

Some nonlinear programming problems with decreasing marginal returns can be solved in an even easier way. This occurs when the profit graphs (or cost graphs) for the activities are piecewise linear (or at least can be closely approximated by piecewise linear graphs). In this case, the separable programming technique can be applied to convert the problem into a linear

programming problem, which is the easiest type of problem for Solver.

For more difficult nonlinear programming problems that might have a number of locally optimal solutions, one approach is to run Solver many times, each time starting with a different initial solution entered into the changing cells on the spreadsheet. Solver includes an option to try many random starting points automatically.

However, this method of dealing with difficult problems has two major limitations. First, it is impractical for problems with more than a few changing cells. Second, it does not work for problems with such complicated objective functions that Solver is not even able to find local optima. If such problems don't have many constraints, another search procedure called Evolutionary Solver is likely to perform well. Using concepts from genetics, evolution, and the survival of the fittest, this procedure is able to page 491 gradually move toward the best of the local optima. Given enough search time (which may be a very long time), it frequently succeeds in finding a solution that is very close to optimal.

Because Solver provides a variety of solving methods for solving different types of nonlinear programming problems, it sometimes is difficult to determine which solving method is the appropriate one for a particular problem. After formulating a spreadsheet model of the problem, Analytic Solver includes a feature that can analyze the model to determine its type, which then would imply which solving method should be used. If desired, Analytic Solver also can automatically select the solving method. If you intend in advance to formulate a specific type of model (including perhaps a linear programming model) but Analytic Solver tells you it is of a different type (perhaps because you made a formulation mistake), Analytic Solver also can pinpoint what in the model is causing it to not fit the intended type.

Glossary

curve fitting method A method for using the known values in a profit or cost graph to find the equation for the graph that best fits these data. (Section 11.1), 453

decreasing marginal returns An activity with a profit graph has decreasing marginal returns if the slope (steepness) of this profit graph never increases but sometimes decreases as the level of the activity increases. (Section 11.1), 450

discontinuity A spot in a graph where it is disconnected because it suddenly jumps up or down. (Section 11.1), 451

Evolutionary Solver A search procedure provided in Solver that uses concepts from genetics, evolution, and the survival of the fittest. (Section 11.6), 478

generation A new set of candidate solutions that is created by Evolutionary Solver by pairing off members of the existing population of candidate solutions to create "offspring" for the next generation. (Section 11.6), 479

genetic algorithm A type of algorithm that uses concepts from genetics. (Section 11.6), 479

global maximum The highest point on an entire graph. (Section 11.1), 455

local maximum A point at which a graph reaches its maximum within a local neighborhood of that point. (Section 11.1), 455

mutation Similar to gene mutation in biology, this is a random change that Evolutionary Solver occasionally makes in a member of the current population. (Section 11.6), 479

Nonlinear Solver A solving method provided by Solver that is used to solve, or attempt to solve, some nonlinear programming problems. (Section 11.1), 455

nonproportional relationship An activity has a nonproportional relationship with the overall measure of performance for a problem if the contribution of the activity to this measure is *not* proportional to the level of the activity. (Section 11.1), 450

piecewise linear A graph is piecewise linear if it consists of a sequence of connected line segments. (Section 11.1), 451

population The large set of candidate solutions that is randomly generated by Evolutionary Solver. (Section 11.6), 479

proportional relationship An activity has a proportional relationship with the overall measure of performance for a problem

if the contribution of the activity to this measure is proportional to the level of the activity. (Section 11.1), 449

proportionality assumption A basic assumption of linear programming that requires the contribution of each activity to the value of the objective function to be proportional to the level of that activity. (Section 11.1), 450

quadratic programming A special type of nonlinear programming where the objective function has both a quadratic form and decreasing marginal returns and all the constraints are linear. (Section 11.2), 460

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Constructing a Nonlinear Formula

Multiple Local Maxima

Wyndor

Wyndor with Nonlinear Marketing Costs

Portfolio Selection

Wyndor with Overtime

Wyndor with Overtime and Marketing Costs (Separable)

Wyndor with Overtime and Marketing Costs (Nonlinear)

Beating the Market

Tour of American League Ballparks

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

11.S1. Airline Ticket Pricing Model

Business travelers tend to be less price sensitive than leisure travelers. Knowing this, airlines have discovered that extra profit can be generated by using separate pricing for these two types of customers. For example, airlines often charge more for a midweek flight (mostly business travelers) than for travel that includes a Saturday night stay (mostly leisure travelers).

Suppose an airline has estimated demand versus price for midweek travel (mostly business travelers) and for travel that includes a Saturday night stay (mostly leisure travelers) as shown in the table below. This flight is served by a Boeing 777 with capacity for 300 travelers. The fixed cost of operating the flight is $30,000. The variable cost per passenger (for food and fuel) is $30.

	Demand		
Price	**Midweek**	**Saturday Night Stay**	**Total**
$200	150	465	615
$300	105	210	315
$400	82	127	209
$500	63	82	145
$600	49	60	109
$700	35	45	80
$800	27	37	64

a. One function that can be used to estimate demand (D) as a function of price (P) is a *linear* demand function, where $D = a - bP$. For positive values of a and b, this will give lower demand when the price is higher. However, a *nonlinear* demand function usually can provide a better fit to the data. For example, one such function is a constant elasticity demand function, where $D = aP^b$. For positive values of a and negative values of b, this also will give lower demand when the price is higher. Graph the

above data and use the *Add Trendline* feature of Excel to find the constant elasticity demand function that best fits the data in the above table for midweek demand, Saturday night stay demand, and total demand.

b. For this part, assume that the airline charges a single price to all customers. Using the demand function for total demand determined in part *a,* formulate and solve a nonlinear programming model in a spreadsheet to determine what the price should be so as to achieve the highest profit for the airline.

c. Now assume that the airline charges separate prices for midweek and Saturday night stay tickets. Using the two demand functions for midweek and Saturday night stay tickets determined in part *a,* formulate and solve a nonlinear programming spreadsheet model to determine what the prices of the two types of tickets should be so as to maximize the profit for the airline.

d. How much extra profit can the airline achieve by charging higher prices for midweek tickets than for Saturday night stay tickets?

Problems

We have inserted the symbol AS to the left of each problem (or its parts) where Analytic Solver is required. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

11.1. The J. P. Atkins Company will soon be introducing a new product. Estimates have been made of the monthly profit that would be generated by this product for each of four alternative values of the monthly production rate, as shown below.

Production Rate	Profit
200	$ 9,500
500	22,500
800	34,000
1,000	40,000

a. Draw a profit graph for this product by plotting the profits for the four production rates and then drawing a smooth curve through the four points by hand. (Start the graph with a profit of 0 at a production rate of 0.)

b. Does the proportionality assumption of linear programming seem to be satisfied reasonably well for this product?

c. To the extent that profit is not strictly proportional to the production rate, does this product have decreasing marginal returns, increasing marginal returns, or neither?

d. Use Excel's curve fitting method to (1) obtain a nonlinear formula with a quadratic form for the profit graph and then (2) construct the graph.

11.2. Consider the following three cases for how the profit from an activity varies with the level of the activity.

	Profit ($)		
Level of Activity	**Case 1**	**Case 2**	**Case 3**
0	0	0	0
1	9	6	5
2	16	14	6
3	21	24	3
4	24	36	4
5	25	50	7

a. For each case, draw the profit graph by plotting the profits for the various levels of the activity and then drawing a smooth curve through the points by hand.

b. For each case, indicate whether the activity has decreasing marginal returns, increasing marginal returns, or neither.

page 493

c. How would your answers in part *b* change if the graphs plotted in part a were cost graphs instead of profit graphs?

d. For each case, use Excel's curve fitting method to (1) obtain a nonlinear formula with a quadratic form for the profit graph and then (2) construct the graph. For any case where the activity has neither decreasing marginal returns nor increasing marginal returns, comment on how good a fit is provided by using a quadratic form.

11.3. The Chiplet Corporation is about to launch the production and marketing of a new microchip that is more powerful than anything that is currently on the market. Not surprisingly, the profitability of this microchip will depend greatly on its reception in this highly competitive and fast-moving market. If the sales are fairly low, the company will still be able to make a respectable profit because it will have enough available production capacity to produce the microchip with its current facilities. However, if sales are somewhat higher, the company will need to expand its production facilities, which will have the effect of depressing the profit from the microchip if sales only reach a moderate level. (Fully meeting this demand would still be worthwhile because one of top management's prime goals is to continue increasing the company's market share as it points toward future generations of microchips already under development.) Fortunately, if sales reach a relatively high level, the profit from the microchip will become very substantial. The following table shows the estimated profit for various levels of sales over the short lifetime of this microchip.

Sales	Profit (millions of dollars)
0	0
100,000	15
200,000	18
300,000	13
400,000	4
500,000	1
600,000	6
700,000	30

Sales	Profit (millions of dollars)
800,000	70

a. Draw a profit graph for this microchip by plotting the profits for the various sales levels and then drawing a smooth curve that passes through (or very near) these points.

b. Does the microchip have decreasing marginal returns, increasing marginal returns, or neither?

c. Use Excel's curve fitting method to (1) obtain a nonlinear formula with a quadratic form (a polynomial of order 2) for the profit graph and then (2) construct the graph.

d. Repeat part *c* when using the Excel option of a polynomial of order 3 instead of order 2.

e. Which of the Excel options used in parts *c* and *d* does a better job of fitting the profit graph to the data?

11.4. The following table shows the estimated daily profit from a new product for several of the alternative choices for the production rate.

Production Rate (*R*)	Profit per Day (*P*)
0	0
1	$ 95
2	184
3	255
4	320

Because the profit goes up less than proportionally with the production rate (decreasing marginal returns), the management science team analyzing what this production rate (and the production rates of some other products) should be has decided to approximate the profit (P) by a simple *nonlinear function* of the production rate R.

a. One such approximation is $P = \$100R - \$5R^2$. How closely does this nonlinear function approximate the five values of P given in the table?

b. Repeat part *a* for the approximation, $P = \$104\ R - \$6\ R^2$.

c. Which of these two nonlinear functions provides the better fit to all the data?

d. Use Excel's curve fitting method to (1) obtain a nonlinear formula with a quadratic form for the profit graph and then (2) construct the graph.

11.5. Read the referenced article that fully describes the study done for the Bank Hapoalim Group that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 11.3. Briefly describe how nonlinear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

11.6. Reconsider the portfolio selection example, including its spreadsheet model in Figure 11.13, given in Section 11.3. Note in Table 11.2 that Stock 2 has the highest expected return and Stock 3 has by far the lowest. Nevertheless, the changing cells Portfolio (C14:E14) provide an optimal solution that calls for purchasing far more of Stock 3 than of Stock 2. Although purchasing so much of Stock 3 greatly reduces the risk of the portfolio, an aggressive investor may be unwilling to own so much of a stock with such a low expected return.

For the sake of such an investor, add a constraint to the model that specifies that the percentage of Stock 3 in the portfolio cannot exceed the amount specified by the investor. Then compare the expected return and risk (standard deviation of the return) of the optimal portfolio with that in Figure 11.13 when the upper bound on the percentage of Stock 3 allowed in the portfolio is set at the following values.

a. 20 percent

b. 0 percent

AS *c.* Generate a parameter analysis report using Analytic Solver to systematically try all the percentages at 5 percent intervals from 0 percent to 50 percent.

11.7.* A stockbroker, Richard Smith, has just received a call from his most important client, Ann Hardy. Ann has $50,000 to invest and wants to use it to purchase two stocks. Stock 1 is a solid blue-chip security with a respectable growth potential and little risk involved. Stock 2 is much more speculative. It is being touted in two investment newsletters as having outstanding growth potential, but also is considered very risky. Ann would like a large return on her investment, but also has considerable aversion to risk. Therefore, she has instructed Richard to analyze what mix of investments in the two stocks would be appropriate for her. She also informs him that her plan is to hold the stock being purchased now for three years before selling it.

After doing some research on the historical performances of the two stocks and on the current prospects for the companies involved, Richard is able to make the following estimates. If the entire $50,000 were to be invested in Stock 1 now, the profit when sold in three years would have an expected value of $12,500 and a standard deviation of $5,000. If the entire $50,000 were to be invested in Stock 2 now, the profit when sold in three years would have an expected value of $20,000 and a standard deviation of $30,000. The two stocks behave independently in different sectors of the market so Richard's calculation from historical data is that the covariance of the profits from the two stocks is 0.

Richard now is ready to use a spreadsheet model to determine how to allocate the $50,000 to the two stocks so as to minimize Ann's risk while providing an expected profit that is at least as large as her minimum acceptable value. He asks Ann to decide what her minimum acceptable value is.

a. Without yet assigning a specific numerical value to the minimum acceptable expected profit, formulate a quadratic programming model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Display this model on a spreadsheet.

c. Solve this model for four cases: Minimum acceptable expected profit = $13,000, $15,000, $17,000, and $19,000.

d. Ann was a statistics major in college and so understands well that the *expected return* and *risk* in this model

represent estimates of the *mean* and *standard deviation* of the probability distribution of the profit from the corresponding portfolio. Ann uses the notation μ and σ for the mean and standard deviation. She recalls that, for typical probability distributions, the probability is fairly high (about 0.8 or 0.9) that the return will exceed μ − σ, and the probability is extremely high (often close to 0.999) that the profit will exceed μ − 3σ. Calculate μ − σ and μ − 3σ for the four portfolios obtained in part *c.* Which portfolio will give Ann the highest μ among those that also give μ − σ ≥ 0?

11.8. Reconsider the portfolio selection example given in Section 11.3. A fourth stock (Stock 4) now has been found that gives a good balance between expected return and risk. Using the same units as in Table 11.2, its expected return is 17 percent and its risk is 18 percent. Its joint risk per stock with Stocks 1, 2, and 3 is −0.015, −0.025, and 0.003, respectively.

a. Still using a minimum acceptable expected return of 18 percent, formulate the revised quadratic programming model in algebraic form for this problem.

b. Display and solve this model on a spreadsheet.

AS *c.* Develop a revision of the parameter analysis report in Figure 11.14 for this revised problem.

11.9. The management of the Albert Hanson Company is trying to determine the best product mix for two new products. Because these products would share the same production facilities, the total number of units produced of the two products combined cannot exceed two per hour. Because of uncertainty about how well these products will sell, the profit from producing each product provides decreasing marginal returns as the production rate is increased. In particular, with a production rate of R_1 units per hour, it is estimated that Product 1 would provide a profit per hour of $\$200R_1 - \$100R_1^2$. If the production rate of Product 2 is R_2 units per hour, its estimated profit per hour would be $\$300R_2 - \$100R_2^2$.

a. Formulate a quadratic programming model in algebraic form for determining the product mix that maximizes the total profit per hour.

b. Formulate this model on a spreadsheet.

AS *c.* Use Analytic Solver's Analyze without Solving feature to confirm that the model is QP Convex.

AS *d.* Solve the model using the appropriate solving method.

11.10. The B. J. Jensen Company specializes in the production of power saws and power drills for home use. Sales are relatively stable throughout the year except for a jump upward during the Christmas season. Since the production work requires considerable work and experience, the company maintains a stable employment level and then uses overtime to increase production in November. The workers also welcome this opportunity to earn extra money for the holidays.

B. J. Jensen, Jr., the current president of the company, is overseeing the production plans being made for the upcoming November. He has obtained the data shown in the table below.

However, Mr. Jensen now has learned that, in addition to the limited number of labor hours available, two other factors will limit the production levels that can be achieved this November. One is that the company's vendor for power supply units will only be able to provide 10,000 of these units for November (2,000 more than his usual monthly shipment). Each power saw and each power drill requires one of these units. Second, the vendor who supplies a key part for the gear assemblies will only be able to provide 15,000 for November (4,000 more than for other months). Each power saw requires two of these parts and each power drill requires one.

	Maximum Monthly Production*		Profit per Unit Produced	
	Regular Time	Overtime	Regular Time	Overtime
Power saws	3,000	2,000	$150	$50
Power drills	5,000	3,000	100	75

* Assuming adequate supplies of materials from the company's vendors.

Mr. Jensen now wants to determine how many power saws and how many power drills to produce in Novem.ber to maximize the company's total profit.

page 495

a. Draw the profit graph for each of these two products.

b. Use separable programming to formulate a linear programming model on a spreadsheet for this problem. Then solve the model. What does this say about how many power saws and how many power drills to produce in November?

11.11.* The Dorwyn Company has two new products (special kinds of doors and windows) that will compete with the two new products for the Wyndor Glass Co. (described in Section 5.1). Using units of hundreds of dollars for the objective function, the linear programming model in algebraic form shown below has been formulated to determine the most profitable product mix.

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad \text{Profit} = 4D + 6W$$

subject to

$$D + 3W \leq 8$$
$$5D + 2W \leq 14$$

and

$$D \geq 0 \qquad W \geq 0$$

However, because of the strong competition from Wyndor, Dorwyn management now realizes that the company will need to make a strong marketing effort to generate substantial sales of these products. In particular, it is estimated that achieving a production and sales rate of D doors per week will require weekly marketing costs of D^3 hundred dollars (so \$100 for $D = 1$, \$800 for $D = 2$, \$2,700 for $D = 3$, etc.). The corresponding marketing costs for windows are estimated to be $2W^2$ hundred dollars. Thus, the objective function in the model should be

$$\text{Profit} = 4D + 6W - D^3 - 2W^2$$

Dorwyn management now would like to use the revised model to determine the most profitable product mix.

a. Formulate and solve this nonlinear programming model on a spreadsheet.

b. Construct tables to show the profit data for each product when the production rate is 0, 1, 2, 3.

c. Draw a figure that plots the weekly profit points for each product when the production rate is 0, 1, 2, 3. Connect the pairs of consecutive points with (dashed) line segments.

d. Use separable programming based on this figure to formulate an approximate linear programming model on a spreadsheet for this problem. Then solve the model. What does this say to Dorwyn management about which product mix to use?

e. Compare the solution based on a separable programming approximation in part *d* with the solution obtained in part *a* for the exact nonlinear programming model.

11.12. The MFG Corporation is planning to produce and market three different products. Let x_1, x_2, and x_3 denote the number of units of the three respective products to be produced. The preliminary estimates of their potential profitability are as follows.

For the first 15 units produced of Product 1, the unit profit would be approximately \$360. The unit profit would be only \$30 for any additional units of Product 1. For the first 20 units produced of Product 2, the unit profit is estimated at \$240. The unit profit would be \$120 for each of the next 20 units and \$90 for any additional units. For the first 10 units of Product 3, the unit profit would be \$450. The unit profit would be \$300 for each of the next five units and \$180 for any additional units.

Certain limitations on the use of needed resources impose the following constraints on the production of the three products:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &\le 60 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 &\le 200 \\ x_1 + 2x_3 &\le 70 \end{aligned}$$

Management wants to know what values of x_1, x_2, and x_3 should be chosen to maximize the total profit.

a. Plot the profit graph for each of the three products.

b. Use separable programming to formulate a linear programming model on a spreadsheet for this problem. Then solve the model. What is the resulting recommendation to management about the values of x_1, x_2, and x_3 to use?

11.13. Suppose that separable programming has been applied to a certain problem (the "original problem") to convert it to the following equivalent linear programming model in algebraic form:

$$\text{Maximize} \quad \text{Profit} = 5x_{11} + 4x_{12} + 2x_{13} + 4x_{21} + x_{22}$$

subject to

$$3x_{11} + 3x_{12} + 3x_{13} + 2x_{21} + 2x_{22} \leq 25$$
$$2x_{11} + 2x_{12} + 2x_{13} - x_{21} - x_{22} \leq 10$$

and

$$0 \leq x_{11} \leq 2 \quad 0 \leq x_{21} \leq 3$$
$$0 \leq x_{12} \leq 3 \quad 0 \leq x_{22} \leq 1$$
$$0 \leq x_{13}$$

What was the mathematical model for the original problem? Answer this by plotting the profit graph for each of the original activities and then writing the constraints for the original problem in terms of the original decision variables.

11.14. Jim Matthews, vice president for marketing of the J. R. Nickel Company, is planning advertising campaigns for two unrelated products. These two campaigns need to use some of the same resources. Therefore, Jim knows that his decisions on the levels of the two campaigns need to be made jointly after considering these resource constraints. In particular, letting x_1 and x_2 denote the levels of campaigns 1 and 2, respectively, these constraints are $4x_1 + x_2 \leq 20$ and $x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 20$.

In facing these decisions, Jim is well aware that there is a point of diminishing returns when raising the level of an advertising campaign too far. At that point, the cost of additional advertising becomes larger than the increase in net revenue (excluding advertising costs) generated by the advertising. After careful

analysis, he and his staff estimate that the net profit from the first product (including advertising costs) when conducting the first campaign at level x_1 would be $3x_1 - (x_1 - 1)^2$ in millions of dollars. The corresponding estimate for the second product is $3x_2 - (x_2 - 2)^2$.

Letting P be total net profit, this analysis led to the following nonlinear programming model for determining the levels of the two advertising campaigns:

page 496

$$\text{Maximize} \qquad P = 3x_1 - (x_1 - 1)^2 + 3x_2 - (x_2 - 2)^2$$

subject to

$$4x_1 + x_2 \le 20$$
$$x1 + 4x_2 \le 20$$

and

$$x_1 \ge 0 \quad x_2 \ge 0$$

a. Construct tables to show the profit data for each product when the level of its advertising campaign is x_1 = 0, 1, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5 (for the first product) or x_2 = 0, 1, 2, 3, 3.5, 4, 5 (for the second product).

b. Use these profit data to draw rough-hand a smooth profit graph for each product. (Note that these profit graphs start at negative values when x_1 = 0 or x_2 = 0 because the products would lose money if there is no advertising to support them.)

c. On the profit graph for the first product, draw an approximation of this profit graph by inserting a dashed-line segment between the profit at x_1 = 0 and x_1 = 2, between the profit at x_1 = 2 and x_1 = 4, and between the profit at x_1 = 4 and x_1 = 5. Then do the same on the profit graph for the second product with x_2 = 0, 2, 4, 5.

d. Use separable programming with the approximation of the profit graphs obtained in part *c* to formulate an approximate linear programming model on a

spreadsheet for Jim Matthews's problem. Then solve this model. What does this solution say the levels of the advertising campaigns should be? What would the total net profit from the two products be?

e. Repeat parts *c* and *d* except using $x_1 = 0, 2, 2.5, 3, 5$ and $x_2 = 0, 3, 3.5, 4, 5$ for the approximations of the profit graphs in part *c.* (These particular approximations actually lead to the exact optimal solution for Jim Matthews's problem.)

f. Use Excel and Solver to formulate and solve the original nonlinear programming model directly. Compare with the answers obtained after completing part *e.*

g. Use calculus to find the value of x_1 that maximizes $3x_1 - (x_1 - 1)^2$, the net profit from the first product. Also use calculus to find the value of x_2 that maximizes $3x_2 - (x_2 - 2)^2$, the net profit from the second product. Show that these values satisfy the constraints for the nonlinear programming model. Then compare these values with the answers obtained in parts *e* and *f.*

11.15. Read the referenced article that fully describes the study done for DHL that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 11.5. Briefly describe how nonlinear programming was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

11.16. Consider the following nonlinear programming problem.

$$\text{Maximize} \quad \text{Profit} = x^5 - 13x^4 + 59x^3 - 107x^2 + 61x$$

subject to

$$0 \le x \le 5$$

a. Formulate this problem in a spreadsheet and then use the Nonlinear Solver and the Multistart feature to solve this problem.

AS *b.* Use Analytic Solver's Analyze without Solving feature to determine what type of model this is.

c. Use Evolutionary Solver to solve this problem.

11.17. Consider the following nonlinear programming problem.

$$\text{Maximize} \quad \text{Profit} = 100x^6 - 1{,}359x^5 + 6{,}836x^4 - 15{,}670x^3 + 15{,}870x^2 - 5{,}095x$$

subject to

$$0 \le x \le 5$$

a. Formulate this problem in a spreadsheet and then use the Nonlinear Solver and the Multistart feature to solve this problem.

AS *b.* Use Analytic Solver's Analyze without Solving feature to determine what type of model this is.

c. Use Evolutionary Solver to solve this problem.

11.18. Because of population growth, the state of Washington has been given an additional seat in the House of Representatives, making a total of ten. The state legislature, which is currently controlled by the Republicans, needs to develop a plan for redistricting the state. There are 18 major cities in the state of Washington that need to be assigned to 1 of the 10 congressional districts. The table below gives the numbers of registered Democrats and registered Republicans in each city. Each district must contain between 150,000 and 350,000 of these registered voters. Use Evolutionary Solver to assign each city to 1 of the 10 congressional districts in order to maximize the number of districts that have more registered Republicans than registered Democrats. (*Hint:* Use the SUMIF function.)

City	Democrat (Thousands)	Republican (Thousands)
1	152	62
2	81	59
3	75	83
4	34	52

City	Democrat (Thousands)	Republican (Thousands)
5	62	87
6	38	87
7	48	69
8	74	49
9	98	62
10	66	72
11	83	75
12	86	82
13	72	83
14	28	53
15	112	98
16	45	82
17	93	68
18	72	98

11.19. Reconsider the portfolio optimization problem considered in Section 11.6, where the goal was to select the portfolio that beat the market for the largest number of quarters over the last six years. page 497

a. Using the naive solution (20 percent in each stock) as a starting point, apply Evolutionary Solver to optimize the portfolio again when considering the data for the first three years only (Q1 2015 through Q4 2017).

b. For how many quarters does this same portfolio beat the market for the next three years (Q1 2018 through Q4 2020)?

c. Comment on the results from parts *a* and *b.*

11.20. Reconsider the portfolio optimization problem considered in Section 11.6, where the goal was to select the portfolio that beat

the market for the largest number of quarters over the last six years.

a. Use Evolutionary Solver to instead find a portfolio that did not lose money in the largest number of quarters.

b. Use Evolutionary Solver to instead find a portfolio that yielded a return of at least 10 percent for the largest number of quarters.

11.21. Reconsider the Wyndor Glass Co. problem introduced in Section 5.1.

a. Solve this problem using the Linear Solver.

b. Starting with an initial solution of producing 0 doors and 0 windows, solve this problem using Evolutionary Solver.

c. Comment on the performance of the two approaches.

Case 11-1

Continuation of the Super Grain Case Study

Reconsider the Super Grain case study introduced in Section 6.1 and continued in Section 6.4. Recall that Claire Syverson, vice president for marketing of **the Super Grain Corporation,** is planning an advertising campaign for the company's new breakfast cereal (Crunchy Start) with the help of a leading advertising firm, Giacomi & Jackowitz. The campaign will use three advertising media: television commercials on Saturday morning programs for children, advertisements in various social media outlets, and advertisements in Sunday supplements of major newspapers. The problem being addressed is to determine the best mix of these advertising media.

The spreadsheet in Figure 6.7 shows the revised linear programming model that was used to address this problem. This model includes constraints on advertising expenditures, planning expenditures, and the use of cents-off coupons, as well as on managerial goals involving the numbers of young children and their parents that should be reached by the advertising. The changing cells NumberOfAds (C19:E19) show the optimal number of advertisements to place in each of the three media according to this model. The objective cell TotalExposures (H19) gives an estimate of the resulting total number of exposures, where each viewing of an advertisement by some individual counts as one exposure.

The ultimate goal of the advertising campaign is to maximize the company's profits that are attained because of the resulting sales. However, it is difficult to make a direct connection between advertising exposure and profits. Therefore, the total number of exposures was chosen to be a rough surrogate for profit. This is why the objective cell in Figure 6.7 (and in Figure 6.1) gives the total number of exposures instead of the total profit.

Claire is uneasy with having done this. She realizes that her assumption—that the total profit from the introduction of Crunchy Start is proportional to the total number of exposures from the advertising campaign—is only a rough approximation. The most important reason is that running too many advertisements in an advertising medium reaches a saturation level, where the impact of one more advertisement is substantially less than that for the first advertisement in that medium. Nevertheless, when the objective cell gives the total number of exposures, having an individual see the advertisement one more time after being saturated counts the same (one more exposure) as seeing the advertisement for the first time.

To check the results in Figure 6.7, Claire decides to try using profit directly as the measure of performance to be recorded in the objective cell. She carefully defines profit as the total profit obtained from first-time sales of Crunchy Start that occur because of the advertising campaign. Excluded from consideration are profits from impulse purchases of Crunchy Start by customers who have seen no advertisements but are attracted to this new cereal with its shiny box trumpeting its virtues sitting on a store shelf, since these sales have no relevance for evaluating the advertising campaign. Repeat purchases of Crunchy Start also are excluded from consideration because these depend mainly on the reaction to the cereal from the first purchase instead of the advertising campaign.

Claire asks Sid Jackowitz, one of the senior partners of Giacomi & Jackowitz, to develop estimates of the number of first-time purchases of Crunchy Start that should result from various numbers of advertisements in each medium. His estimates are shown in the following tables.

Number of TV Spots	Number of Sales
1	1,000,000
2	1,750,000
3	2,450,000

Number of TV Spots	Number of Sales
4	2,800,000
5	3,000,000

Number of Social Media Ads	Number of Sales
5	700,000
10	1,200,000
15	1,550,000
20	1,800,000
25	2,000,000

Number of Ads in Sunday Supplements	Number of Sales
2	1,200,000
4	2,200,000
6	3,000,000
8	3,500,000
10	3,750,000

Sid also reports that it is reasonable to assume that sales resulting from advertising in one of the media are not substantially affected by the amount of advertising in the other media since the audiences for the different media are somewhat different.

It is estimated that the company's gross profits from Crunchy Start will be 75¢ per sale. However, this gross profit excludes the advertising costs and planning costs for the advertising campaign. Therefore, Claire wants to include these costs in her definition of the total profit that should be considered for determining the best advertising mix.

a. For each of the three advertising media, draw a graph of the number of sales versus the number of advertisements by plotting the sales for the five points provided by Sid Jackowitz and then drawing a smooth curve through

(or very near) these points. (Fractional advertisements are allowed by using only a portion of the available outlets.)

b. For each of the advertising media, use Excel's curve fitting method to (1) obtain a nonlinear formula for the sales graph and then (2) construct the graph. In each case, try three Excel options for the form of the graph—a polynomial of order 2 (the quadratic form), a polynomial of order 3, and the logarithmic form—and then choose the option that you feel provides the best fit.

c. Using your results from part *b,* write an expression for the total profit (as defined by Claire) in terms of the number of advertisements of each type.

d. Using your result from part *c,* revise the spreadsheet model in Figure 6.7 (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) so that it maximizes total profit instead of the total number of exposures, and then solve.

e. Use the sales tables provided by Sid Jackowitz to apply separable programming to this problem when maximizing total profit.

f. Compare your results in parts *d* and *e* with those in Figure 6.7 and then give your recommendation (with a brief explanation) for the best advertising mix. Do you feel it was worthwhile to introduce a nonlinear profit function into the model in order to refine the linear programming model used in Figure 6.7?

Case 11-2

Savvy Stock Selection

Ever since the day she took her first economics class in high school, **Lydia** wondered about the financial practices of her parents. They worked very hard to earn enough money to live a comfortable middle-class life, but they never made their money work for them. They simply deposited their hard-earned paychecks in savings accounts earning a nominal amount of interest. (Fortunately, there always was enough money available when it came time to pay her college bills.) She promised herself that when she became an adult, she would not follow the same financially conservative practices as her parents.

And Lydia kept this promise. She took every available finance course in her business program at college. Having landed a coveted job on Wall Street upon graduation, she now begins every morning by watching the Bloomberg financial reports. She plays investment games on the internet, finding

portfolios that maximize her return while minimizing her risk. And she reads *The Wall Street Journal* and *Financial Times.*

Lydia also reads the investment advice columns of the financial websites. She decides to follow the current advice given by her two favorite bloggers. In his monthly blog, editor Jonathan Taylor recommends three stocks that he believes will rise far above market average. In addition, the well-known mutual fund guru Donna Carter advocates the purchase of three additional stocks that she thinks will outperform the market over the next year.

Bigbell (ticker symbol on the stock exchange: BB), one of the nation's largest telecommunications companies, trades at a price–earnings ratio well below market average. Huge investments over the last eight months have depressed earnings considerably. However, with its new cutting-edge technology, the company is expected to significantly raise its profit margins. Taylor predicts that the stock will rise from its current price of $60 per share to $72 per share within the next year.

Lotsofplace (LOP) is one of the leading hard drive manufacturers in the world. The industry recently underwent major consolidation, as fierce price wars over the last few years were followed by many competitors going bankrupt or being bought by Lotsofplace and its competitors. Due to reduced competition in the hard drive market, revenues and earnings are expected to rise considerably over the next year. Taylor predicts a one-year increase of 42 percent in the stock of Lotsofplace from the current price of $127 per share.

Internetlife (ILI) has survived the many ups and downs of Internet companies. With the next Internet frenzy just around the corner, Taylor expects a doubling of this company's stock price from $4 to $8 within a year.

Healthtomorrow (HEAL) is a leading biotechnology company that is about to get approval for several new drugs from the Food and Drug Administration, which will help earnings to grow 20 percent over the next few years. In particular, a new drug to significantly reduce the risk of heart attacks is supposed to reap huge profits. Also, due to several new great-tasting medications for children, the company has been able to build an excellent image in the media. This public relations coup will surely have a positive effect on the sale of its over-the-counter medications. Carter is convinced that the stock will rise from $50 to $75 per share within a year.

page 499

Quicky (QUI) is a fast-food chain that has been vastly expanding its network of restaurants all over the United States. Carter has followed this company closely since it went public some 15 years ago when it had only a few dozen restaurants on the West Coast of the United States. Since then the company has expanded, and it now has restaurants in every state. Due to its

emphasis on healthy foods, it is capturing a growing market share. Carter believes that the stock will continue to perform well above market average for an increase of 46 percent in one year from its current stock price of $150.

Automobile Alliance (AUA) is a leading car manufacturer from the Detroit area that just recently introduced two new models. These models show very strong initial sales, and therefore the company's stock is predicted to rise from $20 to $26 over the next year.

Using the Internet, Lydia found data about the risk involved in the stocks of these companies. The historical variances of return of the six stocks and their covariances are shown in the following tables.

Company	BB	LOP	ILI	HEAL	QUI	AUA
Variance	0.032	0.1	0.333	0.125	0.065	0.08

Covariances	LOP	ILI	HEAL	QUI	AUA
BB	0.005	0.03	−0.031	−0.027	0.01
LOP		0.085	−0.07	−0.05	0.02
ILI			−0.11	−0.02	0.042
HEAL				0.05	−0.06
QUI					−0.02

a. At first, Lydia wants to ignore the risk of all the investments. Given this strategy, what is her optimal investment portfolio; that is, what fraction of her money should she invest in each of the six different stocks? What is the total risk of her portfolio?

b. Lydia decides that she doesn't want to invest more than 40 percent in any individual stock. While still ignoring risk, what is her new optimal investment portfolio? What is the total risk of her new portfolio?

c. Now Lydia wants to take into account the risk of her investment opportunities. For use in the following parts, formulate a quadratic programming model that will minimize her risk (measured by the variance of the return from her portfolio) while ensuring that her expected return is at least as large as her choice of a minimum acceptable value.

d. Lydia wants to ensure that she receives an expected return of at least 35 percent. She wants to reach this goal at minimum risk. What investment portfolio allows her to do that?

e. What is the minimum risk Lydia can achieve if she wants an expected return of at least 25 percent? Of at least 40 percent?

f. Do you see any problems or disadvantages with Lydia's approach to her investment strategy?

Case 11-3

International Investments

Charles Rosen relaxes in a plush, overstuffed recliner by the fire, enjoying the final vestiges of his week-long winter vacation. As a financial analyst working for a large investment firm in Germany, Charles has very few occasions to enjoy these private moments since he is generally catching red-eye flights around the world to evaluate various investment opportunities. Charles pats the loyal golden retriever lying at his feet and takes a swig of brandy, enjoying the warmth of the liquid. He sighs and realizes that he must begin attending to his own financial matters while he still has the time during the holiday. He opens a folder placed conspicuously on the top of a large stack of papers. The folder contains information about an investment Charles made when he graduated from college four years ago.

Charles remembers his graduation day fondly. He obtained a degree in business administration and was full of investment ideas that were born while he had been daydreaming in his numerous finance classes. Charles maintained a well-paying job throughout college, and he was able to save a large portion of the college fund that his parents had invested for him.

Upon graduation, Charles decided that he should transfer the college funds to a more lucrative investment opportunity. Since he had signed on to work in Germany, he evaluated investment opportunities in that country. Ultimately, he decided to invest €30,000 (30,000 euros)) in so-called B bonds that would mature in seven years. Charles purchased the bonds just four years ago last week (in early January of what will be called the "first year" in this discussion) when interest rates were much higher than what are now available. He considered the bonds an excellent investment opportunity since they offered high interest rates (see Table 1) that would rise over the subsequent seven years and because he could sell the bonds whenever he wanted after the first year. He calculated the amount that he would be paid if he sold bonds originally worth €100 per bond on the last day of any of the seven years (see Table 2). The amount paid included the principal plus the interest. For example, if he sold bonds originally worth €100 per bond on December 31 of the sixth year, he would be paid €163.51 (the principal is €100 and the interest is €63.51) for each bond.

page 500

TABLE 1

Interest Rates over the Seven Years

Year	Interest Rate	Annual Percentage Yield
1	7.50%	7.50%
2	8.50	8.00
3	8.50	8.17
4	8.75	8.31
5	9.00	8.45
6	9.00	8.54
7	9.00	8.61

TABLE 2

Total Return on €100

Year	€
1	107.50
2	116.64
3	126.55
4	137.62
5	150.01
6	163.51
7	178.23

Charles did not sell any of the bonds during the first four years. Last year, however, the German federal government introduced a capital gains tax on interest income. The German government designated that the first €6,100 a single individual earns in interest per year would be tax-free. Any interest income beyond €6,100 would be taxed at a rate of 30 percent. For example, if Charles earned interest income of €10,100, he would be required to pay 30

percent of €4,000 (€10,100–€6,100) in taxes, or €1,200. His after-tax income would therefore be €8,900.

Because of the new tax implemented last year, Charles has decided to reevaluate the investment. He knows that the new tax affects his potential return on the B bonds, but he also knows that most likely a strategy exists for maximizing his return on the bonds. He might be able to decrease the tax he has to pay on interest income by selling portions of his bonds in different years. Charles considers his strategy viable because the government requires investors to pay taxes on interest income only when they sell their B bonds. For example, if Charles were to sell one-third of his B bonds on December 31 of the sixth year, he would have to pay taxes on the interest income €6,351 − €6,100 = €251.

Charles asks himself several questions. Should he keep all the bonds until the end of the seventh year? If so, he would earn 0.7823 times €30,000 in interest income, but he would have to pay very substantial taxes for that year. Considering these tax payments, Charles wonders if he should sell a portion of the bonds at the end of this year (the fifth year) and at the end of next year.

If Charles sells his bonds, his alternative investment opportunities are limited. He could purchase a certificate of deposit (CD) paying 4.0 percent interest, so he investigates this alternative. He meets with an investment advisor from the local branch of a bank, and the advisor tells him to keep the B bonds until the end of the seventh year. She argues that even if he had to pay 30 percent in taxes on the 9.00 percent rate of interest that the B bonds would be paying in their last year (see Table 1), this strategy would still result in a net rate of 6.30 percent interest, which is much better than the 4.0 percent interest he could obtain on a CD.

Charles concludes that he will make all his transactions on December 31, regardless of the year. Also, since he intends to attend business school in the United States in the fall of the seventh year and plans to pay his tuition for his second, third, and fourth semester with his investment, he does not plan to keep his money in Germany beyond December 31 of the seventh year.

(For the first three parts, assume that if Charles sells a portion of his bonds, he will put the money under his mattress earning zero percent interest. For the subsequent parts, assume that he could invest the proceeds of the bonds in the certificate of deposit.)

a. Formulate a separable programming model to be used in the following parts.
b. What is the optimal investment strategy for Charles?

c. What is fundamentally wrong with the advice Charles got from the investment advisor at the bank?

d. Now that Charles is considering investing in the certificate of deposit, what is his optimal investment strategy?

e. What would his optimal investment strategy for the fifth, sixth, and seventh years have been if he had originally invested €50,000?

f. Charles and his fiancée have been planning to get married after his first year in business school. However, Charles learns that for married couples, the tax-free amount of interest earnings each year is €12,200. How much money could Charles save on his €30,000 investment by getting married this year (the fifth year for his investment)?

g. Due to a recession in Germany, interest rates are low and are expected to remain low. However, since the American economy is booming, interest rates are expected to rise in the United States. A rise in interest rates would lead to a rise of the dollar in comparison to the euro. Analysts at Charles's investment bank expect the dollar to remain at the current exchange rate of €0.75 per dollar for the fifth year and then to rise to €0.90 per dollar by the end of the seventh year. Therefore, Charles is considering investing at the beginning of the sixth year in a two-year American municipal bond paying 3.6 percent tax-exempt interest to help pay tuition. How much money should he plan to convert into dollars by selling B bonds for this investment?

[1]The same assumption also is made about the contribution of each activity to the left-hand side of each functional constraint, but we are focusing in this chapter on how to deal with a lack of proportionality in the objective function.

[2]Using mathematical terminology, a profit graph with decreasing marginal returns is said to be a *concave function,* whereas a cost graph with decreasing marginal returns is said to be a *convex function.* We are using the more suggestive economic term, decreasing marginal returns, to cover both cases (including for functions of multiple decision variables).

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) © McGraw Hill

Models for Performing Predictive or Prescriptive Analytics

CHAPTER 12

Decision Analysis

This book has five parts. Chapters 12–15 comprise Part 5, which has the theme of presenting traditional uncertainty models for performing predictive or prescriptive analytics. To clarify the role of Chapter 12 in this endeavor, we begin by providing an introduction to Part 5, after which we will focus on presenting Chapter 12.

Introduction to Part 5 (Chapters 12–15): Traditional Uncertainty Models for Performing Predictive or Prescriptive Analytics

Parts 3 and 4 focused on describing how the decision models of management science can perform prescriptive analytics. However, all of these models depend on satisfying (at least as a close approximation) the **certainty assumption,** which requires that all of the parameters in the decision model are known constants. This is a very helpful assumption because it means that the value of the objective function for any feasible solution precisely describes (at

least as a close approximation) what would be the outcome with that solution.

However, many problems arise in practice that do not satisfy the certainty assumption. There is just too much uncertainty about what will happen in the future. Therefore, **uncertainty models** are needed to analyze the uncertain outcomes. The uncertainty models of management science typically **predict the probability distribution of the outcome** for each of the various possible feasible solutions and then may seek the feasible solution which has the **most favorable probability distribution.** Therefore, these models often begin by performing predictive analytics and then may go on to perform prescriptive analytics. **Part 5 (Chapters 12–15)** presents prominent uncertainty models of management science for doing this that have been widely used for many decades.

Chapter 12 presents **decision analysis,** a fundamental examination of how best to make decisions in the face of uncertainty. With this approach, it is assumed that there are various possible **states of nature** that lead to various possible outcomes which depend somewhat on which of various alternative courses of actions is chosen. For each state of nature, the certainty assumption is applied to both the probability of that state of nature and the outcome from choosing any particular course of action for that state of nature. The uncertainty involves which state of nature will occur and then several decision criteria are offered for choosing the best course of action. Thus, decision analysis bypasses predictive analytics and jumps right into prescriptive analytics. **Decision trees** are a key tool of decision analysis, especially when it is necessary to make a sequence of decisions over time. (The business analytics community sometimes refers to the classification trees and regression trees covered in Chapter 3 as decision trees, but they are quite different from the decision trees used for decision analysis.)

states of nature

The possible outcomes of the random factors that affect the payoff that would be obtained from a decision alternative. (Section 12.1)

decision tree

A graphical display of the progression of decisions and random events to be considered. (Sections 12.3 and 12.7)

Chapter 13 presents **queueing models.** *Queues* (waiting lines) are a prominent part of everyday life where customers arrive at a service facility to receive some service from the servers there. For any particular design of a *queueing system* (e.g., the number of servers being provided), a queueing model can predict the efficiency of that design. After estimating the probability distribution of the time between the arrival of individual customers and the probability distribution of the time required by a server to serve a customer, the model then can predict such things as the probability distribution of how long a customer has to wait before beginning service or before completing service. Thus, queueing models are widely used to perform predictive analytics. Prescriptive analytics might then be used as well (e.g., for optimizing the number of servers to provide at the service facility).

page 502

Computer simulation is one of the most popular management science techniques because it is such a flexible, powerful, and intuitive tool for performing predictive analytics and then perhaps prescriptive analytics as well. It involves using a computer to *imitate* (simulate) the operation of an entire variable process or system. **Chapter 14** presents the basic concepts of computer simulation. **Chapter 15** then describes the use of the Analytic Solver software package for performing computer simulation. That chapter concludes by describing how to use the Solver in Analytic Solver to perform simulation optimization.

If you prefer to use Crystal Ball instead of Analytics Solver, Chapter 22 on the book's website parallels the presentation in Chapter 15 while using Crystal Ball. The website also includes Chapter 18 (PERT/CPM Models for Project Management) and Chapter 21 (Inventory Management with Uncertain Demand) that describe certain applications of uncertainty models. In addition, Chapters 12, 13, and 14 also have supplements on the website.

Resumption of Chapter Twelve

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Identify the kind of decision-making environment for which decision analysis is needed.
2. Describe the logical way in which decision analysis organizes a problem.
3. Formulate a payoff table from a description of the problem.
4. Describe and evaluate several alternative criteria for making a decision based on a payoff table.
5. Apply Bayes' decision rule to solve a decision analysis problem.
6. Formulate and solve a decision tree for dealing with a sequence of decisions.
7. Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve a decision tree.
8. Perform sensitivity analysis with Bayes' decision rule.
9. Determine whether it is worthwhile to obtain more information before making a decision.
10. Use new information to update the probabilities of the states of nature.
11. Use data tables to perform sensitivity analysis when dealing with a sequence of decisions.
12. Use utilities to better reflect the values of payoffs.
13. Describe some common features in the practical application of decision analysis.

The previous chapters have focused mainly on managerial decision making when the consequences of alternative decisions are known with a reasonable degree of certainty. This decision-making environment enabled formulating helpful mathematical models (linear programming, integer programming, nonlinear programming, etc.) with objective functions that specify the estimated consequences of any combination of decisions. Although these consequences usually cannot be predicted with complete certainty, they could at least be

estimated with enough accuracy to justify using such models (along with what-if analysis, etc.).

However, managers (or any other individuals) often must make decisions in environments that are fraught with much more uncertainty. Here are a few examples.

1. A manufacturer introducing a new product into the marketplace. What will be the reaction of potential customers? How much should be produced? Should the product be test marketed in a small region before deciding upon full distribution? How much advertising is needed to launch the product successfully?
2. A financial firm investing in securities. Which are the market sectors and individual securities with the best prospects? Where is the economy headed? How about interest rates? How should these factors affect the investment decisions?
3. A government contractor bidding on a new contract. What will be the actual costs of the project? Which other companies might be bidding? What are their likely bids?
4. An agricultural firm selecting the mix of crops and livestock for the upcoming season. What will be the weather conditions? Where are prices headed? What will costs be?

page 503

5. An oil company deciding whether to drill for oil in a particular location. How likely is it that there will be oil in that location? How much? How deep will they need to drill? Should geologists investigate the site further before drilling?

This list of examples could go on and on because so many decisions, or sequences of decisions, need to be made in the face of great uncertainty. Such decision making in all of business and all of life can be greatly improved by using a rational art and science of decision making. This is the reason why the field of *decision analysis* has been carefully developed over recent centuries. Decision analysis provides a framework and methodology for rational decision making when the outcomes are uncertain.

The first section introduces a case study that will be carried throughout the chapter to illustrate the various phases involved in

applying decision analysis. Section 12.2 focuses on choosing an appropriate decision criterion and then the next section describes how decision trees can be used to structure and analyze a decision analysis problem. Section 12.4 discusses how sensitivity analysis can be performed efficiently with the help of decision trees. The subsequent four sections deal with whether it would be worthwhile to obtain more information and, if so, how to use this information for making a sequence of decisions. Section 12.9 then describes how to analyze the problem while calibrating the possible outcomes to reflect their true value to the decision maker. Finally, Section 12.10 discusses the practical application of decision analysis.

Two supplements to this chapter ("Decision Criteria" and "Using TreePlan Software for Decision Trees") also are provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. In addition, this website includes a chapter (Chapter 19) that presents a popular technique called goal programming for applying decision analysis when multiple objectives need to be considered.

12.1 A CASE STUDY: THE GOFERBROKE COMPANY PROBLEM

Max Flyer is the founder and sole owner of the **Goferbroke Company,** which develops oil wells in unproven territory. Max's friends refer to him affectionately as a wildcatter. However, he prefers to think of himself as an entrepreneur. He has poured his life's savings into the company in the hope of making it big with a large strike of oil.

Now his chance possibly has come. His company has purchased various tracts of land that larger oil companies have spurned as unpromising even though they are near some large oil fields. Now Max has received an exciting report about one of these tracts. A

consulting geologist has just informed Max that he believes there is one chance in four of oil there.

Max has learned from bitter experience to be skeptical about the chances of oil reported by consulting geologists. Drilling for oil on this tract would require an investment of about $100,000. If the land turns out to be dry (no oil), the entire investment would be lost. Since his company does not have much capital left, this loss would be quite serious.

On the other hand, if the tract does contain oil, the consulting geologist estimates that there would be enough there to generate a net revenue of approximately $800,000, leaving an approximate profit of

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Profit if find oil} &= \text{Revenue if find oil} - \text{Drilling cost}\\ &= \$800{,}000 - \$100{,}000\\ &= \$700{,}000\end{aligned}$$

Although this wouldn't be quite the big strike for which Max has been waiting, it would provide a very welcome infusion of capital into the company to keep it going until he hopefully can hit the really big gusher.

There is another option. Another oil company has gotten wind of the consulting geologist's report and so has offered to purchase the tract of land from Max for $90,000. This is very tempting. This too would provide a welcome infusion of capital into the company, but without incurring the large risk of a very substantial loss of $100,000.

Should Max sell the land instead of drilling for oil there?

Table 12.1 summarizes the decision alternatives and prospective payoffs that face Max.

TABLE 12.1

Prospective Profits for the Goferbroke Company

	Profit

Alternative \ Status of Land	Oil	Profit	Dry
Alternative \ Status of Land	**Oil**		**Dry**
Drill for oil	$700,000		−$100,000
Sell the land	90,000		90,000
Chance of status	1 in 4		3 in 4

So Max is in a quandary about what to do. Fortunately, help is at hand. Max's daughter Maria has recently earned her degree from a fine business school and now has come to work for her proud dad. He asks her to apply her business training to help him analyze the problem. Having studied management science and business analytics in college, she recommends applying decision analysis. Having paid for her fine education, he agrees to give it a try.

Maria begins by interviewing her dad about the problem.

Maria: How much faith do you put in the consulting geologist's assessment that there is one chance in four of oil on this tract?

Max: Not too much. These guys sometimes seem to pull numbers out of the air. He has convinced me that there is some chance of oil there. But it could just as well be one chance in three, or one chance in five. They don't really know.

Maria: Is there a way of getting more information to pin these odds down better? This is an important option with the decision analysis approach.

Max: Yes. We could arrange for a detailed seismic survey of the land. That would pin down the odds somewhat better. But you don't really find out until you drill. Furthermore, these seismic surveys cost you an arm and a leg. I got a quote for this tract. 30,000 bucks! Then it might say oil is likely, so we drill and we might not find anything. Then I'm out another 100,000 bucks! Losing $130,000 would almost put us out of business.

Maria: OK. Let's put the seismic survey on the back burner for now. Here is another key consideration. It sounds like we need to go beyond dollars and cents to look at the consequences of the possible outcomes. Losing $130,000 would hurt a lot more than gaining $130,000 would help.

Max: That's for sure!

Maria: Well, decision analysis has a way of taking this into account by using what are called utilities. The **utility** of an outcome measures the true value to you of that outcome rather than just the monetary value.

utility

The utility of an outcome measures the intrinsic value to the decision maker of that outcome. (See also Section 12.9)

Max: Sounds good.

Maria: I also should let you know that Congress is seriously talking about a new law imposing a carbon tax that could eat into your profits if you strike oil.

Max: Oh, I don't worry about that. The politicians in Washington are full of talk and almost no action. That's not going to happen soon, so let's set that aside for making our current decision.

Maria: But the government really does need to do a lot more to combat climate change.

Max: You have been telling me that for a long time and I am beginning to agree with you. All these new record heat waves, forest fires, and droughts. Something is happening and I don't want it to bother my kids and grandkids. I hear a lot of talk about such things as adding huge numbers of solar panels and wind turbines so we can greatly reduce the need for oil. That makes sense. Drilling for oil is a messy business and I'll be glad to be out of it when I retire in a few years. However, I need one or two more big strikes before I can retire, so let's focus now on our decision for this current plot of land. How should we proceed to make the best decision?

Maria: Now this is what I suggest we do. We'll start out simple, without considering the option of the seismic survey and without getting into utilities. I'll introduce you to how decision analysis organizes our problem and to the options it provides for the criterion to use for making your decision. You'll be able to choose the criterion that feels right to you. Then we'll look at whether it might be worthwhile to do the seismic survey and, if so, how to best use its information. After that, we'll get into the nitty gritty of carefully analyzing the problem, including incorporating utilities. I think when we finish the process and you make your decision, you'll feel quite comfortable that you are making the best one.

Max: Good. Let's get started.

Here is the tutorial that Maria: provided her dad about the logical way in which decision analysis organizes a problem.

Decision Analysis Terminology

Decision analysis has a few special terms.

The **decision maker** is the individual or group responsible for making the decision (or sequence of decisions) under consideration. For the Goferbroke Co. problem, the decision maker is Max. Maria (the management scientist) can help perform the analyses, but the objective is to assist the decision maker in identifying the best possible decision from the decision maker's perspective.

decision maker

The individual or group responsible for making the decision under consideration.

The **alternatives** are the options for the decision to be made by the decision maker. Max's alternatives at this point are to drill for oil or to sell the tract of land.

alternatives

The options available to the decision maker for the decision under consideration.

The outcome of the decision to be made will be affected by random factors that are outside the control of the decision maker. These random factors determine the situation that will be found when the decision is executed. Each of these possible situations is referred to as a possible **state of nature.** For the Goferbroke Co. problem, the possible states of nature are that the tract contains oil or that it is dry (no oil).

The decision maker generally will have some information about the relative likelihood of the possible states of nature. This information may be in the form of just subjective estimates based on the experience or intuition of an individual, or there may be some degree of hard evidence involved (such as is contained in the consulting geologist's report). When these estimates are expressed in the form of probabilities, they are referred to as the **prior probabilities** of the respective states of nature. For the Goferbroke Co. problem, the consulting geologist has provided the prior probabilities given in Table 12.2. Although these are unlikely to be the true probabilities based on more information (such as through a seismic survey), they are the best available estimates of the probabilities *prior* to obtaining more information. (Later in the chapter, we will analyze whether it would be worthwhile to conduct a seismic survey, so the current problem of what to do without a seismic survey will be referred to hereafter as the *first* Goferbroke Co. problem.) TABLE 12.2

Prior Probabilities for the First Goferbroke Co. Problem

State of Nature	Prior Probability
The tract of land contains oil	0.25
The tract of land is dry (no oil)	0.75

prior probabilities

The estimated probabilities of the states of nature prior to obtaining additional information through a test or survey.

Each combination of a decision alternative and a state of nature results in some outcome. The **payoff** is a quantitative measure of the value to the decision maker of the consequences of the outcome. In most cases, the payoff is expressed as a monetary value, such as the profit. As indicated in Table 12.1, the payoff for the Goferbroke Co. at this stage is profit. (In Section 12.9, the company's payoffs will be reexpressed in terms of utilities.)

payoff

A quantitative measure of the outcome from a decision alternative and a state of nature.

The Payoff Table

When formulating the problem, it is important to identify *all* the relevant decision alternatives and the possible states of nature. After identifying the appropriate measure for the *payoff* from the perspective of the decision maker, the next step is to estimate the payoff for each combination of a decision alternative and a state of nature. These payoffs then are displayed in a **payoff table**.

payoff table

A table giving the payoff for each combination of a decision alternative and a state of nature.

Table 12.3 shows the payoff table for the first Goferbroke Co. problem. The payoffs are given in units of thousands of dollars of profit. Note that the bottom row also shows the prior probabilities of the states of nature, as given earlier in Table 12.2.

TABLE 12.3

Payoff Table (Profit in $1,000s) for the First Goferbroke Co. Problem

	State of Nature

Alternative	State of Nature	
	Oil	Dry
Alternative	**Oil**	**Dry**
Drill for oil	700	−100
Sell the land	90	90
Prior probability	0.25	0.75

For clarity, this example has been kept as small as possible, with just two decision alternatives and two states of nature, because subsequent analysis in later sections will enlarge the size of the problem. Most applications of decision analysis have far larger numbers of decision alternatives and states of nature. Even for this particular problem, it might be of interest to consider more than two decision alternatives (different types of drilling) and more than two states of nature (different amounts of oil).

page 506

Review *Questions*

. What are the decision alternatives being considered by Max?
. What is the consulting geologist's assessment of the chances of oil on the tract of land?
. How much faith does Max put in the consulting geologist's assessment of the chances of oil?
. What option is available for obtaining more information about the chances of oil?
. What is meant by the possible *states of nature*?
. What is meant by *prior probabilities?*
. What do the *payoffs* represent in a payoff table?

12.2 DECISION CRITERIA

Given the payoff table for the first Goferbroke Co. problem shown in Table 12.3, what criterion should be used in deciding whether to drill for oil or sell the land? There is no single correct answer for this question that is appropriate for every decision maker. The choice of a decision criterion depends considerably on the decision maker's own temperament and attitude toward decision making, as well as the circumstances of the decision to be made. Ultimately, Max Flyer, as the owner of the Goferbroke Co., needs to decide which decision criterion is most appropriate for this situation from his personal viewpoint.

There is no single decision criterion that is best for every situation.

Over a period of many decades (and even centuries), the development of the field of decision analysis has suggested a considerable number of criteria for how to make a decision when given the kind of information provided by a payoff table. All these criteria consider the payoffs in some way and some also take into account the prior probabilities of the states of nature, but other criteria do not use probabilities in any way. Each criterion has some rationale as well as some drawbacks. However, in recent decades, a substantial majority of management scientists has concluded that one of these criteria (Bayes' decision rule) is a particularly appropriate criterion for most decision makers in most situations. Therefore, after describing and discussing Bayes' decision rule later in this section, the rest of the chapter will focus on how to apply this particular criterion in a variety of contexts.

Bayes' decision rule is the recommended decision criterion for most situations.

However, before turning to Bayes' decision rule, we will begin this section by briefly introducing three of the most important alternative decision criteria. All three of these alternative criteria are particularly simple and intuitive. At the same time, each criterion is quite superficial in the sense that it focuses on only one piece of information provided by the payoff table and ignores the rest (including the information considered by the other two criteria). Nevertheless, many individuals informally apply one or more of these

criteria at various times in their lives. The first two make no use of prior probabilities, which can be quite reasonable when it is difficult or impossible to obtain relatively reliable values for these probabilities. Bayes' decision rule is quite different from these alternative criteria in that it makes full use of all the information in the payoff table by applying a more structured approach to decision making.

www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e includes a supplement to this chapter entitled *Decision Criteria* that provides a much more detailed discussion and critique of these three alternative decision criteria as well as three others that are somewhat more complicated. (These three others included in the supplement are the *equally likely criterion* that assigns equal probabilities to all the states of nature, the *minimax regret criterion* that minimizes the regret that can be felt afterward if the decision does not turn out well, and the *realism criterion* that uses the decision maker's pessimism–optimism index.)

Decision Making without Probabilities: The Maximax Criterion

The **maximax criterion** is the decision criterion for the eternal optimist. It says to focus only on the *best* that can happen to us. Here is how this criterion works:

maximax criterion

A very optimistic decision criterion that does not use prior probabilities and simply chooses the decision alternative that could give the largest possible payoff.

1. Identify the *maximum payoff* from any state of nature for each decision alternative.
2. Find the *maximum* of these maximum payoffs and choose the corresponding decision alternative.

The name maximax is derived from the fact that it chooses the *max*imum of the *max*imums. The rationale for this criterion is that it gives an opportunity for the best possible outcome (the largest payoff

in the entire payoff table) to occur. All that is needed is for the right state of nature to occur, which the eternal optimist believes is likely.

Table 12.4 shows the application of this criterion to the first Goferbroke problem. It begins with the payoff table (Table 12.3) before adding the prior probabilities (since these probabilities are ignored by this criterion). An extra column on the right then shows the maximum payoff for each decision alternative. Since the maximum of these maxima (700) must be the largest payoff in the entire payoff table, the corresponding decision alternative (drill for oil) is selected by this criterion.

TABLE 12.4

Application of the Maximax Criterion to the First Goferbroke Co. Problem

	State of Nature		
Alternative	**Oil**	**Dry**	**Maximum in Row**
Drill for oil	700	−100	700 ← Maximax
Sell the land	90	90	90

The biggest drawback of this criterion is that it completely ignores the prior probabilities. For example, it always would say that Goferbroke should drill for oil even if the chance of finding oil were minuscule. Another drawback is that it ignores all the payoffs except the largest one. For example, it again would say that Goferbroke should drill for oil even if the payoff from selling the land were 699 ($699,000).

This criterion ignores the prior probabilities.

Decision Making without Probabilities: The Maximin Criterion

The **maximin criterion** is the criterion for the total pessimist. In contrast to the maximax criterion, it says to focus only on the *worst* that can happen to us. Here is how this criterion works:

maximin criterion

A very pessimistic decision criterion that does not use prior probabilities and simply chooses the decision alternative that provides the best guarantee for its minimum possible payoff.

1. Identify the *minimum payoff* from any state of nature for each decision alternative.
2. Find the *maximum* of these minimum payoffs and choose the corresponding decision alternative.

The name maximin is derived from the fact that it chooses the *max*imum of the *min*imums. The rationale for this criterion is that it provides the best possible protection against being unlucky. Even if each possible choice of a decision alternative were to lead to its worst state of nature occurring, which the total pessimist thinks is likely, the choice indicated by this criterion gives the best possible payoff under these circumstances.

The application of this criterion to the first Goferbroke problem is shown in Table 12.5. The basic difference from Table 12.4 is that the numbers in the right-hand column now are the *minimum* rather than the maximum in each row. Since 90 is the maximum of these two numbers, the alternative to be chosen is to sell the land.

TABLE 12.5

Application of the Maximin Criterion to the First Goferbroke Co. Problem

	State of Nature		
Alternative	**Oil**	**Dry**	**Minimum in Row**
Drill for oil	700	−100	−100

Alternative	State of Nature		Minimum in Row
	Oil	Dry	
Sell the land	90	90	90 ← Maximin

The drawbacks of this criterion are the reverse of those for the maximax criterion. Because it completely ignores prior probabilities, it always would say that Goferbroke should sell the land even if it were almost certain to find oil if it drilled. Because it ignores all the payoffs except the maximin payoff, it again would say that Goferbroke should sell the land even if the payoff from drilling successfully for oil were 10,000 ($10 million).

This criterion also ignores the prior probabilities.

Decision Making with Probabilities: The Maximum Likelihood Criterion

The **maximum likelihood criterion** says to focus on the *most likely* state of nature as follows.

maximum likelihood criterion

A criterion for decision making with probabilities that focuses on the most likely state of nature.

1. Identify the state of nature with the largest prior probability.
2. Choose the decision alternative that has the largest payoff for this state of nature.

The rationale for this criterion is that by basing our decision on the assumption that the most likely state of nature will occur, we are giving ourselves a better chance of a favorable outcome than by

assuming any other state of nature. Furthermore, it is only necessary to identify the most likely state of nature without needing to develop close estimates of the prior probabilities for the less likely states of nature.

page 508

Table 12.6 shows the application of this criterion to the first Goferbroke Co. problem. This table is identical to the payoff table given in Table 12.3 except for also showing step 1 (select the *dry* state of nature) and step 2 (select the *sell the land* alternative) of the criterion. Since dry is the state of nature with the larger prior probability, we only consider the payoffs in its column (−100 and 90). The larger of these two payoffs is 90, so we choose the corresponding alternative, sell the land.

TABLE 12.6

Application of the Maximum Likelihood Criterion to the First Goferbroke Co. Problem

	State of Nature		
Alternative	**Oil**	**Dry**	
Drill for oil	700	−100	
Sell the land	90	90	Step 2: ← Maximum
Prior probability	0.25	0.75	
		↑	
		Step 1: Maximum	

This criterion has a number of drawbacks. One is that with a considerable number of states of nature, the most likely state can have a fairly low prior probability, in which case it would make little sense to base the decision solely on this one state. Another more serious drawback is that it completely ignores all the payoffs

(including any extremely large payoffs and any disastrous payoffs) throughout the payoff table except those for the single most likely state of nature. For example, no matter how large the payoff for finding oil, it automatically would say that Goferbroke should sell the land instead of drilling for oil even if the dry state has only a slightly larger prior probability than the oil state.

This criterion ignores all the payoffs except for the most likely state of nature.

Decision Making with Probabilities: Bayes' Decision Rule

Bayes' decision rule directly uses the *prior probabilities* of the possible states of nature as summarized below.

Bayes' decision rule

A popular criterion for decision making that uses probabilities to calculate the expected payoff for each decision alternative and then chooses the one with the largest expected payoff.

1. For each decision alternative, calculate the *weighted average* of its payoffs by multiplying each payoff by the prior probability of the corresponding state of nature and then summing these products. Using statistical terminology, refer to this weighted average as the **expected payoff (EP)** for this decision alternative.

expected payoff (EP)

For a decision alternative, it is the weighted average of the payoffs, using the probabilities of the states of nature as the weights.

2. Bayes' decision rule says to choose the alternative with the *largest* expected payoff.

The spreadsheet in Figure 12.1 shows the application of this criterion to the first Goferbroke Co. problem. Columns B, C, and D display the payoff table first given in Table 12.3. Cells F5 and F6 then execute step 1 of the procedure by using the equations entered into

these cells, namely, F5 = SUMPRODUCT(PriorProbability, DrillPayoff) = 0.25(700) + 0.75(−100) = 100

F6 = SUMPRODUCT(PriorProbability, SellPayoff) = 0.25(90) + 0.75(90) = 90

FIGURE 12.1

This spreadsheet shows the application of Bayes' decision rule to the first Goferbroke Co. problem, where a comparison of the expected payoffs in cells F5:F6 indicates that the Drill alternative should be chosen because it has the largest expected payoff.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Bayes' Decision Rule for the Goferbroke Co.**					
2						
3		**Payoff Table**	**State of Nature**			Expected
4		Alternative	Oil	Dry		Payoff
5		Drill	700	−100		100
6		Sell	90	90		90
7						
8		Prior Probability	0.25	0.75		

Range Name	Cells
DrillPayoff	C5:D5
ExpectedPayoff	F5:F6
PriorProbability	C8:D8
SellPayoff	C6:D6

	F
3	Expected
4	Payoff
5	=SUMPRODUCT(PriorProbability,DrillPayoff)
6	=SUMPRODUCT(PriorProbability,SellPayoff)

Since expected payoff = 100 for the drill alternative (cell F5), versus a smaller value of expected payoff = 90 for the sell the land alternative (cell F6), this criterion says to drill for oil.

Like all the others, this criterion cannot guarantee that the selected alternative will turn out to have been the best one after learning the true state of nature. However, it does provide another guarantee described below.

> The expected payoff for a particular decision alternative can be interpreted as what the *average* payoff would become if the same situation were to be repeated numerous times. Therefore, *on the average,* repeatedly using Bayes' decision rule to make decisions will lead to larger payoffs in the long run than any other criterion (assuming the prior probabilities are valid).

On the average, Bayes' decision rule provides larger payoffs in the long run than any other criterion.

Thus, if the Goferbroke Co. owned many tracts of land with this same payoff table, drilling for oil on all of them would provide an average payoff of about 100 ($100,000), versus only 90 ($90,000) for selling. As the following calculations indicate, this is the average payoff from drilling that results from having oil in an average of one tract out of every four (as indicated by the prior probabilities).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Oil found in one tract: Payoff} &= 700 \\ \text{Three tracts are dry: Payoff} = 3(-100) &= -300 \\ \text{Total payoff} &= 400 \\ \text{Average payoff} = \frac{400}{4} &= 100 \end{aligned}$$

However, achieving this average payoff might require going through a long stretch of dry tracts until the "law of averages" can prevail to reach 25 percent of the tracts having oil. Surviving a long stretch of bad luck may not be feasible if the company does not have adequate financing.

This criterion also has its share of critics. Here are the main criticisms.

1. There usually is considerable uncertainty involved in assigning values to prior probabilities, so treating these values as true probabilities will not reveal the true range of possible outcomes. (Section 12.4 discusses how *sensitivity analysis* can address this concern.)
2. Prior probabilities inherently are at least largely subjective in nature, whereas sound decision making should be based on objective data and procedures. (Section 12.6 describes how new information sometimes can be obtained to improve prior probabilities and make them more objective.)

page 510

3. By focusing on average outcomes, expected (monetary) payoffs ignore the effect that the amount of variability in the possible outcomes should have on the decision making. For example, since Goferbroke does not have the financing to sustain a large loss, selling the land to assure a payoff of 90 ($90,000) may be preferable to an expected payoff of 100 ($100,000) from drilling. Selling would avoid the risk of a large loss from drilling when the land is dry. (Section 12.9 will discuss how utilities can be used to better reflect the value of payoffs.)

By considering only expected payoffs, Bayes' decision rule fails to give special consideration to the possibility of disastrously large losses.

So why is this criterion commonly referred to as Bayes' decision rule? The reason is that it is often credited to the Reverend Thomas Bayes, a nonconforming 18th century English minister who won renown as a philosopher and mathematician, although the same basic idea has even longer roots in the field of economics. Bayes' philosophy of decision making still is very influential today, and some management scientists even refer to themselves as Bayesians because of their devotion to this philosophy.

More recently, it has become somewhat popular to also call this criterion the **expected monetary value (EMV) criterion.** The reason for this alternative name is that the payoffs in the payoff table often represent monetary values (such as the number of dollars of profit), in which case the expected payoff for each decision alternative is its *expected* monetary value. However, the name is a misnomer for

those cases where the measure of the payoff is something other than monetary value (as mentioned in Section 12.9). Therefore, we will consistently use the single name, Bayes' decision rule, to refer to this criterion in all situations.

expected monetary value (EMV) criterion

An alternative name for Bayes' decision rule when the payoffs have monetary values.

Because of its popularity, the rest of the chapter focuses on procedures that are based on this criterion.

Max's Reaction

Max: So where does this leave us?

Maria: Well, now you need to decide which criterion seems most appropriate to you in this situation.

Max: Well, I can't say that I am very excited about any of the criteria. But it sounded like this last one is a popular one.

Maria: Yes, it is.

Max: Why?

Maria: Really, two reasons. First, this is the criterion that uses all the available information. The prior probabilities may not be as accurate as we would like, but they do give us valuable information about roughly how likely each of the possible states of nature is. Many management scientists feel that using this key information should lead to better decisions.

Bayes' decision rule uses all the information provided by the payoff table.

Max: I'm not ready to accept that yet. But what is the second reason?

Maria: Remember that this is the criterion that focuses on what the average payoff would be if the same situation were repeated numerous times. We called this the expected payoff. Consistently selecting the decision alternative that provides the best expected payoff would provide the most payoff to the company in the long run.

Doing what is best in the long run seems like rational decision making for a manager.

Review *Questions*

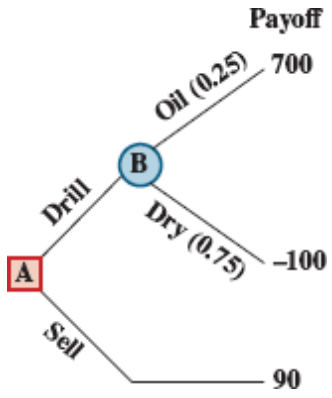
. How does the maximax criterion select a decision alternative? What kind of person might find this criterion appealing?
. What are some criticisms of the maximax criterion?
. How does the maximin criterion select a decision alternative? What kind of person might find this criterion appealing?
. What are some criticisms of the maximin criterion?
. Which state of nature does the maximum likelihood criterion focus on?
. What are some criticisms of the maximum likelihood criterion?
. How does Bayes' decision rule select a decision alternative?
. How is the expected payoff for a decision alternative calculated?
. What are some criticisms of Bayes' decision rule?

12.3 DECISION TREES

The spreadsheet in Figure 12.1 illustrates one useful way of performing decision analysis with Bayes' decision rule. Another enlightening way to apply this decision rule is to use a **decision tree** to display and analyze the problem graphically. The decision tree for the first Goferbroke Co. problem is shown in Figure 12.2. Starting on the left side and moving to the right side shows the progression of events. First, a decision is made as to whether to drill for oil or sell the land. If the decision is to drill, the next event is to learn whether the state of nature is that the land contains oil or is dry. Finally, the payoff is obtained that results from these events.

FIGURE 12.2

The decision tree for the first Goferbroke Co. problem as presented in Table 12.3.



Microsoft Corporation

In the terminology of decision trees, the junction points are called **nodes** (or forks) and the lines emanating from the nodes are referred to as **branches.** A distinction is then made between the following two types of nodes.

node

A junction point in a decision tree.

branch

A line emanating from a node in a decision tree.

A **decision node,** represented by a *square,* indicates that a decision needs to be made at that point in the process. An **event node** (or chance node), represented by a *circle,* indicates that a random event occurs at that point.

decision node

A point in a decision tree where a decision needs to be made.

event node

A point in a decision tree where a random event will occur.

Thus, node A in Figure 12.2 is a decision node since the decision on whether to drill or sell occurs there. Node B is an event node since a

random event, the occurrence of one of the possible states of nature, takes place there. Each of the two branches emanating from this node corresponds to one of the possible random events, where the number in parentheses along the branch gives the probability that this event will occur.

A decision tree can be very helpful for visualizing and analyzing a problem. When the problem is as small as the one in Figure 12.2, using the decision tree in the analysis process is optional. However, one nice feature of decision trees is that they also can be used for more complicated problems where a sequence of decisions needs to be made. You will see this illustrated for the full Goferbroke Co. problem in Sections 12.7 and 12.9 when a decision on whether to conduct a seismic survey is made before deciding whether to drill or sell.

Spreadsheet Software for Decision Trees

We will describe and illustrate how to use Analytic Solver to construct and analyze decision trees in Excel. Instructions for installing this software are available at **www.mhhe.com/ Hillier7e**. If you or your instructor prefer to use different software, a supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** contains instructions for TreePlan, another popular Excel add-in for constructing and analyzing decision trees in Excel.

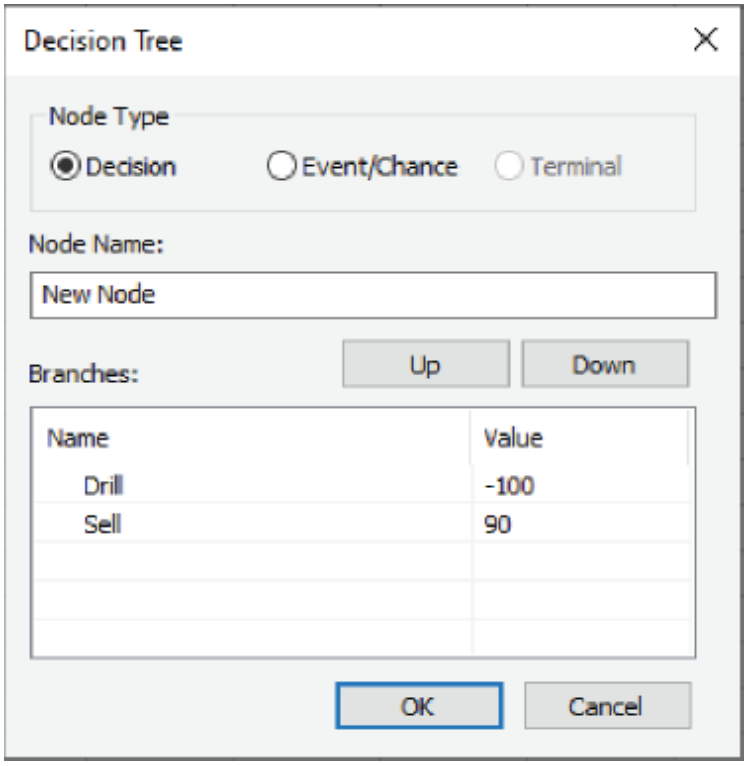
Analytic Solver Tip The type of node, the branch names, and the values (or partial payoffs) of each branch can be entered in the Analytic Solver Decision Tree dialog box. Alternatively, the names and values can be entered (or changed) after the fact by typing them directly into the spreadsheet.

To begin creating a decision tree using Analytic Solver, select Add Node from the Decision Tree > Node menu on the Analytic Solver tab. This brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 12.3. Here you can choose the type of node (Decision or Event), give names to each of the branches, and specify a value for each branch (the partial payoff associated with that branch). The default names for the branches of a

decision node in Analytic Solver are Decision 1 and Decision 2. These can be changed (or more branches added) by double-clicking on the branch name (or in the next blank row to add a branch) and typing in a new name. The initial node in the first Goferbroke problem (node A in Figure 12.2) is a decision node with two branches: Drill and Sell. The payoff associated with drilling is –100 (the $100,000 cost of drilling) and the payoff associated with selling is 90 (the $90,000 selling price). After making all of these entries as shown in Figure 12.3, clicking OK then yields the decision tree shown in Figure 12.4.

FIGURE 12.3

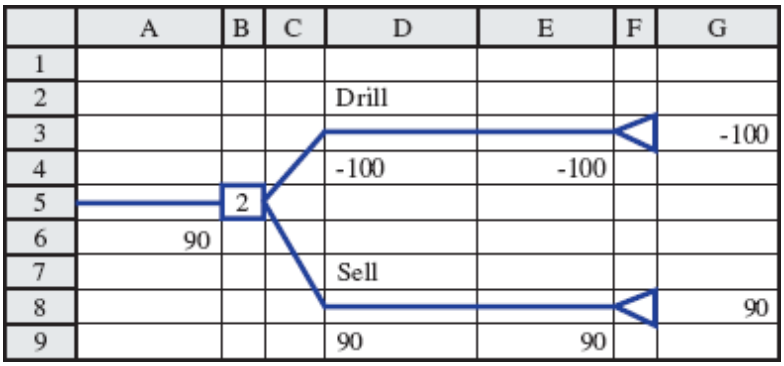
The Decision Tree dialog box used to specify that the initial node of the first Goferbroke problem is a decision node with two branches, Drill and Sell, with values (partial payoffs) of −100 and 90, respectively.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

FIGURE 12.4

The initial, partial decision tree created by Analytic Solver by selecting Add Node from the Decision Tree/Node menu on the Analytic Solver tab and specifying a Decision node with two branches named Drill and Sell, with partial payoffs of −100 and 90, respectively.

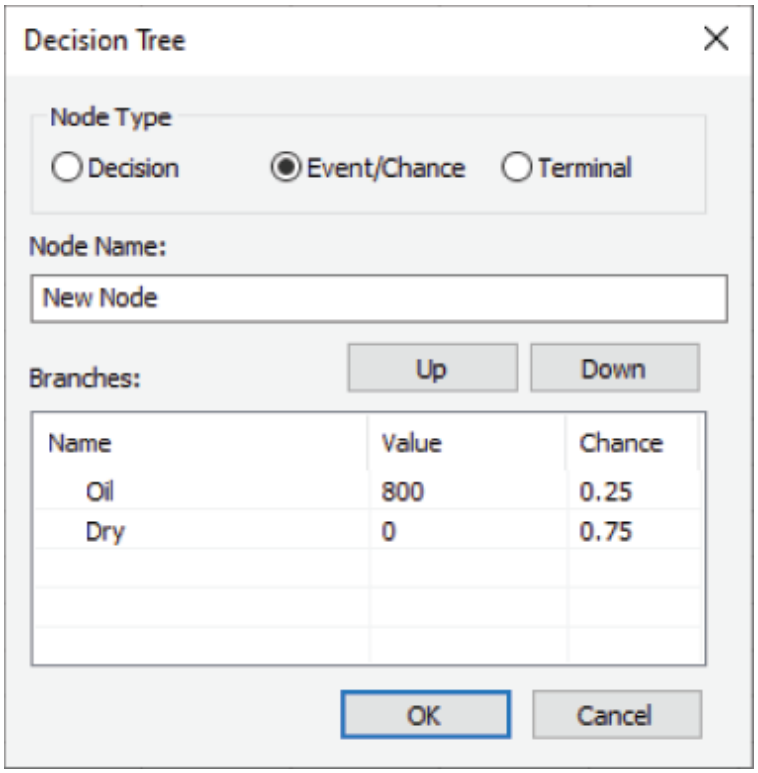


Analytic Solver Tip To create a new node at the end of a tree, select the cell containing the terminal node and choose Add Node from the Decision Tree/Node menu on the Analytic Solver tab. Select the type of node and enter names, values, and (if an event node) probabilities for each branch.

If the decision is to drill, the next event is to learn whether or not the land contains oil. To create an event node, click on the cell containing the triangle terminal node at the end of the drill branch (cell F3 in Figure 12.4) and choose Add Node from the Decision Tree > Node menu on the Analytic Solver tab to bring up the dialog box shown in Figure 12.5. The node is an event node with two branches, Oil and Dry, with probabilities 0.25 and 0.75, respectively, and values (partial payoffs) of 800 and 0, respectively, as entered into the dialog box in Figure 12.5. After clicking OK, the final decision tree is shown in Figure 12.6. (Note that Analytic Solver, by default, shows all probabilities as a percentage on the spreadsheet, with 25 percent and 75 percent in H1 and H6, rather than 0.25 and 0.75.)

FIGURE 12.5

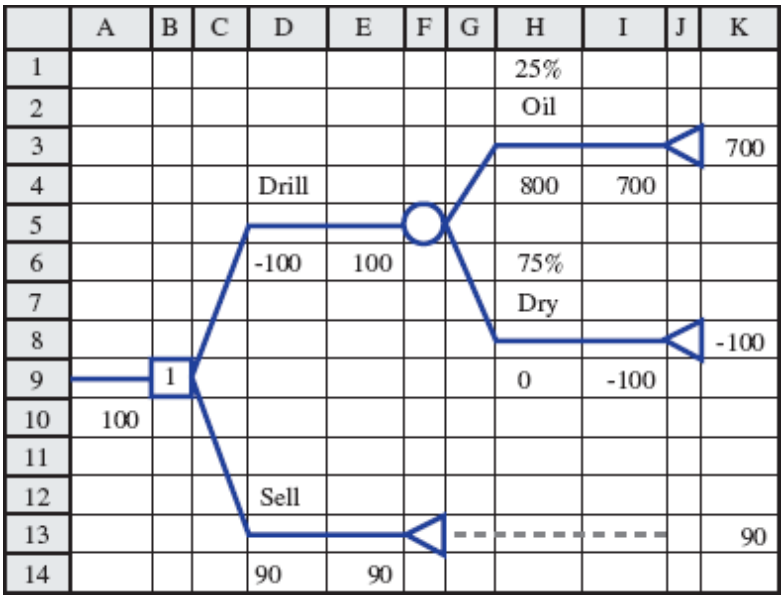
The Decision Tree dialog box used to specify that the second node of the first Goferbroke problem is an event node with two branches, Oil and Dry, with values (partial payoffs) of 800 and 0, and with probabilities of 0.25 and 0.75, respectively.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

FIGURE 12.6

The decision tree constructed and solved by Analytic Solver for the first Goferbroke Co. problem as presented in Table 12.3, where the 1 in cell B9 indicates that the top branch (the Drill alternative) should be chosen.



Reading this decision tree from left to right shows the various ways that this venture can evolve, depending on the decision made at the decision node and which event occurs at the event node. The word above each horizontal branch indicates what would happen there if that branch is reached. The number below this word in each of these branches shows the payoff (in thousands of dollars) that would occur there. The sum of these numbers along each path then gives the payoff at the resulting terminal node. (For example, the payoff for the terminal node in cell J3 is −100 + 800 = 700.) Once these numbers have been recorded in the decision tree, the analysis starts at the right end of the decision tree and moves left to calculate the expected payoff at each event node. The only event node in this case is in cell F5 and its expected payoff is 0.25 (700) + 0.75 (−100) = 100, as recorded in cell E5. Since this expected payoff from drilling is larger than the payoff of 90 by selling, the optimal decision is to drill and the resulting expected payoff of 100 is recorded in cell A10 next to the decision node. (This example has only one decision node, but Section 12.7 illustrates how to analyze decision trees with multiple decision nodes.)

page 513

Analytic Solver Tip To make changes to a node, select the node and choose an appropriate option under the Decision Tree menu on the Analytic Solver tab.

At any time, you also can click on any existing node and make changes using various choices under the Decision Tree menu on the Analytic Solver tab. For example, under the Node submenu, you can choose Add Node, Change Node, Delete Node, Copy Node, or Paste Node. Under the Branch submenu, you can Add Branch, Change Branch, or Delete Branch.

At each stage in constructing a decision tree, Analytic Solver automatically solves for the optimal policy with the current tree when using *Bayes' decision rule.* The number inside each decision node indicates which branch should be chosen (assuming the branches emanating from that node are numbered consecutively from top to bottom). Thus, for the final decision tree in Figure 12.6, the number 1 in cell B9 specifies that the first branch (the Drill alternative) should be chosen. The number on both sides of each terminal node is the payoff if that node is reached. The number 100 in cells A10 and E6 is the *expected payoff* (the measure of performance for Bayes' decision rule) at those stages in the process.

Analytic Solver identifies optimal policy for the current decision tree according to Bayes' decision rule.

This description of the decision analysis tools of Analytic Solver may seem somewhat complicated. However, we think that you will find the procedure quite intuitive when you execute it on a computer. If you spend considerable time with Analytic Solver, you also will find that it has many helpful features that haven't been described in this brief introduction.

Max's Reaction

Max: I like this decision tree thing. It puts everything into perspective.

Maria: Good.

Max: But one thing still really bothers me.

Maria: I think I can guess.

Max: Yes. I've made it pretty plain that I don't want to make my decision based on believing the consulting geologist's numbers. One chance in four of oil. Hah! It's just an educated guess.

Maria: Well, let me ask this. What is the key factor in deciding whether to drill for oil or sell the land?

Max: How likely it is that there is oil there.

Maria: Doesn't the consulting geologist help in determining this?

Max: Definitely. I hardly ever drill without his input.

Maria: So shouldn't your criterion for deciding whether to drill be based directly on this input?

Max: Yes, it should.

Maria: But then I don't understand why you keep objecting to using the consulting geologist's numbers.

Max: I'm not objecting to using his input. This input is vital to my decision. What I object to is using his numbers, one chance in four of oil, as being the gospel truth. That is what this Bayes' decision rule seems to do. We both saw what a close decision this was, 100 versus 90. What happens if his numbers are off some, as they probably are? This is too important a decision to be based on some numbers that are largely pulled out of the air.

Maria: OK, I see. Now he says that there is one chance in four of oil, a 25 percent chance. Do you think that is the right ballpark at least? If not 25 percent, how much lower might it be? Or how much higher?

Max: I usually add and subtract 10 percent from whatever the consulting geologist says. So I suppose the chance of oil is likely to be somewhere between 15 percent and 35 percent.

Maria: Good. Now we're getting somewhere. I think I know exactly what we should do next.

Max: What's that?

Maria: There is a management science technique that is designed for just this kind of situation. It is called sensitivity analysis. It will

allow us to investigate what happens if the consulting geologist's numbers are off.

Max: Great! Let's do it.

Review *Questions*

. What is a *decision tree?*

. What is a *decision node* in a decision tree? An *event node?*

. What symbols are used to represent decision nodes and event nodes?

12.4 SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS WITH DECISION TREES

Sensitivity analysis (an important type of *what-if analysis* introduced in Section 8.1) commonly is used with various applications of management science to study the effect if some of the numbers included in the mathematical model are not correct. In this case, the mathematical model is represented by the decision tree shown in Figure 12.6. The numbers in this tree that are most questionable are the prior probabilities in cells H1 and H6, so we will initially focus the sensitivity analysis on these numbers.

sensitivity analysis

The study of how other plausible values for the probabilities of the states of nature (or for the payoffs) would affect the recommended decision alternative. (Also see Section 12.8)

It is helpful to start this process by consolidating the data and results on the spreadsheet below the decision tree, as in Figure 12.7. As indicated by the formulas at the bottom of the figure, the cells giving the results (E24 and E26) make reference to the corresponding output cells on the decision tree (B9 and A10). Similarly, the data cells on the decision tree (D6, D14, H1, H4, and H9) now reference the corresponding data cells below the tree (E18:E22). Consequently,

the user can experiment with various alternative values in the data cells below and the results will simultaneously change in both the decision tree and the results section below the tree to reflect the new data.

FIGURE 12.7

In preparation for performing sensitivity analysis on the first Goferbroke Co. problem, the data and results have been consolidated on the spreadsheet below the decision tree.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1								25%			
2								Oil			
3											700
4				Drill				800	700		
5											
6				-100	100			75%			
7								Dry			
8											-100
9		1						0	-100		
10	100										
11											
12				Sell							
13											90
14				90	90						
15											
16											
17					**Data**						
18			Cost of Drilling		100						
19			Revenue if Oil		800						
20			Revenue if Sell		90						
21			Revenue if Dry		0						
22			Probability of Oil		0.25						
23											
24				Action	Drill						
25											
26			Expected Payoff		100						

	D
4	Drill
5	
6	=–CostOfDrilling

	D
12	Sell
13	
14	=RevenueIfSell

	H
1	=ProbabilityOfOil
2	Oil
3	
4	=RevenueIfOil
5	
6	=1- ProbabilityOfOil
7	Dry
8	
9	=RevenueIfDry

Range Name	Cell
Action	E24
CostOfDrilling	E18
ExpectedPayoff	E26
ProbabilityOfOil	E22
RevenueIfDry	E21
RevenueIfOil	E19
RevenueIfSell	E20

	D	E
24	Action	=IF(B9=1,"Drill","Sell")
25		
26	Expected Payoff	=A10

Consolidating the data and results offers a couple of advantages. First, it assures that each piece of data is in only one place. Each time that piece of data is needed in the decision tree, a reference is made to the single data cell below. This greatly simplifies sensitivity analysis. To change a piece of data, it needs to be changed in only one place rather than searching through the entire tree to find and change all occurrences of that piece of data.[1] A second advantage of consolidating the data and results is that it makes it easy for *anyone* to interpret the model. It is not necessary to understand Analytic Solver or how to read a decision tree in order to see what data were used in the model or what the suggested plan of action and expected payoff are.

Excel Tip Consolidating the data and results on the spreadsheet makes it easier to do sensitivity analysis and also makes the model and results easier to interpret.

The sum of the two prior probabilities must equal one, so increasing one of these probabilities automatically decreases the other one by the same amount, and vice versa. This is enforced on the decision tree in Figure 12.7 by the equation in cell H6—the probability of a dry site = H6 = 1 − ProbabilityOfOil (E22). Max has concluded that the true chances of having oil on the tract of land are likely to lie somewhere between 15 and 35 percent. In other words, the true prior probability of having oil is likely to be in the range from 0.15 to 0.35, so the corresponding prior probability of the land being dry would range from 0.85 to 0.65.

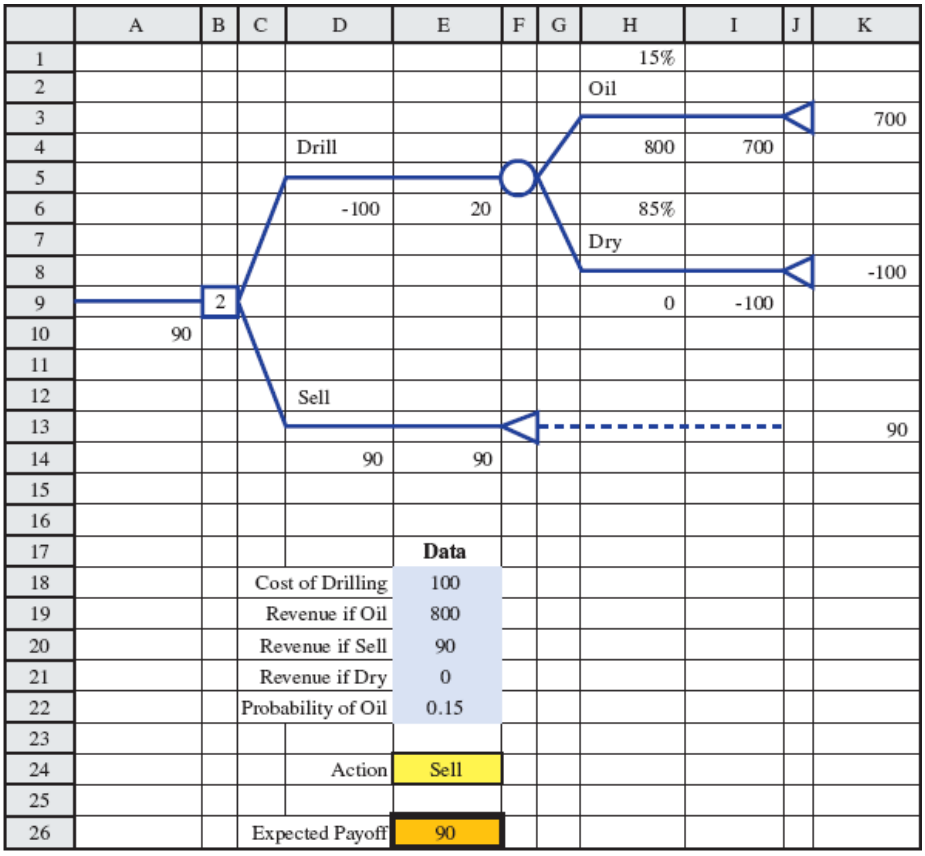
We can begin sensitivity analysis by simply trying different trial values for the prior probability of oil. This is done in Figure 12.8, first with this probability at the lower end of the range (0.15) and next with this probability at the upper end (0.35). When the prior probability of oil is only 0.15, the decision swings over to selling the land by a wide margin (an expected payoff of 90 versus only 20 for drilling). However, when this probability is 0.35, the decision is to drill by a wide margin (expected payoff = 180 versus only 90 for selling). Thus, the decision is very *sensitive* to the prior probability of oil. This

sensitivity analysis has revealed that it is important to do more, if possible, to pin down just what the true value of the probability of oil is.

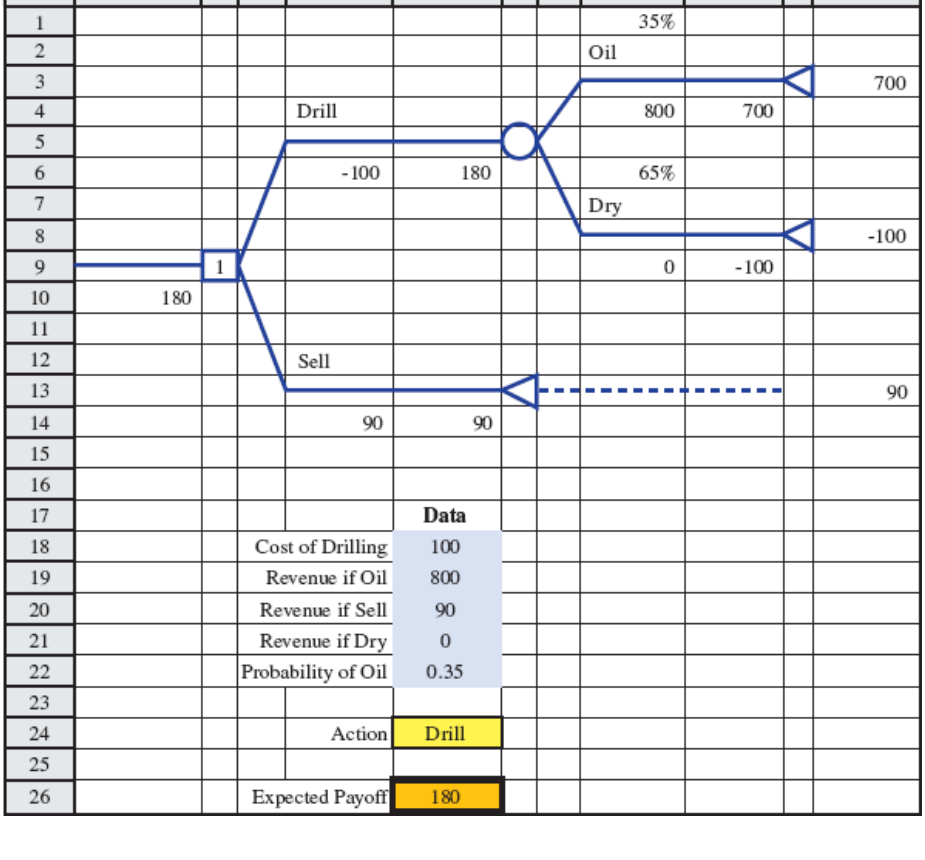
FIGURE 12.8

page 515

Performing sensitivity analysis for the first Goferbroke Co. problem by trying alternative values (0.15 and 0.35) of the prior probability of oil.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1								15%			
2								Oil			
3											700
4				Drill				800	700		
5											
6				-100	20			85%			
7								Dry			
8											-100
9		2						0	-100		
10	90										
11											
12				Sell							
13											90
14				90	90						
15											
16											
17					**Data**						
18			Cost of Drilling		100						
19			Revenue if Oil		800						
20			Revenue if Sell		90						
21			Revenue if Dry		0						
22			Probability of Oil		0.15						
23											
24				Action	Sell						
25											
26			Expected Payoff		90						



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1								35%			
2								Oil			
3											700
4				Drill				800	700		
5											
6				-100	180			65%			
7								Dry			
8											-100
9		1						0	-100		
10	180										
11											
12				Sell							
13											90
14				90	90						
15											
16											
17					**Data**						
18			Cost of Drilling		100						
19			Revenue if Oil		800						
20			Revenue if Sell		90						
21			Revenue if Dry		0						
22			Probability of Oil		0.35						
23											
24				Action	Drill						
25											
26			Expected Payoff		180						

Using a Data Table to Do Sensitivity Analysis Systematically

To pin down just where the suggested course of action changes, we could continue selecting new trial values of the prior probability of oil at random. However, a better approach is to systematically consider a range of values. A feature built into Excel, called a data table, is designed to perform just this sort of analysis. Data tables are used to show the results of certain output cells for various trial values of a data cell.

A data table displays the results of selected output cells for various trial values of a data cell.

page 516

page 517

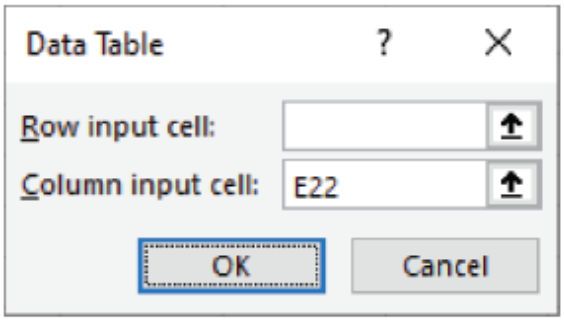
To use data tables, first make a table on the spreadsheet with headings as shown in columns I, J, and K in Figure 12.9. In the first column of the table (I19:I29), list the trial values for the data cell (the prior probability of oil), except leave the first row blank. The headings of the next columns specify which output will be evaluated. For each of these columns, use the first row of the table (cells J18:K18) to write an equation that refers to the relevant output cell. In this case, the cells of interest are Action (E24) and ExpectedPayoff (E26), so the equations for J18:K18 are those shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 12.9.

FIGURE 12.9

Expansion of the spreadsheet in Figure 12.7 to prepare for generating a data table, where the choice of E22 for the column input cell in the Data Table dialog box indicates that this is the data cell that is being changed in the first column of the data table.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P
16												Probability		Expected		
17					**Data**							of Oil	Action	Payoff		
18			Cost of Drilling		100								Drill	100		
19			Revenue if Oil		800							0.15				
20			Revenue if Sell		90							0.17				
21			Revenue if Dry		0							0.19				
22			Probability of Oil		0.25							0.21				
23												0.23				
24				Action	Drill							0.25				
25												0.27				
26			Expected Payoff		100							0.29				
27												0.31				
28												0.33				
29												0.35				

Select these cells (I18:K29), before choosing Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab.



	J	K
16		Expected
17	Action	Payoff
18	=Action	=ExpectedPayoff

Range Name	Cell
Action	E24
ExpectedPayoff	E26

Microsoft Corporation

Next, select the entire table (I18:K29) and then choose Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab. In the Data Table dialog box (as shown at the bottom left of Figure 12.9), indicate the column input cell (E22), which refers to the data cell that is being changed in the first column of the table. Nothing is entered for the row input cell because no row is being used to list the trial values of a data cell in this case.

Clicking OK then generates the data table shown in Figure 12.10. For each trial value for the data cell listed in the first column of the table, the corresponding output cell values are calculated and

displayed in the other columns of the table. (The entries in the first row of the table come from the original solution in the spreadsheet.)

FIGURE 12.10

After the preparation displayed in Figure 12.9, clicking OK generates this data table that shows the optimal action and expected payoff for various trial values of the prior probability of oil.

	L	M	N
16	Probability		Expected
17	of Oil	Action	Payoff
18		Drill	100
19	0.15	Sell	90
20	0.17	Sell	90
21	0.19	Sell	90
22	0.21	Sell	90
23	0.23	Sell	90
24	0.25	Drill	100
25	0.27	Drill	116
26	0.29	Drill	132
27	0.31	Drill	148
28	0.33	Drill	164
29	0.35	Drill	180

Figure 12.10 reveals that the best course of action switches from Sell to Drill for a prior probability of oil somewhere between 0.23 and 0.25. Trial and error (or algebra) can be used to pin this number down more precisely. It turns out to be 0.2375.

For a problem with more than two possible states of nature, the most straightforward approach is to focus the sensitivity analysis on only two states at a time as described above. This again would involve investigating what happens when the prior probability of one state increases as the prior probability of the other state decreases by the same amount, holding fixed the prior probabilities of the remaining states. This procedure then can be repeated for as many other pairs of states as desired.

Max's Reaction

Max: That data table paints a pretty clear picture. I think I'm getting a much better handle on the problem.

Maria: Good.

Max: Less than a 23¾ percent chance of oil, I should sell. If it's more, I should drill. It confirms what I suspected all along. This is a close decision, and it all boils down to picking the right number for the chances of oil. I sure wish I had more to go on than the consulting geologist's numbers.

Maria: You talked earlier about the possibility of paying $30,000 to get a detailed seismic survey of the land.

Max: Yes, I might have to do that. But 30,000 bucks! I'm still not sure that it's worth that much dough.

Maria: I have a quick way of checking that. It's another technique I learned in my management science and business analytics courses. It's called finding the **expected value of perfect information (EVPI).** The expected value of perfect information is the increase in the expected payoff you would get if the seismic survey could tell you for sure if there is oil there.

expected value of perfect information (EVPI)

The increase in the expected payoff that could be obtained if it were possible to learn the true state of nature before making the decision. (Also see Section 12.5)

The next section describes how to find and use the expected value of perfect information.

Max: But it can't tell you for sure.

Maria: Yes, I know. But finding out for sure if oil is there is what we refer to as perfect information. So the increase in the expected payoff if you find out for sure is the expected value of perfect information. We know that's better than you actually can do with a seismic survey.

Max: Right.

Maria: OK, suppose we find that the expected value of perfect information is less than $30,000. Since that is better than we can do

with a seismic survey, that tells us right off the bat that it wouldn't pay to do the seismic survey.

Max: OK, I get it. But what if this expected value of perfect information is more than $30,000?

Maria: Then you don't know for sure whether the seismic survey is worth it until you do some more analysis. This analysis takes some time, whereas it is very quick to calculate the expected value of perfect information. So it is well worth simply checking whether the expected value of perfect information is less than $30,000 and, if so, saving a lot of additional work.

Max: OK. Let's do it.

Review *Questions*

. Why might it be helpful to use sensitivity analysis with Bayes' decision rule?

. When preparing to perform sensitivity analysis, what are a couple of advantages of consolidating the data and results on the spreadsheet that contains the decision tree?

. What is shown by a data table when it is used to perform sensitivity analysis?

. What conclusion was drawn for the first Goferbroke Co. problem regarding how the decision should depend on the prior probability of oil?

12.5 CHECKING WHETHER TO OBTAIN MORE INFORMATION

Prior probabilities may provide somewhat inaccurate estimates of the true probabilities of the states of nature. Might it be worthwhile for Max to spend some money for a seismic survey to obtain better estimates? The quickest way to check this is to pretend that it is possible for the same amount of money to actually determine which

state is the true state of nature ("perfect information") and then determine whether obtaining this information would make this expenditure worthwhile. If having perfect information would not be worthwhile, then it definitely would not be worthwhile to spend this money just to learn more about the probabilities of the states of nature.

Definitely identifying the true state of nature is referred to as *perfect information.* This represents the best outcome of seeking more information.

The key quantities for performing this analysis are

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{EP(without more info)} &= \text{Expected payoff from applying Bayes' decision rule with the original prior probabilities} \\
&= 100 \text{ (as given in Figure12.7)} \\
\text{EP(with perfect info)} &= \text{Expected payoff if the decision could be made after learning the true state of nature} \\
\text{EVPI} &= \text{Expected value of perfect information} \\
C &= \text{Cost of obtaining more information} \\
&= 30 \text{ (cost of the seismic survey in thousands of dollars)}
\end{aligned}$$

The **expected value of perfect information** is calculated as

$$\text{EVPI} = \text{EP (with perfect info)} - \text{EP (without more info)}$$

After calculating EP (with perfect info) and then EVPI, the last step is to compare EVPI with *C.*

If $C >$ EVPI, then it is not worthwhile to obtain more information.

If $C \leq$ EVPI, then it might be worthwhile to obtain more information.

To calculate EP (with perfect info), we pretend that the decision can be made *after* learning the true state of nature. Given the true state of nature, we then would automatically choose the alternative with the maximum payoff for that state. Thus, we drill if we know there is oil, whereas we sell if we know the site is dry. The prior probabilities still give our best estimate of the probability that each state of nature

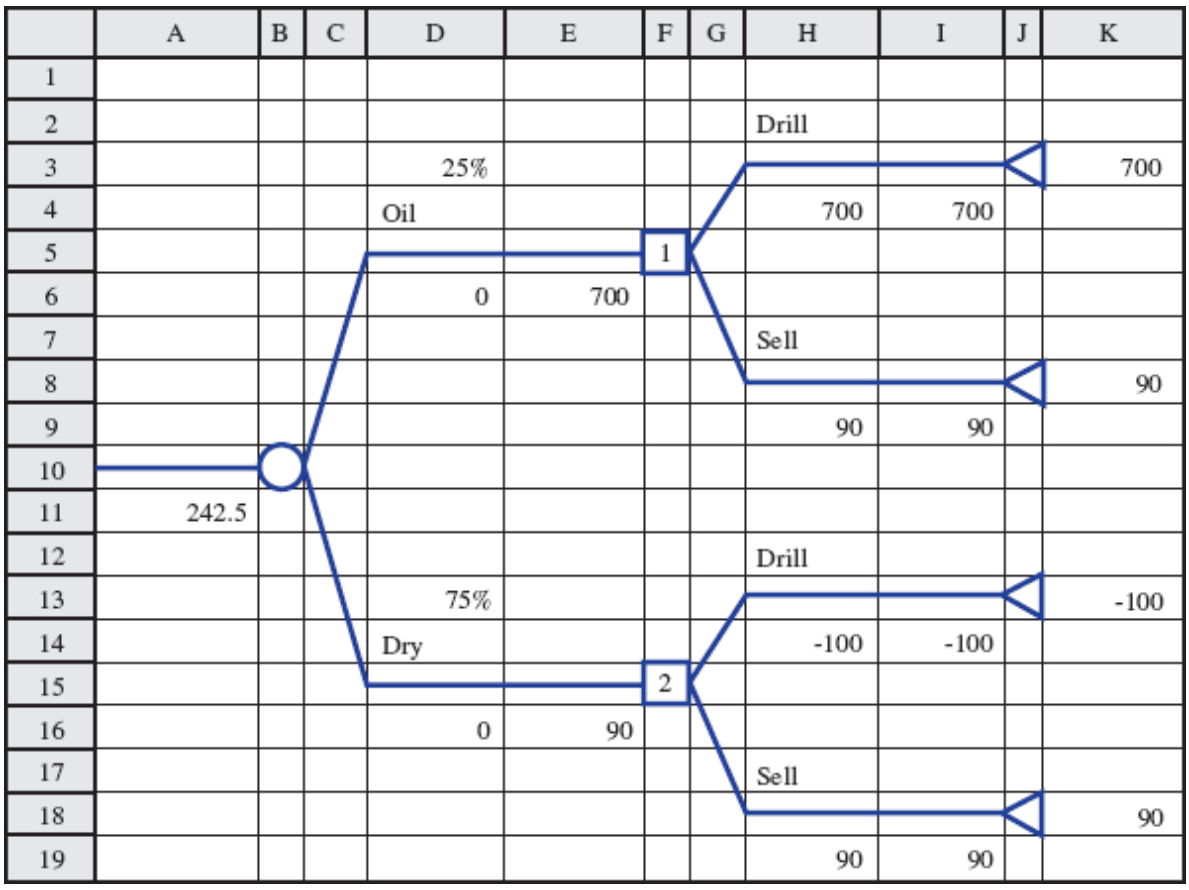
will turn out to be the true one. EP (with perfect info) is therefore the weighted average of the maximum payoff for each state. This calculation involves multiplying each maximum payoff by the prior probability of the corresponding state of nature and then adding these quantities. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{EP (with perfect info)} &= (0.25)\,(700) + (0.75)\,(90) \\ &= 242.5\end{aligned}$$

Analytic Solver also can be used to calculate EP (with perfect info) by constructing and solving the decision tree shown in Figure 12.11. The clever idea here is to *start* the decision tree with an event node whose branches are the various states of nature (oil and dry in this case). Since a decision node follows each of these branches, the decision is being made with perfect information about the true state of nature. Therefore, the expected payoff of 242.5 obtained by Analytic Solver in cell A11 is the expected payoff with perfect information.

FIGURE 12.11

By starting with an event node involving the states of nature, Analytic Solver uses this decision tree to obtain the expected payoff with perfect information for the first Goferbroke Co. problem.



Starting the decision tree with an event node whose branches are the various states of nature corresponds to starting with perfect information about the true state of nature.

Since EP (with perfect info) = 242½, we now can calculate the expected value of perfect information as

$$\begin{aligned} \text{EVPI} &= \text{EP (with perfect info)} - \text{EP (without more info)} \\ &= 242.5 - 100 \\ &= 142.5 \end{aligned}$$

Conclusion: EVPI > *C,* since 142.5 > 30. Therefore, it might be worthwhile to do the seismic survey.

Max's Reaction

page 520

Max: So you're telling me that if the seismic survey could really be definitive in determining whether oil is there, doing the survey would increase my average payoff by about $142,500?

Maria: That's right.

Max: So after subtracting the $30,000 cost of the survey, I would be ahead $112,500. Well, too bad the surveys aren't that good. In fact, they're not all that reliable.

Maria: Tell me more. How reliable are they?

Max: Well, they come back with seismic soundings. If the seismic soundings are favorable, then oil is fairly likely. If they are unfavorable, then oil is pretty unlikely. But you can't tell for sure.

Maria: OK. Suppose oil is there. How often would you get favorable seismic soundings?

Max: I can't give you an exact number. Maybe 60 percent.

Maria: OK, good. Now suppose that the land is dry. How often would you still get favorable seismic soundings?

Max: Too often! I've lost a lot of money drilling when the seismic survey said to and then nothing was there. That's why I don't like to spend the 30,000 bucks.

Maria: Sure. So it tells you to drill when you shouldn't close to half the time?

Max: No. It's not that bad. But fairly often.

Maria: Can you give me a percentage?

Max: OK. Maybe 20 percent.

Maria: Good. Thanks. Now I think we can do some analysis to determine whether it is really worthwhile to do the seismic survey.

Max: How do you do the analysis?

Maria: Well, I'll describe the process in detail pretty soon. But here is the general idea. We'll do some calculations to determine what the chances of oil would be if the seismic soundings turn out to be favorable. Then we'll calculate the chances if the soundings are unfavorable. We called the consulting geologist's numbers prior probabilities because they were prior to obtaining more information. The improved numbers are referred to as **posterior probabilities**.

posterior probabilities

Revised probabilities of the states of nature after doing a test or survey to improve the prior probabilities. (See also Section 12.6)

Max: OK.

Maria: Then we'll use these posterior probabilities to determine the average payoff, after subtracting the $30,000 cost, if we do the seismic survey. If this payoff is better than we would do without the seismic survey, then we should do it. Otherwise, not.

Max: That makes sense.

Review *Questions*

. What is meant by perfect information regarding the states of nature?
. How can the expected payoff with perfect information be calculated from the payoff table?
. How should a decision tree be constructed to obtain the expected payoff with perfect information by solving the tree?
. What is the formula for calculating the expected value of perfect information?
. What is the conclusion if the cost of obtaining more information is more than the expected value of perfect information?
. What is the conclusion if the cost of obtaining more information is less than the expected value of perfect information?
. Which of these two cases occurs in the Goferbroke Co. problem?

12.6 USING NEW INFORMATION TO UPDATE THE PROBABILITIES

The prior probabilities of the possible states of nature often are quite subjective in nature, so they may be only very rough estimates of the true probabilities. Fortunately, it frequently is possible to do some additional testing or surveying (at some expense) to improve these

estimates. These improved estimates are called **posterior probabilities.**

In the case of the Goferbroke Co., these improved estimates can be obtained at a cost of $30,000 by conducting a detailed seismic survey of the land. The possible findings from such a survey are summarized below.

Possible Findings from a Seismic Survey

FSS: Favorable seismic soundings; oil is fairly likely.

USS: Unfavorable seismic soundings; oil is quite unlikely.

To use either finding to calculate the posterior probability of oil (or of being dry), it is necessary to estimate the probability of obtaining this finding for each state of nature. During the conversation at the end of the preceding section, Maria elicited these estimates from Max, as summarized in Table 12.7. (Max actually only estimated the probability of favorable seismic soundings, but subtracting this number from one gives the probability of unfavorable seismic soundings.) The notation used in the table for each of these estimated probabilities is

$P(\text{finding} \mid \text{state})$ = Probability that the indicated finding will occur, given that the state of nature is the indicated one

TABLE 12.7

Probabilities of the Possible Findings from the Seismic Survey, Given the State of Nature, for the Goferbroke Co. Problem

State of Nature	*P* (finding | state)	
	Favorable (FSS)	Unfavorable (USS)
Oil	*P*(FSS | Oil) = 0.6	*P*(USS | Oil) = 0.4
Dry	*P*(FSS | Dry) = 0.2	*P*(USS | Dry) = 0.8

This kind of probability is referred to as a *conditional probability,* because it is conditioned on being given the state of nature.

Recall that the prior probabilities are

$$P(\text{Oil}) = 0.25$$
$$P(\text{Dry}) = 0.75$$

The next step is to use these probabilities and the probabilities in Table 12.7 to obtain a combined probability called a *joint probability.* Each combination of a state of nature and a finding from the seismic survey will have a joint probability that is determined by the following formula.

page 522

$$P(\text{state and finding}) = P(\text{state})\,P(\text{finding}|\text{state})$$

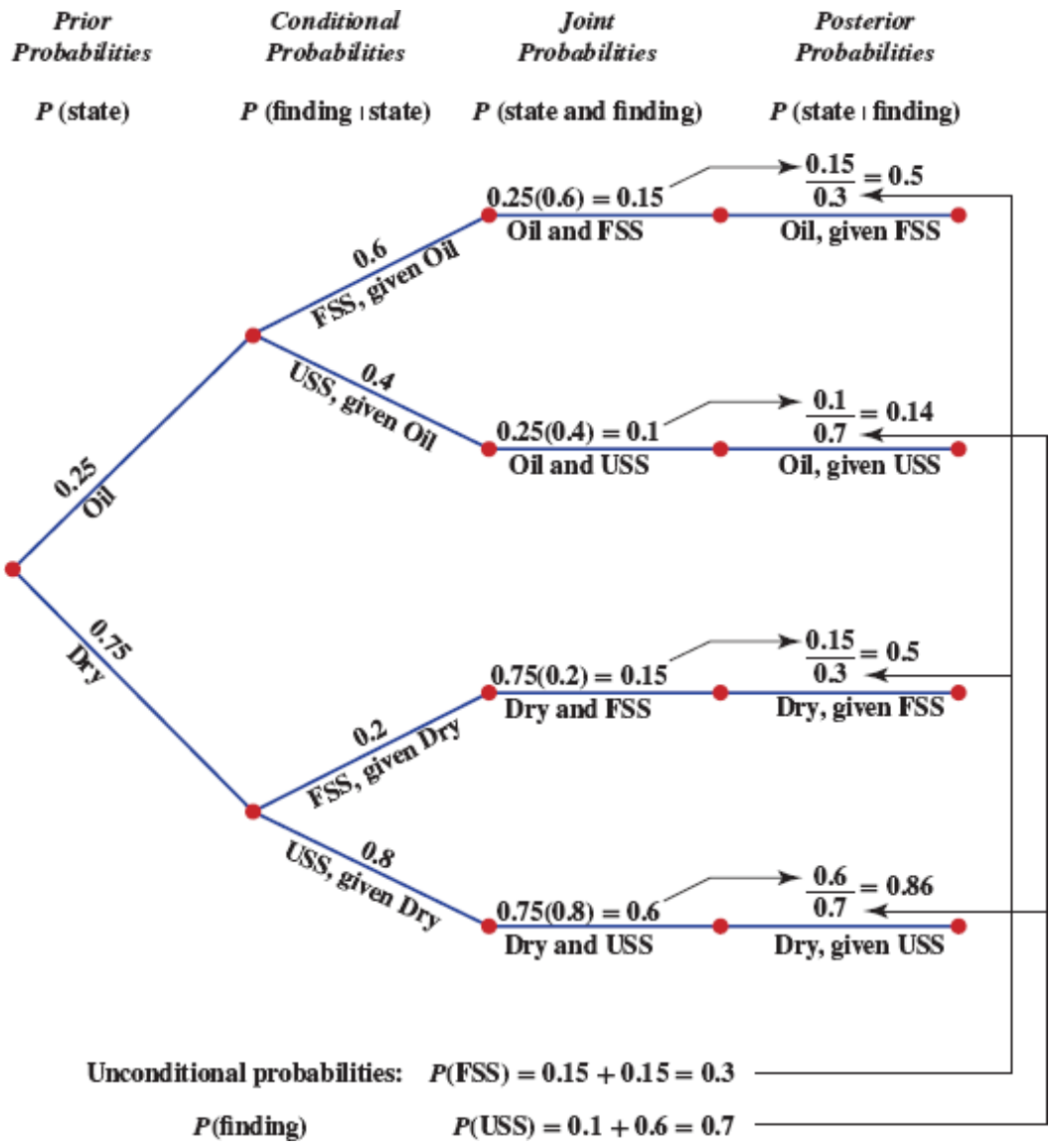
For example, the joint probability that the state of nature is Oil *and* the finding from the seismic survey is favorable (FSS) is

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{Oil and FSS}) &= P(\text{Oil})\,P(\text{FSS} \mid \text{Oil}) \\ &= 0.25(0.6) \\ &= 0.15 \end{aligned}$$

The calculation of all these joint probabilities is shown in the third column of the **probability tree diagram** given in Figure 12.12. The case involved is identified underneath each branch of the tree and the probability is given over the branch. The first column gives the prior probabilities and then the probabilities from Table 12.7 are shown in the second column. Multiplying each probability in the first column by a probability in the second column gives the corresponding joint probability in the third column. (The subsequent calculations in this probability tree diagram are discussed in the next few paragraphs.)

FIGURE 12.12

Probability tree diagram for the Goferbroke Co. problem showing all the probabilities leading to the calculation of each posterior probability of the state of nature given the finding of the seismic survey.



probability tree diagram

A diagram that is helpful for calculating the posterior probabilities of the states of nature.

Each joint probability in the third column of the probability tree diagram is the product of the probabilities in the first two columns.

Having found each joint probability of both a particular state of nature and a particular finding from the seismic survey, the next step is to use these probabilities to find each probability of just a particular finding without specifying the state of nature. Since any finding can

be obtained with any state of nature, the formula for calculating the probability of just a particular finding is

$$P(\text{finding}) = P(\text{Oil and finding}) + P(\text{Dry and finding})$$

For example, the probability of a favorable finding (FSS) is

page 523

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{FSS}) &= P(\text{Oil and FSS}) + P(\text{Dry and FSS}) \\ &= 0.15 + 0.15 = 0.3 \end{aligned}$$

The probability of a finding is the sum of the corresponding joint probabilities in the third column of the probability tree diagram.

where the two joint probabilities on the right-hand side of this equation are found on the first and third branches of the third column of the probability tree diagram. The calculation of both *P* (FSS) and *P* (USS) is shown underneath the diagram. (These are referred to as *unconditional* probabilities to differentiate them from the *conditional* probabilities of a finding given the state of nature, shown in the second column.) Finally, we now are ready to calculate each *posterior probability* of a particular state of nature given a particular finding from the seismic survey. The formula involves combining the joint probabilities in the third column with the unconditional probabilities underneath the diagram as follows.

$$P(\text{state} \mid \text{finding}) = \frac{P(\text{state and finding})}{P(\text{finding})}$$

For example, the posterior probability that the true state of nature is oil, given a favorable finding (FSS) from the seismic survey, is

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{Oil} \mid \text{FSS}) &= \frac{P(\text{Oil and FSS})}{P(\text{FSS})} \\ &= \frac{0.15}{0.3} = 0.5 \end{aligned}$$

The fourth column of the probability tree diagram shows the calculation of all the posterior probabilities. The arrows indicate how each numerator comes from the corresponding joint probability in the third column and the denominator comes from the corresponding unconditional probability below the diagram.

The arrows in the probability tree diagram show where the numbers come from for calculating the posterior probabilities.

By using the formulas given earlier for the joint probabilities and unconditional probabilities, each posterior probability also can be calculated directly from the prior probabilities (first column) and the conditional probabilities (second column) as follows.

$$P(\text{state} \mid \text{finding}) = \frac{P(\text{state})\,P(\text{finding} \mid \text{state})}{P(\text{Oil})\,P(\text{finding} \mid \text{Oil}) + P(\text{Dry})\,P(\text{finding} \mid \text{Dry})}$$

For example, the posterior probability of oil, given a favorable finding (FSS), is

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{Oil} \mid \text{FSS}) &= \frac{P(\text{Oil})\,P(\text{FSS} \mid \text{Oil})}{P(\text{Oil})\,P(\text{FSS} \mid \text{Oil}) + P(\text{Dry})\,P(\text{FSS} \mid \text{Dry})} \\ &= \frac{0.25(0.6)}{0.25(0.6) + 0.75(0.2)} \\ &= 0.5 \end{aligned}$$

This formula for a posterior probability is known as **Bayes' theorem,** in honor of its discovery by the Reverend Bayes. The clever Reverend Bayes found that any posterior probability can be found in this way for any decision analysis problem, regardless of how many states of nature it has. The denominator in the formula would contain one such term for each of the states of nature. Note that the probability tree diagram also is applying Bayes' theorem, but in smaller steps rather than a single long formula.

Bayes' theorem

A formula for calculating a posterior probability of a state of nature.

Table 12.8 summarizes all the posterior probabilities calculated in Figure 12.12.

TABLE 12.8

Posterior Probabilities of the States of Nature, Given the Finding from the Seismic Survey, for the Goferbroke Co. Problem

	***P* (finding | state)**	
Finding	**Oil**	**Dry**
Favorable (FSS)	*P*(Oil | FSS) = 1/2	*P*(Dry | FSS) = 1/2
Unfavorable (USS)	*P*(Oil | USS) = 1/7	*P*(Dry | USS) = 6/7

After you learn the logic of calculating posterior probabilities, we suggest that you use the computer to perform these rather lengthy calculations. We have provided an Excel template page 524 (labeled Posterior Probabilities) for this purpose in this chapter's Excel files at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Figure 12.13 illustrates the use of this template for the Goferbroke Co. problem. All you do is enter the prior probabilities and the conditional probabilities from the first two columns of Figure 12.12 into the top half of the template (rows 6 and 7 in this case). The posterior probabilities then immediately appear in the bottom half, as shown in D15:E16 in this case. (The equations entered into the cells in columns E through H are similar to those for column D shown at the bottom of the figure.)

FIGURE 12.13

The Posterior Probabilities template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** enables efficient calculation of posterior probabilities, as illustrated here for the Goferbroke Co. problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Template for Posterior Probabilities**							
2								
3		**Data:**		*P*(Finding I State)				
4		State of	Prior	Finding				
5		Nature	Probability	FSS	USS			
6		Oil	0.25	0.6	0.4			
7		Dry	0.75	0.2	0.8			
8								
9								
10								
11								
12		**Posterior**		*P*(State I Finding)				
13		**Probabilities:**		State of Nature				
14		Finding	*P*(Finding)	Oil	Dry			
15		FSS	0.3	0.5	0.5			
16		USS	0.7	0.143	0.857			
17								
18								
19								

	B	C	D
12	**Posterior**		*P*(State I Finding)
13	**Probabilities:**		State of Nature
14	Finding	*P*(Finding)	=B6
15	=D5	=SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,D6:D10)	=C6*D6/SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,D6:D10)
16	=E5	=SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,E6:E10)	=C6*E6/SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,E6:E10)
17	=F5	=SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,F6:F10)	=C6*F6/SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,F6:F10)
18	=G5	=SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,G6:G10)	=C6*G6/SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,G6:G10)
19	=H5	=SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,H6:H10)	=C6*H6/SUMPRODUCT(C6:C10,H6:H10)

Max's Reaction

Max: So this is saying that even with favorable seismic soundings, I still only have one chance in two of finding oil. No wonder I've been disappointed so often in the past when I've drilled after receiving a favorable seismic survey. I thought those surveys were supposed to

be more reliable than that. So now I'm even more unenthusiastic about paying 30,000 bucks to get a survey done.

Maria: But one chance in two of oil. Those are good odds.

Max: Yes, they are. But I'm likely to lay out 30,000 bucks and then just get an unfavorable survey back.

Maria: My calculations indicate that you have about a 70 percent chance of that happening.

Max: See what I mean?

Maria: But even an unfavorable survey tells you a lot. Just one chance in seven of oil then. That might rule out drilling. So a seismic survey really does pin down the odds of oil a lot better. Either one chance in two or one chance in seven instead of the ballpark estimate of one chance in four from the consulting geologist.

page 525

Max: Yes, I suppose that's right. I really would like to improve the consulting geologist's numbers. It sounds like you're recommending that we do the seismic survey.

Maria: Well, actually, I'm not quite sure yet. What we'll do is sketch out a decision tree, showing the decision on whether to do the seismic survey and then the decision on whether to drill or sell. Then we'll work out the average payoffs for these decisions on the decision tree.

Max: OK, let's do it. I want to make a decision soon.

Review *Questions*

. What are posterior probabilities of the states of nature?

. What are the possible findings from a seismic survey for the Goferbroke Co.?

. What probabilities need to be estimated in addition to prior probabilities in order to begin calculating posterior probabilities?

. What five kinds of probabilities are considered in a probability tree diagram?

. What is the formula for calculating *P*(state and finding)?
. What is the formula for calculating *P*(finding)?
. What is the formula for calculating a posterior probability, *P*(state | finding), from *P*(state and finding) and *P*(finding)?
. What is the name of the famous theorem for how to calculate posterior probabilities?

12.7 USING A DECISION TREE TO ANALYZE THE PROBLEM WITH A SEQUENCE OF DECISIONS

We now turn our attention to analyzing the *full* Goferbroke Co. problem with the help of a decision tree. For the full problem, there is a *sequence of two decisions* to be made. First, should a seismic survey be conducted? Second, after obtaining the results of the seismic survey (if it is conducted), should the company drill for oil or sell the land?

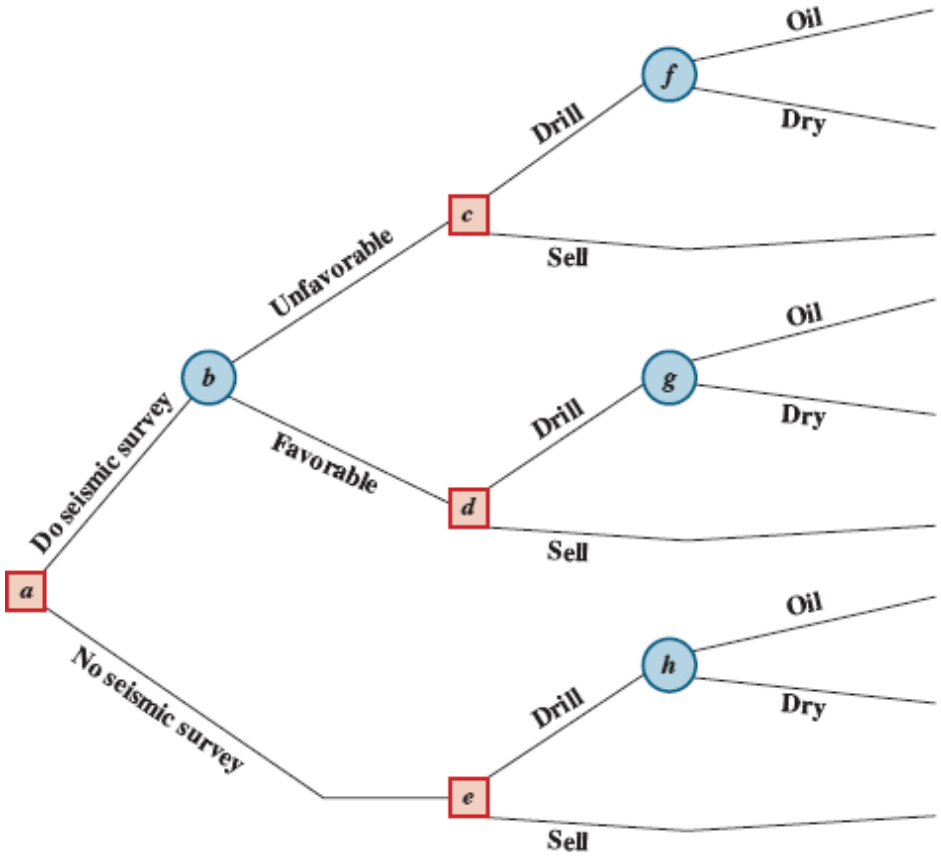
Applications of decision analysis commonly are similar to the full Goferbroke Co. problem in the sense that they require making a *sequence of decisions.* In some cases, a sequence of even more than two decisions need to be made. Decision trees provide a convenient way of organizing and analyzing such problems. (Other powerful techniques for sequential decision making also are available, but are beyond the scope of this book.) As described in Section 12.3, a **decision tree** provides a graphical display of the progression of decisions and random events for the problem. Figure 12.2 in that section shows the decision tree for the first Goferbroke problem where the only decision under consideration is whether to drill for oil or sell the land. Figure 12.6 then shows the same decision tree as it would be constructed and solved with Analytic Solver. We now will focus on expanding this decision tree to consider the *sequence* of decisions needed for the full Goferbroke Co. problem.

Constructing the Decision Tree

Now that a prior decision needs to be made on whether to conduct a seismic survey, the original decision tree needs to be expanded as shown in Figure 12.14 (before including any numbers). Recall that each *square* in the tree represents a *decision node,* where a decision needs to be made, and each *circle* represents an *event node,* where a random event will occur.

FIGURE 12.14

The decision tree for the full Goferbroke Co. problem (before including any numbers) when first deciding whether to conduct a seismic survey.



Thus, the first decision (should we have a seismic survey done?) is represented by decision node *a* in Figure 12.14. The two branches leading out of this node correspond to the two alternatives for this

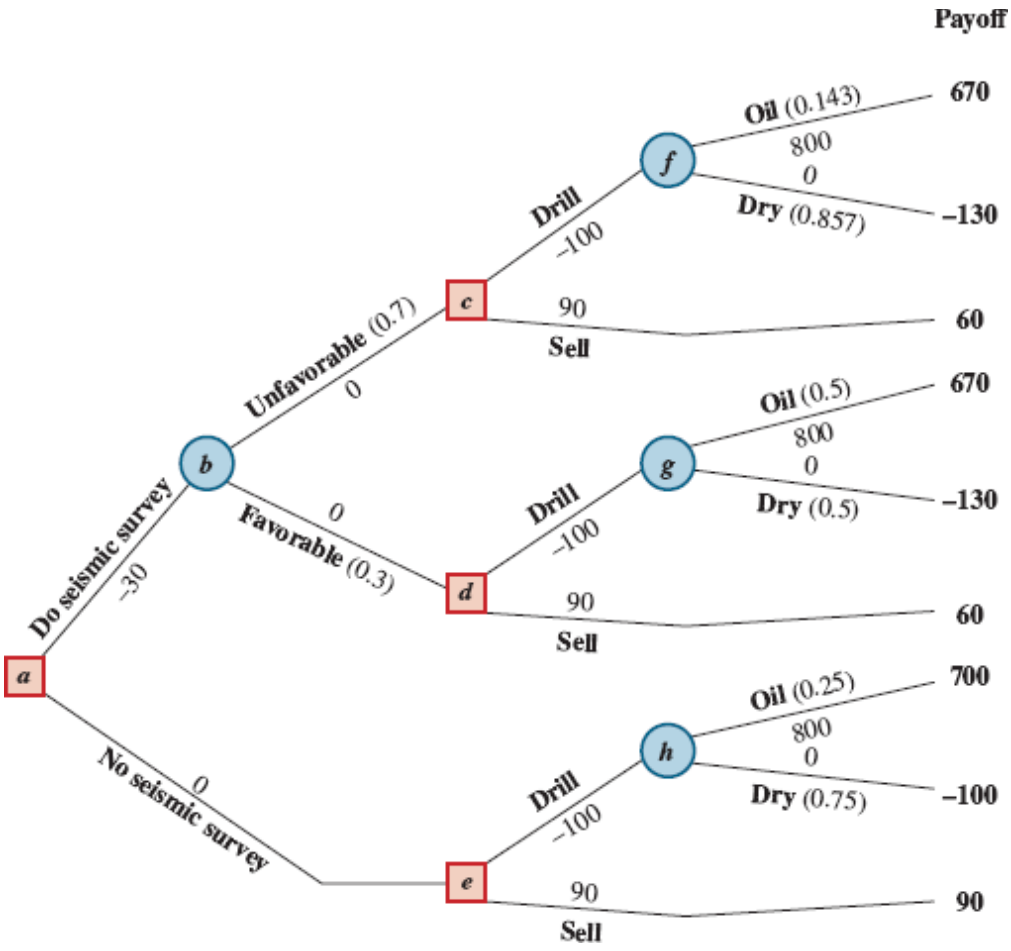
decision. Node *b* is an event node representing the random event of the outcome of the seismic survey. The two branches emanating from node *b* represent the two possible outcomes of the survey. Next comes the second decision (nodes *c, d,* and *e*) with its two possible choices. If the decision is to drill for oil, then we come to another event node (nodes *f, g,* and *h*), where its two branches correspond to the two possible states of nature.

page 526

The next step is to insert numbers into the decision tree as shown in Figure 12.15. The numbers under or over the branches that are *not* in parentheses are the cash flows (in thousands of dollars) that occur at those branches. For each path through the tree from node *a* to a final branch, these same numbers then are added to obtain the resulting total payoff shown in boldface to the right of that branch. To differentiate total payoffs from probabilities and cash flows at the branches, note that these total payoffs on the right side of Figure 12.15 are the *only* numbers in the decision tree that are shown in *boldface.*

FIGURE 12.15

The decision tree in Figure 12.14 after adding both the probabilities of random events and the payoffs.



An Application Vignette

Polio is a serious infectious disease that can lead to a permanent muscle weakness (especially in the legs) or even to death. Children are especially vulnerable, but it also can strike adults as well. There is no cure, so this was a particularly dreaded disease throughout the first half of the 20th century. Fortunately, relatively effective polio vaccines finally were developed in the 1950s, although they still failed to develop immunity for a small percentage of recipients.

However, even with extensive vaccination and revaccination programs, some polio outbreaks continued to occur. The polio virus is transmitted through person-to-person contact from an infected

person to a susceptible person. Such contact is impossible to avoid since some infected people show no symptoms and some susceptible people may have been vaccinated in the past. Consequently, approximately 350,000 paralytic polio cases were reported worldwide as late as the year 1988.

Therefore, the **Global Polio Eradication Initiative** was begun in 1988 to eventually eradicate polio completely from the face of the earth. One of the spearheading partners of this campaign continues to be the **U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).**

Considerable progress was made during the early years of this campaign. However, it then became clear that intensified efforts would be needed to complete the job in difficult parts of the world where civil war, internal strife, and hostility to outsiders greatly limited what health workers could do there. In light of these challenges, it had become more difficult than ever to make the best possible sequence of interrelated decisions (when and where to perform routine immunizations, supplemental immunizations, responses to outbreaks, stockpiling of vaccines, surveillance of possible infected areas, etc.) as needed. Therefore, throughout the early part of the 21st century, CDC management has relied on a variety of prescriptive analytics tools to identify how to make the best possible use of their limited resources. The most important of these techniques has been **decision analysis**. Very large **decision trees** have been repeatedly formulated and solved to identify optimal sequences of interrelated decisions.

This approach has been a very major factor in the continuing success of the polio eradication campaign. The number of annual diagnosed cases worldwide went from the hundreds of thousands at the beginning to less than 100 in 2015. (By 2021, polio had been eradicated around the world except in Afghanistan and Pakistan.) The campaign has realized an estimated total of **$40–$50 billion in net benefits** over a period of roughly three decades (so approximately **$1.5 billion annually**) for the countries that had been working on complete eradication in 2014 while protecting the

significantly larger net benefits enjoyed by the countries that no longer had any transmission of polio.

Because of the vital contribution of prescriptive analytics to this enormously important campaign, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention was awarded the prestigious **first prize** in the 2014 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: K. M. Thompson, R. J. Duintjer Tebbens, M. A. Pallansch, S. G. F. Wassilak, and S. L. Cochi, "Polio Eradicators Use Integrated Analytical Models to Make Better Decisions," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 45, no. 1 (January–February 2015): 5–25. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

The last set of numbers to be inserted into the decision tree is the probabilities of random events. In particular, since each branch emanating from an event node represents a possible random event, the probability of this event occurring from this node has been inserted in parentheses along this branch. From event node *h,* the probabilities are the *prior probabilities* of these states of nature, since no seismic survey has been conducted to obtain more information in this case. However, event nodes *f* and *g* lead out of a decision to do the seismic survey (and then to drill). Therefore, the probabilities from these event nodes are the *posterior probabilities* of the states of nature, given the outcome of the seismic survey, where these numbers are obtained from Table 12.8 or from cells D15:E16 in Figure 12.13.

The numbers in parentheses are probabilities.

Finally, we have the two branches emanating from event node *b.* The numbers here are the probabilities of these findings from the seismic survey, Favorable (FSS) or Unfavorable (USS), as given underneath the probability tree diagram in Figure 12.12 or in cells C15:C16 of Figure 12.13.

Performing the Analysis

Having constructed the decision tree, including its numbers, we now are ready to analyze the problem by using the following procedure.

1. Start at the right side of the decision tree and move left one column at a time. For each column, perform either step 2 or step 3 depending on whether the nodes in that column are event nodes or decision nodes.
2. For each event node, calculate its *expected payoff* by multiplying the expected payoff of each branch (shown in boldface to the right of the branch) by the probability of that branch and then summing these products. Record this expected payoff for each event node in boldface next to the node, and designate this quantity as also being the expected payoff for the branch leading to this node. (Note that payoffs and these expected payoffs are the *only* numbers being recorded in *boldface* in the decision tree.)

The expected payoff needs to be calculated for each event node.

3. For each decision node, compare the expected payoffs of its branches and choose the alternative whose branch has the largest expected payoff. In each case, record the choice on the decision tree.

page 528

To begin the procedure, consider the rightmost column of nodes, namely, event nodes *f, g,* and *h.* Applying step 2, their expected payoffs (EP) are calculated as

$$\text{EP} = \frac{1}{7}(670) + \frac{6}{7}(-130) = -15.7 \quad \text{for node } f$$

$$\text{EP} = \frac{1}{2}(670) + \frac{1}{2}(-130) = 270 \quad \text{for node } g$$

$$\text{EP} = \frac{1}{4}(700) + \frac{3}{4}(-100) = 100 \quad \text{for node } h$$

These expected payoffs then are placed above these nodes, as shown in Figure 12.16. (The next few paragraphs will describe the analysis leading to additional results displayed in this figure.) Next, we move one column to the left, which consists of decision nodes *c,*

d, and *e.* The expected payoff for a branch that leads to an event node now is recorded in boldface over that event node. Therefore, step 3 can be applied as follows:

Node *c*: Drill alternative has EP = −15.7
Sell alternative has EP = 60
60 > − 15.7, so choose the Sell alternative

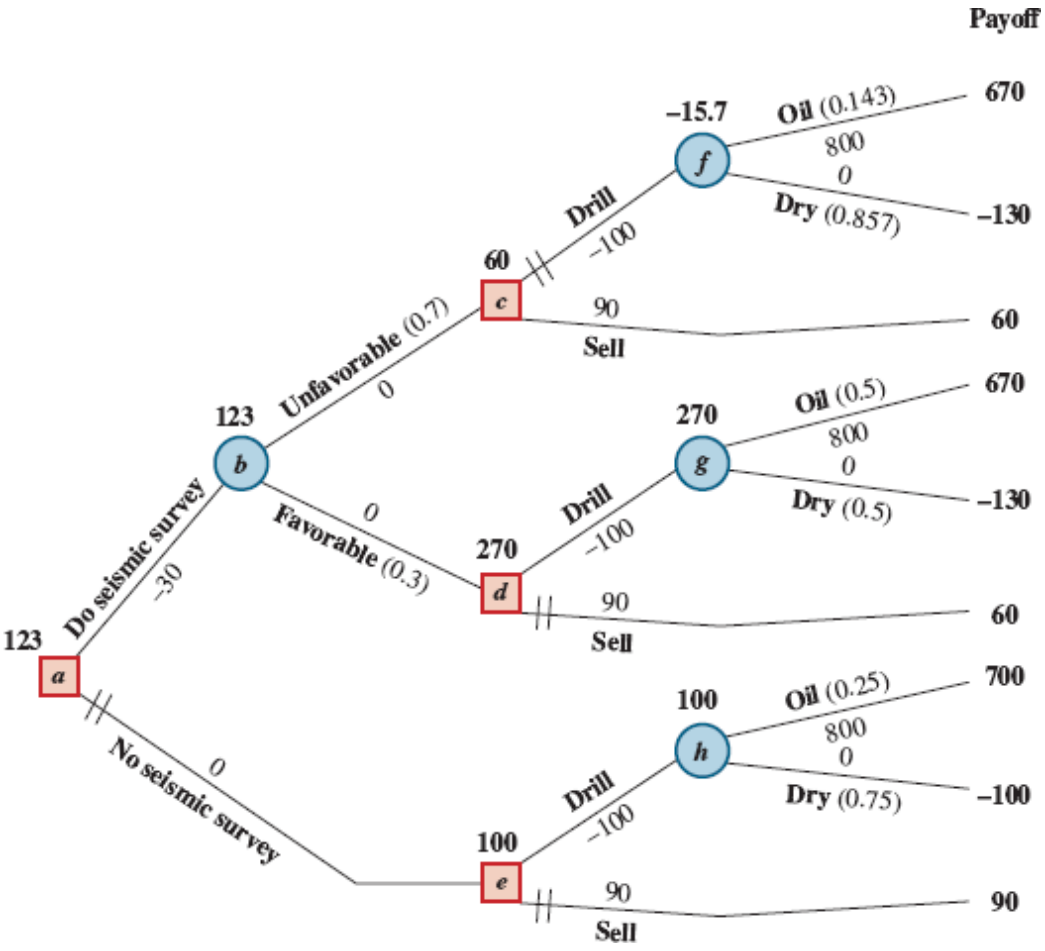
Node *d*: Drill alternative has EP = 270
Sell alternative has EP = 60
270 > 60, so choose the Drill alternative

Node *e*: Drill alternative has EP = 100
Sell alternative has EP = 90
100 > 90, so choose the Drill alternative

The expected payoff for each chosen alternative now would be recorded in boldface over its decision node, as shown in Figure 12.16. The chosen alternative also is indicated by inserting a double dash as a barrier through each rejected branch.

FIGURE 12.16

The final decision tree that records the analysis for the full Goferbroke Co. problem when using monetary payoffs.



A double dash indicates a rejected decision.

Next, moving one more column to the left brings us to node *b.* Since this is an event node, step 2 of the procedure needs to be applied. The expected payoff for each of its branches is recorded over the following decision node. Therefore, the expected payoff is

page 529

$$\text{EP} = 0.7(60) + 0.3(270) = 123 \qquad \text{for node } b$$

as recorded over this node in Figure 12.16.

Finally, we move left to node *a,* a decision node. Applying step 3 yields

Node *a*: Do seismic survey has EP = 123

No seismic survey has EP = 100

123 > 100, so choose Do seismic survey.

This expected payoff of 123 now would be recorded over the node, and a double dash inserted to indicate the rejected branch, as already shown in Figure 12.16.

This procedure has moved from right to left for analysis purposes. However, having completed the decision tree in this way, the decision maker now can read the tree from left to right to see the actual progression of events. The double dashes have closed off the undesirable paths. Therefore, given the payoffs for the final outcomes shown on the right side, *Bayes' decision rule* says to follow only the open paths from left to right to achieve the largest possible expected payoff.

The open paths (no double dashes) provide the optimal decision at each decision node.

Following the open paths from left to right in Figure 12.16 yields the following optimal policy, according to Bayes' decision rule.

Optimal Policy

Do the seismic survey.

If the result is unfavorable, sell the land.

If the result is favorable, drill for oil.

The expected payoff (including the cost of the seismic survey) is 123 ($123,000).

Expected Value of Sample Information

We have assumed so far that the cost of the seismic survey for the full Goferbroke Co. problem is known in advance to be $30,000. However, suppose that there is uncertainty about this cost. How would this change the analysis described above?

This uncertainty would raise the new key question of how much value would be added by performing the seismic survey. In other

words, how large can the cost of the seismic survey be before it would no longer be worthwhile to perform this survey. This quantity is referred to as the **expected value of sample information** (or EVSI for short), where "sample information" in this case refers to the information from the seismic survey.

The analysis needed to determine EVSI would begin by identifying two key quantities,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{EP (with more info)} &= \text{Expected payoff (excluding the cost of the survey) when the survey is done} \\ \text{EP (without more info)} &= \text{Expected payoff when the survey is not done} \end{aligned}$$

where Bayes' decision rule is applied to find both quantities. EP (with more info) can be obtained from the decision tree in Figure 12.16 by referring to the expected payoff of 123 for the branch leading from node *a* to node *b* (Do seismic survey) *except* that the (unknown) cost of the seismic survey should not be included, so 30 (the originally assumed cost of the survey) should be added to this expected payoff. Therefore,

$$\text{EP (with more info)} = 123 + 30 = 153$$

EP (without more info) is described at the beginning of Section 12.5 as the expected payoff from applying Bayes' decision rule with the original prior probabilities (so not using the seismic survey), where this expected payoff was found to be 100 in Figure 12.1 (and in cell A10 of Figure 12.7). So

$$\text{EP (without more info)} = 100$$

Now we can calculate the **expected value of sample information (EVSI)** as

expected value of sample information (EVSI)

The increase in the expected payoff that could be obtained by performing a test to obtain more information, excluding the cost of the test.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{EVSI} &= \text{EP (with more info)} - \text{EP (without more info)}\\ &= 153 - 100\\ &= 53\end{aligned}$$

Let

C = Best available estimate of the cost of the seismic survey (in thousands of dollars)

The final step in the analysis is to compare *C* and EVSI.

If $C < \text{EVSI}$, then perform the seismic survey.

If $C \geq \text{EVSI}$, then do not perform the seismic survey.

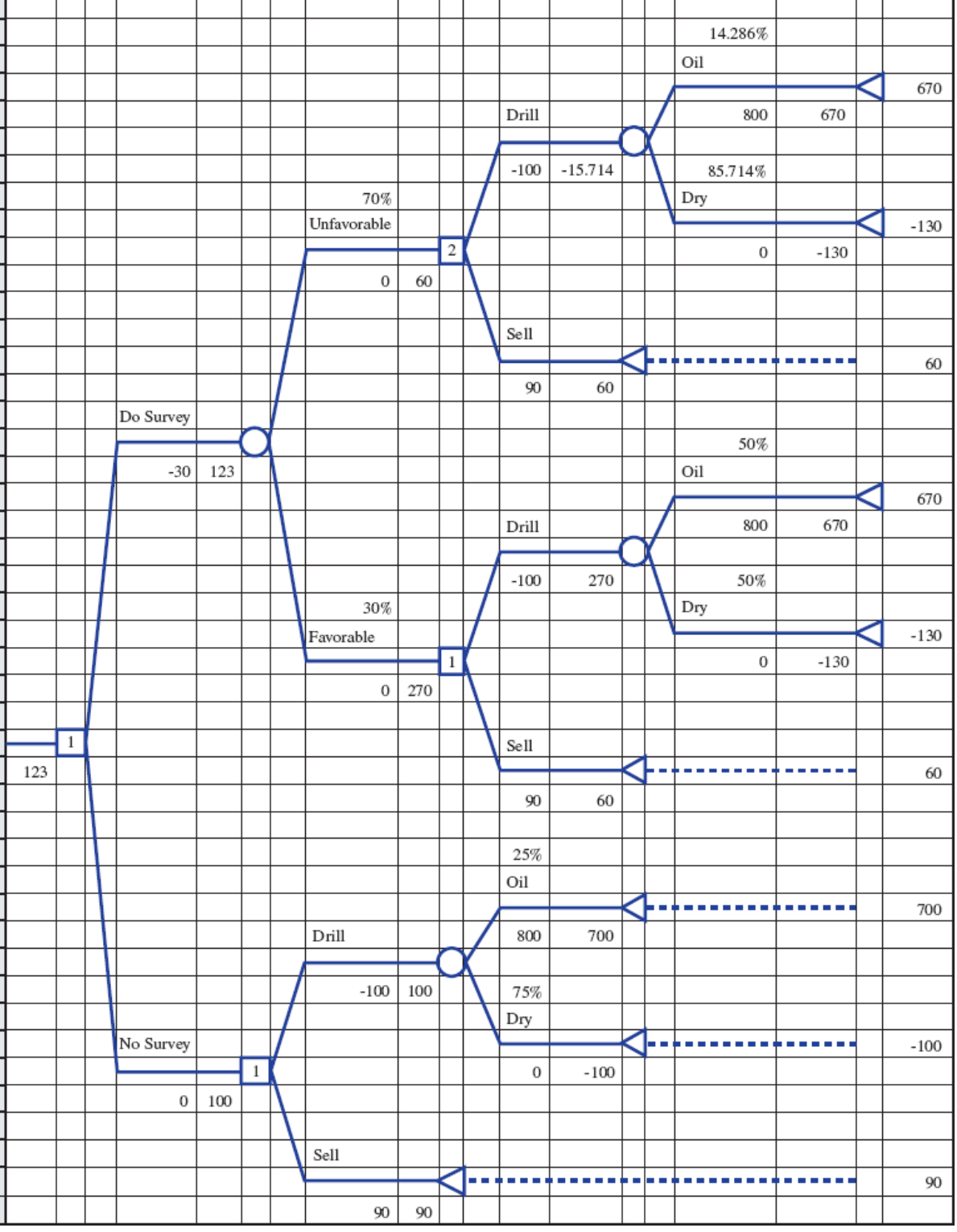
Using Analytic Solver

Using the procedures described in Section 12.3, the Decision Tree tools of Analytic Solver can be used to construct and solve the decision tree in Figure 12.16 on a spreadsheet. Figure 12.17 shows the decision tree obtained with Analytic Solver. Although the form is somewhat different, note that this decision tree is completely equivalent to the one in Figure 12.16. Besides the convenience of constructing the tree directly on a spreadsheet, Analytic Solver also provides the key advantage of automatically solving the decision tree. Rather than relying on hand calculations as in Figure 12.16, Analytic Solver instantaneously calculates all the expected payoffs at each stage of the tree, as shown below and to the left of each node, as soon as the decision tree is constructed. Instead of using double dashes, Analytic Solver puts a number inside each decision node indicating which branch should be chosen (assuming the branches emanating from that node are numbered consecutively from top to bottom).

FIGURE 12.17

The decision tree constructed and solved by Analytic Solver for the full Goferbroke Co. problem that also considers whether to do a seismic survey.

Decision Tree for Goferbroke Co. Problem (with Survey)



TreePlan is another popular software package for constructing and solving a decision tree. A supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** describes how to use this software.

Max's Reaction

Max: I see that this decision tree gives me some numbers to compare alternatives. But how reliable are those numbers?

Maria: Well, you have to remember that these average payoffs for the alternatives at the decision nodes are based on both the payoffs on the right and the probabilities at the event nodes. These probabilities are based in turn on the consulting geologist's numbers and the numbers you gave me on how frequently you get favorable seismic soundings when you have oil or when the land is dry.

Max: That doesn't sound so good. You know what I think about the consulting geologist's numbers. And the numbers I gave you were pretty rough estimates.

Maria: True. So the average payoffs shown in the decision tree are only approximations. This is when some sensitivity analysis can be helpful, like we did earlier before we considered doing the seismic survey.

Max: OK. So let's do it.

Review *Questions*

. What does a decision tree display?
. What is happening at a decision node?
. What is happening at an event node?
. What kinds of numbers need to be inserted into a decision tree before beginning the analysis?
. When performing the analysis, where do you begin on the decision tree and in which direction do you move for dealing with the nodes?
. What calculation needs to be performed at each event node?
. What comparison needs to be made at each decision node?

. What is meant by the expected value of sample information and how might it be used?

12.8 PERFORMING SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS ON THE PROBLEM WITH A SEQUENCE OF DECISIONS

page 531

page 532

Section 12.4 describes how the decision tree created with Analytic Solver (Figures 12.6 and 12.7) was used to perform sensitivity analysis for the first Goferbroke problem where the only decision being made was whether to drill for oil or sell the land (without conducting the seismic survey). The focus was on one particularly critical piece of data, the prior probability of oil, so the analysis involved checking whether the decision would change if the original value of this prior probability (0.25) were changed to various other trial values. New trial values first were considered in a trial-and-error manner (Figure 12.8) and then were investigated more systematically by constructing a data table (Figure 12.10).

Since Max Flyer wants to consider whether to have a seismic survey conducted before deciding whether to drill or sell, the relevant decision tree now is the one in Figure 12.17 instead of the one in Figure 12.6. With this sequence of decisions and the resulting need to obtain and apply posterior probabilities, conducting **sensitivity analysis** becomes somewhat more involved. Let's see how it is done.

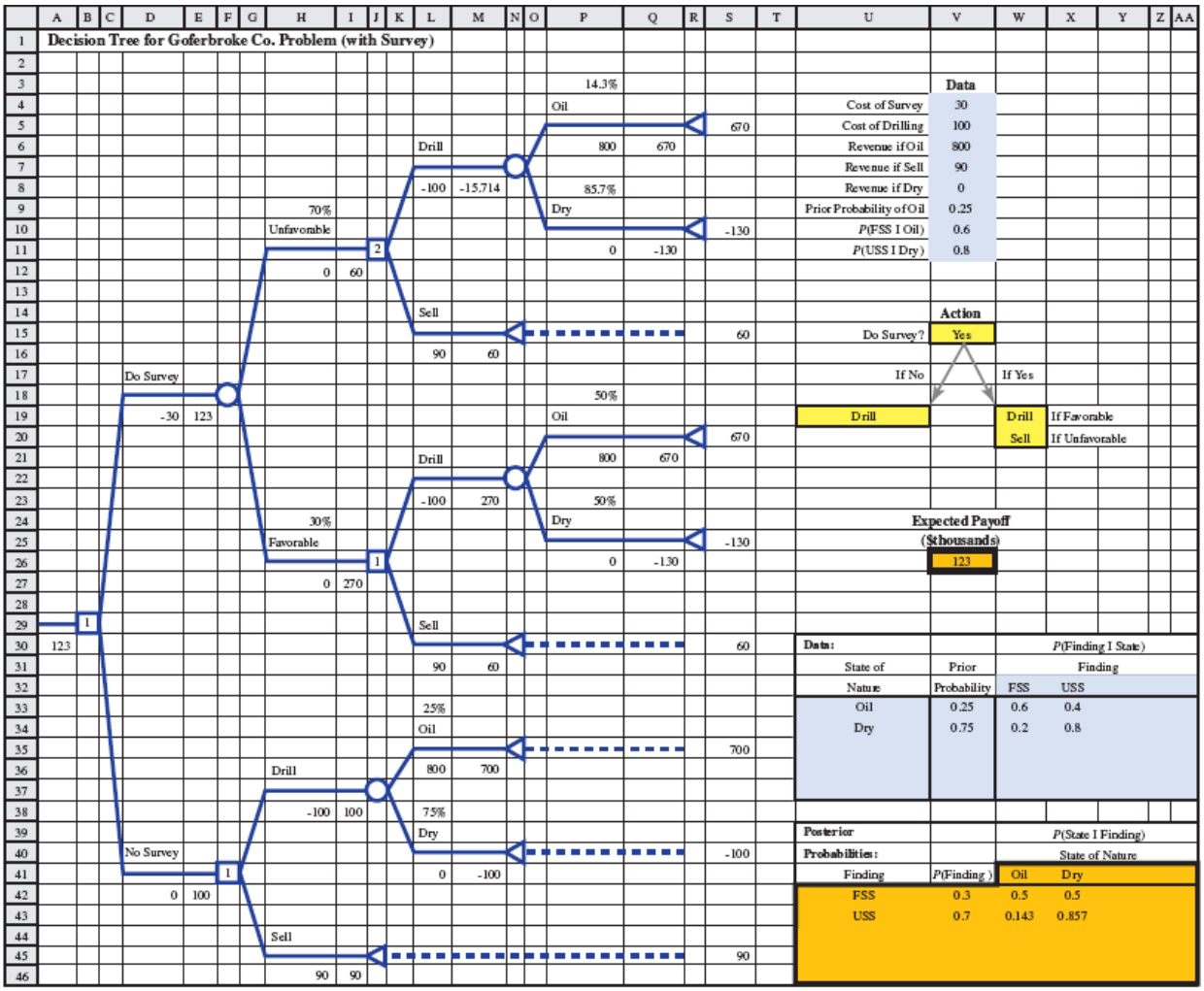
Organizing the Spreadsheet

As was done in Section 12.4, it is helpful to begin by consolidating the data and results into one section of the spreadsheet, as shown in Figure 12.18. The data cells in the decision tree now make reference to the consolidated data cells to the right of the decision tree (cells V4:V11). Similarly, the summarized results to the right of the decision

tree make reference to the output cells within the decision tree (the decision nodes in cells B29, F41, J11, and J26, as well as the expected payoff in cell A30).

FIGURE 12.18

In preparation for performing sensitivity analysis on the full Goferbroke Co. problem, the data and results have been consolidated on the spreadsheet to the right of the decision tree.



Range Name	Cell
CostOfDrilling	V5
CostOfSurvey	V4
PriorProbabilityOfOil	V9
ProbDryGivenFSS	X42
ProbDryGivenUSS	X43
ProbFSS	V42
ProbFSSGivenOil	V10
ProbOilGivenFSS	W42
ProbOilGivenUSS	W43
ProbUSS	V43
ProbUSSGivenDry	V11
RevenueIfDry	V8
RevenueIfOil	V6
RevenueIfSell	V7

	U	V	W	X
14		Action		
15	Do Survey?	=IF(B29=1,"Yes","No")		
16				
17	If No		If Yes	
18				
19	=IF(F41=1,"Drill","Sell")		=IF(J26=1,"Drill","Sell")	If Favorable
20			=IF(J11=1,"Drill","Sell")	If Unfavorable

	P
3	=ProbOilGivenUSS
4	Oil
5	
6	=RevenueIfOil
7	
8	=ProbDryGivenUSS
9	Dry
10	
11	=RevenueIfDry

	V
23	Expected
24	Payoff
25	($thousands)
26	=A30

	U	V	W	X
30	Data:		P(Finding I State)	
31	State of	Prior	Finding	
32	Nature	Probability	FSS	USS
33	Oil	=PriorProbabilityOfOil	=ProbFSSGivenOil	=1-ProbFSSGivenOil
34	Dry	=1-PriorProbabilityOfOil	=1-ProbUSSGivenDry	=ProbUSSGivenDry

Consolidating the data and results on the spreadsheet is important for sensitivity analysis.

The probability data in the decision tree are complicated by the fact that the posterior probabilities will need to be updated any time a change is made in any of the prior probability data. Fortunately, the template for calculating posterior probabilities (as shown in Figure 12.13) can be used to do these calculations. The relevant portion of this template (B3:H19) has been copied (using the Copy and Paste commands in the Edit menu) to the spreadsheet in Figure 12.18 (now appearing in U30:AA46). The data for the template refer to the probability data in the data cells PriorProbabilityOfOil (V9), ProbFSSGivenOil (V10), and ProbUSSGivenDry (V11), as shown in the formulas for cells V33:X34 at the bottom of Figure 12.18. The template automatically calculates the probability of each finding and the posterior probabilities (in cells V42:X43) based on these data. The decision tree then refers to these calculated probabilities when they are needed, as shown in the formulas for cells P3:P11 in Figure 12.18.

While it takes some time and effort to consolidate the data and results, including all the necessary cross-referencing, this step is truly essential for performing sensitivity analysis. Many pieces of data are used in several places on the decision tree. For example, the revenue if Goferbroke finds oil appears in cells P6, P21, and L36. Performing sensitivity analysis on this piece of data now requires changing its value in only one place (cell V6) rather than three (cells P6, P21, and L36). The benefits of consolidation are even more important for the probability data. Changing any prior probability may cause *all* the posterior probabilities to change. By including the posterior probability template, the prior probability can be changed in one place and then all the other probabilities are calculated and updated appropriately.

Organize the spreadsheet so that any piece of data needs to be changed in only one place.

After making any change in the cost data, revenue data, or probability data in Figure 12.18, the spreadsheet nicely summarizes the new results after the actual work to obtain these results is instantly done by the posterior probability template and the decision tree. Therefore, experimenting with alternative data values in a trial-and-error manner is one useful way of performing sensitivity analysis.

Now let's see how this sensitivity analysis can be done more systematically by using a data table.

Using a Data Table to Do Sensitivity Analysis Systematically

To systematically determine how the decisions and expected payoffs change as the prior probability of oil (or any other data) changes, a data table can be generated with Excel by using the same procedure described in Section 12.4. First make a table on the spreadsheet with headings as shown in columns Y through AD in Figure 12.19. In the first column of the table (Y5:Y15), list the trial values for the data cell (the prior probability of oil), except leave the first row blank. The headings of the next columns specify which output will be evaluated. For each of these columns, use the first row of the table (cells Y4:AD4) to write an equation that refers to the relevant output cell. In this case, the cells of interest are (1) the decision of whether to do the survey (V15), (2) if so, whether to drill if the survey is favorable or unfavorable (W19 and W20), (3) if not, whether to drill (U19), and (4) the value of ExpectedPayoff (V26). The equations for Y4:AD4 referring to these output cells are shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 12.19.

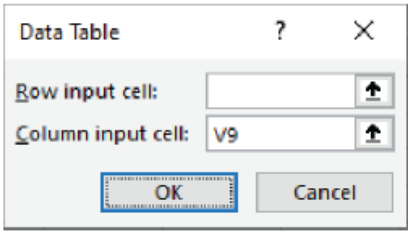
page 533
page 534

FIGURE 12.19

The data table that shows the optimal policy and expected payoff for various trial values of the prior probability of oil.

	Y	Z	AA	AB	AC	AD
1	Prior					Expected
2	Probability	Do	If Survey	If Survey	If No	Payoff
3	of Oil	Survey?	Favorable	Unfavorable	Survey	($thousands)
4		Yes	Drill	Sell	Drill	123
5	**0**	**No**	Sell	Sell	**Sell**	**90**
6	**0.1**	**No**	Drill	Sell	**Sell**	**90**
7	**0.2**	**Yes**	**Drill**	**Sell**	Sell	**102.8**
8	**0.3**	**Yes**	**Drill**	**Sell**	Drill	**143.2**
9	**0.4**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**220**
10	**0.5**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**300**
11	**0.6**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**380**
12	**0.7**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**460**
13	**0.8**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**540**
14	**0.9**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**620**
15	**1**	**No**	Drill	Drill	**Drill**	**700**

	Y	Z	AA	AB	AC	AD
1	Prior					Expected
2	Probability	Do	If Survey	If Survey	If No	Payoff
3	of Oil	Survey?	Favorable	Unfavorable	Survey	($thousands)
4		=V15	=W19	=W20	=U19	=ExpectedPayoff



Microsoft Corporation

Next, select the entire table (Y4:AD15) and then choose Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab. In the Data Table dialog box (as shown at the bottom right of Figure 12.19), indicate the column input cell (V9), which refers to the data cell that is being changed in the first column of the table.

Clicking OK then generates the table shown in Figure 12.19. For each trial value for the data cell listed in the first column of the table, the corresponding output cell values are calculated and displayed in the other columns of the table. Some of the output in the data table is not relevant. For example, when the decision is to not do the survey in column Z, the results in columns AA and AB (what to do given favorable or unfavorable survey results) are not relevant. Similarly, when the decision is to do the survey in column Z, the results in column AC (what to do if you don't do the survey) are not relevant. The relevant output has been formatted in boldface to make it stand out compared to the irrelevant output.

Figure 12.19 reveals that the optimal initial decision switches from Sell without a survey to doing the survey somewhere between 0.1 and 0.2 for the prior probability of oil and then switches again to Drill without a survey somewhere between 0.3 and 0.4. Using the spreadsheet in Figure 12.18, trial-and-error analysis soon leads to the following conclusions about how the optimal policy depends on this probability.

Optimal Policy

Let p = Prior probability of oil.

If $p \le 0.168$, then sell the land (no seismic survey).

If $0.169 \le p \le 0.308$, then do the survey: drill if favorable and sell if not.

If $p \ge 0.309$, then drill for oil (no seismic survey).

Max's Reaction

Max: Very interesting. I especially liked the way we were able to use that sensitivity analysis spreadsheet to see immediately what would happen when we change some of the numbers. And there was one thing that I found particularly encouraging.

Maria: What was that?

Max: When we changed that prior probability of oil to the most plausible nearby values, it kept coming back with the same answer. Do the seismic survey and then drill only if the survey is favorable. Otherwise, sell. So the consulting geologist's numbers can be off by quite a bit and we still would be doing the right thing.

Maria: Yes, that was a key finding, wasn't it? OK. Does this mean that you are comfortable now with a decision to proceed with the seismic survey and then either drill or sell depending on the outcome of the survey?

Max: Not quite. There is still one thing that bothers me.

Maria: What's that?

Max: Suppose the seismic survey gives us a favorable seismic sounding, so we drill. If the land turns out to be dry, then I'm out 130,000 bucks! As I said at the beginning, that would nearly put us out of business. That scares me. I currently am shorter of working capital than I normally am. Therefore, losing $130,000 now would hurt more than it normally does. It doesn't look like this approach is really taking that into account.

Maria: No, you're right. It really doesn't. This approach just looks at average monetary values. That isn't good enough when you're dealing with such large amounts. You wouldn't be willing to flip a coin to determine whether you win or lose $130,000, right?

Considering average *monetary* values isn't good enough when uncomfortably large losses can occur.

Max: No, I sure wouldn't.

Maria: OK, that's the tipoff. As I mentioned the first time we talked about this problem, I think the circumstances here indicate that we need to go beyond dollars and cents to look at the consequences of the possible outcomes. Fortunately, decision analysis has a way of doing this by introducing *utilities.* The basic idea is that the utility of an outcome measures the true value to you of that outcome rather than just the monetary value. So by expressing payoffs in terms of utilities, the decision tree analysis would find the average utility at each node instead of the average monetary value. So now the decisions would be based on giving you the highest possible average utility.

Review *Questions*

. When preparing to perform sensitivity analysis, how should one begin organizing the spreadsheet that contains the decision tree?

. Performing sensitivity analysis on a certain piece of data should require changing its value in how many places on the spreadsheet?

. What conclusion was drawn for the full Goferbroke problem regarding how the decision should depend on the prior probability of oil?

12.9 USING UTILITIES TO BETTER REFLECT THE VALUES OF PAYOFFS

Thus far, when applying Bayes' decision rule, we have assumed that the expected payoff in *monetary terms* is the appropriate measure of the consequences of taking an action. However, in many situations where very large amounts of money are involved, this assumption is inappropriate.

For example, suppose that an individual is offered the choice of (1) accepting a 50–50 chance of winning $100,000 or (2) receiving $40,000 with certainty. Many people would prefer the $40,000 even though the expected payoff on the 50–50 chance of winning $100,000 is $50,000. Similarly, a company may be unwilling to invest a large sum of money in a new product, even when the expected profit is substantial, if there is a risk of losing its investment and thereby becoming bankrupt. By the same reasoning, individuals buy insurance to safeguard against a disastrous outcome even though the insurance is a poor investment from the viewpoint of the expected payoff.

page 536

Do these examples invalidate Bayes' decision rule? Fortunately, the answer is no. The discipline of decision analysis provides an excellent alternative way of applying Bayes' decision rule. When the monetary payoffs don't reflect the *true values* of the decision maker's preferences, then decision analysis says to use these true values instead to apply Bayes' decision rule. The decision maker's true value for any particular outcome is called the **utility** of that outcome. Using utilities instead of monetary payoffs, Bayes' decision rule says to choose the decision alternative that provides the largest expected utility.

To illustrate, consider the above example where an individual is offered the choice of (1) accepting a 50–50 chance of winning $100,000 or (2) receiving $40,000 with certainty. Suppose that this individual is indifferent between these two alternatives. According to

utility theory, this indicates that the individual's utility of receiving $100,000 is exactly twice the utility of receiving $40,000 since the *expected utility* of the first alternative is 0.5 times the utility of definitely receiving $40,000. If these two alternatives are the two best decision alternatives for this lucky individual, then Bayes' decision rule says that these two alternatives tie for having the largest expected utility, so either can be chosen.

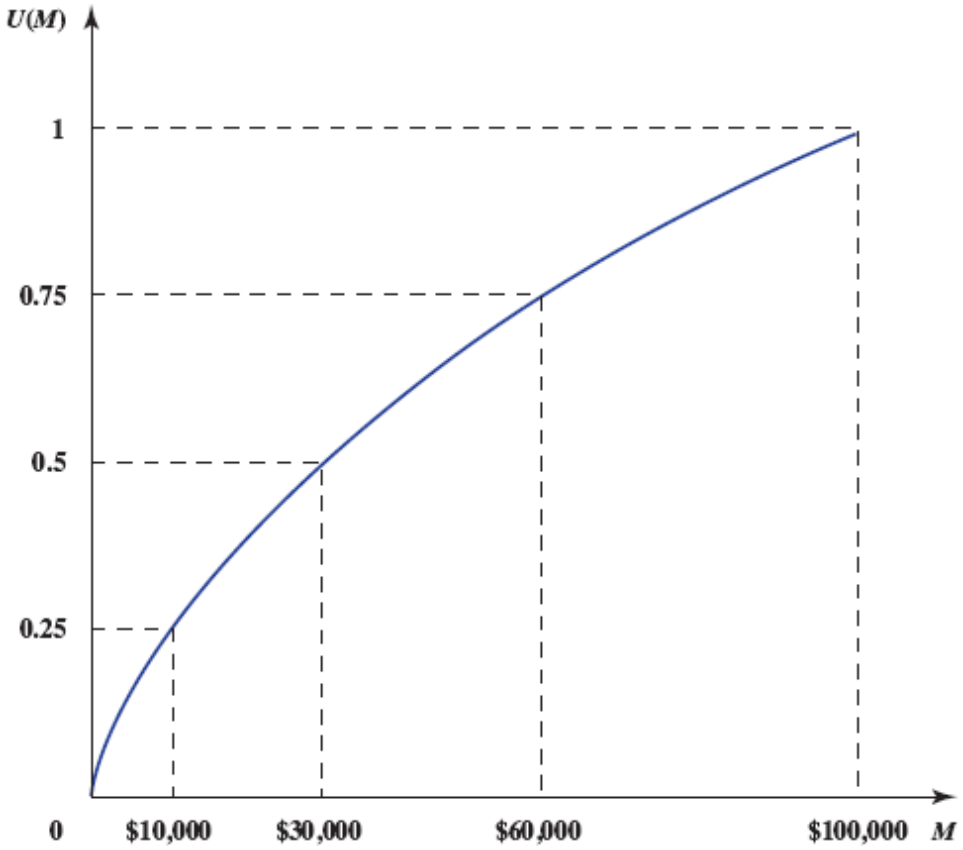
A tricky feature of utility theory is that, in contrast to monetary payoffs, it isn't obvious how to assign the decision maker's "true values" to the utilities for the various possible payoffs. Fortunately, there is a way of transforming monetary values to an appropriate scale that reflects the decision maker's preferences. This scale is called the *utility function for money.*

Utility Functions for Money

Figure 12.20 shows a typical **utility function *U(M)*** for money ***M***. The intuitive interpretation is that it indicates that an individual having this utility function would value obtaining $30,000 twice as much as $10,000 and would value obtaining $100,000 twice as much as $30,000. This reflects the fact that the person's highest-priority needs would be met by the first $10,000. Having this decreasing slope of the function as the amount of money increases is referred to as having a *decreasing marginal utility for money.* Such an individual is referred to as being **risk averse**.

FIGURE 12.20

A typical utility function for money, where $U(M)$ is the utility of obtaining an amount of money M.



utility function for money, *U(M)*

A plot of utility versus the amount of money *M* being received.

risk-averse individual

An individual whose utility function for money has a decreasing slope as the amount of money increases.

However, not all individuals have a decreasing marginal utility for money. Some people are **risk seekers** instead of *risk averse,* and they go through life looking for the "big score." The slope of their utility function *increases* as the amount of money increases, so they have an *increasing marginal utility for money.*

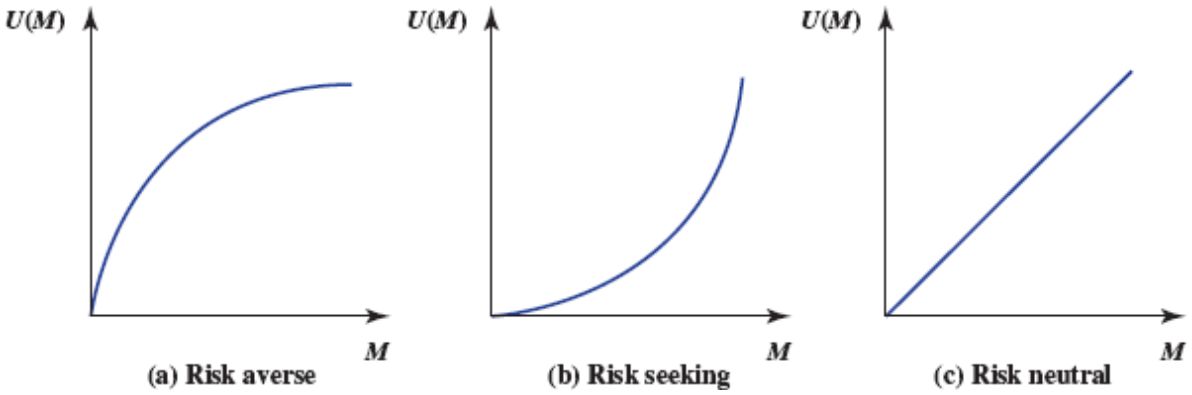
risk seeker

An individual whose utility function for money has an increasing slope as the amount of money increases.

Figure 12.21 compares the shape of the utility function for money for risk-averse and risk-seeking individuals. Also shown is the intermediate case of a **risk-neutral individual,** who prizes money at its face value. Such an individual's utility for money is simply proportional to the amount of money involved. Although some people appear to be risk neutral when only small amounts of money are involved, it is unusual to be truly risk neutral with very large amounts.

FIGURE 12.21

The shape of the utility function for money for (a) risk-averse, (b) risk-seeking, and (c) risk-neutral individuals.



risk-neutral individual

An individual whose utility for money is proportional to the amount of money involved.

Two different individuals can have very different utility functions for money.

It also is possible to exhibit a mixture of these kinds of behavior. For example, an individual might be essentially risk neutral with small amounts of money, then become a risk seeker with moderate amounts, and then turn risk averse with large amounts. In addition, one's attitude toward risk can shift over time depending on circumstances.

Managers of a business firm need to consider the company's circumstances and the collective philosophy of top management in determining the appropriate attitude toward risk when making managerial decisions.

The fact that different people have different utility functions for money has an important implication for decision making in the face of uncertainty.

When a *utility function for money* is incorporated into a decision analysis approach to a problem, this utility function must be constructed to fit the current preferences and values of the decision maker involved. (The decision maker can be either a single individual or a group of people.)

The key to constructing the utility function for money to fit the decision maker is the following fundamental property of utility functions.

page 537

Fundamental Property: Under the assumptions of utility theory, the decision maker's *utility function for money* has the property that the decision maker is *indifferent* between two alternative courses of action if the two alternatives have the *same expected utility.*

To illustrate, suppose that the decision maker has the utility function shown in Figure 12.20. Further suppose that the decision maker is offered the following opportunity.

Offer: An opportunity to obtain either \$100,000 (utility = 1) with probability p or nothing (utility = 0) with probability $(1 - p)$.

Thus, by weighting the two possible utilities (1 and 0) by their probabilities, the expected utility is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{E(utility)} &= p + 0(1 - p) \\ &= p \text{ for this offer} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, for *each* of the following three pairs of alternatives, the above fundamental property indicates that the decision maker is indifferent between the first and second alternatives.

In all three of these cases, a decision maker with the utility function in Figure 12.20 would be indifferent between the two alternatives because they have the same expected utility.

1. *First alternative:* The offer with $p = 0.25$, so E(utility) = 0.25.
   Second alternative: Definitely obtain \$10,000, so utility = 0.25.
2. *First alternative:* The offer with $p = 0.5$, so E(utility) = 0.5.
   Second alternative: Definitely obtain \$30,000, so utility = 0.5.
3. *First alternative:* The offer with $p = 0.75$, so E(utility) = 0.75.
   Second alternative: Definitely obtain \$60,000, so utility = 0.75.

page 538

This example also illustrates one way in which the decision maker's utility function for money can be constructed in the first place. The decision maker would be made the same hypothetical offer to obtain a large amount of money (e.g., \$100,000) with probability *p,* or nothing (utility = 0) otherwise. Then, for each of a few smaller amounts of money (e.g., \$10,000, \$30,000, and \$60,000), the decision maker would be asked to choose a value of *p* that would make him or her *indifferent* between the offer and definitely obtaining that amount of money. The utility of the smaller amount of money then is *p* times the utility of the large amount. When the utility of the large amount has been set equal to 1, as in Figure 12.20, this conveniently makes the utility of the smaller amount simply equal to *p.* The utility values in Figure 12.20 imply that the decision maker has chosen $p = 0.25$ when $M =$ \$10,000, $p = 0.5$ when $M =$ \$30,000, and $p = 0.75$ when $M =$ \$60,000. (Constructing the utility function in this way is an example of the *equivalent lottery method* described later in this section.) The *scale* of the utility function is irrelevant. In other words, it doesn't matter whether the values of $U(M)$ at the dashed lines in Figure 12.20 are 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1 (as shown) or 10,000, 20,000, 30,000, 40,000, or whatever. All the utilities can be multiplied by any positive constant without affecting which decision alternative will have the largest expected utility. It also is possible to add the same constant (positive or negative) to all the utilities without

affecting which decision alternative will have the largest expected utility.

For these reasons, we have the liberty to set the value of *U(M)* arbitrarily for two values of *M,* so long as the higher monetary value has the higher utility. It is particularly convenient to set *U(M)* = 0 for the smallest value of *M* under consideration and to set *U(M)* = 1 for the largest *M,* as was done in Figure 12.20. By assigning a utility of 0 to the worst outcome and a utility of 1 to the best outcome, and then determining the utilities of the other outcomes accordingly, it becomes easy to see the relative utility of each outcome along the scale from worst to best.

Now we are ready to summarize the basic role of utility functions in decision analysis.

The objective now is to maximize the expected utility rather than the expected payoff in monetary terms.

When the decision maker's utility function for money is used to measure the relative worth of the various possible monetary outcomes, *Bayes' decision rule* replaces monetary payoffs by the corresponding utilities. Therefore, the optimal decision (or series of decisions) is the one that *maximizes the expected utility.*

Only utility functions for *money* have been discussed here. However, we should mention that utility functions can sometimes still be constructed when some or all of the important consequences of the decision alternatives are *not* monetary in nature. (For example, the consequences of a doctor's decision alternatives in treating a patient involve the future health of the patient.) This is not necessarily easy, since it may require making value judgments about the relative desirability of rather intangible consequences. Nevertheless, under these circumstances, it is important to incorporate such value judgments into the decision process.

Dealing with the Goferbroke Co. Problem

Recall that the Goferbroke Co. is operating without much capital, so a loss of $100,000 would be quite serious. As the owner of the company, Max already has gone heavily into debt to keep going. The worst-case scenario would be to come up with $30,000 for a seismic survey and then still lose $100,000 by drilling when there is no oil. This scenario would not bankrupt the company at this point but definitely would leave it in a precarious financial position.

On the other hand, striking oil is an exciting prospect, since earning $700,000 finally would put the company on fairly solid financial footing.

Max is the decision maker for this problem. Therefore, to prepare for using utilities to analyze the problem, it is necessary to construct Max's utility function for money, $U(M)$, where we will express the amount of money M in units of thousands of dollars.

page 539

We start by assigning utilities of 0 and 1, respectively, to the smallest and largest possible payoffs. Since the smallest possible payoff is $M = -130$ (a loss of $130,000) and the largest is $M = 700$ (a gain of $700,000), this gives $U(-130) = 0$ and $U(700) = 1$.

To determine the utilities for other possible monetary payoffs, it is necessary to probe Max's attitude toward risk. Especially important are his feelings about the consequences of the worst possible loss ($130,000) and the best possible gain ($700,000), as well as how he compares these consequences. Let us eavesdrop as Maria probes these feelings with Max.

Interviewing Max

Maria: Well now, these utilities are intended to reflect your feelings about the true value to you of these various possible payoffs. Therefore, to pin down what your utilities are, we need to talk some about how you feel about these payoffs and their consequences for the company.

Max: Fine.

Maria: A good place to begin would be the best and worst possible cases. The possibility of gaining $700,000 or losing $130,000.

Max: Those are the big ones all right.

Maria: OK, suppose you drill without paying for a seismic survey and then you find oil, so your profit is about $700,000. What would that do for the company?

Max: A lot. That would finally give me the capital I need to become more of a major player in this business. I then could take a shot at finding a big oil field. That big strike I've talked about.

Maria: OK, good. Now let's talk about the consequences if you were to get that biggest possible loss instead. Suppose you pay for a seismic survey, then you drill and the land is dry. So you're out about $130,000. How bad would that be? What kind of future would the company have?

Max: Well, let me put it this way. It would put the company in a pretty uncomfortable financial position. I would need to work hard on getting some more financing. Then we would need to cautiously work our way out of the hole by forming some partnerships for some low-risk, low-gain drilling. But I think we could do it. I've been in that position a couple times before and come out of it. We'd be OK.

Maria: It sounds like you wouldn't be overly worried about such a loss as long as you have reasonable odds for a big payoff to justify this risk.

Max: That's right.

Maria: OK, now let's talk about those odds. What I'm going to do is set up a simpler hypothetical situation. Suppose these are your alternatives. One is to drill. If you find oil, you clear $700,000. If the land is dry, you're out $130,000. The only other alternative is to sell the land for $90,000. I know this isn't your actual situation since $700,000 does not include the cost of a survey whereas the loss of $130,000 does, but let's pretend that these are your alternatives.

Max: I don't understand why you want to talk about a situation that is different from what we are facing.

Maria: Trust me. Considering these kinds of hypothetical situations is going to enable us to determine your utilities.

Max: OK.

Maria: Now presumably if you had a 50–50 chance of either clearing $700,000 or losing $130,000, you would drill.

Max: Sure.

Maria: If you had a smaller chance, say one-in-four of gaining $700,000, versus a three-in-four chance of losing $130,000, would you choose to drill or sell the land for $90,000?

Max: Well, that's almost the original decision we were trying to make, before we considered the seismic survey. However, there is one big difference. Now you're asking me to suppose that the loss if there is no oil is $130,000 rather than $100,000. The higher loss would be quite a bit more painful. I wouldn't be willing to take this risk with just a one-in-four chance of gaining $700,000.

Maria: OK, so now we know that the point at which you would be indifferent between going ahead or not is somewhere between having a one-in-four chance and a 50–50 chance of gaining $700,000 rather than losing $130,000. Let's see if we can pin down just where your **point of indifference** is within this range from one-in-four and 50–50. Let's try a one-in-three chance. Would you go ahead and drill with a one-in-three chance of gaining $700,000 versus a two-in-three chance of losing $130,000, or would you choose to sell the land for $90,000?

point of indifference

The point where the decision maker is indifferent between the two hypothetical alternatives in the equivalent lottery method. (Section 12.9)

Max: Hmm. That's not so clear. What would be the average payoff in this case?

Maria: Almost $147,000.

Max: Not bad. Hmm, one chance in three of gaining $700,000. That's tempting. But two chances in three of losing $130,000 with all the problems involved with that. I don't know. $90,000 would be a sure thing. That's a tough one.

Maria: OK, let's try this. Suppose your chances of gaining $700,000 were a little better than one-in-three. Would you do it?

Max: Yes, I think so.

Maria: And if your chances were a little under one-in-three?

Max: Then I don't think I would do it.

Maria: OK. You've convinced me that your point of indifference is one-in-three. That's exactly what I needed to know.

Finding *U*(90)

Max has indeed given Maria just the information she needs to determine *U*(90), Max's utility for a payoff of 90 (a gain of $90,000). Recall that *U*(− 130) already has been set at *U*(−130) = 0 and that *U*(700) already has been set at *U*(700) = 1. Here is the procedure that Maria is using to find *U*(90).

The decision maker (Max) is offered two alternatives, A_1 and A_2.

A_1: Obtain a payoff of 700 with probability *p.*

Obtain a payoff of −130 with probability (1 − *p*).

A_2: Definitely obtain a payoff of 90.

Question to the decision maker: What value of *p* makes you *indifferent* between these two alternatives? Recall that Max has chosen *p* = 1/3.

For a given choice of *p,* the expected utility for A_1 is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{E(utility for } A_1) &= pU(700) + (1-p)U(-130) \\ &= p(1) + (1-p)\,(0) \\ &= p \end{aligned}$$

If the decision maker is indifferent between the two alternatives, the fundamental property of utility functions says that the two alternatives must have the same expected utility. Therefore, the utility for A_2 must also be *p.* Since Max chose a *point of indifference* of $p = 1/3$, the utility for A_2 must be 1/3, so $U(90) = 1/3$.

The Equivalent Lottery Method for Determining Utilities

The above procedure for finding $U(90)$ illustrates that the key to finding the utility for any payoff *M* is having the decision maker select a *point of indifference* between two alternatives, where one of them (A_1) involves a *lottery* between the largest payoff and the smallest payoff and the other alternative (A_2) is to receive a sure payoff of *M.* At the point of indifference, the lottery is *equivalent* to the sure payoff in the sense that they have the same expected utility, so the procedure is referred to as the **equivalent lottery method.** Here is an outline of the procedure.

equivalent lottery method

The procedure for finding the decision maker's utility for a specific amount of money by comparing two hypothetical alternatives where one involves a gamble.

Equivalent Lottery Method

1. Determine the largest potential payoff (call it *maximum*), and assign it a utility of 1:

$$U(\text{maximum}) = 1$$

2. Determine the smallest potential payoff (call it *minimum*), and assign it a utility of 0:

$$U(\text{minimum}) = 0$$

3. To determine the utility of another potential payoff *M,* the decision maker is offered the following two hypothetical alternatives:

A_1: Obtain a payoff of *maximum* with probability *p.*
Obtain a payoff of *minimum* with probability 1 − *p.*

A_2: Definitely obtain a payoff of *M.*

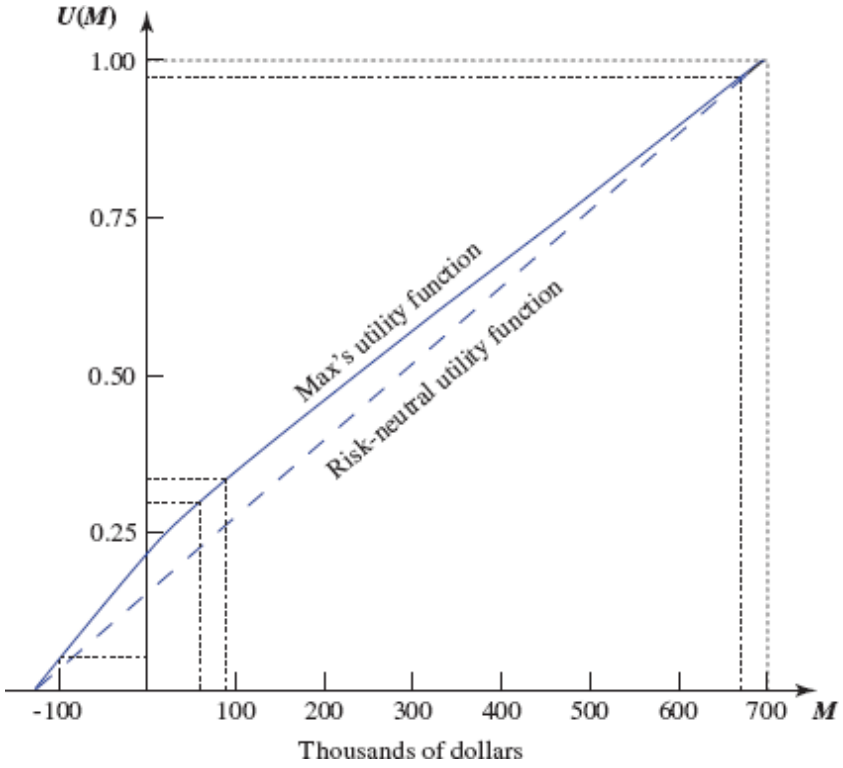
Question to the decision maker: What value of *p* makes you *indifferent* between these two alternatives? Then *U(M) = p.*

Constructing Max's Utility Function for Money

We now have found utilities for three possible payoffs (−130, 90, and 700) for Goferbroke. Plotting these values on a graph of the utility function *U(M)* versus the monetary payoff *M* and then drawing a smooth curve through these points gives the curve shown in Figure 12.22.

FIGURE 12.22

Max's utility function for money as the owner of Goferbroke Co.



This curve is an estimate of Max's utility function for money. To find the utility values for the other possible payoffs (−100, 60, and 670), Max could repeat step 3 of the equivalent lottery method for M = −100, M = 60, and M = 670. However, since −100 is so close to −130, 60 is so close to 90, and 670 is so close to 700, an alternative is to estimate these utilities as the values on the curve in Figure 12.22 at M = −100, M = 60, and M = 670. Following the corresponding dotted lines in the figure leads to $U(-100) = 0.05$, $U(60) = 0.30$, and $U(670) = 0.97$. Table 12.9 gives the complete list of possible payoffs and their utilities.

TABLE 12.9

Utilities for the Goferbroke Co. Problem

Monetary Payoff, M	Utility, $U(M)$
−130	0
−100	0.05

Monetary Payoff, *M*	Utility, *U*(*M*)
60	0.30
90	0.333
670	0.97
700	1

For comparative purposes, the dashed line in Figure 12.22 shows the utility function that would result if Max were completely *risk neutral.* By nature, Max is inclined to be a risk seeker. However, the difficult financial circumstances of his company that he badly wants to keep solvent has forced him to adopt a moderately risk-averse stance in addressing his current decisions.

Using a Decision Tree to Analyze the Problem with Utilities

page 542

Now that Max's utility function for money has been identified in Table 12.9 (and Figure 12.22), this information can be used with a decision tree as summarized next.

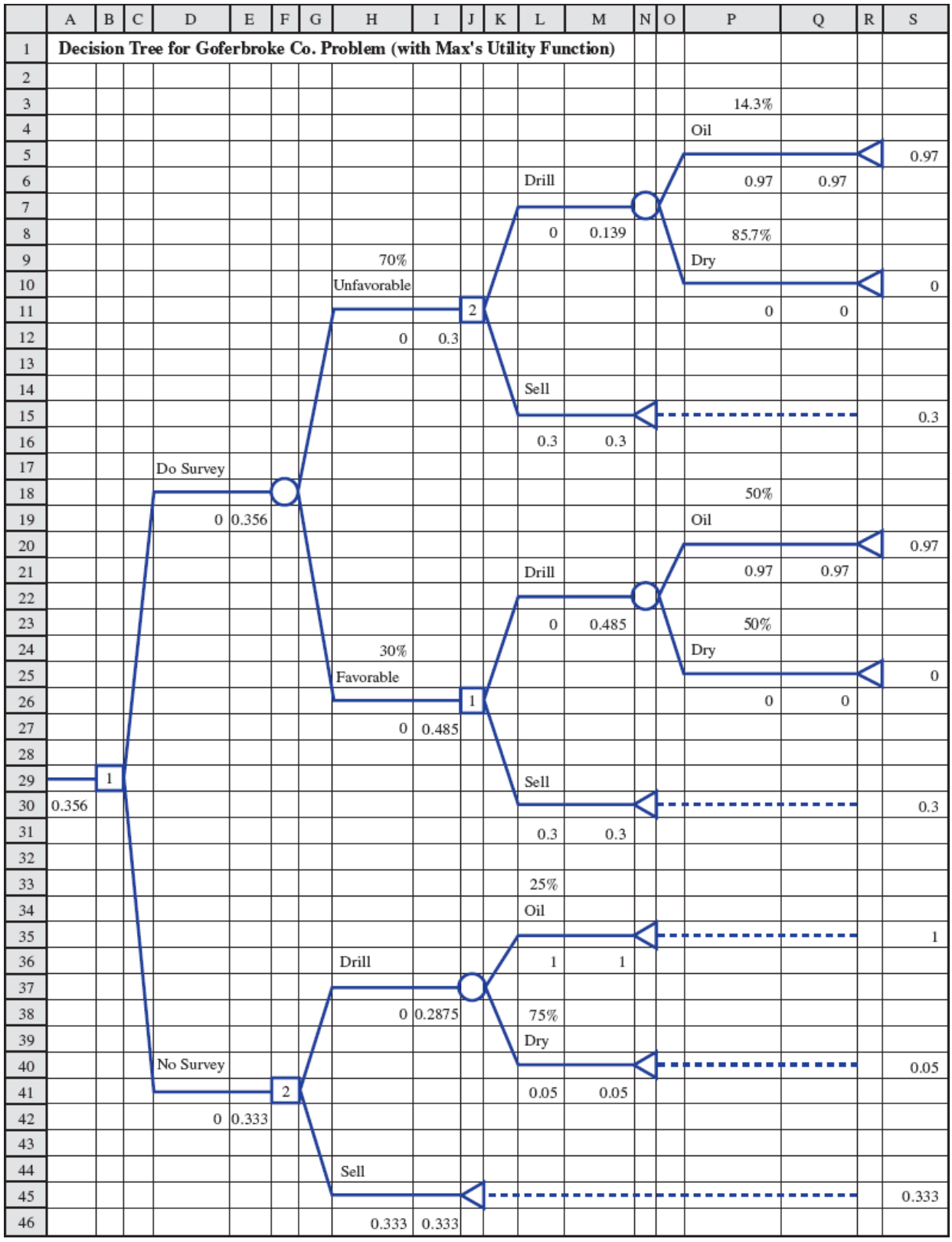
> The procedure for using a decision tree to analyze the problem now is *identical* to that described in Section 12.7 *except* for substituting utilities for monetary payoffs. Therefore, the value obtained to evaluate each node of the tree now is the *expected utility* there rather than the expected (monetary) payoff. Consequently, the optimal decision selected by Bayes' decision rule maximizes the expected utility for the overall problem.

Thus, using Analytic Solver once again, our final decision tree with utilities shown in Figure 12.23 closely resembles the one in Figure 12.17 given in Section 12.7. The nodes and branches are exactly the

same, as are the probabilities for the branches emanating from the event nodes. However, the key difference from Figure 12.17 is that the monetary payoff at each terminal node now has been replaced by the corresponding utility from Table 12.9. (This was accomplished with Analytic Solver by entering this same utility as the “cash flow” at the terminal branch and then entering “cash flows” of 0 at all the preceding branches.) It is these utilities that have been used by Analytic Solver to compute the *expected utilities* given next to all the nodes.

FIGURE 12.23

The final decision tree constructed and solved by Analytic Solver for the full Goferbroke Co. problem when using Max’s utility function for money to maximize expected utility.


Decision Tree for Goferbroke Co. Problem (with Max's Utility Function)
14.3%
Oil
0.97
Drill
0.97
0.97
0
0.139
85.7%
Dry
70%
Unfavorable
0
2
0
0
0
0.3
Sell
0.3
0.3
Do Survey
50%
0
0.356
Oil
0.97
Drill
0.97
0.97
0
0.485
50%
Dry
30%
Favorable
0
1
0
0
0
0.485
1
Sell
0.356
0.3
0.3
25%
Oil
1
Drill
1
1
0
0.2875
75%
Dry
No Survey
0.05
2
0.05
0
0.333
Sell
0.333
0.333

At each terminal branch, enter the utility of that outcome as the “cash flow” there and then do not change the default value of 0 for the “cash flow” at the preceding branches.

These expected utilities lead to the same decisions as in Figure 12.17 at all decision nodes except the bottom one in cell F41. The decision at this node now switches to *sell* instead of *drill.* However, the solution procedure still leaves this node on a *closed* path, as indicated by the 1 in cell B29. Therefore, the overall optimal policy remains the same as that obtained in Figure 12.17 (do the seismic survey; sell if the result is unfavorable; drill if the result is favorable).

The approach of maximizing the expected monetary payoff used in the preceding sections was equivalent to assuming that the decision maker is neutral toward risk. By using utility theory with an appropriate utility function, the optimal solution now reflects the decision maker’s attitude about risk. Because Max adopted only a moderately risk-averse stance, the optimal policy did not change from before. For a somewhat more risk-averse decision maker, the optimal solution would switch to the more conservative approach of immediately selling the land (no seismic survey).

The previous approach of maximizing the expected monetary payoff assumes a risk-neutral decision maker.

Maria and Max are to be commended for incorporating utilities into a decision analysis approach to his problem. Utilities help to provide a rational approach to decision making in the face of uncertainty. However, many managers are not sufficiently comfortable with the relatively abstract notion of utilities, or with working with probabilities to construct a utility function, to be willing to use this approach. Consequently, utilities are not used nearly as widely in practice as some of the other techniques of decision analysis described in this chapter, including Bayes’ decision rule (with monetary payoffs) and decision trees.

Another Approach for Estimating $U(M)$

The procedure described earlier for constructing $U(M)$ asks the decision maker to repeatedly apply the equivalent lottery method,

which requires him (or her) each time to make a difficult decision about which probability would make him indifferent between two alternatives. Many managers would be uncomfortable with making this kind of decision. Therefore, an alternative approach is sometimes used instead to estimate the utility function for money.

This approach assumes that the utility function has a certain mathematical form and then adjusts this form to fit the decision maker's attitude toward risk as closely as possible. For example, one particularly popular form to assume (because of its relative simplicity) is the **exponential utility function,**

exponential utility function

A utility function designed to fit some risk-averse individuals.

$$U(M) = 1 - e^{-\frac{M}{R}}$$

where R is the decision maker's *risk tolerance.* This utility function has the kind of shape shown in Figure 12.21(*a*), so it is designed to fit a *risk-averse* individual. A great aversion to risk corresponds to a small value of R (which would cause the curve in this figure to bend sharply), whereas a small aversion to risk corresponds to a large value of R (which gives a much more gradual bend in the curve).

A decision maker's risk tolerance tends to vary over time as his (or her) wealth changes. He tends to have a higher risk tolerance when he is relatively wealthy than when he is not. However, given his *current* degree of wealth, the exponential utility function assumes that he has a *constant* risk tolerance over the entire range of potential outcomes that may be realized after the decision is made. This often is a reasonable assumption. Unfortunately, it is a questionable assumption in Max's situation because he is unusually risk averse about the worst possible outcome (a loss of $130,000) but has a very high risk tolerance when comparing large potential gains. This is why Maria never raised the possibility of using an exponential utility function.

page 543
page 544

Since R measures the decision maker's *risk tolerance,* the *aversion* to risk decreases as R increases.

In other situations where the consequences of the potential losses are not as severe, assuming an exponential utility function may provide a reasonable approximation. In such a case, here is an easy way of estimating the appropriate value of R. The decision maker would be asked to choose the number R that would make him indifferent between the following two alternatives.

A_1: A 50–50 gamble where he would gain R dollars with probability 0.5 and lose $R/2$ dollars with probability 0.5.

A_2: Neither gain nor lose anything.

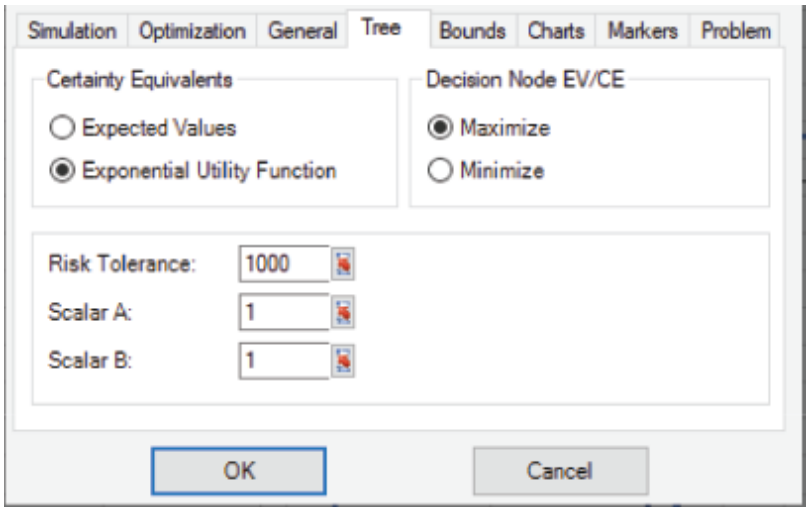
For example, if the decision maker were indifferent between doing nothing or taking a 50–50 gamble where he would gain $1,000 with probability 0.5 and lose $500 with probability 0.5, then R = 1,000.

Using Analytic Solver with an Exponential Utility Function

Analytic Solver includes the option of using the exponential utility function. Clicking on the Options button on the Analytic Solver tab and choosing Tree reveals the options shown in Figure 12.24. The Certainty Equivalents section gives two choices—Expected Values or Exponential Utility Function. Choosing the latter revises the decision tree to incorporate the exponential utility function. The Decision Node EV/CE section has two choices, Maximize or Minimize, which enable you to specify whether the objective is to maximize the measure of performance (expected utility in this case) or to minimize that measure. (Maximize is the default choice, as has been used throughout the chapter.) The Risk Tolerance box is used to enter a value to be used for R when calculating the exponential utility function. (These same options are also available on the Platform tab of the Model pane in Analytic Solver.)

FIGURE 12.24

The Tree tab of the Analytic Solver Options dialog box allows you to set several options for how the decision tree is solved. Here the options are set to use the exponential utility function, to maximize profit, and to use an *R* value of 1,000.



Microsoft and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Analytic Solver Tip The Decision Tree section of the Platform tab on the Model pane lets you specify whether to use expected monetary values or the exponential utility function for applying Bayes' decision rule. The entry in Decision Node EV/CE (either Maximize or Minimize) also lets you specify whether the objective is to maximize the measure of performance (expected payoff or expected utility in this case) or to minimize that measure.

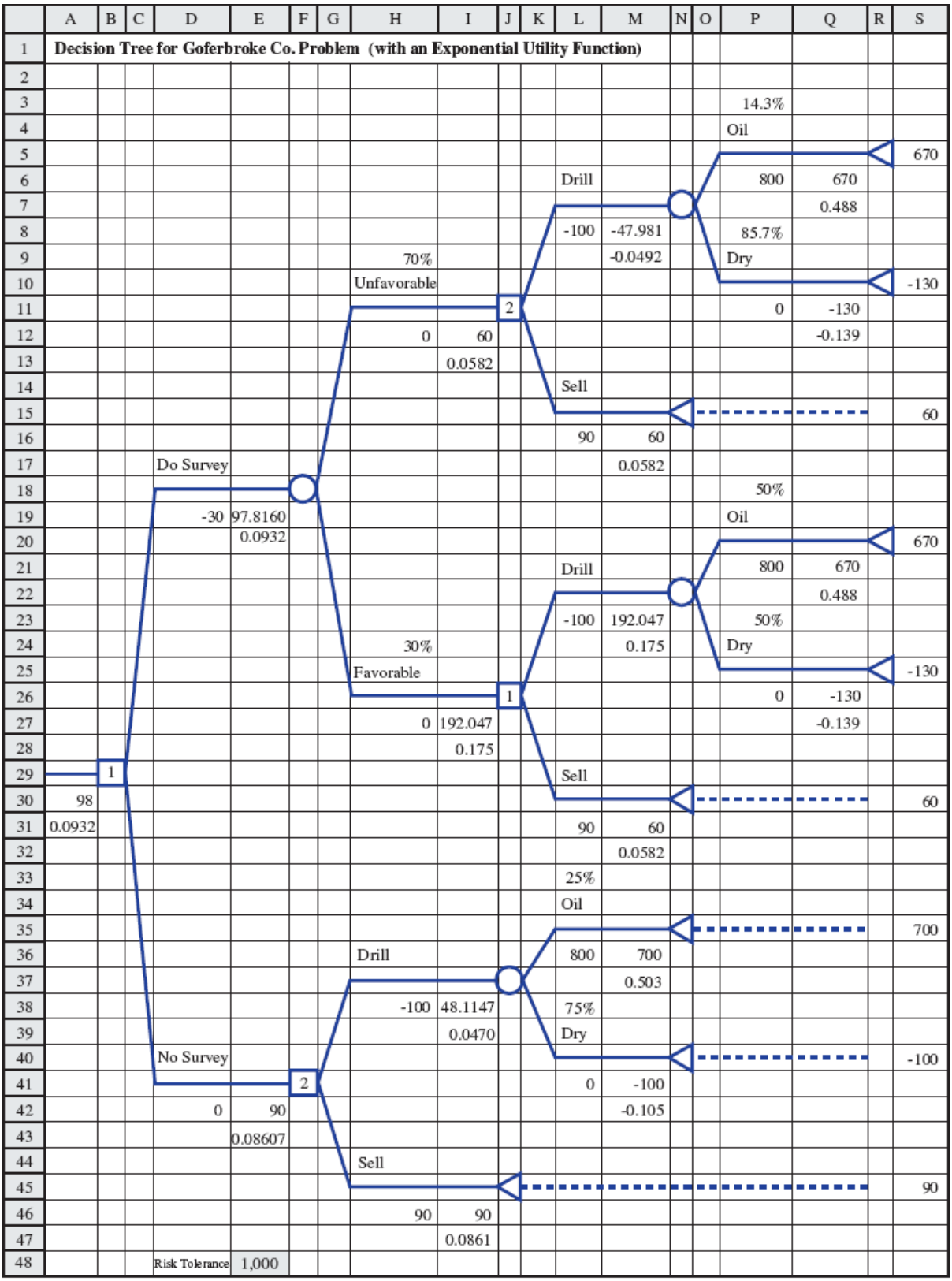
To illustrate, suppose that the exponential utility function with a risk tolerance of R = 1,000 were to be used as a rough approximation for analyzing the full Goferbroke Co. problem. (Since this problem expresses payoffs in units of thousands of dollars, R = 1,000 here is equivalent to using R = 1,000,000 when payoffs are in units of dollars.) The resulting decision tree is shown in Figure 12.25. There are now two values calculated below and to the left of each node. The lower number represents the expected utility value at that stage in the decision tree. The upper number represents the certain payoff that is equivalent to this expected utility value. For example, cell A31

indicates that the expected value of the exponential utility function for this decision would be 0.0932. This expected utility is equivalent to a certain payoff of $98,000, as indicated in cell A30.

FIGURE 12.25

The final decision tree constructed and solved by Analytic Solver for the full Goferbroke Co. problem when using an exponential utility function with R = 1,000.

Decision Tree for Goferbroke Co. Problem (with an Exponential Utility Function)



Range Name	Cells
RiskTolerance	E48

The exponential utility function leads to the same decisions as in Figure 12.23. The overall optimal policy remains to do the seismic survey; sell if the result is unfavorable; drill if the result is favorable. However, the optimal policy changes when the value of R is decreased far enough. For values of R less than 728, the optimal policy switches to not doing the survey and selling the land. Thus, a more risk-averse decision maker would make the safer decision for Goferbroke—sell the land and receive $90,000 for sure.

page 545
page 546

Review *Questions*

. What are utilities intended to reflect?
. What is the shape of the utility function for money for a risk-averse individual? A risk-seeking individual? A risk-neutral individual?
. What is the fundamental property of utility functions?
. What is the lottery when using the equivalent lottery method?
. Given two hypothetical alternatives where one of them involves a probability *p,* what is meant by the point of indifference between these two alternatives?
. When using utilities with a decision tree, what kind of value is obtained to evaluate each node of the tree?
. What decisions did Max make regarding the full Goferbroke Co. problem?

12.10 THE PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF DECISION ANALYSIS

In one sense, the Goferbroke Co. problem is a very typical application of decision analysis. Like other applications, Max needed to make his decisions (Do a seismic survey? Drill for oil or sell the land?) in the face of great uncertainty. The decisions were difficult because their payoffs were so unpredictable. The outcome depended on factors that were outside Max's control (does the land contain oil or is it

dry?). He needed a framework and methodology for rational decision making in this uncertain environment. These are the usual characteristics of applications of decision analysis.

However, in other ways, the Goferbroke problem is not such a typical application. It was oversimplified to include only two possible states of nature (oil and dry), whereas there actually would be a considerable number of distinct possibilities. For example, the actual state might be dry, a small amount of oil, a moderate amount, a large amount, and a huge amount, plus different possibilities concerning the depth of the oil and soil conditions that impact the cost of drilling to reach the oil. Max also was considering only two alternatives for each of two decisions. Real applications commonly involve more decisions, more alternatives to be considered for each one, and many possible states of nature.

The Goferbroke Co. problem could have included many more states of nature.

Problems as tiny as the Goferbroke problem can be readily analyzed and solved by hand. However, real applications typically involve large decision trees, whose construction and analysis require the use of a software package (such as Analytic Solver). In some cases, the decision tree can explode in size with many thousand terminal branches. Special algebraic techniques have been developed and incorporated into the solvers for dealing with such large problems.

Other kinds of graphical techniques also are available to complement the decision tree in representing and solving decision analysis problems. One that has become quite popular is called the **influence diagram,** which provides another helpful way of showing the interrelationships among a decision maker's alternatives, uncertainties, and values.

influence diagram

A diagram that complements the decision tree for representing and analyzing decision analysis problems.

Although the Goferbroke problem only involved a single decision maker (Max) assisted by a single analyst (Maria), many strategic business decisions are made collectively by management. One technique for group decision making is called **decision conferencing.** This is a process where the group comes together for discussions in a decision conference with the help of an analyst and a group facilitator. The facilitator works directly with the group to help it structure and focus discussions, think creatively about the problem, bring assumptions to the surface, and address the full range of issues involved. The analyst uses decision analysis to assist the group in exploring the implications of the various decision alternatives. With the assistance of a computerized *group decision support system,* the analyst builds and solves models on the spot, and then performs sensitivity analysis to respond to what-if questions from the group.

decision conferencing
A process used for group decision making.

Applications of decision analysis commonly involve a partnership between the managerial decision maker (whether an individual or a group) and an analyst (whether an individual or a team) with training in management science and business analytics. Some managers are not as fortunate as Max in having a staff member (let alone a daughter) like Maria who is qualified to serve as the analyst. Therefore, a considerable number of management consulting firms specializing in decision analysis have been formed to fill this role.

If you would like to do more reading about the practical application of decision analysis, a good place to begin would be the leadoff article[2] in the first issue of the journal *Decision Analysis* that was founded in 2004 to focus on applied research in decision analysis. This leadoff article provides a detailed discussion of various publications that present applications of decision analysis. The many subsequent issues of this journal have continued to further develop

the theory of decision analysis and to describe various innovative applications.

Review *Questions*

. How does the Goferbroke Co. problem compare with typical applications of decision analysis?
. What is the purpose of an influence diagram?
. Who are the typical participants in a decision-conferencing process?
. Where can a manager go for expert help in applying decision analysis if a qualified analyst is not available on staff?

12.11 Summary

Decision analysis is a valuable technique for decision making in the face of great uncertainty. It provides a framework and methodology for rational decision making when the outcomes are uncertain.

In a typical application, a decision maker needs to make either a single decision or a sequence of decisions (with additional information perhaps becoming available between decisions). A number of alternatives are available for each decision. Uncontrollable random factors affect the payoff that would be obtained from a decision alternative. The possible outcomes of the random factors are referred to as the possible *states of nature.*

Which state of nature actually occurs will be learned only after making the decisions. However, prior to the decisions, it often is possible to estimate *prior probabilities* of the respective states of nature.

Various alternative decision criteria are available for making the decisions. A particularly popular one is *Bayes' decision rule,* which uses the prior probabilities to

determine the expected payoff for each decision alternative and then chooses the one with the largest expected payoff. This is the criterion (accompanied by sensitivity analysis) that is mostly used in practice, so it is the focus of much of the chapter.

Sensitivity analysis is very helpful for evaluating the effect of having inaccurate estimates of the data for the problem, including the probabilities, revenues, and costs. Data tables can be used to systematically vary the data and see how it affects the optimal decisions or expected payoffs.

It sometimes is possible to pay for a test or survey to obtain additional information about the probabilities of the various states of nature. Calculating the *expected value of perfect information* provides a quick way of checking whether doing this might be worthwhile.

When more information is obtained, the updated probabilities are referred to as *posterior probabilities.* A *probability tree diagram* is helpful for calculating these new probabilities.

For problems involving a sequence of decisions (including perhaps a decision on whether to obtain more information), a *decision tree* commonly is used to graphically display the progression of decisions and random events. The calculations for applying Bayes' decision rule then can be performed directly on the decision tree one event node or decision node at a time. Spreadsheet packages, such as Analytic Solver, are very helpful for constructing and solving decision trees.

When the problem involves the possibility of uncomfortably large losses, utilities provide a way of incorporating the decision maker's attitude toward risk into the analysis. Bayes' decision rule then is applied by expressing payoffs in terms of utilities rather than monetary values.

Some applications of decision analysis require considering multiple measures of performance simultaneously. Chapter 19 is devoted to presenting a prominent technique called *goal programming* for doing this. This chapter is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Decision analysis is widely used. Versatile software packages for personal computers have become an integral part of the practical application of decision analysis.

Glossary

page 548

alternatives The options available to the decision maker for the decision under consideration. (Section 12.1), 505

Bayes' decision rule A popular criterion for decision making that uses probabilities to calculate the expected payoff for each decision alternative and then chooses the one with the largest expected payoff. (Section 12.2), 508

Bayes' theorem A formula for calculating a posterior probability of a state of nature. (Section 12.6), 523

branch A line emanating from a node in a decision tree. (Section 12.3), 511

decision conferencing A process used for group decision making. (Section 12.10), 546

decision maker The individual or group responsible for making the decision under consideration. (Section 12.1), 505

decision node A point in a decision tree where a decision needs to be made. (Section 12.3), 511

decision tree A graphical display of the progression of decisions and random events to be considered. (Sections 12.3 and 12.7), 501, 525

equivalent lottery method The procedure for finding the decision maker's utility for a specific amount of money by comparing two hypothetical alternatives where one involves a gamble. (Section 12.9), 540

event node A point in a decision tree where a random event will occur. (Section 12.3), 511

expected monetary value (EMV) criterion An alternative name for Bayes' decision rule when the payoffs have monetary values. (Section 12.2), 510

expected payoff (EP) For a decision alternative, it is the weighted average of the payoffs, using the probabilities of the states of nature as the weights. (Section 12.2), 508

expected value of perfect information (EVPI) The increase in the expected payoff that could be obtained if it were possible to learn the true state of nature before making the decision. (Sections 12.4 and 12.5), 518, 530

expected value of sample information (EVSI) The increase in the expected payoff that could be obtained by performing a test to obtain more information, excluding the cost of the test. (Section 12.7), 530

exponential utility function A utility function designed to fit some risk-averse individuals. (Section 12.9), 542

influence diagram A diagram that complements the decision tree for representing and analyzing decision analysis problems. (Section 12.10), 546

maximax criterion A very optimistic decision criterion that does not use prior probabilities and simply chooses the decision alternative that could give the largest possible payoff. (Section 12.2), 506

maximin criterion A very pessimistic decision criterion that does not use prior probabilities and simply chooses

the decision alternative that provides the best guarantee for its minimum possible payoff. (Section 12.2), 507

maximum likelihood criterion A criterion for decision making with probabilities that focuses on the most likely state of nature. (Section 12.2), 507

node A junction point in a decision tree. (Section 12.3), 511

payoff A quantitative measure of the outcome from a decision alternative and a state of nature. (Section 12.1), 505

payoff table A table giving the payoff for each combination of a decision alternative and a state of nature. (Section 12.1), 505

point of indifference The point where the decision maker is indifferent between the two hypothetical alternatives in the equivalent lottery method. (Section 12.9), 540

posterior probabilities Revised probabilities of the states of nature after doing a test or survey to improve the prior probabilities. (Sections 12.5 and 12.6), 520, 522

prior probabilities The estimated probabilities of the states of nature prior to obtaining additional information through a test or survey. (Section 12.1), 505

probability tree diagram A diagram that is helpful for calculating the posterior probabilities of the states of nature. (Section 12.6), 522

risk-averse individual An individual whose utility function for money has a decreasing slope as the amount of money increases. (Section 12.9), 536

risk-neutral individual An individual whose utility for money is proportional to the amount of money involved. (Section 12.9), 536

risk seeker An individual whose utility function for money has an increasing slope as the amount of money increases. (Section 12.9), 536

sensitivity analysis The study of how other plausible values for the probabilities of the states of nature (or for the payoffs) would affect the recommended decision alternative. (Sections 12.4 and 12.8), 514, 532

states of nature The possible outcomes of the random factors that affect the payoff that would be obtained from a decision alternative. (Section 12.1), 501

utility The utility of an outcome measures the intrinsic value to the decision maker of that outcome. (Sections 12.1 and 12.9), 504

utility function for money, *U(M)* A plot of utility versus the amount of money *M* being received. (Section 12.9), 536

Learning Aids for This Chapter

page 549

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Bayes for Goferbroke

Decision Tree for First Goferbroke

Data Table for First Goferbroke

EP Perfect Info Goferbroke

Decision Tree for EVPI

Posterior Probabilities

Decision Tree for Full Goferbroke

Goferbroke with Max Utility Function

Goferbroke with Exponential Utility

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Supplements to This Chapter:

Decision Criteria

Using TreePlan Software for Decision Trees

Excel Files for Supplement 1 to This Chapter:

Maximax Criterion

Maximin Criterion

Realism Criterion

Minimax Regret Criterion

Maximum Likelihood Criterion

Equally Likely Criterion

Solved Problems

The solutions are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

12.S1. New Vehicle Introduction

The General Ford Motors Corporation (GFMC) is planning the introduction of a brand new SUV—the Vector. There are two options for production. One is to build the Vector at the company's existing plant in Indiana, sharing production time with its line of minivans that are currently being produced there. If sales of the Vector are just moderate, this will work out well as there is sufficient capacity to produce both types of vehicles at the same plant. However, if sales of the Vector are strong, this option

would require the operation of a third shift, which would lead to significantly higher costs.

A second option is to open a new plant in Georgia. This plant would have sufficient capacity to meet even the largest projections for sales of the Vector. However, if sales are only moderate, the plant would be underutilized and therefore less efficient.

This is a new design, so sales are hard to predict. However, GFMC predicts that there would be about a 60 percent chance of strong sales (annual sales of 100,000), and a 40 percent chance of moderate sales (annual sales of 50,000). The average revenue per Vector sold is $30,000. Production costs per vehicle for the two production options depend upon sales, as indicated in the table below.

Expected Production Cost per Vehicle for the Vector ($thousands)

	Moderate Sales	Strong Sales
Shared plant in Indiana	16	24
Dedicated plant in Georgia	22	20

The amortized annual cost of plant construction and other associated fixed costs for the Georgia plant would total $400 million per year (regardless of sales volume). The fixed costs for adding Vector production to the plant in Indiana would total $200 million per year (regardless of sales volume).

a. Construct a decision tree to determine which production option maximizes the expected annual profit, considering fixed costs, production costs, and sales revenues.

b. Because of the uncertainty in expected sales for the Vector, GFMC is considering conducting a marketing survey to determine customer attitudes toward the Vector to better predict the likelihood of strong sales. The marketing survey would give one of two results—a positive attitude or a negative attitude toward the design. GFMC has used this marketing survey for other vehicles. For vehicles that eventually had strong sales, the marketing survey indicated positive attitudes toward the design 70 percent of the time and negative attitudes 30 percent of the time. For vehicles that eventually had moderate sales, the marketing survey indicated positive attitudes toward the design 20 percent of the time and negative attitudes 80 percent of the time. Assuming GFMC conducts such a survey, construct a decision tree to determine how the company should proceed and what the expected annual profit would be (ignoring the cost of the survey).

c. What is the expected value of sample information in part *b?* What does this say about how large the cost of the marketing survey can be before it would no longer be worthwhile to conduct the survey?

12.S2. Settle or Go to Trial

Meredith Delgado owns a small firm that has developed software for organizing and playing music on a computer. Her software contains a number of unique features that she has patented, so her company's future has looked bright.

However, there now has been an ominous development. It appears that a number of her patented

features were copied in similar software developed by MusicMan Software, a huge software company with annual sales revenue in excess of $1 billion. Meredith is distressed. MusicMan Software has stolen her ideas and that company's marketing power is likely to enable it to capture the market and drive Meredith out of business.

In response, Meredith has sued MusicMan Software for patent infringement. With attorney fees and other expenses, the cost of going to trial (win or lose) is expected to be $1 million. She feels that she has a 60 percent chance of winning the case, in which case she would receive $5 million in damages. If she loses the case, she gets nothing. Moreover, if she loses the case, there is a 50 percent chance that the judge would also order Meredith to pay for court expenses and lawyer fees for MusicMan (an additional $1 million cost). MusicMan Software has offered Meredith $1.5 million to settle this case out of court.

page 550

a. Construct and use a decision tree to determine whether Meredith should go to court or accept the settlement offer, assuming she wants to maximize her expected payoff.

b. To implement the equivalent lottery method to determine appropriate utility values for all the possible payoffs in this problem, what questions would need to be asked of Meredith?

c. Suppose that Meredith's attitude toward risk is such that she would be indifferent between doing nothing and a gamble where she would win $1 million with 50 percent probability and lose $500 thousand with 50 percent probability. Use the exponential utility function to re-solve the decision tree from part *a*.

Problems

To the left of the following problems (or their parts), we have inserted the symbol A whenever Analytic Solver can be used. The symbol T indicates that the Excel template for posterior probabilities can be helpful. Nearly all the problems can be conveniently formulated in a spreadsheet format, so no special symbol is used to designate this. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

12.1. You are given the following payoff table (in units of thousands of dollars) for a decision analysis problem without probabilities.

	State of Nature		
Alternative	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	6	2	4
A_2	3	4	3
A_3	8	1	5

a. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximax criterion?

b. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximin criterion?

12.2. Follow the instructions of Problem 12.1 with the following payoff table.

Alternative	State of Nature			
	S_1	S_2	S_3	S_4
A_1	25	30	20	24
A_2	17	14	31	21
A_3	22	22	22	22
A_4	29	21	26	27

12.3. Jean Clark is the manager of the Midtown Saveway Grocery Store. She now needs to replenish her supply of strawberries. Her regular supplier can provide as many cases as she wants. However, because these strawberries already are very ripe, she will need to sell them tomorrow and then discard any that remain unsold. Jean estimates that she will be able to sell 10, 11, 12, or 13 cases tomorrow. She can purchase the strawberries for $3 per case and sell them for $8 per case. Jean now needs to decide how many cases to purchase.

Jean has checked the store's records on daily sales of strawberries. On this basis, she estimates that the prior probabilities are 0.2, 0.4, 0.3, and 0.1 for being able to sell 10, 11, 12, and 13 cases of strawberries tomorrow.

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table.

b. If Jean is dubious about the accuracy of these prior probabilities and so chooses to ignore them and use the maximax criterion, how many cases of strawberries should she purchase?

c. How many cases should be purchased if she uses the maximin criterion?

d. How many cases should be purchased if she uses the maximum likelihood criterion?

e. How many cases should be purchased according to Bayes' decision rule?

f. Jean thinks she has the prior probabilities just about right for selling 10 cases and selling 13 cases, but is uncertain about how to split the prior probabilities for 11 cases and 12 cases. Reapply Bayes' decision rule when the prior probabilities of 11 and 12 cases are (*i*) 0.2 and 0.5, (*ii*) 0.3 and 0.4, and (*iii*) 0.5 and 0.2.

12.4.* Warren Buffy is an enormously wealthy investor who has built his fortune through his legendary investing acumen. He currently has been offered three major investments and he would like to choose one. The first one is a *conservative investment* that would perform very well in an improving economy and only suffer a small loss in a worsening economy. The second is a *speculative investment* that would perform extremely well in an improving economy but would do very badly in a worsening economy. The third is a *countercyclical investment* that would lose some money in an improving economy but would perform well in a worsening economy.

Warren believes that there are three possible scenarios over the lives of these potential investments: (1) an improving economy, (2) a stable economy, and (3) a worsening economy. He is pessimistic about where the economy is headed, and so has assigned prior probabilities of 0.1, 0.5, and 0.4, respectively, to these three scenarios. He also estimates that his profits under these respective scenarios are those given by the following table.

	Improving Economy	**Stable Economy**	**Worsening Economy**
Conservative investment	$30 million	$5 million	−$10 million

	Improving Economy	Stable Economy	Worsening Economy
Speculative investment	40 million	10 million	−30 million
Countercyclical investment	−10 million	0	15 million
Prior probability	0.1	0.5	0.4

Which investment should Warren make under each of the following criteria? page 551

a. Maximax criterion.

b. Maximin criterion.

c. Maximum likelihood criterion.

d. Bayes' decision rule.

12.5. Reconsider Problem 12.4. Warren Buffy decides that Bayes' decision rule is his most reliable decision criterion. He believes that 0.1 is just about right as the prior probability of an improving economy, but is quite uncertain about how to split the remaining probabilities between a stable economy and a worsening economy. Therefore, he now wishes to do sensitivity analysis with respect to these latter two prior probabilities.

a. Reapply Bayes' decision rule when the prior probability of a stable economy is 0.3 and the prior probability of a worsening economy is 0.6.

b. Reapply Bayes' decision rule when the prior probability of a stable economy is 0.7 and the prior probability of a worsening economy is 0.2.

c. Construct a decision tree by hand for this problem with the original prior probabilities.

A *d.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve a decision tree for this problem with the original prior probabilities.

A *e.* In preparation for performing sensitivity analysis, consolidate the data and results on the same spreadsheet as the decision tree constructed in part *d* (as was done in Figure 12.7 for the case study).

A *f.* Use the spreadsheet (including the decision tree) obtained in parts *d* and *e* to do parts *a* and *b.*

A *g.* Expanding the spreadsheet as needed, generate a data table that shows which investment Warren should make and the resulting expected profit for the following prior probabilities of a stable economy: 0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9.

h. For each of the three investments, find the expected profit when the prior probability of a stable economy is 0 and then when it is 0.9 (with the prior probability of an improving economy fixed at 0.1). Plot these expected profits on a single graph that has expected profit as the vertical axis and the prior probability of a stable economy as the horizontal axis. For each of the three investments, draw a line segment connecting its two points on this graph to show how its expected profit would vary with the prior probability of a stable economy. Use this graph to describe how the choice of the investment depends on the prior probability of a stable economy.

12.6.* Consider a decision analysis problem whose payoffs (in units of thousands of dollars) are given by the

following payoff table.

Alternative	State of Nature	
	S_1	S_2
A_1	80	25
A_2	30	50
A_3	60	40
Prior probability	0.4	0.6

a. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximax criterion?

b. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximin criterion?

c. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximum likelihood criterion?

d. Which alternative should be chosen under Bayes' decision rule?

A *e.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve a decision tree for this problem.

A *f.* Expanding the spreadsheet containing this decision tree as needed, perform sensitivity analysis with the decision tree by re-solving when the prior probability of S_1 is 0.2 and again when it is 0.6.

A *g.* Now perform this sensitivity analysis systematically by generating a data table that shows the best alternative (according to Bayes' decision rule) and the resulting expected payoff as the prior probability of S_1 increases in increments of 0.04 from 0.2 to 0.6.

12.7. You are given the following payoff table (in units of thousands of dollars) for a decision analysis problem.

Alternative	State of Nature		
	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	220	170	110
A_2	200	180	150
Prior probability	0.6	0.3	0.1

a. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximax criterion?

b. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximin criterion?

c. Which alternative should be chosen under the maximum likelihood criterion?

d. Which alternative should be chosen under Bayes' decision rule?

e. Construct a decision tree by hand for this problem.

A *f.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve a decision tree for this problem.

A *g.* Perform sensitivity analysis with this decision tree by generating a data table that shows what happens when the prior probability of S_1 increases in increments of 0.05 from 0.3 to 0.7 while the prior probability of S_3 remains fixed at its original value. Then use trial and error to estimate the value of the prior probability of S_1 at which the best alternative changes as this prior probability increases.

A *h.* Repeat part *g* when it is the prior probability of S_2 that remains fixed at its original value.

A *i.* Repeat part *g* when it is the prior probability of S_1 that remains fixed at its original value while the prior probability of S_2 increases in increments of 0.05 from 0 to 0.4.

j. If you feel that the true probabilities of the states of nature should be within 10 percent of the given prior probabilities, which alternative would you choose?

12.8. Dwight Moody is the manager of a large farm with 1,000 acres of arable land. For greater efficiency, Dwight always devotes the farm to growing one crop at a time. He now needs to make a decision on which one of four crops to grow during the upcoming growing season. For each of these crops, Dwight has obtained the following estimates of crop yields and net incomes per bushel under various weather conditions.

page 552

	Expected Yield, Bushels/Acre			
Weather	**Crop 1**	**Crop 2**	**Crop 3**	**Crop 4**
Dry	20	15	30	40
Moderate	35	20	25	40
Damp	40	30	25	40
Net income per bushel	$1.00	$1.50	$1.00	$0.50

After referring to historical meteorological records, Dwight also has estimated the following prior probabilities for the weather during the growing season:

Dry	0.3
Moderate	0.5

Damp	0.2

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table.

A *b.* Construct a decision tree for this problem and use Bayes' decision rule to determine which crop to grow.

A *c.* Using Bayes' decision rule, do sensitivity analysis with respect to the prior probabilities of moderate weather and damp weather (without changing the prior probability of dry weather) by re-solving when the prior probability of moderate weather is 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, and 0.6.

12.9. Barbara Miller makes decisions according to Bayes' decision rule. For her current problem, Barbara has constructed the following payoff table (in units of hundreds of dollars) and she now wishes to maximize the expected payoff.

	State of Nature		
Alternative	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	$2x$	50	10
A_2	25	40	90
A_3	35	$3x$	30
Prior probability	0.4	0.2	0.4

The value of x currently is 50, but there is an opportunity to increase x by spending some money now.

What is the maximum amount Barbara should spend to increase x to 75?

12.10. You are given the following payoff table (in units of thousands of dollars) for a decision analysis problem.

Alternative	State of Nature		
	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	4	0	0
A_2	0	2	0
A_3	3	0	1
Prior probability	0.2	0.5	0.3

a. According to Bayes' decision rule, which alternative should be chosen?

b. Find the expected value of perfect information.

A *c.* Check your answer in part *b* by recalculating it with the help of a decision tree.

d. You are given the opportunity to spend $1,000 to obtain more information about which state of nature is likely to occur. Given your answer to part *b,* might it be worthwhile to spend this money?

12.11.* Betsy Pitzer makes decisions according to Bayes' decision rule. For her current problem, Betsy has constructed the following payoff table (in units of dollars).

Alternative	State of Nature		
	S_1	S_2	S_3

Alternative	State of Nature		
	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	50	100	− 100
A_2	0	10	− 10
A_3	20	40	− 40
Prior probability	0.5	0.3	0.2

a. Which alternative should Betsy choose?

b. Find the expected value of perfect information.

A *c.* Check your answer in part *b* by recalculating it with the help of a decision tree.

d. What is the most that Betsy should consider paying to obtain more information about which state of nature will occur?

12.12. Using Bayes' decision rule, consider the decision analysis problem having the following payoff table (in units of thousands of dollars).

Alternative	State of Nature		
	S_1	S_2	S_3
A_1	−100	10	100
A_2	−10	20	50
A_3	10	10	60
Prior probability	0.2	0.3	0.5

a. Which alternative should be chosen? What is the resulting expected payoff?

b. You are offered the opportunity to obtain information that will tell you with certainty whether the first state of nature S_1 will occur. What is the maximum amount you should pay for the information? Assuming you will obtain the information, how should this information be used to choose an alternative? What is the resulting expected payoff (excluding the payment)?

page 553

c. Now repeat part *b* if the information offered concerns S_2 instead of S_1.

d. Now repeat part *b* if the information offered concerns S_3 instead of S_1.

A *e.* Now suppose that the opportunity is offered to provide information that will tell you with certainty which state of nature will occur (perfect information). What is the maximum amount you should pay for the information? Assuming you will obtain the information, how should this information be used to choose an alternative? What is the resulting expected payoff (excluding the payment)?

f. If you have the opportunity to do some testing that will give you partial additional information (not perfect information) about the state of nature, what is the maximum amount you should consider paying for this information?

12.13. Reconsider the Goferbroke Co. case study, including its analysis in Sections 12.6 and 12.7. With the help of the consulting geologist, Maria Flyer now has obtained some historical data that provides more precise

information than Max could supply on the likelihood of obtaining favorable seismic soundings on similar tracts of land. Specifically, when the land contains oil, favorable seismic soundings are obtained 80 percent of the time. This percentage changes to 40 percent when the land is dry.

a. Revise Figure 12.12 to find the new posterior probabilities.

T *b.* Use the corresponding Excel template to check your answers in part *a.*

c. Revise Figure 12.16 to find the new decision tree. What is the resulting optimal policy?

A *d.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this new decision tree.

12.14. Read the referenced article that fully describes the prescriptive analytics study done for the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 12.7. Briefly describe how decision analysis was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

12.15.* Vincent Cuomo is the credit manager for the Fine Fabrics Mill. He is currently faced with the question of whether to extend $100,000 of credit to a potential new customer, a dress manufacturer. Vincent has three categories for the creditworthiness of a company—poor risk, average risk, and good risk—but he does not know which category fits this potential customer. Experience indicates that 20 percent of companies similar to this dress manufacturer are poor risks, 50 percent are average risks, and 30 percent are good risks. If credit is extended, the expected profit is –$15,000 for poor risks, $10,000 for average risks, and $20,000 for good risks. If credit is not

extended, the dress manufacturer will turn to another mill. Vincent is able to consult a credit-rating organization for a fee of $5,000 per company evaluated. For companies whose actual credit records with the mill turn out to fall into each of the three categories, the following table shows the percentages that were given each of the three possible credit evaluations by the credit-rating organization.

	Actual Credit Record		
Credit Evaluation	**Poor**	**Average**	**Good**
Poor	50%	40%	20%
Average	40	50	40
Good	10	10	40

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table when the credit-rating organization is not used.

b. Assuming the credit-rating organization is not used, use Bayes' decision rule to determine which decision alternative should be chosen.

c. Find the expected value of perfect information. Does this answer indicate that consideration should be given to using the credit-rating organization?

d. Assume now that the credit-rating organization is used. Develop a probability tree diagram to find the posterior probabilities of the respective states of nature for each of the three possible credit evaluations of this potential customer.

T *e.* Use the corresponding Excel template to obtain the answers for part *d.*

f. Draw the decision tree for this entire problem by hand. Use this decision tree to determine Vincent's optimal policy.

A *g.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this decision tree.

A *h.* Find the expected value of sample information. If the fee for using the credit-rating organization is open to negotiation, how large can the fee be before the use of this organization would no longer be worthwhile?

12.16. You are given the following payoff table (in units of dollars).

	State of Nature	
Alternative	S_1	S_2
A_1	400	−100
A_1	0	100
Prior probability	0.4	0.6

You have the option of paying $100 to have research done to better predict which state of nature will occur. When the true state of nature is S_1, the research will accurately predict S_1 60 percent of the time (but will inaccurately predict S_2 40 percent of the time). When the true state of nature is S_2, the research will accurately predict S_2 80 percent of the time (but will inaccurately predict S_1 20 percent of the time).

a. Given that the research is not done, use Bayes' decision rule to determine which decision alternative should be chosen.

A *b.* Use a decision tree to help find the expected value of perfect information. Does this answer indicate that it might be worthwhile to do the research?

c. Given that the research is done, find the joint probability of each of the following pairs of outcomes: (*i*) the state of nature is S_1 and the research predicts S_1, (*ii*) the state of nature is S_1 and the research predicts S_2, (*iii*) the state of nature is S_2 and the research predicts S_1, and (*iv*) the state of nature is S_2 and the research predicts S_2.

page 554

d. Find the unconditional probability that the research predicts S_1. Also find the unconditional probability that the research predicts S_2.

e. Given that the research is done, use your answers in parts *c* and *d* to determine the posterior probabilities of the states of nature for each of the two possible predictions of the research.

T *f.* Use the corresponding Excel template to obtain the answers for part *e.*

g. Given that the research predicts S_1, use Bayes' decision rule to determine which decision alternative should be chosen and the resulting expected payoff.

h. Repeat part *g* when the research predicts S_2.

i. Given that research is done, what is the expected payoff when using Bayes' decision rule?

j. Use the preceding results to determine the optimal policy regarding whether to do the research and which decision alternative should be chosen.

A *k.* Construct and solve the decision tree to show the analysis for the entire problem. (Using Analytic Solver is optional.)

12.17. An athletic league does drug testing of its athletes, 10 percent of whom use drugs. The test, however, is only 95 percent reliable. That is, a drug user will test positive with probability 0.95 and negative with probability 0.05, whereas a non-user will test negative with probability 0.95 and positive with probability 0.05.

Develop a probability tree diagram to determine the posterior probability of each of the following outcomes of testing an athlete.

a. The athlete is a drug user, given that the test is positive.

b. The athlete is not a drug user, given that the test is positive.

c. The athlete is a drug user, given that the test is negative.

d. The athlete is not a drug user, given that the test is negative.

T *e.* Use the corresponding Excel template to check your answers in the preceding parts.

12.18. Management of the Telemore Company is considering developing and marketing a new product. It is estimated to be twice as likely that the product would prove to be successful as unsuccessful. If it were successful, the expected profit would be $1,500,000. If unsuccessful, the expected loss would be $1,800,000. A marketing survey can be conducted at a cost of $100,000 to predict whether

the product would be successful. Past experience with such surveys indicates that successful products have been predicted to be successful 80 percent of the time, whereas unsuccessful products have been predicted to be unsuccessful 70 percent of the time.

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table when the market survey is not conducted.

b. Assuming the market survey is not conducted, use Bayes' decision rule to determine which decision alternative should be chosen.

c. Find the expected value of perfect information. Does this answer indicate that consideration should be given to conducting the market survey?

T *d.* Assume now that the market survey is conducted. Find the posterior probabilities of the respective states of nature for each of the two possible predictions from the market survey.

A *e.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve the decision tree for this entire problem.

12.19. The Hit-and-Miss Manufacturing Company produces items that have a probability p of being defective. These items are produced in lots of 150. Past experience indicates that p for each item in a lot is either 0.05 or 0.25. Furthermore, in 80 percent of the lots produced, p equals 0.05 (so p equals 0.25 in 20 percent of the lots). These items are then used in an assembly, and ultimately their quality is determined before the final assembly leaves the plant. Initially the company can *either* screen each item in a lot at a cost of $10 per item and replace defective items *or* use the items directly without screening. If the latter action is chosen, the cost of rework is ultimately $100 per

defective item. Because screening requires scheduling of inspectors and equipment, the decision to screen or not screen must be made two days before the screening is to take place. However, one item can be taken from the lot and sent to a laboratory for inspection, after which its quality (defective or nondefective) can be reported before the screen/no-screen decision must be made. The cost of this initial inspection is $125.

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table if the single item is not inspected in advance.

b. Assuming the single item is not inspected in advance, use Bayes' decision rule to determine which decision alternative should be chosen.

c. Find the expected value of perfect information. Does this answer indicate that consideration should be given to inspecting the single item in advance?

T *d.* Assume now that the single item is inspected in advance. Find the posterior probabilities of the respective states of nature for each of the two possible outcomes of this inspection.

A *e.* Construct and solve the decision tree for this entire problem.

A *f.* Find the expected value of sample information. If the cost of using the laboratory to inspect the single item in advance is open to negotiation, how large can the cost of using the laboratory be and still be worthwhile?

12.20.* Silicon Dynamics has developed a new computer chip that will enable it to begin producing and marketing a personal computer if it so desires. Alternatively, it can sell the rights to the computer chip for $15 million. If the

company chooses to build computers, the profitability of the venture depends on the company's ability to market the computer during the first year. It has sufficient access to retail outlets that it can guarantee sales of 10,000 computers. On the other hand, if this computer catches on, the company can sell 100,000 machines. For analysis purposes, these two levels of sales are taken to be the two possible outcomes of marketing the computer, but it is unclear what their prior probabilities are. The cost of setting up the assembly line is $6 million. The difference between the selling price and the variable cost of each computer is $600. page 555

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table.

b. Construct a decision tree for this problem by hand.

A *c.* Assuming the prior probabilities of the two levels of sales are both 0.5, use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this decision tree. According to this analysis, which decision alternative should be chosen?

12.21.* Reconsider Problem 12.20. Management of Silicon Dynamics now is considering doing full-fledged market research at an estimated cost of $1 million to predict which of the two levels of demand is likely to occur. Previous experience indicates that such market research is correct two-thirds of the time.

a. Find the expected value of perfect information for this problem.

b. Does the answer in part *a* indicate that it might be worthwhile to perform this market research?

c. Develop a probability tree diagram to obtain the posterior probabilities of the two levels of

demand for each of the two possible outcomes of the market research.

T *d.* Use the corresponding Excel template to check your answers in part *c.*

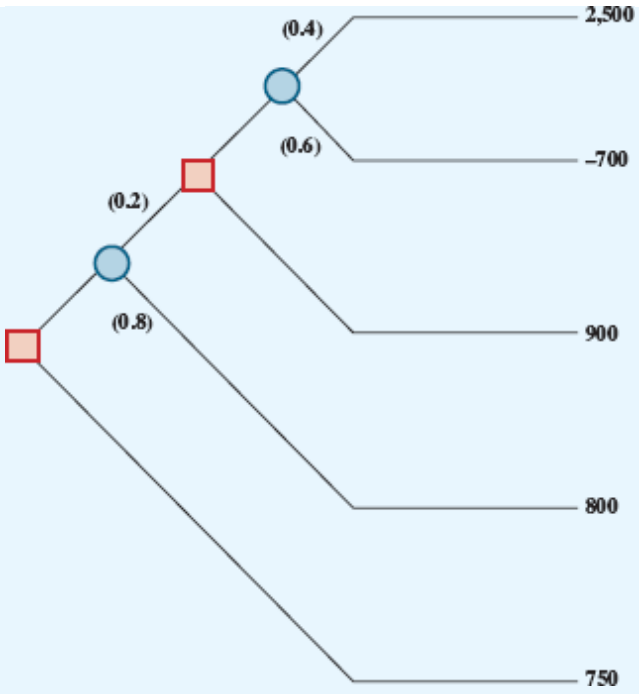
R 12.22.* Reconsider Problem 12.21. The management of Silicon Dynamics now wants to see a decision tree displaying the entire problem.

A *a.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this decision tree.

b. Find the expected value of sample information. How large can the cost of doing full-fledged market research be and still be worthwhile?

c. Assume now that the estimate of $1 million for the cost of doing full-fledged market research is correct but that there is some uncertainty in the financial data ($15 million, $6 million, and $600) stated in Problem 12.20. Each could vary from its base value by as much as 10 percent. For each one, perform sensitivity analysis to find what would happen if its value were at either end of this range of variability (without any change in the other two pieces of data). Then do the same for the eight cases where all these pieces of data are at one end or the other of their ranges of variability.

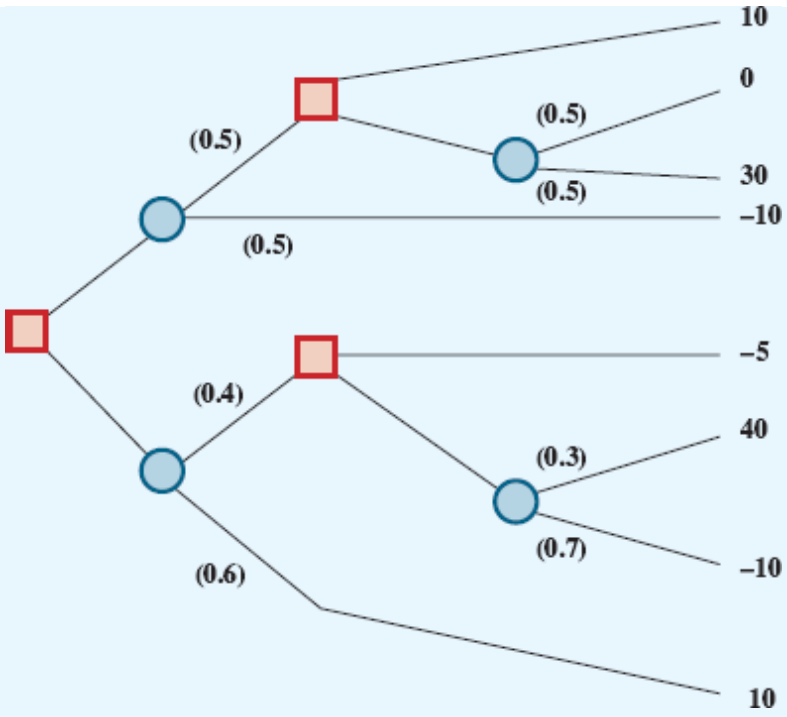
12.23. You are given the following decision tree, where the numbers in parentheses are probabilities and the numbers on the right are payoffs at these terminal points.



a. Analyze this decision tree to obtain the optimal policy.

A *b.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve the same decision tree.

12.24. You are given the following decision tree, with the probabilities at event nodes shown in parentheses and with the payoffs at terminal points shown on the right. Analyze this decision tree by hand to obtain the optimal policy. (Show your final decision tree that records your analysis, such as the one in Figure 12.16.)



12.25.* The Athletic Department of Leland University is considering whether to hold an extensive campaign next year to raise funds for a new athletic field. The response to the campaign depends heavily on the success of the football team this fall. In the past, the football team has had winning seasons 60 percent of the time. If the football team has a winning season (W) this fall, then many of the alumni will contribute and the campaign will raise $3 million after expenses. If the team has a losing season (L), few will contribute and the campaign will lose a net of $2 million because of heavy expenses. If no campaign is undertaken, no costs are incurred. On September 1, just before the football season begins, the Athletic Department needs to make its decision about whether to hold the campaign next year.

page 556

a. Develop a decision analysis formulation of this problem by identifying the decision alternatives, the states of nature, and the payoff table.

b. According to Bayes' decision rule, should the campaign be undertaken?

c. What is the expected value of perfect information?

d. A prominent retired football coach, William Rockne, has offered his services to help evaluate whether the team will have a winning season. For $100,000, he will carefully evaluate the team throughout spring practice and then throughout preseason workouts. William then will provide his prediction on September 1 regarding what kind of season, W or L, the team will have. In similar situations in the past when evaluating teams that have winning seasons 50 percent of the time, his predictions have been correct 75 percent of the time. Considering that this team has more of a winning tradition, if William predicts a winning season, what is the posterior probability that the team actually will have a winning season? What is the posterior probability of a losing season? If William predicts a losing season instead, what is the posterior probability of a winning season? Of a losing season? Show how these answers are obtained from a probability tree diagram.

T *e.* Use the corresponding Excel template to obtain the answers requested in part *d.*

f. Draw the decision tree for this entire problem by hand. Analyze this decision tree to determine the optimal policy regarding whether to hire William and whether to undertake the campaign.

A *g.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this decision tree.

A *h.* Find the expected value of sample information. If the fee for hiring William Walsh is open to negotiation, how large can William's fee be and still be worthwhile?

12.26. The comptroller of the Macrosoft Corporation has $100 million of excess funds to invest. She has been instructed to invest the entire amount for one year in either stocks or bonds (but not both) and then to reinvest the entire fund in either stocks or bonds (but not both) for one year more. The objective is to maximize the expected monetary value of the fund at the end of the second year.

The annual rates of return on these investments depend on the economic environment, as shown in the following table.

	Rate of Return	
Economic Environment	**Stocks**	**Bonds**
Growth	20%	5%
Recession	−10	10
Depression	−50	20

The probabilities of growth, recession, and depression for the first year are 0.7, 0.3, and 0, respectively. If growth occurs in the first year, these probabilities remain the same for the second year. However, if a recession occurs in the first year, these probabilities change to 0.2, 0.7, and 0.1, respectively, for the second year.

a. Construct by hand the decision tree for this problem and then analyze the decision tree to identify the optimal policy.

A *b.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve the decision tree.

12.27. On Monday, a certain stock closed at $10 per share. Before the stock market opens on Tuesday, you expect the stock to close at $9, $10, or $11 per share, with respective probabilities 0.3, 0.3, and 0.4. Looking ahead to Wednesday, you expect the stock to close 10 percent lower, unchanged, or 10 percent higher than Tuesday's close, with the following probabilities.

Tuesday's Close	10 Percent Lower	Unchanged	10 Percent Higher
$ 9	0.4	0.3	0.3
10	0.2	0.2	0.6
11	0.1	0.2	0.7

Early on Tuesday, you are directed to buy 100 shares of the stock before Thursday. All purchases are made at the end of the day, at the known closing price for that day, so your only options are to buy at the end of Tuesday or at the end of Wednesday. You wish to determine the optimal strategy for whether to buy on Tuesday or defer the purchase until Wednesday, given the Tuesday closing price, to minimize the expected purchase price.

a. Develop and evaluate a decision tree by hand for determining the optimal strategy.

A *b.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve the decision tree.

A 12.28. Jose Morales manages a large outdoor fruit stand in one of the less affluent neighborhoods of San Jose, California. To replenish his supply, Jose buys boxes

of fruit early each morning from a grower south of San Jose. About 90 percent of the boxes of fruit turn out to be of satisfactory quality, but the other 10 percent are unsatisfactory. A satisfactory box contains 80 percent excellent fruit and will earn $200 profit for Jose. An unsatisfactory box contains 30 percent excellent fruit and will produce a loss of $1,000. Before Jose decides to accept a box, he is given the opportunity to sample one piece of fruit to test whether it is excellent. Based on that sample, he then has the option of rejecting the box without paying for it. Jose wonders (1) whether he should continue buying from this grower, (2) if so, whether it is worthwhile sampling just one piece of fruit from a box, and (3) if so, whether he should be accepting or rejecting the box based on the outcome of this sampling.

Use Analytic Solver (and the Excel template for posterior probabilities) to construct and solve the decision tree for this problem.

12.29.* The Morton Ward Company is considering the introduction of a new product that is believed to have a 50–50 chance of being successful. One option is to try out the product in a test market, at an estimated cost of $2 million, before making the introduction decision. Past page 557 experience shows that ultimately successful products are approved in the test market 80 percent of the time, whereas ultimately unsuccessful products are approved in the test market only 25 percent of the time. If the product is successful, the net profit to the company will be $40 million; if unsuccessful, the net loss will be $15 million.

a. Discarding the test market option, develop a decision analysis formulation of the problem by identifying the decision alternatives, states of nature, and payoff table. Then apply Bayes'

decision rule to determine the optimal decision alternative.

b. Find the expected value of perfect information.

A *c.* Now including the option of trying out the product in a test market, use Analytic Solver (and the Excel template for posterior probabilities) to construct and solve the decision tree for this problem.

A *d.* Find the expected value of sample information. How large can the cost of trying out the product in a test market be and still be worthwhile to do?

A *e.* Assume now that the estimate of $2 million for the cost of trying out the product in a test market is correct. However, there is some uncertainty in the stated profit and loss figures ($40 million and $15 million). Either could vary from its base by as much as 25 percent in either direction. For each of these two financial figures, perform sensitivity analysis to check how the results in part *c* would change if the value of the financial figure were at either end of this range of variability (without any change in the value of the other financial figure). Then do the same for the four cases where both financial figures are at one end or the other of their ranges of variability.

A 12.30. Chelsea Bush is an emerging candidate for her party's nomination for president of the United States. She now is considering whether to run in the high-stakes Super Tuesday primaries. If she enters the Super Tuesday (S.T.) primaries, she and her advisers believe that she will either do well (finish first or second) or do poorly (finish third or worse) with probabilities 0.4 and 0.6, respectively. Doing well on Super Tuesday will net the candidate's campaign approximately $16 million in new contributions, whereas a

poor showing will mean a loss of $10 million after numerous TV ads are paid for. Alternatively, she may choose not to run at all on Super Tuesday and incur no costs.

Chelsea's advisors realize that her chances of success on Super Tuesday may be affected by the outcome of the smaller New Hampshire (N.H.) primary occurring three weeks before Super Tuesday. Political analysts feel that the results of New Hampshire's primary are correct two-thirds of the time in predicting the results of the Super Tuesday primaries. Among Chelsea's advisers is a decision analysis expert who uses this information to calculate the following probabilities:

P(Chelsea does well in S.T. primaries, given she does well in N.H.) = 4/7

P(Chelsea does well in S.T. primaries, given she does poorly in N.H.) = 1/4

P(Chelsea does well in N.H. primary) = 7/15

The cost of entering and campaigning in the New Hampshire primary is estimated to be $1.6 million.

Chelsea feels that her chance of winning the nomination depends largely on having substantial funds available after the Super Tuesday primaries to carry on a vigorous campaign the rest of the way. Therefore, she wants to choose the strategy (whether to run in the New Hampshire primary and then whether to run in the Super Tuesday primaries) that will maximize her expected funds after these primaries.

a. Construct and solve the decision tree for this problem.

b. There is some uncertainty in the estimates of a gain of $16 million or a loss of $10 million depending on the showing on Super Tuesday. Either amount could differ from this estimate by

as much as 25 percent in either direction. For each of these two financial figures, perform sensitivity analysis to check how the results in part *a* would change if the value of the financial figure were at either end of this range of variability (without any change in the value of the other financial figure). Then do the same for the four cases where both financial figures are at one end or the other of their ranges of variability.

A 12.31. The executive search being conducted for Western Bank by Headhunters Inc. may finally be bearing fruit. The position to be filled is a key one—Vice President for Information Processing—because this person will have responsibility for developing a state-of-the-art management information system that will link together Western's many branch banks. However, Headhunters feels it has found just the right person, Matthew Fenton, who has an excellent record in a similar position for a mid-sized bank in New York.

After a round of interviews, Western's president believes that Matthew has a probability of 0.7 of designing the management information system successfully. If Matthew is successful, the company will realize a profit of $2 million (net of Matthew's salary, training, recruiting costs, and expenses). If he is not successful, the company will realize a net loss of $600,000.

For an additional fee of $40,000, Headhunters will provide a detailed investigative process (including an extensive background check, a battery of academic and psychological tests, etc.) that will further pinpoint Matthew's potential for success. This process has been found to be 90 percent reliable, that is, a candidate who would successfully design the management information system will pass the test with probability 0.9, and a

candidate who would not successfully design the system will fail the test with probability 0.9.

Western's top management needs to decide whether to hire Matthew and whether to have Headhunters conduct the detailed investigative process before making this decision.

a. Construct and solve the decision tree for this problem to identify the optimal policy.

b. Now suppose that Headhunters's fee for administering its detailed investigative process is negotiable. What is the maximum amount that Western Bank should pay?

12.32. Reconsider the Goferbroke Co. case study, including the application of utilities in Section 12.9. Max Flyer now has decided that, given the company's precarious financial situation, he needs to take a much more risk-averse approach to the problem. Therefore, he has revised the utilities given in Table 12.9 as follows: $U(-130) = 0$, $U(-100) = 0.07$, $U(60) = 0.40$, $U(90) = 0.45$, $U(670) = 0.99$, and $U(700) = 1$.

page 558

a. Analyze the revised decision tree corresponding to Figure 12.23 by hand to obtain the new optimal policy.

A *b.* Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve this revised decision tree.

12.33.* You live in an area that has a possibility of incurring a massive earthquake, so you are considering buying earthquake insurance on your home at an annual cost of $180. The probability of an earthquake damaging your home during one year is 0.001. If this happens, you estimate that the cost of the damage (fully covered by

earthquake insurance) will be $160,000. Your total assets (including your home) are worth $250,000.

a. Apply Bayes' decision rule to determine which alternative (take the insurance or not) maximizes your expected assets after one year.

b. You now have constructed a utility function that measures how much you value having total assets worth x dollars ($x \geq 0$). This utility function is $U(x) = \sqrt{x}$. Compare the utility of reducing your total assets next year by the cost of the earthquake insurance with the expected utility next year of not taking the earthquake insurance. Should you take the insurance?

12.34. For your graduation present from college, your parents are offering you your choice of two alternatives. The first alternative is to give you a money gift of $19,000. The second alternative is to make an investment in your name. This investment will quickly have the following two possible outcomes.

Outcome	Probability
Receive $10,000	0.3
Receive $30,000	0.7

Your utility for receiving M thousand dollars is given by the utility function $U(M) = \sqrt{M + 6}$. Which choice should you make to maximize expected utility?

12.35. Reconsider Problem 12.34. You now are uncertain about what your true utility function for receiving money is, so you are in the process of constructing this utility function by using the equivalent lottery method and units of thousands of dollars. You have concluded that you are

indifferent between the two alternatives offered to you by your parents. Use this information to find $U(19)$ after setting $U(10) = 0$ and $U(30) = 1$.

12.36. You wish to construct your personal utility function $U(M)$ for receiving M thousand dollars. After setting $U(0) = 0$, you next set $U(10) = 1$ as your utility for receiving \$10,000. You next want to find $U(1)$ and then $U(5)$.

a. You offer yourself the following two hypothetical alternatives:

A_1: Obtain \$10,000 with probability p.
Obtain 0 with probability $(1 - p)$.
A_2: Definitely obtain \$1,000.

b. You then ask yourself the question: What value of p makes you indifferent between these two alternatives? Your answer is $p = 0.125$. Find $U(1)$ by using the equivalent lottery method.

c. You next repeat part *a* except for changing the second alternative to definitely receiving \$5,000. The value of p that makes you indifferent between these two alternatives now is $p = 0.5625$. Find $U(5)$.

d. Repeat parts *a* and *b,* but now use *your* personal choices for *p.*

12.37. You are given the following payoff table.

	State of Nature	
Alternative	S_1	S_2
A_1	25	36
A_2	100	0
A_3	0	49

Alternative	State of Nature	
	S_1	S_2
Prior probability	p	$1 - p$

a. Assume that your utility function for the payoffs is $U(x) = \sqrt{x}$. Plot the expected utility of each decision alternative versus the value of p on the same graph. For each decision alternative, find the range of values of p over which this alternative maximizes the expected utility.

A *b.* Now assume that your utility function is the exponential utility function with a risk tolerance of $R = 50$. Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve the resulting decision tree in turn for $p = 0.25$, $p = 0.5$, and $p = 0.75$.

A 12.38. Dr. Switzer has a seriously ill patient but has had trouble diagnosing the specific cause of the illness. The doctor now has narrowed the cause down to two alternatives: disease A or disease B. Based on the evidence so far, she feels that the two alternatives are equally likely.

Beyond the testing already done, there is no test available to determine if the cause is disease B. One test is available for disease A, but it has two major problems. First, it is very expensive. Second, it is somewhat unreliable, giving an accurate result only 80 percent of the time. Thus, it will give a positive result (indicating disease A) for only 80 percent of patients who have disease A, whereas it will give a positive result for 20 percent of patients who actually have disease B instead.

Disease B is a very serious disease with no known treatment. It is sometimes fatal, and those who survive

remain in poor health with a poor quality of life thereafter. The prognosis is similar for victims of disease A if it is left untreated. However, there is a fairly expensive treatment available that eliminates the danger for those with disease A, and it may return them to good health. Unfortunately, it is a relatively radical treatment that always leads to death if the patient actually has disease B instead.

The probability distribution for the prognosis for this patient is given for each case in the following table, where the column headings (after the first one) indicate the disease for the patient.

	Outcome Probabilities			
	No Treatment		Receive Treatment for Disease A	
Outcome	A	B	A	B
Die	0.2	0.5	0	1.0
Survive with poor health	0.8	0.5	0.5	0
Return to good health	0	0	0.5	0

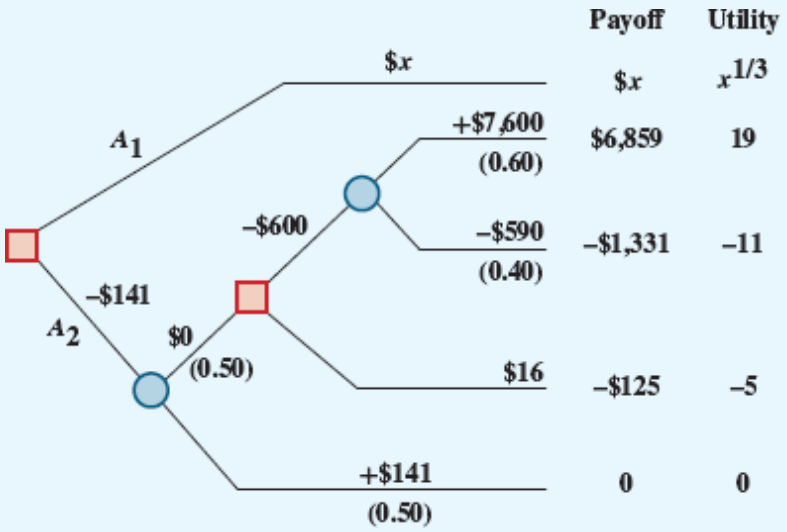
The patient has assigned the following utilities to the possible outcomes.

Outcome	Utility
Die	0
Survive with poor health	10
Return to good health	30

In addition, these utilities should be incremented by −2 if the patient incurs the cost of the test for disease A and by −1 if the patient (or the patient's estate) incurs the cost of the treatment for disease A.

page 559

Use decision analysis with a complete decision tree to determine if the patient should undergo the test for disease A and then how to proceed (receive the treatment for disease A?) to maximize the patient's expected utility.



12.39. Consider the following decision tree, where the probabilities for each event node are shown in parentheses.

The dollar amount given next to each branch is the cash flow generated along that branch, where these intermediate cash flows add up to the total net cash flow shown to the right of each terminal branch. (The unknown amount for the top branch is represented by the variable x.) The decision maker has a utility function $U(y)=y^{1/3}$ where y is the total net cash flow after a terminal branch. The resulting utilities for the various terminal branches are shown to the right of the decision tree.

Use these utilities to analyze the decision tree. Then determine the value of x for which the decision maker is indifferent between decision alternatives A_1 and A_2.

A 12.40. Reconsider the Goferbroke Co. case study when using utilities, as presented in Section 12.9.

a. Beginning with the decision tree shown in Figure 12.23 (available in one of this chapter's Excel files), prepare to perform sensitivity analysis by expanding and organizing the spreadsheet to (1) consolidate the data and results in one section and (2) incorporate the Excel template for posterior probabilities in another section (similar to what was done in Figure 12.18).

b. Perform sensitivity analysis by re-solving the decision tree (after using the Excel template for posterior probabilities to revise these probabilities) when the prior probability of oil is changed in turn to 0.15, 0.2, 0.3, and 0.35.

Case 12-1

Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?

You are a contestant on "Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?" You already have answered the $250,000 question correctly and now must decide if you would like to answer the $500,000 question. You can choose to walk away at this point with $250,000 in winnings or you may decide to answer the $500,000 question. If you answer the $500,000 question correctly, you can then choose to walk away with $500,000 in winnings or go on and try to answer the $1,000,000 question. If you answer the $1,000,000 question correctly, the game is over and you win $1,000,000. If you answer either the $500,000 or the $1,000,000 question incorrectly, the game is over immediately and you take home "only" $32,000.

A feature of the game "Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?" is that you have three "lifelines"—namely "50–50," "ask the audience," and "phone a friend." At this point (after answering the $250,000 question), you already have used two of these lifelines, but you have the "phone a friend" lifeline remaining. With this option, you may

phone a friend to obtain advice on the correct answer to a question before giving your answer. You may use this option only once (i.e., you can use it on either the $500,000 question or the $1,000,000 question, but not both). Since some of your friends are smarter than you are, "phone a friend" significantly improves your odds for answering a question correctly. Without "phone a friend," if you choose to answer the $500,000 question you have a 65 percent chance of answering correctly, and if you choose to answer the $1,000,000 question you have a 50 percent chance of answering correctly (the questions get progressively more difficult). With "phone a friend," you have an 80 percent chance of answering the $500,000 question correctly and a 65 percent chance of answering the $1,000,000 question correctly.

a. Use Analytic Solver to construct and solve a decision tree to decide what to do. What is the best course of action, assuming your goal is to maximize your *expected* winnings?
b. Use the equivalent lottery method to determine your personal utility function (in particular, your utility values for all of the possible payoffs in the game).
c. Re-solve the decision tree, replacing the payoffs with your utility values, to maximize your expected utility. Does the best course of action change?

Case 12-2

University Toys and the Business Professor Action Figures

University Toys has developed a brand new product line—a series of Business Professor Action Figures (BPAFs) featuring likenesses of popular professors at the local business school. Management needs to decide how to market the dolls.

One option is to immediately ramp up production and simultaneously launch an ad campaign in the university newspaper.

This option would cost $1,000. Based on past experience, new action figures either take off and do well or fail miserably. Hence, the prediction is for one of two possible outcomes—total sales of 2,500 units or total sales of only 250 units. University Toys receives revenue of $2 per unit sold. Management currently thinks that there is about a 50 percent chance that the product will do well (sell 2,500 units) and a 50 percent chance that it will do poorly (sell 250 units).

Another option is to test-market the product. The company could build some units, put up a display in the campus bookstore, and see how they sell without any further advertising. This would require less capital for the production run and no money for advertising. Again, the prediction is for one of two possible outcomes for this test market, namely, the product will either do well (sell 200 units) or do poorly (sell 20 units). The cost for this option is estimated to be $100. University Toys receives revenue of $2 per unit sold for the test market as well. The company has often test marketed toys in this manner. Products that sell well when fully marketed have also sold well in the test market 80 percent of the time. Products that sell poorly when fully marketed also sell poorly in the test market 60 percent of the time.

There is a complication with the test market option, however. A rival toy manufacturer is rumored to be considering the development of Law School Professor Action Figures (LSPAF). After doing the test marketing, if University Toys decides to go ahead and ramp up production and fully market the BPAF, the cost of doing so would still be $1,000. However, the sales prospects depend upon whether LSPAF has been introduced into the market or not. If LSPAF has not entered the market, then the sales prospects will be the same as described above (i.e., 2,500 units if BPAF does well, or 250 units if BPAF does poorly, on top of any units sold in the test market). However, if LSPAF has been introduced, the increased competition will diminish sales of BPAF. In particular, management expects in this case to sell 1,000 if BPAF does well or 100 units if it does poorly (on top of any units sold in the test market). Note that the probability of BPAF doing well or doing poorly is not affected by LSPAF, just the final sales totals of each possibility. The probability that LSPAF will

enter the market *before the end* of the test market is 20 percent. On the other hand, if University Toys markets BPAF immediately, they are guaranteed to beat the LSPAF to market (thus making LSPAF a nonfactor).

a. Suppose that the test marketing is done. Use the Posterior Probabilities template to determine the likelihood that the BPAF would sell well if fully marketed, given that it sells well in the test market and then given that it sells poorly in the test market.
b. Use Analytic Solver to develop and solve a decision tree to help University Toys decide the best course of action and the expected payoff.
c. Now suppose that University Toys is uncertain of the probability that the LSPAFs will enter the market before the test marketing would be completed (if it were done). How would you expect the expected payoff to vary as the probability that the LSPAFs will enter the market changes?
d. Generate a data table that shows how the expected payoff and the test marketing decision changes as the probability that the LSPAFs will enter the market varies from 0 percent to 100 percent (at 10 percent increments).
e. At what probability does the test marketing decision change?

Case 12-3

Brainy Business

While El Niño is pouring its rain on northern California, Charlotte Rothstein, CEO, major shareholder, and founder of **Cerebrosoft,** sits in her office, contemplating the decision she faces regarding her company's newest proposed product, Brainet. This has been a particularly difficult decision. Brainet might catch on and sell very well. However, Charlotte is concerned about the risk involved. In this competitive market, marketing Brainet also could lead to substantial losses. Should she go ahead anyway and start the marketing

campaign? Or just abandon the product? Or perhaps buy additional marketing research information from a local market research company before deciding whether to launch the product? She has to make a decision very soon and so, as she slowly drinks from her glass of high-protein-power multivitamin juice, she reflects on the events of the past few years.

Cerebrosoft was founded by Charlotte and two friends after they had graduated from business school. The company is located in the heart of Silicon Valley. Charlotte and her friends managed to make money in their second year in business and have continued to do so every year since. Cerebrosoft was one of the first companies to sell software online and to develop PC-based software tools for the multimedia sector. Two of the products generate 80 percent of the company's revenues: Audiatur and Videatur. Each product has sold more than 100,000 units during the past year. Customers can download a trial version of the software, test it, and if they are satisfied with what they see, they can purchase the product. Both products are priced at $75.95 and are sold exclusively online.

Charlotte is interrupted in her thoughts by the arrival of Jeannie Korn. Jeannie is in charge of marketing for online products and Brainet has had her particular attention from the beginning. She is more than ready to provide the advice

that Charlotte has requested. "Charlotte, I think we should really go ahead with Brainet. The software engineers have convinced me that the current version is robust and we want to be on the market with this as soon as possible! From the data for our product launches during the past two years, we can get a rather reliable estimate of how the market will respond to the new product, don't you think? And look!" She pulls out some presentation slides. "During that time period we launched 12 new products altogether and 4 of them sold more than 30,000 units during the first six months alone! Even better: The last two we launched even sold more than 40,000 copies during the first two quarters!" Charlotte knows these numbers as well as Jeannie does. After all, two of these launches have been products she herself helped to develop. But she feels uneasy about this particular product launch. The company has grown rapidly during the past three years

and its financial capabilities are already rather stretched. A poor product launch for Brainet would cost the company a lot of money, something that isn't available right now due to the investments Cerebrosoft has recently made.

Later in the afternoon, Charlotte meets with Reggie Ruffin, a jack of all trades and the production manager. Reggie has a solid track record in his field and Charlotte wants his opinion on the Brainet project.

"Well, Charlotte, quite frankly, I think that there are three main factors that are relevant to the success of this project: competition, units sold, and cost—ah, and, of course, our pricing. Have you decided on the price yet?"

"I am still considering which of the three strategies would be most beneficial to us. Selling for $50.00 and trying to maximize revenues—or selling for $30.00 and trying to maximize market share. Of course, there is still your third alternative; we could sell for $40.00 and try to do both."

At this point, Reggie focuses on the sheet of paper in front of him. "And I still believe that the $40.00 alternative is the best one. Concerning the costs, I checked the records; basically we have to amortize the development costs we incurred for Brainet. So far we have spent $800,000 and we expect to spend another $50,000 per year for support." Reggie next hands a report to Charlotte. "Here we have some data on the industry. I just received that yesterday, hot off the press. Let's see what we can learn about the industry here." He shows Charlotte some of the highlights. Reggie then agrees to compile the most relevant information contained in the report and have it ready for Charlotte the following morning. It takes him long into the night to gather the data from the pages of the report, but in the end he produces three tables, one for each of the three alternative pricing strategies. Each table shows the corresponding probability of various amounts of sales given the level of competition (severe, moderate, or weak) that develops from other companies.

The next morning, Charlotte is sipping from another power drink. Jeannie and Reggie will be in her office any moment now and, with

their help, she will have to decide what to do with Brainet. Should they launch the product? If so, at what price?

When Jeannie and Reggie enter the office, Jeannie immediately bursts out: “Guys, I just spoke to our marketing research company. They say that they could do a study for us about the competitive situation for the introduction of Brainet and deliver the results within a week.”

TABLE 1

Probability Distribution of Unit Sales, Given a High Price ($50)

	Level of Competition		
Sales	**Severe**	**Moderate**	**Weak**
50,000 units	0.2	0.25	0.3
30,000 units	0.25	0.3	0.35
20,000 units	0.55	0.45	0.35

TABLE 2

Probability Distribution of Unit Sales, Given a Medium Price ($40)

	Level of Competition		
Sales	**Severe**	**Moderate**	**Weak**
50,000 units	0.25	0.30	0.40
30,000 units	0.35	0.40	0.50
20,000 units	0.40	0.30	0.10

TABLE 3

Probability Distribution of Unit Sales, Given a Low Price ($30)

Sales	Level of Competition		
	Severe	Moderate	Weak
50,000 units	0.35	0.40	0.50
30,000 units	0.40	0.50	0.45
20,000 units	0.25	0.10	0.05

"How much do they want for the study?"

"I knew you'd ask that, Reggie. They want $10,000, and I think it's a fair deal."

At this point, Charlotte steps into the conversation. "Do we have any data on the quality of the work of this marketing research company?"

"Yes, I do have some reports here. After analyzing them, I have come to the conclusion that the predictions of the marketing research company are pretty good: Given that the competition turned out to be severe, they predicted it correctly 80 percent of the time, while 15 percent of the time they predicted moderate competition in that setting, with a prediction of weak competition only 5 percent of the time. Given that the competition turned out to be moderate, they predicted severe competition 15 percent of the time and moderate competition 80 percent of the time, with a prediction of weak competition just 5 percent of the time. Finally, for the case of weak competition, the numbers were 90 percent of the time a correct prediction, 7 percent of the time a 'moderate' prediction and 3 percent of the time a 'severe' prediction."

Charlotte feels that all these numbers are too much for her. "Don't we have a simple estimate of how the market will react?"

"Some prior probabilities, you mean? Sure, from our past experience, the likelihood of facing severe competition is 20 percent, whereas it is 70 percent for moderate competition and 10 percent for

weak competition," says Jeannie, her numbers always ready when needed.

All that is left to do now is to sit down and make sense of all this . . .

a. For the initial analysis, ignore the opportunity of obtaining more information by hiring the marketing research company. Identify the decision alternatives and the states of nature. Construct the payoff table. Then formulate the decision problem in a decision tree. Clearly distinguish between decision and event nodes and include all the relevant data.
b. What is Charlotte's decision if she uses the maximum likelihood criterion?
c. What is Charlotte's decision if she uses Bayes' decision rule?
d. Now consider the possibility of doing the market research. Develop the corresponding decision tree. Calculate the relevant probabilities and analyze the decision tree. Should Cerebrosoft pay the $10,000 for the marketing research? What is the overall optimal policy?

Case 12-4

Smart Steering Support

On a sunny May morning, Marc Binton, CEO of **Bay Area Automobile Gadgets (BAAG),** enters the conference room on the 40th floor of the Gates building in San Francisco, where BAAG's offices are located. The other executive officers of the company have already gathered. The meeting has only one item on its agenda: planning a research and development project to develop a new driver support system (DSS). Brian Huang, manager of the company's large Research and Development Division, is walking around nervously. He has to inform the group about the R&D strategy he has developed for the DSS. Marc has identified DSS as the strategic new product for the company. Julie Aker, vice president of Marketing, will speak after Brian. She will give detailed information about the target segment,

expected sales, and marketing costs associated with the introduction of the DSS.

BAAG builds electronic nonaudio equipment for luxury cars. Founded by a group of Stanford graduates, the company sold its first product—a car routing system relying on a technology called Global Positioning Satellites (GPS)—many years ago. Such routing systems help drivers to find directions to their desired destinations using satellites to determine the exact position of the car. To keep up with technology and to meet the wishes of its customers, the company has added a number of new features to its router during past years. The DSS will be a completely new product, incorporating recent developments in GPS as well as voice recognition and display technologies. Marc strongly supports this product, as it will give BAAG a competitive advantage over its Asian and European competitors.

Driver support systems have been a field of intense research for more than three decades. These systems provide the driver with a wide range of information, such as directions, road conditions, traffic updates, and so forth. The information exchange can take place verbally or via projection of text onto the wind-screen. Other features help the driver avoid obstacles that have been identified by cars ahead on the road (these cars transmit the information to the following vehicles). Marc wants to incorporate all these features and other technologies into one support system that would then be sold to BAAG's customers in the automobile industry.

After all the attendees have taken their seats, Brian starts his presentation: "Marc asked me to inform you about our efforts with the driver support system, particularly the road scanning device. We have reached a stage where we basically have to make a go or no-go decision concerning the research for this device, which, as you all know by now, is a key feature in the DSS. We have already integrated the other devices, such as the GPS-based positioning and direction system. The question with which we have to deal is whether to fund basic research into the road scanning device. If this research is successful, we then will have to decide if we want to develop a

product based on these results—or if we just want to sell the technology without developing a product. If we do decide to develop the product ourselves, there is a chance that the product development process might not be successful. In that case, we could still sell the technology. In the case of successful product development, we would have to decide whether to market the product. If we decide not to market the developed product, we could at least sell the product concept that was the result of our successful research and development efforts. Doing so would earn more than just selling the technology prematurely. If, on the other hand, we decide to market the driver support system, then we are faced with the uncertainty of how the product will be received by our customers."

"You completely lost me," snipes Marc.

Max, Julie's assistant, just shakes his head and murmurs, "those techno-nerds. . . ."

page 563

Brian starts to explain: "Sorry for the confusion. Let's just go through it again, step by step."

"Good idea—and perhaps make smaller steps!" Julie obviously dislikes Brian's style of presentation.

"OK, the first decision we are facing is whether to invest in research for the road scanning device."

"How much would that cost us?" asks Marc.

"Our estimated budget for this is 3 million. Once we invest that money, the outcome of the research effort is somewhat uncertain. Our engineers assess the probability of successful research at 80 percent."

"That's a pretty optimistic success rate, don't you think?" Julie remarks sarcastically. She still remembers the disaster with Brian's last project, the fingerprint-based car-security-system. After spending several million dollars, the development engineers concluded that it would be impossible to produce the security system at an attractive price.

Brian senses Julie's hostility and shoots back: "In engineering, we are quite accustomed to these success rates—something we can't

say about marketing. . . .”

“What would be the next step?” intervenes Marc.

“Hm, sorry. If the research is not successful, then we can only sell the DSS in its current form.”

“The profit estimate for that scenario is $20 million,” Julie throws in.

“If, however, the research effort is successful, then we will have to make another decision, namely, whether to go on to the development stage.”

“If we wouldn’t want to develop a product at that point, would that mean that we would have to sell the DSS as it is now?” asks Max.

“Yes, Max. Except that additionally we would earn some $2 million from selling our research results to GM. Their research division is very interested in our work and they have offered that money for our findings.”

“Ah, now that’s good news,” remarks Julie.

Brian continues, “If, however, after successfully completing the research stage, we decide to develop a new product, then we’ll have to spend another $8 million for that task, at a 35 percent chance of not being successful.”

“So you are telling us we’ll have to spend $8 million for a ticket in a lottery where we have a 35 percent chance of not winning anything?” asks Julie.

“Julie, don’t focus on the losses but on the potential gains! The chance of winning in this lottery, as you call it, is 65 percent. I believe that that’s much more than with a normal lottery ticket,” says Marc.

“Thanks, Marc,” says Brian. “Once we invest that money in development, we have two possible outcomes: either we will be successful in developing the road scanning device or we won’t. If we fail, then once again we’ll sell the DSS in its current form and cash in the $2 million from GM for the research results. If the development process is successful, then we have to decide whether to market the new product.”

“Why wouldn’t we want to market it after successfully developing it?” asks Marc.

“That’s a good question. Basically what I mean is that we could decide not to sell the product ourselves but instead give the right to sell it to somebody else, to GM for example. They would pay us $10 million for it.”

“I like those numbers!” remarks Julie.

“Once we decide to build the product and market it, we will face the market uncertainties and I’m sure that Julie has those numbers ready for us. Thanks.”

At this point, Brian sits down and Julie comes forward to give her presentation. Immediately some colorful slides are projected on the wall behind her as Max operates the computer.

“Thanks, Brian. Well, here’s the data we have been able to gather from some marketing research. The acceptance of our new product in the market can be high, medium, or low.” Julie is pointing to some figures projected on the wall behind her. “Our estimates indicate that high acceptance would result in profits of $80 million and that medium acceptance would give us $40 million. In the unfortunate case of a poor reception by our customers, we still expect $22 million in profit. I should mention that these profits do not include the additional costs of marketing or R&D expenses.”

“So, you are saying that in the worst case we’ll make barely more money than with the current product?” asks Brian.

“Yes, that’s what I am saying.”

“What budget would you need for the marketing of our DSS with the road scanner?” asks Marc.

“For that we would need an additional $2 million on top of what has already been included in the profit estimates,” Julie replies.

“What are the chances of ending up with a high, medium, or low acceptance of the new DSS?” asks Brian.

“We can see those numbers at the bottom of the slide,” says Julie, while she is turning toward the projection behind her. There is a 30 percent chance of high market acceptance and a 20 percent chance

of low market acceptance, while the chance of a medium market acceptance is 50 percent.

At this point, Marc moves in his seat and asks: “Given all these numbers and bits of information, what are you suggesting that we do?”

a. Organize the available data on cost and profit estimates in a table.

b. Formulate the problem in a decision tree. Clearly distinguish between decision and event nodes.

c. Calculate the expected payoffs for each node in the decision tree.

d. What is BAAG’s optimal policy according to Bayes’ decision rule?

e. What would be the expected value of perfect information on the outcome of the research effort?

f. What would be the expected value of perfect information on the outcome of the development effort?

g. Marc is a risk-averse decision maker. In a number of interviews, it has been determined that he would just barely be willing to consider taking a 50–50 gamble where he either makes $12 million or loses $6 million. Based on Marc’s level of risk aversion, use the exponential utility function to determine BAAG’s optimal policy.

[1]In this very simple decision tree, this advantage does not become evident since each piece of data is only used once in the tree anyway. However, in later sections, when the possibility of seismic testing is considered, some data will be repeated many times in the tree and this advantage will become more clear.

[2]D. L. Keefer, C. W. Kirkwood, and J. L. Corner, “Perspective on Decision Analysis Applications,” *Decision Analysis* 1 (2004): 4–22.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 13

Queueing Models

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the elements of a queueing model.
2. Identify the characteristics of the probability distributions that are commonly used in queueing models.
3. Give many examples of various types of queueing systems that are commonly encountered.
4. Identify the key measures of performance for queueing systems and the relationships between these measures.
5. Describe the main types of basic queueing models.
6. Determine which queueing model is most appropriate from a description of the queueing system being considered.
7. Apply a queueing model to determine the key measures of performance for a queueing system.
8. Describe how differences in the importance of customers can be incorporated into priority queueing models.

). Describe some key insights that queueing models provide about how queueing systems should be designed.
). Apply economic analysis to determine how many servers should be provided in a queueing system.
L. Describe what is meant by behavioral queueing theory.

Queues (waiting lines) are a part of everyday life. We all wait in queues to buy a movie ticket, make a bank deposit, pay for groceries, mail a package, obtain food in a cafeteria, start a ride in an amusement park, and so on. We have become accustomed to considerable amounts of waiting, but still we get annoyed by unusually long waits.

In Great Britain, waiting lines are referred to as *queues,* so this term has been adopted by management scientists.

However, having to wait is not just a petty personal annoyance. The amount of time that a nation's populace wastes by waiting in queues is a major factor in both the quality of life there and the efficiency of the nation's economy.

Great inefficiencies also occur because of waiting that doesn't involve people standing in line. For example, making *machines* wait to be repaired may result in lost production. *Vehicles* (including ships and trucks) that need to wait to be unloaded may delay subsequent shipments. *Airplanes* waiting to take off or land may disrupt later travel schedules. Delays in *telecommunication* transmissions due to saturated lines may cause data glitches. Causing *manufacturing jobs* to wait to be performed may disrupt subsequent production. Delaying *service jobs* beyond their due dates may result in lost future business.

Causing long waits of many kinds in a queue can have serious consequences for any business.

Queueing theory is the study of waiting in all these various guises. It uses *queueing models* to represent the various types of *queueing systems* (systems that involve queues of some kind) that arise in practice. Formulas for each model indicate how the corresponding

queueing system should perform, including the average amount of waiting that will occur, under a variety of circumstances.

Queueing models often are used to determine how much service capacity should be provided to a queue to avoid excessive waiting.

Therefore, these queueing models are very helpful for determining how to operate a queueing system in the most effective way. Providing too much service capacity to operate the system involves excessive costs. But not providing enough service capacity results in excessive waiting and all its unfortunate consequences. The models enable finding an appropriate balance between the cost of service and the amount of waiting.

The first three sections of this chapter describe the elements of queueing models, give various examples of important queueing systems to which these models can be applied, and present measures of performance for these queueing systems. Section 13.4 then introduces a case study that will be carried through most of the chapter. Three subsequent sections present the most important queueing models in the context of analyzing the case study. Section 13.8 summarizes some key insights from the case study for designing queueing systems and Section 13.9 describes how economic analysis can be used to determine the number of servers to provide in a queueing system. Section 13.10 introduces *behavioral* queueing theory, which focuses on identifying the typical behavior of human servers and customers in real queueing systems. Additional queueing models are described in the supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

13.1 ELEMENTS OF A QUEUEING MODEL

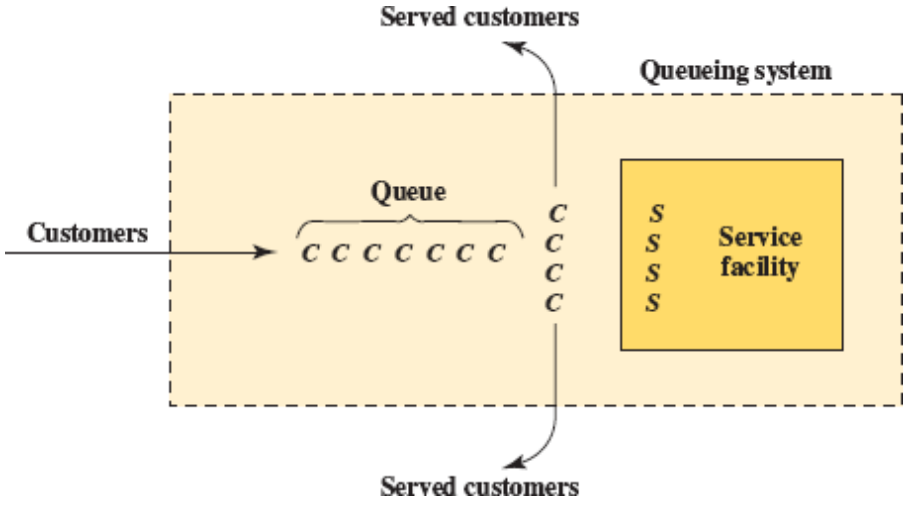
We begin by describing the basic type of queueing system assumed by the queueing models in this chapter.

A Basic Queueing System

Figure 13.1 depicts a typical **queueing system. Customers** arrive individually to receive some kind of service. If an arrival cannot be served immediately, that customer joins a **queue** (waiting line) to await service. (The queue does not include the customers who are currently being served.) One or more **servers** at the service facility provide the service. Each customer is individually served by one of the servers and then departs.

FIGURE 13.1

A basic queueing system, where each customer is indicated by *C* and each server by *S.* Although this figure shows four servers, some queueing systems (including the example in this section) have only a single server.



queueing system

A place where customers receive some kind of service from a server, perhaps after waiting in a queue.

customers

A generic term that refers to whichever kind of entity (people, vehicles, machines, items, etc.) is coming to the queueing system to receive service.

queue

The waiting line in a queueing system. The queue does not include customers who are already being served.

server

An entity that is serving the customers coming to a queueing system.

For some queueing systems, the customers are *people.* However, in other cases, the customers might be *vehicles* (e.g., airplanes waiting to take off on a runway), *machines* (e.g., machines waiting to be repaired), or other *items* (e.g., jobs waiting for a manufacturing operation).

A server commonly is an individual *person.* However, it might instead be a *crew* of people working together to serve each customer. The server can also be a *machine,* a *vehicle,* an *electronic device,* and so forth.

In most cases, the queue is just an ordinary waiting line. However, it is not necessary for the customers to be standing in line in front of a physical structure that constitutes the service facility. They might be sitting in a waiting room. They might even be scattered throughout an area waiting for a server to come to them (e.g., stationary machines needing repair).

The next section presents many more examples of important queueing systems that fit Figure 13.1 and the above description. All the queueing models in this chapter also are based on this figure.

However, we also should mention that more complicated kinds of queueing systems sometimes do arise in practice. For example, a server might serve a group of customers simultaneously. Customers also might arrive in a group rather than individually. Impatient customers might leave before receiving service. The queueing system might include multiple queues, one for each server, with customers occasionally switching queues. It might include multiple service facilities, where some customers need to go to more than one of the facilities to obtain all the required service. (This last type of queueing system is referred to as a *queueing network.*) Such queueing systems also are quite important, but we will not delve into the more complicated queueing models that have been developed to

deal with them. The next two chapters will describe another technique (computer simulation) that often is used to analyze complex queueing systems.

An Example

Herr Cutter is a German barber who runs a one-person barber shop. Thus, his shop is a basic queueing system for which he is the only server.

Herr Cutter opens his shop at 8:00 AM each weekday morning. Table 13.1 shows his queueing system in action over the beginning of a typical morning. For each of his first five customers, the table indicates when the customer arrived, when his haircut began, how long the haircut took, and when the haircut was finished.

TABLE 13.1

The Data for Herr Cutter's First Five Customers

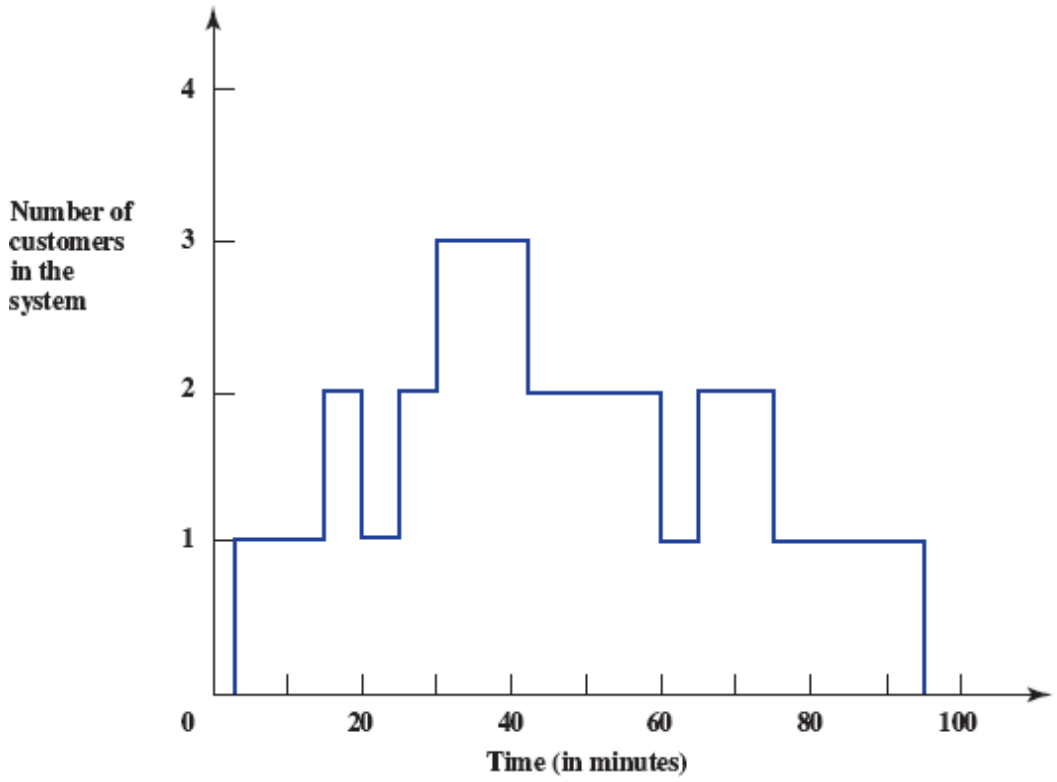
Customer	Time of Arrival	Haircut Begins	Duration of Haircut	Haircut Ends
1	8:03	8:03	17 minutes	8:20
2	8:15	8:20	21 minutes	8:41
3	8:25	8:41	19 minutes	9:00
4	8:30	9:00	15 minutes	9:15
5	9:05	9:15	20 minutes	9:35
6	9:43	—	—	—

Figure 13.2 plots the number of customers in this queueing system over the first 100 minutes. This number includes both the customers waiting to begin a haircut and the one already under way. Thus, the number of customers in the queue (only those waiting to begin service) is one less (except that this number is zero when the number of customers in the queueing system is zero).

FIGURE 13.2

The evolution of the number of customers in Herr Cutter's barber shop over the first 100 minutes (from 8:00 to 9:40), given the data in

Table 13.1.



Referring to this example, let us now look at the kinds of assumptions that the queueing models make about the different parts of a basic queueing system.

Arrivals

The times between consecutive arrivals to a queueing system are called the **interarrival times.** For Herr Cutter's barber shop, the arrival times in the second column of Table 13.1 can be used to calculate that the interarrival times on this particular morning are 12 minutes, 10 minutes, 5 minutes, 35 minutes, and 38 minutes.

interarrival time

The elapsed time between consecutive arrivals to a queueing system.

The *interarrival times* commonly are highly variable.

This high variability in the interarrival times is common for queueing systems. As with Herr Cutter, it usually is impossible to predict just how long until the next customer will arrive.

However, after gathering a lot more data such as in the second column of Table 13.1, it does become possible to do two things:

1. Estimate the *expected number* of arrivals per unit time. This quantity is normally referred to as the **mean arrival rate.** (The symbol commonly used for this quantity is λ, which is the Greek letter lambda.)

mean arrival rate

The expected number of arrivals to a queueing system per unit time.

2. Estimate the *form* of the probability distribution of interarrival times.

The mean of this distribution actually comes directly from item 1. Since

$$\lambda = \text{Mean arrival rate for customers coming to the queueing system}$$

the mean of the probability distribution of interarrival times is

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \text{Expected interarrival time}$$

For example, after gathering more data, Herr Cutter finds that 300 customers have arrived over a period of 100 hours.[1] Therefore, the estimate of λ is

page 567

$$\lambda = \frac{300 \text{ customers}}{100 \text{ hours}} = 3 \text{ customers per hour on the average}$$

The corresponding estimate of the expected interarrival time is

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{1}{3} \text{hour between customers on the average}$$

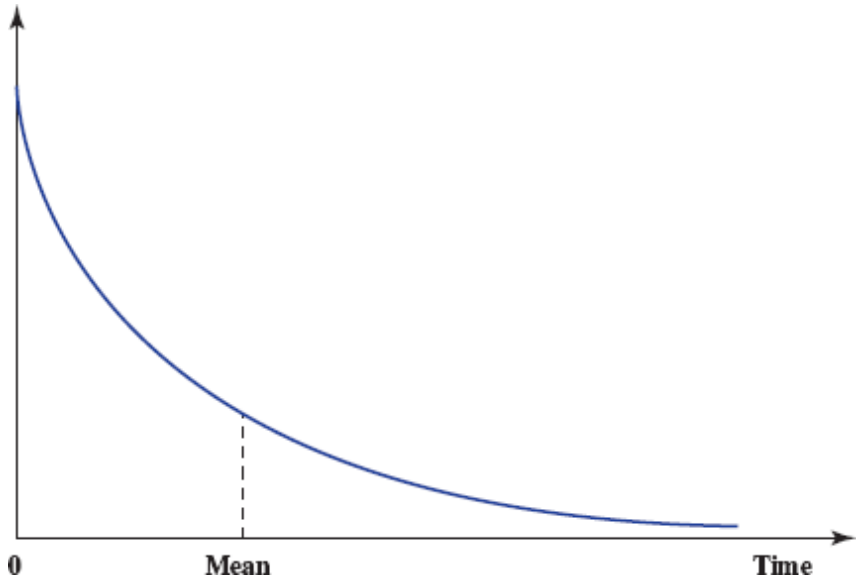
Most queueing models assume that the *form* of the probability distribution of interarrival times is an *exponential distribution,* as explained below.

The Exponential Distribution for Interarrival Times

Figure 13.3 shows the shape of an exponential distribution, where the height of the curve at various times represents the relative likelihood of those times occurring. Note in the figure how the highest points on the curve are at very small times and then the curve drops down “exponentially” as time increases. This indicates a high likelihood of small interarrival times, well under the mean. However, the long tail of the distribution also indicates a small chance of a very large interarrival time, much larger than the mean. All this is characteristic of interarrival times observed in practice. Several customers may arrive in quick succession. Then there may be a long pause until the next arrival.

FIGURE 13.3

The shape of an exponential distribution, commonly used in queueing models as the distribution of interarrival times (and sometimes as the distribution of service times as well).



This variability in interarrival times makes it impossible to predict just when future arrivals will occur. When the variability is as large as for the exponential distribution, this is referred to as having *random arrivals.*

Interarrival times have an exponential distribution when the customers arrive randomly. In this case, the remaining time from now until the next arrival occurs always is completely uninfluenced by how long since the last arrival occurred (called the memoryless property).

The Nature of Random Arrivals: For most queueing systems, the servers have no control over when customers will arrive. In this case, the customers generally arrive *randomly.* Having *random arrivals* means that arrival times are completely unpredictable in the sense that the chance of an arrival in the next minute always is just the same (no more and no less) as for any other minute. It does not matter how long it has been since the last arrival occurred. The only distribution of interarrival times that fits having random arrivals is the exponential distribution.

The fact that the probability of an arrival in the next minute is completely uninfluenced by when the last arrival occurred is called the **memoryless property** (or the *Markovian*

property). This is a strange property, because it implies that the probability distribution of the *remaining time from now* until the next arrival occurs always is the same, regardless of whether the last arrival occurred just now or a long time ago. Therefore, this distribution of the remaining time from now is the same as the distribution of the *total interarrival time* given in Figure 13.3. (This is what causes the probability of an arrival in the next minute to always be the same.) Although this concept of a memoryless property takes some getting used to, it is an integral part of what is meant by having random arrivals.

memoryless property

When referring to arrivals, this property is that the remaining time from now until the next arrival occurs is completely uninfluenced by when the last arrival occurred. Also called the Markovian property.

The Queue

The queue is where customers wait *before* being served. For Herr Cutter's barber shop, the customers in the queue sit in chairs (other than the barber's chair) while waiting to begin a haircut.

Because there are two ways of counting the customers, queueing models distinguish between them with the following terminology.

> The **number of customers in the queue** (or *queue size* for short) is the number of customers waiting for service to begin. The **number of customers in the system** is the number in the queue *plus* the number currently being served.

number of customers in the queue

The number of customers who are waiting for their service to begin. (See also Section 13.3)

number of customers in the system

The total number of customers in the queueing system, either waiting for their service to begin or currently being served. (See also Section 13.3)

For example, Figure 13.1 shows 7 customers in the queue plus 4 more being served by the 4 servers, so a total of 11 customers are in

the system. Since Herr Cutter is the only server for his queueing system, the number of customers in his queue is one less than the number of customers in the system shown in Figure 13.2 (except that the number in the queue is zero when the number in the system is zero).

The **queue capacity** is the maximum number of customers that can be held in the queue. An **infinite queue** is one in which, for all practical purposes, an almost unlimited number of customers can be held there. When the queue capacity is small enough that it needs to be taken into account, then the queue is called a **finite queue.** During those times when a finite queue is full, any arriving customers will immediately leave.

queue capacity
The maximum number of customers that can be held in the queue.

infinite queue
A queue that can hold an essentially unlimited number of customers.

finite queue
A queue that can hold only a limited number of customers.

Herr Cutter's queue actually is a finite queue. The queue capacity is three since he provides only three chairs (other than the barber's chair) for waiting. Any customer who arrives when all the chairs are occupied (a full queue) realizes that the wait for a haircut would be too long and so immediately leaves.

Unless specified otherwise, queueing models conventionally assume that the queue is an *infinite* queue. This assumption considerably simplifies the analysis and usually is a reasonable approximation when the queue size seldom reaches its upper limit. Herr Cutter's barber shop is an exception because the three chairs available for waiting occasionally fill up and cause new arrivals to leave. (All the models in this chapter assume an infinite queue but the chapter supplement at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** introduces a model

that assumes a finite queue and then applies this model to analyze Herr Cutter's barber shop.)

The **queue discipline** refers to the order in which members of the queue are selected to begin service. The most common is *first-come, first-served* (FCFS). However, other possibilities include *random selection,* some *priority procedure,* or even *last-come, first-served.* (This last possibility occurs, for example, when jobs brought to a machine are piled on top of the preceding jobs and then the machine operator takes the next job to be performed off the top of the pile.)

page 569

queue discipline

The rule for determining the order in which members of the queue are selected to begin service.

Section 13.7 will focus on *priority queueing models* where more important customers are served ahead of others. Otherwise, the queueing models throughout the chapter make the conventional assumption that the queue discipline is *first-come, first-served.*

Service

For a basic queueing system, each customer is served individually by one of the servers. A system with more than one server is called a *multiple-server system,* whereas a *single-server system* has just one server (as for Herr Cutter's barber shop).

When a customer enters service, the elapsed time from the beginning to the end of the service is referred to as the **service time.** Service times generally vary from one customer to the next. However, basic queueing models assume that the service time has a particular probability distribution, independent of which server is providing the service.

service time

The elapsed time from the beginning to the end of a customer's service.

The symbol commonly used for the *mean* of the service-time distribution is

$$\frac{1}{\mu} = \text{Expected service time}$$

where μ is the Greek letter mu. The interpretation of μ itself is

$$\mu = \text{Expected number of service completions per unit time for a single continuously busy server}$$

where this quantity is called the **mean service rate.** For example, Herr Cutter's expected time to give a haircut is

$$\frac{1}{\mu} = 20 \text{ minutes} = \frac{1}{3} \text{hour per customer}$$

mean service rate

The expected number of service completions per unit time for a single continuously busy server.

so his mean service rate is

$$\mu = 3 \text{ customers per hour}$$

Different queueing models provide a choice of service-time distributions, as described next.

Some Service-Time Distributions

The most popular choice for the probability distribution of service times is the **exponential distribution,** which has the shape already shown in Figure 13.3. The main reason for this choice is that this distribution is *much* easier to analyze than any other. Although this distribution provides an excellent fit for *interarrival times* for most situations, this is much less true for *service times.* Depending on the nature of the queueing system, the exponential distribution can

provide either a reasonable approximation or a gross distortion of the true service-time distribution. Caution is needed.

exponential distribution

The most popular choice for the probability distribution of both interarrival times and service times. Its shape is shown in Figure 13.3.

As suggested by Figure 13.3, the exponential distribution implies that many of the service times are quite short (considerably less than the mean) but occasional service times are very long (far more than the mean). This accurately describes the kind of queueing system where many customers have just a small amount of business to transact with the server but occasional customers have a lot of business. For example, if the server is a bank teller, many customers have just a single check to deposit or cash, but occasional customers have many transactions.

For some queueing systems, the service times have much less variability than implied by the exponential distribution, so queueing models that use other distributions should be considered.

However, the exponential distribution is a poor fit for the kind of queueing system where service consists basically of a fixed sequence of operations that require approximately the same time for every customer. For example, this describes the situation where the server is an ATM machine. Although there may be small variations in service times from one customer to the next, these times generally are just about the same.

page 570

For the latter kind of queueing system, a much better approximation would be to assume **constant service times,** that is, the same service time for every customer. (This also is referred to as having a *degenerate distribution* for service times.)

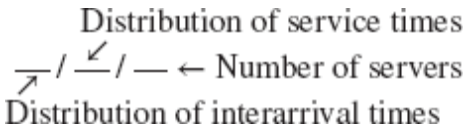
constant service times

Every customer has the same service time.

Other probability distributions also can be used to represent service times. For example, the *Erlang distribution* allows the amount of variability in the service times to fall somewhere between those for the exponential and degenerate distributions. The Erlang distribution is described further in the chapter supplement at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Unfortunately, these other possibilities for service-time distributions such as the Erlang distribution are not nearly as convenient to work with as the exponential and degenerate distributions.

Labels for Queueing Models

To identify which probability distribution is being assumed for service times (and for interarrival times), a queueing model for a basic queueing system conventionally is labeled as follows:



The symbols used for the possible distributions (for either service times or interarrival times) are

M = Exponential distribution (Markovian)
D = Degenerate distribution (constant times)

For example, the *M/M/*1 model is the single-server model that assumes that both interarrival times and service times have an exponential distribution. The *M/M/*2 model is the corresponding model with two servers. Letting *s* be the symbol that represents the number of servers, the *M/M/s* model is the corresponding model that permits any number of servers. Similarly, the *M/D/s* model has exponential interarrival times, constant service times, and any desired number of servers. (Constant service times could occur, e.g., if the servers are machines which provide exactly the same service to every customer.)

The first symbol identifies the distribution of interarrival times and the second symbol identifies the distribution of service times.

Interarrival times also can have a degenerate distribution instead of an exponential distribution. The *D/M/s* model has constant interarrival times, exponential service times, and any desired number of servers. (Constant interarrival times could occur, for example, if customers arrive promptly according to evenly spaced appointments.)

All the queueing models mentioned above will be considered at least briefly later in the chapter, along with results on how well such queueing systems perform.

There even are queueing models (with limited results) that permit choosing *any* probability distribution for the interarrival times or for the service times. The symbols used in these cases are

> *GI* = General independent interarrival-time distribution (any arbitrary distribution allowed)
>
> *G* = General service-time distribution (any arbitrary distribution allowed)

Thus, the *GI/M/s* model allows any interarrival-time distribution (with independent interarrival times), exponential service times, and any desired number of servers. The *M/G/*1 model has exponential interarrival times and one server but allows any service-time distribution. (We will touch later on just the latter model.)

Summary of Model Assumptions

To summarize, we list below the assumptions generally made by queueing models of a basic queueing system. Each of these assumptions should be taken for granted unless a model explicitly states otherwise.

1. Interarrival times are independent and identically distributed according to a specified probability distribution.
2. All arriving customers enter the queueing system and remain there until service has been completed.
3. The queueing system has a single *infinite queue,* so that the queue will hold an unlimited number of customers (for all practical purposes).
4. The queue discipline is first-come, first-served.

5. The queueing system has a specified number of servers, where each server is capable of serving any of the customers.
6. Each customer is served individually by any one of the servers.
7. A server becomes available to begin serving another customer immediately after completing the service of the current customer.
8. Service times are independent and identically distributed according to a specified probability distribution.

Review *Questions*

. What might the customers of a queueing system be other than people?
. What might the server of a queueing system be other than an individual person?
. What is the relationship between the mean arrival rate and the mean of the probability distribution of interarrival times?
. What is the shape of the exponential distribution?
. How would you characterize the amount of variability in the times given by the exponential distribution?
. What is meant by customers arriving *randomly?* Which distribution of interarrival times corresponds to random arrivals?
. What is the distinction between the number of customers in the queue and the number in the system?
. What is the conventional assumption made by most queueing models about the queue capacity? About the queue discipline?
. What is the relationship between the mean of the service-time distribution and the mean service rate for a single continuously busy server?
. What are the two most important service-time distributions?
. What information is provided by the three parts of the label for queueing models?

13.2 SOME EXAMPLES OF QUEUEING SYSTEMS

Our description of queueing systems in the preceding section may appear relatively abstract and applicable to only rather special practical situations. On the contrary, queueing systems are surprisingly prevalent in a wide variety of contexts. To broaden your horizons on the applicability of queueing models, let us take a brief look at a variety of examples of real queueing systems.

One important class of queueing systems that we all encounter in our daily lives is **commercial service systems,** where outside customers receive service from commercial organizations. The first column of Table 13.2 lists a sampling of typical commercial service systems. Each of these is a queueing system whose customers and servers are identified in the second and third columns.

TABLE 13.2

Examples of Commercial Service Systems That Are Queueing Systems

Type of System	Customers	Server(s)
Barber shop	People	Barber
Bank teller service	People	Teller
ATM service	People	ATM
Checkout at a store	People	Checkout clerk
Plumbing services	Clogged pipes	Plumber
Ticket window at a movie theater	People	Cashier

Type of System	Customers	Server(s)
Check-in counter at an airport	People	Airline agent
Brokerage service	People	Stockbroker
Gas station	Cars	Pump
Call center for ordering goods	People	Telephone agent
Call center for technical assistance	People	Technical representative
Website	Browser	Computer server
Automobile repair shop	Cars	Mechanic
Vending services	People	Vending machine
Dental services	People	Dentist
Roofing services	Roofs	Roofer

commercial service system

A queueing system where a commercial organization provides a service to customers from outside the organization.

Most of these examples involve the customers coming to the server at a fixed location, where a physical queue forms if customers need to wait to begin service. However, for the plumbing services and roofing services examples, the server comes to the customers, so the customers in the queue are geographically dispersed. (In this kind of situation, the time a server spends in traveling to the customer is considered to be part of the service time.) In several other cases, the service is performed over the telephone, perhaps after some customers have been placed on hold (the queue).

page 572

Organizations also have their own **internal service systems,** where the customers receiving service are internal to the organization. As the examples in Table 13.3 indicate, these too are queueing systems. In some cases, the customers are employees of the organizations. In other examples, the customers are loads to be moved, machines to be repaired, items to be inspected, jobs to be performed, and so forth.

TABLE 13.3

Examples of Internal Service Systems That Are Queueing Systems

Type of System	Customers	Server(s)
Secretarial services	Employees	Secretary
Copying services	Employees	Copy machine
Computer programming services	Employees	Programmer
Intranet	Employees	Computer server
First-aid center	Employees	Nurse
Materials-handling system	Loads	Materials-handling unit
Maintenance system	Machines	Repair crew
Inspection station	Items	Inspector
Production system	Jobs	Machine
Semiautomatic machines	Machines	Operator
Tool crib	Machine operators	Clerk

internal service system

A queueing system where the customers receiving service are internal to the organization providing the service.

Transportation service systems provide another important category of queueing systems. Table 13.4 gives some examples. For several of the cases, the vehicles involved are the customers. For others, each vehicle is a server. A few of the examples go beyond the basic kind of queueing system described in the preceding section. In particular, the airline flight and elevator service examples involve a server that commonly serves a group of customers simultaneously rather than just one at a time. The queue in the parking lot example has zero capacity because arriving cars (customers) go elsewhere to park if all the parking spaces are occupied (all the servers are busy).

TABLE 13.4

Examples of Transportation Service Stations That Are Queueing Systems

Type of System	Customers	Server(s)
Highway tollbooth	Cars	Cashier
Truck loading dock	Trucks	Loading crew
Port unloading area	Ships	Unloading crew
Airplanes waiting to take off	Airplanes	Runway
Airplanes waiting to land	Airplanes	Runway
Airline flight	People	Airplane
Taxi or rideshare service	People	Vehicle
Elevator service	People	Elevator
Fire department	Fires	Fire truck
Parking lot	Cars	Parking space
Ambulance service	People	Ambulance

transportation service system

A queueing system involving transportation, so that either the customers or the server(s) are vehicles.

There are many additional examples of important queueing systems that may not fit nicely into any of the above categories. For example, a judicial system is a queueing system, where the courts are service facilities, the judges (or panels of judges) are the servers, and the cases waiting to be tried are the customers. Various health care systems, such as hospital emergency rooms, also are queueing systems. For example, x-ray machines and hospital beds can be viewed as servers in their own queueing systems. The shortage of hospital beds was a common issue during the Covid-19 pandemic, and queueing models were used to help manage the shortage.

The initial applications of queueing theory were to telephone engineering, and the general area of telecommunications continues to be a very important area of application. Furthermore, we all have our own personal queues—homework assignments, books to be read, and so forth. Queueing systems do indeed pervade many areas of society.

Review *Questions*

page 573

. What are commercial service systems? Also give a new example (not included in Table 13.2) of such a system, including identifying the customers and server.

. What are internal service systems? Also give a new example (not included in Table 13.3) of such a system, including identifying the customers and server.

. What are transportation service systems? Also give a new example (not included in Table 13.4) of such a system, including identifying the customers and server.

13.3 MEASURES OF PERFORMANCE FOR QUEUEING SYSTEMS

Managers who oversee queueing systems are mainly concerned with two types of measures of performance:

1. How many customers typically are waiting in the queueing system?
2. How long do these customers typically have to wait?

These measures are somewhat related, since how long a customer has to wait is partially determined by how many customers are already there when this customer arrives. Which measure is of greater concern depends on the situation.

Choosing a Measure of Performance

When the customers are internal to the organization providing the service (internal service systems), the first measure tends to be more important. In this situation, forcing customers to wait causes them to be unproductive members of the organization during the wait. For example, this is the case for machine operators waiting at a tool crib or for machines that are down waiting to be repaired. Having such customers wait causes *lost productivity,* where the amount of lost productivity is directly related to the number of waiting customers. The active members of the organization may be able to fill in for one or two idle members, but not for more.

Having customers wait in an internal service system causes lost productivity.

Commercial service systems (where outside customers receive service from commercial organizations) tend to place greater importance on the second measure. For such queueing systems, an important goal is to keep customers happy so they will return again. Customers are more concerned with how long they have to wait than with how many other customers are there. The consequence of

making customers wait too long may be *lost profit from lost future business.*

Making customers wait too long in a commercial service system may result in lost profit from lost future business.

Defining the Measures of Performance

The two measures of performance commonly are expressed in terms of their *expected values* (in the statistical sense). To do this, it is necessary to clarify whether we are counting customers only while they are in the queue (i.e., before service begins) or while they are anywhere in the queueing system (i.e., either in the queue or being served). These two ways of defining the two types of measures thereby give us four measures of performance. These four measures and their symbols are shown below.

These are four key measures of performance for any queueing system.

> L = Expected **number of customers in the system,** including those being served (the symbol L comes from *L*ine *L*ength)
>
> L_q = Expected **number of customers in the queue,** which excludes customers being served
>
> W = Expected **waiting time in the system** (includes service time) for an individual customer (the symbol W comes from *W*aiting time)
>
> W_q = Expected **waiting time in the queue** (excludes service time) for an individual customer

waiting time in the system

The elapsed time that an individual customer spends in the queueing system both before service begins and during service.

waiting time in the queue

The elapsed time that an individual customer spends in the queue waiting for service to begin.

These definitions assume that the queueing system is in a **steady-state condition,** that is, the system is in its normal condition after operating for some time. During the initial *start-up period* after a queueing system opens up with no customers there, it takes awhile

for the expected number of customers to reach its normal level. After essentially reaching this level, the system is said to be in a steady-state condition. (This condition also rules out such abnormal operating conditions as a temporary “rush hour” jump in the mean arrival rate.)

steady-state condition

The normal condition that a queueing system is in after operating for some time with a fixed utilization factor less than one.

The choice of whether to focus on the entire queueing system (L or W) or just on the queue (L_q or W_q) depends on the nature of the queueing system. For a hospital emergency room or a fire department, the queue (the time until service can begin) probably is more important. For an internal service system, the entire queueing system (the total number of members of the organization that are idle there) may be more important.

Relationships between L, W, L_q, and W_q

The only difference between W and W_q is that W includes the expected service time and W_q does not. Therefore, since $1/\mu$ is the symbol for the expected service time (where μ is called the *mean service rate*),

$$W = W_q + \frac{1}{\mu}$$

For example, if

$W_q = \frac{3}{4}$ hour waiting in the queue on the average

$\frac{1}{\mu} = \frac{1}{4}$ hour service time on the average

then

$$W = \tfrac{3}{4} \text{ hour} + \tfrac{1}{4} \text{ hour}$$
$$= 1 \text{ hour waiting in the queueing system on the average}$$

Perhaps the most important formula in queueing theory provides a direct relationship between *L* and *W.* This formula is

$$L = \lambda W$$

This is a very handy formula for immediately obtaining either *L* or *W* from the other one.

whenever the queueing system is in a steady-state condition, where

$$\lambda = \text{Mean arrival rate for customers coming to the queueing system}$$

This is called **Little's formula,** in honor of the eminent management scientist John D. C. Little (a long-time Institute Professor at MIT before his retirement), who provided the first rigorous proof of the formula in 1961.

Little's formula

The formula $L = \lambda W$, or $L_q = \lambda W_q$.

To illustrate the formula, suppose that

W = 1 hour waiting in the queueing system on the average
λ = 3 customers per hour arrive on the average

It then follows that

$$L = (3 \text{ customers/hour})(1 \text{ hour})$$
$$= 3 \text{ customers in the queueing system on the average}$$

Here is an intuitive way to view Little's formula. Assume the queueing system is in a steady-state condition. Since *L* then is the expected number of customers in the queueing system at any time, a customer looking back at the system after completing service should see *L* customers there on the average. For a single-server queueing

system with a first-come, first-served queue discipline, all L customers there would have arrived during this customer's waiting time in the queueing system. This waiting time is W on the average. Since λ is the expected number of arrivals per unit time, λW is the expected number of arrivals during this customer's waiting time in the system. Therefore, $L = \lambda W$. (This is good intuition, but a rigorous proof requires a far more extensive analysis.)

Professor Little's proof that $L = \lambda W$ also applies to the relationship between L_q and W_q. Therefore, another version of Little's formula is

$$L_q = \lambda W_q$$

For example, if

W_q = ¾ hour waiting in the queue on the average
λ = ¼ customers per hour arrive on the average

then

page 575

$$L_q = (3 \text{ customers/hour})(¾ \text{ hour})$$
$$= 2¼ \text{ customers in the queue on the average}$$

Combining the above relationships also gives the following direct relationship between L and L_q.

$$L = \lambda W = \lambda\left(W_q + \frac{1}{\mu}\right)$$
$$= L_q + \frac{\lambda}{\mu}$$

These expressions show the relationships between all four measures of performance.

For example, if L_q = 2¼, λ = 3, and μ = 4, then

$$L = 2¼ + ¾ = 3 \text{ customers in the system on the average}$$

These relationships are extremely important because they enable all four of the fundamental quantities—*L, W,* L_q, and W_q—to be immediately determined as soon as one is found analytically. This situation is fortunate because some of these quantities often are much easier to find than others when a queueing model is solved from basic principles.

Using Probabilities as Measures of Performance

Managers frequently are interested in more than what happens *on the average* in a queueing system. In addition to wanting *L,* L_q, *W,* and W_q not to exceed target values, they also may be concerned with *worst-case scenarios.* What will be the *maximum* number of customers in the system (or in the queue) that will only be exceeded a small fraction of the time (i.e., with a small probability)? What will be the *maximum* waiting time of customers in the system (or in the queue) that will only be exceeded a small fraction of the time? A manager might specify that the queueing system should be designed in such a way that these maximum numbers do not exceed certain values.

Meeting such a goal requires using the steady-state *probability distribution* of these quantities (the number of customers and the waiting time). For example, suppose that the goal is to have no more than three customers in the system at least 95 percent of the time. Using the notation

$$P_n = \text{Steady-state probability of having exactly } n \text{ customers in the system}$$
$$(\text{for } n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots)$$

meeting this goal requires that

$$P_0 + P_1 + P_2 + P_3 \geq 0.95$$

Similarly, suppose that another goal is that the waiting time in the system should not exceed two hours for at least 95 percent of the customers. Let the *random variable* $\mathscr{W}$ be the waiting time in the system for an individual customer while the system is in a steady-state condition. (Thus, W is the expected value of this random variable.) Using the probability distribution for this random variable, meeting the goal requires that

$$P(\mathscr{W} \leq 2 \text{ hours}) \geq 0.95$$

Since waiting times vary from customer to customer, $\mathscr{W}$ has a probability distribution, whereas W is the mean of this distribution.

If the goal is stated in terms of the waiting time in the *queue* instead, then a different random variable $\mathscr{W}_q$ representing this waiting time would be used in the same way.

Formulas are available for calculating at least some of these probabilities for several of the queueing models considered later in the chapter. Excel templates available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** will perform these calculations for you.

Review *Questions*

. Which type of measure of performance of queueing systems tends to be more important when the customers are internal to the organization?

. Which type of measure of performance tends to be more important for commercial service systems?

. What are the four basic measures of performance based on expected values? What are their symbols?

. What is meant by a queueing system being in a steady-state condition?

. What is the formula that relates W and W_q?

. What is Little's formula that relates L and W? That relates L_q and W_q?

. What is the formula that relates L and L_q?

. What kinds of probabilities can also be used as measures of performance of queueing systems?

13.4 A CASE STUDY: THE DUPIT CORP. PROBLEM

The **Dupit Corporation** is a long-time leader in the office printer-copier marketplace. One reason for this leadership position is the service the company provides its customers. Dupit has enjoyed a reputation of excellent service and intends to maintain that reputation.

Some Background

Dupit has a service division that is responsible for providing high-quality support to the company's customers by promptly repairing the Dupit machines when needed. This work is done on the customer's site by the company's *service technical representatives,* more commonly known as **tech reps.**

tech rep

An abbreviated name for the service technical representatives in the Dupit case study.

Each tech rep is given responsibility for a specified territory. This enables providing personalized service, since a customer sees the same tech rep on each service call. The tech rep generally feels like a one-person territory manager and takes pride in this role.

Each tech rep currently is assigned his or her own territory for servicing the machines.

John Phixitt is the Dupit senior vice president in charge of the service division. He has spent his entire career with the company and actually began as a tech rep. While in this initial position, John took classes in the evening for several years to earn his business degree. Since then, he has moved steadily up the corporate ladder. He is well

respected for his sound judgment and his thorough understanding of the company's business from the ground up.

John's years as a tech rep impressed upon him the importance of the tech rep's role as an ambassador of the company to its customers. He continues to preach this message regularly. He has established high personnel standards for becoming and remaining a tech rep and has built up the salaries accordingly. The morale in the division is quite high, largely through his efforts.

John also emphasizes obtaining regular feedback from a random sample of the company's customers on the quality of the service being provided. He likes to refer to this as keeping his ear to the ground. The customer feedback is channeled to both the tech reps and management for their information.

Another of John's themes is the importance of not overloading the tech reps. When he was a tech rep himself, the company policy had been to assign each tech rep enough machines in his or her territory that the tech rep would be active repairing machines 90 percent of the time (during an eight-hour working day). The intent was to maintain a high utilization of expensive personnel while providing some slack so that customers would not have to wait very long for repairs. John's own experience was that this did not work very well. He did have his idle periods about 10 percent of the time, which was helpful for catching up on his paperwork and maintaining his equipment. However, he also had frequent busy periods with many repair requests, including some long ones, and a large backlog of unhappy customers waiting for repairs would build up.

Therefore, when he was appointed to his current position, one of his first moves was to make the case to Dupit top management that tech reps needed to have more slack time to ensure providing prompt service to customers. A major part of his argument was that customer feedback indicated that the company was failing to deliver on the second and third parts of the company slogan given below.

Tech reps need considerable slack time to ensure providing prompt service to customers.

l. High-quality products.

2. High-quality service.
3. All delivered efficiently.

The company president had been promoting this slogan for years and so found this argument persuasive. Despite continuing pressure to hold costs down, John won approval for changing company policy regarding tech reps. These changes have led to the new current policy summarized below.

Current Policy: Each tech rep's territory should be assigned enough machines so that the tech rep will be active repairing machines (or traveling to the repair site) approximately 75 percent of the time. When working continuously, each tech rep should be able to repair an average of four machines per day (an average of two hours per machine, including travel time). Therefore, to minimize customer waiting times, the goal is to have an average of three repair calls per working day. Since the company's machines now are averaging 50 work days between needing repairs, the target is to assign approximately 150 machines (including both the new copier and the company's other office printer-copiers) to each tech rep's territory.

Each tech rep's territory currently has approximately 150 machines, which requires a tech rep to be busy on service calls approximately 75 percent of the time.

Under this policy, the company now has nearly 10,000 tech reps, with a total payroll (including benefits) of approximately $600 million per year.

The Issue Facing Top Management

A long succession of very successful products has helped Dupit maintain its position as a market leader for many years. Furthermore, its latest new product has been a particularly big winner. It is a color printer-copier that collates, staples, and so on, as well as having

advanced networking capabilities. Thus, it is a state-of-the-art, all-in-one copier for the modern office. Furthermore, its exceptional efficiency and attractive price compare favorably to all other similar copiers being marketed by other companies. Sales have even exceeded the optimistic predictions made by the vice president for marketing.

However, the success of this product also has brought problems. The tech reps previously had been kept rather busy repairing the company's other office photocopiers and now this new product has considerably increased their workload. Furthermore, the fact that the new copier performs so many key functions makes it a vital part of the purchaser's office. The owner has great difficulty in getting along without it for even a few hours when it is down requiring repair. Unfortunately, the average waiting time until the tech rep becomes available to come do the repair now runs about six hours and some waiting times are even considerably longer. Consequently, even though the tech reps are giving the same level of service as they have in the past, complaints about intolerable waits for repairs have skyrocketed.

The company's new color printer-copier is such a vital part of each purchaser's office that a much higher level of service is required to reduce downtime.

This crisis has led to an emergency meeting of top management, with John Phixitt the man on the spot. He assures his colleagues that service has not deteriorated in the least. There is agreement that the company is a victim of its own success. The new machine is so valuable that a much higher level of service is required.

After considerable discussion about how to achieve the needed service, Dupit's president suggests the following four-step approach to dealing with the problem:

1. Agree on a tentative new standard for the level of service that needs to be provided.
2. Develop some proposals for alternative approaches that might achieve this standard.

3. Have an analytics team work with John Phixitt to analyze these alternative approaches in detail to evaluate the effectiveness and cost of each one.
4. Reconvene this group of top management to make a final decision on what to do.

The group agrees.

Discussion then turns to what the new standard should be for the level of service. John proposes that this standard should specify that a customer's average waiting time before the tech rep can respond to the request for a repair should not exceed some maximum quantity. The customer relations manager agrees and argues that this average waiting time should not exceed two hours (versus about six hours now). The group agrees to adopt two hours as the tentative standard, pending further analysis by the analytics team.

> **Proposed New Service Standard:** The average waiting time of customers before the tech rep begins the trip to the customer site to repair the machine should not exceed two hours.

The proposal is to reduce average waiting times before the repair process begins from six hours to two hours.

Alternative Approaches to the Problem

After further discussion of various ideas about how to meet this service standard, the meeting concludes. The president asks the participants who had proposed some approach to think further about their idea. If they conclude that their idea should be a particularly sound approach to the problem, they are to send him a memorandum supporting that approach.

The president subsequently receives four memoranda supporting the approaches summarized below:

Approach Suggested by John Phixitt: Modify the current policy by decreasing the percentage of time that tech reps are expected to be active repairing machines. This involves simply decreasing the number of machines assigned to each tech rep and adding more tech reps. Thus, each tech rep would continue to have sole responsibility for servicing a specified territory, but each such one-person territory now would be a smaller one. This approach would enable continuing the mode of operation for the service division that has served the company so well in the past while increasing the level of service to meet the new demands of the marketplace.

Approach Suggested by the Vice President for Engineering: Provide new state-of-the-art equipment to the tech reps that would substantially reduce the time required for the longer repairs. Although expensive, this would significantly reduce the average repair time. Perhaps more importantly, it would greatly reduce the variability of repair times, which might decrease average waiting times for repairs.

Approach Suggested by the Chief Financial Officer: Replace the current one-person tech rep territories with larger territories that would be served by multiple tech reps. Having teams of tech reps to back each other up during busy periods might decrease average waiting times for repairs enough that the company would not need to hire additional tech reps.

Approach Suggested by the Vice President for Marketing: Give owners of the new printer-copier priority for receiving repairs over the company's other customers. Since the complaints about slow service are coming mainly from these owners, this approach might give them the service they require while still giving adequate service to other customers.

The president is pleased to have four promising approaches to consider. As previously agreed, his next step is to set up an analytics team (three individuals from the company plus an outside consultant) to work with John Phixitt in analyzing these approaches in detail. They are to report back to top management with their results and recommendations in six weeks.

Queueing models will be used to analyze each of the four proposed approaches.

Before reading further, we suggest that you think about these four alternative approaches and decide which one seems most promising. You then will be able to compare your conclusions with the results from the analytics study.

The Analytics Team's View of the Problem

The analytics team quickly recognizes that *queueing theory* will be a key technique for analyzing this problem. In particular, each tech rep's territory can be viewed as including the basic queueing system described below.

The Queueing System for Each Tech Rep

1. **The customers:** The machines (both the new copier and the company's other office photocopiers) needing repair.
2. **Customer arrivals:** The calls to the tech rep on his or her iPhone requesting repairs.
3. **The queue:** The machines waiting for repair to begin at their various sites.
4. **The server:** The tech rep.
5. **Service time:** The total time the tech rep is tied up with a machine, either traveling to the machine site or repairing the machine. (Thus, a machine is viewed as leaving the queue and entering service when the tech rep begins the trip to the machine site.)

With the approach suggested by the chief financial officer (enlarge the territories with multiple tech reps for each territory), this single-

server queueing system would be changed to a multiple-server queueing system.

The analytics team now needs to decide which specific queueing model is most appropriate for analyzing each of the four approaches. You will see this story unfold in the next few sections while we are presenting various important queueing models.

page 579

Review *Questions*

. What is the company's current policy regarding the workload for tech reps?
. What is the issue currently facing top management?
. What is the proposed new service standard?
. What are the alternative approaches that have been suggested for dealing with the issue facing top management?
. In the queueing system interpretation of this problem, what are the customers? The server?

13.5 SOME SINGLE-SERVER QUEUEING MODELS

Using the background on the elements of queueing models presented in Section 13.1, this section focuses on models of basic queueing systems having just one server. Key symbols introduced in Section 13.1 that will continue to be used here (and throughout the remainder of the chapter) are

λ = Mean arrival rate for customers coming to the queueing system
= Expected number of arrivals per unit time
μ = Mean service rate (for a continuously busy server)
= Expected number of service completions per unit time

Also recall that 1/λ is the *expected interarrival time* (the average time between the arrival of consecutive customers) and 1/μ is the *expected service time* for each customer.

A new symbol for this section is

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{\mu}$$

where ρ is the Greek letter rho. This quantity ρ is referred to as the **utilization factor,** because it represents the average fraction of time that the server is being utilized serving customers.

utilization factor

The average fraction of time that the servers are being utilized serving customers. (See also Section 13.6)

The utilization factor plays a key role in the efficiency of a queueing system.

In the Dupit Corp. case study, under the company's current policy, a typical tech rep experiences

λ = 3 customers (machines needing repair) arriving per day on the average

μ = 4 service completions (repair completions) per day on the average when the tech rep is continuously busy (either traveling to a repair site or performing a repair)

Since

$$\rho = \frac{3}{4} = 0.75$$

the tech rep is active traveling to and repairing machines 75 percent of the time.

For each of the queueing models, we will consider the measures of performance introduced in Section 13.3. Because of the relationships between the four basic measures—L, L_q, W, and W_q—including Little's formula given in that section, recall that all four quantities can be calculated easily as soon as one of their values has been determined. Therefore, we sometimes will be focusing on just one of these measures of performance for the following models.

The *M/M/* 1 Model

Using the labels for queueing models given near the end of Section 13.1, recall that the first symbol (*M*) in the *M/M/*1 label identifies the probability distribution of *interarrival times,* the second symbol (*M*) indicates the distribution of *service times,* and the third symbol (1) gives the number of servers. Since *M* is the symbol used for the *exponential distribution,* the *M/M/*1 model makes the following assumptions.

An Application Vignette

For many decades, **General Motors Corporation (GM)** enjoyed its position as the world's largest automotive manufacturer. However, since the late 1980s, when the productivity of GM's plants ranked near the bottom in the industry, the company's market position was steadily eroding due to ever-increasing foreign competition.

To counter this foreign competition, GM management initiated an ongoing management science project many years ago to predict and improve the throughput performance of the company's several hundred production lines throughout the world. The goal was to greatly increase the company's productivity throughout its manufacturing operations and thereby provide GM with a strategic competitive advantage.

The most important analytical tool used in this project has been a complicated **queueing model** that uses a simple *single-server model* as a building block. The overall model begins by considering a two-station production line where each station is modeled as a single-server queueing system with constant interarrival times and constant service times with the following exceptions. The server (commonly a machine) at each station occasionally breaks down and does not resume serving until a repair is completed. The server at the first station also shuts down when it completes a

service and the buffer between the stations is full. The server at the second station shuts down when it completes a service and has not yet received a job from the first station.

The next step in the analysis is to extend this queueing model for a two-station production line to one for a production line with any number of stations. This larger queueing model then is used to analyze how production lines should be designed to maximize their throughput. (The technique of computer simulation described in the next two chapters also is used for this purpose for relatively complex production lines.)

This application of queueing theory (and computer simulation), along with supporting data-collection systems, has reaped remarkable benefits for GM. According to impartial industry sources, its plants that once were among the least productive in the industry now rank among the very best. The resulting improvements in production throughput in over 30 vehicle plants and 10 countries yielded *over* **$2.1 billion** (so an average of over **$150 million annually**) *in documented savings and increased revenue* over the 14-year period from 1991 to 2004. Comparable financial benefits continued in subsequent years as well. Then, following the near-collapse of the company in 2009 during the Great Recession, the exceptional productivity of its plants has been one of the factors that enabled GM to regain its position as one of the world's most admired companies. It produced nearly seven million vehicles in 2020 and generated $122.5 billion in revenue despite the pandemic. As of 2021, General Motors was ranked number 22 on the Fortune 500 rankings of the largest United States corporations by total revenue.

This innovative application of management science, including a single-server queueing model, led to GM winning the prestigious **first prize** in the 2005 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: J. M. Alden, L. D. Burns, T. Costy, R. D. Hutton, C. A. Jackson, D. S. Kim, K. A. Kohls, J. H. Owen, M. A. Turnquist, and D. J. Vander Veen, "General Motors Increases Its Production Throughput," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 36, no.

1 (January–February 2006): 6–25. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Assumptions

1. *Interarrival times* have an exponential distribution with a mean of $1/\lambda$. (See Figure 13.3 and the description of this distribution in Section 13.1.)
2. *Service times* have an exponential distribution with a mean of $1/\mu$.
3. The queueing system has 1 server.

The first assumption corresponds to having customers arrive *randomly.* As discussed in Section 13.1, this assumption commonly is a valid one for real queueing systems.

The second assumption also is a reasonable one for those queueing systems where many service times are quite short (well under the mean) but occasional service times are very long. Some queueing systems fit this description, but some others do not even come close.

Although the second assumption is sometimes questionable, this model is widely used because it provides so many useful results.

Along with its multiple-server counterpart (considered in Section 13.6), the *M/M/*1 model is the most widely used queueing model. (It is even sometimes used for queueing systems that don't fit the second assumption very well.) A key reason is that this model has the most results readily available. Because the formulas are relatively simple, we give them for all the measures of performance below. (All these measures assume that the queueing system is in a *steady-state condition.*)

Formulas for the M/M/*1 Model*

Using $\rho = \lambda/\mu$, two equivalent formulas for the *expected number of customers in the system* are

$$L = \frac{\rho}{1-\rho} = \frac{\lambda}{\mu - \lambda}$$

Because of Little's formula ($L = \lambda W$), the *expected waiting time in the system* is

$$W = \frac{1}{\lambda} L = \frac{1}{\mu - \lambda}$$

Therefore, the *expected waiting time in the queue* (excludes service time) is

$$W_q = W - \frac{1}{\mu} = \frac{1}{\mu - \lambda} - \frac{1}{\mu} = \frac{\mu - (\mu - \lambda)}{\mu(\mu - \lambda)}$$
$$= \frac{\lambda}{\mu(\mu - \lambda)}$$

Applying the other version of Little's formula again ($L_q = \lambda W_q$), the *expected number of customers in the queue* (excludes customers being served) is

$$L_q = \lambda W_q = \frac{\lambda^2}{\mu(\mu - \lambda)} = \frac{\rho^2}{1-\rho}$$

Even the formulas for the various probabilities are relatively simple. The probability of having exactly n customers in the system is

$$P_n = (1-\rho)\rho^n \qquad \text{for } n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

Thus,

$$P_0 = 1 - \rho$$
$$P_1 = (1-\rho)\rho$$
$$P_2 = (1-\rho)\rho^2$$
$$\vdots$$

Assuming that the queue discipline is first-come-first-served, the probability that the *waiting time in the system* exceeds some amount

of time t is

$$P(\mathscr{W} > t) = e^{-\mu(1-\rho)t} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

where e (approximately equal to 2.718) is a special number widely used in mathematics.

The corresponding probability that the *waiting time in the queue* exceeds t is

$$P(\mathscr{W}_q > t) = \rho e^{-\mu(1-\rho)t} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

Since this waiting time in the queue is 0 if there are no customers in the system when an arrival occurs,

$$P(\mathscr{W}_q = 0) = P_0 = 1 - \rho$$

All these formulas assume that the server has a manageable utilization factor ($\rho = \lambda/\mu$), that is, that

$$\rho < 1$$

(*All* single-server queueing models of the basic queueing system described in Section 13.1 make this same assumption.) When $\rho > 1$, so that the mean arrival rate λ exceeds the mean service rate μ, the server is not able to keep up with the arrivals so the queueing system never reaches a steady-state condition. (This is even technically true when $\rho = 1$.)

A Helpful Excel Template

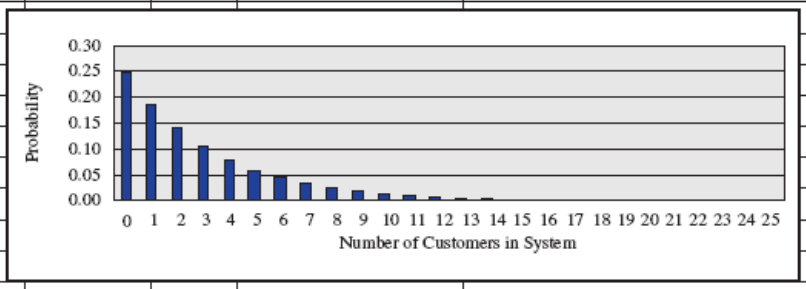
Although these formulas for the *M/M*/1 model are relatively simple ones, there are a lot of them. Fortunately, there is an Excel template for the *M/M/s* model available in this chapter's Excel files that will calculate all these measures of performance for you, including even the waiting time probabilities, if you wish. As illustrated in Figure 13.4 for the case study, all you have to do is set $s = 1$ and then specify the

values of λ and μ (plus the value of *t* if you want the waiting time probabilities). Since λ and μ are the *estimated* values of the mean arrival rate and mean service rate, respectively, you then can conduct sensitivity analysis on λ and μ by rerunning the template for various other possible values. All this can be done in a matter of seconds.

FIGURE 13.4

This spreadsheet shows the results from applying the *M/M/*1 model with λ = 3 and μ = 4 to the Dupit case study under the current policy. The equations for the *M/M/*1 model have been entered into the corresponding output cells, as shown at the bottom of the figure.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	***M/M/*1 Queueing Model for the Dupit Corp. Problem**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		$\lambda =$	3	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	3
5		$\mu =$	4	(mean service rate)		$L_q =$	2.25
6		$s =$	1	(# servers)			
7						W =	1
8		$Pr(W > t) =$	0.368			$W_q =$	0.75
9		when $t =$	1				
10						$\rho =$	0.75
11		$Prob(W_q > t) =$	0.276				
12		when $t =$	1			n	P_n
13						0	0.2500
14						1	0.1875
15						2	0.1406
16						3	0.1055
17						4	0.0791
18						5	0.0593
19						6	0.0445
20						7	0.0334
21						8	0.0250
22						9	0.0188
23						10	0.0141



Range Name	Cells
L	G4
Lambda	C4
L_q	G5
Mu	C5
n	F13:F38
P_0	G13
P_n	G13:G38
Rho	G10
s	C6
Time1	C9
Time2	C12
W	G7
W_q	G8

	B	C
8	$Pr(W > t) =$	=EXP(-Mu*(1-Rho)*C9)

	B	C
11	$Prob(W_q > t) =$	=Rho*EXP(-Mu*(1-Rho)*C12)

	F	G
4	$L =$	=Lambda/(Mu-Lambda)
5	$L_q =$	=Lambda)^2/(Mu*(Mu-Lambda)
6		
7	W =	=1/(Mu-Lambda)
8	$W_q =$	=Lambda/(Mu*(Mu-Lambda))
9		
10	$\rho =$	=Lambda/Mu
11		
12	n	P_n
13	0	=1-Rho
14	1	=(1-Rho)*Rho^@n
15	2	=(1-Rho)*Rho^@n
16	3	:
17	4	:

The Excel template for the *M/M/s* model can be applied to this *M/M/*1 model by setting $s = 1$.

Applying the *M/M/* 1 Model to the Case Study under the Current Policy

The Dupit analytics team begins its study by gathering some data on the experiences of some representative tech reps. They determine that the company's current policy regarding tech rep workloads (they are supposed to be busy repairing machines 75 percent of the time)

is operating basically as intended. Although there is some variation from one tech rep to the next, they typically are averaging about three calls requesting repairs per day. They also are averaging about two hours per repair (including a little travel time), and so can average four repairs for each eight-hour working day that they are continuously repairing machines. This verifies that the best estimates of the daily rates for a typical tech rep's queueing system (where the tech rep is the server and the machines needing repairs are the customers) are a mean arrival rate of $\boldsymbol{\lambda = 3}$ customers per day and a mean service rate of $\boldsymbol{\mu = 4}$ customers per day (so $\rho = \lambda/\mu = 0.75$), just as assumed under the current policy. (Other time units, such as *hourly* rates rather than *daily* rates, could be used for λ and μ, but it is essential that the *same* time units be used for both.)

page 582

Under the current policy, each tech rep is the server for his or her own queueing system where the machines needing repair are the customers.

The team also concludes that the customer arrivals (calls requesting repairs) are occurring *randomly,* so the first assumption of the *M/M/*1 model (an exponential distribution for interarrival times) is a good one for this situation. The team is less comfortable with the second assumption (an exponential distribution for service times), since the *total service time* (travel time plus repair time) never is extremely short as allowed by the exponential distribution. However, many service times are at least fairly short (well under the mean) and occasional service times are very long, which does fit the exponential distribution reasonably well. Therefore, the team decides that it is reasonable to use the *M/M/*1 model to represent a typical tech rep's queueing system under the current policy.

page 583

The *M/M/*1 model with $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu = 4$ provides a reasonable representation of each tech rep's queueing system.

The Excel template in Figure 13.4 shows the results from applying the various formulas for this model to this queueing system. Look first at the results at the top of column G. The expected number of machines needing repairs is $L = 3$. When excluding any machine that

is currently being repaired, the expected number of machines waiting to begin service is $L_q = 2.25$. The expected waiting time of a machine, measured from when the service request is submitted to the tech rep until the repair is completed, is $W = 1$ day. When excluding the repair time, the expected waiting time to begin service is $W_q = 0.75$ day = 6 hours during an eight-hour working day. (These results are treating a machine as moving from the queue into service when the tech rep begins the trip to the site of the machine.)

While gathering data earlier, the analytics team had found that the average waiting time of customers until service begins on their failed machines is approximately six hours of an eight-hour workday (i.e., ¾ of a workday). The fact that this time agrees with the value of W_q yielded by the model gives further credence to the validity of the model for this application.

Now look at the results in column G for P_n (the probability of having exactly n customers in the system). With $P_0 = 0.25$, the tech rep will only be busy repairing machines 75 percent of the time (as indicated by the utilization factor of $\rho = 0.75$). Since $P_0 + P_1 + P_2 = 0.58$, the tech rep will have no more than two machines needing repair (including the one being worked on) over half the time. However, he or she also will have *much* larger backlogs with some frequency. For example, $P_0 + P_1 + P_2 + \ldots + P_7 = 0.9$, which indicates that the tech rep will have *at least* eight machines needing repair (about two days' work or more) 10 percent of the time. With all the randomness inherent in such a queueing system (the great variability in both interarrival times and service times), these very big backlogs (and many unhappy customers) will occur occasionally despite the tech rep only having a utilization factor of 0.75.

All the results from the *M/M/*1 model indicate that unacceptably long delays in repairing failed machines will occur too frequently under the current policy.

Finally, look at the results in cells C8:C12. By setting $t = 1$, the probability that a customer has to wait more than one day (eight work hours) before a failed machine is operational again is given as $P(W >$

1 day) = 0.368. The probability of waiting more than one day before the repair begins is $P(W_q > 1 \text{ day}) = 0.276$.

Upon being shown all these results, John Phixitt comments that he understands better now why the complaints have been pouring in. No owner of such a vital machine as the new printer-copier should be expected to go more than a day (or even most of a day) before it is repaired.

Applying the *M/M/1* Model to John Phixitt's Suggested Approach

The analytics team now is ready to begin analyzing each of the suggested approaches for lowering to two hours (¼ workday) the average waiting time before service begins. Thus, the new constraint is that

$$W_q \leq \text{¼ day}$$

The first approach, suggested by John Phixitt, is to modify the current policy by lowering a tech rep's utilization factor sufficiently to meet this new service requirement. This involves decreasing the number of machines assigned to each tech rep from about 150 to some smaller number. Since each machine needs repair about once every 50 work days on the average, decreasing the number of machines in a tech rep's territory results in decreasing the mean arrival rate λ from 3 to

To meet the proposed new service standard that $W_q \leq$ ¼ day, John Phixitt suggests reducing the number of machines assigned to each tech rep from 150 to some smaller number.

$$\lambda = \frac{\text{Number of machines assigned to tech rep}}{50}$$

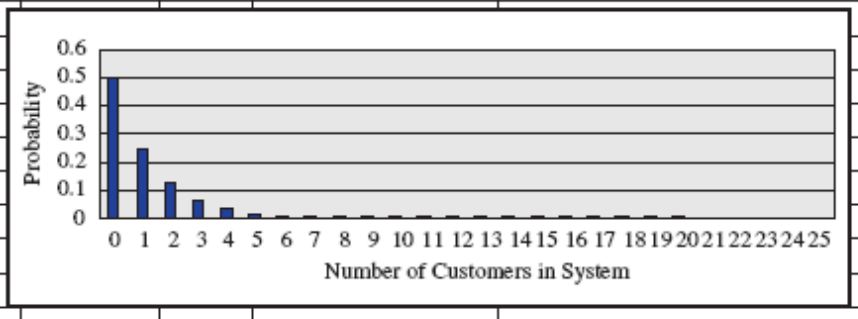
With μ fixed at 4, this decrease in λ will decrease the utilization factor, $\rho = \lambda/\mu$.

Since decreasing λ decreases W_q, the largest value of λ that has $W_q \le$ ¼ day is the one that makes W_q equal to ¼ day. The easiest way to find this λ is by trial and error with the Excel template, trying various values of λ until one is found where W_q = 0.25. Figure 13.5 shows the template that gives this value of W_q by setting **λ = 2.** (By using the formula for W_q, it also is possible to solve algebraically to find λ = 2.)

FIGURE 13.5

This application of the spreadsheet in Figure 13.4 shows that, when μ = 4, the *M/M/*1 model gives an expected waiting time to begin service of W_q = 0.25 day (the largest value that satisfies Dupit's proposed new service standard) when λ is changed from λ = 3 to λ = 2.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	***M/M/*1 Queueing Model for John Phixitt's Approach (Reduce Machines/Rep)**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		λ =	2	(mean arrival rate)		L =	1
5		μ =	4	(mean service rate)		L_q =	0.5
6		s =	1	(# servers)			
7						W =	0.5
8		Pr(W>t) =	0.135			W_q =	0.25
9		when t =	1				
10						ρ =	0.5
11		Prob(W_q>t) =	0.0677				
12		when t =	1			n	P_n
13						0	0.5
14						1	0.25
15						2	0.125
16						3	0.0625
17						4	0.0313
18						5	0.0156
19						6	0.00781
20						7	0.00391
21						8	0.00195
22						9	0.00098
23						10	0.00049



Decreasing λ from three to two would require decreasing the target for the number of machines

assigned to each tech rep from 150 to 100. This 100 is the *maximum* number that would satisfy the requirement that $W_q \leq ¼$ day. With $\lambda = 2$ and $\mu = 4$, the utilization factor for each tech rep would be only

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{\mu} = \frac{2}{4} = 0.5$$

Recall that the company's payroll (including benefits) for its nearly 10,000 tech reps currently is about $600 million annually. Decreasing the number of machines assigned to each tech rep from 150 to 100 would require hiring nearly 5,000 more tech reps to cover all the machines. The additional payroll cost would be about $270 million annually. (It is a little less than half the current payroll cost because the new tech reps would have less seniority than the current ones.) However, the analytics team estimates that the additional costs of hiring and training the new tech reps, covering their work expenses, providing them with equipment, and adding more field service managers to administer them would be equivalent to about $30 million annually. Adding this amount to the additional payroll cost gives a grand total of about $300 million annually.

The *M/M/*1 model indicates that the number of machines assigned to each tech rep would need to be reduced to 100 with John Phixitt's approach.

Total Additional Cost of the Approach Suggested by John Phixitt: Approximately $300 million annually.

The *M/G/*1 Model

This queueing model differs from the *M/M/*1 model only in the second of its assumptions summarized below.

Assumptions

1. *Interarrival times* have an exponential distribution with a mean of $1/\lambda$.

2. *Service times* can have *any* probability distribution. It is not even necessary to determine the form of this distribution. You just need to estimate the mean (1/μ) and standard deviation (σ) of the distribution.
3. The queueing system has one server.

Thus, this is an extremely flexible model that only requires the common situation of *random arrivals* (equivalent to the first assumption) and a single server, plus estimates of λ, μ, and σ.

You now need to also estimate σ, the standard deviation of the service-time distribution.

Formulas for the M/G/*1 Model*

page 585

Using ρ = λ/μ, here are the available formulas for this model.

$$P_0 = 1 - \rho$$
$$L_q = \frac{\lambda^2\sigma^2 + \rho^2}{2(1-\rho)}$$
$$L = L_q + \rho$$
$$W_q = \frac{L_q}{\lambda}$$
$$W = W_q + \frac{1}{\mu}$$

These steady-state measures of performance require only that ρ < 1, which allows the queueing system to reach a steady-state condition.

To illustrate the formulas, suppose that the service-time distribution is the exponential distribution with mean 1/μ. Then, since the standard deviation σ is

$$\sigma = \text{mean} = \frac{1}{\mu} \qquad \text{for the exponential distribution}$$

the formula for L_q indicates that

$$L_q = \frac{\lambda^2\left(\frac{1}{\mu^2}\right) + \rho^2}{2(1-\rho)} = \frac{\rho^2 + \rho^2}{2(1-\rho)}$$
$$= \frac{\rho^2}{(1-\rho)}$$

just as for the *M/M/*1 model. Having $\sigma = 1/\mu$ also causes the formulas for L, W_q, and W to reduce algebraically to those given earlier for the *M/M/*1 model. In fact, the *M/M/*1 model is just the special case of the *M/G/*1 model where $\sigma = 1/\mu$. (However, the *M/M/*1 model yields some results that are not available from the *M/G/*1 model.)

Insights Provided by the M/G/1 *Model*

Another important special case of the *M/G/*1 model is the *M/D/*1 model, which assumes that the service-time distribution is the degenerate distribution (constant service times). Since

$$\sigma = 0 \qquad \text{for the degenerate distribution}$$

the formula for L_q yields

$$L_q = \frac{\lambda^2(0) + \rho^2}{2(1-\rho)} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\rho^2}{1-\rho}$$

which is just half that for the *M/M/*1 model. Thus, going from a service-time distribution that has high variability (the exponential distribution) to one that has no variability (the degenerate distribution) has a dramatic effect on reducing L_q.

As this illustrates, the L_q formula for the *M/G/*1 model is an enlightening one, because it reveals what effect the variability of the service-time distribution has on this measure of performance. With fixed values of λ, μ, and ρ, decreasing this variability (i.e., decreasing σ) definitely decreases L_q. The same thing happens with L, W, and W_q. Thus, the consistency of the server has a major bearing on the performance of the queueing system. Given the choice between two

candidates to be the server, if they have the same average speed (the same value of 1/μ), the one with less variability (smaller σ) definitely should be preferred over the other one. (We will discuss this further in Section 13.8.)

Decreasing the variability of the service-time distribution has the beneficial effect of decreasing L_q, L, W, and W_q.

Considering the complexity involved in analyzing a model that permits *any* service-time distribution, it is remarkable that such a simple formula can be obtained for L_q. This formula is one of the most important results in queueing theory because of its ease of use and the prevalence of *M/G/*1 queueing systems in practice. This equation for L_q (or its counterpart for W_q) commonly is referred to page 586 as the Pollaczek-Khintchine formula, named after two pioneers in the development of queueing theory who derived the formula independently in the early 1930s.

Applying the M/G/1 Model to the Approach Suggested by the Vice President for Engineering

Dupit's vice president for engineering has suggested providing the tech reps with new state-of-the-art equipment that would substantially reduce the time required for the longer repairs. This would decrease the average repair time somewhat and also would substantially decrease the variability of the repair times.

The new state-of-the-art equipment suggested by the vice president for engineering would substantially reduce both the mean and the standard deviation of the service-time distribution.

After gathering more information from this vice president and analyzing it further, the analytics team makes the following estimates about the effect of this approach on the service-time distribution.

The mean would decrease from ¼ day to ⅕ day.
The standard deviation would decrease from ¼ day to $\frac{1}{10}$ day.

Thus, the standard deviation would decrease from equaling the previous mean (as for the exponential distribution) to being just half the new mean. Since μ = 1/mean, we now have **μ = 5** instead of μ = 4.

With **σ = 0.1,** the Excel template for the *M/G/*1 model available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** yields the results shown in Figure 13.6. Note that W_q = 0.188 day. This big reduction from W_q = 0.75 day under the current policy (as given in Figure 13.4) is largely due to the big decrease in σ. If the service-time distribution continued to be an exponential distribution, then increasing μ from 4 to 5 would decrease W_q from 0.75 day to 0.3 day. The additional reduction from 0.3 day to 0.188 day is because of the large reduction in the variability of service times.

FIGURE 13.6

This Excel template for the *M/G/*1 model shows the results from applying this model to the approach suggested by Dupit's vice president for engineering to use new state-of-the-art equipment.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	***M/G/1* Model for VP of Engineering's Approach (New Equipment)**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		$\lambda =$	3	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	1.163
5		$1/\mu =$	0.2	(expected service time)		$L_q =$	0.563
6		$\sigma =$	0.1	(standard deviation)			
7		$s =$	1	(# servers)		$W =$	0.388
8						$W_q =$	0.188
9							
10						$\rho =$	0.6
11							
12						$P_0 =$	0.4

Range Name	Cell
L	G4
Lambda	C4
L_q	G5
OneOverMu	C5
Rho	G10
s	C7
Sigma	C6
W	G7
W_q	G8

	F	G
4	$L =$	$=L_q$+Rho
5	$L_q =$	=((Lambda)^2)*(Sigma^2)+(Rho^2))/(2*(1-Rho))
6		
7	$W =$	$=W_q$+OneOverMu
8	$W_q =$	$=L_q$/Lambda
9		
10	$\rho =$	=Lambda*OneOverMu
11		
12	$P_0 =$	=1-Rho

The *M/G/*1 model indicates that the proposed new service standard would be met easily by this approach.

Recall that the proposed new service standard is $W_q \leq 0.25$ day. Therefore, the approach suggested by the vice president for engineering would satisfy this standard.

Unfortunately, the analytics team also determines that this approach would be expensive, as summarized below.

page 587

Total Additional Cost of the Approach Suggested by the Vice President for Engineering:

A one-time cost of approximately $500 million (about $50,000 for new equipment per tech rep).

Review *Questions*

. What are represented by the symbols λ and μ? By 1/λ and 1/μ? By ρ?
. What are the assumptions of the *M/M/*1 model?
. For which measures of performance (both expected values and probabilities) are formulas available for the *M/M/*1 model?
. Which values of ρ correspond to the server in a single-server queueing system having a manageable utilization factor that allows the system to reach a steady-state condition?
. Under Dupit's current policy, what is the average waiting time of customers until service begins on their failed machines?
. How much more would it cost Dupit to reduce this average waiting time to 1/4 workday by decreasing the number of machines assigned to each tech rep?
. How does the *M/G/*1 model differ from the *M/M/*1 model?
. Which service-time distribution is assumed by the *M/D/*1 model?
. For the *M/G/*1 model, what is the effect on L_q, L, W, and W_q of decreasing the standard deviation of the service-time distribution?
. What is the total additional cost of the approach suggested by Dupit's vice president for engineering?

13.6 SOME MULTIPLE-SERVER QUEUEING MODELS

Many queueing systems have more than one server, so we now turn our attention to multiple-server queueing models. In particular, we will discuss what results are available for the multiple-server counterparts of the single-server models introduced in the preceding section.

Recall that the third symbol in the label for a queueing model indicates the number of servers. For example, the *M/M/*2 model has two servers. The *M/M/s* model allows the choice of any number of servers, where *s* is the symbol for this number.

Also recall that ρ (=λ/μ) was the symbol used for the *utilization factor* for the server in a single-server queueing system. With multiple servers, the formula for this symbol changes to

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{s\mu} \qquad \textbf{(utilization factor)}$$

where λ continues to be the mean arrival rate (so 1/λ still is the expected interarrival time) and μ continues to be the mean service rate for a single continuously busy server (so 1/μ still is the expected service time). The models assume that all the servers have the same service-time distribution, so μ is the same for every server. Since

> λ = Expected number of arrivals per unit time
>
> *s*μ = Expected number of service completions per unit time when all *s* servers are continuously busy

As with single-server queueing models, the utilization factor ρ still is the average fraction of time that the individual servers are being utilized serving customers.

it follows that ρ = λ/*s*μ is indeed the average fraction of time that individual servers are being utilized serving customers.

In order for the servers to have a manageable utilization factor, it is again necessary that

$$\rho < 1$$

All multiple-server models of the basic queueing system described in Section 13.1 make this assumption to enable the queueing system to reach a steady-state condition.

Of the three previously considered single-server models (*M/M/*1, *M/G/*1, and *M/D/*1), the *M/G/*1 model is the only one whose multiple-server counterpart yields no useful analytical results. Combining the

complication of multiple servers with the complication of allowing the choice of any service-time distribution is too much to handle.

We begin with the *M/M/s* model, including its application to the Dupit case study. We then mention the limited results available for the *M/D/s* model.

page 588

The *M/M/s* Model

Except for the last one, the assumptions are the same as for the *M/M/*1 model.

Assumptions

1. Interarrival times have an exponential distribution with a mean of $1/\lambda$.
2. Service times have an exponential distribution with a mean of $1/\mu$.
3. Any number of servers (denoted by s) can be chosen for the queueing system.

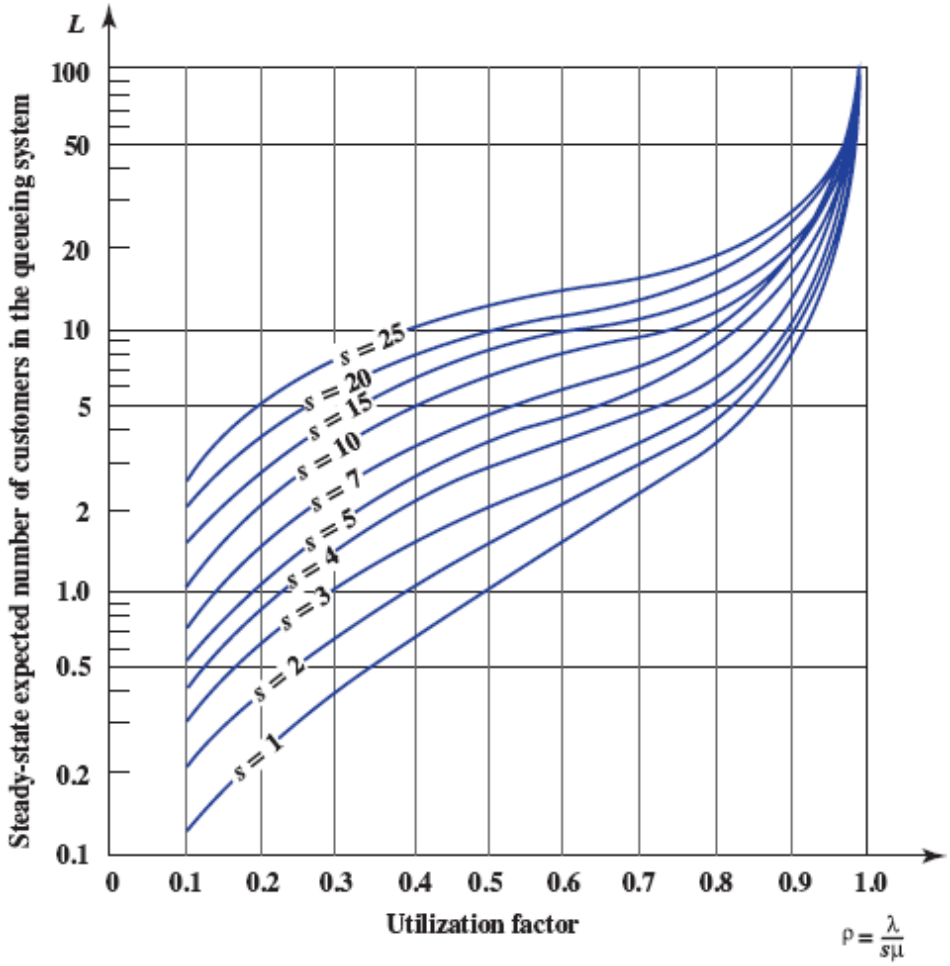
Explicit formulas are available for all the measures of performance (including the probabilities) considered for the *M/M/*1 model. However, when $s > 1$, the formulas are too tedious to want to do by hand. Therefore, you should use the Excel template for the *M/M/s* model (as demonstrated earlier in Figures 13.4 and 13.5) to generate all these results.

The Excel template for the *M/M/s* model provides all the measures of performance that were described in Section 13.5 for the *M/M/*1 model.

Another alternative is to use Figure 13.7, which shows the values of L versus the utilization factor for various values of s. (Be aware that the vertical axis uses a logarithmic scale, so you need to refer to the notches to determine the value along this axis.) By estimating L from this graph, you then can use Little's formula ($L = \lambda W$ and $L_q = \lambda W_q$), plus $W = W_q + 1/\mu$ to calculate W, W_q, and L_q.

FIGURE 13.7

Values of L for the *M/M/s* model for various values of s, the number of servers.



Applying These Models to the Approach Suggested by the Chief Financial Officer

Dupit's chief financial officer has suggested combining the current one-person tech rep territories into larger territories that would be served jointly by multiple tech reps. The hope is that, without changing the total number of tech reps, this reorganization might decrease W_q sufficiently from its current value (W_q = 0.75 day) to satisfy the proposed new service standard ($W_q \leq 0.25$ day).

Let us first try it with *two* tech reps assigned to each territory.

A Territory with Two Tech Reps

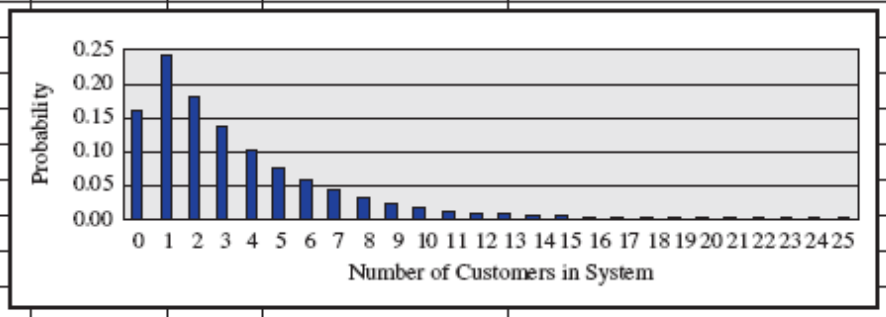
Number of machines:	300	(versus 150 before)
Mean arrival rate:	$\lambda = 6$	(versus $\lambda = 3$ before)
Mean service rate:	$\mu = 4$	(same as before)
Number of servers:	$s = 2$	(versus $s = 1$ before)
Utilization factor:	$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{s\mu} = 0.75$	(same as before)

Applying the Excel template for the *M/M/s* model with these data yields the results shown in Figure 13.8, including W_q = 0.321 day. (The equations entered into the output cells are not given in this figure because they are very complicated, but they can be viewed in this chapter's Excel file that contains this template.)

FIGURE 13.8

This Excel template for the *M/M/s* model shows the results from applying this model to the approach suggested by Dupit's chief financial officer with two tech reps assigned to each territory.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	***M/M/s* Model for CFO's Approach (Combine into Teams of Two)**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		$\lambda =$	6	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	3.429
5		$\mu =$	4	(mean service rate)		$L_q =$	1.929
6		$s =$	2	(# servers)			
7						$W =$	0.571
8		$\Pr(W > t) =$	0.169			$W_q =$	0.321
9		when $t =$	1				
10						$\rho =$	0.75
11		$\text{Prob}(W_q > t) =$	0.087				
12		when $t =$	1			n	P_n
13						0	0.1429
14						1	0.2143
15						2	0.1607
16						3	0.1205
17						4	0.0904
18						5	0.0678
19						6	0.0509
20						7	0.0381
21						8	0.0286
22						9	0.0215
23						10	0.0161



This is a very big improvement over the current value of $W_q = 0.75$ day, but it does not quite satisfy the service standard of $W_q \le 0.25$ day. So let us next see what would happen if *three* tech reps were assigned to each territory.

A Territory with Three Tech Reps

Number of machines:	450	(versus 150 before)
Mean arrival rate:	$\lambda = 9$	(versus $\lambda = 3$ before)
Mean service rate:	$\mu = 4$	(same as before)
Number of servers:	$s = 3$	(versus $s = 1$ before)
Utilization factor:	$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{s\mu} = 0.75$	(same as before)

With this utilization factor, Figure 13.7 indicates that L is very close to 4. Using 4 as the approximate value, and applying the relationships

given in Section 13.3 (Little's formula, etc.),

$$W = \frac{L}{\lambda} = \frac{4}{9} = 0.44 \text{ day}$$

$$W_q = W - \frac{1}{\mu} = 0.44 - 0.25 = 0.19 \text{ day}$$

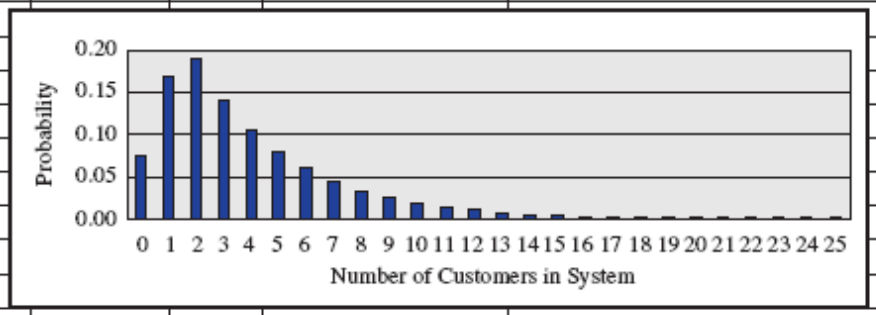
More precisely, the Excel template in Figure 13.9 gives L = 3.953 and W_q = 0.189 day. Since a workday is eight hours, this expected waiting time converts to just over one hour and 30 minutes.

page 589

FIGURE 13.9

This Excel template modifies the results in Figure 13.8 by assigning three tech reps to each territory.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	***M/M/s* Model for CFO's Approach (Combine into Teams of Three)**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		λ =	9	(mean arrival rate)		L =	3.9533
5		μ =	4	(mean service rate)		L_q =	1.7033
6		s =	3	(# servers)			
7						W =	0.4393
8		Pr(W > t) =	0.0898			W_q =	0.1893
9		when t =	1				
10						ρ =	0.75
11		Prob(W_q > t) =	0.0283				
12		when t =	1			n	P_n
13						0	0.0748
14						1	0.1682
15						2	0.1893
16						3	0.1419
17						4	0.1065
18						5	0.0798
19						6	0.0599
20						7	0.0449
21						8	0.0337
22						9	0.0253
23						10	0.0189



The *M/M/s* model indicates that the proposed new service standard would be comfortably satisfied by combining three one-person tech rep territories into a single larger territory that would be served jointly by all three tech reps.

Consequently, three-person territories would easily satisfy the proposed new service standard of $W_q \leq 0.25$ workday (two hours). Even considering that these larger territories would modestly increase the travel times for the tech reps, they still would comfortably satisfy the service standard.

Table 13.5 summarizes the data and values of W_q for territories with one, two, and three tech reps. Note how sharply W_q decreases as the number of tech reps (servers) increases without changing the utilization factor. In fact, W_q for $s = 2$ is well under *half* that for $s = 1$, and W_q for $s = 3$ is about a *fourth* of that for $s = 1$.

TABLE 13.5

Comparison of W_q Values with Territories of Different Sizes for the Dupit Problem

Number of Tech Reps	Number of Machines	λ	μ	s	ρ	W_q
1	150	3	4	1	0.75	0.75 workday (6 hours)
2	300	6	4	2	0.75	0.321 workday (2.57 hours)
3	450	9	4	3	0.75	0.189 workday (1.51 hours)

page 590

These results suggest that further enlarging the territories by assigning four or more tech reps to each one would decrease W_q even further. However, there also are disadvantages to enlarging the territories. One is the possibility of a significant increase in the average time required for a tech rep to travel to the site of a failed machine. When combining only two or three one-person tech rep territories into a single joint territory, the average travel times should not increase much since the tech reps can effectively coordinate in dividing up the repair jobs based on the proximity of the jobs to the current locations of the tech reps. However, this becomes more difficult with even more tech reps in an even larger territory, so occasional travel times might become excessive. Since time traveling to a repair site is part of the total time a tech rep must devote to a repair, the *mean service rate* μ may

decrease slightly from the four repairs per day assumed in Table 13.5 when the number of tech reps is more than three. For any given number of tech reps, decreasing μ increases W_q. Therefore, it is unclear how much further W_q can be decreased, if at all, by increasing the number of tech reps per territory beyond three.

Combining too many tech reps into a very large territory can cause excessive travel times, among other problems.

Assigning a large number of tech reps to each territory has a number of practical drawbacks as well. Coordination between tech reps becomes more difficult. Customers lose the feeling of receiving personalized service when they are visited by so many different tech reps. Furthermore, tech reps lose the pride of ownership in managing their own territory and dealing with "their" customers. Personal or professional conflicts between tech reps also can arise when they share the same territory, and the opportunities for such conflicts increase with larger teams.

For all these reasons, John Phixitt concludes that normally assigning three tech reps to each territory would provide the best trade-off between minimizing these disadvantages of large territories and reducing W_q to a satisfactory level.

Conclusion: The approach suggested by the chief financial officer would indeed satisfy the proposed new service standard ($W_q \leq 0.25$ day) if each three contiguous one-person tech rep territories are combined into a larger territory served jointly by the same three tech reps. Since the total number of tech reps does not change, there would be no significant additional cost from implementing this approach other than the disadvantages of larger territories just cited. To minimize these disadvantages, the territories should not be enlarged any further than having three tech reps per territory.

page 591

The *M/D/s* Model

The service times in many queueing systems have much less variability than is assumed by the *M/M/s* model. In some cases, there may be no variability (or almost no variability) at all in the service times. The *M/D/s* model is designed for these cases.

Assumptions: Same as for the *M/M/s* model, except now all the service times are the *same.* This *constant service time* is denoted by 1/μ. (This is referred to as having a *degenerate* service-time distribution, which provides the symbol *D* for the model label.)

Constant service times arise when exactly the same work is being performed to serve each customer. When the servers are *machines,* there may literally be no variability at all in the service times. The assumption of constant service times also can be a reasonable approximation with *human servers* if they are performing the same routine task for all customers.

We found in the preceding section that, when $s = 1$, the value of L_q for the *M/D/*1model is only *half* that for the *M/M/*1 model. Similar differences in L_q between the two models also occur when $s > 1$ (especially with larger values of the utilization factor ρ). Substantial differences between the models also occur for W_q, *W,* and *L*.

Just as for single-server queueing systems, eliminating the variability of service times substantially increases the efficiency of multiple-server queueing systems.

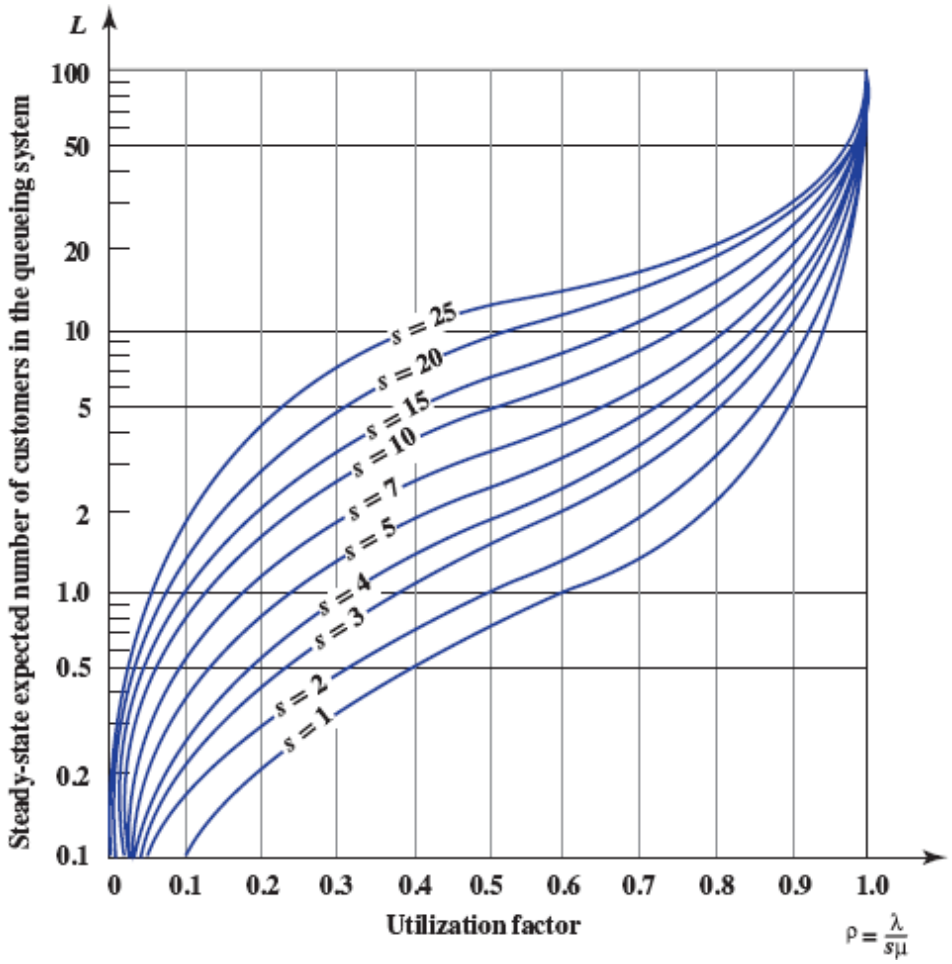
These large differences emphasize the importance of using the model that best fits the queueing system under study. Because the *M/M/s* model is the most convenient one, it is common practice to routinely use this model for most applications. However, doing so when there is little or no variability in the service times causes a large error in some measures of performance.

The procedures for calculating the various measures of performance for the *M/D/s* model are far more complicated than for

the *M/M/s* model, so no Excel template is available in the case when $s > 1$. However, special projects have been conducted to calculate the measures. Figure 13.10 shows the values of L versus ρ for many values of s. The other main measures (W, W_q, and L_q) then can be obtained from L by using Little's formula, and so forth (as described in Section 13.3).

FIGURE 13.10

Values of L for the *M/D/s* model for various values of s, the number of servers.



Review *Questions*

page 592

. For multiple-server queueing models, what is the formula for the utilization factor ρ? What is the interpretation of ρ in terms of how

servers use their time?

. Which values of ρ correspond to the servers having a manageable utilization factor that allows the system to reach a steady-state condition?

. Are there any measures of performance that can be calculated for the *M/M/*1 model but not the *M/M/s* model?

. How many one-person tech rep territories need to be combined into a larger territory being served by multiple tech reps in order to satisfy Dupit's proposed new service standard?

. Compare the *M/M/s* and *M/D/s* models in terms of the amount of variability in the service times.

13.7 PRIORITY QUEUEING MODELS

All the queueing models presented so far assume that the customers are served on a first-come, first-served basis. Not all queueing systems operate that way. In some systems, the more important customers are served ahead of others who have waited longer. Management may want certain special customers to be given priority over others. In some cases where the customers in the queueing system are jobs to be performed, the different deadlines for the jobs dictate the order in which these customers are served. Rush jobs need to be done before routine jobs.

Priority queueing models are used when high-priority customers are served ahead of others who have waited longer.

A *hospital emergency room* is an example of a queueing system where priorities automatically are used. An arriving patient who is in critical condition naturally will be treated ahead of a routine patient who was already there waiting.

The models for such queueing systems generally make the following general assumptions.

General Assumptions

1. There are two or more categories of customers. Each category is assigned to a **priority class.** Customers in priority class 1 are given priority for receiving service over customers in priority class 2. If there are more than two priority classes, customers in priority class 2 then are given priority over customers in priority class 3, and so on.

priority classes

Categories of customers that are given different priorities for receiving service.

2. After deferring to higher priority customers, the customers within each priority class are served on a first-come, first-served basis. Thus, within a priority class, priority for receiving service is based on the time already spent waiting in the queueing system.

There are two types of priorities, as described below.

Nonpreemptive priorities: Once a server has begun serving a customer, the service must be completed without interruption even if a higher priority customer arrives while this service is in process. However, once service is completed, if there are customers in the queue, priorities are applied to select the one to begin service. In particular, the one selected is that member of the *highest* priority class represented in the queue who has waited longest.

nonpreemptive priorities

Priorities for selecting the next customer to begin service when a server becomes free. However, these priorities do not affect customers who already have begun service.

Preemptive priorities: The lowest priority customer being served is *preempted* (ejected back into the queue) whenever a higher priority customer enters the queueing system. A server is thereby freed to begin serving the new arrival immediately. Whenever a server does succeed in *finishing* a service, the next customer to begin receiving service is selected just as described above for nonpreemptive priorities. (The preempted customer becomes the

member of its priority class in the queue who has waited longest, so it hopefully will get back into service soon and, perhaps after additional preemptions, will eventually finish.)

preemptive priorities

Priorities for serving customers that include ejecting the lowest priority customer being served back into the queue in order to serve a higher priority customer that has just entered the queueing system.

This section includes a basic queueing model for each of these two types of priorities.

A Preemptive Priorities Queueing Model

Along with the general assumptions about priorities given above, this model makes the following assumptions.

Additional Assumptions

1. Preemptive priorities are used as just described. (Let n denote the number of priority classes.)
2. For priority class i ($i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$), the *interarrival times* of customers in that class have an *exponential* distribution with a mean of $1/\lambda_i$.
3. All *service times* have an *exponential* distribution with a mean of $1/\mu$, regardless of the priority class involved. Because of the *memoryless property* of the exponential distribution mentioned in Section 13.1, a previously ejected customer still has this same exponential distribution for its remaining service time each time it reenters service.
4. The queueing system has a single server.

This model fits the *M/M/*1 model except for also having preemptive priorities.

Thus, except for the complication of using preemptive priorities, the assumptions are the same as for the *M/M/*1 model.

Since λ_i is the mean arrival rate for customers in priority class i (i = 1, 2, . . ., n), $\lambda = (\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \ldots + \lambda_n)$ is the overall mean arrival rate for all customers. Therefore, the *utilization factor* for the server is

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \ldots + \lambda_n}{\mu}$$

As with the previous models, $\rho < 1$ is required to enable the queueing system to reach a steady-state condition for all priority classes.

The reason for using priorities is to *decrease* the waiting times for high-priority customers. This is accomplished at the expense of *increasing* the waiting times for low-priority customers.

Assuming $\rho < 1$, formulas are available for calculating the main measures of performance (L, W, L_q, and W_q) for *each* of the priority classes. An Excel template available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** quickly performs all these calculations for you.

A Nonpreemptive Priorities Queueing Model

Along with the general assumptions given at the beginning of this section, this model makes the following assumptions.

Additional Assumptions

1. Nonpreemptive priorities are used as described earlier in this section. (Again, let n be the number of priority classes.)
2. Same as for the preemptive priorities queueing model.
3. Same as for the preemptive priorities queueing model.
4. The queueing system can have any number of servers.

This model fits the *M/M/s* model except for also having nonpreemptive priorities.

Except for using nonpreemptive priorities, these assumptions are the same as for the *M/M/s* model.

The utilization factor for the servers is

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \ldots + \lambda_n}{s\mu}$$

Again, $\rho < 1$ is needed to enable the queueing system to reach a steady-state condition for all the priority classes.

As before, an Excel template is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** to calculate all the main measures of performance for *each* of the priority classes.

Applying the Nonpreemptive Priorities Queueing Model to the Approach Suggested by the Vice President for Marketing

Now we come to the last of the four approaches being investigated by Dupit's analytics team. The vice president for marketing has proposed giving the company's new printer-copiers priority over other machines for receiving service. In other words, whenever a tech rep finishes a repair, if there are *both* the new printer-copiers and other machines still waiting to be repaired, the tech rep *always* should choose a new printer-copier (the one that has waited longest) to be repaired next, even if other machines have waited longer.

The suggestion of the vice president for marketing is to apply the proposed new service standard to the new type of printer-copiers only and then to give them non-preemptive priority over the other machines.

The rationale for this proposal is that the new type of printer-copier performs so many vital functions that its owners cannot tolerate being without it as long as other machines. Indeed, nearly all the complaints about excessive waiting for repairs have come from these owners even though other machines wait just as long. Therefore, the vice president for marketing feels that the proposed new service standard ($W_q \leq 2$ hours) only needs to be applied to the new printer-copiers. Giving them priority for service hopefully will result in meeting this standard while still providing satisfactory service to other machines.

To investigate this, the analytics team is applying the nonpreemptive priorities queueing model. There are two priority classes.

Priority class 1: The new type of printer-copiers.

Priority class 2: Other machines (older versions of printer copiers).

Therefore, a distinction is made between these two types of arriving customers (machines needing repairs) for the queueing system in each tech rep territory. The assumption is that the tech rep will repair any higher-priority printer-copiers as needed before it repairs any lower-priority printer-copiers. (This is a slight approximation since, in the unlikely event that one location might have both a higher-priority and a lower-priority printer-copier needing repair, the tech rep might perform both repairs before traveling to another location where a higher-priority printer-copier needs a repair.) To determine the *mean arrival rate* for each of these two priority classes (denoted by λ_1 and λ_2, respectively), the team has ascertained that about a third of the machines assigned to tech reps currently are the new type of printer-copiers. Each such printer-copier requires service with about the same frequency (approximately once every 50 workdays) as other machines. Consequently, since the *total* mean arrival rate for all the machines in a one-person tech rep territory typically is three machines per day,

$$\lambda_1 = 1 \text{ customer (new type of printer-copier) per workday} \quad \text{(now)}$$
$$\lambda_2 = 2 \text{ customers (other machines) per workday} \quad \text{(now)}$$

However, the proportion of the machines that are the new printer-copiers is expected to gradually increase until it reaches about *half* in a couple of years. At that point, the mean arrival rates will have changed to

$$\lambda_1 = 1.5 \text{ customers (new type of printer-copier) per workday} \quad \text{(later)}$$
$$\lambda_2 = 1.5 \text{ customers (other machines) per workday} \quad \text{(later)}$$

The *mean service rate* for each tech rep is unchanged by applying priorities, so its best estimate continues to be **μ = 4** customers per workday. Under the company's current policy of one-person tech rep territories, the queueing system for each territory has a single server ($s = 1$). Since $(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2) = 3$ both now and later, the value of the utilization factor will continue to be

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda_1 + \lambda_2}{s\mu} = \frac{3}{4}$$

Figure 13.11 shows the results obtained by applying the Excel template for the nonpreemptive priorities model to this queueing system *now* ($\lambda_1 = 1$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$). Figure 13.12 does the same under the conditions expected *later* ($\lambda_1 = 1.5$ and $\lambda_2 = 1.5$).

FIGURE 13.11

This Excel template applies the nonpreemptive priorities queueing model to the Dupit problem *now* under the approach suggested by the vice president for marketing to give priority to the new type of printer-copiers.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Nonpreemptive Priorities Model for VP of Marketing's Approach**						
2	**(Current Arrival Rates)**						
3							
4		$n =$	2	(# of priority classes)			
5		$\mu =$	4	(mean service rate)			
6		$s =$	1	(# servers)			
7							
8							
9			λ_i	L	L_q	W	W_q
10		Priority Class 1	1	0.5	0.25	0.5	0.25
11		Priority Class 2	2	2.5	2	1.25	1
12							
13							
14							
15							
16		$\lambda =$	3				
17		$\rho =$	0.75				

The analytics team is particularly interested in the values of W_q, the expected waiting time in the queue, given in the last column of these two figures. These values are summarized in Table 13.6, where the first row comes from Figure 13.11 and the second comes from Figure 13.12.

FIGURE 13.12

The modification of Figure 13.11 that applies the same model to the *later* version of the Dupit problem.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Nonpreemptive Priorities Model for VP of Marketing's Approach**						
2	**(Future Arrival Rates)**						
3							
4		$n =$	2	(# of priority classes)			
5		$\mu =$	4	(mean service rate)			
6		$s =$	1	(# servers)			
7							
8							
9			λ_i	L	L_q	W	W_q
10		Priority Class 1	1.5	0.825	0.45	0.55	0.3
11		Priority Class 2	1.5	2.175	1.8	1.45	1.2
12							
13							
14							
15							
16		$\lambda =$	3				
17		$\rho =$	0.75				

TABLE 13.6

Expected Waiting Times* when Nonpreemptive Priorities Are Applied to the Dupit Problem

s	When	λ_1	λ_2	μ	ρ	W_q for Printer-Copiers	W_q for Other Machines
1	Now	1	2	4	0.75	0.25 workday (2 hrs.)	1 workday (8 hrs.)
1	Later	1.5	1.5	4	0.75	0.3 workday (2.4 hrs.)	1.2 workdays (9.6 hrs.)
2	Now	2	4	4	0.75	0.107 workday (0.86 hr.)	0.429 workday (3.43 hrs.)
2	Later	3	3	4	0.75	0.129 workday (1.03 hrs.)	0.514 workday (4.11 hrs.)
3	Now	3	6	4	0.75	0.063 workday (0.50 hr.)	0.252 workday (2.02 hrs.)
3	Later	4.5	4.5	4	0.75	0.076 workday (0.61 hr.)	0.303 workday (2.42 hrs.)

* These times are obtained in units of *workdays* consisting of eight hours each, and then converted to hours.

For the new printer-copiers, note that W_q = 0.25 workday now, which barely meets the proposed new service standard of $W_q \leq 0.25$ workday, but this expected waiting time would deteriorate later to 0.3 workday. Thus, this approach falls a little short. Furthermore, the expected waiting time before service begins for the other machines

would go from W_q = 1 workday now to W_q = 1.2 workdays later. This large increase from the average waiting times being experienced under the current policy of W_q = 0.75 workday (as given in Figure 13.4) is likely to alienate a considerable number of customers.

Table 13.5 in the preceding section demonstrated what a great impact combining one-person tech rep territories into larger territories has on decreasing expected waiting times. Therefore, the analytics team decides to investigate combining this approach with applying nonpreemptive priorities.

page 595

Combining pairs of one-person tech rep territories into single two-person tech rep territories doubles the mean arrival rates for both priority classes (λ_1 and λ_2) for each new territory. Since the number of servers also doubles (from s = 1 to s = 2) without any change in μ (the mean service rate for each server), the utilization factor ρ remains the same. These values now and later are shown in the third and fourth rows of Table 13.6. Applying the nonpreemptive priorities queueing model then yields the expected waiting times given in the last two columns.

page 596

These large reductions in the W_q values due to increasing s from s = 1 to s = 2 result in rather reasonable waiting times. Both now and later, W_q for the new printer-copiers is only about *half* of the maximum under the proposed new service standard ($W_q \leq 2$ hours). Although W_q for the other machines is somewhat over this maximum both now and later, these waiting times also are somewhat under the average waiting times currently being experienced (6 hours) without many complaints from members of this priority class. John Phixitt's reaction is favorable. He feels that the service standard of $W_q \leq 2$ hours really was proposed with the new printer-copiers in mind and that the other members of top management probably will also be satisfied with the values of W_q shown in the third and fourth rows of Table 13.6.

Since the analytical results reported in Table 13.5 were so favorable for three-person tech rep territories without priorities, the

analytics team decides to investigate this option *with priorities* as well. The last two rows of Table 13.6 show the results for this case. Note that these W_q values for $s = 3$ are even smaller than for $s = 2$. In fact, even the W_q values for other machines nearly satisfy the proposed new service standard at this point. However, John Phixitt points out that three-person territories have substantial disadvantages compared to two-person territories. One is longer travel times to machine sites. Another is that customers would feel that service is considerably less personalized when they are seeing three different tech reps coming for repairs instead of just two. Another perhaps more important disadvantage is that three tech reps would have more difficulty coordinating their work than two. John does not feel that the decreases in W_q values for $s = 3$ are worth these (and related) disadvantages.

Conclusion: Since the high-priority need is to improve service for the new printer-copiers, strong consideration should be given to giving these machines priority over others for receiving repairs. However, the waiting times for both new printer-copiers and other machines will remain somewhat unsatisfactory (especially later) if the current one-person tech rep territories continue to be used. Enlarging to two-person territories would reduce these waiting times to levels that appear to be satisfactory, without any significant additional (monetary) costs. Enlarging the territories even further probably would not be worthwhile in light of the disadvantages of large territories.

Management's Conclusions

Having been assigned by Dupit's president to study the four suggested approaches to the company's problem, the analytics team and John Phixitt were asked to report back to the top management group dealing with the problem in six weeks. They now do so by sending their report to each member of the group. The report

presents their conclusions (as stated above and in the preceding sections) on each of the four approaches they were asked to investigate. Also included are the projected measures of performance (such as in Tables 13.5 and 13.6) for these approaches.

Table 13.7 summarizes the four approaches as they now have been refined by the analytics team.

TABLE 13.7

The Four Approaches Being Considered by Dupit Management

Proposer	Proposal	Additional Cost
John Phixitt	Maintain one-person territories, but reduce number of machines assigned to each from 150 to 100	$300 million per year
Vice president for engineering	Keep current one-person territories, but provide new state-of-the-art equipment to the tech reps	One-time cost of $500 million
Chief financial officer	Change to three-person territories	None, except disadvantages of larger territories
Vice president for marketing	Change to two-person territories, with priority given to the printer-copiers for repairs	None, except disadvantages of larger territories

At this point, the president reconvenes his top management group (including John Phixitt). The meeting begins with a brief presentation by the head of the analytics team summarizing the analysis and conclusions of the team. The presentation is interrupted frequently by

comments and questions from the group. The president next asks John Phixitt to present his recommendations.

John begins by emphasizing the many advantages of the current system of one-person territories. The first two proposals in Table 13.7 would enable continuing this system, but at a very high cost. He then concedes that he has concluded that the cost would be too high and that the time has come to modify the system in order to efficiently deliver the service that the marketplace now is demanding. (A brief discussion reveals strong agreement from the group on this point.)

Although the first two proposals retain the many advantages of one-person territories, both proposals are too costly, so the choice is between the third and fourth proposals.

This leaves the third and fourth proposals in Table 13.7 under consideration. John repeats the arguments he had given earlier to the analytics team about the important advantages of two-person territories over three-person territories. He then points out that the fourth proposal not only would provide two-person territories but also would result in the new printer-copiers having smaller average waiting times for repairs than under the third proposal. When the customer relations manager objects that the average waiting times of *other machines* would not meet the proposed new service standard (a maximum of two hours), John emphasizes that these waiting times still would decrease substantially from current levels and that the owners of these machines aren't even complaining now. In conclusion, John recommends adoption of the fourth proposal.

page 597

Some minor concerns are raised in the subsequent discussion, including the possibility that owners of other machines might feel that they are being treated as second-class customers. However, John indicates that the new policy would not be publicized, but, if discovered, could be easily justified to a customer. The group soon concurs with John's recommendation.

Decision: Adopt the fourth proposal in Table 13.7.

Finally, John points out that there currently are a relatively few one-person territories that are so sparsely populated that combining them into two-person territories would cause excessive travel times for the tech reps. Since this would defeat the purpose of the new policy, he suggests adopting the second proposal for these territories and then using the experience with the new equipment to make future decisions on which equipment to provide to all tech reps as service demands further increase. The group agrees.

Decision: As an exception to the new policy, the second proposal in Table 13.7 is adopted just for current one-person territories that are particularly sparsely populated. The experience with the new equipment will be closely monitored to help guide future equipment purchase decisions for all tech reps.

The president thanks John Phixitt and the analytics team for their outstanding work in pointing the way toward what appears to be an excellent resolution of a critical problem for the company. John graciously states that the real key was the insights obtained by the analytics team by making effective use of the appropriate queueing models. The president smiles and makes a mental note to seek John's advice more often.

Review *Questions*

. How does using priorities differ from serving customers on a first-come, first-served basis?

. What is the difference between nonpreemptive priorities and preemptive priorities?

. Except for using preemptive priorities, the assumptions of the preemptive priorities model are the same as for which basic queueing model?

. Except for using nonpreemptive priorities, the assumptions of the nonpreemptive priorities model are the same as for which basic

queueing model?

. For these models, which values of the utilization factor ρ enable the queueing system to reach a steady-state condition for all priority classes?

. When applying the nonpreemptive priorities queueing model to the Dupit case study, what are the two priority classes?

. For this application, what is the conclusion about the minimum number of tech reps per territory needed to reduce waiting times for repairs to levels that appear to be satisfactory?

. What is the decision of Dupit's top management regarding which of the four proposed approaches will be adopted (except for particularly sparsely populated territories)?

13.8 SOME INSIGHTS ABOUT DESIGNING QUEUEING SYSTEMS

The Dupit case study illustrates some key insights that queueing models provide about how queueing systems should be designed. This section highlights these insights in a broader context.

page 598

There are four insights presented here. Each one was first seen when analyzing one of the four approaches proposed for the Dupit problem. After summarizing each insight, we will briefly review its application to the case study and then describe the insight in general terms.

Insight 1: When designing a single-server queueing system, beware that giving a relatively high utilization factor (workload) to the server provides surprisingly poor measures of performance for the system.[2]

This insight arose in Section 13.5 when analyzing John Phixitt's suggested approach of decreasing the utilization factor ρ for each

tech rep sufficiently to meet the proposed new service standard (a maximum average waiting time for repairs of two hours). The current $\rho = 0.75$ gave average waiting times of six hours, which falls far short of this standard. It was necessary to decrease ρ all the way down to $\rho = 0.5$ to meet this standard.

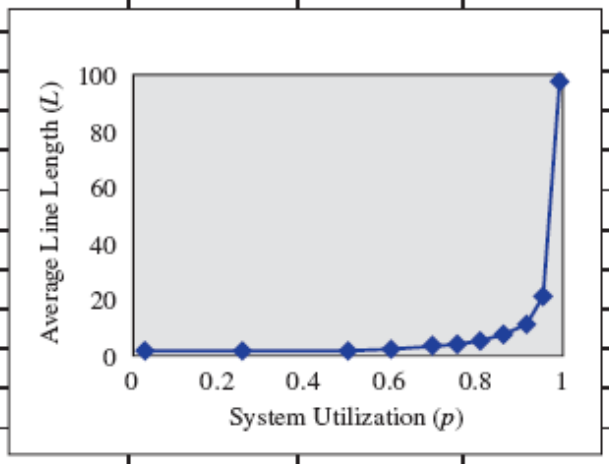
To further demonstrate this insight, we have used the Excel template for the *M/M/s* model (previously shown in Figures 13.8 and 13.9), with $s = 1$ and $\mu = 1$ (so the utilization factor ρ equals λ), to generate the data table in Figure 13.13. Here are the steps to follow to do this. First make a table with the column headings shown in columns I, J, and K in Figure 13.13. In the first column of the table (I5:I16), list the trial values for the data cell (the mean arrival rate, or equivalently, the utilization factor), except leave the first row blank. The headings of the next columns specify which output will be evaluated. For each of these columns, use the first row of the table (cells J4:K4) to write an equation that refers to the relevant output cell. In this case, the cells of interest are the expected number of customers in the system (L) and in the queue (L_q), so the equations for J4:K4 are those shown below the spreadsheet in Figure 13.13.

FIGURE 13.13

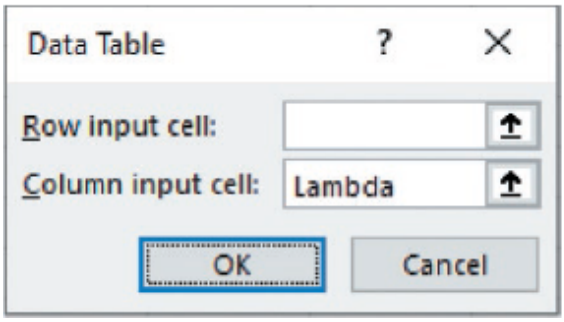
This data table demonstrates Insight 1 in this section.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Template for *M/M/s* Queueing Model**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		$\lambda =$	0.5	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	1.0000
5		$\mu =$	1	(mean service rate)		$L_q =$	0.5000

	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
1	**Data Table Demonstrating the Effect of Increasing ρ on L_q and L for *M/M/1***							
2								
3		$\lambda = \rho$	L	L_q				
4			1	0.5				
5		0.01	0.010	0.000				
6		0.25	0.333	0.083				
7		0.5	1	0.5				
8		0.6	1.5	0.9				
9		0.7	2.333	1.633				
10		0.75	3	2.25				
11		0.8	4	3.2				
12		0.85	5.667	4.817				
13		0.9	9	8.1				
14		0.95	19	18.05				
15		0.99	99	98.01				
16		0.999	999	998.001				
17								
18								
19								
20								



Select entire table (I4:K16), before choosing Table from the Data menu.



	J	K
3	L	L_q
4	$=L$	$=L_q$

Range Name	Cell
L	G4
Lambda	C4
L_q	G5

Microsoft Corporation

Next, select the entire table (I4:K16) and then choose Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab. In the Data Table

dialog box (as shown at the bottom left-hand side of Figure 13.13), indicate the column input cell (Lambda, or C4), which refers to the data cell that is being changed in the first column of the table. Nothing is entered for the row input cell because no row is being used to list the trial values of a data cell in this case.

Clicking OK then generates the data table shown in Figure 13.13. For each trial value for the data cell listed in the first column of the table, the corresponding output cell values are calculated and displayed in the other columns of the table. (The numbers in the first row of the table come from the original solution in the spreadsheet.)

Note in this data table how rapidly L_q and L increase with even small increases in ρ. For example, L triples when ρ is increased from 0.5 to 0.75, and then triples again when increasing ρ from 0.75 to 0.9. As ρ is increased above 0.9, L_q and L grow astronomically. (Although this data table has been generated with μ = 1, the same values of L_q and L would be obtained with any other value of μ as well when the numbers in the first column are the utilization factor ρ = λ/μ.)

The average number of customers waiting in a queueing system (L) increases rapidly with even small increases in the utilization factor ρ, so ρ should be kept well under 1.

Managers normally strive for a high utilization factor for their employees, machines, equipment, and so on. This is an important part of running an efficient business. A utilization factor of 0.9 or higher would be considered desirable. However, all this should change when the employee or machine or piece of equipment is the server in a single-server queueing system that has considerable variability in its interarrival times and service times (such as for an *M/M/*1 system). For most such systems, the cognizant manager would consider it unacceptable to *average* having nine customers wait in the system (L = 9 with ρ = 0.9). If so, a utilization factor somewhat less (perhaps much less) than 0.9 would be needed. For example, we just mentioned that meeting Dupit's proposed service standard with John Phixitt's original suggested approach required reducing the utilization factor all the way down to ρ = 0.5.

Insight 2: Decreasing the *variability* of service times (without any change in the mean) improves the performance of a single-server queueing system substantially. (This also tends to be true for multiple-server queueing systems, especially with higher utilization factors.)

page 599

This insight was found in the Dupit study while analyzing the proposal by the vice president for engineering to provide new state-of-the-art equipment to all the tech reps. As described at the end of Section 13.5, this approach would decrease both the *mean* and *standard deviation* of the service-time distribution. Decreasing the mean also decreased the utilization factor, which decreased the expected waiting time W_q. Decreasing the standard deviation σ (which measures the amount of variability) then provided an *additional* 37.5 percent reduction in W_q. Insight 2 refers to this latter substantial improvement in W_q (and in the other measures of performance).

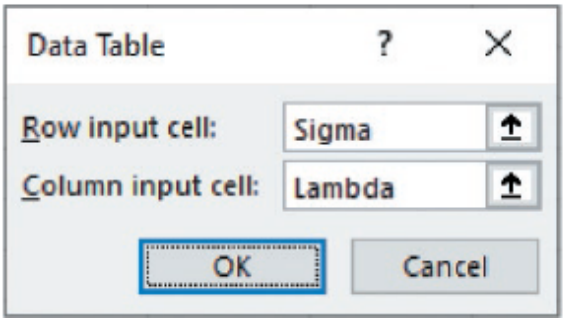
The two-way data table in cells C19:F23 of Figure 13.14 demonstrates the effect on L_q of decreasing the standard deviation σ of the service-time distribution for any *M/G/*1 queueing system. (This table was generated from the Excel template introduced in Figure 13.6 for the *M/G/*1 model.)

FIGURE 13.14

This data table demonstrates Insight 2 in this section.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	**Template for the *M/G/1* Queueing Model**								
2									
3			**Data**				**Results**		
4		$\lambda =$	0.5	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	0.8125		
5		$1/\mu =$	1	(expected service time)		$L_q =$	0.3125		
6		$\sigma =$	0.5	(standard deviation)					
7		$s =$	1	(# servers)		$W =$	1.625		
8						$W_q =$	0.625		
9									
10						$\rho =$	0.5		
11									
12						$P_0 =$	0.5		
13									
14	**Data Table Demonstrating the Effect of Decreasing σ on L_q for *M/G/1***								
15									
16				Body of Table Shows L_q Values					
17									
18					σ				
19			0.3125	1	0.5	0			
20			0.5	0.500	0.313	0.250			
21		$\rho(=\lambda)$	0.75	2.250	1.406	1.125			
22			0.9	8.100	5.063	4.050			
23			0.99	98.010	61.256	49.005			

Select entire table (C19:F23), before choosing Table from the Data menu.



	C
19	$=L_q$

Range Name	Cell
Lambda	C4
L_q	G5
Sigma	C6

Microsoft Corporation

To create this two-way data table, make a table with column and row headings as shown in rows 19–23 of the spreadsheet in Figure 13.14. In the upper left-hand corner of the table (C19), write an equation that refers to the output cell for which you are interested in seeing the results (= L_q or G5). In the first column of the table

(column C, below the equation in cell C19), insert all the different values for the first changing data cell (λ). In the first row of the table (row 19, to the right of the equation in cell C19), insert all the different values for the second changing data cell (σ).

page 600

Next, select the entire table (C19:F23) and then choose Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab. In the Data Table dialog box (shown at the bottom left-hand side of Figure 13.14), indicate which data cells are being changed simultaneously. The column input cell refers to the data cell whose various values are indicated in the first column of the table (Lambda, or cell C4), while the row input cell refers to the data cell whose various values are indicated in the first row of the table (Sigma, or cell C6).

The data table shown in Figure 13.14 is then generated automatically by clicking OK. For each pair of values of the input cell indicated in the first row and column of the table, Excel determines the corresponding value of the output cell referred to in the upper left-hand corner of the table. These values are then filled into the body of the table.

Before generating this data table, the mean of the service-time distribution has been set in cell C5 at $1/\mu = 1$ (which makes $\rho = \lambda$), so the column headings of $\sigma = 1$, $\sigma = 0.5$, and $\sigma = 0$ correspond to $\sigma =$ mean, $\sigma = 0.5$ mean, and $\sigma = 0$, respectively. Therefore, as you read the values of L_q in the table from left to right, σ decreases from equaling the mean of the distribution (as for the *M/M/*1 model) to being *half* the mean and then to $\sigma = 0$ (as for the *M/D/*1 model). If the mean were to be changed to some value different from 1, the same values of L_q still would be obtained for each value of the utilization factor $\rho = \lambda/\mu$ listed in cells C20:C23 as long as the values of σ for the respective columns are $\sigma =$ mean, $\sigma = 0.5$ mean, and $\sigma = 0$.

page 601

In each row of this table, the value in the $\sigma = 0$ column is only *half* that in the $\sigma = 1$ column, so completely eliminating the variability of the service times gives a large improvement. However, the value in the $\sigma = 0.5$ column is only 62.5

percent of that in the $\sigma = 1$ column, so even cutting the variability in half provides most of the improvement from completely eliminating the variability. Therefore, whatever can be done to reduce the variability even modestly is going to improve the performance of the system significantly.

If service times are highly variable, eliminating this variability can reduce L_q by about half.

Insight 3: *Multiple-server* queueing systems can perform satisfactorily with somewhat higher utilization factors than can single-server queueing systems. For example, *pooling servers* by combining separate single-server queueing systems into one multiple-server queueing system (without changing the utilization factor) greatly improves the measures of performance.

This insight was gained during the Dupit study while investigating the proposal by the chief financial officer to combine one-person territories into larger territories served jointly by multiple tech reps. Table 13.5 in Section 13.6 summarizes the great impact that this approach would have on improving average waiting times to begin repairs (W_q). In particular, W_q for two-person territories is well under *half* that for one-person territories, and W_q for three-person territories is about a *fourth* of that for one-person territories, even though the utilization factor is the same for all these cases.

These dramatic improvements are not unusual. In fact, it has been found that pooling servers as described below *commonly* provides similar improvements.

The Impact of Pooling Servers: Suppose you have a number (denoted by n) of identical single-server queueing systems that fit the *M/M/*1 model, where an arriving customer randomly joins one of these queueing systems. Suppose you then combine these n systems (without changing the

utilization factor) into a single queueing system that fits the *M/M/s* model, where the number of servers is $s = n$. This change *always* improves the value of W_q by *more* than dividing by n, that is,

$$W_q \text{ (for combined system)} < \frac{W_q \text{ (for each single-server system)}}{n}$$

Here is a way to reduce waiting times dramatically.

Although this inequality is not guaranteed to hold if these queueing systems do not fit the *M/M/*1 and *M/M/s* models, the improvement in W_q by combining systems still will be very substantial for other models as well.

One unusual feature of the Dupit study is that *the servers* (the tech reps) *travel to the customers* (the machines needing repair) rather than vice versa. Since the travel time is included in the service time, a disadvantage of going from one-person territories to two-person or three-person territories is that this increases the travel times, which thereby increases the service times, which then leads to increasing the expected waiting times. Therefore, one key lesson of the Dupit study is that when the servers need to travel to the customers, the great advantage of pooling servers for reducing expected waiting times is very worthwhile as long as this advantage is not canceled out by the negative impact on expected waiting times of increasing service times because of excessively large increases in travel times. Fortunately, it did not appear in the Dupit study that the increases in travel time would be large enough to be of concern.

What happens to this analysis when *the customers need to do the traveling to get to the servers* so that this travel time should be included in the waiting times of the customers? If the servers are not close to each other, so customers normally would travel to the closest server, the conclusion is analogous to that just described in the preceding paragraph. Pooling servers has a great impact on reducing expected waiting times. However, this impact is worthwhile only if it

doesn’t get canceled out by increasing travel times and so increasing expected waiting times too much.

When the customers need to do the traveling, it is fairly common that the servers will be quite close together. (Think of such situations as when the servers are tellers in a bank, or checkout clerks in a store, or service clerks in a post office, etc.) The analysis now would be quite different from the preceding paragraph because pooling the servers would not increase the travel times of the customers significantly. In this case, the two main options to be considered are

Option 1: Each server has its own queue as part of a single-server queueing system.

Option 2: Pooling the servers so all the customers form a single queue where the customer at the head of the queue goes to the next server who becomes free.

Given the result presented above about the great impact of pooling customers on reducing expected waiting times, it might seem that Option 2 always would be the better choice. However, there are reasons why it may not be clear which option is better. For Option 1, an arriving customer now can see all of the queues and so normally would join the shortest queue instead of randomly choosing a queue. Furthermore, if another queue later becomes shorter, that customer probably would try to switch to the shorter queue. (This is called *jockeying.*) Therefore, that customer would tend to reach a server at nearly the same time (and so nearly the same waiting time in the queue) as if that customer had joined the one long queue under Option 2. Furthermore, some recent research on the behavior of queueing systems has found that a human server with its own queue tends to work more conscientiously and efficiently than if that server is just one of a number of servers tending to a joint queue. (This will be explored further in Section 13.10.) For these reasons, some queueing systems observed in practice fit Option 1 and others fit Option 2, depending perhaps on whether the physical layout would accommodate a single long queue. This one long queue might seem

a little fairer to the customers, and Option 2 might indeed be slightly more efficient, but the reduction in the expected waiting time probably would not be nearly as large as implied by the above result on the impact of pooling servers.

Insight 4: Applying *priorities* when selecting customers to begin service can greatly improve the measures of performance for high-priority customers.

This insight became evident during the Dupit study while investigating the proposal by the vice president for marketing to give higher (nonpreemptive) priority to repairing the new type of printer-copiers than to repairing other machines. Table 13.6 in the preceding section gives the values of W_q for the new printer-copiers and for the other machines under this proposal. Comparing these values to those in Table 13.5 without priorities shows that giving priority to the new printer-copiers would immediately reduce their waiting times dramatically (but would also increase the waiting times for the other machines). Later, as the new type of printer-copiers become a larger proportion of the machines being serviced (half instead of a third), the reduction in their waiting times would not be quite as large.

Applying priorities can reduce waiting times dramatically for high-priority customers but will increase waiting times for low-priority customers.

For other queueing systems as well, the impact of applying priorities depends somewhat on the proportion of the customers in the respective priority classes. If the proportion in the top priority class is small, the measures of performance for these customers will improve tremendously. If the proportion is large, the improvement will be more modest.

Preemptive priorities give an even stronger preference to high-priority customers than do the *nonpreemptive* priorities used for the Dupit problem. Therefore, applying preemptive priorities improves the measures of performance for customers in the top priority class even more than applying nonpreemptive priorities.

Review *Questions*

. What is the effect of giving a relatively large utilization factor (workload) to the server in a single-server queueing system?

. What happens to the values of L_q and L for the *M/M/*1 model when ρ is increased well above 0.9?

. What is the effect of decreasing the variability of service times (without any change in the mean) on the performance of a single-server queueing system?

. For an *M/G/*1 queueing system, does cutting the variability (standard deviation) of service times in half provide most of the improvement that would be achieved by completely eliminating the variability?

. What is the common effect of combining separate single-server queueing systems into one multiple-server queueing system (without changing the utilization factor)?

. What is the effect of applying priorities when selecting customers to begin service?

. Do preemptive priorities or nonpreemptive priorities give the greater improvement in the measures of performance for customers in the top priority class?

page 603

13.9 ECONOMIC ANALYSIS OF THE NUMBER OF SERVERS TO PROVIDE

When designing a queueing system, a key question often is how many servers to provide. Providing too many causes excessive costs. Providing too few causes excessive waiting by the customers. Therefore, choosing the number of servers involves finding an appropriate trade-off between the cost of the servers and the amount of waiting.

In many cases, the consequences to an organization of making its customers wait can be expressed as a **waiting cost.** This is

especially true when the customers are *internal* to the organization, such as the employees of a company. Making one's own employees wait (both while waiting for service to begin and during service) causes *lost productivity,* which results in *lost profit.* This lost profit is the waiting cost.

waiting cost
The cost associated with making customers wait in a queueing system.

Even when the customers are *external* to the organization, there can be serious consequences when these customers are made to wait very long to be served. These customers may become so disgruntled that they never come back again. In this case, the waiting cost would be *lost profit from lost future business.* This cost is difficult to estimate, but it is a real cost.

A manager is interested in minimizing the total cost. Let

TC = Expected total cost per unit time
SC = Expected service cost per unit time
WC = Expected waiting cost per unit time

Then the objective is to choose the number of servers so as to

$$\text{Minimize} \quad \text{TC} = \text{SC} + \text{WC}$$

When each server costs the same, the **service cost** is

$$\text{SC} = C_s s$$

service cost
The cost associated with providing the servers in a queueing system.

where

C_S = Cost of a server per unit time

s = Number of servers

When the waiting cost is proportional to the amount of waiting (including during service), this cost can be expressed as

$$\text{WC} = C_w L$$

where

C_w = Waiting cost per unit time for each customer in the queueing system

L = Expected number of customers in the queueing system

Therefore, after estimating the constants C_s and C_w, the goal is to choose the value of s so as to

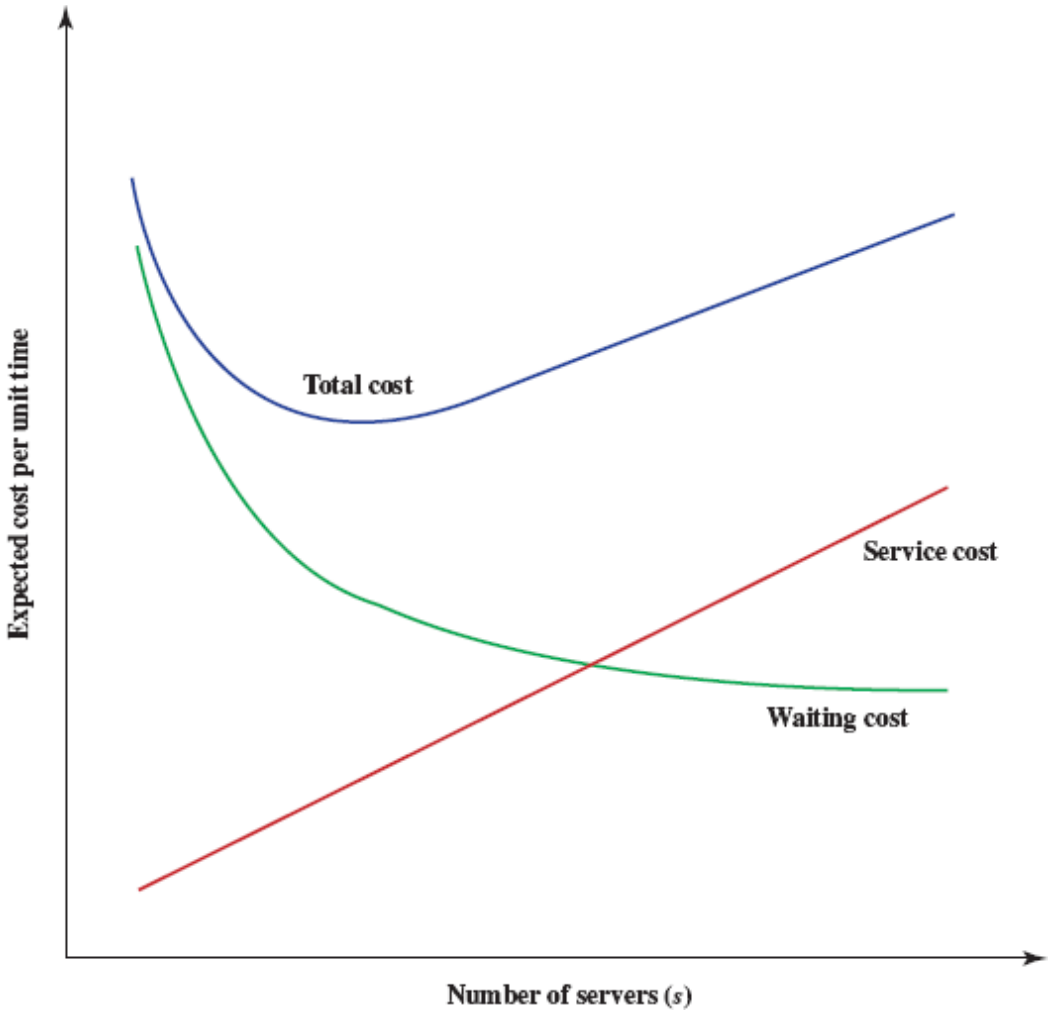
$$\text{Minimize} \quad \text{TC} = C_s s + C_w L$$

By choosing the queueing model that fits the queueing system, the value of L can be obtained for various values of s. Increasing s decreases L, at first rapidly and then gradually more slowly.

Figure 13.15 shows the general shape of the SC, WC, and TC curves versus the number of servers s. (For better conceptualization, we have drawn these as smooth curves even though the only feasible values of s are $s = 1, 2, \ldots$). By calculating TC for consecutive values of s until TC stops decreasing and starts increasing instead, it is straightforward to find the number of servers that minimizes total cost. The following example illustrates this process.

FIGURE 13.15

The shape of the cost curves for determining the number of servers to provide.



Calculate TC for consecutive values of *s* until TC stops decreasing to find the optimal number of servers.

An Example

The **Acme Machine Shop** has a tool crib for storing tools required by the shop mechanics. Two clerks run the tool crib. The tools are handed out by the clerks as the mechanics arrive and request them. The tools then are returned to the clerks when they are no longer needed. There have been complaints from supervisors that their mechanics have had to waste too much time waiting to be served at the tool crib, so it appears that there should be *more* clerks. On the other hand, management is exerting pressure to reduce overhead in the plant, and this reduction would lead to *fewer* clerks. To resolve

these conflicting pressures, an analytics study is being conducted to determine just how many clerks the tool crib should have.

The tool crib constitutes a queueing system, with the clerks as its servers and the mechanics as its customers. After gathering some data on interarrival times and service times, the analytics team has concluded that the queueing model that fits this queueing system best is the *M/M/s* model. The estimates of the mean arrival rate λ and the mean service rate (per server) μ are

page 604

λ = 120 customers per hour

μ = 80 customers per hour

so the utilization factor for the two clerks is

$$\rho = \frac{\lambda}{s\mu} = \frac{120}{2(80)} = 0.75$$

The total cost to the company of each tool crib clerk is about $20 per hour, so C_s = $20. While a mechanic is busy, the value to the company of his or her output averages about $48 per hour, so C_w = $48. Therefore, the analytics team now needs to find the number of servers (tool crib clerks) s that will

$$\text{Minimize} \quad \text{TC} = \$20\, s + \$48\, L$$

An Excel template has been provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for calculating these costs with the *M/M/s* model. All you need to do is enter the data for the model along with the unit service cost C_s, the unit waiting cost C_w, and the number of servers s you want to try. The template then calculates SC, WC, and TC. This is illustrated in Figure 13.16 with s = 3 for this example. By repeatedly entering alternative values of s, the template then can reveal which value minimizes TC in a matter of seconds.

FIGURE 13.16

This Excel template for using economic analysis to choose the number of servers with the *M/M/s* model is applied here to the Acme Machine Shop example with $s = 3$.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Economic Analysis of Acme Machine Shop Example**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		$\lambda =$	120	(mean arrival rate)		$L =$	1.736842105
5		$\mu =$	80	(mean service rate)		$L_q =$	0.236842105
6		$s =$	3	(# servers)			
7						$W =$	0.014473684
8		$\Pr(W > t) =$	0.02581732			$W_q =$	0.001973684
9		when $t =$	0.05				
10						$\rho =$	0.5
11		$\text{Prob}(W_q > t) =$	0.00058707				
12		when $t =$	0.05			n	P_n
13						0	0.210526316
14		**Economic Analysis:**				1	0.315789474
15		$C_s =$	$20.00	(cost/server/unit time)		2	0.236842105
16		$C_w =$	$48.00	(waiting cost/unit time)		3	0.118421053
17						4	0.059210526
18		Cost of Service	$60.00			5	0.029605263
19		Cost of Waiting	$83.37			6	0.014802632
20		Total Cost	$143.37			7	0.007401316

	B	C
18	Cost of Service	$= C_s * s$
19	Cost of Waiting	$= C_w * L$
20	Total Cost	= CostOfService+CostOfWaiting

Range Name	Cell
CostOfService	C18
CostOfWaiting	C19
C_s	C15
C_w	C16
L	G4
s	C6
TotalCost	C20

An Excel template is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** that will calculate TC for you.

Figure 13.17 shows a data table that has been generated from this template by repeating these calculations for $s = 1, 2, 3, 4$, and 5. (See Section 13.8 for more information about generating data tables.) Since the utilization factor for $s = 1$ is $\rho = 1.5$, a single clerk would be

unable to keep up with the customers (as indicated by #N/A in cells K6 and M6:N6), so this option is ruled out. All larger values of *s* are feasible, but *s* = 3 has the smallest total cost. Furthermore, *s* = 3 would decrease the current total cost for *s* = 2 by $62 per hour. Therefore, despite management's current drive to reduce overhead (which includes the cost of tool crib clerks), the analytics team recommends that a third clerk be added to the tool crib. Note that this recommendation would decrease the utilization factor for the clerks from an already modest 0.75 all the way down to 0.5. However, because of the large improvement in the productivity of the mechanics (who are much more expensive than the clerks) through decreasing their time wasted waiting at the tool crib, management adopts the recommendation.

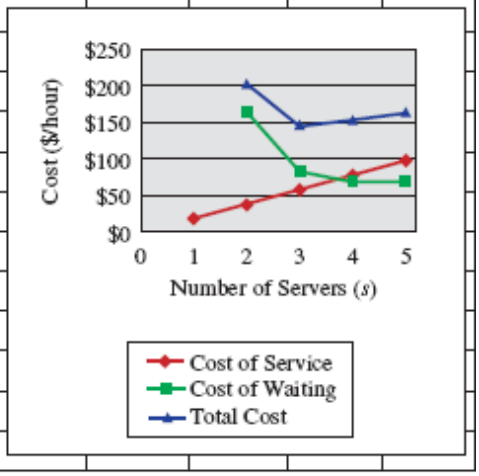
page 605
page 606

FIGURE 13.17

This data table compares the expected hourly costs with various alternative numbers of clerks assigned to the Acme Machine Shop tool crib.

	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S
1	**Data Table for Expected Total Cost for Alternatives in the Acme Machine Shop Example**											
2												
3					Cost of	Cost of	Total					
4		*s*	ρ	*L*	Service	Waiting	Cost					
5			0.50	1.74	$60.00	$83.37	$143.37					
6		1	1.50	#N/A	$20.00	#N/A	#N/A					
7		2	0.75	3.43	$40.00	$164.57	$204.57					
8		3	0.50	1.74	$60.00	$83.37	$143.37					
9		4	0.38	1.54	$80.00	$74.15	$154.15					
10		5	0.30	1.51	$100.00	$72.41	$172.41					
11												
12												
13												
14												

Select entire table (I5:N10), before choosing Table from the Data menu.



	J	K	L	M	N
3			Cost of	Cost of	Total
4	ρ	*L*	Service	Waiting	Cost
5	=Rho	=*L*	=CostOfService	=CostOfWaiting	=TotalCost

Range Name	Cell
CostOfService	C18
CostOfWaiting	C19
L	G4
Rho	G10
s	C6
TotalCost	C20

A low utilization factor of 0.5 is best for the tool crib clerks because this greatly reduces the time wasted by expensive mechanics waiting at the tool crib.

Review *Questions*

. What is the trade-off involved in choosing the number of servers for a queueing system?

. What is the nature of the waiting cost when the customers for the queueing system are the company's own employees?

. When the waiting cost is proportional to the amount of waiting, what is an expression for the waiting cost?

. What does the Acme Machine Shop example demonstrate about the advisability of always maintaining a relatively high utilization factor for the servers in a queueing system?

13.10 BEHAVIORAL QUEUEING THEORY

This chapter has introduced some of the most important models of queueing theory. The analysis of these models tends to be quite challenging. Therefore, these models require making some specific simplifying assumptions about how the queueing system always will operate. For example, it usually is assumed that the probability distribution of service times will be exactly the same for every customer. However, there frequently are situations where the behavior of human servers and customers may cause at least minor deviations from the assumptions of the model.

An important recent development in queueing theory is empirical research into the *impact of behavioral factors* on the performance of queueing systems. Rather than formulating mathematical models, the focus now is on identifying the typical behavior of human servers and customers in real queueing systems. For example, do human servers tend to work faster (a higher service rate) when their current workload increases (more customers in the queue)? On the other hand, in a queueing system with multiple servers, do human servers tend to work slower (a lower service rate) than they would if they were the only server? When addressing these and other similar questions, the key tools are observation, experimentation, and researching the psychology literature. Rather than making simplifying assumptions that human servers and customers always will operate like they are robots that are programmed to satisfy these assumptions, the goal is to use the actual typical behavior of human servers and customers to obtain more accurate measures of performance from the underlying queueing model. Pursuing this goal is referred to as **behavioral queueing theory** (or *behavioral queueing science*).

behavioral queueing theory

A relatively new branch of queueing theory that focuses on identifying the typical behavior of human servers and customers in real queueing systems.

It is interesting to note the close analogy between behavioral queueing theory and the rise of behavioral economics within the field of economics. Throughout the 20th century, economic theory was based largely on *rational choice theory,* which assumes that humans always make rational decisions. This simplifying assumption enabled developing an elaborate classical theory. However, this all changed at the turn of the century when a series of psychologists and economists argued that this assumption was too unrealistic, so a new theory should instead take into account the actual typical behavior of humans and their organizations. This led to the rise of *behavioral economics,* which studies the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural, and social factors on the economic decisions of individuals and institutions and how those decisions vary from those implied by classical theory. This work led to the awarding of Nobel Prizes in Economics to Daniel Kahneman (in 2002), Robert Schiller (in 2013), and Richard Thaler (in 2017). This latter prize to Richard Thaler was awarded for "his contributions to behavioral economics and his pioneering work in establishing that people are predictably irrational in ways that defy economic theory."

The parallel between behavioral economics and behavioral queueing theory is striking. Indeed, referring to the award citation for Richard Thaler, human servers and customers also are *predictably irrational in ways that defy the classical models of queueing theory.* Although it might seem rational that a human server will continually work at a comfortable steady pace, there are two main ways in which this might not occur. One is **server speedup** due to a current increase in the workload. A considerable number of studies have found that human servers tend to speedup as the queue size increases. This effect is particularly pronounced when the performance of the human server is more directly visible to management or customers.

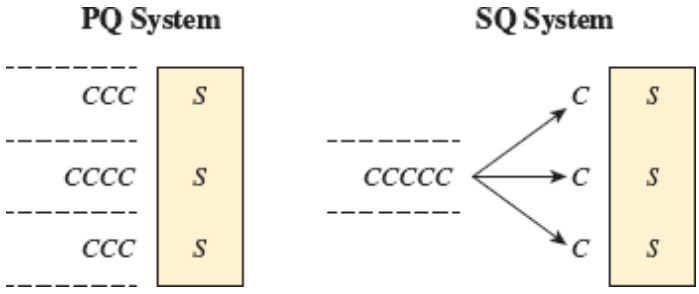
A second way in which the service rate might change is the behavioral effect of **social loafing.** The second paragraph in this section raised the following question: In a queueing system with multiple servers, do human servers tend to work slower (a lower service rate) than they would if they were the only server. Various

studies, including some in the psychology literature, have found that the answer commonly is yes. A plausible explanation is that the employee realizes that she might not receive the full benefits of her own hard work, which induces her to exert less effort than she might exert if she were solely responsible and rewarded for performing a task independently. This is referred to as *social loafing.*

These behavioral effects can influence how a queueing system should be designed. For example, consider two possible designs for a queueing system that has multiple servers, as depicted in Figure 13.18. The *PQ design* has single-server *parallel queues,* so each server is processing arrivals to her own dedicated queue. (Different options are available for how arriving human customers select which queue to join.) The *SQ design* pools all of the servers together to process arrivals into a *single queue.* When a customer gets to the front of the single queue, they are then served by the next server in the pool to become available.

FIGURE 13.18

A comparison of two queueing system designs, where each customer is indicated by *C* and each server by *S.* The PQ system has parallel queues, each with a dedicated server. The SQ system has a single queue served by a pool of servers.



This comparison of a PQ design and an SQ design is a particularly interesting one because there is a well-known result in the queueing theory literature that says that *pooling servers (the SQ design) is considerably superior to the PQ design* under common assumptions for the queueing system. (This played a role in the case study when analyzing the approach suggested by the chief financial

officer in Section 13.6.) However, empirical research has demonstrated instead that the PQ design often is superior after incorporating behavioral factors (including server speedup and social loafing) into the analysis.

The study of behavioral queueing theory is still in an early stage.[3] It appears that this branch of queueing theory will have an increasing impact in the future.

Review *Questions*

. What is the focus of behavioral queueing theory?
. What is the analogy between behavioral queueing theory and behavioral economics?
. What is *server speedup* and why might it occur?
. What is *social loafing* in this context and why might it occur?
. What are two ways of designing queueing systems with multiple servers and why might having single server *parallel queues* be better?

13.11 Summary

Queueing systems are prevalent throughout society. The adequacy of these systems can have an important effect on the quality of life and the productivity of the economy.

Key components of a queueing system are the *arriving customers,* the *queue* in which they wait for service, and the *servers* that provide the service. A queueing model representing a queueing system needs to specify the number of servers, the distribution of interarrival times, and the distribution of service times. An *exponential* distribution usually is chosen for the distribution of interarrival times because this corresponds to the common phenomenon of arrivals occurring randomly. An exponential distribution

sometimes provides a reasonable fit to the service-time distribution as well, and is a particularly convenient choice in terms of ease of analysis. Other probability distributions sometimes used for the service-time distribution include the *degenerate* distribution (constant service times).

Key measures of the performance of queueing systems are the expected values of the number of customers in the queue or in the system (the latter adds on customers currently being served) and of the waiting time of a customer in the queue or in the system. General relationships between these expected values, including Little's formula, enable all four values to be determined immediately as soon as one has been found. In addition to the expected values, the probability distributions of these quantities are sometimes used as measures of performance as well.

This chapter's case study has the top management of the Dupit Corporation grappling with a difficult issue. The company's customers now are demanding a much higher level of service in promptly repairing the company's printer-copiers, including particularly a new type of printer-copier, that have been purchased from the company. Dupit already is spending $600 million per year servicing these machines. Each tech rep territory includes a queueing system with the tech rep as the server and the machines needing repairs as the customers. An analytics team finds that the *M/M/*1 model, the *M/G/*1 model, the *M/M/s* model, and a nonpreemptive priorities model enable analyzing the alternative approaches to redesigning this queueing system. This analysis leads to top management adopting a policy of combining pairs of one-person tech rep territories into two-person territories that give priority to repairing the new printer-copiers. This provides the needed level of service without a significant increase in cost.

Other queueing models discussed in the chapter include the *M/D/*1 and *M/D/s* models, as well as a preemptive priorities model. A supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** also introduces the finite queue variation and the finite calling population variation of the *M/M/s* model, as well as models that use another service-time distribution (the Erlang distribution) that allow the amount of variability in the service times to fall somewhere between that for the exponential and degenerate distributions.

Section 13.8 presents four key insights that queueing models provide about how queueing systems should be designed. Each of these insights also is illustrated by the Dupit case study.

A key question when designing queueing systems frequently is how many servers to provide. Section 13.9 describes how to determine the number of servers that will minimize the expected total cost of the queueing system, including the cost of providing the servers and the cost associated with making customers wait. Section 13.10 introduces a relatively new branch of queueing theory called *behavioral* queueing theory. This branch focuses on identifying the typical behavior of human servers and customers in real queueing systems.

Glossary

behavioral queueing theory A relatively new branch of queueing theory that focuses on identifying the typical behavior of human servers and customers in real queueing systems. (Section 13.10), 606

commercial service system A queueing system where a commercial organization provides a service to customers from outside the organization. (Section 13.2), 571

constant service times Every customer has the same service time. (Section 13.1), 570

customers A generic term that refers to whichever kind of entity (people, vehicles, machines, items, etc.) is coming to the queueing system to receive service. (Section 13.1), 565

exponential distribution The most popular choice for the probability distribution of both interarrival times and service times. Its shape is shown in Figure 13.3. (Section 13.1), 569

finite queue A queue that can hold only a limited number of customers. (Section 13.1), 568

infinite queue A queue that can hold an essentially unlimited number of customers. (Section 13.1), 568

interarrival time The elapsed time between consecutive arrivals to a queueing system. (Section 13.1), 566

internal service system A queueing system where the customers receiving service are internal to the organization providing the service. (Section 13.2), 572

Little's formula The formula $L = \lambda W$, or $L_q = \lambda W_q$. (Section 13.3), 574

mean arrival rate The expected number of arrivals to a queueing system per unit time. (Section 13.1), 566

mean service rate The expected number of service completions per unit time for a single continuously busy server. (Section 13.1), 569

memoryless property When referring to arrivals, this property is that the remaining time from now until the next arrival occurs is completely uninfluenced by when the last arrival occurred. Also called the Markovian property. (Section 13.1), 568

page 609

nonpreemptive priorities Priorities for selecting the next customer to begin service when a server becomes free. However, these priorities do not affect customers who already have begun service. (Section 13.7), 592

number of customers in the queue The number of customers who are waiting for their service to begin. (Sections 13.1, 13.3), 568, 573

number of customers in the system The total number of customers in the queueing system, either waiting for their service to begin or currently being served. (Sections 13.1, 13.3), 568, 573

preemptive priorities Priorities for serving customers that include ejecting the lowest priority customer being served back into the queue in order to serve a higher priority customer that has just entered the queueing system. (Section 13.7), 592

priority classes Categories of customers that are given different priorities for receiving service. (Section 13.7), 592

queue The waiting line in a queueing system. The queue does not include customers who are already being served. (Section 13.1), 565

queue capacity The maximum number of customers that can be held in the queue. (Section 13.1), 568

queue discipline The rule for determining the order in which members of the queue are selected to begin service. (Section 13.1), 569

queueing system A place where customers receive some kind of service from a server, perhaps after waiting in a queue. (Section 13.1), 565

server An entity that is serving the customers coming to a queueing system. (Section 13.1), 565

service cost The cost associated with providing the servers in a queueing system. (Section 13.9), 603

service time The elapsed time from the beginning to the end of a customer's service. (Section 13.1), 569

steady-state condition The normal condition that a queueing system is in after operating for some time with a fixed utilization factor less than one. (Section 13.3), 573

tech rep An abbreviated name for the service technical representatives in the Dupit case study. (Section 13.4), 576

transportation service system A queueing system involving transportation, so that either the customers or the server(s) are vehicles. (Section 13.2), 572

utilization factor The average fraction of time that the servers are being utilized serving customers. (Sections 13.5, 13.6), 579, 588

waiting cost The cost associated with making customers wait in a queueing system. (Section 13.9), 603

waiting time in the queue The elapsed time that an individual customer spends in the queue waiting for service to begin. (Section 13.3), 573

waiting time in the system The elapsed time that an individual customer spends in the queueing system both before service begins and during service. (Section 13.3), 573

Key Symbols

λ = Mean arrival rate (Section 13.1)

μ = Mean service rate (Section 13.1)

s = Number of server	(Section 13.1)
L = Expected number of customers in the system	(Section 13.3)
L_q = Expected number of customers in the queue	(Section 13.3)
W = Expected waiting time in the system	(Section 13.3)
W_q = Expected waiting time in the queue	(Section 13.3)
ρ = Utilization factor for the servers	(Sections 13.5 and 13.6)

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

MMs

MG1

MD1

Nonpreemptive Priorities

Preemptive Priorities

MMs Economic Analysis

Supplement to This Chapter:

Additional Queueing Models

Excel Files for the Supplement to This Chapter:

Finite Queue

Finite Calling Population

ME1

Solved Problem

page 610

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

13.S1. Managing Waiting Lines at First Bank of Seattle

Sally Gordon completed her MBA degree a few years ago and is proud to have earned a promotion to vice president for customer services already at the First Bank of Seattle. One of her responsibilities is to manage how tellers provide services to customers, so she is taking a hard look at this area of the bank's operations. Customers needing teller service arrive randomly at a mean rate of 30 per hour. Customers wait in a single line and are served by the next available teller when they reach the front of the line. Each service takes a variable amount of time (assume an exponential distribution), but on average can be completed in three minutes. The tellers earn an average wage of $18 per hour.

a. If two tellers are used, what will be the average waiting time for a customer before reaching a teller? On average, how many customers will be in the bank, including those currently being served?

b. Company policy is to have no more than a 10 percent chance that a customer will need to wait more than five minutes before reaching a teller. How many tellers need to be used in order to meet this standard?

c. Sally feels that a significant cost is incurred by making a customer wait because of potential lost future business. Sally estimates the cost to be $0.50 for each minute a customer spends in the bank, counting both waiting time and service time. Given this cost, how many tellers should Sally employ?

d. First Bank has two types of customers: merchant customers and regular customers. The mean arrival rate for each type of customer is 15 per hour. Both types of customers currently wait in the same line and are served by the same tellers with the same average service time. However, Sally is considering changing this. The new system she is considering would have two lines—one for merchant customers and one for regular customers. Each of the two lines would have a single server dedicated to serving that line. What would be the average waiting time for each type of customer before reaching a teller? On average, how many total customers would be in the bank, including those currently being served? How do these results compare to those from part *a?*

e. Sally feels that if the tellers are specialized into merchant tellers and regular tellers, they would be more efficient and could serve customers in an average of 2.5 minutes instead of 3 minutes. Answer the questions for part *d* again with this new average service time.

Problems

To the left of the following problems (or their parts), we have inserted the symbol E (for Excel) whenever one of the templates available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** for this chapter can be helpful. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

13.1. Consider a typical hospital emergency room.

a. Describe why it is a queueing system.

b. What is the *queue* in this case? Describe how you would expect the queue discipline to operate.

c. Would you expect *random arrivals?*

d. What are *service times* in this context? Would you expect much variability in the service times?

13.2. Identify the customers and the servers in the queueing system in each of the following situations.

a. The checkout stand in a grocery store.

b. A fire station.

c. The toll booth for a bridge.

d. A bicycle repair shop.

e. A shipping dock.

f. A group of semiautomatic machines assigned to one operator.

g. The materials-handling equipment in a factory area.

h. A plumbing shop.

i. A job shop producing custom orders.

j. A secretarial word processing pool.

13.3.* For each of the following statements about using the exponential distribution as the probability distribution of interarrival times, label the statement as true or false and then justify your answer by referring to a specific statement in the chapter.

a. It is the only distribution of interarrival times that fits having random arrivals.

b. It has the memoryless property because it cannot remember when the next arrival will

occur.

c. It provides an excellent fit for interarrival times for most situations.

13.4. For each of the following statements about using the exponential distribution as the probability distribution of service times, label the statement as true or false and then justify your answer by referring to a specific statement in the chapter.

a. It generally provides an excellent approximation of the true service-time distribution.

b. Its mean and variance are always equal.

c. It represents a rather extreme case regarding the amount of variability in the service times.

13.5. For each of the following statements about the queue in a queueing system, label the statement as true or false and then justify your answer by referring to a specific statement in the chapter.

a. The queue is where customers wait in the queueing system until their service is completed.

b. Queueing models conventionally assume that the queue can hold only a limited number of customers.

c. The most common queue discipline is first-come, first-served.

13.6. Midtown Bank always has two tellers on duty. Customers arrive to receive service from a teller at a mean rate of 40 per hour. A teller requires an average of two minutes to serve a customer. When both tellers are busy, an arriving customer joins a single line to wait for service. Experience has shown that customers wait in line an average of one minute before service begins.

page 611

a. Describe why this is a queueing system.

b. Determine the basic measures of performance—W_q, W, L_q, and L—for this queueing system. (*Hint:* We don't know the probability distributions of interarrival times and service times for this queueing system, so you will need to use the relationships between these measures of performance to help answer the question.)

13.7. Mom-and-Pop's Grocery Store has a small adjacent parking lot with three parking spaces reserved for the store's customers. During store hours, when the lot is not full, cars enter the lot and use one of the spaces at a mean rate of two per hour. When the lot is full, arriving cars leave and do not return. For $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$, the probability P_n that exactly n spaces currently are being used is $P_0 = 0.2$, $P_1 = 0.3$, $P_2 = 0.3$, $P_3 = 0.2$.

a. Describe how this parking lot can be interpreted as being a queueing system. In particular, identify the customers and the servers. What is the service being provided? What constitutes a service time? What is the queue capacity? (*Hint:* See Table 13.4.)

b. Determine the basic measures of performance—L, L_q, W, and W_q—for this queueing system. (*Hint:* You can use the given probabilities to determine the average number of parking spaces that are being used.)

c. Use the results from part *b* to determine the average length of time that a car remains in a parking space.

13.8.* Newell and Jeff are the two barbers in a barber shop they own and operate. They provide two chairs for customers who are waiting to begin a haircut, so the

number of customers in the shop varies between 0 and 4. For n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, the probability P_n that exactly n customers are in the shop is $P_0 = P_1 = 1/16, P_2 = 6/16, P_3 = 4/16, P_4 = 1/16$.

a. Use the formula $L = 0P_0 + 1P_1 + 2P_2 + 3P_3 + 4P_4$ to calculate L. How would you describe the meaning of L to Newell and Jeff?

b. For each of the possible values of the number of customers in the queueing system, specify how many customers are in the queue. For each of the possible numbers in the queue, multiply by its probability, and then add these products to calculate L_q. How would you describe the meaning of L_q to Newell and Jeff?

c. Given that an average of four customers per hour arrive and stay to receive a haircut, determine W and W_q. Describe these two quantities in terms meaningful to Newell and Jeff.

d. Given that Newell and Jeff are equally fast in giving haircuts, what is the average duration of a haircut?

13.9. Explain why the utilization factor ρ for the server in a single-server queueing system must equal $1 - P_0$, where P_0 is the probability of having 0 customers in the system.

13.10. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for General Motors that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 13.5. Briefly describe how queueing models were applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

13.11. The Friendly Neighbor Grocery Store has a single checkout stand with a full-time cashier. Customers arrive

randomly at the stand at a mean rate of 30 per hour. The service-time distribution is exponential, with a mean of 1.5 minutes. This situation has resulted in occasional long lines and complaints from customers. Therefore, because there is no room for a second checkout stand, the manager is considering the alternative of hiring another person to help the cashier by bagging the groceries. This help would reduce the expected time required to process a customer to one minute, but the distribution still would be exponential.

In response to the complaints from the customers, the manager now has adopted three guidelines for providing a satisfactory level of service to the customers. In particular, she would like to have the percentage of time that there are more than two customers at the checkout stand down below 25 percent. She also would like to have no more than 5 percent of the customers needing to wait at least five minutes before beginning service, or at least seven minutes before finishing service.

a. Use the formulas for the *M/M/*1 model to calculate L, W, W_q, L_q, P_0, P_1, and P_2 for the current mode of operation. What is the probability of having more than two customers at the checkout stand?

E *b.* *Use the Excel template for this model to check your answers in part a. Also, find the probability that the waiting time before beginning service exceeds five minutes, and the probability that the waiting time before finishing service exceeds seven minutes.*

c. Repeat part *a* for the alternative being considered by the manager.

E *d.* Repeat part *b* for this alternative.

e. Which approach should the manager use to satisfy her guidelines as closely as possible?

13.12.* The 4M Company has a single turret lathe as a key work center on its factory floor. Jobs arrive randomly at this work center at a mean rate of two per day. The processing time to perform each job has an exponential distribution with a mean of ¼ day. Because the jobs are bulky, those not being worked on are currently being stored in a room some distance from the machine. However, to save time in fetching the jobs, the production manager is proposing to add enough in-process storage space next to the turret lathe to accommodate three jobs in addition to the one being processed. (Excess jobs will continue to be stored temporarily in the distant room.) Under this proposal, what proportion of the time will this storage space next to the turret lathe be adequate to accommodate all waiting jobs?

a. Use available formulas to calculate your answer.

E *b.* Use an Excel template to obtain the information needed to answer the question.

13.13. Jerry Jansen, materials handling manager at the Casper-Edison Corporation's new factory, needs to decide whether to purchase a small tractor-trailer train or a heavy-duty forklift truck for transporting heavy goods between certain producing centers in the factory. Calls for the materials-handling unit to move a load would come essentially at random at a mean rate of four per hour. The total time required to move a load has an exponential distribution, where the expected time would be 12 minutes for the tractor-trailer train and 9 minutes for the forklift truck. The total equivalent uniform hourly cost (capital recovery cost plus operating cost) would be $50 for the tractor-trailer train and $150 for the forklift truck. Having idle goods (waiting to be moved or in transit) can result in

lost production at their destination while also adding to the cost of in-process inventory. The estimated cost of idle goods is $20 per load per hour. page 612

Jerry also has established certain criteria that he would like the materials-handling unit to satisfy in order to keep production flowing on schedule as much as possible. He would like to average no more than half an hour for completing the move of a load after receiving the call requesting the move. He also would like the time for completing the move to be no more than one hour 80 percent of the time. Finally, he would like to have no more than three loads waiting to start their move at least 80 percent of the time.

E *a.* Obtain the various measures of performance if the tractor-trailer train were to be chosen. Evaluate how well these measures meet the above criteria.

E *b.* Repeat part *a* if the forklift truck were to be chosen.

c. Compare the two alternatives in terms of their expected total cost per hour (including the cost of idle goods).

d. Which alternative do you think Jerry should choose?

E 13.14. Suppose a queueing system fitting the *M/M/*1 model has W = 120 minutes and L = 8 customers. Use these facts (and the formula for W) to find λ and μ. Then find the various other measures of performance for this queueing system.

13.15.* The Seabuck and Roper Company has a large warehouse in southern California to store its inventory of goods until they are needed by the company's many furniture stores in that area. A single crew with four members is used to unload and/or load each truck that

arrives at the loading dock of the warehouse. Management currently is downsizing to cut costs, so a decision needs to be made about the future size of this crew.

Trucks arrive randomly at the loading dock at a mean rate of one per hour. The time required by a crew to unload and/or load a truck has an exponential distribution (regardless of crew size). The mean of this distribution with the four-member crew is 15 minutes. If the size of the crew were to be changed, it is estimated that the mean service rate of the crew (now $\mu = 4$ customers per hour) would be *proportional* to its size.

The cost of providing each member of the crew is $20 per hour. The cost that is attributable to having a truck not in use (i.e., a truck standing at the loading dock) is estimated to be $30 per hour.

a. Identify the customers and servers for this queueing system. How many servers does it currently have?

E *b.* Find the various measures of performance of this queueing system with four members on the crew. (Set $t = 1$ hour in the Excel template for the waiting-time probabilities.)

E *c.* Repeat *b* with three members.

E *d.* Repeat part *b* with two members.

e. Should a one-member crew also be considered? Explain.

f. Given the previous results, which crew size do you think management should choose?

g. Use the cost figures to determine which crew size would minimize the expected total cost per hour.

13.16. Jake's Machine Shop contains a grinder for sharpening the machine cutting tools. A decision must now

be made on the speed at which to set the grinder.

The grinding time required by a machine operator to sharpen the cutting tool has an exponential distribution, where the mean $1/\mu$ can be set at 1 minute, 1.5 minutes, or 2 minutes, depending upon the speed of the grinder. The running and maintenance costs go up rapidly with the speed of the grinder, so the estimated cost per minute is \$1.60 for providing a mean of 1 minute, \$0.90 for a mean of 1.5 minutes, and \$0.40 for a mean of 2 minutes.

The machine operators arrive randomly to sharpen their tools at a mean rate of one every two minutes. The estimated cost of an operator being away from his or her machine to the grinder is \$0.80 per minute.

E *a.* Obtain the various measures of performance for this queueing system for each of the three alternative speeds for the grinder. (Set $t = 5$ minutes in the Excel template for the waiting-time probabilities.)

b. Use the cost figures to determine which grinder speed minimizes the expected total cost per minute.

E 13.17. The Centerville International Airport has two runways, one used exclusively for takeoffs and the other exclusively for landings. Airplanes arrive randomly in the Centerville air space to request landing instructions at a mean rate of 10 per hour. The time required for an airplane to land after receiving clearance to land has an exponential distribution with a mean of three minutes, and this process must be completed before giving clearance to land to another airplane. Airplanes awaiting clearance must circle the airport.

The Federal Aviation Administration has a number of criteria regarding the safe level of congestion of airplanes waiting to land. These criteria depend on a number of

factors regarding the airport involved, such as the number of runways available for landing. For Centerville, the criteria are (1) the average number of airplanes waiting to receive clearance to land should not exceed one, (2) 95 percent of the time, the actual number of airplanes waiting to receive clearance to land should not exceed four, (3) for 99 percent of the airplanes, the amount of time spent circling the airport before receiving clearance to land should not exceed 30 minutes (since exceeding this amount of time often would require rerouting the plane to another airport for an emergency landing before its fuel runs out).

a. Evaluate how well these criteria are currently being satisfied.

b. A major airline is considering adding this airport as one of its hubs. This would increase the mean arrival rate to 15 airplanes per hour. Evaluate how well the above criteria would be satisfied if this happens.

c. To attract additional business (including the major airline mentioned in part *b*), airport management is considering adding a second runway for landings. It is estimated that this eventually would increase the mean arrival rate to 25 airplanes per hour. Evaluate how well the above criteria would be satisfied if this happens.

13.18.* Consider the *M/G/*1 model. What is the effect on L_q and W_q if $1/\lambda$, $1/\mu$, and σ are all reduced by half? Explain.

13.19. Consider the *M/G/*1 model with $\lambda = 0.2$ and $\mu = 0.25$.

E *a.* Use the Excel template for this model to generate a data table that gives the main

measures of performance—L, L_q, W, W_q—for each of the following values of σ: 4, 3, 2, 1, 0.

b. What is the ratio of L_q with σ = 4 to L_q with σ = 0? What does this say about the importance of reducing the variability of the service times?

c. Calculate the reduction in L_q when σ is reduced from 4 to 3, from 3 to 2, from 2 to 1, and from 1 to 0. Which is the largest reduction? Which is the smallest?

E *d.* Use trial and error with the template to see approximately how much μ would need to be increased with σ = 4 to achieve the same L_q as with μ = 0.25 and σ = 0.

E *e.* Use the template to generate a data table that gives the value of L_q with σ = 4 when μ increases in increments of 0.01 from 0.25 to 0.35.

E *f.* Use the template to generate a two-way data table that gives the value of L_q for the various combinations of values of μ and σ where μ = 0.22, 0.24, 0.26, 0.28, 0.3 and σ = 4, 3, 2, 1, 0.

13.20. Consider the following statements about the *M/G/*1 queueing model, where σ^2 is the variance of service times. Label each statement as true or false, and then justify your answer.

a. Increasing σ^2 (with fixed λ and μ) will increase L_q and L, but will not change W_q and W.

b. When the choice is between a tortoise (small μ and σ^2) and a hare (large μ and σ^2) to be the server, the tortoise always wins by providing a smaller L_q.

c. With λ and μ fixed, the value of L_q with an exponential service-time distribution is twice as large as with constant service times.

13.21. Marsha operates an espresso stand. Customers arrive randomly at a mean rate of 30 per hour. The time needed by Marsha to serve a customer has an exponential distribution with a mean of 75 seconds.

E *a.* Use the Excel template for the *M/G/*1 model to find *L,* L_q, *W,* and W_q.

E *b.* Suppose Marsha is replaced by an espresso vending machine that requires exactly 75 seconds to operate for each customer. Find *L,* L_q, *W,* and W_q.

c. What is the ratio of L_q in part *b* to L_q in part *a?*

E *d.* Use trial and error with the template to see approximately how much Marsha would need to reduce her expected service time to achieve the same L_q as with the espresso vending machine.

E *e.* Use the template to generate a data table that gives the value of L_q when Marsha is serving with the following values (in seconds) for her expected service time: 75, 70, 65, 64, 63, 62, 61, 60.

13.22.* The production of tractors at the Jim Buck Company involves producing several subassemblies and then using an assembly line to assemble the subassemblies and other parts into finished tractors. Approximately three tractors per day are produced in this way. An in-process inspection station is used to inspect the subassemblies before they enter the assembly line. At present, there are two inspectors at the station, and they work together to inspect each subassembly. The

inspection time has an exponential distribution, with a mean of 15 minutes. The cost of providing this inspection system is $40 per hour.

A proposal has been made to streamline the inspection procedure so that it can be handled by only one inspector. This inspector would begin by visually inspecting the exterior of the subassembly, and she would then use new efficient equipment to complete the inspection. Although this process with just one inspector would slightly increase the mean of the distribution of inspection times from 15 minutes to 16 minutes, it also would reduce the variance of this distribution to only 40 percent of its current value. The cost would be $30 per hour.

The subassemblies arrive randomly at the inspection station at a mean rate of three per hour. The cost of having the subassemblies wait at the inspection station (thereby increasing in-process inventory and possibly disrupting subsequent production) is estimated to be $20 per hour for each subassembly.

Management now needs to make a decision about whether to continue the status quo or adopt the proposal.

E *a.* Find the main measures of performance—L, L_q, W, W_q—for the current queueing system.

E *b.* Repeat part *a* for the proposed queueing system.

c. What conclusions can you draw about what management should do from the results in parts *a* and *b?*

d. Determine and compare the expected total cost per hour for the status quo and the proposal.

E 13.23. The Security & Trust Bank employs four tellers to serve its customers. Customers arrive randomly at a mean rate of two per minute. However, business is growing and management projects that the mean arrival rate will be

three per minute a year from now. The transaction time between the teller and customer has an exponential distribution with a mean of one minute.

Management has established the following guidelines for a satisfactory level of service to customers. The average number of customers waiting in line to begin service should not exceed one. At least 95 percent of the time, the number of customers waiting in line should not exceed five. For at least 95 percent of the customers, the time spent in line waiting to begin service should not exceed five minutes.

a. Use the *M/M/s* model to determine how well these guidelines are currently being satisfied.

b. Evaluate how well the guidelines will be satisfied a year from now if no change is made in the number of tellers.

c. Determine how many tellers will be needed a year from now to completely satisfy these guidelines.

E 13.24. Consider the *M/M/s* model. For each of the following two cases, generate a data table that gives the values of L, L_q, W, W_q, and $P\{\mathscr{W} > 5\}$ for the following mean arrival rates: 0.5, 0.9, and 0.99 customers per minute.

a. Suppose there is one server and the expected service time is one minute. Compare L for the cases where the mean arrival rate is 0.5, 0.9, and 0.99 customers per minute, respectively. Do the same for L_q, W, W_q, and $P\{\mathscr{W} > 5\}$. What conclusions do you draw about the impact of increasing the utilization factor ρ from small values (e.g., ρ = 0.5) to fairly large values (e.g., ρ = 0.9) and then to even larger values very close to 1 (e.g., ρ = 0.99)?

b. Now suppose there are two servers and the expected service time is two minutes. Follow the instructions for part *a.*

E 13.25. Consider the *M/M/s* model with a mean arrival rate of 10 customers per hour and an expected service time of five minutes. Use the Excel template for this model to print out the various measures of performance (with t = 10 and t = 0, respectively, for the two waiting-time probabilities) when the number of servers is one, two, three, four, and five. Then, for each of the following possible criteria for a satisfactory level of service (where the unit of time is one minute), use the printed results to determine how many servers are needed to satisfy this criterion.

a. $L_q \leq 0.25$

b. $L \leq 0.9$

c. $W_q \leq 0.1$

d. $W \leq 6$

e. $P\{W_q > 0\} \leq 0.01$

f. $P\{W > 10\} \leq 0.2$

g. $\sum_{n=0}^{s} P_n \geq 0.95$

13.26. Greg is making plans to open a new fast-food restaurant soon. He is estimating that customers will arrive randomly at a mean rate of 150 per hour during the busiest times of the day. He is planning to have three employees directly serving the customers. He now needs to make a decision about how to organize these employees.

Option 1 is to have three cash registers with one employee at each to take the orders and get the food and drinks. In this case, it is estimated that the average time to serve each customer would be one minute, and the distribution of service times is assumed to be exponential.

Option 2 is to have one cash register with the three employees working together to serve each customer. One would take the order, a second would get the food, and the third would get the drinks. Greg estimates that this would reduce the average time to serve each customer down to 20 seconds, with the same assumption of exponential service times.

Greg wants to choose the option that would provide the best service to his customers. However, since Option 1 has three cash registers, both options would serve the customers at a mean rate of three per minute when everybody is busy serving customers, so it is not clear which option is better.

E *a.* Use the main measures of performance—L, L_q, W, W_q—to compare the two options.

b. Explain why these comparisons make sense intuitively.

c. Which measure do you think would be most important to Greg's customers? Why? Which option is better with respect to this measure?

E 13.27*. In the Blue Chip Life Insurance Company, the deposit and withdrawal functions associated with a certain investment product are separated between two clerks. Deposit slips arrive randomly at Clerk Clara's desk at a mean rate of 16 per hour. Withdrawal slips arrive randomly at Clerk Clarence's desk at a mean rate of 14 per hour. The time required to process either transaction has an exponential distribution with a mean of three minutes. In order to reduce the expected waiting time in the system for both deposit slips and withdrawal slips, the Actuarial Department has made the following recommendations: (1) Train each clerk to handle both deposits and withdrawals; (2) put both deposit and

page 615

withdrawal slips into a single queue that is accessed by both clerks.

a. Determine the expected waiting time in the system under current procedures for each type of slip. Then combine these results (multiply *W* for deposit slips by $^{16}/_{30}$, multiply W for withdrawal slips by $^{14}/_{30}$, and then add these two products) to calculate the expected waiting time in the system for a random arrival of either type of slip.

b. If the recommendations are adopted, determine the expected waiting time in the system for arriving slips.

c. Now suppose that adopting the recommendations would result in a slight increase in the expected processing time. Use the Excel template for this model to determine by trial and error the expected processing time (within 0.01 minute) that would cause the expected waiting time in the system for a random arrival to be essentially the same under current procedures and under the recommendations.

E 13.28. People's Software Company has just set up a call center to provide technical assistance on its new software package. Two technical representatives are taking the calls, where the time required by either representative to answer a customer's questions has an exponential distribution with a mean of eight minutes. Calls are arriving randomly at a mean rate of 10 per hour.

By next year, the mean arrival rate of calls is expected to decline to five per hour, so the plan is to reduce the number of technical representatives to one then. Determine L, L_q, W, and W_q for both the current queueing system and next year's system. For each of these four

measures of performance, which system yields the smaller value?

13.29. The Southern Railroad Company has been subcontracting for the painting of its railroad cars as needed. However, management has decided that the company can save money by doing this work itself. A decision now needs to be made to choose between two alternative ways of doing this.

Alternative 1 is to provide two paint shops, where painting is done by hand (one car at a time in each shop), for a total hourly cost of $70. The painting time for a car would be six hours. Alternative 2 is to provide one spray shop involving an hourly cost of $100. In this case, the painting time for a car (again done one at a time) would be three hours. For both alternatives, the cars arrive randomly with a mean rate of 1 every 5 hours. The cost of idle time per car is $100 per hour.

a. Use Figure 13.10 to estimate L, L_q, W, and W_q for Alternative 1.

E *b.* Find these same measures of performance for Alternative 2.

c. Determine and compare the expected total cost per hour for these alternatives.

13.30.* Southeast Airlines is a small commuter airline. Its ticket counter at one of its airports is staffed by a single ticket agent. There are two separate lines—one for first-class passengers and one for coach-class passengers. When the ticket agent is ready for another customer, the next first-class passenger is served if there are any in line. If not, the next coach-class passenger is served. Service times have an exponential distribution with a mean of three minutes for both types of customers. During the 12 hours per day that the ticket counter is open, passengers arrive

randomly at a mean rate of 2 per hour for first-class passengers and 10 per hour for coach-class passengers.

a. What kind of queueing model fits this queueing system?

E *b.* Find the main measures of performance—L, L_q, W, and W_q—for both first-class passengers and coach-class passengers.

c. What is the expected waiting time before service begins for first-class customers as a fraction of this waiting time for coach-class customers?

d. Determine the average number of hours per day that the ticket agent is occupied with serving customers.

13.31. The County Hospital emergency room always has one doctor on duty. In the past, having just a single doctor there has been sufficient. However, because of a growing tendency for emergency cases to use these facilities rather than go to a private doctor, the number of emergency room visits has been steadily increasing. By next year, it is estimated that patients will arrive randomly at a mean rate of two per hour during peak usage hours (the early evening). Therefore, a proposal has been made to assign a second doctor to the emergency room next year during those hours. Hospital management (an HMO) is resisting this proposal, but has asked an analytics specialist (you) to analyze whether a single doctor will continue to be sufficient next year.

The patients are not treated on a first-come, first-served basis. Rather, the admitting nurse divides the patients into three categories: (1) *critical* cases, where prompt treatment is vital for survival; (2) *serious* cases, where early treatment is important to prevent further deterioration; and (3) *stable* cases, where treatment can be delayed without adverse medical consequences.

Patients are then treated in this order of priority, where those in the same category are normally taken on a first-come, first-served basis. A doctor will interrupt treatment of a patient if a new case in a higher priority category arrives. Approximately 10 percent of the patients fall into the first category, 30 percent into the second, and 60 percent into the third. Because the more serious cases will be sent into the hospital for further care after receiving emergency treatment, the average treatment time by a doctor in the emergency room actually does not differ greatly among these categories. For all of them, the treatment time can be approximated by an exponential distribution with a mean of 20 minutes.

Hospital management has established the following guidelines. The average waiting time in the emergency room before treatment begins should not exceed 2 minutes for critical cases, 15 minutes for serious cases, and 2 hours for stable cases.

a. What kind of queueing model fits this queueing system?

E *b.* Use this model to determine if the management guidelines would be satisfied next year by continuing to have just a single doctor on duty.

c. Use the formula for W_q for the *M/M/*1 model to determine if these guidelines would be satisfied if treatment were given on a first-come, first-served basis instead.

E *d.* The mean arrival rate of two patients per hour during peak usage hours next year is only an estimate. Perform sensitivity analysis by repeating part *b* if this mean arrival rate were to turn out to be 2.25 patients per hour instead.

E 13.32. The Becker Company factory has been experiencing long delays in jobs going through the turret

lathe department because of inadequate capacity. The head of this department contends that five turret lathes are required, as opposed to the three turret lathes that he now has. However, because of pressure from management to hold down capital expenditures, only one additional turret lathe will be authorized unless there is solid evidence that a second one is necessary.

This shop does three kinds of jobs, namely, government jobs, commercial jobs, and standard products. Whenever a turret lathe operator finishes a job, he starts a government job if one is waiting; if not, he starts a commercial job if any are waiting; if not, he starts on a standard product if any are waiting. Jobs of the same type are taken on a first-come, first-served basis.

Although much overtime work is required currently, management wants the turret lathe department to operate on an eight-hour, five-day-per-week basis. The probability distribution of the time required by a turret lathe operator for a job appears to be approximately exponential, with a mean of 10 hours. Jobs come into the shop randomly at a mean rate of six per week for government jobs, four per week for commercial jobs, and two per week for standard products. (These figures are expected to remain the same for the indefinite future.)

Management feels that the average waiting time before work begins in the turret lathe department should not exceed 0.25 (working) days for government jobs, 0.5 days for commercial jobs, and 2 days for standard products.

a. Determine how many additional turret lathes need to be obtained to satisfy these management guidelines.

b. It is worth about $750, $450, and $150 to avoid a delay of one additional (working) day in finishing a government, commercial, and standard job, respectively. The incremental

capitalized cost of providing each turret lathe (including the operator and so on) is estimated to be $250 per working day. Determine the number of additional turret lathes that should be obtained to minimize the expected total cost.

E 13.33. When describing economic analysis of the number of servers to provide in a queueing system, Section 13.9 introduces a cost model where the objective is to minimize TC = $C_s s + C_w L$. The purpose of this problem is to enable you to explore the effect that the relative sizes of C_s and C_w have on the optimal number of servers.

Suppose that the queueing system under consideration fits the *M/M/s* model with $\lambda = 8$ customers per hour and $\mu = 10$ customers per hour. Use the Excel template for economic analysis with the *M/M/s* model to find the optimal number of servers for each of the following cases.

a. C_s = $100 and C_w = $10.

b. C_s = $100 and C_w = $100.

c. C_s = $10 and C_w = $100.

d. For each of these three cases, generate a data table that compares the expected hourly costs with various alternative numbers of servers.

E 13.34.* Jim McDonald, manager of the fast-food hamburger restaurant McBurger, realizes that providing fast service is a key to the success of the restaurant. Customers who have to wait very long are likely to go to one of the other fast-food restaurants in town next time. He estimates that each minute a customer has to wait in line before completing service costs him an average of 50¢ in lost future business. Therefore, he wants to be sure that enough cash registers always are open to keep waiting to a minimum. Each cash register is operated

by a part-time employee who obtains the food ordered by each customer and collects the payment. The total cost for each such employee is $15 per hour.

During lunchtime, customers arrive randomly at a mean rate of 66 per hour. The time needed to serve a customer is estimated to have an exponential distribution with a mean of two minutes.

Determine how many cash registers Jim should have open during lunchtime to minimize his expected total cost per hour.

E 13.35. The Garrett-Tompkins Company provides three copy machines in its copying room for the use of its employees. However, due to recent complaints about considerable time being wasted waiting for a copier to become free, management is considering adding one or more additional copy machines.

During the 2,000 working hours per year, employees arrive randomly at the copying room at a mean rate of 30 per hour. The time each employee needs with a copy machine is believed to have an exponential distribution with a mean of five minutes. The lost productivity due to an employee spending time in the copying room is estimated to cost the company an average of $25 per hour. Each copy machine is leased for $3,000 per year.

Determine how many copy machines the company should have to minimize its expected total cost per hour.

Case 13-1

Queueing Quandary

A SEQUEL TO CASE 4-1

Never dull. That is how you would describe your job at the centralized records and benefits administration center for **Cutting Edge,** a large company manufacturing computers and computer peripherals. Since opening the facility six months ago, you and Mark Lawrence, the director of Human Resources, have endured one long roller-coaster ride. Receiving the go-ahead from corporate headquarters to establish the centralized records and benefits administration center was definitely an up. Getting caught in the crossfire of angry customers (all employees of Cutting Edge) because of demand overload for the records and benefits call center was definitely a down. Accurately forecasting the demand for the call center provided another up.

And today you are faced with another down. Mark approaches your desk with a not altogether attractive frown on his face.

He begins complaining immediately, “I just don’t understand. The forecasting job you did for us two months ago really allowed us to understand the weekly demand for the center, but we still have not been able to get a grasp on the staffing problem. We used both historical data and your forecasts to calculate the average weekly demand for the call center. We transformed this average weekly demand into average hourly demand by dividing the weekly demand by the number of hours in the workweek. We then staffed the center to meet this average hourly demand by taking into account the average number of calls a representative is able to handle per hour.

“But something is horribly wrong. Operational data records show that over 35 percent of the customers wait over four minutes for a representative to answer the call! Customers are still sending me numerous complaints, and executives from corporate headquarters are still breathing down my neck! I need help!”

You calm Mark down and explain to him that you think you know the problem: The number of calls received in a certain hour can be much greater (or much less) than the average because of the stochastic nature of the demand. In addition, the number of calls a representative is able to handle per hour can be much less (or much greater) than the average depending upon the types of calls received.

You then tell him to have no fear; you have the problem under control. You have been reading about the successful application of queueing theory to the operation of call centers, and you decide that the queueing models you learned about in school will help you determine the appropriate staffing level.

a. You ask Mark to describe the demand and service rate. He tells you that calls are randomly received by the call center and that the center receives an average of 70 calls per hour. The computer system installed to answer and hold the calls is so advanced that its capacity far exceeds the demand. Because the nature of a call is random, the time required to process a call is random, where the time frequently is small but occasionally can be much longer. On average, however, representatives can handle six calls per hour. Which queueing model seems appropriate for this situation? Given that slightly more than 35 percent of customers wait over four minutes before a representative answers the call, use this model to estimate how many representatives Mark currently employs.

b. Mark tells you that he will not be satisfied unless 95 percent of the customers wait only one minute or less for a representative to answer the call. Given this customer service level and the average arrival rates and service rates from part *a,* how many representatives should Mark employ?

c. Each representative receives an annual salary (including benefits) of $42,000, and Mark tells you that he simply does not have the resources available to hire the number of representatives required to achieve the customer service level desired in part *b.* He asks you to perform sensitivity analysis. How many representatives would he need to employ to ensure that 80 percent of customers wait one minute or less? How many would he need to employ to ensure that 95 percent of customers wait 90 seconds or less? How would you recommend Mark choose a customer service level? Would the decision criteria be different if Mark's call center were to serve external customers (not connected to the company) instead of internal customers (employees)?

d. Mark tells you that he is not happy with the number of representatives required to achieve a high customer service level. He therefore wants to explore alternatives to simply hiring additional representatives. The alternative he considers is instituting a training program that will teach representatives to more efficiently use computer tools to answer calls. He believes that this alternative will increase the average number of calls a representative is able to handle per hour from six calls to eight calls. The training program will cost $3,500 per employee per year since employees' knowledge will have to be updated yearly. How many representatives will Mark have to employ and train to achieve the customer service level desired in part *b?* Do you prefer this alternative to simply hiring additional representatives? Why or why not?

e. Mark realizes that queueing theory helps him only so much in determining the number of representatives needed. He realizes that the queueing models will not provide accurate answers if the inputs used in the models are inaccurate. What inputs do you think need reevaluation? How would you go about estimating these inputs?

Case 13-2

Reducing In-Process Inventory

Jim Wells, vice president for manufacturing of the **Northern Airplane Company,** is exasperated. His walk through the company's most important plant this morning has left him in a foul mood. However, he now can vent his temper at Jerry Carstairs, the plant's production manager, who has just been summoned to Jim's office.

"Jerry, I just got back from walking through the plant, and I am very upset."

"What is the problem, Jim?"

"Well, you know how much I have been emphasizing the need to cut down on our in-process inventory."

“Yes, we’ve been working hard on that,” responds Jerry.

“Well, not hard enough!” Jim raises his voice even higher. “Do you know what I found by the presses?”

“No.”

“Five metal sheets still waiting to be formed into wing sections. And then, right next door at the inspection station, 13 wing sections! The inspector was inspecting one of them, but the other 12 were just sitting there. You know we have a couple hundred thousand dollars tied up in each of those wing sections. So between the presses and the inspection station, we have a few million bucks’ worth of terribly expensive metal just sitting there. We can’t have that!”

The chagrined Jerry Carstairs tries to respond. “Yes, Jim, I am well aware that that inspection station is a bottleneck. It usually isn’t nearly as bad as you found it this morning, but it is a bottleneck. Much less so for the presses. You really caught us on a bad morning.”

“I sure hope so,” retorts Jim, “but you need to prevent anything nearly this bad happening even occasionally. What do you propose to do about it?”

Jerry now brightens noticeably in his response. “Well, actually, I’ve already been working on this problem. I have a couple proposals on the table and I have asked a management scientist on my staff to analyze these proposals and report back with recommendations.”

“Great,” responds Jim, “glad to see you are on top of the problem. Give this your highest priority and report back to me as soon as possible.”

“Will do,” promises Jerry.

Here is the problem that Jerry and his management scientist are addressing. Each of 10 identical presses is being used to form wing sections out of large sheets of specially processed metal. The sheets arrive randomly at a mean rate of seven per hour. The time required by a press to form a wing section out of a sheet has an exponential distribution with a mean of one hour. When finished, the wing sections arrive randomly at an inspection station at the same mean

rate as the metal sheets arrived at the presses (seven per hour). A single inspector has the full-time job of inspecting these wing sections to make sure they meet specifications. Each inspection takes her 7.5 minutes, so she can inspect eight wing sections per hour. This inspection rate has resulted in a substantial average amount of in-process inventory at the inspection station (i.e., the average number of wing sheets waiting to complete inspection is fairly large), in addition to that already found at the group of machines.

The cost of this in-process inventory is estimated to be $16 per hour for each metal sheet at the presses or each wing section at the inspection station. Therefore, Jerry Carstairs has made two alternative proposals to reduce the average level of in-process inventory.

Proposal 1 is to use slightly less power for the presses (which would increase their average time to form a wing section to 1.2 hours), so that the inspector can keep up with their output better. This also would reduce the cost for each machine (operating cost plus capital recovery cost) from $14 to $13 per hour. (By contrast, increasing to maximum power would increase this cost to $15 per hour while decreasing the average time to form a wing section to 0.8 hours.)

Proposal 2 is to substitute a certain younger inspector for this task. He is somewhat faster (albeit with some variability in his inspection times because of less experience), so he should keep up better. (His inspection time would have a probability distribution with a mean of 7.2 minutes and a standard deviation of 5 minutes.) This inspector is in a job classification that calls for a total compensation (including benefits) of $38 per hour, whereas the current inspector is in a lower job classification where the compensation is $34 per hour. (The inspection times for each of these highly trained and experienced inspectors are typical of those in the same job classifications.)

You are the management scientist on Jerry Carstair’s staff who has been asked to analyze this problem. He wants you to “use the latest management science techniques to see how much each

proposal would cut down on in-process inventory and then make your recommendations."

a. To provide a basis of comparison, begin by evaluating the status quo. Determine the expected amount of in-process inventory at the presses and at the inspection station. Then calculate the expected total cost per hour of the in-process inventory, the presses, and the inspector.
b. What would be the effect of Proposal 1? Why? Make specific comparisons to the results from part *a.* Explain this outcome to Jerry Carstairs.
c. Determine the effect of Proposal 2. Make specific comparisons to the results from part *a.* Explain this outcome to Jerry Carstairs.
d. Make your recommendations for reducing the average level of in-process inventory at the inspection station and at the group of machines. Be specific in your recommendations, and support them with quantitative analysis like that done in part *a.* Make specific comparisons to the results from part *a,* and cite the improvements that your recommendations would yield.

[1]The count of 300 arrivals includes those customers who enter the barber shop but decide not to stay because the wait would be too long. The effect of these immediate departures is analyzed in the supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

[2]The one exception is a queueing system that has *constant* (or nearly constant) interarrival times and service times. Such a system will perform very well with a high utilization factor.

[3]For one pioneering study, see H. T. Do, M. Shunko, M. T. Lucas, and D. C. Novak, "Impact of Behavioral Factors on Performance of Multi-Server Queueing Systems," *Production and Operations Management 27*, no. 8 (August 2018): 1553–1573.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 14

Computer Simulation: Basic Concepts

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the basic concept of computer simulation.
2. Describe the role computer simulation plays in many management science studies.
3. Use random numbers to generate random events that have a simple discrete distribution.
4. Use Excel to perform basic computer simulations on a spreadsheet.
5. Use the Queueing Simulator to perform computer simulations of basic queueing systems and interpret the results.
6. Describe and use the building blocks of a simulation model for a stochastic system.
7. Outline the steps of a major computer simulation study.

In this chapter, we now are ready to focus on the last of the key techniques of management science. *Computer simulation* (often referred to as simply *simulation* for short) ranks very high among the most widely used of these techniques. Furthermore, because it is such a flexible, powerful, and intuitive tool, it is continuing to rapidly grow in popularity. Many managers consider it one of their most valuable tools for performing both predictive analytics and prescriptive analytics.

This technique involves using a computer to *imitate* (simulate) the operation of an entire process or system. For example, computer simulation is frequently used to perform risk analysis on financial processes by repeatedly imitating the evolution of the transactions involved to generate a profile of the possible outcomes. Computer simulation also is widely used to analyze systems that will continue operating indefinitely. For such systems, the computer randomly generates and records the occurrences of the various events that drive the system just as if it were physically operating. Because of its speed, the computer can simulate even years of operation in a matter of seconds. Recording the performance of the simulated operation of the system for a specific design or operating procedure then provides an excellent prediction of how the system would perform in practice. Using computer simulation to obtain this prediction for a number of alternative designs or operating procedures then enables evaluating and comparing these alternatives before choosing one. For many processes and systems, all this now can be done with spreadsheet software.

By imitating the operation of a proposed system, a computer can simulate years of operation in a matter of seconds and then record the performance to provide a prediction of how well the system would perform in practice.

The range of applications of computer simulation has been quite remarkable. The case study in this chapter will illustrate how it is used for the design and operation of queueing systems. A variety of applications have involved the design and operation of manufacturing systems, as well as the design and operation of distribution systems. Some more specific areas of application include managing inventory

systems and estimating the probability of completing a project by the deadline. Financial risk analysis is a particularly active area of application. Health care applications also abound. The list goes on and on.

The first section of this chapter describes and illustrates the essence of computer simulation. The case study for this chapter (a revisit of Herr Cutter's barber shop from the preceding chapter) is discussed and analyzed in Sections 14.2 and 14.3. The following section then outlines the overall procedure for applying computer simulation. Chapter 15 will expand further on the application of computer simulation by describing how to apply Analytic Solver to efficiently perform fairly complicated computer simulations on spreadsheets. (One of the supplementary chapters at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**, Chapter 22, does the same thing with another popular Excel add-in called Crystal Ball.)

page 620

14.1 The Essence of Computer Simulation

The technique of *simulation* has long been an important tool of the designer. For example, simulating airplane flight in a wind tunnel is standard practice when a new airplane is designed. Theoretically, the laws of physics could be used to obtain the same information about how the performance of the airplane changes as design parameters are altered, but, as a practical matter, the analysis would be too complicated to do it all. Another alternative would be to build real airplanes with alternative designs and test them in actual flight to choose the final design, but this would be far too expensive (as well as unsafe). Therefore, after some preliminary theoretical analysis is performed to develop a rough design, simulating flight in a wind tunnel is a vital tool for experimenting with specific designs. This simulation amounts to imitating the performance of a real airplane in a controlled environment in order to estimate what its actual performance will be. After a detailed design is developed in this way,

a prototype model can be built and tested in actual flight to fine-tune the final design.

The Role of Computer Simulation

Computer simulation plays essentially this same role in many management science and business analytics studies. However, rather than designing an airplane, the study team is concerned with developing a design or operating procedure for some system. In many cases, the system is a *stochastic system,* as defined below.

A **stochastic system** is a system that evolves over time according to one or more probability distributions. For example, the queueing systems described in the preceding chapter are stochastic systems because, in most cases, both the interarrival times and service times occur according to probability distributions.

stochastic system

A system that evolves over time according to one or more probability distributions.

Computer simulation imitates the operation of such a system by using the corresponding probability distributions to *randomly generate* the various events that occur in the system (e.g., the arrivals and service completions in a queueing system). However, rather than literally operating a physical system, the computer is just recording the occurrences of the *simulated* events and the resulting performance of this simulated system.

Computer simulation uses probability distributions to randomly generate the various events that occur in a system.

When computer simulation is used as part of a management science and business analytics study, it commonly is preceded and followed by the same steps described earlier for the design of an airplane. In particular, some preliminary analysis is done first

(perhaps with approximate mathematical models) to develop a rough design of the system (including its operating procedures). Then computer simulation is used to experiment with specific designs to predict how well each will perform. After a detailed design is developed and selected in this way, the system probably is tested in actual use to fine-tune the final design.

When dealing with relatively complex systems, computer simulation tends to be a relatively expensive procedure. To get started, a detailed model must be formulated to describe the operation of the system of interest and how it is to be simulated. Then considerable time often is required to develop and debug the computer program or spreadsheet needed to run the simulation. Next, many long computer runs may be needed to obtain good predictions of how well all the alternative designs of the system would perform. Finally, all these data should be carefully analyzed before drawing any final conclusions. This entire process typically takes a lot of time and effort. Therefore, computer simulation should not be used when a less expensive procedure is available that can provide the same information.

Computer simulation typically is used when the stochastic system involved is too complex to be analyzed satisfactorily by the kinds of mathematical models (e.g., queueing models) described in the preceding chapters. One of the main strengths of a mathematical model is that it abstracts the essence of the problem and reveals its underlying structure, thereby providing insight into the cause-and-effect relationships within the system. Therefore, if the modeler is able to construct a mathematical model that is both a reasonable approximation of the problem and amenable to solution, this approach usually is superior to computer simulation. However, many problems are too complex to permit this approach. Fortunately, computer simulation is an exceptionally versatile tool so it can be used to study even highly complex stochastic systems. Thus, computer simulation often provides the only practical approach to a problem.

Computer simulation can predict the performance of proposed systems that are too complex to be analyzed by other mathematical models.

Now let us look at a few examples to illustrate the basic ideas of computer simulation. These examples have been kept considerably simpler than the usual application of this technique in order to highlight the main ideas more readily. This also will enable us to obtain analytical solutions for the performance of the systems involved to compare with the estimates of the performance provided by computer simulation.

Example 1: A Coin-Flipping Game

You are the lucky winner of a sweepstakes contest. Your prize is an all-expense-paid vacation at a major hotel in Las Vegas, including some chips for gambling in the hotel casino.

Upon entering the casino, you find that, in addition to the usual games (blackjack, roulette, etc.), they are offering an interesting new game with the following rules.

Rules of the Game

1. Each play of the game involves repeatedly flipping an unbiased coin until the *difference* between the number of heads tossed and the number of tails is three.
2. If you decide to play the game, you are required to pay $1 for each flip of the coin. You are not allowed to quit during a play of the game.
3. You receive $8 at the end of each play of the game.

Thus, you win money if the number of flips required is fewer than eight, but you lose money if more than eight flips are required. Here are some examples (where H denotes a head and T a tail).

HHH	3 flips	You win $5
THTTT	5 flips	You win $3
THHTHTHTTTT	11 flips	You lose $3

How would you decide whether to play this game?

Many people would base this decision on *simulation,* although they probably would not call it by that name. In this case, simulation amounts to nothing more than playing the game alone many times until it becomes clear whether it is worthwhile to play for money. Half an hour spent in repeatedly flipping a coin and recording the earnings or losses that would have resulted might be sufficient. This is a true simulation because you are *imitating* the actual play of the game without actually winning or losing any money.

Since the topic of this chapter is *computer simulation*, let us see now how a computer can be used to perform this same *simulated experiment.* Although a computer cannot flip coins, it can *simulate* doing so. It accomplishes this by generating a sequence of *random numbers,* as defined below.

A number is a **random number** between 0 and 1 if it has been generated in such a way that *every* possible number within this interval has an equal chance of occurring. For example, if numbers with four decimal places are being used, every one of the 10,000 numbers between 0.0000 and 0.9999 has an equal chance of occurring. Thus, a random number between 0 and 1 is a *random observation* from a *uniform* distribution between 0 and 1. (Hereafter, we will delete the phrase *between 0 and 1* when referring to these random numbers.)

random number

A random observation from the uniform distribution over the interval from 0 to 1.

An easy way to generate random numbers is to use the **RAND()** function in Excel. For example, the lower left-hand corner of Figure 14.1 indicates that = RAND() has been entered into cell C13 and then copied into the range C14:C62. (The parentheses need to be included with this function, but nothing is inserted between them.)

This causes Excel to generate the random numbers shown in cells C13:C62 of the spreadsheet. (Rows 27–56 have been hidden to save space in the figure.)

FIGURE 14.1

page 622

A spreadsheet model for a computer simulation of the coin-flipping game (Example 1).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Coin-Flipping Game**						
2							
3			Required Difference	3			
4			Cash at End of Game	$8			
5							
6				**Summary of Game**			
7			Number of Flips	11			
8			Winnings	–$3			
9							
10							
11			Random		Total	Total	
12		Flip	Number	Result	Heads	Tails	Stop?
13		1	0.3039	Heads	1	0	
14		2	0.7914	Tails	1	1	
15		3	0.8543	Tails	1	2	
16		4	0.6902	Tails	1	3	
17		5	0.3004	Heads	2	3	
18		6	0.0383	Heads	3	3	
19		7	0.3883	Heads	4	3	
20		8	0.6052	Tails	4	4	
21		9	0.2231	Heads	5	4	
22		10	0.4250	Heads	6	4	
23		11	0.3729	Heads	7	4	Stop
24		12	0.7983	Tails	7	5	NA
25		13	0.2340	Heads	8	5	NA
26		14	0.0082	Heads	9	5	NA
57		45	0.7539	Tails	26	19	NA
58		46	0.2989	Heads	27	19	NA
59		47	0.6427	Tails	27	20	NA
60		48	0.2824	Heads	28	20	NA
61		49	0.2124	Heads	29	20	NA
62		50	0.6420	Tails	29	21	NA

Range Name	Cells
CashAtEndOfGame	D4
Flip	B13:B62
NumberOfFlips	D7
RandomNumber	C13:C62
RequiredDifference	D3
Result	D13:D62
Stop?	G13:G62
TotalHeads	E13:E62
TotalTails	F13:F62
Winnings	D8

	C	D
6		**Summary of Game**
7	Number of Flips	=COUNTBLANK(Stop?)+1
8	Winnings	=CashAtEndOfGame–NumberOfFlips

	C	D	E	F
11	Random		Total	Total
12	Number	Result	Heads	Tails
13	=RAND()	=IF(@RandomNumber<0.5,"Heads","Tails")	=IF(@Result="Heads",1,0)	=@Flip-@TotalHeads
14	=RAND()	=IF(@RandomNumber<0.5,"Heads","Tails")	=E13+IF(@Result="Heads",1,0)	=@Flip-@TotalHeads
15	=RAND()	=IF(@RandomNumber<0.5,"Heads","Tails")	=E14+IF(@Result="Heads",1,0)	=@Flip-@TotalHeads
16	:	:	:	:
17	:	:	:	:

	G
12	Stop?
13	
14	
15	=IF(ABS(@TotalHeads-@TotalTails)>=RequiredDifference,"Stop","")
16	=IF(G15="",IF(ABS(@TotalHeads-@TotalTails)>=RequiredDifference,"Stop",""),"NA")
17	=IF(G16="",IF(ABS(@TotalHeads-@TotalTails)>=RequiredDifference,"Stop",""),"NA")
18	:
19	:

Random numbers play a key role in performing computer simulations, so Excel uses the RAND() function to generate them.

Although these numbers in cells C13:C62 have all the important properties of random numbers, Excel actually uses a fixed formula to calculate each random number from the preceding one, starting with a *seed value* to initialize the process. Since the sequence of random numbers is predictable in the sense that it can be reproduced by using the same seed value again (which sometimes is advantageous for comparing alternative designs of a system), these numbers sometimes are referred to as *pseudo-random numbers.*

The probabilities for the outcome of flipping a coin are

$$P(\text{heads}) = \tfrac{1}{2} \qquad P(\text{tails}) = \tfrac{1}{2}$$

Therefore, to simulate the flipping of a coin, the computer can just let any half of the possible random numbers correspond to heads and the other half correspond to tails. To be specific, we will use the following correspondence.

0.0000 to 0.4999	correspond to	heads
0.5000 to 0.9999	correspond to	tails

By using the formula

$$= \text{IF}(\text{RandomNumber} < 0.5, \text{“Heads”}, \text{“Tails”})$$

in each of the column D cells in Figure 14.1, Excel inserts Heads if the random number is less than 0.5 and inserts Tails otherwise. Consequently, the first 11 random numbers generated in column C yield the following sequence of heads (H) and tails (T):

HTTTHHHTHHH

at which point the game stops because the number of heads (seven) exceeds the number of tails (four) by three. Cells D7 and D8 record

the total number of flips (11) and resulting winnings ($8 − $11 = − $3).

Thus, Figure 14.1 records the computer simulation of one complete play of the game. To virtually ensure that the game will be completed, 50 flips of the coin have been simulated. Columns E and F record the cumulative number of heads and tails after each flip. The equations entered into the column G cells leave each cell blank until the difference in the numbers of heads and tails reaches 3, at which point Stop is inserted into the cell. Thereafter, NA (for Not Applicable) is inserted instead.

Such simulations of plays of the game can be repeated as often as desired with this spreadsheet. Pressing the F9 key causes Excel to recalculate the entire spreadsheet, including calculating new random numbers in cells C13:C62. In fact, making *any* change in the spreadsheet also causes Excel to recalculate, including generating new random numbers. (If you ever want to fix a given set of random numbers, e.g., to save one particular outcome of the game, select the range of random numbers, right-click and choose Copy, right-click again and choose Paste Special, and then select the Values option.)

Computer simulations normally are repeated many times to obtain a more reliable estimate of an average outcome. Figure 14.2 shows how a data table can be used to trick Excel into repeating the simulation 14 times. You first make a table with the column headings shown in columns J, K, and L. The first column of the table (J7:J20) is used to label the 14 plays of the game, leaving the first row blank. The headings of the next two columns specify which output will be evaluated. For each of these two columns, use the first row of the table (cells K6:L6) to write an equation that refers to the relevant output cell. In this case, the cells of interest are the number of flips and the winnings, so the equations for K6:L6 are those shown to the right of the spreadsheet in Figure 14.2.

FIGURE 14.2

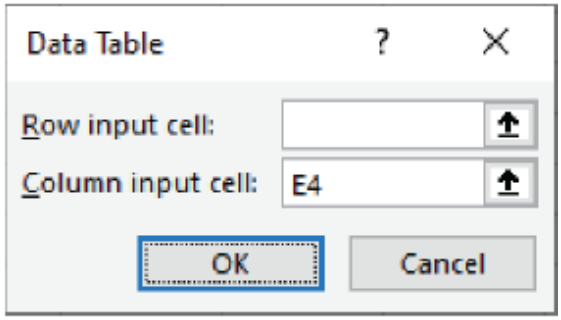
A data table that records the results of performing 14 replications of a computer simulation with the spreadsheet in Figure 14.1.

	I	J	K	L	M
1	**Data Table for Coin-Flipping Game**				
2	**(14 Replications)**				
3					
4			Number		
5		Play	of Flips	Winnings	
6			3	$5	
7		1	9	–$1	
8		2	5	$3	
9		3	7	$1	
10		4	11	–$3	
11		5	5	$3	
12		6	3	$5	
13		7	3	$5	
14		8	11	–$3	
15		9	7	$1	
16		10	15	–$7	
17		11	3	$5	
18		12	7	$1	
19		13	9	–$1	
20		14	5	3	
21					
22		Average	7.14	$0.86	

Select the whole table (J6:L20), before choosing Table from the Data menu.

Range Name	Cell
NumberOfFlips	D7
Winnings	D8

	K	L
4	Number	
5	of Flips	Winnings
6	=NumberOfFlips	=Winnings



Microsoft Corporation

	J	K	L
22	Average	=AVERAGE(K7:K20)	=AVERAGE(L7:L20)

Microsoft Corporation

The next step is to select the entire table (J6:L20) and then choose Data Table from the What-If Analysis menu of the Data tab. In the Data Table dialog box (as shown on the right-hand side of Figure 14.2), choose any blank cell for the column input cell (for example, E4) but do not enter anything for the row input cell. Clicking OK then generates the data table shown in Figure 14.2.

The first thing Excel does while generating the data table is to enter the numbers in the first column of the table (J7:J20), one at a time, into the column input cell (E4), which has no direct impact on the simulation. However, each time a new number is entered into the column input cell, Excel recalculates the entire original spreadsheet

(Figure 14.1) in cells C13:G62 and then enters the resulting numbers in the output cells, NumberOfFlips (D7) and Winnings (D8), into the corresponding row of the data table. In essence, we have tricked Excel into repeating the simulation 14 times, each time generating new random numbers in column C to perform a completely new simulation.

Cell K22 shows that this sample of 14 plays of the game gives a sample average of 7.14 flips. The sample average provides an *estimate* of the true *mean* of the underlying probability distribution of the number of flips required for a play of the game. Hence, this sample average of 7.14 would seem to indicate that, on the average, you should win about $0.86 (cell L22) each time you play the game. Therefore, if you do not have a relatively high aversion to risk, it appears that you should choose to play this game, preferably a large number of times.

However, *beware!* One common error in the use of computer simulation is that conclusions are based on overly small samples, because statistical analysis was inadequate or totally lacking. A qualified statistician can be very helpful with designing the experiments to be performed with computer simulation. In this case, careful statistical analysis (using confidence intervals, etc.) would indicate that hundreds of simulated plays of the game would be needed before any conclusions should be drawn about whether you are likely to win or lose by playing this game numerous times.

At least hundreds of simulated plays of this game are needed to obtain a reasonably reliable estimate of an average outcome.

It so happens that the true mean of the number of flips required for a play of this game is 9. (This mean can be found analytically, but not easily.) Thus, in the long run, you actually would average losing about $1 each time you played the game. Part of the reason that the above simulated experiment failed to draw this conclusion is that you have a small chance of a very large loss on any play of the game, but you can never win more than $5 each time. However, 14 simulated plays of the game were not enough to obtain any observations far out in the tail of the probability distribution of the amount won or lost on

one play of the game. Only one simulated play gave a loss of more than $3, and that was only $7.

Figure 14.3 gives the results of running the simulation for 1,000 plays of the game (with rows 17–1,000 not shown). Cell K1008 records the average number of flips as 8.97, very close to the true mean of 9. With this number of replications, the average winnings of –$0.97 in cell L1008 now provide a reliable basis for concluding that this game will not win you money in the long run. (You can bet that the casino already has used computer simulation to verify this fact in advance.)

page 625

FIGURE 14.3

This data table improves the reliability of the computer simulation recorded in Figure 14.2 by performing 1,000 replications instead of only 14.

	I	J	K	L	M
1	**Data Table for Coin-Flipping Game**				
2	**(1,000 Replications)**				
3					
4			Number		
5		Play	of Flips	Winnings	
6			5	$3	
7		1	3	$5	
8		2	3	$5	
9		3	7	$1	
10		4	11	–$3	
11		5	13	–$5	
12		6	7	$1	
13		7	3	$5	
14		8	7	$1	
15		9	3	$5	
16		10	9	–$1	
1001		995	5	$3	
1002		996	27	–$19	
1003		997	7	$1	
1004		998	3	$5	
1005		999	9	–$1	
1006		1,000	17	–$9	
1007					
1008		Average	8.97	–$0.97	

Example 2: Corrective Maintenance versus Preventive Maintenance

The **Heavy Duty Company** has just purchased a large machine for a new production process. The machine is powered by a motor that occasionally breaks down and requires a major overhaul because of its heavy-duty use. Therefore, the manufacturer of the machine also provides a second standby motor. The two motors are rotated in use, with each one remaining in the machine until it is removed for an overhaul (perhaps because it has just broken down) and replaced by the other one.

Given the planned usage of the machine, its manufacturer has provided the company with information about the *durability* of the

motors (the number of days of usage until a breakdown occurs). This information is shown in the first two columns of Table 14.1. The first column lists the number of days the current machine has been in use. For each of these days, the second column then gives the probability that the breakdown will occur on that day. Since these probabilities are 0 except for days 4, 5, and 6, the breakdown always occurs during the fourth, fifth, or sixth day. The third column provides a straightforward way of assigning random numbers to correspond to each of these three possibilities.

TABLE 14.1

page 626

The Probability Distribution of Breakdowns for Heavy Duty's Motors, and the Corresponding Random Numbers

Day	Probability of a Breakdown	Corresponding Random Numbers
1, 2, 3	0	
4	0.25	0.0000 to 0.2499
5	0.5	0.2500 to 0.7499
6	0.25	0.7500 to 0.9999
7 or more	0	

Fortunately, the time required to overhaul a motor never exceeds three days, so a replacement motor always is ready when a breakdown occurs. When this happens, the remainder of the day (plus overtime if needed) is used to remove the failed motor and install the replacement motor, so the machine then is ready to begin operation again at the beginning of the next day. The average costs incurred during each *replacement cycle* (the time from when a replacement of a motor begins until just before another replacement is needed) are estimated as summarized below.

Cost of a Replacement Cycle that Begins with a Breakdown	
Replace a motor	$ 2,000
Lost production during replacement	5,000
Overhaul a motor	4,000
Total	$11,000

Heavy Duty management now needs to decide on the policy for when a motor should be replaced. One option (referred to as *corrective maintenance*) is to wait until a breakdown occurs before removing and replacing the motor. Another option (referred to as *preventive maintenance*) is to try to replace the motor before a breakdown occurs. The three possibilities for the latter option are to always replace the motor (i) after three days, or (ii) after four days, or (iii) after five days, assuming it didn't already break down and so required early replacement. The analysis below begins with the corrective maintenance option and then turns to the preventive maintenance option a little later.

Using Computer Simulation for the Corrective Maintenance Option

Computer simulation can be used to estimate what the *average daily cost* would be for replacing the motors whenever they break down (but not earlier). This requires using random numbers to determine when breakdowns occur in the *simulated* process. Using the probabilities in the second column of Table 14.1, 25 percent of the possible random numbers need to correspond to a breakdown on day 4, 50 percent to a breakdown on day 5, and the remaining 25 percent to a breakdown on day 6. The rightmost column of Table 14.1 shows the natural way of doing this.

VLOOKUP(*a, B, c*) looks in the first column of *B* (where *B* is a range of cells) for the row containing the largest value that is less than or equal to *a.* It then returns the value in column *c* from that row of *B.*

Excel provides a convenient VLOOKUP function for implementing this correspondence between a random number and the associated event. Figure 14.4 illustrates how it works. One step is to create the table shown in columns I, J, and K, where columns K and I come directly from the first two columns of Table 14.1. Column J gives the cumulative probability *prior* to the number of days in column K, so J8 = I7 and J9 = I7 + I8. Cells J7:K9 then constitute the lookup table for the VLOOKUP function. The bottom of the figure displays how the VLOOKUP command has been entered into the column D cells. The first argument of this function indicates that the cell in the same row of RandomNumber (C5:C34) provides the random number being used. The second argument gives the range for the lookup table. The third argument (2) indicates that column 2 of the lookup table (K7:K9 in this case) is providing the number being entered into this cell in column D. The choice of the number in column 2 of the lookup table is based on where the random number falls within the ranges implied by the rows in column 1 of this table. In particular, the three possible choices are

$$\begin{array}{lrl} \text{if} & 0 \le \text{RAND}() < 0.25 & \text{choose 4 days} \\ \text{if} & 0.25 \le \text{RAND}() < 0.75 & \text{choose 5 days} \\ \text{if} & 0.75 \le \text{RAND}() < 1 & \text{choose 6 days} \end{array}$$

FIGURE 14.4

A spreadsheet model for a computer simulation of performing corrective maintenance on the Heavy Duty Co. motors.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	**Heavy Duty Company Corrective Maintenance Simulation**										
2											
3			Random	Time since Last	Cumulative		Cumulative		**Distribution of**		
4		Breakdown	Number	Breakdown	Day	Cost	Cost		**Time between Breakdowns**		
5		1	0.7142	5	5	$11,000	$11,000				Number
6		2	0.4546	5	10	$11,000	$22,000		Probability	Cumulative	of Days
7		3	0.3142	5	15	$11,000	$33,000		0.25	0	4
8		4	0.1722	4	19	$11,000	$44,000		0.5	0.25	5
9		5	0.0932	4	23	$11,000	$55,000		0.25	0.75	6
10		6	0.3645	5	28	$11,000	$66,000				
11		7	0.1636	4	32	$11,000	$77,000		Breakdown Cost	$11,000	
12		8	0.7572	6	38	$11,000	$88,000				
13		9	0.3067	5	43	$11,000	$99,000				
14		10	0.9520	6	49	$11,000	$110,000				
30		26	0.8548	6	131	$11,000	$286,000				
31		27	0.7464	5	136	$11,000	$297,000				
32		28	0.9781	6	142	$11,000	$308,000				
33		29	0.6584	5	147	$11,000	$319,000		Average Cost per Day		
34		30	0.8829	6	153	$11,000	$330,000			$2,157	

	C	D	E	F	G
3	Random	Time Since Last	Cumulative		Cumulative
4	Number	Breakdown	Day	Cost	Cost
5	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$J$7:$K$9,2)	=@TimeSinceLastBreakdown	=BreakdownCost	=@Cost
6	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$J$7:$K$9,2)	=E5+@TimeSinceLastBreakdown	=BreakdownCost	=G5+@Cost
7	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$J$7:$K$9,2)	=E6+@TimeSinceLastBreakdown	=BreakdownCost	=G6+@Cost
8	:	:	:	:	:
9	:	:	:	:	:

Range Name	Cells
AverageCostPerDay	J34
Breakdown	B5:B34
BreakdownCost	J11
Cost	F5:F34
CumulativeCost	G5:G34
CumulativeDay	E5:E34
RandomNumber	C5:C34
TimeSinceLastBreakdown	D5:D34

	J
33	Average Cost per Day
34	=@CumulativeCost/@CumulativeDay

which is precisely the correspondence indicated in Table 14.1.

By generating 30 simulated breakdowns in this way in column D of Figure 14.4, columns E, F, and G then show the resulting cumulative number of days, the estimated cost for each replacement cycle, and the cumulative cost for the corresponding replacement cycles. (In a more detailed computer simulation, random numbers also could be used to generate the exact costs with each simulated breakdown.) Since the total number of days in this simulation (cell

E34) is 153 and the cumulative cost (cell G34) is $330,000, the average daily cost is calculated in cell J34 as

$$\text{Average cost per day} = \frac{\$330{,}000}{153} = \$2{,}157$$

The lookup table in cells J7:K9 provides this correspondence between a random number and the time until a breakdown occurs.

Comparisons with Example 1

page 627

Comparing this computer simulation with the ones run for the coin-flipping game reveals a couple of interesting differences. One is that the IF function was used to generate each simulated coin flip from a random number (see the equations entered into the column D cells in Figure 14.1), whereas the VLOOKUP function has just been used here to generate the simulated results. Actually, the VLOOKUP function could have been used instead for the coin flips, but the IF function was more convenient. Conversely, a nested IF function could have been used instead for the current example, but the VLOOKUP function was more convenient. In general, we prefer using the IF function to generate a random observation from a probability distribution that has only two possible values, whereas we prefer the VLOOKUP function when the distribution has more than two possible values.

A second difference arose in the way the replications of the two computer simulations were recorded. For the coin-flipping game, simulating a single play of the game involved using the

page 628

spreadsheet with 62 rows shown in Figure 14.1. Therefore, to record many replications, this same spreadsheet was used to generate the data table in Figure 14.2, which summarized the results of each replication in a single row. For the current example, no separate data table was needed because each replication could be executed and displayed in a single row of the original spreadsheet in Figure 14.4.

However, one similarity between the two examples is that we purposely kept each one sufficiently simple that an analytical solution

is available to compare with the simulation results. In fact, it is quite straightforward to obtain the analytical solution for the current version of the Heavy Duty Co. problem. Using the probabilities in Table 14.1, the *expected* number of days until a breakdown occurs is

$$E(\text{time until a breakdown}) = 0.25(4 \text{ days}) + 0.5(5 \text{ days}) + 0.25(6 \text{ days})$$
$$= 5 \text{ days}$$

Therefore, the *expected value* (in the statistical sense) of the cost per day is

$$E(\text{cost per day}) = \frac{\$11{,}000}{5 \text{ days}} = \$2{,}200 \text{ per day}$$

The average cost of $2,157 per day obtained by computer simulation (cell J34 of Figure 14.4) is an estimate of this true expected value.

The fact that computer simulation actually was not needed to analyze this version of the Heavy Duty Co. problem illustrates a possible pitfall with this technique. Computer simulation is easy enough to use on small problems that there occasionally is a tendency to rush into using this technique when a bit of careful thought and analysis first could provide all the needed information more precisely (and perhaps more quickly) than computer simulation. In other cases, starting with a simple analytical model sometimes can provide important insights as a prelude to using computer simulation to refine the analysis with a more precise formulation of the problem.

Some Preventive Maintenance Options

So far, we have assumed that the company will use a *corrective maintenance* policy. This means that the motor in the machine will be removed and overhauled only after it has broken down. However, many companies use a *preventive maintenance* policy instead. Such a policy in this case would involve *scheduling* the motor to be removed (and replaced) for an overhaul at a certain time even if a breakdown has not occurred. The goal is to provide maintenance early enough to prevent a breakdown. Scheduling the overhaul also

enables removing and replacing the motor at a convenient time when the machine would not be in use otherwise, so that no production is lost. For example, by paying overtime wages for the removal and replacement, this work can be done after the normal workday ends so that the machine will be ready by the beginning of the next day. One possibility is to do this at the end of day 3, which would definitely be in time to prevent a breakdown. Other options are to do it at the end of day 4 or day 5 (if a breakdown has not yet occurred) in order to prevent disrupting production with a breakdown in the very near future. Computer simulation can be used to evaluate and compare each of the options (including the corrective maintenance policy considered earlier) when analytical solutions are not available.

The goal of preventive maintenance is to provide maintenance early enough to prevent a breakdown.

Consider the option of removing (and replacing) the motor for an overhaul at the end of day 3. The average cost each time this is done happens to be the following.

Cost of a Replacement Cycle that Begins without a Breakdown	
Replace a motor on overtime	$ 3,000
Lost production during replacement	0
Overhaul a motor before a breakdown	3,000
Total	$ 6,000

Since this total cost of $6,000 occurs every three days, the expected cost per day of this option would be

page 629

$$E(\text{cost per day}) = \frac{\$6{,}000}{3 \text{ days}} = \$2{,}000 \text{ per day}$$

Since this cost has been obtained analytically, computer simulation is not needed in this case.

Now consider the remaining two options of removing (and replacing) the motor after day 4 or after day 5 if a breakdown has not yet occurred. Since it is somewhat more difficult to find the expected cost per day analytically for these options, we now will use computer simulation. For either case, the average cost during a replacement cycle depends on whether the replacement began before or after a breakdown occurred. As outlined earlier, these average costs are

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost of a replacement cycle that begins with a breakdown} &= \$11{,}000\\ \text{Cost of a replacement cycle that begins without a breakdown} &= \$\ 6{,}000\end{aligned}$$

Figure 14.5 shows the use of computer simulation for the option of scheduling the replacement of each motor after four days. The times until 30 consecutive motors would have broken down without the replacements are obtained from column D (except rows 15–29 are hidden). The cases where this time is four days (indicating a breakdown *during* day 4) correspond to a motor breaking down before it is replaced. (This occurs in rows 6, 9, 13–14 and in five of the hidden rows.) The first cycle concludes with the replacement of the first motor after four days, as shown in row 5. Column G gives the cumulative number of days at the end of each cycle. Column F indicates whether each cycle ends with a breakdown or with a replacement that is soon enough to avoid a breakdown, and column H gives the resulting cost. Column I then cumulates these costs. Since the 30 cycles last 120 days (cell G34) and have a total cost of $225,000 (cell I34), this simulation yields

$$\text{Average cost per day} = \frac{\$225{,}000}{120} = \$1{,}875$$

FIGURE 14.5

A spreadsheet model for a computer simulation of performing preventive maintenance (replace after four days) on the Heavy Duty Co. motors.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	**Heavy Duty Company Preventive Maintenance Simulation (Replace after 4 Days)**												
2													
3			Random	Time until	Scheduled Time	Event That	Cumulative		Cumulative		**Distribution of**		
4		Cycle	Number	Breakdown	until Replacement	Concludes Cycle	Day	Cost	Cost		**Time between Breakdowns**		
5		1	0.7861	6	4	Replacement	4	$6,000	$6,000				Number
6		2	0.0679	4	4	Breakdown	8	$11,000	$17,000		Probability	Cumulative	of Days
7		3	0.9296	6	4	Replacement	12	$6,000	$23,000		0.25	0	4
8		4	0.4430	5	4	Replacement	16	$6,000	$29,000		0.5	0.25	5
9		5	0.1223	4	4	Breakdown	20	$11,000	$40,000		0.25	0.75	6
10		6	0.4530	5	4	Replacement	24	$6,000	$46,000				
11		7	0.3972	5	4	Replacement	28	$6,000	$52,000		Breakdown Cost	$11,000	
12		8	0.9289	6	4	Replacement	32	$6,000	$58,000		Replacement Cost	$6,000	
13		9	0.2195	4	4	Breakdown	36	$11,000	$69,000				
14		10	0.0706	4	4	Breakdown	40	$11,000	$80,000		Replace after	4	days
30		26	0.8720	6	4	Replacement	104	$6,000	$201,000				
31		27	0.8902	6	4	Replacement	108	$6,000	$207,000				
32		28	0.3839	5	4	Replacement	112	$6,000	$213,000				
33		29	0.7404	5	4	Replacement	116	$6,000	$219,000		Average Cost per Day		
34		30	0.7264	5	4	Replacement	120	$6,000	$225,000			$1,875	

	C	D	E	F
3	Random	Time until	Scheduled Time	Event That
4	Number	Breakdown	until Replacement	Concludes Cycle
5	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$L$7:$M$9,2)	=ReplaceAfter	=IF(@TimeUntilBreakdown<=@ScheduledTimeUntilReplacement,"Breakdown","Replacement")
6	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$L$7:$M$9,2)	=ReplaceAfter	=IF(@TimeUntilBreakdown<=@ScheduledTimeUntilReplacement,"Breakdown","Replacement")
7	=RAND()	=VLOOKUP(@RandomNumber,$L$7:$M$9,2)	=ReplaceAfter	=IF(@TimeUntilBreakdown<=@ScheduledTimeUntilReplacement,"Breakdown","Replacement")
8	:	:	:	:
9	:	:	:	:

Range Name	Cells
AverageCostPerDay	L34
BreakdownCost	L11
Cost	H5:H34
CumulativeCost	I5:I34
CumulativeDay	G5:G34
Cycle	B5:B34
Event	F5:F34
RandomNumber	C5:C34
ReplaceAfter	L14
ReplacementCost	L12
ScheduledTimeUntilReplacement	E5:E34
TimeUntilBreakdown	D5:D34

	G	H	I
3	Cumulative		Cumulative
4	Day	Cost	Cost
5	=MIN(D5,E5)	=IF(@Event="Breakdown",BreakdownCost,ReplacementCost)	=@Cost
6	=G5+MIN(D6,E6)	=IF(@Event="Breakdown",BreakdownCost,ReplacementCost)	=I5+@Cost
7	=G6+MIN(D7,E7)	=IF(@Event="Breakdown",BreakdownCost,ReplacementCost)	=I6+@Cost
8	:	:	:
9	:	:	:

	L
33	Average Cost per Day
34	=@CumulativeCost/@CumulativeDay

as the *estimate* of the expected cost per day (which actually is $1,812 per day) for this option of scheduling replacement after four days.

Figure 14.6 shows the corresponding simulation for the option of scheduling the replacement of each motor after five days. Thus, if the time until a breakdown would be on the sixth day (as indicated in column D), the replacement is made in time to avoid the breakdown (as indicated in column F). Since most of the times in column D are 4 or 5 instead, most of the cycles conclude with a breakdown. This leads to a much higher total cost for the 30 cycles of $300,000, along with a somewhat longer total time of 141 days. Therefore, the *estimate* of the expected cost per day for this option is

$$\text{Average cost per day} = \frac{\$300{,}000}{141} = \$2{,}128$$

(The true expected cost per day is $2,053.)

Based on all the above results, the clear choice for the least expensive option is the one that schedules the replacement of each motor after four days, since its estimated expected cost per day is only $1,875. Although this estimate based on the simulation in Figure 14.5 overestimates the true expected cost per day by $63, this option still is the least expensive one by a wide margin.

In practice, the simulation runs usually would be considerably longer than those shown in Figures 14.4, 14.5, and 14.6 in order to obtain more precise estimates of the true costs for the alternative options. The simulations typically also would include more details, such as when during a day a breakdown occurs and the resulting cost of lost production that day.

FIGURE 14.6

A revision of Figure 14.5 to schedule the replacement of the motors after five days instead of four.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	**Heavy Duty Company Preventive Maintenance Simulation (Replace after 5 Days)**												
2													
3			Random	Time until	Scheduled Time	Event That	Cumulative		Cumulative		**Distribution of**		
4		Cycle	Number	Breakdown	until Replacement	Concludes Cycle	Day	Cost	Cost		**Time between Breakdowns**		
5		1	0.0558	4	5	Breakdown	4	$11,000	$11,000				Number
6		2	0.0690	4	5	Breakdown	8	$11,000	$22,000		Probability	Cumulative	of Days
7		3	0.1889	4	5	Breakdown	12	$11,000	$33,000		0.25	0	4
8		4	0.9471	6	5	Replacement	17	$6,000	$39,000		0.5	0.25	5
9		5	0.9173	6	5	Replacement	22	$6,000	$45,000		0.25	0.75	6
10		6	0.3541	5	5	Breakdown	27	$11,000	$56,000				
11		7	0.7035	5	5	Breakdown	32	$11,000	$67,000		Breakdown Cost	$11,000	
12		8	0.0350	4	5	Breakdown	36	$11,000	$78,000		Replacement Cost	$6,000	
13		9	0.5755	5	5	Breakdown	41	$11,000	$89,000				
14		10	0.8910	6	5	Replacement	46	$6,000	$95,000		Replace after	5	days
30		26	0.7386	5	5	Breakdown	122	$11,000	$261,000				
31		27	0.2648	5	5	Breakdown	127	$11,000	$272,000				
32		28	0.6239	5	5	Breakdown	132	$11,000	$283,000				
33		29	0.9988	6	5	Replacement	137	$6,000	$289,000		Average Cost per Day		
34		30	0.0061	4	5	Breakdown	141	$11,000	$300,000			$2,128	

Longer and more detailed simulation runs are commonly conducted.

Both Examples 1 and 2 used random numbers to generate random observations from *discrete* probability distributions. Many computer simulations require generating random observations from

continuous distributions instead. We next describe a general method for doing this with *either* continuous or discrete distributions.

An Application Vignette

page 630
page 631
page 632

Syngenta AG is a leading global company in the agribusiness industry. Based in Basel, Switzerland, it has a world-wide market in both pesticides and seeds, but over half of its sales are in emerging markets. Due to several acquisitions between 2017 and 2020, the Syngenta Group was formed in 2020. At that point, the group had approximately 49,000 employees and was generating annual sales of $23 billion. Crop protection and seeds continued to be bundled in Syngenta AG as the core of the business.

With the world's population continuing to grow at a rapid rate, billions more people will need to be fed in the coming decades but with fewer water, land, and energy resources available to support the required increase in crop output. To address the global food-security challenge, Syngenta announced the launch of its Good Growth Plan in September 2013. One of the goals was to increase the average productivity of the world's major crops by 20 percent without using more land, water, or other resources. The decision was made to begin by continuing to focus on an ongoing project for doing this with *soybeans,* a globally important food product because of its high nutritional value.

To meet this goal with soybeans, Syngenta Soybean R&D knew that it would need to undertake an extensive program of genomic research and developing better breeding principles for soybean seeds to improve the quality and quantity of the soybeans that farmers produce per acre. This would require increasing the frequency of favorable traits within the population of soybean plant varieties while reducing the time required to develop these new soybean plant varieties.

Performing genomic research on soybean seeds involves making a variety of possible decisions on mating two soybean varieties (parent varieties) and then observing the evolution as this is repeated through a series of generations. A tremendous number of alternative decisions would need to be considered. Doing this through actual plantings would be a huge project that would take a considerable number of years. Fortunately, **predictive and prescriptive analytics** provide a much better way.

In particular, Syngenta used **computer simulation** to estimate the cost, time, and probability of successfully transferring the desired traits into new seeds for any given series of mating decisions. By generating a large number of simulation runs, **simulation optimization** (the subject of Section 15.8**)** then was used to determine the best soybean breeding plans.

As a result of using these tools, Syngenta estimates that it saved more than **$287 million** between 2012 and 2016 (an average of more than $57 million per year). Comparable savings continued in the subsequent years. Furthermore, this experience established the roadmap for a project to **customize and launch similar tools across the remainder of Syngenta's crop platform.**

Because of the vital contribution of predictive and prescriptive analytics to this ongoing project for more effectively feeding the ever-increasing world's population, Syngenta was awarded the prestigious **first prize** in 2015 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: J. Byrum, and 10 co-authors, "Advanced Analytics for Agricultural Product Development," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 46, no.1 (January–February 2016): 5–17. (A link to this article is provided on this book's website at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Generating Random Observations from a Probability Distribution

Both Examples 1 and 2 demonstrated how to generate random observations from a *discrete* probability distribution. As illustrated in Example 2, Excel's VLOOKUP function can be useful for doing this for any discrete distribution.

However, many computer simulations require generating random observations from *continuous* distributions instead. A general mathematical procedure called the **inverse transformation method** is available for generating random observations from *either* discrete or continuous distributions. This procedure is described in the supplement to this chapter available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

inverse transformation method

A method for generating random observations from a probability distribution.

However, for relatively complicated continuous distributions, even the inverse transformation method becomes difficult to apply. One example is the *normal distribution.* This distribution is such an important one that more convenient special methods have been developed to generate random observations from this distribution. In particular, Excel uses the function

$$\text{NORMINV}(\text{RAND}(), \mu, \sigma)$$

to do this after you substitute the numerical values for the mean μ and standard deviation σ of the distribution. The next section describes how to generate random observations from two other important continuous distributions—the uniform distribution and the exponential distribution.

This is a very handy Excel function to generate a random observation from a normal distribution.

Several Excel add-ins have been developed to extend the simulation capabilities of the standard Excel package, including providing special functions to immediately generate random observations from a wide variety of probability distributions. For

example, the next chapter will demonstrate how Analytic Solver fully includes these capabilities in addition to all the other functionalities described in the current chapter. (Another popular add-in with these capabilities, Crystal Ball, will be used in Chapter 22, which is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Review *Questions*

. How does computer simulation imitate the operation of a stochastic system?

. Why does computer simulation tend to be a relatively expensive procedure?

. When is computer simulation typically used despite being relatively expensive?

. What is a random number? For what purpose is it used?

14.2 A CASE STUDY: HERR CUTTER'S BARBER SHOP (REVISITED)

In case you have already studied the preceding chapter, you hopefully recall the brief description in Section 13.1 of Herr Cutter's barber shop as an example of a basic kind of queueing system. (A queueing system is a place where customers receive some kind of service from a server, perhaps after waiting in a line called a queue.) If you have not studied the preceding chapter, rest easy. The current chapter does not assume any prior knowledge of Chapter 13 and so will point out the few bits of needed information about queueing systems. Otherwise, you do not need to know anything about the contents of Chapter 13 except for the following facts: **Herr Cutter** is a German barber who runs a one-person barber shop. He opens his shop at 8:00 am each weekday morning. His customers arrive randomly at an average rate of two customers per hour. He requires

an average of 20 minutes for each haircut. (You do not need to refer to Section 13.1 for any other details.)

The case study concerns the problem described below.

The Decision Facing Herr Cutter

Herr Cutter has run his barber shop in the same location for nearly 25 years. Although his parents had wanted him to follow in his father's footsteps as a medical doctor, he has never regretted his decision to follow this more modest career path. He enjoys the relaxed working environment, the regular hours, and the opportunity to visit with his customers.

Over the years, he has built up a loyal clientele. He is a fine barber who takes pride in his work. As his business has increased, his customers now often need to wait a while (sometimes over half an hour) to begin a haircut. However, his long-time customers are willing to do so.

The shop is in a growing city. As the pace of life has increased, Herr Cutter has noticed that new customers are much less likely to return than in the early years, especially if they have had to wait very long. He attributes this to a decreasing tolerance for waiting. However, since he is not gaining many new regular customers, his volume of business has leveled off at a steady average of two customers per hour.

The decision facing Herr Cutter is whether to add an associate to share the workload in the barber shop.

As he has grown older, Herr Cutter has wondered increasingly about whether he should add an associate to share the workload. He also would enjoy the company, as well as the additional flexibility. A second barber should reduce the waiting times of the customers considerably, so an additional benefit would be that the total volume of business for the shop should increase somewhat.

However, what has always held him back from adding an associate is the fear of decreasing his personal income from the business. He needs to be putting away considerable money toward

retirement and really can't afford a significant decrease in his already modest income. Given the salary and commission he would need to pay an associate, business would need to almost double just to maintain his current level of income. (We will spell out the financial details in the next section when the analysis takes place.) He is doubtful that business would increase nearly this much.

But now opportunity has come knocking on the door. A fellow barber (and friend) in the city has decided to retire and close his shop. This friend has had the same associate for several years, and he now has invited Herr Cutter to hire this fine young man. The friend highly recommends him, and also points out that the associate would bring considerable business with him.

page 634

So now Herr Cutter is in a quandary as to whether he should take the plunge in hiring this associate.

Fortunately, help is at hand for making this decision. This friend has shown Herr Cutter an interesting recent article in *The Barber's Journal.* The article describes a study that has been done of barber shops and how long customers now are willing to wait for haircuts to begin. The article concludes with two rules of thumb.

> **First Rule of Thumb:** In a well-run barber shop with a long-established clientele, these loyal customers are willing to tolerate an average waiting time of about 20minutes until the haircut begins.

Herr Cutter feels that this description fits his situation. He has never tried to estimate the waiting times of his customers, but guesses that an average of 20 minutes sounds about right.

> **Second Rule of Thumb:** In a well-run barber shop, new customers are willing to tolerate an average waiting time of about 10 minutes before the haircut begins. (Withlonger waits, they tend to take their business elsewhere in the future.)

Again, Herr Cutter feels that this rule of thumb agrees with his own experience.

This second rule of thumb has given Herr Cutter a good idea about how to view his decision. With his current clientele, adding an associate probably would reduce their average waiting time to less than 10 minutes. This prompt service then should help to gradually attract and retain new customers (including some of the associate's customers from the barber shop that is closing). According to the rule of thumb, the level of business should increase until it reaches the point where the average waiting time before the haircut begins has increased to about 10 minutes. Estimating the level of business at that point would indicate the new level of income to the shop and his share of that income. The dilemma is that he does not see how to estimate this level of business in advance.

With an associate, the level of business should reach the point where the average waiting time to begin a haircut is about 10 minutes.

Herr Cutter asks for advice from his nephew Fritz (a university student majoring in business) about how to resolve this dilemma. Fritz excitedly responds that he thinks he knows just the right approach to use. Computer simulation.

Fritz recently took a course in management science. In fact, he has a copy of Queueing Simulator (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) for simulating queueing systems like his uncle's barber shop. Although not as sophisticated as expensive commercial software packages for performing computer simulations, Fritz explains to his uncle how this routine can indeed provide a good estimate in advance of what the level of business would be with an associate.

Fritz proposes spending a little time with his uncle to gather some data and develop a *simulation model* in preparation for performing the computer simulations. His first simulation will be of the barber shop under its current mode of operation (without an associate) to estimate the current average waiting time. Comparing the results from this simulation with what is actually happening in the barber shop also will help to test the validity of the simulation model. If necessary, the

model will be adjusted to better represent the real system. The subsequent simulations will be run of the barber shop *with* an associate. These simulations will assume that the associate's speed in giving a haircut is the same as Herr Cutter's. Different means of the interarrival-time distribution will be tried to determine which mean (i.e., which level of business) would lead to an average waiting time of 10 minutes before the haircut begins.

Here is the plan for using computer simulation to estimate what the new level of business would be with an associate.

Fritz asks his uncle if he should proceed with this plan. Herr Cutter urges him to do so.

The remainder of this section describes the execution of this plan, including the mechanics of how these simulations are performed. The next section then presents the results of the actual computer simulations and the analysis of what Herr Cutter should do.

Gathering Data

The key events for this barber shop are *service (haircut) completions* and *customer arrivals.* For example, Table 13.1 (in Section 13.1) records the times at which these events occurred over a typical early morning. Figure 13.2 displays these data in a different form by plotting the number of customers in the shop (a basic measure of performance) over this same early morning.

page 635

By observing the barber shop over an extended period of time, extensive data of the same kind could be gathered to estimate various measures of performance for the barber shop under its current mode of operation. However, it is not necessary to spend months or years gathering such data. Once it has been set up on a computer, computer simulation can accomplish the same thing in a matter of seconds by *simulating* the operation of the barber shop over a lengthy period (even years if desired). However, performing this simulation does require gathering a bit of other data first.

In particular, it is necessary to estimate the *probability distributions* involving the random events (service completions and customer

arrivals) in the system. These probability distributions are the distribution of *service times* (the times required to give a haircut) and the distribution of *interarrival times* (the times between consecutive arrivals).

Estimates are needed of the probability distributions of both the time required to give a haircut (the “service time”) and the time between consecutive arrivals of customers (the “interarrival time”).

Herr Cutter has found that the time required to give a haircut varies between 15 and 25 minutes, depending on the customer’s amount of hair, the desired hair style, and so forth. Furthermore, his best estimate is that the times between 15 and 25 minutes are *equally likely,* which indicates the following distribution.

Estimated distribution of service times: The *uniform distribution* over the interval from 15 minutes to 25 minutes.

Since the barber shop has *random arrivals* of customers, Section 13.1 points out that the distribution of interarrival times must be an exponential distribution.

Estimated distribution of interarrival times (the times between consecutive arrivals): An *exponential distribution* (described in Section 13.1) with a mean of 30minutes.

Generating Random Observations from These Probability Distributions

A computer simulation of the operation of the barber shop requires generating a series of *random observations* from the distributions identified above. As usual, *random numbers* will be used to do this. However, since these probability distributions are *continuous* distributions, it is not very convenient to use random numbers in the

ways described for the *discrete* distributions in Examples 1 and 2 (which employed Excel's IF and VLOOKUP functions, respectively).

Fortunately, it is relatively straightforward to generate a random observation from any uniform distribution, including this one over the interval from 15 minutes to 25 minutes. The key is that a random number between 0 and 1 is, in fact, a random observation from a uniform distribution between 0 and 1. Thus, the Excel function RAND() generates such a random observation. Similarly, 10*RAND() generates a random observation from a uniform distribution between 0 and 10. Adding 15 to such a random observation thereby provides a random observation from a uniform distribution between 15 and 25.

Therefore, when developing a simulation model for the operation of Herr Cutter's barber shop, the equation to be entered into each cell receiving a random observation from this uniform distribution is

$$= 15 + 10*\text{RAND}()$$

The Excel equation for a random observation from a uniform distribution over the interval from a to b is $= a + (b - a)$ RAND().

For a uniform distribution with lower and upper bounds different from 15 and 25, the lower bound would be substituted for 15 in this equation and the difference between the two bounds would be substituted for 10. (This is a simple example of how the *inverse transformation method* is used to generate a random observation from a probability distribution. This method is fully described in the supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Although the exponential distribution is more complicated than the uniform distribution, an Excel equation also is available for generating a random observation from an exponential distribution with a mean of 30 minutes (the distribution of interarrival times for Herr Cutter's barber shop). The supplement to this chapter at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** describes how the inverse transformation method is used to derive this equation by using the Excel function LN(), which calculates the *natural logarithm* of whatever quantity is inside the parentheses.

An Application Vignette

The U.S. **Federal Aviation Administration (FAA)** is charged with managing air traffic in the national airspace. Air traffic controllers are used to guide individual flights to keep them safely separated from every other flight. In addition, the FAA controls aggregate flows of flights to keep arrivals at each airport within manageable levels and to adjust to adverse weather conditions by rerouting traffic as needed. When bad weather or congestion occurs, traffic managers decide which flights should be held on the ground and which flights already airborne should be rerouted.

A particularly difficult problem for traffic managers arises when extended lines of thunderstorms block major flight routes. Such severe weather across a wide area can result in enormous, systemwide disruptions, leading to billions of dollars annually in increased operating costs and revenue loss to airlines as well as great inconvenience for the flying public. Therefore, in 2005, the FAA commissioned **a year-long simulation study by a management science team** to develop better operating procedures for traffic managers in this situation.

The resulting *simulation model* was a very complex one that incorporated the actions and interactions of hundreds or thousands of flights that were being controlled by the FAA infrastructure. For many months, this model was used to test various proposed operating procedures under typical severe weather conditions to determine the best of these procedures. These conclusions then were incorporated into a computerized decision-support system that traffic managers would use thereafter to guide their decisions under such weather conditions.

This innovation has been estimated to *save aircraft operators* **$1 billion to $3 billion** in operating costs by reducing the delays and cancellations over the first decade of use, with comparable subsequent savings anticipated as well. It also is estimated to *reduce passenger delays by more than a million hours per year.*

This dramatic application of computer simulation led to the Federal Aviation Administration winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2008 for what is now named the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: V. P. Sud, M. Tanino, J. Wetherly, M. Brennan, M. Lehky, K. Howard, and R. Oiesen, "Reducing Flight Delays through Better Traffic Management," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 39, no. 1 (January–February 2009): 35–45. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

After replacing 30 by the mean, this is the Excel equation for generating a random observation from any exponential distribution.

In particular, for each cell in a spreadsheet model that receives a random observation from this exponential distribution, the Excel equation to be entered into this cell is

$$= -30*\text{LN}(\text{RAND}())$$

For an exponential distribution with a different mean, this mean would be substituted for 30 in this equation.

Analytic Solver also includes functions to generate random values from any of over 50 different probability distributions. These formulas can be entered into a cell by choosing the distribution under the Distributions button on the Analytic Solver tab, which then brings up a dialog box in which the parameters of the distribution can be specified. This results in a function being entered into the cell that calculates a random value from the specified distribution. (The formulas for the two distributions discussed here would be =@PsiUniform(15, 25) and =@PsiExponential(30)). Analytic Solver will be discussed in much more detail in the next chapter. The examples in the current chapter are simple enough that they can be done without Analytic Solver.

The Building Blocks of a Simulation Model for a Stochastic System

Recall that the beginning of Section 14.1 defines “stochastic system” as a system that evolves over time according to one or more probability distributions. Herr Cutter’s barber shop is a stochastic system because it evolves over time according to the two probability distributions discussed above.

With its multiple probability distributions, the Herr Cutter case study has some of the complications that are typical of the stochastic systems for which many computer simulations are performed. When preparing for a relatively complex simulation of this type, it is sometimes helpful to develop a formal *simulation model.*

A **simulation model** is a representation of the system to be simulated that also describes how the simulation will be performed.

simulation model

A representation of the system to be simulated that also describes how the simulation will be performed.

Here are the basic building blocks of a typical simulation model for a stochastic system.

1. A description of the components of the system, including how they are assumed to operate and interrelate.
2. A simulation clock.
3. A definition of the state of the system.
4. A method for randomly generating the (simulated) events that occur over time.
5. A method for changing the state of the system when an event occurs.
6. A procedure for advancing the time on the simulation clock.

We now will use the case study to illustrate each of these building blocks.

As first described in Section 13.1, Herr Cutter's barber shop is a basic kind of stochastic system, namely, a single-server queueing system. The *components* of this system are the arriving customers, the customers already in the shop (either waiting or receiving a haircut), and Herr Cutter as the server. The assumed distributions of service times and interarrival times were described earlier in this section.

Once a computer simulation is under way, it is necessary to keep track of the passage of time in the system being simulated. Starting at time 0, let

$$t = \text{Amount of } \textit{simulated} \text{ time that has elapsed so far}$$

The variable t is referred to as the **simulation clock.** The value of this variable is continually updated as the simulation proceeds. With today's powerful computers, simulated time typically proceeds millions of times faster than running time on the computer.

simulation clock

A variable that records how much simulated time has elapsed so far.

For Herr Cutter's barber shop, the simulation clock records the amount of simulated time (in minutes) that has elapsed so far since the shop opened at 8:00 AM. A precise simulation then would start anew for each successive day of simulated operation of the shop. (The next section describes a simplifying assumption that Fritz makes at this point.) A small amount of running time can simulate years of operation.

The key information that defines the current status of the system is called the **state of the system.** For Herr Cutter's barber shop (the system in this case), the state of the system is

$$N(t) = \text{Number of customers in the barber shop at time } t$$

state of the system

The key information that defines the current status of the system.

The simulation typically records the cumulative amount of time that the system spends in each state, as well as other measures of performance (e.g., the waiting times of the customers).

For Herr Cutter's barber shop, the key events are the arrivals of customers and the completions of service (haircuts). The preceding subsection describes how these events are randomly generated in a computer simulation by generating random observations from the distributions of interarrival times and service times.

Whenever a customer arrives or a haircut is completed, the number of customers in the barber shop is adjusted in this way.

Both of these types of events change the state of the system. The method used to adjust the state accordingly is to

$$\text{Reset} \qquad N(t) = \begin{cases} N(t) + 1 & \text{if an arrival occurs at time } t \\ N(t) - 1 & \text{if a service completion occurs at time } t \end{cases}$$

The main procedure for advancing the time on the simulation clock is called **next-event time advance.** Here is how it works.

next-event time advance

A procedure for advancing the time on the simulation clock by repeatedly moving from the current event to the next event that will occur in the simulated system.

The Next-Event Time-Advance Procedure

1. Observe the current time t on the simulation clock and the randomly generated times of the next occurrence of each event type that can occur next. Determine which event will occur first.
2. Advance the time on the simulation clock to the time of this next event.
3. Update the system by determining its new state as a result of this event and by randomly generating the time until the next occurrence

of any event type that can occur from this state (if not previously generated). Also record desired information about the performance of the system. Then return to step 1.

This process continues until the computer simulation has run as long as desired.

Illustrating the Computer Simulation Process

The Excel spreadsheet in Figure 14.7 shows a computer simulation of the operation of Herr Cutter's barber shop (without an associate) over a period when 100 customers arrive.

page 638

The pertinent data regarding each customer is recorded on a single row of the spreadsheet (where the rows for customers 11–95 are hidden). All the times are in minutes. As indicated by the equations at the bottom of the figure, the formulas given earlier are being used to generate random observations for the interarrival times and service times in columns C and F.

page 639

These two times then enable calculating the other pertinent times for each customer in order. Column H records the waiting time *before* the haircut begins for each customer and column I gives the total waiting time in the barber shop (including the haircut) for the customer.

FIGURE 14.7

A computer simulation of Herr Cutter's barber shop (as currently operated) over a period of 100 customer arrivals.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1		**Herr Cutter's Barber Shop**							
2									
3				(exponential)					
4			Mean Interarrival Time	30	minutes				
5									
6				(uniform)					
7			Min Service Time	15	minutes				
8			Max Service Time	25	minutes				
9									
10			Average Time in Line (W_q)	12.8	minutes				
11			Average Time in System (W)	33.0	minutes				
12									
13				Time	Time		Time	Time	Time
14		Customer	Interarrival	of	Service	Service	Service	in	in
15		Arrival	Time	Arrival	Begins	Time	Ends	Line	System
16		1	0.5	0.5	0.5	21.9	22.3	0.0	21.9
17		2	45.6	46.0	46.0	21.9	67.9	0.0	21.9
18		3	2.6	48.6	67.9	20.8	88.8	19.4	40.2
19		4	1.5	50.1	88.8	18.9	107.7	38.7	57.6
20		5	27.6	77.7	107.7	17.2	124.9	30.0	47.2
21		6	29.2	106.9	124.9	16.3	141.2	18.0	34.3
22		7	18.6	125.5	141.2	24.6	165.8	15.7	40.3
23		8	21.8	147.4	165.8	22.7	188.6	18.5	41.2
24		9	7.4	154.8	188.6	24.3	212.9	33.8	58.1
25		10	12.1	166.9	212.9	18.4	231.3	46.0	64.4
111		96	48.8	3,132.8	3,132.8	22.2	3,155.0	0.0	22.2
112		97	12.3	3,145.1	3,155.0	25.0	3,180.0	9.9	34.9
113		98	82.7	3,227.7	3,227.7	19.0	3,246.7	0.0	19.0
114		99	4.0	3,231.8	3,246.7	20.1	3,266.8	14.9	35.0
115		100	85.2	3,317.0	3,317.0	19.5	3,336.5	0.0	19.5

Range Name	Cells
AverageTimeInLine	D10
AverageTimeInSystem	D11
InterarrivalTime	C16:C115
MaxServiceTime	D8
MeanInterarrivalTime	D4
MinServiceTime	D7
ServiceTime	F16:F115
TimeInLine	H16:H115
TimeInSystem	I16:I115
TimeOfArrival	D16:D115
TimeServiceBegins	E16:E115
TimeServiceEnds	G16:G115

	C	D
10	Average Time in Line (W_q)	=AVERAGE(TimeInLine)
11	Average Time in System (W)	=AVERAGE(TimeInSystem)

	C	D	E	F
13		Time	Time	
14	Interarrival	of	Service	Service
15	Time	Arrival	Begins	Time
16	=-MeanInterarrivalTime*LN(RAND())	=@InterarrivalTime	=@TimeOfArrival	=MinServiceTime+(MaxServiceTime-MinServiceTime)*RAND()
17	=-MeanInterarrivalTime*LN(RAND())	=D16+@InterarrivalTime	=MAX(G16,D17)	=MinServiceTime+(MaxServiceTime-MinServiceTime)*RAND()
18	=-MeanInterarrivalTime*LN(RAND())	=D17+@InterarrivalTime	=MAX(G17,D18)	=MinServiceTime+(MaxServiceTime-MinServiceTime)*RAND()
19	:	:	:	:
20	:	:	:	:

	G	H	I
13	Time	Time	Time
14	Service	in	in
15	Ends	Line	System
16	=@TimeServiceBegins+@ServiceTime	=@TimeServiceBegins-@TimeOfArrival	=@TimeServiceEnds-@TimeOfArrival
17	=@TimeServiceBegins+@ServiceTime	=@TimeServiceBegins-@TimeOfArrival	=@TimeServiceEnds-@TimeOfArrival
18	=@TimeServiceBegins+@ServiceTime	=@TimeServiceBegins-@TimeOfArrival	=@TimeServiceEnds-@TimeOfArrival
19	:	:	:
20	:	:	:

The next-event time-advance procedure is used to carry out this simulation. The procedure focuses on the two key types of events—arrivals and service completions—being recorded in columns D and G, and then moves chronologically through these events. To start, t =

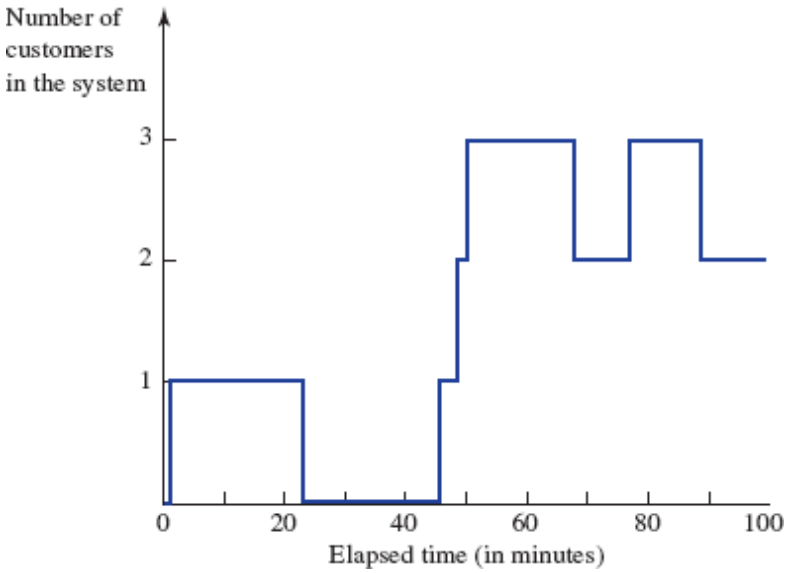
0 and $N(t) = 0$ (no customers are in the shop at the instant it opens). Since no service completions can occur without any customers there, the only type of event that can occur next is a customer arrival, so the time on the simulation clock is advanced next to $t = 0.5$ minute (cell D16), the time when the first customer arrives. Subsequently, the clock is moved ahead to $t = 22.3$ minutes (cell G16 indicates a service completion for this customer), then to $t = 46.0$ (arrival of customer 2 according to cell D17), then to $t = 48.6$ and then to $t = 50.1$ (arrival of customers 3 and 4 according to cells D18 and D19, respectively), then to $t = 67.9$ (service completion for customer 2 according to cell G17), and so forth.

The next-event time-advance procedure moves chronologically through the arrivals and service completions as they occur.

Figure 14.8 shows the evolution of the state of this system (the number of customers in the barber shop) throughout the first 100 minutes of simulated operation. Thus, the number of customers in the barber shop fluctuates between 0 and 3 during this period.

FIGURE 14.8

This graph shows the evolution of the number of customers in Herr Cutter's barber shop over the first 100 minutes of the computer simulation in Figure 14.7.



Estimating Measures of Performance

The purpose of performing a computer simulation of a system is to estimate the measures of performance of the system. The most important measure of performance for Herr Cutter's barber shop (the system of interest here) is the expected waiting time of his customers before beginning a haircut. By averaging the waiting times in column H, cell D10 in Figure 14.7 provides an estimate of 12.8 minutes for this quantity. Similarly, cell D11 averages the times in column I to give an estimate of 33.0 minutes for the expected total waiting time in the shop, including the haircut.

Various other measures of performance also could be estimated from this simulation. For example, the probability that a customer has to wait more than 20 minutes to begin a haircut is estimated by the fraction of the customers with a time greater than 20 in column H. An estimate of the expected number of customers in the system (including receiving a haircut) is obtained by summing the numbers in column I and dividing by the total simulated time. The expected number of customers waiting to begin a haircut is estimated from column H in the same way.

The numbers in columns H and I provide estimates of various other measures of performance as well.

The probability distribution of the number of customers in the system also might be of interest. As suggested by Figure 14.8, the probability of any particular number of customers in the system can be estimated by the fraction of time that the simulated system spends in that state.

The computer simulation displayed in Figure 14.7 is a rather short one, so it only provides fairly rough estimates of the desired measures of performance. To obtain relatively precise estimates, a computer simulation might run for some years of simulated operation (as we will demonstrate in the next section).

Simulating the Barber Shop with an Associate

Figures14.7 and 14.8 have illustrated the simulation of the barber shop under its current mode of operation (*without* an associate). In most respects, the procedure for the shop *with* an associate is the same. Each time an arrival occurs (or the shop opens), the next interarrival time needs to be randomly generated. Similarly, each time a customer enters service (begins a haircut), this service time needs to be randomly generated.

When adding a second server, the simulation procedure remains the same except for needing to also keep track of service completions by the second server.

The only difference comes when the next-event time-advance procedure is determining which event occurs next. Instead of just two possibilities for this next event, there now are the following three:

1. A departure because Herr Cutter completes a haircut.
2. A departure because the associate completes a haircut.
3. An arrival.

However, other than needing to separately keep track of the time until the next departure of each of these two kinds, the simulation proceeds in basically the same way.

The next section presents the results of several lengthy computer simulations of the barber shop, both with and without an associate.

Review *Questions*

1. What is the decision facing Herr Cutter?
2. What are the two rules of thumb that will help guide this decision?
3. Which probability distributions need to be estimated in order to apply computer simulation to this case study?
4. What is a simulation clock?
5. What is the name of the main procedure used to advance the time on the simulation clock?

. What is the state of the system for Herr Cutter's barber shop?
. What is the basic difference in the procedure between simulating Herr Cutter's barber shop without an associate and with an associate?

14.3 ANALYSIS OF THE CASE STUDY

Recall that the decision facing Herr Cutter is whether to add an associate to work with him as a second barber in his shop. The basic issue is whether he would still be able to at least maintain his current income level if he were to add the associate.

The Financial Factors

Here are the main financial factors (converted from German currency to American dollars) for addressing this decision.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Revenue} &= \$15 \text{ per haircut} \\
\text{Average tip} &= \$2 \text{ per haircut} \\
\text{Cost of maintaining the shop} &= \$50 \text{ per working day} \\
\text{(with or without an associate)} & \\
\text{Salary of an associate} &= \$120 \text{ per working day} \\
\text{Commission for an associate} &= \$5 \text{ per haircut given by the associate}
\end{aligned}$$

In addition to his salary and commission, the associate would keep his own tips. Otherwise, the revenue would go to Herr Cutter.

The shop opens at 8:00 AM and closes its door to new customers at 5:00 PM, so it admits customers for nine hours. Herr Cutter and any associate eat their sack lunches and take other breaks only during times when no customers are waiting. Thus, any customer who wants to enter the shop at any time during the nine hours is welcomed by a barber on duty.

Analysis of Continuing without an Associate

As indicated in the preceding section, the current distribution of interarrival times has a mean of 30 minutes. Thus, Herr Cutter is averaging two customers per hour, or an average of 18 customers per working day. Therefore, after subtracting the cost of maintaining the shop, his average net income per working day is

page 641

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Net daily income} &= (\$15 + \$2)(18 \text{ customers}) - \$50 \\ &= \$306 - \$50 \\ &= \$256\end{aligned}$$

Herr Cutter's nephew Fritz is helping his uncle analyze his decision by using the Queueing Simulator available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** to run computer simulations of the barber shop. This routine is specifically designed to efficiently run long simulations for a variety of queueing systems. It operates basically as illustrated in Figure 14.7, but with more flexibility as to the type of system and with far more output, as outlined below.

The Queueing Simulator is available in one of this chapter's Excel files at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Features of the Queueing Simulator

1. Can run computer simulations of various kinds of basic queueing systems described in Section 13.1.
2. Can have any number of servers up to a maximum of 25.
3. Can use any of the following probability distributions for either interarrival times or service times:
   - *a.* Constant time (also called the degenerate distribution).
   - *b.* Exponential distribution (described in Section 13.1).
   - *c.* Translated exponential distribution (the sum of a constant time and a time from an exponential distribution).
   - *d.* Uniform distribution.
   - *e.* Erlang distribution (described in the supplement to Chapter 13).

1. Provides estimates of various key measures of performance described in Section 13.3 for queueing systems, namely,

L = Expected number of customers in the system, including those being served

L_q= Expected number of customers in the queue, which exclude customers being served

W = Expected waiting time in the system (includes service time) for an individual customer

W_q= Expected waiting time in the queue (excludes service time) for an individual customer

P_n= Probability of exactly n customers in the system (for n = 0, 1, 2, ..., 10)

Largely to help test the validity of his simulation model (described in the preceding section), Fritz is beginning by simulating the current operation of the shop. Although Figure 14.7 already did this for roughly a week of simulated operation (100 customer arrivals), he now wishes to simulate several years of operation (100,000 arrivals).

Figure 14.9 shows the output that Fritz obtains from this computer simulation. If you wish, you can duplicate this simulation run by using the Queueing Simulator yourself. You should obtain very similar results, although they will be slightly different because different random numbers are used each time.

FIGURE 14.9

The output obtained by using the Queueing Simulator (available in one of this chapter's Excel files at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) to perform a computer simulation of Herr Cutter's barber shop (without an associate) over a period of 100,000 customer arrivals.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Queueing Simulator for Herr Cutter's Barber Shop**							
2								
3		Number of Servers	1			Point	95% Confidence Interval	
4						Estimate	Low	High
5		**Interarrival Times**			$L =$	1.358	1.332	1.385
6		Distribution	Exponential		$L_q =$	0.689	0.666	0.712
7		Mean	30		$W =$	40.582	39.983	41.180
8					$W_q =$	20.577	19.980	21.174
9								
10		**Service Times**			$P_0 =$	0.330	0.326	0.335
11		Distribution	Uniform		$P_1 =$	0.310	0.307	0.313
12		Minimum	15		$P_2 =$	0.183	0.180	0.185
13		Maximum	25		$P_3 =$	0.0942	0.0920	0.0963
14					$P_4 =$	0.0451	0.0433	0.0469
15		**Length of Simulation Run**			$P_5 =$	0.0206	0.0192	0.0220
16		Number of Arrivals	100,000		$P_6 =$	0.00950	0.00849	0.0105
17					$P_7 =$	0.00432	0.00360	0.00503
18					$P_8 =$	0.00219	0.00163	0.00274
19		Run Simulation			$P_9 =$	0.000876	0.000540	0.00121
20					$P_{10} =$	0.000372	0.000165	0.000579

The measures of performance in column E are the ones defined above. Column F gives the **point estimate,** the single number that is the best estimate of the measure from this simulation run. Using statistical theory, columns G and H then provide a 95 percent **confidence interval** for each measure. Thus, there is a 95 percent chance that the *true* value of the measure lies within this interval. Because the simulation run was so long (100,000 arrivals), each of these confidence intervals is quite narrow.

point estimate

The single number that provides the best estimate of a measure of performance.

confidence interval

An interval within which the true value of a measure of performance is likely to lie.

Testing the Validity of the Simulation Model

When starting a management science or business analytics study that will use computer simulation, it is a good idea to first run the simulation model on a simple version of the system for which analytical results are available (if such a version exists). Comparing the results from this simulation run with the analytical results then provides a good test of the validity of the simulation model.

Since a queueing model is available for the single-server version of the system, Fritz will use its results to test the validity of his simulation model.

Fritz recalls that the *M*/*G*/1 queueing model presented in Section 13.5 provides some exact analytical results for the same queueing system that has been assumed for the simulation run in Figure 14.9. This queueing model uses four parameters:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda &= \text{Mean arrival rate} \\
&= \tfrac{1}{30} \text{ customer per minute} \\
\mu &= \text{Mean arrival rate} \\
&= \tfrac{1}{20} \text{ customer per minute} \\
\rho &= \frac{\lambda}{\mu} = \frac{1/30}{1/20} = \frac{1}{3} \\
\sigma &= \text{Standard deviation of the distribution of service times}
\end{aligned}$$

Because the standard deviation of the uniform distribution from 0 to 1 is $1/\sqrt{12}$, the standard deviation of the service-time distribution (the uniform distribution between 15 and 25) is

$$\sigma = \frac{10}{\sqrt{12}} = 2.887$$

After entering these values of λ, 1/μ, and σ, the Excel template for the *M*/*G*/1 model (one of the Excel templates for Chapter 13 provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) yields the results shown in Figure 14.10. Note how each of these exact results for the measures of performance falls well within the corresponding 95 percent confidence interval in Figure 14.9. This provides some reassurance

that the simulation model and the computer simulation are operating as intended.

FIGURE 14.10

This Excel template for the *M*/*G*/1 model shows the basic measures of performance for Herr Cutter's barber shop without an associate.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Analytical *M*/*G*/1 Queueing Results for Herr Cutter**						
2							
3			**Data**				**Results**
4		λ=	0.0333	(Mean arrival rate)		L=	1.344
5		1/μ=	20	(Expected service time)		L_q=	0.678
6		σ=	2.887	(Standard deviation)			
7		s=	1	(# servers)		W=	40.356
8						W_q=	20.356
9							
10						ρ=	0.666
11							
12						P_0=	0.334

Range Name	Cell
L	G4
Lambda	C4
L_q	G5
OneOverMu	C5
Rho	G10
s	C7
Sigma	C6
W	G7
W_q	G8

	F	G
4	L=	=L_q+Rho
5	L_q=	=((Lambda^2)*(Sigma^2)+(Rho^2))/(2*(1-Rho))
6		
7	W=	=W_q +OneOverMu
8	W_q=	=L_q/Lambda
9		
10	ρ=	=Lambda*OneOverMu
11		
12	P_0=	=1-Rho

To make sure that no big mistake has been made when constructing a simulation model, its results should be checked for reasonableness by someone familiar with the system being simulated.

To further test the validity of the simulation model, Fritz shows the results in column F of Figure 14.9 to Herr Cutter and asks whether these numbers seem consistent with what he has been experiencing

in the barber shop. Although Herr Cutter has not been keeping such data, his impression is that the numbers seem about right. He also points out that the average waiting time of about 20 minutes before beginning a haircut is consistent with the first rule of thumb in the article in *The Barber's Journal* (described at the beginning of the preceding section).

Unfortunately, no queueing model yielding useful analytical results is available for the *two-server* queueing system that corresponds to Herr Cutter's barber shop *with* an associate. (None of the multiple-server queueing models presented in Chapter 13 allows a service-time distribution even close to the one in this barber shop.) Therefore, even though it was not actually needed for the option of Herr Cutter continuing *without* an associate, it will be necessary to use computer simulation to obtain good estimates of how the barber shop would perform with an associate. However, after the above testing of the validity of his simulation model, Fritz now is confident that this model will indeed provide good estimates.

Fritz does recognize that his simulation model (just like the *M*/*G*/1 queueing model) makes two simplifying assumptions that are only approximations of how the barber shop actually operates. (These assumptions are incorporated into the Queueing Simulator.)

Simplifying Assumptions

1. The system (barber shop) has an *infinite queue,* so arriving customers always enter the system regardless of how many customers already are there. (In reality, Herr Cutter has found that arriving customers normally do not stay if three customers already are there waiting to begin a haircut, so he now only provides three chairs for waiting customers.)
2. Once started, the system operates continually without ever closing and reopening. (In reality, the barber shop closes its door at 5:00 PM each working day and reopens at 8:00 AM the next day.)

To evaluate the effect of the first assumption, Fritz notes that the results in Figure 14.9 estimate that

$$P_0 + P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + P_4 = 0.330 + 0.310 + 0.183 + 0.094 + 0.045 = 0.962$$

Thus, the simulation run exceeds the actual maximum of four customers in the barber shop (one receiving a haircut and three waiting to begin) less than 4 percent of the time. The effect of exceeding the actual maximum so infrequently is to slightly inflate the estimates of L, L_q, W, and W_q above their true values for the page 644 barber shop. Thus, the numbers in Figure 14.9 provide conservative estimates (which are preferable to overly optimistic estimates). If Herr Cutter does add an associate, he would provide three additional chairs for waiting customers. There also would be less waiting to begin a haircut, so having arriving customers not stay would become very unusual. Therefore, the first simplifying assumption seems very reasonable for simulating the barber shop with an associate.

Simplifying assumptions that provide conservative estimates are preferable to those that lead to overly optimistic estimates.

The effect of the second simplifying assumption also is to slightly inflate the estimates of L, L_q, W, and W_q above their true values. The reason is that the barber shop begins empty each morning and then gradually builds up to a steady-state condition, whereas the simulation model has the shop operating in a steady-state condition for all but the very beginning of the simulation run. Fortunately, adding an associate would tend to keep the number of customers in the shop down to fairly small levels, even in a steady-state condition (which would be nearly reached early in the day). Therefore, the estimation errors from using this assumption to simulate the shop with an associate should be reasonably small.

By obtaining a more expensive computer simulation package and devoting additional preparation time, Fritz would be able to closely simulate the actual operation of the barber shop without making these two approximations. A key advantage of computer simulation is the

ability to incorporate as many realistic features into the model as desired.

However, just as with the mathematical model for any other management science and business analytics technique, there always is a trade-off between the amount of realism incorporated into a model and the ease with which the model can be used. A simulation model does not need to be a completely realistic representation of the real system. Many simulation models err on the side of being overly realistic rather than overly idealistic. An overly realistic model includes unimportant details that do not significantly affect the estimates obtained from the simulation runs. Such a model often is very difficult to debug, and may never be completely debugged. It also is likely to require a great deal of programming and computer time to slightly increase the amount of information obtained. The goal should be to incorporate only the important features of the system into the model in order to generate reasonably accurate information that will enable management to make well-informed decisions in a timely fashion.

Although some software packages enable adding many realistic features into a simulation model, unimportant details that make the model overly complex should be avoided.

Fritz feels that his current simulation model meets this goal.

Analysis of the Option of Adding an Associate

As described near the beginning of Section 14.2, Herr Cutter and his nephew Fritz have agreed on a plan for analyzing the option of adding an associate. They assume that the probability distribution of service times (the times required to give a haircut) for the associate would be the same as for Herr Cutter. Based on the second rule of thumb given in Section 14.2, they also are assuming that adding the associate would (1) reduce the average waiting time before a haircut begins to less than 10 minutes and (2) then gradually attract new business until this average waiting time reaches about 10 minutes. The level of business (say, the average number of customers per

day) determines the mean of the probability distribution of interarrival times. Therefore, a number of computer simulations will be run with different means of this distribution to determine which mean would result in an average waiting time of about 10 minutes. Given the corresponding level of business, a financial analysis can then be conducted.

The level of business is expected to increase to the point where the average waiting time to begin a haircut is 10 minutes, so computer simulations will be run to estimate this level of business.

The current mean (without an associate) of the distribution of *interarrival times* (the times between consecutive arrivals) is 30 minutes. Therefore, proceeding by trial and error, Fritz tries the series of means shown in the first column of Table 14.2. To quickly hone in on the neighborhood for the right mean, he uses the Queueing Simulator to run computer simulations of only moderate length, namely, 10,000 arrivals each (roughly half a year of simulated operation). The point estimates of W_q (the average waiting time until a haircut begins) in the second column indicate that the mean of the interarrival times that gives a true value of W_q of 10 minutes should be somewhere close to 14.3 minutes. The 95 percent confidence intervals for W_q in the rightmost column further suggest that this mean should be within about half a minute of 14.3 minutes.

TABLE 14.2

The Estimates of W_q Obtained by Using the Queueing Simulator to Simulate Herr Cutter's Barber Shop with an Associate for 10,000 Arrivals for Different Means of the Distribution of Interarrival Times

Mean of Interarrival Times	Point Estimate of W_q	95 Percent Confidence Interval for W_q

Mean of Interarrival Times	Point Estimate of W_q	95 Percent Confidence Interval for W_q
20 minutes	3.33 minutes	3.05 to 3.61 minutes
15 minutes	8.10 minutes	6.98 to 9.22 minutes
14 minutes	10.80 minutes	9.51 to 12.08 minutes
14.2 minutes	9.83 minutes	8.83 to 10.84 minutes
14.3 minutes	9.91 minutes	8.76 to 11.05 minutes

To check this further, Fritz next does a long simulation run (100,000 arrivals) with a mean of 14.3 minutes for the interarrival-time distribution. The complete results for all the measures of performance are shown in Figure 14.11. The point estimate of W_q (and most of the 95 percent confidence interval for W_q) now is slightly over 10. However, Fritz also recalls that the two simplifying assumptions discussed in the preceding subsection cause this estimate to slightly overstate the true value of W_q for the barber shop. Therefore, he concludes that 14.3 minutes is the best available estimate of the mean of the interarrival times that would result in an average waiting time of about 10 minutes.

page 645

FIGURE 14.11

The results obtained by using the Queueing Simulator to perform a computer simulation of Herr Cutter's barber shop with an associate over a period of 100,000 customer arrivals.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Queueing Simulator for Herr Cutter's Barber Shop with an Associate**							
2								
3		Number of Servers	2			Point	95% Confidence Interval	
4						Estimate	Low	High
5		**Interarrival Times**			$L =$	2.126	2.090	2.163
6		Distribution	Exponential		$L_q =$	0.719	0.689	0.748
7		Mean	14.3		$W =$	30.212	29.833	30.591
8					$W_q =$	10.211	9.834	10.588
9								
10		**Service Times**			$P_0 =$	0.163	0.160	0.166
11		Distribution	Uniform		$P_1 =$	0.266	0.262	0.270
12		Minimum	15		$P_2 =$	0.233	0.230	0.235
13		Maximum	25		$P_3 =$	0.1541	0.1518	0.1564
14					$P_4 =$	0.0877	0.0855	0.0898
15		**Length of Simulation Run**			$P_5 =$	0.0467	0.0448	0.0487
16		Number of Arrivals	100,000		$P_6 =$	0.02417	0.02264	0.0257
17					$P_7 =$	0.01282	0.01162	0.01401
18					$P_8 =$	0.00634	0.00546	0.00722
19		Run Simulation			$P_9 =$	0.003208	0.002530	0.00389
20					$P_{10} =$	0.001546	0.001076	0.002017

Fritz realizes that he could spend more time running long computer simulations with means slightly different from 14.3 minutes in order to pin down this estimate even better. However, he already knows from the confidence intervals in Table 14.2 that 14.3 minutes is at least very close. Furthermore, given the slight inaccuracies known to be in the simulation model due to the two simplifying assumptions, there is no point in trying to obtain an estimate of the mean that is more precise than the model is. This would only give a false sense of accuracy. He is content that 14.3 minutes provide a very adequate and conservative estimate of the mean for purposes of analysis.

A conservative estimate is that the level of business will increase to the point where customers are arriving at an average of one every 14.3 minutes.

Based on this estimate, Fritz concludes that having his uncle add an associate should gradually increase the level of business to around the point where

$$\text{Average interarrival time} = 14.3 \text{ minutes}$$

which would yield

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean arrival rate} &= \frac{60}{14.3} \text{ customers per hour} \\ &= 4.2 \text{ customers per hour} \\ &= 4.2(9) \text{ customers per day} \\ &= 37.8 \text{ customers per day}\end{aligned}$$

This level of business would be more than double the current average of 18 customers per day for the shop. Herr Cutter would plan to divide the customers equally with the associate, so each would average 18.9 customers per day.

page 646

Therefore, using the cost factors given at the beginning of this section, Herr Cutter's average net income per working day would become

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Net daily income} &= 37.8(\$15) \quad \text{(shop revenue)} \\ &\quad +18.9(\$2) \quad \text{(his tips)} \\ &\quad -\$50 \quad \text{(shop maintenance)} \\ &\quad -\$120 \quad \text{(associate's salary)} \\ &\quad -18.9(\$5) \quad \text{(associate's commission)} \\ &= \$567 + \$37.80 - \$50 - \$120 - \$94.50 \\ &= \$340.30\end{aligned}$$

This compares with Herr Cutter's current net daily income of $256. Thus, it is estimated that the change in his net daily income from adding an associate would eventually become

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Change in net daily income} &= \$340.30 - \$256 \\ &= \$84.30\end{aligned}$$

Thus, he actually would increase his income significantly.

When presenting this analysis to his uncle, Fritz emphasizes that this $84.30 figure is just an *estimate* of what will happen *after* the

level of business gradually increases to its new level. It may take awhile, even a year or two, to reach this new level. Meanwhile, Herr Cutter's income may start off less than it has been before gradually increasing. Furthermore, the optimistic conclusion of a substantial increase in income eventually is based largely on the rather shaky premise that the second rule of thumb in the article in *The Barber's Journal* will prove to be valid and applicable to his shop. This premise leads to an estimate that his level of business would more than double eventually. Achieving this big increase in business would seem realistic only if the associate is able to bring a considerable number of customers with him from his current shop and then the two of them are able to attract many additional new customers because of a substantial decrease in the average waiting times before beginning a haircut.

This estimate of increased income needs to be interpreted carefully.

Herr Cutter feels confident that they can accomplish this. This associate was highly recommended by his friend. Furthermore, he feels that his own skill as a barber already would have attracted many new customers if he didn't already have as much business as he could handle alone. In this growing city, the opportunity is there. He also likes the fact that adding an associate would enable him to improve the level of service for his current loyal clientele by substantially decreasing their average waiting time before beginning a haircut. Finally, he also sees many personal advantages to having a good associate that cannot be measured in monetary terms. Therefore, he wouldn't mind a temporary decrease in income as long as he probably would at least equal his current income level in a year or two. Actually increasing his income would be a pleasant bonus.

Herr Cutter decides to hire the associate.

On these grounds, Herr Cutter decides to hire the associate. He also thanks his nephew for the invaluable help that Fritz's computer simulations provided him in making his decision.

Review *Questions*

. What did Fritz simulate in his first simulation run? For what purpose?
. What are the two types of estimates of a measure of performance obtained by the Queueing Simulator?
. What were the two ways with which Fritz tested the validity of his simulation model?
. Does Fritz's simulation model make any simplifying assumptions? Is it necessary for a simulation model to be a completely realistic representation of the real system?
. Does Fritz's analysis estimate that Herr Cutter's income will eventually increase or decrease (compared to its current level) if he adds an associate?

An Application Vignette

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemicals company that is based in South Africa and operates in 38 countries. In 2020, it had over 30,000 employees and revenue of $12.26 billion.

Historically, the petrochemical industry-based business decisions on the average results throughout its production processes. However, Sasol's management science and business analytics team recognized that these production processes actually are *stochastic systems* that involve substantial variability and dynamic interactions. Therefore, for the first time in the industry, this team introduced the use of computer simulations to much more adequately consider the effect of all this variability and dynamic interaction.

Three large computer simulation models were developed to meet Sasol's needs. The *gas factory model* covers the process from raw materials to the production of synthetic crude oil. The *liquid factory model* simulates the refining of the synthetic crude oil and the associated chemical production processes. The *fuels blending model* blends the different fuel components into multiple grades of gasoline and diesel.

This industry is one where frequent changes need to be made in its facilities and production processes because of changes in government regulations, fuel specifications, availability of raw materials, prices of these materials, etc. Sasol uses one or more of its computer simulation models to evaluate the viable options for changes in its facilities and production processes whenever the need arises.

This industry-leading use of computer simulation has enabled Sasol to radically improve its decision making. This use has resulted in an *estimated ongoing value addition* to Sasol in excess of **$23 million annually.**

This dramatic application of computer simulation resulted in Sasol winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2010 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: M. Meyer and 11 co-authors, "Innovative Decision Support in a Petrochemical Production Environment," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 41, no. 1 (January–February 2011): 79–92. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

14.4 Outline of a Major Computer Simulation Study

Thus far, this chapter has focused mainly on the *process* of performing a computer simulation and its illustration by a case study. We now place this material into broader perspective by briefly outlining all the typical steps involved when a management science and business analytics team performs a major study that is based on applying computer simulation. (Similar steps also apply when the study is applying other management science and business analytics techniques instead, as seen in Chapter 2.)

Step 1: Formulate the Problem and Plan the Study

The study team needs to begin by meeting with management to address the following kinds of questions.

1. What is the problem that management wants studied?
2. What are the overall objectives for the study?
3. What specific issues should be addressed?
4. What kinds of alternative system configurations and operating procedures should be considered?
5. What measures of performance of the system are of interest to management?
6. What are the time constraints for performing the study?

In addition, the team needs to meet with engineers and operational personnel to learn the details of just how the system to be simulated would operate. (The team generally will also include one or more members with a firsthand knowledge of the system.)

These are key questions that management should answer to initiate any management science and business analytics study.

Step 2: Collect the Data and Formulate the Simulation Model

The types of data needed depend on the nature of the system to be simulated. For Herr Cutter's barber shop, the key pieces of data were the distribution of *interarrival times* and the distribution of *service times* (times needed to give a haircut). For most other cases as well, it is the *probability distributions* of the relevant quantities that are needed. Generally, it will only be possible to *estimate* these distributions, but it is important to do so. In order to generate representative scenarios of how a system will perform, it is essential for a computer simulation to generate *random observations* from these distributions rather than simply using averages.

Computer simulations should use probability distributions of the relevant quantities rather than averages.

Step 3: Check the Accuracy of the Simulation Model

Before constructing a simulation model, the study team should engage the people most intimately familiar with how the system will operate in checking the accuracy of the simulation model. This often is done by performing a structured walk-through of the entire conceptual model, using a projection onto a large screen before an audience of all the key people. Typically at such meetings, several erroneous model assumptions will be discovered and corrected, a few new assumptions will be added, and some issues will be resolved about how much detail is needed in the various parts of the model.

Step 4: Select the Software and Construct the Model

There are several major classes of software used for computer simulations. One is *spreadsheet software.* Section 14.1 described how Excel is able to perform some basic computer simulations on a spreadsheet. In addition, some excellent Excel add-ins now are available to enhance this kind of spreadsheet modeling. Chapter 15 focuses on the use of one of these add-ins, Analytic Solver. (Chapter 22 available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** does the same for another add-in called Crystal Ball.)

Other classes of software for computer simulations are intended for more extensive applications where it is no longer convenient to use spreadsheet software. One such class is a *general-purpose programming language,* such as C++, Visual Basic, Java, JavaScript, R, Python, and Ruby. Such languages (and their predecessors) often were used in the early history of the field because of their great flexibility for programming any sort of simulation. However, because of the considerable programming time required, they are not used nearly as much now.

Many commercial software packages that don't use spreadsheets also have been developed specifically to perform computer simulations. Historically, these simulation software packages have been classified into two categories, general-purpose simulation languages and application-oriented simulators. *General-purpose simulation languages* provide many of the features needed to program any simulation model efficiently. *Application-oriented simulators* (or just *simulators* for short) are designed for simulating fairly specific types of systems. However, as time has gone on, the distinction between these two categories has become increasingly blurred. General-purpose simulation languages now may include some special features that make them almost as well suited as simulators for certain specific kinds of applications. Conversely, today's simulators tend to include more flexibility than they previously had for dealing with a broader class of systems.

Another way of categorizing simulation software packages is by whether they use an event-scheduling approach or a process approach to discrete-event simulation modeling. The *event-scheduling approach* closely follows the *next-event time-advance procedure* described in Section 14.2. The *process approach* still uses the next-event time-advance procedure in the background but focuses the modeling instead on describing the processes that generate the events. Most contemporary simulation software packages now use the process approach.

Animation capabilities for displaying computer simulations in action are very useful for communicating the essence of a simulation model to managers and other key personnel.

It has become increasingly common for simulation software packages to include **animation** capabilities for displaying computer simulations in action. In an animation, key elements of a system are represented in a computer display by icons that change shape, color, or position when there is a change in the state of the simulation system. The major reason for the popularity of animation is its ability to communicate the essence of a simulation model (or of a computer simulation run) to managers and other key personnel.

animation

A computer display with icons that shows what is happening in a computer simulation.

Step 5: Test the Validity of the Simulation Model

After the simulation model has been constructed and debugged, the next key step is to test whether the simulation model is providing valid results for the system it is representing. Specifically, will the measures of performance for the real system be closely approximated by the values of these measures generated by the simulation model?

In some cases, a mathematical model may be available to provide results for a simple version of the system. If so, these results also should be compared with the simulation results.

For example, in the case study, the barber shop currently is in operation with Herr Cutter as the only barber. Therefore, as described in Section 14.3 (see the subsection entitled “Testing the Validity of the Simulation Model”), Fritz compared the results from an applicable queueing model with a simulation of this current version of the barber shop.

A field test of a small prototype of the proposed system is sometimes used to collect real data to compare with the simulation results and to fine-tune the design.

page 649

When no real data are available to compare with simulation results, one possibility is to conduct a *field test* to collect such data. This would involve constructing a small prototype of some version of the proposed system and placing it into operation.

Another useful validation test is to have knowledgeable operational personnel check the credibility of how the simulation results change as the configuration of the simulated system is changed. Watching animations of simulation runs also is a useful way of checking the validity of the simulation model.

Step 6: Plan the Simulations to Be Performed

At this point, you need to begin making decisions as to which system configurations (including alternative operating procedures) to simulate. This often is an evolutionary process, where the initial results for a range of configurations help you to hone in on which specific configurations warrant detailed investigation.

Decisions also need to be made now on such issues as the lengths of simulation runs. Keep in mind that computer simulation does not produce *exact* values for the measures of performance of a system. Instead, each simulation run can be viewed as a *statistical experiment* that is generating *statistical observations* of the performance of the simulated system. These observations are used to produce *statistical estimates* of the measures of performance. Increasing the length of a simulation run increases the precision of these estimates.

Each simulation run generates statistical observations of the performance of the simulated system, so statistical theory should guide the planning of the runs.

The statistical theory for designing statistical experiments conducted through computer simulation is little different than for experiments conducted by directly observing the performance of a physical system. Therefore, the services of a professional statistician (or at least an experienced simulation analyst with a strong statistical background) can be invaluable at this step.

Step 7: Conduct the Simulation Runs and Analyze the Results

With this step, the output from the simulation runs now provides statistical estimates of the desired measures of performance for each system configuration of interest. In addition to a *point estimate* of each measure, a *confidence interval* normally should be obtained to indicate the range of likely values of the measure (just as was done for the case study).

After identifying the few best system configurations, longer simulation runs should be used to select the single best one and to fine-tune its design.

These results might immediately indicate that one system configuration is clearly superior to the others. More often, they will identify the few strong candidates to be the best one. In the latter case, some longer simulation runs would be conducted to better compare these candidates. Additional runs also might be used to fine-tune the details of what appears to be the best configuration.

Step 8: Present Recommendations to Management

After completing its analysis, the study team needs to present its recommendations to management. This usually would be done through both a written report and a formal oral presentation to the managers responsible for making the decisions regarding the system under study.

The report and presentation should summarize how the study was conducted, including documentation of the validation of the simulation model. A demonstration of the *animation* of a simulation run might be included to better convey the simulation process and add credibility. Numerical results that provide the rationale for the recommendations need to be included.

Both the written report and the oral presentation should highlight the recommendations and the rationale for those recommendations.

Management usually involves the study team further in the initial implementation of the new system, including the indoctrination of the affected personnel.

Review *Questions*

. When beginning a computer simulation study, with whom should a study team meet to address some key questions and then to learn the details of how the system would operate?

. Who should the team engage to help check the accuracy of the simulation model?

. What is the difference between a general-purpose simulation language and an application-oriented simulator?
. When using animation to display a computer simulation in action, how are the key elements of the system represented?
. What is the specific question being addressed when testing the validity of a simulation model?
. A simulation run can be viewed as what kind of statistical experiment?
. What kinds of estimates are obtained from simulation runs?
. What are the two ways in which a study team usually presents its recommendations to management?

14.5 Summary

Computer simulation is one of the most popular management science and business analytics techniques for performing predictive and prescriptive analytics because it is such a flexible, powerful, and intuitive tool. It involves using a computer to *imitate* (simulate) the operation of an entire process or system. For a stochastic system (a system that evolves over time according to one or more probability distributions), random observations are generated from these distributions to generate the various events that occur in the simulated system over time. This provides a relatively quick way of investigating how well a proposed system configuration would perform without incurring the great expense of actually constructing and operating the system. Therefore, many alternative system configurations (including alternative operating procedures) can be investigated and compared in advance before choosing the one to use.

Herr Cutter's barber shop provides a case study of how computer simulation was able to provide the needed

information to decide whether to change this stochastic system by adding a second barber. Like so many others, this stochastic system is a *queueing system,* but one that is too complicated to be analyzed solely by using queueing models.

This case study also illustrates the building blocks of a *simulation model* that represents the system to be simulated and describes how the simulation will be performed. One key building block is a *simulation clock,* which is the variable that records the amount of simulated time that has elapsed so far. The *next-event time-advance procedure* advances the time on the simulation clock by repeatedly moving from the current event to the next event that will occur in the simulated system.

In a matter of seconds or minutes, a computer simulation can simulate even years of operation of a typical system. Each simulation run generates a series of statistical observations about the performance of the system over the period of time simulated. These observations then are used to estimate the interesting measures of performance of the system. Both a *point estimate* and a *confidence interval* can be obtained for each measure.

Some computer simulation studies can be done relatively quickly by a single individual, who might be the manager concerned with the problem. For a more extensive study, however, the manager might want to assign a staff member, or even a full-fledged management science and business analytics team, to the project. A major study based on computer simulation requires a series of important steps before the team is ready to obtain results from simulation runs. A series of questions must be addressed to management to properly define the problem from their viewpoint. Collecting good data often is a difficult and time-consuming process. Another big task is

formulating the simulation model, checking its accuracy, and then testing the validity of the model for closely approximating the system being simulated. One of the team's most important decisions is the choice of the software to be used. Most simulation software vendors now offer a version of their software with *animation* capabilities. Animation is very useful for illustrating the results of computer simulation for managers and other key personnel, which can add much credibility to the study.

Even after the simulation model is ready to go, the study team needs to design the statistical experiments to be conducted through computer simulation. Then the simulation runs can be conducted and the results analyzed. Finally, the team usually needs to both prepare a written report and make a formal oral presentation to present its recommendations to management.

Glossary

animation A computer display with icons that shows what is happening in a computer simulation. (Section 14.4), 648

confidence interval An interval within which the true value of a measure of performance is likely to lie. (Section 14.3), 641

inverse transformation method A method for generating random observations from a probability distribution. (Section 14.1), 632

next-event time advance A procedure for advancing the time on the simulation clock by repeatedly moving from the current event to the next event that will occur in the simulated system. (Section 14.2), 637

point estimate The single number that provides the best estimate of a measure of performance. (Section 14.3),

641

random number A random observation from the uniform distribution over the interval from 0 to 1. (Section 14.1), 621

simulation clock A variable that records how much simulated time has elapsed so far. (Section14.2), 637

simulation model A representation of the system to be simulated that also describes how the simulation will be performed. (Section14.2),636

state of the system The key information that defines the current status of the system. (Section14.2), 637

stochastic system A system that evolves over time according to one or more probability distributions. (Section 14.1), 620

Learning Aids for This Chapter

page 651

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Coin-Flipping

Heavy Duty

Herr Cutter

Queueing Simulator

MG1

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver (to be featured in the next chapter)

Supplement to This Chapter:

The Inverse Transformation Method for Generating Random Observations

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

14.S1. Estimating the Cost of Insurance Claims

The employees of General Manufacturing Corp. receive health insurance through a group plan issued by Wellnet. During the past year, 40 percent of the employees did not file any health insurance claims, 40 percent filed only a small claim, and 20 percent filed a large claim. The small claims were spread uniformly between 0 and $2,000, whereas the large claims were spread uniformly between $2,000 and $20,000.

On the basis of this experience, Wellnet now is negotiating the corporation's premium payment per employee for the upcoming year. You are an analyst for the insurance carrier, and you have been assigned the task of estimating the average cost of insurance coverage for the corporation's employees.

a. Use the random numbers 0.4071, 0.5228, 0.8185, 0.5802, and 0.0193 to simulate whether each of five employees files no claim, a small claim, or a large claim. Then use the random numbers 0.9823, 0.0188, 0.8771, 0.9872, and 0.4129 to simulate the size of the claim (including zero if no claim was filed). Calculate the average of these claims to estimate the mean of the overall distribution of the size of employees' health insurance claims.

b. Formulate and apply a spreadsheet model to simulate the cost for 300 employees' health insurance claims. Calculate the average of these random observations.

c. The true mean of the overall probability distribution of the size of an employee's health insurance claim is $2,600. Compare the estimates of this mean obtained in parts *a* and *b* with the true mean of the distribution.

Problems

The symbols to the left of some of the problems (or their parts) have the following meaning:

E: Use Excel.

Q: Use the Queueing Simulator.

An asterisk on the problem number indicates that at least a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

14.1.* Use the random numbers in cells C13:C18 of Figure 14.1 to generate six random observations for each of the following situations.

a. Throwing an unbiased coin.

b. A baseball pitcher who throws a strike 60 percent of the time and a ball 40 percent of the time.

c. The color of a traffic light found by a randomly arriving car when it is green 40 percent of the time, yellow 10 percent of the time, and red 50 percent of the time.

14.2. Reconsider the coin-flipping game introduced in Section 14.1 and analyzed with computer simulation in Figures 14.1, 14.2, and 14.3.

a. Simulate one play of this game by repeatedly flipping your own coin until the game ends. Record your results in the format shown in columns B, D, E, F, and G of Figure 14.1. How much would you have won or lost if this had been a real play of the game?

E *b.* Revise the spreadsheet model in Figure 14.1 by using Excel's VLOOKUP function instead of the IF function to generate each simulated flip of the coin. Then perform a computer simulation of one play of the game.

E *c.* Use this revised spreadsheet model to generate a data table with 14 replications like Figure 14.2.

E *d.* Repeat part *c* with 1,000 replications (like Figure 14.3).

14.3. Each time an unbiased coin is flipped three times, the probability of getting 0, 1, 2, and 3 heads is ⅛,⅜,⅜, and ⅛, respectively. Therefore, with eight groups of three flips each, *on the average,* one group will yield no heads, three groups will yield one head, three groups will yield two heads, and one group will yield three heads.

a. Using your own coin, flip it 24 times divided into eight groups of three flips each, and record the number of groups with no head, with one head, with two heads, and with three heads.

b. Use random numbers in the order in which they are given in column C of Figure 14.4 and then in cells C5:C13 of Figure 14.5 to simulate the flips specified in part *a* and record the information indicated in part *a.*

E *c.* Formulate a spreadsheet model for performing a computer simulation of three flips of the coin and recording the number of heads. Perform one replication of this simulation.

page 652

E *d.* Use this spreadsheet to generate a data table with eight replications of the simulation. Compare this frequency distribution of the number of heads with the probability distribution of the number of heads with three flips.

E *e.* Repeat part *d* with 800 replications.

14.4. The weather can be considered a stochastic system, because it evolves in a probabilistic manner from one day to the next. Suppose for a certain location that this probabilistic evolution satisfies the following description:

The probability of rain tomorrow is 0.6 if it is raining today. The probability of its being clear (no rain) tomorrow is 0.8 if it is clear today.

a. Use the random numbers in cells C17:C26 of Figure 14.1 to simulate the evolution of the weather for 10 days, beginning the day after a clear day.

E *b.* Now use a computer with the random numbers generated by Excel to perform the simulation requested in part *a* on a spreadsheet.

14.5.* The game of craps requires the player to throw two dice one or more times until a decision has been reached as to whether he (or she) wins or loses. He wins if the first throw results in a sum of seven or 11 or, alternatively, if the first sum is 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, or 10 and the same sum reappears before a sum of seven has appeared. Conversely, he loses if the first throw results in a sum of 2, 3, or 12 or, alternatively, if the first sum is 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, or 10 and a sum of 7 appears before the first sum reappears.

E *a.* Formulate a spreadsheet model for performing a computer simulation of the throw of two dice. Perform one replication.

E *b.* Perform 25 replications of this simulation.

c. Trace through these 25 replications to determine the number of times the simulated player would have won the game of craps when each play

starts with the next throw after the previous play ends.

14.6. Jessica Williams, manager of kitchen appliances for the Midtown Department Store, feels that her inventory levels of stoves have been running higher than necessary. Before revising the inventory policy for stoves, she records the number sold each day over a period of 25 days, as summarized below.

Number sold	2	3	4	5	6
Number of days	4	7	8	5	1

a. Use these data to estimate the probability distribution of daily sales.

b. Calculate the mean of the distribution obtained in part *a.*

c. Describe how random numbers can be used to simulate daily sales.

d. Use the random numbers 0.4476, 0.9713, and 0.0629 to simulate daily sales over three days. Compare the average with the mean obtained in part *b.*

E *e.* Formulate a spreadsheet model for performing a computer simulation of the daily sales. Perform 300 replications and obtain the average of the sales over the 300 simulated days.

14.7. Generate three random observations from the uniform distribution between −10 and 40 by using the following random numbers: 0.0965, 0.5692, and 0.6658.

14.8. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for Syngenta that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 14.1. Briefly describe how computer

simulation was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

14.9. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for the Federal Aviation Administration that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 14.2. Briefly describe how computer simulation was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

14.10. Eddie's Bicycle Shop has a thriving business repairing bicycles. Trisha runs the reception area where customers check in their bicycles to be repaired and then later pick up their bicycles and pay their bills. She estimates that the time required to serve a customer on each visit has a uniform distribution between three minutes and eight minutes.

a. Simulate the service times for five customers by using the following five random numbers: 0.6505, 0.0740, 0.8443, 0.4975, and 0.8178.

b. Calculate the average of the five service times and compare it to the mean of the service-time distribution.

E *c.* Use Excel to generate 500 random observations and calculate the average. Compare this average to the mean of the service-time distribution.

14.11.* Reconsider Eddie's Bicycle Shop described in the preceding problem. Forty percent of the bicycles require only a minor repair. The repair time for these bicycles has a uniform distribution between zero and one hour. Sixty percent of the bicycles require a major repair. The repair time for these bicycles has a uniform distribution between

one hour and two hours. You now need to estimate the mean of the overall probability distribution of the repair times for all bicycles by using the following alternative methods.

a. Use the random numbers 0.7256, 0.0817, and 0.4392 to simulate whether each of three bicycles requires minor repair or major repair. Then use the random numbers 0.2243, 0.9503, and 0.6104 to simulate the repair times of these bicycles. Calculate the average of these repair times to estimate the mean of the overall distribution of repair times.

b. Repeat part *a* with the complements of the random numbers used there, so the new random numbers are 0.2744, 0.9183, and 0.5608, and then 0.7757, 0.0497, and 0.3896.

c. Combine the random observations from parts *a* and *b* and calculate the average of these six observations to estimate the mean of the overall distribution of repair times. (This is referred to as the *method of complementary random numbers.*)

d. The true mean of the overall probability distribution of repair times is 1.1. Compare the estimates of this mean obtained in parts *a, b,* and *c.* For the method that provides the closest estimate, give an intuitive explanation for why it performed so well.

page 653

E *e.* Formulate a spreadsheet model to apply the method of complementary random numbers described in part *c.* Use 600 random numbers and their complements to generate 600 random observations of the repair times and calculate the average of these random observations.

Compare this average with the true mean of the distribution.

14.12. The William Graham Entertainment Company will be opening a new box office where customers can come to make ticket purchases in advance for the many entertainment events being held in the area. Computer simulation is being used to analyze whether to have one or two clerks on duty at the box office.

While simulating the beginning of a day at the box office, the first customer arrives five minutes after it opens and then the interarrival times (the times between consecutive arrivals) for the next four customers (in order) are three minutes, nine minutes, one minute, and four minutes, after which there is a long delay until the next customer arrives. The service times for these first five customers (in order) are eight minutes, six minutes, two minutes, four minutes, and seven minutes.

a. For the alternative of a single clerk, draw a figure like Figure 14.8 that shows the evolution of the number of customers at the box office over this period.

b. Use this figure to estimate the usual measures of performance—L, L_q, W, W_q, and the P_n (as defined in Sections 13.3 and 14.3)—for this queueing system.

c. Repeat part *a* for the alternative of two clerks.

d. Repeat part *b* for the alternative of two clerks.

14.13. The Rustbelt Manufacturing Company employs a maintenance crew to repair its machines as needed. Management now wants a computer simulation study done to analyze what the size of the crew should be, where the crew sizes under consideration are two, three, and four. The time required by the crew to repair a machine has a

uniform distribution over the interval from zero to twice the mean, where the mean depends on the crew size. The mean is four hours with two crew members, three hours with three crew members, and two hours with four crew members. The time between breakdowns of a machine has an exponential distribution with a mean of five hours. When a machine breaks down and so requires repair, management wants its average waiting time before repair begins to be no more than three hours. Management also wants the crew size to be no larger than necessary to achieve this.

a. Develop a simulation model for this problem by describing its six basic building blocks listed in Section 14.2 as they would be applied to this situation.

E *b.* Formulate a spreadsheet model to perform a computer simulation to estimate the average waiting time before repair begins. Perform this simulation over a period of 100 breakdowns for each of the three crew sizes under consideration. What do these results suggest the crew size should be?

Q *c.* Use the Queueing Simulator to perform this computer simulation over 10,000 breakdowns for each of the three crew sizes.

E *d.* Use the Excel template for the *M*/*G*/1 queueing model in this chapter's Excel files to obtain the expected waiting time analytically for each of the three crew sizes. Which crew size should be used?

14.14. Refer to the first 100 minutes of the computer simulation of the current operation of Herr Cutter's barber shop presented in Figure 14.7 and summarized in Figure 14.8. Now consider the alternative of adding an associate.

Perform a simulation of this alternative by hand by using exactly the same interarrival times (in the same order) and exactly the same service times (in the same order) as in Figure 14.7.

a. Determine the new waiting time before beginning a haircut for each of the five customers who arrive in the first 100 minutes. Use these results to estimate W_q, the expected waiting time before the haircut.

b. Plot the new version of Figure 14.8 to show the evolution of the number of customers in the barber shop over these 100 minutes.

14.15. While performing a computer simulation of a single-server queueing system, the number of customers in the system is zero for the first 10 minutes, one for the next 17 minutes, two for the next 24 minutes, one for the next 15 minutes, two for the next 16 minutes, and one for the next 18 minutes. After this total of 100 minutes, the number becomes 0 again. Based on these results for the first 100 minutes, perform the following analysis (using the notation for queueing models defined in Sections 13.3 and 14.3).

a. Draw a figure like Figure 14.8 showing the evolution of the number of customers in the system.

b. Develop estimates of P_0,P_1,P_2, andP_3.

c. Develop estimates of L and L_q.

d. Develop estimates of W and W_q.

14.16. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science and business analytics study done for Sasol that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 14.4. Briefly describe how computer simulation was applied in this study. Then list the various

financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

14.17. A major banking institution, Best Bank, plans to open a new branch office in Littletown. Preliminary estimates suggest that two tellers (and teller windows) should be provided, but this decision now awaits further analysis.

Marketing surveys indicate that the new Littletown bank will attract enough business that customers requiring teller service will enter the bank at the rate of about one per minute on the average. Thus, the average time between consecutive customer arrivals is estimated to be one minute.

No parking is available near the bank, so a special parking lot for bank customers only will be provided. A parking lot attendant will be on duty to validate each customer's parking before he or she leaves the car to enter the bank. This validation process takes at least 0.5 minutes, so the *minimum* time between consecutive arrivals of customers into the bank is 0.5 minutes. The amount by which the interarrival time (the time between consecutive arrivals) exceeds 0.5 minutes is estimated to have an *exponential* distribution with a mean of 0.5 minutes. Therefore, the total interarrival time has a *translated exponential* distribution with a mean of (0.5 + 0.5) = 1.0 minute. (A translated exponential distribution is just an exponential distribution with a constant added.)

page 654

Based on past experience in other branch offices, it is known that the time required by a teller to serve a customer will vary widely from customer to customer, but the average time is about 1.5 minutes. This experience also indicates that service time has approximately an *Erlang* distribution (a special distribution that has less variability than the exponential distribution) with a mean of

1.5 minutes and a shape parameter of $k = 4$, which provides a standard deviation of 0.75 minute (half that for an exponential distribution with the same mean).

These data suggest that two tellers should be able to keep up with the customers quite well. However, management wants to be sure that customers will not frequently encounter a long waiting line and an excessive wait before receiving service. Therefore, computer simulation will be used to study these measures of performance.

Q *a.* Use the Queueing Simulator with 5,000 customer arrivals to estimate the usual measures of performance for this queueing system if two tellers are provided. (The Queueing Simulator enables using a variety of distributions for interarrival times and service times, including the ones needed for this problem.)

Q *b.* Repeat part *a* if three tellers are provided.

Q *c.* Now perform some sensitivity analysis by checking the effect if the level of business turns out to be even higher than projected. In particular, assume that the average time between customer arrivals turns out to be only 0.9 minutes (0.5 minutes plus a mean of only 0.4 minutes). Evaluate the alternatives of two tellers and three tellers under this assumption.

d. Suppose *you* were the manager of this bank. Use your computer simulation results as the basis for a managerial decision on how many tellers to provide. Justify your answer.

14.18.* Hugh's Repair Shop specializes in repairing German and Japanese cars. The shop has two mechanics. One mechanic works on only German cars and the other

mechanic works on only Japanese cars. In either case, the time required to repair a car has an exponential distribution with a mean of 0.2 days. The shop's business has been steadily increasing, especially for German cars. Hugh projects that, by next year, German cars will arrive randomly to be repaired at a mean rate of four per day, so the time between consecutive arrivals will have an exponential distribution with a mean of 0.25 days. The mean arrival rate for Japanese cars is projected to be two per day, so the distribution of interarrival times (the times between consecutive arrivals) will be exponential with a mean of 0.5 days.

For either kind of car, Hugh would like the average waiting time in the shop before the repair is completed to be no more than 0.5 days.

E *a.* Formulate a spreadsheet model to perform a computer simulation to estimate what the average waiting time until repair is completed will be next year for either kind of car.

E *b.* Perform this simulation for German cars over a period of 100 car arrivals.

E *c.* Repeat part *b* for Japanese cars.

Q *d.* Use the Queueing Simulator to do parts *b* and *c* with 10,000 car arrivals in each case.

Q *e.* Hugh is considering hiring a second mechanic who specializes in German cars so that two such cars can be repaired simultaneously. (Only one mechanic works on any one car.) Use the Queueing Simulator with 10,000 arrivals of German cars to evaluate this option.

page 655

Q *f.* Another option is to train the two current mechanics to work on either kind of car. This would increase the mean repair time by 10

percent, from 0.2 days to 0.22 days. Use the Queueing Simulator with 20,000 arrivals of cars of either kind to evaluate this option.

E *g.* Because both the interarrival-time and service-time distributions are exponential, the *M/M/*1 and *M/M/s* queueing models introduced in Sections 13.5 and 13.6 can be used to evaluate all the above options analytically. Use the template for the *M/M/s* queueing model (with $s = 1$ or 2) in an Excel file for Chapter 13 to determine W, the expected waiting time until repair is completed for each of the cases considered in parts *b* through *f.* For each case, compare the estimate of W obtained by computer simulation with the analytical value. What does this say about the number of car arrivals that should be included in the computer simulation?

h. Based on the above results, which option would you select if you were Hugh? Why?

14.19. Vistaprint produces monitors and printers for computers. In the past, only some of them were inspected on a sampling basis. However, the new plan is that they all will be inspected before they are released. Under this plan, the monitors and printers will be brought to the inspection station one at a time as they are completed. For monitors, the interarrival time (the time between consecutive arrivals) will have a uniform distribution between 10 and 20 minutes. For printers, the interarrival time will be a constant 15 minutes.

The inspection station has two inspectors. One inspector works on only monitors and the other one inspects only computers. In either case, the inspection time has an exponential distribution with a mean of 10 minutes.

Before beginning the new plan, management wants an evaluation made of how long the monitors and printers will be held up waiting at the inspection station.

E *a.* Formulate a spreadsheet model to perform a computer simulation to estimate the average waiting times (both before beginning inspection and after completing inspection) for either the monitors or the printers.

E *b.* Perform this simulation for the monitors over a period of 100 arrivals.

E *c.* Repeat part *b* for the printers.

Q *d.* Use the Queueing Simulator to repeat parts *b* and *c* with 10,000 arrivals in each case.

Q *e.* Management is considering the option of providing new inspection equipment to the inspectors. This equipment would not change the mean time to perform an inspection but it would decrease the variability of the times. In particular, for either product, the inspection time would have an Erlang distribution with a mean of 10 minutes and shape parameter $k = 4$. (The Erlang distribution is a special distribution with less variability than the exponential distribution.) Use the Queueing Simulator (which can use the Erlang distribution) to repeat part *d* under this option. Compare the results with those obtained in part *d.*

14.20. Consider the case study introduced in Section 14.2. After observing the operation of the barber shop, Herr Cutter's nephew Fritz is concerned that his uncle's estimate that the time required to give a haircut has a uniform distribution between 15 and 25 minutes appears to be a poor approximation of the actual probability distribution of haircut times. Based on the data he has

gathered, Fritz's best estimate is that the actual distribution is an Erlang distribution with a mean of 20 minutes and a shape parameter of $k = 8$. (The Erlang distribution is a special distribution where k as large as $k = 8$ means that it has much less variability than the exponential distribution.)

a. Repeat the simulation run that Fritz previously used to obtain Figure 14.9 (with a mean of 30 minutes for the interarrival-time distribution) except substitute this new distribution of haircut times.

b. Repeat the simulation run that Fritz previously used to obtain Figure 14.11 (with a mean of 14.3 minutes for the interarrival-time distribution) except substitute this new distribution of haircut times.

14.21. For the Dupit Corp. case study introduced in Section 13.4, the analytics team was able to apply a variety of queueing models by making the following simplifying approximation. Except for the approach suggested by the vice president for engineering, the team assumed that the total time required to repair a machine (including travel time to the machine site) has an exponential distribution with a mean of two hours (¼ workday). However, the team was somewhat uncomfortable in making this assumption because the total repair times are never extremely short, as allowed by the exponential distribution. There always is some travel time and then some setup time to start the actual repair, so the total time generally is at least 40 minutes (1⁄12 workday).

A key advantage of computer simulation over mathematical models is that it is not necessary to make simplifying approximations like this one. For example, one of the options available in the Queueing Simulator is to use a *translated* exponential distribution, which has a certain *minimum* time and then the *additional* time has an

exponential distribution with some mean. (Commercial packages for computer simulation have an even greater variety of options.)

Use computer simulation to refine the results obtained by queueing models as given by the Excel templates in the figures indicated below. Use a translated exponential distribution for the repair times where the *minimum* time is 1⁄12 workday and the *additional* time has an exponential distribution with a mean of ⅙ workday (80 minutes). In each case, use a run size of 25,000 arrivals and compare the point estimate obtained for W_q (the key measure of performance for this case study) with the value of W_q obtained by the queueing model.

Q *a.* Figure 13.4.

Q *b.* Figure 13.5.

Q *c.* Figure 13.8.

Q *d.* Figure 13.9.

e. What conclusion do you draw about how sensitive the results from a computer simulation of a queueing system can be to the assumption made about the probability distribution of service times?

Case 14-1

Planning Planers

This was the first time that Carl Schilling had been summoned to meet with the bigwigs in the fancy executive offices upstairs. And he hopes it will be the last time. Carl doesn't like the pressure. He has had enough pressure just dealing with all the problems he has been encountering as the foreman of the planer department on the factory floor. What a nightmare this last month has been!

Fortunately, the meeting had gone better than Carl had feared. The bigwigs actually had been quite nice. They explained that they needed to get Carl's advice on how to deal with a problem that was affecting the entire factory. The origin of the problem is that the planer department has had a difficult time keeping up with its workload. Frequently there are a number of workpieces waiting for a free planer. This waiting has seriously disrupted the production schedule for subsequent operations, thereby greatly increasing the cost of in-process inventory as well as the cost of idle equipment and resulting lost production. They understood that this problem was not Carl's fault. However, they needed to get his ideas on what changes were needed in the planer department to relieve this bottleneck. Imagine that! All these bigwigs with graduate degrees from the fanciest business schools in the country asking advice from a poor working slob like him who had barely made it through high school. He could hardly wait to tell his wife that night.

The meeting had given Carl an opportunity to get two pet peeves off his chest. One peeve is that he has been telling his boss for months that he really needs another planer, but nothing ever gets done about this. His boss just keeps telling him that the planers he already has aren't being used 100 percent of the time, so how can adding even more capacity be justified? Doesn't his boss understand about the big backlogs that build up during busy times?

page 656

Then there is the other peeve—all those peaks and valleys of work coming to his department. At times, the work just pours in and a big backlog builds up. Then there might be a long pause when not much comes in so the planers stand idle part of the time. If only those departments that are feeding castings to his department could get their act together and even out the work flow, many of his backlog problems would disappear.

Carl was pleased that the bigwigs were nodding their heads in seeming agreement as he described these problems. They really appeared to understand. And they seemed very sincere in thanking him for his good advice. Maybe something is actually going to get done this time.

Here are the details of the situation that Carl and his “big-wigs” are addressing. The company has two planers for cutting flat smooth surfaces in large castings. The planers currently are being used for two purposes. One is to form the top surface of the *platen* for large hydraulic lifts. The other is to form the mating surface of the final drive *housing* for a large piece of earthmoving equipment. The time required to perform each type of job varies somewhat, depending largely upon the number of passes that must be made. In particular, for each platen or each housing, the time required by a planer has a translated exponential distribution, where the minimum time is 10 minutes and the additional time beyond 10 minutes has an exponential distribution with a mean of 10 minutes. (A distribution of this type is one of the options in the Queueing Simulator in this chapter’s Excel file.)

Castings of both types arrive one at a time to the planer department. For the castings for forming platens, the arrivals occur randomly with a mean rate of two per hour. For the castings for forming housings, the arrivals also occur randomly with a mean rate of two per hour.

Based on Carl Schilling’s advice, management has asked a management science and business analytics expert (you) to analyze the following two proposals for relieving the bottleneck in the planer department:

Proposal 1: Obtain one additional planer. The total incremental cost (including capital recovery cost) is estimated to be $30 per hour. (This estimate takes into account the fact that, even with an additional planer, the total running time for all the planers will remain the same.)

Proposal 2: Eliminate the variability in the interarrival times of the castings, so that the castings would arrive regularly, one every 15 minutes, alternating between platen castings and housing castings. This would require making some changes in the preceding production processes, with an incremental cost of $60 per hour.

These proposals are not mutually exclusive, so any combination can be adopted.

It is estimated that the total cost associated with castings having to wait to be processed (including processing time) is $200 per hour for each platen casting and $100 per hour for each housing casting, provided the waits are not excessive. To avoid excessive waits for either kind of casting, all the castings are processed as soon as possible on a first-come, first-served basis.

Management's objective is to minimize the expected total cost per hour.

Use computer simulation to evaluate and compare all the alternatives, including the status quo and the various combinations of proposals. Then make your recommendation to management.

Are there any other alternatives you would recommend considering?

Case 14-2

Reducing In-Process Inventory (Revisited)

Reconsider Case 13-2. The current and proposed queueing systems in this case were to be analyzed with the help of queueing models to determine how to reduce in-process inventory as much as possible. However, these same queueing systems also can be effectively analyzed by applying computer simulation with the help of the Queueing Simulator that is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** among this chapter's Excel files.

Use computer simulation to perform all the analysis requested in this case.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

CHAPTER 15

Computer Simulation with Analytic Solver

Learning Objectives

After completing this chapter, you should be able to

1. Describe the role of Analytic Solver in performing computer simulations.
2. Use Analytic Solver to perform various basic computer simulations that cannot be readily performed with the standard Excel package.
3. Interpret the results generated by Analytic Solver when performing a computer simulation.
4. Use an Analytic Solver feature that enables stopping a simulation run after achieving the desired level of precision.
5. Describe the characteristics of many of the probability distributions that can be incorporated into a computer simulation when using Analytic Solver.
6. Use an Analytic Solver procedure that identifies the continuous distribution that best fits historical data.

7. Use Analytic Solver to generate a parameter analysis report and a trend chart as an aid to decision making.
8. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for an optimal solution for a simulation model.

The preceding chapter presented the basic concepts of computer simulation. Its emphasis throughout was on the use of spreadsheet modeling to perform basic computer simulations. Except for the use of the Queueing Simulator to deal with queueing systems, all of the computer simulations in Chapter 14 were executed using nothing more than the standard Excel package.

Although the standard Excel package has some basic simulation capabilities, an exciting development in somewhat recent years has been the development of powerful Excel add-ins that greatly extend these capabilities. One such add-in is the very versatile Frontline Systems product Analytic Solver. You already have seen this software in action for various applications in several preceding chapters. You will see throughout this chapter that Analytic Solver also has powerful capabilities for performing computer simulations. (Chapter 22 at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e** also does the same for another popular Excel add-in called Crystal Ball.) Instructions for installing Analytic Solver are available on this same website.

This chapter focuses on describing and illustrating the advances in spreadsheet simulation modeling that are made possible by Analytic Solver. Other Excel add-ins for spreadsheet simulation modeling, including Crystal Ball featured in Chapter 22, provide some of the same functionality. Section 15.1 begins with a case study that will be revisited in Sections 15.7 and 15.8. Sections 15.2–15.5 present several other examples of important business problems that can be effectively addressed by using computer simulations with Analytic Solver. Section 15.6 focuses on how to choose the right probability distributions as inputs for a computer simulation. Section 15.7 then describes how parameter analysis reports can be constructed and applied to make a decision about the problem being simulated. Finally, Section 15.8 discusses and illustrates how to use the Solver in

Analytic Solver in combination with computer simulation to seek optimal solutions.

15.1 A CASE STUDY: FREDDIE THE NEWSBOY'S PROBLEM

This case study concerns a newsstand in a prominent downtown location of a major city. The newsstand has been there longer than most people can remember. It has always been run by a well-known character named Freddie. (Nobody seems to know his last name.) His many customers refer to him affectionately as Freddie the newsboy, even though he is considerably older than most of them.

Freddie sells a wide variety of newspapers and magazines. The most expensive of the newspapers is a large national daily called the *Financial Journal.* Our case study involves this newspaper.

Freddie's Problem

The day's copies of the *Financial Journal* are brought to the newsstand early each morning by a distributor. Any copies unsold at the end of the day are returned to the distributor the next morning. However, to encourage ordering a large number of copies, the distributor does give a small refund for unsold copies.

Here are Freddie's cost figures:

Freddie pays $1.50 per copy delivered.

Freddie charges $2.50 per copy.

Freddie's refund is $0.50 per unsold copy.

Partially because of the refund, Freddie always has taken a plentiful supply. However, he has become concerned about paying so much for copies that then have to be returned unsold, particularly since this has been occurring nearly every day. He now thinks he might be better off ordering only a minimal number of copies and saving this extra cost.

To investigate this further, Freddie has been keeping a record of his daily sales. This is what he has found:

- Freddie sells anywhere between 40 and 70 copies on any given day.
- The frequency of the numbers between 40 and 70 are roughly equal.

Freddie needs to determine how many copies to order per day from the distributor. His objective is to maximize his average daily profit.

Freddie's problem involves determining the order quantity that will maximize his average daily profit.

If you have previously studied inventory management in an operations management course, you might recognize this problem as being an example of what is called the *newsvendor problem.* In fact, we use a basic inventory model to analyze a simplified version of this same case study in Chapter 21 (one of the supplementary chapters available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**). However, we will use computer simulation to analyze this problem in this chapter.

A Spreadsheet Model for This Problem

Figure 15.1 shows a spreadsheet model for this problem. Given the data cells C4:C6, the decision variable is the order quantity to be entered in cell C9. (The number 60 has been entered arbitrarily in this figure as a first guess of a reasonable value.) The bottom of the figure shows the equations used to calculate the output cells C14:C16. These output cells are then used to calculate the output cell Profit (C18).

FIGURE 15.1

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the case study that involves Freddie the newsboy. The uncertain variable cell is Demand (C12), the results cell is Profit (C18), the statistic cell is MeanProfit (C20), and the decision variable cell is OrderQuantity (C9).

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Freddie the Newsboy**					
2						
3			**Data**			
4		Unit Sale Price	$2.50			
5		Unit Purchase Cost	$1.50			
6		Unit Salvage Value	$0.50			
7						
8			**Decision Variable**			
9		Order Quantity	60			
10					Lower	Upper
11			**Simulation**		Limit	Limit
12		Demand	44	*Integer Uniform*	40	70
13						
14		Sales Revenue	$110.00			
15		Purchasing Cost	$90.00			
16		Salvage Value	$8.00			
17						
18		Profit	$28.00			
19						
20		Mean Profit	$46.45			

	B	C
12	Demand	=@PsiIntUniform(E12,F12)
13		
14	Sales Revenue	=UnitSalePrice*MIN(OrderQuantity,Demand)
15	Purchasing Cost	=UnitPurchaseCost*OrderQuantity
16	Salvage Value	=UnitSalvageValue*MAX(OrderQuantity-Demand,0)
17		
18	Profit	=SalesRevenue-PurchasingCost+SalvageValue + @PsiOutput()
19		
20	Mean Profit	=@PsiMean(C18)

Range Name	Cell
Demand	C12
MeanProfit	C20
OrderQuantity	C9
Profit	C18
PurchasingCost	C15
SalesRevenue	C14
SalvageValue	C16
UnitPurchaseCost	C5
UnitSalePrice	C4
UnitSalvageValue	C6

The only uncertain input quantity in this spreadsheet is the day's demand in cell C12. This quantity can be anywhere between 40 and 70. Since the frequency of the numbers between 40 and 70 are about the same, the probability distribution of the day's demand can be reasonably assumed to be an *integer uniform distribution* between 40 and 70 (so all integer values between 40 and 70 are assumed to be equally likely), as indicated in cells D12:F12. Rather than enter a single number permanently into Demand (C12), what Analytic Solver does is enter this probability distribution into this cell. By using Analytic Solver to generate a *random observation* from this probability distribution, the spreadsheet can calculate the output cells in the usual

way. Each time this is done is referred to as a **trial** by Analytic Solver. By running the number of trials specified by the user (typically hundreds or thousands), the computer simulation thereby generates the same number of random observations of the values in the output cells. Analytic Solver records this information for the output cell(s) of particular interest (Freddie's daily profit) and then, at the end, displays it in a variety of convenient forms that reveal an estimate of the underlying probability distribution of Freddie's daily profit. (More about this later.)

trial

A single application of the process of generating a random observation from each probability distribution entered into the spreadsheet and then calculating the output cells in the usual way and recording the results of interest.

A day's demand for the *Financial Journal* appears to have an integer uniform distribution between 40 and 70.

The Application of Analytic Solver

Five steps are taken to use the spreadsheet in Figure 15.1 to perform the computer simulation with Analytic Solver. They are:

1. Define the uncertain variable cells.
2. Define the results cells.
3. Define any statistic cells as desired (e.g., the mean profit).
4. Set the simulation options.
5. Run the simulation.

We now describe each of these five steps in turn.

Define the Uncertain Variable Cells

An **uncertain variable cell** is a cell that has a random value (such as the daily demand for the *Financial Journal*). Therefore, an assumed probability distribution must be entered into the cell instead of permanently entering a single number. The only uncertain variable cell in Figure 15.1 is Demand (C12).

uncertain variable cell

An input cell that has a random value so that a probability distribution must be entered into the cell instead of permanently entering a single number.

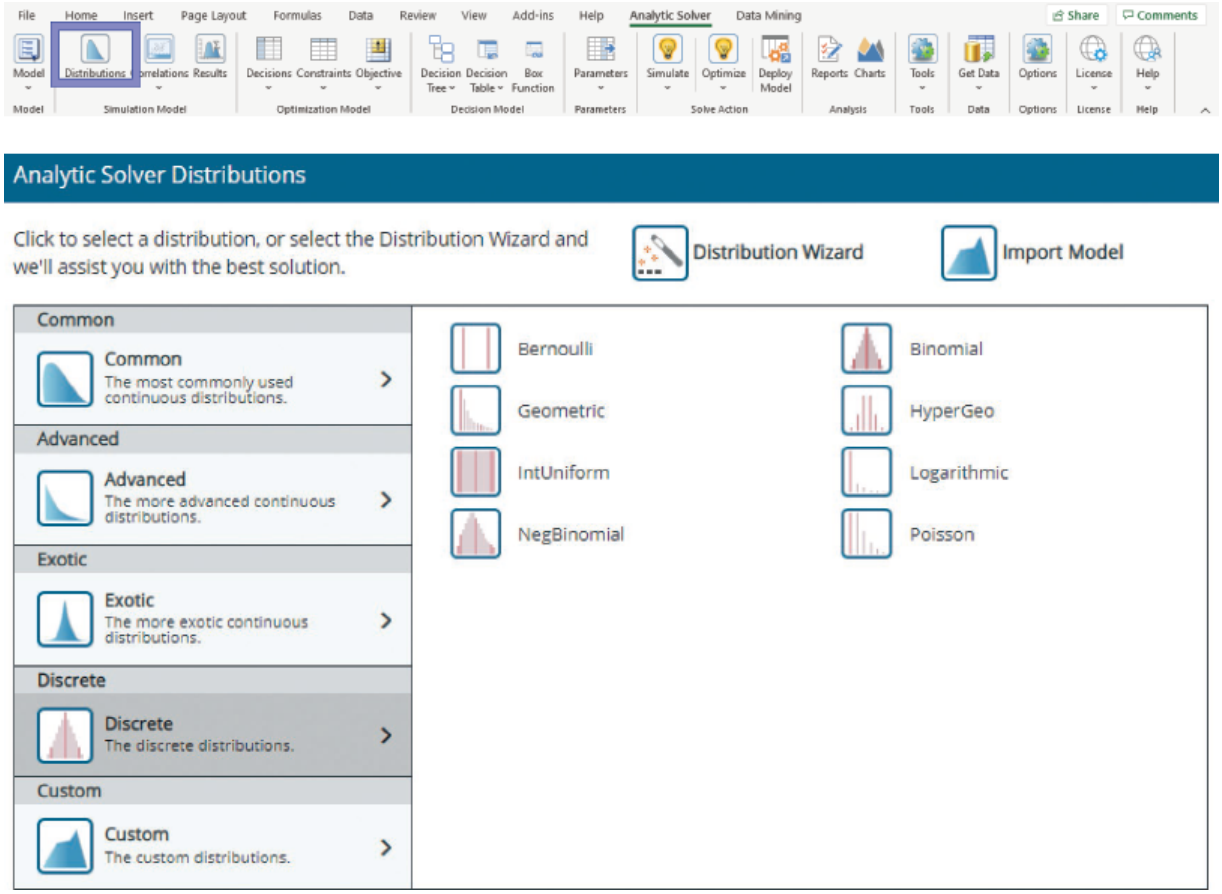
The following procedure is used to define the uncertain variable cells. page 660

Procedure for Defining an Uncertain Variable Cell

1. Select the cell by clicking on it.
2. Select a probability distribution to enter into the cell by clicking the Distributions button on the Analytic Solver tab of the ribbon, and choosing an appropriate distribution from the resulting Distributions dialog box shown in Figure 15.2.

FIGURE 15.2

Clicking the Distributions button on the Analytic Solver tab brings up this dialog box showing the distributions available. In addition to the eight distributions displayed here in the Discrete submenu, many more distributions are available in the other submenus.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

3. Use this distribution dialog to enter the parameters for the distribution, preferably by referring to the cells in the spreadsheet that contain the values of these parameters.
4. Click on Save.

The **Distributions dialog box** mentioned in step 2 provides a wide variety of over 50 probability distributions, divided into several submenus, from which to choose. Figure 15.2 displays the eight distributions in the Discrete submenu, but many more distributions are available under the other submenus. (Section 15.6 will focus on the question of how to choose the right distribution.)

Distributions dialog box

A dialog box invoked by pressing the Distributions button on the Analytic Solver tab that includes several dozen probability distributions from which one is chosen to enter into any uncertain variable cell. (See also Section 15.6)

The Distributions dialog box includes over 50 probability distributions.

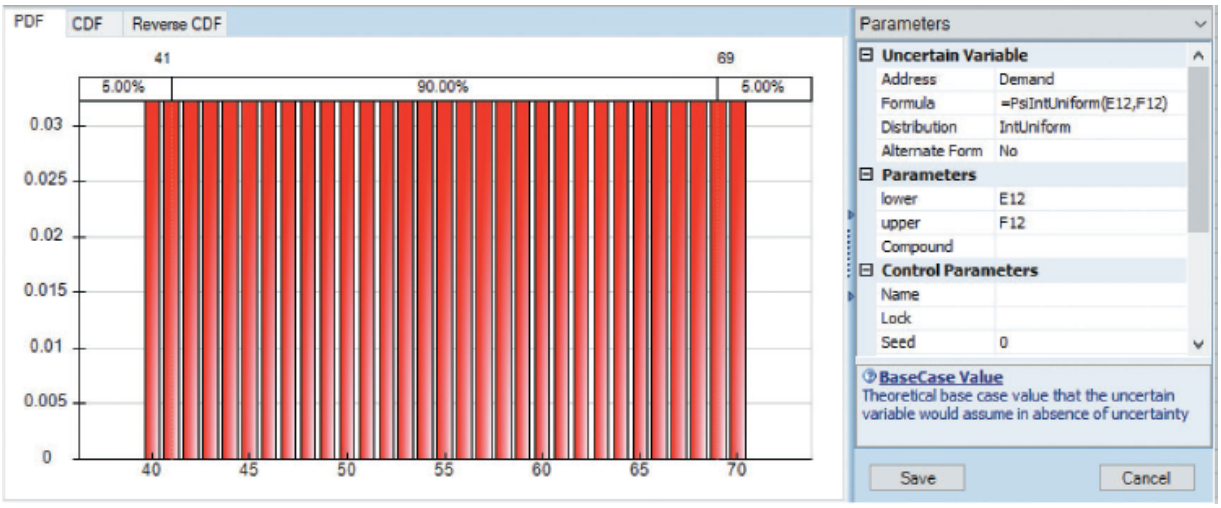
Which distribution is appropriate in Freddie's case? Since newspaper sales are always integer, the Discrete submenu is the right place to look to choose an appropriate distribution. (The various continuous distributions under the other submenus assume fractional values are possible.) Since the frequency of sales between 40 and 70 are all roughly equal, the IntUniform (short for integer uniform) distribution is the best choice. The integer uniform distribution assumes all integer values between some minimum and maximum value are equally likely.

page 661

Selecting the integer uniform distribution in the Distributions dialog box brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 15.3, which is used to enter the parameters of the distribution. For each of the parameters (lower and upper), we refer to the data cells in E12 and F12 on the spreadsheet. After clicking Save, Analytic Solver puts a formula in the cell that is used to calculate the random values from the distribution. For the integer uniform distribution in Demand (C12), that formula is =@PsiIntUniform(E12, F12). This formula calculates a random value from the integer uniform distribution with parameters lower =E12 and upper =F12. The formula can be copied and pasted just like any other Excel function. (We will see how this is very handy in the example in Section 15.2.)

FIGURE 15.3

The dialog box used to specify the parameters for the integer uniform distribution in the uncertain variable cell, Demand (C12), for the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.1. The two parameters for the integer uniform distribution are lower and upper, so they are entered here as cell references to E12 (40) and F12 (70), respectively.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Analytic Solver Tip Rather than entering raw numbers, use cell references for the distribution parameters (e.g., E12 and F12). This allows changes to be made directly on the spreadsheet rather than having to dig into Analytic Solver dialog boxes.

Define the Results Cells

Each output cell that is being used by a computer simulation to forecast a measure of performance is referred to as a **results cell**. The spreadsheet model for a computer simulation often does not include an objective cell, but a results cell plays roughly the same role.

results cell

An output cell that is being used by a computer simulation to calculate a measure of performance.

The measure of performance of interest to Freddie the newsboy is his daily profit from selling the *Financial Journal,* so the only results cell in Figure 15.1 is Profit (C18). The following procedure is used to define such a results cell.

Procedure for Defining a Results Cell

1. Select the cell by clicking on it.
2. Click on the Results button on the Analytic Solver tab.

3. Choose Output/In Cell from the Results dialog box.

In Figure 15.1, the results cell (C18) shows a profit value of $28. It is important to note that this is *only* the result for the particular random value of the uncertain variable that is currently showing in the spreadsheet (a Demand of 44). This is *not* the result for the entire simulation run. It is not even the mean profit from the entire run. It is just one single random outcome (a trial). To obtain the results for the entire simulation run, double-clicking on this cell will reveal a chart that shows all of the results (more on this later).

The value in the results cell shows just one single possible outcome from a single trial of the simulation for the particular random value(s) that are currently in the uncertain variable cell(s). This is *not* the result of the entire simulation run. Double-click the results cell to reveal a chart showing a summary of the complete simulation results.

Define a Statistic Cell (or Cells)

Since the number in the results cell only gives the result for a single trial of the simulation (before double-clicking on the cell to show more results), it can be useful to show *statistics* (measures of performance) directly on the spreadsheet that summarize the results of the entire simulation run. Analytic Solver refers to such cells as **statistic cells**. In Figure 15.1, cell C20 is defined as a statistic cell to show the mean value of profit ($46.45). Analytic Solver uses the following procedure to define a statistic cell:

page 662

statistic cell

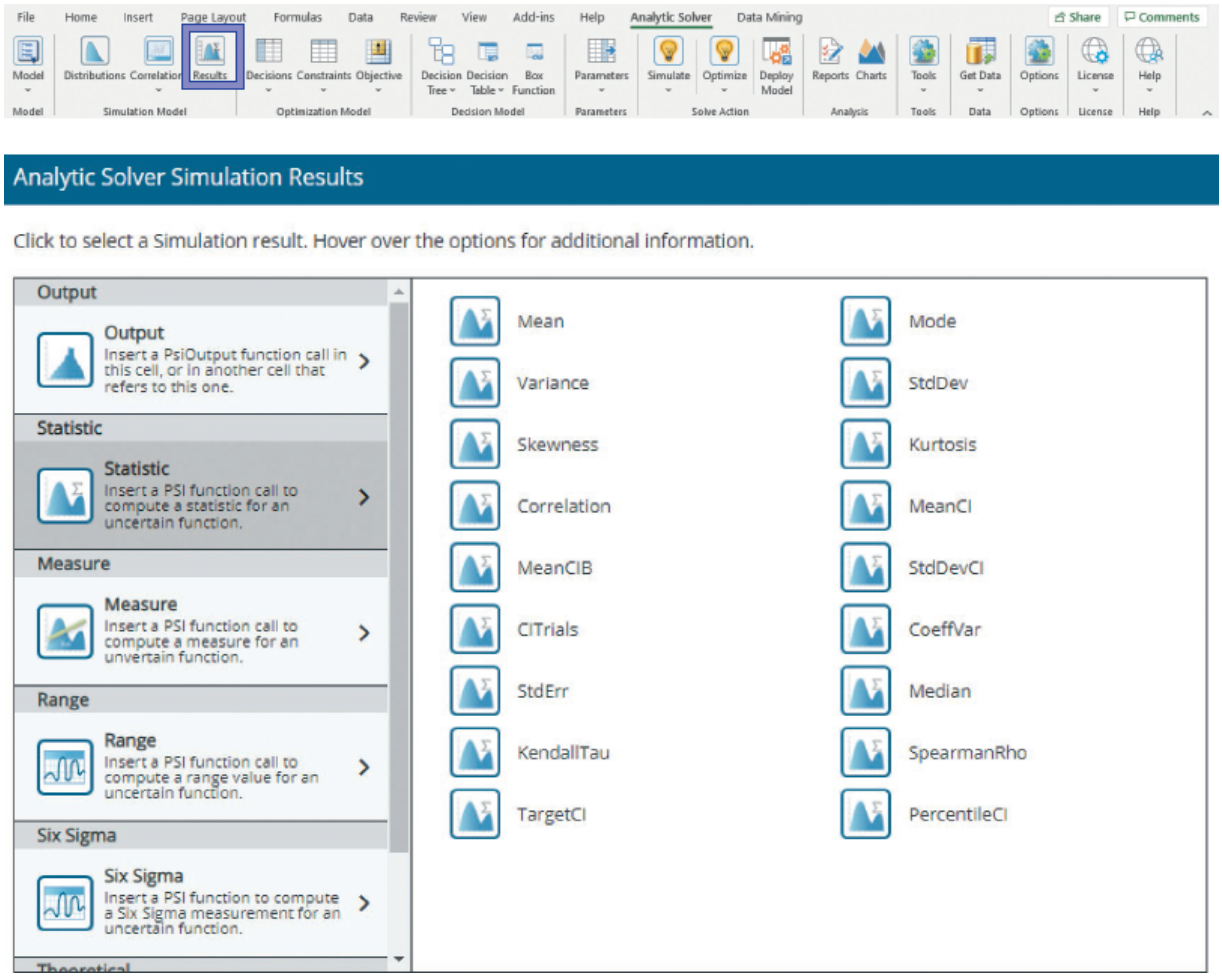
A cell that shows a measure of performance that summarizes the results of an entire simulation run.

Procedure for Defining a Statistic Cell

1. Click on the results cell for which you want to show a statistic.
2. Click on the Results button on the Analytic Solver tab.
3. Choose the statistic you want to show (e.g., Mean) under the Statistic submenu of the Results dialog box, as shown in Figure 15.4.

FIGURE 15.4

The Results dialog box that shows the statistics available under the Statistic submenu. Choosing a statistic from this submenu will cause that statistic to be calculated for the current simulation run. The value of this statistic then will appear within a specified statistic cell.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

1. Click on the statistic cell in which you want the value of the statistic to be shown.

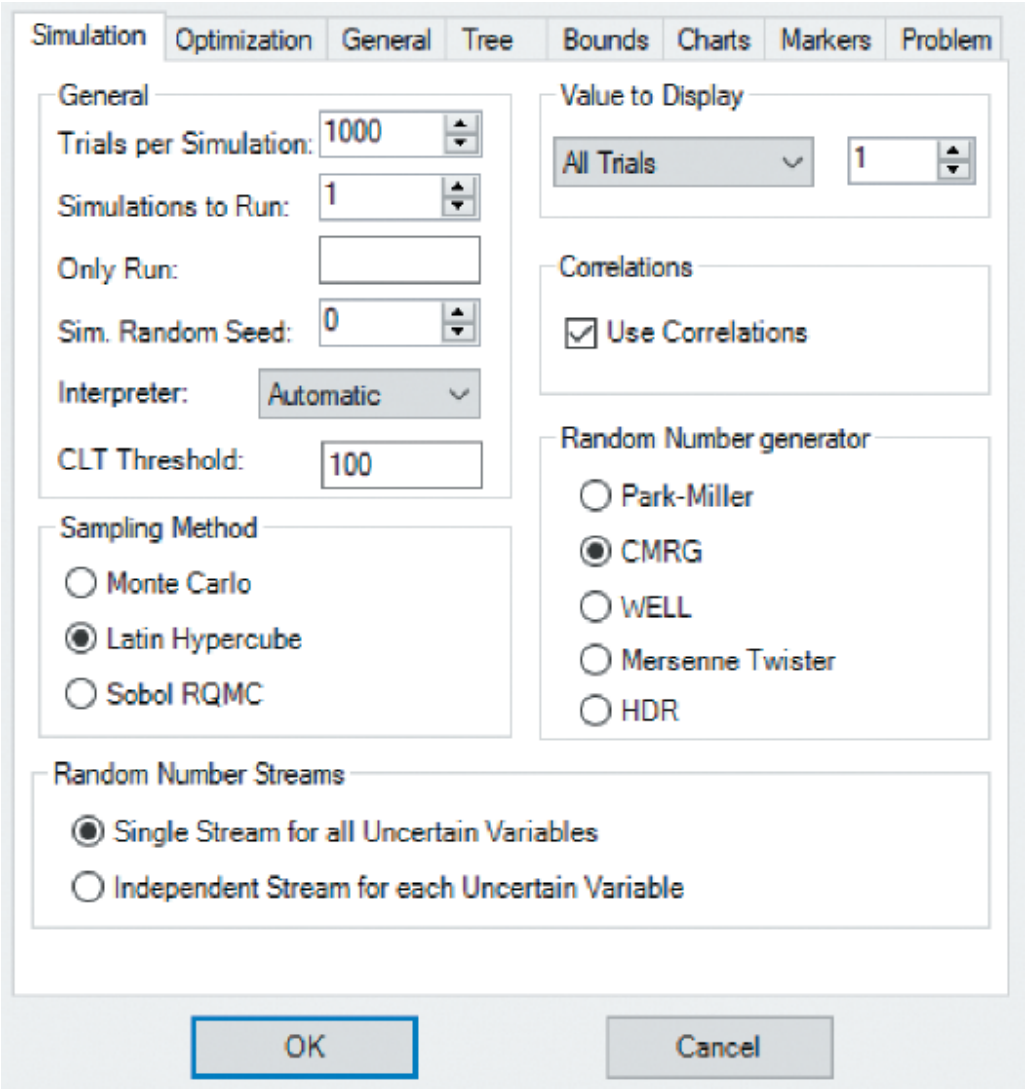
Set the Simulation Options

The fourth step—setting simulation options—refers to such things as choosing the number of trials to run and deciding on other options regarding how to perform the computer simulation. This step begins by clicking on the options button on the Analytic Solver tab and selecting the Simulation tab. This brings up the Simulation Options dialog box

shown in Figure 15.5. Perhaps the most important option is how many trials to run in the simulation. The figure indicates that 1,000 trials will be run. Other options allow you to change the sampling method or the random number generator that is used by Analytic Solver. We will keep these at their default values.

FIGURE 15.5

The Analytic Solver Options dialog box after showing the Simulation tab.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Run the Simulation

At this point, the stage is set to run the computer simulation. In fact, the simulation may already have been run behind the scenes. As seen in either Figure 15.2 or 15.4, the Simulate button on the Analytic Solver tab contains a lightbulb. If the lightbulb is lit (appears yellow), this means Analytic Solver is in interactive simulation mode. In this mode, every time a change in the model is made, the simulation runs automatically in the background and the results are immediately updated. So if the lightbulb is lit, the simulation has already been run and the results are ready for viewing. For small and medium-sized models, the simulation runs so quickly that you will not even notice the work going on in the background.

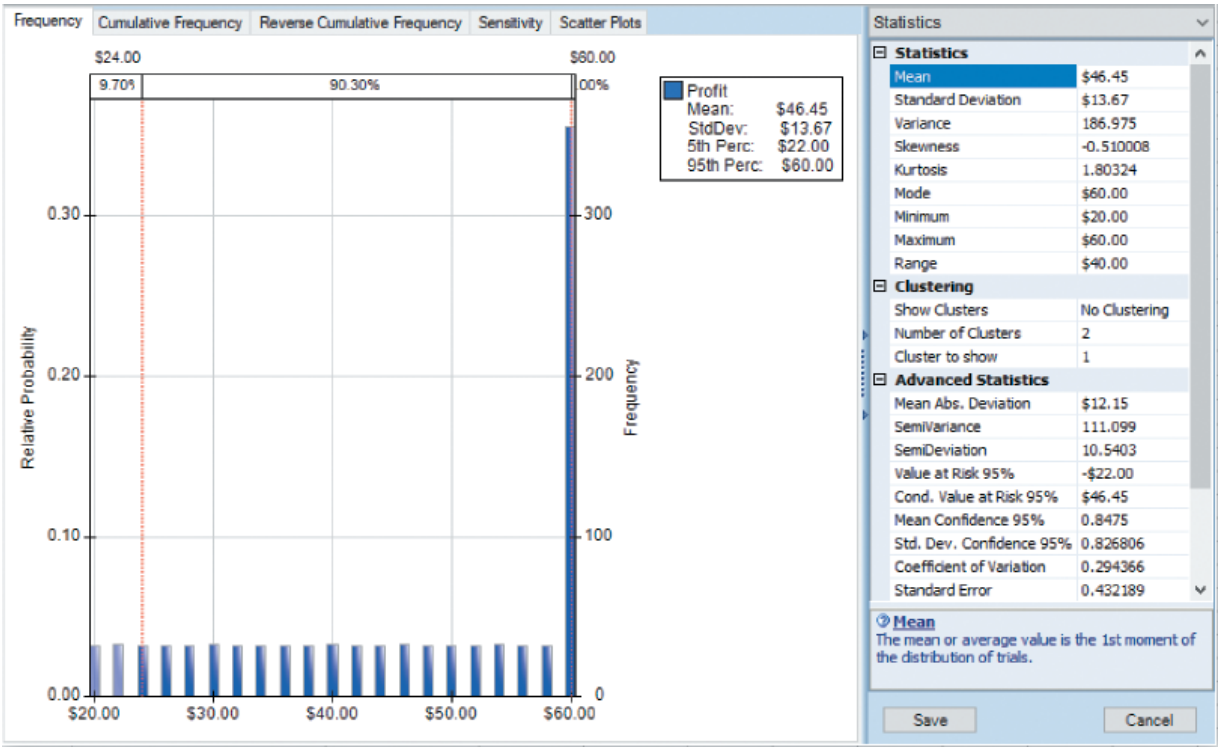
If the lightbulb is not lit (appears gray), then Analytic Solver will only run the simulation when it is instructed to do so. To run the simulation, you can turn on interactive simulation by clicking on the Simulate button. Alternatively, you can run the simulation model just once by clicking the carat below the Simulate button to reveal its menu, and then choosing Run Once.

Analytic Solver Tip If either a simulation model is very large or a huge number of simulation trials are being run, interactive simulation can cause delays as you build your model. In this case, you may want to turn off interactive simulation until the model is completely built.

With interactive simulation mode on, the statistic cells will always show the results of the latest simulation run. For example, in Figure 15.1, the statistic cell MeanProfit (C20) shows that the mean value of Freddie's daily profit is $46.45. To view more extensive results, double-click on the results cell Profit (C18). This reveals the results shown in Figure 15.6.

FIGURE 15.6

The frequency chart and statistics table provided by Analytic Solver to summarize the results of running the simulation model in Figure 15.1 for the case study that involves Freddie the newsboy.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The default view is a frequency chart shown on the left side and a statistics table shown on the right side. The height of the vertical lines in the frequency chart indicates the relative frequency of the various profit values that were obtained during the simulation run. For example, consider the tall vertical line at $60. The right-hand side of the chart indicates a frequency of about 350 there, which means that about 350 of the 1,000 trials led to a profit of $60. Thus, the left-hand side of the chart indicates that the estimated probability of a profit of $60 is 350/1,000 = 0.35. This is the profit that results whenever the demand equals or exceeds the order quantity of 60. The remainder of the time, the profit was scattered fairly evenly between $20 and $58. These profit values correspond to trials where the demand was between 40 and 59 units, with lower profit values corresponding to demands closer to 40 and higher profit values corresponding to demands closer to 60.

page 664

The statistics table on the right side of Figure 15.6 summarizes the outcome of the 1,000 trials of the computer simulation. These 1,000 trials provide a sample of 1,000 random observations from the

underlying probability distribution of Freddie's daily profit. The most interesting statistics about this sample provided by the table include the *mean* of $46.45, the *standard deviation* of $13.67 (a measure of the variability of the profit values from the trials) and the *mode* of $60 (meaning that this was the profit value that occurred most frequently). The information further down the table regarding the *minimum* and *maximum* profit values also is particularly useful.

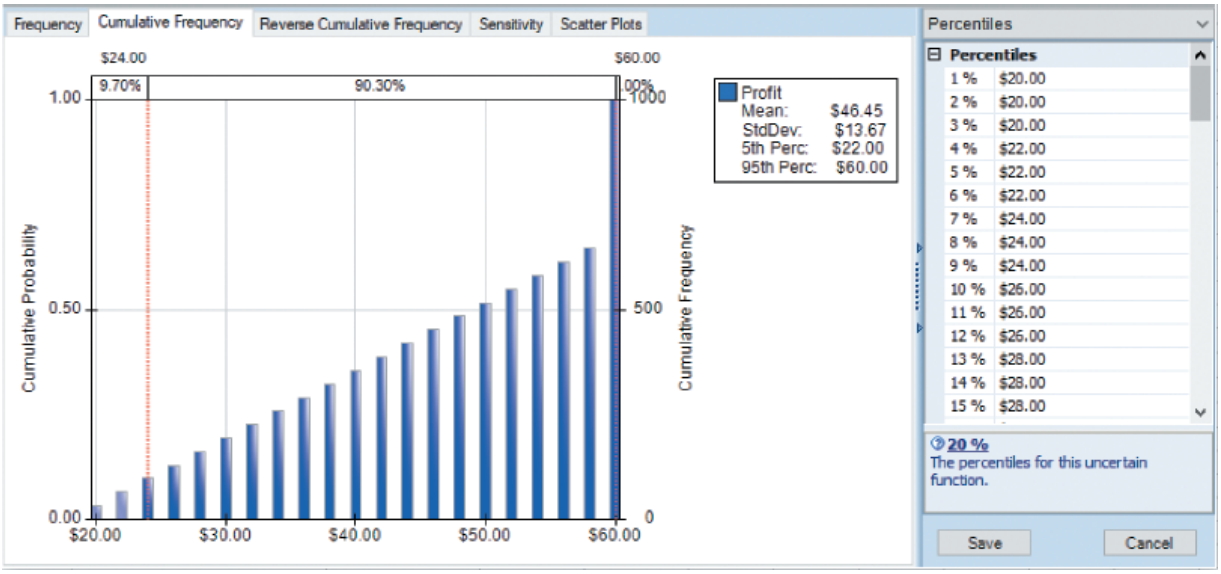
In addition to the frequency chart and statistics table presented in Figure 15.6, there are other useful ways of displaying the results of a simulation run. By clicking on the appropriate tab at the top of the frequency chart, you can display a cumulative frequency, reverse cumulative frequency, sensitivity, or scatter plot chart. Also, the menu above the statistics table lets you choose whether to show statistics or a percentiles table (as well as giving choices for changing various options in the charts).

Figure 15.7 shows the cumulative frequency chart on the left and the percentiles table on the right that resulted from the current simulation run. The percentiles table is based on listing the profit values generated by the 1,000 trials from smallest to largest, dividing this list into 100 equal parts (10 values in each), and then recording the value at the end of each part. Thus, the value 5 percent through the list is $22, the value 10 percent through the list is $26, and so forth. (For example, the intuitive interpretation of the 10 percent percentile of $26 is that 10 percent of the trials have profit values less than or equal to $26 and the other 90 percent of the trials have profit values greater than or equal to $26, so $26 is the dividing line between the smallest 10 percent of the values and the largest 90 percent.)

page 665

FIGURE 15.7

Two more ways (a cumulative frequency chart and a percentiles table) Analytic Solver can display the results of running the simulation model in Figure 15.1 for the case study that involves Freddy the newsboy.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

In general, the *x* percent percentile is the dividing line between the smallest *x* percent of the values and the rest of the values.

The cumulative frequency chart on the left of Figure 15.7 provides similar (but more detailed) information about this same list of the smallest-to-largest profit values. The horizontal axis shows the entire range of values from the smallest possible profit value ($20) to the largest possible profit value ($60). For each value in this range, the chart cumulates the number of actual profits generated by the 1,000 trials that are less than or equal to that value. This number equals the frequency shown on the right or, when divided by the number of trials, the probability shown on the left.

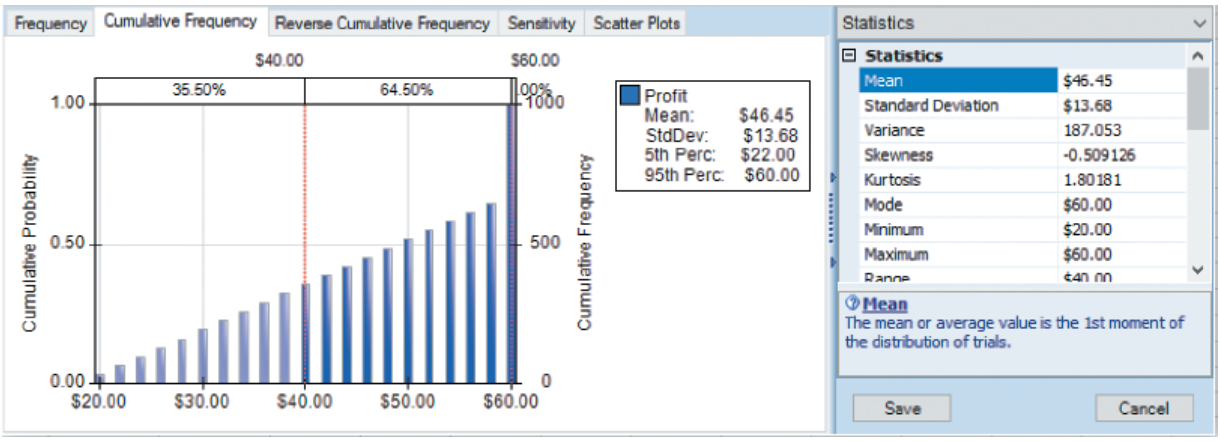
Analytic Solver can also provide estimates for the likelihood that an outcome will fall within a specified range of values. In Figure 15.6, there are two cutoff lines (vertical red dotted lines) that specify a range of values, currently at $24 and $60 (the cutoff line at $60 is difficult to see as it is somewhat obscured by the bar at $60). The percentages shown at the top of the graph indicate that 9.7 percent of outcomes fall below the $24 cutoff line, 90.3 percent of outcomes fall between the $24 and $60 cutoff lines, and 0 percent of outcomes fall above the cutoff at $60. Thus, this suggests that Freddie would have roughly a 90.3 percent chance of earning at least a $24 profit. These cutoff lines

can be dragged left or right to determine the likelihoods for any range of values.

Freddie the newsboy feels that he has had a reasonably successful day if he obtains a profit of at least $40 from selling the *Financial Journal.* Therefore, he would like to know the percentage of days that he could expect to achieve this much profit if he were to adopt the order quantity currently being analyzed (60). To obtain an estimate of this percentage with Analytic Solver, drag the left cutoff line up to $40. Alternatively, you can enter a specific value by clicking on the old value at the top of the cutoff line ($24 in Figure 15.6) and typing in a new value ($40). Figure 15.8 shows that Freddie can expect to achieve $40 profit about 64.5 percent of the time.

FIGURE 15.8

After setting a lower cutoff of $40 for desirable profit values, the chart reveals that 64.5 percent of the trials in Freddie's simulation run provided a profit at least this high.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The Likelihood box gives the percentage of the trials that generated values between the lower cutoff and the upper cutoff.

How Accurate Are the Simulation Results?

An important number provided by Figure 15.6 is the mean of $46.45. This number was calculated as the *average* of the 1,000 random

observations from the underlying probability distribution of Freddie's daily profit that were generated by the 1,000 trials. This *sample average* of $46.45 thereby provides an *estimate* of the *true mean* of this distribution. The true mean might deviate somewhat from $46.45. How accurate can we expect this estimate to be?

page 666

The answer to this key question is provided by the *standard error* of $0.43 given at the bottom of the statistics table in Figure 15.6. In particular, the true mean can readily deviate from the sample mean by any amount up to the standard error, but most of the time (approximately 68 percent of the time), it will not deviate by more than that. Thus, the interval from $46.45 − $0.43 = $46.02 to $46.45 + $0.43 = $46.88 is a 68 percent *confidence interval* for the true mean.

The *standard error* specifies how close the mean obtained in a simulation run is likely to be to the true mean.

Similarly, a larger confidence interval can be obtained by using an appropriate multiple of the standard error to subtract from the sample mean and then to add to the sample mean. For example, the appropriate multiple for a 95 percent confidence interval is 1.965, so such a confidence interval ranges from $46.45 − 1.965($0.43) = $45.60 to $46.45 + 1.965($0.43) = $47.30. (This multiple of 1.965 will change slightly if the number of trials is different from 1,000.) Therefore, it is very likely that the true mean is somewhere between $45.60 and $47.30. Analytic Solver provides a shortcut for calculating the 95 percent confidence interval. The Mean Confidence 95 percent value of $0.85 in the statistics table shows that the 95 percent confidence interval ranges from $46.45 − $0.85 = $45.60 to $46.45 + $0.85 = $47.30.

If greater precision is required, the standard error normally can be reduced by increasing the number of trials in the simulation run. However, the reduction tends to be small unless the number of trials is increased substantially. For example, cutting the mean standard error in half requires approximately quadrupling the number of trials. Thus, a surprisingly large number of trials may be required to obtain the desired degree of precision.

Freddie's Conclusions

The results presented in Figure 15.6 were from a simulation run that fixed Freddie's daily order quantity at 60 copies of the *Financial Journal* (as indicated in cell C9 of the spreadsheet in Figure 15.1). Freddie wanted this order quantity tried first because it seems to provide a reasonable compromise between being able to fully meet the demand on many days (about two-thirds of them) while often not having many unsold copies on those days. However, the results obtained do not reveal whether 60 is the *optimal* order quantity that would maximize his average daily profit. Many more simulation runs with other order quantities will be needed to determine (or at least estimate) the optimal order quantity. Utilizing the interactive simulation mode of Analytic Solver, it is fairly straightforward to do this by trial-and-error. To use trial-and-error, enter a new value for OrderQuantity (C9) in the model, as shown in Figure 15.9, and (when the interactive simulation mode is turned on) a new simulation is immediately run and a new value for the mean profit appears nearly instantaneously in the statistic cell, Mean Profit (C20). With just a single decision variable to vary, trial-and-error can be used to fairly quickly zero in on the optimal order quantity. (Try it!) Decreasing the order quantity from 60 by one unit at a time reveals that the mean profit increases. This most likely would continue until the order quantity is decreased below 55, at which point the mean profit instead starts to decrease. (Remember, however, that the calculated mean profit from a simulation run is only an estimate, so the change in direction might not occur exactly at 55 because of random errors.) Thus, as shown in Figure 15.9, trial-and-error would suggest that when the order quantity is 55, the mean profit reaches its maximum value of $47.26 according to the current series of simulation runs.

FIGURE 15.9

This figure illustrates what can happen when the decision variable, OrderQuantity (C20), is changed by trial-and-error and the statistic cell, MeanProfit (C20), is observed. When the OrderQuantity is 55, the MeanProfit (C20) reaches its maximum value of $47.26.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Freddie the Newsboy**					
2						
3			**Data**			
4		Unit Sale Price	$2.50			
5		Unit Purchase Cost	$1.50			
6		Unit Salvage Value	$0.50			
7						
8			**Decision Variable**			
9		Order Quantity	55			
10					Lower	Upper
11			**Simulation**		Limit	Limit
12		Demand	40	*Integer Uniform*	40	70
13						
14		Sales Revenue	$100.00			
15		Purchasing Cost	$82.50			
16		Salvage Value	$7.50			
17						
18		Profit	$25.00			
19						
20		Mean Profit	$47.26			

With the interactive simulation mode turned on, it is fairly straightforward to use trial-and-error to search for an optimal solution. Simply try different values in the decision variable cell(s) and observe the simulation results that are automatically calculated in the statistic cell(s).

page 667

Section 15.7 will describe a more systematic way to compare different order quantities with a parameter analysis report (as used in Chapter 8 for optimization models) and a trend chart. Section 15.8 then describes how the Solver included with Analytic Solver (as discussed in Chapters 5 through 11) can be used in combination with simulation to search for the optimal order quantity. That presentation will bring the case study to a close.

Although there is still much more to come, Freddie already has learned from Figure 15.6 that an order quantity of 60 would provide a nice average daily profit of approximately $46.45. This is only an estimate, but Freddie also has learned from the 95 percent confidence interval that the average daily profit probably would turn out to be somewhere between $45.60 and $47.30. Freddie has also learned from Figure 15.8 that a smaller order quantity of 55 would provide an even higher average daily profit of approximately $47.26.

Freddie now has 95 percent confidence that an order quantity of 60 would provide an average daily profit between $45.60 and $47.30 in the long run.

However, these profit figures provided by computer simulation are based on the assumption in the spreadsheet model (see cells D12:F12 in Figure 15.1) that demand has an integer uniform distribution between 40 and 70. Therefore, these profit figures will be correct only if this assumption is a valid one. More work is needed to either verify that this assumed distribution is the appropriate one or to identify another probability distribution that provides a better fit to the data of daily demands that Freddie actually has been experiencing. This issue will be explored further in Section 15.6.

Computer simulation with Analytic Solver is an extremely versatile tool that can address a myriad of managerial issues. Therefore, before continuing the case study in Sections 15.6–15.8, we turn in the intervening sections to presenting four additional examples of the application of computer simulation with Analytic Solver.

page 668

Review *Questions*

. What is the decision that Freddie the newsboy needs to make?

. What is an *uncertain variable cell* when using Analytic Solver?

. What is a *results cell* when using Analytic Solver?

. What is entered into the results cell in Freddie's spreadsheet model?

. What is a *statistic cell* when using Analytic Solver?

. What kind of information is provided by a frequency chart when using Analytic Solver?

. What are the key statistics provided by the statistics table when using Analytic Solver?

. What is the significance of the *standard error* of the results from a computer simulation?

. What has Freddie the newsboy learned so far about what his order quantity should be?

15.2 BIDDING FOR A CONSTRUCTION PROJECT: A PRELUDE TO THE RELIABLE CONSTRUCTION CO. CASE STUDY

Managers frequently must make decisions whose outcomes will be greatly affected by the corresponding decisions being made by the management of competitor firms. For example, marketing decisions often fall into this category. To illustrate, consider the case in which a manager must determine the price for a new product being brought to market. How well this decision works out will depend greatly on the pricing decisions being made nearly simultaneously by other firms marketing competitive new products. Similarly, the success of a decision on how soon to market a product under development will be determined largely by whether this product reaches the market before competitive products are released by other firms.

When a decision must be made before learning the corresponding decisions being made by competitors, the analysis needs to take into account the uncertainty surrounding what competitors' decisions will be. Computer simulation provides a natural way of doing this by using uncertain variable cells to represent competitors' decisions.

The following example illustrates this process by considering a situation where the decision being made is the bid to submit on a construction project while three other companies are simultaneously preparing their own bids.

The Reliable Construction Co. Bidding Problem

The case study carried throughout Chapter 18 (provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) involves the Reliable Construction Co. and its project to construct a new plant for a major manufacturer. That chapter describes how the project manager (David Perty) made

extensive use of PERT/CPM models to help guide his management of the project.

As the opening sentence of Section 18.1 indicates, this case study begins as the company has just made the winning bid of $5.4 million to do this project. We now will back up in time to describe how the company's management used computer simulation with Analytic Solver to guide its choice of $5.4 million as its bid for the project. You will not need to review the case study in Chapter 18 to follow this example.

This section reveals how the company chose the bid of $5.4 million, which won the contract.

Reliable's first step in this process was to estimate what the company's total cost of performing the project would be if it were to win the bid. There always is some uncertainty about what this cost will turn out to be, but the best estimate was determined to be $4.55 million. (This amount excludes the penalty for missing the deadline for completion of the project, as well as the bonus for completion well before the deadline, since management considers either event to be relatively unlikely.) There also is an additional cost of approximately $50,000 for preparing the bid, including estimating the project cost and analyzing the bidding strategies of the competition. Based on past experience, it was recognized that the actual project cost might end up being as much as 10 percent higher or 10 percent lower than the estimate of $4.55 million, so a uniform distribution between these bounds was assumed.

Three other construction companies also were invited to submit bids for this project. All three have been long-standing competitors of the Reliable Construction Co., so the company has had a great deal of experience in observing their bidding strategies. A veteran analyst in the bid preparation office has taken on the task of estimating what bid each of these competitors will submit. Since there is so much uncertainty in this process, the analyst has determined that each of these estimates needs to be in the form of a probability distribution that is based on Reliable's estimated project cost of $4.55 million.

Competitor 1 has historically bid about 30 percent above Reliable's estimated project cost. However, competitor 1 also is a particularly unpredictable bidder because of an inability to estimate the true costs of a project with much accuracy. Its actual past bids have ranged from as low as 5 percent below to as high as 60 percent above Reliable's estimated project cost.

Competitor 2 has typically bid about 25 percent above Reliable's estimated project cost and is somewhat more accurate than competitor 1 in estimating project costs, but it still has set bids in the past that have ranged by as much as 15 percent in either direction.

On the other hand, competitor 3 is unusually accurate in estimating project costs (as is the Reliable Construction Co.). Competitor 3 also is adept at adjusting its bidding strategy, so it is equally likely to set its profit margin anywhere between 20 and 30 percent above Reliable's estimated project cost, depending on its assessment of the competition, its current backlog of work, and various other factors.

This information about the competitors is invaluable, but the analyst who developed it knew that her work wasn't quite done yet. Based on these numbers, she still needed to develop an estimate of the probability distribution of what the bid will be for each of the competitors.

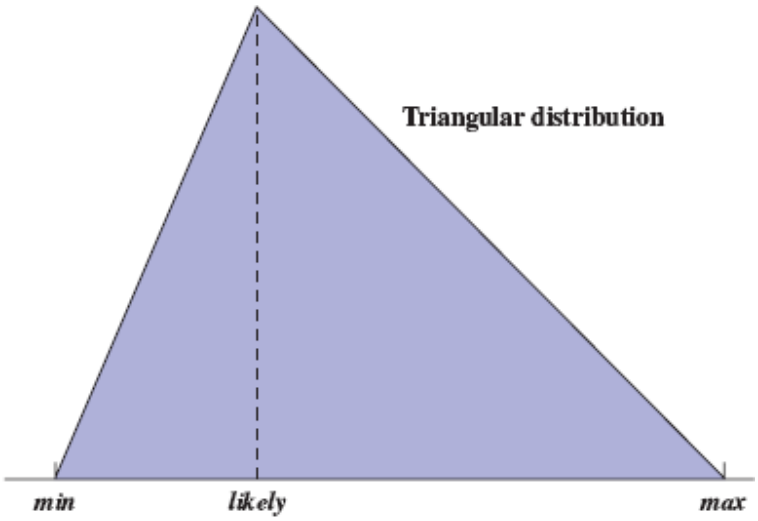
This task is relatively straightforward in the case of competitor 3. Its bid is equally likely to be anywhere between 120 and 130 percent of the estimated project cost ($4.55 million). The probability distribution that fits this is the *uniform distribution* between 120 and 130 percent.

However, this task is not as easy when considering competitors 1 and 2. Fortunately, the analyst has been able to estimate three key numbers for each competitor—a *minimum* value, a *most likely* value, and a *maximum* value—for the bid as a percentage of the estimated project cost ($4.55 million). For example, the analyst has estimated that the bid of competitor 1 (expressed as a percentage of total project cost) has a minimum value of 95 percent, a most likely value of 130 percent, and a maximum value of 160 percent. (The corresponding numbers for competitor 2 are 110 percent, 125 percent, and 140 percent, respectively.) There is a particularly convenient type of probability distribution called the *triangular distribution* that is based on

these same three kinds of numbers. Figure 15.10 shows the shape of a triangular distribution. Its three parameters are *min* (the minimum value), *likely* (the most likely value), and *max* (the maximum value). (Figure 15.10 shows likely as being much closer to min than to max, but it actually can be anywhere between min and max.)

FIGURE 15.10

The shape of a triangular distribution and the location of its three parameters: (1) *min* (the minimum possible value), (2) *likely* (the most likely value), and (3) *max* (the maximum possible value), where the likely value can be anywhere between the min and max values.



McGraw Hill

In summary, the estimated probability distributions of the bids that the three competitors will submit, expressed as a percentage of Reliable's estimated project cost ($4.55 million), are as follows.

page 670

Competitor 1: A triangular distribution with a minimum value of 95 percent, a most likely value of 130 percent, and a maximum value of 160 percent.

Competitor 2: A triangular distribution with a minimum value of 110 percent, a most likely value of 125 percent, and a

maximum value of 140 percent.

Competitor 3: A uniform distribution between 120 percent and 130 percent.

A Spreadsheet Model for Applying Computer Simulation

Figure 15.11 shows the spreadsheet model that has been formulated to evaluate any possible bid that Reliable might submit. ActualProjectCost (C8) is an *uncertain variable cell,* so a uniform distribution has been chosen to be entered into this cell. As described in the preceding section, this is done by selecting the cell, choosing the appropriate distribution from the Distributions dialog box (in this case *Uniform* under the *Common* sub-menu), which brings up the dialog box for that distribution. Because the AccuracyOfEstimate (C5) is 10 percent, Minimum and Maximum for this distribution are calculated as EstimatedProjectCost (C4) plus-or-minus 10% in cells E8:F8. See Figure 15.3 for an illustration of how the parameters of min and max are set (for the example in the previous section).

FIGURE 15.11

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the Reliable Construction Co.'s contract bidding problem. The uncertain variable cells are CompetitorBids (C11:E11), the results cell is Profit (C31), the statistic cell is MeanProfit (C33), and the decision variable is OurBid (C27).

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Reliable Construction Co. Contract Bidding**					
2						
3		**Data**				
4		Estimated Project Cost ($million)	4.550			
5		Accuracy of Estimate (+/–)	10%			
6		Our Bid Cost ($million)	0.050			
7					Minimum	Maximum
8		**Actual Project Cost if Win Bid ($million)**	4.828	*Uniform*	4.095	5.005
9						
10		**Competitor Bids**	Competitor 1	Competitor 2	Competitor 3	
11		Bid ($million)	5.974	5.561	5.743	
12						
13		Distribution	*Triangular*	*Triangular*	*Uniform*	
14						
15		Competitor Distribution Parameters (Proportion of Our Project Cost)				
16		Minimum	95%	110%	120%	
17		Most Likely	130%	125%		
18		Maximum	160%	140%	130%	
19						
20		Competitor Distribution Parameters ($millions)				
21		Minimum	4.323	5.005	5.460	
22		Most Likely	5.915	5.688		
23		Maximum	7.280	6.370	5.915	
24						
25		**Minimum Competitor Bid ($million)**	5.561			
26						
27		**Our Bid ($million)**	5.4			
28						
29		**Win Bid?**	1	(1=yes, 0=no)		
30						
31		**Profit ($million)**	0.522			
32						
33		**Mean Profit ($million)**	0.487			

Range Name	Cells
AccuracyOfEstimate	C5
ActualProjectCost	C8
CompetitorBids	C11:E11
EstimatedProjectCost	C4
MeanProfit	C33
MinimumCompetitorBid	C25
OurBid	C27
OurBidCost	C6
Profit	C31
WinBid?	C29

	B	C
7		
8	Actual Project Cost if Win Bid ($million)	=@PsiUniform(E8,F8)

	E	F
7	Minimum	Maximum
8	=EstimatedProjectCost*(1–AccuracyOfEstimate)	=EstimatedProjectCost*(1+AccuracyOfEstimate)

	B	C	D	E
10	**Competitor Bids**	Competitor 1	Competitor 2	Competitor 3
11	Bid ($million)	=@PsiTriangular(C21,C22,C23)	=@PsiTriangular(D21,D22,D23)	=@PsiUniform(E21,E23)

	B	C	D	E
21	Minimum	=EstimatedProjectCost*C16	=EstimatedProjectCost*D16	=EstimatedProjectCost*E16
22	Most Likely	=EstimatedProjectCost*C17	=EstimatedProjectCost*D17	
23	Maximum	=EstimatedProjectCost*C18	=EstimatedProjectCost*D18	=EstimatedProjectCost*E18

	B	C
25	**Minimum Competitor Bid ($million)**	=MIN(C11:E11)
26		
27	**Our Bid ($million)**	5.4
28		
29	**Win Bid?**	=IF(OurBid<MinimumCompetitorBid, 1,0)
30		
31	**Profit ($million)**	=WinBid?*(OurBid-ActualProjectCost)-OurBidCost +@ PsiOutput()
32		
33	**Mean Profit ($million)**	=@PsiMean(C31)

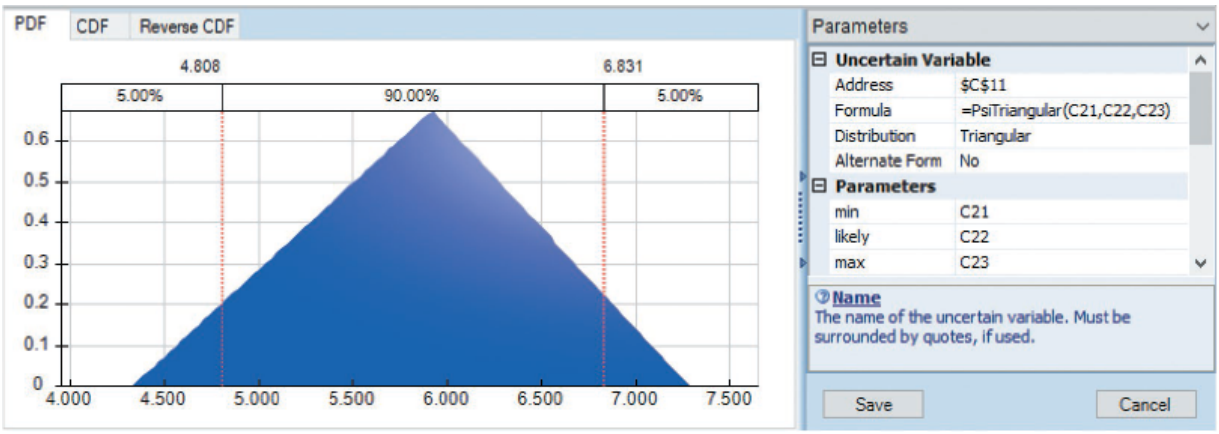
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The bids that other companies will submit are uncertain, so these bids need to be uncertain variable cells.

Since there is also uncertainty about what the competitors' bids will be, this model also needs CompetitorBids (C11:E11) to be *uncertain variable cells,* so the appropriate probability distributions are entered into these cells. For competitor 1 in cell C11, Triangular is chosen from the Distribution dialog box under the *Common* submenu. Figure 15.12 shows the Triangular Distribution dialog box that has been used to set the parameter values (min, likely, and max) for competitor 1, and competitor 2 would be handled similarly. These parameter values for competitor 1 come from cells C21:C23, where the parameters in percentage terms (cells C16:C18) have been converted to dollars by multiplying them by EstimatedProjectCost (C4). The Uniform Distribution dialog box is used instead to set the parameter values for ActualProjectCost in cell C8 and for competitor 3 in cell E11.

FIGURE 15.12

The Triangular Distribution dialog box. It is being used here to enter a triangular distribution with the parameters min = C21 (4.323), likely = C22 (5.915), and max = C23 (7.280) into the uncertain variable cell C11 in the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.11.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

MinimumCompetitorBid (C25) records the smallest of the competitors' bids for each trial of the computer simulation. The Reliable Construction Company wins the bid on a given trial only if the quantity entered into OurBid (C27) is less than the smallest of the

competitors' bids. The IF function entered into WinBid? (C29) then returns a 1 if this occurs and a 0 otherwise.

Since management wants to maximize the expected profit from the entire process of determining a bid (if the bid wins) and then doing the project, the results cell in this model is Profit (C31). The profit achieved on a given trial depends on whether the company wins the bid. If not, the profit actually is a loss of $50,000 (the bid cost). However, if the bid wins, the profit is the amount by which the bid exceeds the sum of the actual project cost and the bid cost. The equation entered into Profit (C31) performs this calculation for whichever case applies. Profit (C31) is defined as a results cell by clicking on the cell and then choosing Output/In Cell from the Results menu on the Analytic Solver tab. Finally, MeanProfit (C33) is defined as a statistic cell by selecting the Profit cell (C31), choosing Mean from the Statistic submenu of the Results menu, and then clicking in cell C33. This will show the mean value of the profit after the simulation is run.

The objective is to determine the bid that would maximize the resulting mean profit.

Here is a summary of the key cells in this model.

Uncertain variable cells:	ActualProjectCost (C8), CompetitorBids (C11:E11)
Decision variable:	OurBid (C27)
Results cell:	Profit (C31)
Statistic cell:	MeanProfit (C33)

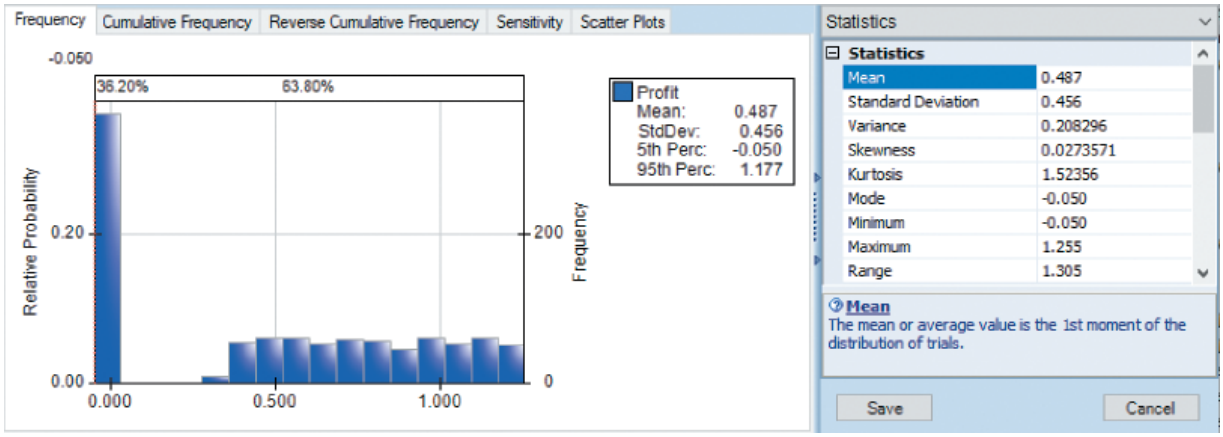
(See Section 15.1 for the details regarding how to define these kinds of cells.)

The Simulation Results

To evaluate a possible bid of $5.4 million entered into OurBid (C27), a computer simulation of this model ran for 1,000 trials. Figure 15.13 shows the results in the form of a frequency chart and a statistics table. Using units of millions of dollars, the profit on each trial is a loss shown as − 0.050 in these figures (if the bid loses) or a profit ranging from 0.345 to 1.255 (if the bid wins). The probabilities indicated at the top of the frequency chart indicate that this loss of $50,000 occurred on 362 of the 1,000 trials whereas profits ranging from $345,000 to $1,255,000 occurred on the other 638 trials (or 63.8 percent of the time). This resulted in a mean profit of 0.487 ($487,000) from all 1,000 trials, as well as the other statistics recorded in the statistics table.

FIGURE 15.13

The frequency chart and statistics table that summarize the results of running the simulation model in Figure 15.11 for the Reliable Construction Co. contract bidding problem.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

By themselves, these results do not show that $5.4 million is the best bid to submit. We still need to use additional simulation runs to estimate whether a larger expected profit could be obtained with another bid value. As seen in the preceding section, this can be done with trial-and-error. Alternatively, Section 15.7 will describe how doing this with a parameter analysis report leads to choosing $5.4 million as the bid.

page 671
page 672

This turned out to be the winning bid for the Reliable Construction Co., which then led into the case study for Chapter 18.

This story will continue in Section 15.7.

Review *Questions*

. What is the project for which the Reliable Construction Co. is submitting a bid?
. The bids of the competitors are being estimated in what form?
. What are the quantities in the uncertain variable cells in this example's spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation?
. What quantity appears in the results cell for this spreadsheet model?
. What are the possible outcomes on each trial of this computer simulation?

15.3 PROJECT MANAGEMENT: REVISITING THE RELIABLE CONSTRUCTION CO. CASE STUDY

One of the most important responsibilities of a project manager is to meet the deadline that has been set for the project. Therefore, a skillful project manager will revise the plan for conducting the project as needed to ensure a strong likelihood of meeting the deadline. But how does the project manager estimate the probability of meeting the deadline with any particular plan? Section 18.4 describes one method provided by a technique called PERT. We now will illustrate how computer simulation provides a better method.

page 673

Computer simulation improves upon a PERT method for estimating the probability of completing a project by the deadline.

This example illustrates a common role for computer simulation—refining the results from a preliminary analysis conducted with

approximate mathematical models. You also will get a first look at uncertain variable cells where the values shown are *times.* Another interesting feature of this example is its use of a special kind of Analytic Solver chart called the *sensitivity chart.* This chart will provide a key insight into how the project plan should be revised.

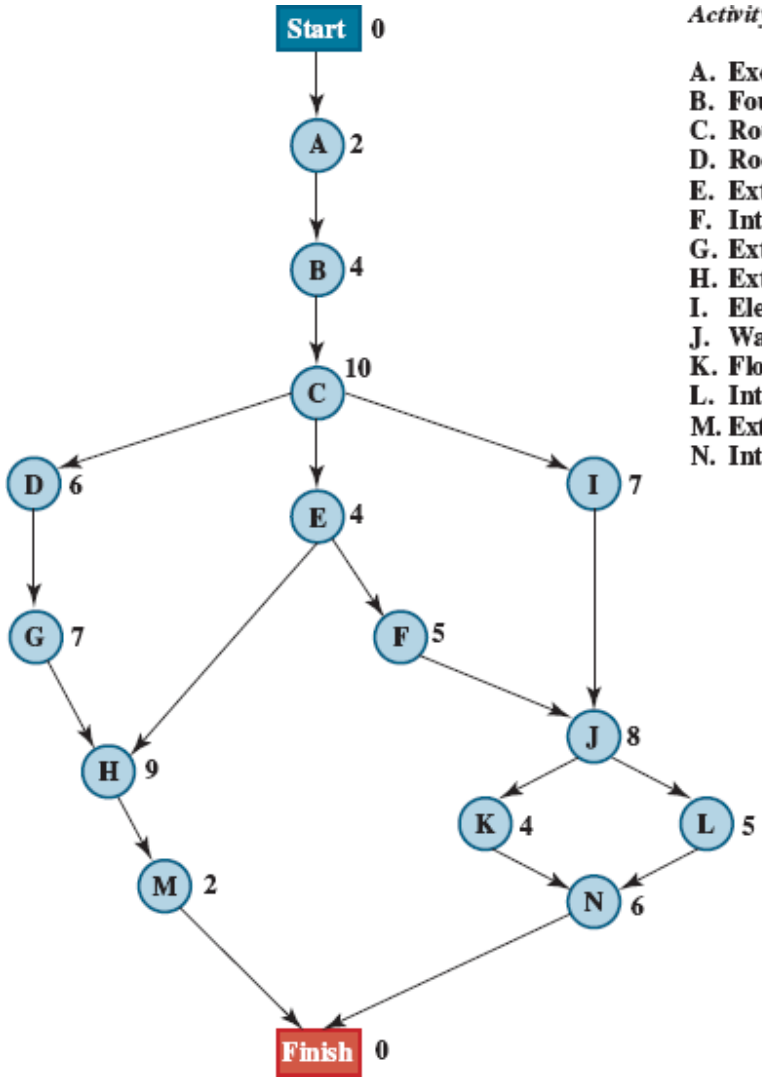
The Problem Being Addressed

Like the example in the preceding section, this one also revolves around the Reliable Construction Co. case study introduced in Section 18.1 and continued throughout Chapter 18 (available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**). However, rather than preceding the part of the story described in Chapter 18, this example arises in the middle of the case study. In particular, Section 18.4 discusses how a PERT procedure was used to obtain a rough approximation of the probability of meeting the deadline for the Reliable Construction Co. project. It then was pointed out that computer simulation could be used to obtain a better approximation. We now are in a position to describe how this is done.

Here are the essential facts about the case study that are needed for the current example. (There is no need for you to refer to Chapter 18 for further details.) The Reliable Construction Company has just made the winning bid to construct a new plant for a major manufacturer. However, the contract includes a large penalty if construction is not completed by the deadline 47 weeks from now. Therefore, a key element in evaluating alternative construction plans is the *probability of meeting this deadline* under each plan. There are 14 major activities involved in carrying out this construction project, as listed on the right-hand side of Figure 15.14 (which repeats Figure 18.1 for your convenience). The project network in this figure depicts the precedence relationships between the activities. Thus, there are six sequences of activities (paths through the network), all of which must be completed to finish the project. These six sequences are listed below.

FIGURE 15.14

The project network for the Reliable Construction Co. project.



The deadline for completing the project is 47 weeks from now.

Path 1: Start → A → B → C → D → G → H → M → Finish page 674

Path 2: Start → A → B → C → E → H → M → Finish

Path 3: Start → A → B → C → E → F → J → K → N → Finish

Path 4: Start → A → B → C → E → F → J → L → N → Finish

Path 5: Start → A → B → C → I → J → K → N → Finish

Path 6: Start → A → B → C → I → J → L → N → Finish

The numbers next to the activities in the project network represent the *estimates* of the number of weeks the activities will take if they are carried out in the normal manner with the usual crew sizes, and so forth. Adding these times over each of the paths (as done in Table 18.2) reveals that path 4 is the *longest path,* requiring a total of 44 weeks. Since the project is finished as soon as its longest path is completed, this indicates that the project can be completed in 44 weeks, 3 weeks before the deadline.

Now we come to the crux of the problem. The times for the activities in Figure 15.14 are only estimates, and there actually is considerable uncertainty about what the duration of each activity will be. Therefore, the duration of the entire project could well differ substantially from the estimate of 44 weeks, so there is a distinct possibility of missing the deadline of 47 weeks. What is the *probability* of missing this deadline? To estimate this probability, we need to learn more about the probability distribution of the duration of the project.

This is the reason for the PERT procedure described in Section 18.4. This approach involves obtaining three estimates—a *most likely estimate,* an *optimistic estimate,* and a *pessimistic estimate*—of the duration of each activity. (Table 18.4 lists these estimates for all 14 activities for the project under consideration.) These three quantities are intended to estimate the most likely duration, the minimum duration, and the maximum duration, respectively. Using these three quantities, PERT assumes (somewhat arbitrarily) that the form of the probability distribution of the duration of an activity is a *beta distribution.* By also making three simplifying approximations (described in Section 18.4), this leads to an analytical method for roughly approximating the probability of meeting the project deadline. *The resulting rough estimate of the probability of meeting the deadline turns out to be* **0.84***.*

One key advantage of computer simulation is that it does not need to make most of the simplifying approximations that may be required by analytical methods. Another is that there is great flexibility about which probability distributions to use. It is not necessary to choose an analytically convenient one.

Computer simulation has two key advantages over analytical methods like PERT.

When dealing with the duration of an activity, computer simulations commonly use a *triangular distribution* as the distribution of this duration. The triangular distribution fits the PERT three-estimate approach very well because it has three parameters that correspond to the three estimates in a very natural way. Figure 15.10 in the preceding section shows the shape of this distribution and its three parameters—*min* (the minimum possible value), *likely* (the most likely value), and *max* (the maximum possible value). Thus, the duration of an activity is assumed to have a triangular distribution where min = optimistic estimate, likely = most likely estimate, and max = pessimistic estimate. For each *uncertain variable cell* containing this distribution, a Triangular Distribution dialog box (such as the one shown in Figure 15.12 in the preceding section) is used to enter the values of the three estimates by entering their respective cell references into the min, likely, and max boxes.

A Spreadsheet Model for Applying Computer Simulation

Figure 15.15 shows a spreadsheet model for simulating the duration of the Reliable Construction Co. project. The values of *o, m,* and *p* in columns D, E, and F are obtained directly from Table 18.4. The equations entered into the cells in columns G and I give the start times and finish times for the respective activities. For each trial of the simulation, the maximum of the finish times for the last two activities (M and N) gives the duration of the project (in weeks), which goes into the results cell ProjectCompletion (I21).

FIGURE 15.15

page 675

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the Reliable Construction Co. project scheduling problem. The uncertain variable cells are cells H6:H15 and H17:H19. The results cell is ProjectCompletion (I21). The statistic cell is MeanProjectCompletion (I23).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	**Simulation of Reliable Construction Co. Project**								
2									
3								Activity	
4			Immediate	Time Estimates			Start	Time	Finish
5		Activity	Predecessor	*o*	*m*	*p*	Time	(*triangular*)	Time
6		A	—	1	2	3	0	2.28	2.28
7		B	A	2	3.5	8	2.28	3.52	5.80
8		C	B	6	9	18	5.80	15.37	21.17
9		D	C	4	5.5	10	21.17	6.86	28.04
10		E	C	1	4.5	5	21.17	4.18	25.35
11		F	E	4	4	10	25.35	5.44	30.80
12		G	D	5	6.5	11	28.04	6.80	34.83
13		H	E, G	5	8	17	34.83	7.33	42.16
14		I	C	3	7.5	9	21.17	3.55	24.72
15		J	F, I	3	9	9	30.80	6.64	37.44
16		K	J	4	4	4	37.44	4.00	41.44
17		L	J	1	5.5	7	37.44	5.45	42.89
18		M	H	1	2	3	42.16	2.47	44.63
19		N	K, L	5	5.5	9	42.89	5.77	48.67
20									
21							Project Completion		48.67
22									
23							Mean Project Completion		46.25

Range Name	Cell
AFinish	I6
AStart	G6
ATime	H6
BFinish	I7
BStart	G7
BTime	H7
CFinish	I8
CStart	G8
CTime	H8
DFinish	I9
DStart	G9
DTime	H9
EFinish	I10
EStart	G10
ETime	H10
FFinish	I11
FStart	G11
FTime	H11
GFinish	I12
GStart	G12
GTime	H12
HFinish	I13
HStart	G13
HTime	H13
IFinish	I14
IStart	G14
ITime	H14
JFinish	I15
JStart	G15
JTime	H15
KFinish	I16
KStart	G16
KTime	H16
LFinish	I17
LStart	G17
LTime	H17
MFinish	I18
MeanProjectCompletion	I23
MStart	G18
MTime	H18
NFinish	I19
NStart	G19
NTime	H19
ProjectCompletion	I21

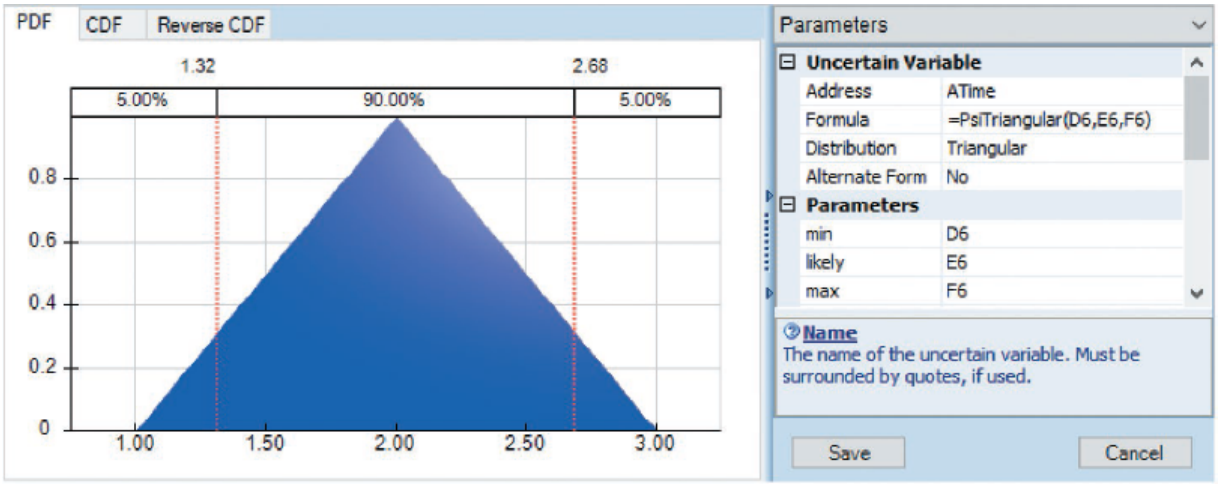
	G	H	I
3		Activity	
4	Start	Time	Finish
5	Time	(*triangular*)	Time
6	0	=@PsiTriangular(D6,E6,F6)	=AStart+ATime
7	=AFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D7,E7,F7)	=BStart+BTime
8	=BFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D8,E8,F8)	=CStart+CTime
9	=CFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D9,E9,F9)	=DStart+DTime
10	=CFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D10,E10,F10)	=EStart+ETime
11	=EFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D11,E11,F11)	=FStart+FTime
12	=DFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D12,E12,F12)	=GStart+GTime
13	=MAX(EFinish,GFinish)	=@PsiTriangular(D13,E13,F13)	=HStart+HTime
14	=CFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D14,E14,F14)	=IStart+ITime
15	=MAX(FFinish,IFinish)	=@PsiTriangular(D15,E15,F15)	=JStart+JTime
16	=JFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D16,E16,F16)	=KStart+KTime
17	=JFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D17,E17,F17)	=LStart+LTime
18	=HFinish	=@PsiTriangular(D18,E18,F18)	=MStart+MTime
19	=MAX(KFinish,LFinish)	=@PsiTriangular(D19,E19,F19)	=NStart+NTime
20			
21		Project Completion	=MAX(MFinish,NFinish) + @PsiOutput()
22			
23		Mean Project Completion	=@PsiMean(I21)

Since the activity times generally are variable, the cells H6:H19 all need to be *uncertain variable cells* (except that H16 turns out to be a constant 4 because all three of its time estimates equal 4). Figure 15.16 shows the Triangular Distribution dialog box after it has been used to specify the parameters for the first uncertain variable cell,

which records the time of activity A with a range name of ATime (H6). The right side of Figure 15.16 notes that Analytic Solver has automatically entered a formula (=@PsiTriangular(D6,E6,F6)) into ATime (H6) to calculate a random value from this distribution. Rather than repeating this process for all the other uncertain variable cells, it is quicker to simply copy and paste. To copy the formula in H6 down to H7 through H19, select cell H6 and drag the fill handle (the small box on the lower right corner of the cell cursor) down to cell H19. This copies the formula in H6 (=@PsiTriangular(D6,E6,F6), used by Analytic Solver to calculate a random value from the triangular distribution, with parameters min =D6, likely =E6, and max =F6) into cells H7 through H19. Since the parameters in cell H6 (D6, E6, and F6) are relative references, the row numbers of the parameters will update appropriately to refer to the data in the correct rows during the copy-and-paste process. For example, the formula in H7 will update to =@PsiTriangular(D7,E7,F7).

FIGURE 15.16

A triangular distribution with parameters D6 (=1), E6 (=2), and F6 (=3) is being entered into the first uncertain variable cell ATime (H6) in the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.15.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Variable activity times need to be uncertain variable cells.

Here is a summary of the key cells in this model.

Uncertain variable cells: Cells H6:H15 and H17:H19
Results cell: ProjectCompletion (I21)
Statistic cell: MeanProjectCompletion (I23)

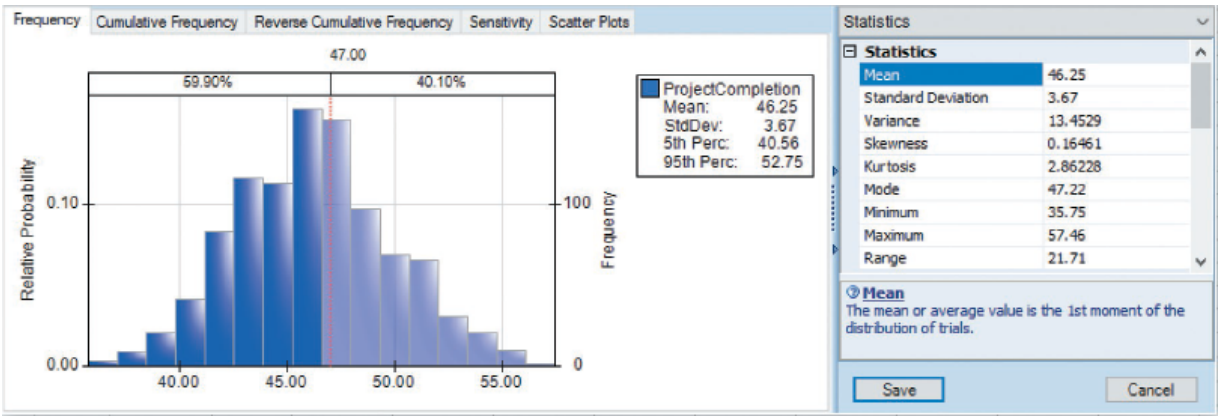
(See Section 15.1 for the details regarding how to define uncertain variable cells, results cells, and statistic cells.)

The Simulation Results

We now are ready to evaluate the computer simulation of the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.15. After running a simulation of 1,000 trials, Figure 15.17 shows the results in the form of a frequency chart and a statistics table. These results show a very wide range of possible project durations. Out of the 1,000 trials, the statistics table indicates that one trial had a duration as short as 35.75 weeks while another was as long as 57.46 weeks. The frequency chart indicates that the duration that occurred most frequently during the 1,000 trials was just under 47 weeks (the project deadline), but that many other durations up to a few weeks either shorter or longer than this also occurred with considerable frequency. The mean is 46.25 weeks, which is much too close to the deadline of 47 weeks to leave much margin for slippage in the project schedule.

FIGURE 15.17

The frequency chart and statistics table that summarize the results of running the simulation model in Figure 15.15 for the Reliable Construction Co. project scheduling problem.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

A statistic of special interest to Reliable's management is the probability of meeting the deadline of 47 weeks under the current project plan. Figure 15.17 shows that with the cutoff line at 47, about 59.9 percent of the trials met the deadline.

If the simulation run were to be repeated with another 1,000 trials, this percentage probably would change a little. However, with such a large number of trials, the difference in the percentages should be slight. Therefore, the probability of **0.599** is a close estimate of *the true probability of meeting the deadline* under the assumptions of the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.15. Recall that we mentioned earlier in this section that the rough estimate of this probability provided by the approximate analytical approach used by PERT is **0.84,** which is much larger than the relatively precise estimate of 0.599 provided by computer simulation. Thus, the simulation estimate provides much better guidance to management in deciding whether the project plan should be changed to improve the chances of meeting the deadline. This illustrates how useful computer simulation can be in refining the results obtained by approximate analytical results.

Computer simulation provides a close estimate of the probability of meeting the project deadline (0.599), whereas the rough PERT estimate (0.84) is much larger.

A Key Insight Provided by the Sensitivity Chart

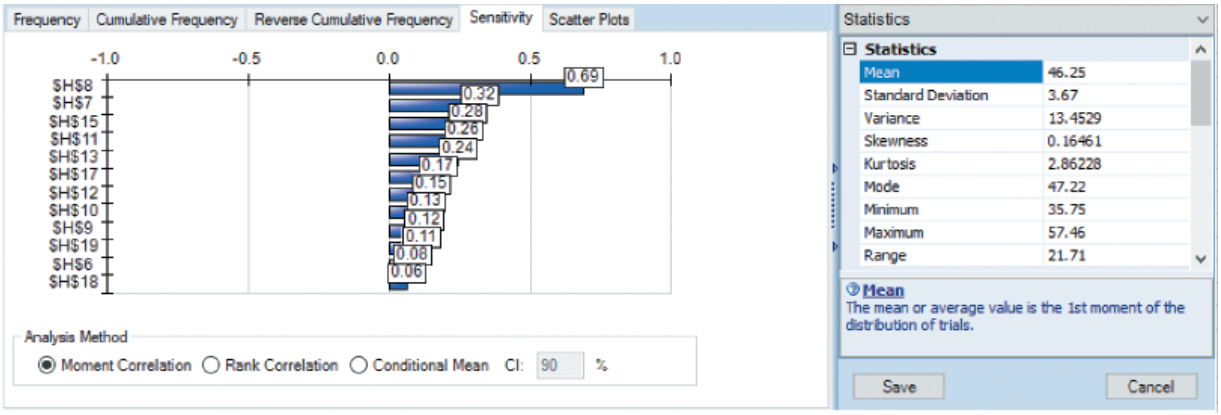
Given such a low probability (0.599) of meeting the project deadline, Reliable's project manager (David Perty) will want to revise the project plan to improve the probability substantially. Analytic Solver has another tool, called the *sensitivity chart,* that provides strong guidance in identifying which revisions in the project plan would be most beneficial.

To view a sensitivity chart after running a simulation, click on the Sensitivity tab above the chart for the results cell. This reveals a sensitivity chart, as shown in Figure 15.18. The left side of the chart identifies various uncertain variable cells (activity times) in column H of the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.15.

FIGURE 15.18

page 678

This sensitivity chart shows how strongly various activity times in the Reliable Construction Co. project are influencing the project completion time.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The bars in the chart give the correlation coefficient (based on moment values) between each uncertain variable cell and the results cell. A correlation coefficient between two variables measures the strength of the relationship between those variables. Thus, each correlation coefficient in Figure 15.18 measures how strongly that activity time is influencing the project completion time. The higher the correlation coefficient, the stronger is this influence. Therefore, the

activities with the highest correlation coefficients are those where the greatest effort should be made to reduce their activity times.

Figure 15.18 indicates that H8 (CTime) has a far higher correlation coefficient than the times for any of the other activities. An examination of Figures 15.14 and 15.15 suggests why. Figure 15.14 shows that activity C precedes *all* the other activities except activities A and B, so any delay in completing activity C would delay the start time for all these other activities. Furthermore, cells D8:F8 in Figure 15.15 indicate that CTime is highly variable, with an unusually large spread of nine weeks between its most likely estimate and its pessimistic estimate, so long delays beyond the most likely estimate may well occur.

This very high correlation coefficient for CTime suggests that the best way to reduce the project completion time (and its variability) is to focus on reducing this activity time (and its variability). This can be accomplished by revising the project plan to assign activity C more personnel, better equipment, stronger supervision, and so forth. Analytic Solver's sensitivity chart clearly highlights this insight into where the project plan needs to be revised.

The sensitivity chart reveals that reducing the time for activity C would most improve the chances of completing the project before the deadline.

Review *Questions*

. What is the project that is being considered in this section's example?

. A PERT procedure can obtain only a rough approximation of a certain key quantity, so computer simulation is used to obtain a much closer estimate of the quantity. What is this quantity?

. Computer simulations commonly use which kind of probability distribution as the distribution of the duration of an activity?

. What are the three estimates provided by the PERT three-estimate approach that give the parameters of this distribution of the duration of an activity?

. What can be done to quickly enter these parameters into all the uncertain variable cells after using the dialog box for the distribution of the duration of only the first activity?

. What quantity appears in the results cell of the spreadsheet model for this example?

. What needs to be done to identify the exact percentage of trials of a computer simulation of this spreadsheet model that will result in meeting the project completion deadline?

. What kind of chart is used to highlight where a project plan needs to be revised to best improve the chances of meeting the project deadline?

15.4 FINANCIAL RISK ANALYSIS: REVISITING THE THINK-BIG DEVELOPMENT CO. PROBLEM

One of the earliest areas of application of computer simulation, dating back to the 1960s, was *financial risk analysis.* This continues today to be one of the most important areas of application.

When assessing any financial investment (or a portfolio of investments), the key trade-off is between the *return* from the investment and the *risk* associated with the investment. Of these two quantities, the less difficult one to determine is the return that would be obtained if everything evolves as currently projected. However, assessing the risk is relatively difficult. Fortunately, computer simulation is ideally suited to perform this risk analysis by obtaining a **risk profile**, namely, a *frequency distribution* of the return from the investment. The portion of the frequency distribution that reflects an unfavorable return clearly describes the risk associated with the investment.

risk profile

A frequency distribution of the return from an investment.

An Application Vignette

For nearly a century after its founding in 1914, **Merrill Lynch** was a leading full-service financial service firm that strove to bring Wall Street to Main Street by making financial markets accessible to everyone. It then was purchased in 2008 by the Bank of America Corporation and given the new name of *Merrill Lynch Wealth Management* as part of the merged corporate and investment bank called *Bank of America Merrill Lynch.* In 2019, it was rebranded as *Merrill,* an investment management and wealth management division of Bank of America. As of 2021, it employs over 14,000 financial advisors throughout the United States and dozens of other countries while managing $2.3 trillion in client assets.

How has Merrill Lynch (and now Merrill) managed to maintain such a dominant position in the wealth management industry well into the 21st century when faced with increasing competition from discount brokerage firms and electronic brokerage firms? A major part of the answer was the contribution of a management science task force that was formed at the end of the 20th century to recommend a product or service response to the marketplace challenge. Merrill Lynch's strong management science group was charged with doing the detailed analysis of two potential new pricing options for clients. One option would replace charging for trades individually by charging a fixed percentage of a client's assets at Merrill Lynch and then allowing an unlimited number of free trades and complete access to a financial advisor. The other option would allow self-directed investors to invest online directly for a fixed low fee per trade without consulting a financial advisor.

The great challenge facing the management science group was to determine a "sweet spot" for the prices for these options that would be likely to grow the firm's business and increase its revenues while minimizing the risk of losing revenue instead. A key tool in attacking this problem proved to be *computer simulation.* To undertake a **major computer simulation study,** the group assembled and evaluated an extensive volume of data on the assets and trading activity of the firm's 5 million clients. For each segment of the client base, a careful analysis was done of its offer-

adoption behavior by using managerial judgment, market research, and experience with clients. With this input, the group then formulated and ran a *computer simulation model* with various pricing scenarios to identify the pricing sweet spot.

The implementation of these results had a profound impact on Merrill Lynch's competitive position, restoring it to a leadership role in the industry. Instead of continuing to lose ground to the fierce new competition, *client assets managed by the company had increased by* **$22 billion** *and its incremental annual revenue reached* **$80 million** *within 18 months.* The CEO of Merrill Lynch called the new strategy "the most important decision we as a firm have made (in the last 20 years)."

This dramatic application of computer simulation led to Merrill Lynch winning the prestigious **First Prize** in the 2001 international competition for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: S. Altschuler, D. Batavia, J. Bennett, R. Labe, B. Liao, R. Nigam, and J. Oh, "Pricing Analysis for Merrill Lynch Integrated Choice," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 32, no. 1 (January–February 2002): 5–19. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e.**)

The following example illustrates this approach in the context of real estate investments. You will see computer simulation being used to refine prior analysis done by linear programming because this prior analysis was unable to take the uncertainty in future cash flows into account.

The Think-Big Financial Risk Analysis Problem

As introduced in Section 6.2, the Think-Big Development Co. is a major investor in commercial real estate development projects. It has been considering taking a share in three large construction projects—a high-rise office building, a hotel, and a shopping center. In each case, the partners in the project would spend three years with the

construction, then retain ownership for three years while establishing the property, and then sell the property in the seventh year. By using estimates of expected cash flows, Section 6.2 describes how linear programming has been applied to obtain the following proposal for how big a share Think-Big should take in each of these projects.

Proposal

Do not take any share of the high-rise building project.
Take a 16.50 percent share of the hotel project.
Take a 13.11 percent share of the shopping center project.

This proposal is estimated to return a *net present value* (NPV) of $18.11 million to Think-Big. (NPV calculates the *total profit* by discounting future cash flows to take into account the time value of money and then adding all the discounted future cash flows to the immediate cash flow, where inflows are positive and outflows are negative.)

However, Think-Big management understands very well that such decisions should not be made without taking risk into account. These are very risky projects since it is unclear how well these properties will compete in the marketplace when they go into operation in a few years. Although the construction costs during the first three years can be estimated fairly roughly, the net incomes during the following three years of operation are very uncertain. Consequently, there is an extremely wide range of possible values for each sale price in year 7. Therefore, management wants *risk analysis* to be performed in the usual way (with computer simulation) to obtain a *risk profile* of what the total NPV might actually turn out to be with this proposal.

page 680

Management needs a risk profile of the proposal to assess whether the likelihood of a sizable profit justifies the risk of possible large losses.

To perform this risk analysis, Think-Big staff now has devoted considerable time to estimating the amount of uncertainty in the cash

flows for each project over the next seven years. These data are summarized in Table 15.1 (in units of millions of dollars) for a 100 percent share of each project. Thus, when taking a smaller percentage share of a project, the numbers in the table should be reduced proportionally to obtain the relevant numbers for Think-Big. In years 1 through 6 for each project, the probability distribution of cash flow is assumed to be a *normal distribution,* where the first number shown is the estimated *mean* and the second number is the estimated *standard deviation* of the distribution. (Keep in mind that the standard deviation of a distribution is a measure of the amount of variability in the distribution.) In year 7, the income from the sale of the property is assumed to have a *uniform distribution* over the range from the first number shown to the second number shown.

TABLE 15.1

The Estimated Cash Flows for 100 Percent of the Hotel and Shopping Center Projects

Hotel Project		Shopping Center Project	
Year	**Cash Flow ($1,000,000s)**	**Year**	**Cash Flow ($1,000,000s)**
0	–80	0	–90
1	Normal (–80, 5)	1	Normal (–50, 5)
2	Normal (–80, 10)	2	Normal (–20, 5)
3	Normal (–70, 15)	3	Normal (–60, 10)
4	Normal (+30, 20)	4	Normal (+15, 15)
5	Normal (+40, 20)	5	Normal (+25, 15)
6	Normal (+50, 20)	6	Normal (+40, 15)
7	Uniform (+200, 844)	7	Uniform (160, 600)

To compute NPV, a cost of capital of 10 percent per annum is being used. Thus, the cash flow in year n is divided by $(1.1)^n$ before adding these discounted cash flows to the immediate cash flow in year 0 to obtain NPV.

A Spreadsheet Model for Applying Computer Simulation

A spreadsheet model has been formulated for this problem in Figure 15.19. There is no uncertainty about the immediate (year 0) cash flows appearing in cells D6 and D16, so these are data cells. However, because of the uncertainty for years 1–7, cells D7:D13 and D17:D23 containing the simulated cash flows for these years need to be uncertain variable cells. (The numbers in these cells in Figure 15.19 represent one possible random outcome—the last trial of the simulation run.) Table 15.1 specifies the probability distributions and their parameters that have been estimated for these cash flows, so the form of the distributions has been recorded in cells E7:E13 and E17:E23 while entering the corresponding parameters in cells F7:G13 and F17:G23. Figure 15.20 shows the Normal Distribution dialog box that is used to enter the parameters (mean and standard deviation) for the normal distribution into the first uncertain variable cell D7 by referencing cells F7 and G7. The formula in D7 is then copied and pasted into cells D8:D12 and D17:D22 to define these uncertain variable cells. The Uniform Distribution dialog box (like the similar one displayed earlier in Figure 15.3 for an integer uniform distribution) is used as illustrated in Figure 15.3 to enter the parameters (minimum and maximum) for this kind of distribution into the uncertain variable cells D13 and D23.

FIGURE 15.19

page 681

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the Think-Big Development Co. financial risk analysis problem. The uncertain variable cells are cells D7:D13 and D17:D23, the results cell is NetPresentValue (D37), the statistic cell is MeanNPV (D39), and the

decision variables are HotelShare (H28) and ShoppingCenterShare (H29).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**Simulation of Think-Big Development Co. Problem**							
2								
3				**Project Simulated**				
4				**Cash Flow**				
5	**Hotel Project**			**($millions)**				
6		Construction Costs	Year 0	-80				
7			Year 1	-79.057	*Normal*	-80	5	(mean, st. dev.)
8			Year 2	-80.343	*Normal*	-80	10	(mean, st. dev.)
9			Year 3	-73.063	*Normal*	-70	15	(mean, st. dev.)
10		Revenue per Share	Year 4	14.059	*Normal*	30	20	(mean, st. dev.)
11			Year 5	29.746	*Normal*	40	20	(mean, st. dev.)
12			Year 6	81.373	*Normal*	50	20	(mean, st. dev.)
13		Selling Price per Share	Year 7	395.247	*Uniform*	200	844	(lower,upper)
14								
15	**Shopping Center Project**							
16		Construction Costs	Year 0	-90				
17			Year 1	-42.329	*Normal*	-50	5	(mean, st. dev.)
18			Year 2	-15.124	*Normal*	-20	5	(mean, st. dev.)
19			Year 3	-54.653	*Normal*	-60	10	(mean, st. dev.)
20		Revenue per Share	Year 4	21.923	*Normal*	15	15	(mean, st. dev.)
21			Year 5	10.122	*Normal*	25	15	(mean, st. dev.)
22			Year 6	14.780	*Normal*	40	15	(mean, st. dev.)
23		Selling Price per Share	Year 7	494.378	*Uniform*	160	615	(lower,upper)
24								
25				**Think-Big's**				
26				**Simulated Cash Flow**				
27				**($millions)**				**Share**
28			Year 0	-24.999			Hotel	16.50%
29			Year 1	-18.594			Shopping Center	13.11%
30			Year 2	-15.239				
31			Year 3	-19.221			Cost of Capital	10%
32			Year 4	5.194				
33			Year 5	6.235				
34			Year 6	15.364				
35			Year 7	130.029				
36								
37		Net Present Value ($millions)		13.879				
38								
39		MeanNPV ($millions)		18.120				

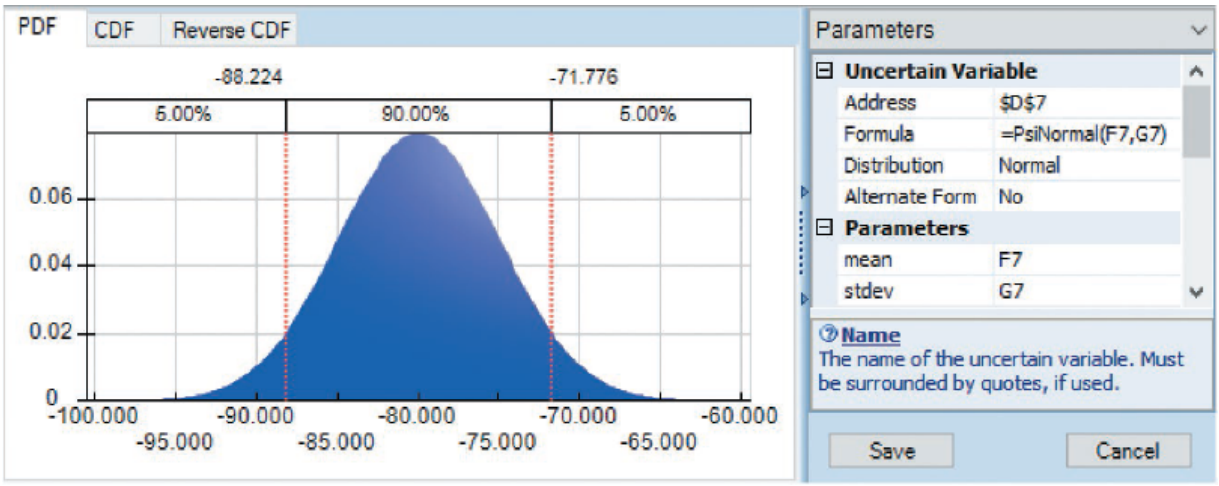
	C	D
3		**Project Simulated**
4		**Cash Flow**
5		**($millions)**
6	Year 0	-80
7	Year 1	=@PsiNormal(F7,G7)
8	Year 2	=@PsiNormal(F8,G8)
9	Year 3	=@PsiNormal(F9,G9)
10	Year 4	=@PsiNormal(F10,G10)
11	Year 5	=@PsiNormal(F11,G11)
12	Year 6	=@PsiNormal(F12,G12)
13	Year 7	=@PsiUniform(F13,G13)
14		
15		
16	Year 0	-90
17	Year 1	=@PsiNormal(F17,G17)
18	Year 2	=@PsiNormal(F18,G18)
19	Year 3	=@PsiNormal(F19,G19)
20	Year 4	=@PsiNormal(F20,G20)
21	Year 5	=@PsiNormal(F21,G21)
22	Year 6	=@PsiNormal(F22,G22)
23	Year 7	=@PsiUniform(F23,G23)

	C	D
25	**Think Big's**	
26	**Simulated Cash Flow**	
27		**($millions)**
28	Year 0	=HotelShare*D6+ShoppingCenterShare*D16
29	Year 1	=HotelShare*D7+ShoppingCenterShare*D17
30	Year 2	=HotelShare*D8+ShoppingCenterShare*D18
31	Year 3	=HotelShare*D9+ShoppingCenterShare*D19
32	Year 4	=HotelShare*D10+ShoppingCenterShare*D20
33	Year 5	=HotelShare*D11+ShoppingCenterShare*D21
34	Year 6	=HotelShare*D12+ShoppingCenterShare*D22
35	Year 7	=HotelShare*D13+ShoppingCenterShare*D23
36		
37	Net Present Value ($millions)	=CashFlowYear0+NPV(CostOfCapital,CashFlowYear1To7) +@PsiOutput()
38		
39	Mean NPV ($millions)	=@PsiMean(D37)

Range Name	Cells
CashFlowYear0	D28
CashFlowYear1To7	D29:D35
CostOfCapital	H31
HotelShare	H28
MeanNPV	D39
NetPresentValue	D37
ShoppingCenterShare	H29

FIGURE 15.20

A normal distribution with parameters F7 (=–80) and G7 (=5) is being entered into the first uncertain variable cell D7 in the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.19.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc. Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Excel Tip The NPV (*discount rate, cash flows*) function calculates the net present value by adding the immediate cash flow and a stream of *future* discounted cash flows at regular intervals (e.g., annually) in a range of cells (*cash flows*) using the specified *discount rate* per interval.

The simulated cash flows in cells D6:D13 and D16:D23 are for 100 percent of the hotel project and the shopping center project, respectively, so Think-Big's share of these cash flows needs to be reduced proportionally based on its shares in these projects. The proposal being analyzed is to take the shares shown in cells H28:H29. The equations entered into cells D28:D35 (see the bottom of Figure 15.19) then gives Think-Big's total cash flow in the respective years for its share of the two projects.

Think-Big's management wants to obtain a risk profile of what the total net present value (NPV) might be with this proposal. Therefore, the results cell is NetPresent Value (D37). To show the mean NPV over the simulation run, MeanNPV (D39) is

defined as a statistic cell. (Keep in mind that the number in NetPresentValue (D37) in Figure 15.19 is just the value in the last simulation trial whereas MeanNPV (D39) is the average of these values over all of the trials of the simulation run.)

Here is a summary of the key cells in this model.

Uncertain variable cells: Cells D7:D13 and D17:D23
Decision variables: HotelShare (H28) and ShoppingCenterShare (H29)
Results cell: NetPresentValue (D37)
Statistic cell: MeanNPV (D39)

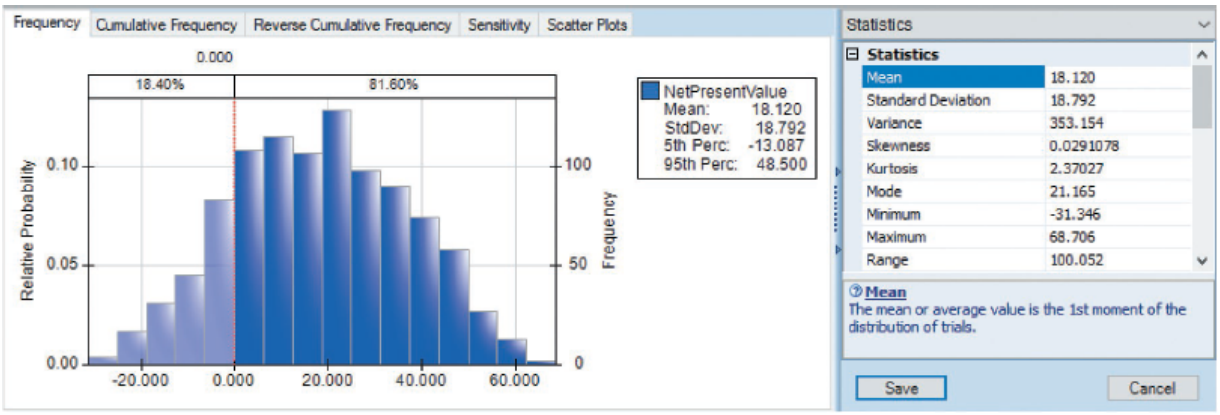
(See Section 15.1 for the details regarding how to define uncertain variable cells, results cells, and statistic cells.)

The Simulation Results

Using the Simulation Options dialog box to specify 1,000 trials, Figure 15.21 shows the results of applying computer simulation to the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.19. The frequency chart in Figure 15.21 provides the risk profile for the proposal since it shows the relative likelihood of the various values of NPV, including page 683 those where NPV is negative. The mean is $18.120 million, which is very attractive. However, the 1,000 trials generated an extremely wide range of NPV values, all the way from under –$31 million to over $68 million. Thus, there is a significant chance of incurring a huge loss. With the cutoff line set at $0, the percentages above the chart indicate that 81.6 percent of the trials resulted in a profit (a positive value of NPV). This also gives the bad news that there is more than an 18 percent chance of incurring a loss of some size. The lightly shaded portion of the chart to the left of 0 shows that most of the trials with losses involved losses up to about $10 million, but that quite a few trials had losses that ranged from $10 million to nearly $30 million.

FIGURE 15.21

The frequency chart and statistics table that summarize the results of running the simulation model in Figure 15.19 for the Think-Big Development Co. financial risk analysis problem. With the cutoff line at $0, the results above the chart indicate that 81.6 percent of the trials resulted in a positive net present value.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc. Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The frequency chart provides the risk profile for the proposal.

Armed with all this information, a managerial decision now can be made about whether the likelihood of a sizable profit justifies the significant risk of incurring a loss and perhaps even a very substantial loss. Thus, the role of computer simulation is to provide the information needed for making a sound decision, but it is management that uses its best judgment to make the decision.

Review *Questions*

. What is a *risk profile* for an investment (or a portfolio of investments)?

. What is the investment proposal that the management of the Think-Big Development Co. needs to evaluate?

. What are the estimates that need to be made to prepare for applying computer simulation to this example?

. What quantities appear in the uncertain variable cells of the spreadsheet model for this example?

. What quantity appears in the results cell for this example?

. Does computer simulation indicate a significant chance of incurring a loss if Think-Big management approves the investment proposal?

15.5 REVENUE MANAGEMENT IN THE TRAVEL INDUSTRY

One of the most prominent areas for the application of management science and business analytics in recent years has been in improving *revenue management* in the travel industry. Revenue management refers to the various ways of increasing the flow of revenues through such devices as setting up different fare classes for different categories of customers. The objective is to maximize total income by setting fares that are at the upper edge of what the different market segments are willing to pay and then allocating seats appropriately to the various fare classes.

As the example in this section will illustrate, one key area of revenue management is *overbooking,* that is, accepting a slightly larger number of reservations than the number of seats available. There usually are a small number of no-shows, so overbooking will increase revenue by essentially filling the available seating. However, there also are costs incurred if the number of arriving customers exceeds the number of available seats. Therefore, the amount of overbooking needs to be set carefully so as to achieve an appropriate trade-off between filling seats and avoiding the need to turn away customers who have a reservation.

American Airlines was the pioneer in making extensive use of management science for improving its revenue management. The guiding motto was “selling the right seats to the right customers at the right time.” This work won the 1991 Franz Edelman Award as that year’s best application of management science anywhere throughout the world. This application was credited with increasing annual revenues for American Airlines by over $500 million. Nearly half of

these increased revenues came from the use of a new overbooking model.

A new overbooking model increased annual revenues for American Airlines by about $225 million.

Following this breakthrough at American Airlines, other airlines quickly stepped up their use of management science in similar ways. These applications to revenue management then spread to other segments of the travel industry (train travel, cruise lines, rental cars, hotels, etc.) around the world. Our example below involves overbooking by an airline company.

The Transcontinental Airlines Overbooking Problem

Transcontinental Airlines has a daily flight (excluding weekends) from San Francisco to Chicago that is mainly used by business travelers. There are 150 seats available in the single cabin. The average fare per seat is $300. This is a refundable fare, so no-shows receive a full refund. The fixed cost for operating the flight is $30,000, so more than 100 reservations are needed to make a profit on any particular day.

page 684

For most of these flights, the number of requests for reservations considerably exceeds the number of seats available. The company's analytics group has been compiling data on the number of reservation requests per flight for the past several months. The average number has been 195, but with considerable variation from flight to flight on both sides of this average. Plotting a frequency chart for these data suggests that they roughly follow a bell-shaped curve. Therefore, the group estimates that the number of reservation requests per flight has a *normal distribution* with a mean of 195. A calculation from the data estimates that the standard deviation is 30.

The company's usual policy for overbooking is to accept 10 percent more reservations than the number of seats available on nearly all its flights, since roughly 10 percent of all its customers making

reservations end up being no-shows. However, if its experience with a particular flight is much different from this, then an exception is made and the analytics group is called in to analyze what the overbooking policy should be for that particular flight. This is what has just happened regarding the daily flight from San Francisco to Chicago. Even when the full quota of 165 reservations has been reached (which happens for most of the flights), there usually are a significant number of empty seats. While gathering its data, the analytics group has discovered the reason why. On the average, only 80 percent of the customers who make reservations for this flight actually show up to take the flight. The other 20 percent receive a full refund (or, in most cases, allow their company to do so) because their plans have changed.

An unusually high 20 percent no-show rate requires developing a special overbooking policy for this particular flight.

Now that the data have been gathered, the analytics group decides to begin its analysis by investigating the option of increasing the number of reservations to accept for this flight to 190. If the number of reservation requests for a particular day actually reaches this level, then this number should be large enough to avoid many, if any, empty seats. Furthermore, this number should be small enough that there will not be many occasions when a significant number of customers need to be bumped from the flight because the number of arrivals exceeds the number of seats available (150). Thus, 190 appears to be a good first guess for an appropriate trade-off between avoiding many empty seats and avoiding bumping many customers.

When a customer is bumped from this flight, Transcontinental Airlines arranges to put the customer on the next available flight to Chicago on another airline. Beyond the lost revenue for the ticket (now transferred to the other airline), this incurs an administrative cost of $150. In addition, the company gives the customer a voucher worth $200 for use on a future flight. The company also feels that an additional $100 should be assessed for the intangible cost of a loss of goodwill on the part of the bumped customer. Therefore, the total cost of bumping a customer is estimated to be $450 (beyond the lost revenue).

The analytics group now wants to investigate the option of accepting 190 reservations by using computer simulation to generate frequency charts for the following three measures of performance for each day's flight:

1. The profit.
2. The number of filled seats.
3. The number of customers denied boarding.

A Spreadsheet Model for Applying Computer Simulation

Figure 15.22 shows a spreadsheet model for this problem. Because there are three measures of interest here, the spreadsheet model needs three results cells. These results cells are Profit (F23), NumberOfFilledSeats (C20), and NumberDeniedBoarding (C21). In addition, three statistic cells are defined in cells C23:C25 to measure the mean value of each of the results cells for the simulation run. The decision variable ReservationsToAccept (C13) has been set at 190 for investigating this current option. Some basic data have been entered near the top of the spreadsheet in cells C4:C7.

FIGURE 15.22

page 685

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the Transcontinental Airlines overbooking problem. The uncertain variable cells are Simulated-TicketDemand (C10) and NumberThatShow (C17). The results cells are Profit (F23), Number-OfFilledSeats (C20), and NumberDeniedBoarding (C21). The statistic cells are MeanFilledSeats (C23), MeanDenied-Boarding (C24), and MeanProfit (C25). The decision variable is ReservationsTo-Accept (C13).

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Transcontinental Airlines Overbooking**					
2						
3			**Data**			
4		Available Seats	150			
5		Fixed Cost	$30,000			
6		Avg. Fare / Seat	$300			
7		Cost of Bumping	$450			
8						
9					Mean	Standard Dev.
10		Ticket Demand	179.74	*Normal*	195	30
11		Demand (rounded)	180			
12						
13		Reservations to Accept	190			
14						
15					Tickets	Probability
16					Purchased	to Show Up
17		Number That Show	153	*Binomial*	180	80%
18						
19						
20		Number of Filled Seats	150		Ticket Revenue	$45,000
21		Number Denied Boarding	3		Bumping Cost	$1,350
22					Fixed Cost	$30,000
23		Mean Filled Seats	142.244		Profit	$13,650
24		Mean Denied Boarding	2.044			
25		Mean Profit	$11,753			

	B	C
17	Number that Show	=@PsiBinominal(TicketsPurchased,ProbabilityToShowUp)

	B	C
10	Ticket Demand	=@PsiNormal(E10,F10)
11	Demand (rounded)	=@ROUND(SimulatedTicketDemand,0)

Range Name	Cell
AvailableSeats	C4
AverageFare	C6
BumpingCost	F21
CostOfBumping	C7
Demand	C11
FixedCost	C5
MeanDeniedBoarding	C24
MeanFilled Seats	C23
MeanProfit	C25
NumberDeniedBoarding	C21
NumberOfFilledSeats	C20
NumberThatShow	C17
ProbabilityToShowUp	F17
Profit	F23
ReservationsToAccept	C13
SimulatedTicketDemand	C10
TicketRevenue	F20
TicketsPurchased	E17

	B	C
20	Number of Filled Seats	=MIN(AvailableSeats,NumberThatShow) + @PsiOutput()
21	Number Denied Boarding	=MAX(0,NumberThatShow - AvailableSeats) + @PsiOutput()
22		
23	Mean Filled Seats	=@PsiMean(C20)
24	Mean Denied Boarding	=@PsiMean(C21)
25	Mean Profit	=@PsiMean(F23)

	E	F
20	Ticket Revenue	=AverageFare*NumberOfFilledSeats
21	Bumping Cost	=CostOfBumping*NumberDeniedBoarding
22	Fixed Cost	=FixedCost
23	Profit	=TicketRevenue - BumpingCost - FixedCost + @PsiOutput()

Having three measures of performance means that the simulation model needs three results cells.

Each trial of the computer simulation will correspond to one day's flight. There are two random inputs associated with each flight, namely, the number of customers requesting reservations (abbreviated as Ticket Demand in cell B10) and the number of customers who actually arrive to take the flight (abbreviated as Number That Show in cell B17). Thus, the two uncertain variable cells in this model are SimulatedTicketDemand (C10) and NumberThatShow (C17).

Since the analytics group has estimated that the number of customers requesting reservations has a normal distribution with a mean of 195 and a standard deviation of 30, this information has been entered into cells D10:F10. The Normal Distribution dialog box (shown earlier in Figure 15.20) then has been used to enter this distribution with these parameters into SimulatedTicketDemand (C10). Because the normal distribution is a continuous distribution, whereas the number of reservations must have an integer value, Demand (C11) uses Excel's ROUND function to round the number in SimulatedTicketDemand (C10) to the nearest integer.

page 686

The random input for the second uncertain variable cell NumberThatShow (C17) depends on two key quantities. One is TicketsPurchased (E17), which is the minimum of Demand (C11) and ReservationsToAccept (C13). The other key quantity is the probability that an individual making a reservation actually will show up to take the flight. This probability has been set at 80 percent in ProbabilityToShowUp (F17) since this is the *average* percentage of those who have shown up for the flight in recent months.

Excel Tip The Excel function ROUND(*x,* 0) rounds the value *x* to the nearest integer. The zero specifies that 0 digits after the decimal point should be included when rounding.

However, the *actual* percentage of those who show up on any particular day may vary somewhat on either side of this average percentage. Therefore, even though NumberThatShow (C17) would be

expected to be fairly close to the product of cells E17 and F17, there will be some variation according to some probability distribution. What is the appropriate distribution for this uncertain variable cell? Section 15.6 will describe the characteristics of various distributions. The one that has the characteristics to fit this uncertain variable cell turns out to be the *binomial distribution.*

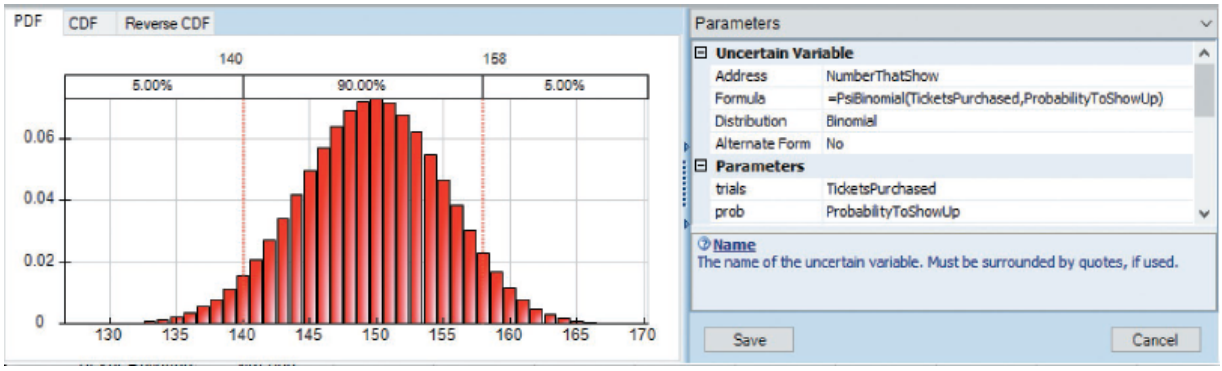
As indicated in Section 15.6, the binomial distribution gives the distribution of the number of times a particular event occurs out of a certain number of opportunities. In this case, the *event* of interest is a passenger showing up to take the flight. The *opportunity* for this event to occur arises when a customer makes a reservation for the flight. These opportunities are conventionally referred to as *trials* (not to be confused with a trial of a computer simulation). The binomial distribution assumes that the trials are statistically independent and that, on each trial, there is a fixed probability (80 percent in this case) that the event will occur. The parameters of the distribution are this fixed probability and the number of trials.

These characteristics of the binomial distribution are just what is needed for the uncertain variable cell NumberThatShow (C17).

Figure 15.23 displays the Binomial Distribution dialog box that enters this distribution into NumberThatShow (C17) by referencing the parameters TicketsPurchased (E17) and ProbabilityToShowUp (F17). The actual value in Trials for the binomial distribution will vary from simulation trial to simulation trial because it depends on the number of tickets purchased which in turn depends on the ticket demand which is random. Analytic Solver therefore must determine the value for TicketsPurchased (E17) *before* it can randomly generate NumberThatShow (C17). Fortunately, Analytic Solver automatically takes care of the order in which to generate the various uncertain variable cells so that this is not a problem.

FIGURE 15.23

A binomial distribution with parameters TicketsPurchased (E17) and ProbabilityToShowUp (F17) is being entered into the uncertain variable cell NumberThatShow (C17).



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The equations entered into all the output cells, results cells, and statistic cells are given at the bottom of Figure 15.22.

Here is a summary of the key cells in this model.

Uncertain variable cells: SimulatedTicketDemand (C10) and NumberThatShow (C17)

Decision variable: ReservationsToAccept (C13)

Results cells: Profit (F23), NumberOfFilledSeats (C20), and NumberDeniedBoarding (C21)

Statistic cells: MeanFilledSeats (C23), MeanDeniedBoarding (C24), and MeanProfit (C25)

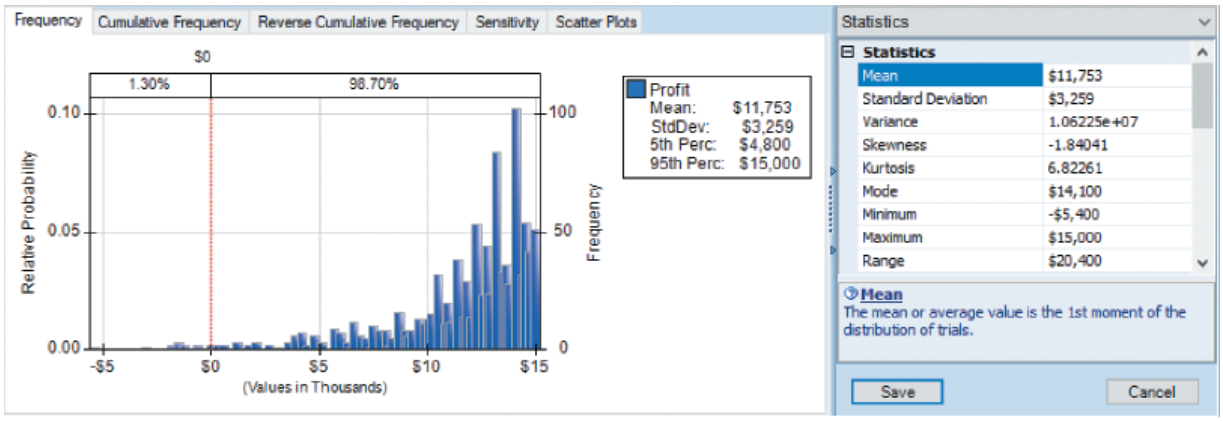
(See Section 15.1 for the details regarding how to define uncertain variable cells, results cells, and statistic cells.)

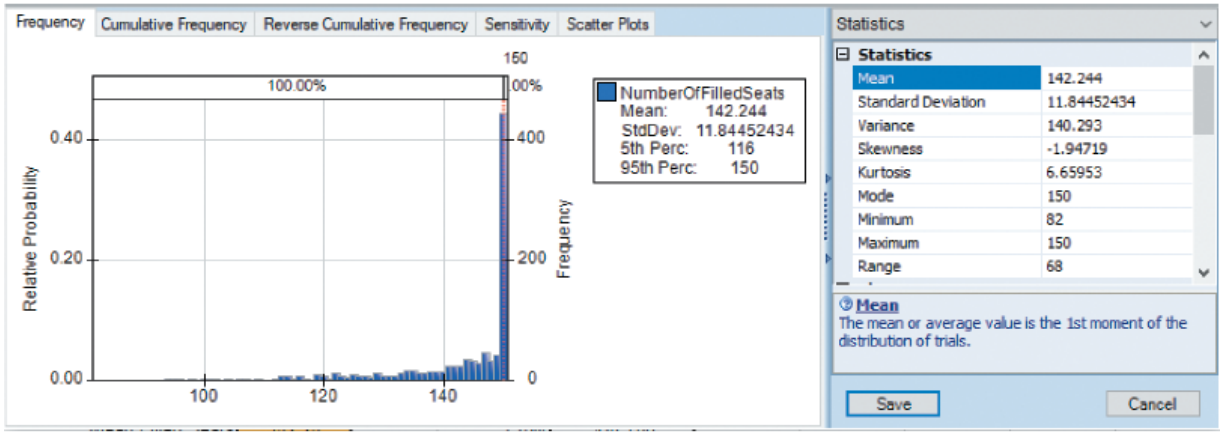
The Simulation Results

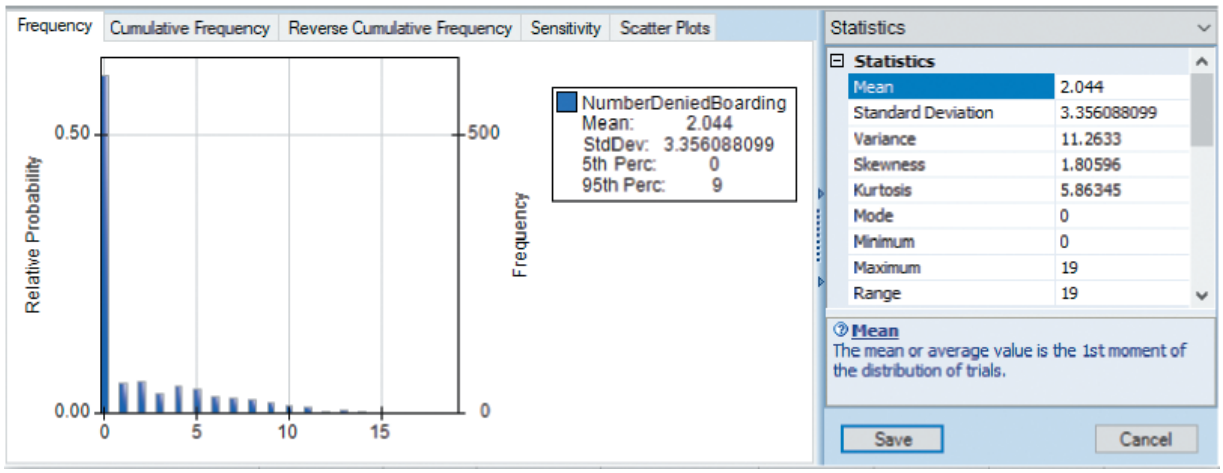
Figure 15.24 shows the frequency chart obtained for each of the three results cells after applying computer simulation for 1,000 trials to the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.22, with ReservationsToAccept (C13) set at 190.

FIGURE 15.24

The frequency charts and statistics tables that summarize the results for the respective results cells—Profit (F23), NumberOfFilled-Seats (C20), and NumberDeniedBoarding (C21)—from running the simulation model in Figure 15.22 for the Transcontinental Airlines overbooking problem. The percentages above the first frequency chart reveal that 98.7 percent of the trials resulted in a positive profit.







The profit results estimate that the mean profit per flight would be $11,753. However, this mean is a little less than the profits that had the highest frequencies. The reason is that a small number of trials had profits far below the mean, including even a few that incurred losses, which dragged the mean down somewhat. By setting the cutoff at 0, the percentages above the profit chart indicate that 98.7 percent of the trials resulted in a profit for that day's flight.

The frequency chart for NumberOfFilledSeats (C20) indicates that almost half of the 1,000 trials resulted in all 150 seats being filled. Furthermore, most of the remaining trials had at least 130 seats filled. The fact that the mean of 142.244 is so close to 150 shows that a policy of accepting 190 reservations would do an excellent job of filling seats.

The price that would be paid for filling seats so well is that a few customers would need to be bumped from some of the flights. The frequency chart for NumberDeniedBoarding (C21) indicates that this occurred about 40 percent of the time. On nearly all of these trials, the number ranged between 1 and 10. Considering that no customers were denied boarding for about 60 percent of the trials, the mean number is only 2.044.

Although these results suggest that a policy of accepting 190 reservations would be an attractive option for the most part, they do not demonstrate that this is necessarily the best option. Additional simulation runs are needed with other numbers entered in ReservationsTo-Accept (C13) to pin down the optimal value of this decision variable. This can be done fairly easily with trial-and-error. We also will demonstrate how to do this efficiently with the help of a parameter analysis table in Section 15.7.

We will return to this example in Section 15.7 to further evaluate how many reservations to accept.

Review *Questions*

. What is meant by *revenue management* in the travel industry?

. In the pioneering application of management science to revenue management at American Airlines, what increase in annual revenues was achieved?
. What problem is being addressed by the analytics group at Transcontinental Airlines in this section's example?
. What trade-off must be considered in addressing this problem?
. What is the decision variable for this problem?
. What quantities appear in the results cells of the spreadsheet model for this problem?
. What quantities appear in the uncertain variable cells of the spreadsheet model?
. What are the parameters of a binomial distribution?
. Did the simulation results obtained in this section determine how many reservations should be accepted for the flight under consideration?

15.6 CHOOSING THE RIGHT DISTRIBUTION

As mentioned in Section 15.1, Analytic Solver's **Distributions dialog box** provides a wealth of choices. Any of several dozen probability distributions can be selected as the one to be entered into any uncertain variable cell. In the preceding sections, we have illustrated the use of five of these distributions (the integer uniform, uniform, triangular, normal, and binomial distributions). However, not much was said about *why* any particular distribution was chosen.

In this section, we focus on the issue of how to choose the right distribution. We begin by surveying the characteristics of many of the distributions and how these characteristics help to identify the best choice. We next describe a special feature of Analytic Solver for creating one of the eight available custom distributions when none of the other choices in the Distributions menu will do. We then return to the case study presented in Section 15.1 to illustrate another special feature of Analytic Solver. When historical data are available, this

feature will identify which of the available distributions provides the best fit to these data while also estimating the parameters of this distribution. If you do not like this choice, it will even identify which of the distributions provides the second best fit, the third best fit, and so on.

Characteristics of the Available Distributions

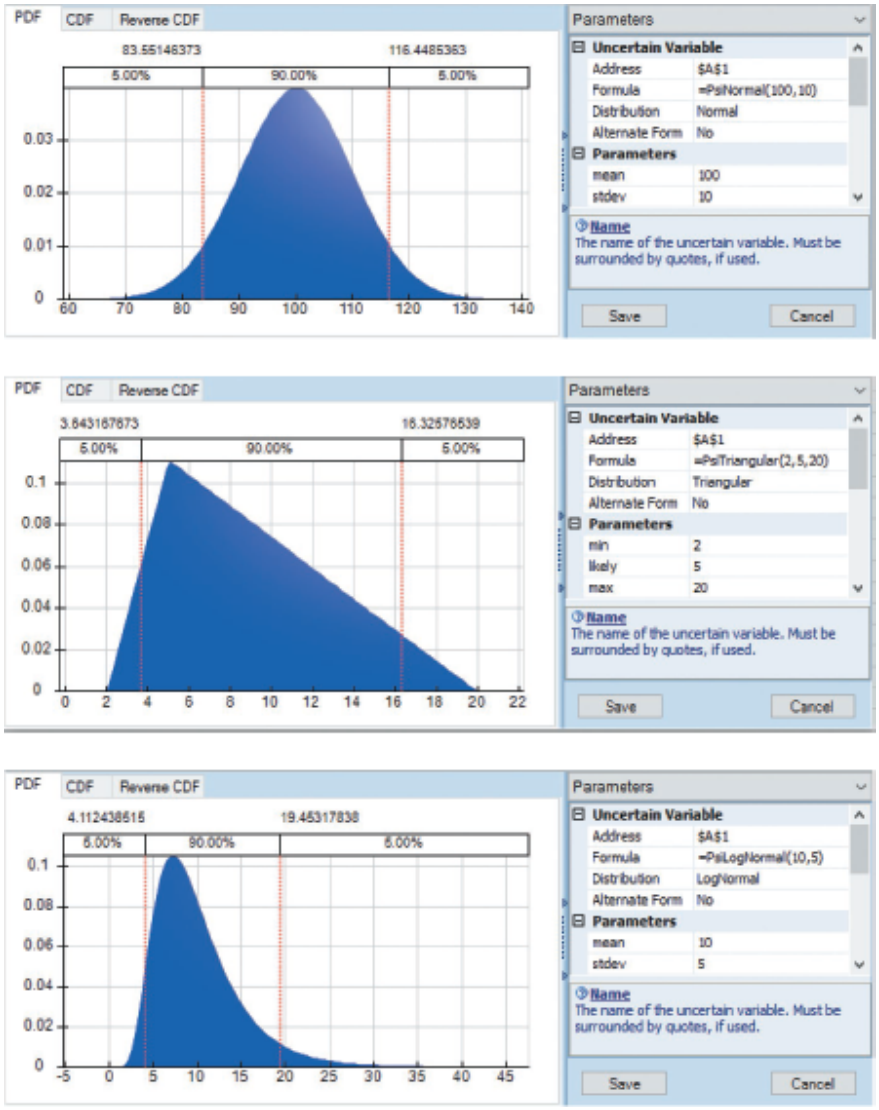
The probability distribution of any random variable describes the relative likelihood of the possible values of the random variable. A *continuous* distribution is used if *any* values are possible, including both integer and fractional numbers, over the entire range of possible values. A *discrete* distribution is used if only certain specific values (e.g., only the integer numbers over some range) are possible. However, if the only possible values are integer numbers over a relatively broad range, a continuous distribution may be used as an approximation by rounding any fractional value to the nearest integer. (This approximation was used in cells C10:C11 of the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.22.) Analytic Solver's Distributions menu includes both continuous and discrete distributions. We will begin by looking at the continuous distributions.

page 689

The right-hand side of Figure 15.25 shows the dialog box for three popular continuous distributions from the Common submenu of the Distributions menu. The dark figure in each dialog box displays a typical *probability density function* for that distribution. The height of the probability density function at the various points shows the relative likelihood of the corresponding values along the horizontal axis. Each of these distributions has a most likely value where the probability density function reaches a peak. Furthermore, all the other relatively high points are near the peak. This indicates that there is a tendency for one of the central values located near the most likely value to be the one that occurs. Therefore, these distributions are referred as *central-tendency distributions.* The characteristics of each of these distributions are listed on the left-hand side of Figure 15.25.

FIGURE 15.25

The characteristics and dialog boxes for three popular central-tendency distributions in Analytic Solver's Common submenu of the Distributions menu: (1) the normal distribution, (2) the triangular distribution, and (3) the lognormal distribution.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The Normal Distribution

The normal distribution is widely used because it describes so many natural phenomena. One reason that it arises so frequently is that the sum of many independent and identically distributed random variables tends to have a normal distribution (approximately) even when the

individual random variables do not. Using this distribution requires estimating the mean and the standard deviation. The mean coincides with the most likely value because this is a symmetric distribution. Thus, the mean is a very intuitive quantity that can be readily estimated, but the standard deviation is not. About two-thirds of the distribution lies within one standard deviation of the mean. Therefore, if historical data are not available for calculating an estimate of the standard deviation, a rough estimate can be elicited from a knowledgeable individual by asking for an amount such that the random value will be within that amount of the mean about two-thirds of the time.

One danger with using the normal distribution for some applications is that it can give negative values even when such values actually are impossible. Fortunately, it can give negative values with significant frequency only if the mean is less than three standard deviations. For example, consider the situation where a normal distribution was entered into an uncertain variable cell in Figure 15.22 to represent the number of customers requesting a reservation. A negative number would make no sense in this case, but this was no problem since the mean (195) was much larger than three standard deviations (3 × 30 = 90) so a negative value essentially would never occur. (When normal distributions were entered into uncertain variable cells in Figure 15.19 to represent cash flows, the means were small or even negative, but this also was no problem since cash flows can be either negative or positive.)

The normal distribution allows negative values, which is not appropriate for some applications.

The Triangular Distribution

A comparison of the shapes of the triangular and normal distributions in Figure 15.25 reveals some key differences. One is that the triangular distribution has a fixed minimum value and a fixed maximum value, whereas the normal distribution allows rare extreme values far into the tails. Another is that the triangular distribution can be asymmetric (as shown in the figure), because the most likely value does not need to be midway between the bounds, whereas the normal

distribution always is symmetric. This provides additional flexibility to the triangular distribution. Another key difference is that all its parameters—min (the minimum value), likely (the most likely value), and max (the maximum value)—are intuitive ones, so they are relatively easy to estimate.

The parameters of a triangular distribution are relatively easy to estimate because they are so intuitive.

These advantages have made the triangular distribution a popular choice for computer simulations. They are the reason why this distribution was used in previous examples to represent competitors' bids for a construction contract (in Figure 15.11) and activity times (in Figure 15.15).

However, the triangular distribution also has certain disadvantages. One is that, in many situations, rare extreme values far into the tails are possible, so it is quite artificial to have fixed minimum and maximum values. This also makes it difficult to develop meaningful estimates of the bounds. Still another disadvantage is that a curve with a gradually changing slope, such as the bell-shaped curve for the normal distribution, should tend to describe the true distribution more accurately than the straight line segments in the triangular distribution.

page 690

The Lognormal Distribution

The lognormal distribution shown at the bottom of Figure 15.25 combines some of the advantages of the normal and triangular distributions. It has a curve with a gradually changing slope. It also allows rare extreme values on the high side. At the same time, it does not allow negative values, so it automatically fits situations where this is needed. This is particularly advantageous when the mean is less than three standard deviations so the normal distribution occasionally would yield negative values.

This distribution always is "positively skewed," meaning that the long tail always is to the right. This forces the most likely value to be toward the left side (so the mean is on its right), so this distribution is less flexible than the triangular distribution. Another disadvantage is

that it has the same parameters as the normal distribution (the mean and the standard deviation), so the less intuitive one (the standard deviation) is difficult to estimate unless historical data are available.

The lognormal distribution has a long tail to the right but does not allow negative values to the left.

When a positively skewed distribution that does not allow negative values is needed, the lognormal distribution provides an attractive option. That is why this distribution frequently is used to represent stock prices or real estate prices.

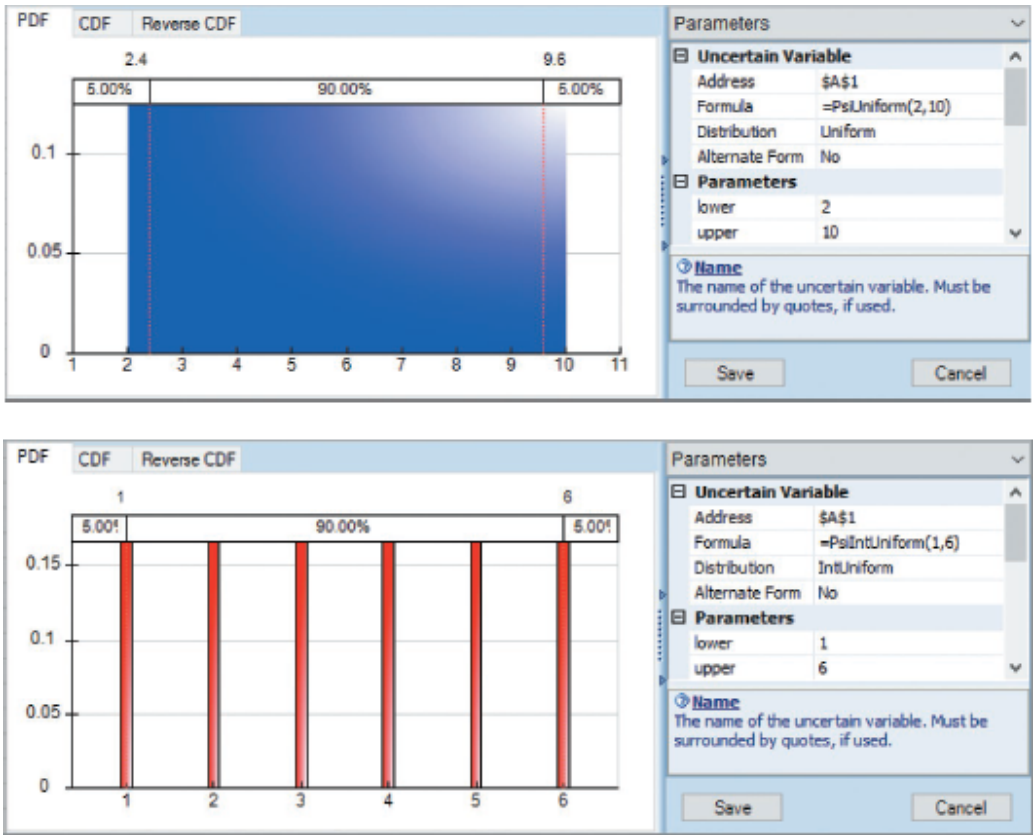
The Uniform and Integer Uniform Distributions

Although the preceding three distributions are all central-tendency distributions, the uniform distributions shown in Figure 15.26 definitely are not. They have a fixed minimum value and a fixed maximum value. Otherwise, they say that no value between these bounds is any more likely than any other possible value. Therefore, these distributions have more variability than the central-tendency distributions with the same range of possible values (excluding rare extreme values).

FIGURE 15.26

page 691

The characteristics and dialog boxes for the uniform distributions in Analytic Solver's Distributions menu.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The choice between these two distributions depends on which values between the minimum and maximum values are possible. If *any* values in this range are possible, including even *fractional* values, then the uniform distribution would be preferred over the integer uniform distribution. If only integer values are possible, then the integer uniform distribution would be the preferable one.

Either of these distributions is a particularly convenient one because it has only two parameters (lower and upper limit) and both are very intuitive. These distributions receive considerable use for this reason. Earlier in this chapter, the integer uniform distribution was used to represent the demand for a newspaper (in Figure 15.1), whereas the uniform distribution was used to generate the bid for a construction project by one competitor (in Figure 15.11).

The disadvantage of this distribution is that it usually is only a rough approximation of the true distribution. It is uncommon for either the minimum value or the maximum value to be just as likely as any

other value between these bounds while any value barely outside these bounds is impossible.

The uniform distribution is easy to use but usually is only a rough approximation of the true distribution.

The Exponential Distribution

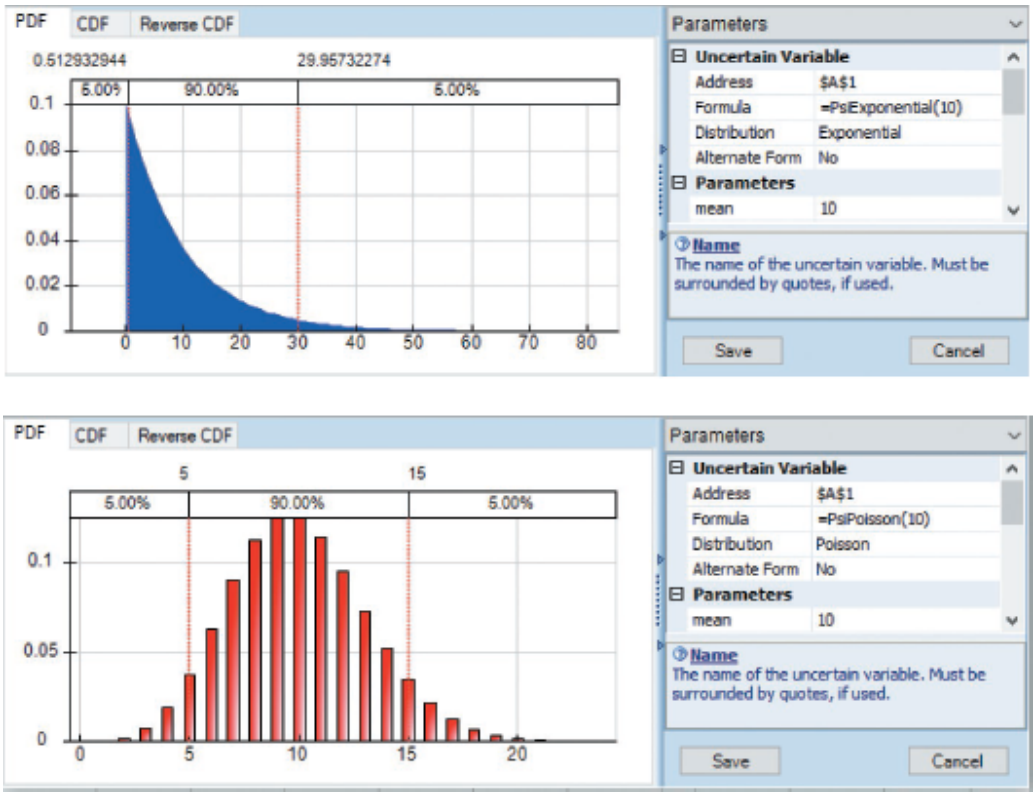
If you have studied Chapter 13 on queueing models, you hopefully will recall that the most commonly used queueing models assume that the time between consecutive arrivals of customers to receive a particular service has an exponential distribution. The reason for this assumption is that, in most such situations, the arrivals of customers are random events and the exponential distribution is the probability distribution of the time between random events. Section 13.1 describes this property of the exponential distribution in some detail.

As first depicted in Figure 13.3, this distribution has the unusual shape shown in Figure 15.27. In particular, the peak is at 0 but there is a long tail to the right. This indicates that the most likely times are short ones well below the mean but that very long times also are possible. This is the nature of the time between random events.

FIGURE 15.27

page 692

The characteristics and dialog boxes for two distributions that involve random events. These distributions in Analytic Solver's Distributions menu are (1) the exponential distribution and (2) the Poisson distribution.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Since the only parameter is the mean time until the next random event occurs, this distribution is a relatively easy one to use.

The Poisson Distribution

Although the exponential distribution (like most of the preceding ones) is a continuous distribution, the Poisson distribution is a discrete distribution. The only possible values are nonnegative integers: 0, 1, 2 . . . . However, it is natural to pair this distribution with the exponential distribution for the following reason. If the time between consecutive events has an exponential distribution (i.e., the events are occurring at random), then the number of events that occur within a certain period of time has a Poisson distribution. This distribution has some other applications as well.

When considering the number of events that occur within a certain period of time, the mean to be entered into the one parameter field in

the dialog box should be the average number of events that occur within that period of time.

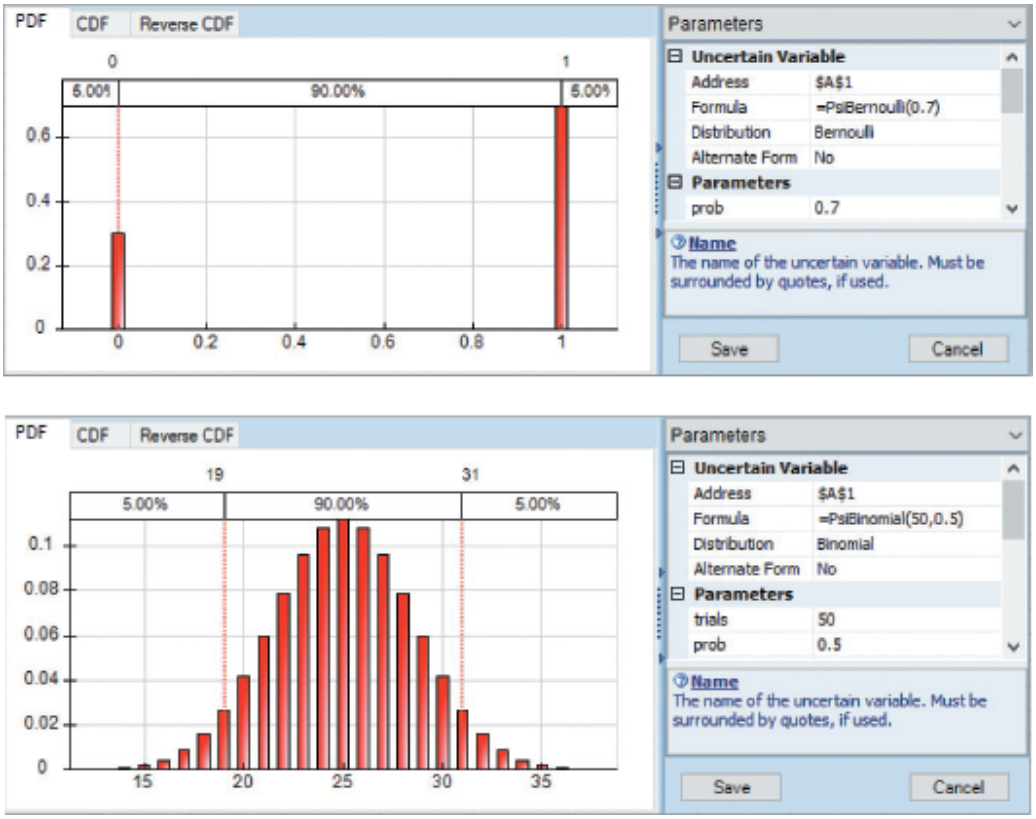
The Bernoulli and Binomial Distributions

The Bernoulli distribution is a very simple discrete distribution with only two possible values (1 or 0) as shown in Figure 15.28. It is used to simulate whether a particular event occurs or not. The only parameter of the distribution is the probability that the event occurs. The Bernoulli distribution gives a value of 1 (representing yes) with this probability; otherwise, it gives a value of 0 (representing no).

FIGURE 15.28

page 693

The characteristics and dialog boxes for the Bernoulli and binomial distributions in Analytic Solver's Distributions menu.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc. Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The binomial distribution is an extension of the Bernoulli distribution for when an event might occur a number of times. The binomial distribution, as shown in Figure 15.28, gives the probability distribution of the number of *times* a particular event occurs, given the number of independent opportunities (called trials) for the event to occur, where the probability of the event occurring in a given trial (as specified by the Bernoulli distribution) remains the same from trial to trial. For example, if the event of interest is getting heads on the flip of a coin, the binomial distribution (with Prob. = 0.5) gives the distribution of the number of heads in a given number of flips of the coin. Each flip constitutes a trial where there is an opportunity for the event (heads) to occur with a fixed probability (0.5). The binomial distribution is equivalent to the Bernoulli distribution when the number of trials is equal to 1.

You have seen another example in the preceding section when the binomial distribution was entered into the uncertain variable cell NumberThatShow (C17) in Figure 15.22. In this airline overbooking example, the events are customers showing up for the flight and the trials are customers making reservations, where there is a fixed probability that a customer making a reservation actually will arrive to take the flight.

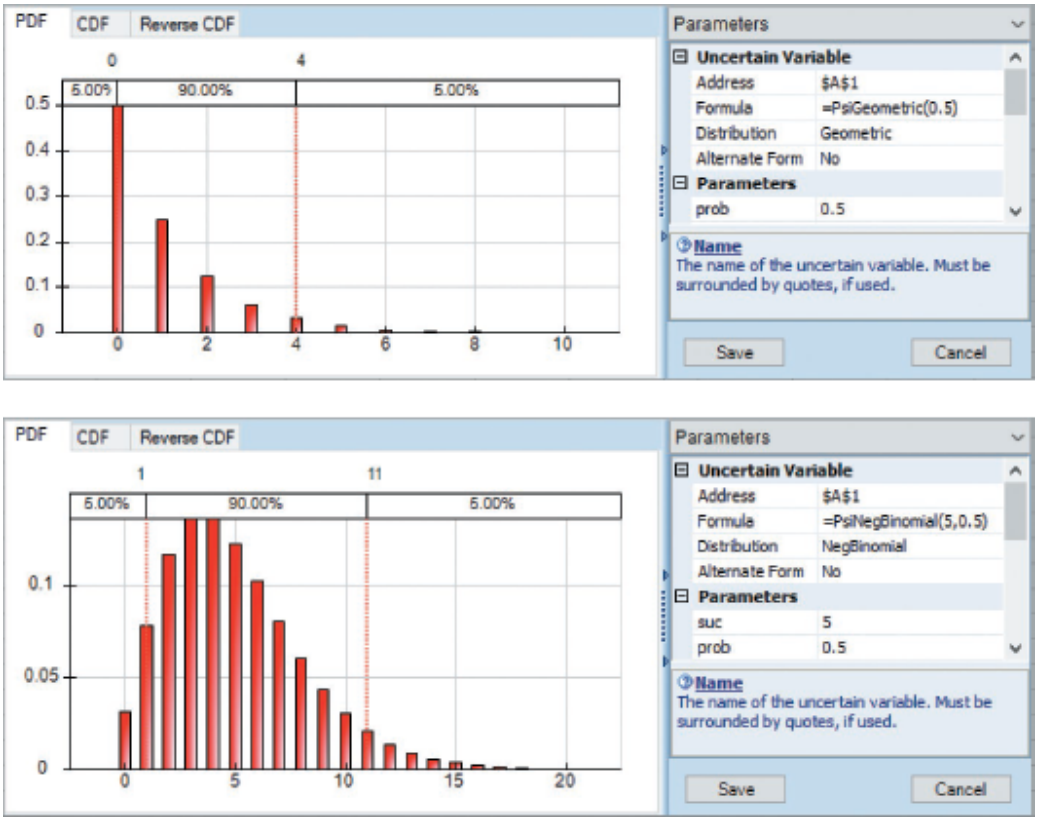
The only parameters for this distribution are the number of trials and the probability of the event occurring on a given trial.

The Geometric and Negative Binomial Distributions

These two distributions displayed in Figure 15.29 are related to the binomial distribution because they again involve trials where there is a fixed probability on each trial that the event will occur. The *geometric distribution* gives the distribution of the number of trials until the event occurs for the first time. After entering a positive integer into the suc field in its dialog box, the *negative binomial distribution* gives the distribution of the number of trials until the event occurs the number of times specified in the suc field (suc is the number of successful events that must occur). Thus, suc is a parameter for this distribution and the fixed probability of the event occurring on a given trial is a parameter for both distributions.

FIGURE 15.29

The characteristics and dialog boxes for two distributions that involve the number of trials until events occur. These distributions in Analytic Solver's Distributions menu are (1) the geometric distribution and (2) the negative binomial distribution.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

To illustrate these distributions, suppose you are again interested in the event of getting heads on a flip of a coin (a trial). The geometric distribution (with Prob. = 0.5) gives the distribution of the number of flips until the first head occurs. If you want five heads, the negative binomial distribution (with Prob. = 0.5 and suc = 5) gives the distribution of the number of flips until heads have occurred five times.

Similarly, consider a production process with a 50 percent yield, so each unit produced has an 0.5 probability of being acceptable. The geometric distribution (with Prob. = 0.5) gives the distribution of the number of units that need to be produced to obtain one acceptable

unit. If a customer has ordered five units, the negative binomial distribution (with Prob. = 0.5 and suc = 5) gives the distribution of the production run size that is needed to fulfill this order.

Other Distributions

The Distributions menu includes many other distributions as well, such as beta, gamma, Weibull, Pert, Pareto, Erlang, and many more. These distributions are not as widely used in computer simulations, so they will not be discussed further.

There is also a Custom submenu that enables you to design your own distribution when none of the other distributions will do. The next subsection will focus on how this is done.

The Custom Distribution

Of the several dozen probability distributions included in the Distributions menu, most of them are standard types that might be discussed in a course on probability and statistics. In most cases, one of these standard distributions will be just what is needed for an uncertain variable cell. However, unique circumstances occasionally arise where none of the standard distributions fit the situation. This is where the distributions in the Custom submenu of the Distributions menu enter the picture.

The custom distributions actually are not probability distributions until you make them one. Rather, choosing a member of the Custom submenu triggers a process that enables you to custom-design your own probability distribution to fit almost any unique situation you might encounter.

Choosing a custom distribution from the Custom submenu enables you to custom-design your own distribution to fit a special situation.

There are 11 choices in the Custom submenu: Cumul (short for cumulative), CumulD, Discrete, DisUniform (short for discrete uniform), General, Histogram, Metalog, MetalogSPD, Resample, Sip, and Slurp. The *custom cumulative, custom general,* and *custom histogram* distributions are all similar in that they are all used to create a continuous distribution with a fixed minimum and maximum value. With

the *custom cumulative* distribution, you enter several values in between the minimum and maximum, along with the corresponding cumulative probability at those values. The *custom cumulativeD* is similar, except the probabilities are for the reverse cumulative probability, entered in descending order. With the *custom general* distribution, you also enter several values in between the minimum and maximum, but instead of cumulative probabilities, you enter relative weights that represent how likely it should be for outcomes near the listed values to occur (relative to outcomes near the other values in the list). With the *custom histogram* distribution, the range between the minimum and maximum is divided into a number of equal-sized segments and weights are provided for each segment to indicate how likely it should be (relative to the other segments) for a random outcome to fall within that segment.

The *custom discrete* and the *custom discrete uniform* distributions are similar. With both, you enter a set of discrete values and these values are assumed to be the only possible outcomes. With the *custom discrete* distribution, each value (or outcome) is assigned its own probability, whereas the *custom discrete uniform* distribution assumes that all the discrete values have the same probability.

The *custom metalog* distributions are very flexible distributions, allowing nearly any shape, and can be bounded or unbounded. They can be useful for fitting a distribution to historical data.

Finally, the *custom resample, custom sip,* and *custom slurp* distributions are used when you have a set of historical data and you want the uncertain variable to sample directly from the historical data. This might be appropriate if you expect the future to behave similarly to the past.

We will show two examples that use distributions from the Custom submenu. The first utilizes the *custom discrete* distribution whereas the second utilizes the *custom general* distribution.

In the first example, a company is developing a new product but it is unclear which of three production processes will be needed to produce the product. The unit production cost will be $10, $12, or $14,

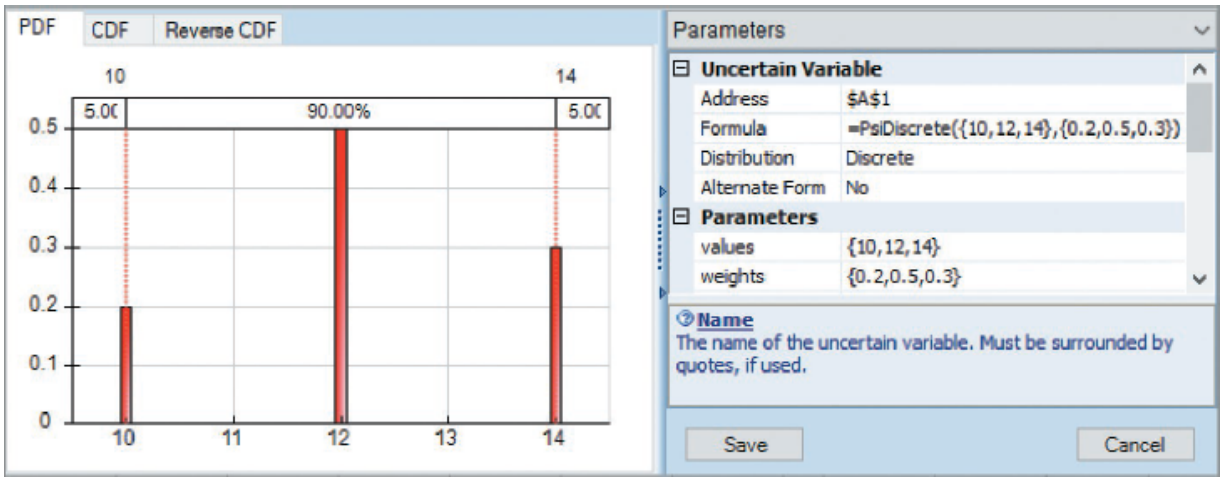
depending on which process is needed. The probabilities for these individual discrete values of the cost are the following.

20 percent chance of $10
50 percent chance of $12
30 percent chance of $14

To enter this distribution, first choose Discrete from the Custom submenu under the Distributions dialog box. Each discrete value and weight (expressed as a decimal number representing the probability) is then entered in the values and weights boxes as a list within curly brackets, as shown on the right side of Figure 15.30.

FIGURE 15.30

This dialog box illustrates how Analytic Solver's *custom discrete* distribution can enable you to custom-design your own distribution by entering a set of discrete values and their weights.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The second example also involves a company that is developing a new product. However, the complication in this case is that the company's management has learned that another firm is developing a competitive product. It is unclear which company will be able to bring

its product to market first and thereby capture most of the sales. In this light, here are the predicted thousands of sales for our company's new product.

0–20 (with 10 the most likely) if the competitive product comes to market first.

20–30 (all equally likely) if both products reach the market at the same time.

30–50 (with 40 the most likely) if our company's product comes to market first.

The two products are believed to have an equal chance of reaching the market first. Each of these two cases is considered about three times as likely as both products reaching the market at the same time.

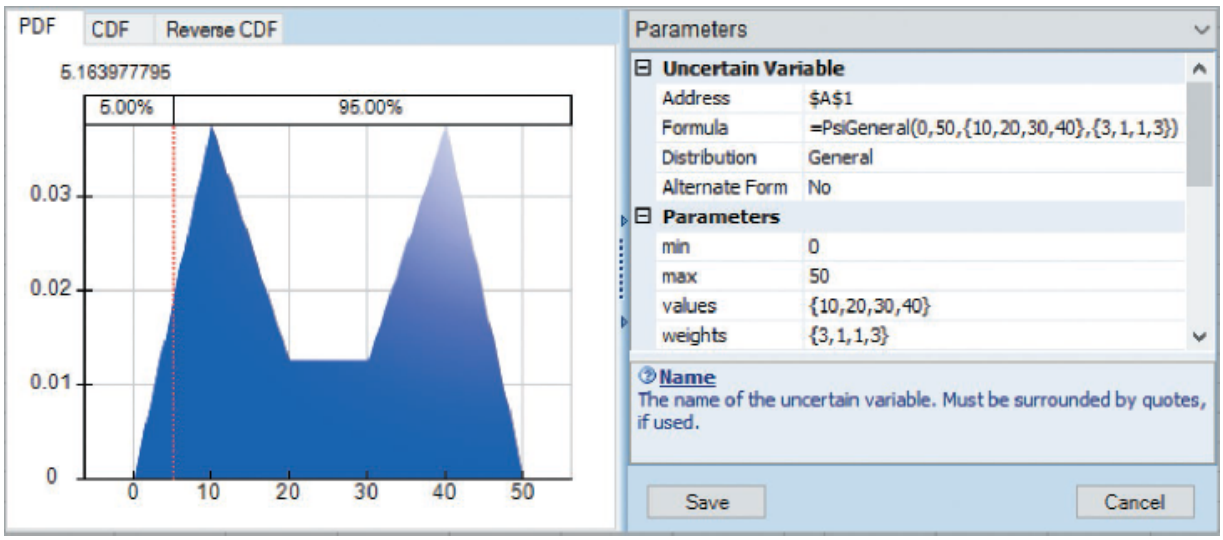
To enter this distribution, first choose General from the Custom submenu of the Distributions menu to bring up the dialog box shown in Figure 15.31. The parameters of the distribution then are entered on the right side of the dialog box. The first two parameters, min = 0 and max = 50, are used to specify the smallest and largest possible value for sales (in thousands). In the values box, any number of values between the minimum and maximum can be entered as a list inside of curly brackets. For each value in this list, a corresponding weight needs to be entered into the weights box. The weight is a relative value used to specify the likelihood of each value relative to the other values in the list. Since sales around 10,000 or 40,000 are each about three times as likely as sales between 20,000 and 30,000, the weights for the values {10, 20, 30, 40} are entered as {3, 1, 1, 3}. The net result is what is known as a *bimodal distribution,* with two distinct peaks, as shown in the chart on the left side of the dialog box.

FIGURE 15.31

page 696

This dialog box illustrates how Analytic Solver's *custom general* distribution can enable you to custom-design your own continuous distribution. The minimum and maximum value are

specified as 0 and 50. Values near 10 and 40 are roughly three times as likely to occur as values near 20 or 30.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Identifying the Continuous Distribution That Best Fits Historical Data

We now have at least mentioned most of the probability distributions in the Distributions menu and have described the characteristics of many of them. This brings us to the question of how to identify which distribution is best for a particular uncertain variable cell. When historical data are available, Analytic Solver provides a powerful feature for doing this by using the Fit button on the Analytic Solver ribbon. We will illustrate this feature next by returning to the case study presented in Section 15.1.

If you don't know which continuous distribution should be chosen for an uncertain variable cell, Analytic Solver can do it for you if historical data are available.

Recall that one of the most popular newspapers that Freddie the newsboy sells from his newsstand is the daily *Financial Journal.* Freddie purchases copies from his distributor early each morning. Since excess copies left over at the end of the day represent a loss for Freddie, he is trying to decide what his order quantity should be in the future. This led to the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.1 that was

shown earlier in Section 15.1. This model includes the uncertain variable cell Demand (C12). To get started, an integer uniform distribution between 40 and 70 has been entered into this uncertain variable cell.

To better guide his decision on what the order quantity should be, Freddie has been keeping a record of the *demand* (the number of customers requesting a copy) for this newspaper each day. Figure 15.32 shows a portion of the data he has gathered over the last 60 days in cells F6:F63, along with part of the original spreadsheet model from Figure 15.1. These data indicate a lot of variation in sales from day to day—ranging from about 40 copies to 70 copies. However, it is difficult to tell from these numbers which distribution in the Distributions menu best fits these data.

FIGURE 15.32

Cells F6:F65 contain the historical demand data that have been collected for the case study involving Freddie the newsboy that was introduced in Section 15.1. Columns B and C come from the simulation model for this case study in Figure 15.1.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**Freddie the Newsboy**					
2						
3			**Data**			Historical
4		Unit Sale Price	$2.50			Demand
5		Unit Purchase Cost	$1.50		Day	Data
6		Unit Salvage Value	$0.50		1	62
7					2	45
8			**Decision Variable**		3	59
9		Order Quantity	60		4	65
10					5	50
11			**Simulation**		6	64
12		Demand	44		7	56
13					8	51
14		Sales Revenue	$110.00		9	55
15		Purchasing Cost	$90.00		10	61
16		Salvage Value	$8.00		11	40
17					12	47
18		Profit	$28.00		13	63
19					14	68
20		Mean Profit	$46.45		15	67
21					16	67
60					55	41
61					56	42
62					57	64
63					58	45
64					59	59
65					60	70

Analytic Solver provides the following procedure for addressing this issue.

Procedure for Fitting the Best Distribution to Data

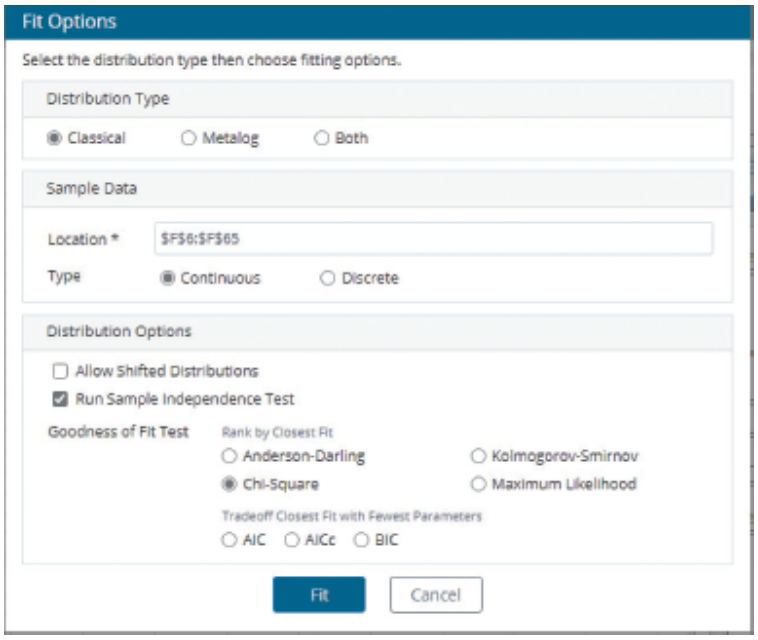
1. Gather the data needed to identify the best distribution to enter into an uncertain variable cell.
2. Enter the data into the spreadsheet containing your simulation model.

3. Select the cells containing the data.
4. Click the Fit button under Tools on the Analytic Solver tab, which brings up the Fit Options dialog box.
5. Make sure the Range box in this dialog box is correct for the range of the historical data in your worksheet.
6. Specify which type of distributions are being considered for fitting (continuous or discrete). page 697
7. Indicate whether to allow shifted distributions and whether to run a sample independence test.
8. Also use this dialog box to select which ranking method should be used to evaluate how well a distribution fits the data.
9. Click Fit, which brings up the Fit Results chart that identifies the distribution that best fits the data.
10. If desired, check the box to select distributions to view that are lower on the list on the left side of the dialog box. This identifies the other types of distributions (including their parameter values) that are next in line for fitting the data well.
11. After choosing the distribution (from steps 9 and 10) that you want to use, close the dialog box by using the close box in the upper-right-hand corner and then click Yes to accept the distribution.
12. Click the cell where you want the uncertain variable cell to be. This then enters the chosen distribution into the uncertain variable cell.

Since Figure 15.32 already includes the needed data in cells F6:F65, applying this procedure to Freddie's problem begins by selecting the data. Then clicking the Fit button brings up the Fit Options dialog box displayed in Figure 15.33. The range F6:F65 of the data in Figure 15.32 is already entered into the Range box of this dialog box. When deciding which type of distributions should be considered for fitting, the classical distribution type and the default option of continuous distributions have been selected here. Sales will always be integer, so discrete might seem the more logical choice. However, when all the integer values over a wide range are possible (all 31 integer values between 40 and 70 in this case), the form of the distribution begins to resemble a continuous distribution.

FIGURE 15.33

This Fit Options dialog box specifies (1) the range of the data in Figure 15.32 for the case study, (2) only continuous distributions will be considered, (3) shifted distributions will be allowed, (4) a sample independence test will be run, and (5) which ranking method will be used (the chi-square test) to evaluate how well each of the distributions fit the data.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

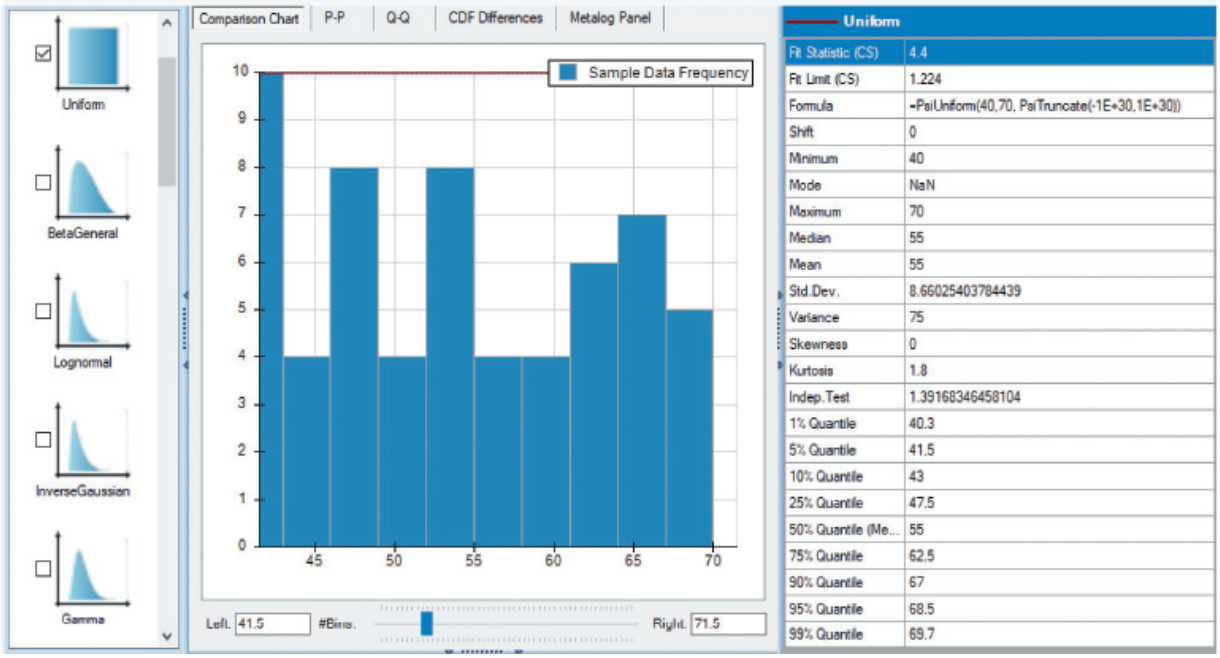
There are many more continuous distributions available in Analytic Solver than discrete distributions. Therefore, even when a discrete (or integer) distribution is needed, Analytic Solver may have a better chance of finding a continuous distribution that is a good fit. A continuous distribution can always be rounded to create a distribution that gives only integer values.

Furthermore, there are many more continuous distributions available in Analytic Solver than discrete distributions. Thus, there may be a better chance of finding a continuous distribution that is a good fit. This continuous distribution can then be made to give only integer values by rounding each number in the uncertain variable cell to the nearest integer (as was done in the airline overbooking example of Section 15.5 with the ticket demand in cell C11 of Figure 15.22). The chi-square test also has been selected for the ranking method.

Clicking Fit then brings up the Fit Results chart displayed in Figure 15.34.

FIGURE 15.34

This Fit Results dialog box identifies the continuous distributions that provide the best fit, ranked top-to-bottom from best to worst on the left side. For the distribution that provides the best fit (Uniform), the distribution is plotted (the horizontal line at the top of the chart) so that it can be compared with the frequency distribution of the historical demand data. The value of the Fit Statistic (chi-square) is 4.4.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The left side of the Fit Results chart in Figure 15.34 identifies the best-fitting distributions, ranked according to the Chi-Square test. This is a widely used test in statistics where smaller values indicate a better fit. It appears that the uniform distribution would be a good fit. In combination with the fact that demand actually must be integer, this confirms that the choice made in Freddie's original spreadsheet model in Figure 15.1 to enter the integer uniform distribution into the uncertain variable cell Demand (C12) was reasonable. In fact, if we had chosen Discrete instead of

Continuous as the type of distribution to fit in Figure 15.33, Analytic Solver would have found the integer uniform distribution to be the best fit. Choosing either Continuous or Discrete (or both) would have been reasonable in this case and would have led to the same type of distribution (uniform).

Review *Questions*

. How many probability distributions are available in Analytic Solver's Distributions menu?

. What is the difference between a continuous distribution and a discrete distribution?

. What is a possible danger with choosing the normal distribution to enter into an uncertain variable cell?

. What are some advantages of choosing the triangular distribution instead?

. How does the lognormal distribution compare with the normal and triangular distributions?

. Why is the uniform distribution sometimes a convenient choice for an uncertain variable cell?

. The binomial distribution gives the probability distribution of what?

. What does choosing one of the custom distributions from the Distributions menu enable you to do?

. What procedure does Analytic Solver provide for helping to identify the best distribution to enter into an uncertain variable cell?

15.7 DECISION MAKING WITH PARAMETER ANALYSIS REPORTS AND TREN D CHARTS

Many simulation models include at least one decision variable. For example, here are some of the decision variables encountered in this chapter.

The case study: OrderQuantity (C9) in Figure 15.1
Bidding example: OurBid (C25) in Figure 15.11
Overbooking example: ReservationsToAccept (C13) in Figure 15.22

In each of these cases, you have seen how well computer simulation with Analytic Solver can *evaluate* a particular value of the decision variable by providing a wealth of output for the results cell(s). However, in contrast to many of the techniques presented in previous chapters (including linear programming and decision analysis), this approach has not identified an *optimal solution* for the decision variable(s). Fortunately, Analytic Solver provides a way to systematically perform multiple simulations by using parameter cells. This makes it easy to identify at least an approximation of an optimal solution for problems with only one or two decision variables. In this section, we describe this approach and illustrate it by applying it in turn to the three decision variables listed above. (The next section will present still another approach, using the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for an optimal solution for simulation models.)

An intuitive approach for searching for an optimal solution is to use trial and error. Try different values of the decision variable(s), run a simulation for each, and see which one provides the best estimate of the chosen measure of performance. The interactive simulation mode in Analytic Solver makes this especially easy, since the results in the statistic cells are available immediately after changing the value of a decision variable. Using parameter cells allows you to do the same thing in a more systematic way. After defining a parameter cell, all the desired simulations are run and the results soon are displayed nicely in the **parameter analysis report**. If desired, you also can view an enlightening **trend chart**, which can provide additional details about the results.

parameter analysis report

An Analytic Solver module that systematically applies computer simulation over a range of values of one or two decision variables and then displays the results in a table.

trend chart

A chart that shows the trend of the values in a results cell as a decision variable increases.

If you have previously used parameter cells with the Solver in Analytic Solver to generate parameter analysis reports for performing sensitivity analysis systematically (as was done in Chapter 8), the parameter analysis reports in simulation models work in much the same way. Two is the maximum number of decision variables that can be varied simultaneously in a parameter analysis report.

page 700

Let us begin by returning to this chapter's case study and use a parameter cell to run multiple simulations.

A Parameter Analysis Report and Trend Chart for the Case Study

Recall that Freddie the newsboy wants to determine what his daily order quantity should be for copies of the *Financial Journal.* Figures 15.1–15.9 in Section 15.1 show the application of computer simulation for evaluating the option of using an order quantity of 60. The final estimate of the average daily profit that would be obtained with this order quantity is $46.45. As indicated in Figure 15.32, the number of copies that Freddie's customers want to purchase varies widely from day to day. The Fit Results chart in Figure 15.34 suggests that the probability distribution that best describes this variability is the integer uniform distribution between 40 and 70. Given such a high degree of variability, it is unclear where the order quantity should be set within the range between 40 and 70. Could an average daily profit larger than $46.45 be obtained by choosing an order quantity different from 60? Which order quantity between 40 and 70 would maximize the average daily profit?

To address these questions, it would seem sensible to begin by trying a sampling of possible order quantities, say, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, and 70. To do this, the first step is to define the decision variable being investigated—OrderQuantity (C9) in Figure 15.1—as a parameter cell by using the following procedure.

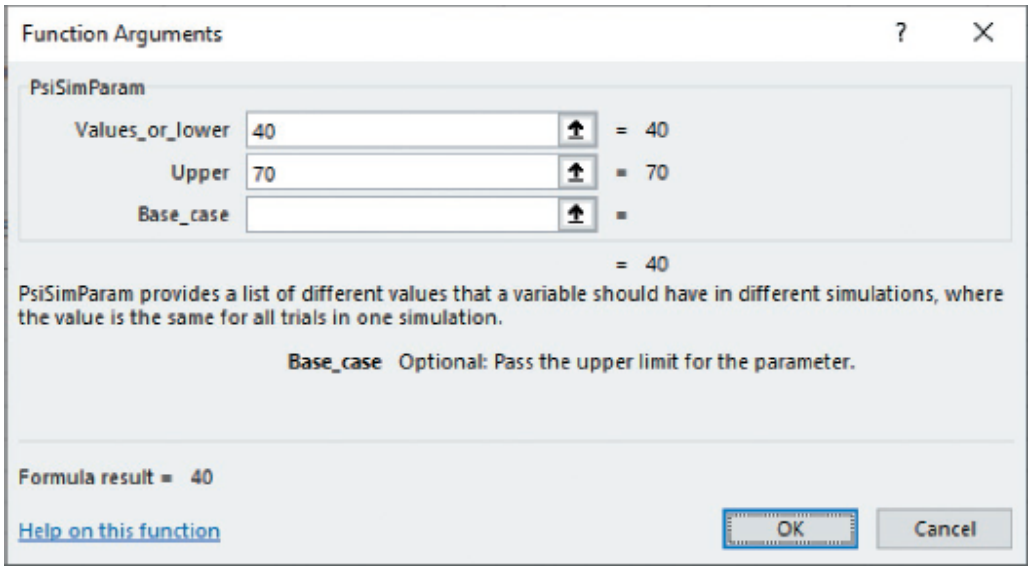
Procedure for Defining a Decision Variable as a Parameter Cell

1. Select the cell containing the decision variable by clicking on it.
2. Choose Simulation from the Parameters menu on the Analytic Solver tab.
3. Enter the lower limit and the upper limit of the range of values to be simulated for the decision variable.
4. Click on OK.

Figure 15.35 shows the application of this procedure to Freddie's problem. Since simulations will be run for order quantities ranging from 40 to 70, these limits for the range have been entered.

FIGURE 15.35

This parameter cell dialog box specifies the characteristics of the decision variable OrderQuantity (C9) in the simulation model in Figure 15.1 for the case study that involves Freddie the newsboy.



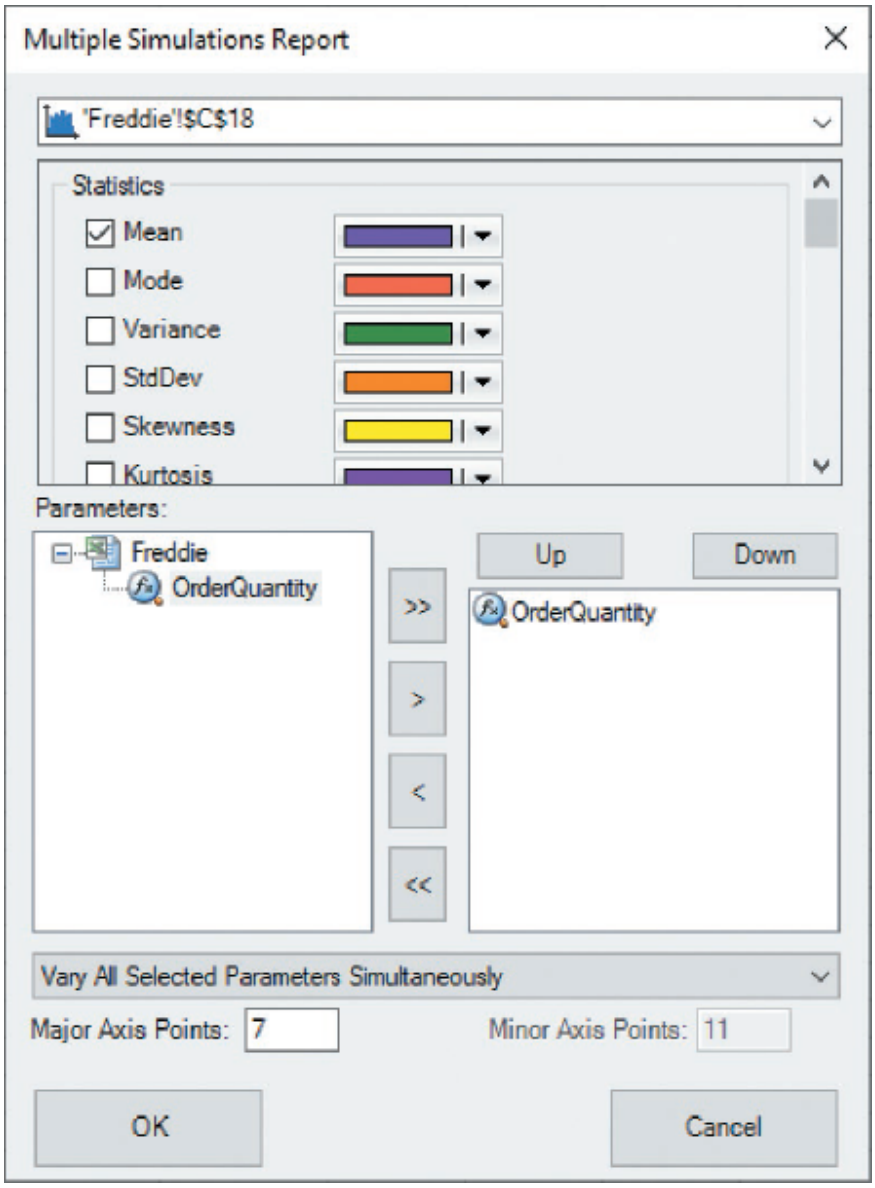
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Now we are ready to generate a parameter analysis report by running simulations for different values of the parameter cell. First choose Parameter Analysis from the Reports> Simulation menu on the Analytic Solver tab. This brings up the dialog box in Figure 15.36 that

allows you to specify which parameter cells to vary and which results to show after the simulations are run. The choice of which parameter cells to vary is made under Parameters in the bottom half of the dialog box. Clicking on (>>) will select all of the parameter cells defined so far (moving them to the box on the right). In this case, only one parameter has been defined, so this causes the single parameter cell (OrderQuantity) to appear on the right. If more parameter cells had been defined, particular parameter cells can be chosen for immediate analysis by clicking on them and using (>) to move these individual parameter cells to the list on the right.

FIGURE 15.36

This Parameter Analysis dialog box allows you to specify which parameter cells to vary and which results to show after the simulation run. Here the OrderQuantity (C9) parameter cell will be varied over seven different values and the value of the mean will be displayed for each of the seven simulation runs.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The choice of which simulation results to show as the parameter cell is varied is made in the upper half of the dialog box. By selecting the box next to Mean, the mean profit observed during the simulation run will be displayed for each different value of the parameter cell.

Finally, enter the number of Major Axis Points to specify how many different values of the parameter cell will be included in the parameter analysis report. The values will be spread evenly between the lower and upper values specified in the parameter cell dialog box in Figure 15.35. With seven major axis points, a lower value of 40, and an upper

value of 70, a simulation will be run with order quantities of 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, and 70. Clicking OK causes Analytic Solver to run each of these simulations.

After specifying the number of values of a parameter cell to consider, Analytic Solver distributes the values evenly over the range of values specified in the parameter cell dialog box.

After Analytic Solver runs the simulations, the parameter analysis report is created in a new spreadsheet as shown in Figure 15.37. For each of the order quantities shown in column A, column B gives the mean of the values of the results cell, Profit (C18), obtained in all the trials of that simulation run. Cells B2:B8 reveal that an order quantity of 55 achieved the largest mean profit of $47.26, while order quantities of 50 and 60 essentially tied for the second largest mean profit.

FIGURE 15.37

The parameter analysis report for the case study introduced in Section 15.1.

	A	B
1	**OrderQuantity**	**Mean**
2	40	$40.00
3	45	$44.03
4	50	$46.45
5	55	$47.26
6	60	$46.45
7	65	$44.03
8	70	$40.00

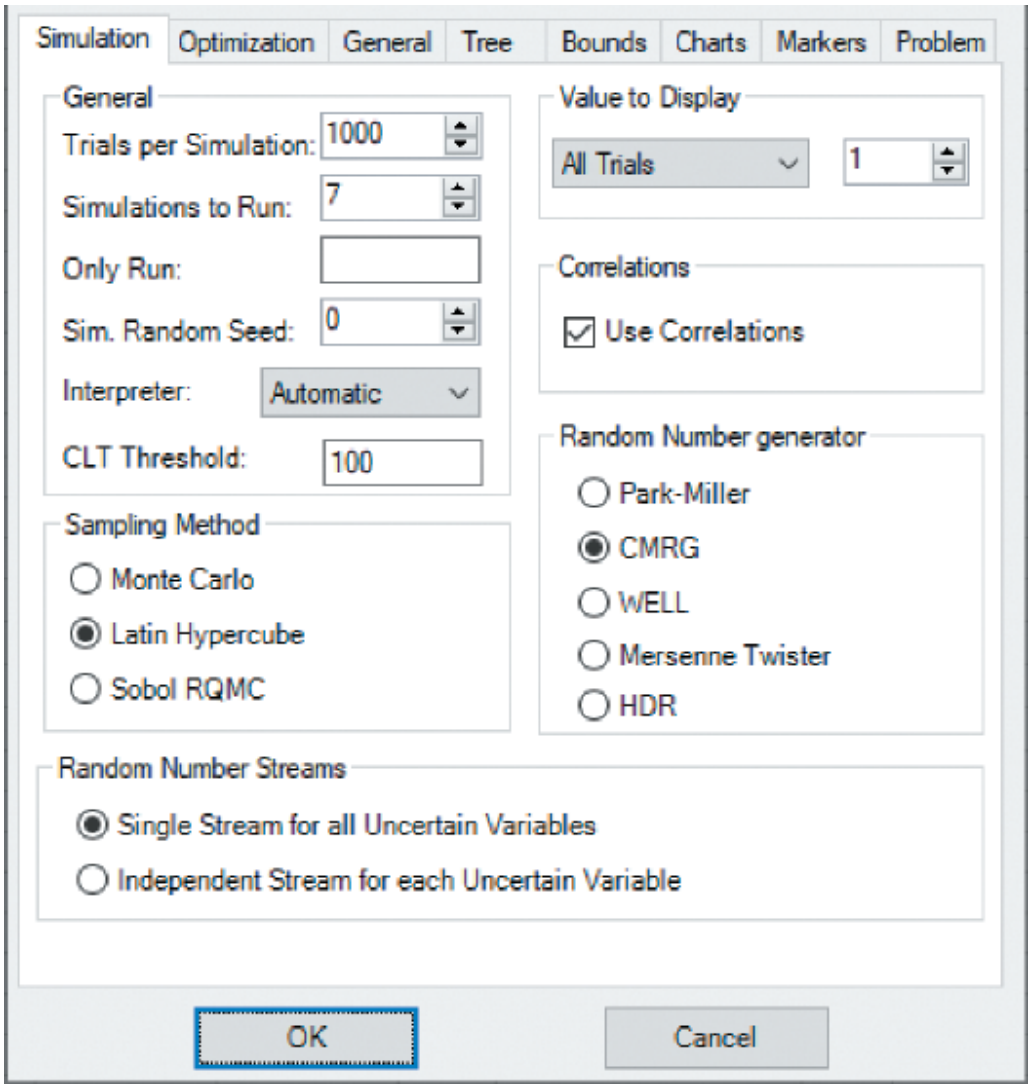
page 701

The sharp drop-off in mean profits on both sides of these order quantities virtually guarantees that the optimal order quantity lies between 50 and 60 (and probably close to 55). To pin this down better, the logical next step would be to generate another parameter analysis report that considers all integer order quantities between 50 and 60. You are asked to do this in Problem 15.14.

Analytic Solver can also generate a variety of charts that show the results over simulation runs for different values of a parameter cell. After defining a parameter cell, the number of its values to receive a simulation run needs to be specified. To do this, click on the Options button on the Analytic Solver ribbon and choose the simulation tab to bring up the Simulation Options dialog box shown in Figure 15.38. The desired number of values of the parameter cell to simulate then is entered in the *Simulations to Run* box. This number plays the same role as the number of Major Axis points in Figure 15.36 when generating a parameter analysis report. The resulting values of the parameter are spread evenly between the lower and upper values specified in the parameter cell dialog box in Figure 15.35. For example, with seven simulations to run (as specified in Figure 15.38), the order quantities once again will be 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, and 70.

FIGURE 15.38

This Simulation Options dialog box allows you to specify how many simulations to run before choosing a chart to show the results of running simulations for that number of different values of a parameter cell.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

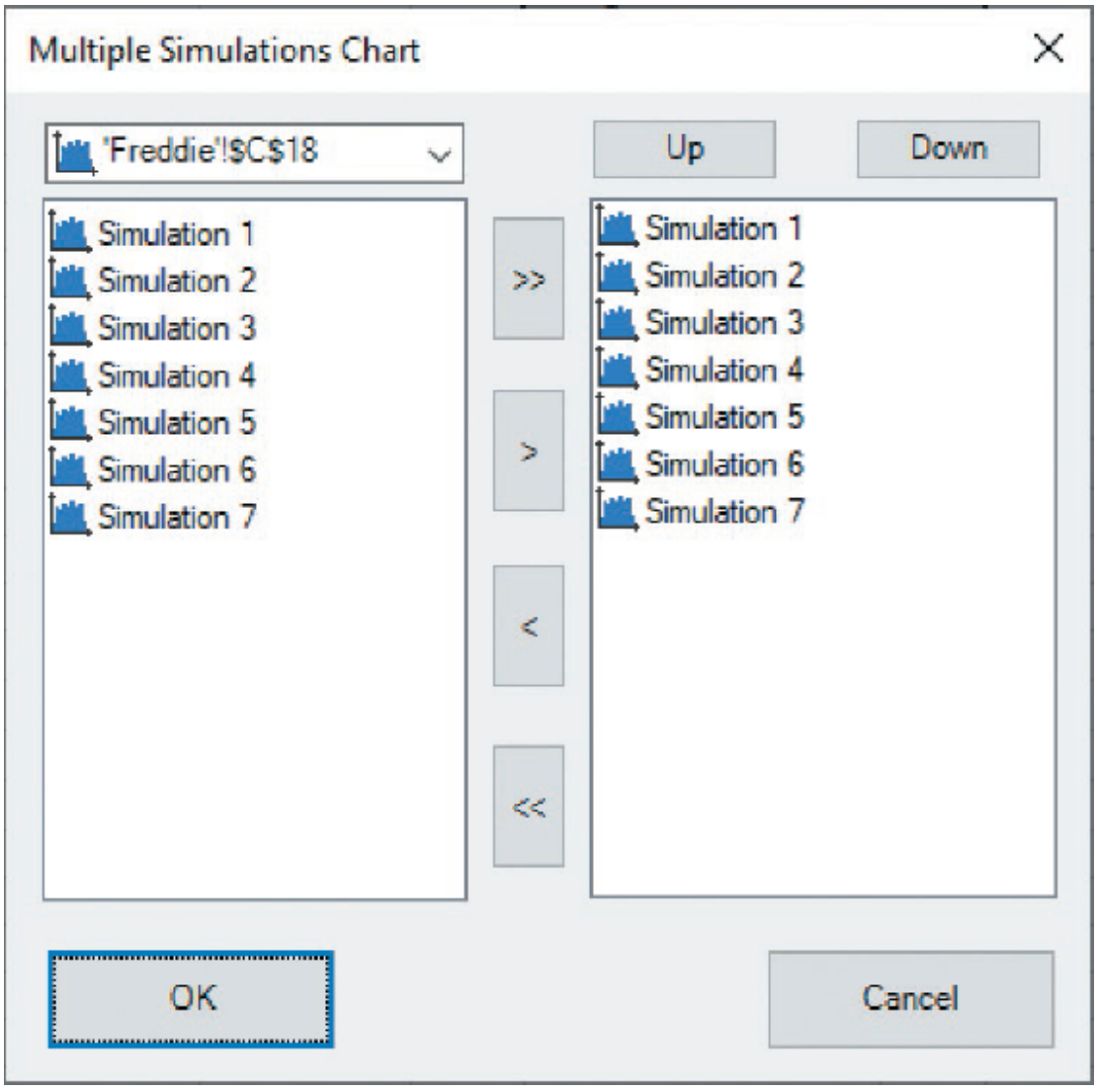
The report in Figure 15.37 is a one-dimensional parameter analysis report because the problem has only one decision variable. For problems where two decision variables have been defined as parameter cells, the resulting parameter analysis report will be a two-dimensional table, with one parameter changing in the rows and the other in the columns.

Once the number of simulations to run has been specified, a variety of charts can be generated by choosing a chart from the Charts>Multiple Simulations menu on the Analytic Solver ribbon. For example, choosing *Parameter Analysis* from this menu gives the same information as the parameter analysis report in Figure 15.37 in graphical form.

A particularly interesting type of chart is the *trend chart.* Choosing *Trend Chart* from Charts>Multiple Simulations brings up the dialog box shown in Figure 15.39. This dialog box is used to choose which of the simulations should appear in the trend chart. Clicking on (>>) specifies that all seven simulations should be shown in the trend chart. Clicking OK then generates the trend chart shown in Figure 15.40.

FIGURE 15.39

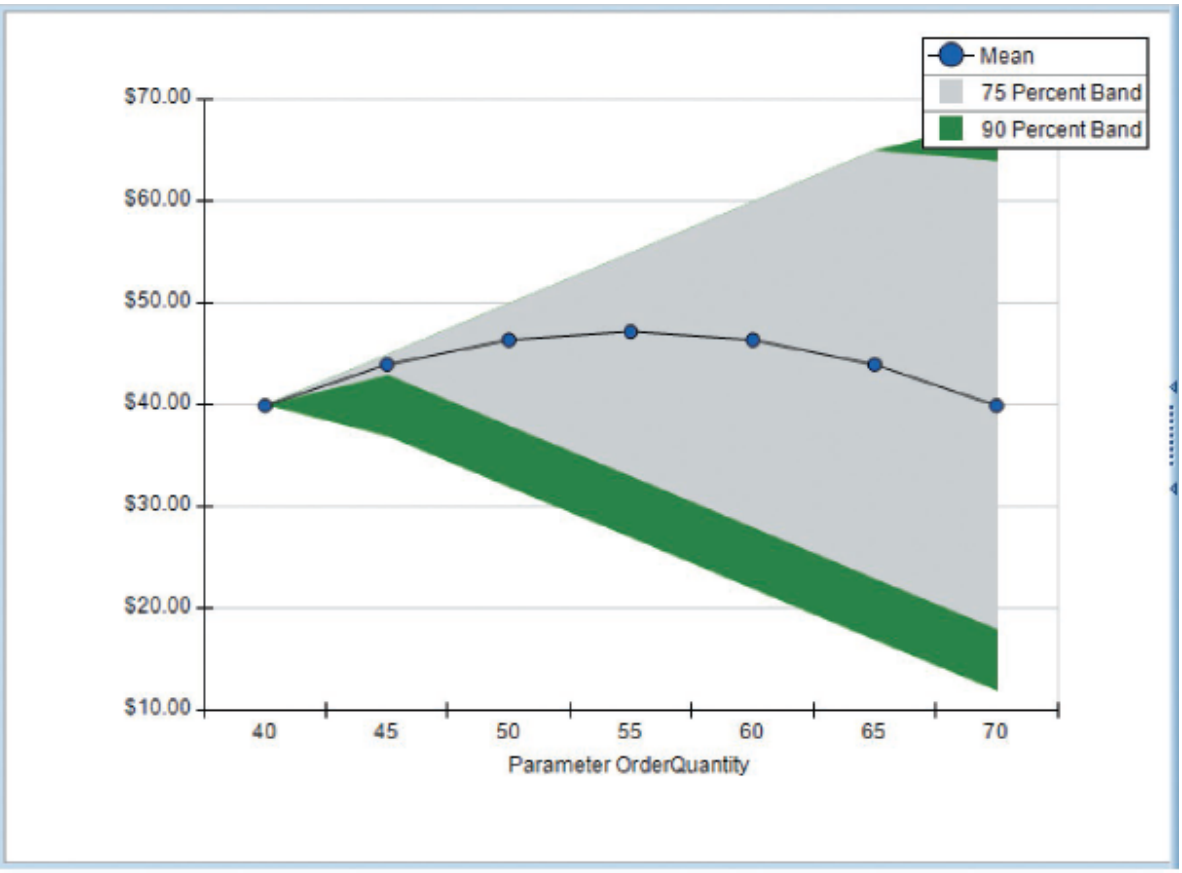
This trend chart dialog box is used to specify which simulations should be used to show results. Clicking (>>) causes the results from all of the simulations to appear in the trend chart.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

FIGURE 15.40

This trend chart shows the trend in the mean and in the range of the frequency distribution as the order quantity increases for Freddie's problem.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The horizontal axis of the trend chart shows the seven values of the parameter cell (order quantities of 40, 45, . . . , 70) for which simulations were run. The vertical axis gives the profit values obtained during the simulation runs. The curved line through the middle shows the mean profit for the simulations run at each of the different order quantities. Surrounding the mean line are two bands summarizing information about the frequency distribution of the profit values from each simulation run. The middle gray band contains the middle 75 percent of the profit values while the outer dark green band (in

combination with the gray band within it) contains the middle 90 percent of the profit values. (These percentages are listed above the trend chart.) Thus, 5 percent of the profit values generated in the trials of each simulation run lie above the top band and 5 percent lie below the bottom band.

The trend chart received its name because it shows the trends graphically as the value of the decision variable (the order quantity in this case) increases. In Figure 15.40, for example, consider the mean line. In going from an order quantity of 40 to 55, the mean line is trending upward, but then it is trending downward thereafter. Thus, the mean profit reaches its peak near an order quantity of 55. The fact that the gray and green bands are spreading out as it moves to the right provides the further insight that the variability of the profit values increases as the order quantity is increased. Although the largest order quantities provide some chance of particularly high profits on occasional days, they also give some likelihood to obtaining an unusually low profit on any given day. This risk profile may be relevant to Freddie if he is concerned about the variability of his daily profits.

A trend chart shows the trends graphically as the value of a decision variable increases.

We return to this case study again in the next section when the Solver in Analytic Solver is used to search for the optimal order quantity.

page 704

A Parameter Analysis Report for the Reliable Construction Co. Bidding Problem

We turn now to generating a parameter analysis report for the Reliable Construction Co. bidding problem presented in Section 15.2. Since the procedure for how to generate a parameter analysis report already has been presented in the preceding subsection, our focus here is on summarizing the results.

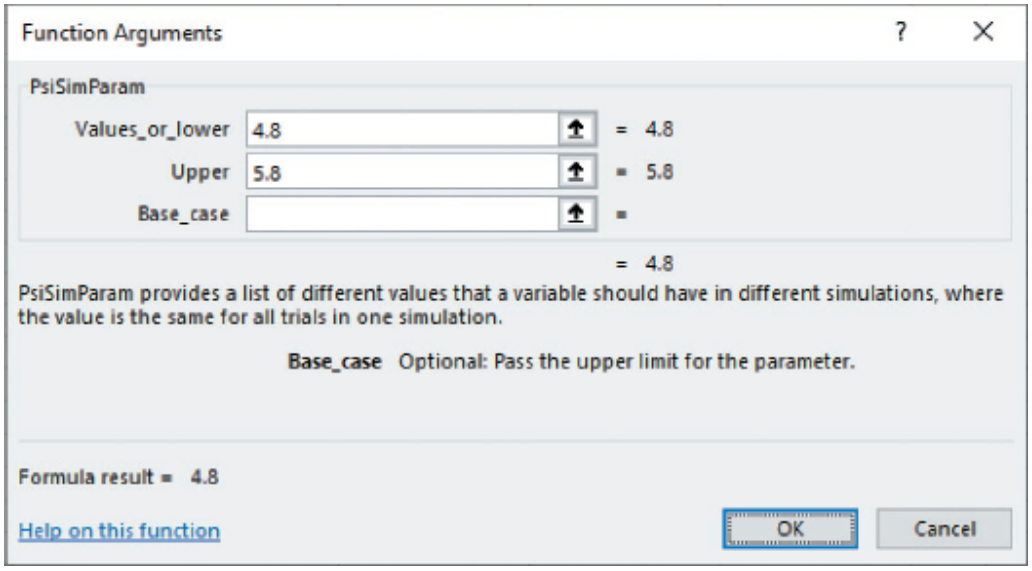
Recall that the management of the company is concerned with determining what bid it should submit for a project that involves constructing a new plant for a major manufacturer. Therefore, the decision variable in the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.11 is OurBid

(C27). The parameter cell dialog box in Figure 15.41 is used to further describe this decision variable. Management feels that the bid should be in the range between $4.8 million and $5.8 million, so these are the numbers (in units of millions of dollars) that are entered into the entry boxes for Bounds in this dialog box.

FIGURE 15.41

page 705

This parameter cell dialog box specifies the characteristics of the decision variable OurBid (C27) in Figure 15.11 for the Reliable Construction Co. contract bidding problem.

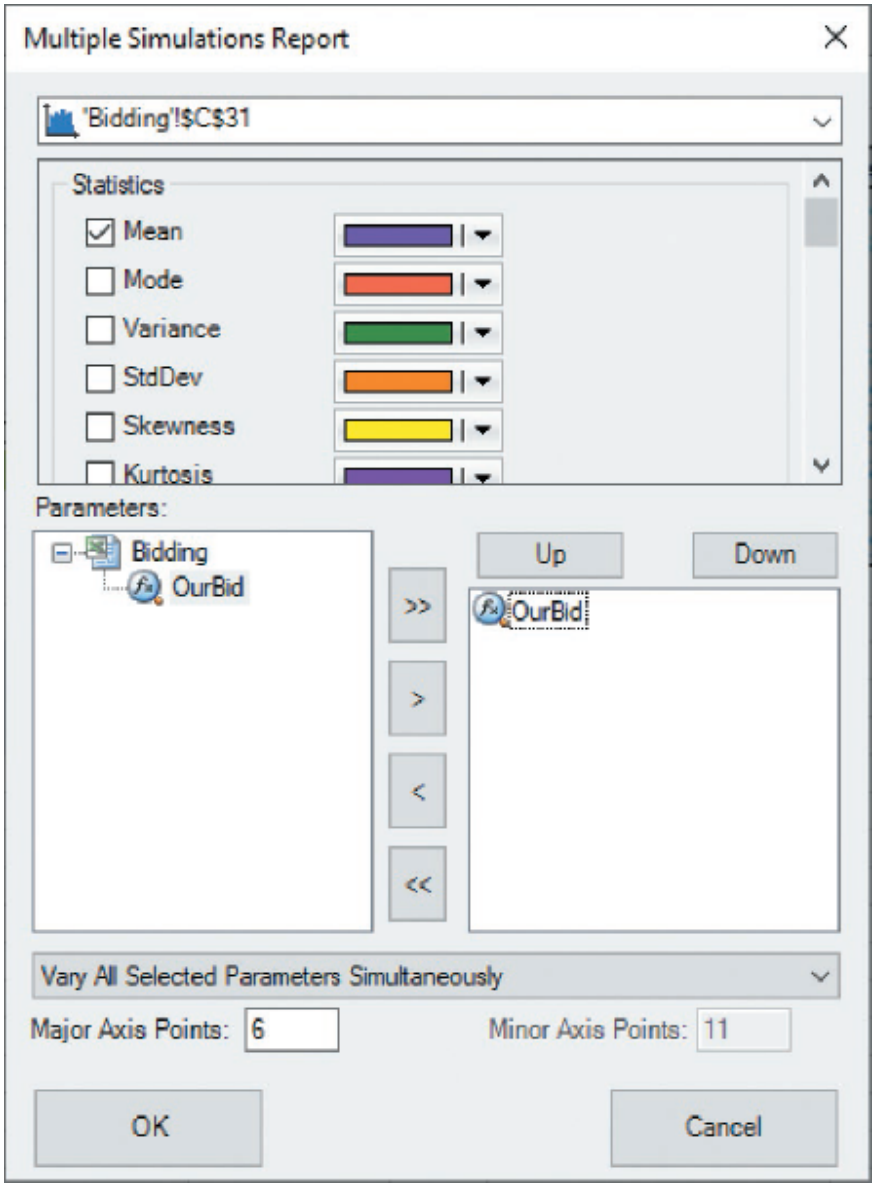


Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Management wants to choose the bid that would maximize its expected profit. Consequently, the results cell in the spreadsheet model is Profit (C31). After choosing Parameter Analysis from Reports>Simulation on the Analytic Solver tab, the corresponding dialog box in Figure 15.42 is used to specify that the mean of the Profit should be shown as the parameter cell OurBid is varied over six major axis points. The six values automatically are distributed evenly over the range specified in Figure 15.41, so simulations will be run for bids of 4.8, 5.0, 5.2, 5.4, 5.6, and 5.8 (in millions of dollars).

FIGURE 15.42

This Parameter Analysis dialog box allows you to specify which parameter cells to vary and which results to show after each simulation run. Here the OurBid (C27) parameter cell will be varied over six different values and the value of the mean will be displayed for each of the six simulation runs.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Figure 15.43 shows the resulting parameter analysis report. A bid of $5.4 million gives the largest mean value of the profits obtained on the 1,000 trials of the simulation run. This mean value of $482,000 in

cell B5 should be a close estimate of the expected profit from using this bid. The case study in Chapter 18 (provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**) begins with the company having just won the contract by submitting this bid.

FIGURE 15.43

The parameter analysis report for the Reliable Construction Co. contract bidding problem described in Section 15.2.

	A	B
1	**OurBid**	**Mean**
2	4.8	0.188
3	5.0	0.356
4	5.2	0.472
5	5.4	0.482
6	5.6	0.257
7	5.8	0.024

A bid of $5.4 million was the winning bid for the Reliable Construction Co. in the case study for Chapter 18 (provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**).

Problem 15.17 asks you to refine this analysis by generating a parameter analysis report that considers all bids between $5.2 million and $5.6 million in multiples of $0.05 million.

A Parameter Analysis Report and Trend Chart for the Transcontinental Airlines Overbooking Problem

As described in Section 15.5, Transcontinental Airlines has a popular daily flight from San Francisco to Chicago with 150 seats available. The number of requests for reservations usually exceeds the number of seats by a considerable amount. The fare is refundable, so no-shows receive a full refund. An average of only 80 percent of the customers who make reservations actually show up to take the flight, so it seems appropriate to accept more reservations than can be flown. At the same time, significant costs are incurred if customers with reservations are not allowed to take the flight. Therefore, the

company's analytics group is analyzing what number of reservations should be accepted to maximize the expected profit from the flight.

In the spreadsheet model in Figure 15.22, the decision variable is ReservationsToAccept (C13) and the results cell is Profit (F23). The analytics group wants to consider integer values of the decision variable over the range between 150 and 200, so the parameter cell dialog box is used in the usual way to specify these bounds on the variable. The decision is made to test 6 values of ReservationsToAccept (C13), so simulations will be run for values in intervals of ten between 150 and 200.

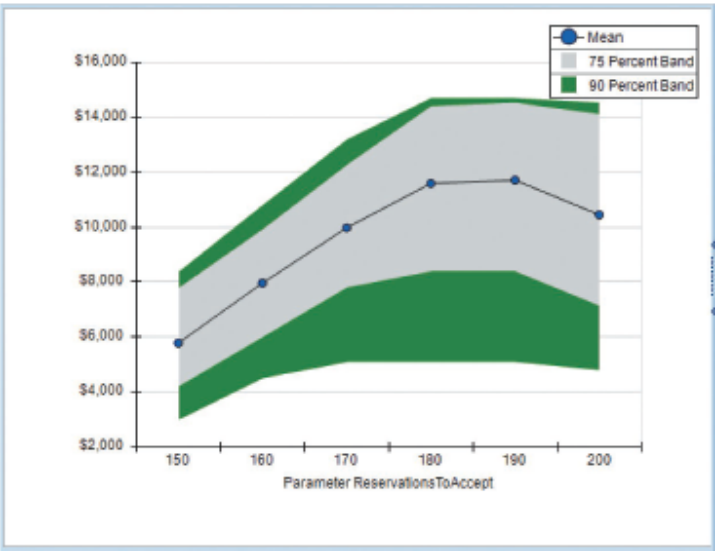
The decision variable in Figure 15.22 is Reservations ToAccept (C13).

The results are shown in Figure 15.44. The parameter analysis report on the left side of the figure reveals that the mean of the profit values obtained in the respective simulation runs climbs rapidly as ReservationsToAccept (C13) increases until the mean reaches a peak of nearly $12,000 at 180 and 190 reservations, after which it starts to drop. It seems clear that the most profitable number of reservations lies somewhere between 180 and 190. (Now that the range of numbers that need to be considered has been narrowed down this far, Problem 15.21 asks you to continue that analysis by generating a parameter analysis report that considers all integer values over this range.)

FIGURE 15.44

The parameter analysis report and trend chart for the Transcontinental Airlines overbooking problem described in Section 15.5.

	A	B
1	**ReservationsToAccept**	**Mean**
2	150	$5,790
3	160	$7,970
4	170	$9,984
5	180	$11,608
6	190	$11,777
7	200	$10,510



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

The trend chart on the lower right side of Figure 15.44 provides additional insight. The bands in this chart trend upward until the number of reservations to accept reaches 180 to 190; then they start trending slowly downward. This indicates that the *entire* frequency distribution from the respective simulation runs keeps shifting upward until the run for 180 reservations and then starts shifting downward at 190. Also note that the width of the entire set of seven bands increases until about the simulation run for 180 reservations and then remains about the same thereafter. This indicates that the amount of variability in the profit values also increases until the simulation run for 180 reservations and then remains about the same thereafter.

Review *Questions*

. What does a parameter analysis report enable you to do that a single simulation run with one value of the decision variable(s) does not?

. What are the advantages of using a parameter analysis report instead of simply using trial and error to try different values of the decision variable(s) and running a simulation for each?

. What is the maximum number of decision variables that can be varied simultaneously in a parameter analysis report?

. What procedure needs to be used before choosing Parameter Analysis from the Reports> Simulation menu?

. What kind of information is summarized by the bands in a trend chart?

. After a parameter analysis report has been used to narrow down the range of values of a decision variable that need to be considered, how can another parameter analysis report be used to better approximate the optimal value of the decision variable?

15.8 OPTIMIZING WITH COMPUTER SIMULATION USING THE SOLVER IN ANALYTIC SOLVER

In the preceding section, you have seen how parameter analysis reports and trend charts sometimes can be used to find at least a close approximation of an optimal solution. The three examples presented there illustrate the kind of problem where these tools work well. All three examples had only a *single* decision variable. (Remember that a parameter analysis report can consider a maximum of only two decision variables and a trend chart can only consider a single decision variable.) Furthermore, in two of these examples (the case study involving Freddie the newsboy and the airline overbooking example), the single decision variable was a *discrete* variable that had only a moderate number of possible values that needed consideration (namely, integers over a reasonably small range). This enabled using a parameter analysis report to identify a small range of values that provide the best solutions. If desired, a second parameter analysis

report can then be generated to evaluate *every* possible value of the decision variable within this small range.

However, this approach does not work as well when the single decision variable is either a continuous variable or a discrete variable with a large range of possible values. It also is more difficult with two decision variables. It is not feasible at all for larger problems with more than two decision variables and numerous possible solutions. Many problems in practice fall into these categories.

Fortunately, Analytic Solver includes a tool called **Solver** that, among many other functionalities, can automatically search for an optimal solution for simulation models with any number of decision variables. Analytic Solver includes some solving methods in common with the standard Excel Solver and these solving methods were used in several chapters to find optimal solutions for linear programming models and (in Chapter 11) nonlinear programming models. However, the Solver in Analytic Solver also includes some additional functionalities, including its capabilities in the simulation area, that are not available with the Excel Solver. In particular, by using Analytic Solver's simulation tools, the Solver in Analytic Solver can be used to search for an optimal solution for a simulation model in much the same way that it deals with linear and nonlinear programming models. Hereafter in this chapter, we will simply use the term Solver to mean the Solver in Analytic Solver.

Solver

A component of Analytic Solver that automatically searches for an optimal solution for a simulation model with any number of decision variables.

Solver conducts its search by executing a series of simulation runs to investigate a series of leading candidates to be an optimal solution, where the results so far are used to determine the most promising remaining candidate to try next. Solver cannot guarantee that the best solution it finds will literally be an optimal solution. However, given enough time, it often will find an optimal solution and, if not, usually will find a solution that is close to optimal. For problems with only a few discrete decision variables, it frequently will find an optimal solution

fairly early in the process and then spend the rest of the time ruling out other candidate solutions. Thus, although Solver cannot tell when it has found an optimal solution, it can estimate (within the range of precision provided by simulation runs) that the other leading candidates are not better than the best solution found so far.

To illustrate how to use Solver, we begin with a problem that it can handle extremely easily, namely, the case study with Freddie the newsboy. After summarizing the overall procedure, we then turn to a more challenging example involving the selection of projects.

Application of Computer Simulation and Solver to the Case Study

In the preceding section, the parameter analysis report generated in Figure 15.37 indicated that Freddie the newsboy should order between 50 and 60 copies of the *Financial Journal* each day. Now let us see how Solver can estimate which specific order quantity would maximize his average daily profit.

Before using Solver, the initial steps are the same as described in Section 15.1 for preparing to begin a single simulation run. Thus, after formulating the simulation model in a spreadsheet, as shown in Figure 15.1, Analytic Solver is used to define the uncertain variable cell Demand (C12), the results cell Profit (C18), and the statistic cell MeanProfit (C20). The Simulation Options dialog box is used in the usual way. These definitions and options set in Analytic Solver are the ones that will be used when the model is solved.

The goal in Freddie's problem is to choose the value of the order quantity that would maximize the mean profit that Freddie will earn each day. MeanProfit (C20) records the mean profit during the simulation run for a given value of the order quantity. Selecting this cell and then choosing Max>Normal from the Objective menu specifies that the objective is to maximize the quantity in this cell.

An alternative way to maximize the mean profit is to select Profit (C18), the results cell that measures the profit of each individual trial of the simulation, and then choose Max>Expected from the Objective menu. Choosing Max>Expected for a results cell is equivalent to defining a

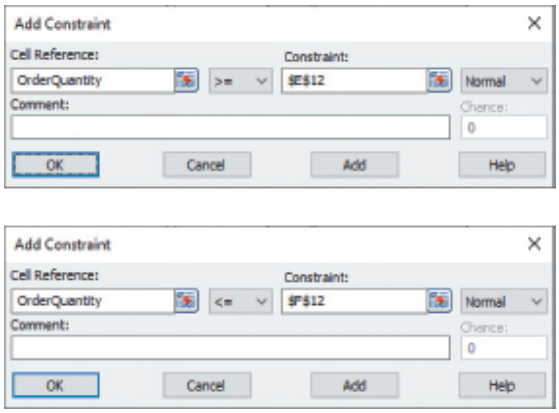
statistic cell that calculates the mean (an estimate of the expected value) of the results cell and then maximizing that by choosing Max>Normal for the statistic cell.

Next, the decision variables need to be defined. In Freddie's problem, the only decision to be made is the value for OrderQuantity (C9), so there is only one decision variable. Selecting this cell and choosing Normal from the Decisions menu defines this cell as a (normal) decision variable. Solver uses a search engine to search for the best value of the decision variable(s). Therefore, the smaller the search space (as measured by the number of possible values Solver must search), the faster Solver will be able to solve the problem. Thus, we should take into account any constraints on the possible values of the decision variable.

For Freddie's problem, the demand always is an integer between 40 and 70, so it is clear that the decision variable OrderQuantity must be restricted to these same values. Three constraints are needed to do this. First, to require OrderQuantity to be integer, select the cell again and choose Integer from the Constraints>Variable Type/Bound menu. This integer constraint greatly reduces the number of possible values to search. To specify that OrderQuantity should be between 40 and 70, we add a pair of bound constraints. First select the cell and choose >= from the Constraints>Variable Type/Bound menu. This brings up the first Add Constraint dialog box shown in Figure 15.45. Click in the Constraint box and then on cell E12 to specify that OrderQuantity >= E12 (=40) and then click OK. Similarly, choose <= from the Constraints>Variable Type/Bound menu and use the Constraint box to specify that OrderQuantity <= F12 (=70). The net result of these three constraints is that the search space has been reduced to just 31 possible values.

FIGURE 15.45

These two Add Constraint dialog boxes allow you to specify bounds on the decision variable, Order-Quantity (C9). The top dialog box specifies that OrderQuantity >= E12 (=40). The bottom dialog box specifies that Order-Quantity <= F12 (=70).



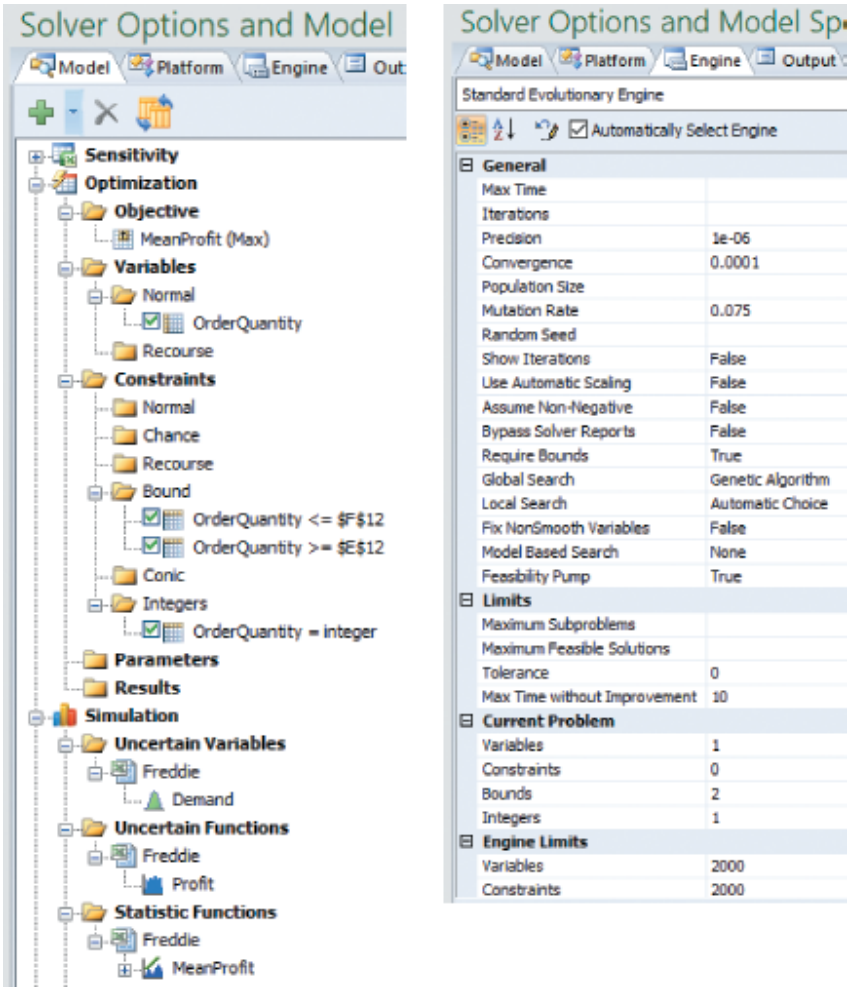
Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

When possible, reducing the search space by adding integer constraints and/or putting bounds on the decision variable(s) will improve how fast Solver can find an optimal solution.

The Model tab of the Model pane seen on the left side of Figure 15.46 should now appear on the right side of the spreadsheet. (If the Model pane does not appear there, it can be toggled on and off by clicking on the Model button on the Analytic Solver tab.) The Model pane shows that (1) the objective is to maximize MeanProfit (C20), (2) the decision variable is OrderQuantity (C9), and (3) OrderQuantity should be integer and between 40 and 70. It also shows the simulation settings, which indicate that Demand (C12) is the uncertain variable, the results cell is Profit (C18), and MeanProfit (C20) is defined as a statistic cell.

FIGURE 15.46

The Model tab and Engine tab of the Model pane for Freddie's problem. The Model tab on the left shows the Solver optimization settings and the simulation settings. The objective is to maximize MeanProfit (C20) by changing the decision variable Order-Quantity (C9) subject to OrderQuantity being both integer and between 40 and 70. The Engine tab on the right specifies that Analytic Solver will automatically select the search engine to solve the model and that it will keep searching until it hasn't found an improved solution for at least 10 seconds.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

An Application Vignette

Founded in 1883, the **Kroger Co.** has grown to become the largest supermarket by revenue in the United States and the fifth-largest retailer in the world. It serves customers in thousands of supermarkets and multidepartment stores under various local banner names. In addition, the company operates thousands of convenience stores, fine jewelry stores, supermarket fuel centers, and food-processing centers. In 2021, the company ranked 17th on the Fortune 500 list with annual sales of more than $121 billion.

Kroger also operates approximately 2,000 *in-store pharmacies* nation-wide as part of its one-stop shopping strategy. A special problem for pharmacies is that they must maintain an inventory of literally thousands of drugs that doctors might prescribe for their patients. To provide customers with the correct medicines in a timely manner, pharmacists are constantly challenged by this huge selection of drugs and the highly irregular, intermittent, sporadic demand for each one. Furthermore, this pattern of demand for any given drug can vary greatly from store to store because of differences in geographical location, prevailing disease, and population composition.

There can be substantial costs — including ordering, holding, and stockout costs — for holding inventories of any products such as drugs. Therefore, a major area of operations management called *inventory management* is devoted to determining the best inventory policy for various types of inventories. (Chapters 20 and 21 on this book's website describes inventory management in some detail.) The methodology of inventory management is directly applicable to developing an optimal inventory policy for any specific drug in any specific pharmacy. However, the tremendous challenge for Kroger is that the company needs to accomplish this for thousands of drugs in each of thousands of pharmacies in diverse markets.

For many, many years, the Kroger pharmacy division has had a policy of managing the inventory of each drug in each pharmacy by checking the inventory level a day or two before a scheduled delivery. If this inventory level is less than or equal to a specified *reorder point (s),* then an order is placed to bring the inventory level up to a specified *order-up-to-level (S).* If the inventory level is larger than the reorder point *s,* no order will be placed for this drug at this time. These values, *s* and *S,* commonly will be different for different drugs, depending on their demand patterns.

How are these *s* and *S* values set? Kroger's traditional approach used heuristic rules-of-thumb and management instinct. Unfortunately, this was not working well. Some expensive drugs tended to have overly large inventories, thereby creating excessive costs of capital tied up in these inventories. Other drugs tended to

have overly small inventories, thereby creating too many out-of-stock situations and disgruntled customers who might take their business elsewhere in the future. In addition, this manual approach to setting *s* and *S* values demanded substantial time from pharmacists who did not have sufficient knowledge, skill, or time to determine proper inventory levels.

To address these problems, in 2010, Kroger management asked a management science team to investigate scientific inventory management methods to improve its customer service, decrease inventory investment, and decrease its pharmacy inventory management time. Toward this end, the team developed an innovative **simulation-optimization system** for pharmacy inventory management. This system connects to Kroger's enterprise information system to retrieve the transactions from all the pharmacies over time. Because the demand for any drug tends to be so sporadic, a standard distribution cannot readily be used to simulate the weekly demand for a drug. Consequently, the simulation of the sales of the drug in the future instead uses the pattern of the actual sales over a little more than the past year. A series of such simulations are used with a variety of values of *s* and *S.* Local search heuristics then use the total costs generated by these simulations to hone in on the optimal values of *s* and *S* for this drug in this pharmacy. This entire process only takes about 10 milliseconds. Therefore, the total computational time on a personal computer to solve for the *s* and *S* to use for each of an average of 2,000 drugs per pharmacy for each of the approximately 2,000 pharmacies is only approximately six hours. Consequently, the entire process can easily be repeated whenever desired to update the results.

This simulation-optimization system was implemented in October 2011 in all Kroger pharmacies in the United States. The benefits ever since have been very impressive. It has resulted in an increase in revenue of **$80 million** per year, a reduction in inventory of more than **$120 million,** and a reduction in labor costs equivalent to **$10 million** per year. In addition, it has reduced out-of-stocks by 1.6 million per year, ensuring greater patient access to medication.

This dramatic application of simulation optimization resulted in Kroger winning the prestigious honor of being one of the six worldwide finalists in 2013 for what is now called the Franz Edelman Award for Achievement in Advanced Analytics, Operations Research, and Management Science.

Source: X. Zhang, D. Meiser, Y. Liu, B. Bonner, and L. Lin, "Kroger Uses Simulation-Optimization to Improve Pharmacy Inventory Management," *Interfaces* (now *INFORMS Journal on Applied Analytics*) 44, no. 1 (January–February 2014): 70–84. (A link to this article is provided at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.)

Before running Solver to optimize Freddie's problem, we need to consider the settings on the Engine tab of the Model pane, as seen on the right side of Figure 15.46. In particular, the checkbox *Automatically Select Engine* should be checked to have Solver automatically choose which search engine is most appropriate for the problem. Second, the *Max Time* and/or *Max Time without Improvement* should be specified. *Max Time* sets a limit (in seconds) for how long you would like the search to proceed. Leaving this quantity blank in Figure 15.46 means that no limit has been placed on the length of the search. This is OK because we instead have set *Max Time without Improvement* to 10 seconds. This will keep the search engine searching until Solver has not improved the solution within the last 10 seconds.

page 710

At this point, clicking on Optimize on the Analytic Solver ribbon begins the search for an optimal solution. Solver searches over different order quantities in the search space. For each trial solution, it runs a simulation to estimate the mean profit. Solver then evaluates the results so far to determine the most promising candidates for the order quantity to try next. This continues until it has either considered all values for the order quantity or it reaches one of the stopping rules (*Max Time* or *Max Time without Improvement*). Analytic Solver will then put the best value for the order quantity (the one with the largest mean profit) directly in the spreadsheet. In Freddie's case, it usually will find the exact optimal solution, namely, an order quantity of 55 leading to a mean profit of approximately $47.26. In this case, the

spreadsheet looks just like Figure 15.9, where this optimal solution was found by trial and error.

Here is a summary of the entire procedure for applying Solver that has just been illustrated for Freddie's problem.

Procedure for Applying Solver

1. Formulate your simulation model on a spreadsheet.
2. Use Analytic Solver to define your uncertain variable cells, results cells, and statistic cells, as well as to set Simulation Options.
3. Use Analytic Solver to define your decision variables and the objective.
4. If possible, define constraints on the decision variables to reduce the search space.
5. Use the Engine tab of the Model pane to have Analytic Solver automatically select the search engine and to set the stopping rule (*Max Time* and/or *Max Time without Improvement*).
6. Click on Optimize to run the optimization.

Application of Computer Simulation and Solver to a Project Selection Example

We now turn to a more challenging example for applying Solver. This example is based on Case 6-7 at the end of Chapter 6. Here are the essential facts.

Tazer Corp., a pharmaceutical manufacturing company, is beginning the search for a new breakthrough drug. The following five potential research and development projects have been identified for attempting to develop such a drug.

Project Up:	Develop a more effective antidepressant that does not cause serious mood swings.
Project Stable:	Develop a drug that addresses manic depression.

Project Choice:	Develop a less intrusive birth control method for women.
Project Hope:	Develop a vaccine to prevent HIV infection.
Project Release:	Develop a more effective drug to lower blood pressure.

In contrast to Case 6-7, Tazer management now has concluded that the company cannot devote enough money to research and development to undertake all of these projects. Only $1.2 billion is available, which will be enough for only two or three of the projects. The second column of Table 15.2 shows the amount needed (in millions of dollars) for each of these projects. The third column estimates the probability that each project would be able to develop a successful drug. If a project is successful, it is quite uncertain how much revenue would be generated by the drug. The estimate of the amount of revenue (in millions of dollars) is that it has a *normal distribution* with the mean and standard deviation given in the last two columns of the table.

TABLE 15.2

Data for the Tazer Project Selection Problem

	R&D Investment		Revenue ($millions) if Successful	
Project	($millions)	Success Rate	Mean	Standard Deviation
Up	400	50%	1,400	400
Stable	300	35%	1,200	400
Choice	600	35%	2,200	600
Hope	500	20%	3,000	900
Release	200	45%	600	200

Tazer management now wants to determine which of these projects should be undertaken to maximize the expected total profit from the resulting revenues (if any). Because of the great uncertainty in what the total profit will turn out to be, management also would like to have

a reasonably high probability of achieving a satisfactory total profit (at least $100 million).

Figure 15.47 shows a simulation model on a spreadsheet for this problem. The data in Table 15.2 have been transferred directly into the data cells C7:F11. The cells in the next column, Success? (G7:G11) are uncertain variable cells that will have a value of 0 or 1 for each trial of a simulation run. (The values shown in column G in Figure 15.47 are one possible random outcome—the result of the last simulation trial.) This value indicates whether the corresponding project would fail (a value of 0) or succeed (a value of 1) on that trial if it were to be undertaken. Thus, the probability distribution entered into each of these uncertain variable cells needs to be a *Bernoulli distribution* (as described in Section 15.6), where the parameter is the probability of a success on this trial given in column D. The cells in column H, Revenue (H7:H11), also are uncertain variable cells. The probability distribution for each is a *normal distribution* with the parameters given in columns E and F.

FIGURE 15.47

A spreadsheet model for applying computer simulation to the Tazer Corp. project selection problem. The uncertain variable cells are Success? (G7:G11) and Revenue (H7:H11), the decision variables are Decisions (J7:J11), the results cell is TotalProfit (I13), and the two statistic cells are MeanProfit (I15) and ProbProfitAcceptable (I18).

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	**Budget-Constrained Project Selection**									
2										
3					Estimated Revenue					
4			R&D		$millions if Successful					
5			Investment	Success	(Normal Distribution)			Revenue ($millions)		
6		Project	($millions)	Rate	Mean	St. Dev.	Success?	(if Successful)	Profit	Decisions
7		Up	400	50%	1,400	400	1	1,677	0.00	0
8		Stable	300	35%	1,200	400	1	1,547	0.00	0
9		Choice	600	35%	2,200	600	0	1,975	0.00	0
10		Hope	500	20%	3,000	900	0	3,852	0.00	0
11		Release	200	45%	600	200	1	135	0.00	0
12										
13		Invested	0					Total Profit ($millions)	0.00	
14			<=							
15		Budget	1,200					Mean Profit ($millions)	0.00	
16										
17								Min Acceptable Profit ($million)	100	
18								Prob(Profit > Min Acceptable)	0.000	

Range Name	Cells
Budget	C15
Decisions	J7:J11
Invested	C13
MinAccetableProfit	I17
MeanProfit	I15
ProbProfitAcceptable	I18
Profit	I7:I11
RandDInvestment	C7:C11
Revenue	H7:H11
Success?	G7:G11
TotalProfit	I13

	G	H	I
5		Revenue ($millions)	Profit
6	Success?	(if Successful)	=@Decisions*(@Success?*@Revenue-@RandDInvestment)
7	=@PsiBernoulli(D7)	=@PsiNormal(E7,F7)	=@Decisions*(@Success?*@Revenue-@RandDInvestment)
8	=@PsiBernoulli(D8)	=@PsiNormal(E8,F8)	=@Decisions*(@Success?*@Revenue-@RandDInvestment)
9	=@PsiBernoulli(D9)	=@PsiNormal(E9,F9)	=@Decisions*(@Success?*@Revenue-@RandDInvestment)
10	=@PsiBernoulli(D10)	=@PsiNormal(E10,F10)	=@Decisions*(@Success?*@Revenue-@RandDInvestment)
11	=@PsiBernoulli(D11)		
12			
13		Total Profit ($millions)	=SUM(Profit)
14			
15		Mean Profit ($millions)	=@PsiMean(Profit)
16			
17		Min Acceptable Profit($million)	100
18		Prob(Profit > Min Acceptable)	=1-@PsiTarget(TotalProfit, MinAcceptable Profit)

	B	C
13	Invested	=SUMPRODUCT(RandDInvestment,Decisions)

The cells in column J, Decisions (J7:J11), are the decision variables for the model. Each of these decision variables is a *binary variable,* that is, a variable whose only possible values are 0 and 1. To define these decision variables, select the cells and choose Normal from the Decisions menu on the Analytic Solver ribbon. Then, with the cells still selected, constrain them to be binary by choosing binary from the Constraints>Variable Type/Bound menu. For each project listed in column B, the corresponding decision variable in column J has the following interpretation.

page 712

$$\text{Decision variable} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if approve the project} \\ 0, & \text{if reject the project} \end{cases}$$

Budget (C15) gives the maximum amount that can be invested in these research and development projects. The output cell Invested (C13) records the total amount invested in the projects, given the

decisions regarding which ones are approved. The equation entered into this cell is shown under the spreadsheet on the left side of Figure 15.47. The limited budget means that the decision variables must satisfy the constraint that

$$\text{Invested (C13)} \leq \text{Budget (C15)}$$

To enter this constraint in Solver, select the Invested (C13) cell and choose <= under the Constraints>Normal Constraint menu. Then, in the Constraint box of the Add Constraint dialog box, select Budget (C15) for the right-hand side of this constraint.

The output cells Profit (I7:I11) give the profit (revenue minus investment) from each project on each trial of a simulation run. The profit from a project is 0 if the project is rejected. If it is approved, the revenue is 0 if the project is not successful (as would be indicated by a 0 in the corresponding row of column G). If the project is successful (as would be indicated by a 1 in its row of column G), the revenue on that trial will be the random value that appears in the corresponding row of column H. Therefore, the equations entered into Profit (I7:I11) are those shown in the lower-right-hand corner of Figure 15.47. Also note that SUM (Profit) gives the value in the *results cell* TotalProfit (I13).

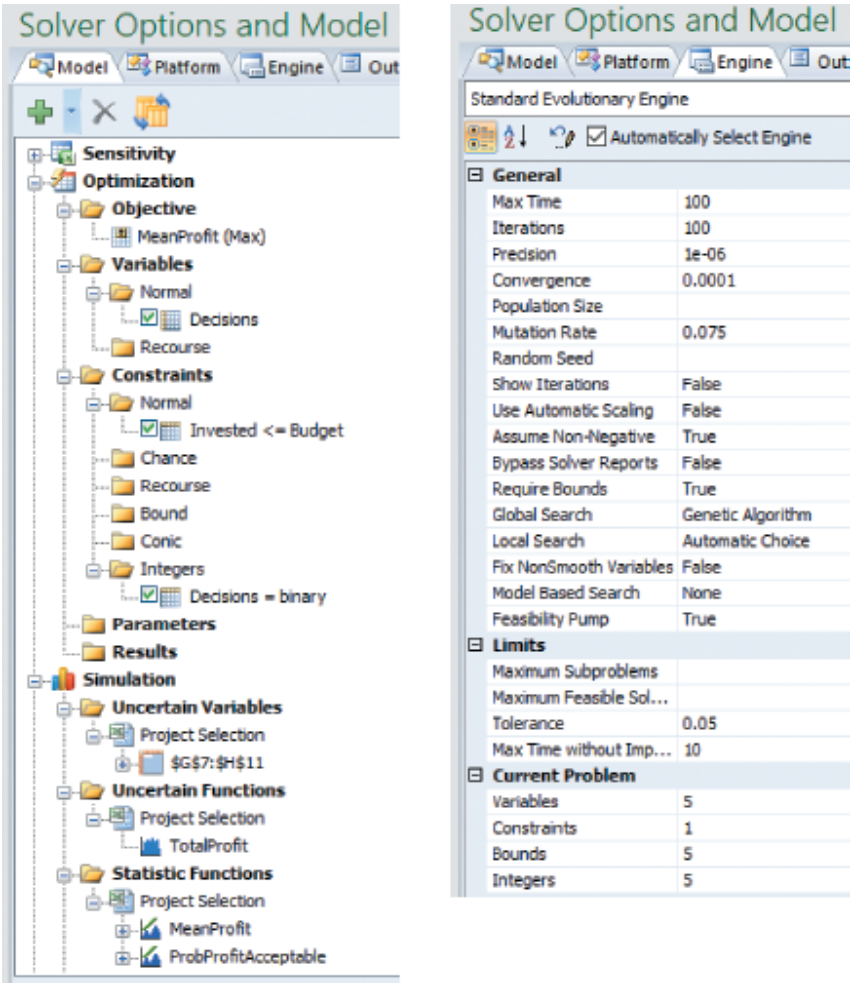
page 713

Tazer management is seeking a solution that maximizes the mean of TotalProfit (I13) in Figure 15.47. Therefore, MeanProfit (I15) is defined as a statistic cell to measure the mean value of the TotalProfit (I13) over the simulation run. MeanProfit is defined as the objective by choosing Max>Normal from the Objective menu.

After using Analytic Solver to define all the uncertain variable cells, the results cell, and the statistic cells in the usual way (along with the decision variables, constraints, and objective as described above), the complete model is shown in the Model tab of the Model pane, as displayed in Figure 15.48. The Engine tab is used to specify that Analytic Solver should automatically select the search engine and that the search should be allowed to proceed until it has not found an improved solution within the last 10 seconds.

FIGURE 15.48

The Model tab and Engine tab of the Model pane for the Tazer project selection problem. The Model tab on the left shows the Solver optimization settings and the simulation settings. The objective is to maximize MeanProfit (I15) by selecting the best values of the decision variables Decisions (J7:J11), subject to the constraints that Invested (C13) <= Budget (C15) and Decisions are binary. The engine tab on the right specifies that Analytic Solver will automatically select the search engine and that it will keep searching until it has not found an improved solution within the last 10 seconds.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

Clicking on the Optimize button then causes Solver to search for the value of the Decisions (J7:J11) that maximizes MeanProfit (I15).

The resulting solution is

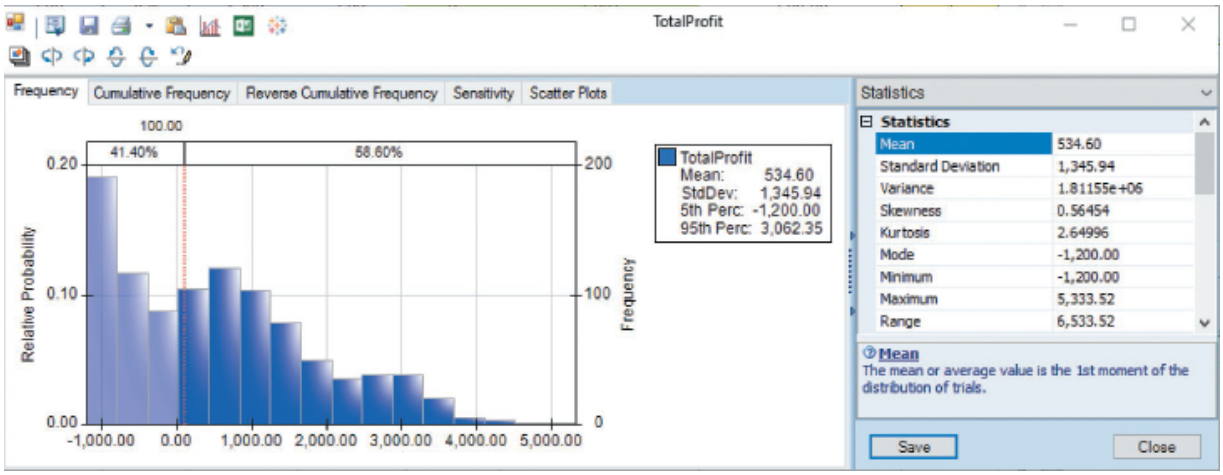
Choose Project Choice, Project Release, and Project Up
Mean of total profit = $534.60 million

Figure 15.49 shows the frequency chart and statistics table that was obtained with the simulation run that used the best solution. This chart shows a high degree of variability in the profit values obtained during the various trials of the simulation run. There is a substantial probability of actually incurring a loss from the selected research and development projects (which is fairly common in this industry). In fact, nearly 200 of the 1,000 trials resulted in a loss of $1.2 billion because all three projects failed. Fortunately, there also is a good chance of reaping extremely big profits. Because Tazer management would like to have a high probability of obtaining a total profit of at least $100 million, the cutoff line was set at 100. The percentages above the chart indicate that 58.6 percent of the trials did at least this well.

FIGURE 15.49

page 714

The frequency chart and statistics table for the best solution found (choose Project Choice, Project Release, and Project Up) when maximizing MeanProfit in the Tazer project selection problem. The percentages above the chart reveal that 58.6 percent of the trials provided a profit of at least $100 million.



Tazer management had hoped to have a higher probability of obtaining a total profit of at least $100 million. Therefore, the question is raised whether there might be another combination of research and development projects that would increase this probability.

Addressing this question will require defining a new kind of statistic cell. In addition to knowing the mean profit (using the MeanProfit statistic cell), we need a statistic to measure the probability that the profit will be at least $100 million. Analytic Solver provides such a statistic. To begin defining this statistic cell, select the results cell Profit (I13) and choose Target from the Results>Range menu, and then click in cell I18. This inserts the formula =@PsiTarget(TotalProfit,0) into cell I18. The @PsiTarget function measures the cumulative probability of the results cell, so here it calculates the probability that TotalProfit will be 0 or less (since the second parameter in the formula is entered as 0 by default). This is not exactly what we want, since we are interested in the probability that TotalProfit will be 100 or more. Thus, this formula needs to be changed in two ways. First, change the 0 to 100 (by referring to the data cell Min-AcceptableProfit in Figure 15.47). The formula =@PsiTarget(TotalProfit, MinAcceptableProfit) then would calculate the probability of earning no more than the MinAcceptableProfit of $100 million. To calculate the probability of earning no *less* than the MinAcceptableProfit, we subtract this probability from 1,resulting in the final formula used in Figure 15.47, ProbProfitAcceptable (I18) = 1 − @PsiTarget(TotalProfit, MinAcceptableProfit).

The formula @PsiTarget (*Result, x*) measures the probability that *Result* (a results cell) will be no more than *x.*

Next, change the objective in Solver to instead maximize the probability that the profit will be at least $100 million. Select the cell ProbProfitAcceptable (I18) that measures this probability and then choose Max>Normal from the Objective menu. Rerunning Solver with the new objective leads to the following solution:

Choose Project Up and Project Stable
62.1% certainty of total profit ≥ $100 million

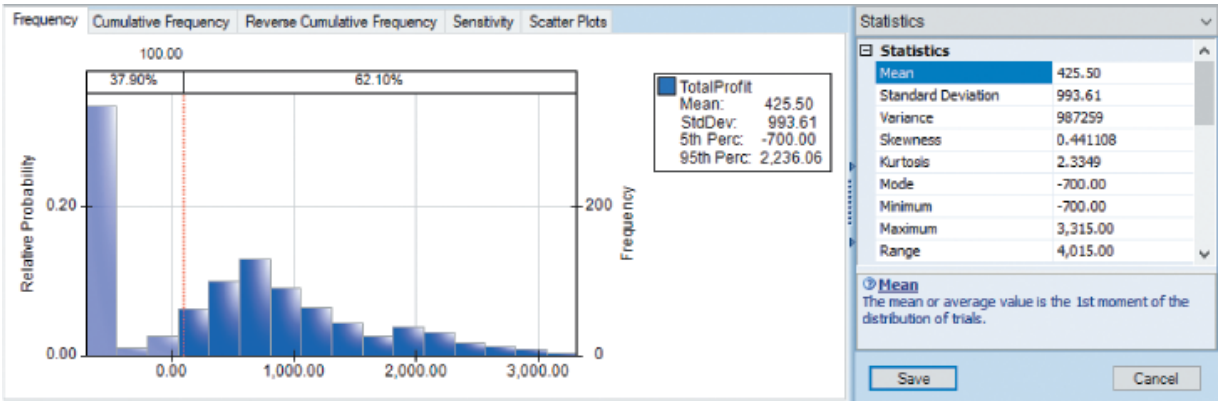
By changing from the solution analyzed in Figure 15.49, this more conservative solution has managed to boost the estimated probability of achieving a satisfactory total profit from 58.6 percent to 62.1 percent.

However, the frequency chart and statistics table shown in Figure 15.50 reveals a dis-advantage of this conservative solution. The mean of the total profit from this solution was only $425.50 million versus $534.60 million for the best solution found in Figure 15.49 when the objective was to maximize this quantity. At the same time, the conservative solution has reduced the maximum possible loss from $1.2 billion to $700 million.

FIGURE 15.50

page 715

The frequency chart and statistics table for the best solution found (choose Project Up and Project Stable) when maximizing the probability of achieving at least $100 million in profit. The percentages above the chart reveal that 62.1 percent of the trials provided a profit of at least $100 million.



Microsoft Corporation and Frontline Systems, Inc.

In conclusion, Solver has provided Tazer management with two different kinds of solutions from which to choose, along with considerable information about each. One appears to be the best high-

risk, high-reward solution that is available because it maximizes the total profit that would be obtained on the average. The other appears to be the best available conservative solution because it maximizes the chances of obtaining a satisfactory profit. By evaluating the trade-off between risk and reward, management now can make a judgment decision about which solution to use.

Review *Questions*

. What does Solver search for in a simulation model with decision variables?
. What kinds of problems can Solver deal with that a parameter analysis report cannot?
. Does Solver always find an optimal solution for a simulation model?
. The decision variables for the project selection example needed to be of what kind?
. What type of statistic cell can measure the probability that the results cell will be less than (or more than) a specified value?

15.9 Summary

Spreadsheet software is being used increasingly to perform computer simulations. As described in the preceding chapter, the standard Excel package sometimes is sufficient to do this. In addition, some Excel add-ins now are available that greatly extend these capabilities. Analytic Solver is an especially powerful add-in of this kind.

When using Analytic Solver, each input cell that has a random value is referred to as an *uncertain variable cell.* The procedure for defining an uncertain variable cell includes selecting one of several dozens types of probability distributions from the Distributions menu to enter into the cell. When historical data are available, Analytic Solver also

has a procedure for identifying which continuous distribution fits the data best.

An output cell that is used to forecast a measure of performance is called a *results cell.* Each trial of a simulation run generates a value in each results cell. When the simulation run is completed, Analytic Solver provides the results in a variety of useful forms, including a frequency distribution, a statistics table, a percentiles table, and a cumulative chart.

When a simulation model has one or two decision variables, Analytic Solver provides a *parameter analysis report* that systematically applies computer simulation to identify at least a good approximation of an optimal solution. A *trend chart* also provides additional insights to aid in decision making.

In addition, Analytic Solver includes a powerful optimization module called Solver. This module efficiently uses a series of simulation runs to search for an optimal solution for a simulation model with any number of decision variables.

The availability of such powerful software now enables managers to add computer simulation to their personal toolkit of management science and business analytics techniques for analyzing some key managerial problems. A variety of examples in this chapter illustrate some of the many possibilities for important applications of computer simulation.

Glossary

page 716

Distributions dialog box A dialog box invoked by pressing the Distributions button on the Analytic Solver tab that includes several dozen probability distributions from which one is chosen to enter into any uncertain variable cell. (Sections 15.1 and 15.6), 660

parameter analysis report An Analytic Solver module that systematically applies computer simulation over a range of values of one or two decision variables and then displays the results in a table. (Section 15.7), 699

results cell An output cell that is being used by a computer simulation to calculate a measure of performance. (Section 15.1), 661

risk profile A frequency distribution of the return from an investment. (Section 15.4), 678

Solver A component of Analytic Solver that automatically searches for an optimal solution for a simulation model with any number of decision variables. (Section 15.8), 707

statistic cell A cell that shows a measure of performance that summarizes the results of an entire simulation run. (Section 15.1), 662

trend chart A chart that shows the trend of the values in a results cell as a decision variable increases. (Section 15.7), 699

trial A single application of the process of generating a random observation from each probability distribution entered into the spreadsheet and then calculating the output cells in the usual way and recording the results of interest. (Section 15.1), 658

uncertain variable cell An input cell that has a random value so that a probability distribution must be entered into the cell instead of permanently entering a single number. (Section 15.1), 659

Learning Aids for This Chapter

All learning aids are available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

Excel Files:

Freddie the Newsboy

Reliable Bidding

Reliable Project Scheduling

Think-Big Risk Analysis

Airline Overbooking

Tazer Project Selection

Sales Data 1

Sales Data 2

Excel Add-in:

Analytic Solver

Solved Problem

The solution is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**.

15.S1. Saving for Retirement

John Morrow is 10 years away from retirement. He has accumulated a $100,000 nest egg that he would like to invest for his golden years. Furthermore, he is confident that he can invest $10,000 more each year until retirement. He is curious about what kind of nest egg he can expect to have accumulated at retirement 10 years from now to supplement his other sources of retirement income (including Social Security).

John plans to split his investments evenly among four investments: a money market fund, a domestic stock fund, a global stock fund, and an aggressive growth fund. On the basis of past performance, John expects each of these funds to earn a return in each of the upcoming 10 years according to the distributions shown in the table in the right column.

Assume that the initial nest egg ($100,000) and the first year's investment ($10,000) are made right now (year 0)

and are split evenly among the four funds (i.e., $27,500 in each fund). The returns of each fund are allowed to accumulate (i.e., are reinvested) in the same fund and no redistribution will be done before retirement. Furthermore, nine additional investments of $10,000 will be made and split evenly among the four funds ($2,500 each) at year 1, year 2, . . . , year 9.

A financial advisor told John that he can retire comfortably if he can accumulate $300,000 by year 10 to supplement his other sources of retirement income. Use a 1,000-trial Analytic Solver simulation to estimate each of the following.

Fund	Distribution
Money market	Uniform (minimum = 2%, maximum = 5%)
Domestic stock	Normal (mean = 6%, standard deviation = 5%)
Global stock	Normal (mean = 8%, standard deviation = 10%)
Aggressive growth	Normal (mean = 11%, standard deviation = 16%)

a. What will be the expected value (mean) of John's nest egg at year 10?

b. What will be the standard deviation of John's nest egg at year 10?

c. What is the probability that the total nest egg at year 10 will be at least $300,000?

Problems

Analytic Solver should be used for all of the following problems. An asterisk on the problem number indicates that a partial answer is given in the back of the book.

15.1. The results from a simulation run are inherently random. This problem will demonstrate this fact and investigate the impact of the number of trials per simulation on this randomness. Consider the case study involving Freddie the newsboy that was introduced in Section 15.1. The spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Make sure that the Monte Carlo sampling method is chosen in Simulation Options since it better shows the effect of increasing the sample size. Use an order quantity of 60.

a. Set the trials per simulation to 100 in Simulation Options and run the simulation of Freddie's problem five times. Note the mean profit for each simulation run.

b. Repeat part *a* except set the number of trials per simulation to 1,000 in Simulation Options.

c. Compare the results from part *a* and part *b* and comment on any differences.

15.2. Consider the Reliable Construction Co. project scheduling example presented in Section 15.3. Recall that computer simulation was used to estimate the probability of meeting the deadline and that Figure 15.17 revealed that the deadline was met on 59.9 percent of the trials from one simulation run. As discussed while interpreting this result, the percentage of trials on which the project is completed by the deadline will vary from simulation run to simulation run. This problem will demonstrate this fact and investigate the impact of the number of trials per simulation on this randomness. The spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Make sure that the Monte Carlo

sampling method is chosen in Simulation Options because it better shows the effect of increasing the sample size.

a. Set the trials per simulation to 100 in Simulation Options and run the simulation of the project five times. Note the mean completion time and the percentage of trials on which the project is completed within the deadline of 47 weeks for each simulation run.

b. Repeat part *a* except set the trials per simulation to 1,000 in Simulation Options.

c. Compare the results from part *a* and part *b* and comment on any differences.

15.3.* Consider the historical data contained in the Excel File "Sales Data 1" available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Use Analytic Solver to fit continuous distributions to these data.

a. Which distribution provides the closest fit to the data? What are the parameters of the distribution?

b. Which distribution provides the second-closest fit to the data? What are the parameters of the distribution?

15.4. Consider the historical data contained in the Excel File "Sales Data 2" available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. Use Analytic Solver to fit continuous distributions to these data.

a. Which distribution provides the closest fit to the data? What are the parameters of the distribution?

b. Which distribution provides the second-closest fit to the data? What are the parameters of the distribution?

15.5. The Aberdeen Development Corporation (ADC) is considering an Aberdeen Resort Hotel project. It would be located on the picturesque banks of Grays Harbor and have its own championship-level golf course.

The cost to purchase the land would be $1 million, payable now. Construction costs would be approximately $2 million, payable at the end of year 1. However, the construction costs are uncertain. These costs could be up to 20 percent higher or lower than the estimate of $2 million. Assume that the construction costs would follow a triangular distribution.

ADC is very uncertain about the annual operating profits (or losses) that would be generated once the hotel is constructed. Its best estimate for the annual operating profit that would be generated in years 2, 3, 4, and 5 is $700,000. Due to the great uncertainty, the estimate of the standard deviation of the annual operating profit in each year also is $700,000. Assume that the yearly profits are statistically independent and follow the normal distribution.

After year 5, ADC plans to sell the hotel. The selling price is likely to be somewhere between $4 and $8 million (assume a uniform distribution). ADC uses a 10 percent discount rate for calculating net present value. (For purposes of this calculation, assume that each year's profits are received at year-end.) Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation of this project on a spreadsheet.

a. What is the mean net present value (NPV) of the project? (*Hint:* The NPV (rate, cash stream) function in Excel returns the NPV of a stream of cash flows that is assumed to start one year from now. For example, NPV(10%, C5:F5) returns the NPV at a 10 percent discount rate when C5 is a cash flow at the end of year 1, D5 at the end of year 2, E5 at the end of year 3, and F5 at the end of year 4.)

b. What is the estimated probability that the project will yield an NPV greater than $2 million?

c. ADC also is concerned about cash flow in years 2, 3, 4, and 5. Use Analytic Solver to estimate the distribution of the *minimum* annual operating profit (undiscounted) earned in any of the four years. What is the mean value of the minimum annual operating profit over the four years?

d. What is the probability that the annual operating profit will be at least $0 in all four years of operation?

15.6. Ivy University is planning to construct a new building for its business school. This project will require completing all of the activities in the next table. For most of these activities, a set of predecessor activities must be completed before the activity begins. For example, the foundation cannot be laid until the building is designed and the site prepared.

page 718

Activity	Predecessors
A. Secure funding	—
B. Design building	A
C. Site preparation	A
D. Foundation	B, C
E. Framing	D
F. Electrical	E
G. Plumbing	E
H. Walls and roof	F, G
I. Finish construction	H
J. Landscaping	H

Obtaining funding likely will take approximately six months (with a standard deviation of one month). Assume that this time has a normal distribution. The architect has estimated that the time required to design the building could be anywhere between 6 and 10 months. Assume that this time has a uniform distribution. The general contractor has provided three estimates for each of the construction tasks —an optimistic scenario (minimum time required if the weather is good and all goes well), a most likely scenario, and a pessimistic scenario (maximum time required if there are weather and other problems). These estimates are provided in the table that follows. Assume that each of these construction times has a triangular distribution. Finally, the landscaper has guaranteed that his work will be completed in five months.

Construction Time Estimates (Months)

Activity	Optimistic Scenario	Most Likely Scenario	Pessimistic Scenario
C. Site preparation	1.5	2	2.5
D. Foundation	1.5	2	3
E. Framing	3	4	6
F. Electrical	2	3	5
G. Plumbing	3	4	5
H. Walls and roof	4	5	7

Construction Time Estimates (Months)			
Activity	**Optimistic Scenario**	**Most Likely Scenario**	**Pessimistic Scenario**
I. Do the finish work	5	6	7

Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation for this project. Use the results to answer the following questions.

a. What is the mean project completion time?

b. What is the probability that the project will be completed in 36 months or less?

c. Generate a sensitivity chart. Based on this chart, which activities have the largest impact on the project completion time?

15.7.* Consider Problem 18.12 (see Chapter 18 at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**), which involves estimating both the duration of a project and the probability that it will be completed by the deadline. Assume now that the duration of each activity has a triangular distribution that is based on the three estimates shown in Problem 18.12. Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation of the project on a spreadsheet.

a. What is the mean project completion time?

b. What is the probability that the project can be completed within 22 months?

c. Generate a sensitivity chart. Based on this chart, which two activities have the largest impact on the project completion time?

15.8. The employees of General Manufacturing Corp. receive health insurance through a group plan issued by

Wellnet. During the past year, 40 percent of the employees did not file any health insurance claims, 40 percent filed only a small claim, and 20 percent filed a large claim. The small claims were spread uniformly between 0 and $2,000, whereas the large claims were spread uniformly between $2,000 and $20,000.

Based on this experience, Wellnet now is negotiating the corporation's premium payment per employee for the upcoming year. To obtain a close estimate of the average cost of insurance coverage for the corporation's employees, use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation of an employee's health insurance experience on a spreadsheet. Generate a frequency chart and a statistics table.

15.9. Reconsider the Heavy Duty Co. problem that was presented as Example 2 in Section 14.1. For each of the following three options in parts *a* through *c,* obtain an estimate of the expected cost per day by using Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation of the problem on a spreadsheet. Estimate the mean and generate a frequency chart.

a. The option of not replacing a motor until a breakdown occurs.

b. The option of scheduling the replacement of a motor after four days (but replacing it sooner if a breakdown occurs).

c. The option of scheduling the replacement of a motor after five days (but replacing it sooner if a breakdown occurs).

d. An analytical result of $2,000 per day is available for the expected cost per day if a motor is replaced every three days. Comparing this option and the above three, which one appears to minimize the expected cost per day?

15.10. The Avery Co. factory has been having a maintenance problem with the control panel for one of its production processes. This control panel contains four identical electromechanical relays that have been the cause of the trouble. The problem is that the relays fail fairly frequently, thereby forcing the control panel (and the production process it controls) to be shut down while a replacement is made. When a relay fails, the current practice is to replace just that relay. The average total cost of doing this has been $3.19 per hour. To attempt to reduce this cost, a proposal has been made to replace all four relays whenever any one of them fails to reduce the frequency with which the control panel must be shut down. Would this actually reduce the cost?

The pertinent data are the following. For each relay, the operating time until failure has approximately a uniform distribution from 1,000 to 2,000 hours. The control panel must be shut down for one hour to replace one relay or for two hours to replace all four relays. The total cost associated with shutting down the control panel and replacing relays is $1,000 per hour plus $200 for each new relay.

Use computer simulation on a spreadsheet to evaluate the cost of the proposal and compare it to the current practice. Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials (where the end of each trial coincides with the end of a shutdown of the control panel) and determine the average cost per hour.

15.11. For one new product produced by the Aplus Company, bushings need to be drilled into a metal block and cylindrical shafts need to be inserted into the bushings. The shafts are required to have a radius of at least 1.0000 inch, but the radius should be as little larger than this as possible. With the proposed production process for producing the shafts, the probability distribution of the radius of a shaft has a triangular distribution with a minimum

page 719

of 1.0000 inch, a most likely value of 1.0010 inches, and a maximum value of 1.0020 inches. With the proposed method of drilling the bushings, the probability distribution of the radius of a bushing has a normal distribution with a mean of 1.0020 inches and a standard deviation of 0.0010 inches. The clearance between a bushing and a shaft is the difference in their radii. Because they are selected at random, there occasionally is interference (i.e., negative clearance) between a bushing and a shaft to be mated.

Management is concerned about the disruption in the production of the new product that would be caused by this occasional interference. Perhaps the production processes for the shafts and bushings should be improved (at considerable cost) to lessen the chance of interference. To evaluate the need for such improvements, management has asked you to determine how frequently interference is likely to occur with the currently proposed production processes.

Estimate the probability of interference by using Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation on a spreadsheet.

15.12. Refer to the financial risk analysis example presented in Section 15.4, including its results shown in Figure 15.21. Think-Big management is quite concerned about the risk profile for the proposal. Two statistics are causing particular concern. One is that there is nearly a 20 percent chance of losing money (a negative NPV). Second, there is more than a 6 percent chance of losing more than $10 million, which is more than half as much as the mean gain ($18 million). Therefore, management is wondering whether it would be more prudent to go ahead with just one of the two projects. Thus, in addition to option 1 (the proposal), option 2 is to take a 16.50 percent share of the hotel project only (so no participation in the shopping center project), and option 3 is to take a 13.11 percent share of the shopping center only (so no participation in the hotel project). Management wants to choose one of the three

options. Risk profiles now are needed to evaluate the latter two.

a. Estimate the mean NPV and the probability that the NPV will be greater than 0 for option 2 after performing a computer simulation with 1,000 trials for this option.

b. Repeat part *a* for option 3.

c. Suppose *you* were the CEO of the Think-Big Development Co. Use the results in Figure 15.21 for option 1 along with the corresponding results obtained for the other two options as the basis for a managerial decision on which of the three options to choose. Justify your answer.

15.13. Reconsider Problem 14.5 involving the game of craps. Now the objective is to estimate the probability of winning a play of this game. If the probability is greater than 0.5, you will want to go to Las Vegas to play the game numerous times until you eventually win a considerable amount of money. However, if the probability is less than 0.5, you will stay home.

You have decided to perform computer simulation on a spreadsheet to estimate this probability. Use Analytic Solver to perform the number of trials (plays of the game) indicated below.

a. 100 trials.

b. 1,000 trials.

c. 10,000 trials.

d. The true probability is 0.493. Based upon the above simulation runs, what number of trials appears to be needed to give reasonable assurance of obtaining an estimate that is within 0.007 of the true probability?

15.14. Consider the case study involving Freddie the newsboy that was introduced in Section 15.1. The spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The parameter analysis report generated in Section 15.7 (see Figure 15.37) for Freddie's problem suggests that 55 is the best order quantity, but this table only considered order quantities that were a multiple of 5. Refine the search by generating a parameter analysis report for Freddie's problem that considers all integer order quantities between 50 and 60.

15.15.* Michael Wise operates a newsstand at a busy intersection downtown every day except Sundays. Demand for the *Daily Times* averages 300 copies with a standard deviation of 50 copies (assume a normal distribution). Michael purchases the papers for $0.75 and sells them for $1.25. Any papers left over at the end of the day are recycled with no monetary return.

a. Suppose that Michael buys 350 copies for his newsstand each morning. Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation on a spreadsheet. What will be Michael's mean profit from selling the *Daily Times?* What is the probability that Michael will make at least $0 profit?

b. Generate a parameter analysis report to consider five possible order quantities between 250 and 350. Which order quantity maximizes Michael's mean profit?

c. Generate a trend chart for the five order quantities considered in part *b.*

d. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for the order quantity that maximizes Michael's mean profit.

15.16. Susan is a ticket scalper. She buys middle-category tickets for Golden State Warriors games before the beginning of the season for $100 each. Since the games all sell out, Susan is able to sell the tickets for $150 on game day. Tickets that Susan is unable to sell on game day have no value. Based on past experience, Susan has predicted the probability distribution for how many tickets she will be able to sell, as shown in the following table.

Tickets	Probability
10	0.05
11	0.10
12	0.10
13	0.15
14	0.20
15	0.15
16	0.10
17	0.10
18	0.05

page 720

a. Suppose that Susan buys 14 tickets for each game. Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a computer simulation on a spreadsheet. What will be the resulting estimate of Susan's mean profit from selling the tickets? What is the probability that Susan will make at least $0 profit? (*Hint:* Use the Custom Discrete distribution to simulate the demand for tickets.)

b. Generate a parameter analysis report to consider all nine possible quantities of tickets to purchase

between 10 and 18. Which purchase quantity maximizes Susan's mean profit?

c. Generate a trend chart for the nine purchase quantities considered in part *b.*

d. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for the purchase quantity that maximizes Susan's mean profit.

15.17. Consider the Reliable Construction Co. bidding problem discussed in Section 15.2. The spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The parameter analysis report generated in Section 15.7 (see Figure 15.43) for this problem suggests that $5.4 million is the best bid, but this table only considered bids that were a multiple of $0.2 million.

a. Refine the search by generating a parameter analysis report for this bidding problem that considers all bids between $5.2 million and $5.6 million in multiples of $0.05 million.

b. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for the bid that maximizes Reliable Construction Co.'s mean profit. Assume that the bid may be any value between $4.8 million and $5.8 million.

15.18. Road Pavers, Inc. (RPI) is considering bidding on a county road construction project. After careful analysis, RPI believes that the cost of this particular job would be $5 million. The cost of putting together a bid is estimated to be $50,000. The county also will receive four other bids on the project from competitors of RPI. Past experience with these competitors suggests that each competitor's bid is most likely to be 20 percent over cost, but could be as low as 5 percent over or as much as 40 percent over cost. Assume a triangular distribution for each of these bids.

a. Suppose that RPI bids $5.7 million on the project. Use Analytic Solver to perform 1,000 trials of a

computer simulation on a spreadsheet. What is the probability that RPI will win the bid? What is RPI's mean profit?

b. Generate a parameter analysis report to consider eight possible bids between $5.3 million and $6 million and forecast RPI's mean profit. Which bid maximizes RPI's mean profit?

c. Generate a trend chart for the eight bids considered in part *b.*

d. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for the bid that maximizes RPI's mean profit.

15.19. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for Merrill Lynch that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 15.4. Briefly describe how computer simulation was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

15.20. Read the referenced article that fully describes the management science study done for Kroger Co. that is summarized in the application vignette presented in Section 15.8. Briefly describe how computer simulation was applied in this study. Then list the various financial and nonfinancial benefits that resulted from this study.

15.21. Consider the airline overbooking problem discussed in Section 15.5. The spreadsheet model is available at **www.mhhe.com/Hillier7e**. The parameter analysis report generated in Section 15.7 (see Figure 15.44) for this problem suggests that 185 is the best number of reservations to accept in order to maximize profit, but the only numbers considered were a multiple of five.

a. Refine the search by generating a parameter analysis report for this overbooking problem that considers all integer values for the number of reservations to accept between 180 and 190.

b. Generate a trend chart for the 11 forecasts considered in part *a.*

c. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to search for the number of reservations to accept that maximizes the airline's mean profit. Assume that the number of reservations to accept may be any integer value between 150 and 200.

15.22. Flight 120 between Seattle and San Francisco is a popular flight among both leisure and business travelers. The airplane holds 112 passengers in a single cabin. Both a discount 7-day advance fare and a full-price fare are offered. The airline's management is trying to decide (1) how many seats to allocate to its discount 7-day advance fare and (2) how many tickets to issue in total.

The discount ticket sells for $150 and is nonrefundable. Demand for the seven-day advance fares is typically between 50 and 150, but is most likely to be near 90. (Assume a triangular distribution.) The full-price fare (no advance purchase requirement and fully refundable prior to check-in time) is $400. Excluding customers who purchase this ticket and then cancel prior to check-in time, demand is equally likely to be anywhere between 30 and 70 for these tickets (with essentially all of the demand occurring within one week of the flight). The average no-show rate after the check-in time is 5 percent for the nonrefundable discount tickets and 15 percent for the full-price tickets that are no longer refundable because it is after the check-in time. If more ticketed passengers show up than there are seats available, the extra passengers must be bumped. A bumped passenger is rebooked on another flight and given a voucher for a free ticket on a future flight. The total cost to the airline for bumping a passenger is $600. There is a fixed cost of $10,000 to operate the flight.

There are two decisions to be made. First, prior to one week before flight time, how many tickets should be made

available at the discount fare? Too many and the airline risks losing out on potential full-fare passengers. Too few and the airline may have a less-than-full flight. Second, how many tickets should be issued in total? Too many and the airline risks needing to bump passengers. Too few and the airline risks having a less-than-full flight.

a. Suppose that the airline makes available a maximum of 75 tickets for the discount fare and a maximum of 120 tickets in total. Use Analytic Solver to generate a 1,000-trial forecast of the distribution of the profit, the number of seats filled, and the number of passengers bumped.

b. Generate a two-dimensional parameter analysis report that gives the mean profit for all combinations of the following values of the two decision variables: (1) the maximum number of tickets made available at the discount fare is a multiple of 10 between 50 and 90 and (2) the maximum number of tickets made available for either fare is 112, 117, 122, 127, or 132.

page 721

c. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to try to determine the maximum number of discount fare tickets and the maximum total number of tickets to make available so as to maximize the airline's expected profit.

15.23. Now that Jennifer is in middle school, her parents have decided that they really must increase their saving for her college education. Realizing how expensive college has become, they hope to accumulate a college fund of nearly $100,000 by the time she starts college in five years through investing their savings wisely.

Jennifer's parents have $25,000 to invest immediately to start building up the college fund. Furthermore, they plan to save another $10,000 to invest at the end of each of the following four years, as well as save another $10,000 in the

fifth year. Each time they make an investment, they plan to split their investment evenly between a particular stock fund and a particular bond fund. Historically, the stock fund has had an average annual return of 8 percent with a standard deviation of 6 percent. The bond fund has had an average annual return of 4 percent with a standard deviation of 3 percent. (Assume a normal distribution for both.)

Assume that the initial investment ($25,000) is made right now (year 0) and is split evenly between the two funds (i.e., $12,500 in each fund). The returns of each fund are allowed to accumulate (i.e., are reinvested) in the same fund and no redistribution will be done before Jennifer starts college. Furthermore, four additional investments of $10,000 will be made and split evenly between both funds ($5,000 each) at year 1, year 2, year 3, and year 4. Another $10,000 will be added at year 5 when Jennifer is ready to begin college. Use a 1,000-trial Analytic Solver simulation to estimate each of the following.

a. What will be the expected value (mean) of the college fund at year 5?

b. What will be the standard deviation of the college fund at year 5?

c. What is the probability that the college fund at year 5 will be at least $85,000?

d. What is the probability that the college fund at year 5 will be at least $100,000?

15.24. Reconsider the Everglade case study described in Chapter 7 and then solved in Figure 7.5 (as provided in the Excel files for that chapter). That analysis assumed that the projected net cash flows over the next 10 years (2024–2033) shown in Table 7.1 are known with certainty. However, Everglade management recognizes that there actually is considerable uncertainty about what these cash flows will turn out to be, so they would like additional analysis to take this uncertainty into account.

For each of the 10 cash flows, estimates now have been obtained about its minimum and maximum possible values, as well as its most likely value. These estimates are shown in the table below. Assuming a triangular distribution with these parameters for each of the cash flows, apply computer simulation with 1,000 trials to the company's cash flow management problem by starting with the spreadsheet shown in Figure 7.5 and then using EndBalance as the results cell and MeanEnd-Balance as the statistic cell. Assume a long-term loan of $4.65 million in 2024 (as found in Figure 7.5) and then a short-term loan (if any) in each subsequent year as needed to maintain an ending balance of at least $0.50 million. (*Hint: calculate a balance-before-loan each year and then use this to calculate the needed short-term loan amount.*) Show your results in the form of a frequency chart and a statistics table where the lower cutoff for the statistics table is 0.

	Cash Flow ($millions)		
Year	**Minimum**	**Most Likely**	**Maximum**
2024	−9	−8	−7
2025	−4	−2	1
2026	−7	−4	0
2027	0	3	7
2028	3	6	9
2029	1	3	5
2030	−6	−4	−2
2031	4	7	12
2032	−5	−2	4
2033	5	10	18

Case 15-1

Action Adventures

The **Adventure Toys Company** manufactures a popular line of action figures and distributes them to toy stores at the wholesale price of $10 per unit. Demand for the action figures is seasonal, with the highest sales occurring before Christmas and during the spring. The lowest sales occur during the summer and winter months.

Each month the monthly "base" sales follow a normal distribution with a mean equal to the previous month's actual "base" sales and with a standard deviation of 500 units. The actual sales in any month are the monthly base sales multiplied by the seasonality factor for the month, as shown in the subsequent table. Base sales in December 2023 were 6,000, with actual sales equal to (1.18)(6,000) = 7,080. It is now January 1, 2024.

Cash sales typically account for about 40 percent of monthly sales, but this figure has been as low as 28 percent and as high as 48 percent in some months. The remainder of the sales are made on a 30-day interest-free credit basis, with full payment received one month after delivery. In December 2023, 42 percent of sales were cash sales and 58 percent were on credit.

page 722

Month	Seasonality Factor
January	0.79
February	0.88
March	0.95
April	1.05
May	1.09
June	0.84

Month	Seasonality Factor
July	0.74
August	0.98
September	1.06
October	1.10
November	1.16
December	1.18

The production costs depend upon the labor and material costs. The plastics required to manufacture the action figures fluctuate in price from month to month, depending on market conditions. Because of these fluctuations, production costs can be anywhere from $6 to $8 per unit. In addition to these variable production costs, the company incurs a fixed cost of $15,000 per month for manufacturing the action figures. The company assembles the products to order. When a batch of a particular action figure is ordered, it is immediately manufactured and shipped within a couple of days.

The company utilizes eight molding machines to mold the action figures. These machines occasionally break down and require a $5,000 replacement part. Each machine requires a replacement part with a 10 percent probability each month.

The company has a policy of maintaining a minimum cash balance of at least $20,000 at the end of each month. The balance at the end of December 2023 (or equivalently, at the beginning of January 2024) is $25,000. If required, the company will take out a short-term (one-month) loan to cover expenses and maintain the minimum balance. The loans must be paid back the following month with interest (using the current month's loan interest rate). For example, if March's annual interest rate is 6 percent (so 0.5 percent per month) and a $1,000 loan is taken out in March, then $1,005 is due in April. However, a new loan can be taken out each month.

Any balance remaining at the end of a month (including the minimum balance) is carried forward to the following month and also earns savings interest. For example, if the ending balance in March is $20,000 and March's savings interest is 3 percent per annum (so 0.25 percent per month), then $50 of savings interest is earned in April.

Both the loan interest rate and the savings interest rate are set monthly based upon the prime rate. The loan interest rate is set at prime + 2%, while the savings interest rate is set at prime − 2%. However, the loan interest rate is capped at (can't exceed) 9 percent and the savings interest rate will never drop below 2 percent.

The prime rate in December 2023 was 5 percent per annum. This rate depends upon the whims of the Federal Reserve Board. In particular, for each month there is a 70 percent chance it will stay unchanged, a 10 percent chance it will increase by 25 basis points (0.25 percent), a 10 percent chance it will decrease by 25 basis points, a 5 percent chance it will increase by 50 basis points, and a 5 percent chance it will decrease by 50 basis points.

a. Formulate a simulation model on a spreadsheet to track the company's cash flows from month to month. Use Analytic Solver to simulate 1,000 trials for the year 2024.
b. Adventure Toys management wants information about what the company's net worth might be at the end of 2024, including the likelihood that the net worth will exceed $0. (The net worth is defined here as the ending cash balance *plus* savings interest and account receivables *minus* any loans and interest due.) Display the results of your simulation run from part *a* in the various forms that you think would be helpful to management in analyzing this issue.
c. Arrangements need to be made to obtain a specific credit limit from the bank for the short-term loans that might be needed during 2024. Therefore, Adventure Toys management also would like information regarding the size of the maximum short-term loan that might be needed during 2024. Display the results of your simulation run from part *a* in the various forms that you think would be helpful to management in analyzing this issue.

Case 15-2

Pricing under Pressure

Elise Sullivan moved to New York City in September to begin her first job as an analyst working in the Client Services Division of **FirstBank,** a large investment bank providing brokerage services to clients across the United States. The moment she arrived in the Big Apple after receiving her undergraduate business degree, she hit the ground running—or, more appropriately, working. She spent her first six weeks in training, where she met new FirstBank analysts like herself and learned the basics of FirstBank's approach to accounting, cash flow analysis, customer service, and federal regulations.

After completing training, Elise moved into her bullpen on the 40th floor of the Manhattan FirstBank building to begin work. Her first few assignments have allowed her to learn the ropes by placing her under the direction of senior staff members who delegate specific tasks to her.

Today, she has an opportunity to distinguish herself in her career, however. Her boss, Michael Steadman, has given her an assignment that is under her complete direction and control. A very eccentric, wealthy client and avid investor by the name of Emery Bowlander is interested in purchasing a European call option that provides him with the right to purchase shares of Fellare stock for $44.00 on the first of February—12 weeks from today. Fellare is an aerospace manufacturing company operating in France, and Mr. Bowlander has a strong feeling that the European Space Agency will award Fellare with a contract to renovate a portion of the International Space Station some time in January. In the event that the European Space Agency awards the contract to Fellare, Mr. Bowlander believes the stock will skyrocket, reflecting investor confidence in the capabilities and growth of the company. If Fellare does not win the contract, however, Mr. Bowlander believes the stock will continue its current slow downward trend. To guard against this latter outcome, Mr. Bowlander does not want to make an outright purchase of Fellare stock now.

Michael has asked Elise to price the option. He expects a figure before the stock market closes so that if Mr. Bowlander decides to purchase the option, the transaction can take place today.

Unfortunately, the investment science course Elise took to complete her undergraduate business degree did not cover options theory; it only covered valuation, risk, capital budgeting, and market efficiency. She remembers from her valuation studies that she should discount the value of the option on February 1 by the appropriate interest rate to obtain the value of the option today. Because she is discounting over a 12-week period, the formula she should use to discount the option is (Value of the Option/[1 + Weekly Interest Rate]^{12}). As a starting point for her calculations, she decides to use an annual interest rate of 8 percent. But she now needs to decide how to calculate the value of the option on February 1.

Elise knows that on February 1, Mr. Bowlander will take one of two actions: either he will exercise the option and purchase shares of Fellare stock or he will not exercise the option. Mr. Bowlander will exercise the option if the price of Fellare stock on February 1 is above his exercise price of $44.00. In this case, he purchases Fellare stock for $44.00 and then immediately sells it for the market price on February 1. Under this scenario, the value of the option would be the difference between the stock price and the exercise price. Mr. Bowlander will not exercise the option if the price of Fellare stock is below his exercise price of $44.00. In this case, he does nothing, and the value of the option would be $0.

The value of the option is therefore determined by the value of Fellare stock on February 1. Elise knows that the value of the stock on February 1 is uncertain and is therefore represented by a probability distribution of values. Elise recalls from a management science course in college that she can use computer simulation to estimate the mean of this distribution of stock values. Before she builds the simulation model, however, she needs to know the price movement of the stock. Elise recalls from a probability and statistics course that the price of a stock can be modeled as following a random walk and either growing or decaying according to a lognormal distribution. Therefore, according to this model, the stock price at the end of the next week is the stock

price at the end of the current week multiplied by a growth factor. This growth factor is expressed as the number *e* raised to a power that is equal to a normally distributed random variable. In other words:

$$s_n = e^N s_c$$

where

s_n = The stock price at the end of next week

s_c = The stock price at the end of the current week

N = A random variable that has a normal distribution

To begin her analysis, Elise looks in the newspaper to find that the Fellare stock price at the end of the current week is $42.00. She decides to use this price to begin her 12-week analysis. Thus, the price of the stock at the end of the first week is this current price multiplied by the growth factor. She next estimates the mean and standard deviation of the normally distributed random variable used in the calculation of the growth factor. This random variable determines the degree of change (volatility) of the stock, so Elise decides to use the current annual interest rate and the historical annual volatility of the stock as a basis for estimating the mean and standard deviation.

The current annual interest rate is r = 8 percent, and the historical annual volatility of the aerospace stock is 30 percent. But Elise remembers that she is calculating the *weekly* change in stock—*not* the *annual* change. She therefore needs to calculate the weekly interest rate and weekly historical stock volatility to obtain estimates for the mean and standard deviation of the weekly growth factor. To obtain the weekly interest rate *w,* Elise must make the following calculation:

$$w = (1 + r)^{(1/52)} - 1$$

The historical weekly stock volatility equals the historical annual volatility divided by the square root of 52. She calculates the mean of the normally distributed random variable by subtracting one-half of the

square of the weekly stock volatility from the weekly interest rate *w.* In other words:

$$\text{Mean} = w - 0.5\ (\text{Weekly Stock Volatility})^2$$

The standard deviation of the normally distributed random variable is simply equal to the weekly stock volatility.

Elise is now ready to build her simulation model.

a. Build a simulation model in a spreadsheet to calculate the value of the option in today's dollars. Use Analytic Solver to run three separate simulations to estimate the value of the call option and hence the price of the option in today's dollars. For the first simulation, run 100 trials of the simulation. For the second simulation, run 1,000 trials of the simulation. For the third simulation, run 10,000 trials of the simulation. For each simulation, record the price of the option in today's dollars.
b. Elise takes her calculations and recommended price to Michael. He is very impressed, but he chuckles and indicates that a simple, closed-form approach exists for calculating the value of an option: the Black-Scholes formula. Michael grabs an investment science book from the shelf above his desk and reveals the very powerful and very complicated Black-Scholes formula:

$$V = N[d_1]P - N[d_2]PV[K]$$

where

$$d_1 = \frac{\ln[P/PV[K]]}{\sigma\sqrt{t}} + \frac{\sigma\sqrt{t}}{2}$$
$$d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{t}$$

$N[x]$ = The Excel function NORMSDIST (x) where $x = d_1$ or $x = d_2$

P = Current price of the stock

K = Exercise price

$\text{PV}[K]$ = Present value of exercise price $= \dfrac{K}{(1+w)^t}$

t = Number of weeks to exercise date

σ = Weekly volatility of stock

Use the Black-Scholes formula to calculate the value of the call option and hence the price of the option. Compare this value to the value obtained in part *a.*

c. In the specific case of Fellare stock, do you think that a random walk as described above completely describes the price movement of the stock? Why or why not?

Case 15-3

Financial Planning for Retirement

After a long career, Jennifer Eleanor is nearing retirement. She would like to explore the possibility of retiring 10 years from now. She feels that she can comfortably retire if she can accumulate a $2 million net worth. Throughout her career, Jennifer has frequently made use of her spreadsheet modeling skills that she first learned as a business student, so she decides to apply this approach to analyze her financial situation in 10 years.

Jennifer works in the financial industry and currently her salary is such that she earns $100,000 annually in take-home pay (after all taxes). However, there is lots of volatility in her line of work. While raises and promotions are possible, she is painfully aware that job layoffs are not uncommon either. Jennifer estimates that each year she has an 85 percent chance of avoiding a layoff and keeping her current job. If she keeps her job, there is a 20 percent chance (each year) of a promotion which includes a raise that would increase her take-home pay anywhere in the range of 10–20 percent (all values in the range equally likely). Without a promotion, annual raises are anywhere in the 0–5 percent range (all values in the range equally likely). On the other hand, if she is laid off, then Jennifer will seek new

work. She has sufficient job skills that she is confident she can find a new job quickly, but the new salary is very uncertain and she is likely to end up in a lower paying job. It is most likely she would end up with take-home pay near 90 percent of its current value just before being laid off, but this could range as low as 50 percent or as high as 115 percent of its current value. (Jennifer is assuming a triangular distribution.)

Jennifer has a self-funded retirement fund that is currently valued at $500,000. At the start of each year, starting one year from now, Jennifer plans to invest an additional $10,000 and then re-balance the fund so that it is invested 40 percent in the retirement plan's stock fund and 60 percent in the retirement plan's bond fund. Historically the stock fund has had a mean annual return of 8 percent with a standard deviation of 16 percent. (Jennifer is assuming a normal distribution). The bond fund typically has had annual returns near 4 percent, but it has been as low as −2 percent and as high as 13 percent. (She is assuming a triangular distribution.)

Jennifer owns her own home free and clear (no mortgage). It was recently appraised at a value of $600,000. The local housing market has seen prices rising at an average rate of 3 percent per year, but with much volatility so the standard deviation has been 6 percent. (She is assuming a normal distribution.)

Jennifer currently has $100,000 in cash, invested in a high-interest savings account. The interest rate is currently 2 percent. Jennifer expects that this rate may change up to 0.5 percent each year, going either up or down, and anywhere in this range is equally likely. However, she expects that the interest rate would never drop below 0.5 percent.

Jennifer deposits all her income in the savings account, pays for all expenses, and makes all retirement fund investments from the savings account. Jennifer's regular household expenses rise and fall with her income (when she makes more, she tends to spend it). These household expenses have averaged 70 percent of her take-home pay with a standard deviation of 5 percent. (She is assuming a normal distribution.) Beyond regular household expenses, there are also occasional major repairs that are needed on her house. These seem

to occur entirely randomly (i.e., no matter the history of repairs, the next major repair is just as likely to happen at any minute). She averages about one major repair per year and these usually cost around $10,000, so she assumes a fixed cost per repair. After all income is deposited and expenses paid, any balance remaining in the savings account is carried forward to the following year and also earns savings interest annually at the start of the next year (see the preceding paragraph about interest rates). For example, if the ending balance after year 2 is $100,000, and year 2's savings interest rate is 2 percent, then $2,000 of savings interest is earned at the beginning of year 3. Assume no interest for year 1, as the $100,000 beginning cash balance has already incorporated any savings interest earned.

a. Use Analytic Solver to simulate 1,000 trials for the next 10 years. For simplicity of modeling, assume that any promotion, raise, or layoff (with the corresponding new job) occurs at year end and therefore won't start affecting take-home pay until the following year. Also, for simplicity, assume that all cash flows (income, expenses, investments, etc.) occur simultaneously at the start of each year. Based on the results of the simulation run, what is Jennifer's average net worth (accounting for her retirement fund value, housing value, and savings) at the end of 10 years?
b. Based on the results of the simulation run, what is the probability that Jennifer's net worth will exceed $2 million?
c. Use the Solver in Analytic Solver to determine the optimal stock-bond breakdown in the retirement fund (whatever stock-bond mix is chosen, assume the same mix is used for *all* 10 years) so as to maximize the probability that Jennifer's net worth will exceed $2 million.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) © McGraw Hill

APPENDIX A

Tips for Using Microsoft Excel for Modeling

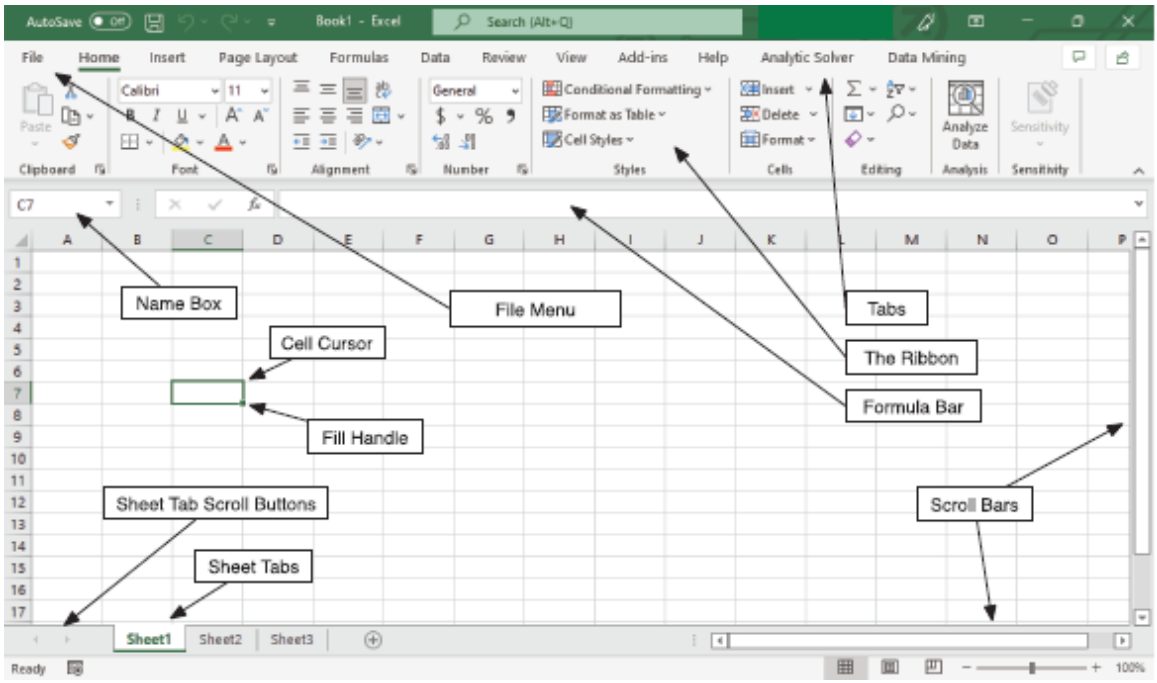
Microsoft Excel is a powerful and flexible tool with a myriad of features. It is certainly not necessary to master all the features of Excel in order to successfully build models in spreadsheets. However, there are some features of Excel that are particularly useful for modeling that we will highlight here. This appendix is not designed to be a basic tutorial for Excel. It is designed instead for someone with a working knowledge of Excel (at least at a basic level) who wants to take advantage of some of the more advanced features of Excel that are useful for building models more efficiently.

ANATOMY OF THE MICROSOFT EXCEL WINDOW

When Microsoft Excel is first opened, a blank spreadsheet appears in an Excel window. The various components of the Excel window are labeled in Figure A.1.

FIGURE A.1

The Microsoft Excel window.



Microsoft Corporation

The Excel file is called a *workbook.* A workbook consists of a number of *worksheets* or *spreadsheets,* identified in the sheet tabs at the bottom of the screen (Sheet1, Sheet2, and Sheet3 in Figure A.1). Only one spreadsheet at a time is shown in the window, with the currently displayed spreadsheet highlighted in the sheet tab (Sheet1 in Figure A.1). To show a different spreadsheet (e.g., Sheet2 or Sheet3), click on the appropriate sheet tab.

Each spreadsheet consists of a huge grid, with many rows and columns. The rows are labeled on the left of the grid by numbers (1, 2, 3, . . .). The columns are labeled on the top of the grid by letters (A, B, C, . . .). Each element of the grid is referred to as a *cell,* and is referred to by its row and column label (e.g., cell C7). The currently selected cell is highlighted by the cell cursor (a dark or colored border). A different cell can be selected either by clicking on it or by moving the cell cursor with the arrow keys.

Only a portion of the spreadsheet is shown at any one time. For example, in Figure A.1 only the first 16 columns and first 17 rows are shown. The scroll bars can be used to show a different portion of the spreadsheet.

WORKING WITH WORKBOOKS

When Microsoft Excel is first opened, a new workbook is created and given a default name that is visible at the top center of the window (e.g., Book1 in Figure A.1). To give the workbook a different name, save it under whatever name you desire by choosing Save As under the File menu.

To open an existing workbook that has been saved previously, choose Open from the File menu. It is possible to have more than one workbook open at a time within Excel. This may be desirable if you want to copy worksheets from one workbook to another or if you want to see the contents of another workbook while you are working on an existing workbook. When multiple workbooks are open, some of the workbooks can become hidden behind another workbook that is being displayed. To bring any workbook to the front, select it under the Switch Windows menu on the View tab. The workbooks also can be arranged on the screen (e.g., one over the other, or one next to the other) by choosing Arrange All on the View tab.

page 726

WORKING WITH WORKSHEETS

By default, a new Excel workbook consists of a single worksheet titled Sheet1. A new sheet can be added by clicking on the + to the right of the worksheet tab(s), or by choosing Insert Sheet from the Insert menu of the Cells group on the Home tab. The currently displayed sheet is highlighted in the sheet tabs. To display a different sheet, click on the appropriate tab. If the desired tab is not visible

because there are more tabs than can be displayed, the list of tabs can be scrolled using the sheet tab scroll buttons.

The sheets can be given descriptive names by double-clicking on the sheet tab and typing a new name. The sheet tabs can be reordered by clicking and dragging a tab to a new location. To make a copy of a sheet, control-click (option-click on a Mac) and drag the tab. If multiple workbooks are open, you can also click (or control-click) and drag a sheet tab to a different workbook to move (or copy) a sheet to a different workbook.

Using Worksheets with Solver

A model must be confined to a single sheet. When using the Excel Solver, all cell references (the objective cell, changing cells, etc.) must be on the currently displayed sheet. Thus, the different components of the Solver model cannot be spread among different sheets. Analytic Solver does allow the model on a given sheet to have its components spread across different sheets.

The Solver information is saved with the sheet. When information is entered in Solver (including the objective cell, changing cells, and constraints), all of that information is saved with the sheet when the workbook is saved.

Separate sheets can contain separate models. Separate Solver information (the objective cell, changing cells, etc.) is kept for each sheet in the workbook. Thus, each sheet in a workbook can contain a separate and independent model. When Solver is run, only the model on the currently displayed sheet is solved.

Copy the whole sheet rather than just the relevant cells to copy models. To copy a model to another workbook or within the current workbook, it is important to control-click and drag the worksheet tab rather than simply selecting the cells containing the model and using copy and paste. Copying the sheet (by control-clicking and dragging the sheet tab) will copy *all* the contents of the sheet (formulas, data, *and* the Solver

information). Using copy and paste copies only the formulas and data, but does *not* include the Solver information.

Using Worksheets with Analytic Solver Decision Trees

Separate sheets can contain separate Analytic Solver decision trees. If the currently displayed sheet does not contain an existing Analytic Solver decision tree, then choosing Add Node under the Decision Tree > Node menu on the Analytic Solver tab will present the option of adding a new tree to the existing sheet. However, if a decision tree already exists on the sheet, then new nodes and branches can only be added to the existing decision tree. To create a new decision tree, first switch to (or add) a new sheet. A workbook can contain separate decision trees so long as they are on separate sheets.

Using Worksheets with Analytic Solver Simulation Models

The entire workbook is treated as a single simulation model for Analytic Solver. Uncertain variable cells, results cells, and statistic cells can be defined on any or all of the different sheets of the workbook. When a simulation is run, all uncertain variable cells are randomly generated, all results cells are evaluated, and all statistic cells are calculated regardless of whether they are on the currently displayed sheet.

WORKING WITH CELLS

Selecting Cells

To make any changes to a cell or range of cells, such as entering or editing data or changing the formatting, the cell or cells involved first

need to be selected. The cell cursor shows the currently selected cell (or range of cells). To select a different single cell, either click on it or use the arrow keys to move the cell cursor to that location. To select an entire row or an entire column, click the row or column heading (i.e., the A, B, C along the top of the spreadsheet, or the 1, 2, 3 along the left of the spreadsheet). To select the entire spreadsheet, click on the blank box at the upper left corner of the worksheet.

There are three ways to select a range of cells within a spreadsheet, which we will illustrate by considering the 3-by-3 range of cells from A1 to C3:

1. Click on one corner of the range (A1) and, without releasing the mouse button, drag to the other corner of the range (C3).
2. Click on one corner of the range (A1) and then hold down the SHIFT key and click on the other corner of the range (C3).
3. Click on one corner of the range (A1), hold down SHIFT or press F8 to turn on the extend mode, use the arrow keys to extend the range to the other corner (C3), and then either release the SHIFT key or press F8 again to turn the extend mode off.

Entering or Editing Data, Text, and Formulas into Cells

There are a number of ways to enter and edit the contents of a cell:

1. **Use the Formula Bar:** The contents (if any) of the currently selected cell appear in the formula bar (see Figure A.1 for the location of the formula bar above the spreadsheet and below the ribbon). To enter data, text, or a formula into a cell, click on the cell and type or edit the contents in the formula bar. Press Enter when you are done.
2. **Double-click:** Double-clicking on a cell (or pressing F2) will display the contents of the cell and allow typing or editing directly within the cell on the spreadsheet. If the cell contains a formula, the cells referred to in the formula will be highlighted in different colors on the spreadsheet. The formula can be modified either by clicking and

typing within the cell or by dragging the highlighted cell markers to new locations.

3. **Insert Function:** In an empty cell, pressing the f_x button next to the formula bar will bring up a dialog box showing all of the functions available in Excel sorted by type. After choosing a function from the list, the function is inserted into the cell and all the parameters of the function are shown in a small window.

page 728

Moving or Copying Cells

To move a cell or range of cells on the spreadsheet, first select the cell(s). To move the cell(s) a short distance on the spreadsheet (e.g., down a few rows), it is usually most convenient to use the dragging method. Click on an edge of the cell cursor and, without releasing the mouse button, drag the cell(s) to the new location. To move the cell(s) a large distance (e.g., down 100 rows, or to a different worksheet), it is usually more convenient to use Cut and Paste from the Home tab.

Similar methods can be used to make a copy of a cell or range of cells. To copy a cell (or range of cells), press ctrl (option on a Mac) while clicking on the edge of the cell cursor and dragging, or use Copy and Paste from the Home tab.

Filling Cells

When building a spreadsheet, it is common to need a series of numbers or dates in a row or column. For example, Figure A.2 shows a spreadsheet that calculates the projected annual cash flow and taxes due for 2024 through 2028, based upon monthly cash flows. Rather than typing all 12 column labels for the months in cells B2:M2, the fill handle (the small box on the lower-right corner of the cell cursor) can be used to fill in the series. After entering the first couple of elements of the series, for example, Jan in cell B2 and Feb in cell C2, select cells B2:C2 and then click and drag the fill handle to cell M2. The remainder of the series (Mar, Apr, May, etc.) will be filled in automatically. The year labels in cells A3:A7 can be filled in a similar fashion. After entering the first couple of years, 2024 in A3 and 2025

in A4, select cells A3:A4 and then click and drag the fill handle down to A7. On the basis of the data in the cells selected, the fill handle will try to guess the remainder of the series.

FIGURE A.2

A simple spreadsheet to calculate projected annual cash flow and tax due.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
1					Cash Flow ($000)									Annual	Tax
2		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Cash Flow	Due
3	2024	10	−2	4	5	4	6	8	10	12	3	−4	8	64	16.0
4	2025	15	3	−4	3	10	4	6	10	3	6	−2	12	66	16.5
5	2026	8	4	2	−3	−5	7	4	8	8	11	−3	11	52	13.0
6	2027	7	5	5	3	2	6	10	12	14	8	2	8	82	20.5
7	2028	5	2	2	−4	9	7	12	14	3	−4	6	10	62	15.5
8															
9														Tax Rate	25%

	N	O
1	Annual	Tax
2	Cash Flow	Due
3	=SUM(B3:M3)	=N3*$O$9
4	=SUM(B4:M4)	=N4*$O$9
5	=SUM(B5:M5)	=N5*$O$9
6	=SUM(B6:M6)	=N6*$O$9
7	=SUM(B7:M7)	=N7*$O$9
8		
9	Tax Rate	0.25

The fill handle is also useful for copying similar formulas into adjacent cells in a row or a column. For example, the formula to calculate the annual cash flows in N3:N7 is basically the same formula for every year. After entering the formula for 2024 in cell N3, select cell N3 and then click and drag the fill handle to copy the formula down through cell N7. Similarly, the taxes due formula in cell O3 can be copied down to cells O4:O7. In fact, both the annual cash flow and tax due formulas can be copied at once by selecting both cells N3 and O3 (the range N3:O3) and then dragging the fill handle down to cell O7. This will fill both formulas down into the cells N4:O7.

page 729

Relative and Absolute References

When using the fill handle, it is important to understand the difference between relative and absolute references. Consider the formula in cell N3 (=SUM(B3:M3)) in Figure A.2. The references to cells (B3:M3) in the formula are based upon their relative position to the cell containing the formula. Thus, B3:M3 are treated as the 12 cells immediately to the left. This is known as a **relative reference.** When this formula is copied to new cells using the fill handle, the references are automatically adjusted to refer to the new cell(s) at the same relative location (the 12 cells immediately to the left). For example, the formula in N4 becomes =SUM(B4:M4), the formula in N5 becomes =SUM(B5:M5), and so on.

In contrast, the reference to the tax rate ($O$9) in the formula in cell O3 is called an **absolute reference.** These references do not change when they are filled into other cells. Thus, when the formula in cell O3 is copied into cells O4:O7, the reference still refers to cell O9.

To make an absolute reference, put $ signs in front of the letter and number of the cell reference (e.g., $O$9). Similarly, you can make the column absolute and the row relative (or vice versa) by putting a $ sign in front of only the letter (or number) of the cell reference. After entering a cell reference, repeatedly pressing the F4 key (or command-T on a Mac) will rotate among the four possibilities of relative and absolute references (e.g., O9, $O$9, O$9, $O9).

Using Range Names

A block of related cells can be given a range name. Then, rather than referring to the cells by their cell addresses (e.g., L11:L21 or C3), a more descriptive name can be used (e.g., TotalProfit). To give a cell or range of cells a range name, first select the cell(s). Then either click Define Name on the Formulas tab or click in the Name Box (see Figure A.1) and type a name. For example, for the spreadsheet in Figure A.2, we could define a range name for the tax rate by selecting cell O9 and typing TaxRate into either the Define Name dialog box or the name box. Spaces are not allowed in range names, so use capital letters or underscore characters to separate words in a name.

Once a range name is defined, rather than typing the cell reference (e.g., O9) when it is used in a formula, the range name can be used instead (e.g., TaxRate). If you click on a cell (or cells) to use it in a formula, the range name is automatically used rather than the cell reference. This can make the formula easier to interpret (e.g., =SUM(B3:M3)*TaxRate, rather than =SUM(B3:M3)*$O$9). When using a range name in a formula, it is treated as an absolute reference. To make a relative reference to a cell that has a range name, type the cell address (e.g., O9) rather than either typing the range name or clicking on the cell (which then automatically uses the range name).

Formatting Cells

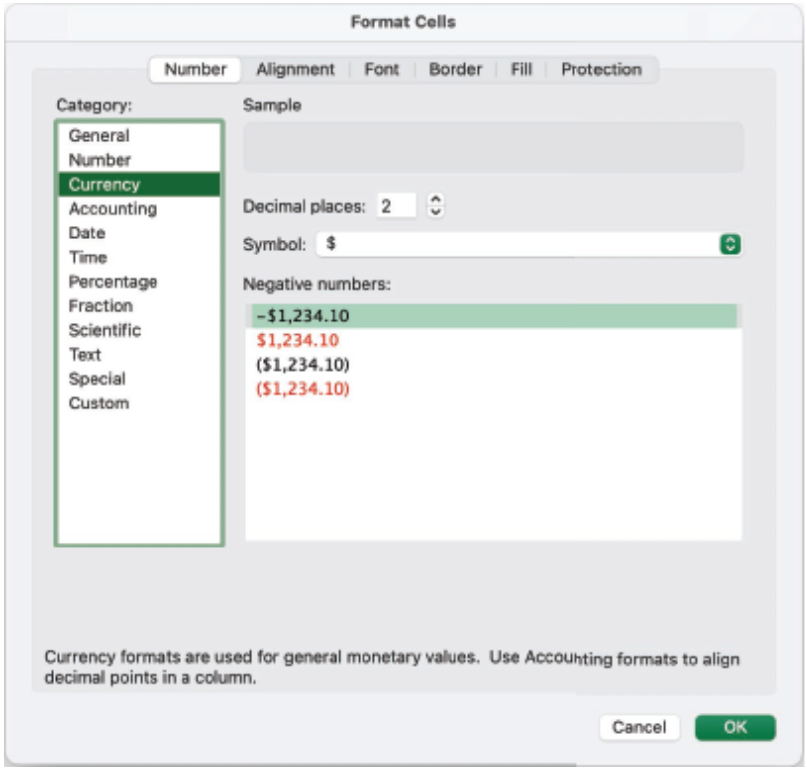
To make formatting changes to a cell or range of cells, first select the cell(s). If a range of cells is selected, any formatting changes will apply to every cell in the range. Most common types of formatting of cells, such as changing the font, making text bold or italic, or changing the borders or shading of a cell, can be done by using the Home tab.

Clicking on the **.0 → .00** or **.00 → .0** buttons changes the number of decimal places shown in a cell. Note that this only changes how the number is displayed, since Excel always uses the full precision when this cell is used in other formulas.

For more advanced types of formatting, choose Format Cells under the Format menu of the Cells group on the Home tab. A shortcut is to press ctrl-1 on a PC or command-1 on a Mac. This brings up the Format cells dialog box, as shown in Figure A.3. Under the Numbers tab you can choose to display the contents in a cell as a number with any number of decimal places (e.g., 123.4 or 123.486), as currency (e.g., $1,234.10), as a date (e.g., 12/10/2024 or Dec 2024), and so on. The other tabs are used to change the alignment of the text (left or right justified, printed vertically or horizontally, etc.), the font, the borders, the patterns, and the protection.

FIGURE A.3

The Format Cells dialog box.



Microsoft Corporation

If a cell displays ####, this means that the column width is not wide enough to show the contents of the cell. To change column widths or row heights, click and drag the vertical or horizontal lines between the column or row labels. Double-clicking on the vertical line between column labels will make the column just wide enough to show the entire contents of every cell in the column.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

APPENDIX B

Partial Answers to Selected Problems

CHAPTER 2

2.6. *a.* True.

2.12. *b.* Mean graduation rate = 0.68.

2.16. *b.* Loan 1455 has *Annual Income* entered as $83. Perhaps should be $83,000.

Loan 2457 has *Credit Score* entered as 5.40. Perhaps a stray decimal (540).

Loan 4504 has *Default* entered as N. Perhaps should be No.

CHAPTER 3

3.3. *a.* Right–left–right. Predict yes on having solar installed.

3.6. *a.* Classification: No (not likely to graduate). Probability of graduation ≈ 0.375.

3.13. *b.* Prediction for Applicant *a:* College GPA ≈ 2.91.

3.24. *b.* Classification for Applicant *a:* Yes (likely to default). Probability of default ≈ 0.109.

CHAPTER 4

4.1. *a.* 39.

b. 26.

c. 36.

4.3. MAD = 15

4.8. 2,091

4.12. When α = 0.1, forecast = 2,072

4.15. 552

4.17. *b.* MAD = 5.18.

c. MAD = 3.

d. MAD = 3.93.

4.24. 62 percent

4.30. *b.* $y = 410 + 17.6x$.

d. 604.

CHAPTER 5

5.6. *d.* Fraction of 1st = 0.667, fraction of 2nd = 0.667. Profit = $12,000.

5.13. *b.* $x_1 = 13$, $x_2 = 5$. Profit = $31.

CHAPTER 6

6.3. *c.* 3.333 of Activity 1, 3.333 of Activity 2. Profit = $166.67.

6.6. *d.* 26 of Product 1, 54.76 of Product 2, 20 of Product 3. Profit = $2,904.76.

6.11. *d.* 1.14 kg of corn, 2.43 kg of alfalfa. Cost = $2.42.

6.16. *b.* Cost = $410,000.

Shipment Quantities	**Customer 1**	**Customer 2**	**Customer 3**
Factory 1	300	0	100
Factory 2	0	200	300

6.19. *c.* $60,000 in Investment A (year 1), $84,000 in Investment A (year 3), $117,600 in Investment D (year 5). Total accumulation in year 6 = $152,880.

6.22. *a.* Profit = $13,330.

Cargo Placement	**Front**	**Center**	**Back**
Cargo 1	0	5	10
Cargo 2	7.333	4.167	0
Cargo 3	0	0	0
Cargo 4	4.667	8.333	0

CHAPTER 7

7.2. *d.* 0 end tables, 40 coffee tables, 30 dining room tables. Profit = $10,600.

7.4. *e.* 19% participation in Project A, 0% participation in Project B, and 100% participation in Project C. Ending Balance = $59.5 million.

7.9. *d.* 4 FT (8 AM–4 PM), 4 FT (12 PM–8 PM), 4 FT (4 PM–midnight), 2 PT (8 AM–12 PM), 0 PT (12 PM–4 PM), 4 PT (4 PM–8 PM), 2 PT (8 PM–midnight). Total cost per day = $4,320.

CHAPTER 8

8.1. *e.* Allowable range for unit profit from producing toys: $2.50 to $5.00. Allowable range for unit profit from producing subassemblies: − $3.00 to − $1.50.

8.4. *f.* (*Part a*) Optimal solution does not change (within allowable increase of $10).

(*Part b*)

Optimal solution does change (outside of allowable decrease of $5).

(*Part c*)

By the 100% rule for simultaneous changes in the objective function, the optimal solution may or may not change.

$$C_{8\text{AM}}: \$160 \rightarrow \$165 \quad \%\text{ of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{165-160}{10}\right) = 50\%$$

$$C_{4\text{PM}}: \$180 \rightarrow \$170 \quad \%\text{ of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{180-170}{5}\right) = \underline{200\%}$$

$$\text{Sum} = 250\%$$

8.10. *a.* Produce 2,000 toys and 1,000 sets of subassemblies. Profit = $3,500.

page 733

b. The shadow price for subassembly A is $0.50, which is the maximum premium that the company should be willing to pay.

8.14. *a.* The total expected number of exposures could be increased by 3,000 for each additional $1,000 added to the advertising budget.

b. This remains valid for increases of up to $250,000.

e. By the 100% rule for simultaneous changes in right-hand sides, the shadow prices are still valid. Using units of thousands of dollars,

$$C_A\text{: } \$4{,}000 \rightarrow \$4{,}100 \text{ \% of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{4{,}100 - 4{,}000}{250}\right) = 40\%$$

$$C_P\text{: } \$1{,}000 \rightarrow \$1{,}100 \text{ \% of allowable increase} = 100\left(\frac{1{,}100 - 1{,}000}{450}\right) = \underline{22\%}$$

$$\text{Sum} = 62\%$$

8.19 0.866 units of Activity 1 and 1.893 units of Activity 2, with a Total Profit of $4.09.

8.22 1.583 units of Activity 1 and 1.584 units of Activity 2, with a Total Profit of $4.75.

CHAPTER 9

9.3. *b.* 0 S1-D1, 10 S1-D2, 30 S1-D3, 30 S2-D1, 30 S2-D2, 0 S2-D3. Total cost = $580.

9.7. *c.* $2,187,000.

9.11. Maximum flow = 15.

9.17. *b.* Replace after year 1. Total cost = $29,000.

CHAPTER 10

10.3. *b.* Marketing and dishwashing by Eve, cooking and laundry by Steven. Total time = 18.4 hours.

10.8. Optimal path = OADT. Total distance = 10 miles.

CHAPTER 11

11.7. *c.* Invest $46,667 in Stock 1 and $3,333 in Stock 2 for $13,000 expected profit.

Invest $33,333 in Stock 1 and $16,667 in Stock 2 for $15,000 expected profit.

11.11. *d.* Dorwyn should produce 1 window and 1 door.

CHAPTER 12

12.4. *a.* Speculative investment.

d. Counter-cyclical investment.

12.6. *b.* A_3

c. A_2

12.11. *a.* A_1

b. $18.

12.15. *c.* EVPI = $3,000. The credit-rating organization should not be used.

12.20. *c.* Choose to build computers (expected payoff is $27 million).

12.21. *a.* EVPI = $7.5 million.

c. P(Sell 10,000 | Predict Sell 10,000) = 0.667.

P(Sell 100,000 | Predict Sell 100,000) = 0.667.

12.22. *a.* The optimal policy is to do no market research and build the computers.

12.25. *c.* $800,000.

f, g. Leland University should hire William. If he predicts a winning season, then they should hold the campaign. If he predicts a losing season, then they should not hold the campaign.

12.29. *a.* Choose to introduce the new product (expected payoff is $12.5 million).

b. $7.5 million.

c. The optimal policy is not to test but to introduce the new product.

12.33. *a.* Choose not to buy insurance (expected payoff is $249,840).

b. Choose to buy insurance (expected utility is 499.82).

CHAPTER 13

13.3. *a.* True.

b. False.

c. True.

13.8. *a.* $L = 2$.

b. $L_q = 0.375$.

c. $W = 30$ minutes, $W_q = 5.625$ minutes.

13.12. *a.* 96.9% of the time.

13.15. *b.* $L = 0.333$.

g. Two members.

13.18. L_q is unchanged and W_q is reduced by half.

13.22. *a.* $L = 3$.

d. TC (status quo) = \$85/hour.

TC (proposal) = \$73/hour.

13.27. *a.* Combined expected waiting time = 0.211 hours.

c. Approximately 3.43 minutes.

13.30. *c.* 0.4.

d. 7.2 hours.

13.34. Jim should operate four cash registers. Expected cost per hour = $134.31.

CHAPTER 14

14.1. *b.* Let the numbers 0.0000 to 0.5999 correspond to strikes and the numbers 0.6000 to 0.9999 correspond to balls. The random observations for pitches are 0.3039 = strike, 0.7914 = ball, 0.8543 = ball, 0.6902 = ball, 0.3004 = strike, 0.0383 = strike.

14.5. *a.* Here is a sample replication.

Summary of Results:	
Win? (1 = Yes, 0 = No)	0
Number of Tosses =	3

Simulated Tosses

page 735

Toss	Die 1	Die 2	Sum
1	4	2	6
2	3	2	5
3	6	1	7
4	5	2	7
5	4	4	8
6	1	4	5
7	2	6	8

Results

Win?	Lose?	Continue?
0	0	Yes
0	0	Yes

Win?	Lose?	Continue?
0	1	No
NA	NA	No
NA	NA	No
NA	NA	No
NA	NA	No

14.11. *a.* Let the numbers 0.0000 to 0.3999 correspond to a minor repair and 0.4000 to 0.9999 correspond to a major repair. The average repair time is then (1.224 + 0.9 50 + 1.610)/3 = 1.26 hours.

14.18. *b.* The average waiting time should be approximately 1 day.

c. The average waiting time should be approximately 0.33 days.

CHAPTER 15

15.3. *a.* Min Extreme distribution (Mode = 170.3, Scale = 50.9, Shift = 320.0).

15.7. *a.* The mean project completion time should be approximately 33 months.

c. Activities B and J have the greatest impact on the variability in the project completion time.

15.15. *a.* Mean profit should be around $107, with about a 96.5% chance of making at least $0.

Design elements icons: (Globe/world map collage) ©McGraw Hill

Index

A

Absolute reference, 194, 729
Advertising-mix problem, 213–217, 231–237; *see also* Resource-allocation problems
    analysis of problem, 232, 233
    constraints, 233–235
    data for, 233
    decisions, 233
    evaluation of model adequacy, 236–237
    measure of performance, 235
    spreadsheet model, 235
    summary of formulation, 235
Affinity analysis, 130–131
Ahire, S. L., 268
Alden, J. M., 580
Algebraic model
    linear programming *vs.,* 199–200
    minimization problem, 217
    product-mix case, 198–200
    spreadsheet models *vs.,* 200
Algorithm, 2, 58, 60
Allowable range, 326, 338
    sensitivity report for find, 326–328
Allowable range for an object function coefficient, 326
Allowable range for the right-hand side, 338

Alternatives, 505
Altschuler, S., 679
Analytics
    descriptive analytics, 14–16
    predictive analytics, 16–22
    prescriptive analytics, 22–25
    sports analytics, 12
Analytic Solver, 209–212, 657
    analyze a model, 486–490
    chance constraints, 348–351
    to choose a solving method, 486–490
    classification tree algorithm, 114–115
    data exploration, 47
    decision trees, 511–513, 530, 531
    Distributions menu, 688–699
        Bernoulli and binomial distribution, 692–693
        best fit to historical data, 696–699
        characteristics of available distributions, 688–689
        custom distributions, 694–696
        exponential distribution, 691–692
        geometric and negative binomial distributions, 693–694
        lognormal distribution, 690
        normal distribution, 689
        other distributions, 694
        Poisson distribution, 692
        triangular distribution, 689–690
        uniform and integer uniform distributions, 690–691
    expected payoff, 519, 520
    exponential utility function, 544–546
    KNN algorithm, 99–103
    naïve Bayes, 121–122

newsboy problem (case study), 658–668
accuracy of results/standard error, 665–666
computer simulation and Solver, 708–710
parameter analysis report, 700
results cell, 661
running simulation, 663–665
spreadsheet model, 658–659
statistic cell, 661–662
trend chart, 700
uncertain variable cell, 659–661
optimizing using Solver tool, 707–715
parameter analysis report, 324–326, 338–339, 699–707
project management
computer simulation and Solver, 711–715
parameter analysis report, 704–705
probability of meeting deadline, 673–674
sensitivity chart, 677–678
simulation results, 676–677
spreadsheet model, 674–676
regression tree algorithm, 116
revenue management (case study)
overbooking problem, 683–684
parameter analysis report, 704–707
simulation results, 687–688
spreadsheet model, 684–686
risk analysis problem (case study), 678–683
decision variables, 682
results cells, 682
simulation results, 682–683
spreadsheet model, 680–682
statistic cell, 682

uncertain variable cells, 682
simultaneous changes in constraints, 342–344
two-way parameter analysis report, 330–332
uncertainty of competitors' decisions (case study), 668–672
bidding minimum/maximum values, 668–670
simulation results, 670–672
spreadsheet model, 670–672
worksheets with, 726–727
Analytics revolution, 1
Animation, 648
Annual household income, 92
Application-oriented simulators, 648
Arcs, 373
Arguello, M., 74
ARIMA (AutoRegressive Integrated Moving Average) method, 161, 164
Artificial intelligence (AI), 10
Assignment problems, 254, 265–268, 378
characteristics of, 266–268
example of, 265–267
minimum-cost flow problems, 378
spreadsheet model, 266
Average forecasting error, 142, 161, 163
Average forecasting method, 152
Averaging forecasting method, 141, 152, 166
Avriel, M., 464

B

Bar chart, 51–53

Batavia, D., 679
Bayes' decision rule, 506, 508–511, 513, 538
Bayes' theorem, 117–120, 523
Behavioral economics, 606
Behavioral queueing theory, 606–607
Benefit constraint, 248, 253–255, 268, 269
Bennett, J., 679
Bernoulli distribution, 692–693, 711
Beta distribution, 674
Big data, 7, 41
Big-number constraint, 432
Binary decision variable, 411
    contingent decision, 415
    crew scheduling problem, 425–429
    interrelationships between decisions, 414–415
    management's conclusion, 418
    mixed BIP, 429–434
    mutually exclusive alternatives, 414
    project selection, 419–421
    site selection problem, 421
    what-if analysis, 416–418
    yes-or-no decisions, 414
Binary integer programming (BIP), 409, 411
    crew scheduling problem, 425–429
    formulation with binary variables, 419–420, 423
    mixed BIP, 429–434
    project selection, 419–421
    selection of sites, 421–425
    spreadsheet model, 420–421, 423–425, 427–429
Binary variables, 409, 711
Binning, 117

Binomial distribution, 686, 692–694
BIP (binary integer programming) model, 409, 411, 416
    what-if analysis, 416–418
BIP spreadsheet model, 420–421
Bixby, A., 191
Bogojeska, J., 8
Bonner, B., 709
Boxplots, 53
Branches, 511
Break-even analysis
    break-even point, 6
    mathematical model for, 6
Break-even point, 6
Brennan, M., 636
Burns, L. D., 580

Business analytics, 1, 5–7
    application of, 27
    artificial intelligence, 10
    categories of, 7–9
    data science, 9
    impact of, 26–29
    machine learning, 9–10
    management science *vs.,* 10–13

C

Capacity of an arc, 373
Capital budgeting
    constraints, 245
    decisions, 244–245

financial data, 241–243
formulation, 243–246
measure of performance, 245
as resource-allocation problem, 241–246
spreadsheet model, 244
summary of formulation, 245–246
Carlson, B., 420
Cases
Action Adventures, 721–722
Aiding Allies, 402–404
Airline Scheduling, 406–407
Assigning Art, 441–442
Assigning Students to Schools, 285–286
Assigning Students to Schools (Revisited), 368, 446
Auto Assembly, 226
Brainy Business, 560–562
Broadcasting the Olympic Games, 407–408
Broadcasting the Olympic Games (Revisited), 446
Capacity Concerns, 281–282
Continuation of the Super Grain Case Study, 497–498
Controlling Air Pollution, 364–366
Cutting Cafeteria Costs, 227
Evergreen Solar Decides to Use Naïve Bayes, 137–138
Fabrics and Fall Fashions, 282–284
Farm Management, 366–367
Finagling the Forecasts, 184–186
Financial Planning for Retirement, 724
International Investments, 499–500
Money in Motion, 405–406
New Frontiers, 284–285
Planning Planers, 655–656

Pricing under Pressure, 722–723
Project Pickings, 287–288
Queueing Quandary, 616–617
Reclaiming Solid Wastes, 286–287
Reducing In-Process Inventory, 617–618
Reducing In-Process Inventory (Revisited), 656
Revisiting Vacations at Vegas Villas, 138
Savvy Stock Selection, 498–499
Selling Soap, 363–364
Shipping Wood to Market, 280
Smart Steering Support, 562–563
Staffing a Call Center, 228–229
Stocking Sets, 442–444
University Toys and the Business Professor Action Figures, 560
Vacations at Vegas Villas, 85–86
VRX Revisited, 35
Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?, 559
Categorical variable, 43, 117
Causal forecasting, 168–169
types of, 169
Causal forecasting with linear regression, 140, 168–172
Causal forecasting with regression, 17
Central-tendency distributions, 689
Certainty assumption, 199, 409
Chance constraint, 348
normal distribution, 350–351
uniform distribution, 348–350
Changing cells, 193, 196–197
Ching, K., 11
Circular node, 108
Class, 60, 105

Classification/classification model, 8, 60, 91
Classification tree algorithm, 104, 105
advantages/disadvantages of, 116–117
Analytic Solver, 114–115
classification step of, 112
data partitioning to prune, 127–129
final classification tree, 111–112
Gini Index, 106–108
overfitting the data, 110–111
splitting historical records into regions, 106, 109–110
Classification trees, 104, 108–109
Classifying the outcome, 105
Cochi, S. L., 527
Commercial service systems, 571
Communication objective, 55
Complete Bayes classification algorithm, 118–120
Components, 369
Computer simulation, 7, 246
basic concepts, 619–620
building blocks for stochastic system, 636–637
case study, 633–640
adding an associate, 644–646
analysis of, 640–647
data collection, 635
financial factors, 640
generating random observations, 635–636
testing validity of, 642–644
coin-flipping game (example), 621–625
corrective *vs.* preventive maintenance (example), 625–631
estimating measures of performance, 639
generating random observations, 632–633

illustration of process, 637–639
random number, 621
role of, 620–621
Computer simulation study
check accuracy, 648
collect data and formulate model, 647
conduct and analyze simulation runs, 649
formulate problem and plan of study, 647
planning simulations, 649
present recommendations, 649
software selection and program construction, 648
steps in, 647–649
test validity, 648–649
Conditional probability, 521, 523
Confidence interval, 641
Confusion matrix, 66
Connect, 30
Connections, 369
Connor, M., 259
Conservation of flow, 373
Constant service times, 570
Constraint, 72, 192, 193, 196, 197
benefit constraint, 253, 254
fixed-requirement constraint, 254
simultaneous changes in, 341–345
single changes in, 335–341
Constraint boundary equation, 202
Constraint boundary line, 202
Consumer market survey, 173
Contingent decision, 415
Continuous distribution, 688

Continuous-variables assumption, 199, 409, 410
Corner, J. L., 547
Correlational forecasting, 168
Correlation coefficient, 48
Correlation table, 48
Cost-benefit-trade-off problems, 247–253, 463
    advertising-mix problem (example), 248–249
    benefit constraint, 248, 253
    identifying feature, 253
    personnel scheduling, 249–253
    spreadsheet model template, 253
    summary of formulation procedure, 253
Cost graphs (examples), 452
Cost table, 266
Costy, T., 580
Creek, R., 259
Crew scheduling problem, 425–429
    formulation with binary variables, 426–427
Curve fitting method, 453
Customers, 565

D

Data cells, 192, 196
Data cleaning, 43–46
Data dictionary, 43
Data familiarization objective, 55
Data mining, 58
Data science, 9
Data scientist, 9, 41

Dataset, 43
Data table, sensitivity analysis, 515, 517–518, 532–535
Data visualization, 7, 15, 55–57
Data warehouse, 41
Davis, M., 259
Decision analysis, 501
    case study, 503–506
    practical application of, 546–547
    terminology for, 505
Decision conferencing, 546
Decision criteria, 506–510
    Bayes' decision rule, 506, 508–510
    maximax criterion, 506
    maximum likelihood criterion, 507
    with probabilities, 507–510
    without probabilities, 506–507
Decision maker, 505
Decision model
    application, 78–79
    deriving solutions from, 75–77
    formulating, 72–75
    implementation, 79
    testing phase, 77–78
Decision node, 511
Decisions, 192
Decision support system, 78
Decision trees, 501, 511–514, 525
    Analytic Solver, 511–513, 530, 531
    sensitivity analysis with, 514–518
        data table, 515, 517–518

sequence of decisions, 525–531
construction of decision tree, 525–527
expected value of sample information (EVSI), 529–530
performing the analysis, 527–529
spreadsheet software for, 511–513
utility function and, 542
Decision variable, 72, 199, 419–420
Decreasing marginal returns, 450, 455, 457–463, 465
De Lascurain, M., 242
De los Santoz, L., 242
Delphi method, 173
Demand node, 373, 377, 378
Dependent variable, 168
De Reyck, B., 59
Descriptive analytics, 1, 5, 7, 40–41
data cleaning, 43–46
data exploration, 14–16, 46–47
Analytic Solver, 47
sorting and filtering, 50–51
summary statistics, 48–50
visualizing variables, 51–54
data visualization, 55–57
gather and organize relevant data, 41–42
terminology for, 42–43
Destination, 388
Diminishing returns, 16
Diminishing returns from advertising, 18
Discontinuity, 451
Discrete distribution, 689
Distribution
Bernoulli and binomial distribution, 692–693

best fit to historical data, 696–699
binomial distribution, 686
characteristics of available distributions, 688–689
custom distributions, 694–696
exponential distribution, 691–692
frequency distribution, 678
geometric and negative binomial distributions, 693–694
lognormal distribution, 690
normal distribution, 689
other distributions, 694
Poisson distribution, 692
triangular distribution, 689–690
uniform and integer uniform distributions, 690–691
Distributions dialog box, 660
Distribution Unlimited Co., 370–375
Downs, B., 191
Duintjer Tebbens, R. J., 527
Dummy destination, 393

E

Economic analysis, number of servers in queue, 603–606
Eidesen, B. H., 383
Epstein, R., 174
Equivalent lottery method, 538, 540–541
Erlang distribution, 570
ETL process, 44
Event node, 511
Event-scheduling approach, 648
Evergreen Solar predictive analytics problem, 89–91, 126–130

Evolutionary Solver, 448, 457, 478–486
advantages/disadvantages of, 484–485
portfolio selection problem, 479–482
traveling salesman problem, 483–484
Excel, minimum-cost flow problems, 374–375
Excel Solver. *See* Solver (Excel)
Excel template for *M/M/*1 model, 581
Expected monetary value (EMV) criterion, 510
Expected payoff (EP), 508, 519, 527
Expected value of perfect information (EVPI), 518–521
Expected value of sample information (EVSI), 529–530
Exponential distribution, 569, 691–692
queueing models, 567–568
Exponential smoothing forecasting method, 141, 154, 156–159
Exponential smoothing with trend, 141, 159–163
Exponential utility function, 542
Analytic Solver and, 544–546
Extract, Transform, and Load (ETL) process, 44

F

Fastchips, 140
Feasible region, 200
Feasible solution, 199
Field test, 649
Financial metrics, 46
Financial planning, 241
Financial risk analysis, 678
Finite queue, 568
First Bank case study, 37, 39–40

First-come, first-served (FCFS), 569
Fischer, M., 478
Fixed-requirement constraint, 254, 256, 257, 265, 266, 268
Fixed-requirements problem, 231
Flisberg, P., 387
Fodstad, M., 383
Forecasting error, 141–142, 144
Forecasting methods, 139; *see also* Time-series forecasting methods
    averaging method, 152, 153
    causal forecasting, 168–169
    comparison of, 167
    judgmental methods, 173–174
Forecasting models, 7
Forecasting software, 164
Forecasting techniques
    averaging method, 141, 152, 153
    call center example, 142–144
    exponential smoothing, 141, 154, 156–159
    exponential smoothing with trend, 141, 159–163
    last-value method, 141, 150–152
    linear regression, 141
    for more than one period ahead, 160
    moving-average method, 154, 155
    overview of, 139–140
    time-series method, 146–165
Fragkos, I., 59
Frequency distribution, 678
Freundt, T., 478
Functional constraints, 199
    types of, 253

G

General-purpose programming language, 648
General-purpose simulation languages, 648
Generation, 479
Genetic algorithm, 479
Geometric distribution, 693–694
Giehl, W., 478
Gini Index, 106–108
Giurgiu, I., 8
Global maximum, 455–456
Gorman, M. F., 268
Graphical method, 200
    objective function lines, 203–204
    optimal solution, 204
    summary of, 204
    two-variable problems, 200–204
GRG Nonlinear (Nonlinear Solver), 486
Group decision support system, 546
Grushka-Cockayne, Y., 59
Guerin, H., 59

H

Hard constraint, 345
Heat map, 49
Heiney, J., 11
Hellemo, L., 383
Herrería, F., 242
Heuristic procedures, 76

Histograms, 53
Historical records, 60, 88, 93, 95–97, 105
Howard, K., 636
Hutton, R. D., 580

I

Identifying feature, 218, 231
Independent parameters, 346–347
Independent variable, 168
Infeasible solution, 199
Infinite queue, 568
Influence diagram, 546
INFORMS (The Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences), 13, 26

Integer programming model, 197, 236, 409
    case study, 412–418
    nature of, 410–412
Integer programming problem, 241, 410
Integer uniform distribution, 690–691
Integrated system of 45 linear programming models, 191
Interarrival times, 566
Interfaces (journal), 26
Internal service systems, 572
Inverse transformation method, 632
Investment mix, 242

J

Jackson, C. A., 580
Joint probability, 521
Jönsson, L.-E., 387
Judgmental forecasting methods, 140, 173–174
    consumer market survey, 173
    Delphi method, 173
    jury of executive opinion, 173
    manager’s opinion, 173
    salesforce composite, 173
Jury of executive opinion, 173

K

Keefer, D. L., 547
Kempf, K. G., 11
Kenaston, N., 259
Kim, B.-I., 413
Kim, D. S., 580
Kim, S., 413
Kirkwood, C. W., 547
k-Nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm, 60, 65–71, 92, 93, 125
    advantages/disadvantages of, 103–104
    Analytic Solver, 99–103
    application of, 92
    case study, 93–94
    data partitioning to refine, 126–127
    number of historical records, 95–97
    predicting numerical outcomes with, 97–99
    rescaling data, 94–95
    scatter plot, 92, 93

summary of, 93
Knowledge Discovery in Databases (KDD) process, 46
Kohls, K. A., 580
Kritzer, A., 59
Kutz, T., 259

L

Labe, R., 679
Lack-of-memory property, 567
Last-come, first-served, 569
Last-value forecasting method, 141, 150–152
Leachman, R. C., 216
Lehky, M., 636
Length of a link or arc, 388
Liao, B., 679
Lichendahl, C., 59
Lift chart, 67–68
Lin, L., 709
Lin, Y., 216
Linear formulas, 448
Linear models, 447
Linear programming, 187
assignment problems, 265–268
basic concepts of, 187–189
broader perspective of, 218–219
cost-benefit-trade-off problems, 247–253
mixed problems, 253–261
network optimization problems, 370
product-mix problem (case study), 189–192

proportionality assumption of, 450
resource-allocation problems, 237–247
transportation problems, 261–265
Linear programming model, 73, 192
algebraic model *vs.,* 199–200
Excel's Solver, 205–209
formulating and analyzing, 268–269
key assumptions of, 197
mixed problems, 260–261
proportionality assumption, 197
spreadsheet model as, 196
characteristics of, 196–197
formulation procedure summary, 197
mathematical model in, 198–200
terminology for, 199
Linear regression, 17, 116, 141, 169–172
Linear regression line, 170
Linear regression trendline, 18, 19
Line charts, 54
Links, 387, 388
Little's formula, 574
Liu, Y., 709
Local maximum, 455
Logistic regression, 123–125
Logistic response function, 124
Lognormal distribution, 690
Longest path, 674
Long-run profit maximization, 39
Lovrien, R., 11

M

Machine learning (ML), 9–10
MAD (mean absolute deviation), 142, 144
Management science, 1
    application of, 27
    case study, 13–25
    defined, 4
    descriptive analytics, 14–16
    as discipline, 4–5
    impact of, 26–29
    impact on business, 2–3
    managerial decision making, 5
    managers and, 3
    nature of, 4–6
    predictive analytics, 16–22
    prescriptive analytics, 22–25
    quantitative factors, 6
    scientific approach to, 5–6
    spreadsheet software and, 3
    vs. business analytics, 10–13
Managerial decision making
    management science and, 5
    mixed problems, 255–256
    product-mix problem, 319
    in uncertain environments, 502
    what-if analysis, 318–320
Managerial objectives, 247
Manager’s opinion, 173
Map chart, 55, 56

Market basket analysis, 131
Markovian property, 568
Mason, N., 11
Matching set, 118
Mathematical model, 6; *see also* Algebraic model; Linear programming
    minimization problem, 216–217
    product-mix problem, 198–200
Maximax criterion, 506–507
Maximin criterion, 507
Maximum flow problems, 378
    applications of, 384–385
    assumptions of, 382–383
    case study, 379–386
    general characteristics, 382
    multiple supply/demand points, 383–384
    network model, 381–382
    solving very large problems, 386
Maximum likelihood criterion, 507–508
McCowan, S. M., 74
M/D/s model, 591
Mean absolute deviation (MAD), 130, 142, 144
Mean arrival rate, 566
Mean service rate, 569
Mean square error (MSE), 130, 142, 145, 161, 163
Meiser, D., 709
Metaheuristics, 76
Method of least squares, 122, 171
Meyer, M., 647
*M/G/*1 model, 584–587

application of, 586–587
formulas for, 585
insights provided by, 585–586
Microsoft Excel
with cells, 727–730
defined, 725
window, 725, 726
workbook, 725–726
worksheet, 726–727
Minimization example
advertising-mix problem, 213–217
Solver for optimal solution, 215–216
spreadsheet model for, 214–216
mathematical model in, 216–217
Minimum cost-flow problems, 370
assignment problems, 378
assumptions of, 373–374
example of, 370–373
Excel for, 374–375
general characteristics, 373
kinds of applications, 376–378
maximum flow problems, 379–386
shortest path problems, 378, 386–395
solving large problems, 376
special types, 378–379
terminology, 373
transportation problems, 371, 378
transshipment problem, 378

Mixed BIP (binary integer programming) model, 411, 420
setup costs for production, 429–434

Mixed integer programming problem, 410
Mixed problem, 254
    advertising-mix problem, 253–261
    template for spreadsheet model, 260
*M/M/*1 model, 579–584
    application of, 581–584
    Excel template for, 581
    formulas for, 580–581
M/M/s model, 588
Model, 2
Model enrichment, 74, 269
Models for predictive analytics, 59
Model validation, 77, 269
Mookherjee, R., 90
Moving-average forecasting method, 141, 154, 155
MSE (mean square error), 142, 145,
    161, 163
Mudry, O., 268
Multiple linear regression, 122–123
Multiple-server models, 587–591
    M/D/s model, 591
    M/M/s model, 588
Multiple-server system, 569
Muñoz, D., 242
Mutation, 479
Mutually exclusive alternatives, 414

N

Naïve Bayes algorithm, 117–118, 120–122

Naive method, 141, 152
Negative binomial distribution, 693–694
Net present value, 242
Network, 371
    defined, 369
Network optimization problems, 370
    minimum-cost flow problems, 370–379
Network simplex method, 376, 378
Newsboy problem (case study), 658–668
    accuracy of results/standard error, 665–666
    computer simulation and Solver, 708–710
    parameter analysis report, 700
    results cell, 661
    running simulation, 663–665
    spreadsheet model, 658–659
    statistic cell, 661–662
    trend chart, 700
    uncertain variable cell, 659–661
Next-event time advance, 637
Next-event time-advance procedure, 648
Nigam, R., 679
Nodes, 373, 511
Nonlinear formulas, 448
    challenge of constructing, 453–454
Nonlinear programming, 24, 447–448
    challenges of, 449–457
    decreasing marginal returns, 457–463
    difficult problems, 477–478
    Evolutionary Solver, 478–486
    nonlinear formulas, 453–454
    nonproportional relationships, 449–453

portfolio selection, 463–467
separable programming, 467–476
spreadsheet formulation, 460–463
Nonlinear programming model, 448
challenge of, 454–457
Nonlinear regression, 17
Nonlinear Solver, 448, 455–457
Nonnegativity constraints, 199, 265
Nonpreemptive priorities, 592
Nonpreemptive priorities queueing model, 593
application of, 593–596
assumptions, 593
Nonproportional relationships, 450
challenge of, 449–453
cost graphs examples, 452
profit graphs examples, 451
Normal distribution, 689
chance constraints with, 350–351
Normalizing data, 94
Number of customers in the queue, 568, 573
Number of customers in the system, 568, 573
Numerical outcomes, 98
Numerical outcome variable, 113
Numerical variable, 43

O

Objective cell, 194, 196, 197
Objective function, 72, 199
Objective function coefficient

effect of changes in, 322–328
simultaneous changes in, 328–335
Objective function lines, 203–204
Oh, J., 679
Olesen, R., 636
100 percent rule, 335
Operations research, 1, 4
Operations research analysts, 12, 218
Operations research/management science (OR/MS), 5
Optimal solution, 75, 199
Optimization, 24, 345–347
Origin, 388
OR/MS (operations research/management science), 5
Outcome variable (outcome), 61
Output cells, 194, 196, 197
Ovacik, I., 11
Overall Gini Index, 107
Overall measure of performance, 74
Overall Regression Index, 113–114
Overfitting the data, 19, 62–64, 96, 110–111
Owen, J. H., 580

P

Palacios-Brun, A., 242
Paliansch, M. A., 527
Parameter, 199
Parameter analysis report, 324–326, 338–339, 699–707
simultaneous changes in constraints, 342–344
Parameter cell, 324

Parameters, 72
Parameters of the model, 318
Payoff, 505
Payoff table, 505
Peak sun hour, 91, 92
Pedersen, B., 383
Peretz, A., 464
Perfect information, 518
    expected value of perfect information (EVPI), 518–521
Performance measurement, 192
Performance metrics, 46
Personnel scheduling, 249–253
    constraints, 251–252
    data, 251
    decisions, 251
    measure of performance, 252
    problem formulation, 249–251
    Solver (Excel), 252
    summary of formulation, 252
PERT procedure, 674
Piecewise linear, 451
Point estimate, 641
Point of indifference, 540
Poisson distribution, 692
Popov, A., Jr., 413
Population, 479
Portfolio selection problem, 479–482
Positively skewed distribution, 690
Posterior probabilities, 520–521, 523, 524
Post-optimality analysis, 76
Prediction model, 60, 98

Predictive analytics, 1, 5, 7, 16–22, 58–59
affinity analysis, 130–131
case study, 89–91, 126–130
classification tree algorithm, 104–112
complete Bayes classification algorithm, 118–120
data partitioning, 62–65
implementation, 70–71
k-nearest-neighbors (KNN) algorithm, 92–104, 125
logistic regression, 123–125
model development, 59–62
multiple linear regression, 122–123
naïve Bayes algorithm, 117–118, 120–122
outcome, 88, 93
recommendation systems, 130–131
regression tree algorithm, 112–117
test and refine model, 65–69
Predictor record, 60, 88, 93, 105
Predictor variables, 61, 88, 93
Preemptive priorities, 592–593
Preemptive priorities queueing model, 592–593
assumptions, 593
Prescriptive analytics, 1, 5, 7, 8, 22–25, 38–39, 71–72
decision model
application, 78–79
deriving solutions from, 75–77
formulating, 72–75
implementation, 79
testing phase, 77–78
Priority classes, 592
Priority procedure, 569
Priority queueing models, 592–597

general assumptions, 592
nonpreemptive priorities, 592
preemptive priorities, 592
Prior probabilities, 505

Pri-Zan, H., 464

Probabilities, queueing performance and, 575
Probability density function, 689
Probability distribution, 165
generating random observations, 632–633, 635–636
shifting distributions, 166–167
triangular distribution, 674
Probability tree diagram, 522
Process approach, 648
Production planning, 241
Production rates, 191, 193
Product mix, 190
Product-mix case study, 189–192
algebraic approach to, 198–200
Analytics Department, 190–192
Analytic Solver, 209–212
background to, 189–190
data for, 191, 192
graphical method, 200–204
linear programming model, 196–197
management’s discussion, 190
as resource-allocation problem, 238–239
Solver and, 205–209
spreadsheet formulation of problem, 192–197
mathematical model in, 198–200
what-if analysis, 320–322

Product-mix problem, 38, 192
Profit, 246
Profit & Gambit Co., 213–217, 248–249
Project management, computer simulation and Solver, 711–715
    parameter analysis report, 704–705
    probability of meeting deadline, 673–674
    sensitivity chart, 677–678
    simulation results, 676–677
    spreadsheet model, 674–676
Project selection, BIP for, 419–421
Project selection problem, 421
Proportionality assumption, 197, 199, 409
    linear programming, 450
Proportional relationship, 449
Pure BIP model, 411–412

Q

Quadratic (Quadratic Solver), 486
Quadratic programming, 460, 465
Quantitative factors, 6
Queue, 565, 568–569
Queue capacity, 568
Queue discipline, 569
Queueing model, 564–565
    arrivals, 566–567
    behavioral queueing theory, 606–607
    elements of, 565–571
    example of, 566
    exponential distribution

interarrival times, 567–568
random arrivals, 567
labels for, 570
multiple-server models, 587–591
application of, 588–591
M/D/s model, 591
M/M/s model, 588
priority queueing models, 592–597
the queue, 568–569
service, 569
service time distributions, 569–570
single-server models, 579–587
*M/G/*1 model, 584–587
*M/M/*1 model, 579–584
summary of assumptions, 570–571
Queueing network, 565
Queueing systems, 564–565
basis system, 565, 566
case study, 576–578
design insights, 597–602
economic analysis, number of servers, 603–606
examples of, 571–572
measures of performance for, 573–575
defining measures, 573–574
Little’s formula, 574
using probabilities, 575
Queueing theory, 564
behavioral, 606–607
Queues, 564
Queue size, 568

R

Random arrivals, 567
Randomness, 16
Random number, 621
Random selection, 569
Random variable, 165
Range name, 22, 192
Range of uncertainty, 346
Rash, E., 11
Rational choice theory, 606
Recommendation systems, 130–131
Record, 43
Regression equation, 170
Regression Index, 113
Regression tree algorithm, 113
    advantages/disadvantages of, 116–117
    Analytic Solver Data Mining to, 116
Regression trees, 105
    numerical predictions with, 112–114
Relative reference, 194, 729
Resource-allocation problems, 237–247; *see also* Capital budgeting
    characteristics of, 238
    identifying feature of, 237
    spreadsheet model formulation, 239–241
    summary of formulation, 241, 246–247
Resource constraint, 237, 246, 253–254, 268
Results cells, 661
Retrospective test, 78
Return on invested capital (ROIC), 46

Revenue management (case study), 683–688
overbooking problem, 683–684
parameter analysis report, 704–707
simulation results, 687–688
spreadsheet model, 684–686
Risk analysis problem (case study), 678–683
decision variables, 682
results cells, 682
simulation results, 682–683
spreadsheet model, 680–682
statistic cell, 682
uncertain variable cells, 682
Risk-averse individual, 536
Risk-neutral individual, 536
Risk profile, 678
Risk seeker, 536
Robust optimization, 345–346
general procedures for, 347
independent parameters, 346–347
Robust solution, 346
Romeo-Hernandez, O., 242
Romo, F., 383
Rönnqvist, M., 387

S

Sahoo, S., 413
Salesforce composite, 173
Sales forecasting, 140
Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd. (SEC), 216

Sarkar, N., 11
Satisficing, defined, 76
Scatter plot, 15, 53–54
Scientific approach, 5–6
Scientific method, 6
    steps in systematic investigation, 6
Seasonal effects, 147–148
Seasonal factor, 147
Seasonally adjusted time series, 148–150
Sensitive parameter, 77, 318, 328, 345
Sensitivity analysis, 319, 322, 514, 532
    data table and, 515, 517–518
    with decision trees, 514–518
    in finding allowable range, 326–328
    parameter analysis report, 324–326
    sequence of decisions, 532–535
        data table, 532–535
        organizing spreadsheet, 532
    simultaneous changes in constraints, 341–345
    single changes in a constraint, 335–341
    spreadsheet use in, 323–324
Sensitivity chart, 677–678
Sensitivity report, 352–354
    key information from, 339–341, 344–345
Separable programming, 467–476
    decreasing marginal returns, 467–471
    example of, 472–476
    smooth profit graphs, 471–472
Sequence of decisions, 525–531
Server, 565
Server speedup, 607

Service, 569
Service cost, 603
Service time, 569
Service time distributions, 569–570
Set covering constraint, 423
Set covering problem, 423
Shadow price, 338
Shirodkar, S., 11
Shortest path problems, 378, 386–395
    applications, 388, 390
    assumptions of, 388
    example of, 386
    general characteristics, 388
    minimizing total costs (example), 390–391
    minimizing total time (example), 391–395
    model formulation, 387–389

Simplex LP (Linear solver), 486
Simplex method
    linear programming, 4, 376
    network simplex method, 376, 378
Simulation clock, 637
Simulation model, 636
    testing validity of, 642–644
Single-server queueing models, 579–587
    *M/G/*1 model, 584–587
    *M/M/*1 model, 579–584
Single-server system, 569
Sink, 383
Site selection problem, 421
SmartBook, 30

Smoothing constant, 156
Social loafing, 607
Soft constraint, 345
Solis, F., 242
Solution, 199
Solver (Excel), 205, 707
    Analytic Solver, 209–212
    linear programming problems, 205–209
    minimization problem, 215–216
    personnel scheduling, 252
Song, G., 74
Source, 383
Special-purpose algorithms, 378
Sports analytics, 12
Spreadsheet, mathematical model
    in, 198–200
Spreadsheet model
    advertising-mix problem, 235
    algebraic models *vs.,* 200
    assignment problem, 266
    capital budgeting, 244
    cost-benefit-trade-off problems template, 253
    formulation of revised, 256–259
    minimization problem, 216–217
    mixed problems template, 260
    nonlinear programming problem, 460–463
    product-mix problem, 192–197
    project management, 674–676
    revenue management (case study), 684–686
    transportation problem, 263–265
Spreadsheet modeling, 13

Spreadsheet software, 3
    computer simulation, 648
    decision trees, 511–513
    management science, 3
Square nodes, 108
Square-root effect, 19–21
Stable time series, 167
Standard error, 666
Standardizing data, 94
Stark, G., 8
State of the system, 637
States of nature, 501
Statistical forecasting methods, 139–140, 173
Statistic cell, 661–662
Steady-state condition, 573
Stenstrom, C., 259
Stochastic system, 620
Stopping rule, 111
Structural constraints, 199
Sud, V. P., 636
Super Grain case study, 231–238, 254
Supply node, 373
Svenson, G., 387

T

Tableau, 55
Tanino, M., 636
Tazer Corp., 419–421

TBA Airlines, 239–241
Tech reps, 576
Test partition, 64
Think-Big Development Co., 241–244
Thompson, K. M., 527
Time series, 146
Time-series forecasting methods, 58, 139, 146, 149
    ARIMA method, 161, 164
    averaging forecasting method, 152, 153
    exponential smoothing, 154, 156–159
    exponential smoothing with trend, 159–163
    goal of, 165–166
    last-value method, 150–152
    moving-average method, 154, 155
    seasonal effects, 147–148
    seasonally adjusted time series, 148–150
    shifting distributions problems, 166–167
    techniques of, 140–142
Time value of money, 242
Tomasgard, A., 383
Total profit maximization, 190–191
Training partition, 64, 88, 101
Transportation problems, 254, 261–265, 370, 371, 378
    formulation of problem, 262–263
    minimum-cost flow problems, 378
    spreadsheet model, 263–265
Transportation service systems, 572
Transshipment node, 373, 383
Transshipment problems, 378
    minimum-cost flow problems, 378

Traveling salesman problem, 483–484
Travis, H., 11
Treemap, 55–57
Trend, 159
Trend chart, 699–707
Trendline, 17
Trend smoothing constant, 160
Trial, 658
Triangular distribution, 674, 689–690
Turnquist, M. A., 580
Two-variable problems; *see also* Product-mix case study
    graphical method, 200–204

U

Uncertainty of competitors' decisions (case study), 668–672
    bidding minimum/maximum values, 668–670
    simulation results, 670–672
    spreadsheet model, 670–672
Uncertain variable cell, 659–661
    uncertainty of competitors' decisions (case study), 668–672
        bidding minimum/maximum values, 668–670
        simulation results, 670–672
        spreadsheet model, 670–672
Uniform distribution, 690–691
    chance constraints with, 348–350
Union Airways, 249–251
Unstable time series, 167
Utility, 504, 535
    decision tree and, 542

equivalent lottery method, 540–541
exponential utility function, 542
values of payoffs, 535–546
Utility function for money, *U(M),* 536, 540–541
estimation of, 542–544
Utilization factor, 579, 587

V

Validation partition, 64, 88, 101
Vander Veen, D. J., 580
Variable, 43
Villaseñor, J., 242

W

Waiting cost, 603
Waiting time in the queue, 573
Waiting time in the system, 573
Ward, J., 372
Wassilak, S. G. F., 527
Wetherly, J., 636
What-if analysis, 73, 76, 219, 318, 416–418; *see also* Sensitivity analysis
benefits of, 318–319
importance to managers, 318–320
product-mix problem, 320–322
simultaneous changes in objective function coefficients, 328–335
spreadsheet for, 323–324

two-way parameter analysis report, 330–332
White, A., 74
Wiesmann, D., 8
Workbook, 725–726
Worksheets, 725–727

Y

Yes-or-no decisions, 411, 414
binary decision variables, 414
interrelationships between decisions, 414–415
project selection, 419–420
site selection, 421–425
Yes-or-no outcomes, 98
Yu, G., 74

Z

Zhang, X., 709
Zhao, Z., 11

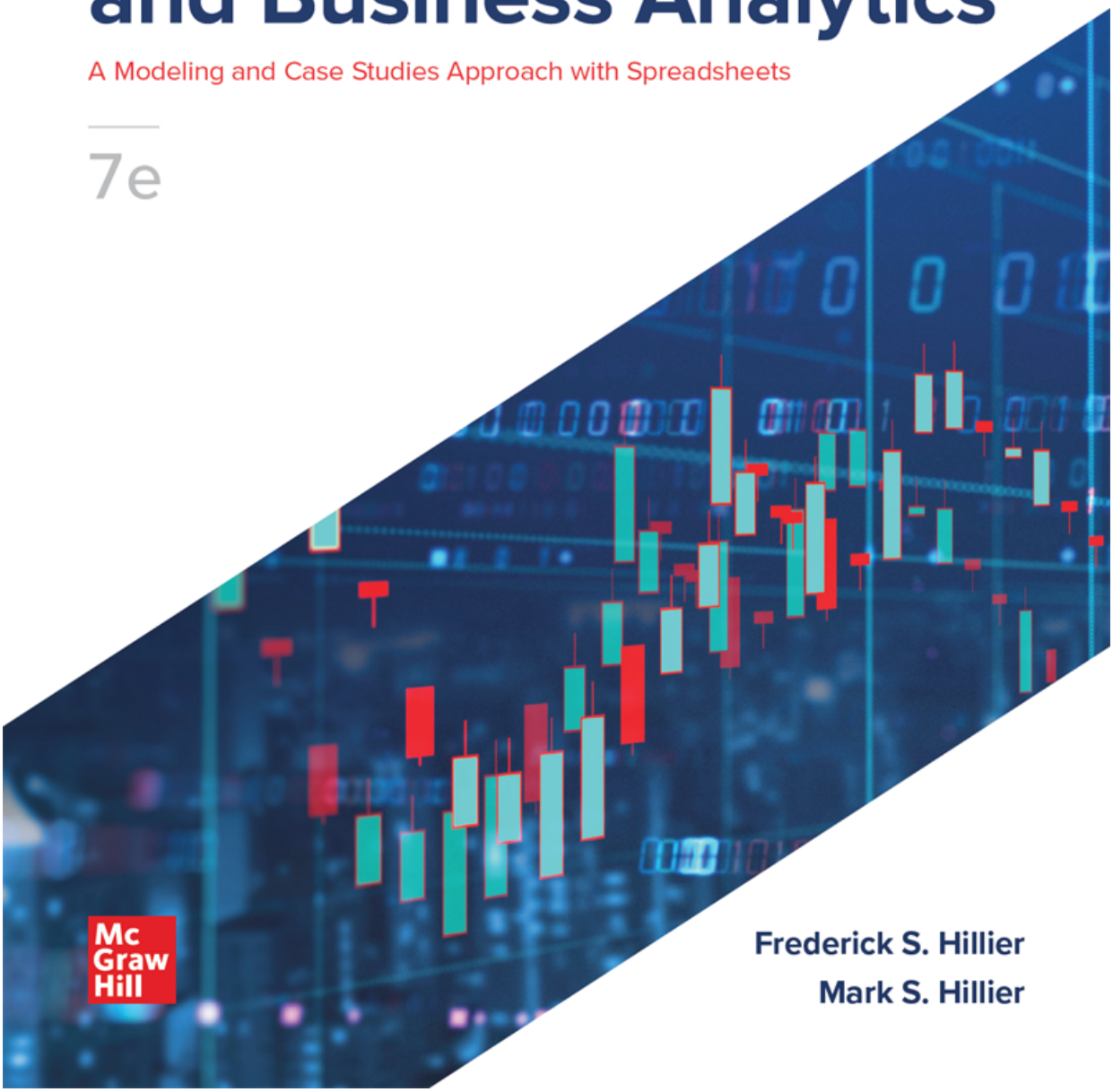
This International Student Edition is for use outside of the U.S.

Introduction to

Management Science and Business Analytics

A Modeling and Case Studies Approach with Spreadsheets

7e



Frederick S. Hillier
Mark S. Hillier

Mc Graw Hill